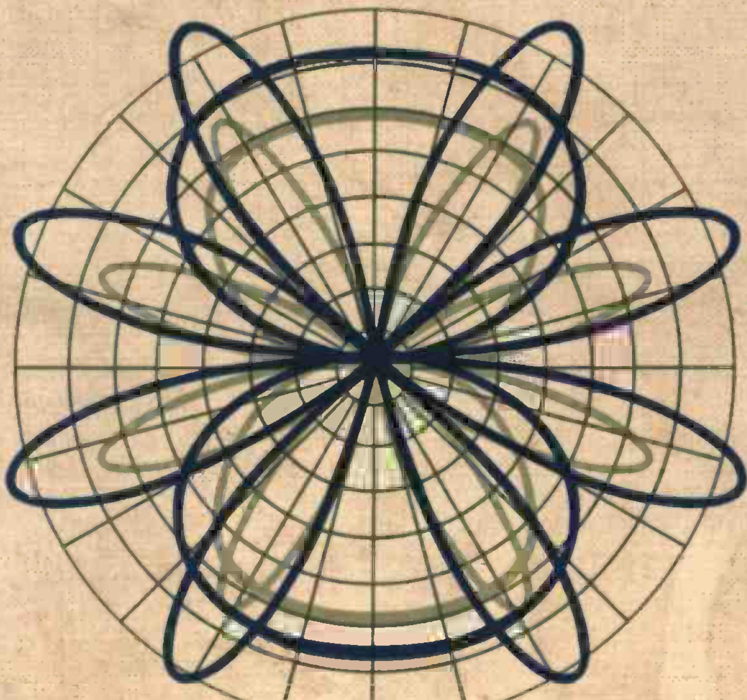
radio handbook

seventeenth edition

William I. Orr, W6SAI



radio handbook

seventeenth edition

William I. Orr, W6SAI

EDITORS AND ENGINEERS, LTD.
NEW AUGUSTA, INDIANA 46268

SEVENTEENTH EDITION

FIRST PRINTING — 1967
SECOND PRINTING — 1968
THIRD PRINTING—1969

RADIO HANDBOOK

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 40-33904

"Radio Handbook" is also available on special order in Spanish.

Preface

Vast changes have taken place in the Amateur Radio Service throughout the past two decades. The amateur station has literally moved from the garage or home workshop into the living room, and ham gear has forsaken the black-crackle panel and the six-foot relay rack for the streamlined, sleek, miniaturized desk-top cabinet. This progression has been brought about by the sweeping change from amplitude modulation (a-m) to single-sideband transmission, heralding a whole new field of technical advances in the communication art. Bandswitching linear amplifiers, compact solid-state power supplies, and highly stable variable-frequency oscillators (all of which were practically unknown twenty years ago) are modern counterparts of the bulky plug-in coil class-C amplifier, the cumbersome modulators, and the weighty power supplies that identified the amateur station of the late "forties."

The gradual eclipse of amplitude modulation has also been stimulated by the advent of the SSB transceiver and its unique VOX-operated break-in ability to make use of a single communications channel for local and long-distance contacts. In addition, the elimination of the interstation heterodyne and selective a-m fading by the widespread use of SSB has permitted more efficient occupancy of the high-frequency amateur bands by double the number of stations compared to twenty years ago.

Today's radio equipment bears little resemblance to the rough-and-ready ham gear of the pre-TVI, pre-SSB era of the relay rack and the breadboard. Today's radio amateur, moreover, is a more proficient, sophisticated operator than his counterpart of twenty or thirty years ago. The horizons of the Amateur Radio Service have been greatly expanded as a result of this worthwhile revolution in communication techniques and practices. It is hoped that this trend will be evident in the years to come.

The author is pleased to note that the *RADIO HANDBOOK* has been a force in advancing the state of the art of these various and diversified radio amateur developments, many of which are reflected in this new edition of the handbook.

Over thirty years ago the historic first edition of the *RADIO HANDBOOK* was published as a unique, independent communications manual written especially for the advanced radio amateur and electronics engineer. Since that early time, each succeeding edition of the *RADIO HANDBOOK* has led the rapidly advancing field of communications electronics. This new seventeenth edition typifies the modern trend in amateur radio today toward more advanced and sophisticated communication techniques and equipment.

The preparation of this edition of the *RADIO HANDBOOK* would have been impossible without the help that was tended the author by fellow radio amateurs and sympathetic electronics organizations. To those individuals and companies whose unselfish support made the compilation and publication of this Handbook an interesting and inspired task, I extend my thanks.

WILLIAM I. ORR, W6SAI

Acknowledgments

Orrin H. Brown, W6HB
John T. Chambers, W6NLZ
Frank Clement, W6KPC
W. W. Eitel, W6UF
William Hillard, K6OPZ
Oscar Jaeger, K3OKX
Clifford C. Johnson, WØURQ
Harold R. Jones, W6ZVV
James G. Lee, W6VAT
Jack McCullough, W6CHE
B. A. Ontiveros, W6FFF
Kenneth L. Pierce, W6SLQ
Robert W. Sutherland, W6UOV
Harold R. Vance, K2FF
Paul M. Wilson, W4HHK
Barker & Williamson Co.
Bird Electronic Corp.
British Radio Electronics, Ltd.
Centralab Division of Globe-Union, Inc.
Diodes, Inc.
Eimac Division of Varian Associates
General Electric Co. (Semiconductor Div.)
Illumitronic Engineering Corp.
International Crystal Co.
E. F. Johnson Co.
McCoy Electronics Co.
Merit Coil & Transformer Co.
J. W. Miller Co.
Potter-Brumfield, Inc.
Radio Corporation of America (Electronic Components and Devices Div.)
Stancor Electronics, Inc.
Triad Transformer Co.
Wyco Metal Products Co.

Contents

Chapter One. INTRODUCTION TO RADIO 11

1-1 Amateur Radio 11
1-2 Station and Operator Licenses 12
1-3 The Amateur Bands 13
1-4 Starting Your Study 15

Chapter Two. DIRECT-CURRENT CIRCUITS 23

2-1 The Atom 23
2-2 Fundamental Electrical Units and Relationships 24
2-3 Electrostatics—Capacitors 33
2-4 Magnetism and Electromagnetism 39
2-5 RC and RL Transients 43

Chapter Three. ALTERNATING-CURRENT CIRCUITS 46

3-1 Alternating Current 46
3-2 Resonant Circuits 60
3-3 Nonsinusoidal Waves and Transients 65
3-4 Transformers 69
3-5 Electric Filters 71

Chapter Four. VACUUM-TUBE PRINCIPLES 75

4-1 Thermionic Emission 75
4-2 The Diode 80
4-3 The Triode 81
4-4 Tetrode or Screen-Grid Tubes 86
4-5 Mixer and Converter Tubes 89
4-6 Electron Tubes at Very-High Frequencies 90
4-7 Special Microwave Electron Tubes 91
4-8 The Cathode-Ray Tube 94
4-9 Gas Tubes 97
4-10 Miscellaneous Tube Types 99

Chapter Five. TRANSISTORS AND SEMICONDUCTORS 100

5-1 Atomic Structure of Germanium and Silicon 100
5-2 Mechanism of Conduction 101
5-3 The PN Junction Diode 102
5-4 The Transistor 105
5-5 Transistor Characteristics 108
5-6 Transistor Circuitry 110
5-7 The Field Effect Transistor 118

Chapter Six. VACUUM-TUBE AMPLIFIERS 120

6-1 Vacuum-Tube Parameters 120
6-2 Classes and Types of Vacuum-Tube Amplifiers 122

6-3 Biasing Methods 123
6-4 Distortion in Amplifiers 123
6-5 Resistance-Capacitance Coupled Audio-Frequency Amplifiers 125
6-6 Video-Frequency Amplifiers 127
6-7 Other Interstage Coupling Methods 128
6-8 Phase Inverters 130
6-9 D-C Amplifiers 132
6-10 Single-Ended Triode Amplifiers 133
6-11 Single-Ended Pentode Amplifiers 135
6-12 Push-Pull Audio Amplifiers 137
6-13 Class-B Audio-Frequency Power Amplifiers 138
6-14 Cathode-Follower Power Amplifiers 143
6-15 Feedback Amplifiers 145

Chapter Seven. RADIO-FREQUENCY VACUUM-TUBE AMPLIFIERS 147

7-1 Grid-Circuit Considerations 147
7-2 Plate-Circuit Considerations 149
7-3 Class-C R-F Power Amplifiers 150
7-4 Class-B Radio-Frequency Power Amplifiers 156
7-5 Special R-F Power Amplifier Circuits 159
7-6 Class-AB_1 Radio-Frequency Power Amplifiers 163
7-7 Grounded-Grid Linear Amplifiers 165
7-8 Intermodulation Distortion 168

Chapter Eight. THE OSCILLOSCOPE 169

8-1 A Modern Oscilloscope 169
8-2 Display of Waveforms 173
8-3 Lissajous Figures 175
8-4 Monitoring Transmitter Performance with the Oscilloscope 178
8-5 Receiver I-F Alignment with an Oscilloscope 179
8-6 Single-Sideband Applications 182

Chapter Nine. SPECIAL VACUUM-TUBE CIRCUITS 185

9-1 Limiting Circuits 185
9-2 Clamping Circuits 188
9-3 Multivibrators 188
9-4 The Blocking Oscillator 190
9-5 Counting Circuits 190
9-6 Resistance-Capacitance Oscillators 191
9-7 Feedback 192

Chapter Ten. RADIO RECEIVER FUNDAMENTALS 194

10-1 Detection or Demodulation 194
10-2 Superregenerative Receivers 195
10-3 Superheterodyne Receivers 197
10-4 Mixer Noise and Images 200

10-5 R-F Stages 201
10-6 Signal-Frequency Tuned Circuits 203
10-7 I-F Tuned Circuits 206
10-8 Detector, Audio, and Control Circuits 213
10-9 Noise Suppression 216
10-10 Special Considerations in UHF Receiver Design 220
10-11 Receiver Adjustment 224
10-12 Receiving Accessories 226

Chapter Eleven. GENERATION OF RADIO-FREQUENCY ENERGY 229

11-1 Self-Controlled Oscillators 229
11-2 Quartz Crystal Oscillators 234
11-3 Crystal Oscillator Circuits 237
11-4 Radio-Frequency Amplifiers 242
11-5 Neutralization of R-F Amplifiers 244
11-6 Neutralizing Procedure 247
11-7 Grounded-Grid Amplifiers 250
11-8 Frequency Multipliers 251
11-9 Tank-Circuit Capacitances 253
11-10 L- and Pi-Matching Networks 258
11-11 Grid Bias 262
11-12 Protective Circuits for Tetrode Transmitting Tubes .. 264
11-13 Interstage Coupling 265
11-14 Radio-Frequency Chokes 267
11-15 Parallel and Push-Pull Tube Circuits 268

Chapter Twelve. R-F FEEDBACK 269

12-1 R-F Feedback Circuits 269
12-2 Feedback and Neutralization of a Two-Stage
R-F Amplifier 272
12-3 Neutralization Procedure in Feedback-Type Amplifiers 274

Chapter Thirteen. AMPLITUDE MODULATION 277

13-1 Sidebands 277
13-2 Mechanics of Modulation 278
13-3 Systems of Amplitude Modulation 280
13-4 Input Modulation Systems 289
13-5 Cathode Modulation 293
13-6 The Doherty and the Terman-Woodyard
Modulated Amplifiers 294
13-7 Speech Clipping 297
13-8 The Bias-Shift Heising Modulator 305

Chapter Fourteen. FREQUENCY MODULATION 308

14-1 Frequency Modulation 308
14-2 Direct F-M Circuits 312
14-3 Phase Modulation 316
14-4 Reception of F-M Signals 319

Chapter Fifteen. RADIO TELETYPE SYSTEMS 325
15-1 Radioteletype Systems 325
15-2 RTTY Reception 326
15-3 Frequency-Shift Keying 328

Chapter Sixteen. SIDEBAND TRANSMISSION 331

16-1 Commercial Applications of SSB 331
16-2 Derivation of Single-Sideband Signals 332
16-3 Carrier-Elimination Circuits 336
16-4 Generation of Single-Sideband Signals 338
16-5 Single-Sideband Frequency-Conversion Systems 346
16-6 Distortion Products Due to Nonlinearity of R-F Amplifiers 350
16-7 Sideband Exciters 353
16-8 Reception of Single-Sideband Signals 355

Chapter Seventeen. TRANSMITTER DESIGN 358

17-1 Resistors 358
17-2 Capacitors 360
17-3 Wire and Inductors 362
17-4 Grounds 364
17-5 Holes, Leads, and Shafts 365
17-6 Parasitic Resonances 366
17-7 Parasitic Oscillation in R-F Amplifiers 367
17-8 Elimination of VHF Parasitic Oscillations 369
17-9 Checking for Parasitic Oscillations 372

Chapter Eighteen. TELEVISION AND BROADCAST INTERFERENCE 374

18-1 Types of Television Interference 374
18-2 Harmonic Radiation 377
18-3 Low-Pass Filters 379
18-4 Broadcast Interference 384
18-5 Hi-Fi Interference 391

Chapter Nineteen. TRANSMITTER KEYING AND CONTROL ... 392

19-1 Power Systems 392
19-2 Transmitter Control Methods 397
19-3 Safety Precautions 398
19-4 Transmitter Keying 401
19-5 Cathode Keying 403
19-6 Grid-Circuit Keying 404
19-7 Screen-Grid Keying 405
19-8 Differential Keying Circuits 407
19-9 VOX Circuitry 408

Chapter Twenty. RADIATION, PROPAGATION, AND TRANSMISSION LINES 410

20-1 Radiation From an Antenna 410
20-2 General Characteristics of Antennas 411
20-3 Radiation Resistance and Feed-Point Impedance ... 415

20-4 Antenna Directivity 418
20-5 Bandwidth 421
20-6 Propagation of Radio Waves 421
20-7 Ground-Wave Communication 422
20-8 Ionospheric Propagation 425
20-9 Transmission Lines 429
20-10 Nonresonant Transmission Lines 430
20-11 Tuned or Resonant Lines 433
20-12 Line Discontinuities 434
20-13 A Broadband 50-Ohm Balun 435

Chapter Twenty-One. ANTENNAS AND ANTENNA MATCHING 436

21-1 End-Fed Half-Wave Horizontal Antennas 436
21-2 Center-Fed Half-Wave Horizontal Antennas 437
21-3 The Half-Wave Vertical Antenna 441
21-4 The Ground-Plane Antenna 441
21-5 The Marconi Antenna 442
21-6 Space-Conserving Antennas 444
21-7 Multiband Antennas 447
21-8 Matching Nonresonant Lines to the Antenna 455
21-9 Antenna Supports 461
21-10 Coupling to the Antenna System 464
21-11 Antenna Couplers 467
21-12 A Single-Wire Antenna Tuner 469
21-13 A Tuner for Center-Fed Antenna Systems 471

Chapter Twenty-Two. HIGH-FREQUENCY DIRECTIVE ANTENNAS 474

22-1 Directive Antennas 474
22-2 Long-Wire Radiators 476
22-3 The V Antenna 477
22-4 The Rhombic Antenna 479
22-5 Stacked-Dipole Arrays 481
22-6 Broadside Arrays 483
22-7 End-Fire Directivity 488
22-8 Combination End-Fire and Broadside Arrays 491

Chapter Twenty-Three. VHF AND UHF ANTENNAS 493

23-1 Antenna Requirements 493
23-2 Simple Horizontally Polarized Antenna 496
23-3 Simple Vertical-Polarized Antenna 497
23-4 The Discone Antenna 498
23-5 Helical Beam Antennas 500
23-6 The Corner-Reflector and Horn-Type Antennas 502
23-7 VHF Horizontal Rhombic Antenna 503
23-8 Multielement VHF Beam Antennas 505

Chapter Twenty-Four. ROTARY BEAMS 512

24-1 Unidirectional Parasitic End-Fire Arrays (Yagi Type) . 512
24-2 The Three-Element Array 515
24-3 Feed Systems for Parasitic (Yagi) Arrays 517

24-4 Unidirectional Driven Arrays 523
24-5 Bidirectional Rotatable Arrays 525
24-6 Construction of Rotatable Arrays 525
24-7 Tuning the Array 528
24-8 Indication of Direction 530
24-9 Three-Band Beams 531

Chapter Twenty-Five. MOBILE EQUIPMENT DESIGN AND INSTALLATION 533

25-1 A Transistorized Mobile Converter 533
25-2 Mobile Power Sources 535
25-3 Antennas for Mobile Work 537
25-4 Construction and Installation of Mobile Equipment . . 539
25-5 Vehicular Noise Suppression 541
25-6 A Six-Band Trans-Receiver for Portable or Emergency Work 544
25-7 Transistor Power Supplies 553
25-8 Two Transistorized Mobile Supplies 556

Chapter Twenty-Six. RECEIVERS AND TRANSCEIVERS 558

26-1 A Nuvistor Converter for Six Meters 560
26-2 An Antioverload Converter for 50 MHz 563
26-3 A Nuvistor Two-Meter Converter 567
26-4 A Single-Band SSB Transceiver 572
26-5 A 200-Watt 3-Band Sideband Transceiver 583
26-6 A 432-MHz Low-Noise Converter System 594
26-7 The Deluxe HBR Receiver 604

Chapter Twenty-Seven. LOW-POWER TRANSMITTERS AND EXCITERS 620

27-1 General-Purpose Exciters for 6 and 2 Meters 620
27-2 A 175-Watt SSB Exciter 624
27-3 The Deluxe HBT-200 SSB Transmitter-Exciter 635
27-4 A Transistor Keyer 648

Chapter Twenty-Eight. HIGH-FREQUENCY POWER AMPLIFIERS 652

28-1 Power Amplifier Design 652
28-2 Push-Pull Triode Amplifiers 654
28-3 Push-Pull Tetrode Amplifiers 656
28-4 Tetrode Pi-Network Amplifiers 659
28-5 Cathode-Driven Amplifier Design 662
28-6 A Kilowatt Linear Amplifier for Six Meters 668
28-7 A 500-Watt Amplifier for 432-MHz Linear or Class-C Service 675
28-8 The Utility 2-Kilowatt PEP (U-2) Linear Amplifier . . 682
28-9 The "Tribander" Linear Amplifier for 20-15-10 . . . 692

Chapter Twenty-Nine. SPEECH AND AMPLITUDE-MODULATION EQUIPMENT 698

29-1 Modulation 698
29-2 Design of Speech Amplifiers and Modulators 701

29-3 General-Purpose Triode Class-B Modulator 702
29-4 A 15-Watt Clipper-Amplifier 704
29-5 Zero-Bias Tetrode Modulators 706

Chapter Thirty. POWER SUPPLIES 707

30-1 Power-Supply Requirements 707
30-2 Rectification Circuits 713
30-3 Standard Power-Supply Circuits 714
30-4 Selenium and Silicon Rectifiers 720
30-5 Series Diode Operation 723
30-6 Silicon Supplies for SSB 724
30-7 A 1-Kilowatt IVS Power Supply 728
30-8 A 2-Kilowatt PEP Supply for SSB 729
30-9 IVS Bridge-Rectifier Supplies 731
30-10 A Supply for SSB Transceivers 733
30-11 Power-Supply Components 733
30-12 Special Power Supplies 736
30-13 Power-Supply Design 739
30-14 A Kilowatt CSS Power Supply 743

Chapter Thirty-One. ELECTRONIC TEST EQUIPMENT 744

31-1 Voltage and Current 744
31-2 The Vacuum-Tube Voltmeter 748
31-3 Measurement of Power 752
31-4 Measurement of Circuit Constants 754
31-5 Measurements With a Bridge 755
31-6 A Transistorized Capacitance Meter 757
31-7 Frequency Measurements 758
31-8 Antenna and Transmission-Line Measurements 759
31-9 A Simple Coaxial Reflectometer 762
31-10 Measurements on Balanced Transmission Line 764
31-11 The Antennascope 765
31-12 A Silicon Crystal Noise Generator 768
31-13 A Monitor Scope for AM and SSB 769
30-14 A Kilowatt CCS Power Supply 743

Chapter Thirty-Two. WORKSHOP PRACTICE 773

32-1 Tools 773
32-2 The Material 776
32-3 TVI-Proof Enclosures 777
32-4 Enclosure Openings 778
32-5 Summation of the Problem 778
32-6 Construction Practice 779
32-7 Shop Layout 782

Chapter Thirty-Three. RADIO MATHEMATICS AND CALCULATIONS 784

Appendix 827

Index 832

CHAPTER ONE

Introduction to Radio

The field of *radio* is a division of the much larger field of electronics. Radio itself is such a broad study that it is still further broken down into a number of smaller fields of which only short-wave or high-frequency radio is covered in this book. Specifically the field of communication on frequencies from 1.8 to 450 MHz is taken as the subject matter for this work.

The largest group of persons interested in the subject of high-frequency communication is the more than 350,000 radio amateurs located in nearly all countries of the world. Strictly speaking, a *radio amateur* is anyone noncommercially interested in radio, but the term is ordinarily applied only to those hobbyists possessing transmitting equipment and a license to operate from the Government.

It was for the radio amateur, and particularly for the serious and more advanced amateur, that most of the equipment described in this book was developed. However, in each equipment group, simple items also are shown for the student or beginner. The design principles behind the equipment for high-frequency radio communication are of course the same whether the equipment is to be used for commercial, military, or amateur purposes. The principal differences lie in construction practices, and in the tolerances and safety factors placed on components.

With the increasing complexity of high-frequency communication, resulting primarily from increased utilization of the available spectrum, it becomes necessary to delve more deeply into the basic principles underlying radio communication, both from the standpoint of equipment design and operation and from the standpoint of signal propagation. Hence, it will be found that this edition of the RADIO HANDBOOK has been devoted in greater proportion to the teaching of the principles of equipment design and signal propagation. It is in response to requests from schools and agencies of the Department of Defense, in addition to persistent requests from the amateur radio fraternity, that coverage of these principles has been expanded.

1-1 Amateur Radio

Amateur radio is a fascinating hobby with many facets. So strong is the fascination offered by this hobby that many executives, engineers, and military and commercial operators enjoy amateur radio as an avocation, even though they are also engaged in the radio field commercially. It captures and holds the interest of many people in all walks of life, and in all countries of the world where amateur activities are permitted by law.

Amateurs have rendered much public service through furnishing communications to and from the outside world in cases where disaster has isolated an area by severing all wire communications. Amateurs have a proud record of heroism and service on such occasions. Many expeditions to remote places have been kept in touch with home by communication with amateur stations on the high frequencies. The amateur's fine record of performance with the "wireless" equipment of World War I has been surpassed by his outstanding service in World War II.

By the time peace came in the Pacific in the summer of 1945, many thousand amateur operators were serving in the Allied Armed Forces. They had supplied the Army, Navy, Marines, Coast Guard, Merchant Marine, Civil Service, war plants, and civilian defense organizations with *trained* personnel for radio, radar, wire, and visual communications and for teaching. Even now, at the time of this writing, amateurs are being called back into the expanded defense forces, are returning to defense plants where their skills are critically needed, and are being organized into communication units as an adjunct to civil-defense groups.

1-2 Station and Operator Licenses

Every radio transmitting station in the United States no matter how low its power must have a license from the Federal Government before being operated; some classes of stations must have a permit from the government even before being constructed. And every operator of a transmitting station must have an operator's license before operating a transmitter. There are no exceptions. Similar laws apply in practically every major country.

Classes of Amateur Operator Licenses There are at present five classes of amateur operator licenses which have been authorized by the Federal Communications Commission. These classes differ in many respects, so each will be discussed briefly.

Amateur Extra Class—This class of license is available to any U. S. citizen who at any time has held for a period of two years or more a valid amateur license, issued by the FCC, excluding licenses of the Novice and Technician Classes. The examination for the license includes a code test at 20 words per minute, the usual tests covering basic amateur practice and general amateur regulations, and an additional test on advanced amateur practice. All amateur privileges are accorded the holders of this operator's license.

General Class — This class of amateur license is equivalent to the old Amateur Class-B license, and accords to the holders all amateur privileges except those which may be set aside for holders of the Amateur Extra-Class license. This class of amateur operator's license is available to any U. S. citizen. The examination for the license includes a code test at 13 words per minute, and the usual examinations covering basic amateur practice and general amateur regulations.

Conditional Class—This class of amateur license and the privileges accorded by it are equivalent to the General-Class license. However, the license can be issued only to those whose residence is more than 175 miles airline distance from the nearest location at which FCC examinations are held at intervals of twice yearly, or oftener, for the General-Class amateur operator license, or to those who for any of several specified reasons are unable to appear for examination.

Technician Class — This class of license is available to any citizen of the United States. The examination is the same as that for the General-Class license, except that the code test is at a speed of 5 words per minute. The holder of a Technician-Class license is accorded all authorized amateur privileges in the amateur frequency bands above 220-MHz, in the 50-MHz band; and in the 145- to 147-MHz portion of the 2-meter band.

Novice Class—This is a new class of license which is available to any U. S. citizen who has not previously held an amateur license of any class issued by any agency of the U. S. Government, military or civilian. The examination consists of a code test at a speed of 5 words per minute, plus an examination on the rules and regulations essential to beginner's operation, including sufficient elementary radio theory for the understanding of those rules. The Novice-Class license affords severely restricted privileges, is valid for a period of only one year (as contrasted to all other classes of amateur licenses which run for a term of five years), and is not renewable.

All Novice- and Technician-Class examinations are given by volunteer examiners, as regular examinations for these two classes are not given in FCC offices. Amateur radio clubs in the larger cities have established examining committees to assist would-be amateurs of the area in obtaining their Novice and Technician licenses.

1-3 The Amateur Bands

Certain small segments of the radio-frequency spectrum between 1500 kHz and 10,000 MHz are reserved for operation of amateur radio stations. These segments are in general agreement throughout the world, although certain parts of different amateur bands may be used for other purposes in various geographic regions. In particular, the 40-meter amateur band is used legally (and illegally) for short-wave broadcasting by many countries in Europe, Africa and Asia. Parts of the 80-meter band are used for short distance marine work in Europe, and for broadcasting in South America. The amateur bands available to United States radio amateurs are:

160 Meters (1800 kHz—2000 kHz) The 160-meter band is divided into 25-kHz segments on a regional basis, with day and night power limitations, and is available for amateur use provided no interference is caused to the Loran (Long Range Navigation) stations operating in this band. This band is least affected by the 11-year solar sunspot cycle. The *maximum usable frequency* (MUF) even during the years of decreased sunspot activity does not usually drop below 4 MHz, therefore this band is not subject to the violent fluctuations found on the higher-frequency bands. DX contacts on this band are limited by the ionospheric absorption of radio signals, which is quite high. During winter nighttime hours the absorption is often of a low enough value to permit transoceanic contacts on this band. On rare occasions, contacts up to 10,000 miles have been made. As a usual rule, however, 160-meter amateur operation is confined to ground-wave contacts or single-skip contacts of 1000 miles or less. Popular before World War II, the 160-meter band is now only sparsely occupied since many areas of the country are blanketed by the megawatt pulses of the Loran chains.

80 Meters (3500 kHz—4000 kHz) The 80-meter band is the most popular amateur band in the continental United States for local "rag chewing" and traffic nets. During the years of minimum sunspot activity the ionospheric absorption on this band may be quite low, and long distance DX contacts are possible during the winter night hours. Daytime operation, in general, is limited to contacts of 500 miles or less. During the summer months, local static and high ionospheric absorption limit long distance contacts on this band. As the sunspot cycle advances and the MUF rises, increased ionospheric absorption will tend to degrade the long distance possibilities of this band. At the peak of the sunspot cycle, the 80-meter band becomes useful only for short-haul communication.

40 Meters (7000 kHz—7300 kHz) The 40-meter band is high enough in frequency to be severely affected by the 11-year sunspot cycle. During years of minimum solar activity, the MUF may drop below 7 MHz, and the band will become very erratic, with signals dropping completely out during the night hours. Ionospheric absorption of signals is not as large a problem on this band as it is on 80 and 160 meters. As the MUF gradually rises, the skip distance will increase on 40 meters, especially during the winter months. At the peak of the solar cycle, the daylight skip distance on 40 meters will be quite long, and stations within a distance of 500 miles or so of each other will not be able to hold communication. DX operation on the 40-meter band is considerably hampered by broadcasting stations, propaganda stations, and jamming transmitters. In Europe and Asia the band is in a chaotic state, and amateur operation in this region is severely hampered.

20 meters (14,000 kHz—14,350 kHz) At the present time, the 20-meter band is by far the most popular band for long-distance contacts. High enough in frequency to be almost obliterated at the bottom of the solar cycle, the band nevertheless provides good DX contacts during years of minimal sunspot activity. At the present time, the band is open to almost all parts of the world at some time during the year. During the summer months, the band is active until the late evening hours, but during the winter months the band is only good for a few hours during daylight. Extreme DX contacts are usually erratic, but the 20-meter band is the only band available for DX operation the year around during the bottom of the sunspot cycle. As the sunspot count increases and the MUF rises, the 20-meter band will become open for longer hours during the winter. The maximum skip distance increases, and DX contacts are possible over paths other than the Great Circle route. Signals can be heard via the "long path," 180 degrees opposite the Great Circle path. During daylight hours, absorption may become apparent on the 20-meter band, and all signals except very short skip may disappear. On the other hand, the band will be open for worldwide DX contacts all night long. The 20-meter band is very susceptible to "fadeouts" caused by solar disturbances, and all except local signals may completely disappear for periods of a few hours to a day or so.

15 Meters (21,000 kHz—21,450 kHz) This is a relatively new band for radio amateurs since it has only been available for amateur operation since 1952. It has characteristics similar to both the 20- and 10-meter amateur bands. During a period of low sunspot activity, the MUF will rarely rise as high as 15 meters, so this band will be "dead" for a large part of the sunspot cycle. During the next few years, 15-meter activity should pick up rapidly, and the band should support extremely long DX contacts. The band will remain open 24 hours a day in Equatorial areas of the world.

Fifteen-meter operation may be hampered in some cases when neighbors possess older-model TV receivers having a 21-MHz i-f channel, which falls directly in the 15-meter band. The interference problem may be alleviated by retuning the i-f system to a frequency outside the amateur assignment.

10 Meters (28,000 kHz—29,700 kHz) During the peak of the sunspot cycle, the 10-meter band is without doubt the most popular amateur band. The combination of long skip and low ionospheric absorption make reliable DX contacts with low-powered equipment possible. The great width of the band (1700 kHz) provides room for a large number of amateurs. The long skip (1500 miles or so) prevents nearby amateurs from hearing each other, thus dropping the interference level. During the winter months, sporadic-E (short-skip) signals up to 1200 miles or so will be heard. The 10-meter band is poorest in the summer months, even during a sunspot maximum. Extremely long daylight skip is common on this band, and in years of high MUF the 10-meter band will support intercontinental DX contacts during daylight hours.

The second harmonic of stations operating in the 10-meter band falls directly into television channel 2, and the higher harmonics of 10-meter transmitters fall into the higher TV channels. This harmonic problem seriously curtailed amateur 10-meter operation during the late 40's. However, with new circuit techniques and the TVI precautionary measures stressed in this Handbook, 10-meter operation should cause little or no interference to nearby television receivers of modern design.

Six Meters (50 MHz—54 MHz) At the peak of the sunspot cycle, the MUF occasionally rises high enough to permit DX contacts up to 10,000 miles or so on 6 meters. Activity on this band during such a period is often quite high. Interest in this band wanes during a period of lesser solar activity, since contacts, as a rule, are restricted to short-skip work. The proximity of the 6-meter band to television channel 2 often causes interference problems to amateurs located in areas where channel 2 is active. As the sunspot cycle increases, activity on the 6-meter band will increase.

The VHF Bands (Two Meters and "Up") The vhf bands are the least affected by the vagaries of the sunspot cycle and Heaviside layer. Their predominant use is for reliable communication over distances of 150 miles or less. These bands are sparsely occupied in the rural sections of the United States, but are quite heavily congested in the urban areas of high population.

In recent years it has been found that vhf signals are propagated by other means than by line-of-sight transmission. "Scatter signals," Aurora reflection, and air-mass boundary bending are responsible for vhf communication up to 1200 miles or so. Weather conditions will often affect long-distance communication on the 2-meter band, and all the vhf bands are particularly sensitive to this condition.

In recent years the vhf bands have been used for experimental "moonbounce" (earth-moon-earth) transmissions and for repeater-satellite experiments (Project Oscar). The vhf bands hold great promise for serious experimenters as radio amateurs forge into the microwave region.

1-4 Starting Your Study

When you start to prepare yourself for the amateur examination you will find that the circuit diagrams, tube characteristic curves, and formulas appear confusing and difficult to understand. But after a few study sessions one becomes sufficiently familiar with the notation of the diagrams and the basic concepts of theory and operation so that the acquisition of further knowledge becomes easier and even fascinating.

Since it takes a considerable time to become proficient in sending and receiving code, it is a good idea to intersperse technical study sessions with periods of code practice. Many short code-practice sessions benefit one more than a small number of longer sessions. Alternating between one study and the other keeps the student from getting "stale" since each type of study serves as a sort of respite from the other.

When you have practiced the code long enough you will be able to follow the gist of the slower-sending stations. Many stations send very slowly when working other stations at great distances. Stations repeat their calls many times when calling other stations before contact is established, and one need not have achieved much code proficiency to make out their calls and thus determine their location.

The Code The applicant for any class of amateur operator license must be able to send and receive the Continental Code (sometimes called the International Morse Code). The speed required for the sending and receiving test may be either 5, 13, or 20 words per minute, depending on the class of license assuming an average of five characters to the word in each case. The sending and receiving tests run for five minutes, and one minute of errorless transmission or reception must be accomplished within the five-minute interval.

If the code test is failed, the applicant must wait at least one month before he may again appear for another test. Approximately 30% of amateur applicants fail to pass the test. It should be expected that nervousness and excitement will, at least to some degree, temporarily lower the applicant's code ability. The best insurance against this is to master the code at a little greater than the required speed under ordinary conditions. Then if you slow down a little due to nervousness during a test the result will not prove fatal.

Memorizing the Code There is no shortcut to code proficiency. To memorize the alphabet entails but a few evenings of diligent application, but considerable time is required to build up speed. The exact time required depends on the individual's ability and the regularity of practice.

While the speed of learning will naturally vary greatly with different individuals, about 70 hours of practice (no practice period to be over 30 minutes) will usually suffice to bring a speed of about 13 w.p.m.; 16 w.p.m. requires about 120 hours; 20 w.p.m., 175 hours.

Since code reading requires that individual letters be recognized instantly, any memorizing scheme which depends on orderly sequence, such as learning all *"dah"* letters and all *"dit"* letters in separate groups, is to be discouraged. Before beginning with a code

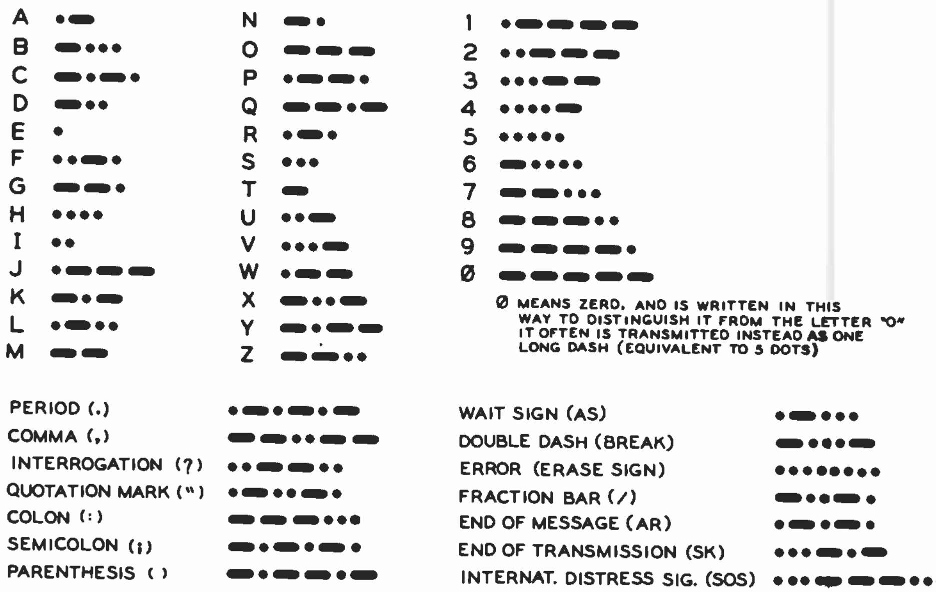


Figure 1

The Continental (or International Morse) Code is used for substantially all non-automatic radio communication. DO NOT memorize from the printed page; code is a language of SOUND, and must not be learned visually; learn by listening as explained in the text.

practice set it is necessary to memorize the whole alphabet perfectly. A good plan is to study only two or three letters a day and to drill with those letters until they become part of your consciousness. Mentally translate each day's letters into their sound equivalent wherever they are seen, on signs, in papers, indoors and outdoors. Tackle two additional letters in the code chart each day, at the same time reviewing the characters already learned.

Avoid memorizing by routine. Be able to sound out any letter immediately without so much as hestitating to think about the letters preceding or following the one in question. Know *C*, for example, apart from the sequence *ABC*. Skip about among all the characters learned, and before very long sufficient letters will have been acquired to enable you to spell out simple words to yourself in *"dit dahs."* This is interesting exercise, and for that reason it is good to memorize all the vowels first and the most common consonants next.

Actual code practice should start only when the entire alphabet, the numerals, period, comma, and question mark have been memorized so thoroughly that any one can be sounded without the slightest hesitation. Do not bother with other punctuation or miscellaneous signals until later.

Sound — Not Sight Each letter and figure *must* be memorized by its *sound* rather than its appearance. Code is a system of sound communication, the same as is the spoken word. The letter *A*, for ex-

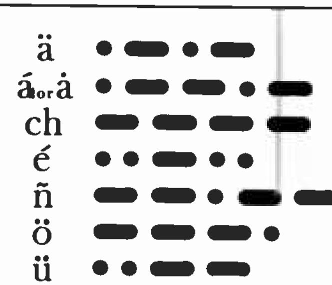


Figure 2

These code characters are used in languages other than English. They may occasionally be encountered so it is well to know them.

ample, is one short and one long sound in combination sounding like *dit dah,* and it must be remembered as such, and not as "dot dash."

Practice Time, patience, and regularity are required to learn the code properly. Do not expect to accomplish it within a few days.

Don't practice too long at one stretch; it does more harm than good. Thirty minutes at a time should be the limit.

Lack of regularity in practice is the most common cause of lack of progress. Irregular practice is very little better than no practice at all. Write down what you have heard; then forget it; *do not look back.* If your mind dwells even for an instant on a signal about which you have doubt, you will miss the next few characters while your attention is diverted.

While various automatic code machines, phonograph records, etc., will give you practice, by far the best practice is to obtain a study companion who is also interested in learning the code. When you have both memorized the alphabet you can start sending to each other. Practice with a key and oscillator or key and buzzer generally proves superior to all automatic equipment. Two such sets operated between two rooms are fine—or between your house and his will be just that much better. Avoid talking to your partner while practicing. If you must ask him a question, do it in code. It makes more interesting practice than confining yourself to random practice material.

When two co-learners have memorized the code and are ready to start sending to each other for practice, it is a good idea to enlist the aid of an experienced operator for the first practice session or two so that they will get an idea of how properly formed characters sound.

During the first practice period the speed should be such that substantially solid copy can be made without strain. Never mind if this is only two or three words per minute. In the next period the speed should be increased slightly to a point where nearly all of the characters can be caught only through conscious effort. When the student becomes proficient at this new speed, another slight increase may be made, progressing in this manner until a speed of about 16 words per minute is attained if the object is to pass the amateur 13-word per minute code test. The margin of 3 w.p.m. is recommended to overcome a possible excitement factor at examination time. Then when you take the test you don't have to worry about the "jitters" or an "off day."

Speed should not be increased to a new level until the student finally makes solid copy with ease for at least a five-minute period at the old level. How frequently increases of speed can be made depends on individual ability and the amount of practice. Each increase is apt to prove disconcerting, but remember "you are never learning when you are comfortable."

A number of amateurs are sending code practice on the air on schedule once or twice each week; excellent practice can be obtained after you have bought or constructed your receiver by taking advantage of these sessions.

If you live in a medium-size or large city. the chances are that there is an amateur-radio club in your vicinity which offers free code-practice lessons periodically.

Skill When you listen to someone speaking you do not consciously think how his words are spelled. This is also true when you read. In code you must train your ears to read code just as your eyes were trained in school to read printed matter. With enough practice you acquire skill, and from skill, speed. In other words, it becomes a *habit,* something which can be done without conscious effort. Conscious effort is fatal to speed; we can't think rapidly enough; a speed of 25 words a minute, which is a common one in commercial operations, means 125 characters per minute or more than two per second, which leaves no time for conscious thinking.

Perfect Formation of Characters When transmitting on the code practice set to your partner, concentrate on the *quality* of your sending, *not* on your speed. Your partner will appreciate it and he could not copy you if you speeded up anyhow.

If you want to get a reputation as having an excellent "fist" on the air, just remember that speed alone won't do the trick. Proper execution of your letters and spacing will make much more of an impression. Fortunately, as you get so that you can send evenly and accurately, your sending speed will automatically increase. Remember to try to see how *evenly* you can *send*, and how *fast* you can *receive*. Concentrate on making signals properly with your key. Perfect formation of characters is paramount to everything else. Make every signal right no matter if you have to practice it hundreds or thousands of times. Never allow yourself to vary the slightest from perfect formation once you have learned it.

If possible, get a good operator to listen to your sending for a short time, asking him to criticize even the slightest imperfections.

Timing It is of the utmost importance to maintain uniform spacing in characters and combinations of characters. Lack of uniformity at this point probably causes beginners more trouble than any other single factor. Every dot, every dash, and every space must be correctly timed. In other words, accurate timing is absolutely essential to intelligibility, and timing of the spaces between the dots and dashes is just as important as the lengths of the dots and dashes themselves.

The characters are timed with the dot as a "yardstick." A standard dash is three times as long as a dot. The spacing between parts of the same letter is equal to one dot, the space between letters is equal to three dots, and that between words equal to five dots.

The rule for spacing between letters and words is not strictly observed when sending slower than about 10 words per minute for the benefit of someone learning the code and desiring receiving practice. When sending at, say, 5 w.p.m., the individual letters should be made the same as if the sending rate were about 10 w.p.m., except that the spacing between letters and words is greatly exaggerated. The reason for this is obvious. The letter *L*, for instance, will then sound exactly the same at 10 w.p.m. as at 5 w.p.m., and when the speed is increased above 5 w.p.m. the student will not have to become familiar with what may seem to him like a new sound, although it is in reality only a faster combination of dots and dashes. At the greater speed he will merely have to learn the identification of the *same* sound without taking as long to do so.

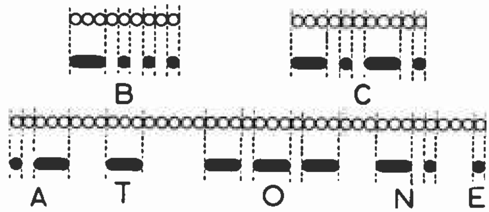


Figure 3

Diagram illustrating relative lengths of dashes and spaces referred to the duration of a dot. A dash is exactly equal in duration to three dots; spaces between parts of a letter equal one dot; those between letters, three dots; space between words, five dots. Note that a slight increase between two parts of a letter will make it sound like two letters.

Be particularly careful of letters like *B*. Many beginners seem to have a tendency to leave a longer space after the dash than that which they place between succeeding dots, thus making it sound like *TS*. Similarly, make sure that you do not leave a longer space after the first dot in the letter *C* than you do between other parts of the same letter: otherwise it will sound like *NN*.

Sending vs. Receiving Once you have memorized the code thoroughly you should concentrate on increasing your *receiving* speed. True, if you have to practice with another newcomer who is learning the code with you, you will both have to do some sending. But don't attempt to practice *sending* just for the sake of increasing your sending *speed*.

When transmitting on the code practice set to your partner so that he can get receiving practice, concentrate on the *quality* of your sending, not on your speed.

Because it is comparatively easy to learn to send rapidly, especially when no particular care is given to the quality of sending, many operators who have just received their licenses get on the air and send mediocre (or worse) code at 20 w.p.m. when they can barely receive good code at 13. Most old-timers remember their own period of initiation and are only too glad to be patient and considerate if you tell them that you are a newcomer. But the surest way to incur their scorn is to try to impress them with your "lightning speed," and then to request them to send more slowly when they come back at you at the same speed.

Stress your copying ability; never stress your sending ability. It should be obvious that if you try to send faster than you can receive, your ear will not recognize any mistakes which your hand may make.

Using the Key Figure 4 shows the proper position of the hand, fingers and wrist when manipulating a telegraph or radio key. The forearm should rest naturally on the desk. It is preferable that the key be placed far enough back from the edge of the table (about 18 inches) that the elbow can rest on the table. Otherwise, pressure of the table edge on the arm will tend to hinder the circulation of the blood and weaken the ulnar nerve at a point where it is close to the surface, which in turn will tend to increase fatigue considerably.

The knob of the key is grasped lightly with the thumb along the edge; the index and third fingers rest on the top towards the front or far edge. The hand moves with a free up and down motion, the wrist acting as a fulcrum. The power must come entirely from the arm muscles. The third and index fingers will bend slightly during the sending but not because of deliberate effort to manipulate the finger muscles. Keep your finger muscles just tight enough to act as a cushion for the arm motion and let the slight movement of the fingers take care of itself. The key's spring is adjusted to the individual wrist and should be neither too stiff nor too loose. Use a moderately stiff tension at first and gradually lighten it as you become more proficient. The separation between the contacts must be the proper amount for the desired speed, being somewhat under 1/16 inch for slow speeds and slightly closer together (about 1/32 inch) for faster speeds. Avoid extremes in either direction.

Do not allow the muscles of arm, wrist or fingers to become tense. Send with a full, free arm movement. Avoid like the plague any finger motion other than the slight cushioning effect mentioned above.

Stick to the regular handkey for learning code. No other key is satisfactory for this purpose. Not until you have thoroughly mastered both sending and receiving at the maximum speed in which you are interested should you tackle any form of automatic or semiautomatic key such as the *Vibroplex* ("bug") or an electronic key.

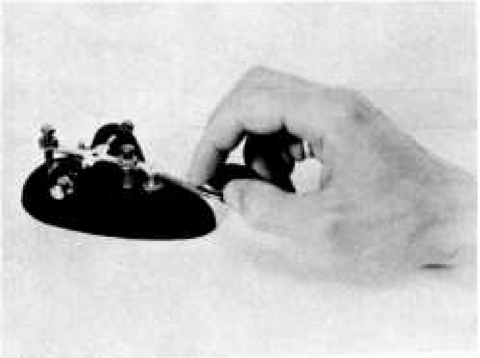


Figure 4

PROPER POSITION OF THE FINGERS FOR OPERATING A TELEGRAPH KEY

The fingers hold the knob and act as a cushion. The hand rests lightly on the key. The muscles of the forearm provide the power, the wrist acting as the fulcrum. The power should not come from the fingers, but rather from the forearm muscles.

Difficulties Should you experience difficulty in increasing your code speed after you have once memorized the characters, there is no reason to become discouraged. It is more difficult for some people to learn code than for others, but there is no justification for the contention sometimes made that "some people just can't learn the code." It is not a matter of intelligence; so don't feel ashamed if you seem to experience a little more than the usual difficulty in learning code. Your reaction time may be a little slower or your coordination not so good. If this is the case, remember *you can still learn the code*. You may never learn to send and receive at 40 w.p.m., but you can learn sufficient speed for all noncommercial purposes (and even for most commercial purposes) if you have patience, and refuse to be discouraged by the fact that others seem to pick it up more rapidly.

When the sending operator is sending just a bit too fast for you (the best speed for

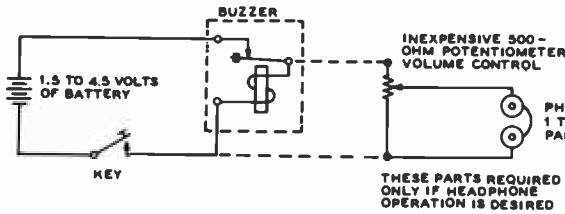


Figure 5

THE SIMPLEST CODE PRACTICE SET CONSISTS OF A KEY AND A BUZZER

The buzzer is adjusted to give a steady, high-pitched whine. If desired, the phones may be omitted, in which case the buzzer should be mounted firmly on a sounding board. Crystal, magnetic, or dynamic earphones may be used. Additional sets of phones should be connected in parallel, not in series.

practice), you will occasionally miss a signal or a small group of them. When you do, leave a blank space; do not spend time futilely trying to recall it; dismiss it, and center attention on the next letter; otherwise you'll miss more. Do not ask the sender any questions until the transmission is finished.

To prevent guessing and get equal practice on the less common letters, depart occasionally from plain language material and use a jumble of letters in which the usually less commonly used letters predominate.

As mentioned before, many students put a greater space after the dash in the letter *B*, than between other parts of the same letter so it sounds like *TS*. *C, F, Q, V, X, Y,* and *Z* often give similar trouble. Make a list of words or arbitrary combinations in which these letters predominate and practice them, both sending and receiving until they no longer give you trouble. Stop everything else and stick to them. So long as these characters give you trouble you are not ready for anything else.

Follow the same procedure with letters which you may tend to confuse such as *F* and *L*, which are often confused by beginners. Keep at it until you *always* get them right without having to stop *even an instant* to think about it.

If you do not instantly recognize the sound of any character, you have not learned it; go back and practice your alphabet further. You should never have to omit writing down every signal you hear except when the transmission is too fast for you.

Write down what you hear, not what you think it should be. It is surprising how often the word which you guess will be wrong.

Copying Behind All good operators copy several words behind, that is, while one word is being received, they are writing down or typing, say the fourth or fifth previous word. At first this is very difficult, but after sufficient practice it will be found actually to be easier than copying close up. It also results in more accurate copy and enables the receiving operator to capitalize and punctuate copy as he goes along. It is not recommended that the beginner attempt to do this until he can send and receive accurately and with ease at a speed of at least 12 words a minute.

It requires a considerable amount of training to disassociate the action of the subconscious mind from the direction of the conscious mind. It may help some in obtaining

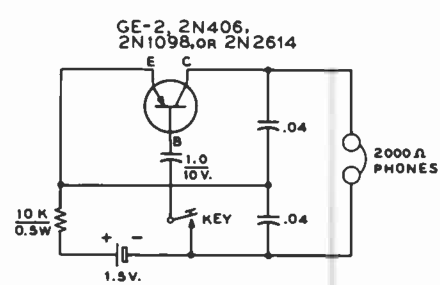


Figure 6

SIMPLE TRANSISTOR CODE PRACTICE OSCILLATOR

An inexpensive entertainment-type PNP germanium transistor requires only a single 1.5-volt flashlight battery for power. The inductance of the phone windings forms part of the oscillator circuit. The pitch of the note may be changed by varying the value of the two capacitors across the earphones.

this training to write down two columns of short words. Spell the first word in the first column out loud while writing down the first word in the second column. At first this will be a bit awkward, but you will rapidly gain facility with practice. Do the same with all the words, and then reverse columns.

Next try speaking aloud the words in the one column while writing those in the other column; then reverse columns.

After the foregoing can be done easily, try sending with your key the words in one column while spelling those in the other. It won't be easy at first, but it is well worth keeping after if you intend to develop any real code proficiency. Do *not* attempt to catch up. There is a natural tendency to close up the gap, and you must train yourself to overcome this.

Next have your code companion send you a word either from a list or from straight text; do not write it down yet. Now have him send the next word; *after* receiving this second word, write down the first word. After receiving the third word, write the second word; and so on. Never mind how slowly you must go, even if it is only two or three words per minute. *Stay behind.*

It will probably take quite a number of practice sessions before you can do this with any facility. After it is relatively easy, then try staying two words behind; keep this up until it is easy. Then try three words, four words, and five words. The more you practice keeping received material in mind, the easier it will be to stay behind. It will be found easier at first to copy material with which one is fairly familiar, then gradually switch to less familiar material.

Automatic Code Machines The two practice sets which are described in this chapter are of most value when you have someone with whom to practice. Automatic code machines are not recommended to anyone who can possibly obtain a companion with whom to practice, someone who is also interested in learning the code. If you are unable to enlist a code partner and have to practice by yourself, the best way to get receiving practice is by the use of a tape machine (automatic code-sending machine) with several practice tapes. Or you can use a set of phonograph code-practice records. The records are of use only if you have a phonograph whose turntable speed is readily adjustable. The tape machine can be rented by the month for a reasonable fee.

Once you can copy about 10 w.p.m. you can also get receiving practice by listening to slow-sending stations on your receiver. Many amateur stations send slowly particularly when working far distant stations. When receiving conditions are particularly poor many commercial stations also send slowly, sometimes repeating every word. Until you can copy around 10 w.p.m. your receiver isn't much use, and either another operator or a machine or records is necessary for getting receiving practice after you have once memorized the code.

Code Practice Sets If you don't feel too foolish doing it, you can secure a measure of code practice with the help of a partner by sending "dit-dah" messages to each other while riding to work, eating lunch, etc. It is better, however, to use a buzzer or code-practice oscillator in conjunction with a regular telegraph key.

As a good key may be considered an investment it is wise to make a well-made key your first purchase. Regardless of what type code-practice set you use, you will need a key, and later on you will need one to key your transmitter. If you get a good key to begin with, you won't have to buy another one later.

The key should be rugged and have fairly heavy contacts. Not only will the key stand up better, but such a key will contribute to the "heavy" type of sending so desirable for radio work. Morse (telegraph) operators use a "light" style of sending and can send somewhat faster when using this light touch. But, in radio work static and interference are often present, and a slightly heavier dot is desirable. If you use a husky key, you will find yourself automatically sending in this manner.

To generate a tone simulating a code signal as heard on a receiver, either a mechanical buzzer or an audio oscillator may be used. Figure 5 shows a simple code-practice set using a buzzer which may be used directly simply by mounting the buzzer on a sounding board, or the buzzer may be

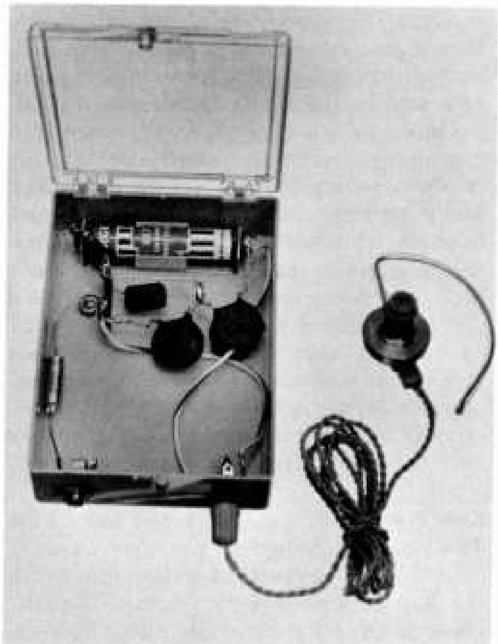


Figure 7

The circuit of Figure 6 is used in this miniature transistorized code Practice oscillator. Components are mounted in a small plastic case. The transistor is attached to a three terminal phenolic mounting strip. Subminiature jacks are used for the key and phones connections. A hearing aid earphone may also be used, as shown. The phone is stored in the plastic case when not in use.

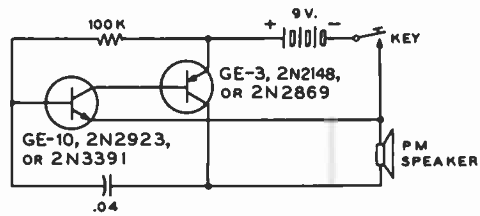


Figure 8

CODE-PRACTICE OSCILLATOR SUITABLE FOR SPEAKER OPERATION.

used to feed from one to four pairs of conventional high-impedance phones.

An example of the audio-oscillator type of code-practice set is illustrated in figures 6 and 7. An inexpensive entertainment-type transistor is used in place of the more expensive, power-consuming vacuum tube. A single "penlite" 1½-volt cell powers the unit. The coils of the earphones form the inductive portion of the resonant circuit. 'Phones having an impedance of 2000 ohms or higher should be used. Surplus type R-14 earphones also work well with this circuit.

A code-practice oscillator that will drive a loudspeaker to good room volume is shown in figure 8. Inexpensive entertainment-type transistors are used and any size permanent magnet speaker may be used. Mount the speaker on a large sounding board for best volume.

CHAPTER TWO

Direct-Current Circuits

All naturally occurring matter (excluding artifically produced radioactive substances) is made up of 92 fundamental constituents called *elements*. These elements can exist either in the free state such as iron, oxygen, carbon, copper, tungsten, and aluminum, or in chemical unions commonly called *compounds*. The smallest unit which still retains all the original characteristics of an element is the *atom*.

Combinations of atoms, or subdivisions of compounds, result in another fundamental unit, the *molecule*. The molecule is the smallest unit of any compound. All reactive elements when in the gaseous state also exist in the molecular form, made up of two or more atoms. The nonreactive gaseous elements helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon are the only gaseous elements that ever exist in a stable monatomic state at ordinary temperatures.

2-1 The Atom

An atom is an extremely small unit of matter—there are literally billions of them making up so small a piece of material as a speck of dust. To understand the basic theory of electricity and hence of radio, we must go further and divide the atom into its main components, a positively charged *nucleus* and a cloud of negatively charged particles that surround the nucleus. These particles, swirling around the nucleus in elliptical orbits at an incredible rate of speed, are called *orbital electrons*.

It is on the behavior of these orbital electrons when freed from the atom, that depends the study of electricity and radio, as well as allied sciences. Actually it is possible to subdivide the nucleus of the atom into a dozen or so different particles, but this further subdivision can be left to quantum mechanics and atomic physics. As far as the study of electronics is concerned it is only necessary for the reader to think of the normal atom as being composed of a nucleus having a net positive charge that is exactly neutralized by the one or more orbital electrons surrounding it.

The atoms of different elements differ in respect to the charge on the positive nucleus and in the number of electrons revolving around this charge. They range all the way from hydrogen, having a net charge of one on the nucleus and one orbital electron, to uranium with a net charge of 92 on the nucleus and 92 orbital electrons. The number of orbital electrons is called the *atomic number* of the element.

Action of the Electrons From the foregoing it must not be thought that the electrons revolve in a haphazard manner around the nucleus. Rather, the electrons in an element having a large atomic number are grouped into rings having a definite number of electrons. The only atoms in which these rings are completely filled are those of the inert gases mentioned before; all other elements have one or more uncompleted rings of electrons. If the uncompleted ring is nearly empty, the element is *metallic* in character, being most metallic when there is only one electron in the outer ring. If the incomplete ring lacks only one or two electrons, the element is usually *nonmetallic*. Elements with a ring about half completed will exhibit both nonmetallic and metallic characteristics; carbon, silicon, germanium, and arsenic are examples. Such elements are called *semiconductors*.

In metallic elements these outer ring electrons are rather loosely held. Consequently, there is a continuous helter-skelter movement of these electrons and a continual shifting from one atom to another. The electrons which move about in a substance are called *free electrons*, and it is the ability of these electrons to drift from atom to atom which makes possible the *electric current*.

Conductors and Insulators If the free electrons are numerous and loosely held, the element is a good *conductor*. On the other hand, if there are few free electrons (as is the case when the electrons in an outer ring are tightly held), the element is a poor conductor. If there are virtually no free electrons, the element is a good *insulator*.

2-2 Fundamental Electrical Units and Relationships

Electromotive Force: Potential Difference The free electrons in a conductor move constantly about and change their position in a haphazard manner. To produce a drift of electrons, or *electric current*, along a wire it is necessary that there be a difference in "pressure" or *potential* between the two ends of the wire. This *potential difference* can be produced by connecting a source of *electrical potential* to the ends of the wire.

As will be explained later, there is an excess of electrons at the negative terminal of a battery and a deficiency of electrons at the positive terminal, due to chemical action. When the battery is connected to the wire, the deficient atoms at the positive terminal attract free electrons from the wire in order for the positive terminal to become neutral. The attracting of electrons continues through the wire, and finally the excess electrons at the negative terminal of the battery are attracted by the positively charged atoms at the end of the wire. Other sources of electrical potential (in addition to a battery) are: an electrical generator (dynamo), a thermocouple, an electrostatic generator (static machine), a photoelectric cell, and a crystal or piezoelectric generator.

Thus it is seen that a potential difference is the result of a difference in the number of electrons between the two (or more) points in question. The force or pressure due to a potential difference is termed the *electromotive force*, usually abbreviated *e.m.f.* or *E.M.F.* It is expressed in units called *volts*.

It should be noted that for there to be a potential difference between two bodies or points it is not necessary that one have a positive charge and the other a negative charge. If two bodies each have a negative charge, but one more negative than the other, the one with the lesser negative charge will act as though it were positively charged *with respect to the other body*. It is the *algebraic* potential difference that determines the force with which electrons are attracted or repulsed, the potential of the earth being taken as the zero reference point.

The Electric Current The flow of electrons along a conductor due to the application of an electromotive force constitutes an electric current. This drift is in addition to the irregular movements of the electrons. However, it must not be thought that each free electron travels from one end of the circuit to the other. On the contrary, each free electron travels only a short distance before colliding with an atom; this collision generally knocks off one or more electrons from the atom, which in turn move a short distance and collide with other atoms, knocking off other electrons. Thus, in the general drift of electrons along a wire carrying an electric current, each electron travels only a short distance and the excess of electrons at one end and the deficiency at the other are balanced by the source of the e.m.f. When this source is removed the state of normalcy returns; there is still the rapid interchange of free electrons between atoms, but there is no general trend or "net movement" in either one direction or the other—in other words, no current flows.

Ampere and Coulomb There are two units of measurement associated with current, and they are often confused. The *rate of flow* of electricity is stated in *amperes*. The unit of *quantity* is the *coulomb*. A coulomb is equal to 6.28 $\times 10^{18}$ electrons, and when this quantity of electrons flows by a given point in every second, a current of one ampere is said to be flowing. An ampere is equal to one coulomb per second; a coulomb is, conversely, equal to one ampere-second. Thus we see that *coulomb* indicates *amount* and *ampere* indicates *rate of flow* of electric current.

Current and Electron Flow Older textbooks speak of current flow as being from the positive terminal of the e.m.f. source through the conductor to the negative terminal. Nevertheless, it has long been an established fact that the current flow in a metallic conductor is the *electron* drift from the negative terminal of the source of voltage through the conductor to the positive terminal. The only exceptions to the electronic direction of flow occur in gaseous and electrolytic conductors where the flow of positive *ions* toward the cathode or negative electrode constitutes a positive flow in the opposite direction to the electron flow. (An ion is an atom, molecule, or particle which either lacks one or more electrons, or else has an excess of one or more electrons.)

In radio work the terms "electron flow" and "current" are becoming accepted as being synonymous, but the older terminology is still accepted in the electrical (industrial) field. Because of the confusion this sometimes causes, it is often safer to refer to the direction of electron flow rather than to the direction of the "current." Since electron flow consists actually of a passage of *negative* charges, current flow and *algebraic* electron flow do pass in the same direction.

Resistance The flow of current in a material depends on the ease with which electrons can be detached from the atoms of the material and on its molecular structure. In other words, the easier it is to detach electrons from the atoms the more free electrons there will be to contribute to the flow of current, and the fewer collisions that occur between free electrons and atoms the greater will be the total electron flow.

The opposition to a steady electron flow is called the *resistance* of a material, and is one of its physical properties.

The unit of resistance is the *ohm*. Every substance has a *specific resistance*, usually expressed as *ohms per mil-foot,* which is determined by the material's molecular structure and temperature. A mil-foot is a piece of material one circular mil in area and one foot long. Another measure of resistivity frequently used is expressed in the units *microhms per centimeter cube*. The resistance of a uniform length of a given substance is directly proportional to its length and specific resistance, and inversely proportional to its cross-sectional area. A wire with a certain resistance for a given length will have twice as much resistance if the length of the wire is doubled. For a given length, doubling the cross-sectional area of the wire will *halve* the resistance, while doubling the *diameter* will reduce the resistance to *one fourth*. This is true since the cross-sectional area of a wire varies as the square of the diameter. The relationship between the resistance and the linear dimensions of a conductor may be expressed by the following equation:

$$R = \frac{rl}{A}$$

where,

R equals resistance in ohms,
r equals resistivity in *ohms per mil-foot,*
l equals length of conductor in feet,
A equals cross-sectional area in circular mils.

The resistance also depends on temperature, rising with an increase in temperature for most substances (including most metals), due to increased electron acceleration and hence a greater number of impacts between electrons and atoms. However, in

TABLE 1. TABLE OF RESISTIVITY

Material	Resistivity in Ohms per Circular Mil-Foot	Temp. Coeff. of resistance per °C. at 20° C.
Aluminum	17	0.0049
Brass	45	0.003 to 0.007
Cadmium	46	0.0038
Chromium	16	0.00
Copper	10.4	0.0039
Iron	59	0.006
Silver	9.8	0.004
Zinc	36	0.0035
Nichrome	650	0.0002
Constantan	295	0.00001
Manganin	290	0.00001
Monel	255	0.0019

the case of some substances such as carbon and glass the temperature coefficient is negative and the resistance decreases as the temperature increases. This is also true of electrolytes. The temperature may be raised by the external application of heat, or by the flow of the current itself. In the latter case, the temperature is raised by the heat generated when the electrons and atoms collide.

Conductors and Insulators In the molecular structure of many materials such as glass, porcelain, and mica all electrons are tightly held within their orbits and there are comparatively few free electrons. This type of substance will conduct an electric current only with great difficulty and is known as an *insulator*. An insulator is said to have a high electrical *resistance*.

On the other hand, materials that have a large number of free electrons are known as *conductors*. Most metals (those elements which have only one or two electrons in their outer ring) are good conductors. Silver, copper, and aluminum, in that order, are the best of the common metals used as conductors and are said to have the greatest *conductivity*, or lowest resistance to the flow of an electric current.

Fundamental Electrical Units These units are the *volt*, the *ampere*, and the *ohm*. They were mentioned in the preceding paragraphs, but were not completely defined in terms of fixed, known quantities.

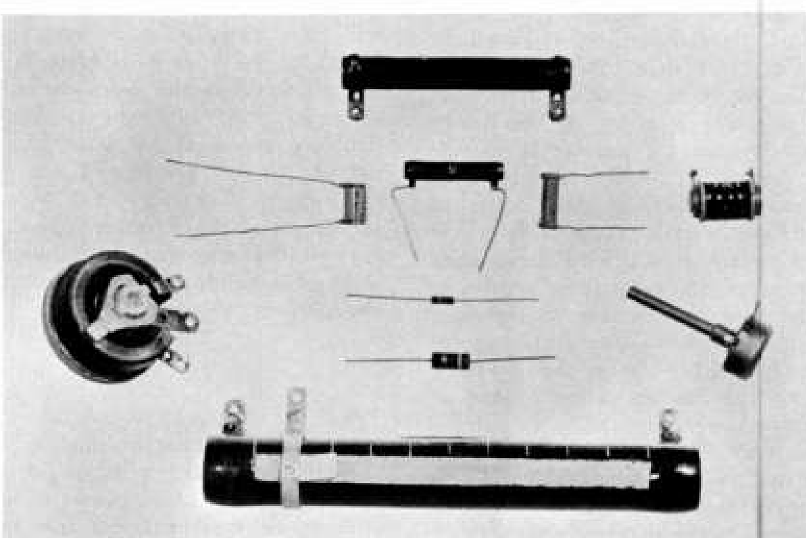


Figure 1

TYPICAL RESISTORS

Shown above are various types of resistors used in electronic circuits. The larger units are power resistors. On the left is a variable power resistor. Three precision-type resistors are shown in the center with two small composition resistors beneath them. At the right is a composition-type potentiometer, used for audio circuitry.

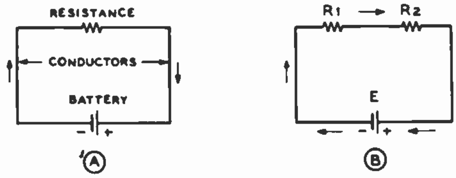


Figure 2

SIMPLE SERIES CIRCUITS

At (A) the battery is in series with a single resistor. At (B) the battery is in series with two resistors, the resistors themselves being in series. The arrows indicate the direction of electron flow.

The fundamental unit of *current,* or *rate of flow* of electricity is the ampere. A current of one ampere will deposit silver from a specified solution of silver nitrate at a rate of 1.118 milligrams per second.

The international standard for the ohm is the resistance offered by a uniform column of mercury at 0° C., 14.4521 grams in mass, of constant cross-sectional area and 106.300 centimeters in length. The expression *megohm* (1,000,000 ohms) is also sometimes used when speaking of very large values of resistance.

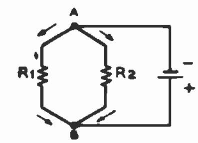
A volt is *the e.m.f. that will produce a current of one ampere through a resistance of one ohm.* The standard of electromotive force is the Weston cell which at 20° C. has a potential of 1.0183 volts across its terminals. This cell is used only for reference purposes in a bridge circuit, since only an infinitesimal amount of current may be drawn from it without disturbing its characteristics.

Ohm's Law The relationship between the electromotive force (voltage), the flow of current (amperes), and the resistance which impedes the flow of current (ohms), is very clearly expressed in a simple but highly valuable law known as *Ohm's Law.* This law states that *the current in amperes is equal to the voltage in volts divided by the resistance in ohms.* Expressed as an equation:

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

If the voltage (E) and resistance (R) are known, the current (I) can be readily

Figure 3
SIMPLE PARALLEL CIRCUIT



The two resistors R_1 and R_2 are said to be in parallel since the flow of current is offered two parallel paths. An electron leaving point A will pass either through R_1 or R_2, but not through both, to reach the positive terminal of the battery. If a large number of electrons are considered, the greater number will pass through whichever of the two resistors has the lower resistance.

found. If the voltage and current are known, and the resistance is unknown, the resistance (R) is equal to $\frac{E}{I}$. When the voltage is the unknown quantity, it can be found by multiplying $I \times R$. These three equations are all secured from the original by simple transposition. The expressions are here repeated for quick reference:

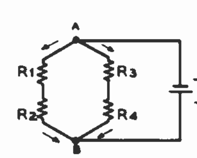
$$I = \frac{E}{R} \quad R = \frac{E}{I} \quad E = IR$$

where,

I is the current in amperes,
R is the resistance in ohms,
E is the electromotive force in volts.

Application of Ohm's Law All electrical circuits fall into one of three classes: *series circuits, parallel circuits,* and *series-parallel circuits.* A series circuit is one in which the current flows in a single continuous path and is of the same value at every point in the circuit (figure 2). In a parallel circuit there are two or more current paths between two points in the circuit, as shown in figure 3. Here the current divides at A, part going through R_1 and part through R_2, and combines at B to return

Figure 4
SERIES-PARALLEL CIRCUIT



In this type of circuit the resistors are arranged in series groups, and these groups are then placed in parallel.

to the battery. Figure 4 shows a series-parallel circuit. There are two paths between points A and B as in the parallel circuit, and in addition there are two resistances in series in each branch of the parallel combination. Two other examples of series-parallel arrangements appear in figure 5. The way in which the current splits to flow through the parallel branches is shown by the arrows.

In every circuit, each of the parts has some resistance: the batteries or generator, the connecting conductors, and the apparatus itself. Thus, if each part has some resistance, no matter how little, and a current is flowing through it, there will be a voltage drop across it. In other words, there will be a potential difference between the two ends of the circuit element in question. This drop in voltage is equal to the product of the current and the resistance hence it is called the *IR drop*.

Internal Resistance The source of voltage has an *internal* resistance, and when connected into a circuit so that current flows, there will be an *IR* drop in the source just as in every other part of the circuit. Thus, if the terminal voltage of the source could be measured in a way that would cause no current to flow, it would be found to be more than the voltage measured when a current flows by the amount of the *IR* drop in the source. The voltage measured with no current flowing is termed the *no load* voltage; that measured with current flowing is the *load* voltage. It is apparent that a voltage source having a low internal resistance is most desirable.

Resistances in Series The current flowing in a series circuit is equal to the voltage impressed divided by the *total* resistance across which the voltage is impressed. Since the same current flows through every part of the circuit, it is merely necessary to add all the individual resistances to obtain the total resistance. Expressed as a formula:

$$R_{Total} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + \ldots + R_N$$

Of course, if the resistances happened to be all the same value, the total resistance would be the resistance of one multiplied by the number of resistors in the circuit.

Resistances in Parallel Consider two resistors, one of 100 ohms and one of 10 ohms, connected in parallel as in figure 3, with a potential of 10 volts applied across each resistor, so the current through each can be easily calculated.

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

$E = 10$ volts, $R_1 = 100$ ohms $\qquad I_1 = \frac{10}{100} = 0.1$ ampere

$E = 10$ volts, $R_2 = 10$ ohms $\qquad I_2 = \frac{10}{10} = 1.0$ ampere

Total current $= I_1 + I_2 = 1.1$ ampere

Until it divides at A, the entire current of 1.1 amperes is flowing through the conductor from the battery to A, and again from B through the conductor to the battery. Since this is more current than flows through the smaller resistor it is evident that the resistance of the parallel combination must be less than 10 ohms, the resistance of the smaller resistor. We can find this value by applying Ohm's Law.

$$R_T = \frac{E}{I}$$

$E = 10$ volts, $I = 1.1$ amperes $\qquad R_T = \frac{10}{1.1} = 9.09$ ohms

The resistance of the parallel combination is 9.09 ohms.

Mathematically, we can derive a simple formula for finding the effective resistance of two resistors connected in parallel.

$$R_T = \frac{R_1 \times R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

where,

R_T is the unknown resistance,
R_1 is the resistance of the first resistor,
R_2 is the resistance of the second resistor.

If the effective value required is known, and it is desired to connect one unknown resistor in parallel with one of known value, the following transposition of the above formula will simplify the problem of obtaining the unknown value:

$$R_2 = \frac{R_1 \times R_T}{R_1 - R_T}$$

where,

R_T is the effective value required,

R_1 is the known resistor,

R_2 is the value of the unknown resistance necessary to give R_T when in parallel with R_1.

The resultant value of placing a number of unlike resistors in parallel is equal to the reciprocal of the sum of the reciprocals of the various resistors. This can be expressed as:

$$R_T = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \ldots \frac{1}{R_n}}$$

The effective value of placing any number of unlike resistors in parallel can be determined from the above formula. However, it is commonly used only when there are three or more resistors under consideration, since the simplified formula given before is more convenient when only two resistors are being used.

From the above, it also follows that when two or more resistors of the same value are placed in parallel, the effective resistance of the paralleled resistors is equal to the value of one of the resistors divided by the number of resistors in parallel.

The effective value of resistance of two or more resistors connected in parallel is *always* less than the value of the lowest resistance in the combination. It is well to bear this simple rule in mind, as it will assist greatly in approximating the value of paralleled resistors.

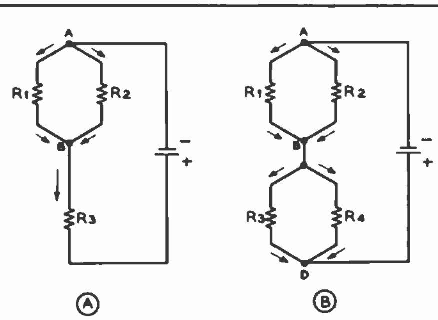


Figure 5

OTHER COMMON SERIES-PARALLEL CIRCUITS

Resistors in Series-Parallel To find the total resistance of several resistors connected in series-parallel, it is usually easiest to apply either the formula for series resistors or the parallel resistor formula first, in order to reduce the original arrangement to a simpler one. For instance, in figure 4 the series resistors should be added in each branch, then there will be but two resistors in parallel to be calculated. Similarly in figure 6, although here there will be three parallel resistors after adding the series resistors in each branch. In figure 6B the paralleled resistors should be reduced to the equivalent series value, and then the series resistance value can be added.

Resistances in series-parallel can be solved by combining the series and parallel formulas into one similar to the following (refer to figure 6):

$$R_T = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1 + R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3 + R_4} + \frac{1}{R_5 + R_6 + R_7}}$$

Voltage Dividers A *voltage divider* is exactly what its name implies: a resistor or a series of resistors connected across a source of voltage from which various lesser values of voltage may be obtained by connection to various points along the resistor.

A voltage divider serves a most useful purpose in a radio receiver, transmitter or amplifier, because it offers a simple means of obtaining plate, screen, and bias voltages of different values from a common power supply source. It may also be used to obtain very low voltages of the order of .01 to .001 volt with a high degree of accuracy, even though a means of measuring such voltages is lacking. The procedure for making these measurements can best be given in the following example.

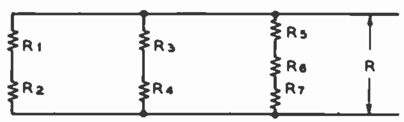


Figure 6

ANOTHER TYPE OF SERIES-PARALLEL CIRCUIT

Assume that an accurately calibrated voltmeter reading from 0 to 150 volts is available, and that the source of voltage is exactly 100 volts. This 100 volts is then impressed through a resistance of exactly 1000 ohms. It will then be found that the voltage along various points on the resistor, with respect to the grounded end, is exactly proportional to the resistance at that point. From Ohm's Law, the current would be 0.1 ampere; this current remains unchanged since the original value of resistance (1000 ohms) and the voltage source (100 volts) are unchanged. Thus, at a 500-ohm point on the resistor (half its entire resistance), the voltage will likewise be halved or reduced to 50 volts.

The equation ($E = I \times R$) gives the proof: $E = 500 \times 0.1 = 50$. At the point of 250 ohms on the resistor, the voltage will be one-fourth the total value, or 25 volts ($E = 250 \times 0.1 = 25$). Continuing with this process, a point can be found where the resistance measures exactly 1 ohm and where the voltage equals 0.1 volt. It is, therefore, obvious that if the original source of voltage and the resistance can be measured, it is a simple matter to predetermine the voltage at any point along the resistor, provided that the current remains constant, and provided that no current is taken from the tap-on point unless this current is taken into consideration.

Voltage-Divider Calculations Proper design of a voltage divider for any type of radio equipment is a relatively simple matter. The first consideration is the amount of "bleeder current" to be drawn.

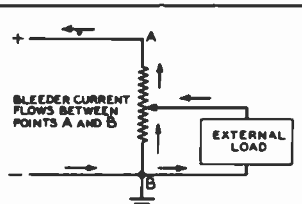


Figure 7

SIMPLE VOLTAGE-DIVIDER CIRCUIT

The arrows indicate the manner in which the current flow divides between the voltage divider itself and the external load circuit.

In addition, it is also necessary that the desired voltage and the exact current at each tap on the voltage divider be known.

Figure 7 illustrates the flow of current in a simple voltage-divider and load circuit. The light arrows indicate the flow of bleeder current, while the heavy arrows indicate the flow of the load current. The design of a combined bleeder resistor and voltage divider, such as is commonly used in radio equipment, is illustrated in the following example:

A power supply delivers 300 volts and is conservatively rated to supply all needed current for the receiver and still allow a bleeder current of 10 milliamperes. The following voltages are wanted: 75 volts at 2 milliamperes for the detector tube, 100 volts at 5 milliamperes for the screens of the tubes, and 250 volts at 20 milliamperes for the plates of the tubes. The required voltage drop across R_1 is 75 volts, across R_2 25 volts, across R_3 150 volts, and across R_4 it is 50 volts. These values are shown in the diagram of figure 8. The respective current values are also indicated. Apply Ohm's Law:

$$R_1 = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{75}{.01} = 7500 \text{ ohms}$$

$$R_2 = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{25}{.012} = 2083 \text{ ohms}$$

$$R_3 = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{150}{.017} = 8823 \text{ ohms}$$

$$R_4 = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{50}{.037} = 1351 \text{ ohms}$$

$$R_{Total} = 7500 + 2083 + 8823 + 1351 = 19{,}757 \text{ ohms}$$

A 20,000-ohm resistor with three sliding taps will be the approximately correct size, and would ordinarily be used because of the difficulty in securing four separate resistors of the exact odd values indicated, and because no adjustment would be possible to compensate for any slight error in estimating the probable currents through the various taps.

When the sliders on the resistor once are set to the proper point, as in the above example, the voltages will remain constant at the values shown as long as the current remains a constant value.

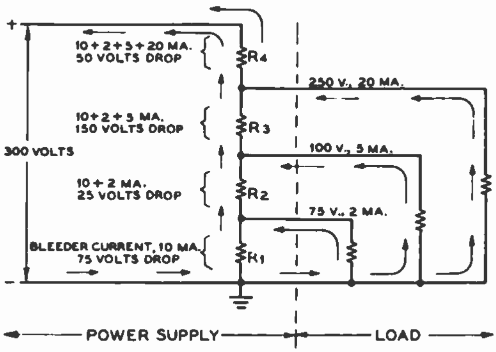


Figure 8

MORE COMPLEX VOLTAGE DIVIDER

The method for computing the values of the resistors is discussed in the accompanying text.

Disadvantages of Voltage Dividers One of the serious disadvantages of the voltage divider becomes evident when the current drawn from one of the taps changes. It is obvious that the voltage drops are interdependent and, in turn, the individual drops are in proportion to the current which flows through the respective sections of the divider resistor. The only remedy lies in providing a heavy steady bleeder current in order to make the individual currents so small a part of the total current that any change in current will result in only a slight change in voltage. This can seldom be realized in practice because of the excessive values of bleeder current which would be required.

Kirchhoff's Laws Ohm's Law is all that is necessary to calculate the values in simple circuits, such as the preceding examples; but in more complex problems, involving several loops, or more than one voltage in the same closed circuit, the use of *Kirchhoff's laws* will greatly simplify the calculations. These laws are merely rules for applying Ohm's Law.

Kirchhoff's first law is concerned with net current to a point in a circuit and states that:

At any point in a circuit the current flowing toward the point is equal to the current flowing away from the point.

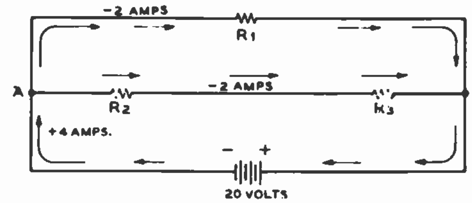


Figure 9

ILLUSTRATING KIRCHHOFF'S FIRST LAW

The current flowing toward point "A" is equal to the current flowing away from point "A."

Stated in another way: if currents flowing to the point are considered positive, and those flowing from the point are considered negative, the sum of all currents flowing toward and away from the point — taking signs into account — is equal to zero. Such a sum is known as an *algebraic sum;* such that the law can be stated thus: *The algebraic sum of all currents entering and leaving a point is zero.*

Figure 9 illustrates this first law. If the effective resistance of the network of resistors is 5 ohms, it can be seen that 4 amperes flow toward point A, and 2 amperes flow away through the two 5-ohm resistors in series. The remaining 2 amperes flow away through the 10-ohm resistor. Thus, there are 4 amperes flowing to point A and 4 amperes flowing away from the point. If R_T is the effective resistance of the network (5 ohms), $R_1 = 10$ ohms, $R_2 = 5$ ohms, $R_3 = 5$ ohms, and $E = 20$ volts, we can set up the following equation:

$$\frac{E}{R_T} - \frac{E}{R_1} - \frac{E}{R_2 + R_3} = 0$$

$$\frac{20}{5} - \frac{20}{10} - \frac{20}{5+5} = 0$$

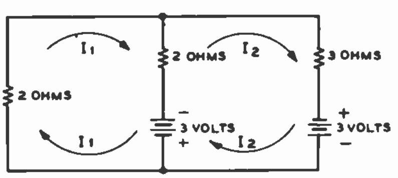
$$4 - 2 - 2 = 0$$

Kirchhoff's second law is concerned with net voltage drop around a closed loop in a circuit and states that:

In any closed path or loop in a circuit the sum of the IR drops must equal the sum of the applied e.m.f.'s.

The second law also may be conveniently stated in terms of an algebraic sum as: *The* *algebraic sum of all voltage drops around a closed path or loop in a circuit is zero.* The applied e.m.f.'s (voltages) are considered positive, while *IR* drops taken in the direction of current flow (including the internal drop of the sources of voltage) are considered negative.

Figure 10 shows an example of the application of Kirchhoff's laws to a comparatively simple circuit consisting of three resistors and two batteries. First assume an arbitrary direction of current flow in each closed loop of the circuit, drawing an arrow to indicate the assumed direction of current flow. Then equate the sum of all *IR* drops plus battery drops around each loop to zero. You will need one equation for each unknown to be determined. Then solve the equations for the unknown currents in the general manner indicated in figure 10. If the answer comes out positive the direction of current flow you originally assumed was correct. If the answer comes out negative, the current flow is in the opposite direction to the arrow which was drawn originally. This is illustrated in the example of figure 10, where the direction of flow of I_1 *is* opposite to the direction assumed in the sketch.



1. SET VOLTAGE DROPS AROUND EACH LOOP EQUAL TO ZERO.

$I_1 2_{(OHMS)} + 2(I_1 - I_2) + 3 = 0$ (FIRST LOOP)

$-6 + 2(I_2 - I_1) + 3I_2 = 0$ (SECOND LOOP)

2. SIMPLIFY

$2I_1 + 2I_1 - 2I_2 + 3 = 0$ $\qquad$ $2I_2 - 2I_1 + 3I_2 - 6 = 0$

$\frac{4I_1+3}{2} = I_2$ $\qquad$ $5I_2 - 2I_1 - 6 = 0$

$\frac{2I_1+6}{5} = I_2$

3. EQUATE

$\frac{4I_1+3}{2} = \frac{2I_1+6}{5}$

4. SIMPLIFY

$20I_1 + 15 = 4I_1 + 12$

$I_1 = -\frac{3}{16}$ AMPERE

5. RE-SUBSTITUTE

$I_2 = \frac{-\frac{12}{16}+3}{2} = \frac{2\frac{1}{4}}{2} = 1\frac{1}{8}$ AMPERE

Figure 10

ILLUSTRATING KIRCHHOFF'S SECOND LAW

The voltage drop around any closed loop in a network is equal to zero.

Power in Resistive Circuits In order to cause electrons to flow through a conductor, constituting a current flow, it is necessary to apply an electromotive force (voltage) across the circuit. Less power is expended in creating a small current flow through a given resistance than in creating a large one; so it is necessary to have a unit of power as a reference.

The unit of electrical power is the *watt*, which is the rate of energy consumption when an e.m.f. of 1 volt forces a current of 1 ampere through a circuit. The power in a resistive circuit is equal to the product of the voltage applied across, and the current flowing in, a given circuit. Hence: *P* (watts) $= E$ (volts) $\times I$ (amperes).

Since it is often convenient to express power in terms of the resistance of the circuit and the current flowing through it, a substitution of *IR* for *E* ($E = IR$) in the above formula gives: $P = IR \times I$ or $P = I^2R$. In terms of voltage and resistance, $P = E^2/R$. Here, $I = E/R$ and when this is substituted for *I* the original formula becomes $P = E \times E/R$, or $P = E^2/R$. To repeat these three expressions:

$$P = EI,\ P = I^2R, \text{ and } P = E^2/R$$

where,

P is the power in watts,
E is the electromotive force in volts, and
I is the current in amperes.

To apply the above equations to a typical problem: The voltage drop across a cathode resistor in a power amplifier stage is 50 volts; the plate current flowing through the resistor is 150 milliamperes. The number of watts the resistor will be required to dissipate is found from the formula: $P = EI$, or $50 \times .150 = 7.5$ watts (.150 ampere is equal to 150 milliamperes). From the foregoing it is seen that a 7.5-watt resistor will safely carry the required current, yet a 10- or 20-watt resistor would ordinarily be used to provide a safety factor.

In another problem, the conditions being similar to those above, but with the resist-

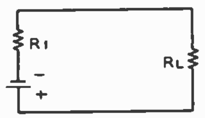


Figure 11

MATCHING OF RESISTANCES

To deliver the greatest amount of power to the load, the load resistance R_L should be equal to the internal resistance of the battery R_I.

ance ($R = 333\frac{1}{3}$ ohms), and current being the *known* factors, the solution is obtained as follows: $P = I^2R = .0225 \times 333.33 = 7.5$. If only the voltage and resistance are known, $P = E^2/R = 2500/333.33 = 7.5$ watts. It is seen that all three equations give the same results; the selection of the particular equation depends only on the known factors.

Power, Energy and Work It is important to remember that power (expressed in watts, horsepower, etc.), represents the *rate* of energy consumption or the *rate* of doing work. But when we pay our electric bill to the power company we have purchased a specific *amount* of *energy* or *work* expressed in the common units of *kilowatt-hours*. Thus *rate* of energy consumption (watts or kilowatts) multiplied by *time* (seconds, minutes, or hours) gives us total energy or work. Other units of energy are the watt-second, BTU, calorie, erg, and joule.

Heating Effect Heat is generated when a source of voltage causes a current to flow through a resistor (or, for that matter, through any conductor). As explained earlier, this is due to the fact that heat is given off when free electrons collide with the atoms of the material. More heat is generated in high-resistance materials than in those of low resistance, since the free electrons must strike the atoms harder to knock off other electrons. As the heating effect is a function of the current flowing and the resistance of the circuit, the power expended in heat is given by the second formula: $P = I^2R$.

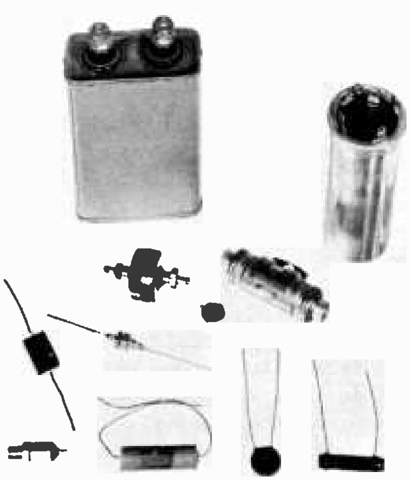


Figure 12

TYPICAL CAPACITORS

The two large units are high value filter capacitors. Shown beneath these are various types of by-pass capacitors for r-f and audio application.

2-3 Electrostatics — Capacitors

Electrical energy can be stored in an *electrostatic field*. A device capable of storing energy in such a field is called a *capacitor* (in earlier usage the term *condenser* was frequently used but the IEEE standards call for the use of capacitor instead of condenser) and is said to have a certain *capacitance*. The *energy* stored in an electrostatic field is expressed in *joules* (watt-seconds) and is equal to $CE^2/2$, where C is the capacitance in *farads* (a unit of capacitance to be discussed) and E is the potential in volts. The *charge* is equal to CE, the charge being expressed in coulombs.

Capacitance and Capacitors Two metallic plates separated from each other by a thin layer of insulating material (called a *dielectric*, in this case) becomes a *capacitor*. When a source of d-c potential is momentarily applied across these plates, they may be said to become charged. If the same two plates are then joined together momentarily by means of a switch, the capacitor will *discharge*.

When the potential was first applied, electrons immediately flowed from one plate to the other through the battery or such source of d-c potential as was applied to the capacitor plates. However, the circuit from plate to plate in the capacitor was *incomplete* (the two plates being separated by an insulator) and thus the electron flow ceased, meanwhile establishing a shortage of electrons on one plate and a surplus of electrons on the other.

Remember that when a deficiency of electrons exists at one end of a conductor, there is always a tendency for the electrons to move about in such a manner as to re-establish a state of balance. In the case of the capacitor herein discussed, the surplus quantity of electrons on one of the capacitor plates cannot move to the other plate because the circuit has been broken; that is, the battery or d-c potential was removed. This leaves the capacitor in a *charged* condition; the capacitor plate with the electron *deficiency* is *positively* charged, the other plate being *negative*.

In this condition, a considerable stress exists in the insulating material (dielectric) which separates the two capacitor plates, due to the mutual attraction of two unlike potentials on the plates. This stress is known known as *electrostatic* energy, as contrasted with *electromagnetic* energy in the case of an inductor. This charge can also be called *potential energy* because it is capable of performing work when the charge is released through an external circuit. The charge is proportional to the voltage but the energy is proportional to the voltage squared, as shown in the following analogy.

The charge represents a definite amount of electricity, or a given number of electrons. The potential energy possessed by these electrons depends not only on their number, but also on their potential or voltage.

Compare the electrons to water, and two capacitors to standpipes, a 1-μfd capacitor to a standpipe having a cross section of 1 square inch and a 2-μfd capacitor to a standpipe having a cross section of 2 square inches. The charge will represent a given volume of water, as the "charge" simply indicates a certain number of electrons. Suppose the quantity of water is equal to 5 gallons.

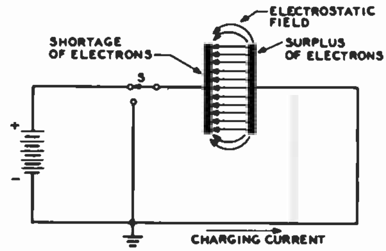


Figure 13

SIMPLE CAPACITOR

Illustrating the imaginary lines of force representing the paths along which the repelling force of the electrons would act on a free electron located between the two capacitor plates.

Now the potential energy, or capacity for doing work, of the 5 gallons of water will be twice as great when confined to the 1 sq. in. standpipe as when confined to the 2 sq. in. standpipe. Yet the volume of water or "charge" is the same in either case.

Likewise a 1-μfd capacitor charged to 1000 volts possesses twice as much potential energy as does a 2-μfd capacitor charged to 500 volts, though the *charge* (expressed in *coulombs:* $Q = CE$) is the same in either case.

The Unit of Capacitance: The Farad If the external circuit of the two capacitor plates is completed by joining the terminals together with a piece of wire, the electrons will rush immediately from one plate to the other through the external circuit and establish a state of equilibrium. This latter phenomenon explains the *discharge* of a capacitor. The amount of stored energy in a charged capacitor is dependent on the charging potential, as well as a factor which takes into account the *size* of the plates, *dielectric thickness*, *nature* of the dielectric, and the *number* of plates. This factor, which is determined by the foregoing, is called the *capacitance* of a capacitor and is expressed in *farads*.

The farad is such a large unit of capacitance that it is rarely used in radio calculations, and the following more practical units have, therefore, been chosen.

1 *microfarad* = 1/1,000,000 *farad, or* .000001 *farad, or* 10^{-6} *farad.*

1 *micromicrofarad or picofarad* = 1/1,000,000 *microfarad, or* .000001 *microfarad, or* 10^{-6} *microfarad.*

1 *micromicrofarad or picofarad = one-millionth of one-millionth of a farad, or* 10^{-12} *farad.*

If the capacitance is to be expressed in *microfarads* in the equation given for *energy storage*, the factor C would then have to be divided by 1,000,000, thus:

$$\text{Stored energy in joules} = \frac{C \times E^2}{2 \times 1{,}000{,}000}$$

This storage of energy in a capacitor is one of its very important properties, particularly in those capacitors which are used in power-supply filter circuits.

Dielectric Materials Although any substance which has the characteristics of a good insulator may be used as a dielectric material, commercially manufactured capacitors make use of dielectric materials which have been selected because their characteristics are particularly suited to the job at hand. Air is a very good dielectric material, but an air-spaced capacitor does not have a high capacitance since the dielectric constant of air is only slightly greater than one. A group of other commonly used dielectric materials is listed in Table 2.

TABLE. 2. TABLE OF DIELECTRIC MATERIALS

Material	Dielectric Constant 10 MHz	Power Factor 10 MHz	Softening Point Fahrenheit
Aniline-Formaldehyde Resin	3.4	0.004	260°
Barium Titianate	1200	1.0	—
Castor Oil	4.67		
Cellulase Acetate	3.7	0.04	180°
Glass, Window	6-8	Poor	2000°
Glass, Pyrex	4.5	0.02	
Kel-F Fluorathene	2.5	0.6	—
Methyl-Methacrylate-Lucite	2.6	0.007	160°
Mica	5.4	0.0003	
Mycalex Mykroy	7.0	0.002	650°
Phenol-Formaldehyde, Low-Loss Yellow	5.0	0.015	270°
Phenol-Formaldehyde Black Bakelite	5.5	0.03	350°
Porcelain	7.0	0.005	2800°
Polyethylene	2.25	0.0003	220°
Polystyrene	2.55	0.0002	175°
Quartz, Fused	4.2	0.0002	2600°
Rubber Hard-Ebonite	2.8	0.007	150°
Steatite	6.1	0.003	2700°
Sulfur	3.8	0.003	236°
Teflon	2.1	.0006	—
Titanium Dioxide	100-175	0.0006	2700°
Transformer Oil	2.2	0.003	
Urea-Formaldehyde	5.0	0.05	260°
Vinyl Resins	4.0	0.02	200°
Wood, Maple	4.4	Poor	

Certain materials, such as ***bakelite, lucite***, and other plastics dissipate considerable energy when used as capacitor dielectrics. This energy loss is expressed in terms of the *power factor* of the capacitor, which represents the portion of the input volt-amperes lost in the dielectric material. Other materials including air, polystyrene and quartz have a very low power factor.

The new *ceramic* dielectrics such as *steatite* (talc) and titanium dioxide products are especially suited for high-frequency and high-temperature operation. Ceramics based on titanium dioxide have an unusually high dielectric constant combined with a low power factor. The temperature coefficient with respect to capacitance of units made with this material depends on the mixture of oxides, and coefficients ranging from zero to over —700 parts per million per degree Centigrade may be obtained in commercial production.

Mycalex is a composition of minute mica particles and lead-borate glass, mixed and fired at a relatively low temperature. It is hard and brittle, but can be drilled or machined when water is used as the cutting lubricant.

Mica dielectric capacitors have a very low power factor and extremely high voltage breakdown per unit of thickness. A mica and copperfoil "sandwich" is formed under pressure to obtain the desired capacity value. The effect of temperature on the pressures in the "sandwich" causes the capacitance of the usual mica capacitor to have large, non-cyclic variations. If the copper electrodes are plated directly on the mica sheets, the temperature coefficient can be stabilized at about 20 parts per million per degree Centigrade. A process of this type is used in the manufacture of "silver mica" capacitors.

Paper dielectric capacitors consist of strips of aluminum foil insulated from each other by a thin layer of paper, the whole assembly being wrapped in a circular bundle. The cost of such a capacitor is low, the capacitance is high in proportion to the size and weight, and the power factor is good. The life of such a capacitor is dependent on the moisture penetration of the paper dielectric, and on the level of the applied d-c voltage.

Air-dielectric capacitors are used in transmitting and receiving circuits, principally where a variable capacitor of high resetability is required. The dielectric strength is high, though somewhat less at radio frequencies than at 60 Hz. In addition, corona discharge at high frequencies will cause ionization of the air dielectric causing an increase in power loss. Dielectric strength may be increased by increasing the air pressure, as is done in hermetically sealed radar units. In some units, dry nitrogen gas may be used in place of air to provide a higher dielectric strength than that of air.

Likewise, the dielectric strength of an "air" capacitor may be increased by placing the unit in a vacuum chamber to prevent ionization of the dielectric.

The temperature coefficient of a variable air-dielectric capacitor varies widely and is often noncyclic. Such things as differential expansion of various parts of the capacitor, changes in internal stresses, and different temperature coefficients of various parts contribute to these variances.

Dielectric Constant The capacitance of a capacitor is determined by the thickness and nature of the dielectric material between plates. Certain materials offer a greater capacitance than others, depending on their physical makeup and chemical constitution. This property is expressed by a constant K, called the *dielectric constant.* ($K = 1$ for air.)

Dielectric Breakdown If the charge becomes too great for a given thickness of a certain dielectric, the capacitor will break down, i.e., the dielectric will puncture. It is for this reason that capacitors are rated in the manner of the amount of voltage they will safely withstand as well as the capacitance in microfarads. This rating is commonly expressed as the *d-c working voltage* (*DCWV*).

Calculation of Capacitance The capacitance of two parallel plates may be determined with good accuracy by the following formula:

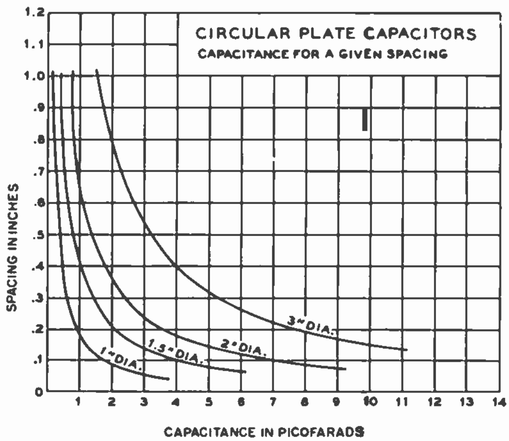


Figure 14

Through the use of this chart it is possible to determine the required plate diameter (with the necessary spacing established by peak voltage considerations) for a circular-plate neutralizing capacitor. The capacitance given is for a dielectric of air and the spacing given is between adjacent faces of the two plates.

$$C = 0.2248 \times K \times \frac{A}{t}$$

where,

C equals capacitance in picofarads,
K equals dielectric constant of spacing material,
A equals area of dielectric in square inches,
t equals thickness of dielectric in inches.

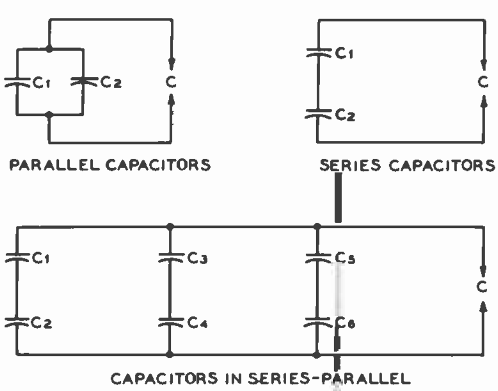


Figure 15

CAPACITORS IN SERIES, PARALLEL, AND SERIES-PARALLEL

This formula indicates that the capacitance is *directly* proportional to the area of the plates and *inversely* proportional to the thickness of the dielectric (spacing between the plates). This simply means that when the area of the plate is doubled, the spacing between plates remaining constant, the capacitance will be doubled. Also, if the area of the plates remains constant, and the plate spacing is doubled the capacitance will be reduced to half.

The above equation also shows that capacitance is directly proportional to the dielectric constant of the spacing material. An air-spaced capacitor that has a capacitance of 100 pf in air would have a capacitance of 467 pf when immersed in castor oil, because the dielectric constant of castor oil is 4.67 times as great as the dielectric constant of air.

Where the area of the plate is definitely set, when it is desired to know the spacing needed to secure a required capacitance,

$$t = \frac{A \times 0.2248 \times K}{C}$$

where all units are expressed just as in the preceding formula. This formula is not confined to capacitors having only square or rectangular plates, but also applies when the plates are circular in shape. The only change will be the calculation of the *area* of such circular plates; this area can be computed by squaring the *radius* of the plate, then multiplying by 3.1416, or "pi." Expressed as an equation:

$$A = 3.1416 \times r^2$$

where,

r equals radius in inches.

The capacitance of a multiplate capacitor can be calculated by taking the capacitance of one section and multiplying this by the number of dielectric spaces. In such cases, however, the formula gives no consideration to the effects of edge capacitance; so the capacitance as calculated will not be entirely accurate. These additional capacitances will be but a small part of the effective total capacitance, particularly when the plates are reasonably large and thin, and the final result will, therefore, be within practical limits of accuracy.

Capacitors in Parallel and in Series Equations for calculating capacitances of capacitors in *parallel* connections are the same as those for resistors in *series*.

$$C_T = C_1 + C_2 + \ldots + C_n$$

Capacitors in *series* connection are calculated in the same manner as are resistors in *parallel* connection.

The formulas are repeated: (1) For two or more capacitors of *unequal* capacitance in series:

$$C_T = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3}}$$

or,
$$\frac{1}{C_T} = \frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \frac{1}{C_3}$$

(2) *Two* capacitors of *unequal* capacitance in series:

$$C_T = \frac{C_1 \times C_2}{C_1 + C_2}$$

(3) Three capacitors of *equal* capacitance in series:

$$C_T = \frac{C_1}{3}$$

where,

C_1 is the common capacitance.

(4) Three or more capacitors of *equal* capacitance in series.

$$C_T = \frac{\text{Value of common capacitance}}{\text{Number of capacitors in series}}$$

(5) Six capacitors in series-parallel:

$$C_T = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2}} + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_3} + \frac{1}{C_4}} + \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_5} + \frac{1}{C_6}}$$

Capacitors in A-C and D-C Circuits When a capacitor is connected into a direct-current circuit, it will block the d.c., or stop the flow of current. Beyond the initial movement of electrons during the period when the capacitor is being charged, there will be no flow of current because the circuit is effectively broken by the dielectric of the capacitor.

Strictly speaking, a very small current may actually flow because the dielectric of the capacitor may not be a perfect insulator. This minute current flow is the leakage current previously referred to and is dependent on the internal d-c resistance of the capacitor. This leakage current is usually quite noticeable in most types of electrolytic capacitors.

When an alternating current is applied to a capacitor, the capacitor will charge and discharge a certain number of times per second in accordance with the frequency of the alternating voltage. The electron flow in the charge and discharge of a capacitor when an a-c potential is applied constitutes an alternating current, in effect. It is for this reason that a capacitor will pass an alternating current yet offer practically infinite opposition to a direct current. These two properties are repeatedly in evidence in a radio circuit.

Voltage Rating of Capacitors in Series Any good paper-dielectric filter capacitor has such a high internal resistance (indicating a good dielectric) that the exact resistance will vary considerably from capacitor to capacitor even though they are made by the same manufacturer and are of the same rating. Thus, when 1000 volts d. c. are connected across two 1-μfd 500-volt capacitors in series, the chances are that the voltage will divide unevenly; one capacitor will receive more than 500 volts and the other less than 500 volts.

Voltage Equalizing Resistors By connecting a half-megohm 1-watt carbon resistor across each capacitor, the voltage will be equalized because the resistors act as a voltage divider, and the internal resistances of the capacitors are so much higher (many megohms) that they have but little effect in disturbing the voltage divider balance.

Carbon resistors of the inexpensive type are not particularly accurate (not being designed for precision service); therefore it is advisable to check several on an accurate ohmmeter to find two that are as close as possible in resistance. The exact resistance is unimportant, just so it is the same for the two resistors used.

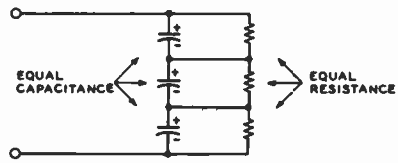


Figure 16

SHOWING THE USE OF VOLTAGE EQUALIZING RESISTORS ACROSS CAPACITORS CONNECTED IN SERIES

Capacitors in Series on A.C. When two capacitors are connected in series, *alternating* voltage pays no heed to the relatively high internal resistance of each capacitor, but divides across the capacitors in inverse proportion to the *capacitance*. Because, in addition to the d-c voltage across a capacitor in a filter or audio amplifier circuit there is usually an a-c or a-f voltage component, it is inadvisable to series-connect capacitors of unequal capacitance even if dividers are provided to keep the d-c voltages within the ratings of the individual capacitors.

For instance, if a 500-volt 1-μfd capacitor is used in series with a 4-μfd 500-volt capacitor across a 250-volt a-c supply, the 1-μfd capacitor will have 200 a-c volts across it and the 4-μfd capacitor only 50 volts. An equalizing divider, to do any good in this case, would have to be of very low resistance because of the comparatively low impedance of the capacitors to alternating current. Such a divider would draw excessive current and be impracticable.

The safest rule to follow is to use only capacitors of the same capacitance and voltage rating and to install matched high-resistance proportioning resistors across the various capacitors to equalize the d-c voltage drop across each capacitor. This holds regardless of how many capacitors are series-connected.

Electrolytic Capacitors *Electrolytic capacitors* use a very thin film of oxide as the dielectric, and are polarized; that is, they have a positive and a negative terminal which must be properly connected in a circuit; otherwise, the oxide will break down and the capacitor will overheat. The unit then will no longer be of service. When electrolytic capacitors are connected in series, the positive terminal is always connected to the positive lead of the power supply; the negative terminal of the capacitor connects to the *positive* terminal of the *next* capacitor in the series combination. The method of connection for electrolytic capacitors in series is shown in figure 16. Electrolytic capacitors have very low cost per microfarad of capacitance, but also have a large power factor and high leakage; both dependent on applied voltage, temperature, and the age of the capacitor. The modern electrolytic capacitor uses a dry paste electrolyte embedded in a gauze or paper dielectric. Aluminum foil and the dielectric are wrapped in a circular bundle and are mounted in a cardboard or metal box. Etched electrodes may be employed to increase the effective anode area, and the total capacitance of the unit.

The capacitance of an electrolytic capacitor is affected by the applied voltage, the usage of the capacitor, the temperature and the humidity of the environment. The capacitance usually drops with the aging of the unit. The leakage current and power factor increase with age. At high frequencies the power factor becomes so poor that the electrolytic capacitor acts as a series resistance rather than as a capacitance.

2-4 Magnetism and Electromagnetism

The common bar or horseshoe magnet is familiar to most people. The magnetic field which surrounds it causes the magnet to attract other magnetic materials, such as iron nails or tacks. Exactly the same kind of magnetic field is set up around any conductor carrying a current, but the field exists only while the current is flowing.

Magnetic Fields Before a potential, or voltage, is applied to a conductor there is no external field, because there is no general movement of the electrons in one direction. However, the electrons do progressively move along the conductor when an e.m.f. is applied, the direction of motion depending on the polarity of the e.m.f. Since each electron has an electric field about it, the flow of electrons causes these fields to build up into a resultant external field which acts in a plane at right angles to the direction in which the current is flowing. This field is known as the *magnetic field.*

The magnetic field around a current-carrying conductor is illustrated in figure 17. The direction of this magnetic field depends entirely on the direction of electron drift or current flow in the conductor. When the flow is toward the observer, the field about the conductor is clockwise; when the flow is away from the observer, the field is counterclockwise. This is easily remembered if the left hand is clenched, with the thumb outstretched and pointing in the direction of electron flow. The fingers then indicate the direction of the magnetic field around the conductor.

Each electron adds its field to the total external magnetic field, so that the greater the number of electrons moving along the conductor, the stronger will be the resulting field.

One of the fundamental laws of magnetism is that *like poles repel one another and unlike poles attract one another.* This is true of current-carrying conductors as well as of permanent magnets. Thus, if two conductors are placed side by side and the current in each is flowing in the same direction, the magnetic fields will also be in the same direction and will combine to form a larger and stronger field. If the current flow in adjacent conductors is in opposite directions, the magnetic fields oppose each other and tend to cancel.

The magnetic field around a conductor may be considerably increased in strength by winding the wire into a coil. The field

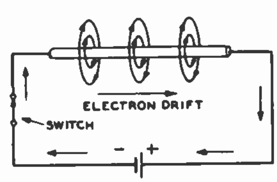


Figure 17

LEFT-HAND RULE

Showing the direction of the magnetic lines of force produced around a conductor carrying an electric current.

around each wire then combines with those of the adjacent turns to form a total field through the coil which is concentrated along the axis of the coil and behaves externally in a way similar to the field of a bar magnet.

If the left hand is held so that the thumb is outstretched and parallel to the axis of a coil, with the fingers curled to indicate the direction of electron flow around the turns of the coil, the thumb then points in the direction of the north pole of the magnetic field.

The Magnetic Circuit In the magnetic circuit, the units which correspond to current, voltage, and resistance in the electrical circuit are *flux*, *magnetomotive force*, and *reluctance*.

Flux; Flux Density As a current is made up of a drift of electrons, so is a magnetic field made up of lines of force, and the total number of lines of force in a given magnetic circuit is termed the *flux*. The flux depends on the material, cross section, and length of the magnetic circuit, and it varies directly as the current flowing in the circuit. The unit of flux is the *maxwell*, and the symbol is the Greek letter ϕ (phi).

Flux density is the number of lines of force per unit area. It is expressed in *gauss* if the unit of area is the square centimeter (1 gauss = 1 line of force per square centimeter), or in *lines per square inch*. The symbol for flux density is B if it is expressed in gauss, or B if expressed in lines per sq. in.

Magnetomotive Force The force which produces a flux in a magnetic circuit is called *magnetomotive force*. It is abbreviated m.m.f. and is designated by the letter F. The unit of magnetomotive force is the *gilbert*, which is equivalent to $1.26 \times NI$, where N is the number of turns and I is the current flowing in the circuit in amperes.

The m.m.f. necessary to produce a given flux density is stated in gilberts per centimeter (oersteds) (H), or in ampere-turns per inch (H).

Reluctance Magnetic reluctance corresponds to electrical resistance, and is the property of a material that opposes the creation of a magnetic flux in the material. It is expressed in *rels*, and the symbol is the letter R. A material has a reluctance of 1 rel when an m.m.f. of 1 ampere-turn (NI) generates a flux of 1 line of force in it. Combinations of reluctances are treated the same as resistances in finding the total effective reluctance. The *specific reluctance* of any substance is its reluctance per unit volume.

Except for iron and its alloys, most common materials have a specific reluctance very nearly the same as that of a vacuum, which, for all practical purposes, may be considered the same as the specific reluctance of air.

Ohm's Law for Magnetic Circuits The relations between flux, magnetomotive force, and reluctance are exactly the same as the relations between current, voltage, and resistance in the electrical circuit. These can be stated as follows:

$$\phi = \frac{F}{R} \qquad R = \frac{F}{\phi} \qquad F = \phi R$$

where,

ϕ equals flux, F equals m.m.f.,
R equals reluctance.

Permeability *Permeability* expresses the ease with which a magnetic field may be set up in a material as compared with the effort required in the case of air. Iron, for example, has a permeability of around 2000 times that of air, which means that a given amount of magnetizing effort produced in an iron core by a current flowing through a coil of wire will produce 2000 times the *flux* density that the same magnetizing effect would produce in air. It may be expressed by the ratio B/H or B/H. In other words,

$$\mu = \frac{B}{H} \quad \text{or} \quad \mu = \frac{\mathrm{B}}{\mathrm{H}}$$

where μ is the permeability, $\boldsymbol{B}$ is the flux density in gausses, B is the flux density in lines per square inch, H is the m.m.f. in gilberts per centimeter (oersteds), and H is the m.m.f. in ampere-turns per inch. These relations may also be stated as follows:

$$H = \frac{B}{\mu} \text{ or } H = \frac{B}{\mu}, \text{ and } B = H\mu \text{ or } B = H\mu$$

It can be seen from the foregoing that permeability is inversely proportional to the specific reluctance of a material.

Saturation Permeability is similar to *electric conductivity*. This is, however, one important difference: the permeability of magnetic materials is not independent of the magnetic current (flux) flowing through it, although electrical conductivity is substantially independent of the electric current in a wire. When the flux density of a magnetic conductor has been increased to the *saturation point,* a further increase in the magnetizing force will not produce a corresponding increase in flux density.

B-H Curve To simplify magnetic circuit calculations, a magnetization curve may be drawn for a given unit of material. Such a curve is termed a B-H curve, and may be determined by experiment. When the current in an iron-core coil is first applied, the relation between the winding current and the core flux is shown at A-B in figure 18. If the current is then reduced to zero, reversed, brought back again to zero and reversed to the original direction,, the flux passes through a typical hysteresis loop as shown.

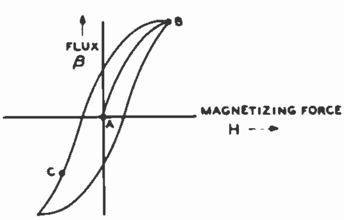


Figure 18

TYPICAL HYSTERESIS LOOP (B-H CURVE = A-B)

Showing relationship between the current in the winding of an iron-core inductor and the core flux. A direct current flowing through the inductance brings the magnetic state of the core to some point on the hysteresis loop, such as C.

Residual Magnetism; Retentivity The magnetism remaining in a material after the magnetizing force is removed is called *residual magnetism. Retentivity* is the property which causes a magnetic material to have residual magnetism after having been magnetized.

Hysteresis; Coercive Force *Hysteresis* is the characteristic of a magnetic system which causes a loss of power due to the fact that a negative magnetizing force must be applied to reduce the residual magnetism to zero. This negative force is termed *coercive force*. By "negative" magnetizing force is meant one which is of the opposite polarity with respect to the original magnetizing force. Hysteresis loss is apparent in transformers and chokes by the heating of the core.

Inductance If the switch shown in figure 17 is opened and closed, a pulsating direct current will be produced. When it is first closed, the current does not instantaneously rise to its maximum value, but builds up to it. While it is building up, the magnetic field is expanding around the conductor. Of course, this happens in a small fraction of a second. If the switch is then opened, the current stops and the magnetic field contracts quickly. This expanding and contracting field will induce a current in any other conductor that is part of a continuous circuit which it cuts. Such a field can be obtained in the way just mentioned by means of a vibrator interruptor, or by applying a.c. to the circuit in place of the battery. Varying the resistance of the circuit will also produce the same effect. This inducing of a current in a conductor due to a varying current in another conductor not in actual contact is called *electromagnetic induction.*

Self-inductance If an alternating current flows through a coil the varying magnetic field around each turn cuts itself and the adjacent turn and *induces a voltage in the coil of opposite polarity to the applied e.m.f.* The amount of induced voltage depends on the number of turns in the coil, the current flowing in the coil, and the number of lines of force thread-ing the coil. The voltage so induced is known as a *counter e.m.f.* or *back e.m.f.*, and the effect is termed *self-induction.* When the applied voltage is building up, the counter e.m.f. opposes the rise; when the applied voltage is decreasing, the counter e.m.f. is of the same polarity and tends to maintain the current. Thus, it can be seen that self-inductance tends to prevent any change in the current in the circuit.

The storage of energy in a magnetic field is expressed in *joules* and is equal to $(LI^2)/2$. (A joule is equal to 1 watt-second. L is defined immediately following.)

The Unit of Inductance: The Henry Inductance is usually denoted by the letter L, and is expressed in *henrys.* A coil has an inductance of 1 henry when a voltage of 1 volt is induced by a current change of 1 ampere per second. The henry, while commonly used in audio-frequency circuits, is too large for reference to inductance coils, such as those used in radio-frequency circuits; *millihenry* or *microhenry* is more commonly used, in the following manner:

1 *henry* = 1000 *millihenrys*, or 10^3 *millihenrys.*

1 *millihenry* = 1/1000 *henry*, .001 *henry*, or 10^{-3} *henry.*

1 *microhenry* = 1/1,000,000 *henry*, .000001 *henry*, or 10^{-6} *henry.*

1 *microhenry* = 1/1000 *millihenry*, .001, or 10^{-3} *millihenry.*

1000 *microhenrys* = 1 *millihenry.*

Mutual Inductance When one coil is near another, a varying current in one will produce a varying magnetic field which cuts the turns of the other coil, inducing a current in it. This induced current is also varying, and will therefore induce another current in the first coil. This reaction between two coupled circuits is called *mutual inductance*, and can be calculated and expressed in henrys. The symbol for mutual inductance is M. Two circuits thus joined are said to be *inductively coupled.*

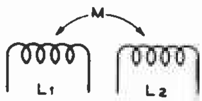


Figure 19

MUTUAL INDUCTANCE

The quantity M represents the mutual inductance between the two coils L_1 and L_2.

The magnitude of the mutual inductance depends on the shape and size of the two circuits, their positions and distances apart, and the permeability of the medium. The extent to which two inductors are coupled is expressed by a relation known as *coefficient of coupling.* This is the ratio of the mutual inductance actually present to the maximum possible value.

The formula for mutual inductance is $L = L_1 + L_2 + 2M$ when the coils are poled so that their fields add. When they are poled so that their fields buck, then $L = L_1 + L_2 - 2M$ (figure 19).

Inductors in Parallel Inductors in parallel are combined exactly as are resistors in parallel, provided that they are far enough apart so that the mutual inductance is entirely negligible.

Inductors in Series Inductors in series are additive, just as are resistors in series, again provided that no mutual inductance exists. In this case, the total inductance L is:

$$L = L_1 + L_2 + \ldots, \text{etc.}$$

Where mutual inductance does exist:

$$L = L_1 + L_2 + 2M$$

where,

M is the mutual inductance.

This latter expression assumes that the coils are connected in such a way that all flux linkages are in the same direction, i.e., additive. If this is not the case and the mutual linkages *subtract* from the self-linkages, the following formula holds:

$$L = L_1 + L_2 - 2M$$

where,

M is the mutual inductance.

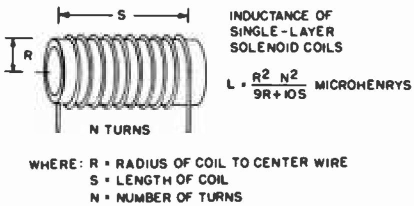


Figure 20

FORMULA FOR CALCULATING INDUCTANCE

Through the use of the equation and the sketch shown above the inductance of single-layer solenoid coils can be calculated with an accuracy of about one percent for the types of coils normally used in the hf and vhf range.

Core Material Ordinary magnetic cores cannot be used for radio frequencies because the *eddy current and hysteresis losses* in the core material become enormous as the frequency is increased. The principal use for conventional magnetic cores is in the audio-frequency range below approximately 15,000 Hertz, whereas at very low frequencies (50 to 60 Hertz) their use is mandatory if an appreciable value of inductance is desired.

An air-core inductor of only 1 henry inductance would be quite large in size, yet values as high as 500 henrys are commonly available in small iron-core chokes. The inductance of a coil with a magnetic core will vary with the amount of current (both a-c and d-c) which passes through the coil. For this reason, iron-core chokes that are used in power supplies have a certain inductance rating at a *predetermined value of direct current.*

The permeability of air does not change with flux density; so the inductance of iron-core coils often is made less dependent on flux density by making part of the magnetic path air, instead of utilizing a closed loop of iron. This incorporation of an *air gap* is necessary in many applications of iron-core coils, particularly where the coil carries a considerable d-c component. Because the permeability of air is so much lower than that of iron, the air gap need comprise only a small fraction of the magnetic circuit in order to provide a substantial proportion of the total reluctance.

Iron-Core Inductors at Radio Frequencies Iron-core inductors may be used at radio frequencies if the iron is in a very finely divided form, as in the case of the powdered-iron cores used in some types of r-f coils and i-f transformers. These cores are made of extremely small particles of iron. The particles are treated with an insulating material so that each particle will be insulated from the others, and the treated powder is molded with a binder into cores. Eddy current losses are greatly reduced, with the result that these special iron cores are entirely practical in circuits which operate up to 100 MHz in frequency.

2-5 RC and RL Transients

A voltage divider may be constructed as shown in figure 21. Kirchhoff's and Ohm's Laws hold for such a divider. This circuit is known as an *RC circuit.*

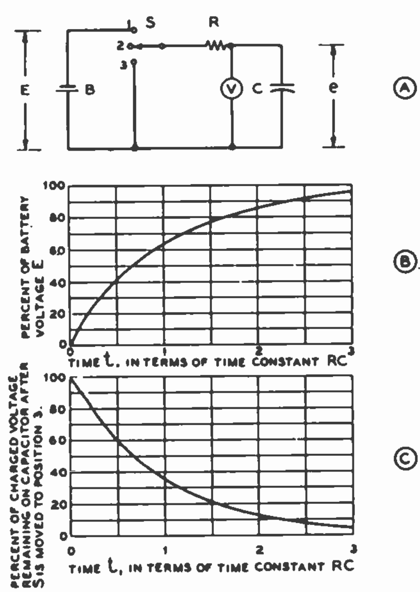


Figure 21

TIME CONSTANT OF AN RC CIRCUIT

Shown at (A) is the circuit upon which is based the curves of (B) and (C). (B) shows the rate at which capacitor C will charge from the instant at which switch S is placed in position 1. (C) shows the discharge curve of capacitor C from the instant at which switch S is placed in position 3.

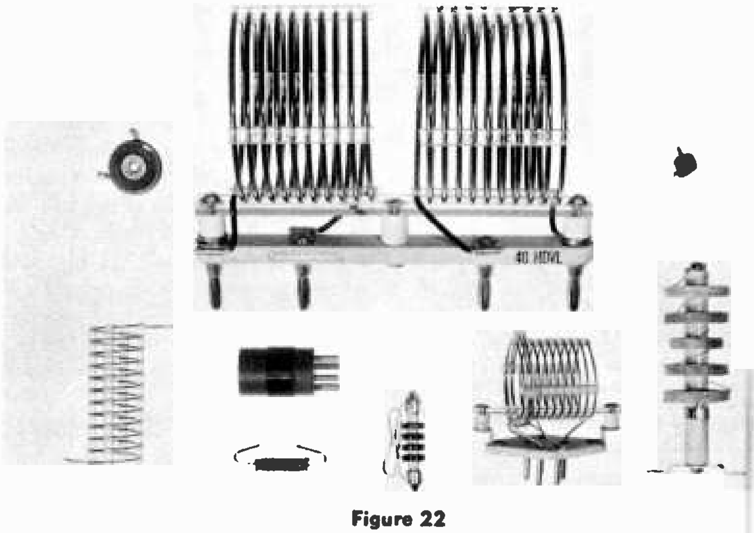


Figure 22

TYPICAL INDUCTANCES

The large inductance is a 1000-watt transmitting coil. To the right and left of this coil are small r-f chokes. Several varieties of low power capability coils are shown below, along with various types of r-f chokes intended for high-frequency operation.

Time Constant-RC and RL Circuits When switch S in figure 21 is placed in position 1, a voltmeter across capacitor C will indicate the manner in which the capacitor will become charged through the resistor R from battery B. If relatively large values are used for R and C, and if a vacuum-tube voltmeter which draws negligible current is used to measure the voltage (e), the rate of charge of the capacitor may actually be plotted with the aid of a stop watch.

Voltage Gradient It will be found that the voltage (e) will begin to rise rapidly from zero the instant the switch is closed. Then, as the capacitor begins to charge, the rate of change of voltage across the capacitor will be found to decrease, the charging taking place more and more slowly as capacitor voltage e approaches battery voltage E. Actually, it will be found that in any given interval a constant percentage of the remaining difference between e and E will be delivered to the capacitor as an increase in voltage. A voltage which changes in this manner is said to increase *logarithmically*, or follows an *exponential* curve.

Time Constant A mathematical analysis of the charging of a capacitor in this manner would show that the relationship between battery voltage E and the volt-

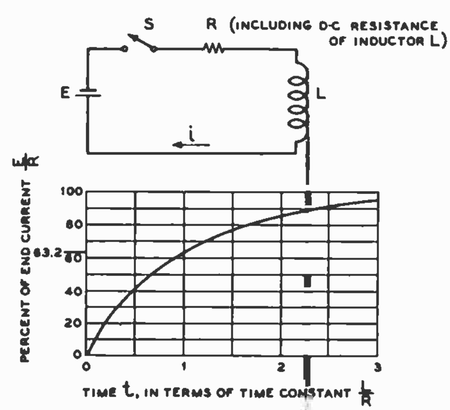


Figure 23

TIME CONSTANT OF AN RL CIRCUIT

Note that the time constant for the increase in current through an R L circuit is identical to the rate of increase in voltage across the capacitor in an R C circuit.

age across the capacitor (e) could be expressed in the following manner:

$$e = E\,(1 - \varepsilon^{-t/RC})$$

where e,E,R, and C have the values discussed above, $\varepsilon = 2.716$ (the base of Naperian or natural logarithms), and t represents the time which has elapsed since the closing of the switch. With t expressed in seconds, R and C may be expressed in farads and ohms, or R and C may be expressed in microfarads and megohms. The product RC is called the *time constant* of the circuit, and is expressed in seconds. As an example, if R is one megohm and C is one microfarad, the time constant RC will be equal to the product of the two, or one second.

When the elapsed time (t) is equal to the time constant of the RC network under consideration, the exponent of ε becomes -1. Now ε^{-1} is equal to $1/\varepsilon$, or $1/2.716$, which is 0.368. The quantity $(1-0.368)$ then is equal to 0.632. Expressed as percentage, the above means that the voltage across the capacitor will have increased to 63.2 percent of the battery voltage in an interval equal to the time constant or RC product of the circuit. Then, during the next period equal to the time constant of the RC combination, the voltage across the capacitor will have risen to 63.2 per cent of the remaining difference in voltage, or 86.5 per cent of the applied voltage (E).

RL Circuit In the case of a series combination of a resistor and an inductor, as shown in figure 23, the current through the combination follows a very similar law to that given above for the voltage appearing across the capacitor in an RC series circuit. The equation for the current through the combination is:

$$i = \frac{E}{R}\,(1-\varepsilon^{-t/RL})$$

where i represents the current at any instant through the series circuit, E represents the applied voltage, and R represents the total resistance of the resistor and the d-c resistance of the inductor in series. Thus the time constant of the RL circuit is L/R, with R expressed in ohms and L expressed in henrys.

Voltage Decay When the switch in figure 21 is moved to position 3 after the capacitor has been charged, the capacitor voltage will drop in the manner shown in figure 21-C. In this case the voltage across the capacitor will decrease to 36.8 percent of the initial voltage (will make 63.2 per cent of the total drop) in a period of time equal to the time constant of the RC circuit.

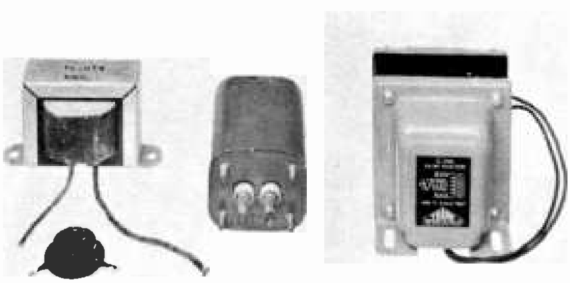


Figure 24

TYPICAL IRON-CORE INDUCTANCES

At the right is an upright mounting filter choke intended for use in low-powered transmitters and audio equipment. At the center is a hermetically sealed inductance for use under poor environmental conditions. To the left is an inexpensive receiving-type choke, with a small iron-core r-f choke directly in front of it.

CHAPTER THREE

Alternating-Current Circuits

The previous chapter has been devoted to a discussion of circuits and circuit elements upon which is impressed a current consisting of a flow of electrons in one direction. This type of unidirectional current flow is called direct current (abbreviated *d-c* or *d.c.*). Equally as important in radio and communications work and power practice is a type of current whose direction of electron flow reverses periodically. The reversal of flow may take place at a low rate, in the case of power systems, or it may take place millions of times per second, in the case of communications frequencies. This type of current flow is called *alternating current* (abbreviated *a-c* or *a.c.*).

3-1 Alternating Current

Frequency of an Alternating Current An alternating current is one whose amplitude of current flow periodically rises from zero to a maximum in one direction, decreases to zero, changes its direction, rises to maximum in the opposite direction, and decreases to zero again. This complete process, starting from zero, passing through two maximums in opposite directions, and returning to zero again, is called a *cycle.* The number of times per second that a current passes through the complete cycle is called the *frequency* of the current. One and one-quarter cycles of an alternating current wave are illustrated diagrammatically in figure 1.

Frequency Spectrum At present the usable frequency range for alternating electrical currents extends over the electromagnetic spectrum from about 15 cycles per second to perhaps 30,000,000,000 cycles per second. It is obviously cumbersome to use a frequency designation in c.p.s. for enormously high frequencies, so three common units which are multiples of one cycle per second were established and are still used by many engineers.

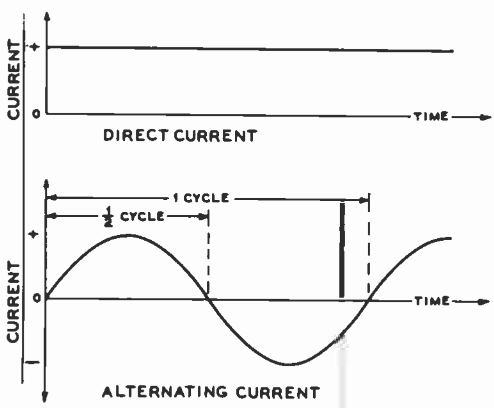


Figure 1

ALTERNATING CURRENT AND DIRECT CURRENT

Graphical comparison between unidirectional (direct) current and alternating current as plotted against time.

These units have been:

(1) the kilocycle (kc), 1000 c.p.s.
(2) The megacycle (Mc), 1,000,000 c.p.s. or 1000 kc.
(3) the kilomegacycle (kMc), 1,000,000,000 c.p.s. or 1000 Mc.

Used for some time in other countries, and recently adopted by the U. S. National Bureau of Standards, IEEE, and many other American organizations, the *Hertz* is the new unit of frequency measurement.

One *Hertz* is precisely defined as *one cycle per second* and is not to be confused with any other time base. Hertz is abbreviated as *Hz* (no period). The standard metric prefixes for *kilo, mega, giga,* etc. are used with the basic unit. Since "m" denotes "milli," capital "M" is used for mega, and small "k" is kilo. Thus megacycle becomes *megahertz* (MHz), kilocycle is *kilohertz* (kHz).

These newer units will be used throughout this Handbook. With easily handled units such as these we can classify the entire usable frequency range into frequency bands.

The frequencies falling between about 15 and 20,000 Hertz are called *audio* frequencies (abbreviated *a.f.*), since these frequencies are audible to the human ear when converted from electrical to acoustical signals by a speaker or headphone. Frequencies in the vicinity of 60 Hz also are called *power* frequencies, since they are commonly used to distribute electrical power to the consumer.

The frequencies falling between 10,000 c.p.s. (10 kHz) and 30,000,000,000 c.p.s. (30 GHz) are commonly called *radio* frequencies (abbreviated *r.f.*), since they are commonly used in radio communication and allied arts. The radio-frequency spectrum is often arbitrarily classified into seven frequency bands, each one of which is ten times as high in frequency as the one just below it in the spectrum (except for the vlf band at the bottom end of the spectrum). The present spectrum, with classifications, is given in the following table.

Frequency	*Classification*	*Abbrev.*
10 to 30 kHz	Very-low frequencies	vlf
30 to 300 kHz	Low frequencies	lf
300 to 3000 kHz	Medium frequencies	mf
3 to 30 MHz	High frequencies	hf
30 to 300 MHz	Very-high frequencies	vhf
300 to 3000 MHz	Ultrahigh frequencies	uhf
3 to 30 GHz	Superhigh frequencies	shf
30 to 300 GHz	Extremely high frequencies	ehf

Generation of Alternating Current Faraday discovered that if a conductor which forms part of a closed circuit is moved through a magnetic field so as to cut across the lines of force, a current will flow in the conductor. He also discovered that, when a conductor in a second closed circuit is brought near the first conductor and the current in the first one is varied, a current will flow in the second conductor. This effect is known as *induction,* and the currents so generated are *induced currents.* In the latter case it is the lines of force which are moving and cutting the second conductor, due to the varying current strength in the first conductor.

A current is induced in a conductor if there is a relative motion between the conductor and a magnetic field, its direction of flow depending on the direction of the relative motion between the conductor and the field, and its strength depends on the intensity of the field, the rate of cutting lines of force, and the number of turns in the conductor.

Alternators A machine that generates an alternating current is called an *alternator* or *a-c* generator. Such a machine in its basic form is shown in figure 2. It consists of two permanent magnets, the opposite poles of which face each other and are

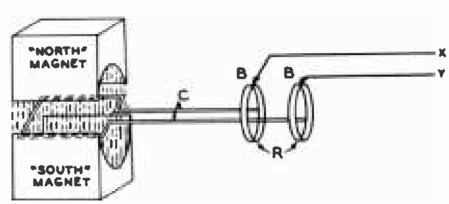


Figure 2

THE ALTERNATOR

Semi-schematic representation of the simplest form of the alternator.

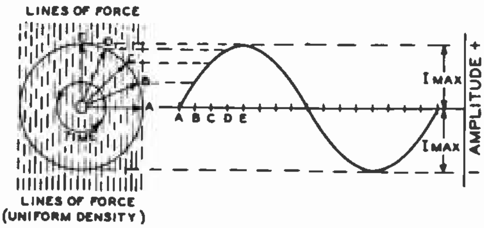


Figure 3

OUTPUT OF THE ALTERNATOR

Graph showing sine-wave output current of the alternator of figure 2.

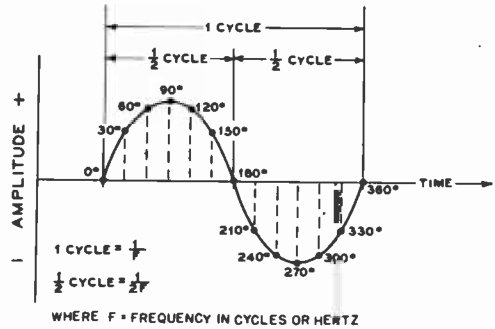


Figure 4

THE SINE WAVE

Illustrating one cycle of a sine wave. One complete cycle of alternation is broken up into 360 degrees. Then one-half cycle is 180 degrees, one-quarter cycle is 90 degrees, and so on down to the smallest division of the wave. A cosine wave has a shape identical to a sine wave but is shifted 90 degrees in phase — in other words the wave begins at full amplitude, the 90-degree point comes at zero amplitude, the 180-degree point comes at full amplitude in the opposite direction of current flow, etc.

machined so that they have a common radius. Between these two poles (north and south) a substantially constant magnetic field exists. If a conductor in the form of a loop (C) is suspended so that it can be freely rotated between the two poles, and if the opposite ends of conductor C are brought to collector rings, there will be a flow of alternating current when conductor C is rotated. This current flows out through the collector rings (R) and brushes (B) to the external circuit (X-Y).

The field intensity between the two pole pieces is substantially constant over the entire area of the pole face. However, when the conductor is moving parallel to the lines of force at the top or bottom of the pole faces, no lines are being cut. As the conductor moves on across the pole face it cuts more and more lines of force for each unit distance of travel, until it is cutting the maximum number of lines when opposite the center of the pole. Therefore, zero current is induced in the conductor at the instant it is midway between the two poles, and maximum current is induced when it is opposite the center of the pole face. After the conductor has rotated through 180° it can be seen that its position with respect to the pole pieces will be exactly opposite to that when it started. Hence, the second 180° of rotation will produce an alternation of current in the opposite direction to that of the first alternation.

The current does *not* increase directly as the angle of rotation, but rather as the *sine* of the angle; hence, such a current has the mathematical form of a *sine wave*. Although most electrical machinery does not produce a strictly pure sine curve, the departures are usually so slight that the assumption can be regarded as fact for most practical purposes. All that has been said in the foregoing paragraphs concerning alternating current also is applicable to alternating voltage.

The rotating arrow to the left in figure 3 represents a conductor rotating in a constant magnetic field of uniform density. The arrow also can be taken as a *vector* representing the strength of the magnetic field. This means that the length of the arrow is determined by the strength of the field (number of lines of force), which is constant. Now if the arrow is rotating at a constant rate (that is, with constant *angular velocity*), then the voltage developed across the conductor will be proportional to the rate at which it is cutting lines of force, which rate is proportional to the vertical distance between the tip of the arrow and the horizontal base line.

If EO is taken as unity, or a voltage of 1, then the voltage (vertical distance from tip of arrow to the horizontal base line) at point C for instance may be determined simply by referring to a table of sines and looking up the sine of the angle which the arrow makes with the horizontal.

When the arrow has traveled from point A to point E, it has traveled 90 degrees or one quarter cycle. The other three quadrants are not shown because their complementary or mirror relationship to the first quadrant is obvious.

It is important to note that time units are represented by *degrees* or quadrants. The fact that AB, BC, CD, and DE are equal chords (forming equal quadrants) simply means that the arrow (conductor or vector) is traveling at a constant speed, because these points on the radius represent the passage of equal units of time.

The whole picture can be represented in another way, and its derivation from the foregoing is shown in figure 3. The time base is represented by a straight line rather than by angular rotation. Points A, B, C, etc., represent the same units of time as before. When the voltage corresponding to each point is projected to the corresponding time unit, the familiar *sine curve* is the result.

The frequency of the generated voltage is proportional to the speed of rotation of the alternator, and to the number of magnetic poles in the field. Alternators may be built to produce radio frequencies up to 30 kHz, and some such machines are still used for low-frequency communication purposes. By means of multiple windings, three-phase output may be obtained from large industrial alternators.

Radian Notation From figure 1 we see that the value of an a-c wave varies continuously. It is often of importance to know the amplitude of the wave in terms of the total amplitude at any instant or at any time within the cycle. To be able to establish the instant in question we must be able to divide the cycle into parts. We could divide the cycle into eighths, hundredths, or any other ratio that suited our fancy. However, it is much more convenient mathematically to divide the cycle either into *electrical degrees* (360° represent one cycle) or into *radians*. A radian is an arc of a circle equal to the radius of the circle; hence there are 2π radians per cycle—or per circle (since there are π diameters per circumference, there are 2π radii).

Both radian notation and electrical-degree notation are used in discussions of alternating-current circuits. However, trigonometric tables are much more readily available in terms of degrees than radians, so the following simple conversions are useful.

$$2\pi \text{ radians} = 1 \text{ cycle} = 360^\circ$$

$$\pi \text{ radians} = 1/2 \text{ cycle} = 180^\circ$$

$$\frac{\pi}{2} \text{ radians} = 1/4 \text{ cycle} = 90^\circ$$

$$\frac{\pi}{3} \text{ radians} = 1/6 \text{ cycle} = 60^\circ$$

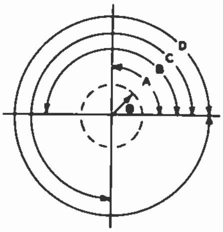
$$\frac{\pi}{4} \text{ radians} = 1/8 \text{ cycle} = 45^\circ$$

$$1 \text{ radian} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \text{cycle} = 57.3^\circ$$

When the conductor in the simple alternator of figure 2 has made one complete revolution it has generated one cycle and has rotated through 2π radians. The expression $2\pi f$ then represents the number of radians in one cycle multiplied by the number of cycles per second (the frequency) of the alternating voltage or current. The expression then represents the number of radians per second through which the conductor has rotated. Hence $2\pi f$ represents the angular velocity of the rotating conductor, or of the rotating vector, which represents any alternating current or voltage, expressed in radians per second.

In technical literature the expression $2\pi f$ is often replaced by ω, the lower-case Greek letter *omega*. Velocity multiplied by time gives the distance travelled, so $2\pi ft$ (or ωt) represents the angular distance through which the rotating conductor or the rotating vector has travelled since the reference time $t = 0$. In the case of a sine wave the reference time $t = 0$ represents the instant when the voltage or the current, whichever is under discussion, also is equal to zero.

Instantaneous Value of Voltage or Current The instantaneous voltage or current is proportional to the sine of the angle through which the rotating vector has travelled since reference time $t = 0$. Hence, when the peak value of the a-c wave amplitude (either voltage or current amplitude) is known, and the angle through which the rotating vector has



WHERE:
θ (THETA) = PHASE ANGLE = $2\pi FT$
A = $\frac{\pi}{2}$ RADIANS OR 90°
B = π RADIANS OR 180°
C = $\frac{3\pi}{2}$ RADIANS OR 270°
D = 2π RADIANS OR 360°
1 RADIAN = 57.324 DEGREES

Figure 5

ILLUSTRATING RADIAN NOTATION

The radian is a unit of phase angle, equal to 57.324 degrees. It is commonly used in mathematical relationships involving phase angles since such relationships are simplified when radian notation is used.

travelled is established, the amplitude of the wave at this instant can be determined through use of the following expression:

$$e = E_{max} \sin 2\pi f t$$

where,
- e equals the instantaneous voltage,
- E equals maximum crest value of voltage,
- f equals frequency in Hertz,
- t equals period of time which has elapsed since $t = 0$ (expressed as a fraction of one second).

The instantaneous current can be found from the same expression by substituting i for e and I_{max} for E_{max}.

It is often easier to visualize the process of determining the instantaneous amplitude by ignoring the frequency and considering only one cycle of the a-c wave. In this case, for a sine wave, the expression becomes:

$$e = E_{max} \sin \theta$$

where θ represents the angle through which the vector has rotated since time (and amplitude) were zero. As examples:

when $\theta = 30°$

$\sin \theta = 0.5$

so $e = 0.5\ E_{max}$

. . . .

when $\theta = 60°$

$\sin \theta = 0.866$

so $e = 0.866\ E_{max}$

. . . .

when $\theta = 90°$

$\sin \theta = 1.0$

so $e = E_{max}$

. . . .

when $\theta = 1$ radian

$\sin \theta = 0.8415$

so $e = 0.8415\ E_{max}$

Effective Value of an Alternating Current The instantaneous value of an alternating current or voltage varies continuously throughout the cycle, so some value of an a-c wave must be chosen to establish a relationship between the effectiveness of an a-c and a d-c voltage or current. The heating value of an alternating current has been chosen to establish the reference between the *effective* values of a.c. and d.c. Thus *an alternating current will have an effective value of 1 ampere when it produces the same heat in a resistor as does 1 ampere of direct current.*

The effective value is derived by taking the instantaneous values of current over a cycle of alternating current, squaring these values, taking an average of the squares, and then taking the square root of the average. By this procedure, the effective value becomes known as the *root mean square*, or rms, value. This is the value that is read on a-c voltmeters and a-c ammeters. The rms value is 70.7 percent of the peak or maximum instantaneous value (for sine waves only) and is expressed as follows:

$$E_{eff} \text{ or } E_{rms} = 0.707 \times E_{max}, \text{or}$$

$$I_{eff} \text{ or } I_{rms} = 0.707 \times I_{max}$$

The following relations are extremely useful in radio and power work:

$$E_{rms} = 0.707 \times E_{max}, \text{ and}$$

$$E_{max} = 1.414 \times E_{rms}$$

Rectified Alternating Current or Pulsating Direct Current If an alternating current is passed through a rectifier, it emerges in the form of a current of *varying amplitude* which flows in *one* direction only. Such a current is known as

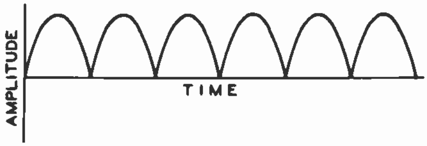


Figure 6

FULL-WAVE RECTIFIED SINE WAVE

Waveform obtained at the output of a full-wave rectifier being fed with a sine wave and having 100 per cent rectification efficiency. Each pulse has the same shape as one-half cycle of a sine wave. This type of current is known as pulsating direct current.

rectified a.c. or *pulsating d.c.* A typical wave form of a pulsating direct current as would be obtained from the output of a full-wave rectifier is shown in figure 6.

Measuring instruments designed for d-c operation will not read the peak or instantaneous maximum value of the pulsating d-c output from the rectifier; they will read only the *average value*. This can be explained by assuming that it could be possible to cut off some of the peaks of the waves, using the cutoff portions to fill in the spaces that are open, thereby obtaining an *average* d-c value. A milliammeter and voltmeter connected to the adjoining circuit, or across the output of the rectifier, will read this average value. It is related to *peak* value by the following expression:

$$E_{avg} = 0.636 \times E_{max}$$

It is thus seen that the average value is 63.6 percent of the peak value.

Relationship Between Peak, RMS, or Effective, and Average Values To summarize the three most significant values of an a-c sine wave: the peak value is equal to 1.41 times the rms or effective, and the rms value is equal to 0.707 times the peak value; the average value of a full-wave rectified a-c wave is 0.636 times the peak value, and the average value of a rectified wave is equal to 0.9 times the rms value.

$$\text{rms} = 0.707 \times \text{peak}$$

$$\text{average} = 0.636 \times \text{peak}$$

. . . .

$$\text{average} = 0.9 \times \text{rms}$$

$$\text{rms} = 1.11 \times \text{average}$$

. . . .

$$\text{peak} = 1.414 \times \text{rms}$$

. . . .

$$\text{peak} = 1.57 \times \text{average}$$

Applying Ohm's Law to Alternating Current Ohm's Law applies equally to direct or alternating current, *provided* the circuits under consideration are purely resistive, that is, circuits which have neither inductance (coils) nor capacitance (capacitors). Problems which involve tube filaments, dropping resistors, electric lamps, heaters or similar resistive devices can be solved with Ohm's Law, regardless of whether the current is direct or alternating. When a capacitor or coil is made a part of the circuit, a property common to either, called *reactance,* must be taken into consideration. Ohm's Law still applies to a-c circuits containing reactance, but additional considerations are involved; these will be discussed in a later paragraph.

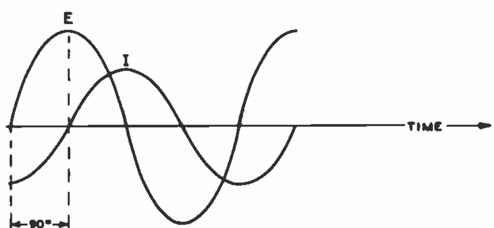


Figure 7

LAGGING PHASE ANGLE

Showing the manner in which the current lags the voltage in an a-c circuit containing pure inductance only. The lag is equal to one-quarter cycle or 90 degrees.

Inductive Reactance As was stated in Chapter Two, when a changing current flows through an inductor a back- or counterelectromotive force is developed, opposing any change in the initial current. This property of an inductor causes it to offer opposition or *impedance* to a change in current. The measure of impedance offered by an inductor to an alternating current of a given frequency is known as its *inductive* *reactance.* This is expressed as X_L and is shown in figure 7.

$$X_L = 2\pi f L$$

where,

X_L equals inductive reactance expressed in ohms,
π equals 3.1416 ($2\pi = 6.283$),
f equals frequency in Hertz,
L equals inductance in henrys.

Inductive Reactance at Radio Frequencies It is very often necessary to compute inductive reactance at radio frequencies. The same formula may be used, but to make it less cumbersome the inductance is expressed in *millihenrys* and the frequency in *kilohertz.* For higher frequencies and smaller values of inductance, frequency is expressed in *megahertz* and inductance in *microhenrys.* The basic equation need not be changed, since the multiplying factors for inductance and frequency appear in numerator and denominator, and hence are cancelled out. However, it is not possible in the same equation to express L in millihenrys and f in Hertz without conversion factors.

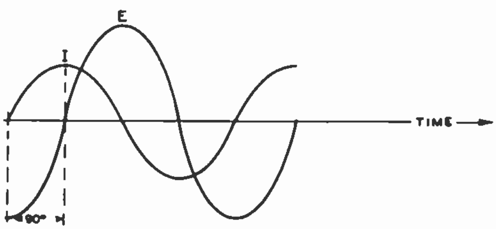


Figure 8

LEADING PHASE ANGLE

Showing the manner in which the current leads the voltage in an a-c circuit containing pure capacitance only. The lead is equal to one-quarter cycle or 90 degrees.

Capacitive Reactance It has been explained that inductive reactance is the measure of the ability of an inductor to offer impedance to the flow of an alternating current. Capacitors have a similar property although in this case the opposition is to any change in the voltage across the capacitor. This property is called *capacitive reactance* and is expressed as follows:

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi f C}$$

where,

X_C equals capacitive reactance in ohms,
π equals 3.1416,
f equals frequency in Hertz,
C equals capacitance in farads.

Capacitive Reactance at Radio Frequencies Here again, as in the case of inductive reactance, the units of capacitance and frequency can be converted into smaller units for practical problems encountered in radio work. The equation may be written:

$$X_C = \frac{1,000,000}{2\pi f C}$$

where,

f equals frequency in megahertz,
C equals capacitance in picofarads.

In the audio range it is often convenient to express frequency (f) in *Hertz* and capacitance (C) in *microfarads,* in which event the same formula applies.

Phase When an alternating current flows through a purely resistive circuit, it will be found that the current will go through maximum and minimum in perfect step with the voltage. In this case the current is said to be in step, or *in phase* with the voltage. For this reason, Ohm's Law will apply equally well for *a.c.* or *d.c.* where pure resistances are concerned, provided that the same values of the wave (either peak or rms) for both voltage and current are used in the calculations.

However, in calculations involving alternating currents the voltage and current are not necessarily in phase. The current through the circuit may lag behind the voltage, in which case the current is said to have *lagging* phase. Lagging phase is caused by inductive reactance. If the current reaches its maximum value ahead of the voltage (figure 8) the current is said to have a *leading* phase. A leading phase angle is caused by capacitive reactance.

In an electrical circuit containing reactance only, the current will either lead or lag the voltage by 90°. If the circuit contains inductive reactance only, the current will lag the voltage by 90°. If only capacitive reactance is in the circuit, the current will lead the voltage by 90°.

Reactances in Combination Inductive and capacitive reactance have exactly opposite effects on the phase relation between current and voltage in a circuit. Hence when they are used in combination their effects tend to neutralize. The combined effect of a capacitive and an inductive reactance is often called the *net reactance* of a circuit. The net reactance (X) is found by subtracting the capacitive reactance from the inductive reactance ($X = X_L - X_C$).

The result of such a combination of pure reactances may be either positive, in which case the positive reactance is greater so that the net reactance is inductive, or it may be negative in which case the capacitive reactance is greater so that the net reactance is capacitive. The net reactance may also be zero in which case the circuit is said to be *resonant*. The condition of resonance will be discussed in a later section. Note that inductive reactance is always taken as being positive while capacitive reactance is always taken as being negative.

Impedance; Circuits Containing Reactance and Resistance Pure reactances introduce a phase angle of 90° between voltage and current; pure resistance introduces no phase shift between voltage and current. Hence we cannot add a reactance and a resistance directly. When a reactance and a resistance are used in

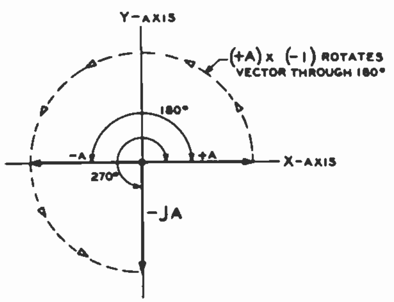


Figure 9

Operation on the vector (+A) by the quantity (−1) causes vector to rotate through 180 degrees.

combination the resulting phase angle of current flow with respect to the impressed voltage lies somewhere between plus or minus 90° and 0° depending on the relative magnitudes of the reactance and the resistance.

The term *impedance* is a general term which can be applied to any electrical entity which impedes the flow of current. Hence the term may be used to designate a resistance, a pure reactance, or a complex combination of both reactance and resistance. The designation for impedance is Z. An impedance must be defined in such a manner that both its magnitude and its phase angle are established. The designation may be accomplished in either of two ways—one of which is convertible into the other by simple mathematical operations.

The *j* Operator The first method of designating an impedance is actually to specify both the resistive and the reactive component in the form $R + jX$. In this form R represents the resistive component in ohms and X represents the reactive component. The j merely means that the X component is reactive and thus cannot be added directly to the R component. Plus jX means that the reactance is positive or inductive, while if minus jX were given it would mean that the reactive component was negative or capacitive.

In figure 9 we have a vector ($+A$) lying along the positive X-axis of the usual X-Y coordinate system. If this vector is multiplied by the quantity (-1), it becomes ($-A$) and its position now lies along the X-axis in the negative direction. The *operator* (-1) has caused the vector to rotate through an angle of 180 degrees. Since (-1) is equal to ($\sqrt{-1} \times \sqrt{-1}$), the same result may be obtained by operating on the vector with the operator ($\sqrt{-1} \times \sqrt{-1}$). However if the vector is operated on but once by the operator ($\sqrt{-1}$), it is caused to rotate only 90 degrees (figure 10). Thus the operator ($\sqrt{-1}$) rotates a vector by 90 degrees. For convenience, this operator is called the *j operator*. In like fashion, the operator ($-j$) rotates the vector of figure 9 through an angle of 270 degrees, so that the resulting vector ($-jA$) falls on the ($-Y$) axis of the coordinate system.

Polar Notation The second method of representing an impedance is to specify its absolute magnitude and the phase angle of current with respect to voltage, in the form $Z \angle \theta$. Figure 11 shows graphically the relationship between the two common ways of representing an impedance.

The construction of figure 11 is called an *impedance diagram.* Through the use of such a diagram we can add graphically a resistance and a reactance to obtain a value for the resulting impedance in the scalar form. With zero at the origin, resistances are plotted to the right, positive values of reactance (inductive) in the upward direction, and negative values of reactance (capacitive) in the downward direction.

Note that the resistance and reactance are drawn as the two sides of a right triangle, with the hypotenuse representing the resulting impedance. Hence it is possible to determine mathematically the value of a resultant impedance through the familiar right-triangle relationship—*the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides:*

$$Z^2 = R^2 + X^2$$

or,

$$|Z| = \sqrt{R^2 + X^2}$$

Note also that the angle θ included between R and Z can be determined from any of the following trigonometric relationships:

$$\sin \theta = \frac{X}{|Z|}$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{R}{|Z|}$$

$$\tan \theta = \frac{X}{R}$$

One common problem is that of determining the *scalar magnitude* of the impedance, $|Z|$, and the phase angle θ, when resistance and reactance are known; hence, of converting from the $Z = R + jX$ to the $|Z| \angle \theta$ form. In this case we use two of the expressions just given:

$$|Z| = \sqrt{R^2 + X^2}$$

$$\tan \theta = \frac{X}{R}, \text{ (or } \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{X}{R}\text{)}$$

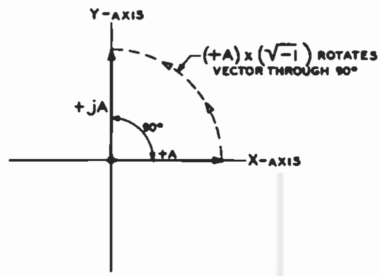


Figure 10

Operation on the vector (+A) by the quantity (j) causes vector to rotate through 90 degrees.

The inverse problem, that of converting from the $|Z| \angle \theta$ to the $R + jX$ form is done with the following relationships, both of which are obtainable by simple division from the trigonometric expressions just given for determining the angle θ:

$$R = |Z| \cos \theta$$

$$jX = |Z|\, j \sin \theta$$

By simple addition these two expressions may be combined to give the relationship between the two most common methods of indicating an impedance:

$$R + jX = |Z| (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta)$$

In the case of impedance, resistance, or reactance, the unit of measurement is the

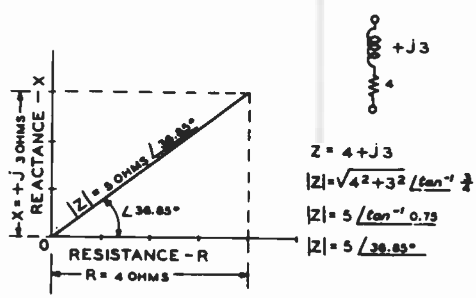


Figure 11

THE IMPEDANCE TRIANGLE

Showing the graphical construction of a triangle for obtaining the net (scalar) impedance resulting from the connection of a resistance and a reactance in series. Shown also alongside is the alternative mathematical procedure for obtaining the values associated with the triangle.

ohm; hence, the ohm may be thought of as a unit of *opposition to current flow,* without reference to the relative phase angle between the applied voltage and the current which flows.

Further, since both capacitive and inductive reactance are functions of frequency, impedance will vary with frequency. Figure 12 shows the manner in which $|Z|$ will vary with frequency in an *RL* series circuit and in an *RC* series circuit.

Series RLC Circuits In a series circuit containing *R, L,* and *C,* the impedance is determined as discussed before except that the reactive component in the expressions defines the net reactance—that is, the difference between X_L and X_C. Hence $(X_L - X_C)$ may be substituted for X in the equations. Thus:

$$|Z| = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{(X_L - X_C)}{R}$$

A series *RLC* circuit thus may present an impedance which is capacitively reactive if the net reactance is capacitive, inductively reactive if the net reactance is inductive, or resistive if the capacitive and inductive reactances are equal.

Addition of Complex Quantities The addition of complex quantities (for example, impedances in series) is quite simple if the quantities are in the rectangular form. If they are in the polar form they only can be added graphically, unless they are converted to the rectangular form by the relationships previously given. As an example of the addition of complex quantities in the rectangular form, the equation for the addition impedance is:

$$(R_1 + jX_1) + (R_2 + jX_2) = (R_1 + R_2) + j(X_1 + X_2)$$

For example if we wish to add the impedances $(10 + j50)$ and $(20 - j30)$ we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}(10 + j50) &+ (20 - j30) \\ &= (10 + 20) + j[50 + (-30)] \\ &= 30 + j(50 - 30) \\ &= 30 + j20\end{aligned}$$

Multiplication and Division of Complex Quantities It is often necessary in solving certain types of circuits to multiply or divide two complex quantities. It is a much simpler mathematical operation to multiply or divide complex quantities if they are expressed in the polar form. Hence if they are given in the rectangular form they should be converted to the polar form before multiplication or division is begun. Then the multiplication is accomplished by multiplying the $|Z|$ terms together and *adding* algebraically the $\angle \theta$ terms, as:

$$(|Z_1| \angle\theta_1)\ (|Z_2| \angle\theta_2) = |Z_1|\,|Z_2|\ (\angle\theta_1 + \angle\theta_2)$$

For example, suppose that the two impedances $|20| \angle 43°$ and $|32| \angle -23°$ are to be multiplied. Then:

$$\begin{aligned}(|20| \angle 43°)\ (|32| \angle -23°) &= |20 \cdot 32|\ (\angle 43° + \angle -23°) \\ &= 640 \angle 20°\end{aligned}$$

Division is accomplished by dividing the denominator into the numerator, and *subtracting* the angle of the denominator from that of the numerator, as:

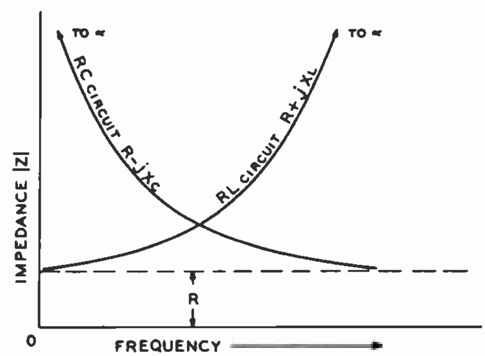


Figure 12

IMPEDANCE—FREQUENCY GRAPH FOR RL AND RC CIRCUITS

The impedance of an RC circuit approaches infinity as the frequency approaches zero (d.c.), while the impedance of a series RL circuit approaches infinity as the frequency approaches infinity. The impedance of an RC circuit approaches the impedance of the series resistor as the frequency approaches infinity, while the impedance of a series RL circuit approaches the resistance as the frequency approaches zero.

$$\frac{|Z_1|\angle\theta_1}{|Z_2|\angle\theta_2} = \frac{|Z_1|}{|Z_2|}(\angle\theta_1 - \angle\theta_2)$$

For example, suppose that an impedance of $|50| \angle 67°$ is to be divided by an impedance of $|10| \angle 45°$. Then:

$$\frac{|50|\angle 67°}{|10|\angle 45°} = \frac{|50|}{|10|}(\angle 67° - \angle 45°) = |5|(\angle 22°)$$

Ohm's Law for Complex Quantities The simple form of Ohm's Law used for d-c circuits may be stated in a more general form for application to a-c circuits involving either complex quantities or simple resistive elements. The form is:

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

in which, in the general case, I, E, and Z are complex (vector) quantities. In the simple case where the impedance is a pure resistance with an a-c voltage applied, the equation simplifies to the familiar $I = E/R$. In any case the applied voltage may be expressed either as peak, rms, or average; the resulting current always will be in the same type used to define the voltage.

In the more general case vector algebra must be used to solve the equation. And, since either division or multiplication is involved, the complex quantities should be expressed in the polar form. As an example, take the case of the series circuit shown in figure 13 with 100 volts applied. The impedance of the series circuit can best be obtained first in the rectangular form, as:

$$200 + j(100 - 300) = 200 - j200$$

Now, to obtain the current we must convert this impedance to the polar form.

$$|Z| = \sqrt{200^2 + (-200)^2}$$
$$= \sqrt{40{,}000 + 40{,}000}$$
$$= \sqrt{80{,}000}$$
$$= 282\ \Omega$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{X}{R} = \tan^{-1}\frac{-200}{200} = \tan^{-1}(-1)$$
$$= -45°$$

Therefore, $Z = 282 \angle -45°$

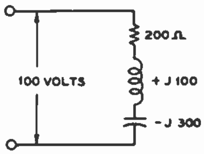


Figure 13

SERIES RLC CIRCUIT

Note that in a series circuit the resulting impedance takes the sign of the largest reactance in the series combination.

Where a slide rule is being used to make the computations, the impedance may be found without any addition or subtraction operations by finding the angle θ first, and then using the trigonometric equation below for obtaining the impedance. Thus:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{X}{R} = \tan^{-1}\frac{-200}{200} = \tan^{-1}(-1)$$
$$= -45°.$$

Then, Z equals $\dfrac{R}{\cos\theta}$

and $\cos -45° = 0.707$

$$|Z| = \frac{200}{0.707} = 282 \text{ ohms}$$

Since the applied voltage will be the reference for the currents and voltages within the circuit, we may define it as having a zero phase angle: $E = 100 \angle 0°$. Then:

$$I = \frac{100 \angle 0°}{282 \angle -45°} = 0.354 \angle 0° - (-45°)$$
$$= 0.354 \angle 45° \text{ amperes}$$

This same current must flow through all three elements of the circuit, since they are in series and the current through one must already have passed through the other two. Hence the voltage drop across the resistor (whose phase angle of course is 0°) is:

$$E = IR$$
$$E = (0.354 \angle 45°)(200 \angle 0°)$$
$$= 70.8 \angle 45° \text{ volts}$$

The voltage drop across the inductive reactance is:

$$E = IX_L$$
$$E = (0.354 \angle 45°)\ (100 \angle 90°)$$
$$= 35.4 \angle 135° \text{ volts}$$

Similarly, the voltage drop across the capacitive reactance is:

$$E = IX_C$$
$$E = (0.354 \angle 45°)\ (300 \angle -90°)$$
$$= 106.2 \angle -45°$$

Note that the voltage drop across the capacitive reactance is greater than the supply voltage. This condition often occurs in a series *RLC* circuit, and is explained by the fact that the drop across the capacitive reactance is cancelled to a lesser or greater extent by the drop across the inductive reactance.

It is often desirable in a problem such as the above to check the validity of the answer by adding vectorially the voltage drops across the components of the series circuit to make sure that they add up to the supply voltage — or to use the terminology of Kirchhoff's Second Law, to make sure that the voltage drops across all elements of the circuit, including the source taken as negative, is equal to zero.

In the general case of the addition of a number of voltage vectors in series it is best to resolve the voltages into their in-phase and out-of-phase components with respect to the supply voltage. Then these components may be added directly. Hence:

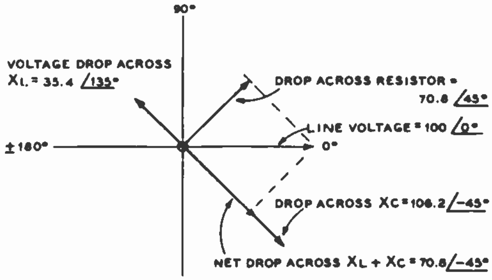


Figure 14

Graphical construction of the voltage drops associated with the series RLC circuit of figure 13.

$$E_R = 70.8 \angle 45°$$
$$= 70.8\ (\cos 45° + j \sin 45°)$$
$$= 70.8\ (0.707 + j0.707)$$
$$= 50 + j50$$

. . . .

$$E_L = 35.4 \angle 135°$$
$$= 35.4\ (\cos 135° + j \sin 135°)$$
$$= 35.4\ (-0.707 + j0.707)$$
$$= -25 + j25$$

. . . .

$$E_C = 106.2 \angle 45°$$
$$= 106.2\ (\cos -45° + j \sin -45°)$$
$$= 106.2\ (0.707 - j0.707)$$
$$= 75 - j75$$

. . . .

$$E_R + E_L + E_C = (50 + j50) + (-25 + j25) + (75 - j75)$$
$$= (50 - 25 + 75) + j(50 + 25 - 75)$$
$$E_R + E_L + E_C = 100 + j0$$
$$= 100 \angle 0°,$$

which is equal to the supply voltage.

Checking by Construction on the Complex Plane It is frequently desirable to check computations involving complex quantities by constructing vectors representing the quantities on the complex plane. Fig. 14 shows such a construction for the quantities of the problem just completed. Note that the answer to the problem may be checked by constructing a parallelogram with the voltage drop across the resistor as one side and the net voltage drop across the capacitor plus the inductor (these may be added algebraically as they are 180° out of phase) as the adjacent side. The vector sum of these two voltages, which is represented by the diagonal of the parallelogram, is equal to the supply voltage of 100 volts at zero phase angle.

Resistance and Reactance in Parallel In a series circuit, such as just discussed, the current through all the elements which go to make up the series circuit is the same. But the voltage drops across each of the components are, in general, different from one another. Conversely, in a parallel *RLC* or *RX* circuit the voltage is, obviously, the same across each of the elements. But the currents through each of the elements are usually different.

There are many ways of solving a problem involving paralleled resistance and reactance; several of these ways will be described. In general, it may be said that the impedance of a number of elements in parallel is solved using the same relations as are used for solving resistors in parallel, except that complex quantities are employed. The basic relation is:

$$\frac{1}{Z_{Total}} = \frac{1}{Z_1} + \frac{1}{Z_2} + \frac{1}{Z_3} + \ldots\ldots,$$

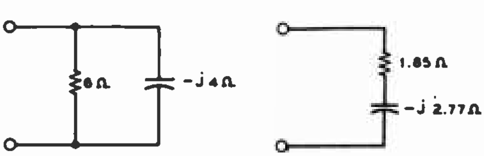
or when only two impedances are involved:

$$Z_{Total} = \frac{Z_1 Z_2}{Z_1 + Z_2}$$

As an example, using the two-impedance relation, take the simple case, illustrated in figure 15, of a resistance of 6 ohms in parallel with a capacitive reactance of 4 ohms. To simplify the first step in the computation it is best to put the impedances in the polar form for the numerator, since multiplication is involved, and in the rectangular form for the addition in the denominator.

$$Z_{Total} = \frac{(6\angle 0^\circ)\ (4\angle -90^\circ)}{6 - j4}$$

$$= \frac{24\angle -90^\circ}{6 - j4}$$



PARALLEL CIRCUIT EQUIVALENT SERIES CIRCUIT

Figure 15

THE EQUIVALENT SERIES CIRCUIT

Showing a parallel RC circuit and the equivalent series RC circuit which represents the same net impedance as the parallel circuit.

Then the denominator is changed to the polar form for the division operation:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{-4}{6} = \tan^{-1} -0.667 = -33.7^\circ$$

$$|Z| = \frac{6}{\cos -33.7^\circ} = \frac{6}{0.832} = 7.21 \text{ ohms}$$

$$6 - j4 = 7.21\angle -33.7^\circ$$

Then:

$$Z_{Total} = \frac{24\angle -90^\circ}{7.21\angle -33.7^\circ} = 3.33\angle -56.3^\circ$$

$$= 3.33\ (\cos -56.3^\circ + j \sin -56.3^\circ)$$

$$= 3.33\ [0.5548 + j\ (-0.832)]$$

$$= 1.85 - j\,2.77$$

Equivalent Series Circuit Through the series of operations in the previous paragraph we have converted a circuit composed of two impedances in parallel into an ***equivalent series circuit*** composed of impedances in series. An equivalent series circuit is one which, as far as the terminals are concerned, acts identically to the original parallel circuit; the current through the circuit and the power dissipation of the resistive elements are the same for a given voltage at the specified frequency.

We can check the equivalent series circuit of figure 15 with respect to the original circuit by assuming that one volt a-c (at the frequency where the capacitive reactance in the parallel circuit is 4 ohms) is applied to the terminals of both the series and parallel circuits.

In the parallel circuit the current through the resistor will be ⅙ ampere (0.166 amp) while the current through the capacitor will be j ¼ ampere ($+ j$ 0.25 amp). The total current will be the sum of these two currents, or $0.166 + j\,0.25$ amp. Adding these vectorially we obtain:

$$|I| = \sqrt{0.166^2 + 0.25^2} = \sqrt{0.09}$$
$$= 0.3 \text{ amp.}$$

The dissipation in the resistor will be $1^2/6 = 0.166$ watts.

In the case of the equivalent series circuit the current will be:

$$|I| = \frac{E}{|Z|} = \frac{1}{3.33} = 0.3 \text{ amp}$$

And the dissipation in the resistor will be:

$$W = I^2R = 0.3^2 \times 1.85$$
$$= 0.09 \times 1.85$$
$$= 0.166 \text{ watts}$$

So we see that the equivalent series circuit checks exactly with the original parallel circuit.

Parallel RLC Circuits In solving a more complicated circuit made up of more than two impedances in parallel we may elect to use either of two methods of solution. These methods are called the *admittance* method and the *assumed-voltage* method. However, the two methods are equivalent since both use the sum-of-reciprocals equation:

$$\frac{1}{Z_{Total}} = \frac{1}{Z_1} + \frac{1}{Z_2} + \frac{1}{Z_3} \ldots\ldots$$

In the admittance method we use the relation $Y = 1/Z$, where $Y = G + jB$; Y is called the *admittance*, defined above, G is the *conductance* or R/Z^2 and B is the *susceptance or* $-X/Z^2$. Then $Y_{total} = 1/Z_{total} = Y_1 + Y_2 + Y_3 \ldots$. In the assumed-voltage method we multiply both sides of the equation above by E, the assumed voltage, and add the currents, as:

$$\frac{E}{Z_{Total}} = \frac{E}{Z_1} + \frac{E}{Z_2} + \frac{E}{Z_3} \ldots = I_{z_1} + I_{z_2} + I_{z_3} \ldots$$

Then the impedance of the parallel combination may be determined from the relation:

$$Z_{Total} = E/I_{Z\,Total}$$

A-C Voltage Dividers Voltage dividers for use with alternating current are quite similar to d-c voltage dividers. However, since capacitors and inductors as well as resistors oppose the flow of a-c current, voltage dividers for alternating voltages may take any of the configurations shown in figure 16.

Since the impedances within each divider are of the same type, the output voltage is in phase with the input voltage. By using combinations of different types of impedances, the phase angle of the output may be shifted in relation to the input phase angle at the same time the amplitude is reduced. Several dividers of this type are shown in figure 17. Note that the ratio of output voltage is equal to the ratio of the output impedance to the total divider impedance. This relationship is true only if negligible current is drawn by a load on the output terminals.

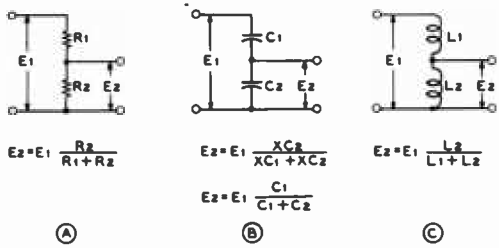


Figure 16

SIMPLE A-C VOLTAGE DIVIDERS

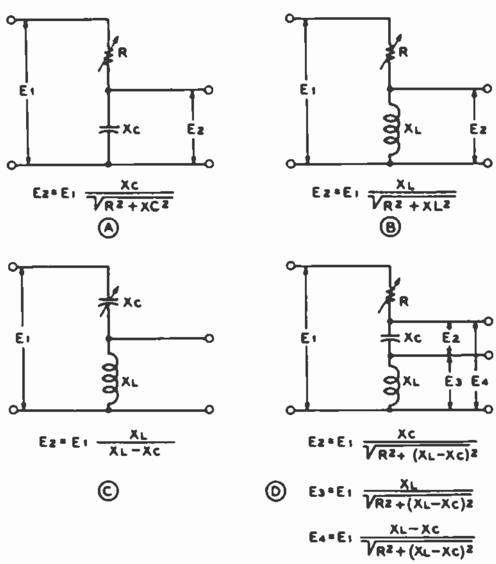


Figure 17

COMPLEX A-C VOLTAGE DIVIDERS

3-2 Resonant Circuits

A series circuit such as shown in figure 18 is said to be in *resonance* when the applied frequency is such that the capacitive reactance is exactly balanced by the inductive reactance. At this frequency the two reactances will cancel in their effects, and the impedance of the circuit will be at a minimum so that maximum current will flow. In fact, as shown in figure 19 the net impedance of a series circuit at resonance is equal to the resistance which remains in the circuit after the reactances have been cancelled.

Resonant Frequency Some resistance is always present in a circuit because it is possessed in some degree by both the inductor and the capacitor. If the frequency of the alternator E is varied from nearly zero to some high frequency, there will be one particular frequency at which the inductive reactance and capacitive reactance will be equal. This is known as the *resonant frequency*, and in a series circuit it is the frequency at which the circuit current will be a maximum. Such series-resonant circuits are chiefly used when it is desirable to allow a certain frequency to pass through the circuit (low impedance to this frequency), while at the same time the circuit is made to offer considerable opposition to currents of other frequencies.

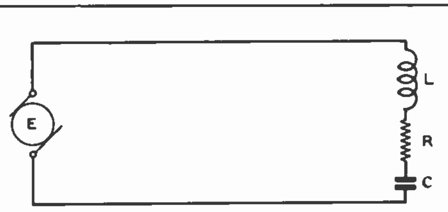


Figure 18

SERIES-RESONANT CIRCUIT

If the values of inductance and capacitance both are fixed, there will be only one resonant frequency.

If both the inductance and capacitance are made variable, the circuit may then be changed or *tuned*, so that a number of combinations of inductance and capacitance can resonate at the same frequency. This can be more easily understood when one considers that inductive reactance and capacitive reactance change in opposite directions as the frequency is varied. For example, if the frequency were to remain constant and the values of inductance and capacitance were then changed, the following combinations would have equal *reactance:*

Frequency is constant at 60 Hz.

L is expressed in henrys.

C is expressed in microfarads (.000001 farad.)

L	X_L	C	X_C
.265	100	26.5	100
2.65	1000	2.65	1000
26.5	10,000	.265	10,000
265.00	100,000	.0265	100,000
2,650.00	1,000,000	.00265	1,000,000

Frequency of Resonance From the formula for resonance, $2\pi fL = 1/2\pi fC$, the resonant frequency is determined:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

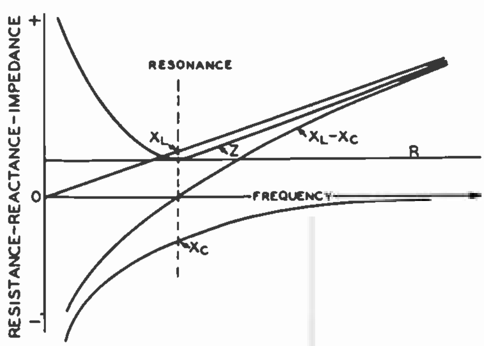


Figure 19

IMPEDANCE OF A SERIES-RESONANT CIRCUIT

Showing the variation in reactance of the separate elements and in the net impedance of a series resonant circuit (such as figure 18) with changing frequency. The vertical line is drawn at the point of resonance ($X_L - X_C = 0$) in the series circuit.

where,

f equals frequency in Hertz,
L equals inductance in henrys,
C equals capacitance in farads.

It is more convenient to express L and C in smaller units, especially in making radio-frequency calculations; f can also be expressed in MHz or kHz. A very useful group of such formulas is:

$$f^2 = \frac{25{,}330}{LC} \text{ or } L = \frac{25{,}330}{f^2C} \text{ or } C = \frac{25{,}330}{f^2L}$$

where,

L equals inductance in microhenrys,
f equals frequency in MHz,
C equals capacitance in picofarads.

Impedance of Series Resonant Circuits The impedance across the terminals of a series-resonant circuit (figure 18) is:

$$Z = \sqrt{r^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$$

where,

Z equals impedance in ohms,
r equals resistance in ohms,
X_C equals capacitive reactance in ohms,
X_L equals inductive reactance in ohms.

From this equation, it can be seen that the impedance is equal to the vector sum of the circuit resistance and the *difference* between the two reactances. Since at the resonant frequency X_L equals X_C, the difference between them (figure 19) is zero, so that at resonance the impedance is simply equal to the resistance of the circuit; therefore, because the resistance of most normal radio-frequency circuits is of a very low order, the impedance is also low.

At frequencies higher and lower than the resonant frequency, the difference between the reactances will be a definite quantity and will add with the resistance to make the impedance higher and higher as the circuit is tuned off the resonant frequency.

If X_C should be greater than X_L, then the term $(X_L - X_C)$ will give a negative number. However, when the difference is squared the product is always positive. This means that the smaller reactance is subtracted from the larger, regardless of whether it be capacitive or inductive, and the difference is squared.

Current and Voltage in Series-Resonant Circuits Formulas for calculating currents and voltages in a series-resonant circuit are similar to those of Ohm's Law.

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}, \quad E = IZ$$

The complete equations are:

$$I = \frac{E}{\sqrt{r^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}}$$

$$E = I\sqrt{r^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$$

Inspection of the above formulas will show the following to apply to series-resonant circuits: When the impedance is low, the current will be high; conversely, when the impedance is high, the current will be low.

Since it is known that the impedance will be very low at the resonant frequency, it follows that the current will be a maximum at this point. If a graph is plotted of the

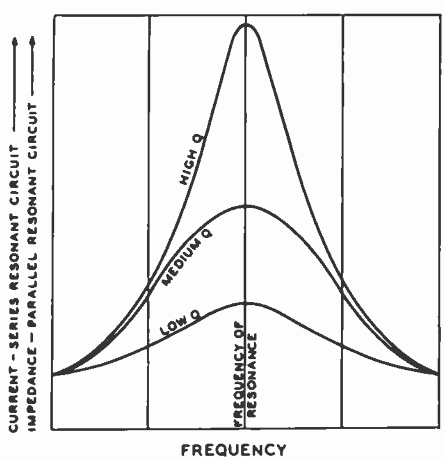


Figure 20

RESONANCE CURVE

Showing the increase in impedance at resonance for a parallel-resonant circuit, and similarly, the increase in current at resonance for a series-resonant circuit. The sharpness of resonance is determined by the Q of the circuit, as illustrated by a comparison between the three curves.

current against the frequency either side of resonance, the resultant curve becomes what is known as a *resonance curve*. Such a curve is shown in figure 20, the frequency being plotted against *current* in the series-resonant circuit.

Several factors will have an effect on the shape of this resonance curve, of which resistance and L-to-C ratio are the important considerations. The lower curves in figure 20 show the effect of adding increasing values of resistance to the circuit. It will be seen that the peaks become less and less prominent as the resistance is increased; thus, it can be said that the *selectivity* of the circuit is thereby *decreased*. Selectivity in this case can be defined as the ability of a circuit to discriminate against frequencies adjacent to (both above and below) the resonant frequency.

Voltage Across Coil and Capacitor in Series Circuit Because the a-c or r-f voltage across a coil and capacitor is proportional to the reactance (for a given current), the actual voltages across the coil and across the capacitor may be many times greater than the *terminal* voltage of the circuit. At resonance, the voltage across the coil (or the capacitor) is Q times the applied voltage. Since the Q (or *merit factor*) of a series circuit can be in the neighborhood of 100 or more, the voltage across the capacitor, for example, may be high enough to cause flashover, even though the applied voltage is of a value considerably below that at which the capacitor is rated.

Circuit Q — Sharpness of Resonance An extremely important property of a capacitor or an inductor is its *factor-of-merit*, more generally called its Q. It is this factor, Q, which primarily determines the sharpness of resonance of a tuned circuit. This factor can be expressed as the ratio of the reactance to the resistance, as follows:

$$Q = \frac{2\pi fL}{R}$$

where,

R equals total resistance.

Skin Effect The actual resistance in a wire or an inductor can be far greater than the d-c value when the coil is used in a radio-frequency circuit; this is because the current does not travel through the entire cross section of the conductor, but has a tendency to travel closer and closer to the surface of the wire as the frequency is increased. This is known as the *skin effect*.

The actual current carrying portion of the wire is decreased as a result of the skin effect so that the ratio of a-c to d-c resistance of the wire, called the *resistance ratio*, is increased. The resistance ratio of wires to be used at frequencies below about 500 kHz may be materially reduced through the use of *litz* wire. Litz wire, of the type commonly used to wind the coils of 455 — kHz i-f transformers, may consist of 3 to 10 strands of insulated wire, about No. 40 in size, with the individual strands connected together only at the ends of the coils.

Variation of Q with Frequency Examination of the equation for determining Q might give rise to the thought that even though the resistance of an inductor increases with frequency, the inductive reactance does likewise, so that the Q might be a constant. Actually, however, it works out in practice that the Q of an inductor will reach a relatively broad maximum at some particular frequency. Hence, coils normally are designed in such a manner that the peak in their curve of Q versus frequency will occur at the normal operating frequency of the coil in the circuit for which it is designed.

The Q of a capacitor ordinarily is much higher than that of the best coil. Therefore, it usually is the merit of the coil that limits the over-all Q of the circuit.

At audio frequencies the core losses in an iron-core inductor greatly reduce the Q from the value that would be obtained simply by dividing the reactance by the resistance. Obviously the core losses also represent circuit resistance, just as though the loss occurred in the wire itself.

Parallel Resonance In radio circuits, parallel resonance (more correctly termed *antiresonance*) is more frequently encountered than series resonance; in fact, it is the basic foundation of receiver and

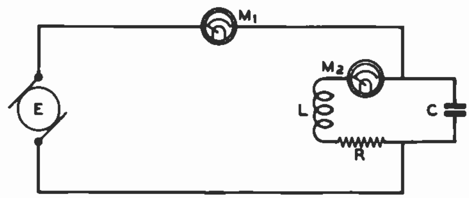


Figure 21

PARALLEL-RESONANT CIRCUIT

The inductance L and capacitance C comprise the reactive elements of the parallel-resonant (antiresonant) tank circuit, and the resistance R indicates the sum of the r-f resistance of the coil and capacitor, plus the resistance coupled into the circuit from the external load. In most cases the tuning capacitor has much lower r-f resistance than the coil and can therefore be ignored in comparison with the coil resistance and the coupled-in resistance. The instrument M_1 indicates the "line current" which keeps the circuit in a state of oscillation—this current is the same as the fundamental component of the plate current of a class-C amplifier which might be feeding the tank circuit. The instrument M_2 indicates the "tank current" which is equal to the line current multiplied by the operating Q of the tank circuit.

transmitter circuit operation. A circuit is shown in figure 21.

The "Tank" Circuit In this circuit, as contrasted with a circuit for series resonance, *L* (inductance) and *C* (capacitance) are connected in *parallel*, yet the *combination* can be considered to be in series with the remainder of the circuit. This combination of *L* and *C*, in conjunction with *R*, the resistance which is principally included in *L*, is sometimes called a *tank circuit* because it effectively functions as a storage tank when incorporated in vacuum-tube circuits.

Contrasted with series resonance, there are two kinds of current which must be considered in a parallel-resonant circuit: (1) the *line current*, as read on the indicating meter M_1, (2) the *circulating current* which flows within the parallel *LCR* portion of the circuit. See figure 21.

At the resonant frequency, the line current (as read on the meter M_1) will drop to a very low value although the circulating current in the *LC* circuit may be quite large. It is interesting to note that the parallel-resonant circuit acts in a distinctly opposite manner to that of a series-resonant circuit, in which the current is at a maximum and the impedance is minimum at resonance. It is for this reason that in a parallel-resonant circuit the principal consideration is one of impedance rather than current. It is also significant that the *impedance* curve for *parallel* circuits is very nearly indentical to that of the *current* curve for *series* resonance. The impedance at resonance is expressed as:

$$Z = \frac{(2\pi fL)^2}{R}$$

where,

Z equals impedance in ohms,
L equals inductance in henrys,
f equals frequency in Hertz,
R equals resistance in ohms.

Or, impedance can be expressed as a function of Q as:

$$Z = 2\pi fLQ$$

showing that the impedance of a circuit is directly proportional to its effective Q at resonance.

The curves illustrated in figure 20 can be applied to parallel resonance. Reference to the curve will show that the effect of adding resistance to the circuit will result in both a broadening out and lowering of the peak of the curve. Since the voltage of the circuit is directly proportional to the impedance, and since it is this voltage that is applied to the grid of the vacuum tube in a detector or amplifier circuit, the impedance curve must have a sharp peak in order for the circuit to be *selective*. If the curve is broad-topped in shape, both the desired signal and the interfering signals at close proximity to resonance will give nearly equal voltages on the grid of the tube, and the circuit will then be *nonselective*; that is, it will tune broadly.

Effect of L/C Ratio in Parallel Circuits In order that the highest possible voltage can be developed across a parallel-resonant circuit, the impedance of this circuit must be very high. The impedance will be greater with conventional coils of limited Q when the ratio of inductance to capacitance is great, that is, when *L* is large as compared with *C*. When the resistance of the circuit is very low, X_L will equal X_C at maximum impedance. There are innumerable ratios of L and C that will have *equal* reactance, at a given resonant frequency, exactly as in the case in a series-resonant circuit.

In practice, where a certain value of inductance is tuned by a variable capacitance over a fairly wide range in frequency, the L/C ratio will be small at the lowest-frequency end and large at the high-frequency end. The circuit, therefore, will have unequal gain and selectivity at the two ends of the band of frequencies which is being tuned. Increasing the Q of the circuit (lowering the resistance) will obviously increase *both* the selectivity and gain.

Circulating Tank Current at Resonance The Q of a circuit has a definite bearing on the circulating tank current at resonance. This tank current is very nearly the value of the line current multiplied by the effective circuit Q. For example: an r-f line current of 0.050 ampere, with a circuit Q of 100, will give a circulating tank current of approximately 5 amperes. From this it can be seen that both the inductor and the connecting wires in a circuit with a high Q must be of very low resistance, particularly in the case of high-power transmitters, if heat losses are to be held to a minimum.

Because the voltage across the tank at resonance is determined by the Q, it is possible to develop very high peak voltages across a high-Q tank with but little line current.

Effect of Coupling on Impedance If a parallel-resonant circuit is coupled to another circuit, such as an antenna output circuit, the impedance and the effective Q of the parallel circuit is decreased as the coupling becomes closer. The effect of closer (tighter) coupling is the same as though an actual resistance were added in series with the parallel tank circuit. The resistance thus coupled into the tank circuit can be considered as being *reflected* from the output or load circuit to the driver circuit.

The behavior of *coupled circuits* depends largely on the amount of coupling, as shown in figure 22. The coupled currrent in the secondary circuit is small, varying with frequency, being maximum at the resonant frequency of the circuit. As the coupling is increased between the two circuits, the secondary resonance curve becomes broader and the resonant amplitude increases, until the reflected resistance is equal to the primary resistance. This point is called the *critical coupling point.* With greater coupling, the secondary resonance curve becomes broader and develops double resonance humps, which become more pronounced and farther apart in frequency as the coupling between the two circuits is increased.

Tank-Circuit Flywheel Effect When the plate circuit of a class-B or class-C operated tube is connected to a parallel-resonant circuit tuned to the same frequency as the exciting voltage for the amplifier, the plate current serves to maintain this L/C circuit in a state of oscillation.

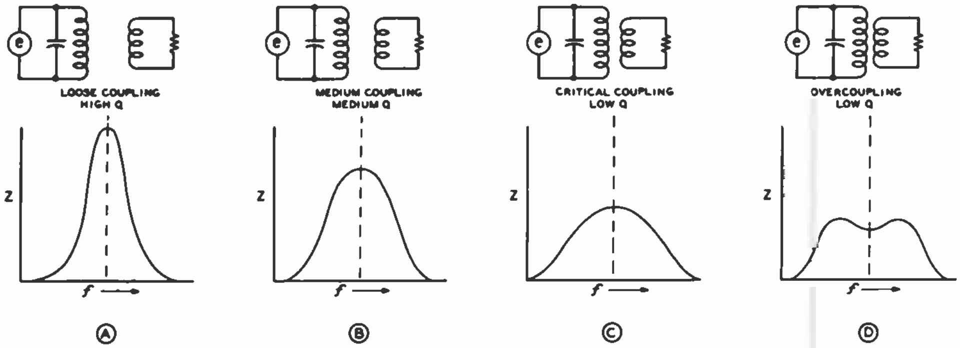


Figure 22
EFFECT OF COUPLING ON CIRCUIT IMPEDANCE AND Q

The plate current is supplied in short pulses which do not begin to resemble a sine wave, even though the grid may be excited by a sine-wave voltage. These spurts of plate current are converted into a sine wave in the plate tank circuit by virtue of the Q or *flywheel effect* of the tank.

If a tank did not have some resistance losses, it would, when given a "kick" with a single pulse, continue to oscillate indefinitely. With a moderate amount of resistance or "friction" in the circuit the tank will still have inertia, and continue to oscillate with decreasing amplitude for a time after being given a "kick." With such a circuit, almost pure sine-wave voltage will be developed across the tank circuit even though power is supplied to the tank in short pulses or spurts, so long as the spurts are evenly spaced with respect to time and have a frequency that is the same as the resonant frequency of the tank.

Another way to visualize the action of the tank is to recall that a resonant tank with moderate Q will discriminate strongly against harmonics of the resonant frequency. The distorted plate current pulse in a class-C amplifier contains not only the fundamental frequency (that of the grid excitation voltage) but also higher harmonics. As the tank offers low impedance to the harmonics and high impedance to the fundamental (being resonant to the latter), only the fundamental — a sine-wave voltage — appears across the tank circuit in substantial magnitude.

Loaded and Unloaded Q Confusion sometimes exists as to the relationship between the unloaded and the loaded Q of the tank circuit in the plate of an r-f power amplifier. In the normal case the loaded Q of the tank circuit is determined by such factors as the operating conditions of the amplifier, bandwidth of the signal to be emitted, permissible level of harmonic radiation, and such factors. The normal value of *loaded* Q for an r-f amplifier used for communications service is from perhaps 6 to 20. The *unloaded* Q of the tank circuit determines the efficiency of the output circuit and is determined by the losses in the tank coil, its leads and plugs and jacks if any, and by the losses in the tank capacitor which ordinarily are very low. The unloaded Q of a good quality large diameter tank coil in the high-frequency range may be as high as 500 to 800, and values greater than 300 are quite common.

Tank-Circuit Efficiency Since the unloaded Q of a tank circuit is determined by the minimum losses in the tank, while the loaded Q is determined by useful loading of the tank circuit from the external load in addition to the internal losses in the tank circuit, the relationship between the two Q values determines the operating efficiency of the tank circuit. Expressed in the form of an equation, the loaded efficiency of a tank circuit is:

$$\text{Tank efficiency} = 1 - \frac{Q_l}{Q_u} \times 100$$

where,

Q_u equals unloaded Q of the tank circuit,
Q_l equals loaded Q of the tank circuit.

As an example, if the unloaded Q of the tank circuit for a class-C r-f power amplifier is 400, and the external load is coupled to the tank circuit by an amount such that the loaded Q is 20, the tank-circuit efficiency will be: eff. = (1 − 20/400) × 100, or (1 − 0.05) × 100, or 95 per cent. Hence 5 per cent of the power output of the class-C amplifier will be lost as heat in the tank circuit and the remaining 95 per cent will be delivered to the load.

3-3 Nonsinusoidal Waves and Transients

Pure sine waves, discussed previously, are basic wave shapes. Waves of many different and complex shapes are used in electronics, particularly square waves, sawtooth waves, and peaked waves.

Wave Composition Any periodic wave (one that repeats itself in definite time intervals) is composed of sine waves of different frequencies and amplitudes, added together. The sine wave which has the same frequency as the complex, periodic wave is called the *fundamental.* The frequencies higher than the fundamental are

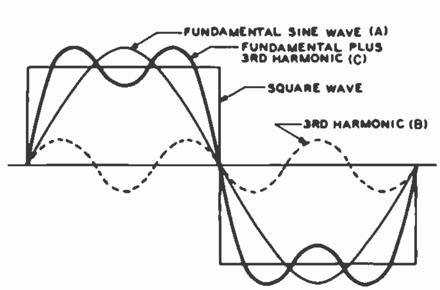


Figure 23

COMPOSITE WAVE—FUNDAMENTAL PLUS THIRD HARMONIC

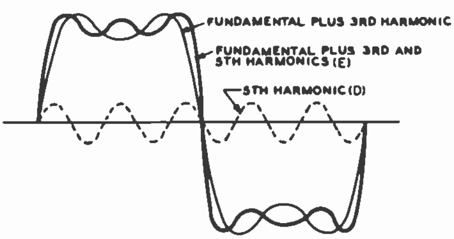


Figure 24

THIRD-HARMONIC WAVE PLUS FIFTH HARMONIC

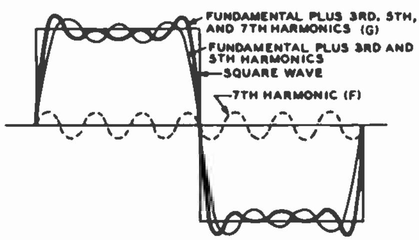


Figure 25

RESULTANT WAVE, COMPOSED OF FUNDAMENTAL, THIRD, FIFTH, AND SEVENTH HARMONICS

called *harmonics*, and are always a whole number of times higher than the fundamental. For example, the frequency twice as high as the fundamental is called the *second harmonic*.

The Square Wave Figure 23 compares a square wave with a sine wave (A) of the same frequency. If another

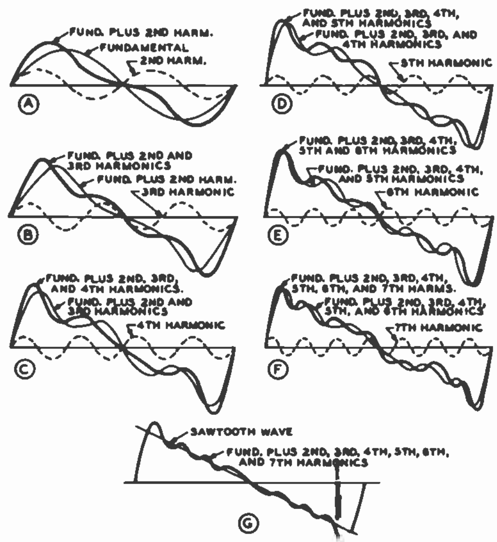


Figure 26

COMPOSITION OF A SAWTOOTH WAVE

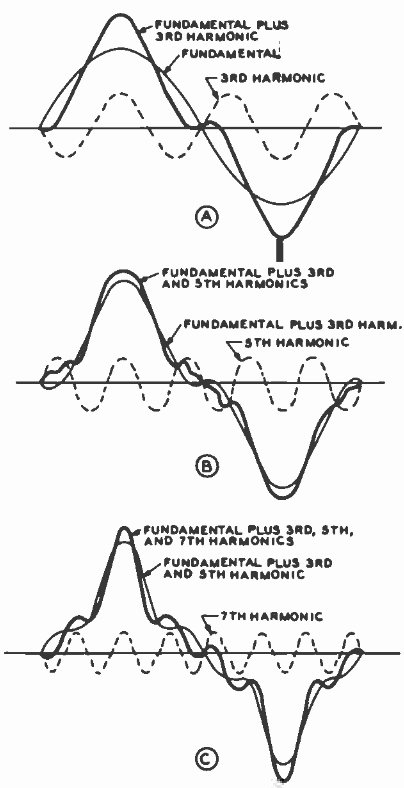


Figure 27

COMPOSITION OF A PEAKED WAVE

sine wave (B) of smaller amplitude, but three times the frequency of A, called the third harmonic, is added to A, the resultant wave (C) more nearly approaches the desired square wave.

This resultant curve (figure 24) is added to a fifth-harmonic curve (D), and the sides of the resulting curve (E) are steeper than before. This new curve is shown in figure 25 after a 7th-harmonic component has been added to it, making the sides of the composite wave even steeper. Addition of more higher odd harmonics will bring the resultant wave nearer and nearer to the desired square-wave shape. The square wave will be achieved if an infinite number of odd harmonics are added to the original sine wave.

The Sawtooth Wave In the same fashion, a *sawtooth wave* is made up of different sine waves (figure 26). The addition of all harmonics, odd and even, produces the sawtooth waveform.

The Peaked Wave Figure 27 shows the composition of a *peaked wave*. Note how the addition of each successive harmonic makes the peak of the resultant higher, and the sides steeper.

Other Waveforms The three preceding examples show how a complex periodic wave is composed of a fundamental wave and different harmonics. The shape of the resultant wave depends on the harmonics that are added, their relative amplitudes, and relative phase relationships. In general, the steeper the sides of the waveform, the more harmonics it contains.

A-C Transient Circuits If an a-c voltage is substituted for the d-c input voltage in the *RC* transient circuits discussed in Chapter 2, the same principles may be applied in the analysis of the transient behavior. An *RC* coupling circuit is designed to have a long time constant with respect to the lowest frequency it must pass. Such a circuit is shown in figure 28. If a nonsinusoidal voltage is to be passed unchanged through the coupling circuit, the time constant must be long with respect to the period of the lowest frequency contained in the voltage wave.

RC Differentiator and Integrator An *RC* voltage divider that is designed to distort the input waveform is known as a ***differentiator*** or ***integrator***, depending on the locations of the output taps. The output from a differentiator is taken across the resistance, while the output from an integrator is taken across the capacitor. Such circuits will change the shape of any complex a-c waveform that is impressed on them. This distortion is a function of the value of the time constant of the circuit as compared to the period of the waveform. Neither a differentiator nor an integrator can change the shape of a pure sine wave, they will merely shift the phase of the wave (figure 29). The differentiator output is a sine wave leading the input wave, and the integrator output is a sine wave which lags the input wave. The sum of the two outputs at any instant equals the instantaneous input voltage.

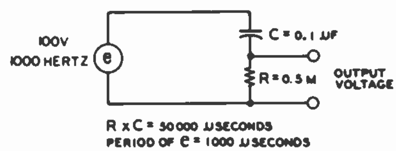


Figure 28

RC COUPLING CIRCUIT WITH LONG TIME CONSTANT

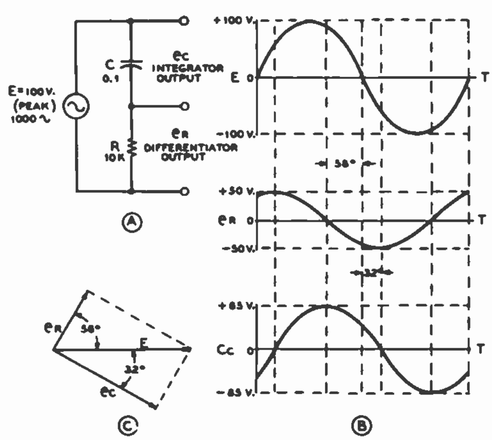


Figure 29

RC DIFFERENTIATOR AND INTEGRATOR ACTION ON A SINE WAVE

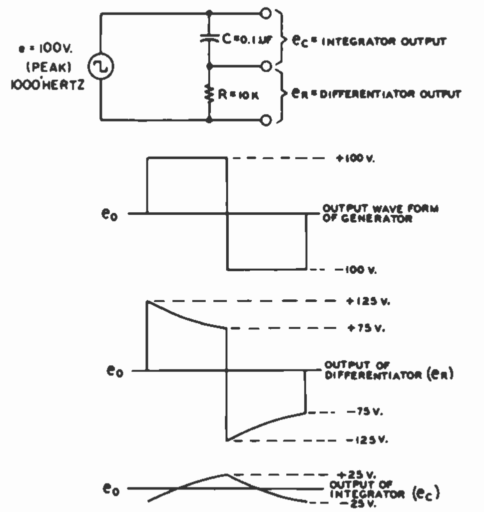


Figure 30

RC DIFFERENTIATOR AND INTEGRATOR ACTION ON A SQUARE WAVE

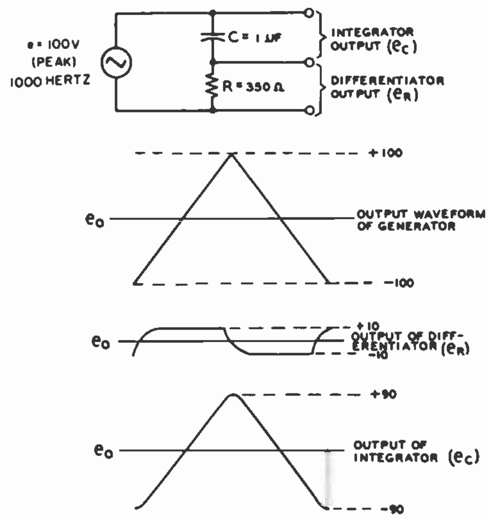


Figure 31

RC DIFFERENTIATOR AND INTEGRATOR ACTION ON A SAWTOOTH WAVE

Square-Wave Input If a square-wave voltage is impressed on the circuit of figure 30, a square-wave voltage output may be obtained across the integrating capacitor if the time constant of the circuit allows the capacitor to become fully charged. In this particular case, the capacitor never fully charges, and as a result the output of the integrator has a smaller amplitude than the input. The differentiator output has a maximum value greater than the input amplitude, since the voltage left on the capacitor from the previous half wave will add to the input voltage. Such a circuit, when used as a differentiator, is often called a *peaker*. Peaks of twice the input amplitude may be produced.

Sawtooth-Wave Input If a back-to-back sawtooth voltage is applied to an *RC* circuit having a time constant one-sixth the period of the input voltage, the result is shown in figure 31. The capacitor voltage will closely follow the input voltage, if the time constant is short, and the integrator output closely resembles the input. The amplitude is slightly reduced and there is a slight phase lag. Since the voltage across the capacitor is increasing at a constant rate, the charging and discharg-

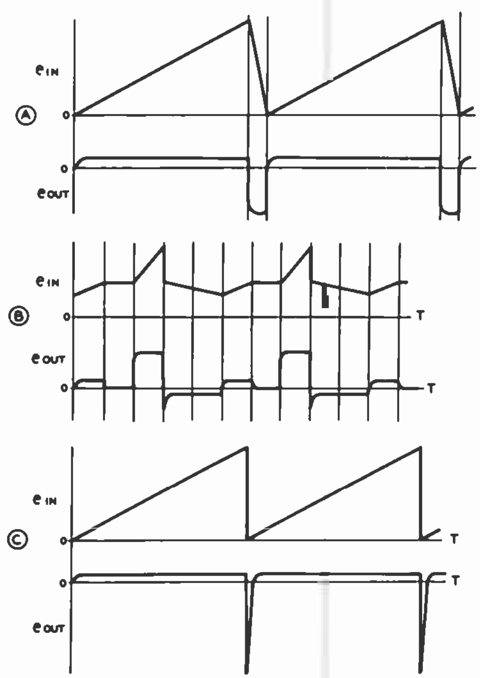


Figure 32

Differentiator outputs of short-time-constant RC circuits for various input voltage waveshapes. The output voltage is proportional to the rate of change of the input voltage.

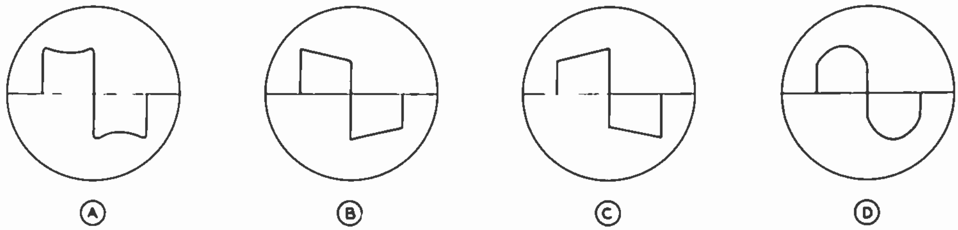


Figure 33

Amplifier deficient in low-frequency response will distort square wave applied to the input circuit, as shown. A 60-Hz square wave may be used.
A: Drop in gain at low frequencies
B: Leading phase shift at low frequencies
C: Lagging phase shift at low frequencies
D: Accentuated low-frequency gain

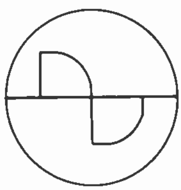


Figure 34

Output waveshape of amplifier having deficiency in high-frequency response. Tested with 10-kHz square wave.

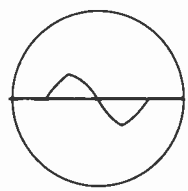


Figure 35

Output waveshape of amplifier having limited low-frequency and high-frequency response. Tested with 1 kHz square wave.

ing current is constant. The output voltage of the differentiator, therefore, is constant during each half of the sawtooth input.

Miscellaneous Inputs Various voltage waveforms other than those represented here may be applied to short-time-constant *RC* circuits for the purpose of producing across the resistor an output voltage with an amplitude *proportional to the rate of change* of the input signal. The shorter the *RC* time constant is made with respect to the period of the input wave, the more nearly the voltage across the capacitor conforms to the input voltage. Thus, the differentiator output becomes of particular importance in very short-time-constant *RC* circuits. Differentiator outputs for various types of input waves are shown in figure 32.

Square-Wave Test for Audio Equipment The application of a square-wave input signal to audio equipment, and the observation of the reproduced output signal on an oscilloscope will provide a quick and accurate check of the over-all operation of audio equipment.

Low-frequency and high-frequency response, as well as transient response can be examined easily.

If the amplifier is deficient in low-frequency response, the flat top of the square wave will be canted, as in figure 33. If the high-frequency response is inferior, the rise time of the output wave will be retarded (figure 34).

An amplifier with a limited high- and low-frequency response will turn the square wave into the approximation of a sawtooth wave (figure 35).

3-4 Transformers

When two coils are placed in such inductive relation to each other that the lines of force from one cut across the turns of the other inducing a current, the combination can be called a *transformer*. The name is derived from the fact that energy is transformed from one winding to another. The inductance in which the original flux is produced is called the *primary;* the inductance which *receives* the induced current is called the *secondary*. In a radio-receiver power transformer, for example, the coil through which the 120-volt a.c. passes is the *primary*, and the coil from which a higher or lower voltage than the a-c line potential is obtained is the *secondary*.

Transformers can have either air or magnetic cores, depending on the frequencies at which they are to be operated. The reader should thoroughly impress on his mind the fact that current can be transferred from one circuit to another *only* if the primary current is changing or alternating. From this it can be seen that a power transformer cannot possibly function as such when the primary is supplied with nonpulsating d-c.

A power transformer usually has a magnetic core which consists of laminations of iron, built up into a square or rectangular form, with a center opening or window. The secondary windings may be several in number, each perhaps delivering a different voltage. The secondary voltages will be proportional to the turns ratio and the primary voltage.

Types of Transformers Transformers are used in alternating-current circuits to transfer power at one voltage and impedance to another circuit at another voltage and impedance. There are three main classifications of transformers: those made for use in power-frequency circuits, those made for audio-frequency applications, and those made for radio frequencies.

The Transformation Ratio In a perfect transformer all the magnetic flux lines produced by the primary winding link every turn of the secondary winding. For such a transformer, the ratio of the primary and secondary voltages is exactly the same as the ratio of the number of turns in the two windings:

$$\frac{N_P}{N_S} = \frac{E_P}{E_S}$$

where,

N_P equals number of turns in the primary,
N_S equals number of turns in the secondary,
E_P equals voltage across the primary,
E_S equals voltage across the secondary.

In practice, the transformation ratio of a transformer is somewhat less than the turns ratio, since unity coupling does not exist between the primary and secondary windings.

Ampere Turns (NI) The current that flows in the secondary winding as a result of the induced voltage must produce a flux which exactly equals the primary flux. The magnetizing force of a coil is expressed as the product of the number of turns in the coil times the current flowing in it:

$$N_P \times I_P = N_S \times I_S, \text{ or } \frac{N_P}{N_S} = \frac{I_S}{I_P}$$

where,

I_P equals primary current,
I_S equals secondary current.

It can be seen from this expression that when the voltage is stepped up, the current is stepped down, and vice versa.

Leakage Reactance Since unity coupling does not exist in a practical transformer, part of the flux passing from the primary circuit to the secondary circuit follows a magnetic circuit acted on by the primary only. The same is true of the secondary flux. These leakage fluxes cause *leakage reactance* in the transformer, and tend to cause the transformer to have poor voltage regulation. To reduce such leakage reactance, the primary and secondary windings should be in close proximity to each other. The more expensive transformers have interleaved windings to reduce inherent leakage reactance.

Impedance Transformation In the ideal transformer, the impedance of the secondary load is reflected back into the primary winding in the following relationship:

$$Z_P = N^2 Z_S, \text{ or } N = \sqrt{Z_P/Z_S}$$

where,

Z_P equals reflected primary impedance,
N equals turns ratio of transformer,
Z_S equals impedance of secondary load.

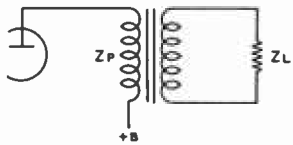


Figure 36

IMPEDANCE-MATCHING TRANSFORMER

The reflected impedance Z_p varies directly in proportion to the secondary load Z_L and directly in proportion to the square of the primary-to-secondary turns ratio.

Thus any specific load connected to the secondary terminals of the transformer will be transformed to a different specific value appearing across the primary terminals of the transformer. By the proper choice of turns ratio, any reasonable value of secondary load impedance may be "reflected" into the primary winding of the transformer to produce the desired transformer primary impedance. The phase angle of the primary "reflected" impedance will be the same as the phase angle of the load impedance. A capacitive secondary load will be presented to the transformer source as a capacitance, a resistive load will present a resistive "reflection" to the primary source. Thus the primary source "sees" a transformer load entirely dependent on the secondary load impedance and the turns ratio of the transformer (figure 36).

The Auto-transformer The type of transformer in figure 37, when wound with heavy wire over an iron core, is a common device in primary power circuits for the purpose of increasing or decreasing the line voltage. In effect, it is merely a continuous winding with taps taken at various points along the winding, the input voltage being applied to the bottom and also to one tap on the winding. If the output is taken from this same tap, the voltage ratio will be 1 to 1; i.e., the input voltage will be the same as the output voltage. On the other hand, if the output tap is moved down toward the common terminal, there will be a stepdown in the turns ratio with a consequent stepdown in voltage. The initial setting of the middle input tap is chosen so that the number of turns will have sufficient reactance to keep the no-load primary current at a reasonable low value.

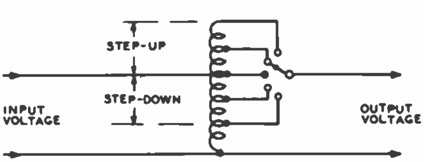


Figure 37

THE AUTOTRANSFORMER

Schematic diagram of an autotransformer showing the method of connecting it to the line and to the load. When only a small amount of step up or step down is required, the autotransformer may be much smaller physically than would be a transformer with a separate secondary winding. Continuously variable autotransformers (Variac and Powerstat) are widely used commercially.

3-5 Electric Filters

There are many applications where it is desirable to pass a d-c component without passing a superimposed a-c component, or to pass all frequencies above or below a certain frequency while rejecting or attenuating all others, or to pass only a certain band or bands of frequencies while attenuating all others.

All of these things can be done by suitable combinations of inductance, capacitance, and resistance. However, as whole books have been devoted to nothing but *electric filters*, it can be appreciated that it is possible only to touch on them superficially in a general-coverage book.

Filter Operation A filter acts by virtue of its property of offering very high impedance to the undesired frequencies, while offering but little impedance to the desired frequencies. This will also apply to d. c. with a superimposed a-c component, as d. c. can be considered as an alternating current of zero frequency so far as filter discussion goes.

Basic Filters Filters are divided into four classes, descriptive of the frequency bands which they are designed to transmit: high-pass, low-pass, bandpass, and band-elimination. Each of these classes of filters is made up of elementary filter sections called *L sections* which consist of a series element (Z_A) and a parallel element (Z_B) as

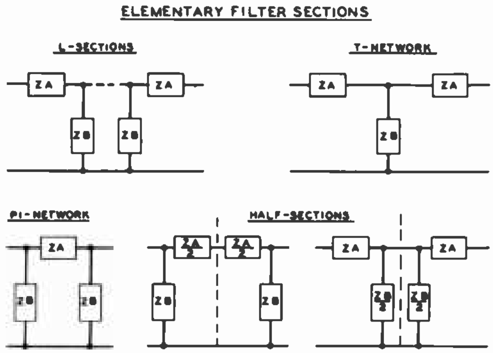


Figure 38

Complex filters may be made up from these basic filter sections.

illustrated in figure 38. A definite number of *L* sections may be combined into basic filter sections, called *T networks* or *π networks,* also shown in figure 38. Both the *T* and *π* networks may be divided in two to form *half-sections.*

Filter Sections The most common filter section is one in which the two impedances Z_A and Z_B are so related that their arithmetical product is a constant: $Z_A \times Z_B = k^2$ at all frequencies. This type of filter section is called a *constant-k section.*

A section having a sharper cutoff frequency than a constant-*k* section, but less attenuation at frequencies far removed from cutoff is the *m-derived section,* so called because the shunt or series element is resonated with a reactance of the opposite sign. If the complementary reactance is added to the series arm, the section is said to be *shunt derived;* if added to the shunt arm, *series derived.* Each impedance of the *m*-derived section is related to a corresponding impedance in the constant-*k* section by some factor which is a function of the constant *m.* In turn, *m* is a function of the ratio between the cutoff frequency and the frequency of infinite attenuation, and will have some value between zero and one. As the value of *m* approaches zero, the sharp-

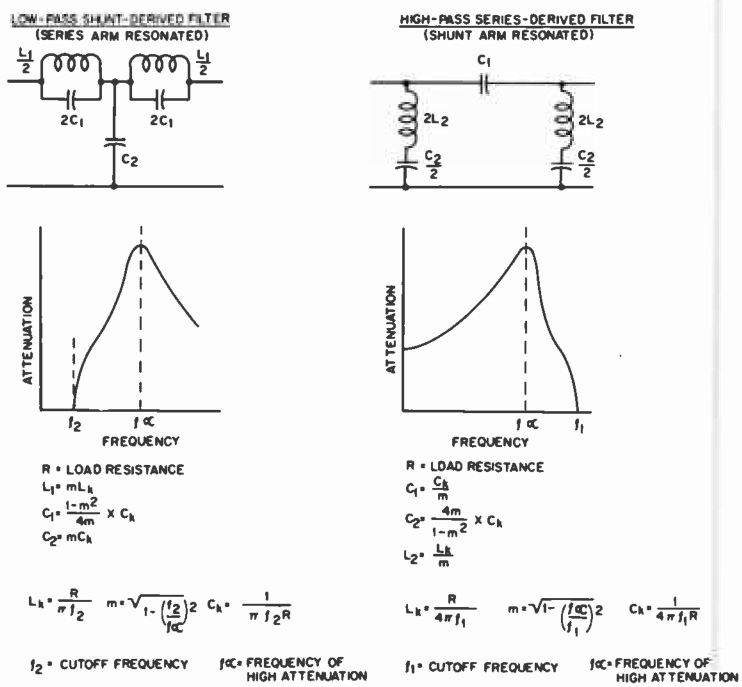


Figure 39

TYPICAL LOW-PASS AND HIGH-PASS FILTERS, ILLUSTRATING SHUNT AND SERIES DERIVATIONS

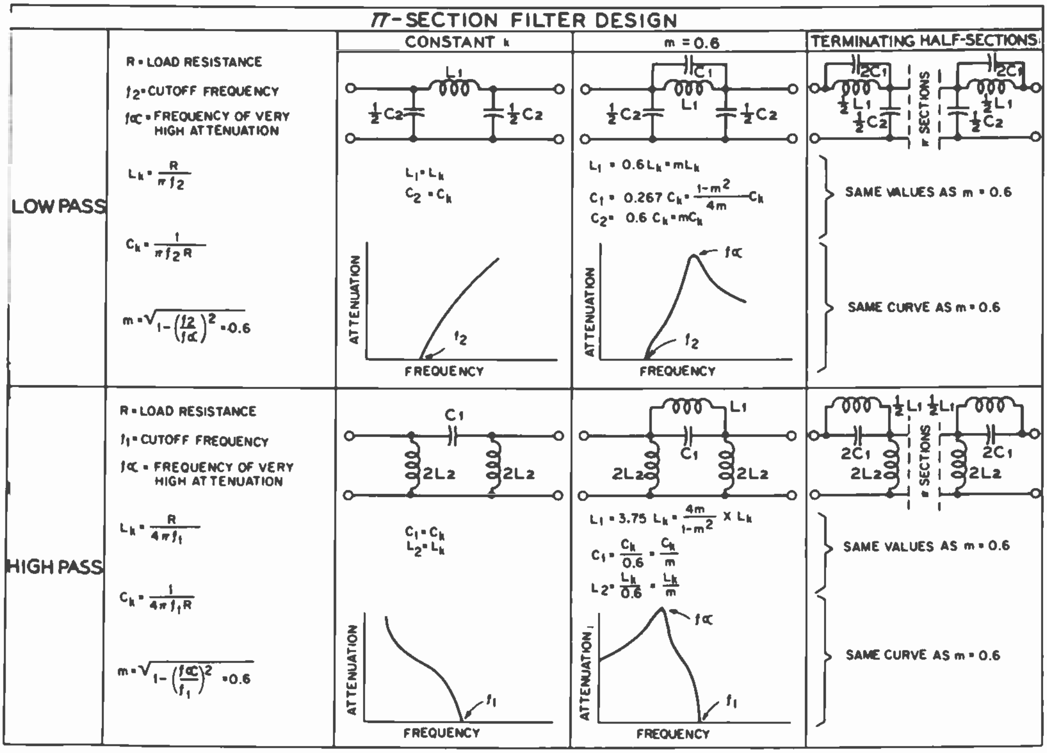


Figure 40

Through the use of the curves and equations which accompany the diagrams in the illustration above it is possible to determine the correct values of inductance and capacitance for the usual types of pi-section filters.

ness of cutoff increases, but the less will be the attenuation at several times cutoff frequency. A value of 0.6 may be used for m in most applications. The "notch" frequency is determined by the resonant frequency of the tuned filter element. The amount of attenuation obtained at the "notch" when a derived section is used is determined by the effective Q of the resonant arm (figure 39).

Filter Assembly Constant-k sections and m-derived sections may be cascaded to obtain the combined characteristics of sharp cutoff and good remote frequency attenuation. Such a filter is known as a *composite* filter. The amount of attenuation will depend on the number of filter sections used, and the shape of the transmission curve depends on the type of filter sections used. All filters have some *insertion loss.* This attenuation is usually uniform to all frequencies within the passband. The insertion loss varies with the type of filter, the Q of the components, and the type of termination employed.

Electric Filter Design Electric wave filters have long been used in some amateur stations in the audio channel to reduce the transmission of unwanted high frequencies and hence to reduce the bandwidth occupied by a radiophone signal. The effectiveness of a properly designed and properly used filter circuit in reducing QRM and sideband splatter should not be underestimated.

In recent years, high-frequency filters have become commonplace in TVI reduction. High-pass type filters are placed before the input stage of television receivers to reject the fundamental signal of low-frequency transmitters. Low-pass filters are used in the output circuits of low-frequency transmitters to prevent harmonics of the transmitter from being radiated in the television channels.

The chart of figure 40 gives design data and procedure on the π section type of filter. The m-derived sections with an m of 0.6 will be found to be most satisfactory as the input section (or half-section) of the usual filter since the input impedance of such a section is most constant over the passband of the filter section.

Simple filters may use either L, T, or π sections. Since the π section is the more commonly used type, figure 40 gives design data and characteristics for this type of filter.

The image-parameter technique of filter design outlined in this section is being superceded by modern network synthesis, which takes advantage of the digital computer as a tool for multisection filter design. Filters designed by this new technique provide superior performance with less components than equivalent filters designed by the image-parameter scheme. Design tables for synthesis systems may be found in *Simplified Modern Filter Design* by Geffe, published by John F. Rider Publisher, Inc., New York.

CHAPTER FOUR

Vacuum-Tube Principles

In the previous chapters we have seen the manner in which an electric current flows through a metallic conductor as a result of an electron drift. This drift, which takes place when there is a difference in potential between the ends of the metallic conductor, is in addition to the normal random electron motion between the molecules of the conductor.

The electron may be considered as a minute negatively charged particle, having a mass of 9×10^{-28} gram, and a charge of 1.59×10^{-19} coulomb. Electrons are always identical, regardless of the source from which they are obtained.

An electric current can be caused to flow through other media than a metallic conductor. One such medium is an ionized solution, such as the sulfuric acid electrolyte in a storage battery. This type of current flow is called *electrolytic conduction*. Further, it was shown at about the turn of the century that an electric current can be carried by a stream of free electrons in an evacuated chamber. The flow of a current in such a manner is said to take place by *electronic conduction*. The study of electron tubes (also called vacuum tubes, or valves) is actually the study of the control and use of electronic currents within an evacuated or partially evacuated chamber.

Since the current flow in an electron tube takes place in an evacuated chamber, there must be located within the enclosure both a source of electrons and a collector for the electrons which have been emitted. The electron source is called the *cathode*, and the electron collector is usually called the *anode*. Some external source of energy must be applied to the cathode in order to impart sufficient velocity to the electrons within the cathode material to enable them to overcome the surface forces and thus escape into the surrounding medium. In the usual types of electron tubes the cathode energy is applied in the form of heat; electron emission from a heated cathode is called *thermionic emission*. In another common type of electron tube, the photoelectric cell, energy in the form of light is applied to the cathode to cause *photoelectric emission*.

4-1 Thermionic Emission

Electron Emission Emission of electrons from the cathode of a thermionic electron tube takes place when the cathode of the tube is heated to a temperature sufficiently high that the free electrons in the emitter have sufficient velocity to overcome the restraining forces at the surface of the material. These surface forces vary greatly with different materials. Hence different types of cathodes must be raised to different temperatures to obtain adequate quantities of electron emission. The several types of emitters found in common types of transmitting and receiving tubes will be described in the following paragraphs.

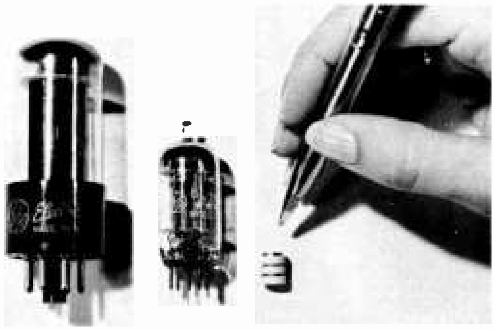


Figure 1

ELECTRON-TUBE TYPES

The General Electric ceramic triode (6BY4) is shown alongside a conventional miniature tube (6265) and an octal-based receiving tube (25L6). The ceramic tube is designed for rugged service and features extremely low lead inductance.

Cathode Types The emitters or cathodes as used in present-day thermionic electron tubes may be classified into two groups; the directly heated or *filament type* and the indirectly heated or *heater-cathode type*. Directly heated emitters may be further subdivided into three important groups, all of which are commonly used in modern vacuum tubes. These classifications are: the pure-tungsten filament, the thoriated-tungsten filament, and the oxide-coated filament.

The Pure-Tungsten Filament Pure-tungsten wire was used as the filament in nearly all the earlier transmitting and receiving tubes. However, the thermionic efficiency of tungsten wire as an emitter (the number of milliamperes emission per watt of filament-heating power) is quite low; the filaments become fragile after use; their life is rather short, and they are susceptible to burnout at any time. Pure-tungsten filaments must be run at bright white heat (about 2500° Kelvin). For these reasons, tungsten filaments have been replaced in all applications where another type of filament could be used. They are, however, still often employed in large water-cooled tubes and in certain large, high-power air-cooled triodes where another filament type would be unsuitable. Tungsten filaments are the most satisfactory for high-power, high-voltage tubes where the emitter is subjected to positive ion bombardment caused by the residual gas content of the tubes. Tungsten is not adversely affected by such bombardment.

The Thoriated-Tungsten Filament In the course of experiments made upon tungsten emitters, it was found that filaments made from tungsten having a small amount of thoria (thorium oxide) as an impurity had much greater emission than those made from the pure metal. Subsequent development has resulted in the highly efficient carburized thoriated-tungsten filament as used in many medium-power transmitting tubes today.

Thoriated-tungsten emitters consist of a tungsten wire containing from 1% to 2% thoria. The activation process varies between different manufacturers of vacuum tubes, but it is essentially as follows: (1) the tube is evacuated; (2) the filament is burned for a short period at about 2800° Kelvin to clean the surface and reduce some of the thoria within the filament to metallic thorium; (3) the filament is burned for a longer period at about 2100° Kelvin to form a layer of thorium on the surface of the tungsten; (4) the temperature is reduced to about 1600° Kelvin and some pure hydrocarbon gas is admitted to form a layer of tungsten carbide on the surface of the tungsten. This layer of tungsten carbide reduces the rate of thorium evaporation from the surface at the normal operating temperature of the filament and thus increases the operating life of the vacuum tube. Thorium evaporation from the surface is a natu-

Figure 2

VHF and UHF TUBE TYPES

At the left is an 8058 nuvistor tetrode, representative of the family of small vhf types useful in receivers and low power transmitters. The second type is an 6816 planar tetrode rated at 180 watts input to 1215 MHz. The third tube from the left is a 3CX100A5 planar triode, an improved and ruggedized version of the 2C39A, and rated at 100 watts input to 2900 MHz. The fourth tube from the left is the X-843 (Eimac) planar triode designed to deliver over 100 watts at 2100 MHz. The tube is used in a grounded-grid cavity configuration. The tube to the right is a 7213 planar tetrode, rated at 2500 watts input to 1215 MHz. All of these vhf/uhf negative-grid tubes make use of ceramic insulation for lowest envelope loss at the higher frequencies and the larger ones have coaxial bases for use in resonant cavities.

ral consequence of the operation of the thoriated-tungsten filament. The carburized layer on the tungsten wire plays another role in acting as a reducing agent to produce new thorium from the thoria to replace that lost by evaporation. This new thorium continually diffuses to the surface during the normal operation of the filament.

The last process, (5), in the activation of a thoriated tungsten filament consists of re-evacuating the envelope and then burning or aging the new filament for a considerable period of time at the normal operating temperature of approximately 1900° K.

One thing to remember about any type of filament, particularly the thoriated type, is that the emitter deteriorates practically as fast when "standing by" (no plate current) as it does with any normal amount of emission load. Also, a thoriated filament may be either temporarily or permanently damaged by a heavy overload which may strip the surface layer of thorium from the filament.

Reactivating Thoriated-Tungsten Filaments

Thoriated-tungsten filaments (and *only* thoriated-tungsten filaments) which have lost emission as a result of insufficient filament voltage, a severe temporary overload, a less severe extended overload, or even normal operation may quite frequently be reactivated to their original characteristics by a process similar to that of the original activation. However, only filaments which have not approached too close to the end of their useful life may be successfully reactivated.

The actual process of reactivation is relatively simple. The tube which has gone "flat" is placed in a socket to which only the two filament wires have been connected. The filament is then "flashed" for about 20 to 40 seconds at about 1½ times normal rated voltage. The filament will become extremely bright during this time and, if there is still some thoria left in the tungsten and if the tube did not originally fail as a result of an air leak, some of this thoria will be reduced to metallic thorium. The filament is then burned at 15 to 25 percent overvoltage for from 30 minutes to 3 to 4 hours to bring this new thorium to the surface.

The tube should then be tested to see if it shows signs of renewed life. If it does, but is still weak, the burning process should be continued at about 10 to 15 percent overvoltage for a few more hours. This should bring it back almost to normal. If the tube checks still very low after the first attempt at reactivation, the complete process can be repeated as a last effort.

The Oxide-Coated Filament The most efficient of all modern filaments is the oxide-coated type which consists of a mixture of barium and strontium oxides coated on a nickel alloy wire or strip. This type of filament operates at a dull-red to orange-red temperature (1050° to 1170° K) at which temperature it will emit large quantities of electrons. The oxide-coated filament is somewhat more efficient than the thoriated-tungsten type in small sizes and it is considerably less expensive to manufacture. For this reason all receiving tubes and quite a number of the low-powered transmitting tubes use the oxide-coated filament. Another advantage of the oxide-coated emitter is its extremely long life — the average tube can be expected to run from 3000 to 5000 hours, and when loaded very lightly, tubes of this type have been known to give 50,000 hours of life before their characteristics changed to any great extent.

Oxide filaments are unsatisfactory for use at very high plate voltage because: (1) their activity is seriously impaired by the high temperature necessary to de-gas the high-voltage tubes and, (2) the positive ion bombardment which takes place even in the best evacuated high-voltage tube causes destruction of the oxide layer on the surface of the filament.

Oxide-coated emitters have been found capable of emitting an enormously large current pulse with a high applied voltage for a very short period of time without damage. This characteristic has proved to be of great value in radar work. For example, the relatively small cathode in a microwave magnetron may be called on to deliver 25 to 50 amperes at an applied voltage of perhaps 25,000 volts for a period in the order of one microsecond. After this large current pulse has been passed, plate voltage normally will be removed for 1000 microseconds or more so that the cathode surface may recover in time for the next pulse of current. If the cathode were to be subjected to a continuous current drain of this magnitude, it would be destroyed in an exceedingly short period of time.

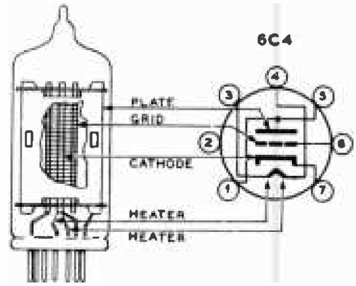


Figure 3

CUTAWAY DRAWING OF A 6C4 TRIODE

The activation of oxide-coated filaments also varies with tube manufacturers but consists essentially in heating the wire which has been coated with a mixture of barium and strontium carbonates to a temperature of about 1500° Kelvin for a time and then applying a potential of 100 to 200 volts through a protective resistor align limit the emission current. This process thermally reduces the carbonates to oxides, cleans the filament surface of foreign materials, and activates the cathode surface.

Reactivation of oxide-coated filaments is not possible since there is always more than sufficient reduction of the oxides and diffusion of the metals to the surface of the filament to meet the emission needs of the cathode.

The Heater Cathode The heater-type cathode was developed as a result of the requirement for a type of emitter which could be operated from alternating current and yet would not introduce a-c ripple modulation even when used in low-level stages. It consists essentially of a small nickel-alloy cylinder with a coating of strontium and barium oxides on its surface similar to the coating used on the oxide-coated filament. Inside the cylinder is an insulated heater element consisting usually of a double spiral of tungsten wire. The heater may operate on any voltage from 2 to 117 volts, although 6.3 is the most common value. The heater is operated at quite a high temperature so that the cathode itself usually may be brought to operating temperature in a matter of 15 to 30 seconds. Heat-coupling between the heater and the cathode is mainly by radiation, although there is some thermal conduction through the insulating coating on the heater wire, since this coating is also in contact with the cathode thimble.

Indirectly heated cathodes are employed in all a-c operated tubes which are designed to operate at a low level either for r-f or a-f use. However, some receiver power tubes use heater cathodes (6L6, 6V6, 6F6, and 6K6-GT) as do some of the low-power transmitter tubes (802, 807, 815, 3E29, 2E26, 5763, 6146, etc.). Heater cathodes are employed almost exclusively when a number of tubes are to be operated in series as in an a-c/d-c receiver. A heater cathode is often called a *unipotential cathode* because there is no voltage drop along its length as there is in the directly heated or filament cathode.

The Bombardment Cathode A special bombardment cathode is employed in many of the high-powered television transmitting klystrons (Eimac 3K 20,000 LA). The cathode takes the form of a tantalum diode, heated to operating temperature by the bombardment of electrons from a directly heated filament. The cathode operates at a positive potential of 2000 volts with respect to the filament, and a d-c bombardment current of 0.66 ampere flows between filament and cathode. The filament is designed to operate under space-charge limited conditions. Cathode temperature is varied by changing the bombardment potential between the filament and the cathode.

The Emission Equation The emission of electrons from a heated cathode is quite similar to the evaporation of molecules from the surface of a liquid. The molecules which leave the surface are those having sufficient kinetic (heat) energy to overcome the forces at the surface of the liquid. As the temperature of the liquid is raised, the average velocity of the molecules is increased, and a greater number of molecules will acquire sufficient energy to be evaporated. The evaporation of electrons from the surface of a thermionic emitter is similarly a function of average electron velocity, and hence is a function of the temperature of the emitter.

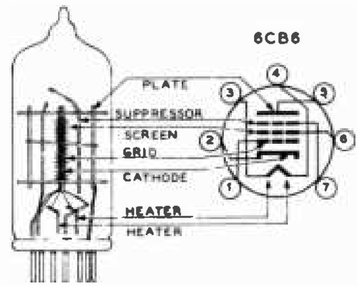


Figure 4

CUTAWAY DRAWING OF A 6CB6 PENTODE

Electron emission per unit area of emitting surface is a function of the temperature (T) in degrees Kelvin, the work function of emitting surface b (which is a measure of the surface forces of the material and hence of the energy required of the electron before it may escape), and of the constant (A) which also varies with the emitting surface. The relationship between emission current in amperes per square centimeter (I) and the above quantities can be expressed as:

$$I = AT^2\varepsilon^{-b/T}$$

Secondary Emission The bombarding of most metals and a few insulators by electrons will result in the emission of other electrons by a process called *secondary emission.* The secondary electrons are literally knocked from the surface layers of the bombarded material by the primary electrons which strike the material. The number of secondary electrons emitted per primary electron varies from a very small percentage to as high as 5 to 10 secondary electrons per primary.

The phenomena of secondary emission is undesirable for most thermionic electron tubes. However, the process is used to advantage in certain types of electron tubes such as the *image orthicon* (TV camera tube) and the *electron-multiplier* type of photoelectric cell. In types of electron tubes which make use of secondary emission, such as the type 931 photocell, the secondary-electron emitting surfaces are specially treated to provide a high ratio of secondary to primary electrons. Thus a high degree of current amplification in the electron-multiplier section of the tube is obtained.

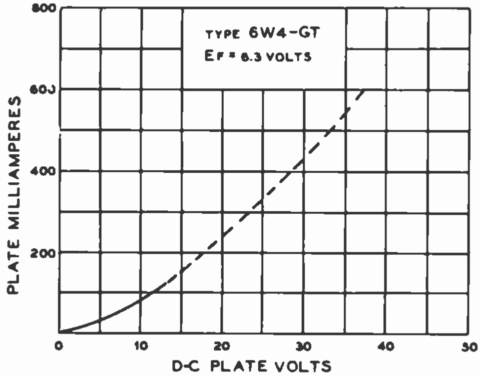


Figure 5

AVERAGE PLATE CHARACTERISTICS OF A POWER DIODE

The Space-Charge Effect As a cathode is heated so that it begins to emit, those electrons which have been discharged into the surrounding space form a negatively charged cloud in the immediate vicinity of the cathode. This cloud of electrons around the cathode is called the *space charge*. The electrons comprising the charge are continuously changing, since those electrons making up the original charge fall back into the cathode and are replaced by others emitted by it.

4-2 The Diode

If a cathode capable of being heated either indirectly or directly is placed in an evacuated envelope along with a plate, such a two-element vacuum tube is called a *diode*. The diode is the simplest of all vacuum tubes and is the fundamental type from which all the others are derived.

Characteristics of the Diode When the cathode within a diode is heated, it will be found that a few of the electrons leaving the cathode will leave with sufficient velocity to reach the plate. If the plate is electrically connected back to the cathode, the electrons which have had sufficient velocity to arrive at the plate will flow back to the cathode through the external circuit. This small amount of initial plate current is an effect found in all two-element vacuum tubes.

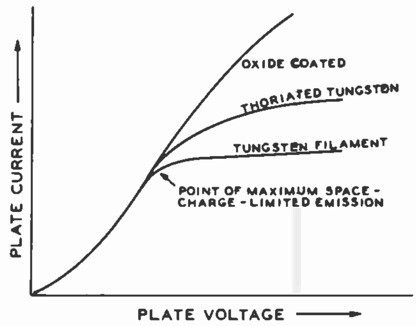


Figure 6

MAXIMUM SPACE-CHARGE-LIMITED EMISSION FOR DIFFERENT TYPES OF EMITTERS

If a battery or other source of d-c voltage is placed in the external circuit between the plate and cathode so that it places a positive potential on the plate, the flow of current from the cathode to plate will be increased. This is due to the strong attraction offered by the positively charged plate for any negatively charged particles (figure 5).

The Three-Halves Power Law At moderate values of plate voltage the current flow from cathode to anode is limited by the space charge of electrons around the cathode. Increased values of plate voltage will tend to neutralize a greater portion of the cathode space charge and hence will cause a greater current to flow.

Under these conditions, with plate current limited by the cathode space charge, the plate current is not linear with plate voltage. In fact it may be stated in general that the plate-current flow in electron tubes does not obey Ohm's Law. Rather, plate current increases as the three-halves power of the plate voltage. The relationship between plate voltage, (E) and plate current, (I) can be expressed as:

$$I = K\,E^{3/2}$$

where,

K is a constant determined by the geometry of the element structure within the electron tube.

Plate-Current Saturation As plate voltage is raised to the potential where the cathode space charge is neutralized, all the electrons that the cathode is capable of emitting are being attracted to the plate. The electron tube is said then to have reached *saturation* plate current. Further increase in plate voltage will cause only a relatively small increase in plate current. The initial point of plate-current saturation is sometimes called the point of *Maximum Space-Charge-Limited Emission* (MSCLE).

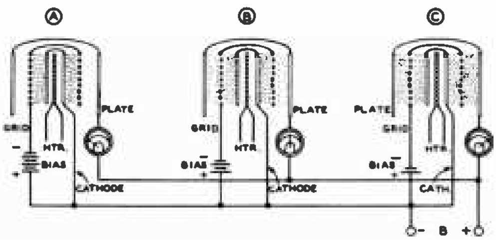


Figure 7

ACTION OF THE GRID IN A TRIODE

(A) shows the triode tube with cutoff bias on the grid. Note that all the electrons emitted by the cathode remain inside the grid mesh. (B) shows the same tube with an intermediate value of bias on the grid. Note the medium value of plate current and the fact that there is a reserve of electrons remaining within the grid mesh. (C) shows the operation with a relatively small amount of bias which with certain tube types will allow substantially all the electrons emitted by the cathode to reach the plate. Emission is said to be saturated in this case. In a majority of tube types a high value of positive grid voltage is required before plate-current saturation takes place.

The degree of flattening in the plate-voltage plate-current curve after the MSCLE point will vary with different types of cathodes. This effect is shown in figure 6. The flattening is quite sharp with a pure tungsten emitter. With thoriated tungsten the flattening is smoothed somewhat, while with an oxide-coated cathode the flattening is quite gradual. The gradual saturation in emission with an oxide-coated emitter is generally considered to result from a lowering of the surface work function by the field at the cathode resulting from the plate potential.

Electron Energy Dissipation The current flowing in the plate-cathode space of a conducting electron tube represents the energy required to accelerate electrons from the zero potential of the cathode space charge to the potential of the anode. Then, when these accelerated electrons strike the anode, the energy associated with their velocity is immediately released to the anode structure. In normal electron tubes this energy release appears as heating of the plate or anode structure.

4-3 The Triode

If an element consisting of a mesh or spiral of wire is inserted concentric with the plate and between the plate and the cathode, such an element will be able to control by electrostatic action the cathode-to-plate current of the tube. The new element is called a *grid*, and a vacuum tube containing a cathode, grid, and plate is commonly called a *triode*.

Action of the Grid If this new element through which the electrons must pass in their course from cathode to plate is made negative with respect to the cathode, the negative charge on this grid will effectively repel the negatively charged electrons (like charges repel; unlike charges attract) back into the space charge surrounding the cathode. Hence, the number of electrons which are able to pass through the grid mesh and reach the plate will be reduced, and the plate current will be reduced accordingly. If the charge on the grid is made sufficiently negative, all the electrons leaving the cathode will be repelled back to it and the plate current will be reduced to zero. Any d-c voltage placed on a grid is called a *bias* (especially so when speaking of a control grid). The smallest negative voltage which will cause cutoff of plate current at a particular plate voltage is called the value of *cutoff bias* (figure 7).

Amplification Factor The amount of plate current in a triode is a result of the net field at the cathode from interaction between the field caused by the grid bias and that caused by the plate voltage. Hence, both grid bias and plate voltage affect the plate current. In all normal tubes

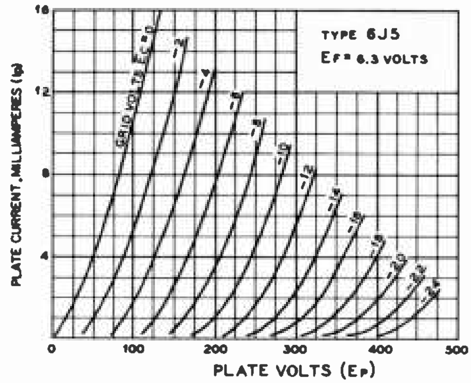


Figure 8

NEGATIVE-GRID CHARACTERISTICS (I_p VS. E_p CURVES) OF A TYPICAL TRIODE

Average plate characteristics of this form are most commonly used in determining the class-A operating characteristics of a triode amplifier stage.

a small change in grid bias has a considerably greater effect than a similar change in plate voltage. The ratio between the change in grid bias and the change in plate current which will cause the same small change in plate current is called the *amplification factor* or μ of the electron tube. Expressed as an equation:

$$\mu = -\frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta E_g}$$

with i_p constant (Δ represents a small increment).

The μ can be determined experimentally by making a small change in grid bias, thus slightly changing the plate current. The plate current is then returned to the original value by making a change in the plate voltage. The ratio of the change in plate voltage to the change in grid voltage is the μ of the tube under the operating conditions chosen for the test.

Current Flow in a Triode In a diode it was shown that the electrostatic field at the cathode was proportional to the plate potential (E_p) and that the total cathode current was proportional to the three-halves power of the plate voltage. Similiarly, in a triode it can be shown that the field at the cathode space charge is proportional to the equivalent voltage ($E_g + E_p/\mu$), where the amplification factor, μ, actually represents the relative effectiveness of grid potential and plate potential in producing a field at the cathode.

It would then be expected that the cathode current in a triode would be proportional to the three-halves power of ($E_g + E_p/\mu$). The cathode current of a triode can be represented with fair accuracy by the expression:

$$\text{cathode current} = K\left(E_g + \frac{E_p}{\mu}\right)^{3/2}$$

where,

K is a constant determined by element geometry within the triode.

Plate Resistance The *plate resistance* of a vacuum tube is the ratio of a change in plate voltage to the change in plate current which the change in plate voltage produces. To be accurate, the changes should be very small with respect to the operating values. Expressed as an equation:

$$R_p = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta I_p}$$

where,

E_g is held constant,
Δ equals small increment.

The plate resistance can also be determined by the experiment mentioned above. By noting the change in plate current as it occurs when the plate voltage is changed (grid voltage held constant), and by dividing the latter by the former, the plate resistance can be determined. Plate resistance is expressed in ohms.

Transconductance The *mutual conductance,* also referred to as *transconductance,* is the ratio of a change in the plate current to the change in grid voltage which brought about the plate-current change, the plate voltage being held constant. Expressed as an equation:

$$g_m = \frac{\Delta I_p}{\Delta E_g}$$

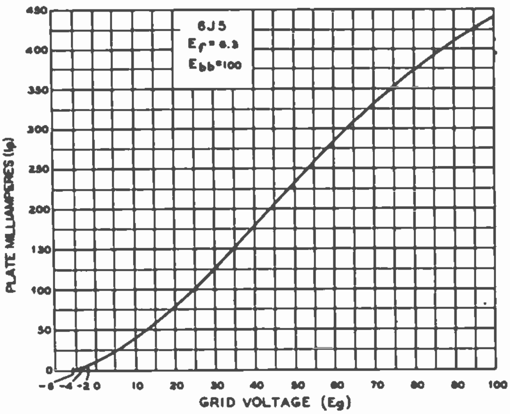


Figure 9

POSITIVE-GRID CHARACTERISTICS (I_p vs. E_g) OF A TYPICAL TRIODE

Plate characteristics of this type are most commonly used in determining the pulse-signal operating characteristics of a triode amplifier stage. Note the large emission capability of the oxide-coated heater cathode in tubes of the general type of the 6J5.

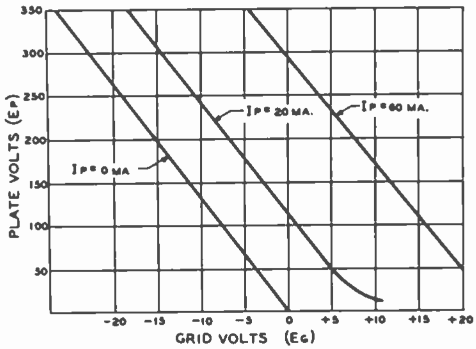


Figure 10

CONSTANT CURRENT (E_p vs. E_g) CHARACTERISTICS OF A TYPICAL TRIODE TUBE

This type of graphical representation is used for class-C amplifier calculations since the operating characteristic of a class-C amplifier is a straight line when drawn on a constant current graph.

where,

E_p is held constant,
Δ equals small increment.

The transconductance is also numerically equal to the amplification factor divided by the plate resistance. $g_m = \mu / R_p$.

Transconductance is most commonly expressed in microreciprocal-ohms or *micromhos*. However, since transconductance expresses change in plate current as a function of a change in grid voltage, a tube is often said to have a transconductance of so many milliamperes per volt. If the transconductance in milliamperes per volt is multiplied by 1000 it will then be expressed in micromhos. Thus the transconductance of a 6A3 could be called either 5.25 ma/volt or 5250 micromhos.

Characteristic Curves of a Triode Tube The operating characteristics of a triode tube may be summarized in three sets of curves: The I_p vs. E_p curve (figure 8), the I_p vs. E_g curve (figure 9) and the E_p vs. E_g curve (figure 10). The *plate resistance* (R_p) of the tube may be observed from the I_p vs. E_p curve, the *transconductance* (g_m) may be observed from the I_p vs. E_g curve, and the *amplification factor* (μ) may be determined from the E_p vs. E_g curve.

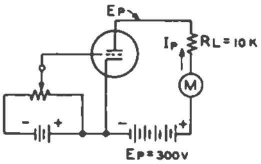
The Load Line A *load line* is a graphical representation of the voltage on the plate of a vacuum tube and the current passing through the plate circuit of the tube for various values of plate load resistance and plate supply voltage. Figure 11 illustrates a triode tube with a resistive plate load, and a supply voltage of 300 volts. The voltage at the plate of the tube (e_p) may be expressed as:

$$e_p = E_p - \left(i_p \times R_L \right)$$

where,

E_p is the plate supply voltage,
i_p is the plate current,
R_L is the load resistance in ohms.

Assuming various values of i_p flowing in the circuit, controlled by the internal resistance of the tube, (a function of the grid bias) values of plate voltage may be plotted as shown for each value of plate current (i_p). The line connecting these points is called the *load line* for the particular value of plate load resistance used. The *slope* of the load line is equal to the ratio of the lengths of the vertical and horizontal projections of any segment of the load line.



IP(MA)	EP
0	300
5	250
10	200
15	150
20	100
25	50
30	0

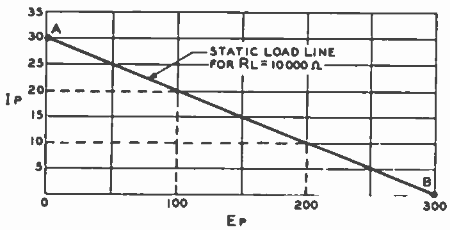


Figure 11

The static load line for a typical triode tube with a plate load resistance of 10,000 ohms.

For this example it is:

$$\text{slope} = -\left(\frac{.01 - .02}{100 - 200}\right)$$

$$= -.0001 = -\frac{1}{10,000}$$

The slope of the load line is equal to $-1/R_L$. At point A on the load line, the voltage across the tube is zero. This would be true for a perfect tube with zero internal voltage drop, or if the tube is short-circuited from cathode to plate. Point B on the load line corresponds to the cutoff point of the tube, where no plate current is flowing. The operating range of the tube lies between these two extremes. For additional information regarding *dynamic* load lines, the reader is referred to the *Radiotron Designer's Handbook* distributed by Radio Corporation of America.

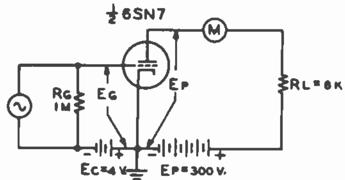


Figure 12

TRIODE TUBE CONNECTED FOR DETERMINATION OF PLATE-CIRCUIT LOAD LINE AND OPERATING PARAMETERS OF THE CIRCUIT

Application of Tube Characteristics As an example of the application of tube characteristics, the constants of the triode amplifier circuit shown in figure 12 may be considered. The plate supply is 300 volts, and the plate load is 8000 ohms.

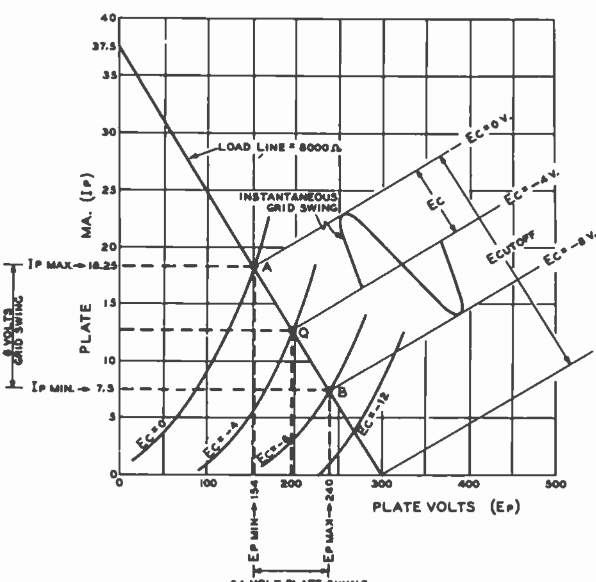


Figure 13

APPLICATION OF I_p vs. E_p CHARACTERISTICS OF A VACUUM TUBE

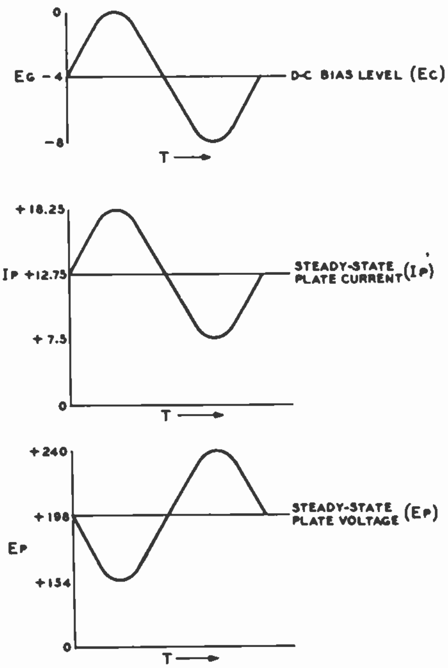


Figure 14

POLARITY REVERSAL BETWEEN GRID AND PLATE VOLTAGES

If the tube is considered to be an open circuit no plate current will flow, and there is no voltage drop across the plate load resistor (R_L). The plate voltage on the tube is therefore 300 volts. If, on the other hand, the tube is considered to be a short circuit, maximum possible plate current flows and the full 300 volt drop appears across R_L. The plate voltage is zero, and the plate current is 300/1000, or 37.5 milliamperes. These two extreme conditions define the ends of the load line on the I_p vs. E_p characteristic curve, figure 13.

For this application the grid of the tube is returned to a steady biasing voltage of -4 volts. The steady or quiescent operation of the tube is determined by the intersection of the load line with the -4-volt curve at point Q. By projection from point Q through the plate-current axis it is found that the value of plate current with no signal applied to the grid is 12.75 milliamperes. By projection from point Q through the plate-voltage axis it is found that the quiescent plate voltage is 198 volts. This leaves

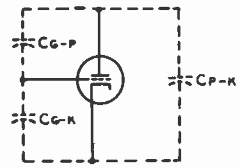


Figure 15

SCHEMATIC REPRESENTATION OF INTERELECTRODE CAPACITANCE

a drop of 102 volts across R_L which is borne out by the relation $0.01275 \times 8000 = 102$ volts.

An alternating voltage of 4 volts maximum swing about the normal bias value of -4 volts is applied now to the grid of the triode amplifier. This signal swings the grid in a positive direction to 0 volts, and in a negative direction to -8 volts, and establishes the *operating region* of the tube along the load line between points A and B. Thus the maxima and minima of the plate voltage and plate current are established. By projection from points A and B through the plate-current axis the maximum instantaneous plate current is found to be 18.25 milliamperes and the minimum is 7.5 milliamperes. By projections from points A and B through the plate-voltage axis the minimum instantaneous plate-voltage swing is found to be 154 volts and the maximum is 240 volts.

By this graphical application of the I_p vs. E_p characteristic of the 6SN7 triode the operation of the circuit illustrated in figure 12 becomes apparent. A voltage variation of 8 volts (peak to peak) on the grid produces a variation of 84 volts at the plate.

Polarity Inversion When the signal voltage applied to the grid has its maximum positive instantaneous value the plate current is also maximum. Reference to figure 12 shows that this maximum plate current flows through plate-load resistor R_L, producing a maximum voltage drop across it. The lower end of R_L is connected to the plate supply, and is therefore held at a constant potential of 300 volts. With maximum voltage drop across the load resistor, the upper end of R_L is at a minimum instantaneous voltage. The plate of the tube is connected to this end of R_L and is there-

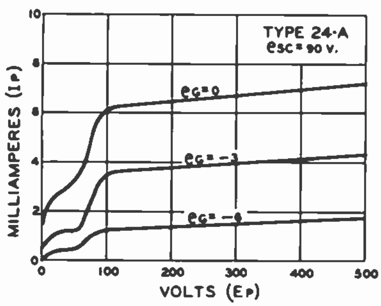


Figure 16

TYPICAL I_p vs. E_p TETRODE CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

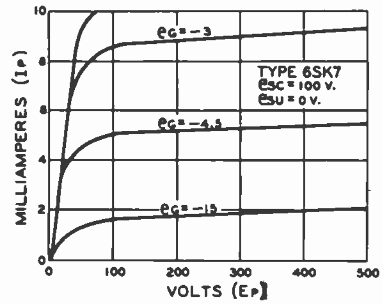


Figure 17

TYPICAL I_p vs. E_p PENTODE CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

fore at the same minimum instantaneous potential.

This polarity reversal between instantaneous grid and plate voltages is further clarified by a consideration of Kirchhoff's law as it applies to series resistance. The sum of the *IR* drops around the plate circuit must at all times equal the supply voltage of 300 volts. Thus when the instantaneous voltage drop across R_L is maximum, the voltage drop across the tube is minimum, and their sum must equal 300 volts. The variations of grid voltage, plate current and plate voltage about their steady-state values is illustrated in figure 14.

Interelectrode Capacitance Capacitance always exists between any two pieces of metal separated by a dielectric. The exact amount of capacitance depends on the size of the metal pieces, the dielectric between them, and the type of dielectric. The electrodes of a vacuum tube have a similar characteristic known as *interelectrode capacitance*, illustrated in figure 15. These direct capacitances in a triode are: grid-to-cathode capacitance, grid-to-plate capacitance, and plate-to-cathode capacitance. The interelectrode capacitance, though very small, has a coupling effect, and often can cause unbalance in a particular circuit. At very-high frequencies (vhf), interelectrode capacitances become very objectionable and prevent the use of conventional tubes at these frequencies. Special vhf tubes must be used which are characterized by very small electrodes and close internal spacing of the elements of the tube.

4-4 Tetrode or Screen-Grid Tubes

Many desirable characteristics can be obtained in a vacuum tube by the use of more than one grid. The most common multielement tube is the tetrode (four electrodes). Other tubes containing as many as eight electrodes are available for special applications.

The Tetrode The quest for a simple and easily usable method of eliminating the effects of the grid-to-plate capacitance of the triode led to the development of the *screen-grid* tube, or *tetrode.* When another grid is added between the grid and plate of a vacuum tube the tube is called a tetrode, and because the new grid is called a *screen*, as a result of its screening or shielding action, the tube is often called a screen-grid tube. The interposed screen grid acts as an electrostatic shield between the grid and plate, with the consequence that the grid-to-plate capacitance is reduced. Although the screen grid is maintained at a positive voltage with respect to the cathode of the tube, it is maintained at ground potential with respect to r.f. by means of a bypass capacitor of very low reactance at the frequency of operation.

In addition to the shielding effect, the screen grid serves another very useful purpose. Since the screen is maintained at a positive potential, it serves to increase or accelerate the flow of electrons to the plate. There being large openings in the screen mesh, most of the electrons pass through it and on to the plate. Due also to the screen, the plate current is largely independent of plate voltage, thus making for high amplification. When the screen voltage is held at a constant value, it is possible to make large changes in plate voltage without appreciably affecting the plate current, (figure 16).

When the electrons from the cathode approach the plate with sufficient velocity, they dislodge electrons on striking the plate. This effect of *bombarding* the plate with high-velocity electrons, with the consequent dislodgement of other electrons from the plate, gives rise to the condition of secondary emission which has been discussed in a previous paragraph. This effect can cause no particular difficulty in a triode because the secondary electrons so emitted are eventually attracted back to the plate. In the screen-grid tube, however, the screen is close to the plate and is maintained at a positive potential. Thus, the screen will attract these electrons which have been knocked from the plate, particularly when the plate voltage falls to a lower value than the screen voltage, with the result that the plate current is lowered and the amplification is decreased.

In the application of tetrodes, it is necessary to operate the plate at a high voltage in relation to the screen in order to overcome these effects of *secondary emission.*

The Pentode The undesirable effects of secondary emission from the plate can be greatly reduced if yet another element is added between the screen and plate. This additional element is called a *suppressor*, and tubes in which it is used are called *pentodes*. The suppressor grid is sometimes connected to the cathode within the tube; sometimes it is brought out to a connecting pin on the tube base, but in any case it is established negative with respect to the minimum plate voltage. The secondary electrons that would travel to the screen if there were no suppressor are diverted back to the plate. The plate current is, therefore, not reduced and the amplification possibilities are increased (figure 17).

Pentodes for audio applications are designed so that the suppressor increases the limits to which the plate voltage may swing; therefore the consequent power output and gain can be very great. Pentodes for radio-frequency service function in such a manner that the suppressor allows high voltage gain, at the same time permitting fairly high gain at low plate voltage. This holds true even if the plate voltage is the same or slightly lower than the screen voltage.

Remote-Cutoff Tubes *Remote-cutoff* tubes (variable-μ) are screen grid tubes in which the control grid structure has been physically modified so as to cause the plate current of the tube to drop off gradually, rather than to have a well-defined cutoff point (figure 18). A non-uniform control-grid structure is used, so that the amplification factor is different for different parts of the control grid.

Remote-cutoff tubes are used in circuits where it is desired to control the amplification by varying the control-grid bias. The characteristic curve of an ordinary screen-grid tube has considerable curvature near the plate-current cutoff point, while the curve of a remote-cutoff tube is much more linear (figure 19). The remote-cutoff tube minimizes cross-talk interference that would otherwise be produced. Examples of remote cutoff tubes are: 6BD6, 6BA6, 6SG7 and 6SK7.

Beam-Power Tubes A *beam-power* tube makes use of another method of suppressing secondary emission. In this tube there are four electrodes: a cathode, a grid, a screen, and a plate, so spaced and placed that secondary emission from the plate is suppressed without actual power loss. Because of the manner in which the electrodes are spaced, the electrons which travel to the plate are slowed down when the plate voltage is low, almost to zero velocity in a certain region between screen and plate. For this reason the electrons form a stationary cloud, or *space charge*. The effect of this space charge is to repel secondary electrons emitted from the plate and thus cause them to return to the plate. In this way, secondary emission is suppressed.

Another feature of the beam-power tube is the low current drawn by the screen. The screen and the grid are spiral wires wound so that each turn in the screen is shaded from the cathode by a grid turn. This alignment of the screen and the grid causes the electrons to travel in sheets between the turns of the screen so that very few of them

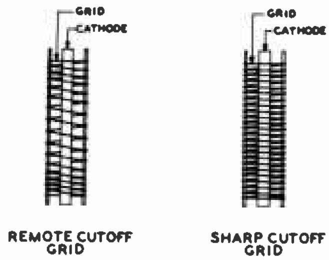


Figure 18

REMOTE-CUTOFF GRID STRUCTURE

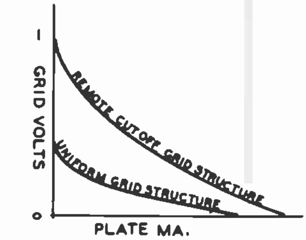


Figure 19

ACTION OF A REMOTE-CUTOFF GRID STRUCTURE

strike the screen itself. This formation of the electron stream into sheets or beams increases the charge density in the screen-plate region and assists in the creation of the space charge in this region.

Because of the effective suppressor action provided by the space charge, and because of the low current drawn by the screen, the beam-power tube has the advantages of high power output, high power sensitivity, and high efficiency. The 6AQ5 is such a beam-power tube, designed for use in the power-amplifier stages of receivers and speech amplifiers or modulators. Larger tubes employing the beam-power principle are being made by various manufacturers for use in the radio-frequency stages of transmitters. These tubes feature extremely high power sensitivity (a very small amount of driving power is required for a large output), good plate efficiency, and low grid-to-plate capacitance. Examples of these tubes are 813, 4-250A, 4CX250B, etc.

Grid-Screen Mu Factor The *grid-screen μ factor* (μ_{sg}) is analogous to the amplification factor in a triode, except that the screen of a pentode or tetrode is substituted for the plate of a triode. μ_{sg} denotes the ratio of a change in grid voltage to a change in screen voltage, each of which will produce the same change in screen current. Expressed as an equation:

$$\mu_{sg} = \frac{\Delta E_{sg}}{\Delta E_g}$$

where,
I_{sg} is held constant,
Δ equals small increment.

The grid-screen μ factor is important in determining the operating bias of a tetrode or pentode tube. The relationship between control-grid potential and screen potential determines the plate current of the tube as well as the screen current since the plate current is essentially independent of the plate voltage in tubes of this type. In other words, when the tube is operated at cutoff bias as determined by the screen voltage and the grid-screen μ factor (determined in the same way as with a triode, by dividing the operating voltage by the μ factor) the plate current will be substantially at cutoff, as will be the screen current. The grid-screen μ factor is numerically equal to the amplification factor of the same tetrode or pentode tube when it is triode connected.

Current Flow in Tetrodes and Pentodes The following equation is the expression for total cathode current in a triode tube. The expression for the total cathode current of a tetrode and a pentode tube is the same, except that the screen-grid voltage and the grid-screen μ factor are used in place of the plate voltage and μ of the triode.

$$\text{cathode current} = K\left(E_g + \frac{E_{sg}}{\mu_{sg}}\right)^{3/2}$$

Cathode current, of course, is the sum of the screen and plate currents plus control-grid current in the event that the control grid is positive with respect to the cathode. It will be noted that total *cathode* current is independent of plate voltage in a tetrode or pentode. Also, in the usual tetrode or pentode the *plate* current is substantially independent of plate voltage over the usual operating range—which means simply that the effective plate resistance of such tubes is relatively high. However, when the plate voltage falls below the normal operating range, the plate current falls sharply, while the screen current rises to such a value that the total cathode current remains substantially constant. Hence, the screen grid in a tetrode or pentode will almost invariably be damaged by excessive dissipation if the plate voltage is removed while the screen voltage is still being applied from a low-impedance source.

The Effect of Grid Current The current equations show how the total cathode current in triodes, tetrodes, and pentodes is a function of the potentials applied to the various electrodes. If only one electrode is positive with respect to the cathode (such as would be the case in a triode acting as a class-A amplifier) all the cathode current goes to the plate. But when both screen and plate are positive in a tetrode or pentode, the cathode current divides between the two elements. Hence the screen current is taken from the total cathode current, while the balance goes to the plate. Further, if the control grid in a tetrode or pentode is operated at a positive potential the total cathode current is divided between all three elements which have a positive potential. In a tube which is receiving a large excitation voltage, it may be said that the control grid robs electrons from the output electrode during the period that the grid is positive, making it always necessary to limit the peak-positive excursion of the control grid.

Coefficients of Tetrodes and Pentodes In general it may be stated that the amplification factor of tetrode and pentode tubes is a coefficient which is not of much use to the designer. In fact the amplification factor is seldom given on the design-data sheets of such tubes. Its value is usually very high, due to the relatively high plate resistance of such tubes, but bears little relationship to the stage gain which actually will be obtained with such tubes.

On the other hand, the *grid-plate transconductance* is the most important coefficient of pentode and tetrode tubes. Gain per stage can be computed directly when the g_m is known. The grid-plate transconductance of a tetrode or pentode tube can be calculated through use of the expression:

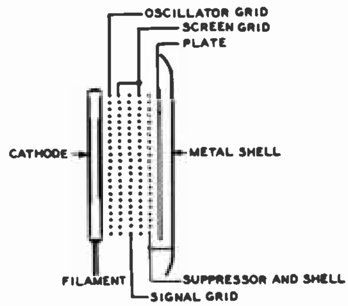


Figure 20

GRID STRUCTURE OF 6SA7 CONVERTER TUBE

$$g_m = \frac{\Delta I_p}{\Delta E_g}$$

with E_{sg} and E_p constant.

The plate resistance of such tubes is of less importance than in the case of triodes, though it is often of value in determining the amount of damping a tube will exert on the impedance in its plate circuit. Plate resistance is calculated from:

$$R_p = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta I_p}$$

with E_g and E_{sg} constant.

4-5 Mixer and Converter Tubes

The superheterodyne receiver always includes at least one stage for changing the frequency of the incoming signal to the fixed frequency of the main intermediate-frequency amplifier in the receiver. This frequency-changing process is accomplished by selecting the beat-note difference frequency between a locally generated oscillation and the incoming signal frequency. If the oscillator signal is supplied by a separate tube, the frequency changing tube is called a *mixer*. Alternatively, the oscillation may be generated by additional elements within the frequency-changer tube. In this case the frequency changer is commonly called a *converter* tube.

Conversion Conductance The *conversion conductance* (g_c) is a coefficient of interest in the case of mixer or converter tubes, or of conventional triodes, tetrodes, or pentodes operating as frequency changers. The conversion conductance is the ratio of a change in the signal-grid voltage at the input frequency to a change in the output current at the converted frequency. Hence g_c in a mixer is essentially the same as transconductance in an amplifier, with the exception that the input signal and the output current are on different frequencies. The value of g_c in conventional mixer tubes is from 300 to 3000 micromhos. The value of g_c in an amplifier tube operated as a mixer is approximately 0.3 the g_m of the tube operated as an amplifier. The voltage gain of a mixer stage is equal to $g_c Z_L$ where Z_L is the impedance of the plate load into which the mixer tube operates.

The Diode Mixer The simplest mixer tube is the diode. The noise figure, or figure of merit, for a mixer of this type is not as good as that obtained with other more complex mixers; however, the diode is useful as a mixer in uhf and vhf equipment where low interelectrode capacities are vital to circuit operation. Since the diode impedance is low, the local oscillator must furnish considerable power to the diode mixer. A good diode mixer has an over-all gain of about 0.5.

The Triode Mixer A triode mixer has better gain and a better noise figure than the diode mixer. At low frequencies, the gain and noise figure of a triode mixer closely approaches those figures obtained when the tube is used as an amplifier. In the uhf and vhf range, the efficiency of the triode mixer deteriorates rapidly. The optimum local-oscillator voltage for a triode mixer is about 0.7 as large as the cutoff bias of the triode. Very little local-oscillator power is required by a triode mixer.

Pentode Mixers and Converter Tubes A common multigrid converter tube for broadcast or shortwave use is the *pentagrid converter*, typified by the 6BE6, 6BA7, and 6SA7 tubes (figure 20). Operation of these converter tubes and pentode mixers will be covered in the Receiver Fundamentals Chapter.

4-6 Electron Tubes at Very-High Frequencies

As the frequency of operation of the usual type of electron tube is increased above about 20 MHz, certain assumptions which are valid for operation at lower frequencies must be re-examined. First, we find that lead inductances from the socket connections to the actual elements within the envelope no longer are negligible. Second, we find that electron transit time no longer may be ignored; an appreciable fraction of a cycle of input signal may be required for an electron to leave the cathode space charge, pass through the grid wires, and travel through the space between grid and plate.

Effects of Lead Inductance The effect of lead inductance is twofold. First, as shown in figure 21, the combination of grid-lead inductance, grid-cathode capacitance, and cathode-lead inductance tends to reduce the effective grid-cathode signal voltage for a constant voltage at the tube terminals as the frequency is increased. Second, cathode-lead inductance tends to introduce undesired coupling between the various elements within the tube.

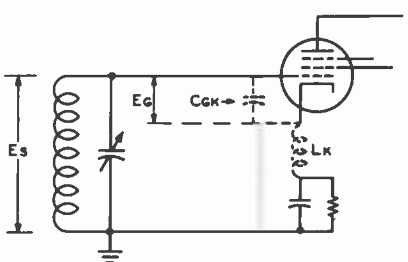


Figure 21

SHOWING THE EFFECT OF CATHODE LEAD INDUCTANCE

The degenerative action of cathode-lead inductance tends to reduce the effective grid-to-cathode voltage with respect to the voltage available across the input tuned circuit. Cathode-lead inductance also introduces undesirable coupling between the input and the output circuits.

Tubes especially designed for vhf and uhf use have had their lead inductances minimized. The usual procedures for reducing lead inductance are: (1) using heavy lead conductors or several leads in parallel (examples are the 6J4 and 6AK5), (2) scaling down the tube in all dimensions to reduce both lead inductances and interelectrode capacitances (examples are the 6CW4, 6F4, and other nuvistor and miniature tubes), and (3) the use of very low-inductance extensions of the elements themselves as external connections (examples are lighthouse tubes such as the 2C40, planar tubes such as the 2C29, and many types of vhf transmitting tubes).

Effect of Transit Time When an electron tube is operated at a frequency high enough that electron transit time between cathode and plate is an appreciable fraction of a cycle at the input frequency, several undesirable effects take place. First, the grid takes power from the input signal even though the grid is negative at all times. This comes about since the grid will have changed its potential during the time required for an electron to pass from cathode to plate. Due to interaction, and a resulting phase difference between the field associated with the grid and that associated with a moving electron, the grid presents a resistance to an input signal in addition to its normal "cold" capacitance. Further, as a result of this action, plate current no longer is in phase with grid voltage.

An amplifier stage operating at a frequency high enough that *transit time* is appreciable:

(a) Is difficult to excite as a result of grid loss from the equivalent input grid resistance,

(b) Is capable of less output since transconductance is reduced and plate current is not in phase with grid voltage.

The effects of transit time increase with the square of the operating frequency, and they increase rapidly as frequency is increased above the value where they become just appreciable. These effects may be reduced by scaling down tube dimensions; a procedure which also reduces lead inductance. Further, transit-time effects may be reduced by the obvious procedure of increasing electrode potentials so that electron velocity will be increased. However, due to the law of electron motion in an electric field, transit time is increased only as the square root of the ratio of operating potential increase; therefore this expedient is of limited value due to other limitations on operating voltages of small electron tubes.

4-7 Special Microwave Electron Tubes

Due primarily to the limitation imposed by transit time, conventional negative-grid electron tubes are capable of affording worthwhile amplification and power output only up to a definite upper frequency. This upper frequency limit varies from perhaps 100 MHz for conventional tube types to about 4000 MHz for specialized types such as the lighthouse tube. Above the limiting frequency, the conventional negative-grid tube no longer is practicable and recourse must be taken to totally different types of electron tubes in which electron transit time is not a limitation to operation. Three of the most important of such microwave tube types are the *klystron*, the *magnetron*, and the *traveling-wave tube*.

The Power Klystron The klystron is a type of electron tube in which electron transit time is used to advantage. Such tubes comprise, as shown in figure 22, a cathode, a focusing electrode, a resonator connected to a pair of grids which afford *velocity modulation* of the electron beam (called the "buncher"), a *drift space*, and another resonator connected to a pair of grids (called the "catcher"). A *collector* for the expended electrons may be included at the end of the tube, or the catcher may also perform the function of electron collection.

The tube operates in the following manner: The cathode emits a stream of electrons which is focused into a beam by the focusing electrode. The stream passes through the buncher where it is acted upon by any field existing between the two grids of the buncher cavity. When the potential between the two grids is zero, the stream passes through without change in velocity. But when the potential between the two grids of the buncher is increasingly positive in the

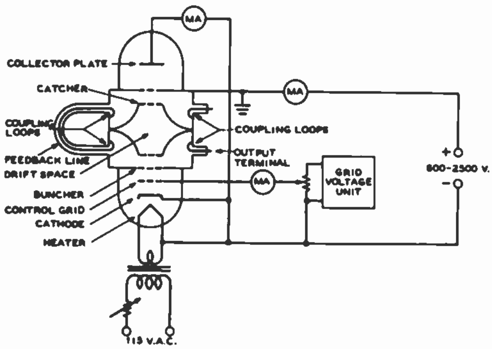


Figure 22

TWO-CAVITY KLYSTRON OSCILLATOR

A conventional two-cavity klystron is shown with a feedback loop connected between the two cavities so that the tube may be used as an oscillator.

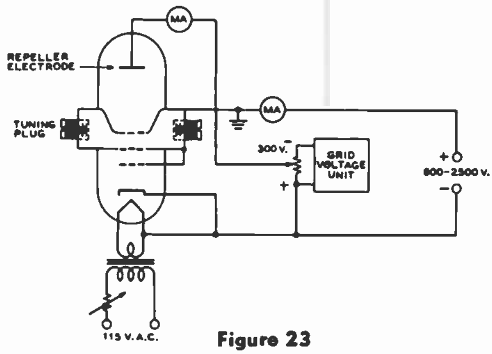


Figure 23

REFLEX KLYSTRON OSCILLATOR

A conventional reflex klystron oscillator of the type commonly used as a local oscillator in superheterodyne receivers operating above about 2000 MHz is shown above. Frequency modulation of the output frequency of the oscillator, or afc operation in a receiver, may be obtained by varying the negative voltage on the repeller electrode.

direction of electron motion, the velocity of the electrons in the beam is increased. Conversely, when the field becomes increasingly negative in the direction of the beam (corresponding to the other half-cycle of the exciting voltage from that which produced electron acceleration) the velocity of the electrons in the beam is decreased.

When the velocity-modulated electron beam reaches the drift space where there is no field, those electrons which have been sped up on one half-cycle overtake those immediately ahead which were slowed down on the other half-cycle. In this way, the beam electrons become bunched together. As the bunched groups pass through the two grids of the catcher cavity, they impart pulses of energy to these grids. The catcher-grid space is charged to different voltage levels by the passing electron bunches, and a corresponding oscillating field is set up in the catcher cavity. The catcher is designed to resonate at the frequency of the velocity-modulated beam, or at a harmonic of this frequency.

In the klystron amplifier, energy delivered by the buncher to the catcher grids is greater than that applied to the buncher cavity by the input signal. In the klystron oscillator a feedback loop connects the two cavities. Coupling to either buncher or catcher is provided by small loops which enter the cavities by way of concentric lines.

The klystron is an electron-coupled device. When used as an oscillator, its output voltage is rich in harmonics Klystron oscillators of various types afford power outputs ranging from less than 1 watt to many thousand watts. Operating efficiency varies between 5 and 50 percent. Frequency may be shifted to some extent by varying the beam voltage. Tuning is carried on mechanically in some klystrons by altering (by means of knob settings) the shape of the resonant cavity.

The Reflex Klystron The multicavity klystron as described in the preceding paragraphs is primarily used as a transmitting device since quite reasonable amounts of power are made available in its output circuit. However, for applications where a much smaller amount of power is required — power levels in the milliwatt range — for low-power transmitters, receiver local oscillators, etc., another type of klystron having only a single cavity is more frequently used.

The theory of operation of the single-cavity klystron is essential the same as the multicavity type with the exception that the velocity-modulated electron beam, after having left the buncher cavity is reflected back into the area of the buncher again by a repeller electrode as illustrated in figure 23. The potentials on the various electrodes are adjusted to a value súch that proper bunching of the electron beam will take

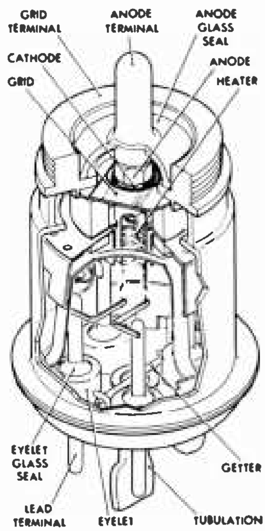


Figure 24

CUTAWAY VIEW OF WESTERN ELECTRIC 416-B/6280 VHF PLANAR TRIODE TUBE

The 416-B, designed by the Bell Telephone Laboratories is intended for amplifier or frequency multiplier service in the 4000 MHz region. Employing grid wires having a diameter equal to fifteen wavelengths of light, the 416-B has a transconductance of 50,000. Spacing between grid and cathode is .0005", to reduce transit-time effects. Entire tube is gold plated.

place just as a particular portion of the velocity-modulated beam re-enters the area of the resonant cavity. Since this type of klystron has only one circuit it can be used only as an oscillator and not as an amplifier. Effective modulation of the frequency of a single-cavity klystron for f-m work can be obtained by modulating the repeller electrode voltage.

The Magnetron The *magnetron* is an *uhf* oscillator tube normally employed where very-high values of peak power or moderate amounts of average power are required in the range from perhaps 700 MHz to 30,000 MHz. Special magnetrons were developed for wartime use in radar equipment which had peak power capabilities of several million watts (megawatts) output at frequencies in the vicinity of 3000 MHz. The normal duty cycle of operation of these radar units was approximately 1/10 of one percent (the tube operated about 1/1000 of the time and rested for the balance of the operating period) so that the average power output of these magnetrons was in the vicinity of 1000 watts.

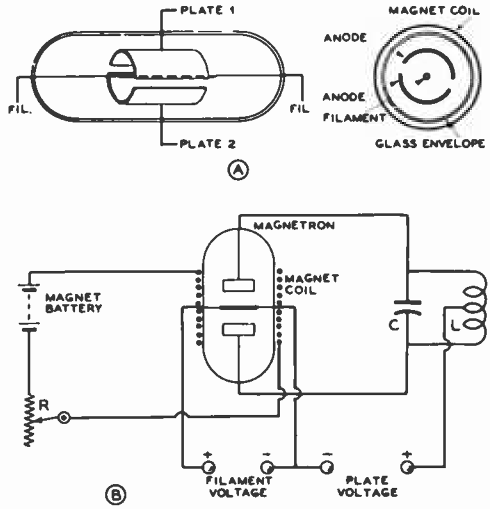


Figure 25

SIMPLE MAGNETRON OSCILLATOR

An external tank circuit is used with this type of magnetron oscillator for operation in the lower uhf range.

In its simplest form the magnetron tube is a filament-type diode with two half-cylindrical plates or anodes situated coaxially with respect to the filament. The construction is illustrated in figure 25A. The anodes of the magnetron are connected to a resonant circuit as illustrated in figure 25B. The tube is surrounded by an electromagnet coil which, in turn, is connected to a low-voltage d-c energizing source through a rheostat (R) for controlling the strength of the magnetic field. The field coil is oriented so that the lines of magnetic force it sets up are parallel to the axis of the electrodes.

Under the influence of the strong magnetic field, electrons leaving the filament are deflected from their normal paths and move in circular orbits within the anode cylinder. This effect results in a negative resistance which sustains oscillations. The oscillation frequency is very nearly the value determined by *L* and *C*. In other magnetron circuits, the frequency may be governed by

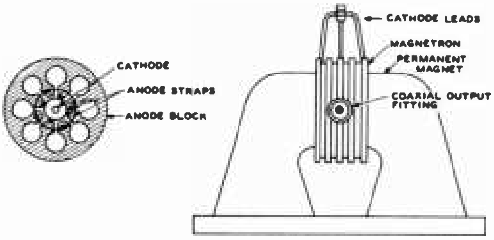


Figure 26

MODERN MULTICAVITY MAGNETRON

Illustrated is an external-anode strapped magnetron of the type commonly used in radar equipment for the 10-cm. range. An integral permanent magnet is shown in the righthand portion of the drawing, with the magnetron in place between the pole pieces of the magnet.

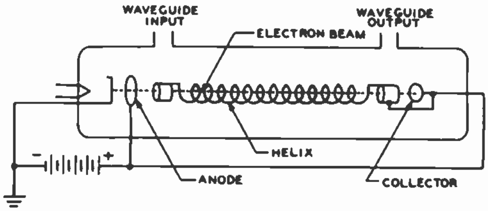


Figure 27

THE TRAVELING-WAVE TUBE

Operation of this tube is the result of interaction between the electron beam and wave traveling along the helix.

the electron rotation, no external tuned circuits being employed. Wavelengths of less than 1 centimeter have been produced with such circuits.

More complex magnetron tubes employ no external tuned circuit, but utilize instead one or more resonant cavities which are integral with the anode structure. Figure 26 shows a magnetron of this type having a multicellular anode of eight cavities. It will be noted, also, that alternate cavities (which would operate at the same polarity when the tube is oscillating) are strapped together. Strapping was found to improve the efficiency and stability of high-power radar magnetrons. In most radar applications of magnetron oscillators, a powerful permanent magnet of controlled characteristics is employed to supply the magnetic field, rather than the use of an electromagnet.

The Traveling-Wave Tube The *Traveling-Wave Tube* (figure 27) consists of a helix located within an evacuated envelope. Input and output terminations are affixed to each end of the helix. An electron beam passes through the helix and interacts with a wave traveling along the helix to produce broadband amplification at microwave frequencies.

When the input signal is applied to the gun end of the helix, it travels along the helix wire at approximately the speed of light. However, the signal velocity measured along the axis of the helix is considerably lower. The electrons emitted by the cathode gun pass axially through the helix to the collector, located at the output end of the helix. The average velocity of the electrons depends on the potential of the collector with respect to the cathode. When the average velocity of the electrons is greater than the velocity of the helix wave, the eletrons become crowded together in the various regions of retarded field, where they impart energy to the helix wave. A power gain of 100 or more may be produced by this tube.

4-8 The Cathode-Ray Tube

The Cathode-Ray Tube The *cathode-ray tube* is a special type of electron tube which permits the visual observation of electrical signals. It may be incorporated into an oscilloscope for use as a test instrument or it may be the display device for radar equipment or television.

Operation of the CRT A cathode-ray tube always includes an *electron gun* for producing a stream of electrons, a *grid* for controlling the intensity of the electron beam, and a *luminescent screen* for converting the impinging electron beam into visible light. Such a tube always operates in conjunction with either a built-in or an external means for focusing the electron stream into a narrow beam, and a means for deflecting the electron beam in accordance with an electrical signal.

The main electrical difference between types of cathode-ray tubes lies in the means employed for focusing and deflecting the electron beam. The beam may be focused

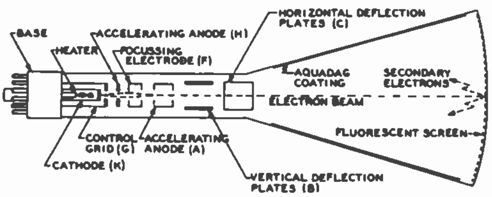


Figure 28

TYPICAL ELECTROSTATIC CATHODE-RAY TUBE

and/or deflected either electrostatically or magnetically, since a stream of electrons can be acted on either by an electrostatic or a magnetic field. In an electrostatic field the electron beam tends to be deflected toward the positive termination of the field (figure 28). In a magnetic field the stream tends to be deflected at right angles to the field. Further, an electron beam tends to be deflected so that it is normal (perpendicular) to the equipotential lines of an electrostatic field—and it tends to be deflected so that it is parallel to the lines of force in a magnetic field.

Large cathode-ray tubes used as *kinescopes* in television receivers usually are both focused and deflected magnetically. On the other hand, the medium-size CR tubes used in oscilloscopes and small television receivers usually are both focused and deflected electrostatically. Cathode-ray tubes for special applications may be focused magnetically and deflected electrostatically or vice versa.

There are advantages and disadvantages to both types of focusing and deflection. However, it may be stated that electrostatic deflection is much better than magnetic deflection when high-frequency waves are to be displayed on the screen; hence the almost universal use of this type of deflection for oscillographic work. When a tube is operated at a high value of accelerating potential so as to obtain a bright display on the face of the tube as for television or radar work, the use of magnetic deflection becomes desirable since it is relatively easier to deflect a high-velocity electron beam magnetically than electrostatically. An *ion trap* is required with magnetic deflection since the heavy negative ions emitted by the cathode are not materially deflected by the magnetic field and would burn an *ion spot* in the center of the luminescent screen. With electrostatic deflection the heavy ions are deflected equally as well as the electrons in the beam so that an ion spot is not formed.

Construction of Electrostatic CRT The construction of a typical electrostatic-focus, electrostatic - deflection cathode-ray tube is illustrated in the pictorial diagram of figure 28. The *indirectly heated cathode* (K) releases free electrons when heated by the enclosed filament. The cathode is surrounded by a cylinder (G) which has a small hole in its front for the passage of the electron steam. Although this element is not a wire mesh as is the usual grid, it is known by the same name because its action is similar: it controls the electron stream when its negative potential is varied.

Next in order, is found the first *accelerating anode* (H) which resembles another disk or cylinder with a small hole in its center. This electrode is run at a high or moderately high positive voltage, to accelerate the electrons toward the far end of the tube.

The *focusing electrode* (F) is a sleeve which usually contains two small disks, each with a small hole.

After leaving the focusing electrode, the electrons pass through another *accelerating anode* (A) which is operated at a high positive potential. In some tubes this electrode is operated at a higher potential than the first accelerating electrode (H) while in other tubes both accelerating electrodes are operated at the same potential.

The electrodes which have been described up to this point constitute the *electron gun*, which produces the free electrons and focuses them into a slender, concentrated, rapidly traveling stream for projecting onto the viewing screen.

Electrostatic Deflection To make the tube useful, means must be provided for deflecting the electron beam along two axes at right angles to each other. The more common tubes employ *electrostatic deflection plates*, one pair to exert a force on the beam in the vertical plane and one pair to exert a force in the horizontal plane. These plates are designated as B and C in figure 28.

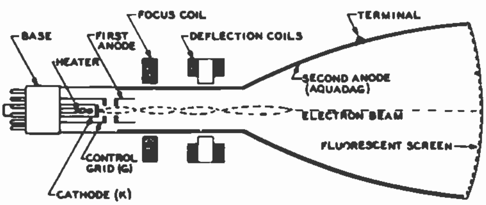


Figure 29

TYPICAL ELECTROMAGNETIC CATHODE-RAY TUBE

Standard oscilloscope practice with small cathode-ray tubes calls for connecting one of the B plates and one of the C plates together and to the high-voltage accelerating anode. With the newer three-inch tubes and with five-inch tubes and larger, all four deflection plates are commonly used for deflection. The *positive* high voltage is grounded, instead of the negative as is common practice in amplifiers, etc., in order to permit operation of the deflecting plates at a d-c potential at or near ground.

An *Aquadag* coating is applied to the inside of the envelope to attract any secondary electrons emitted by the fluorescent screen.

In the average electrostatic-deflection CR tube the spot will be fairly well centered if all four deflection plates are returned to the potential of the second anode (ground). However, for accurate centering and to permit moving the entire trace either horizontally or vertically to permit display of a particular waveform, horizontal- and vertical-centering controls usually are provided on the front of the oscilloscope.

After the spot is once centered, it is necessary only to apply a positive or negative voltage (with respect to ground) to one of the ungrounded or "free" deflector plates in order to move the spot. If the voltage is positive with respect to ground, the beam will be attracted toward that deflector plate, If it is negative, the beam and spot will be repulsed. The amount of deflection is directly proportional to the voltage (with respect to ground) that is applied to the free electrode.

With the larger-screen higher-voltage tubes it becomes necessary to place deflecting voltage on both horizontal and both vertical plates. This is done for two reasons: First, the amount of deflection voltage required by the high-voltage tubes is so great that a transmitting tube operating from a high-voltage supply would be required to attain this voltage without distortion. By using push-pull deflection with two tubes feeding the deflection plates, the necessary plate-supply voltage for the deflection amplifier is halved. Second, a certain amount of defocusing of the electron stream is always present on the extreme excursions in deflection voltage when this voltage is applied only to one deflecting plate. When the deflecting voltage is fed in push-pull to both deflecting plates in each plane, there is no defocusing because the *average* voltage acting on the electron stream is zero, even though the *net* voltage (which causes the deflection) acting on the stream is twice that on either plate.

The fact that the beam is deflected by a magnetic field is important even in an oscilloscope which employs a tube using electrostatic deflection, because it means that precautions must be taken to protect the tube from the transformer fields and sometimes even the earth's magnetic field. This normally is done by incorporating a magnetic shield around the tube and by placing any transformers as far from the tube as possible, oriented to the position which produces minimum effect on the electron stream.

Construction of Electromagnetic CRT The electromagnetic cathode-ray tube allows greater definition than does the electrostatic tube. Also, electromagnetic definition has a number of advantages when a rotating radial sweep is required to give polar indications.

The production of the electron beam in an electromagnetic tube is essentially the same as in the electrostatic tube. The grid structure is similar, and controls the electron beam in an identical manner. The elements of a typical electromagnetic tube are shown in figure 29. The *focus coil* is wound on an iron core which may be moved along the neck of the tube to focus the electron beam. For final adjustment, the current flowing in the coil may be varied. A second pair of coils, the *deflection coils*, are mounted at right angles to each other around the neck of the tube. In some cases, these coils can rotate around the axis of the tube.

Two *anodes* are used for accelerating the electrons from the cathode to the screen. The second anode is a graphite coating (*Aquadag*) on the inside of the glass envelope. The function of this coating is to attract any secondary electrons emitted by the fluorescent screen, and also to shield the electron beam.

In some types of electromagnetic tubes, a first, or *accelerating anode* is also used in addition to the *Aquadag*.

Electromagnetic Deflection A magnetic field will deflect an electron beam in a direction which is at right angles to both the direction of the field and the direction of motion of the beam.

In the general case, two pairs of deflection coils are used (figure 30). One pair is for horizontal deflection, and the other pair is for vertical deflection. The two coils in a pair are connected in series and are wound in such directions that the magnetic field flows from one coil, through the electron beam to the other coil. The force exerted on the beam by the field moves it to any point on the screen by application of the proper currents to these coils.

The Trace The human eye retains an image for about one-sixteenth second after viewing. In a CRT, the spot can be moved so quickly that a series of adjacent spots can be made to appear as a line, if the beam is swept over the path fast enough. As long as the electron beam strikes in a given place at least sixteen times a second, the spot will appear to the human eye as a source of continuous light with very little flicker.

Screen Materials—"Phosphors" At least five types of luminescent screen materials are commonly available on the various types of CR tubes commercially available. These screen materials are called *phosphors;* each of the five phosphors is best suited to a particular type of application. The P-1 phosphor, which has a green fluorescence with medium persistence, is almost invariably used for oscilloscope tubes for visual observation. The P-4 phosphor, with white fluorescence and medium

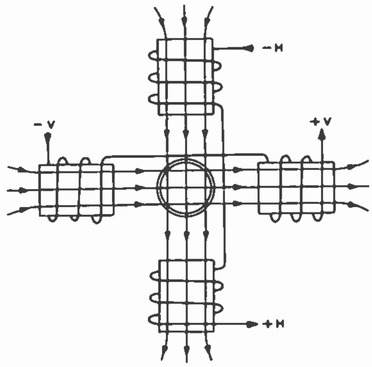


Figure 30

Two pairs of coils arranged for electromagnetic deflection in two directions.

persistence, is used on television viewing tubes (*Kinescopes*). The P-5 and P-11 phosphors, with blue fluorescence and very short persistence, are used primarily in oscilloscopes where photographic recording of the trace is to be obtained. The P-7 phosphor, which has a blue flash and a long-persistence greenish-yellow persistence, is used primarily for radar displays where retention of the image for several seconds after the initial signal display is required.

4-9 Gas Tubes

The space charge of electrons in the vicinity of the cathode in a diode causes the plate-to-cathode voltage drop to be a function of the current being carried between the cathode and the plate. This voltage drop can be rather high when large currents are being passed, causing a considerable amount of energy loss which shows up as plate dissipation.

Action of Positive Ions The negative space charge can be neutralized by the presence of the proper density of positive ions in the space between the cathode and anode. The positive ions may be obtained by the introduction of the proper amount of gas or a small amount of mercury into the envelope of the tube. When the voltage drop across the tube reaches the ionization potential of the gas or mercury vapor, the gas molecules will become ionized to form positive ions. The positive ions then tend to neutralize the space charge in the vicinity of the cathode. The voltage drop across the tube then remains constant at the ionization potential of the gas, up to a current drain equal to the maximum emission capability of the cathode. The voltage drop varies between 10 and 20 volts, depending on the particular gas employed, up to the maximum current rating of the tube.

Mercury-Vapor Tubes Mercury-vapor tubes, although very widely used, have the disadvantage that they must be operated within a specific temperature range (25° to 70° C) in order that the mercury-vapor pressure within the tube shall be within the proper range. If the temperature is too low, the drop across the tube becomes too high causing immediate overheating and possible damage to the elements. If the temperature is too high, the vapor pressure is too high, and the voltage at which the tube will "flash back" is lowered to the point where destruction of the tube may take place. Since the ambient temperature range specified above is within the normal room temperature range, no trouble will be encountered under normal operating conditions. However, by the substitution of xenon gas for mercury it is possible to produce a rectifier with characteristics comparable to those of the mercury-vapor tube except that the tube is capable of operating over the range from approximately −70° to +90° C. The 3B25 rectifier is an example of this type of tube.

Thyratron Tubes If a grid is inserted between the cathode and plate of a mercury-vapor gaseous-conduction rectifier, a negative potential placed on the added element will increase the plate-to-cathode voltage drop required before the tube will ionize or "fire." The potential on the control grid will have no effect on the plate-to-cathode drop after the tube has ionized. However, the grid voltage may be adjusted to such a value that conduction will take place only over the desired portion of the cycle of the a-c voltage being impressed on the plate of the rectifier.

Voltage-Regulator Tubes In a glow-discharge gas tube the voltage drop across the electrodes remains constant over a wide range of current passing through the tube. This property exists because the degree of ionization of the gas in the tube varies with the amount of current passing through the tube. When a large current is passed, the gas is highly ionized and the internal impedance of the tube is low. When a small current is passed, the gas is lightly ionized and the internal impedance of the tube is high. Over the operating range of the tube, the product (*IR*) of the current through the tube and the internal impedance of the tube is very nearly constant. Examples of this type of tube are the OB2, OC2, and VR-150.

Vacuum-Tube Classification Vacuum tubes are grouped into three major classifications: commercial, ruggedized, and premium (or reliable). Any one of these three groups may also be further classified for military duty (MIL spec. or JAN classification). To qualify for MIL classification, sample lots of the particular tube must have passed special qualification tests at the factory. It should not be construed that a MIL-type tube is better than a commercial tube, since some commercial tests and specifications are more rigid than the corresponding MIL specifications. The MIL stamped tube has merely been accepted under a certain set of conditions for military service.

Ruggedized or Premium Tubes Radio tubes are being used in increasing numbers for industrial applications, such as computing and control machinery, and in aviation and marine equipment. When a tube fails in a home radio receiver, it is merely inconvenient, but a tube failure in industrial applications may bring about stoppage of some vital process, resulting in financial loss, or even danger to life.

To meet the demands of these industrial applications, a series of tubes was evolved incorporating many special features designed to ensure a long and predetermined operating life, and uniform characteristics among similar tubes. Such tubes are known as *ruggedized* or *premium* tubes. Early attempts to select reliable specimens of tubes from ordinary stock tubes proved that in the long run the selected tubes were no better than tubes picked at random. Long life and ruggedness had to be built into the tubes by means of

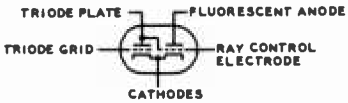


Figure 31

SCHEMATIC REPRESENTATION OF "MAGIC EYE" TUBE

proper choice and 100% inspection of all materials used in the tube, by critical processing inspection and assembling, and by conservative ratings of the tube.

Pure tungsten wire is used for heaters in preference to alloys of lower tensile strength. Nickel tubing is employed around the heater wires at the junction to the stem wires to reduce breakage at this point. Element structures are given extra supports and bracing. Finally, all tubes are given a 50-hour test run under full operating conditions to eliminate early failures. When operated within their ratings, ruggedized or premium tubes should provide a life well in excess of 10,000 hours.

Ruggedized tubes will withstand severe impact shocks for short periods, and will operate under conditions of vibration for many hours. The tubes may be identified in many cases by the fact that their nomenclature includes a "W" in the type number, as in 807W, 5U4W, etc. Some ruggedized tubes are included in the "5000" series nomenclature. The 5654 is a ruggedized version of the 6AK5, the 5692 is a ruggedized version of the 6SN7, etc.

4-10 Miscellaneous Tube Types

Electron-Ray Tubes The electron-ray tube or *magic eye* contains two sets of elements, one of which is a triode amplifier and the other a cathode-ray indicator. The plate of the triode section is internally connected to the ray-control electrode (figure 31), so that as the plate voltage varies in accordance with the applied signal the voltage on the ray-control electrode also varies. The ray-control electrode is a metal cylinder so placed relative to the cathode that it deflects some of the electrons emitted from the cathode. The electrons which strike the anode cause it to fluoresce, or give off light, so that the deflection caused by the ray-control electrode, which prevents electrons from striking part of the anode, produces a wedge-shaped electrical shadow on the fluorescent anode. The size of this shadow is determined by the voltage on the ray electrode. When this electrode is at the same potential as the fluorescent anode, the shadow disappears; if the ray electrode is less positive than the anode, a shadow appears the width of which is proportional to the voltage on the ray electrode.

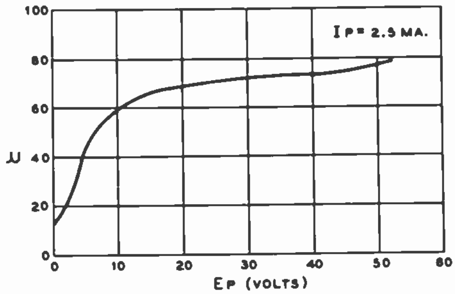


Figure 32

AMPLIFICATION FACTOR OF TYPICAL STANDARD TUBE DROPS RAPIDLY AS PLATE VOLTAGE IS DECREASED BELOW 20 VOLTS

Controlled Warmup Tubes Series heater strings are employed in a-c/d-c radio receivers and television sets to reduce the cost, size, and weight of the equipment. Voltage surges of great magnitude occur in series-operated filaments because of variations in the rate of warm-up of the various tubes. As the tubes warm up, the heater resistance changes. This change is not the same between tubes of various types, or even between tubes of the same type made by different manufacturers. Some 6-volt tubes show an initial surge as high as 9 volts during warm-up, while slow-heating tubes such as the 25BQ6 are underheated during the voltage surge on the 6-volt tubes.

Standardization of heater characteristics in a new group of tubes designed for series heater strings has eliminated this trouble. The new tubes have either 600 ma or 400 ma heaters, with a controlled warm-up time of approximately 11 seconds. The 5U8, 6CG7, and 12BH7-A are examples.

CHAPTER FIVE

Semiconductor Devices

One of the earliest detection devices used in radio was the galena crystal, a crude example of a *semiconductor*. More modern examples of semiconductors are the copper-oxide rectifier, the selenium and silicon rectifiers, and the germanium diode. All of these devices offer the interesting property of greater resistance to the flow of electrical current in one direction than in the opposite direction. Typical conduction curves for these semiconductors are shown in figure 1. The copper-oxide rectifier action results from the function of a thin film of cuprous oxide formed on a pure copper disk. This film offers low resistance for positive voltages, and high resistance for negative voltages. The same action is observed in selenium rectifiers, where a film of selenium is deposited on an iron surface.

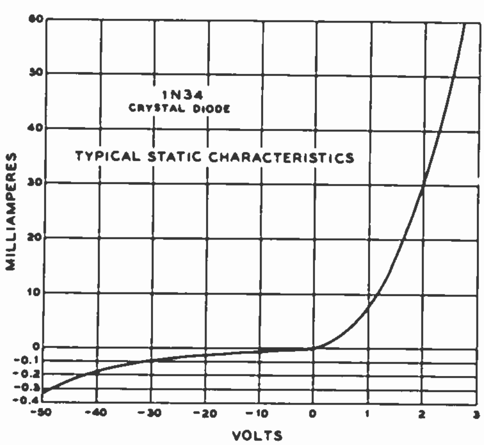
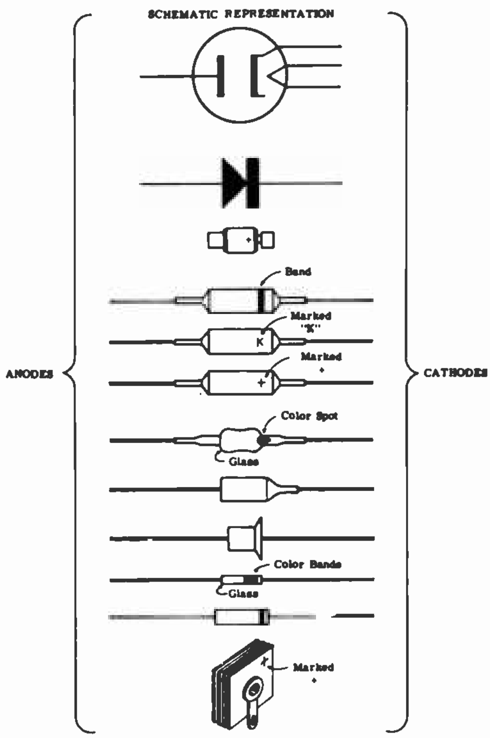


Figure 1

TYPICAL CHARACTERISTIC CURVE OF A SEMICONDUCTOR DIODE

5-1 Atomic Structure of Germanium and Silicon

It has been previously stated that the electrons in an element having a large atomic number are grouped into rings, each ring having a definite number of electrons. Atoms in which these rings are completely filled are called *inert gases*, of which helium and argon are examples. All other elements have one or more incomplete rings of electrons. If the incomplete ring is loosely bound, the electrons may be easily removed, the element is called *metallic*, and is a conductor of electric current. If the incomplete ring is tightly bound, with only a few missing electrons, the element is called *nonmetallic* and is an insulator to electric current. Germanium and silicon fall between these two sharply defined groups, and exhibit both metallic and nonmetallic characteristics. Pure germanium or silicon may be considered to be a good insulator. The addition of certain impurities in carefully controlled amounts to the pure germanium will alter the conductivity of the material. In addition, the choice of the impurity can change the direction of conductivity through the



TUBE, GERMANIUM, SILICON AND SELENIUM DIODES

Figure 2

COMMON DIODE COLOR CODES AND MARKINGS

crystal, some impurities increasing conductivity to positive voltages, and others increasing conductivity to negative voltages.

5-2 Mechanism of Conduction

As indicated by their name, semiconductors are substances which have a conductivity intermediate between the high values observed for metals and the low values observed for insulating materials. The mechanism of conduction in semiconductors is different from that observed in metallic conductors. There exist in semiconductors both negatively charged electrons and positively charged particles, called *holes*, which behave as though they had a positive electrical charge equal in magnitude to the negative electrical charge on the electron. These holes and electrons drift in an electrical field with a velocity which is proportional to the field itself:

$$V_{dh} = \mu_h E$$

where,

V_{dh} equals drift velocity of hole,
E equals magnitude of electric field,
μ_h equals mobility of hole

In an electric field the holes will drift in a direction opposite to that of the electron and with about one-half the velocity, since the hole mobility is about one-half the electron mobility. A sample of a semiconductor, such as germanium or silicon, which is both chemically pure and mechanically perfect will contain in it approximately equal numbers of holes and electrons and is called an *intrinsic* semiconductor. The intrinsic resistivity of the semiconductor depends strongly on the temperature, being about 50 ohm/cm for germanium at room temperature. The intrinsic resistivity of silicon is about 65,000 ohm/cm at the same temperature.

If, in the growing of the semiconductor crystal, a small amount of an impurity, such as phosphorous, arsenic, or antimony is included in the crystal, each atom of the impurity contributes one free electron. This electron is available for conduction. The crystal is said to be *doped* and has become electron-conducting in nature and is called *N (negative)-type* germanium. The impurities which contribute electrons are called *donors*. N-type germanium has better conductivity than pure germanium in one direction, and a continuous stream of electrons will flow through the crystal in this direction as long as an external potential of the correct polarity is applied across the crystal.

Other impurities, such as aluminum, gallium, or indium add one hole to the semiconducting crystal by accepting one electron for each atom of impurity, thus creating additional holes in the semiconducting crystal. The material is now said to be hole-conducting, or *P (positive)-type* germanium. The impurities which create holes are called *acceptors*. P-type germanium has better conductivity than pure germanium in one direction. This direction is opposite to that of the N-type material. Either the N-type or the P-type germanium is called *extrinsic* conducting type. The doped materials have lower resistivities than the pure materials, and doped semiconductors in the resistivity range of .01 to 10 ohm/cm are normally used in the production of transistors.

5-3 The PN Junction Diode

The semiconductor diode is a *PN junction*, or junction diode having the general electrical characteristics of figure 1 and the physical configuration illustrated in figure 2. The anode of the junction diode is always positive-type (P) material while the cathode is always negative-type (N) material. Current conduction occurs when the P-anode is positive with respect to the N-cathode. This state is termed *forward bias*. Blocking occurs when the P-anode is negative with respect to the N-cathode. This is termed *reverse bias*.

Junction diodes are rated in terms of average and peak-inverse voltage in a given environment, much in the same manner as thermionic rectifiers. Unlike the latter, however, a small *leakage current* will flow in the reverse-biased junction diode because of a few hole-electron pairs thermally generated in the junction. As the applied inverse voltage is increased, a potential will be reached at which the leakage current rises abruptly at an *avalanche voltage* point. An increase in inverse voltage above this value can result in the flow of a large reverse current and the possible destruction of the diode.

Maximum permissible forward current in the junction diode is limited by the voltage drop across the diode and the heat-dissipation capability of the diode structure. Power diodes are often attached to the chassis of the equipment by means of a *heat-sink* to remove excess heat from the small junction.

Junction Capacity The junction possesses capacitance as a result of the opposite charges existing on the sides of the junction barrier. Junction capacitance changes with applied voltage. Figure 3 shows the typical change in junction capacitance with reverse voltage. Reverse-biased diodes (*varicaps*) may be used as d-c voltage-controlled variable capacitors for frequency control of remote resonant circuits. A typical frequency-control circuit employing a varicap junction is shown in figure 4.

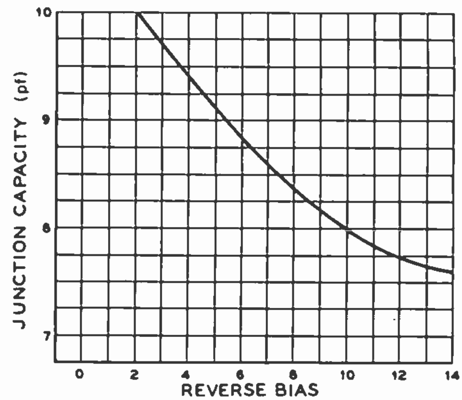


Figure 3

JUNCTION CAPACITANCE VARIATION WITH RESPECT TO REVERSE VOLTAGE

The Tunnel Diode The *tunnel diode* is a two-terminal junction that exhibits pronounced negative-resistance characteristics over a portion of the operating range. The proper combination of impurities in the semiconductor material in this device allows the diode to rest in a reverse-breakdown condition at a slight forward-bias point. Thus, over a small voltage range, the tunnel diode conducts heavily as the voltage becomes more negative. The negative conductance generates energy, and this action is

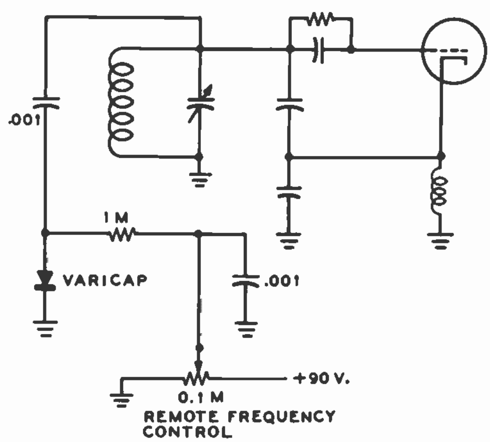


Figure 4

VOLTAGE VARIABLE JUNCTION DIODE MAY BE USED FOR REMOTE FREQUENCY CONTROL OF VARIABLE OSCILLATOR

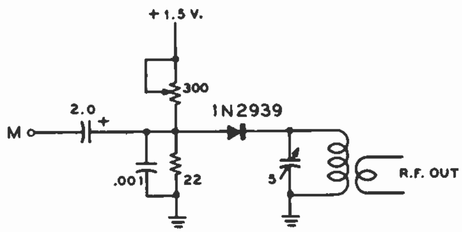


Figure 5

TUNNEL DIODE OSCILLATOR FOR 50-MHz. MODULATION MAY BE APPLIED AT "M"

the basis of the *resistance amplifier* (or oscillator) circuit making use of the tunnel diode (figure 5).

The Varactor The nonlinear characteristic of a junction diode makes it well suited for harmonic generation. Special diodes called *varactors* may be used as r-f multiplication devices. Frequency multiplication in the vhf and uhf regions makes use of varactors because high conversion efficiency and relatively large power-handling capability may be achieved at moderate cost with minimum complexity.

Basic varactor circuits which can be used for doubling, tripling, and quadrupling are shown in figure 6. The doubler consists of a varactor coupled to two high-Q, series-tuned circuits. The input circuit is resonant at the fundamental (driving) frequency and the other is resonant at the harmonic (output) frequency.

The tripler and quadrupler circuits are similar to the doubler configuration with the exception that an additional *idler loop*, resonant with the varactor capacitance at

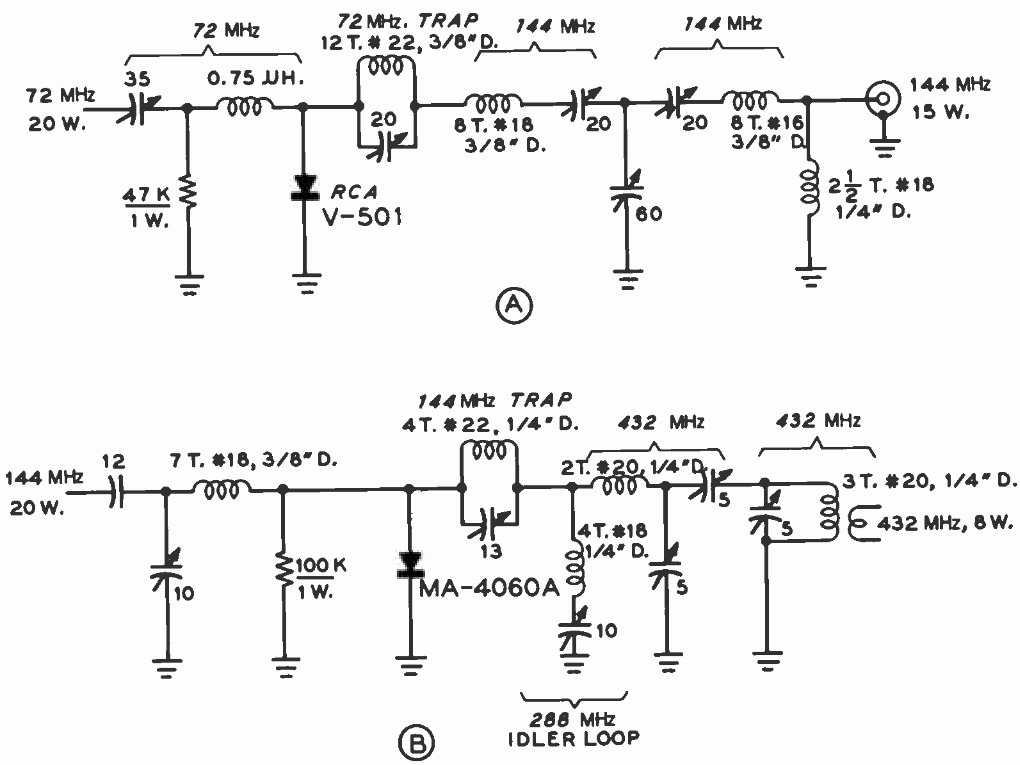


Figure 6

BASIC VARACTOR DOUBLING AND TRIPLING CIRCUITS

A is a doubler for 144 MHz. B is used as a tripler to 432 MHz.

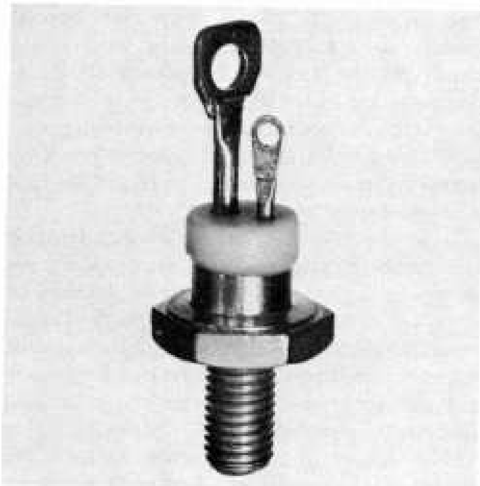


Figure 7

THE SILICON CONTROLLED RECTIFIER

This three-terminal semiconductor is an open switch until it is triggered in the forward direction by the gate element. Conduction will continue until anode current is reduced below a critical value.

the second-harmonic frequency, is added in shunt with the varactor. The idler loop boosts conversion efficiency by producing additional harmonic output from the beating action between the fundamental and second harmonics. Doubling or tripling efficiency of a typical vhf varactor multiplier may run from 50 to 70 percent.

SCR Devices The *silicon controlled rectifier (SCR)* is a three-terminal, three-junction semiconductor, which could be thought of as a solid-state thyratron. It will conduct high current in the forward direction with low forward voltage drop, presenting a high impedance in the reverse direction. The three terminals (figure 7) of a SCR device are *anode*, *cathode*, and *gate*. Without gate current the SCR is an open switch in either direction. Sufficient gate current will close the switch in the forward direction only. Forward conduction will continue even with gate current removed until anode current is reduced below a critical value. At this point the SCR again blocks open. The SCR is therefore a high-speed unidirectional switch capable of being latched on in the forward direction.

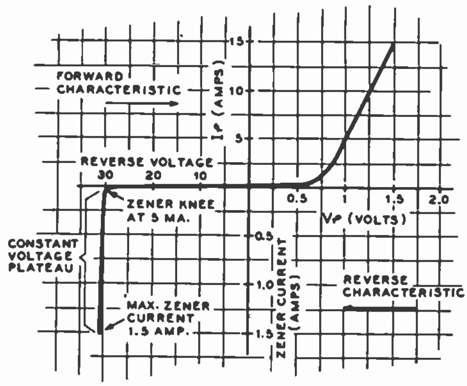


Figure 8

BETWEEN "ZENER KNEE" AND POINT OF MAXIMUM ZENER CURRENT, THE ZENER VOLTAGE IS ESSENTIALLY CONSTANT AT 30 VOLTS

The Zener Diode The *zener diode* is a semiconductor device that can be used as a constant voltage reference, or as a control element. Zener diodes are available in ratings to 50 watts, with zener voltages of approximately 4 volts to 200 volts.

The zener diode has electrical characteristics that are derived from a rectifying junction which operates at a reverse-bias condition not normally used. The *zener knee* (figure 8) and *constant-voltage plateau* are obtained when this rectifying junction is back-biased above the junction breakdown voltage. The break from nonconductance to conductance is very sharp. At applied voltages greater than the breakdown point, the voltage drop across the diode junction becomes essentially constant for a relatively wide range of currents. This is the *zener control region.*

Thermal dissipation is obtained by mounting the zener diode to a heat sink composed of a large area of metal having free access to ambient air.

Zener Diode Applications The zener diode may be employed as a shunt regulator (figure 9A) in the manner of a typical "VR-tube." Two zener diodes may be employed in the circuit of figure 9B to supply very low values of regulated voltage. Two opposed zener diodes can be used to provide a-c clipping of both halves of the cycle (figure 9C). Zener diodes may also be

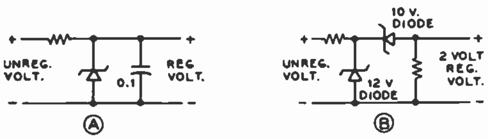


FIGURE 9

A-ZENER DIODE FUNCTIONS AS VOLTAGE REGULATOR OVER RANGE OF CONSTANT VOLTAGE PLATEAU.

B-TWO ZENER DIODES OF DIFFERENT VOLTAGE CAN PROVIDE SMALL REGULATED VOLTAGE.

C-OPPOSED ZENER DIODES CLIP BOTH HALVES OF CYCLE OF A-C WAVE.

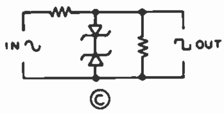


Figure 9

ZENER DIODES USED AS VOLTAGE REGULATORS AND CLIPPERS

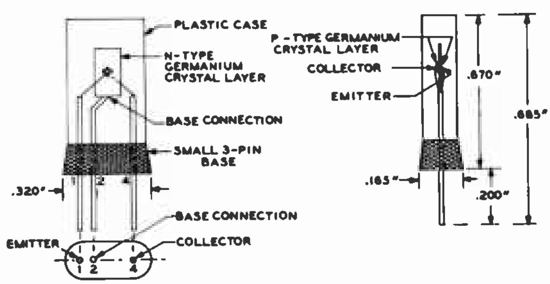
used to protect meter movements since they provide a very-low-resistance shunt across the movement when the applied voltage exceeds a certain critical level.

5-4 The Transistor

In the past few years an entire new technology has been developed for the application of certain semiconducting materials in production of devices having gain properties. These gain properties were previously found only in vacuum tubes. The elements germanium and silicon are the principal materials which exhibit the proper semiconducting properties permitting their application in the new amplifying devices called *transistors*. However, other semiconducting materials, including the compounds indium, antimony, and lead sulfide have been used experimentally in the production of transistors.

Types of Transistors There are two basic types of transistors, the *point-contact* type and the *junction* type (figure 10). Typical construction detail of a point-contact transistor is shown in figure 11, and the electrical symbol is shown in figure 12. The *emitter* and *collector* electrodes make contact with a small block of germanium, called the *base*. The base may be either N-type or P-type germanium, and is approximately .05" long and .03" thick. The emitter and collector electrodes are fine wires, and are spaced about .005" apart on the germanium base. The complete assembly is usually encapsulated in a small, plastic case to provide ruggedness and to avoid contaminating effects of the atmosphere. The polarity of emitter and collector voltages depends on the type of germanium employed in the base, as illustrated in figure 12.

The junction transistor consists of a piece of either N-type or P-type germanium between two wafers of germanium of the opposite type. Either NPN or PNP transistors may be made. In one construction called the *grown-crystal process*, the original crystal, grown from molten germanium or silicon, is created in such a way as to have the two closely spaced junctions imbedded in it. In the other construction called the *fusion process*, the crystals are grown so as to make them a single-conductivity type. The junctions are then produced by fusing small



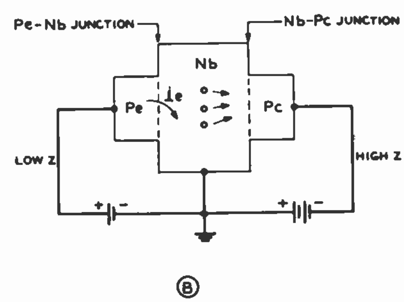


Figure 10

CUTAWAY VIEW OF JUNCTION TRANSISTOR SHOWING PHYSICAL ARRANGEMENT

PICTORIAL EQUIVALENT OF PNP JUNCTION TRANSISTOR

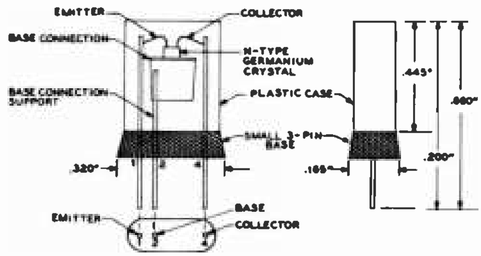


Figure 11

CONSTRUCTION DETAIL OF A POINT-CONTACT TRANSISTOR

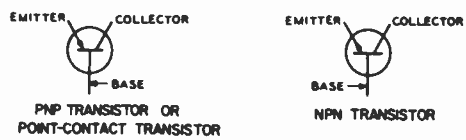


Figure 12

ELECTRICAL SYMBOLS FOR TRANSISTORS

pellets of special metal alloys into minute plates cut from the original crystal. Typical construction detail of a junction transistor is shown in figure 10A.

The electrical schematic for the PNP junction transistor is the same as for the point-contact type, as is shown in figure 12.

Transistor Action Presently available types of transistors have three essential actions which collectively are called *transistor action*. These are: minority carrier injection, transport, and collection. Figure 10B shows a simplified drawing of a PNP junction-type transistor, which can illustrate this collective action. The PNP transistor consists of a piece of N-type germanium on opposite sides of which a layer of P-type material has been grown by the fusion process. Terminals are connected to the two P-sections and to the N-type base. The transistor may be considered as two PN junction rectifiers placed in close juxtaposition with a semiconduction crystal coupling the two rectifiers together. The left-hand terminal is biased in the forward (or conducting) direction and is called the *emitter*. The right-hand terminal is biased in the back (or reverse) direction and is called the *collector*. The operating potentials are chosen with respect to the *base terminal*, which may or may not be grounded. If an NPN transistor is used in place of the PNP, the operating potentials are reversed.

The P_e—N_b junction on the left is biased in the forward direction and holes from the P region are injected into the N_b region, producing therein a concentration of holes substantially greater than normally present in the material. These holes travel across the base region towards the collector, attracting neighboring electrons, finally increasing the available supply of conducting electrons in the collector loop. As a result, the collector loop possesses lower resistance whenever the emitter circuit is in operation. In junction transistors this *charge transport* is by means of diffusion wherein the charges move from a region of high concentration to a region of lower concentration at the collector. The collector, biased in the opposite direction, acts as a *sink* for these holes, and is said to collect them.

It is known that any rectifier biased in the forward direction has a very low internal impedance, whereas one biased in the back direction has a very high internal impedance. Thus, current flows into the transistor in a low-impedance circuit, and appears at the output as current flowing in a high-impedance circuit. The ratio of a change in collector current to a change in emitter current is called the *current amplification*, or *alpha:*

$$\alpha = \frac{i_c}{i_e}$$

where,

α equals current amplification,
i_c equals change in collector current,
i_e equals change in emitter current.

Values of alpha up to 3 or so may be obtained in commercially available point-contact transistors, and values of alpha up to about 0.95 are obtainable in junction transistors.

The ratio of change in collector current to a change in base current is a measure of amplification, or *beta:*

$$\beta = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha}$$

Values of beta run to 100 or so in inexpensive junction transistors. The static d-c forward current gain of a transistor in the common-emitter mode is termed the *d-c beta* and may be designated β_F or h_{FE}.

Cutoff Frequencies The *alpha cutoff frequency* (f_{hfb}) of a transistor is that frequency at which the grounded-base current gain has decreased to 0.7 of the gain obtainable at 1kHz. For audio transistors the alpha cutoff frequency is about 1 MHz. For r-f and switching transistors the alpha cutoff frequency may be 50 MHz or higher. The upper frequency limit of operation of the transistor is determined by the small but finite time it takes the majority carriers to move from one electrode to the other.

The *beta cutoff frequency* (f_{hfe}) is that frequency at which the grounded-emitter current gain has decreased to 0.7 of the gain obtainable at 1 kHz. *Transconductance cutoff frequency* (f_{gm}) is that frequency at which the transconductance falls to 0.7 of that value obtainable at 1 kHz. The *maximum frequency of oscillation* (f_{max}) is that frequency at which the maximum power gain of the transistor drops to unity.

Various internal time constants and transit times limit the high-frequency response of the transistor and these limitations are summarized in the *gain-bandwidth product* (f_t), which is identified by the frequency at which the beta current gain drops to unity. These various cutoff frequencies and the gain-bandwidth products are shown in figure 13.

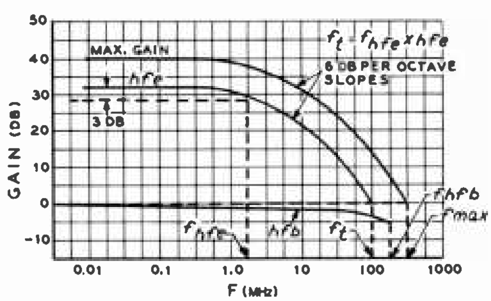


Figure 13

GAIN-BANDWIDTH CHART FOR TYPICAL H-F TRANSISTOR

The Transition Region A useful rule common to both PNP and NPN transistors is: *moving the base potential towards the collector voltage point turns the transistor on, while moving the base potential away from the collector voltage point turns the transistor off.* When fully on, the transistor is said to be *saturated.* When fully off, the transistor is said to be *cutoff.* The region between these two extremes is termed the *transition region.* A transistor may be used as a switch by simply biasing the base-emitter circuit on and off. Adjusting the base-emitter bias to some point in the transition region will permit the transistor to act as a signal amplifier. For such operation, base-emitter d-c bias will be about 0.3 volt for many common germanium transistors, and about 0.6 volt for many common silicon transistors.

Transistor Classifications Transistors are usually classified according to the manufacturing techniques used to construct the two junctions. Figure 14 lists some of the many classifications of junction transistors. Manufacturing techniques, transistor end-use and patent restrictions result in a multitude of transistor types, most of which fall in these general classifications. Transistors, moreover, may be grouped in families where each member

PROCESS DESIGNATION	COMMERCIAL TYPES		TYPICAL TRANSISTOR	
	GE.	SI.		
RATE GROWN	NPN	—	2N167	GROWN
MELT-BACK	NPN	—	2N1289	
GROWN DIFFUSED	PNP	NPN	2N335	
DOUBLE-DOPED	—	NPN	2N1149	
ALLOY	PNP NPN	PNP NPN	2N525	FUSION
DRIFT	PNP	—	2N247	
MESA	PNP	—	2N695	
SURFACE BARRIER	PNP	—	2N344	
MICRO-ALLOY	PNP	PNP	2N393	
MADT	PNP	NPN	2N501	

Figure 14

JUNCTION PROCESSES AND CLASSIFICATIONS OF TRANSISTOR TYPES

of the family is a unique type, but subtle differences exist between members in the matter of end-use, gain, capacitance, mounting, case, leads, breakdown voltage characteristics, etc. The differences are important enough to warrant individual type identification of each member. In addition, the state of the art permits transistor parameters to be economically designed to fit the various equipments, rather than designing the equipment around available transistor types. This situation results in a great many transistor types having nearly identical general characteristics. Finally, improved manufacturing techniques may "obsolete" a whole family of transistors with a newer, less-expensive family. It is recommended, therefore, that the reader refer to one of the various transistor substitution manuals for up-to-date guidance in transistor classification and substitution.

5-5 Transistor Characteristics

The transistor produces results that may be comparable to a vacuum tube, but there is a basic difference between the two devices. The vacuum tube is a voltage-controlled device whereas the transistor is a current-controlled device. A vacuum tube normally operates with its grid biased in the negative, or high-resistance, direction, and its plate biased in the positive, or low-resistance, direction. The tube conducts only by means of electrons, and has its conducting counterpart in the form of the NPN transistor, whose majority carriers are also electrons. There is no vacuum-tube equivalent of the PNP transistor, whose majority carriers are holes.

The biasing conditions stated above provide the high input impedance and low output impedance of the vacuum tube. The transistor is biased in the positive, or low-resistance, direction in the emitter circuit, and in the negative, or high-resistance, direction in the collector circuit resulting in a low input impedance and a high output impedance, opposite from the vacuum tube. A comparison of point-contact transistor characteristics and vacuum-tube characteristics is made in figure 15.

The *resistance gain* of a transistor is expressed as the ratio of output resistance to input resistance. The input resistance of a typical transistor is low, in the neighborhood of 300 ohms, while the output resistance is relatively high, usually over 20,000 ohms. For a point-contact transistor, the resistance gain is usually over 60.

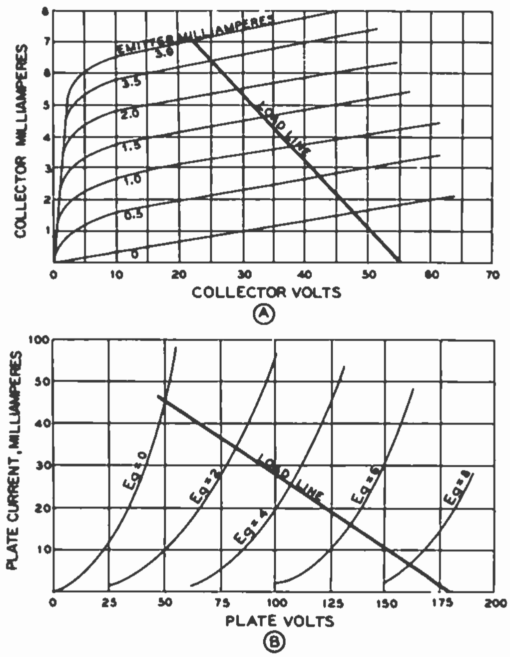


Figure 15

COMPARISON OF POINT-CONTACT TRANSISTOR AND VACUUM-TUBE CHARACTERISTICS

The *voltage gain* of a transistor is the product of *alpha* times *the resistance gain*, and for a point-contact transistor is of the order of $3 \times 60 = 180$. A junction transistor which has a value of alpha less than unity nevertheless has a resistance gain of the order of 2000 because of its extremely high output resistance, and the resulting voltage gain is about 1800 or so. For both types of transistors the *power gain* is the product of *alpha squared* times *the resistance gain* and is of the order of 400 to 500.

The output characteristics of the junction transistor are of great interest. A typical example is shown in figure 16. It is seen that the junction transistor has the characteristics of an ideal pentode vacuum tube.

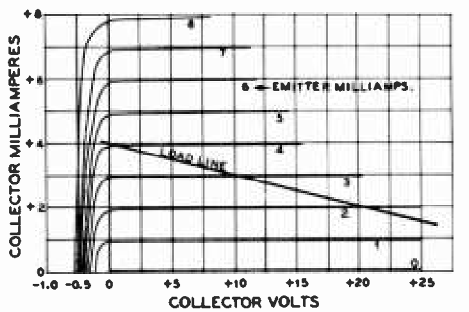


Figure 16

OUTPUT CHARACTERISTICS OF TYPICAL JUNCTION TRANSISTOR

The collector current is practically independent of the collector voltage. The range of linear operation extends from a minimum voltage of about 0.2 volts up to the maximum rated collector voltage. A typical load line is shown, which illustrates the very high load impedance that would be required for maximum power transfer. A grounded-emitter circuit is usually used, since the output impedance is not as high as when a grounded-base circuit is used.

The output characteristics of a typical point-contact transistor are shown in figure 15. The pentode characteristics are less evident, and the output impedance is much lower, with the range of linear operation extending down to a collector voltage of 2 or 3. Of greater practical interest, however, is the input characteristic curve with short-circuited, or nearly short-circuited input, as shown in figure 17. It is this point-contact transistor characteristic of having a region of negative impedance that lends the unit to use in switching circuits. The transistor circuit may be made to have two, one, or zero stable operating points, depending on the bias voltages and the load impedance used.

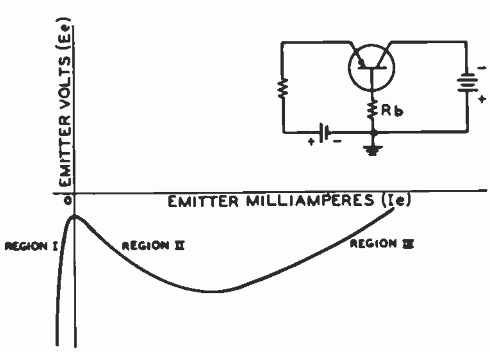
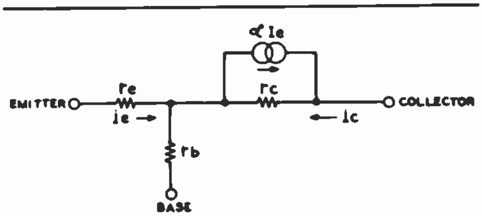


Figure 17

EMITTER CHARACTERISTIC CURVE FOR TYPICAL POINT-CONTACT TRANSISTOR

Equivalent Circuit of a Transistor As is known from network theory, the small signal performance of any device in any network can be represented by means of an equivalent circuit. The most convenient equivalent circuit for the low-frequency small-signal performance of both point-contact and junction transistors is shown in figure 18. r_e, r_b, and r_c are dynamic resistances which can be associated with the emitter, base, and collector regions of the transistor. The current generator aI_e, represents the transport of charge from emitter to collector. Typical values of the equivalent circuit are shown in figure 18.

Transistor Configurations There are three basic transistor configurations: grounded-base connection, grounded-emitter connection, and grounded-collector connection. These correspond roughly to grounded-grid, grounded-cathode, and



VALUES OF THE EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT

PARAMETER	POINT-CONTACT TRANSISTOR (Ie = 1 MA., Vc = 15 V.)	JUNCTION TRANSISTOR (Ie = 1 MA., Vc = 5 V.)
re - EMITTER RESISTANCE	100 Ω	30 Ω
rb - BASE RESISTANCE	300 Ω	300 Ω
rc - COLLECTOR RESISTANCE	20000 Ω	1 MEGOHM
α - CURRENT AMPLIFICATION	2.0	0.97

Figure 18

LOW-FREQUENCY EQUIVALENT (Common Base) CIRCUIT FOR POINT-CONTACT AND JUNCTION TRANSISTOR

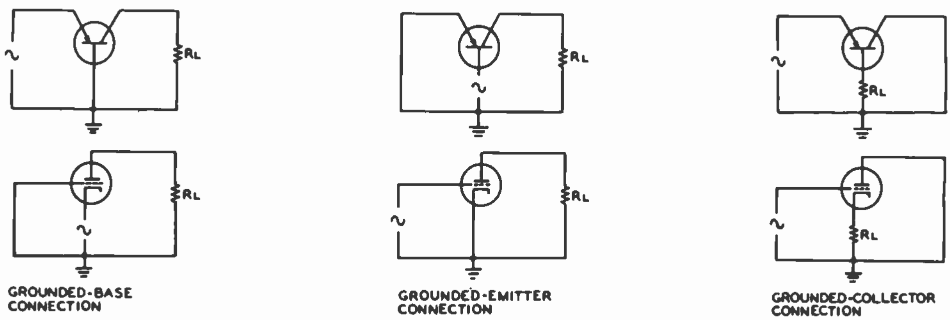


Figure 19

COMPARISON OF BASIC VACUUM-TUBE AND TRANSISTOR CONFIGURATIONS

grounded-plate circuits in vacuum-tube terminology (figure 19).

The grounded-base circuit has a low input impedance and high output impedance, and no phase reversal of signal occurs from input to output circuit. The grounded-emitter circuit has a higher input impedance and a lower output impedance than the grounded-base circuit, and a reversal of phase between the input and output signal occurs. This usually provides maximum voltage gain from a transistor. The grounded-collector circuit has relatively high input impedance, low output impedance, and no phase reversal of signal from input to output circuit. Power and voltage gain are both low.

Figure 20 illustrates some practical vacuum-tube circuits, as applied to transistors.

5-6 Transistor Circuitry

To establish the correct operating parameters of the transistor, a bias voltage must be established between the emitter and the base. Since transistors are temperature-sensitive devices, and since some variation in

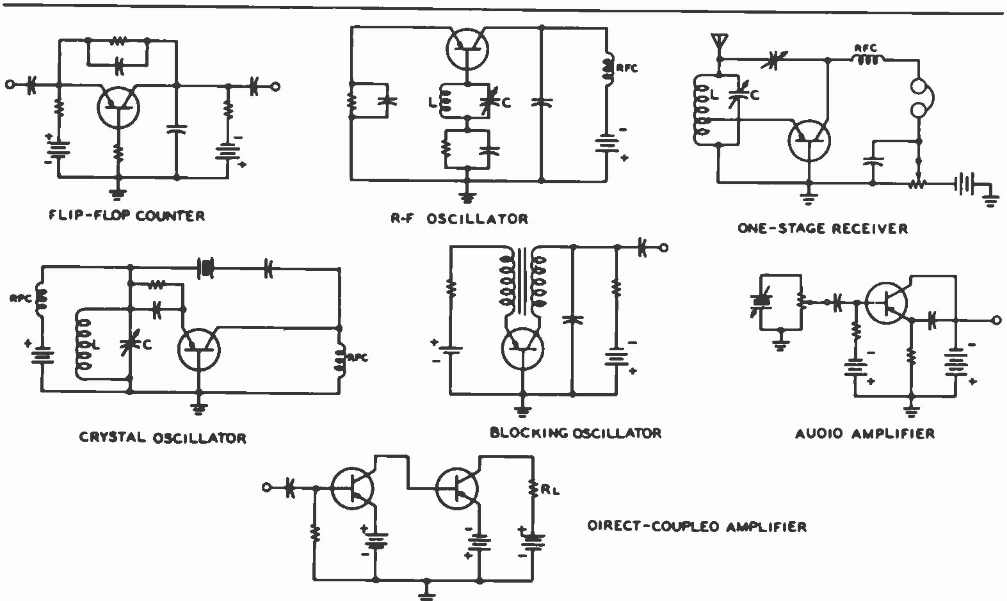


Figure 20

TYPICAL TRANSISTOR CIRCUITS

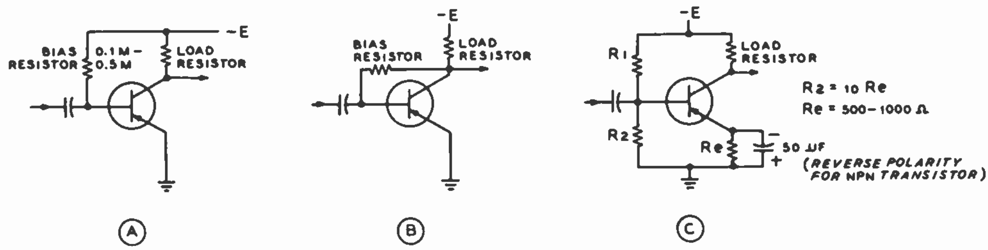


Figure 21

BIAS CONFIGURATIONS FOR TRANSISTORS

The voltage divider system of C is recommended for general transistor use. Ratio of R_1/R_2 establishes base bias, and emitter bias is provided by voltage drop across R_e. Battery polarity is reversed for NPN transistors.

characteristics usually exists between transistors of a given type, attention must be given to the bias system to overcome these difficulties. The simple *self-bias* system is shown in figure 21A. The base is simply connected to the power supply through a large resistance which supplies a fixed value of base current to the transistor. This bias system is extremely sensitive to the current-transfer ratio of the transistor, and must be adjusted for optimum results with each transistor.

When the supply voltage is fairly high and wide variations in ambient temperature do not occur, the bias system of figure 21B may be used, with the bias resistor connected from base to collector. When the collector voltage is high, the base current is increased, moving the operating point of the transistor down the load line. If the collector voltage is low, the operating point moves upward along the load line, thus providing automatic control of the base bias voltage. This circuit is sensitive to changes in ambient temperature, and may permit transistor failure when the transistor is operated near maximum dissipation ratings.

A better bias system is shown in figure 21C, where the base bias is obtained from a voltage divider, (R_1, R_2), and the emitter is forward–biased. To prevent signal degeneration, the emitter bias resistor is bypassed with a large capacitance. A high degree of circuit stability is provided by this form of bias, providing the emitter capacitance is of the order of 50 μfd for audio-frequency applications.

Audio Circuitry A simple voltage amplifier is shown in figure 22. Di-

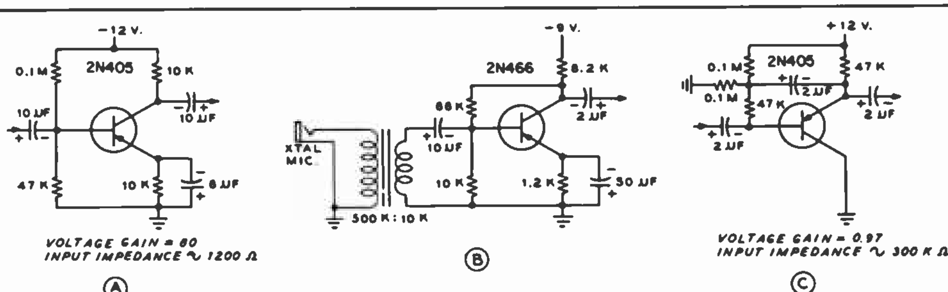


Figure 22

PNP TRANSISTOR VOLTAGE AMPLIFIERS

A resistance-coupled amplifier employing an inexpensive transistor is shown in A. For use with a high-impedance crystal microphone, a stepdown transformer matches the low input impedance of the transistor, as shown in B. The grounded collector configuration of C provides an input impedance of about 300,000 ohms.

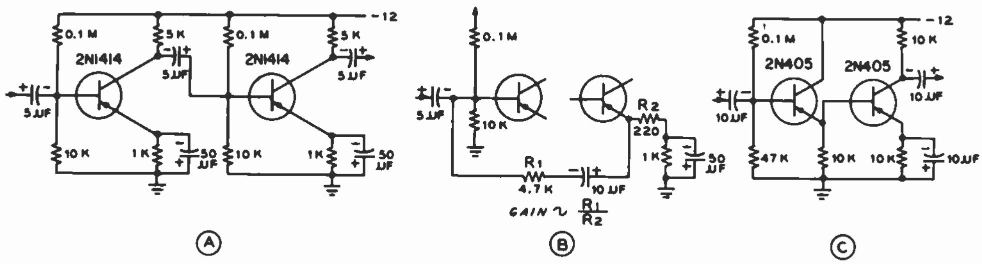


Figure 23

TWO-STAGE TRANSISTOR AUDIO AMPLIFIER

The feedback loop of B may be added to the RC amplifier to reduce distortion, or to control the audio response. A direct-coupled amplifier is shown in C.

rect-current stabilization is employed in the emitter circuit. Operating parameters for the amplifier are given in the drawing. In this case, the input impedance of the amplifier is quite low. When used with a high-impedance driving source such as a crystal microphone a step-down input transformer should be employed as shown in figure 22B. The grounded-collector circuit of figure 22C provides a high input impedance and a low output impedance, much as in the manner of a vacuum-tube cathode follower.

The circuit of a two-stage resistance-coupled amplifier is shown in figure 23A. The input impedance is approximately 1100 ohms. Feedback may be placed around this amplifier from the emitter of the second stage to the base of the first stage, as shown in figure 23B. A direct-coupled version of the resistance-coupled amplifier is shown in figure 23C. The input impedance is of the order of 15,000 ohms, and an over-all voltage gain of 80 may be obtained with a supply potential of 12 volts.

It is possible to employ NPN and PNP transistors in *complementary-symmetry* circuits which have no equivalent in vacuum-tube design. Figure 24A illustrates such a circuit. A symmetrical push-pull circuit is shown in figure 24B. This circuit may be used to directly drive a high-impedance speaker, eliminating the output transformer. A direct-coupled three-stage amplifier having a gain figure of 80 db is shown in figure 24C.

The transistor may also be used as a class-A power amplifier, as shown in figure 25A.

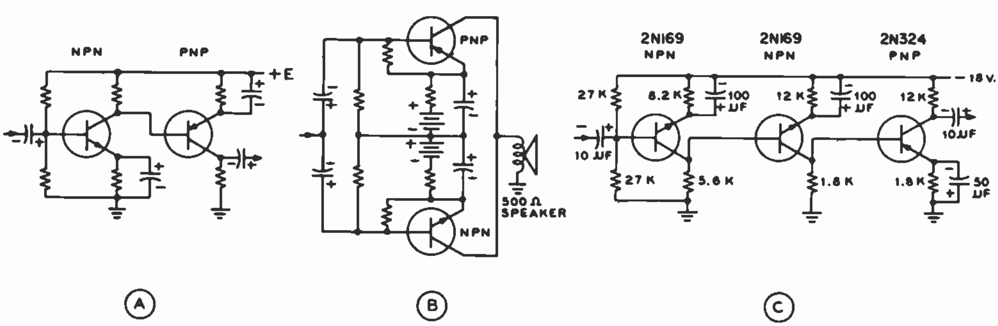


Figure 24

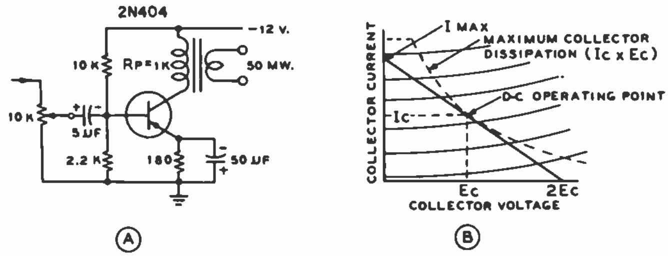
COMPLEMENTARY-SYMMETRY AMPLIFIERS

NPN and PNP transistors may be combined in circuits which have no equivalent in vacuum-tube design. Direct coupling between cascaded stages using a single power-supply source may be employed, as in C. Impedance of power supply should be extremely low.

Figure 25

TYPICAL CLASS-A AUDIO POWER TRANSISTOR CIRCUIT

The correct operating point is chosen so that output signal can swing equally in a positive or negative direction, without exceeding maximum collector dissipation.



Commercial transistors are available that will provide five or six watts of audio power when operating from a 12-volt supply. The smaller units provide power levels of a few milliwatts. The correct operating point is chosen so that the output signal can swing equally in the positive and negative directions, as shown in the collector curves of figure 25B.

The proper primary impedance of the output transformer depends on the amount of power to be delivered to the load:

$$R_p = \frac{E_c^2}{2P_o}$$

The collector current bias is:

$$I_c = \frac{2P_o}{E_c}$$

In a class-A output stage, the maximum a-c power output obtainable is limited to 0.5 the allowable dissipation of the transistor. The product I_cE_c determines the maximum collector dissipation, and a plot of these values is shown in figure 25B. The load line should always lie under the dissipation curve, and should encompass the maximum possible area between the axes of the graph for maximum output condition. In general, the load line is tangent to the dissipation curve and passes through the supply voltage point at zero collector current. The d-c operating point is thus approximately one-half the supply voltage.

The circuit of a typical push-pull class-B transistor amplifier is shown in figure 26A. Push-pull operation is desirable for transistor operation, since the even-order harmonics are largely eliminated. This permits transistors to be driven into high collector current regions without distortion normally caused by nonlinearity of the collector. Crossover distortion is reduced to a minimum by providing a slight forward base bias in addition to the normal emitter bias. The base bias is usually less than 0.5 volt in most cases. Excessive base bias will boost the quiescent collector current and thereby lower the over-all efficiency of the stage.

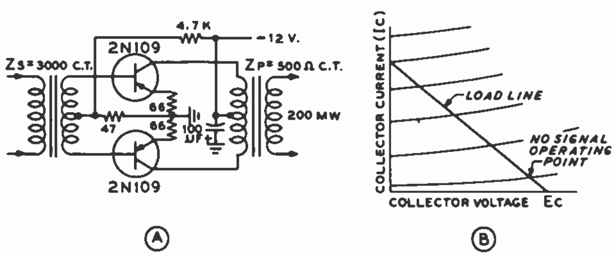
The operating point of the class-B amplifier is set on the $I_c = O$ axis at the point where the collector voltage equals the supply voltage. The collector-to-collector impedance of the output transformer is:

$$R_{c-c} = \frac{2E_c^2}{P_o}$$

In the class-B circuit, the maximum a-c power input is approximately equal to three times the allowable collector dissipation of each transistor. Power transistors, such as the 2N514 have collector dissipation ratings of 80 watts and operate with class-B efficiency of about 67%. To achieve this level of

Figure 26

CLASS-B AUDIO AMPLIFIER CIRCUITRY



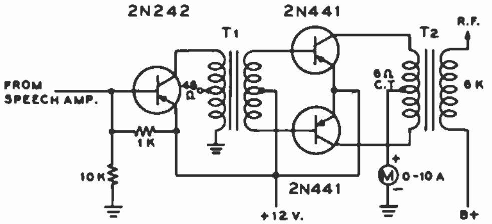


Figure 27

35-WATT MODULATOR

T_1—48-ohm CT to 3/8/16 sec. use 3-ohm tap as CT (Thordarson TR-61). T_2—6-ohm CT to 6k (Triad TY-66A), Transistors mounted on heat sink with mica washers.

operation the heavy-duty transistor relies on efficient heat transfer from the transistor case to the chassis, using the large thermal capacity of the chassis as a *heat sink*. An infinite heat sink may be approximated by mounting the transistor in the center of a 6″ × 6″ copper or aluminum sheet. This area may be part of a larger chassis.

The collector of most power transistors is electrically connected to the case. For applications where the collector is not grounded a thin sheet of mica may be used between the case of the transistor and the chassis.

Large, inexpensive power transistors such as the 2N441 may be used as modulators for medium power a-m mobile equipment. Such a modulator is shown in figure 27. It is capable of a power output of about 35 watts and is capable of plate modulating a 70-watt transmitter.

R-F Circuitry Transistors may be used for radio-frequency work provided the alpha cutoff frequency of the units is sufficiently higher than the operating frequency. Shown in figure 28A is a typical i-f amplifier employing an NPN transistor. The collector current is determined by a voltage divider on the base circuit and by a bias resistor in the emitter leg. Input and output are coupled by means of tuned i-f transformers. Bypass capacitors are placed across the bias resistors to prevent signal-frequency degeneration. The base is connected to a low-impedance untuned winding of the input transformer, and the collector is connected to a tap on the output transformer to provide proper matching, and also to make the performance of the stage relatively independent of variations between transistors of the same type. With a rate-grown NPN transistor such as the G.E. 2N293, it is unnecessary to use neutralization to obtain circuit stability. When PNP alloy transistors are used, it is necessary to neutralize the circuit to obtain stability (figure 28B).

The gain of a transistor i-f amplifier will decrease as the emitter current is decreased. This transistor property can be used to control the gain of an i-f amplifier so that weak and strong signals will produce the same audio output. A special i-f strip incorporating this automatic volume control action is shown in figure 29.

R-f transistors may be used as mixers or autodyne converters much in the same manner as vacuum tubes. The autodyne circuit is shown in figure 30. Transformer T_1 feeds back a signal from the collector to the emitter causing oscillation. Capacitor C_1 tunes the oscillator circuit to a frequency 455 kHz higher than that of the incoming

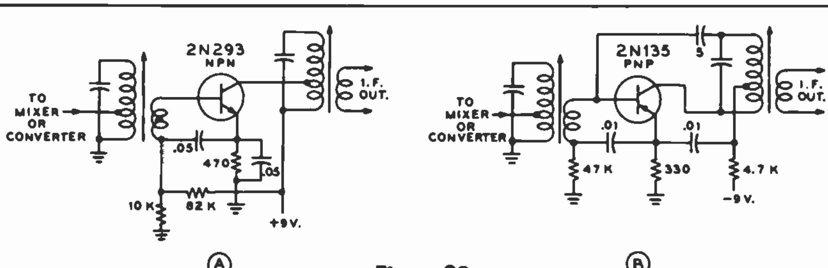


Figure 28

TRANSISTOR I-F AMPLIFIERS

Typical PNP transistor must be neutralized because of high collector capacitance. Rate-grown NPN transistor does not usually require external neutralizing circuit.

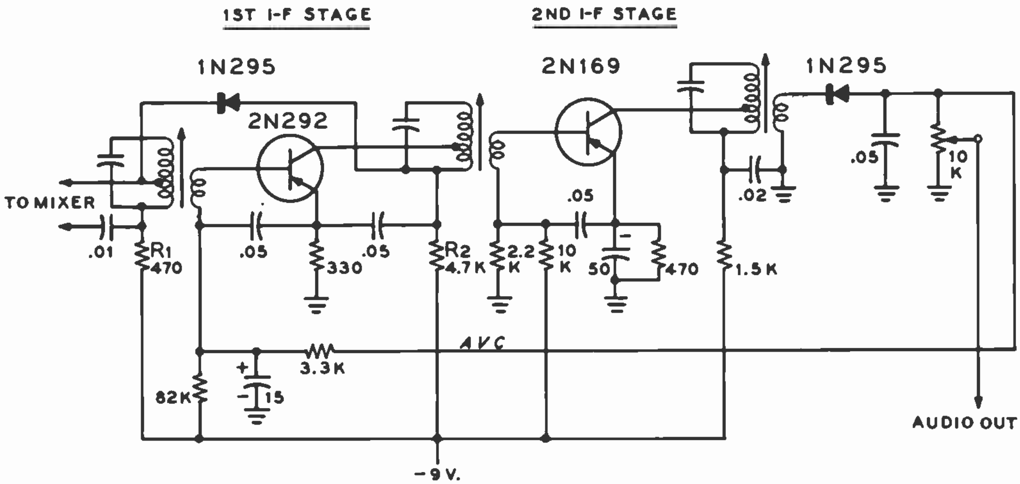


Figure 29

AUTOMATIC-VOLUME-CONTROL CIRCUIT

An auxiliary diode AVC circuit is used to shunt a portion of the signal to ground at high signal levels. Diode is back-biased by resistors R_1 and R_2.

signal. The local-oscillator signal is inductively coupled into the emitter circuit of the transistor. The incoming signal is resonated in T_2 and coupled via a low-impedance winding to the base circuit. Notice that the base is biased by a voltage-divider circuit much the same as is used in audio-frequency operation. The two signals are mixed in this stage and the desired beat frequency of 455 kHz is selected by i-f transformer T_3 and passed to the next stage. Collector currents of 0.6 ma to 0.8 ma are common, and the local-oscillator injection voltage at the emitter is in the range of 0.15 to 0.25 volt, rms.

A receiver "front end" capable of operation through the 10-meter band is shown in figure 31. The inexpensive RCA type 2N1177 or 2N1180 transistors are used. If proper shielding is employed between the tuned circuits of the r-f stage and the mixer, no neutralization of the r-f stage is required. The complete assembly obtains power from a 3-volt battery. The base of the r-f transistor is link-coupled to the r-f coil to achieve proper impedance match. The oscillator operates on its third harmonic to produce an intermediate frequency of 1.6 MHz.

The *epitaxial planar transistors* of the silicon NPN family have characteristics which make them useful as general-purpose r-f amplifiers at frequencies up to 450 MHz or so. These characteristics include low noise figure, low leakage current and a high gain-bandwidth product. Shown in figure 32 is a 220- or 432-MHz r-f amplifier using the 2N3478. The amplifier requires no neutralization and has a stage gain of over 15 db with a noise figure (NF) of 4.5 db at 220 MHz and 5 db at 432 MHz.

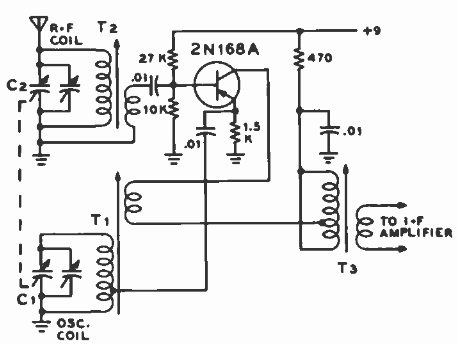


Figure 30

THE AUTODYNE CONVERTER CIRCUIT USING A 2N168A AS A MIXER

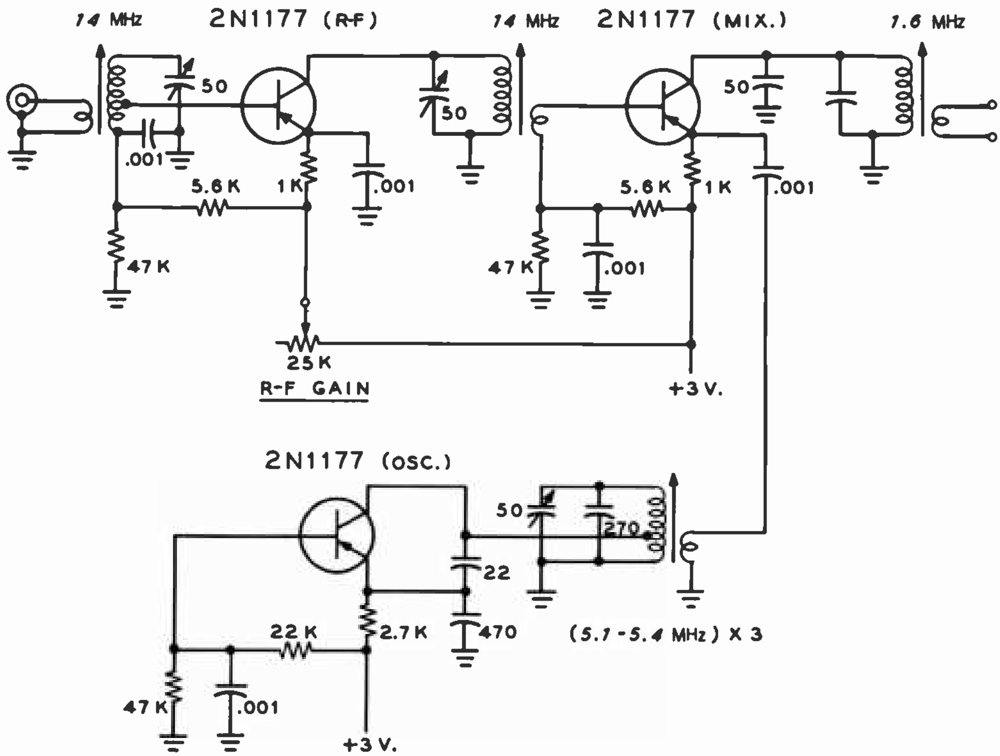


Figure 31

RECEIVER "FRONT END" FOR USE UP TO 30 MHz

Transistor Oscillators Sufficient coupling of the proper phase between input and output circuits of the transistor will permit oscillation up to and slightly above the alpha cutoff frequency. Various forms of

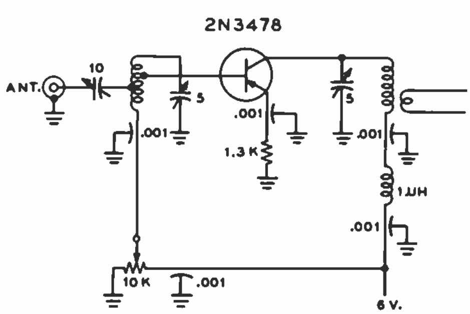


Figure 32

VHF LOW-NOISE TRANSISTOR PREAMPLIFIER

Collector voltage and base bias are adjusted for best noise figure.

transistor oscillators are shown in figure 33. A simple grounded-emitter Hartley oscillator having positive feedback between the base and the collector (33A) is compared to a grounded-base Hartley oscillator (33B). In each case the resonant tank circuit is common to the input and output circuits of the transistor. Self-bias of the transistor is employed in both these circuits.

A typical transistor crystal oscillator and frequency-multiplier circuit are shown in figure 34. The 2N707 NPN transistor operates at 25 MHz, driving a 2N2218 doubler to 50 MHz and a 2N2786 amplifier. Crystal CR_1 is for bias stabilization.

The point-contact transistor exhibits negative input and output resistances over part of its operating range, due to its unique ability to multiply the input current. This characteristic affords the use of oscillator circuitry having no external feedback paths (figure 35). A high-impedance resonant circuit in the base lead produces circuit in-

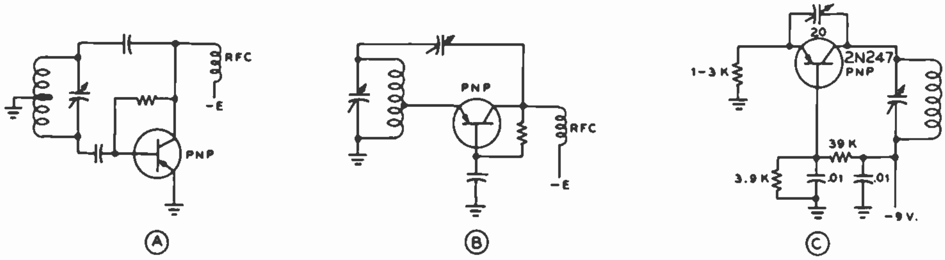


Figure 33

TYPICAL TRANSISTOR OSCILLATOR CIRCUITS

A-Grounded-emitter Hartley. B-Grounded-base Hartley. C-2N247 oscillator suitable for 50-MHz operation.

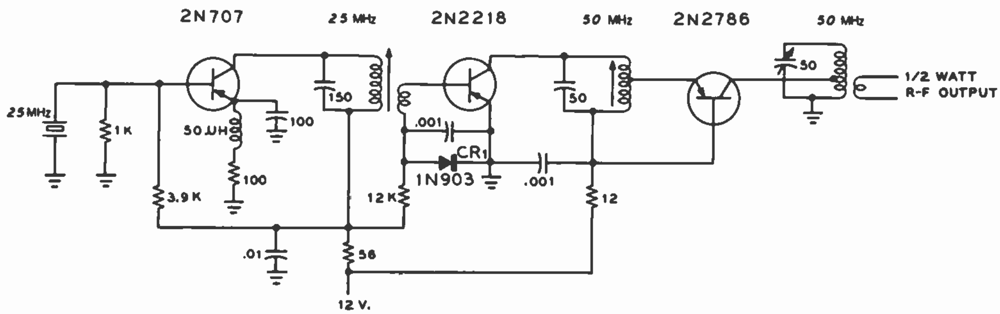


Figure 34

50-MHz TRANSISTORIZED EXCITER

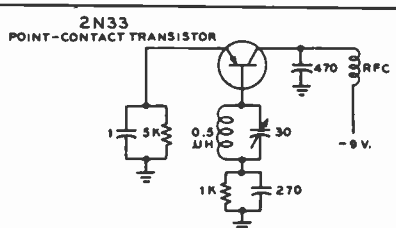


Figure 35

NEGATIVE RESISTANCE OF POINT-CONTACT TRANSISTOR PERMITS HIGH-FREQUENCY OSCILLATION (50 MHZ) WITHOUT NECESSITY OF EXTERNAL FEEDBACK PATH

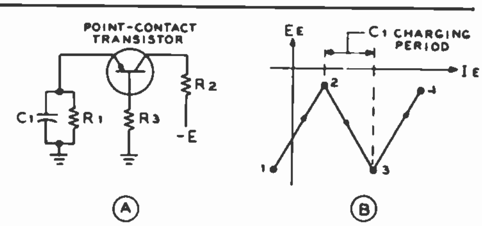
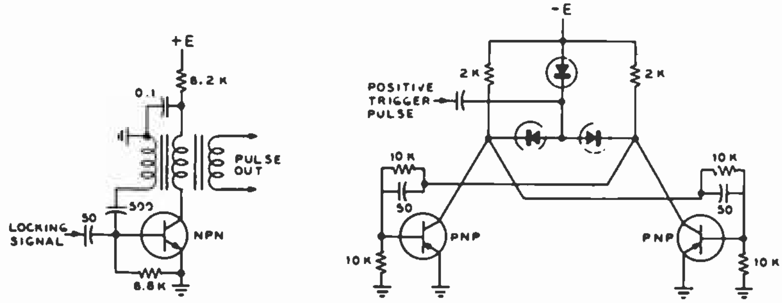


Figure 36

RELAXATION OSCILLATOR USING POINT-CONTACT OR SURFACE-BARRIER TRANSISTOR

stability and oscillation at the resonant frequency of the LC circuit. Positive emitter bias is used to ensure thermal circuit stability.

Relaxation Oscillators Transistors have almost unlimited use in relaxation and RC oscillator service. The negative-resistance characteristic of the point-contact transistor makes it well suited to such application. Surface-barrier transistors are also widely used in this service, as they have the



(A) (B)

Figure 37

**TRANSISTOR BLOCKING OSCILLATOR (A)
AND ECCLES-JORDAN BISTABLE MULTIVIBRATOR (B)**

High-alpha transistors must be employed in counting circuits to reduce effects of storage time caused by transit lag in transistor base.

highest alpha cutoff frequency among the group of "alpha-less-than-unity" transistors. Relaxation oscillators used for high-speed counting require transistors capable of operation at repetition rates of 5 to 10 MHz.

A simple emitter-controlled relaxation oscillator is shown in figure 36, together with its operating characteristic. The emitter of the transistor is biased to cutoff at the start of the cycle (point 1). The charge on the emitter capacitor slowly leaks to ground through emitter resistor R_1. Discharge time is determined by the time constant of R_1C_1. When the emitter voltage drops sufficiently low to permit the transistor to reach the negative-resistance region (point 2) the emitter and collector resistances drop to a low value, and the collector current is limited only by collector resistor R_2. The collector current is abruptly reduced by the charging action of emitter capacitor C_1 (point 3), bringing the circuit back to the original operating point. The "spike" of collector current is produced during the charging period of C_1. The duration of the pulse and the *pulse-repetition frequency* (p.r.f.) are controlled by the values of C_1, R_1, R_2, and R_3.

Transistors may also be used as blocking oscillators (figure 37A). The oscillator may be synchronized by coupling the locking signal to the base circuit of the transistor. An oscillator of this type may be used to drive a flip-flop circuit as a counter. An Eccles-Jordan bistable flip-flop circuit employing surface-barrier transistors may be driven between "off" and "on" positions by an exciting pulse as shown in figure 37B. The first pulse drives the "on" transistor into saturation. This transistor remains in a highly conductive state until the second exciting pulse arrives. The transistor does not immediately return to the cutoff state, since a time lapse occurs before the output waveform starts to decrease, This *storage time* is caused by the transit lag of the minority carriers in the base of the transistor. Proper circuit design and the use of high-alpha transistors can reduce the effects of storage time to a minimum. Driving pulses may be coupled to the multivibrator through *steering diodes* as shown in the illustration.

5-7 The Field Effect Transistor

The *Field Effect Transistor* (FET), or *unipolar transistor,* is an N- or P-channel amplifying device that modulates the flow of current in a semiconductor channel by establishing regions of depletion (lack of current carriers: holes or electrons) between the electron *source* and the *drain.* Depletion control is exercised by a *gate* consisting of a junction of opposite intrinsic material sandwiching part of the conducting path (figure 38).

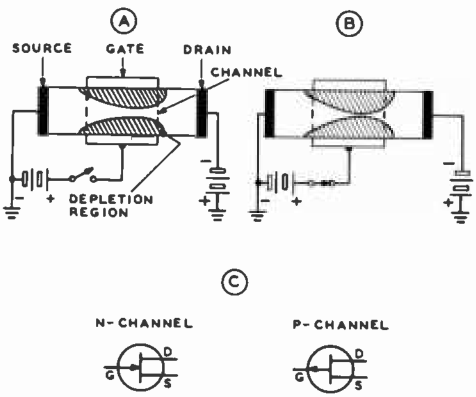


Figure 38

Depletion control is exercised by a "gate" of opposite intrinsic material across the conducting path.

When external reverse bias is applied, the region of depletion extends into the conducting path, thus restricting the carrier flow through the channel. At maximum gate bias, the depletion region is nearly complete and the channel is *pinched-off*, or reduced. In effect, the conductive cross-section of the channel is controlled by the bias signal. This action is analogous to that of the vacuum tube, where a potential on the grid affects the plate current, but the charge carrying the signal does not flow in the region between cathode and plate to any significant extent.

The input resistance of the FET is extremely high—of the order of several megohms. The output impedance is somewhat lower and is proportional to the ratio of change in drain voltage to change in drain currents at a fixed value of gate-bias voltage. This change may be compared to transconductance in the vacuum-tube sense. Electrically, the FET is comparable to a pentode tube having high input and output impedances. The Field Effect Transistor exhibits good immunity to cross-modulation and is well suited for use as an hf or vhf r-f amplifier in receivers. Typical FET r-f amplifier circuits are shown in figure 39.

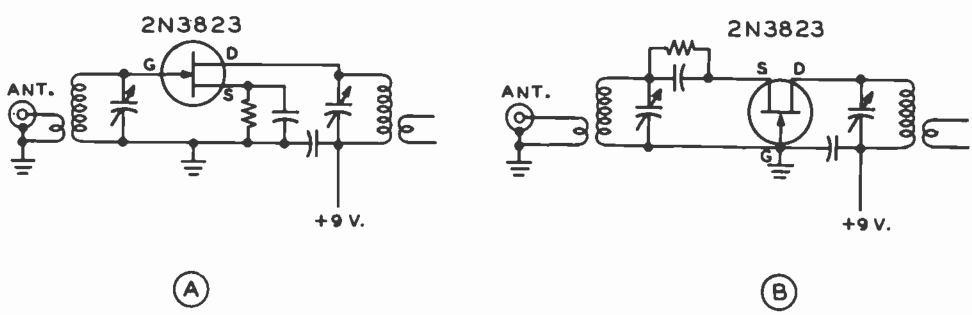


Figure 39

TYPICAL FET R-F AMPLIFIER CIRCUITS

CHAPTER SIX

Vacuum-Tube Amplifiers

6-1 Vacuum-Tube Parameters

The ability of the control grid of a vacuum tube to control large amounts of plate power with a small amount of grid energy allows the vacuum tube to be used as an amplifier. It is this ability of vacuum tubes to amplify an extremely small amount of energy up to almost any level, without change in anything except amplitude, which makes the vacuum tube such an extremely valuable adjunct to modern electronics and communication.

Symbols for Vacuum-Tube Parameters As an assistance in simplifying and shortening expressions involving vacuum-tube parameters, the following symbols will be used throughout this book:

Tube Constants

μ — amplification factor
R_p — plate resistance
g_m — transconductance
μ_{sg} — grid-screen mu factor
g_c — conversion transconductance (mixer tube)

Interelectrode Capacitances

C_{gk} — grid-cathode capacitance
C_{gp} — grid-plate capacitance
C_{pk} — plate-cathode capacitance
C_{in} — input capacitance (tetrode or pentode)
C_{out} — output capacitance (tetrode or pentode)

Electrode Potentials

E_{bb} — d-c plate-supply voltage (a positive quantity)
E_{cc} — d-c grid-supply voltage (a negative quantity)
E_{gm} — peak grid excitation voltage (½ total peak-to-peak grid swing)
E_{pm} — peak plate voltage (½ total peak-to-peak plate swing)
e_p — instantaneous plate potential
e_g — instantaneous grid potential
e_{pmin} — minimum instantaneous plate voltage
e_{gmp} — maximum positive instantaneous grid voltage
E_p — static plate voltage
E_g — static grid voltage
E_{co} — cutoff bais

Electrode Currents

I_b — average plate current
I_c — average grid current
I_{pm} — peak fundamental plate current
i_{pmax} — maximum instantaneous plate current
i_{gmax} — maximum instantaneous grid current
I_p — static plate current
I_g — static grid current

Other Symbols

P_i — plate power input
P_o — plate power output
P_p — plate dissipation
P_d — grid-driving power (grid plus bias losses)

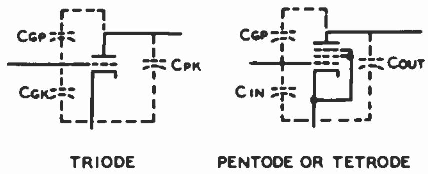


Figure 1

STATIC INTERELECTRODE CAPACITANCES WITHIN A TRIODE, PENTODE, OR TETRODE

P_{g1} — grid dissipation
N_p — plate efficiency (expressed as a decimal)
θ_p — one-half angle of plate-current flow
θ_g — one-half angle of grid-current flow
R_L — load resistance
Z_L — load impedance

Vacuum-Tube Constants The relationships between certain of the electrode potentials and currents within a vacuum tube are reasonably constant under specified conditions of operation. These relationships are called *vacuum-tube constants* and are listed in the data published by the manufacturers of vacuum tubes. The defining equations for the basic vacuum-tube constants are given in Chapter Four.

Interelectrode Capacitances and Miller Effect The values of interelectrode capacitance published in vacuum-tube tables are the static values measured, in the case of triodes for example, as shown in figure 1. The static capacitances are simply as shown in the drawing, but when a tube is operating as amplifier there is another consideration known as *Miller Effect* which causes the dynamic input capacitance to be different from the static value. The output capacitance of an amplifier is essentially the same as the static value given in the published tube tables. The grid-to-plate capacitance is also the same as the published static value, but since C_{gp} acts as a small capacitance coupling energy back from the plate circuit to the grid circuit, the dynamic input capacitance is equal to the static value plus an amount (frequently much greater in the case of a triode) determined by the gain of the stage, the plate load impedance, and the C_{gp} feedback capacitance. The total value for an audio-amplifier stage can be expressed in the following equation:

$$C_{gk(dynamic)} = C_{gk(static)} + (A + 1)\, C_{gp}$$

where,
C_{gk} is the grid-to-cathode capacitance,
C_{gp} is the grid-to-plate capacitance,
A is the stage gain.

This expression assumes that the vacuum tube is operating into a resistive load such as would be the case with an audio stage working into a resistance plate load in the middle audio range.

The more complete expression for the input admittance (vector sum of capacitance and resistance) of an amplifier operating into any type of plate load is as follows:

$$\text{input capacitance} = C_{gk} + (1 + A\cos\theta)\, C_{gp}$$

$$\text{input resistance} = \frac{-\left(\dfrac{1}{\omega C_{gp}}\right)}{A\sin\theta}$$

where,
C_{gk} equals grid-to-cathode capacitance,
C_{gp} equals grid-to-plate capacitance,
A equals voltage amplification of the tube alone,
θ equals angle of the plate-load impedance, positive for inductive loads, negative for capacitive.

It can be seen from the above that if the plate-load impedance of the stage is capacitive or inductive, there will be a resistive component in the input admittance of the stage. The resistive component of the input admittance will be positive (tending to load the circuit feeding the grid) if the load impedance of the plate is capacitive, or it will be negative (tending to make the stage oscillate) if the load impedance of the plate is inductive.

Neutralization of Interelectrode Capacitance Neutralization of the effects of interelectrode capacitance is employed most frequently in the case of radio-frequency power amplifiers. Before the introduction of the tetrode and pentode tube, triodes were employed as neutralized class-A amplifiers in receivers. Except for vhf operation of low-noise triodes, this practice has been largely superseded through the use of tetrode and pentode tubes in which the C_{gp} or feedback capacitance has been reduced to such a low value that neutralization of its effects is not necessary to prevent oscillation and instability.

6-2 Classes and Types of Vacuum-Tube Amplifiers

Vacuum-tube amplifiers are grouped into various classes and subclasses according to the type of work they are intended to perform. The difference between the various classes is determined primarily by the angle of plate-current flow, of average grid bias employed, and the maximum value of the exciting signal to be impressed on the grid.

Class-A Amplifier A class-A amplifier is an amplifier biased and supplied with excitation of such amplitude that plate current flows continuously (360° of the exciting voltage waveshape) and grid current does not flow at any time. Such an amplifier is normally operated in the center of the grid-voltage plate-current transfer characteristic and gives an output waveshape which is a substantial replica of the input waveshape.

Class-A operation is employed in most small-signal applications such as in receivers and exciters. This mode of operation is characterized by high gain, low distortion, and low efficiency. Class-A mode may be further subdivided into A_1 and A_2 operation signifying the degree of grid drive on the stage, with the A_2 mode signifying grid drive approaching the class-AB_1 mode.

Class-AB_1 Amplifier This is an amplifier operated under such conditions of grid bias and exciting voltage that plate current flows for more than one-half the input voltage cycle but for less than the complete cycle. In other words the operating angle of plate current flow is appreciably greater than 180° but less than 360°. The suffix $_1$ indicates that grid current does not flow over any portion of the input cycle.

Class-AB_1 operation is utilized in most high quality, medium-power audio amplifiers and linear r-f amplifiers. Gain is lower and distortion higher than for class-A amplifiers.

Class-AB_2 Amplifier A class-AB_2 amplifier is operated under essentially the same conditions of grid bias as the class-AB_1 amplifier mentioned above, but the exciting voltage is of such amplitude that grid current flows over an appreciable portion of the input wave cycle.

Class-B Amplifier A class-B amplifier is biased substantially to cutoff of plate current (without exciting voltage) so that plate current flows essentially over one-half the input voltage cycle. The operating angle of plate-current flow is 180°. The class-B amplifier is usually excited to the extent that grid current flows.

Class-C Amplifier A class-C amplifier is biased to a value greater than the value required for plate-current cutoff and is excited with a signal of such amplitude that grid current flows over an appreciable period of the input-voltage waveshape. The angle of plate-current flow in a class-C amplifier is appreciably less than 180°, or in other words, plate current flows appreciably less than one-half the time. Class-C amplifiers are not capable of linear amplification as their output waveform is not a replica of the input voltage for all signal amplitudes.

Types of Amplifiers There are three general types of amplifier circuits in use. These types are classified on the basis of the *return* for the input and output circuits. Conventional amplifiers are called *grid-driven* amplifiers, with the cathode acting as the common return for both the input and output circuits. The second type is known as a plate-return amplifier or *cathode*

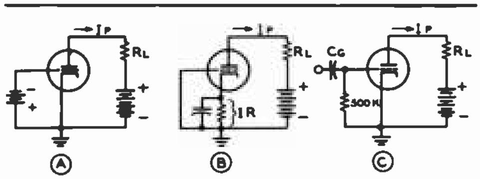


Figure 2

TYPES OF BIAS SYSTEMS

A - Grid bias
B - Cathode Bias
C - Grid-leak bias

follower since the plate circuit is effectively at ground for the input and output signal voltages and the output voltage or power is taken between cathode and plate. The third type is called a *cathode-driven* or *grounded-grid* amplifier since the grid is effectively at ground potential for input and output signals and output is taken between grid and plate.

6-3 Biasing Methods

The difference in potential between grid and cathode is called the *grid bias* of a vacuum tube. There are three general methods of providing this bias voltage. In each of these methods the purpose is to establish the grid at a potential with respect to the cathode which will place the tube in the desired operating condition as determined by its characteristics.

Grid bias may be obtained from a source of voltage specially provided for this purpose, such as a battery or other d-c power supply. This method is illustrated in figure 2A, and is known as *fixed bias*.

A second biasing method is illustrated in figure 2B which utilizes a cathode resistor across which an *IR* drop is developed as a result of plate current flowing through it. The cathode of the tube is held at a positive potential with respect to ground by the amount of the *IR* drop because the grid is at ground potential. Since the biasing voltage depends on the flow of plate current the tube cannot be held in a cutoff condition by means of the *cathode bias* voltage developed across the cathode resistor. The value of this resistor is determined by the bias required and the plate current which flows at this value of bias, as found from the tube characteristic curves. A capacitor is shunted across the bias resistor to provide a low-impedance path to ground for the a-c component of the plate current which results from an a-c input signal on the grid.

The third method of providing a biasing voltage is shown in figure 2C, and is called *grid-leak* bias. During the portion of the input cycle which causes the grid to be positive with respect to the cathode, grid current flows from cathode to grid, charging capacitor C_g. When the grid draws current, the grid-to-cathode resistance of the tube drops from an infinite value to a very low value (on the order of 1000 ohms or so) making the charging time constant of the capacitor very short. This enables C_g to charge up to essentially the full value of the positive input voltage and results in the grid (which is connected to the low-potential plate of the capacitor) being held essentially at ground potential. During the negative swing of the input signal no grid current flows and the discharge path of C_g is through the grid resistance which has a value of 500,000 ohms or so. The discharge time constant for C_g is, therefore, very long in comparison to the period of the input signal and only a small part of the charge on C_g is lost. Thus, the bias voltage developed by the discharge of C_g is substantially constant and the grid is not permitted to follow the positive portions of the input signal.

6-4 Distortion in Amplifiers

There are three main types of distortion that may occur in amplifiers: *frequency* distortion, *phase* distortion and *amplitude* distortion.

Frequency Distortion *Frequency distortion* may occur when some frequency components of a signal are amplified more than others. Frequency distortion occurs at low frequencies if coupling capacitors between stages are too small, or it may occur at high frequencies as a result of the shunting effects of the distributed capacities in the circuit.

Phase Distortion In figure 3 an input signal consisting of a fundamental and a third harmonic is passed through a two-stage amplifier. Although the amplitudes of both components are amplified by identical ratios, the output waveshape is considerably different from the input signal because the phase of the third-harmonic signal has been shifted with respect to the fundamental signal. This phase shift is known as *phase distortion*, and is caused principally by the coupling circuits between the stages of the amplifier. Most coupling circuits shift the phase of a sine wave, but this has no effect on the shape of the output wave. However, when a complex wave

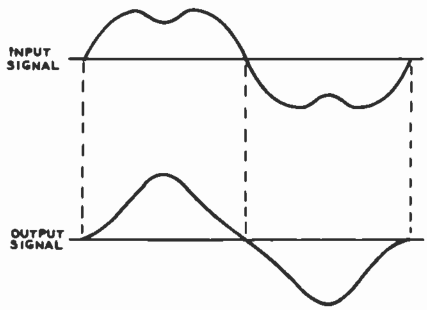


Figure 3

Illustration of the effect of phase distortion on input wave containing a third-harmonic signal

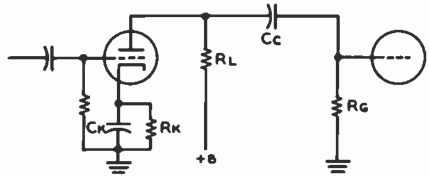
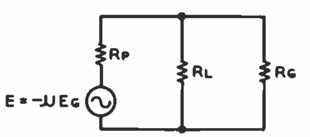


Figure 4

STANDARD CIRCUIT FOR RESISTANCE-CAPACITANCE COUPLED TRIODE AMPLIFIER STAGE

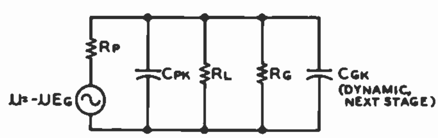
is passed through the same coupling circuit each component frequency of the wave shape may be shifted in phase by a different amount so that the output wave is not a faithful reproduction of the input waveshape.

Amplitude Distortion If a signal is passed through a vacuum tube that is operating on any nonlinear part of its characteristic, *amplitude distortion* will occur. In such a region, a change in grid voltage does not result in a change in plate current which is directly proportional to the change in grid voltage. For example, if an



$$A = \frac{\mu R_L R_G}{R_P(R_L+R_G)+R_L R_G}$$

MID-FREQUENCY RANGE

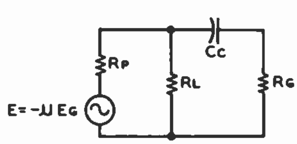


$$\frac{A_{\text{HIGH FREQ.}}}{A_{\text{MID FREQ.}}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(R_{EQ}/X_S)^2}}$$

$$R_{EQ} = \frac{R_L}{1+\frac{R_L}{R_G}+\frac{R_L}{R_P}}$$

$$X_S = \frac{1}{2\pi f\,(C_{PK}+C_{GK\,(\text{DYNAMIC})})}$$

HIGH-FREQUENCY RANGE



$$\frac{A_{\text{LOW FREQ.}}}{A_{\text{MID FREQ.}}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+(X_C/R)^2}}$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi f C_C}$$

$$R = R_G + \frac{R_L R_P}{R_L + R_P}$$

LOW-FREQUENCY RANGE

Figure 5

Equivalent circuits and gain equations for a triode RC-coupled amplifier stage. In using these equations, be sure the values of μ and R_p are proper for the static current and voltages with which the tube will operate. These values may be obtained from curves published in the RCA Receiving Tube Manual (series RC).

amplifier is excited with a signal that overdrives the tubes, the resultant signal is distorted in amplitude, since the tubes are then operating over a nonlinear portion of their characteristic.

6-5 Resistance-Capacitance Coupled Audio-Frequency Amplifiers

Present practice in the design of audio-frequency voltage amplifiers is almost exclusively to use resistance-capacitance coupling between the low-level stages. Both triodes and pentodes are used; triode amplifier stages will be discussed first.

RC-Coupled Triode Stages Figure 4 illustrates the standard circuit for a resistance-capacitance coupled amplifier stage utilizing a triode tube with cathode bias. In conventional audio-frequency amplifier design such stages are used at medium voltage levels (from 0.01 to 5 volts peak on the grid of the tube) and use medium-μ triodes such as the 6C4 or high-μ triodes such as the 6AB4 or 12AT7. Normal voltage gain for a single stage of this type is from 10 to 70, depending on the tube chosen and its operating conditions. Triode tubes are normally used in the last voltage-amplifier stage of an RC amplifier since their harmonic distortion with large output voltage (25 to 75 volts) is less than with a pentode tube.

Voltage Gain per Stage The voltage gain per stage of a resistance-capacitance coupled triode amplifier can be calculated with the aid of the equivalent circuits and expressions for the mid-frequency, high-frequency, and low-frequency ranges given in figure 5.

A triode RC-coupled amplifier stage is normally operated with values of cathode resistor and plate-load resistor such that the actual voltage on the tube is approximately one-half the d-c plate-supply voltage. To assist the designer of such stages, data on operating conditions for commonly used tubes is published in the *RCA Receiving Tube Manual*. It is assumed, in the case of the gain equations of figure 5, that the cathode bypass capacitor (C_k) has a reactance that is low with respect to the cathode resistor at the lowest frequency to be passed by the amplifier stage.

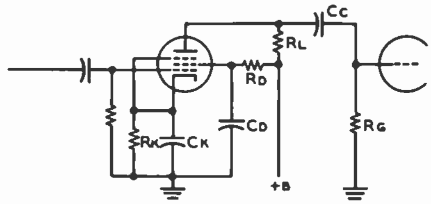


Figure 6

STANDARD CIRCUIT FOR RESISTANCE-CAPACITANCE COUPLED PENTODE AMPLIFIER STAGE

RC-Coupled Pentode Stages Figure 6 illustrates the standard circuit for a resistance-capacitance coupled pentode amplifier stage. Cathode bias is used and the screen voltage is supplied through a dropping resistor from the plate-voltage supply. In conventional audio-frequency amplifier design such stages are normally used at low voltage levels (from 0.00001 to 0.1 volts peak on the grid of the tube) and use moderate-g_m pentodes such as the 6AU6. Normal voltage gain for a stage of this type is from 60 to 250, depending on the tube chosen and its operating conditions. Pentode tubes are ordinarily used in the first stage of an RC amplifier, where the high gain which they afford is of greatest advantage, and where only a small voltage output is required from the stage.

The voltage gain per stage of a resistance-capacitance coupled pentode amplifier can be calculated with the aid of the equivalent circuits and expressions for the mid-frequency, high-frequency, and low-frequency ranges given in figure 7.

To assist the designer of such stages, data on operating conditions for commonly used types of tubes is published in the RCA Receiving Tube Manual, RC-series. It is assumed, in the case of the gain equations of figure 7, that cathode bypass capacitor C_k has a reactance that is low with respect to the cathode resistor at the lowest frequency to be passed by the stage. It is additionally assumed that the reactance of screen bypass capacitor C_d is low with respect to screen dropping resistor R_d at the lowest frequency to be passed by the amplifier stage.

Cascaded Voltage-Amplifier Stages When voltage-amplifier stages are operated in such a manner that the output voltage of the first is fed to the grid of the second, and so forth, such stages are said to be *cascaded*. The total voltage gain of cascaded amplifier stages is obtained by taking the product of the voltage gains of each of the successive stages.

Sometimes the voltage gain of an amplifier stage is rated in decibels. Voltage gain is converted into decibel gain through the use of the following expression: db $= 20 \log_{10} A$, where A is the voltage gain of the stage. The total gain of cascaded voltage-amplifier stages can be obtained by *adding* the number of db gain in each of the cascaded stages.

RC Amplifier Response A typical frequency-response curve for an RC-coupled audio amplifier is shown in figure 8. It is seen that the amplification is poor for the extreme high and low frequencies. The reduced gain at the low frequencies is caused by the loss of voltage across the coupling capacitor. In some cases, a low-value coupling capacitor is deliberately chosen to reduce the response of the stage to hum, or to attenuate the lower voice frequencies for communication purposes. For high-fidelity work the product of the grid resistor in ohms times the coupling capacitor in microfarads should equal 25,000 (i.e.: 500,000 ohms $\times$ 0.05 μfd $=$ 25,000).

The amplification of high frequencies falls off because of the Miller effect of the subsequent stage, and the shunting effect of residual circuit capacities. Both of these effects may be minimized by the use of a low-value plate-load resistor.

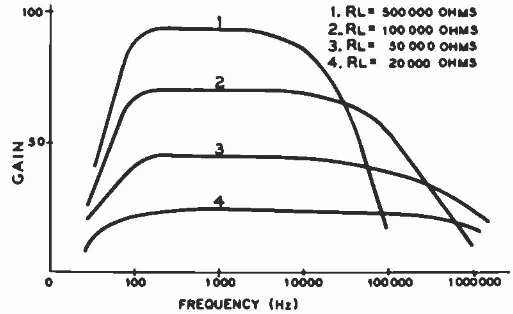
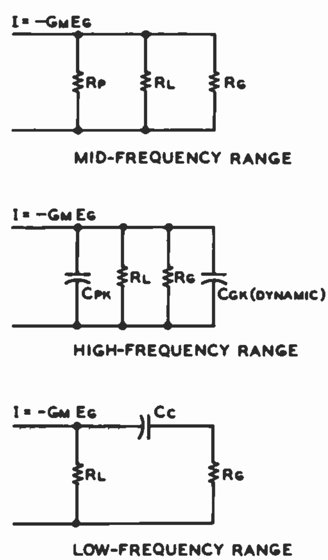


Figure 8

The variation of stage gain with frequency in an RC-coupled pentode amplifier for various values of plate load resistance.



$$A = G_M R_{EQ}$$

$$R_{EQ} = \frac{R_L}{1 + \frac{R_L}{R_G} + \frac{R_L}{R_P}}$$

$$\frac{A_{HIGH\ FREQ}}{A_{MID\ FREQ}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (R_{EQ}/X_S)^2}}$$

$$R_{EQ} = \frac{R_L}{1 + \frac{R_L}{R_G} + \frac{R_L}{R_P}}$$

$$X_S = \frac{1}{2\pi f\,(C_{PK} + C_{GK\,(DYNAMIC)})}$$

$$\frac{A_{LOW\ FREQ.}}{A_{MID\ FREQ.}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (X_C/R)^2}}$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi f\,C_C}$$

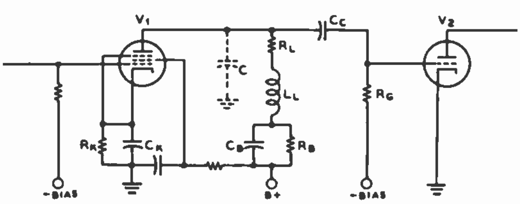
$$R = R_G + \frac{R_L\ R_P}{R_L + R_P}$$

Figure 7

Equivalent circuits and gain equations for a pentode RC-coupled amplifier stage. In using these equations be sure to select the values of g_m and R_p which are proper for the static currents and voltages with which the tube will operate. These values may be obtained from curves published in the RCA Receiving Tube Manual RC- series.

Grid-Leak Bias for High-Mu Triodes The correct operating bias for a high-mu triode such as the 12AT7, is fairly critical, and will be found to be highly variable from tube to tube because of minute variations in contact potential within the tube itself. A satisfactory bias method is to use grid-leak bias, with a grid resistor of one to ten megohms connected directly between grid and cathode of the tube with the cathode grounded. Grid current flows at all times, and the effective input resistance is about one-half the resistance value of the grid leak. This circuit is particularly well suited as a high-gain amplifier following low-output devices, such as crystal, or dynamic microphones.

RC Amplifier General Characteristics A resistance - capacitance coupled amplifier can be designed to provide a good frequency response for almost any desired range. For instance, such an amplifier can be built to provide a fairly uniform amplification for frequencies in the audio range of about 100 to 20,000 Hz. Changes in the values of coupling capacitors and load resistors can extend this frequency range to cover the very wide range required for video service. However, extension of the range can only be obtained at the cost of reduced over-all amplification. Thus RC coupling allows good frequency response with minimum distortion, but low amplification. Phase distortion is less with RC coupling than with other types, except direct coupling. The RC amplifier may exhibit tendencies to *motorboat* or oscillate if it is used with a high-impedance plate supply.



MID-FREQUENCY GAIN = $G_{M V1} R_L$

HIGH-FREQUENCY GAIN = $G_{M V1} Z_{COUPLING\ NETWORK}$

$C = C_{OUT\ V1} + C_{IN\ V2} + C_{DISTRIBUTED}$

FOR COMPROMISE HIGH-FREQUENCY EQUALIZATION.

$X_{L_L} = 0.5\, X_C$ AT f_C

$R_L = X_C$ AT f_C

WHERE f_C = CUTOFF-FREQUENCY OF AMPLIFIER

L_L = PEAKING INDUCTOR

FOR COMPROMISE LOW-FREQUENCY EQUALIZATION:

$R_B = R_K\ (G_{M V1} R_L)$

$R_B C_B = R_K C_K$

C_K = 25 TO 50 μFD. IN PARALLEL WITH .001 MICA

C_B = CAPACITANCE FROM ABOVE WITH .001 MICA IN PARALLEL

Figure 9

SIMPLE COMPENSATED VIDEO AMPLIFIER CIRCUIT

Resistor R_L in conjunction with coil L_L serves to flatten the high-frequency response of the stage, while C_B and R_B serve to equalize the low-frequency response of this simple video amplifier stage.

6-6 Video-Frequency Amplifiers

A *video-frequency amplifier* is one which has been designed to pass frequencies from the lower audio range (lower limit perhaps 50 Hz) to the middle r-f range (upper limit perhaps 4 to 6 MHz). Such amplifiers, in addition to passing such an extremely wide frequency range, must be capable of amplifying this range with a minimum of amplitude, phase, and frequency distortion. Video amplifiers are commonly used in television, pulse communication, and radar work.

Tubes used in video amplifiers must have a high ratio of g_m to capacitance if a usable gain per stage is to be obtained. Commonly available tubes which have been designed for or are suitable for use in video amplifiers are: 6AU6, 6AG5, 6AK5, 6CB6, 6BC5, 6DE6, and 6AH6. Since, at the upper frequency limits of a video amplifier the input and output shunting capacitances of the amplifier tubes have rather low values of reactance, low values of coupling resistance, along with peaking coils or other special interstage coupling impedances, are usually used to flatten out the gain/frequency and hence the phase/frequency characteristic of the amplifier. Recommended operating conditions along with expressions for calculation of gain and circuit values are given in figure 9. Only a simple two-terminal interstage coupling network is shown in this figure.

The performance and gain per stage of a video amplifier can be improved by the use of increasingly complex two-terminal interstage coupling networks or through the use of four-terminal coupling networks or filters between successive stages. The reader is referred to Terman's "*Radio Engineer's Handbook*" for design data on such interstage coupling networks.

6-7 Other Interstage Coupling Methods

Figure 10 illustrates, in addition to resistance-capacitance interstage coupling, seven additional methods in which coupling between two successive stages of an audio-frequency amplifier may be accomplished. Although RC coupling is most commonly used, there are certain circuit conditions wherein coupling methods other than RC are more effective.

Transformer Coupling *Transformer coupling*, as illustrated in figure 10B, is seldom used at the present time between two successive single-ended stages of an audio amplifier. There are several reasons why resistance coupling is favored over transformer coupling between two successive single-ended stages. These are: (1) a transformer having frequency characteristics comparable with a properly designed RC stage is very expensive; (2) transformers, unless they are very well shielded, will pick up inductive hum from nearby power and filament transformers; (3) the phase characteristics of step-up interstage transformers are poor, making very difficult the inclusion of a transformer of this type within a feedback loop; and (4) transformers are heavy.

However, there is one circuit application where a step-up interstage transformer is of considerable assistance to the designer; this is the case where it is desired to obtain a large amount of voltage to excite the grid of a cathode follower or of a high-power class-A amplifier from a tube operating at a moderate plate voltage. Under these conditions it is possible to obtain a peak voltage on the secondary of the transformer of a value somewhat greater than the d-c plate-supply voltage of the tube supplying the primary of the transformer.

Push-Pull Transformer Interstage Coupling *Push-pull transformer coupling* between two stages is illustrated in figure 10C. This interstage coupling arrangement is fairly commonly used. The system is particularly effective when it is desired, as in the system just described, to obtain a rather high voltage to excite the grids of a high-power audio stage. The arrangement is also very good when it is desired to apply feedback to the grids of the push-pull stage by applying the feedback voltage to the low-potential sides of the two push-pull secondaries.

Impedance Coupling *Impedance coupling* between two stages is shown in figure 10D. This circuit arrangement is seldom used, but it offers one strong advantage over RC interstage coupling. This advantage is the fact that the operating voltage on the tube with the impedance in the plate circuit is equal to the plate-supply voltage, and it is possible to obtain approximately twice the peak voltage output that is possible to obtain with RC coupling. This is because, as has been mentioned before, the d-c plate voltage on an RC stage is approximately one-half the plate supply voltage.

Impedance-Transformer and Resistance-Transformer Coupling These two circuit arrangements, illustrated in figures 10E and 10F, are employed when it is desired to use transformer coupling for the reasons cited above, but where it is desired that the d-c plate current of the amplifier stage be isolated from the primary of the coupling transformer. With most types of high-permeability wide response transformers it is necessary that there be no d-c flow through the windings of the transformer. The impedance-transformer arrangement of figure 10E will give a higher voltage output from the stage but is not often used since the plate coupling impedance (choke) must have very high inductance and very low distributed capacitance in order not to restrict the range of the transformer which it and its associated tube feed. The resistance-transformer arrangement of figure 10F is ordinarily satisfactory where it is desired to feed a transformer from a voltage-amplifier stage with no direct current in the transformer primary.

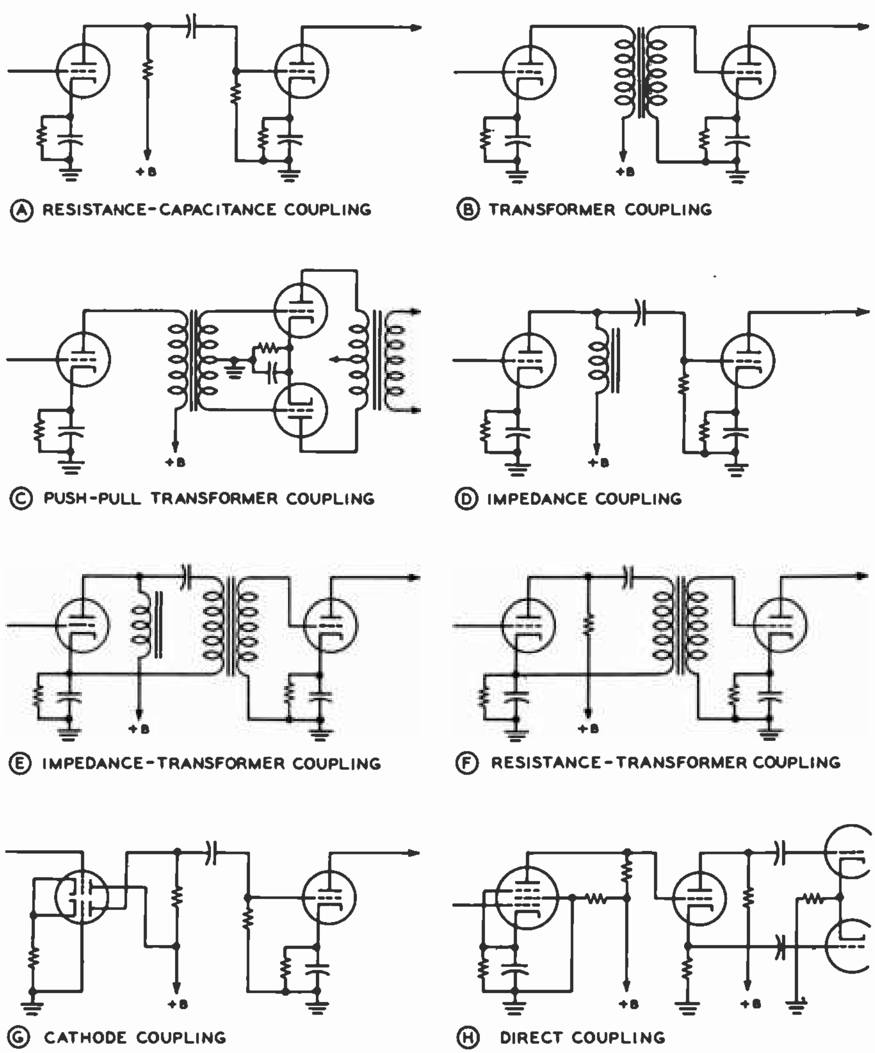
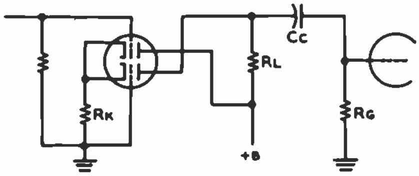


Figure 10

INTERSTAGE COUPLING METHODS FOR AUDIO-FREQUENCY VOLTAGE AMPLIFIERS

Cathode Coupling The *cathode-coupling* arrangement of figure 10G has been widely used only comparatively recently. One outstanding characteristic of such a circuit is that there is no phase reversal between the grid and the plate circuit. All other common types of interstage coupling are accompanied by a 180° phase reversal between the grid circuit and the plate circuit of the tube.

Figure 11 gives the expressions for determining the appropriate factors for an equivalent triode obtained through the use of a pair of similar triodes connected in the cathode-coupled circuit shown. With these equivalent triode factors it is possible to use the expressions shown in figure 5 to determine the gain of the stage at different frequencies. The input capacitance of such a stage is less than that of one of the triodes, the effective grid-to-plate capacitance is very much less (it is so much less that such a stage may be used as an r-f amplifier without neutraliza-



$G_M' = -G_M \frac{G}{2G+1}$ $G = R_K G_M \left(1 + \frac{1}{\mu}\right)$

R_K = CATHODE RESISTOR

$R_P' = R_P \frac{2G+1}{G+1}$ G_M = G_M OF EACH TUBE

μ = μ OF EACH TUBE

$\mu' = -\mu \frac{G}{G+1}$ R_P = R_P OF EACH TUBE

EQUIVALENT FACTORS INDICATED ABOVE BY (') ARE THOSE OBTAINED BY USING AN AMPLIFIER WITH A PAIR OF SIMILAR TUBE TYPES IN CIRCUIT SHOWN ABOVE.

Figure 11

Equivalent factors for a pair of similar triodes operating as a cathode-coupled audio-frequency voltage amplifier.

tion), and the output capacitance is approximately equal to the grid-to-plate capacitance of one of the triode sections. This circuit is particularly effective with tubes such as the 6J6, 12AU7, and 12AT7, which have two similar triodes in one envelope. An appropriate value of cathode resistor to use for such a stage is the value which would be used for the cathode resistor of a conventional amplifier using *one* of the same type tubes with the values of plate voltage and load resistance to be used for the cathode-coupled stage.

Inspection of the equations in figure 11 shows that as the cathode resistor is made smaller to approach zero, the g_m approaches zero, the plate resistance approaches the R_p of one tube, and the μ approaches zero. Since the cathode resistor is made very large the g_m approaches one-half that of a single tube of the same type, the plate resistance approaches twice that of one tube, and the μ approaches the same value as one tube. But since the g_m of each tube decreases as the cathode resistor is made larger (the plate current will decrease on each tube) the optimum value of cathode resistor will be found to be in the vicinity of the value mentioned in the previous paragraph.

Direct Coupling *Direct coupling* between successive amplifier stages (plate of first stage connected directly to the grid of the succeeding stage) is complicated by the fact that the grid of an amplifier stage must be operated at an average negative potential with respect to the cathode of that stage. However, if the cathode of the second amplifier stage can be operated at a potential more positive than the plate of the preceding stage by the amount of the grid bias on the second amplifier stage, this direct connection between the plate of one stage and the grid of the succeeding stage can be used. Figure 10H illustrates an application of this principle in the coupling of a pentode amplifier stage to the grid of a *hot-cathode* phase inverter. In this arrangement the values of cathode, screen, and plate resistors in the pentode stage are chosen so that the plate of the pentode is at approximately one-third of the plate supply potential. The succeeding phase-inverter stage then operates with conventional values of cathode and plate resistor (same value of resistance) in its normal manner. This type of phase inverter is described in more detail in the section to follow.

6-8 Phase Inverters

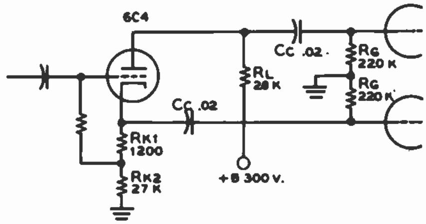
In order to excite the grids of a push-pull stage it is necessary that voltages equal in amplitude and opposite in polarity be applied to the two grids. These voltages may be obtained through the use of a push-pull input transformer such as is shown in figure 10C. It is possible also, without the attendant bulk and expense of a push-pull input transformer, to obtain voltages of the proper polarity and phase through the use of a so-called *phase-inverter* stage. There are a large number of phase-inversion circuits which have been developed and applied but the three shown in figure 12 have been found over a period of time to be the most satisfactory from the point of view of the number of components required and from the standpoint of the accuracy with which the two out-of-phase voltages are held to the same amplitude with variations in supply voltage and changes in tubes.

All of these vacuum-tube phase inverters are based on the fact that a 180° phase shift occurs within a vacuum tube between the grid input voltage and the plate output voltage. In certain circuits, the fact that the grid input voltage and the voltage appearing across the cathode bias resistor are in phase, is used for phase-inversion purposes.

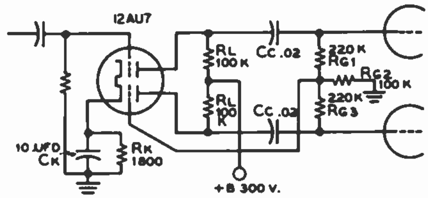
"Hot-Cathode" Phase Inverter Figure 12A illustrates the *hot-cathode* type of phase inverter. This phase inverter is the simplest of the three types since it requires only one tube and a minimum of circuit components. It is particularly simple when directly coupled from the plate of a pentode amplifier stage as shown in figure 10H. The circuit does, however, possess the following two disadvantages: (1) the cathode of the tube must run at a potential of approximately one-third the plate supply voltage above the heater when a grounded common heater winding is used for this tube as well as the other heater-cathode tubes in a receiver or amplifier; (2) the circuit actually has a loss in voltage from its input to either of the output grids —about 0.9 times the input voltage will be applied to each of these grids. This does represent a voltage gain of about 1.8 in *total* voltage output with respect to input (grid-to-grid output voltage) but it is still small with respect to the other two phase-inverter circuits shown.

Recommended component values for use with a 6C4 tube in this circuit are shown in figure 12A. If it is desired to use another tube in this circuit, appropriate values for the operation of that tube as a conventional amplifier can be obtained from manufacturer's tube data. The designated value of R_L should be divided by two, and this new value of resistance placed in the circuit as R_L. The value of R_k from tube-manual tables should then be used as R_{k1} in this circuit, and the total of R_{k1} and R_{k2} should be equal to R_L.

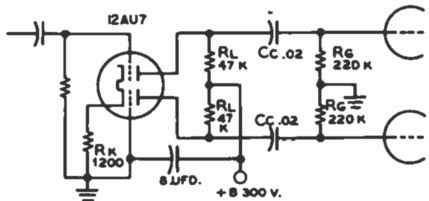
"Floating Paraphase" Phase Inverter An alternate type of phase inverter sometimes called the *floating paraphase* is illustrated in figure 12B. This circuit is quite often used with a 12AU7 tube, and appropriate values for this tube in a typical inverter circuit are shown. Using the component values given will provide a voltage gain of approximately 12 from the input grid to each of the grids of the succeeding stage. It is capable of approximately 70 volts peak output to each grid.



(A) "HOT-CATHODE" PHASE INVERTER



(B) "FLOATING PARAPHASE" PHASE INVERTER



(C) CATHODE-COUPLED PHASE INVERTER

Figure 12

THREE TYPICAL PHASE-INVERTER CIRCUITS WITH RECOMMENDED VALUES FOR CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

The circuit inherently has a small unbalance in output voltage. This unbalance can be eliminated, if it is required for some special application, by making the resistor R_{g1} a few percent lower in resistance value than R_{g3}.

Cathode-Coupled Phase Inverter The circuit shown in figure 12C gives approximately one half the voltage gain from the input grid to either of the grids of the succeeding stage that would be obtained from a single tube of the same type operating as a conventional RC amplifier stage. Thus, with a 12AU7 tube as shown (two 6C4's in one envelope) the voltage gain from the input grid to either of the output grids will be approximately 7—the gain is, of course, 14 from the input to both

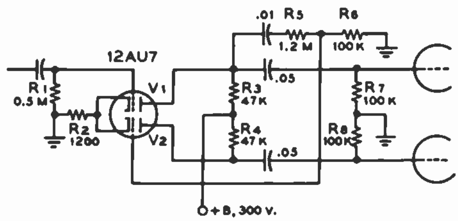


Figure 13

VOLTAGE-DIVIDER PHASE INVERTER

output grids. The phase characteristics are such that the circuit is commonly used in deriving push-pull deflection voltage for a cathode-ray tube from a single-ended input signal.

The first section of the 12AU7 is used as an amplifier to increase the amplitude of the applied signal to the desired level. The second section of the 12AU7 is used as an inverter and amplifier to produce a signal of the same amplitude but of opposite polarity. Since the common cathode resistor (R_k) is not bypassed the voltage across it is the algebraic sum of the two plate currents and has the same shape and polarity as the voltage applied to the input grid of the first half of the 12AU7. When a signal (e) is applied to the input circuit, the effective grid-cathode voltage of the first section is $Ae/2$, when A is the gain of the first section. Since the grid of the second section of the 12AU7 is grounded, the effect of the signal voltage across R_k (equal to $e/2$ if R_k is the proper value) is the same as though a signal of the same amplitude but of opposite polarity were applied to the grid. The output of the second section is equal to $-Ae/2$ if the plate load resistors are the same for both tube sections.

Voltage-Divider Phase Inverter A commonly used phase inverter is shown in figure 13. The input section (V_1) is connected as a conventional amplifier. The output voltage from V_1 is impressed on the voltage divider R_5-R_6. The values of R_5 and R_6 are in such a ratio that the voltage impressed on the grid of V_2 is $1/A$ times the output voltage of V_1, where A is the amplification factor of V_1. The output of V_2 is then of the same amplitude as the output of V_1, but of opposite phase.

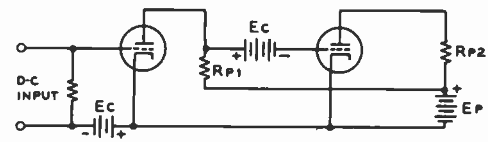


Figure 14

DIRECT-COUPLED D-C AMPLIFIER

6-9 D-C Amplifiers

Direct-current amplifiers are special types used where amplification of very slow variations in voltage, or of d-c voltages is desired. A simple d-c amplifier consists of a single tube with a grid resistor across the input terminals, and the load in the plate circuit.

Basic D-C Amplifier Circuit A simple d-c amplifier circuit is shown in figure 14, wherein the grid of one tube is connected directly to the plate of the preceding tube in such a manner that voltage changes on the grid of the first tube will be amplified by the system. The voltage drop across the plate coupling resistor is impressed directly on the grid of the second tube, which is provided with enough negative grid bias to balance out the excessive voltage drop across the coupling resistor. The grid of the second tube is thus maintained in a slightly negative position.

The d-c amplifier will provide good low-frequency response, with negligible phase distortion. High-frequency response is limited by the shunting effect of the tube capacitances, as in the normal resistance-coupled amplifier.

A common fault with d-c amplifiers of all types is static instability. Small changes in the filament, plate, or grid voltages cannot be distinguished from the exciting voltage. Regulated power supplies and special balancing circuits have been devised to reduce the effects of supply variations on these amplifiers. A successful system is to apply the plate potential in phase to two tubes, and to apply the exciting signal to a push-pull grid-circuit configuration. If the two tubes are identical, any change in electrode voltage is

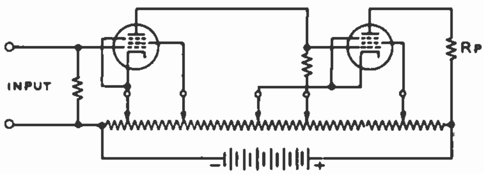


Figure 15

LOFTIN-WHITE D-C AMPLIFIER

balanced out. The use of negative feedback can also greatly reduce drift problems.

The "Loftin-White" Circuit Two d-c amplifier stages may be arranged, so that their plate supplies are effectively in series, as illustrated in figure 15. This is known as a *Loftin-White* amplifier. All plate and grid voltages may be obtained from one master power supply instead of separate grid and plate supplies. A push-pull version of this amplifier (figure 16) can be used to balance out the effects of slow variations in the supply voltage.

6-10 Single-Ended Triode Amplifiers

Figure 17 illustrates five circuits for the operation of class-A triode amplifier stages. Since the cathode current of a triode class-A (no grid current) amplifier stage is constant with and without excitation, it is common practice to operate the tube with cathode bias. Recommended operating conditions in regard to plate voltage, grid bias, and load impedance for conventional triode amplifier stages are given in the RCA Receiving Tube Manuals.

Extended Class-A Operation It is possible, under certain conditions, to operate single-ended triode amplifier stages (and pentode and tetrode stages as well) with grid excitation of sufficient amplitude that grid current is taken by the tube on peaks. This type of operation is called class-A_2 and is characterized by increased plate-circuit efficiency over straight class-A amplification without grid current. The normal class-A amplifier power stage will operate with a plate-circuit efficiency of from 20 percent to perhaps 35 percent.

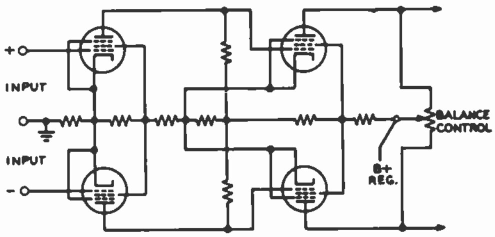


Figure 16

PUSH-PULL D-C AMPLIFIER WITH EITHER SINGLE-ENDED OR PUSH-PULL INPUT

Through the use of class-A_2 operation it is possible to increase this plate-circuit efficiency to approximately 38 to 45 percent. However, such operation requires careful choice of the value of plate load impedance, a grid-bias supply with good regulation (since the tube draws grid current on peaks although the plate current does not change with signal), and a driver tube with moderate power capability to excite the grid of the class A_2 tube.

Figures 17D and 17E illustrate two methods of connection for such stages. Tubes such as the 845, 450TL, and 304TL are suitable for these circuits. In each case the grid bias is approximately the same as would be used for a class-A amplifier using the same tube, and as mentioned before, fixed bias must be used along with an audio driver of good regulation—preferably a triode stage with a 1:1 or step-down driver transformer. In each case it will be found that the correct value of plate load impedance will be increased about 40 percent over the value recommended by the tube manufacturer for class-A operation of the tube.

Operation Characteristics of a Triode Power Amplifier A class-A power amplifier operates in such a way as to amplify as faithfully as possible the waveform applied to the grid of the tube. Large power output is of more importance than high voltage amplification, consequently gain characteristics may be sacrificed in power-tube design to obtain more important power-handling capabilities. Class-A power tubes, such as the 12BY4A, 2A3, and 6AS7G, are characterized by a low

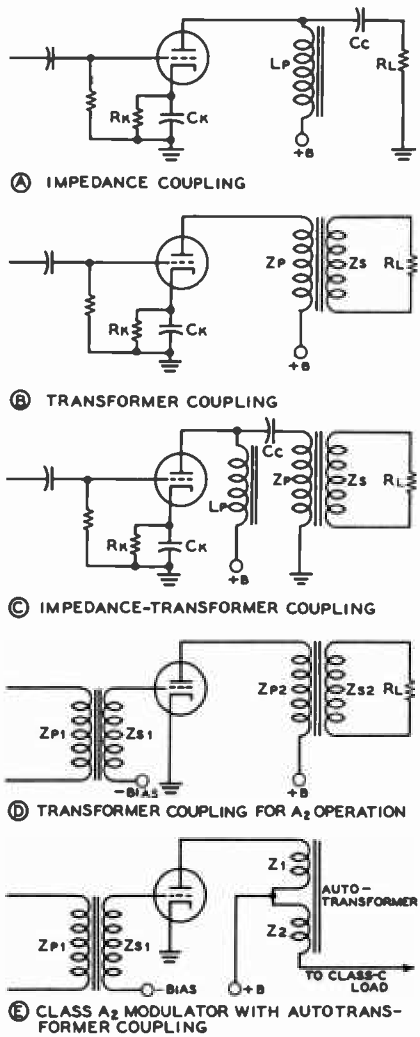


Figure 17

Output coupling arrangements for single-ended class-A triode audio-frequency power amplifiers.

amplification factor, high plate dissipation, and relatively high filament emission.

The operating characteristics of a class-A triode amplifier employing an output-transformer coupled load may be calculated from the plate family of curves for the particular tube in question by employing the following steps:

1. The load resistance should be approximately twice the plate resistance of the tube for maximum undistorted power output. Remember this fact for a quick check on calculations.
2. Calculate the zero-signal bias voltage (E_g).

$$E_g = \frac{-(0.68 \times E_{bb})}{\mu}$$

where,

E_{bb} is the actual plate voltage of the class-A stage,

μ is the amplification factor of the tube.

3. Locate the E_g bias point on the I_p versus E_p graph where the E_g bias line crosses the plate-voltage line, as shown in figure 18. Call this point *P*.
4. Locate on the plate family of curves the value of zero-signal plate current, (I_p) corresponding to operating point *P*.
5. Locate 2 × I_p (twice the value of I_p) on the plate-current axis (*Y* axis). This point corresponds to the value of maximum-signal plate current (i_{max}).
6. Locate point *x* on the d-c bias curve at zero volts ($E_g = 0$), corresponding to the value of i_{max}.
7. Draw a straight line ($x - y$) through points *x* and *P*. This line is *the load-resistance line.* Its slope corresponds to the value of the load resistance.
8. Load resistance, (in ohms) equals:

$$R_L = \frac{e_{max} - e_{min}}{i_{max} - i_{min}}$$

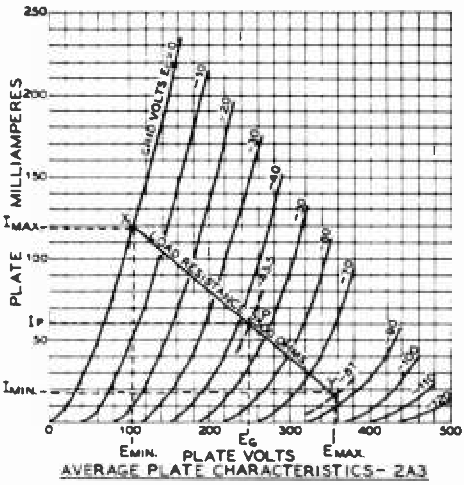
where,

e is in volts,

i is in amperes,

R_L is in ohms.

9. Check: Multiply the zero-signal plate current (I_p) by the operating plate voltage, (E_p). If the plate dissipation rating of the tube is exceeded, it is necessary to increase the bias (E_g) on the tube so that the plate dissipation falls within the maximum rating of the tube. If this step is taken, operations 2 through 8 must be repeated with the new value of E_g.
10. For maximum power output, the peak a-c grid voltage on the tube should swing to $2E_g$ on the negative cycle, and to zero-bias on the positive cycle. At the peak of the negative swing,



$\mu = 4.2$ $R_p = 800$ OHMS
PLATE DISSIPATION = 15 WATTS

LOAD RESISTANCE

$$R_L = \frac{E_{MAX.} - E_{MIN.}}{I_{MAX.} - I_{MIN.}} \text{ OHMS}$$

POWER OUTPUT

$$P_O = \frac{(I_{MAX.} - I_{MIN.})\ (E_{MAX.} - E_{MIN.})}{8} \text{ WATTS}$$

SECOND-HARMONIC DISTORTION

$$D_2 = \frac{\frac{(I_{MAX.} + I_{MIN.})}{2} - I_P}{I_{MAX.} - I_{MIN.}} \times 100 \text{ PERCENT}$$

Figure 18

Formulas for determining the operating conditions of a class-A triode single-ended audio-frequency power output stage. A typical load line has been drawn on the average plate characteristics of a type 2A3 tube to illustrate the procedure.

the plate voltage reaches e_{max} and the plate current drops to i_{min}. On the positive swing of the grid signal, the plate voltage drops to e_{min} and the plate current reaches i_{max}. The power output of the tube in watts is:

$$P_o = \frac{(i_{max} - i_{min}) \times (e_{max} - e_{min})}{8}$$

where,
  i is in amperes,
  e is in volts.

11. The second-harmonic distortion generated in a single-ended class-A triode amplifier, expressed as a percentage of the fundamental output signal is:

% 2nd harmonic =

$$\frac{\frac{(i_{max} - i_{min})}{2} - I_p}{i_{max} - i_{min}} \times 100$$

Figure 18 illustrates the above steps as applied to a single class-A 2A3 amplifier stage.

6-11 Single-Ended Pentode Amplifiers

Figure 19 illustrates the conventional circuit for a single-ended tetrode or pentode amplifier stage. Tubes of this type have largely replaced triodes in the output stage of receivers and amplifiers due to the higher plate efficiency (30%—40%) at which they operate. Tetrode and pentode tubes do, however, introduce a considerably greater amount of harmonic distortion in their output circuit, particularly odd harmonics. In addition, their plate-circuit impedance (which acts in an amplifier to damp speaker overshoot and ringing, and acts in a driver stage to provide good regulation) is many times higher than that of an equivalent triode. The application of negative feedback acts both to reduce distortion and to reduce the effective plate-circuit impedance of these tubes.

Operating Characteristics of a Pentode Power Amplifier The operating characteristics of pentode power amplifiers may be obtained from the plate family of curves, much as in the manner applied to triode tubes. A typical family of pentode plate curves is shown in figure 20.

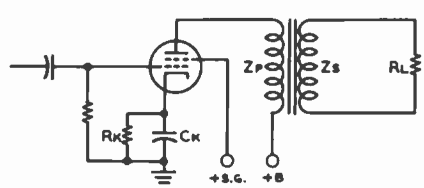


Figure 19

Conventional single-ended pentode or beam tetrode audio-frequency power-output stage.

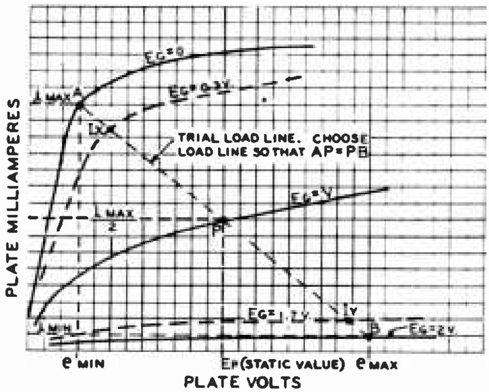


Figure 20

GRAPHIC DETERMINATION OF OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS OF A PENTODE POWER AMPLIFIER

"V" is the negative control grid voltage at the operating point P.

The plate current of the pentode tube is relatively independent of the applied plate voltage, but is sensitive to screen voltage. In general, the correct pentode load resistance is about

$$\frac{0.9\,E_p}{I_p}$$

and the power output is somewhat less than

$$\frac{E_p \times I_p}{2}$$

These formulas may be used for a quick check on more precise calculations. To obtain the operating parameters for class-A pentode amplifiers, the following steps are taken:

1. The i_{max} point is chosen so as to fall on the zero-bias curve, just above the "knee" of the curve (point *A*, figure 20).
2. A preliminary operating point (*P*) is determined by the intersection of the plate-voltage line (E_p) and the line of $i_{max}/2$. The grid-voltage curve that this point falls on should be one that is about ½ the value of E_g required to cut the plate current to a very low value (point *B*). Point *B* represents i_{min} on the plate-current axis (*y* axis). The line $i_{max}/2$ should be located halfway between i_{max} and i_{min}.
3. A trial load line is constructed about point *P* and point *A* in such a way that the lengths *AP* and *PB* are approximately equal.
4. When the most satisfactory load line has been determined, the load resistance may be calculated:

$$R_L = \frac{e_{max} - e_{min}}{i_{max} - i_{min}}$$

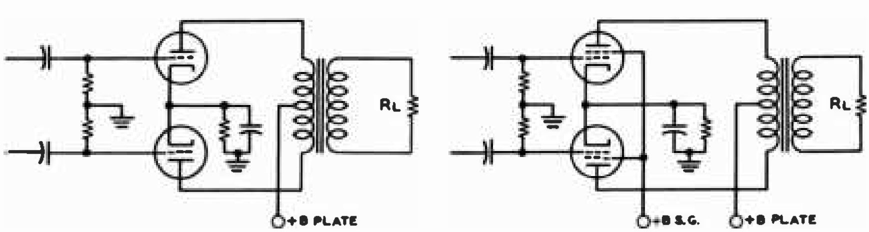
5. The operating bias (E_g) is the bias at point *P*.
6. The power output is:

$$\frac{(i_{max} - i_{min}) + 1.41\,(I_x - I_y)^2 \times R_L}{32}$$

where,

I_x is the plate current at the point on the load line where the grid voltage (e_g) is equal to: $E_g - 0.7\,E_g$,

I_y is the plate current at the point



PUSH-PULL TRIODE AND TETRODE

Figure 21

CONVENTIONAL PUSH-PULL CIRCUITS

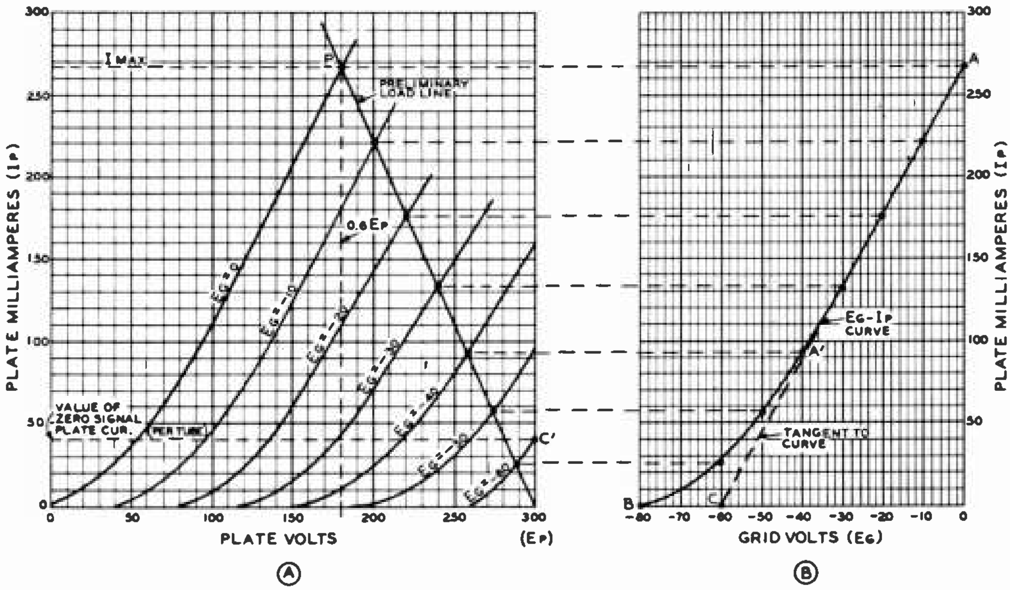


Figure 22

DETERMINATION OF OPERATING PARAMETERS FOR PUSH-PULL CLASS-A TRIODE TUBES

where, e_g is equal to: $E_g + 0.7\ E_g$.

7. The percentage harmonic distortion is:

% 2nd harmonic distortion =

$$\frac{i_{max} - i_{min} - 2\ I_p}{i_{max} - i_{min} + 1.41\ (I_x - I_y)} \times 100$$

where,

I_p is the static plate current of the tube.

% 3rd harmonic distortion =

$$\frac{i_{max} - i_{min} - 1.41\ (I_x - I_y)}{i_{max} - i_{min} + 1.41\ (I_x - I_y)} \times 100$$

6-12 Push-Pull Audio Amplifiers

A number of advantages are obtained through the use of the push-pull connection of two or four tubes in an audio-frequency power amplifier. Two conventional circuits for the use of triode and tetrode tubes in the push-pull connection are shown in figure 21. The two main advantages of the push-pull circuit arrangement are: (1) the magnetizing effect of the plate currents of the output tubes is cancelled in the windings of the output transformer; (2) even harmonics of the input signal (second and fourth harmonics primarily) generated in the push-pull stage are cancelled when the tubes are balanced.

The cancellation of even harmonics generated in the stage allows the tubes to be operated class AB—in other words the tubes may be operated with bias and input signals of such amplitude that the plate current of alternate tubes may be cut off during a portion of the input voltage cycle. If a tube were operated in such a manner in a single-ended amplifier the second-harmonic amplitude generated would be prohibitively high.

Push-pull class-AB operation allows a plate circuit efficiency of from 45 to 60 percent to be obtained in an amplifier stage depending on whether or not the exciting voltage is of such amplitude that grid current is drawn by the tubes. If grid current is taken on input voltage peaks the amplifier is said to be operating class-AB_2 and the plate-circuit efficiency can be as high as the upper value just mentioned. If grid current is not taken by the stage it is said to be operating class-AB_1 and the plate-circuit efficiency will be toward the lower end of the range just quoted. In all class-AB amplifiers the plate current will increase from 40 to 150 percent over the no-signal value when full excitation voltage is applied.

Operating Characteristics of Push-Pull Class-A Triode Power Amplifier The operating characteristics of push-pull class-A amplifiers may also be determined from the plate family of curves for a particular triode tube by the following steps:

1. Erect a vertical line from the plate-voltage axis (x-axis) at 0.6 E_p (figure 22), which intersects the $E_g = 0$ curve. This point of intersection (P), interpolated to the plate current axis (y-axis), may be taken as i_{max}. It is assumed for simplification that i_{max} occurs at the point of the zero-bias curve corresponding to 0.6 E_p.
2. The power output obtainable from the two tubes is:

$$\text{power output } (P_o) = \frac{i_{max} \times E_p}{5}$$

where,
P_o is expressed in watts,
i_{max} in amperes,
E_p is the applied plate voltage.

3. Draw a preliminary load line through point P to the E_p point located on the x-axis (the zero plate-current line). This load line represents ¼ of the actual plate-to-plate load of the class-A tubes. Therefore:

$$R_L \text{ (plate-to-plate)} = 4 \times \frac{E_p - 0.6\, E_p}{i_{max}} = \frac{1.6\, E_p}{i_{max}}$$

where,
R_L is expressed in ohms,
E_p is expressed in volts,
i_{max} is expressed in amperes.

Figure 22 illustrates the above steps applied to a push-pull class-A amplifier using two 2A3 tubes.

4. The average plate current is 0.636 i_{max}, and multiplied by plate voltage E_p, will give the average watts input to the plates of the two tubes. The power output should be subtracted from this value to obtain the total operating plate dissipation of the two tubes. If the plate dissipation is excessive, a slightly higher value of R_L should be chosen to limit the plate dissipation.
5. The correct value of operating bias, and the static plate current for the push-pull tubes may be determined from the E_g versus I_p curves, which are a derivation of the E_p versus I_p curves for various values of E_g.
6. The E_g versus I_p curve may be constructed in this manner: Values of grid bias are read from the intersection of each grid-bias curve with the load line. These points are transferred to the E_g versus I_p graph to produce a curved line, *A-B*. If the grid bias curves of the E_p versus I_p graph were straight lines, the lines of the E_g versus I_p graph would also be straight. This is usually not the case. A tangent to this curve is therefore drawn, starting at point A', and intersecting the grid-voltage abscissa (x-axis). This intersection (C) is the operating-bias point for fixed-bias operation.
7. This operating-bias point may now be plotted on the original E_g versus I_p family of curves (C'), and the zero-signal current produced by this bias is determined. This operating bias point (C'), does not fall on the operating load line, as in the case of a single-ended amplifier.
8. Under conditions of maximum power output, the exciting signal voltage swings from zero-bias voltage to zero-bias voltage for each of the tubes on each half of the signal cycle. Second-harmonic distortion is largely cancelled out.

6-13 Class-B Audio-Frequency Power Amplifiers

The *class-B audio-frequency power amplifier* (figure 23) operates at a higher plate-circuit efficiency than any of the previously described types of audio power amplifiers. Full-signal plate-circuit efficiencies of 60 to

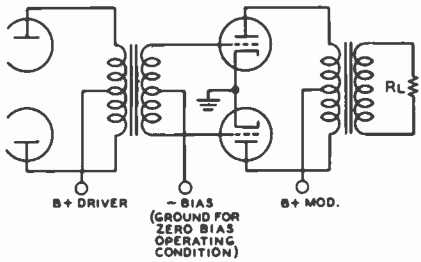


Figure 23

CLASS-B AUDIO-FREQUENCY POWER AMPLIFIER

70 percent are readily obtainable with the tube types presently available for this mode of operation. Since the plate-circuit efficiency is higher, smaller tubes of lower plate dissipation may be used in a class-B power amplifier of a given power output than can be used in any other conventional type of audio amplifier. An additional factor in favor of the class-B audio amplifier is the fact that the power input to the stage is relatively low under no-signal conditions. It is for these reasons that this type of amplifier has largely superseded other types for the generation of audio-frequency levels from perhaps 100 watts on up to levels of approximately 150,000 watts as required for large shortwave broadcast stations.

Disadvantages of Class-B Amplifier Operation There are attendant disadvantageous features to the operation of a power amplifier of this type; but all these disadvantages can be overcome by proper design of the circuits associated with the power-amplifier stage. These disadvantages are: (1) The class-B audio amplifier requires driving power in its grid circuit; this requirement can be overcome by the use of an oversize power stage preceding the class-B stage with a step-down transformer between the driver stage and the class-B grids. Degenerative feedback is sometimes employed to reduce the plate impedance of the driver stage and thus to improve the voltage regulation under the varying load presented by the class-B grids. (2) The class-B stage requires a constant value of average grid bias to be supplied in spite of the fact that the grid current of the stage is zero over most of the cycle but rises to value as high as one-third of the peak plate current at the peak of the exciting voltage cycle. Special regulated bias supplies have been used for this application, or B batteries can be used. However, a number of tubes especially designed for class-B audio amplifiers have been developed which require zero average grid bias for their operation. The 811A, 805, 3-400Z, and 3-1000Z are examples of this type of tube. All these so-called *zero-bias* tubes have rated operating conditions up to moderate plate voltages wherein they can be operated without grid bias. As the plate voltage is increased to the maximum ratings, however, a small amount of grid bias, such as could be obtained from a regulated bias supply, is required. (3), A class-B audio-frequency power amplifier or modulator requires a source of plate-supply voltage having reasonably good regulation. This requirement led to the development of the *swinging choke.* The swinging choke is essentially a conventional filter choke in which the core air gap has been reduced. This reduction in the air gap allows the choke to have a much greater value of inductance with low-current values such as are encountered with no signal or small signal being applied to the class-B stage.

With a higher value of current such as would be taken by a class-B stage with full signal applied, the inductance of the choke drops to a much lower value. With a swinging choke of this type, having adequate current rating, as the input inductor in the filter system for a rectifier power supply, the regulation will be improved to a point which is normally adequate for a power supply for a class-B amplifier or modulator stage.

Calculation of Operating Conditions of Class-B Power Amplifiers The following procedure can be used for the calculation of the operating conditions of class-B power amplifiers when they are to operate into a resistive load such as presented by a class-C power amplifier. This procedure will be found quite satisfactory for the application of vacuum tubes as class-B modulators when it is desired to operate the tubes under conditions which are not specified in the tube operating characteristics published by the tube manufacturer. The same procedure can be used with equal effectiveness for the calculation of the operating conditions of beam tetrodes as class-AB_2 amplifiers or modulators when the resting plate current of the tubes (no-signal condition) is less than 25 or 30 percent of the maximum-signal plate current.

1. With the average plate characteristics of the tube as published by the manufacturer before you, select a point on the $E_p = E_g$ (diode bend) line at about twice the plate current you expect the tubes to draw under modulation peaks. If beam tetrode tubes are concerned, select a point at about the same amount of plate current mentioned above, just to the right of the region where the I_b line takes a sharp curve downward. This will be the first trial point, and the plate voltage at the point chosen should be not more than about 20 percent of the d-c voltage applied to the tubes if good plate-circuit efficiency is desired.
2. Note down the value of $i_{p\,max}$ and $e_{p\,min}$ at this point.
3. Subtract the value of $e_{p\,min}$ from the d-c plate voltage on the tubes.
4. Substitute the values obtained in the following equations:

$$P_o \text{ (2 tubes)} = \frac{i_{p\,max}(E_{bb} - e_{p\,min})}{2}$$

$$R_L \text{ (2 tubes)} = 4\,\frac{(E_{bb} - e_{p\,min})}{i_{p\,max}}$$

$$\text{Full signal efficiency } (N_p) = 78.5\left(1 - \frac{(e_{p\,min})}{E_{bb}}\right)$$

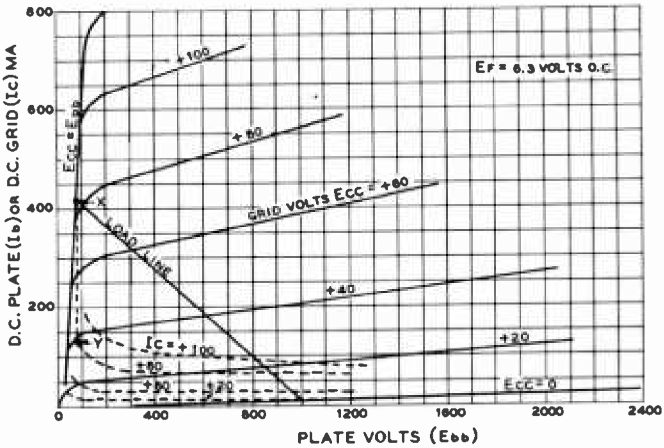
Effects of Speech Clipping All the above equations are true for sine-wave operating condition of the tubes concerned. However, if a speech clipper is being used in the speech amplifier, or if it is desired to calculate the operating conditions on the basis of the fact that the ratio of peak power to average power in a speech wave is approximately 4 to 1 as contrasted to the ratio of 2 to 1 in a sine wave — in other words, when nonsinusoidal waves such as plain speech or speech that has passed through a clipper are concerned, we are no longer concerned with average power output of the modulator as far as its capability of modulating a class-C amplifier is concerned; we are concerned with its *peak power output* capability.

Under these conditions we call on other, more general relationships. The first of these is: it requires a *peak* power output *equal* to the class-C stage input to modulate that input fully.

The second relationship is: the average power output required of the modulator is equal to the shape factor of the modulating wave multiplied by the input to the class-C stage. The shape factor of unclipped speech is approximately 0.25. The shape factor of a sine wave is 0.5. The shape factor of a speech wave that has been passed through a clipper-filter arrangement is somewhere between 0.25 and 0.9 depending on the amount of clipping that has taken place. With 15 or 20 db of clipping the shape factor may be as high as the figure of 0.9 mentioned above. This means that the audio power output of the modulator will be 90% of the input to the class-C stage. Thus with a kilowatt input we would be putting 900 watts of audio into the class-C stage for 100 percent modulation as contrasted to perhaps 250 watts for unclipped speech modulation of 100 percent.

Sample Calculation for 811A Tubes Figure 24 shows a set of plate characteristics for a type 811A tube with a load line for class-B operation. Figure 25 lists a sample calculation for determining the proper operating conditions for obtaining approximately 185 watts output from a pair of the tubes with 1000 volts d-c plate potential. Also shown in figure 25 is the method of determining the proper ratio for the modulation transformer to couple between the 811's or 811A's and the anticipated final amplifier which is to operate at 2000 plate volts and 175 ma plate current.

Modulation Transformer Calculation The method illustrated in figure 25 can be used in general for the determination of the proper transformer ratio to couple between the modula-



AVERAGE PLATE CHARACTERISTICS TYPE 811 AND 811-A

Figure 24

Typical class-B a-f amplifier load line. The load line has been drawn on the average characteristics of a type 811 tube.

tor tube and the amplifier to be modulated. The procedure can be stated as follows: (1) Determine the proper plate-to-plate load impedance for the modulator tubes either by the use of the type of calculation shown in figure 25, or by reference to the published characteristics on the tubes to be used. (2) Determine the load impedance which will be presented by the class-C amplifier stage to be modulated by dividing the operating plate voltage on that stage by the operating value of plate current in *amperes*. (3) Divide the class-C load impedance determined in (2) above by the plate-to-plate load impedance for the modulator tubes determined in (1) above. The ratio determined in this way is the secondary-to-primary *impedance* ratio. (4) Take the square root of this ratio to determine the secondary-to-primary *turns ratio*. If the turns ratio is greater than unity, the use of a step-up transformer is required. If the turns ratio as determined in this way is less than unity, a step-down transformer is called for.

If the procedure shown in figure 25 has been used to calculate the operating conditions for the modulator tubes, the transformer ratio calculation can be checked in the following manner: Divide the plate voltage on the modulated amplifier by the total voltage swing on the modulator tubes ($2 \times [E_{bb} - e_{min}]$). This ratio should be quite close numerically to the transformer turns ratio as previously determined. The reason for this condition is that the ratio between the total primary voltage and the d-c plate-supply voltage on the modulated stage is equal to the turns ratio of the transformer, since a peak secondary voltage equal to the plate voltage on the modulated stage is required to modulate this stage 100 percent.

SAMPLE CALCULATION

CONDITION: 2 TYPE 811 TUBES, $E_{bb} = 1000$
INPUT TO FINAL STAGE, 350 W.
PEAK POWER OUTPUT NEEDED = 350 + 6% = 370 W.
FINAL AMPLIFIER E_{bb} = 2000 V.
FINAL AMPLIFIER I_b = .175 A.
FINAL AMPLIFIER $Z_L = \frac{2000}{.175} = 11400\ \Omega$

EXAMPLE: CHOSE POINT ON 811 CHARACTERISTICS JUST TO RIGHT OF $E_{bb} = E_{cc}$. (POINT X, FIG. 24)
I_P MAX. = .410 A. E_P MIN. = +100
I_G MAX. = .100 A. E_G MAX. = +80

PEAK P_O = .410 X (1000−100) = .410 X 900 = 369 W.

$R_L = 4 \times \frac{900}{.410} = 8800\ \Omega$

$N_P = 78.5\ (1 - \frac{100}{1000}) = 78.5\ (.9) = 70.5\ \%$

W_O (AVERAGE WITH SINE WAVE) $= \frac{P_{O(PEAK)}}{2} = 184.5$ W

$W_{IN} = \frac{184.5}{70.5} = 260$ W.

I_b (MAXIMUM WITH SINE WAVE) = 260 MA

W_G PEAK = .100 X 80 = 8 W.

DRIVING POWER $= \frac{W_G\ PK}{2} = 4$ W.

TRANSFORMER:

$\frac{Z_S}{Z_P} = \frac{11400}{8800} = 1.29$

TURNS RATIO $= \sqrt{\frac{Z_S}{Z_P}} = \sqrt{1.29} = 1.14$ STEP UP

Figure 25

Typical calculation of operating conditions for a class-B a-f power amplifier using a pair of type 811 or 811A tubes. Plate characteristics and load line are shown in figure 24.

Use of Clipper Speech Amplifier with Tetrode Modulator Tubes

When a clipper speech amplifier is used in conjunction with a class-B modulator stage, the plate current on that stage will rise to a higher value with modulation (due to the greater average power output and input) but the plate dissipation on the tubes will ordinarily be less than with sine-wave modulation. However, when tetrode tubes are used as modulators, the screen dissipation will be much greater than with sine-wave modulation. Care must be taken to ensure that the screen dissipation rating on the modulator tubes is not exceeded under full modulation conditions with a clipper speech amplifier. The screen dissipation is equal to screen voltage times screen current.

Practical Aspects of Class-B Modulators

As stated previously, a class-B audio amplifier requires the driving stage to supply well-regulated audio power to the grid circuit of the class-B stage. Since the performance of a class-B modulator may easily be impaired by an improperly designed driver stage, it is well to study the problems incurred in the design of the driver stage.

The grid circuit of a class-B modulator may be compared to a variable resistance which decreases in value as the exciting grid voltage is increased. This variable resistance appears across the secondary terminals of the driver transformer so that the driver stage is called on to deliver power to a varying load. For best operation of the class-B stage, the grid excitation voltage should not drop as the power taken by the grid circuit increases. These opposing conditions call for a high order of voltage regulation in the driver-stage plate circuit. In order to enhance the voltage regulation of this circuit, the driver tubes must have low plate resistance, the driver transformer must have as large a step-down ratio as possible, and the d-c resistance of both primary and secondary windings of the driver transformer should be low.

The driver transformer should reflect into the plate circuit of the driver tubes a load of such value that the required driving power is just developed with full excitation applied to the driver grid circuit. If this is done, the driver transformer will have as high a step-down ratio as is consistent with the maximum drive requirements of the class-B stage. If the step-down ratio of the driver transformer is too large, the driver plate load will be so high that the power required to drive the class-B stage to full output cannot be developed. If the step-down ratio is too small the regulation of the driver stage will be impaired.

Driver-Stage Calculations

The parameters for the driver stage may be calculated from the plate characteristic curve, a sample of which is shown in figure 24. The required positive grid voltage ($e_{g\ max}$) for the 811A tubes used in the sample calculation is found at point *X*, the intersection of the load line and the peak plate current as found on the *y*-axis. This is +80 volts. If a vertical line is dropped from point *X* to intersect the dotted grid-current curves, it will be found that the grid current for a single 811A at this value of grid voltage is 100 milliamperes (point *Y*). The peak grid-driving power is therefore $80 \times 0.100 = 8$ watts. The approximate *average* driving power is 4 watts. This is an approximate figure because the grid impedance is not constant over the entire audio cycle.

A pair of 2A3 tubes will be used as drivers, operating class-A, with the maximum excitation to the drivers occurring just below the point of grid-current flow in the 2A3 tubes. The driver plate voltage is 300 volts, and the grid bias is −62 volts. The peak power (P_p) developed in the primary winding of the driver transformer is:

$$(P_p) = 2R_L \left(\frac{\mu E_g}{R_p + R_L}\right)^2$$

where,

μ is the amplification factor of the driver tubes (4.2 for 2A3),

E_g is the peak grid swing of the driver stage (62 volts),

R_p is the plate resistance of one driver tube (800 ohms),

R_L is ½ the plate-to-plate load of the driver stage,

P_p (peak power in watts) is 8 watts.

Solving the above equation for R_L, we obtain a value of 14,500 ohms load, plate to plate for the 2A3 driver tubes.

The peak primary voltage (e_{pri}) is then found from the formula:

$$e_{pri} = 2R_L \times \frac{\mu E_g}{R_p + R_L} = 493 \text{ volts}$$

and the turns ratio of the driver transformer (primary to ½ secondary) is:

$$\frac{e_{pri}}{e_{g\,(max)}} = \frac{493}{80} = 6.15:1$$

Plate Circuit Impedance Matching One of the most common causes of distortion in a class-B modulator is incorrect load impedance in the plate circuit. The purpose of the class-B modulation transformer is to take the power developed by the modulator (which has a certain operating impedance) and transform it to the operating impedance imposed by the modulated amplifier stage.

If the transformer in question has the same number of turns on the primary winding as it has on the secondary winding, the turns ratio is 1:1, and the impedance ratio is also 1:1. If a 10,000-ohm resistor is placed across the secondary terminals of the transformer, *a reflected load* of 10,000 ohms would appear across the primary terminals. If the resistor is changed to one of 2376 ohms, the reflected primary impedance would also be 2376 ohms.

If the transformer has twice as many turns on the secondary as on the primary, the turns ratio is 2:1. The impedance ratio is the square of the turns ratio, or 4:1. If a 10,000-ohm resistor is now placed across the secondary winding, a reflected load of 2500 ohms will appear across the primary winding.

Effects of Plate Circuit Mismatch It can be seen from the above paragraphs that the class-B modulator plate load is entirely dependent on the load placed on the secondary terminals of the class-B modulation transformer. If the secondary load is incorrect, certain changes will take place in the operation of the class-B modulator stage.

When the modulator load impedance is too low, the efficiency of the class-B stage is reduced and the plate dissipation of the tubes is increased. Peak plate current of the modulator stage is increased, and saturation of the modulation transformer core may result. "Talk-back" of the modulation transformer may result if the plate load impedance of the modulator stage is too low.

When the modulator load impedance is too high, the maximum power capability of the stage is reduced. An attempt to increase the output by increasing grid excitation to the stage will result in peak clipping of the audio wave. In addition, high peak voltages may be built up in the plate circuit that may damage the modulation transformer.

6-14 Cathode-Follower Power Amplifiers

The *cathode follower* is essentially a power output stage in which the exciting signal is applied between grid and ground. The plate is maintained at ground potential with respect to input and output signals, and the output signal is taken between cathode and ground.

Types of Cathode-Follower Amplifiers Figure 26 illustrates four types of cathode-follower power amplifiers in common usage and figure 27 shows the output impedance (R_o), and stage gain (A) of both triode and pentode (or tetrode) cathode-follower stages. It will be seen by inspection of the equations that the stage voltage gain is always less than unity, and that the output impedance of the stage is much less than the same stage operated as a conventional cathode-return amplifier. The output impedance for conventional tubes will be somewhere between 100 and 1000 ohms, depending primarily on the transconductance of the tube.

This reduction in gain and output impedance for the cathode follower comes about since the stage operates as though it has 100 percent degenerative feedback applied between its output and input circuit. Even though the voltage gain of the stage is reduced to a value less than unity by the action of the degenerative feedback, the power gain of the stage (if it is operating class-A) is not reduced. Although more voltage is required to excite a cathode-follower amplifier than appears across the load circuit (since the cathode "follows" along with the grid) the relative grid-to-cathode voltage is essentially the same as in a conventional amplifier.

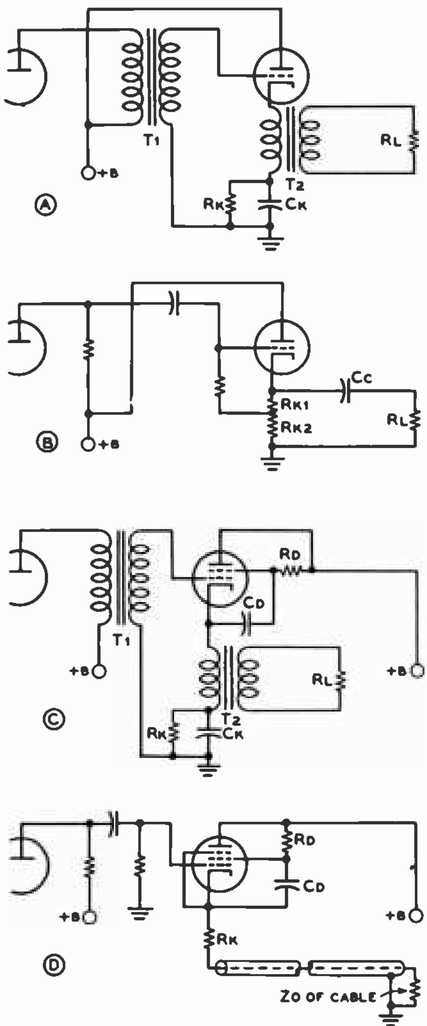


Figure 26

CATHODE-FOLLOWER OUTPUT CIRCUITS FOR AUDIO OR VIDEO AMPLIFIERS

Use of Cathode-Follower Amplifiers Although the cathode follower gives no voltage gain, it is an effective power amplifier where it is desired to feed a low-impedance load, or where it is desired to feed a load of varying impedance with a signal having good regulation. This latter capability makes the cathode follower particularly effective as a driver for the grids of a class-B modulator stage.

TRIODE:

$$\mu_{CF} = \frac{\mu}{\mu+1} \qquad A = \frac{\mu R_L}{R_L(\mu+1)+R_P}$$

$$R_{O(CATHODE)} = \frac{R_P}{\mu+1} \qquad R_L = \frac{(R_{K1}+R_{K2})R_L'}{R_{K1}+R_{K2}+R_L'}$$

PENTODE:

$$R_{O(CATHODE)} = \frac{1}{G_M} \qquad R_{EQ} = \frac{R_L}{1+R_L G_M}$$

$$A = G_M R_{EQ}$$

Figure 27

Equivalent factors for pentode (or tetrode) cathode-follower power amplifiers

The circuit of figure 26A is the type of amplifier, either single-ended or push-pull, which may be used as a driver for a class-B modulator or which may be used for other applications such as feeding a speaker where unusually good damping of the speaker is desired. If the d-c resistance of the primary of the transformer (T_2) is approximately the correct value for the cathode bias resistor for the amplifier tube, the components R_k and C_k need not be used. Figure 26B shows an arrangement which may be used to feed directly a value of load impedance which is equal to or higher than the cathode impedance of the amplifier tube. The value of C_c must be quite high, somewhat higher than would be used in a conventional circuit, if the frequency response of the circuit when operating into a low-impedance load is to be preserved.

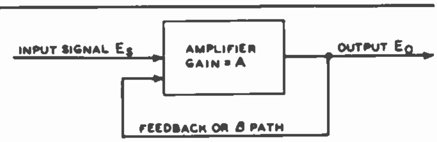
Figures 26C and 26D show cathode-follower circuits for use with tetrode or pentode tubes. Figure 26C is a circuit similar to that shown in 26A and essentially the same comments apply in regard to components R_k and C_k and the primary resistance of transformer T_2. Notice also that the screen of the tube is maintained at the same signal potential as the cathode by means of coupling capacitor C_d. This capacitance should be large enough so that at the lowest frequency it is desired to pass through the stage, its reactance will be low with respect to the dynamic screen-to-cathode resistance in parallel with R_d. T_2 in this stage as well as in the circuit of figure 26A should have the proper turns (or impedance) ratio to give the desired step-down or step-up from the cathode circuit to the load. Figure 26D is an arrangement frequently used in video systems for feeding a coaxial cable of relatively low impedance from a vacuum-tube amplifier. A pentode or tetrode tube with a cathode impedance as a cathode follower ($1/g_m$) of approximately the same impedance as the cable should be chosen. The 12BY7A and 6CL6 have cathode impedances of the same order as the surge impedances of certain types of low-capacitance coaxial cable. An arrangement such as 26D is also usable for feeding coaxial cable with audio or r-f energy where it is desired to transmit the output signal over moderate distances. The resistor R_k is added to the circuit as shown if the cathode impedance of the tube used is lower than the characteristic impedance of the cable. If the output impedance of the stage is higher than the cable impedance, a resistance of appropriate value is sometimes placed in parallel with the input end of the cable. The values of C_d and R_d should be chosen with the same considerations in mind as mentioned in the discussion of the circuit of figure 26C.

The Cathode Follower in R-F Stages The cathode follower may conveniently be used as a method of coupling r-f or i-f energy between two units separated a considerable distance. In such an application a coaxial cable should be used to carry the r-f or i-f energy. One such application would be for carrying the output of a vfo to a transmitter located a considerable distance from the operating position. Another application would be where it is desired to feed a single-sideband demodulator, an f-m adaptor, or another accessory with an intermediate-frequency signal from a communications receiver. A tube such as a 6CB6 connected in a manner such as is shown in figure 26D would be adequate for the i-f amplifier coupler, while a 6AQ5 or a 6CL6 could be used in the output stage of a vfo as a cathode follower to feed the coaxial line which carries the vfo signal from the control unit to the transmitter proper.

6-15 Feedback Amplifiers

It is possible to modify the characteristics of an amplifier by feeding back a portion of the output to the input. All components, circuits, and tubes included between the point where the feedback is taken off and the point where the feedback energy is inserted are said to be included within the feedback loop. An amplifier containing a feedback loop is said to be a *feedback amplifier*. One stage or any number of stages may be included within the feedback loop. However, the difficulty of obtaining proper operation of a feedback amplifier increases with the bandwidth of the amplifier, and with the number of stages and circuit elements included within the feedback loop.

Gain and Phase Shift in Feedback Amplifiers The gain and phase shift of any amplifier are functions of frequency. For any amplifier containing a feedback loop to be completely stable, the gain of such an amplifier, as measured from the input back to the point where the feedback circuit connects to the input, must be less than unity at the frequency where the feedback voltage is in phase with the input voltage of the amplifier. If the gain is equal to or more than unity at the frequency where the feedback voltage is in phase with the input, the amplifier will oscillate. This fact imposes a limitation on the amount of feedback which may be employed in an amplifier which is to remain stable. If the reader is



$$\text{VOLTAGE AMPLIFICATION WITH FEEDBACK} = \frac{A}{1-A\beta}$$

A = GAIN IN ABSENCE OF FEEDBACK

β = FRACTION OF OUTPUT VOLTAGE FED BACK

β IS NEGATIVE FOR NEGATIVE FEEDBACK

$$\text{FEEDBACK IN DECIBELS} = 20 \log (1 - A\beta)$$

$$= 20 \log \frac{\text{MID-FREQ. GAIN WITHOUT FEEDBACK}}{\text{MID-FREQ. GAIN WITH FEEDBACK}}$$

$$\text{DISTORTION WITH FEEDBACK} = \frac{\text{DISTORTION WITHOUT FEEDBACK}}{(1 - A\beta)}$$

$$R_O = \frac{R_N}{1 - A\beta\left(1 + \frac{R_N}{R_L}\right)}$$

WHERE:

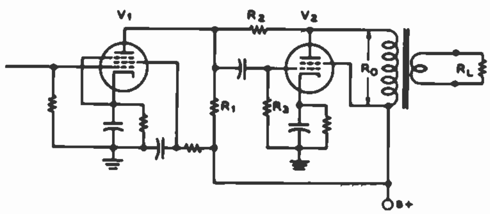
R_O = OUTPUT IMPEDANCE OF AMPLIFIER WITH FEEDBACK

R_N = OUTPUT IMPEDANCE OF AMPLIFIER WITHOUT FEEDBACK

R_L = LOAD IMPEDANCE INTO WHICH AMPLIFIER OPERATES

Figure 28

FEEDBACK AMPLIFIER RELATIONSHIPS



$$\text{DB FEEDBACK} = 20 \log \left[\frac{R_2 + R_A (G_{MV2} R_O)}{R_2}\right]$$

$$= 20 \log \left[\frac{R_2 + R_A (\text{VOLTAGE GAIN OF } V_2)}{R_2}\right]$$

$$\text{GAIN OF BOTH STAGES} = \left[G_{MV1}\left(\frac{R_B \times R_A}{R_B + R_A}\right)\right] \times (G_{MV2} R_O)$$

WHERE:

$$R_A = \frac{R_1 \times R_3}{R_1 + R_3}$$

$$R_B = \frac{R_2}{G_{MV2} R_O}$$

R_O = REFLECTED LOAD IMPEDANCE ON V_2

R_2 = FEEDBACK RESISTOR (USUALLY ABOUT 500 K)

$$\text{OUTPUT IMPEDANCE} = \frac{R_N R_2}{\left[R_2 + R_A (G_{MV2} R_O)\right] \times \left(1 + \frac{R_N}{R_O}\right)}$$

R_N = PLATE IMPEDANCE OF V_2

Figure 29

SHUNT FEEDBACK CIRCUIT FOR PENTODES OR TETRODES

This circuit requires only the addition of one resistor (R_2) to the normal circuit for such an application. The plate impedance and distortion introduced by the output stage are materially reduced.

desirous of designing amplifiers in which a large amount of feedback is to be employed he is referred to a book on the subject by H. W. Bode.*

Types of Feedback Feedback may be either negative or positive, and the feedback voltage may be proportional either to output voltage or output current. The most commonly used type of feedback with a-f or video amplifiers is *negative feedback* proportional to output voltage. Figure 28 gives the general operating conditions for feedback amplifiers. Note that the reduction in distortion is proportional to the reduction in gain of the amplifier, and also that the reduction in the output impedance of the amplifier is somewhat greater than the reduction in the gain by an amount which is a function of the ratio of the output impedance of the amplifier without feedback to the load impedance. The reduction in noise and hum in those stages included within the feedback loop is proportional to the reduction in gain. However, due to the reduction in gain of the output section of the amplifier somewhat increased gain is required of the stages preceding the stages included within the feedback loop. Therefore the noise and hum output of the entire amplifier may or may not be reduced dependent on the relative contributions of the first part and the latter part of the amplifier to hum and noise. If most of the noise and hum is coming from the stages included within the feedback loop the undesired signals will be reduced in the output from the complete amplifier. It is most frequently true in conventional amplifiers that the hum and distortion come from the latter stages, hence these will be reduced by feedback, but thermal agitation and microphonic noise come from the first stage and will not be reduced but may be increased by feedback unless the feedback loop includes the first stage of the amplifier.

Figure 29 illustrates a very simple and effective application of negative-voltage feedback to an output pentode or tetrode amplifier stage. The reduction in hum and distortion may amount to 15 to 20 db. The reduction in the effective plate impedance of the stage will be by a factor of 20 to 100 depending on the operating conditions. The circuit is commonly used in commercial equipment with tubes such as the 6AU6 for V_1 and the 6AQ5 for V_2.

---

* H. W. Bode, *Network Analysis and Feedback Amplifier Design*. D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc. Princeton, New Jersey.

Radio-Frequency Vacuum-Tube Amplifiers

TUNED R-F VACUUM-TUBE AMPLIFIERS

Tuned r-f voltage amplifiers are used in receivers for the amplification of the incoming r-f signal and for the amplification of intermediate-frequency signals after the incoming frequency has been converted to the intermediate frequency by the mixer stage. Signal-frequency stages are normally called *tuned r-f amplifiers* and intermediate-frequency stages are called *i-f amplifiers*. Both tuned r-f and i-f amplifiers are operated class A and normally operate at signal levels from a fraction of a microvolt to amplitudes as high as 10 to 50 volts at the plate of the last i-f stage in a receiver.

7-1 Grid Circuit Considerations

Since the full amplification of a receiver follows the first tuned circuit, the operating conditions existing in that circuit and in its coupling to the antenna on one side and to the grid of the first amplifier stage on the other are of greater importance in determining the signal-to-noise ratio of the receiver on weak signals.

First Tuned Circuit It is obvious that the highest ratio of signal to noise be impressed on the grid of the first r-f amplifier tube. Attaining the optimum ratio is a complex problem since noise will be generated in the antenna due to its equivalent radiation resistance (this noise is in addition to any noise of atmospheric origin) and in the first tuned circuit due to its equivalent coupled resistance at resonance. The noise voltage generated due to antenna radiation resistance and to equivalent tuned circuit resistance is similar to that generated in a resistor due to thermal agitation and is expressed by the following equation:

$$E_n^2 = 4kTR\Delta f$$

where,

E_n = rms value of noise voltage over the interval Δf,

k = Boltzman's constant (1.380×10^{-23} joule per °K),

T = Absolute temperature °K,

R = Resistive component of impedance across which thermal noise is developed,

Δf = Frequency band across which voltage is measured.

In the above equation Δf is essentially the frequency band passed by the intermediate-frequency amplifier of the receiver under consideration. This equation can be greatly simplified for the conditions normally encountered in communications work. If we assume the following conditions: $T = 300°$ K or 27° C or 80.5° F, room temperature; $\Delta f = 8000$ Hertz (the average passband of a communications receiver or speech amplifier), the equation reduces to: $E_n = 0.0115 \sqrt{R}$ microvolts. Accordingly, the thermal-agitation voltage appearing in the center of a half-wave antenna (assuming effective temperature to be 300° K) having a radiation resistance of 73 ohms is approximately 0.096 microvolts. Also, the thermal-agitation voltage appearing across a 500,-000-ohm grid resistor in the first stage of a speech amplifier is approximately 8 microvolts under the conditions cited above. Further, the voltage due to thermal agitation being impressed on the grid of the first r-f stage in a receiver by a first tuned circuit whose resonant resistance is 50,000 ohms is approximately 2.5 microvolts. Suffice to say, however, that the value of thermal-agitation voltage appearing across the first tuned circuit when the antenna is properly coupled to this circuit will be very much less than this value.

It is common practice to match the impedance of the antenna transmission line to the input impedance of the grid of the first r-f amplifier stage in a receiver. This is the condition of antenna coupling which gives maximum gain in the receiver. However, when vhf tubes such as nuvistors and miniatures are used at frequencies somewhat less than their maximum capabilities, a significant improvement in *signal-to-noise* ratio can be attained by *increasing* the coupling between the antenna and first tuned circuit to a value greater than that which gives greatest signal amplitude out of the receiver. In other words, in the 10-, 6-, and 2-meter bands it is possible to attain somewhat improved signal-to-noise ratio by increasing antenna coupling to the point where the gain of the receiver is slightly reduced.

It is always possible, in addition, to obtain improved signal-to-noise ratio in a vhf receiver through the use of tubes which have improved input impedance characteristics at the frequency in question over conventional types.

Noise Factor The limiting condition for sensitivity in any receiver is the thermal noise generated in the antenna and in the first tuned circuit. However, with proper coupling between the antenna and the grid of the tube, through the first tuned circuit, the noise contribution of the first tuned circuit can be made quite small. Unfortunately, though, the major noise contribution in a properly designed receiver is that of the first tube. The noise contribution due to electron flow and due to losses in the tube can be lumped into an equivalent value of resistance which, if placed in the grid circuit of a perfect tube having the same gain but no noise would give the same noise voltage output in the plate load. The equivalent noise resistance of tubes such as the 6BA6, 6DC6, etc., runs from 500 to 1000 ohms. Very high g_m tubes such as the 6BZ6 and 6EH7 have equivalent noise resistances as low as 300 to 700 ohms. The lower the value of equivalent noise resistance, the lower will be the noise output under a fixed set of conditions.

The equivalent noise resistance of a tube must not be confused with the actual input loading resistance of a tube. For highest signal-to-noise ratio in an amplifier the input loading resistance should be as high as possible so that the amount of voltage that can be developed from grid to ground by the antenna energy will be as high as possible. The equivalent noise resistance should be as low as possible so that the noise generated by this resistance will be lower than that attributable to the antenna and first tuned circuit, and the losses in the first tuned circuit should be as low as possible.

The absolute sensitivity of receivers has been designated in recent years in government and commercial work by an arbitrary dimensionless number known as "noise factor" or N. The noise factor is the ratio of noise output of a "perfect" receiver having a given amount of gain with a dummy antenna matched to its input, to the noise output of the receiver having the same amount of gain with an injected signal, and the dummy antenna matched to its input. Although a perfect receiver is not a physically realizable thing, the noise factor of a receiver under measurement can be determined by calculation from the amount of additional noise (from a temperature-limited diode or other calibrated noise generator) required to increase the noise-power output of a receiver by a predetermined amount.

Tube Input Loading As has been mentioned in a previous paragraph, greatest gain in a receiver is obtained when the antenna is matched, through the r-f coupling transformer, to the input resistance of the r-f tube. However, the higher the ratio of tube input resistance to equivalent noise resistance of the tube the higher will be the signal-to-noise ratio of the stage—and of course, the better will be the noise factor of the over-all receiver. The input resistance of a tube is very high at frequencies in the broadcast band and gradually decreases as the frequency increases. Tube input resistance of conventional tube types begins to become an important factor at frequencies of about 25 MHz and above. At frequencies above about 100 MHz the use of conventional tube types becomes impractical since the input resistance of the tube has become so much lower than the equivalent noise resistance that it is impossible to attain reasonable signal-to-noise ratio on any but very strong signals. Hence, special vhf tube types such as the 6BC5, 6CW4, and 6EH7 must be used.

The lowering of the effective input resistance of a vacuum tube at higher frequencies is brought about by a number of factors. The first, and most obvious, is the fact that the dielectric loss in the internal insulators, and in the base and press of the tube increases with frequency. The second factor is due to the fact that a finite time is required for an electron to move from the space charge in the vicinity of the cathode, pass between the grid wires, and travel on to the plate. The fact that the electrostatic effect of the grid on the moving electron acts over an appreciable portion of a cycle at these high frequencies causes a current flow in the grid circuit which appears to the input circuit feeding the grid as a resistance. The decrease in input resistance of a tube due to electron transit time varies as the square of the frequency. The undesirable effect of transit time can be reduced in certain cases by the use of higher plate voltages. Transit time varies inversely as the square root of the applied plate voltage.

Cathode lead inductance is an additional cause of reduced input resistance at high frequencies. This effect has been reduced in certain tubes such as the 6EA5 and the 6BC5 by providing two cathode leads on the tube base. One cathode lead should be connected to the input circuit of the tube and the other lead should be connected to the bypass capacitor for the plate return of the tube.

The reader is referred to the *Radiation Laboratory Series*, Volume 23: *Microwave Receivers* (McGraw-Hill, publishers) for additional information on noise factor and input loading of vacuum tubes.

7-2 Plate-Circuit Considerations

Noise is generated in a vacuum tube by the fact that the current flow within the tube is not a smooth flow but rather is made up of the continuous arrival of particles (electrons) at a very high rate. This *shot effect* is a source of noise in the tube, but its effect is referred back to the grid circuit of the tube since it is included in the *equivalent noise resistance* discussed in the preceding paragraphs.

Plate-Circuit Coupling For the purpose of this section, it will be considered that the function of the plate load circuit of a tuned vacuum-tube amplifier is to deliver energy to the next stage with the greatest efficiency over the required band of frequencies. Figure 1 shows three methods of interstage coupling for tuned r-f voltage amplifiers. In figure 1A omega (ω) is 2π times the resonant frequency of the circuit in the plate of the amplifier tube, and L and Q are the inductance and Q of the inductor L. In figure 1B the notation is the same and M is the mutual inductance between the primary coil and the secondary coil. In figure 1C the notation is again the same and k is the coefficient of coupling between the two tuned circuits. As the coefficient of coupling between the circuits is increased the bandwidth becomes greater but the response over the band becomes progressively more double-humped. The response over the band is the flattest when the Q's of primary and secondary are approximately the same and the value of each Q is equal to $1.75/k$.

Variable-μ Tubes in R-F Stages It is common practice to control the gain of a succession of r-f or i-f amplifier stages by varying the average bias on their control grids. However, as the bias is raised above the operating value on a conventional sharp-cutoff tube the tube becomes increasingly nonlinear in operation as cutoff of plate current is approached. The effect of such nonlinearity is to cause cross-modulation between strong signals which appear on the grid of the tube. When a tube operating in such a manner is in one of the first stages of a receiver a number of signals are appearing on its grid simultaneously and cross-modulation between them will take place. The result of this effect is to produce a large number of spurious signals in the output of the receiver—in most cases these signals will carry the modulation of both the carriers which have been cross-modulated to produce the spurious signal.

The undesirable effect of cross-modulation can be eliminated in most cases and greatly reduced in the balance through the use of a variable-μ tube in all stages which have avc voltage or other large negative bias applied to their grids. The variable-μ tube has a characteristic which causes the cutoff of plate current to be gradual with an increase in grid bias, and the reduction in plate current is accompanied by a decrease in the effective amplification factor of the tube. Variable-μ tubes ordinarily have somewhat reduced g_m as compared to a sharp-cutoff tube of the same group. Hence the sharp-cutoff tube will perform best in stages to which avc voltage is not applied.

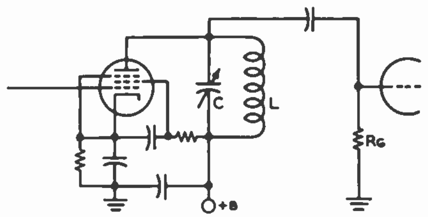
RADIO-FREQUENCY POWER AMPLIFIERS

All modern transmitters in the medium-frequency range and an increasing percentage of those in the vhf and uhf ranges consist of a comparatively low-level source of radio-frequency energy which is multiplied in frequency and successively amplified to the desired power level. Microwave transmitters may be of the self-excited oscillator type, but when it is possible to use r-f amplifiers in uhf transmitters the flexibility of their application is increased. The following portion of this chapter will be devoted, however, to the method of operation and calculation of operating characteristics of r-f power amplifiers for operation in the range of approximately 3.5 to 500 MHz.

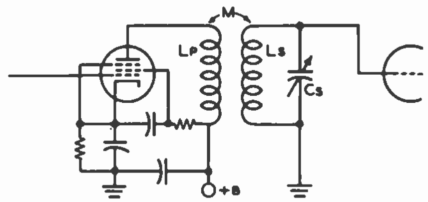
7-3 Class-C R-F Power Amplifiers

The majority of r-f power amplifiers fall in the class-B and -C modes since such stages can be made to give the best plate-circuit efficiency of any present type of vacuum-tube amplifier. Hence, the cost of tubes for such a stage and the cost of the power to supply that stage is least for any given power output. Nevertheless, the class-C amplifier gives less power gain than either a class-A or class-B amplifier under similar conditions since the grid of a class-C stage must be driven highly positive over the portion of the cycle of the exciting wave when the plate voltage on the amplifier is low, and must be at a large negative potential over a large portion of the cycle so that no plate current will flow except when plate voltage is very low. This, in fact, is the fundamental reason why the plate-circuit efficiency of a class-C amplifier stage can be made high—plate current is cut off at all times except when the plate-to-cathode voltage drop across the tube is at its lowest value. Class-C amplifiers almost invariably operate into a tuned tank circuit as a load, and as a result are used as amplifiers of a single frequency or of a comparatively narrow band of frequencies.

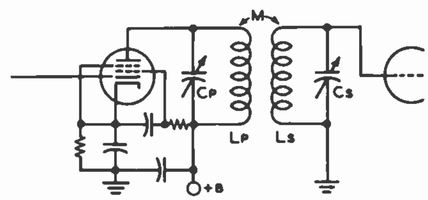
Relationships in Class-C Stage Figure 2 shows the relationships between the various voltages and currents over one cycle of the exciting grid voltage for a class-C amplifier stage. The notation given in figure 2 and in the discussion to follow is the same as given at the first of Chapter



Ⓐ AMPLIFICATION AT RESONANCE (APPROX.) $= G_m \omega L Q$



Ⓑ AMPLIFICATION AT RESONANCE (APPROX.) $= G_m \omega M Q$



Ⓒ AMPLIFICATION AT RESONANCE (APPROX.) $= G_m K \dfrac{\omega\sqrt{L_P L_S}}{K^2 + \frac{1}{Q_P Q_S}}$

WHERE: 1. PRI. AND SEC. RESONANT AT SAME FREQUENCY
2. K IS COEFFICIENT OF COUPLING

IF PRI. AND SEC. Q ARE APPROXIMATELY THE SAME:

$$\frac{\text{TOTAL BANDWIDTH}}{\text{CENTER FREQUENCY}} = 1.2\,K$$

MAXIMUM AMPLITUDE OCCURS AT CRITICAL COUPLING - WHEN $K = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{Q_P Q_S}}$

Figure 1

Gain equations for pentode r-f amplifier stages operating into a tuned load

Six under "Symbols for Vacuum-Tube Parameters."

The various manufacturers of vacuum tubes publish booklets listing in adequate detail alternative class-C operating conditions for the tubes which they manufacture. In addition, operating-condition sheets for any particular type of vacuum tube are available for the asking from the different vacuum-tube manufacturers. It is, nevertheless, often desirable to determine optimum operating conditions for a tube under a particular set of circumstances. To assist in such calculations the following paragraphs are devoted to a method of calculating class-C operating conditions which is moderately simple and yet sufficiently accurate for all practical purposes.

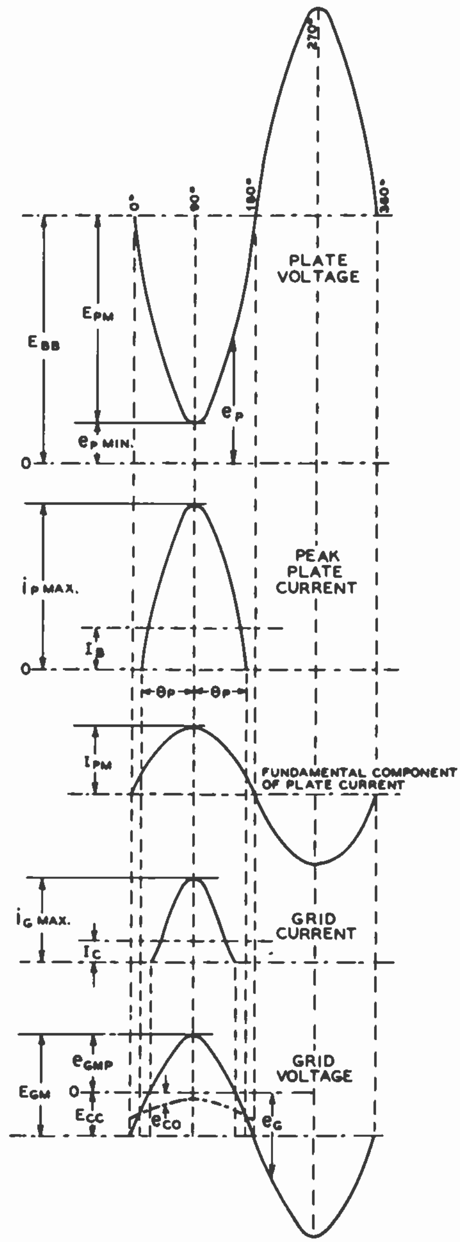


Figure 2

Instantaneous electrode and tank-circuit voltages and currents for a class-C r-f power amplifier

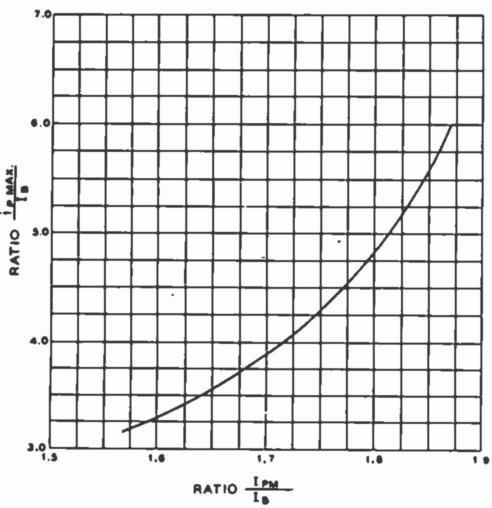


Figure 3

Relationship between the peak value of the fundamental component of the tube plate current, and average plate current; as compared to the ratio of the instantaneous peak value of tube plate current, and average plate current value.

A *Tube Performance Calculator* for class-AB_1, class-B, and class-C service may be obtained at no cost by writing: Application Engineering Dept.; Eimac, a Division of Varian; San Carlos, California.

Calculation of Class-C Amplifier Operating Characterisics Although class-C operating conditions can be determined with the aid of the more conventional grid-voltage/plate-current operating curves, the calculation is considerably simplified if the alternative *constant-current curve* of the tube in question is used. This is true since the operating line of a class-C amplifier is a straight line on a set of constant-current curves. A set of constant-current curves for the 250-TH tube with a sample load line drawn thereon is shown in figure 5.

In calculating and predicting the operation of a vacuum tube as a class-C radio-frequency amplifier, the considerations which determine the operating conditions are plate efficiency, power output required, maximum allowable plate and grid dissipation, maximum allowable plate voltage, and maximum allowable plate current. The values chosen for these factors will depend on the demands of a particular application of the tube.

The plate and grid currents of a class-C amplifier tube are periodic pulses, the durations of which are always less than 180 degrees. For this reason the average grid current, average plate current, power output, driving power, etc., cannot be directly calculated but must be determined by a Fourier analysis from points selected at proper intervals along the line of operation as plotted on the constant-current characteristics. This may be done either analytically or graphically. While the Fourier analysis has the advantage of accuracy, it also has the disadvantage of being tedious and involved.

The approximate analysis which follows has proved to be sufficiently accurate for most applications. This type of analysis also has the advantage of giving the desired information at the first trial. The system is direct in giving the desired information since the important factors, power output, plate efficiency, and plate voltage are arbitrarily selected at the beginning.

Method of Calculation The first step in the method to be described is to determine the power which must be delivered by the class-C amplifier. In making this determination it is well to remember that ordinarily from 5 to 10 percent of the power delivered by the amplifier tube or tubes will be lost in well-designed tank and coupling circuits at frequencies below 20 MHz. Above 20 MHz the tank and circuit losses are ordinarily somewhat above 10 percent.

The plate power input necessary to produce the desired output is determined by the plate efficiency: $P_{in} = P_{out}/N_p$.

For most applications it is desirable to operate at the highest practicable efficiency. High-efficiency operation usually requires less-expensive tubes and power supplies, and the amount of external cooling required is frequently less than for low-efficiency operation. On the other hand, high-efficiency operation usually requires more driving power and involves the use of higher plate voltages and higher peak tube voltages. The better types of triodes will ordinarily operate at a plate efficiency of 75 to 85 percent at the highest rated plate voltage, and at a plate efficiency of 65 to 75 percent at intermediate values of plate voltage.

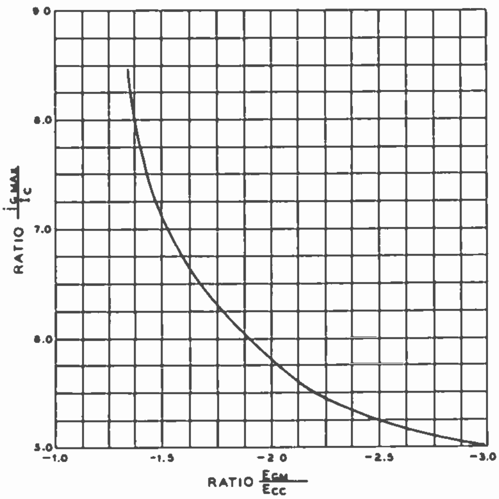


Figure 4

Relationship between the ratio of the peak value of the fundamental component of the grid excitation voltage, and the average grid bias; as compared to the ratio between instantaneous peak grid current and average grid current

The first determining factor in selecting a tube or tubes for a particular application is the amount of plate dissipation which will be required of the stage. The total plate dissipation rating for the tube or tubes to be used in the stage must be equal to or greater than that calculated from: $P_p = P_{in} - P_{out}$.

After selecting a tube or tubes to meet the power output and plate dissipation requirements it becomes necessary to determine from the tube characteristics whether the tube selected is capable of the desired operation and, if so, to determine the driving power, grid bias, and grid dissipation.

The complete procedure necessary to determine a set of class-C amplifier operating conditions is given in the following steps:

1. Select the plate voltage, power output, and efficiency.
2. Determine plate input from: $P_{in} = P_{out}/N_p$.
3. Determine plate dissipation from: $P_p = P_{in} - P_{out}$. P_p must not exceed

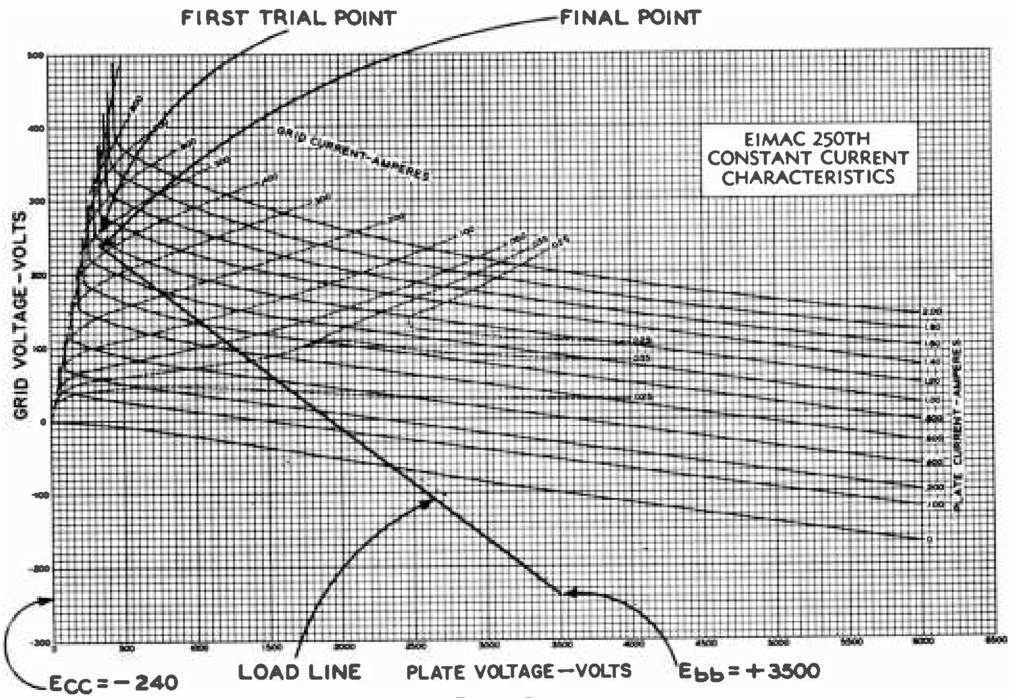


Figure 5

CONSTANT CURRENT CURVES FOR 250-TH

Active portion of the operating load line for an Eimac 250TH class-C r-f power amplifier, showing first trial point and the final operating point

maximum rated plate dissipation for tube or tubes selected.

4. Determine average plate current from:
$I_b = P_{in}/E_{bb}$.
5. Determine approximate $i_{p\,max}$ from:
$i_{p\,max} = 4.9\ I_b$ for $N_p = 0.85$
$i_{p\,max} = 4.5\ I_b$ for $N_p = 0.80$
$i_{p\,max} = 4.0\ I_b$ for $N_p = 0.75$
$i_{p\,max} = 3.5\ I_b$ for $N_p = 0.70$
6. Locate the point on constant-current characteristics where the constant plate-current line corresponding to the appropriate $i_{p\,max}$ determined in step 5 crosses the line of equal plate and grid voltages (diode line). Read $e_{p\,min}$ at this point. In a few cases the lines of constant plate current will inflect sharply upward before reaching the diode line. In these cases $e_{p\,min}$ should not be read at the diode line but at the point where the plate current line intersects a line drawn from the origin through these points of inflection.
7. Calculate E_{pm} from:
$E_{pm} = E_{bb} - e_{p\,min}$
8. Calculate the ratio I_{pm}/I_b from:
$$\frac{I_{pm}}{I_b} = \frac{2\ N_p\ E_{bb}}{E_{pm}}$$
9. From the ratio of I_{pm}/I_b calculated in step 8 determine the ratio $i_{p\,max}/I_b$ from figure 3.
10. Calculate a new value for $i_{p\,max}$ from the ratio found in step 9.
$i_{p\,max} =$ (ratio from step 9) I_b
11. Read e_{gmp} and $i_{g\,max}$ from the constant-current characteristics for the values of $e_{p\,min}$ and $i_{p\,max}$ determined in steps 6 and 10.
12. Calculate the cosine of one-half the angle of plate-current flow from:
$$\cos\theta_p = 2.32\left(\frac{I_{pm}}{I_b} - 1.57\right)$$
13. Calculate the grid bias voltage from:
$$E_{cc} = \frac{1}{1-\cos\theta_p} \times \left[\cos\theta_p\left(\frac{E_{pm}}{\mu} - e_{gmp}\right) - \frac{E_{bb}}{\mu}\right]$$
for triodes.
$$E_{cc} = \frac{1}{1-\cos\theta_p} \times \left[-e_{gmp}\cos\theta - \frac{E_{c2}}{\mu_{12}}\right]$$
for tetrodes, where μ_{12} is the grid-screen amplification factor, and E_{c2} is the d-c screen voltage.
14. Calculate the peak fundamental grid excitation voltage from:
$E_{gm} = e_{gmp} - E_{cc}$
15. Calculate the ratio E_{gm}/E_{cc} for the values of E_{cc} and E_{gm} found in steps 13 and 14.
16. Read $i_{g\,max}/I_c$ from figure 4 for the ratio E_{gm}/E_{cc} found in step 15.
17. Calculate the average grid current from the ratio found in step 16, and the value of $i_{g\,max}$ found in step 11:
$$I_c = \frac{i_{g\,max}}{\text{Ratio from step 16}}$$
18. Calculate approximate grid driving power from:
$P_d = 0.9\ E_{gm}I_c$
19. Calculate grid dissipation from:
$P_g = P_d + E_{cc}I_c$
P_g must not exceed the maximum rated grid dissipation for the tube selected.

Sample Calculation A typical example of class-C amplifier calculation is shown in the example below. Reference is made to figures 3, 4 and 5 in the calculation.

1. Desired power output—800 watts.
2. Desired plate voltage—3500 volts.
Desired plate efficiency—80 percent ($N_p = 0.80$)
$P_{in} = 800/0.80 = 1000$ watts
3. $P_p = 1000 - 800 = 200$ watts
Use 250TH; max $P_p = 250$w; $\mu = 37$.
4. $I_b = 1000/3500 = 0.285$ ampere (285 ma) Max. I_b for 250TH is 350 ma.
5. Approximate $i_{p\,max} = 0.285 \times 4.5 = 1.28$ ampere
6. $e_{p\,min} = 260$ volts (see figure 5 first trial point)
7. $E_{pm} = 3500 - 260 = 3240$ volts
8. $I_{pm}/I_b = 2 \times 0.80 \times 3500/3240 = 5600/3240 = 1.73$

9. $i_{p\ max}/I_b = 4.1$ (from figure 3)
10. $i_{p\ max} = 0.285 \times 4.1 = 1.17$
11. $e_{gmp} = 240$ volts
    $i_{g\ max} = 0.430$ amperes
    (Both above from final point on figure 5)
12. $\cos\theta_p = 2.32\ (1.73 - 1.57) = 0.37$
    $(\theta_p = 68.3°)$
13. $E_{cc} = \dfrac{1}{1 - 0.37} \times$

$$\left[\ 0.37 \left(\frac{3240}{37} - 240 \right) - \frac{3500}{37} \right]$$

$$= -240 \text{ volts}$$

14. $E_{gm} = 240 - (-240) = 480$ volts grid swing
15. $E_{gm}/E_{cc} = 480/-240 = -2$
16. $i_{g\ max}/I_c = 5.75$ (from figure 4)
17. $I_c = 0.430/5.75 = 0.075$ amp (75 ma) grid current
18. $P_d = 0.9 \times 480 \times 0.075 = 32.5$ watts driving power
19. $P_g = 32.5 - (-240 \times 0.75) = 14.5$ watts grid dissipation
    Max P_g for 250TH is 40 watts

The power output of any type of r-f amplifier is equal to:

$$I_{pm}E_{pm}/2 = P_o$$

I_{pm} can be determined, of course, from the ratio determined in step 8 above (in this type of calculation) by multiplying this ratio times I_b.

It is frequently of importance to know the value of load impedance into which a class-C amplifier operating under a certain set of conditions should operate. This is simply $R_L = E_{pm}/I_{pm}$. In the case of the operating conditions just determined for a 250TH amplifier stage the value of load impedance is:

$$I_{pm} = \frac{I_{pm}}{I_b} \times I_b$$

$$R_L = \frac{E_{pm}}{I_{pm}} = \frac{3240}{.495} = 6600 \text{ ohms}$$

Q of Amplifier Tank Circuit In order to obtain proper plate tank-circuit tuning and low radiation of harmonics from an amplifier it is necessary that the plate tank circuit have the correct Q. Charts giving compromise values of Q for class-C amplifiers are given in the chapter, *Generation of R-F Energy*. However, the amount of inductance required for a special tank-circuit Q under specified operating conditions can be calculated from the following expression:

$$\omega L = \frac{R_L}{Q}$$

where,

ω equals $2\pi \times$ operating frequency,
L equals tank inductance,
R_L equals required tube load impedance,
Q equals effective tank circuit Q.

A tank circuit Q of 12 to 20 is recommended for all normal conditions. However, if a balanced push-pull amplifier is employed the tank receives two impulses per cycle and the circuit Q may be lowered somewhat from the above values.

Quick Method of Calculating Amplifier Plate Efficiency The plate-circuit efficiency of a class-B or class-C r-f amplifier can be determined from the following facts. The plate-circuit efficiency of such an amplifier is equal to the product of two factors: F_1, which is equal to the ratio of E_{pm} to E_{bb} ($F_1 =$

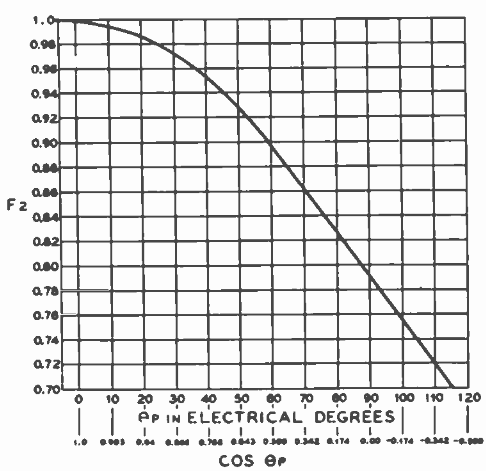


Figure 6

Relationship between factor F_2 and the half-angle of plate-current flow in an amplifier with sine-wave input and output voltage, operating at a grid-bias voltage greater than cutoff

E_{pm}/E_{bb}), and F_2, which is proportional to the one-half angle of plate current flow θ_p. A graph of F_2 against both θ_p and $\cos\theta_p$ is given in figure 6. Either θ_p or $\cos\theta_p$ may be used to determine F_2. Cos θ_p may be determined either from the procedure previously given for making class-C amplifier computations or it may be determined from the following expression:

$$\cos\theta_p = - \frac{\mu E_{cc} + E_{bb}}{\mu E_{gm} - E_{pm}}$$

Example of Method It is desired to know the one-half angle of plate-current flow and the plate-circuit efficiency for an 812 tube operating under the following conditions which have been assumed from inspection of the data and curves given in the RCA Transmitting Tube Handbook:

1. $E_{bb} = 1100$ volts
   $E_{cc} = -40$ volts
   $\mu = 29$
   $E_{gm} = 120$ volts
   $E_{pm} = 1000$ volts
2. $F_1 = E_{pm}/E_{bb} = 0.91$
3. $\cos\theta_p = \dfrac{-29 \times 40 + 1100}{29 \times 120 - 1000} = \dfrac{60}{2480} = 0.025$
4. $F_2 = 0.79$ (by reference to figure 6)
5. $N_p = F_1 \times F_2 = 0.91 \times 0.79 = 0.72$ (72 percent efficiency)

F_1 could be called the plate-voltage-swing efficiency factor, and F_2 can be called the operating-angle efficiency factor or the maximum possible efficiency of any stage running with that value of half-angle of plate current flow.

N_p is, of course, only the ratio between power output and power input. If it is desired to determine the power input, exciting power, and grid current of the stage, these can be obtained through the use of steps 7, 8, 9, and 10 of the previously given method for determining power input and output; and knowing that $i_{g\,max}$ is 0.095 ampere, the grid-circuit conditions can be determined through the use of steps 15, 16, 17, 18, and 19.

7-4 Class-B Radio-Frequency Power Amplifiers

Radio-frequency power amplifiers operating under class-B conditions of grid bias and excitation voltage are used in various types of applications in transmitters. The first general application is as a buffer-amplifier stage where it is desired to obtain a high value of power amplification in a particular stage. A particular tube type operated with a given plate voltage will be capable of somewhat greater output for a certain amount of excitation power when operated as a class-B amplifier than when operated as a class-C amplifier.

Calculation of Operating Characteristics Calculation of the operating conditions for this type of class-B r-f amplifier can be carried out in a manner similar to that described in the previous paragraphs, except that the grid-bias voltage is set on the tube before calculation at the value: $E_{cc} = - E_{bb}/\mu$. Since the grid bias is set at cutoff the one-half angle of plate-current flow is 90°; hence $\cos\theta_p$ is fixed at 0.00. The plate-circuit efficiency for a class-B r-f amplifier operated in this manner can be determined in the following manner:

$$N_p = 78.5 \frac{E_{pm}}{E_{bb}}$$

The "Class-B Linear" The second type of class-B r-f amplifier is the so-called *class-B linear amplifier* which is often used in transmitters for the amplification of a single-sideband signal or a conventional amplitude-modulated wave. Calculation of operating conditions may be carried out in a manner similar to that previously described with the following exceptions: The first trial operating point is chosen on the basis of the 100 percent positive modulation peak (or PEP condition) of the exciting wave. The plate-circuit and grid-peak voltages and currents can then be determined and the power input and output calculated. Then, with the exciting voltage reduced to one-half for the no-modulation condition of the exciting wave, and with the same value of load resistance reflected on the tube, the a-m plate input

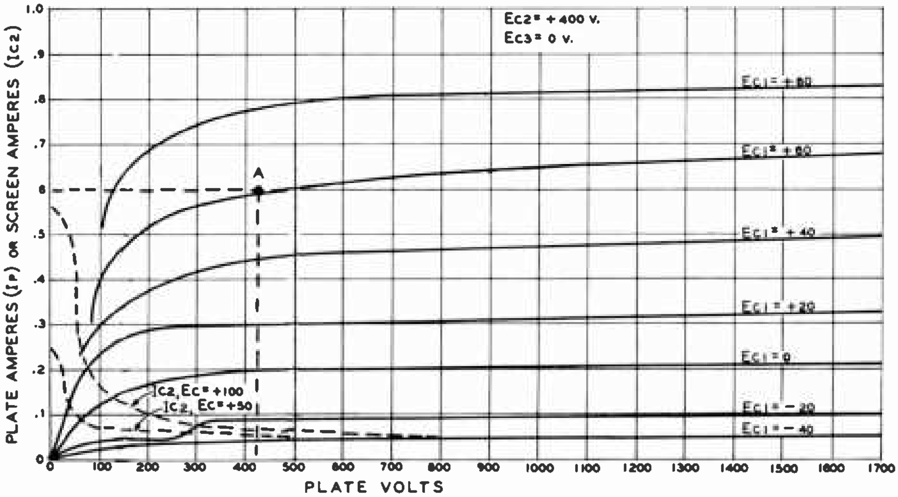


Figure 7

AVERAGE PLATE CHARACTERISTICS OF 813 TUBE

and plate efficiency will drop to approximately one-half the values at the 100 percent positive modulation peak and the power output of the stage will drop to one-fourth the peak-modulation value. On the negative modulation peak the input, efficiency, and output all drop to zero.

In general, the proper plate voltage, bias voltage, load resistance, and power output listed in the tube tables for class-B audio work will also apply to class-B linear r-f application.

Calculation of Operating Parameters for a Class-B Linear Amplifier Figure 7 illustrates the characteristic curves for an 813 tube. Assume the plate supply to be 2000 volts, and the screen supply to be 400 volts. To determine the operating parameters of this tube as a class-B linear SSB r-f amplifier, the following steps should be taken:

1. The grid bias is chosen so that the resting plate current will produce approximately 1/3 of the maximum plate dissipation of the tube. The maximum dissipation of the 813 is 125 watts, so the bias is set to allow one-third of this value, or 42 watts of resting dissipation. At a plate potential of 2000 volts, a plate current of 21 milliamperes will produce this figure. Referring to figure 7, a grid bias of −45 volts is approximately correct.
2. A practical class-B linear r-f amplifier runs at an efficiency of about 66% at full ouput, the carrier efficiency dropping to about 33% with a modulated exciting signal. In the case of single-sideband suppressed-carrier excitation, the linear amplifier runs at the resting or quiescent input of 42 watts with no exciting signal. The peak allowable power input to the 813 is:

$$\text{Input peak power } (W_p) = \frac{\text{plate dissipation} \times 100}{(100 - \%\text{ plate efficiency})} = \frac{125}{33} \times 100 = 379 \text{ watts}$$

3. The maximum d-c signal plate current is:

$$I_{p\,max} = \frac{W_p}{E_p} = \frac{379}{2000} = 0.189 \text{ ampere}$$

4. The plate current flow of the linear amplifier is 180°, and the plate current pulses have a peak of 3.14 times the maximum signal current:

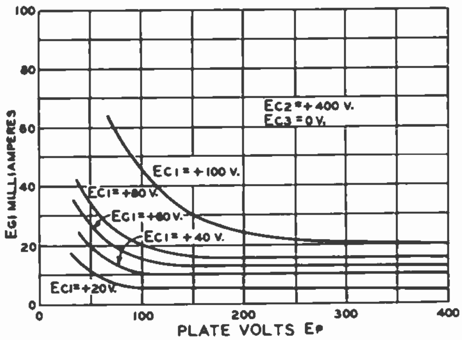


Figure 8

E_{g1} VERSUS E_p CHARACTERISTICS OF 813 TUBE

$i_{p\,max} = 3.14 \times 0.189 = 0.595$ ampere

5. Referring to figure 7, a current of about 0.595 ampere (Point A) will flow at a positive grid potential of 60 volts and a minimum plate potential of 420 volts. The grid is biased at —45 volts, so a peak r-f grid voltage of 60 + 45 volts, or 105 volts, swing is required.
6. The grid driving power required for the class-B linear stage may be found by the aid of figure 8. It is one-third the product of the peak grid current times the peak grid swing.

$$P_g = \frac{0.015 \times 105}{3} = 0.525 \text{ watt}$$

7. The single-tone power output of the 813 stage is:
$P_p = 78.5\ (E_p - e_{p\,min}) \times I_p$
$P_p = 78.5\ (2000 - 420) \times .189 =$ 235 watts
8. The plate load resistance is:

$$R_L = \frac{E_p - e_{p\,min}}{0.5 i_{p\,max}} = \frac{1580}{0.5 \times .595}$$
$$= 5320 \text{ ohms}$$

9. If a loaded plate tank circuit Q of 12 is desired, the reactance of the plate tank capacitor at the resonant frequency should be:

$$\text{reactance (ohms)} = \frac{R_L}{Q}$$
$$= \frac{5320}{12}$$
$$= 445 \text{ ohms}$$

10. For an operating frequency of 4.0 MHz, the effective resonant capacity is:

$$C = \frac{10^6}{6.28 \times 4.0 \times 445} = 90 \text{ pf}$$

11. The inductance required to resonate at 4.0 MHz with this value of capacity is:

$$L = \frac{445}{6.28 \times 4.0}$$
$$= 17.8 \text{ microhenries}$$

Grid-Circuit Considerations

1. The maximum positive grid potential is 60 volts, and the peak r-f grid voltage is 105 volts. Required driving power is 0.525 watt. The equivalent grid resistance of this stage is:

$$R_g = \frac{(e_g)^2}{2 \times P_g} = \frac{105^2}{2 \times 0.525} =$$
$$10{,}000 \text{ ohms}$$

2. As in the case of the class-B audio amplifier the grid resistance of the linear amplifier varies from infinity to a low value when maximum grid current is drawn. To decrease the effect of this resistance excursion, a swamping resistor should be placed across the grid-tank circuit. The value of the resistor should be dropped until a shortage of driving power begins to be noticed. For this example, a resistor of 3000 ohms is used. The grid circuit load for no grid current is now 3000 ohms instead of infinity, and drops to 2300 ohms when maximum grid current is drawn.
3. A circuit Q of 15 is chosen for the grid tank. The capacitive reactance required is:

$$X_C = \frac{2300}{15} = 154 \text{ ohms}$$

4. At 4.0 MHz the effective capacitance is:

$$C = \frac{10^6}{6.28 \times 4.0 \times 154} = 259 \text{ pf}$$

5. The inductive reactance required to

resonate the grid circuit at 4.0 MHz is:

$$L = \frac{154}{6.28 \times 4.0} = 6.1 \text{ microhenries}$$

6. By substituting the loaded-grid resistance figure in the formula in the first paragraph, the grid driving power is now found to be approximately 2.4 watts.

Screen-Circuit Considerations By reference to the plate characteristic curve of the 813 tube, it can be seen that at a minimum plate potential of 420 volts, and a maximum plate current of 0.6 ampere, the screen current will be approximately 30 milliamperes, dropping to one or two milliamperes in the quiescent state. It is necessary to use a well-regulated screen supply to hold the screen voltage at the correct potential over this range of current excursion. The use of an electronically regulated screen supply is recommended.

7-5 Special R-F Power Amplifier Circuits

The r-f power amplifier discussions of Sections 7-3 and 7-4 have been based on the assumption that a conventional grounded-cathode or cathode-return type of amplifier was in question. It is possible, however, as in the case of a-f and low-level r-f amplifiers to use circuits in which electrodes other than the cathode are returned to ground insofar as the signal potential is concerned. Both the plate-return or cathode-follower amplifier and the grid-return or grounded-grid amplifier are effective in certain circuit applications as tuned r-f power amplifiers.

Disadvantages of Grounded-Cathode Amplifiers An undesirable aspect of the operation of cathode-return r-f power amplifiers using triode tubes is that such amplifiers must be neutralized. Principles and methods of neutralizing r-f power amplifiers are discussed in the chapter *Generation of R-F Energy*. As the frequency of operation of an amplifier is increased the stage becomes more and more difficult to neutralize due to inductance in the grid and cathode leads of the tube and in the leads to the neutralizing capacitor. In other words the bandwidth of neutralization decreases as the presence of the neutralizing capacitor adds additional undesirable capacitive loading to the grid and plate tank circuits of the tube or tubes. To look at the problem in another way, an amplifier that may be perfectly neutralized at a frequency of 30 MHz may be completely out of neutralization at a frequency of 120 MHz. Therefore, if there are circuits in both the grid and plate circuits which offer appreciable impedance at this high frequency it is quite possible that the stage may develop a parasitic oscillation in the vicinity of 120 MHz.

Grounded-Grid R-F Amplifiers This condition of restricted-range neutralization of r-f power amplifiers can be greatly alleviated through the use of a cathode-driven or grounded-grid r-f stage. The grounded-grid amplifier has the following advantages:

1. The output capacitance of a stage is reduced to approximately one-half the value which would be obtained if the same tube or tubes were operated as a conventional neutralized amplifier.
2. The tendency toward parasitic oscillations in such a stage is greatly reduced since the shielding effect of the control grid between the filament and the plate is effective over a broad range of frequencies.
3. The feedback capacitance within the stage is the plate-to-cathode capacitance which is ordinarily very much less than the grid-to-plate capacitance. Hence neutralization is ordinarily not required. If neutralization is required the neutralizing capacitors are very small in value and are cross-connected between plates and cathodes in a push-pull stage, or between the opposite end of a split plate tank and the cathode in a single-ended stage.

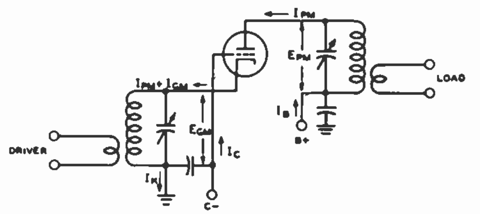
The disadvantages of a grounded-grid amplifier are:

1. A large amount of excitation energy is required. However, only the normal amount of energy is lost in the grid circuit of the amplifier tube; all addi-

tional energy over this amount is delivered to the load circuit as useful output.

2. The cathode of a grounded-grid amplifier stage is above r-f ground. This means that the cathode must be fed through a suitable impedance from the filament supply, or the filament transformer must be of the low capacitance type and adequately insulated for the r-f voltage which will be present.
3. A grounded-grid r-f amplifier cannot be plate modulated 100 percent unless the output of the exciting stage is modulated also. Approximately 70 percent modulation of the exciter stage, while the final stage is modulated 100 percent, is recommended. However the grounded-grid r-f amplifier is quite satisfactory as a class-B linear r-f amplifier for single-sideband or conventional amplitude-modulated waves or as an amplifier for a straight c-w or f-m signal.

Figure 9 shows a simplified representation of a grounded-grid triode r-f power amplifier stage. The relationships between input and output power and the peak fundamental components of electrode voltages and currents are given below the drawing. The calculation of the complete operating conditions for a grounded-grid amplifier stage is somewhat more complex than that for a conventional amplifier because the input circuit of the tube is in series with the output circuit as far as the load is concerned. The primary result of this effect is, as stated before, that considerably more power is required from the driver stage. The normal power gain for a g-g stage is from 3 to 15 depending on the grid-circuit conditions chosen for the output stage. The higher the grid bias and grid swing required on the output stage, the higher will be the requirement from the driver.



POWER OUTPUT TO LOAD $= \dfrac{(E_{GM}+E_{PM})\,I_{PM}}{2}$ OR $\dfrac{E_{PM}\,I_{PM}}{2} + \dfrac{E_{GM}\,I_{PM}}{2}$

POWER DELIVERED BY OUTPUT TUBE $= \dfrac{E_{PM}\,I_{PM}}{2}$

POWER FROM DRIVER TO LOAD $= \dfrac{E_{GM}\,I_{PM}}{2}$

TOTAL POWER DELIVERED BY DRIVER $= \dfrac{E_{GM}\,(I_{PM}+I_{GM})}{2}$

OR $\dfrac{E_{GM}\,I_{PM}}{2} + 0.9\,E_{GM}\,I_C$

POWER ABSORBED BY OUTPUT TUBE GRID AND BIAS SUPPLY:

$= \dfrac{E_{GM}\,I_{GM}}{2}$ OR $0.9\,E_{GM}\,I_C$

Z_K = (APPROXIMATELY) $= \dfrac{E_{GM}}{I_{PM}+1.8\,I_C}$

Figure 9

GROUNDED-GRID CLASS-B OR CLASS-C AMPLIFIER

The equations in the above figure give the relationships between the fundamental components of grid and plate potential and current, and the power input and power output of the stage. An expression for the approximate cathode impedance is given.

Calculation of Operating Conditions of Grounded-Grid R-F Amplifiers

It is most convenient to determine the operating conditions for a class-B or class-C grounded-grid r-f power amplifier in a two-step process. The first step is to determine the plate-circuit and grid-circuit operating conditions of the tube as though it were to operate as a conventional cathode-return amplifier stage. The second step is then to add in the additional conditions imposed on the operating conditions by the fact that the stage is to operate as a grounded-grid amplifier.

For the first step in the calculation the procedure given in Section 7-3 is quite satisfactory and will be used in the example to follow. Suppose we take for our example the case of a type 304TL tube operating at 2700 plate volts at a kilowatt input in class-C service. Following through the procedure previously given:

1. desired power output—850 watts
   desired plate voltage—2700 volts
   desired plate efficiency—85 percent ($N_p = 0.85$).
2. $P_{in} = 850/0.85 = 1000$ watts.
3. $P_p = 1000 - 850 = 150$ watts.
   Type 304TL chosen; max. $P_p = 300$ watts; $\mu = 12$.

4. $I_b = 1000/2700 = 0.370$ ampere (370 ma).
5. Approximate $i_{p\,max} = 4.9 \times 0.370 = 1.81$ ampere.
6. $e_{p\,min} = 140$ volts (from 304TL constant current curves).
7. $E_{pm} = 2700 - 140 = 2560$ volts.
8. $I_{pm}/I_b = 2 \times 0.85 \times 2700/2560 = 1.79$.
9. $i_{p\,max}/I_b = 4.65$ (from figure 3)
10. $i_{p\,max} = 4.65 \times 0.370 = 1.72$ amperes
11. $e_{gmp} = 140$ volts
    $i_{g\,max} = 0.480$ amperes
12. $\cos\theta_p = 2.32\,(1.79 - 1.57) = 0.51$
    $\theta_p = 59°$
13. $$E_{cc} = \frac{1}{1-0.51} \times \left[0.51\left(\frac{2560}{12} - 140\right) - \frac{2700}{12}\right] = -385 \text{ volts}$$
14. $E_{gm} = 140 - (-385) = 525$ volts
15. $E_{gm}/E_{cc} = -1.36$
16. $i_{g\,max}/I_c =$ approx. 8.25 (extrapolated from figure 4)
17. $I_c = 0.480/8.25 = 0.058$ (58 ma d-c grid current)
18. $P_d = 0.9 \times 525 \times 0.058 = 27.5$ watts
19. $P_g = 27.5 - (-385 \times 0.058) = 5.2$ watts
    Max. P_g for 304TL is 50 watts

We can check the operating plate efficiency of the stage by the method described in Section 7-4 as follows:

$F_1 = E_{pm}/E_{bb} = 2560/2700 = 0.95$
F_2 for θ_p of 59° (from figure 6) $= 0.90$
$N_p = F_1 \times F_2 = 0.95 \times 0.90 =$ Approx. 0.85 (85 percent plate efficiency)

Now, to determine the operating conditions as a grounded-grid amplifier we must also know the peak value of the fundamental components of plate current. This is simply equal to $(I_{pm}/I_b)\,I_b$, or:

$$I_{pm} = 1.79 \times 0.370 = 0.660 \text{ amperes (from 4 and 8 above)}$$

The total average power required of the driver (from figure 9) is equal to $E_{gm}I_{pm}/2$ (since the grid is grounded and the grid swing appears also as cathode swing) plus P_d which is 27.5 watts from 18 above. The total is:

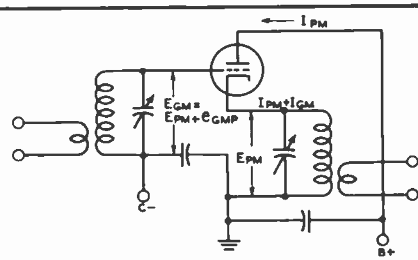
$$\text{total drive} = \frac{525 \times 0.660}{2}$$

$$= 172.5 \text{ watts} + 27.5 \text{ watts or } 200 \text{ watts}$$

Therefore the total power output of the stage is equal to 850 watts (contributed by the 304TL) plus 172.5 watts (contributed by the driver) or 1022.5 watts. The cathode driving impedance of the 304TL (again referring to figure 7) is approximately:

$$Z_k = 525/(0.660 + 0.116) = \text{approximately } 675 \text{ ohms}$$

Plate-Return or Cathode-Follower R-F Power Amplifier Circuit diagram, electrode potentials and currents, and operating conditions for a cathode-follower r-f power amplifier are given in figure 10. This circuit can be used, in addition to the grounded-grid circuit just



POWER OUTPUT TO LOAD $= \dfrac{E_{PM}(I_{PM} + I_{GM})}{2}$

POWER DELIVERED BY OUTPUT TUBE $= \dfrac{E_{PM} I_{PM}}{2}$

POWER FROM DRIVER TO LOAD $= \dfrac{E_{PM} I_{GM}}{2}$

TOTAL POWER FROM DRIVER $= \dfrac{E_{GM} I_{GM}}{2} + \dfrac{(E_{PM} + e_{GMP})\,I_{GM}}{2}$

$=$ APPROX. $\dfrac{(E_{PM} + e_{GMP})\,1.8\,I_C}{2}$

ASSUMING $I_{GM} \cong 1.8\,I_C$

POWER ABSORBED BY OUTPUT TUBE GRID AND BIAS SUPPLY:

$=$ APPROX. $0.9\,(E_{CC} + e_{GMP})\,I_C$

$Z_G = \dfrac{E_{GM}}{I_{GM}} =$ APPROX. $\dfrac{(E_{PM} + e_{GMP})}{1.8\,I_C}$

Figure 10

CATHODE-FOLLOWER R-F POWER AMPLIFIER

Showing the relationships between the tube potentials and currents and the input and output power of the stage. The approximate grid impedance also is given.

discussed, as an r-f amplifier with a triode tube and no additional neutralization circuit. However, the circuit will oscillate if the impedance from cathode to ground is allowed to become capacitive rather than inductive or resistive with respect to the operating frequency. The circuit is not recommended except for vhf or uhf work with coaxial lines as tuned circuits since the peak grid swing required on the r-f amplifier stage is approximately equal to the plate voltage on the amplifier tube if high-efficiency operation is desired. This means, of course, that the grid tank must be able to withstand slightly more peak voltage than the plate tank. Such a stage may not be plate modulated unless the driver stage is modulated the same percentage as the final amplifier. However, such a stage may be used as an amplifier of modulated waves (class-B linear) or as a c-w or f-m amplifier.

The design of such an amplifier stage is essentially the same as the design of a grounded-grid amplifier stage as far as the first step is concerned. Then, for the second step the operating conditions given in figure 10 are applied to the data obtained in the first step. As an example, take the 304TL stage previously described. The total power required of the driver will be (from figure 10) approximately $(2700 \times 0.058 \times 1.8)/2$ or 141 watts. Of this 141 watts 27.5 watts (as before) will be lost as grid dissipation and bias loss and the balance of 113.5 watts will appear as output. The total output of the stage will then be approximately 963 watts.

Cathode Tank of G-G or C-F Power Amplifier The cathode tank circuit for either a grounded-grid or cathode-follower r-f power amplifier may be a conventional tank circuit if the filament transformer for the stage is of the low-capacitance high-voltage type. Conventional filament transformers, however, will not operate with the high values of r-f voltage present in such a circuit. If a conventional filament transformer is to be used, the cathode tank coil may consist of two parallel heavy conductors (to carry the high filament current) bypassed at both the ground end and at the tube socket. The tuning capacitor is then placed between filament and ground. It is possible in certain cases to use two r-f chokes of special design to feed the filament current to the tubes, with a conventional tank circuit between filament and ground. Coaxial lines also may be used to serve both as cathode tank and filament feed to the tubes for vhf and uhf work.

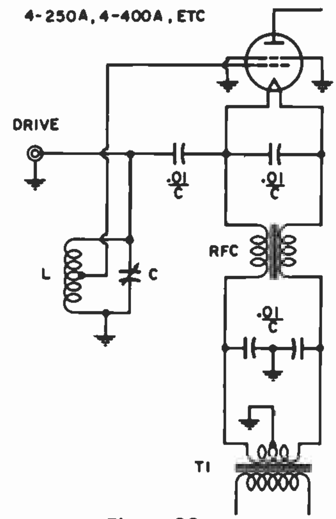


Figure 11

TAPPED INPUT CIRCUIT REDUCES EXCESSIVE GRID DISSIPATION IN G-G CRCUIT

C = 20 pf per meter wavelength
RFC = Dual-winding on ½-inch diameter, 3½-inch long ferrite rod. (Lafayette Radio, N.Y.C. #MS-333).

Control-Grid Dissipation in Grounded-Grid Stages Tetrode tubes may be operated as grounded-grid (cathode-driven) amplifiers by tying the grid and screen together and operating the tube as high-μ triode (figure 11). Combined grid and screen current, however, is a function of tube geometry and may reach destructive values under conditions of full excitation. Proper division of excitation between grid and screen should be as the ratio of the screen-to-grid amplification, which is approximately 5 for tubes such as the 4-250A, 4-400A, etc. The proper ratio of grid/screen excitation may be achieved by tapping the grid at some point on the input circuit, as shown. Grid dissipation is reduced, but the overall level of excitation is increased about 30% over the value required for simple grounded-grid operation.

7-6 Class-AB₁ Radio-Frequency Power Amplifiers

Class-AB₁ r-f amplifiers operate under such conditions of bias and excitation that grid current does not flow over any portion of the input cycle. This is desirable, since distortion caused by grid-current loading is absent, and also because the stage is capable of high power gain. Stage efficiency is about 58 percent when a plate current operating angle of 210° is chosen, as compared to 62 percent for class-B operation.

The level of static (quiescent) plate current for *lowest distortion* is quite critical for class-AB₁ tetrode operation. This value is determined by the tube characteristics, and is not greatly affected by the circuit parameters or operating voltages. The maximum d-c plate potential is therefore limited by the static dissipation of the tube, since the resting plate current figure is fixed. The static plate current of a tetrode tube varies as the 3/2 power of the screen voltage. For example, raising the screen voltage from 300 to 500 volts will double the plate current. The optimum static plate current for minimum distortion is also doubled, since the shape of the E_g-I_p curve does not change.

In actual practice, somewhat lower static plate current than optimum may be employed without raising the distortion appreciably, and values of static plate current of 0.6 to 0.8 of optimum may be safely used, depending on the amount of nonlinearity that can be tolerated.

As with the class-B linear stage, the minimum plate voltage swing of the class-AB₁ amplifier must be kept above the d-c screen potential to prevent operation in the nonlinear portion of the characteristic curve. A *low value* of screen voltage allows greater r-f plate voltage swing, resulting in improvement in plate efficiency of the tube. A balance between plate dissipation, plate efficiency, and plate-voltage swing must be achieved for best linearity of the amplifier.

The S-Curve The perfect linear amplifier delivers a signal that is a replica of the input signal. Inspection of the plate-characteristic curve of a typical tube will disclose the tube linearity under class-AB₁ operating conditions (figure 12). The curve

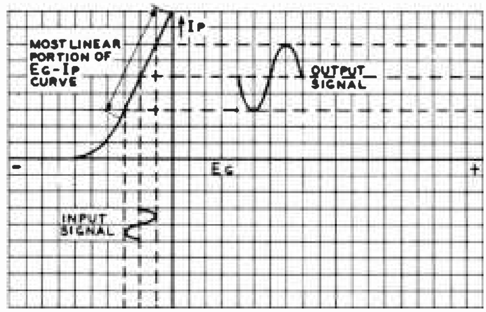


Figure 12

E_g-I_p CURVE

Amplifier operation is confined to the most linear portion of the characteristic curve.

is usually of exponential shape, and the signal distortion is held to a small value by operating the tube well below its maximum output, and centering operation over the most linear portion of the characteristic curve.

The relationship between exciting voltage in a class-AB₁ amplifier and the r-f plate circuit voltage is shown in figure 13. With a small value of static plate current the lower portion of the line is curved. Maximum undistorted output is limited by the point on the line (A) where the instantaneous plate voltage drops down to the screen voltage. This "hook" in the line is caused by current diverted from the plate to the grid and screen elements of the tube. The characteristic plot of the usual linear amplifier takes the shape of an S-curve. The lower portion of the curve is straightened out by using the proper value of static plate current, and the upper portion of the curve is avoided by limiting minimum plate voltage swing to a point substantially above the value of the screen voltage.

Operating Parameters for the Class-AB₁ Linear Amplifier The approximate operating parameters may be obtained from the constant - current curves (E_g-E_p) or the E_g-I_p curves of the tube in question. An operating load line is first approximated. One end of the load line is determined by the d-c operating voltage of the tube, and the required static plate current. As a starting point, let the product

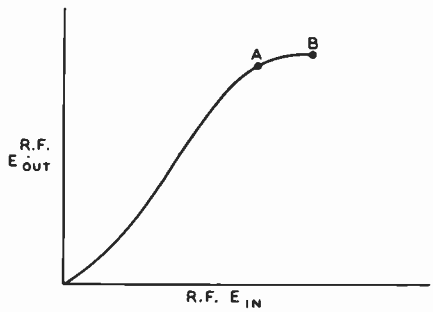


Figure 13

LINEARITY CURVE OF TYPICAL TETRODE AMPLIFIER

At point A the instantaneous plate voltage is swinging down to the value of the screen voltage. At point B it is swinging well below the screen and is approaching the point where saturation, or plate-current limiting takes place.

of the plate voltage and current approximate the plate dissipation of the tube. Assuming we have a 4-400A tetrode, this end of the load line will fall on point A (figure 14). Plate power dissipation is 360 watts (3000V at 120 ma). The opposite end of the load line will fall on a point determined by the minimum instantaneous plate voltage, and by the maximum instantaneous plate current. The minimum plate voltage, for best linearity should be considerably higher than the screen voltage. In this case, the screen voltage is 500, so the minimum plate voltage excursion should be limited to 600 volts. Class-AB_1 operation implies no grid current, therefore the load line cannot cross the $E_g = 0$ line. At the point $E_p = 600$, $E_g = 0$, the maximum instantaneous plate current is 580 ma (Point B).

Each point at which the load line crosses a grid-voltage axis may be taken as a point for construction of the E_g-I_p curve, just as was done in figure 22, chapter 6. A constructed curve shows that the approximate static bias voltage is -74 volts, which checks closely with point A of figure 14. In actual practice, the bias voltage is set to hold the actual dissipation slightly below the maximum figure of the tube.

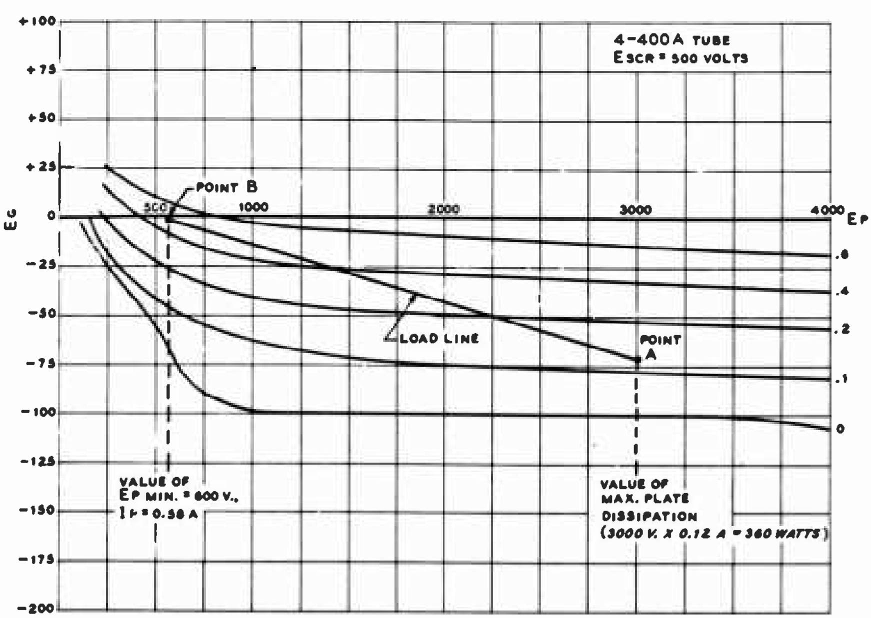


Figure 14

OPERATING PARAMETERS FOR TETRODE LINEAR AMPLIFIER ARE OBTAINED FROM CONSTANT-CURRENT CURVES.

The single tone power output is:

$$\frac{(E_p - e_{p\,min}) \times i_{p\,max}}{4}$$

or, $$\frac{(3000-600) \times .58}{4} = 348 \text{ watts}$$

The plate current-angle efficiency factor for this class of operation is 0.73, and the actual plate-circuit efficiency is:

$$N_p = \frac{E_p - e_{p\,min}}{E_{max}} \times 0.73$$

$$= \frac{(3000 - 600)}{3000} \times 0.73 = 58.4\%$$

The power input to the stage is therefore

$$\frac{P_o}{N_p} \times 100 \text{ or, } \frac{348}{58.4} = 595 \text{ watts}$$

The plate dissipation is:

$$595 - 348 = 247 \text{ watts.}$$

It can be seen that the limiting factor for this class of operation is the static plate dissipation, which is quite a bit higher than the operating dissipation level. It is possible, at the expense of a higher level of distortion, to drop the static plate dissipation and to increase the screen voltage to obtain greater power output. If the screen voltage is set at 800, and the bias increased sufficiently to drop the static plate current to 90 ma, the single-tone d-c plate current may rise to 300 ma, for a power input of 900 watts. The plate circuit efficiency is 55.6 percent, and the power output is 500 watts. Static plate dissipation is 270 watts.

At a screen potential of 500 volts, the maximum screen current is less than 1 ma, and under certain loading conditions may be negative. When the screen potential is raised to 800 volts maximum screen current is 18 ma. The performance of the tube depends on the voltage fields set up in the tube by the cathode, control grid, screen grid, and plate. The quantity of current flowing in the screen circuit is only incidental to the fact that the screen is maintained at a positive potential with respect to the electron stream surrounding it.

The tube will perform as expected as long as the screen current, in either direction, does not create undesirable changes in the screen voltage, or cause excessive screen dissipation. Good regulation of the screen supply is therefore required. Screen dissipation is highly responsive to plate loading conditions and the plate circuit should always be adjusted so as to keep the screen current below the maximum dissipation level as established by the applied voltage.

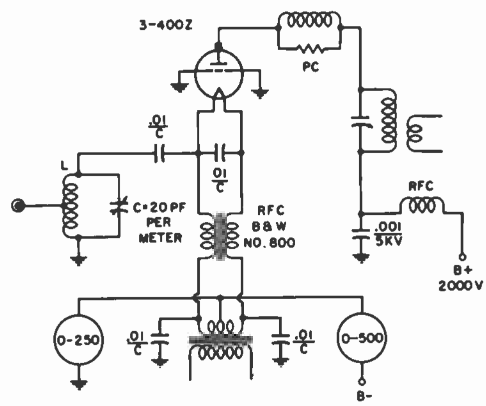


Figure 15

SIMPLE GROUNDED-GRID LINEAR AMPLIFIER

Tuned cathode (L—C) is required to prevent distortion of driving-signal waveform.

7-7 Grounded-Grid Linear Amplifiers

A typical grounded-grid amplifier is shown in figure 15. The driving signal is applied between the grid and the cathode, with the grid held at r-f ground potential. The control grid serves as a shield between the cathode and the plate, thus making neutralization unnecessary at medium and high frequencies. High-μ triodes and triode-connected tetrodes may be used in this configuration. Care must be taken to monitor the #1-grid current of the tetrode tubes as it may run abnormally high in some types (4X150A family) and damage to the tube may possibly result unless a protective circuit of the form shown in figure 11 is used.

"Zero-bias" triodes (811-A, 3-400Z and 3-1000Z) and certain triode-connected tetrodes (813 and 4-400A, for example) require no bias supply and good linearity may be achieved with a minimum of circuit components. An improvement of the order of 5 to 10 decibels in intermodulation distortion may be gained by operating such tubes in the grounded-grid mode in contrast to the same tubes operated in class-AB_1, grid-driven mode. The improvement in the distortion figure varies from tube type to tube type, but all so-called "grounded-grid" triodes and triode-connected tetrodes show some degree of improvement in distortion figure when cathode driven as opposed to grid-driven service.

Cathode-Driven High-μ Triodes High-μ triode tubes may be used to advantage in cathode-driven (grounded-grid) service. The inherent shielding of a high-μ tube is better than that of a low-μ tube and the former provides better gain per stage and requires less drive than the latter because of less feedthrough power. Resistive loading of the input or driving circuit is not required because of the constant feedthrough power load on the exciter as long as sufficient Q exists in the cathode tank circuit. Low-μ triodes, on the other hand, require extremely large driving signals when operated in the cathode-driven configuration, and stage gain is relatively small. In addition, shielding between the input and output circuits is poor compared to that existing in high-μ triodes.

Bias Supplies for G-G Amplifiers Medium-μ triode tubes that require grid bias may be used in cathode-driven service if the grid is suitably bypassed to ground and placed at the proper negative d-c potential. Bias supplies for such circuits, however, must be capable of good voltage regulation under conditions of grid current so that the d-c bias value does not vary with the amplitude of the grid current of the stage. Suitable bias supplies for this mode of operation are shown in the *Power Supply* chapter of this Handbook. Approximate values of bias voltage for linear amplifier service data may be obtained from the audio data found in most tube manuals, usually stated for push-pull class-AB_1 or AB_2 operation. As the tube "doesn't know" whether it is being driven by an audio signal or an r-f signal, the audio parameters may be used for linear service, but the stated d-c currents should be divided by two for a single tube, since the audio data is usually given for two tubes. Grounded-grid operating data for two popular triode tubes is given in figure 16.

304TH, CATHODE-DRIVEN, CLASS-AB_2 LINEAR AMPLIFIER			
D-C Plate Voltage	1500	2000	3000 volts
D-C Grid Voltage*	−65	−90	−145 volts
Zero-Signal D-C Plate Current	130	100	75 ma
Single-Tone Max. D-C Plate Current	480	380	320 ma
Max. D-C Input	720	760	960 watts
Max. Drive Power	70	55	60 watts
Cathode Input Impedance**	195	260	385 ohms
Plate Load Impedance	1850	3000	5500 ohms
Max. Output	510	530	715 watts

450TH, CATHODE-DRIVEN, CLASS-AB_2 LINEAR AMPLIFIER			
D-C Plate Voltage	1500	3000	4000 volts
D-C Grid Voltage*	0	−50	−85 volts
Zero Signal D-C Plate Current	50	200	150 ma
Single-Tone Max. D-C Plate Current	400	450	335 ma
Max. D-C Input	600	1350	1340 watts
Max. Drive Power	70	105	70 watts
Cathode Input Impedance**	262	322	350 ohms
Plate Load Impedance	2200	4100	6400 ohms
Max. Output	416	992	1000 watts

NOTE: 1500-volt operation is zero-bias service

*Adjust to give stated zero-signal plate current.

**Fundamental frequency component. High-C tuned cathode tank should be employed to obtain lowest intermodulation distortion.

Figure 16

The Tuned Cathode Circuit Input waveform distortion may be observed at the cathode of a grounded-grid linear amplifier as the result of grid- and plate-current loading of the input circuit on alternate half-cycles by the single-ended stage (figure 17). The driving source thus "sees" a very low value of load impedance over a portion of the r-f cycle and an extremely high impedance over the remaining portion of the cycle. Unless the output voltage regulation of the r-f source is very good, the portion of the wave on the loaded part of the cycle will be degraded. This waveform distortion contributes to intermodulation distortion and also may cause TVI difficul-

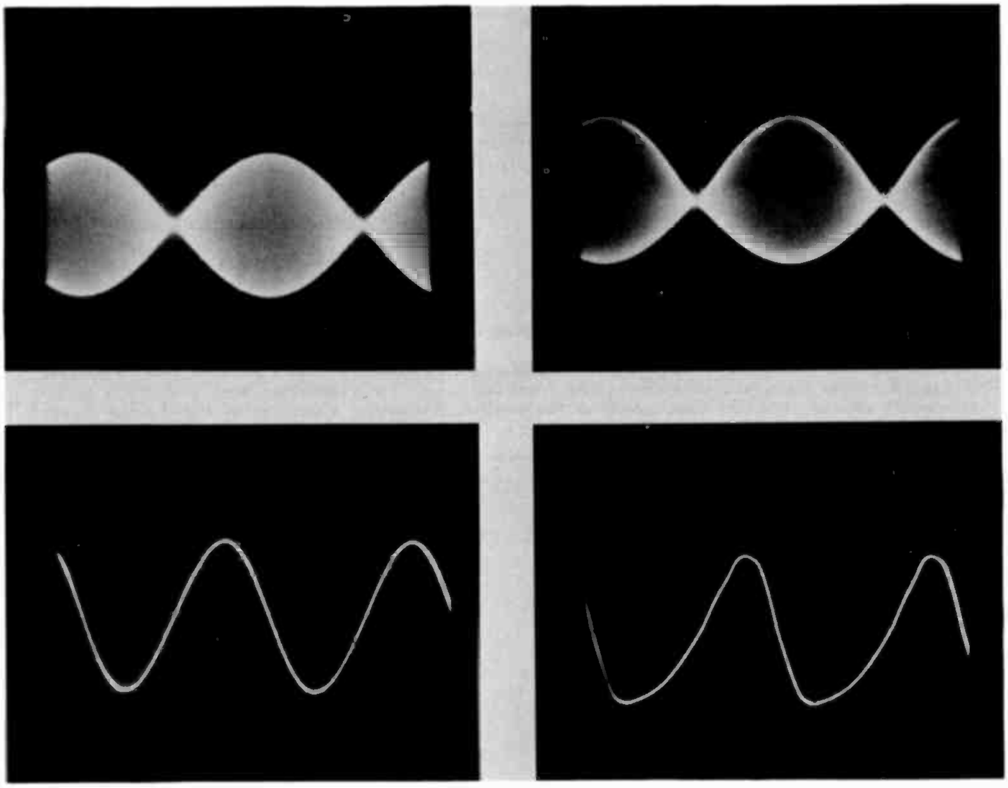


Figure 17

Waveform distortion caused by half-cycle loading at cathode of grounded-grid amplifier may be observed (right) whereas undistorted waveform is observed with tuned cathode circuit (left). Two-tone tests at 2.0 MHz proved the necessity of using a cathode tank circuit for lowest intermodulation distortion.

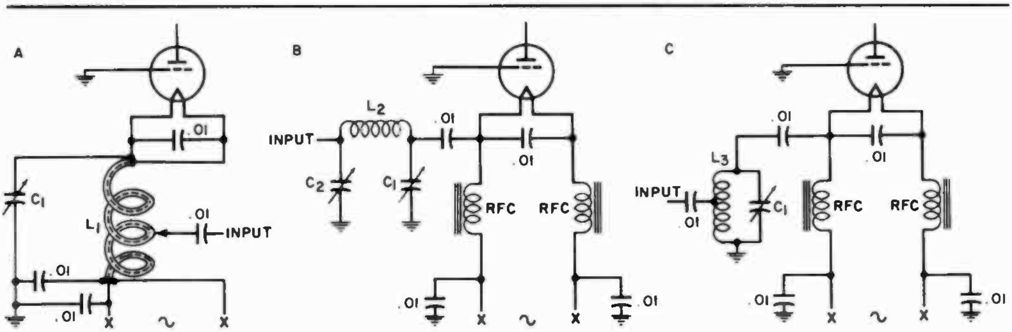


Figure 18

Tuned cathode network for cathode-driven circuit may take form of bifilar coil (A), pi-network (B), or shunt LC circuit (C). Circuit Q of at least 2 is recommended. Capacitor C_1 may be a 3-gang broadcast-type unit. Coils L_1, L_2, or L_3 are adjusted to resonate to the operating frequency with C_1 set to approximately 13 pf-per meter wavelength. Capacitor C_2 is approximately 1.5 times the value of C_1. The input taps on coils L_1 and L_3, or the capacitance of C_2 are adjusted for minimum SWR on coaxial line to the exciter.

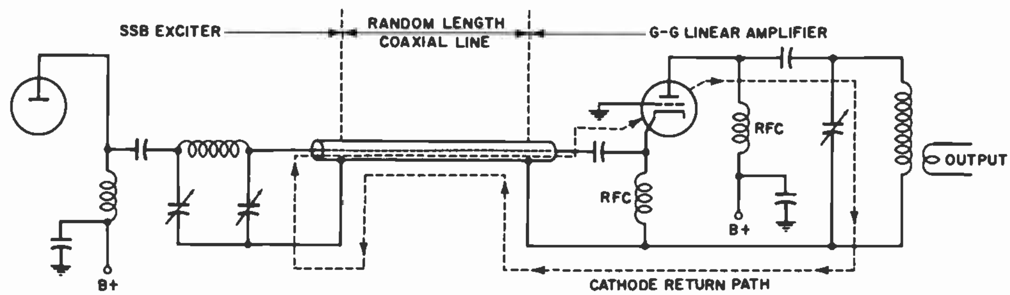


Figure 19

Untuned cathode circuit of grounded-grid amplifier offers high-impedance path to the r-f current flowing between plate and cathode of the amplifier tube. The alternative path is via the interconnecting coaxial line and tank circuit of the exciter. Waveform distortion of the driving signal and high intermodulation distortion may result from use of alternative input circuit.

ties as a result of the harmonic content of the wave. Use of a tuned cathode circuit in the grounded-grid stage will preserve the waveform as shown in the photographs. The tuned cathode circuit need have only a Q of 2 or more to do the job, and should be resonated to the operating frequency of the amplifier. Various versions of cathode tank circuits are shown in figure 18.

In addition to reduction of waveform distortion, the tuned cathode circuit provides a short r-f return path for plate current pulses from plate to cathode (figure 19). When the tuned circuit is not used, the r-f return path is via the outer shield of the coaxial line, through the output capacitor of the exciter plate-tank circuit and back to the cathode of the linear amplifier tube via the center conductor of the coaxial line. This random, uncontrolled path varies with the length of interconnecting coaxial line, and permits the outer shield of the line to be "hot" compared to r-f ground.

7-8 Intermodulation Distortion

If the output signal of a linear amplifier is an exact replica of the exciting signal there will be no distortion of the original signal and no distortion products will be generated in the amplifier. Amplitude distortion of the signal exists when the output signal is not strictly proportional to the driving signal and such a change in magnitude may result in *intermodulation distortion* (IMD). IMD occurs in any nonlinear device driven by a complex signal having more than one frequency. A voice signal (made up of a multiplicity of tones) will become blurred or distorted by IMD when amplified by a nonlinear device. As practical linear amplifiers have some degree of IMD (depending on design and operating parameters) this disagreeable form of distortion exists to a greater or lesser extent on most SSB signals.

A standard test to determine the degree of IMD is the *two-tone test*, wherein two radio-frequency signals of equal amplitude are applied to the linear equipment, and the resulting output signal is examined for spurious signals, or unwanted products. These unwanted signals fall in the fundamental-signal region and in the various harmonic regions of the amplifier. Signals falling outside the fundamental-frequency region are termed *even-order products*, and may be attenuated by high-Q tuned circuits in the amplifier. The spurious products falling close to the fundamental-frequency region are termed *odd-order products*. These unwanted products cannot be removed from the wanted signal by tuned circuits and show up on the signal as "splatter," which can cause severe interference to communication in an adjacent channel. Nonlinear operation of a so-called "linear" amplifier will generate these unwanted products. Amateur practice calls for suppression of these spurious products to better than 30 decibels below peak power level of one tone of a two-tone test signal. Commercial practice demands suppression to be better than 40 decibels below this peak level.

CHAPTER EIGHT

The Oscilloscope

The *cathode-ray oscilloscope* (also called *oscillograph*) is an instrument which permits visual examination of various electrical phenomena of interest to the electronic engineer. Instantaneous changes in voltage, current and phase are observable if they take place slowly enough for the eye to follow, or if they are periodic for a long enough time so that the eye can obtain an impression from the screen of the cathode-ray tube. In addition, the cathode-ray oscilloscope may be used to study any variable (within the limits of its frequency-response characteristic) which can be converted into electrical potentials. This conversion is made possible by the use of some type of *transducer*, such as a vibration pickup unit, pressure pickup unit, photoelectric cell, microphone, or a variable impedance. The use of such a transducer makes the oscilloscope a valuable tool in fields other than electronics.

8-1 A Modern Oscilloscope

For the purpose of analysis, the operation of a modern oscilloscope will be described.

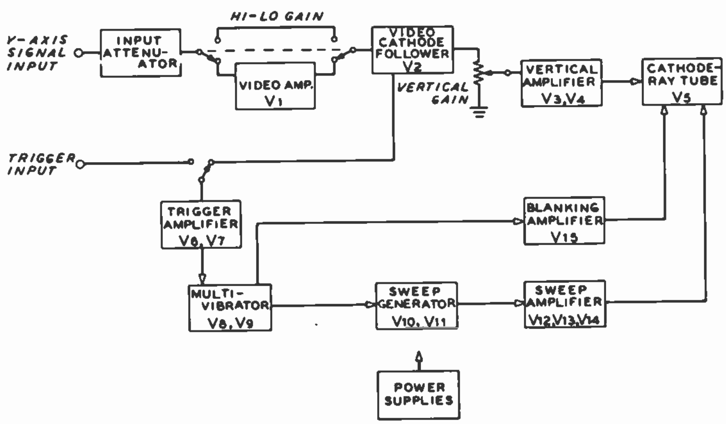


Figure 1

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF A MODERN OSCILLOSCOPE

This simplified block diagram of a Tektronix oscilloscope features triggered sweep and a blanking circuit that permit observation of single pulses as short as 0.1 microsecond.

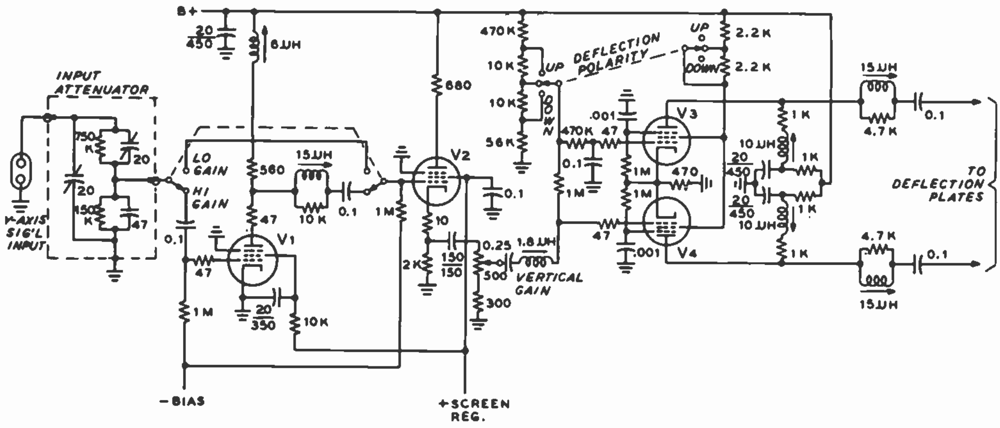


Figure 2

VERTICAL AMPLIFIER

The vertical amplifier is capable of passing sine waves from 10 Hz to 10 MHz. Compensated input attenuator and peaking circuits provide gain that is essentially independent of frequency. Deflection amplifier serves as phase inverter to provide push-pull signal to deflection plates of cathode-ray tube. Deflection polarity switch permits greater upward or downward deflection of pattern to accommodate reversed polarity of input wave.

The simplified block diagram of the instrument is shown in figure 1. This oscilloscope is capable of reproducing sine waves from 10 Hz to 10 MHz and pulses as short as 0.1 microsecond may be observed. The sweep speed is continuously variable, and the electron beam of the cathode-ray tube can be moved vertically or horizontally, or the movements may be combined to produce composite patterns on the screen. As shown in the diagram, the cathode-ray tube receives signals from two sources: the *vertical* (*Y-axis*) the *sweep* (*X-axis*) *amplifiers*, and also receives blanking pulses that remove unwanted return-trace signals from the screen. The operation of the cathode-ray tube has been covered in an earlier chapter and the auxiliary circuits pertaining to signal presentation will be discussed here.

The Vertical Amplifier The incoming signal to be displayed is applied to the vertical amplifier (figure 2). An *input attenuator* (compensated to provide attenuation that is essentially independent of signal frequency) permits the gain of the amplifier to be adjusted in calibrated steps. The signal is then amplified by the wideband (video) preamplifier (V_1), or is shunted around the preamplifier depending on the amount of amplification needed. The preamplifier is designed to pass the wide frequency band desired by the use of *peaking coils* in the plate circuit, which enhance the high-frequency response, in addition to large value coupling capacitors which ensure good low-frequency response (see chapter 6, section 6 *Video Frequency Amplifiers*). The signal then passes through a cathode-follower stage (V_2) to the vertical amplifier. The cathode follower serves as an impedance transformer so that a low-impedance *vertical gain control* may be used. It is necessary that the potentiometer have a low value so that stray capacitances do not appreciably affect the frequency response as the control is rotated. The original deflection polarity of the signal is reversed when two stages of amplification are used, resulting in a downward deflection of the oscilloscope pattern for positive input polarity. A *deflection polarity* switch is used to change the operating bias and screen voltage on the cathode-coupled push-pull vertical amplifier tubes (V_3, V_4) permitting greater undistorted upward or downward deflection. The amplified signal is coupled from the plate circuit of the vertical amplifier through a peaking circuit that affords optimum transient response rather than best frequency response, which has been previously determined in the preamplifier stages.

The Time-Base Circuitry Investigation of electrical waveforms by the use of a cathode-ray tube requires that some means be readily available to determine the variation in these waveforms with respect to time. An X-axis *time base* on the screen of the cathode-ray tube shows the variation in amplitude of the input signal with respect to time. This display is made possible by a *time-base generator (sweep generator*) which moves the spot across the screen at a constant rate from left to right between selected points, returns the spot almost instantaneously to its original position, and repeats this procedure at a specified rate (referred to as the *sweep frequency*).

The Sweep-Trigger Circuit—An external *synchronizing impulse* (which may be the presented signal) initiates the horizontal sweep circuits of the oscilloscope, deflecting the beam of the cathode-ray tube across the screen at uniform rate, starting each sweep in synchronism with the trigger impulse. A *trigger amplifier* (V_6, V_7) enhances the trigger pulse and selects the proper polarity of the pulse. To convert the various shapes of trigger impulses into square waves of controllable duration suitable for operating the sweep generator and unblanking the cathode-ray tube, a *flip-flop multivibrator* type of pulse generator is used (figure 3). The frequency of pulse generation of the multivibrator is controlled by the external negative trigger signal. The multivibrator consists of two tubes (V_8, V_9) with one tube in a conducting state and the other nonconducting. When a trigger impulse is received, the negative pulse lowers the plate potential of the nonconducting tube (V_8) and also decreases the grid bias of V_9 via the switchable coupling capacitor (*sweep-speed* control). The first tube conducts and the second tube is driven toward cutoff by the buildup of voltage in the coupling capacitor between the two tubes. This condition is maintained until the switchable sweep-speed capacitor is discharged, thus raising the grid voltage of V_9 to such a point that the tube starts to conduct. This lowers the plate potential of V_9, carrying with it the direct-coupled grid of V_8 and starting a regenerative cycle which ends with V_9 conducting and V_8 cut off—the condition which existed before the trigger pulse occurred. Thus the plate of V_8 produces a square negative pulse and simultaneously the plate of V_9 produces a square positive pulse. The negative pulse is used to control the operation of the sweep generator and the unblanking circuit of the cathode-ray tube. The positive pulse may be used to furnish gate voltage available at the panel of the instrument to trigger auxiliary circuits.

The Blanking Circuit—During the wait-period between trigger pulses, the bias on the cathode-ray tube is such that the tube is completely cut off. As soon as a trigger appears and the sweep starts, it is necessary to provide a positive pulse on the grid of the cathode-ray tube and thus turn on the electron beam. This pulse must have extremely rapid rise time and a very flat top so that the brightness of the image is uniform. To secure a pulse of this nature, the negative pulse from the multivibrator is passed through a cathode-follower *blanking ampli-*

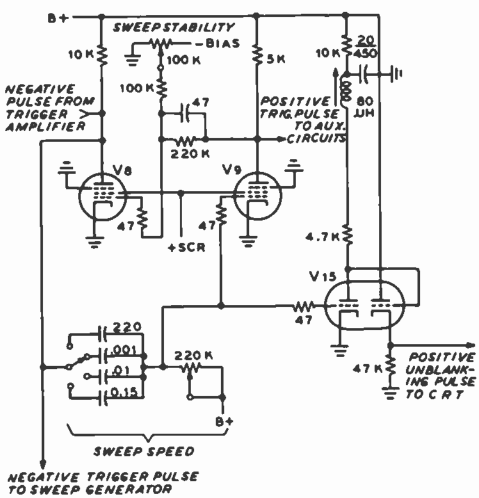


Figure 3

TRIGGER AND UNBLANKING CIRCUIT

Flip-flop multivibrator (V_8, V_9) is triggered externally and generates negative trigger pulse to start sweep generator. Impulse rate is controlled by switchable sweep speed capacitor bank. Positive trigger pulse unblanks cathode-ray tube by reducing cutoff bias on the grid of the cathode ray tube

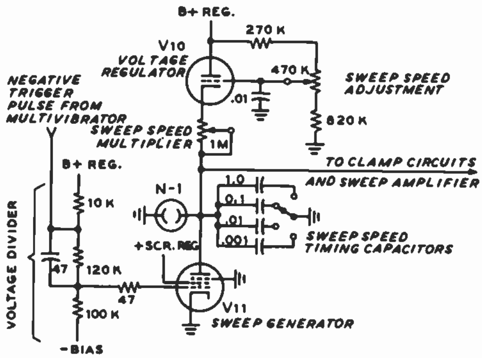


Figure 4

SWEEP GENERATOR

Each sweep of this triggered sweep circuit is started independently of the preceding sweep by a trigger pulse received from the multivibrator circuit. Sweep-speed timing capacitors are ganged with sweep-speed circuit of multivibrator. Timing voltage is derived from voltage regulator to ensure sweep accuracy.

fier (V_{15}) which provides a pulse of proper amplitude and rise time.

The Sweep Generator The voltage necessary to obtain a linear time base may be generated by the circuit of figure 4. In this representative *triggered sweep* circuit each sweep is started independently of the preceding sweep by a trigger, or synchronizing, pulse received from the multivibrator circuit. When no trigger is received the cathode-ray tube potentials position the beam at the left end of the horizontal trace. When the trigger signal arrives, the beam goes linearly to the right in a time interval determined by the length of the trigger pulse. At the end of each sweep, the beam returns to the left of the screen to wait another trigger signal. It is this variable waiting period which makes the sweep time independent of the signal period, permitting the oscilloscope to view pulses and other short duration signals where the length of the pulse is very short compared to the space between the pulses.

Some inexpensive oscilloscopes employ a *recurrent* or *sawtooth* sweep such as that which is generated by a gas tube or other similar device that synchronizes the sweep with the input signal. The sweep time is thus equal to, or a multiple of, the signal period. The circuit of figure 4 may be modified to produce a sawtooth sweep by the omission of the trigger signal and adjustment of the multivibrator frequency to synchronize with the period of the observed signal. The sweep voltage necessary to produce the sawtooth sweep is shown in figure 5. The sweep occurs as the voltage varies from A to B, and the return trace as the voltage varies from B to C. At high sweep frequencies, the return trace is an appreciable portion of the sweep time.

Operation of the Sweep Generator—The sweep generator (V_{11}, figure 4) is held in a conducting state by the positive grid bias derived from the voltage divider in the grid circuit. The plate voltage of the sweep generator is low, and the switchable sweep-speed timing capacitor is essentially uncharged. The negative trigger pulse from the multivibrator rapidly cuts off V_{11} allowing the timing capacitor to charge exponentially through the 1-megohm *sweep-speed multiplier* control, approaching the voltage at the cathode of regulator tube V_{10}. This voltage is adjusted by the *sweep-speed* control in the grid circuit of the regulator tube. The timing capacitor is charged from a constant voltage supply having a low impedance to ensure sweep-speed accuracy. Sweep linearity is enhanced by using only 10 percent or less of the charging voltage. The linear sweep voltage is taken from the plate of the sweep generator, clamped and impressed on the following sweep amplifier.

When the multivibrator trigger pulse ends, the grid of the sweep generator tube returns to a positive potential and the heavy plate current reduces the plate voltage of V_{11} to near zero, discharging the timing

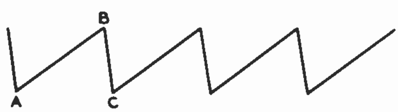


Figure 5

SAWTOOTH WAVEFORM

Recurrent or sawtooth sweep waveform is used in inexpensive oscilloscopes. Sawtooth may be generated by gas sweep tube, such as the 884, and is usually synchronized with input signal.

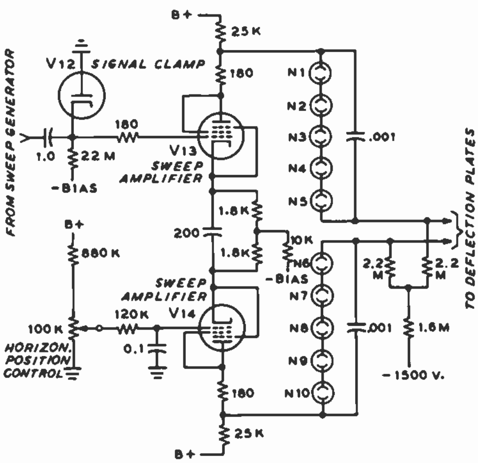


Figure 6

SWEEP AMPLIFIER

Cathode-coupled sweep amplifier provides balanced push-pull signal to deflection plates of cathode-ray tube. Two groups of neon glow lamps pass sweep signal but move average signal potential close to ground by virtue of constant voltage drop across lamps. Ionizing voltage for glow lamps is taken from high-voltage cathode-ray tube power supply.

capacitor and leaving it ready to receive the next sweep pulse from the multivibrator.

The Sweep Amplifier Since the amplitude of the sweep waveform at the output of the sweep generator is not large enough to drive the horizontal deflection plates of the cathode-ray tube, further amplification is needed. The signal from the sweep amplitude is impressed on the grid of a cathode-coupled *sweep amplifier* (V_{13}, V_{14}, figure 6) which inverts the phase and operates as a push-pull stage. Balanced sweep voltage is necessary to maintain the average potential of the deflection plates constant over the entire sweep to prevent defocussing. The *horizontal position control* varies the bias on one amplifier tube and thus determines the position from which the sweep starts. To ensure that the sweep will always start at the same position on the screen each time (for a given setting of the position control) a diode clamp (V_{12}) is placed between the grid of the opposite amplifier tube and ground to remove any charge that the input coupling capacitor may have gained during the previous sweep cycle.

To achieve proper focus on the screen of the cathode-ray tube it is necessary that the final anode and both pairs of deflection plates have approximately the same average potential. Since it is necessary to have the vertical deflection plates at ground potential so a direct connection may be made if desired, the average potential of the horizontal plates must also be near ground. The mean potential of the sweep amplifier plate circuit is about +250 volts. This is moved down to ground by means of the groups of neon glow lamps (N_1—N_{10}) which produce a constant voltage drop. A steady current of about 200 microamperes keeps the lamps ionized so that any change in plate potential of the sweep amplifier tubes (such as caused by signals) appears on the deflection plates unchanged in amplitude, but moved down in potential about 250 volts. The ionizing current is obtained from the −1500 volt cathode-ray tube power supply through a high-resistance network. Since the impedance of the neon glow lamps is rather high at frequencies involving the faster sweeps, small capacitors are shunted across the lamps to pass these frequencies.

The Power Supply The low-voltage power supply provides positive and negative regulated voltages for the various stages of the oscilloscope. The *accelerating potential* for the cathode-ray tube is obtained from an oscillator operating from the low-voltage supply (figure 7). The oscillator is a conventional Hartley circuit, with a high-voltage secondary winding on the oscillator transformer which supplies about 1200 volts rms to the rectifier tubes. Filament voltages for these tubes are also obtained from windings on the oscillator transformer. The frequency of oscillation is about 2000 Hertz.

8-2 Display of Waveforms

Together with a working knowledge of the controls of the oscilloscope, an understanding of how the patterns are traced on the screen must be obtained for a thorough knowledge of oscilloscope operation. With this in mind a careful analysis of two fundamental waveform patterns is discussed under the following headings:

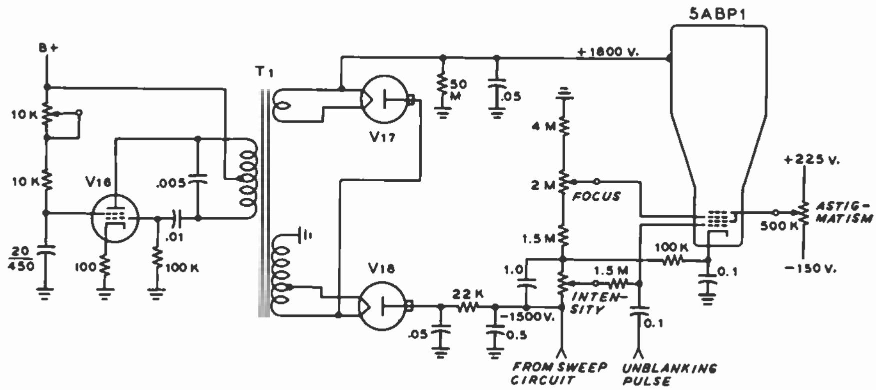


Figure 7

CATHODE-RAY TUBE POWER SUPPLY

Accelerating potential for CRT is derived from a 2-kHz oscillator working from the low-voltage supply. A high-voltage secondary winding on the oscillator transformer provides about 1200 volts rms which is rectified to provide −1500 volts and +1800 volts. Sum of two voltages (3300 volts) is applied to cathode-ray tube.

1. Patterns plotted against time (using the sweep generator for horizontal deflection).
2. *Lissajous figures* (using a sine wave for horizontal deflection).

Patterns Plotted Against Time A sine wave is typical of such a pattern and is convenient for this study. This wave is amplified by the vertical amplifier and impressed on the vertical (Y-axis) deflection plates of the cathode-ray tube. Simultaneously the sawtooth wave from the time-base generator is amplified and impressed on the horizontal (X-axis) deflection plates.

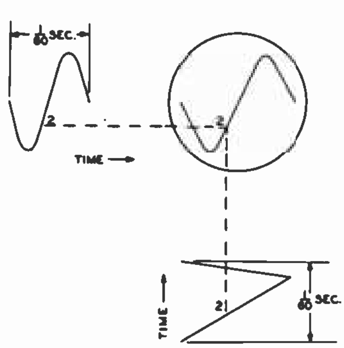


Figure 8

PROJECTION DRAWING OF A SINE WAVE APPLIED TO THE VERTICAL AXIS AND A SAWTOOTH WAVE OF THE SAME FREQUENCY APPLIED SIMULTANEOUSLY ON THE HORIZONTAL AXIS

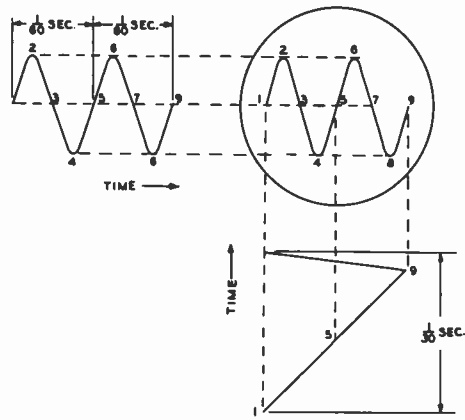


Figure 9

PROJECTION DRAWING SHOWING THE RESULTANT PATTERN WHEN THE FREQUENCY OF THE SAWTOOTH IS ONE-HALF OF THAT EMPLOYED IN FIGURE 8

The electron beam moves in accordance with the resultant of the sine and sawtooth signals. The effect is shown in figure 8 where the sine and sawtooth waves are graphically represented on time and voltage axes. Points on the two waves that occur simultaneously are numbered similarly. For example, point 2 on the sine wave and point 2 on the sawtooth wave occur at the same instant. Therefore the position of the beam at instant 2 is the resultant of the voltages on the horizontal and vertical deflection plates at instant 2. Referring to figure 8, by projecting lines from the two point-2 positions, the position of the electron beam at instant 2 can be located. If projections were drawn from every other instantaneous position of each wave to intersect on the circle representing the tube screen, the intersections of similarly timed projects would trace out a sine wave.

In summation, figure 8 illustrates the principles involved in producing a sine-wave trace on the screen of a cathode-ray tube. Each intersection of similarly timed projections represents the position of the electron beam acting under the influence of the varying voltage waveforms on each pair of deflection plates. Figure 9 shows the effect on the pattern of decreasing the frequency of the sawtooth wave. Any recurrent waveform plotted against time can be displayed and analyzed by the same procedure as used in these examples.

The sine-wave problem just illustrated is typical of the method by which any waveform can be displayed on the screen of the cathode-ray tube. Such waveforms as square wave, sawtooth wave, and many more irregular recurrent waveforms can be observed by the same method explained in the preceding paragraphs.

8-3 Lissajous Figures

Another fundamental pattern is the *Lissajous figures*, named after the 19th-century French scientist. This type of pattern is of particular use in determining the frequency ratio between two sine-wave signals. If one of these signals is known, the other can be easily calculated from the pattern made by the two signals on the screen of the cathode-ray tube. Common practice is to connect the known signal to the horizontal channel and the unknown signal to the vertical channel.

The presentation of Lissajous figures can be analyzed by the same method as previously used for sine-wave presentation. A simple example is shown in figure 10. The frequency ratio of the signal on the horizontal axis to the signal on the vertical axis is 3 to 1. If the known signal on the horizontal axis is 180 Hertz, the signal on the vertical axis is 60 Hertz.

Obtaining a Lissajous Pattern on the Screen; Oscilloscope Settings 1. The horizontal amplifier should be disconnected from the sweep oscillator. The signal to be examined should be connected to the horizontal amplifier of the oscilloscope.

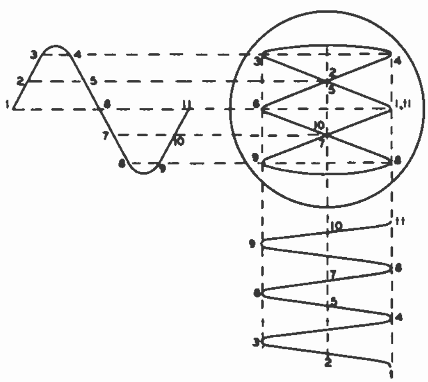


Figure 10

PROJECTION DRAWING SHOWING THE RESULTANT LISSAJOUS PATTERN WHEN A SINE WAVE APPLIED TO THE HORIZONTAL AXIS IS THREE TIMES THAT APPLIED TO THE VERTICAL AXIS

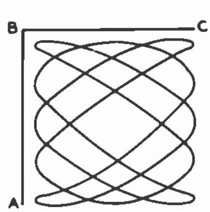


Figure 11

METHOD OF CALCULATING FREQUENCY RATIO OF LISSAJOUS FIGURES

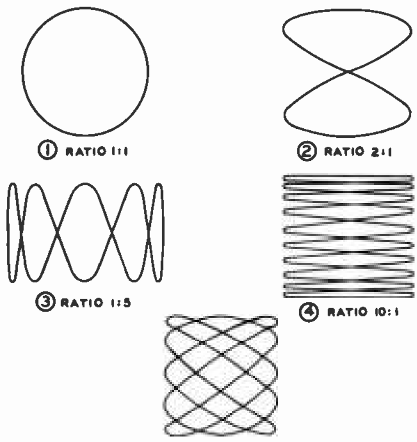


Figure 12

OTHER LISSAJOUS PATTERNS

2. An audio oscillator signal should be connected to the vertical amplifier of the oscilloscope.

3. By adjusting the frequency of the audio oscillator a stationary pattern should be obtained on the screen of the oscilloscope. It is not necessary to stop the pattern, but merely to slow it up enough to count the loops at the side of the pattern.

4. Count the number of loops which intersect an imaginary vertical line *AB* and the number of loops which intersect the imaginary horizontal line *BC* as shown in figure 11. The ratio of the number of loops which intersect *AB* is to the number of loops which intersect *BC* as the frequency of the horizontal signal is to the frequency of the vertical signal.

Figure 12 shows other examples of Lissajous figures. In each case the frequency ratio shown is the frequency ratio of the signal on the horizontal axis to that on the vertical axis.

Phase Difference Patterns Coming under the heading of Lissajous figures is the method used to determine the phase difference between signals of the same frequency. The patterns involved take on the form of ellipses with different degrees of eccentricity.

The following steps should be taken to obtain a phase-difference pattern:

1. With no signal input to the oscilloscope, the spot should be centered on the screen of the tube.
2. Connect one signal to the vertical amplifier of the oscilloscope, and the other signal to the horizontal amplifier.
3. Connect a common ground between the two frequencies under investigation and the oscilloscope.
4. Adjust the vertical amplifier gain so as to give about 3 inches of deflection on a 5-inch tube, and adjust the calibrated scale of the oscilloscope so that

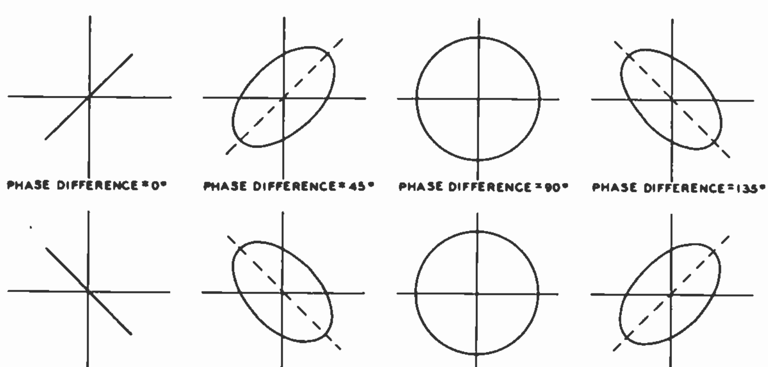


Figure 13

LISSAJOUS PATTERNS OBTAINED FROM THE MAJOR PHASE DIFFERENCE ANGLES

the vertical axis of the scale coincides precisely with the vertical deflection of the spot.

5. Remove the signal from the vertical amplifier, being careful not to change the setting of the vertical gain control.
6. Increase the gain of the horizontal amplifier to give a deflection exactly the same as that to which the vertical amplifier control is adjusted (3 inches). Reconnect the signal to the vertical amplifier.

The resulting pattern will give an accurate picture of the exact phase difference between the two waves. If these two patterns are exactly the same frequency but different in phase and maintain that difference, the pattern on the screen will remain stationary. If, however, one of these frequencies is drifting slightly, the pattern will drift slowly through 360°. The phase angles of 0°, 45°, 90°, 135°, 180°, 225°, 270°, and 315° are shown in figure 13.

Each of the eight patterns in figure 13 can be analyzed separately by the previously used projection method. Figure 14 shows two sine waves which differ in phase being projected on to the screen of the cathode-ray tube. These signals represent a phase difference of 45°. It is extremely important that (1) the spot has been centered on the screen of the cathode-ray tube, (2) that both the horizontal and vertical amplifiers have been adjusted to give exactly the same gain, and

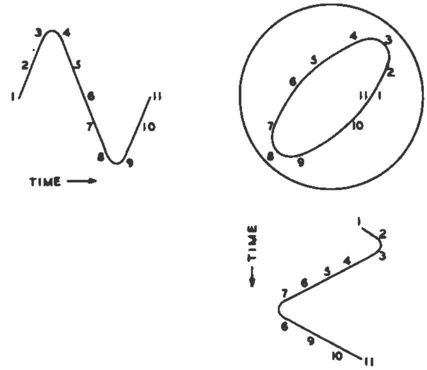


Figure 14

PROJECTION DRAWING SHOWING THE RESULTANT PHASE-DIFFERENCE PATTERN OF TWO SINE WAVES 45° OUT OF PHASE

(3) that the calibrated scale be originally set to coincide with the displacement of the signal along the vertical axis. If the amplifiers of the oscilloscope are not used for conveying the signal to the deflection plates of the cathode-ray tube, the coarse frequency switch should be set to *horizontal input direct* and the vertical input switch to *direct* and the outputs of the two signals must be adjusted to result in exactly the same vertical deflection as horizontal deflection. Once this deflection has been set by either the oscillator output controls or the amplifier

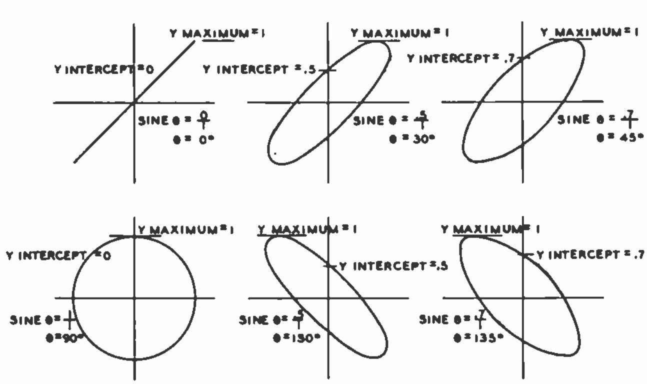


Figure 15

EXAMPLES SHOWING THE USE OF THE INTERCEPT FORMULA FOR DETERMINATION OF PHASE DIFFERENCE

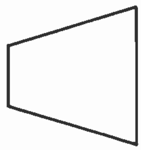


Figure 16
TRAPEZOIDAL MODULATION PATTERN

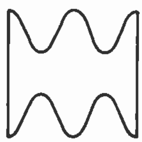


Figure 17
MODULATED CARRIER-WAVE PATTERN

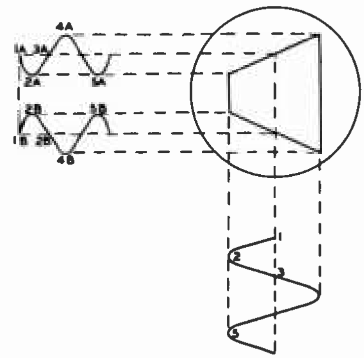


Figure 18
PROJECTION DRAWING SHOWING TRAPEZOIDAL PATTERN

gain controls in the oscillograph, it should not be changed for the duration of the measurement.

Determinination of the Phase Angle The relation commonly used in determining the phase angle between signals is:

$$\text{Sine } \theta = \frac{Y \textit{ intercept}}{Y \textit{ maximum}}$$

where,

θ equals phase angle between signals,

Y *intercept* equals point where ellipse crosses vertical axis measured in tenths of inches (calibrations on the calibrated screen),

Y *maximum* equals highest vertical point on ellipse in tenths of inches.

Several examples of the use of the formula are given in figure 15. In each case the Y *intercept* and Y *maximum* are indicated together with the sine of the angle and the angle itself. For the operator to observe these various patterns with a single signal source such as the test signal, there are many types of phase shifters which can be used. Circuits can be obtained from a number of radio textbooks. The procedure is to connect the original signal to the horizontal channel of the oscilloscope and the signal which has passed through the phase shifter to the vertical channel of the oscilloscope, and follow the procedure set forth in this discussion to observe the various phase-shift patterns.

8-4 Monitoring Transmitter Performance with the Oscilloscope

The oscilloscope may be used as an aid for the proper operation of an a-m transmitter, and may be used as an indicator of the overall performance of the transmitter output signal, and as a modulation monitor.

Waveforms There are two types of patterns that can serve as indicators, the *trapezoidal pattern* (figure 16) and the *modulated-wave pattern* (figure 17). The trapezoidal pattern is presented on the screen by impressing a modulated carrier-wave signal on the vertical deflection plates and the signal that modulates the carrier-wave signal (the modulating signal) on the horizontal deflection plates. The trapezoidal pattern can be analyzed by the method used previously in analyzing waveforms. Figure 18 shows how the signals cause the electron beam to trace out the pattern.

The modulated-wave pattern is accomplished by presenting a modulated carrier wave on the vertical deflection plates and by using the time-base generator for horizontal

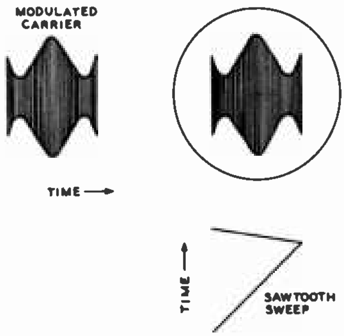


Figure 19

PROJECTION DRAWING SHOWING MODULATED-CARRIER WAVE PATTERN

deflection. The modulated-wave pattern also can be used for analyzing waveforms. Figure 19 shows how the two signals cause the electron beam to trace out the pattern.

The Trapezoidal Pattern The oscilloscope connections for obtaining a trapezoidal pattern are shown in figure 20. A portion of the audio output of the transmitter modulator is applied to the horizontal input of the oscilloscope. The vertical amplifier of the oscilloscope is disconnected, and a small amount of modulated r-f energy is coupled directly to the vertical deflection plates of the oscilloscope. A small pickup loop, loosely coupled to the final amplifier tank circuit and connected to the vertical deflection plates by a short length of coaxial line will suffice. The amount of excitation to the plates of the oscilloscope may be adjusted to provide a pattern of convenient size. On modulation of the transmitter, the trapezoidal pattern will appear. By changing the degree of modulation of the carrier wave the shape of the pattern will change. Figures 21 and 22 show the trapezoidal pattern for various degrees of modulation. The percentage of modulation may be determined by the following formula:

$$\text{Modulation percentage} = \frac{E_{max} - E_{min}}{E_{max} + E_{min}} \times 100$$

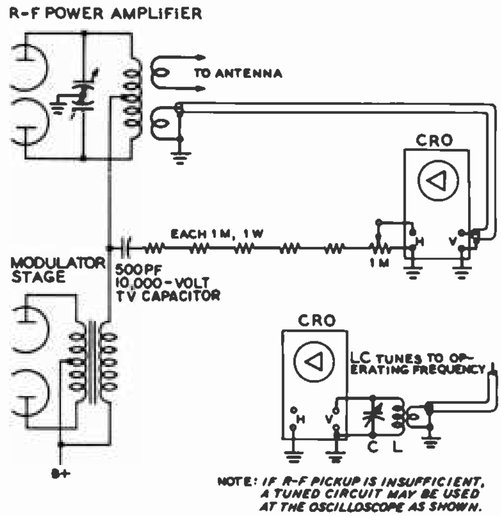


Figure 20

MONITORING CIRCUIT FOR TRAPEZOIDAL MODULATION PATTERN

where,

E_{max} and E_{min} are defined as in figure 21.

An overmodulated signal is shown in figure 23.

The Modulated-Wave Pattern The oscilloscope connections for obtaining a modulated-wave pattern are shown in figure 24. The internal sweep circuit of the oscilloscope is applied to the horizontal plates, and the modulated r-f signal is applied to the vertical plates, as described before. If desired, the internal sweep circuit may be synchronized with the modulating signal of the transmitter by applying a small portion of the modulator output signal to the *external sync* post of the oscilloscope. The percentage of modulation may be determined in the same fashion as with a trapezoidal pattern. Figures 25, 26, and 27 show the modulated-wave pattern for various degrees of modulation.

8-5 Receiver I-F Alignment with an Oscilloscope

The alignment of the i-f amplifiers of a receiver consists of adjusting all the tuned circuits to resonance at the intermediate fre-

TRAPEZOIDAL PATTERNS

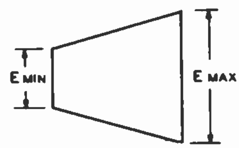


Figure 21

(LESS THAN 100% MODULATION)

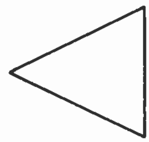


Figure 22

(100% MODULATION)

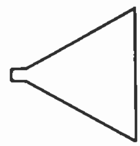


Figure 23

(OVERMODULATION)

quency and at the same time permitting passage of a predetermined number of sidebands. The best indication of this adjustment is a resonance curve representing the response of the i-f circuit to its particular range of frequencies.

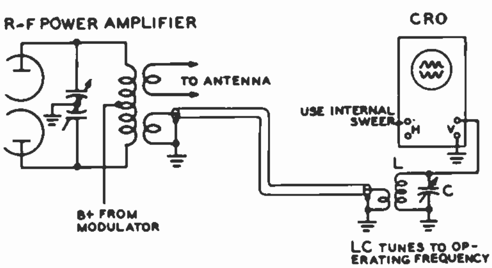


Figure 24

MONITORING CIRCUIT FOR MODULATED-WAVE PATTERN

As a rule medium- and low-priced receivers use i-f transformers whose bandwidth is about 5 kHz on each side of the fundamental frequency. The response curve of these i-f transformers is shown in figure 28. High-fidelity receivers usually contain i-f transformers which have a broader bandwidth which is usually 10 kHz on each side of the fundamental. The response curve for this type transformer is shown in figure 29.

Resonance curves such as these can be displayed on the screen of an oscilloscope. For a complete understanding of the procedure it is important to know how the resonance curve is traced.

The Resonance Curve on the Screen To present a resonance curve on the screen, a frequency-modulated signal source must be available. This signal source is a signal generator whose output is the fundamental i-f frequency which is frequency-modulated 5 to 10 kHz each side of

CARRIER-WAVE PATTERN

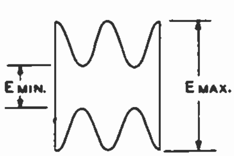


Figure 25

(LESS THAN 100% MODULATION)

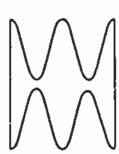


Figure 26

(100% MODULATION)

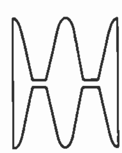


Figure 27

(OVERMODULATION)

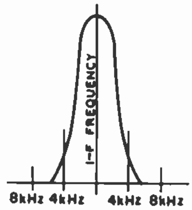


Figure 28

I-F FREQUENCY RESPONSE CURVE OF A LOW PRICED RECEIVER

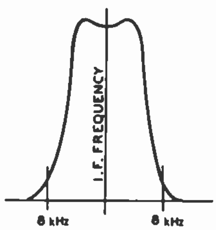


Figure 29

FREQUENCY RESPONSE OF HIGH-FIDELITY I-F SYSTEM

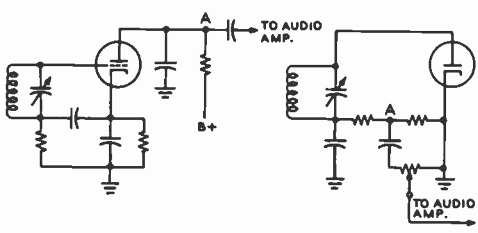


Figure 30

CONNECTION OF THE OSCILLOSCOPE ACROSS THE DETECTOR LOAD

the fundamental frequency. A signal generator of this type generally takes the form of an ordinary signal generator with a rotating motor-driven tuned-circuit capacitor, called a *wobbulator*, or its electronic equivalent, which is a reactance tube.

The method of presenting a resonance curve on the screen is to connect the vertical channel of the oscilloscope across the detector load of the receiver as shown in the

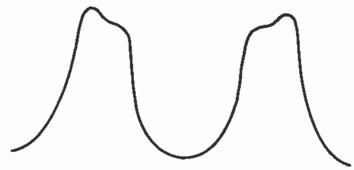


Figure 31

DOUBLE-RESONANCE CURVE

detectors of figure 30 (between point A and ground) and the time-base generator output to the horizontal channel. In this way the d-c voltage across the detector load varies with the frequencies which are passed by the i-f system. Thus, if the time-base generator is set at the frequency of rotation of the motor-driven capacitor, or the reactance tube, a pattern resembling figure 31 (a double resonance curve) appears on the screen.

Figure 31 is explained by considering figure 32. In half a rotation of the motor-driven capacitor the frequency increases from 445 kHz to 465 kHz, more than covering the range of frequencies passed by the i-f system. Therefore, a full resonance curve is presented on the screen during this half rotation since only *half* a cycle of the voltage producing horizontal deflection has transpired. In the second half of the rotation the motor-driven capacitor takes the frequency of the signal in the reverse order through the range of frequencies passed by the i-f system. In this interval the time-base generator sawtooth waveform completes its cycle, drawing the electron beam further across the screen and then returning it to the starting point. Subsequent cycles of the motor-driven capacitor and the sawtooth voltage merely retrace the same pattern. Since the signal being viewed is applied through the vertical amplifier, the sweep can be synchronized internally.

Some signal generators, particularly those employing a reactance tube, provide a sweep output in the form of a sine wave which is synchronized to the frequency with which the reactance tube is swinging the fundamental frequency through its limits, (usually 60 hertz). If such a signal is used for horizontal deflection, it is already synchronized.

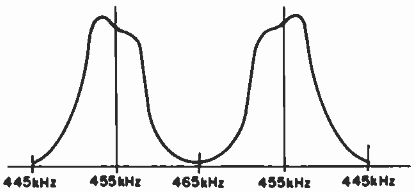


Figure 32

DOUBLE-RESONANCE ACHIEVED BY COMPLETE ROTATION OF THE MOTOR-DRIVEN CAPACITOR

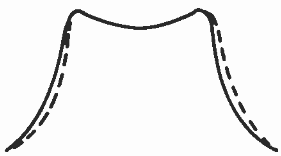


Figure 33

SUPERPOSITION OF RESONANCE CURVES

Since this signal is a sine wave, the response curve is observed as it sweeps the spot across the screen from left to right; and it is observed again as the sine wave sweeps the spot back again from right to left. Under these conditions the two response curves are superimposed on each other and the high-frequency responses of both curves are at one end and the low-frequency response of both curves is at the other end. The i-f trimmer capacitors are adjusted to produce a response curve which is symmetrical on each side of the fundamental frequency.

When using sawtooth sweep, the two response curves can also be superimposed. If the sawtooth signal is generated at exactly twice the frequency of rotation of the motor-driven capacitor, the two resonance curves will be superimposed (figure 33) if the i-f transformers are properly tuned. If the two curves do not coincide the i-f trimmer capacitors should be adjusted. At the point of coincidence the tuning is correct. It should be pointed out that rarely do the two curves agree perfectly. As a result, optimum adjustment is made by making the peaks coincide. This latter procedure is the one generally used in i-f adjustment. When the

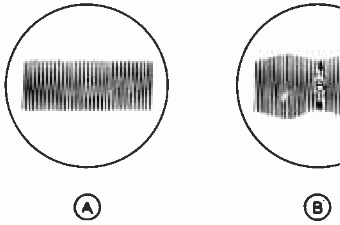


Figure 34

SINGLE-TONE PRESENTATION

Oscilloscope trace of SSB signal modulated by single tone (A). Incomplete carrier supression or spurious products will show modulated envelope of (B). The ratio of supression is:

$$S = 20 \log \frac{A+B}{A-B}$$

two curves coincide, it is evident that the i-f system responds equally to signals higher and lower than the fundamental i-f frequency.

8-6 Single-Sideband Applications

Measurement of power output and distortion are of particular importance in SSB transmitter adjustment. These measurements are related to the extent that distortion rises rapidly when the power amplifier is overloaded. The usable power output of an SSB transmitter is often defined as the maximum peak envelope power obtainable with a specified *signal-to-distortion* ratio. The oscilloscope is a useful instrument for measuring and studying distortion of all types that may be generated in single-sideband equipment.

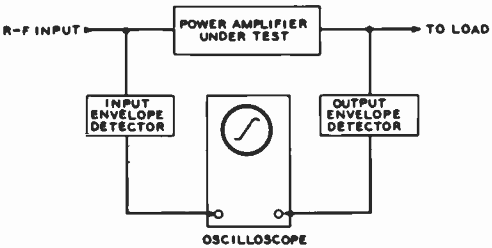


Figure 35

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF LINEARITY TRACER

Single-Tone Observations When an SSB transmitter is modulated with a single audio tone, the r-f output should be a single radio frequency. If the vertical plates of the oscilloscope are coupled to the output of the transmitter, and the horizontal amplifier sweep is set to a slow rate, the scope presentation will be as shown in figure 34. If unwanted distortion products or carrier are present, the top and bottom of the pattern will develop a "ripple" proportional to the degree of spurious products.

The Linearity Tracer The *linearity tracer* is an auxiliary detector to be used with an oscilloscope for quick observation of amplifier adjustments and parameter variations. This instrument consists of two SSB *envelope detectors* the outputs of which connect to the horizontal and vertical inputs of an oscilloscope. Figure 35 shows a block diagram of a typical linearity test setup. A two-tone test signal is normally employed to supply an SSB modulation envelope, but any modulating signal that provides an envelope that varies from zero to full amplitude may be used. Speech modulation gives a satisfactory trace, so that this instrument may be used as a visual monitor of transmitter linearity. It is particularly useful for monitoring the signal level and clearly shows when the amplifier under observation is overloaded. The linearity trace will be a straight line regardless of the envelope shape if the amplifier has no distortion. Overloading causes a sharp break in the linearity curve. Distortion due to too much bias is also easily observed and the adjustment for low distortion can easily be made.

Another feature of the linearity detector is that the distortion of each individual stage can be observed. This is helpful in troubleshooting. By connecting the input envelope detector to the output of the SSB generator, the over-all distortion of the entire r-f circuit beyond this point is observed. The unit can also serve as a voltage indicator which is useful in making tuning adjustments.

The circuit of a typical envelope detector is shown in figure 36. Two matched germanium diodes are used as detectors. The detectors are not linear at low signal levels, but if the nonlinearity of the two detectors is matched, the effect of their nonlinearity on

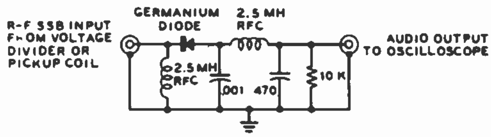


Figure 36

SCHEMATIC OF ENVELOPE DETECTOR

the oscilloscope trace is cancelled. The effect of diode differences is minimized by using a diode load of 5000 to 10,000 ohms, as shown. It is important that both detectors operate at approximately the same signal level so that their differences will cancel more exactly. The operating level should be 1 volt or higher.

It is convenient to build the detector in a small shielded enclosure such as an i-f transformer can fitted with coaxial input and output connectors. Voltage dividers can be similarly constructed so that it is easy to insert the desired amount of voltage attenuation from the various sources. In some cases it is convenient to use a pickup loop on the end of a short length of coaxial cable.

The phase shift of the amplifiers in the oscilloscope should be the same and their frequency response should be flat out to at least twenty times the frequency difference of the two test tones. Excellent high-frequency characteristics are necessary because the rectified SSB envelope contains harmonics extending to the limit of the envelope detector's response. Inadequate frequency response of the vertical amplifier may cause a little "foot" to appear on the lower end of the trace, as shown in figure 37. If it is small, it may be safely neglected.

Another spurious effect often encountered is a double trace, as shown in figure 38. This can usually be corrected with an RC network placed between one detector and the oscilloscope. The best method of testing the detectors and the amplifiers is to connect the input of the envelope detectors in parallel. A perfectly straight line trace will result when everything is working properly. One detector is then connected to the other r-f source through a voltage divider adjusted so that no appreciable change in the setting of

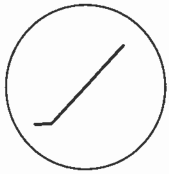


Figure 37

EFFECT OF INADEQUATE RESPONSE OF VERTICAL AMPLIFIER

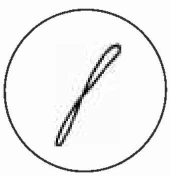


Figure 38

DOUBLE TRACE CAUSED BY PHASE SHIFT

the oscilloscope amplifier controls is required. Figure 39 illustrates some typical linearity traces. *Trace A* is caused by inadequate static plate current in class-A or class-B amplifiers or a mixer stage. To regain linearity, the grid bias of the stage should be reduced, the screen voltage should be raised, or the signal level should be decreased. *Trace B* is a result of poor grid-circuit regulation when grid current is drawn, or a result of

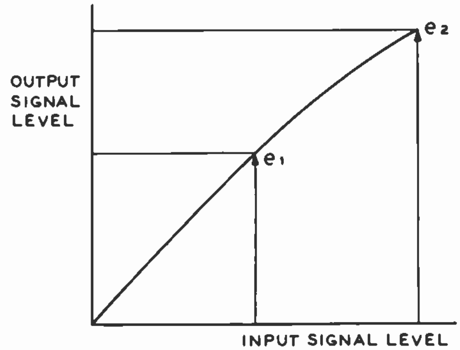


Figure 40

ORDINATES ON LINEARITY CURVE FOR 3RD-ORDER DISTORTION EQUATION

nonlinear plate characteristics of the amplifier tube at large plate swings. More grid swamping should be used, or the exciting signal should be reduced. A combination of the effects of A and B are shown in *Trace C*. *Trace D* illustrates amplifier overloading. The exciting signal should be reduced.

A means of estimating the distortion level observed is quite useful. The first- and third-order distortion components may be derived by an equation that will give the approximate signal-to-distortion level ratio of a *two-tone* test signal, operating on a given linearity curve. Figure 40 shows a linearity curve with two ordinates erected at half and full peak input signal level. The length of the ordinates e_1 and e_2 may be scaled and used in the following equation:

Signal-to-distortion ratio in db =

$$20 \log \frac{3\,e_1 - e_2}{2\,e_1 - e_2}$$

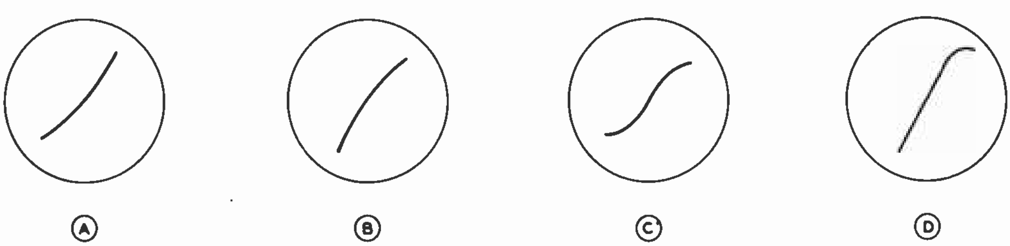


Figure 39

TYPICAL LINEARITY TRACES

CHAPTER NINE

Special Vacuum-Tube Circuits

A whole new concept of vacuum-tube applications has been developed in recent years. No longer are vacuum tubes chained to the field of communication. This chapter is devoted to some of the more common circuits encountered in industrial and military applications of the vacuum tube.

9-1 Limiting Circuits

The term *limiting* refers to the removal or suppression, by electronic means, of the extremities of an electronic signal. Circuits which perform this function are referred to as *limiters* or *clippers*. Limiters are useful in waveshaping circuits where it is desirable to square off the extremities of the applied signal. A sine wave may be applied to a limiter circuit to produce a rectangular wave. A peaked wave may be applied to a limiter circuit to eliminate either the positive or negative peaks from the output. Limiter circuits are employed in f-m receivers where it is necessary to limit the amplitude of the signal applied to the detector. Limiters may be used to reduce automobile ignition noise in short-wave receivers, or to maintain a high average level of modulation in a transmitter. They may also be used as protective devices to limit input signals to special circuits.

Diode Limiters The characteristics of a diode tube are such that the tube conducts only when the plate is at a positive potential with respect to the cathode. A positive potential may be placed on the cathode, but the tube will not conduct until the voltage on the plate rises above an equally positive value. As the plate becomes more positive with respect to the cathode, the diode conducts and passes that portion of the wave which is more positive than the cathode voltage. Diodes may be used as either series or parallel limiters, as shown in figure 1. A diode may be so biased that only a certain portion of the positive or negative cycle is removed.

Audio Peak Limiting An audio peak clipper consisting of two diode limiters may be used to limit the amplitude of an audio signal to a predetermined value to provide a high average level of modulation without danger of overmodulation. An effective limiter for this service is the *series-diode gate clipper*. A circuit of this clipper is shown in figure 2. The audio signal to be clipped is coupled to the clipper through C_1. R_1 and R_2 are the clipper input and output load resistors. The clipper plates are tied together and are connected to the clipping level control (R_4) through series resistor R_3. R_4 acts as a voltage divider between the high-voltage supply and ground. The exact point at which clipping will occur is set by R_4, which controls the positive potential applied to the diode plates.

Under static conditions, a d-c voltage is obtained from R_4 and applied through R_3 to both plates of the 6AL5 tube. Current

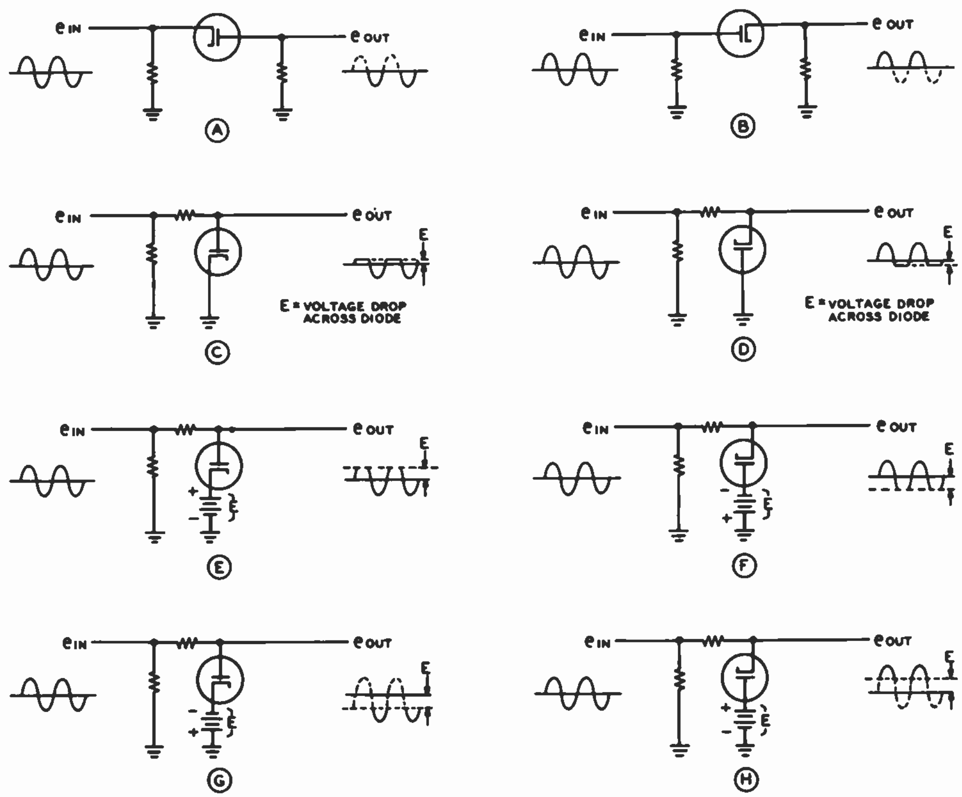


Figure 1

VARIOUS DIODE LIMITING CIRCUITS

Series diodes limiting positive and negative peaks are shown in A and B. Parallel diodes limiting positive and negative peaks are shown in C and D. Parallel diodes limiting above and below ground are shown in E and F. Parallel-diode limiters which pass negative and positive peaks are shown in G and H.

flows through R_4, R_3, and divides through the the two diode sections of the 6AL5 and the two load resistors (R_1 and R_2). All parts of the clipper circuit are maintained at a positive potential above ground. The voltage drop between the plate and cathode of each diode is very small compared to the drop across the 300,000-ohm resistor (R_3) in series with the diode plates. The plate and cathode of each diode are therefore maintained at approximately equal potentials as long as there is plate-current flow. Clipping does not occur until the peak audio-input voltage reaches a value greater than the static voltages at the plates of the diode.

Assume that R_4 has been set to a point that will give 4 volts at the plates of the 6AL5. When the peak audio-input voltage is less than 4 volts, both halves of the tube conduct at all times. As long as the tube conducts, its resistance is very low compared with plate resistor R_3. Whenever a voltage change occurs across input resistor R_1, the voltage at all of the tube elements increases or decreases by the same amount as the input voltage changes, and the voltage drop across R_3 changes by an equal amount. As long as the peak input voltage is less than 4 volts, the 6AL5 acts merely as a conductor, and the output cathode is permitted to follow all voltage changes at the input cathode.

If, under static conditions, 4 volts appear at the diode plates, then twice this voltage (8 volts) will appear if one of the diode circuits is opened, thus removing its d-c load from the circuit. As long as only one of the diodes

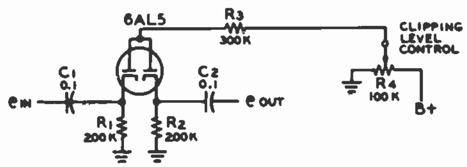


Figure 2

THE SERIES-DIODE GATE CLIPPER FOR AUDIO PEAK LIMITING

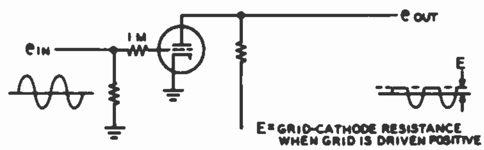


Figure 3

GRID LIMITING CIRCUIT

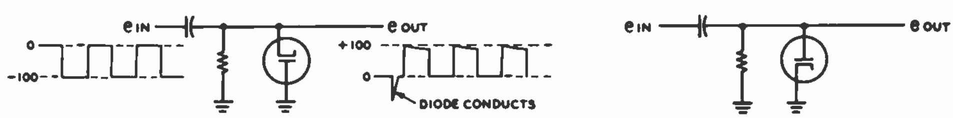
continues to conduct, the voltage at the diode plates cannot rise above twice the voltage selected by R_4. In this example, the voltage cannot rise above 8 volts. Now, if the input audio voltage applied through C_1 is increased to any peak value between zero and + 4 volts, the first cathode of the 6AL5 will increase in voltage by the same amount to the proper value between 4 and 8 volts. The other tube elements will assume the same potential as the first cathode. However, the 6AL5 plates cannot increase more than 4 volts above their original 4-volt static level. When the input voltage to the first cathode of the 6AL5 increases to more than + 4 volts, the cathode potential increases to more than 8 volts. Since the plate circuit potential remains at 8 volts, the first diode section ceases to conduct until the input voltage across R_1 drops below 4 volts.

When the input voltage swings in a negative direction, it will subtract from the 4-volt drop across R_1 and decrease the voltage on the input cathode by an amount equal to the input voltage. The plates and the output cathode will follow the voltage level at the input cathode as long as the input voltage does not swing below − 4 volts. If the input voltage does not change more than 4 volts in a negative direction, the plates of the 6AL5 will also become negative. The potential at the output cathode will follow the input cathode voltage and decrease from its normal value of 4 volts until it reaches zero potential. As the input cathode voltage decreases to less than zero, the plates will follow. However, the output cathode, grounded through R_2, will stop at zero potential as the plate becomes negative. Conduction through the second diode is impossible under these conditions. The output cathode remains at zero potential until the voltage at the input cathode swings back to zero.

The voltage developed across output resistor R_2 follows the input voltage variations as long as the input voltage does not swing to a peak value greater than the static voltage at the diode plates, which is determined by R_4. Effective clipping may thus be obtained at any desired level.

The square-topped audio waves generated by this clipper are high in harmonic content, but these higher-order harmonics may be greatly reduced by a low-level speech filter.

Grid Limiters A triode grid limiter is shown in figure 3. On positive peaks of the input signal, the triode grid attempts to swing positive, and the grid-cathode resistance drops to about 1000 ohms or so. The voltage drop across the series grid resistor



Ⓐ POSITIVE CLAMPING CIRCUIT

Ⓑ NEGATIVE CLAMPING CIRCUIT

Figure 4

SIMPLE POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE CLAMPING CIRCUITS

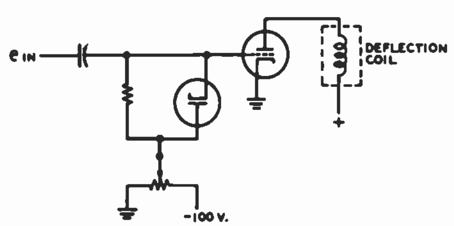


Figure 5

NEGATIVE CLAMPING CIRCUIT EMPLOYED IN ELECTROMAGNETIC SWEEP SYSTEM

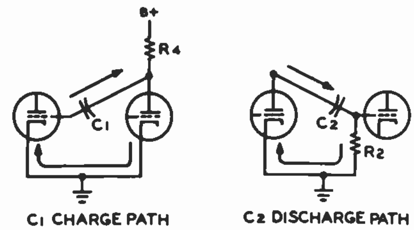


Figure 7

THE CHARGE AND DISCHARGE PATHS IN THE FREE-RUNNING MULTIVIBRATOR OF FIGURE 6

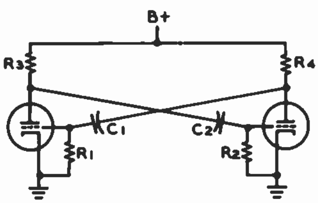


Figure 6

BASIC MULTIVIBRATOR CIRCUITS

(usually of the order of 1 megohm) is large compared to the grid-cathode drop, and the resulting limiting action removes the top part of the positive input wave.

9-2 Clamping Circuits

A circuit which holds either amplitude extreme of a waveform to a given reference level of potential is called a *clamping circuit* or a *d-c restorer*. Clamping circuits are used after RC-coupling circuits where the waveform swing is required to be either above or below the reference voltage, instead of alternating on both sides of it (figure 4). Clamping circuits are usually encountered in oscilloscope sweep circuits. If the sweep voltage does not always start from the same reference point, the trace on the screen does not begin at the same point on the screen each time the sweep is repeated and therefore is "jittery." If a clamping circuit is placed between the sweep amplifier and the deflection element, the start of the sweep can be regulated by adjusting the d-c voltage applied to the clamping tube (figure 5).

9-3 Multivibrators

The *multivibrator*, or *relaxation oscillator*, is used for the generation of nonsinusoidal waveforms. The output is rich in harmonics,

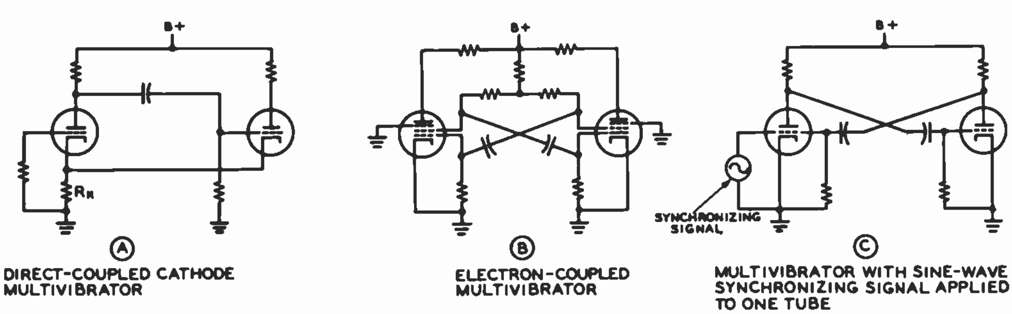
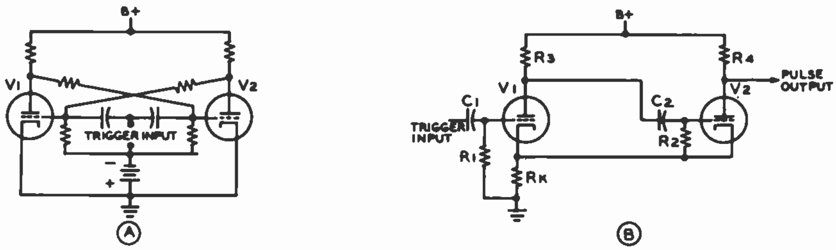


Figure 8

VARIOUS TYPES OF MULTIVIBRATOR CIRCUITS



Ⓐ BASIC ECCLES-JORDAN TRIGGER CIRCUIT

Ⓑ ONE-SHOT MULTIVIBRATOR

Figure 9

ECCLES-JORDAN MULTIVIBRATOR CIRCUITS

but the inherent frequency stability is poor. The multivibrator may be stabilized by the introduction of synchronizing voltages of harmonic or subharmonic frequency.

In its simplest form, the multivibrator is a simple two-stage RC-coupled amplifier with the output of the second stage coupled through a capacitor to the grid of the first tube, as shown in figure 6. Since the output of the second stage is of the proper polarity to reinforce the input signal applied to the first tube, oscillations can readily take place, started by thermal-agitation and miscellaneous tube noise. Oscillation is maintained by the process of building up and discharging the store of energy in the grid-coupling capacitors of the two tubes. The charging and discharging paths are shown in figure 7. Various types of multivibrators are shown in figure 8.

The output of a multivibrator may be used as a source of square waves, as an electronic switch, or as a means of obtaining frequency division. Submultiple frequencies as low as one-tenth of the injected synchronizing frequency may easily be obtained.

The Eccles-Jordan Circuit The *Eccles-Jordan* trigger circuit is shown in figure 9A. This is not a true multivibrator, but rather a circuit that possesses two conditions of stable equilibrium. One condition is when V_1 is conducting and V_2 is cutoff; the other when V_2 is conducting and V_1 is cutoff. The circuit remains in one or the other of these two stable conditions with no change in operating potentials until some external action occurs which causes the nonconducting tube to conduct. The tubes then reverse their functions and remain in the new condition as long as no plate current flows in the cut-off tube. This type of circuit is known as a *flip-flop* circuit.

Figure 9B illustrates a modified Eccles-Jordan circuit which accomplishes a complete cycle when triggered by a positive pulse. Such a circuit is called a *one-shot* multivibrator. For initial action, V_1 is cut off and V_2 is conducting. A large positive

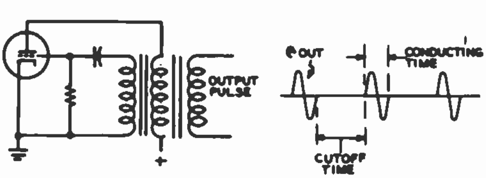


Figure 10

SINGLE-SWING BLOCKING OSCILLATOR

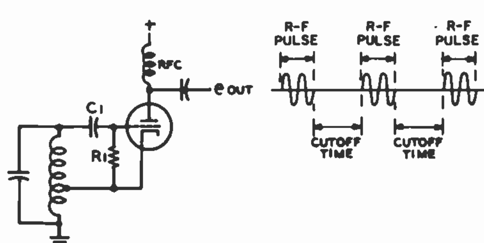


Figure 11

HARTLEY OSCILLATOR USED AS BLOCKING OSCILLATOR BY PROPER CHOICE OF R_1 C_1

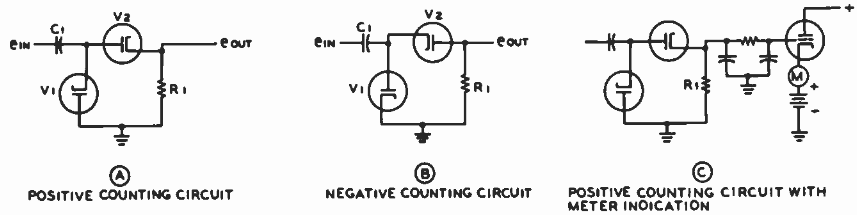


Figure 12

POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE COUNTING CIRCUITS

pulse applied to the grid of V_1 causes this tube to conduct, and the voltage at its plate decreases by virtue of the IR drop through R_3. Capacitor C_2 is charged rapidly by this abrupt change in V_1 plate voltage, and V_2 becomes cut off while V_1 conducts. This condition exists until C_2 discharges, allowing V_2 to conduct, raising the cathode bias of V_1 until it is once again cut off.

A direct-cathode-coupled multivibrator is shown in figure 8A. R_K is a common cathode resistor for the two tubes, and coupling takes place across this resistor. It is impossible for a tube in this circuit to completely cut off the other tube, and a circuit of this type is called a *free-running* multivibrator in which the condition of one tube temporarily cuts off the other.

9-4 The Blocking Oscillator

A *blocking oscillator* is any oscillator which cuts itself off after one or more cycles caused by the accumulation of a negative charge on the grid capacitor. This negative charge may gradually be drained off through the grid resistor of the tube, allowing the circuit to oscillate once again. The process is repeated and the tube becomes an intermittent oscillator. The rate of such an occurrence is determined by the RC time constant of the grid circuit. A *single-swing blocking oscillator* is shown in figure 10, wherein the tube is cut off before the completion of one cycle. The tube produces single pulses of energy, the time between the pulses being regulated by the discharge time of the grid RC network. The *self-pulsing* blocking oscillator is shown in figure 11, and is used to produce pulses of r-f energy, the number of pulses being determined by the timing network in the grid circuit of the oscillator. The rate at which these pulses occur is know as the *pulse-repetition frequency,* or *p.r.f.*

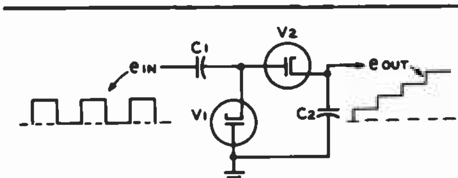


Figure 13

STEP-BY-STEP COUNTING CIRCUIT

9-5 Counting Circuits

A *counting circuit,* or *frequency divider,* is one which receives uniform pulses (representing units to be counted) and produces a voltage that is proportional to the frequency of the pulses. A counting circuit may be

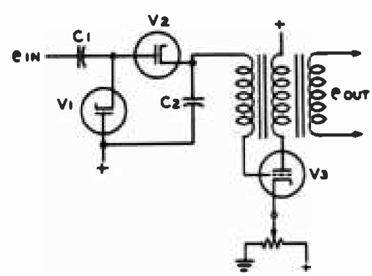


Figure 14

THE STEP-BY-STEP COUNTER USED TO TRIGGER A BLOCKING OSCILLATOR. THE BLOCKING OSCILLATOR SERVES AS A FREQUENCY DIVIDER.

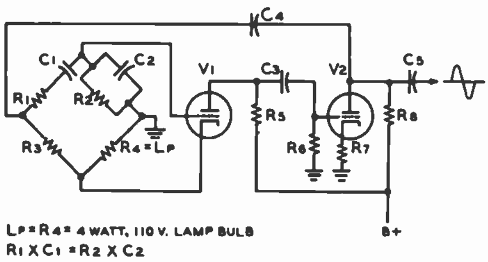


Figure 15

THE WIEN-BRIDGE AUDIO OSCILLATOR

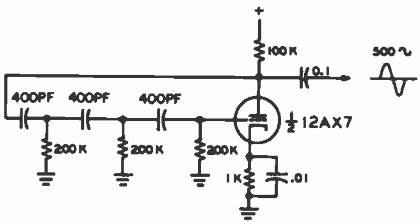


Figure 16

THE PHASE-SHIFT OSCILLATOR

used in conjunction with a blocking oscillator to produce a trigger pulse which is a submultiple of the frequency of the applied pulse. Either positive or negative pulses may be counted. A positive counting circuit is shown in figure 12A, and a negative counting circuit is shown in figure 12B. The positive counter allows a certain amount of current to flow through R_1 each time a pulse is applied to C_1.

The positive pulse charges C_1, and makes the plate of V_2 positive with respect to its cathode. V_2 conducts until the exciting pulse passes. C_1 is then discharged by V_1, and the circuit is ready to accept another pulse. The average current flowing through R_1 increases as the pulse-repetition frequency increases, and decreases as the p.r.f. decreases.

By reversing the diode connections, as shown in figure 12B, the circuit is made to respond to negative pulses. In this circuit, an increase in the p.r.f. causes a decrease in the average current flowing through R_1, which is opposite to the effect in the positive counter.

A *step-counter* is similar to the circuits discussed, except that a capacitor which is large compared to C_1 replaces the diode load resistor. The charge of this capacitor is increased during the time of each pulse, producing a step voltage across the output (figure 13). A blocking oscillator may be connected to a step counter, as shown in figure 14. The oscillator is triggered into operation when the voltage across C_2 reaches a point sufficiently positive to raise the grid of V_3 above cutoff. Circuit parameters may be chosen so that a count division up to 1/20 may be obtained with reliability.

9-6 Resistance-Capacitance Oscillators

In an *RC oscillator,* the frequency is determined by a resistance capacitance network that provides regenerative coupling between the output and input of a feedback amplifier. No use is made of a tank circuit consisting of inductance and capacitance to control the frequency of oscillation.

The *Wien-Bridge* oscillator employs a *Wien network* in the RC feedback circuit and is shown in figure 15. Tube V_1 is the oscillator tube, and tube V_2 is an amplifier and phase-inverter tube. Since the feedback voltage through C_4 produced by V_2 is in phase with the input circuit of V_1 at all frequencies, oscillation is maintained by voltages of any frequency that exist in the circuit. The bridge circuit is used, then, to eliminate feedback voltages of all frequencies except the single frequency desired at the output of the oscillator. The bridge allows a voltage of only one frequency to be effective in the circuit because of the degeneration and phase shift provided by this circuit. The frequency at which oscillation occurs is:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi R_1 C_1}$$

when,

$R_1 \times C_1$ equals $R_2 \times C_2$

A lamp (L_p) is used for the cathode resistor of V_1 as a thermal stabilizer of the oscillator amplitude. The variation of the resistance with respect to the current of the lamp bulb holds the oscillator output voltage at a nearly constant amplitude.

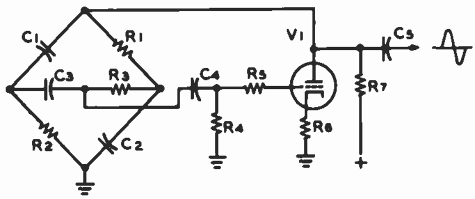


Figure 17

THE BRIDGE-TYPE PHASE-SHIFT OSCILLATOR

The *phase-shift oscillator* shown in figure 16 is a single-tube oscillator using a three-section phase-shift network. Each section of the network produces a phase shift in proportion to the frequency of the signal that passes through it. For oscillations to be produced, the signal from the plate of the tube must be shifted 180°. Three successive phase shifts of 60° accomplish this, and the frequency of oscillation is determined by this phase shift.

A high-μ triode or a pentode must be used in this circuit. In order to increase the frequency of oscillation, either the resistance or the capacitance must be decreased by an appropriate amount.

A *bridge-type phase-shift oscillator* is shown in figure 17. The bridge is so proportioned that only at one frequency is the phase shift through the bridge equal to 180°. Voltages of other frequencies are fed back to the grid of the tube out of phase with the existing grid signal, and are cancelled by being amplified out of phase.

The *Bridge-T oscillator* developed by the National Bureau of Standards consists of a two-stage amplifier having two feedback loops, as shown in figure 18. Loop 1 consists of a regenerative cathode-to-cathode loop, consisting of L_{p1} and C_3. The bulb regulates the positive feedback, and tends to stabilize the output of the oscillator, much as in the manner of the Wien circuit. Loop 2 consists of a grid-cathode degenerative circuit, containing the Bridge-T.

Oscillation will occur at the null frequency of the bridge, at which frequency the bridge allows minimum degeneration in loop 2 (figure 19).

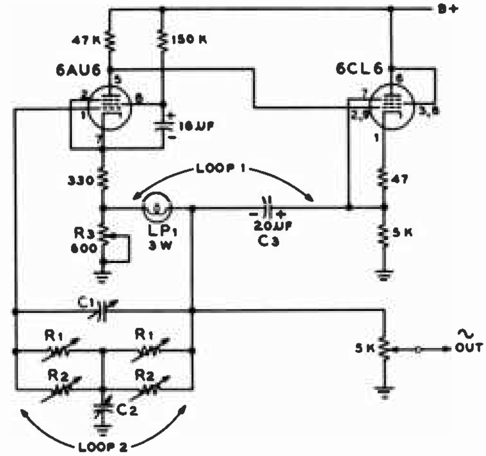


Figure 18

THE NBS BRIDGE-T OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT EMPLOYS TWO FEEDBACK LOOPS. LOOP 1 IS REGENERATIVE, LOOP 2 IS DEGENERATIVE

9-7 Feedback

Feedback amplifiers have been discussed in Chapter 6, section 15 of this Handbook. A more general use of feedback is in automatic control and regulating systems.

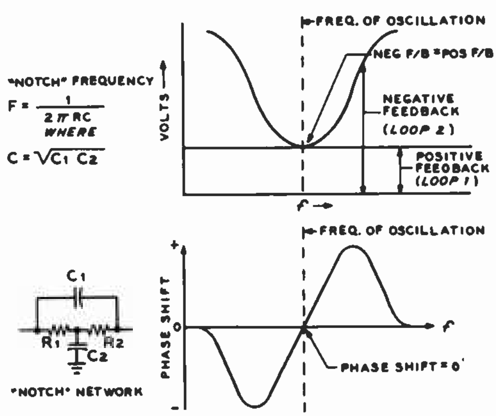


Figure 19

BRIDGE-T FEEDBACK LOOP CIRCUITS

Oscillation will occur at the null frequency of the bridge, at which frequency the bridge allows minimum degeneration in loop 2.

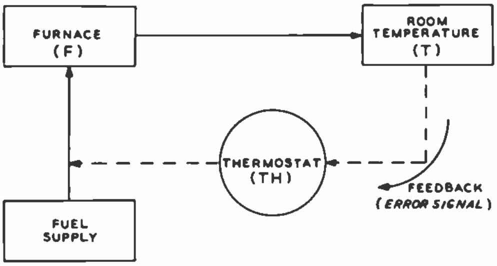


Figure 20

SIMPLE CLOSED-LOOP FEEDBACK SYSTEM

Room temperature (T) controls fuel supply to furnace (F) by feedback loop through thermostat (TH) control.

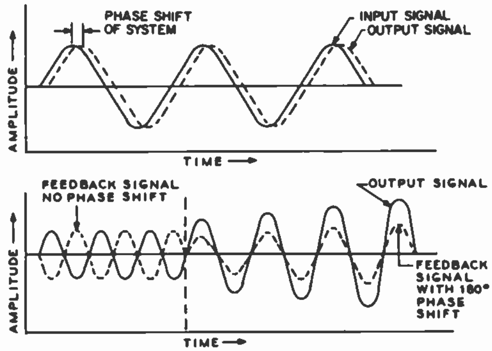


Figure 21

PHASE SHIFT OF ERROR SIGNAL MAY CAUSE OSCILLATION IN CLOSED LOOP SYSTEM

To prevent oscillation, the gain of the feedback loop must be less than unity when the phase shift of the system reaches 180 degrees.

Mechanical feedback has been used for many years in such forms as engine-speed governors and servo steering engines on ships.

A simple feedback system for temperature control is shown in figure 20. This is a *cause-and-effect system*. The furnace (F) raises the room temperature (T) to a predetermined value at which point the sensing thermostat (TH) reduces the fuel flow to the furnace. When the room temperature drops below the predetermined value the fuel flow is increased by the thermostat control. An interdependent control system is created by this arrangement: the room temperature depends on the thermostat action, and the thermostat action depends on the room temperature. This sequence of events may be termed a *closed-loop feedback system*.

Error Cancellation A feedback control system is dependent on a degree of error in the output signal, since this error component is used to bring about the correction. This component is called the *error signal*. The error, or deviation from the desired signal is passed through the feedback loop to cause an adjustment to reduce the value of the error signal. Care must be taken in the design of the feedback loop to reduce over-control tendencies wherein the correction signal would carry the system past the point of correct operation. Under certain circumstances the new error signal would cause the feedback control to overcorrect in the opposite direction, resulting in *hunting* or oscillation of the closed-loop system about the correct operating point.

Negative-feedback control would tend to damp out spurious system oscillation if it were not for the time lag or phase shift in the system. If the over-all phase shift is equal to one-half cycle of the operating frequency of the system, the feedback will maintain a steady state of oscillation when the circuit gain is sufficiently high (figure 21). In order to prevent oscillation, the gain figure of the feedback loop must be less than unity when the phase shift of the system reaches 180 degrees. In an ideal control system the gain of the loop would be constant throughout the operating range of the device, and would drop rapidly outside the range to reduce the bandwidth of the control system to a minimum.

The time lag in a closed-loop system may be reduced by using electronic circuits in place of mechanical devices, or by the use of special circuit elements having a *phase-lead* characteristic. Such devices make use of the properties of a capacitor, wherein the current leads the voltage applied to it.

CHAPTER TEN

Radio Receiver Fundamentals

A conventional reproducing device such as a speaker or a pair of earphones is incapable of receiving directly the intelligence carried by the *carrier* wave of a radio transmitting station. It is necessary that an additional device, called a *radio receiver*, be placed between the receiving antenna and the speaker or headphones.

Radio receivers vary widely in their complexity and basic design, depending on the intended application and upon economic factors. A simple radio receiver for reception of radiotelephone signals can consist of an earphone, a silicon or germanium crystal as a carrier rectifier or *demodulator*, and a length of wire as an antenna. However, such a receiver is highly insensitive, and offers no significant discrimination between two signals in the same portion of the spectrum.

On the other hand, a dual-diversity receiver designed for single-sideband reception and employing double or triple detection might occupy several relay racks and would cost many thousands of dollars. However, conventional communications receivers are intermediate in complexity and performance between the two extremes. This chapter is devoted to the principles underlying the operation of such conventional communications receivers.

10-1 Detection or Demodulation

A *detector*, or *demodulator*, is a device for removing the modulation (demodulating) or detecting the intelligence carried by an incoming radio wave.

Radiotelephony Demodulation Figure 1 illustrates an elementary form of a radiotelephone receiver employing a diode detector. Energy from a passing radio wave will induce a voltage in the antenna and cause a radio-frequency current to flow from antenna to ground through coil L_1. The alternating magnetic field set up around L_1 links with the turns of L_2 and causes an r-f current to flow through the parallel-tuned circuit, (L_2-C_1). When variable capacitor C_1 is adjusted so that the tuned circuit is resonant at the frequency of the applied signal, the r-f voltage is maximum. This r-f voltage is applied to the diode detector where it is rectified into a varying direct current, which is passed through the earphones. The variations in this current correspond to the voice modulation placed on the signal at the transmitter. As the earphone diaphragms vibrate back and forth in accord with the pulsating current they audibly reproduce the modulation which was placed on the carrier wave.

The operation of the detector circuit is shown graphically above the detector circuit in figure 1. The modulated carrier is shown at A, as it is applied to the antenna. B represents the same carrier, increased in amplitude, as it appears across the tuned circuit. In C the varying d-c output from the detector is seen.

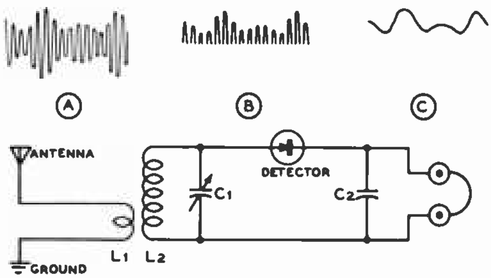


Figure 1

ELEMENTARY FORM OF RECEIVER

This is the basis of the "crystal set" type of receiver, although a vacuum diode may be used in place of the crystal diode. The tank circuit (L_2-C_1) is tuned to the frequency it is desired to receive. The bypass capacitor across the phones should have a low reactance to the carrier frequency being received, but a high reactance to the modulation on the received radio signal.

Radiotelegraphy Reception Since a c-w telegraphy signal consists of an unmodulated carrier which is interrupted to form dots and dashes, it is apparent that such a signal would not be made audible by detection alone. While the keying is a form of modulation, it is composed of such low-frequency components that the keying envelope itself is below the audible range at hand-keying speeds. Some means must be provided whereby an audible tone is heard while the unmodulated carrier is being received, the tone stopping immediately when the carrier is interrupted.

The most simple means of accomplishing this is to feed a locally generated carrier of a slightly different frequency into the same detector, so that the incoming signal will *mix* with it to form an audible *beat note.* The difference frequency, or *heterodyne* as the beat note is known, will of course stop and start in accord with the incoming c-w radiotelegraph signal, because the audible heterodyne can exist only when both the incoming and the locally generated carriers are present.

The Autodyne Detector The local signal which is used to beat with the desired c-w signal in the detector may be supplied by a separate low-power oscillator in the receiver itself, or the detector may be

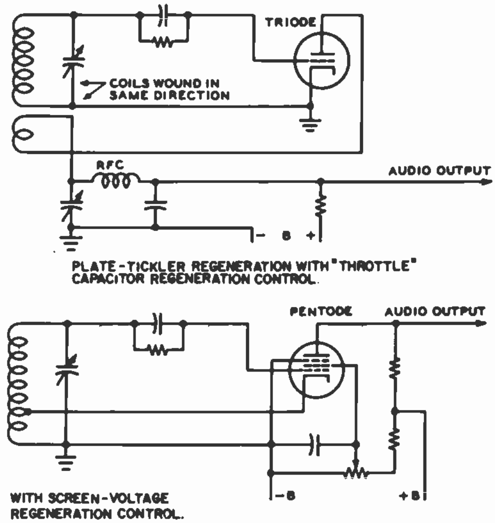


Figure 2

REGENERATIVE DETECTOR CIRCUITS

Regenerative detectors are seldom used at the present time due to their poor selectivity. However, they do illustrate the simplest type of receiver which may be used either for radiophone or radiotelegraph reception.

made to self-oscillate, and thus serve the dual purpose of detector and oscillator. A detector which self-oscillates to provide a beat note is known as an *autodyne* detector, and the process of obtaining feedback between the detector plate and grid is called *regeneration.*

An autodyne detector is most sensitive when it is barely oscillating, and for this reason a regeneration control is always included in the circuit to adjust the feedback to the proper amount. The regeneration control may be either a variable capacitor or a variable resistor, as shown in figure 2.

With the detector regenerative but not oscillating, it is also quite sensitive. When the circuit is adjusted to operate in this manner, modulated signals may be received with considerably greater strength than with a nonregenerative detector.

10-2 Superregenerative Receivers

At ultrahigh frequencies, when it is desired to keep weight and cost at a minimum, a special form of the regenerative receiver known as the *superregenerator* is often used for radiotelephony reception. The superregenerator is essentially a regenerative receiver with a means provided to throw the detector rapidly in and out of oscillation. The frequency at which the detector is made to go in and out of oscillation varies with the frequency to be received, but is usually between 20,000 and 500,000 times a second. This superregenerative action considerably increases the sensitivity of the oscillating detector so that the usual *background hiss* is greatly amplified when no signal is being received. This hiss diminishes in proportion to the strength of the received signal, loud signals eliminating the hiss entirely.

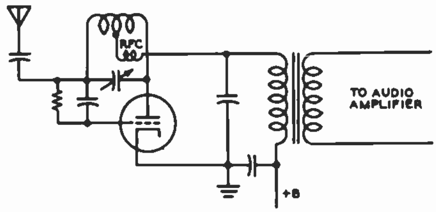


Figure 3

SUPERREGENERATIVE DETECTOR CIRCUIT

A self-quenched superregenerative detector such as illustrated above is capable of giving good sensitivity in the vhf range. However, the circuit has the disadvantage that its selectivity is relatively poor. Also, such a circuit should be preceded by an r-f stage to suppress the radiation of a signal by the oscillating detector.

Quench Methods There are two systems in common use for causing the detector to break in and out of oscillation rapidly. In one, a separate *interruption-frequency* oscillator is arranged so as to vary the voltage rapidly on one of the detector-tube elements (usually the plate, sometimes the screen) at the high rate necessary. The interruption-frequency oscillator commonly uses a conventional tickler-feedback circuit with coils appropriate for its operating frequency.

The second, and simplest, type of superregenerative detector circuit is arranged so as to produce its own interruption frequency oscillation, without the aid of a separate tube. The detector tube damps (or quenches) itself out of signal-frequency oscillation at a high rate by virtue of the use of a high value of grid resistor and proper size plate-blocking and grid capacitors, in conjunction with an excess of feedback. In this type of *self-quenched* detector, the grid resistor is quite often returned to the positive side of the power supply (through the coil) rather than to the cathode. A representative self-quenched superregenerative detector circuit is shown in figure 3.

Except where it is impossible to secure sufficient regenerative feedback to permit superregeneration, the self-quenching circuit is to be preferred; it is simpler, is self-adjusting as regards quenching amplitude, and can have good quenching wave form. To obtain as good results with a separately quenched superregenerator, very careful design is required. However, separately quenched circuits are useful when it is possible to make a certain tube oscillate on a very high frequency but it is impossible to obtain enough regeneration for self-quenching action.

The optimum quenching frequency is a function of the signal frequency. As the operating frequency goes up, so does the optimum quenching frequency. When the quench frequency is too low, maximum sensitivity is not obtained. When it is too high, both sensitivity and selectivity suffer. In fact, the optimum quench frequency for an operating frequency below 15 MHz is in the audible range. This makes the superregenerator impractical for use on the lower frequencies.

The high background noise or hiss which is heard on a properly designed superregenerator when no signal is being received is not the quench-frequency component; it is tube and tuned-circuit fluctuation noise, indicating that the receiver is extremely sensitive.

A moderately strong signal will cause the background noise to disappear completely, because the superregenerator has an inherent and instantaneous automatic-volume-control characteristic. This same avc characteristic makes the receiver comparatively insensitive to impulse noise such as ignition pulses—a highly desirable feature. This characteristic also results in appreciable distortion of a received radiotelephone signal, but not enough to affect the intelligibility.

The selectivity of a superregenerator is rather poor compared to a superheterodyne, but is suprisingly good for so simple a re-

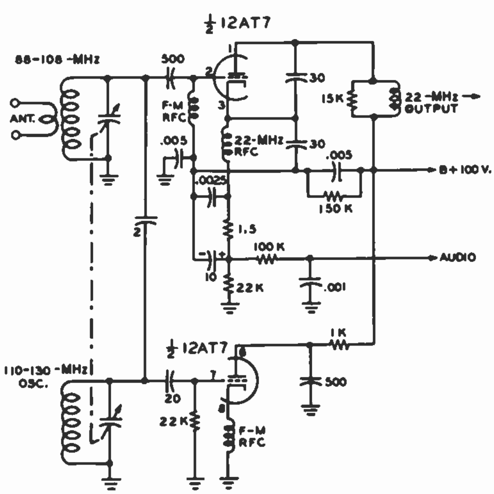


Figure 4

THE FREMODYNE SUPERREGENERATIVE SUPERHETERODYNE DETECTOR FOR FREQUENCY-MODULATED SIGNALS

ceiver when figured on a percentage basis rather than absolute kHz bandwidth.

F-M Reception A superregenerative receiver will receive frequency-modulated signals with results comparing favorably with amplitude modulation if the frequency swing of the f-m transmitter is sufficiently high. For such reception, the receiver is detuned slightly to either side of resonance.

Superregenerative receivers radiate a strong, broad, and rough signal. For this reason, it is necessary in most applications to employ a radio-frequency amplifier stage ahead of the detector, with thorough shielding throughout the receiver.

The Fremodyne Detector The Hazeltine-Fremodyne superregenerative circuit is expressly designed for reception of f-m signals. This versatile circuit combines the action of the superregenerative receiver with the superheterodyne, converting f-m signals directly into audio signals in one double-triode tube (figure 4). One section of the triode serves as a superregenerative mixer, producing an intermediate frequency of 22 MHz, an i-f amplifier, and an

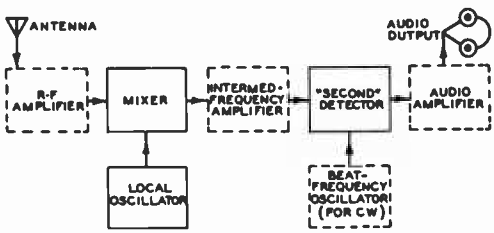


Figure 5

ESSENTIAL UNITS OF A SUPERHETERODYNE RECEIVER

The basic portions of the receiver are shown in solid blocks. Practicable receivers employ the dotted blocks and also usually include such additional circuits as a noise limiter, an avc circuit, and a crystal filter in the i-f amplifier.

f-m detector. The detector action is accomplished by *slope detection* tuning on the side of the i-f selectivity curve.

This circuit greatly reduces the radiated signal, characteristic of the superregenerative detector, yet provides many of the desirable features of the superregenerator. The passband of the Fremodyne detector is about 400 kHz.

10-3 Superheterodyne Receivers

Because of its superiority and nearly universal use in all fields of radio reception, the theory of operation of the superheterodyne should be familiar to every radio student and experimenter. The following discussion concerns superheterodynes for a-m and SSB reception. It is, however, applicable in part to receivers for frequency modulation.

Principle of Operation In the superheterodyne, the incoming signal is applied to a *mixer* consisting of a nonlinear impedance such as a vacuum tube or a diode. The signal is mixed with a steady signal generated locally in an oscillator stage, with the result that a signal bearing all the modulation applied to the original signal *but of a frequency equal to the difference between the local oscillator and incoming signal frequencies* appears in the mixer output circuit. The output from the mixer stage is fed into a fixed-tuned *intermediate-frequency ampli-*

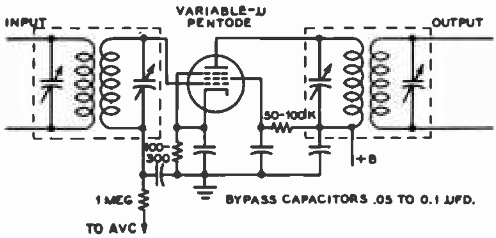


Figure 6

TYPICAL I-F AMPLIFIER STAGE

fier, where it is amplified and detected in the usual manner, and passed on to the audio amplifier. Figure 5 shows a block diagram of the fundamental superheterodyne arrangement. The basic components are shown in heavy lines, the simplest superheterodyne consisting simply of these three units. However, a good communications receiver will comprise all of the elements shown, both heavy and dotted blocks.

Advantages of the Superheterodyne The advantages of superheterodyne reception are directly attributable to the use of the fixed-tuned *intermediate-frequency* (i-f) *amplifier.* Since all signals are converted to the intermediate frequency, this section of the receiver may be designed for optimum selectivity and high amplification. High amplification is easily obtained in the intermediate-frequency amplifier, since it operates at a relatively low frequency, where conventional pentode-type tubes give adequate voltage gain. A typical i-f amplifier is shown in figure 6.

From the diagram it may be seen that both the grid and plate circuits are tuned. The tuned circuits used for coupling between i-f stages are known as *i-f transformers.* These will be more fully discussed later in this chapter.

Choice of Intermediate Frequency The choice of a frequency for the i-f amplifier involves several considerations. One of these considerations concerns selectivity—the lower the intermediate frequency the greater the obtainable selectivity. On the other hand, a rather high intermediate frequency is desirable from the standpoint of *image* elimination, and also for the reception of signals from television and f-m transmitters and modulated self-controlled oscillators, all of which occupy a rather wide band of frequencies, making a broad selectivity characteristic desirable. Images are a peculiarity common to all superheterodyne receivers, and for this reason they are given a detailed discussion later in this chapter.

While intermediate frequencies as low as 50 kHz are used where extreme selectivity is a requirement, and frequencies of 60 MHz and above are used in some specialized forms of receivers, most present-day communications superheterodynes use intermediate frequencies around either 455 or 1600 kHz.

Home-type broadcast receivers almost always use an intermediate frequency in the vicinity of 455 kHz, while auto receivers usually use a frequency of about 262 kHz. The standard frequency for the i-f channel of f-m receivers is 10.7 MHz. Television receivers use an intermediate frequency which covers the band between about 21.5 and 27 MHz, or a band between 41 and 46 MHz.

Arithmetical Selectivity Aside from allowing the use of fixed-tuned bandpass amplifier stages, the superheterodyne has an overwhelming advantage over the tuned radio frequency (trf) type of receiver because of what is commonly known as *arithmetical selectivity.*

This can best be illustrated by considering two receivers, one of the trf type and one of the superheterodyne type, both attempting to receive a desired signal at 10,000 kHz and eliminate a strong interfering signal at 10,010 kHz. In the trf receiver, separating these two signals in the tuning circuits is practically impossible, since they differ in frequency by only 0.1 percent. However, in a superheterodyne with an intermediate frequency of, for example, 1000 kHz, the desired signal will be converted to a frequency of 1000 kHz and the interfering signal will be converted to a frequency of 1010 kHz, both signals appearing at the input of the i-f amplifier. In this case, the two signals may be separated much more readily, since they differ by 1 percent, or 10 times as much as in the first case.

The Converter Stage The converter stage, or *mixer,* of a superheterodyne receiver can be either one of two types: (1) it may use a single envelope *converter* tube, such as a 6BA7 or 6BE6, or (2) it may

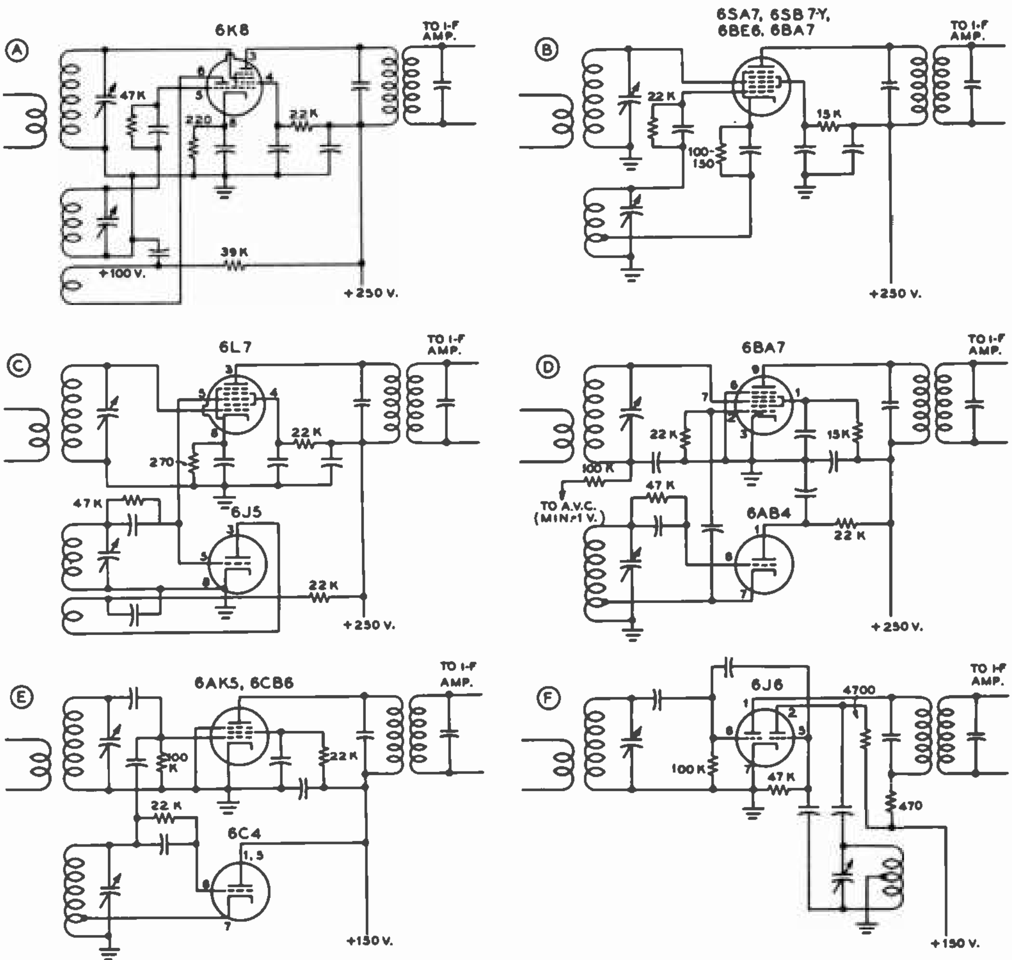


Figure 7

TYPICAL FREQUENCY-CONVERTER (MIXER) STAGES

The relative advantages of the different circuits are discussed in the text

use two tubes, or two sets of elements in the same envelope, in an oscillator-mixer arrangement. Figure 7 shows a group of circuits of both types to illustrate present practice with regard to types of converter stages.

Converter-tube combinations such as shown in figures 7A and 7B are relatively simple and inexpensive, and they do an adequate job for most applications. With a converter tube such as the 6SB7-Y or the 6BA7 quite satisfactory performance may be obtained for the reception of relatively strong signals (as for example f-m broadcast reception) up to frequencies in excess of 100 MHz. However, the equivalent input noise resistance of such tubes is of the order of 200,000 ohms, which is a rather high value indeed; so such tubes are *not* suited for operation without an r-f stage in the high-frequency range if weak-signal reception is desired.

The 6L7 mixer circuit shown in figure 7C, and the 6BA7 circuit of figure 7D, also are characterized by an equivalent input noise resistance of several hundred thousand ohms, so that these also must be preceded by one or more r-f stages with a fairly high gain per stage if a low noise factor is desired of the complete receiver.

However, the circuit arrangements shown at figures 7E and 7F *are* capable of low-noise operation within themselves, so that these circuits may be fed directly from the antenna without an r-f stage and still provide a fair noise factor to the complete receiver. Note that both these circuits use *control-grid injection* of both the incoming signal and the local-oscillator voltage. Hence, paradoxically, circuits such as these should be preceded by an r-f stage if local-oscillator radiation is to be held to any reasonable value of field intensity.

Diode Mixers As the frequency of operation of a superheterodyne receiver is increased above a few hundred megahertz the signal-to-noise ratio appearing in the plate circuit of the mixer tube when triodes or pentodes are employed drops to a prohibitively low value. At frequencies above the upper frequency limit for conventional mixer stages, mixers of the diode type are most commonly employed. The diode may be either a vacuum-tube heater diode of a special uhf design such as the 9005, or it may be a crystal diode of the general type of the 1N21 through 1N28 series.

10-4 Mixer Noise and Images

The effects of *mixer noise* and *images* are troubles common to all superheterodynes. Since both these effects can largely be obviated by the same remedy, they will be considered together.

Mixer Noise Mixer noise of the shot-effect type, which is evidenced by a hiss in the audio output of the receiver, is caused by small irregularities in the plate current in the mixer stage and will mask weak signals. Noise of an identical nature is generated in an amplifier stage, but due to the fact that the conductance in the mixer stage is considerably lower than in an amplifier stage using the same tube, the proportion of inherent noise present in a mixer usually is considerably greater than in an amplifier stage using a comparable tube.

Although this noise cannot be eliminated, its effects can be greatly minimized by placing sufficient signal-frequency amplification having a high signal-to-noise ratio ahead of the mixer. This remedy causes the signal output from the mixer to be large in proportion to the noise generated in the mixer stage. Increasing the gain *after* the mixer will be of no advantage in eliminating mixer noise difficulties; greater selectivity after the mixer will help to a certain extent, but cannot be carried too far, since this type of selectivity decreases the i-f bandpass and if carried too far will not pass the sidebands that are an essential part of a voice-modulated signal.

Triode Mixers A triode having a high transconductance is the *quietest* mixer tube, exhibiting somewhat less gain but a better signal-to-noise ratio than a comparable multigrid mixer tube. However, below 30 MHz it is possible to construct a receiver that will get down to the atmospheric noise level without resorting to a triode mixer. The additional difficulties experienced in avoiding *pulling*, undesirable feedback, etc., when using a triode with control-grid injection tend to make multigrid tubes the popular choice for this application on the lower frequencies.

On very-high frequencies, where set noise rather than atmospheric noise limits the weak-signal response, triode mixers are more widely used. A 6J6 miniature twin triode with grids in push-pull and plates in parallel makes an excellent mixer up to about 150 MHz.

Injection Voltage The amplitude of the injection voltage will affect the conversion transconductance of the mixer. and therefore should be made optimum if maximum signal-to-noise ratio is desired. If fixed bias is employed on the injection grid, the optimum injection voltage is quite critical. If cathode bias is used, the optimum voltage is not so critical; and if grid-leak bias is employed, the optimum injection voltage is not at all critical—just so it is adequate. Typical optimum injection voltages will run from 1 to 3 volts for control-grid injection, and 20 volts or so for screen- or suppressor-grid injection.

Images There always are *two* signal frequencies which will combine with a given frequency to produce the same difference frequency. For example: assume a super-

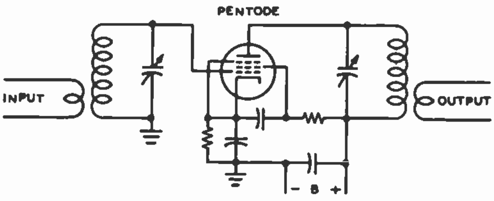


Figure 8

TYPICAL PENTODE R-F AMPLIFIER STAGE

heterodyne with its oscillator operating on a higher frequency than the signal (which is common practice in many superheterodynes) tuned to receive a signal at 14,100 kHz. Assuming an i-f amplifier frequency of 450 kHz, the mixer input circuit will be tuned to 14,100 kHz, and the oscillator to 14,100 plus 450, or 14,550 kHz. Now, a *strong* signal at the oscillator frequency plus the intermediate frequency (14,550 plus 450, or 15,000 kHz) will also give a difference frequency of 450 kHz in the mixer output and will be heard also. Note that the image is always *twice* the intermediate frequency away from the desired signal. Images cause *repeat points* on the tuning dial.

The only way that the image could be eliminated in this particular case would be to make the selectivity of the mixer input circuit, and any circuits preceding it, great enough so that the 15,000-kHz signal never reaches the mixer grid in sufficient amplitude to produce interference.

For any particular intermediate frequency, image interference troubles become increasingly greater as the frequency (to which the signal-frequency portion of the receiver is tuned) is increased. This is due to the fact that the percentage difference between the desired frequency and the image frequency decreases as the receiver is tuned to a higher frequency. The ratio of strength between a signal at the image frequency and a signal at the frequency to which the receiver is tuned producing equal output is known as the *image ratio*. The higher this ratio is, the better the receiver will be in regard to image interference troubles.

With but a single tuned circuit between the mixer grid and the antenna, and with 400- to 500-kHz i-f amplifiers, image ratios of 60 db and over are easily obtainable up to frequencies around 2000 kHz. Above this frequency, greater selectivity in the mixer grid circuit through the use of additional tuned circuits between the mixer and the antenna is necessary if a good image ratio is to be maintained.

10-5 R-F Stages

Since the necessary tuned circuits between the mixer and the antenna can be combined with tubes to form r-f amplifier stages, the reduction of the effects of mixer noise and the increasing of the image ratio can be accomplished in a single section of the receiver. When incorporated in the receiver, this section is known simply as an *r-f amplifier;* when it is a separate unit with a separate tuning control it is often known as a *preselector*. Either one or two stages are commonly used in the preselector or r-f amplifier. Some preselectors use regeneration to obtain still greater amplification and selectivity. An r-f amplifier or preselector embodying more than two stages rarely ever is employed since two stages will ordinarily give adequate gain to override mixer noise.

R-F Stages in the VHF Range Generally speaking, atmospheric noise in the frequency range above 30 MHz is quite low—so low, in fact, that the noise generated within the receiver itself is greater than the noise received on the antenna. Hence it is of the greatest importance that internally generated noise be held to a minimum in a receiver. At frequencies above 500 MHz there is not much that can be done in the direction of reducing receiver noise below that generated in the converter stage, aside from the use of specialized parametric amplifiers. But in the vhf range, between 30 and 500 MHz, the receiver noise factor in a well-designed unit is determined by the characteristics of the first r-f stage.

The usual vhf receiver, whether for communications or for f-m or TV reception, uses a miniature pentode or triode for the first r-f amplifier stage. The *nuvistors* (6CW4 and 6DS4) are the best of presently available types, with the 6EH7 (pentode) and the cascode-style amplifier approaching *nuvistor* performance in the lower vhf region. However, when gain in the first r-f stage is not so important, and the best noise

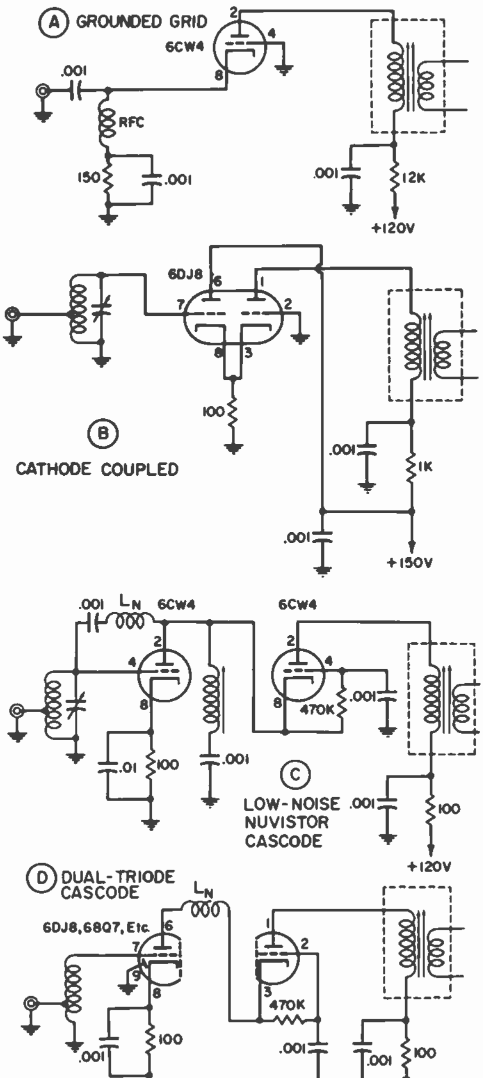


Figure 9

TYPICAL TRIODE VHF R-F AMPLIFIER STAGES

Triode r-f stages contribute the least amount of noise output for a given signal level, hence their frequent use in the vhf range.

factor must be obtained, the first r-f stage usually uses a triode or a low-noise transistor.

Shown in figure 9 are four commonly used types of triode r-f stages for use in the vhf range. The circuit at (A) uses few components and gives a moderate amount of gain with very low noise. It is most satisfactory when the first r-f stage is to be fed directly from a low-impedance coaxial transmission line. Figure 9 (B) gives somewhat more gain than (A), but requires an input matching circuit. The effective gain of this circuit is somewhat reduced when it is being used to amplify a broad band of frequencies since the effective g_m of the cathode-coupled dual tube is somewhat less than half the g_m of either of the two tubes taken alone.

The Cascode Amplifier The Cascode r-f amplifier, developed at the MIT Radiation Laboratory during World War II, is a low-noise circuit employing a grounded-cathode triode driving a grounded-grid triode, as shown in figure 9C. The stage gain of such a circuit is about equal to that of a pentode tube, while the noise figure remains at the low level of a triode tube. Neutralization of the first triode tube is usually unnecessary below 50 MHz. Above this frequency, a definite improvement in the noise figure may be obtained through the use of neutralization. The neutralizing coil (L_N) should resonate at the operating frequency with the grid-plate capacity of the first triode tube.

The TV-type double triodes such as the 6DJ8 (and older style 6BQ7 and 6BZ7) may be used to good advantage up to 144 MHz or so. At 2 meters and above, however, the 6CW4 *nuvistor* family is recommended for use.

Double Conversion As previously mentioned, the use of a higher intermediate frequency will also improve the image ratio, at the expense of i-f selectivity, by placing the desired signal and the image farther apart. To give both good image ratio at the higher frequencies and good selectivity in the i-f amplifier, a system known as *double conversion* is sometimes employed. In this system, the incoming signal is first converted to a rather high intermediate frequency, and then amplified and again converted, this time to a much lower frequency. The first intermediate frequency supplies the necessary wide separation between the image and the desired signal, while the second one supplies the bulk of the i-f selectivity.

The double-conversion system, as illustrated in figure 10, is receiving two general

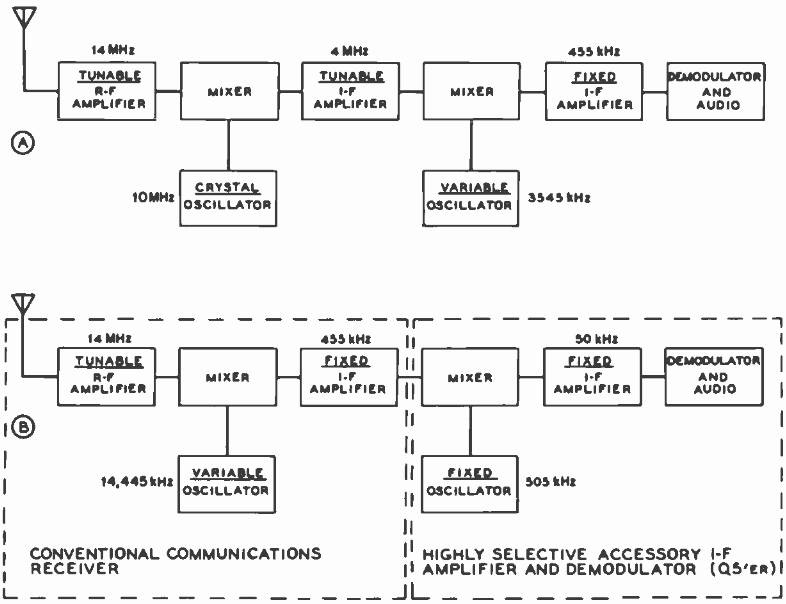


Figure 10

TYPICAL DOUBLE-CONVERSION SUPERHETERODYNE RECEIVERS

Illustrated at A is the basic circuit of a commercial double-conversion superheterodyne receiver. At B is illustrated the application of an accessory sharp i-f channel for obtaining improved selectivity from a conventional communications receiver through the use of the double-conversion superheterodyne principle.

types of application at the present time. The first application is for the purpose of attaining extremely good stability in a communications receiver through the use of crystal control of the first oscillator. In such an arrangement, as used in several types of Collins receivers, the first oscillator is crystal controlled and is followed by a tunable i-f amplifier which then is followed by a mixer stage and a fixed-tuned i-f amplifier on a much lower frequency. Through such a circuit arrangement the stability of the complete receiver is equal to the stability of the oscillator which feeds the second mixer, while the selectivity is determined by the bandwidth of the second fixed i-f amplifier.

The second common application of the double-conversion principle is for the purpose of obtaining a very high degree of selectivity in the complete communications receiver. In this type of application, as illustrated in figure 10 B, a conventional communications receiver is modified in such a manner that its normal i-f amplifier (which usually is in the 450- to 915-kHz range) instead of being fed to a demodulator and then to the audio system, is alternatively fed to a fixed-tuned mixer stage and then into a much lower intermediate-frequency amplifier before the signal is demodulated and fed to the audio system. The accessory i-f amplifier system (sometimes called a Q5'er) normally is operated on a frequency of 175 kHz, 85 kHz, or 50 kHz.

10-6 Signal-Frequency Tuned Circuits

The signal-frequency tuned circuits in high-frequency superheterodynes and tuned-radio-frequency types of receivers consist of coils of either the solenoid or universal-wound types shunted by variable capacitors. It is in these tuned circuits that the causes of success or failure of a receiver often lie. The universal-wound type coils usually are used at frequencies below 2000 kHz; above

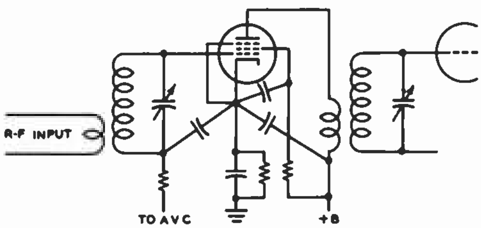


Figure 11

ILLUSTRATING "COMMON-POINT" BYPASSING

To reduce the detrimental effects of cathode circuit inductance in vhf stages, all bypass capacitors should be returned to the cathode terminal at the socket. Tubes with two cathode leads can give improved performance if the grid return is made to one cathode terminal while the plate and screen bypass returns are made to the cathode terminal which is connected to the suppressor within the tube.

this frequency the single-layer solenoid type of coil is more satisfactory.

Impedance and Q The two factors of greatest significance in determining the gain-per-stage and selectivity, respectively, of a tuned amplifier are tuned-circuit impedance and tuned-circuit Q. Since the resistance of modern capacitors is low at ordinary frequencies, the resistance usually can be considered to be concentrated in the coil. The resistance to be considered in making Q determinations is the r-f resistance, not the d-c resistance of the wire in the coil. The latter ordinarily is low enough that it may be neglected. The increase in r-f resistance over d-c resistance primarily is due to skin effect and is influenced by such factors as wire size and type, and the proximity of metallic objects or poor insulators, such as coil forms with high losses. Higher values of Q lead to better selectivity and increased r-f voltage across the tuned circuit. The increase in voltage is due to an increase in the circuit impedance with the higher values of Q.

Frequently it is possible to secure an increase in impedance in a resonant circuit (and consequently an increase in gain from an amplifier stage) by increasing the reactance through the use of larger coils and smaller tuning capacitors (higher LC ratio).

Input Resistance Another factor which influences the operation of tuned circuits is the input resistance of the tubes placed across these circuits. At broadcast frequencies, the input resistance of most conventional r-f amplifier tubes is high enough so that it is not bothersome. But as the frequency is increased, the input resistance becomes lower and lower, until it ultimately reaches a value so low that no amplification can be obtained from the r-f stage.

The two contributing factors to the decrease in input resistance with increasing frequency are the transit time required by an electron traveling between the cathode and grid, and the inductance of the cathode lead common to both the plate and grid circuits. As the frequency becomes higher, the transit time can become an appreciable portion of the time required by an r-f cycle of the signal voltage, and current will actually flow into the grid. The result of this effect is similar to that which would be obtained by placing a resistance between the grid and cathode of the tube.

Superheterodyne Tracking Because the oscillator in a superheterodyne operates "offset" from the other front-end circuits, it is necessary to make special provisions to allow the oscillator to track when similar tuning capacitor sections are ganged. The usual

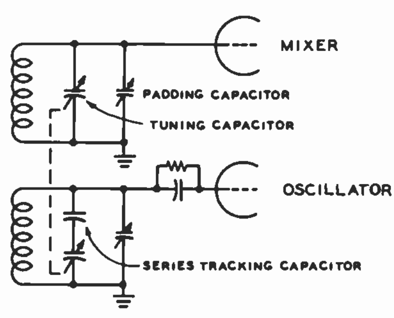


Figure 12

SERIES TRACKING EMPLOYED IN THE H F OSCILLATOR OF A SUPERHETERODYNE

The series tracking capacitor permits the use of identical gangs in a ganged capacitor, since the tracking capacitor slows down the rate of frequency change in the oscillator so that a constant difference in frequency between the oscillator and the r-f stage (equal to the i-f amplifier frequency) may be maintained.

method of obtaining good tracking is to operate the oscillator on the high-frequency side of the mixer and use a *series tracking capacitor* to slow down the tuning rate of the oscillator. The oscillator tuning rate must be slower because it covers a smaller range than does the mixer when both are expressed as a percentage of frequency. At frequencies above 7000 kHz and with ordinary intermediate frequencies, the difference in percentage between the two tuning ranges is so small that it may be disregarded in receivers designed to cover only a small range, such as an amateur band.

A mixer- and oscillator-tuning arrangement in which a series tracking capacitor is provided is shown in figure 12. The value of the tracking capacitor varies considerably with different intermediate frequencies and tuning ranges, capacitances as low as .0001 μfd being used at the lower tuning-range frequencies, and values up to .01 μfd being used at the higher frequencies.

Superheterodyne receivers designed to cover only a single frequency range, such as the standard broadcast band, sometimes obtain tracking between the oscillator and the r-f circuits by cutting the variable plates of the oscillator tuning section to a different shape than those used to tune the r-f stages.

Frequency Range Selection The frequency to which a receiver responds may be varied by changing the size of either the coils or the capacitors in the tuning circuits, or both. In short-wave receivers a combination of both methods is usually employed, the coils being changed from one band to another, and variable capacitors being used to tune the receiver across each band. In practical receivers, coils may be changed by one of two methods: a switch, controllable from the panel, may be used to switch coils of different sizes into the tuning circuits or, alternatively, coils of different sizes may be plugged manually into the receiver, the connection into the tuning circuits being made by suitable plugs on the coils. Where there are several *plug-in coils* for each band, they are sometimes arranged on a single mounting strip, allowing them all to be plugged in simultaneously.

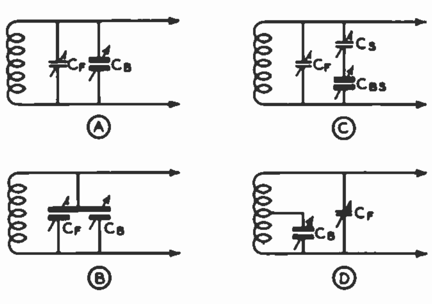


Figure 13

BANDSPREAD CIRCUITS

Parallel bandspread is illustrated at (A) and (B), series bandspread at (C), and tapped-coil band-spread at (D).

Bandspread Tuning In receivers using large tuning capacitors to cover the short-wave spectrum with a minimum of coils, tuning is likely to be quite difficult, owing to the large frequency range covered by a small rotation of the variable capacitors. To alleviate this condition, some method of slowing down the tuning rate, or *bandspreading*, must be used.

Quantitatively, bandspread is usually designated as being inversely proportional to the range covered. Thus, a *large* amount of bandspread indicates that a *small* frequency range is covered by the bandspread control. Conversely, a *small* amount of bandspread is taken to mean that a *large* frequency range is covered by the bandspread dial.

Types of Bandspread Bandspreading systems are of two general types: electrical and mechanical. Mechanical systems are exemplified by high-ratio dials in which the tuning capacitors rotate much more slowly than the dial knob. In this system, there is often a separate scale or pointer either connected or geared to the dial knob to facilitate accurate dial readings. However, there is a practical limit to the amount of mechanical bandspread which can be obtained in a dial and capacitor before the speed-reduction unit and capacitor bearings become prohibitively expensive. Hence, most receivers employ a combination of electrical and mechanical bandspread. In such a system, a moderate reduction in the tuning rate is obtained in the dial, and the rest of the reduction obtained by *electrical bandspreading*.

Stray Circuit Capacitance In this book and in other radio literature, mention is sometimes made of *stray* or *circuit capacitance.* This capacitance is in the usual sense defined as the capacitance remaining across a coil when all the tuning, bandspread, and padding capacitors across the circuit are at their minimum capacitance setting.

Circuit capacitance can be attributed to two general sources. One source is that due to the input and output capacitance of the tube when its cathode is heated. The input capacitance varies somewhat from the static value when the tube is in actual operation. Such factors as plate load impedance, grid bias, and frequency will cause a change in input capacitance. However, in all except the extremely high-transconductance tubes, the published measured input capacitance is reasonably close to the effective value when the tube is used within its recommended frequency range. But in the high-transconductance types the effective capacitance will vary considerably from the published figures as operating conditions are changed.

The second source of circuit capacitance, and that which is more easily controllable, is that contributed by the minimum capacitance of the variable capacitors across the circuit and that due to capacitance between the wiring and ground. In well-designed high-frequency receivers, every effort is made to keep this portion of the circuit capacitance at a minimum since a large capacitance reduces the tuning range available with a given coil and prevents a good LC ratio, and consequently a high-impedance tuned circuit, from being obtained.

A good percentage of stray circuit capacitance is due also to distributed capacitance of the coil and capacitance between wiring points and chassis.

Typical values of circuit capacitance may run from 10 to 75 pf in high-frequency receivers, the first figure representing concentric-line receivers with nuvistor or miniature tubes and extremely small tuning capacitors, and the latter representing all-wave sets with bandswitching, large tuning capacitors, and conventional tubes.

10-7 I-F Tuned Circuits

I-f amplifiers usually employ bandpass circuits of some sort. A bandpass circuit is exactly what the name implies—a circuit for passing a band of frequencies. Bandpass arrangements can be designed for almost any degree of selectivity, the type used in any particular case depending on the ultimate application of the amplifier.

I-F Transformers Intermediate-frequency transformers ordinarily consist of two or more tuned circuits and some method of coupling the tuned circuits together. Some representative arrangements are shown in figure 14. The circuit shown at A is the conventional i-f transformer, with the coupling (M) between the tuned circuits being provided by inductive coupling from one coil to the other. As the coupling is increased, the selectivity curve becomes less peaked, and when a condition known as *critical coupling* is reached, the top of the curve begins to flatten out. When the coupling is increased still more, a dip occurs in the top of the curve.

The windings for this type of i-f transformer, as well as most others, nearly always consist of small, flat universal-wound pies mounted either on a piece of dowel to provide an air core or on powdered iron for *iron-core* i-f transformers. The iron-core transformers generally have somewhat more gain and better selectivity than equivalent air-core units.

The circuits shown at figure 14-B and C are quite similar. Their only difference is the type of mutual coupling used, an inductance being used at B and a capacitance at C. The operation of both circuits is similar. Three resonant circuits are formed by the components. In B, for example, one resonant circuit is formed by L_1, C_1, C_2, and L_2 all in series. The frequency of this resonant circuit is just the same as that of a single one of the coils and capacitors, since the coils and capacitors are similar in both sides of the circuit, and the resonant frequency of the two capacitors and the two coils all in series is the same as that of a single coil and capacitor. The second resonant frequency of the complete circuit is determined by the characteristics of each half of the circuit containing the mutual coupling device. In B, this second frequency will be lower than the first, since the resonant frequency of L_1, C_1, and inductance M; or L_2, C_2, and M is lower than that of a single coil and capacitor, due to the inductance of M being added to the circuit.

The opposite effect takes place at figure 14-C, where the common coupling impedance is a capacitor. Thus, at C the second resonant frequency is higher than the first. In either case, however, the circuit has two resonant frequencies, resulting in a flat topped selectivity curve. The width of the top of the curve is controlled by the reactance of the mutual coupling component. As this reactance is increased (inductance made greater, capacitance made smaller), the two resonant frequencies become further apart and the curve is broadened.

In the circuit of figure 14-D, there is inductive coupling between the center coil and each of the outer coils. The result of this arrangement is that the center coil acts as a sharply tuned coupler between the other two. A signal somewhat off the resonant frequency of the transformer will not induce as much current in the center coil as will a signal of the correct frequency. When a smaller current is induced in the center coil, it in turn transfers a still smaller current to the output coil. The effective coupling between the outer coils increases as the resonant frequency is approached, and remains nearly constant over a small range and then decreases again as the resonant band is passed.

Another very satisfactory bandpass arrangement, which gives a very straight-sided, flat-topped curve, is the negative mutual arrangement shown at figure 14-E. Energy is transferred between the input and output circuits in this arrangement by both the negative mutual coils (M) and the common capacitive reactance (C). The negative mutual coils are interwound on the same form, and connected *backward*.

Transformers usually are made tunable over a small range to permit accurate alignment in the circuit in which they are employed. This is accomplished either by means of a variable capacitor across a fixed inductance, or by means of a fixed capacitor across a variable inductance. The former usually employ either a mica-compression capacitor (designated "mica-tuned"), or a small air-dielectric variable capacitor (designated "air-tuned"). Those which use a fixed capacitor usually employ a powdered-iron core on a threaded rod to vary the inductance, and are known as "permeability-tuned."

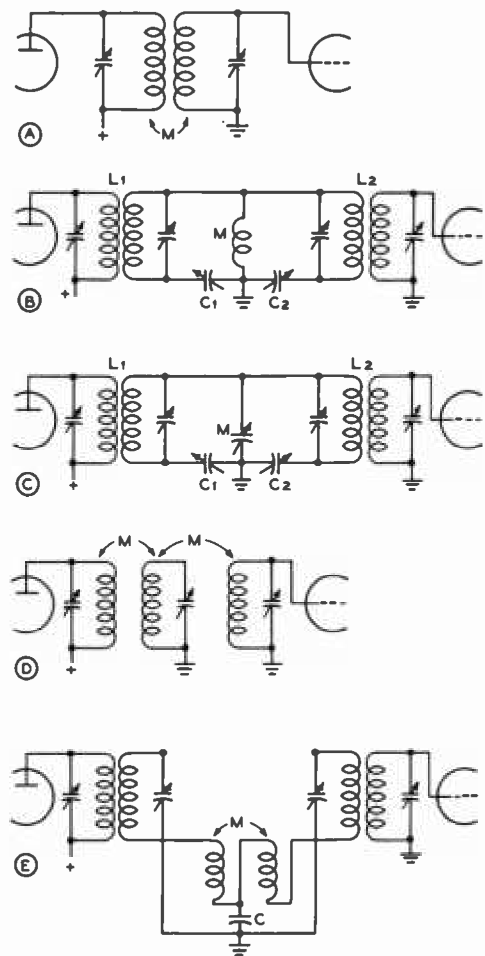


Figure 14

I-F AMPLIFIER COUPLING ARRANGEMENTS

The interstage coupling arrangements illustrated above give a better shape factor (more straight-sided selectivity curve) than would the same number of tuned circuits coupled by means of tubes.

Shape Factor It is obvious that to pass modulation sidebands and to allow for slight drifting of the transmitter carrier frequency and the receiver local oscillator, the i-f amplifier must pass not a single frequency but a band of frequencies. The width

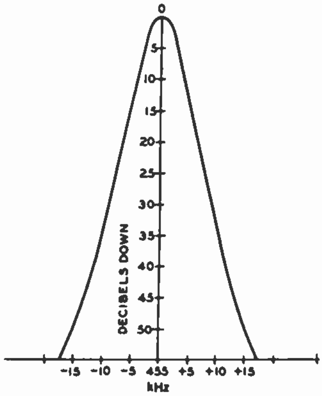


Figure 15

I-F PASSBAND OF TYPICAL COMMUNICATIONS

of this passband, usually 5 to 8 kHz at maximum width in a good communications receiver, is known as the *passband*, and is arbitrarily taken as the width between the two frequencies at which the response is attenuated 6 db, or is "6 db down." However, it is apparent that to discriminate against an interfering signal which is stronger than the desired signal, much more than 6 db attenuation is required. The attenuation commonly chosen to indicate adequate discrimination against an interfering signal is 60 db.

It is apparent that it is desirable to have the bandwidth at 60 db down as narrow as possible, but it must be done without making the passband (6-db points) too narrow for satisfactory reception of the desired signal. The figure of merit used to show the ratio of bandwidth at 6 db down to that at 60 db down is designated as *shape factor*. The ideal i-f curve (a rectangle), would have a shape factor of 1.0. The i-f shape factor in typical communications receivers runs from 2.0 to 5.5.

The most practical method of obtaining a low shape factor for a given number of tuned circuits is to employ them in pairs, as in figure 14-A, adjusted to *critical coupling* (the value at which two resonance points just begin to become apparent). If this gives too sharp a *nose* or passband, then coils of lower Q should be employed, with the coupling maintained at the critical value. As the

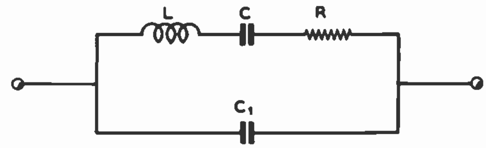


Figure 16

ELECTRICAL EQUIVALENT OF QUARTZ FILTER CRYSTAL

The crystal is equivalent to a very large value of inductance in series with small values of capacitance and resistance across the whole circuit (representing holder capacitance plus stray capacitances).

Q is lowered, closer coupling will be required for critical coupling.

Conversely if the passband is too broad, coils of higher Q should be employed, the coupling being maintained at critical. If the passband is made more narrow by using looser coupling instead of raising the Q and maintaining critical coupling, the shape factor will not be as good.

The *passband* will not be much narrower for several pairs of identical, critically coupled tuned circuits than for a single pair. However, the *shape factor* will be greatly improved as each additional pair is added, up to about 5 pairs, beyond which the improvement for each additional pair is not significant. Commercially available communications receivers of good quality normally employ 3 or 4 double-tuned transformers with coupling adjusted to critical or slightly less.

The passband of a typical communication receiver having a 455-kHz i-f amplifier is shown in figure 15.

Miller Effect As mentioned previously, the dynamic input capacitance of a tube varies slightly with bias. As avc voltage normally is applied to i-f tubes for radiotelephone reception, the effective grid-cathode capacitance varies as the signal strength varies, which produces the same effect as slight detuning of the i-f transformer. This effect is known as *Miller effect*, and can be minimized to the extent that it is not troublesome either by using a fairly low LC ratio in the transformers or by incorporating a small amount of degenerative feedback, the latter being most easily accomplished by leaving part of the cathode resistor unbypassed for radio frequencies.

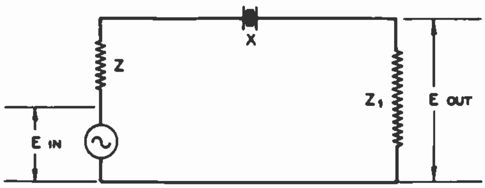


Figure 17

EQUIVALENT OF CRYSTAL FILTER CIRCUIT

For a given voltage out of the generator, the voltage developed across Z_1 depends on the ratio of the impedance of X to the sum of the impedances of Z and Z_1. Because of the high Q of the crystal, its impedance changes rapidly with changes in frequency.

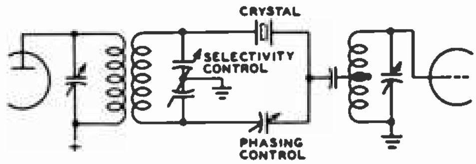


Figure 18

TYPICAL CRYSTAL FILTER CIRCUIT

Crystal Filters The passband of an intermediate-frequency amplifier may be made very narrow through the use of a *piezoelectric crystal* filter employed as a series-resonant circuit in a bridge arrangement known as a *crystal filter*. The shape factor is quite poor, as would be expected when the selectivity is obtained from the equivalent of a single tuned circuit, but the very narrow passband obtainable as a result of the extremely high Q of the crystal makes the crystal filter useful for c-w telegraphy reception. The passband of a 455-kHz crystal filter may be made as narrow as 50 Hz while the narrowest passband that can be obtained with a 455-kHz tuned circuit of practical dimensions is about 5 kHz.

The electrical equivalent of a filter crystal is shown in figure 16. For a given frequency, L is very high, C very low, and R (assuming a good crystal of high Q) is very low. Capacitance C_1 represents the shunt capacitance of the electrodes, plus the crystal holder and wiring, and is many times the capacitance of C. This makes the crystal act as a parallel-resonant circuit with a frequency only slightly higher than that of its frequency of series resonance. For crystal filter use it is the series-resonant characteristic that we are primarily interested in.

The electrical equivalent of the basic crystal filter circuit is shown in figure 17. If the impedance of Z plus Z_1 is low compared to the impedance of the crystal (X) at resonance, then the current flowing through Z_1, and the voltage developed across it, will be almost in inverse proportion to the impedance of X, which has a very sharp resonance curve.

If the impedance of Z plus Z_1 is made *high* compared to the resonant impedance of X, then there will be no appreciable drop in voltage across Z_1 as the frequency departs from the resonant frequency of X until the point is reached where the impedance of X approaches that of Z plus Z_1. This has the effect of broadening out the curve of frequency versus voltage developed across Z_1, which is another way of saying that the selectivity of the crystal filter (but not the crystal proper) has been reduced.

In practical filter circuits the impedances Z and Z_1 usually are represented by some form of tuned circuit, but the basic principle of operation is the same.

Practical Filters It is necessary to balance out the capacitance across the crystal holder (C_1 in figure 16) to prevent bypassing around the crystal undesired signals off the crystal resonant frequency. The balancing is done by a *phasing* circuit which takes out-of-phase voltage from a balanced input circuit and passes it to the output side of the crystal in proper phase to neutralize that passed through the holder capacitance. A representative practical filter arrangement is shown in figure 18. The balanced input circuit may be obtained either through the use of a split-stator capacitor as shown, or by the use of a center-tapped input coil.

Variable-Selectivity Filters In the circuit of figure 18, the selectivity is *minimum* with the crystal input circuit tuned to resonance, since at resonance the impedance of the tuned circuit is maximum. As the input circuit is detuned from resonance, however, the impedance decreases, and the selectivity becomes greater. In this circuit, the output from the crystal filter is

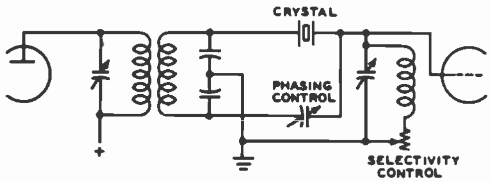


Figure 19

VARIABLE SELECTIVITY CRYSTAL FILTER

This circuit permits a greater control of selectivity than does the circuit of figure 18, and does not require a split-stator variable capacitor.

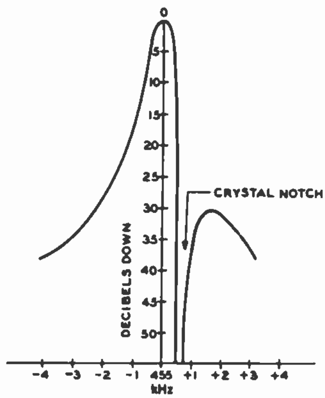


Figure 20

I-F PASSBAND OF TYPICAL CRYSTAL FILTER COMMUNICATION RECEIVER

tapped down on the i-f stage grid winding to provide a low value of series impedance in the output circuit. It will be recalled that for maximum selectivity, the total impedance in series with the crystal (both input and output circuits) must be low. If one is made low and the other is made variable, then the selectivity may be varied at will from sharp to broad.

The circuit shown in figure 19 also achieves variable selectivity by adding a variable impedance in series with the crystal circuit. In this case, the variable impedance is in series with the crystal output circuit. The impedance of the output circuit is varied by varying the Q. As the Q is reduced (by adding resistance in series with the coil), the impedance decreases and the selectivity becomes greater. The input circuit impedance is made low by using a nonresonant secondary on the input transformer.

A variation of the circuit shown at figure 19 consists of placing the variable resistance across the coil and capacitor, rather than in series with them. The result of adding the resistor is a reduction of the output impedance, and an increase in selectivity. The circuit behaves oppositely to that of figure 19, however; as the resistance is lowered the selectivity becomes greater. Still another variation of figure 19 is to use the tuning capacitor across the output coil to vary the output impedance. As the output circuit is detuned from resonance, its impedance is lowered, and the selectivity increases. Sometimes a set of fixed capacitors and a multipoint switch are used to give step-by-step variation of the output circuit tuning, and thus of the crystal filter selectivity.

Rejection Notch As previously discussed, a filter crystal has both a resonant (series-resonant) and an antiresonant (parallel-resonant) frequency—the impedance of the crystal being quite low at the former frequency, and quite high at the latter frequency. The antiresonant frequency is just slightly higher than the resonant frequency, the difference depending on the effective shunt capacitance of the filter crystal and holder. As adjustment of the phasing capacitor controls the effective shunt capacitance of the crystal, it is possible to vary the antiresonant frequency of the crystal slightly without unbalancing the circuit sufficiently to let undesired signals *leak through* the shunt capacitance in appreciable amplitude. At the exact antiresonant frequency of the crystal the attenuation is exceedingly high because of the high impedance of the crystal at this frequency. This is called the *rejection notch*, and can be utilized to virtually eliminate the heterodyne image or *repeat tuning* of c-w signals. The beat-frequency oscillator can be so adjusted and the phasing capacitor so adjusted that the desired beat note is of such a pitch that the image (the same audio note on the other side of zero beat) falls in the rejection notch and is inaudible. The receiver then is said to be adjusted for *single-signal* operation.

The rejection notch sometimes can be employed to reduce interference from an undesired *phone* signal which is very close in frequency to a desired phone signal. The filter is adjusted to "broad" so as to permit telephone reception, and the receiver tuned so that the carrier frequency of the undesired signal falls in the rejection notch. The modulation sidebands of the undesired signal still will come through, but the carrier heterodyne will be effectively eliminated and interference greatly reduced.

A typical crystal selectivity curve for a communications receiver is shown in figure 20.

Crystal Filter Considerations A crystal filter, especially when adjusted for *single-signal* reception, greatly reduces interference and background noise, the latter feature permitting signals to be copied that would ordinarily be too weak to be heard above the background hiss. However, when the filter is adjusted for maximum selectivity, the passband is so narrow that the received signal must have a high order of stability in order to stay within the passband. Likewise, the local oscillator in the receiver must be highly stable, or constant retuning will be required. Another effect that will be noticed with the filter adjusted too "sharp" is a tendency for code characters to produce a ringing sound, and have a hangover or "tails." This effect limits the code speed that can be copied satisfactorily when the filter is adjusted for extreme selectivity.

The Mechanical Filter The Collins Mechanical Filter (figure 21) is a new concept in the field of selectivity. It is an electromechanical bandpass filter about half the size of a cigarette package. As shown in figure 22, it consists of an input transducer, a resonant mechanical section comprised of a number of metal discs, and an output transducer.

The frequency characteristics of the resonant mechanical section provide the almost rectangular selectivity curves shown in figure 23. The input and output transducers serve only as electrical-to-mechanical coupling devices and do not affect the selectivity characteristics which are determined by the metal discs. An electrical signal applied to the input terminals is converted into a mechanical vibration at the input transducer by means of *magnetostriction*. This mechanical vibration travels through the resonant mechanical section to the output transducer, where it is converted by magnetostriction to an electrical signal which appears at the output terminals.

In order to provide the most efficient electromechanical coupling, a small magnet in the mounting above each transducer applies a magnetic bias to the nickel transducer core. The electrical impulses then add to or subtract from this magnetic bias, causing vibration of the filter elements which corresponds to the exciting signal. There is no mechanical motion except for the imperceptible vibration of the metal discs.

Magnetostrictively driven mechanical filters have several advantages over electrical equivalents. In the region from 100 kHz to 500 kHz, the mechanical elements are extremely small, and a mechanical filter having better selectivity than the best of conventional i-f systems may be enclosed in a package smaller than one i-f transformer.

Since mechanical elements with Q's of 5000 or more are readily obtainable, mechanical filters may be designed in accord with the theory for lossless elements. This permits characteristics to be achieved that are unobtainable with electrical circuits because of the relatively high losses in electrical ele-

Figure 21

COLLINS MECHANICAL FILTERS

The Collins Mechanical Filter is an electromechanical bandpass filter which surpasses, in one small unit, the selectivity of conventional, space-consuming filters. At the left is the miniaturized filter, less than 2¼" long. A vertical design is next, and two horizontal mounting types are at right.

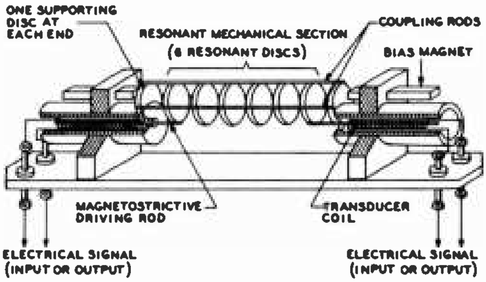


Figure 22

MECHANICAL FILTER FUNCTIONAL DIAGRAM

ments compared to the loss of mechanical elements used in the filters.

The frequency characteristics of the mechanical filter are permanent, and no adjustment is required or is possible. The filter is enclosed in a hermetically sealed case.

In order to realize full benefit from the mechanical filter's selectivity characteristics, it is necessary to provide shielding between the external input and output circuits, capable of reducing transfer of energy external to the filter by a minimum value of 100 db. If the input circuit is allowed to couple energy into the output circuit external to the filter, the excellent skirt selectivity will deteriorate and the passband characteristics will be distorted.

As with almost any mechanically resonant circuit, elements of the mechanical filter have multiple resonances. These result in

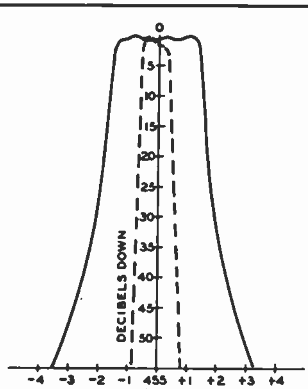


Figure 23

Selectivity curves of 455-kHz mechanical filters with nominal 0.8-kHz (dotted line) and 3.1-kHz (solid line) bandwidth at -6 db.

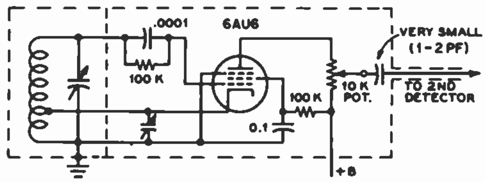


Figure 24

VARIABLE-OUTPUT BFO CIRCUIT

A beat-frequency oscillator whose output is controllable is of considerable assistance in copying c-w signals over a wide range of levels, and such a control is often employed for satisfactory copying of single-sideband signals.

spurious modes of transmission through the filter and produce minor passbands at frequencies outside the primary passband. Design of the filter reduces these subbands to a low level and removes them from the immediate area of the major passband. Two conventional i-f transformers supply increased attenuation to these spurious responses, and are sufficient to reduce them to an insignificant level.

Beat-Frequency Oscillators The *beat-frequency oscillator*, usually called the *bfo*, is a necessary adjunct for reception of c-w or SSB signals on superheterodynes which have no other provision for obtaining modulation of an incoming c-w or SSB signal. The oscillator is coupled into or just ahead of the second detector circuit and supplies a signal of nearly the same frequency as that of the desired signal from the i-f amplifier. If the i-f amplifier is tuned to 455 kHz, for example, the bfo is tuned to approximately 454 or 456 kHz to produce an audible (1000-Hz) beat note in the output of the second detector of the receiver. The carrier signal itself is, of course, inaudible. The bfo is not used for a-m reception, except as an aid in searching for weak stations.

The bfo input to the second detector need only be sufficient to give a good beat note on an average signal. Too much coupling into the second detector will give an excessively high hiss level, masking weak signals by the high noise background.

Figure 24 shows a method of manually adjusting the bfo output to correspond with the strength of received signals. This type

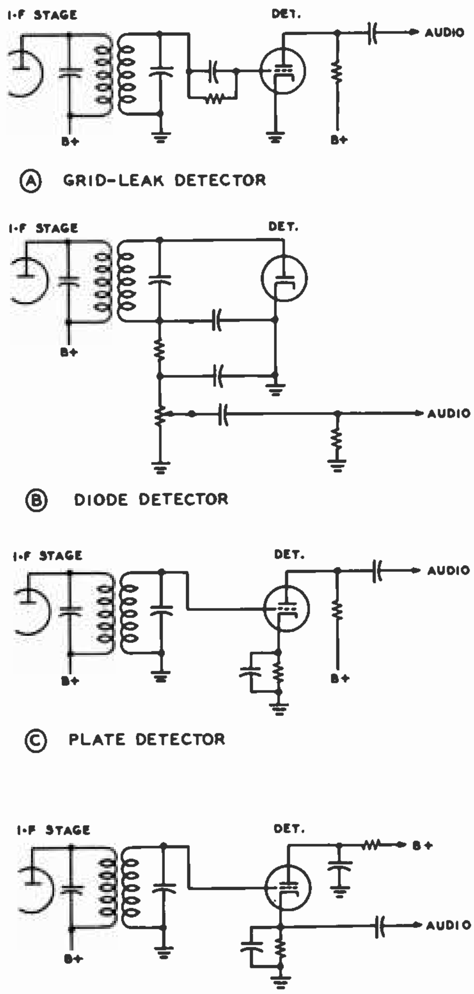


Figure 25

TYPICAL CIRCUITS FOR GRID-LEAK, DIODE, PLATE AND INFINITE IMPEDANCE DETECTOR STAGES

of variable bfo output control is a useful adjunct to any superheterodyne, since it allows sufficient bfo output to be obtained to *beat* with strong signals or to allow single-sideband reception and at the same time permits the bfo output, and consequently the hiss, to be reduced when attempting to receive weak signals. The circuit shown is somewhat better than those in which one of the electrode voltages on the bfo tube is changed, as the latter circuits usually change the frequency of the bfo at the same time they change the strength, making it necessary to reset the trimmer each time the output is adjusted.

The bfo usually is provided with a small trimmer which is adjustable from the front panel to permit adjustment over a range of 5 or 10 kHz. For single-signal reception the bfo always is adjusted to the high-frequency side, in order to permit placing the heterodyne image in the rejection notch.

In order to reduce the bfo signal output voltage to a reasonable level which will prevent blocking the second detector, the signal voltage is delivered through a low-capacitance (high-reactance) capacitor having a value of 1 to 10-pf.

Care must be taken with the bfo to prevent harmonics of the oscillator from being picked up at multiples of the bfo frequency. The complete bfo together with the coupling circuits to the second detector, should be thoroughly shielded to prevent pickup of the harmonics by the input end of the receiver.

If bfo harmonics still have a tendency to give trouble after complete shielding and isolation of the bfo circuit has been accomplished, the passage of these harmonics from the bfo circuit to the rest of the receiver can be stopped through the use of a low-pass filter in the lead between the output of the bfo circuit and the point on the receiver where the bfo signal is to be injected.

10-8 Detector, Audio, and Control Circuits

Detectors Second detectors for use in superheterodynes are usually of the diode, plate, or infinite-impedance types. Occasionally, grid-leak detectors are used in receivers using one i-f stage or none at all, in which case the second detector usually is made regenerative.

Diodes make a practical second detector because they allow a simple method of obtaining automatic volume control to be used. Diodes load the tuned circuit to which they are connected, however, and thus reduce the selectivity slightly. Special i-f transformers are used for the purpose of providing a low-impedance input circuit to the diode detector.

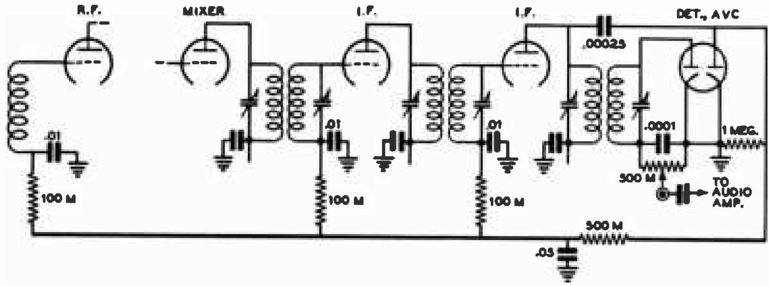


Figure 26

TYPICAL AVC CIRCUIT USING A DOUBLE DIODE

Any of the small dual-diode tubes may be used in this circuit. Or, if desired, a duodiode-triode may be used, with the triode acting as the first audio stage. The left-hand diode serves as the detector, while the right-hand side acts as the avc rectifier. The use of separate diodes for detector and avc reduces distortion when receiving an amplitude-modulated signal with a high modulation percentage.

Typical circuits for grid-leak, diode, plate and infinite-impedance detectors are shown in figure 25.

Automatic Volume Control The elements of an *automatic volume control* (avc) system are shown in figure 26. A dual-diode tube is used as a combination diode detector and avc rectifier. The left-hand diode operates as a simple rectifier in the manner described earlier in this chapter. Audio voltage, superimposed on a d-c voltage, appears across the 500,000-ohm potentiometer (the volume control) and the .0001-μfd capacitor, and is passed on to the audio amplifier. The right-hand diode receives signal voltage directly from the primary of the last i-f amplifier, and acts as the avc rectifier. The pulsating d-c voltage across the 1-megohm avc-diode load resistor is filtered by a 500,000-ohm resistor and a .05-μfd capacitor, and is applied as bias to the grids of the r-f and i-f amplifier tubes; an increase or decrease in signal strength will cause a corresponding increase or decrease in avc bias voltage, and thus the gain of the receiver is automatically adjusted to compensate for changes in signal strength.

A-C Loading of Second Detector By disassociating the avc and detecting functions through the use of separate diodes, as shown, most of the ill effects of *a-c shunt loading* on the detector diode are avoided. This type of loading causes serious distortion, and the additional components required to eliminate it are well worth their cost. Even with the circuit shown, a-c loading can occur unless a *very high* (5 megohms, or more) value of grid resistor is used in the following audio amplifier stage.

AVC in BFO Equipped Receivers In receivers having a beat-frequency oscillator for the reception of c-w or SSB signals, the use of avc can result in a great loss in sensitivity when the bfo is switched on. This is because the beat-oscillator output acts exactly like a strong received signal, and causes the avc circuit to put high bias on the r-f and i-f stages, thus greatly reducing the receiver's sensitivity. Due to the above effect, it is necessary to either isolate the avc voltage or make the avc circuit inoperative when the bfo is being used. The simplest method of eliminating the avc action is to short the avc line to ground when the bfo is turned on. A two-circuit switch may be used for the dual purpose of turning on the beat oscillator and shorting out the avc if desired.

Signal-Strength Indicators Visual means for determining whether or not the receiver is properly tuned, as well as an indication of the relative signal strength, are both provided by means of *tuning indicators* (S meters) of the meter or vacuum-tube type. A d-c milliammeter can be connected in the plate-supply circuit of one or more r-f or i-f amplifiers, as shown in figure 27A, so that the change in plate current, due to the action of the avc voltage, will be indicated on the instrument.

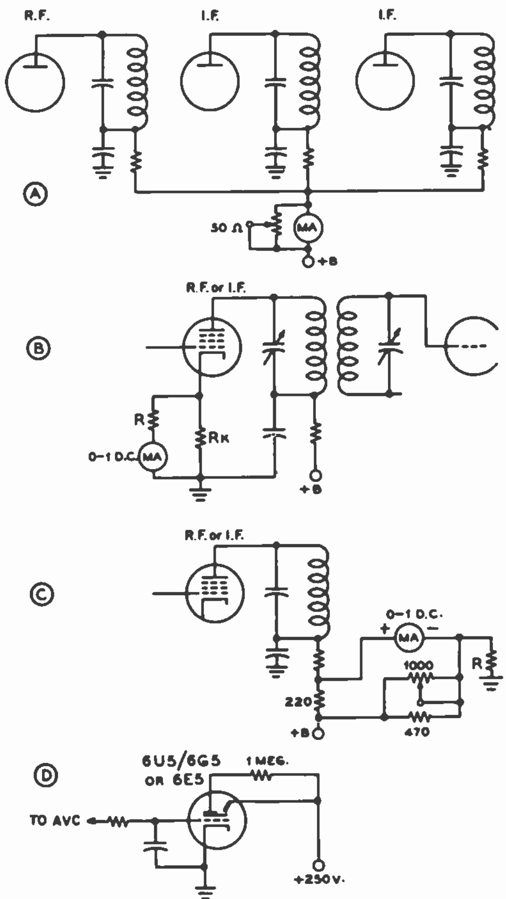


Figure 27

SIGNAL-STRENGTH METER CIRCUITS

Shown above are four circuits for obtaining a signal-strength reading which is a function of incoming carrier amplitude. The circuits are discussed in the accompanying text.

The d-c instrument (MA) should have a full-scale reading approximately equal to the total plate current taken by the stage or stages whose plate current passes through the instrument. The value of this current can be estimated by assuming a plate current on each stage (with no signal input to the receiver) of about 6 ma. However, it will be found to be more satisfactory to measure the actual plate current on the stages with a milliammeter of perhaps 0-100 ma full scale before purchasing an instrument for use as an S meter. The 50-ohm potentiometer shown in the drawing is used to adjust the meter reading to full scale with no signal input to the receiver.

When an ordinary meter is used in the plate circuit of a stage, for the purpose of indicating signal strength, the meter reads backwards with respect to strength. This is because increased avc bias on stronger signals causes lower plate current through the meter. For this reason, special meters which indicate zero at the right-hand end of the scale are often used for signal-strength indicators in commercial receivers using this type of circuit. Alternatively, the meter may be mounted upside down, so that the needle moves toward the right with increased strength.

The circuit of figure 27B can frequently be used to advantage in a receiver where the cathode of one of the r-f or i-f amplifier stages runs directly to ground through the cathode-bias resistor instead of running through a cathode-voltage gain control. In this case a 0-1 d-c milliammeter in conjunction with a resistor of 1000 to 3000 ohms can be used as shown as a signal-strength meter. With this circuit the meter will read backwards with increasing signal strength as in the circuit previously discussed.

Figure 27C is the circuit of a forward-reading S meter often used in communications receivers. The instrument is used in an unbalanced bridge circuit with the d-c plate resistance of one i-f tube as one leg of the bridge and with resistors for the other three legs. The value of resistor R must be determined by trial and error and will be somewhere in the vicinity of 50,000 ohms. Sometimes the screen circuits of the r-f and i-f stages are taken from this point along with the screen-circuit voltage divider.

Electron-ray tubes (sometimes called *magic eyes*) can also be used as indicators of relative signal strength in a circuit similar to that shown in figure 27D. A 6U5/6G5 tube should be used where the avc voltage will be from 5 to 20 volts and a type 6E5 tube should be used when the avc voltage will run from 2 to 8 volts.

Audio Amplifiers Audio amplifiers are employed in nearly all radio receivers. The audio amplifier stage or stages are usually of the class-A type, although class-AB push-pull stages are used in some receivers. The purpose of the audio amplifier is to bring the relatively weak signal from the detector up to a strength sufficient to operate a pair of headphones or a loudspeaker. Either triodes, pentodes, or beam tetrodes may be used, the pentodes and beam tetrodes usually giving greater output. In some receivers, particularly those employing grid leak detection, it is possible to operate the headphones directly from the detector, without audio amplification. In such receivers, a single audio stage with a beam tetrode or pentode tube is ordinarily used to drive the loudspeaker.

Most communications receivers, either home-constructed or factory-made, have a single-ended beam tetrode such as a 6V6 or 6AQ5 in the audio output stage feeding the speaker. If precautions are not taken such a stage will actually bring about a decrease in the effective signal-to-noise ratio of the receiver due to the rising high-frequency characteristic of such a stage when feeding a speaker. One way of improving this condition is to place a mica or paper capacitor of approximately 0.003 μfd capacitance across the primary of the output transformer. The use of a capacitor in this manner tends to make the load impedance seen by the plate of the output tube more constant over the audio-frequency range. The speaker and transformer will tend to present a rising impedance to the tube as the frequency increases, and the parallel capacitor will tend to make the total impedance more constant since it will tend to present a decreasing impedance with increasing audio frequency.

A still better way to improve the frequency characteristic of the output stage, and at the same time reduce the harmonic distortion, is to use shunt feedback from the plate of the output tube to the plate of a tube such as a 6AU6 acting as an audio-amplifier stage ahead of the output stage.

10-9 Noise Suppression

The problem of noise suppression confronts the listener who is located in places where interference from power lines, electrical appliances, and automobile ignition systems is troublesome. This noise is often of such intensity as to swamp out signals from desired stations.

There are two principal methods for reducing this noise. They are:

(1) a-c line filters at the source of interference, if the noise is created by an electrical appliance; and
(2) noise-limiting circuits for the reduction, in the receiver itself, of interference of the type caused by automobile ignition systems.

Power Line Filters Many household appliances, such as electric mixers, heating pads, vacuum cleaners, refrigerators, oil burners, sewing machines, doorbells, etc., create an interference of an intermittent nature. The insertion of a line filter near the source of interference often will effect a complete cure. Filters for small appliances can consist of a 0.1-μfd capacitor connected across the 120-volt a-c line. Two capacitors in series across the line, with the midpoint connected to ground, can be used in conjunction with industrial heating machines, refrigerators, oil-burner furnaces, and other more stubborn offenders. In severe cases of interference, additional filters in the form of heavy-duty r-f choke coils must be connected in series with the 120-volt a-c line on both sides of the line right at the interfering appliance.

Peak Noise Limiters Numerous noise-limiting circuits which are beneficial in overcoming key clicks, automobile ignition interference, and similar noise impulses have become popular. They operate on the principle that each individual noise pulse is of very short duration, yet of very high amplitude. The popping or clicking type of noise from electrical ignition systems may produce a signal having a peak value ten to twenty times as great as the incoming radio signal, but an average power much less than the signal.

As the duration of this type of noise peak is short, the receiver can be made inoperative during the noise pulse without the human ear detecting the total loss of signal. Some noise limiters actually *punch a hole* in the signal while others merely *limit* the maximum peak signal which reaches the headphones or speaker.

The noise peak is of such short duration that it would not be objectionable except for

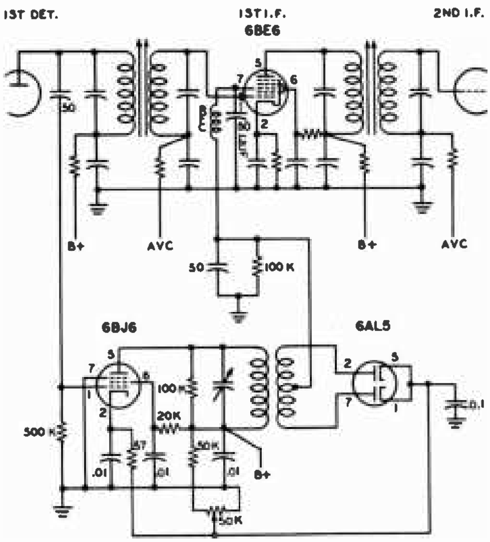


Figure 28

THE LAMB I-F NOISE SILENCER

the fact that it produces an overloading effect on the receiver, which increases its time constant. A sharp voltage peak will give a kick to the diaphragm of the headphones or speaker, and the momentum or inertia keeps the diaphragm in motion until the damping of the diaphragm stops it. This movement produces a popping sound which may completely obliterate the desired signal. If the noise pulse can be limited to a peak amplitude equal to that of the desired signal, the resulting interference is practically negligible for moderately low repetition rates, such as ignition noise.

In addition, the i-f amplifier of the receiver will also tend to lengthen the duration of the noise pulses because the relatively high-Q i-f tuned circuits will *ring* or oscillate when excited by a sharp pulse, such as is produced by ignition noise. The most effective noise limiter would be placed before the high-Q i-f tuned circuits. At this point the noise pulse is the sharpest and has not been degraded by passage through the i-f transformers. In addition, the pulse is eliminated before it can produce ringing effects in the i-f chain.

The Lamb Noise Limiter An i-f noise limiter is shown in figure 28. This is an adaptation of the *Lamb* noise silencer circuit. The i-f signal is fed into a double-grid tube, such as a 6BE6, and thence into the i-f chain. A 6BJ6 high-gain pentode is capacity coupled to the input of the i-f system. This auxiliary tube amplifies both signal and noise that is fed to it. It has a maximum of selectivity ahead of it so that it receives the true noise pulse before it is degraded by the i-f strip. A broadly tuned i-f transformer is used to couple the noise amplifier to a 6AL5 noise rectifier. The gain of the noise amplifier is controlled by a potentiometer in the cathode of the 6BJ6 noise amplifier. This potentiometer controls the gain of the noise amplifier stage and in addition sets the bias level on the 6AL5 diode so that the incoming signal will not be rectified. Only noise peaks louder than the signal can overcome the resting bias of the 6AL5 and cause it to conduct. A noise pulse rectified by the 6AL5 is applied as a negative voltage to the control grid of the 6BE6 i-f tube, disabling the tube, and punching a hole in the signal at the instant of the noise pulse. By varying the bias control of the noise limiter, the negative control voltage applied to the 6BE6 may be adjusted until it is barely sufficient to overcome the noise impulses applied to the #1 control grid without allowing the modulation peaks of the carrier to become badly distorted.

The Bishop Noise Limiter Another effective i-f noise limiter is the *Bishop* limiter. This is a full-wave shunt type diode limiter applied to the primary of the last i-f transformer of a receiver. The limiter is self-biased and automatically adjusts itself to the degree of modulation of the received signal. The schematic of this limiter is shown in figure 29. The bias-circuit time

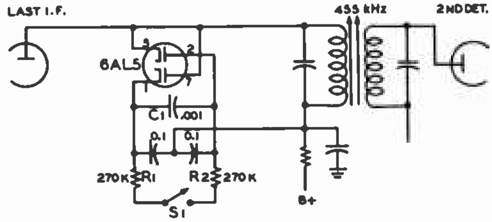


Figure 29

THE BISHOP I-F NOISE LIMITER

constant is determined by C_1 and the shunt resistance, which consists of R_1 and R_2 in series. The plate resistance of the last i-f tube and the capacity of C_1 determine the charging rate of the circuit. The limiter is disabled by opening S_1, which allows the bias to rise to the value of the i-f signal.

Audio Noise Limiters Some of the simplest and most practical peak limiters for radiotelephone reception employ one or two diodes either as shunt or series limiters in the audio system of the receiver. When a noise pulse exceeds a certain predetermined threshold value, the limiter diode acts either as a short or open circuit, depending on whether it is used in a shunt or series circuit. The threshold is made to occur at a level high enough that it will not clip modulation peaks enough to impair voice intelligibility, but low enough to limit the noise peaks effectively.

Because the action of the peak limiter is needed most on very weak signals, and these usually are not strong enough to produce proper avc action, a threshold setting that is correct for a strong phone signal is not correct for optimum limiting on very weak signals. For this reason the threshold control is often tied in with the avc system so as to make the optimum threshold adjustment automatic instead of manual.

Suppression of impulse noise by means of an audio peak limiter is best accomplished at the very front end of the audio system, and for this reason the function of a superheterodyne second detector and limiter often are combined in a composite circuit.

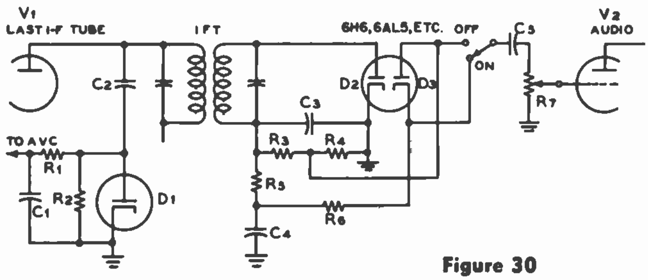
The amount of limiting that can be obtained is a function of the audio distortion that can be tolerated. Because excessive distortion will reduce the intelligibility as much as will background noise, the degree of limiting for which the circuit is designed has to be a compromise.

Peak noise limiters working at the second detector are much more effective when the i-f bandwidth of the receiver is broad, because a sharp i-f amplifier will lengthen the pulses by the time they reach the second detector, making the limiter less effective. Vhf superheterodynes have an i-f bandwidth considerably wider than the minimum necessary for voice sidebands (to take care of drift and instability). Therefore, they are capable of better peak noise suppression than a standard communications receiver having an i-f bandwidth of perhaps 8 kHz. Likewise, when a crystal filter is used on the "sharp" position an a-f peak limiter is of little benefit.

Practical Peak Noise Limiter Circuits Noise limiters range all the way from an audio stage running at very low screen or plate voltage, to elaborate affairs employing 5 or more tubes. Rather than attempt to show the numerous types, many of which are quite complex considering the results obtained, only two very similar types will be described. Either is just about as effective as the most elaborate limiter that can be constructed, yet requires the addition of but a single diode and a few resistors and capacitors over what would be employed in a good superheterodyne without a limiter. Both circuits, with but minor modifications in resistance and capacitance values, are incorporated in one form or another in different types of factory-built communications receivers.

Referring to figure 30, the first circuit shows a conventional superheterodyne second detector, avc, and first audio stage with the addition of one tube element (D_3) which may be either a separate diode or part of a twin-diode as illustrated. Diode D_3 acts as a series gate, allowing audio to reach the grid of the a-f tube only so long as the diode is conducting. The diode is biased by a d-c voltage obtained in the same manner as avc control voltage, the bias being such that pulses of short duration no longer conduct when the pulse voltage exceeds the carrier by approximately 60 percent. This also clips voice modulation peaks, but not enough to impair intelligibility.

It is apparent that the series diode clips only *positive* modulation peaks, by limiting upward modulation to about 60 percent. Negative or downward peaks are limited automatically to 100 percent in the detector, because obviously the rectified voltage out of the diode detector cannot be less than zero. Limiting the downward peaks to 60 percent or so instead of 100 percent would result in but little improvement in noise reduction, and the results do not justify the additional components required.



C_1—0.1-µfd paper
C_2—50-pf mica
C_3—100-pf mica
C_4, C_5—0.01-µfd paper
R_1, R_2—1 meg, ½ watt
R_3, R_4—220,000 ohms, ½ watt
R_5, R_6—1 meg, ½ watt
R_7—2-meg potentiometer

Figure 30

NOISE LIMITER CIRCUIT, WITH ASSOCIATED AVC

This limiter is of the series type, and is self-adjusting to carrier strength for phone reception. For proper operation several volts should be developed across the secondary of the last i-f transformer (IFT) under carrier conditions.

It is important that the exact resistance values shown be used, for best results, and that 10-percent tolerance resistors be used for R_3 and R_4. Also, the rectified carrier voltage developed across C_3 should be at least 5 volts for good limiting.

The limiter will work well on c-w and SSB if the amplitude of beat-frequency oscillator injection is not too high. Variable injection is to be preferred, adjustable from the front panel. If this feature is not provided, the bfo injection should be reduced to the lowest value that will give a satisfactory beat. When this is done, effective limiting and a good beat can be obtained by proper adjustment of the r-f and a-f gain controls. It is assumed, of course, that the avc is cut out of the circuit for c-w telegraphy reception.

Alternative Limiter Circuit The circuit of figure 31 is more effective than that shown in figure 30 under certain conditions and requires the addition of only one more resistor and one more capacitor than the other circuit. Also, this circuit involves a smaller loss in output level than the circuit of figure 30. This circuit can be used with equal effectiveness with a combined diode-triode or diode-pentode tube (6AT6, 6BN8, 6FM8, or similar diode-triodes, or 6AS8, 6CR6, 6BW8, or similar diode-pentodes) as diode detector and first audio stage. However, a separate diode must be used for the noise limiter (D_2). This diode may be one-half of a 6H6, or 6AL5, etc.; it may be a triode connected 6J5, 6C4, or similar type, or it may be a high back-resistance diode (1N658), or equivalent.

Note that the return for the volume control must be made to the cathode of the detector diode (and not to ground) when a dual tube is used as combined second-detector first-audio. This means that in the circuit shown in figure 31 a connection will exist across the points where the "X" is shown on the diagram since a common cathode lead is brought out of the tube for D_1 and V_1. If desired, of course, a single dual diode may be used for D_1 and D_2 in this circuit as well as in the circuit of figure 30. Switching the limiter in and out with the switch S brings about no change in volume.

In any diode limiter circuit such as the ones shown in these two figures it is important that the mid-point of the heater potential for the noise-limiter diode be as close to ground potential as possible. This means that the center-tap of the heater supply for the tubes should be grounded wherever possible rather than grounding one side of the heater supply as is often done. Difficulty with hum pickup in the limiter circuit *may* be encountered when one side of the heater is grounded due to the high values of resistance necessary in the limiter circuit.

The circuit of figure 31 has been used with excellent success in several home-constructed receivers. It is also used in certain manufactured receivers.

An excellent check on the operation of the noise limiter in any communications receiver can be obtained by listening to the Loran signals in the 160-meter band. With the limiter out a sharp rasping buzz will be obtained when one of these stations is tuned

This circuit is of the self-adjusting type and gives less distortion for a given degree of modulation than the more common limiter circuits.

R_1, R_2—470K, ½ watt
R_3—100K, ½ watt
R_4, R_5—1 meg, ½ watt
R_6—2-meg potentiometer
C_1—0.00025 mica (approx.)
C_2—0.01-μfd paper
C_3—0.01-μfd paper
C_4—0.01-μfd paper
D_1, D_2—6H6, 6AL5, diode sections of a 6AT6, or crystal diodes.

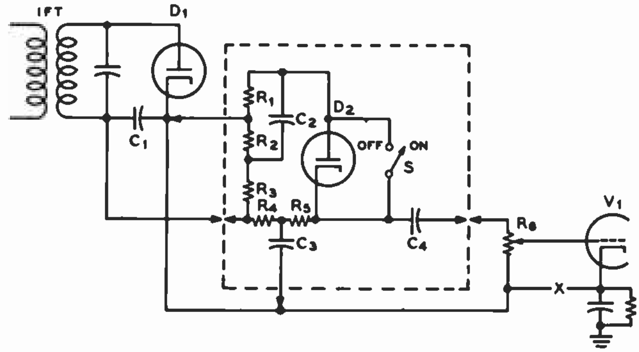


Figure 31

ALTERNATIVE NOISE LIMITER CIRCUIT

in. With the noise limiter switched into the circuit the buzz should be greatly reduced and a low-pitched hum should be heard.

The Full-Wave Limiter The most satisfactory diode noise limiter is the series full-wave limiter, shown in figure 32. The positive noise peaks are clipped by diode A, the clipping level of which may be adjusted to clip at any modulation level between 25 and 100 percent. The negative noise peaks are clipped by the right-hand diode at a fixed level.

The TNS Limiter The *Twin Noise Squelch*, is a combination of a diode noise clipper and an audio squelch tube. The squelch circuit is useful in eliminating the grinding background noise that is the residual left by the diode clipper. In figure 33, the setting of the 470K potentiometer determines the operating level of the squelch action and should be set to eliminate the residual background noise. Because of the low inherent distortion of the TNS, it may be left in the circuit at all times. As with other limiters, the TNS requires a high signal level at the second detector for maximum limiting effect.

10-10 Special Considerations in UHF Receiver Design

Transmission Line Circuits At increasingly higher frequencies, it becomes progressively more difficult to obtain a satisfactory amount of selectivity and impedance from an ordinary coil and capacitor used as a resonant circuit. On the other hand, quarter-wavelength sections of parallel conductors or concentric transmission line are not only more efficient but also become of practical dimensions.

Tuning Short Lines Tubes and tuning capacitors connected to the open end of a transmission line provide a capacitance that makes the resonant length less than a quarter wavelength. The amount of shortening for a specified capacitive reactance is determined by the surge impedance of the line section. It is given by the equation for resonance:

$$\frac{1}{2\,\pi\, fC} = Z_0 \tan l$$

where,

π equals 3.1416,
f equals the frequency,
C equals the capacitance,
Z_0 equals the surge impedance of the line,
tan l equals the tangent of the electrical length in degrees.

The capacitive reactance of the capacitance across the end is $1/\ 2\pi fC$ ohms. For resonance, this must equal the surge impedance of the line times the tangent of its electrical length (in degrees, where 90° equals a quarter wave). It will be seen that twice the capacitance will resonate a line if its surge impedance is halved; also that a given capacitance has twice the loading effect when the frequency is doubled.

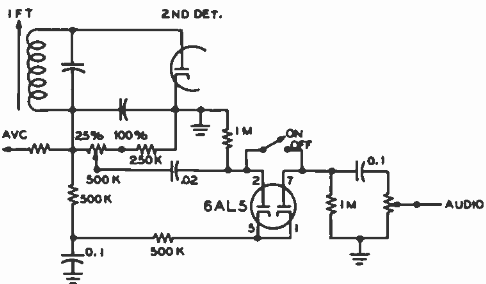


Figure 32

THE FULL-WAVE SERIES AUDIO NOISE LIMITER

Coupling Into Lines and Coaxial Circuits It is possible to couple into a parallel-rod line by tapping directly on one or both rods, preferably through blocking capacitors if any d.c. is present. More commonly, however, a *hairpin* is inductively coupled at the shorting-bar end, either to the bar or to the two rods, or both. This normally will result in a balanced load. Should a loop unbalanced to ground be coupled in, any resulting unbalance reflected into the rods can be reduced with a simple Faraday screen, made of a few parallel wires placed between the hairpin loop and the rods.

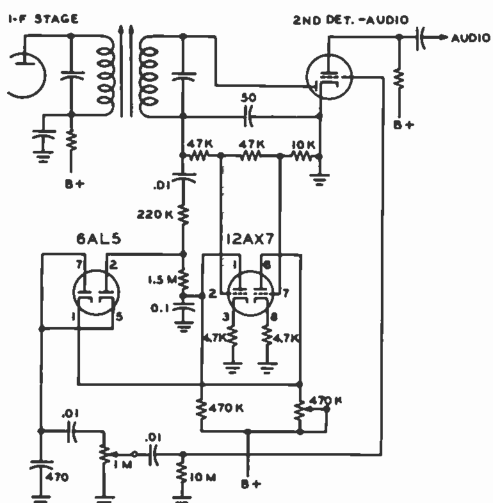


Figure 33

THE TNS AUDIO NOISE LIMITER

These should be soldered at only one end and grounded.

An unbalanced tap on a coaxial resonant circuit can be made directly on the inner conductor at the point where it is properly matched (figure 34). For low impedances, such as a concentric-line feeder, a small one-half turn loop can be inserted through a hole in the outer conductor of the coaxial circuit, being in effect a half of the hairpin type recommended for coupling balanced feeders to coaxial resonant lines. The size of the loop and closeness to the inner conductor determines the impedance matching and loading. Such loops coupled in near the shorting disc do not alter the tuning appreciably, if they are not overcoupled.

Resonant Cavities A *cavity* is a closed resonant chamber made of metal. The cavity, having both inductance and capacitance, supersedes coil-capacitor and capacitance loaded transmission-line tuned circuits at extremely high fequencies where conventional L and C components, of even the most refined design, prove impractical because of the tiny electrical and physical dimensions they must have. Microwave cavities have high Q factors and are superior to conventional tuned circuits. They may be employed in the manner of an obsorption wavemeter or as the tuned circuit in other r-f test instruments, and in microwave transmitters and receivers.

Resonant cavities usually are closed on all sides and all of their walls are made of electrical conductor. However, in some forms, small openings are present for the purpose of excitation.

Cavities have been produced in several shapes including the plain sphere, dimpled sphere, sphere with re-entrant cones of various sorts, cylinder, prism (including cube), ellipsoid, ellipsoid-hyperboloid, doughnut-shape, and various re-entrant types. In appearance, they resemble in their simpler forms metal boxes or cans.

The cavity actually is a linear circuit, but one which is superior to a conventional coaxial resonator in the uhf range. The cavity resonates in much the same manner as does a barrel or a closed room with reflecting walls.

Because electromagnetic energy (and the associated electrostatic energy) oscillates to and fro inside them in one mode or another,

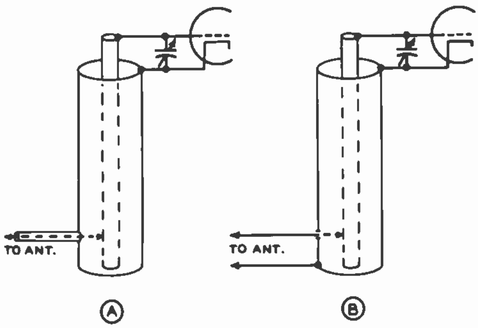


Figure 34

COUPLING AN ANTENNA TO A COAXIAL RESONANT CIRCUIT

A shows the recommended method for coupling a coaxial line to a coaxial resonant circuit. B shows an alternative method for use with an open-wire type of antenna feed line.

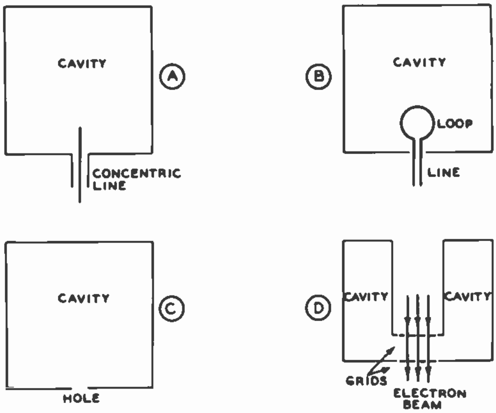


Figure 35

METHODS OF EXCITING A RESONANT CAVITY

resonant cavities resemble waveguides. The mode of operation in a cavity is affected by the manner in which microwave energy is injected. A cavity will resonate to a large number of frequencies, each being associated with a particular mode or standing-wave pattern. The lowest mode (lowest frequency of operation) of a cavity resonator normally is the one used.

The resonant frequency of a cavity may be varied, if desired, by means of movable plungers or plugs, as shown in figure 36A, or a movable metal disc (figure 36B). A cavity that is too small for a given wavelength will not oscillate.

The resonant frequencies of simple spherical, cylindrical, and cubical cavities may be calculated simply for one particular mode. Wavelength and cavity dimensions (in centimeters) are related by the following simple resonance formulas:

for cylinder $\lambda_r = 2.6 \times$ radius;
for cube $\lambda_r = 2.83 \times$ half of 1 side;
for sphere $\lambda_r = 2.28 \times$ radius.

Butterfly Circuit Unlike the cavity resonator, which in its conventional form is a device which can tune over a relatively narrow band, the *butterfly circuit* is a tunable resonator which permits coverage of a fairly wide uhf band. The butterfly circuit is very similar to a conventional coil/variable-capacitor combination, except that both inductance and capacitance are provided by

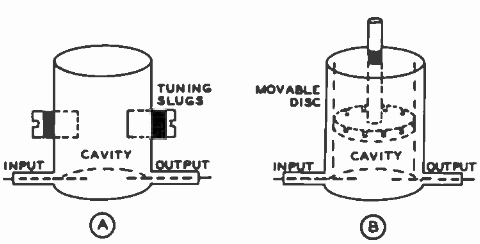


Figure 36

TUNING METHODS FOR CYLINDRICAL RESONANT CAVITIES

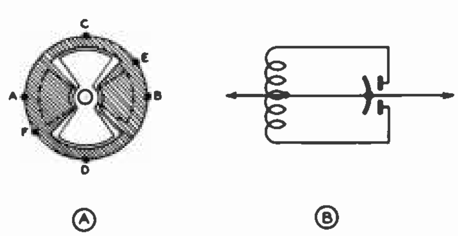


Figure 37

THE BUTTERFLY RESONANT CIRCUIT

Shown at A is the physical appearance of the butterfly circuit as used in the vhf and lower uhf range. B shows an electrical representation of the circuit.

what appears to be a variable capacitor alone. The Q of this device is somewhat less than that of a concentric-line tuned circuit but is entirely adequate for numerous applications.

Figure 37A shows construction of a single butterfly section. The butterfly-shaped rotor, from which the device derives its name, turns in relation to the unconventional stator. The two groups of stator "fins" or sectors are in effect joined together by a semicircular metal band, integral with the sectors, which provides the circuit inductance. When the rotor is set to fill the loop opening (the position in which it is shown in figure 37A), the circuit inductance and capacitance are reduced to minimum. When the rotor occupies the position indicated by the dotted lines, the inductance and capacitance are at maximum. The tuning range of practical butterfly circuits is in the ratio of 1.5:1 to 3.5:1.

Direct circuit connections may be made to points A and B. If balanced operation is desired, either point C or D will provide the electrical midpoint. Coupling may be effected by means of a small single-turn loop placed near point E or F. The butterfly thus permits continuous variation of both capacitance and inductance, as indicated by the equivalent circuit in figure 37B, while at the same time eliminating all pigtails and wiping contacts.

Several butterfly sections may be stacked in parallel in the same way that variable capacitors are built up. In stacking these sections, the effect of adding inductances in parallel is to lower the total circuit inductance, while the addition of stators and rotors raises the total capacitance, as well as the ratio of maximum to minimum capacitance.

Butterfly circuits have been applied specifically to oscillators for transmitters, superheterodyne receivers, and heterodyne frequency meters in the 100- to 1000-MHz frequency range.

Receiver Circuits The types of resonant circuits described in the previous paragraphs have largely replaced conventional coil-capacitor circuits in the range above 100 MHz. Tuned short lines and butterfly circuits are used in the range from about 100 MHz to perhaps 3500 MHz, and above about 3500 MHz resonant cavities are used almost exclusively. The resonant cavity is also quite generally employed in the 2000- to 3500-MHz range.

In a properly designed receiver, thermal agitation in the first tuned circuit is amplified by subsequent tubes and predominates in the output. For good signal-to-set-noise ratio, therefore, one must strive for a high-gain low-noise r-f stage. Hiss can be held down by giving careful attention to this point. A mixer has about 0.3 the gain of an r-f tube of the same type; so it is advisable to precede a mixer by an efficient r-f stage. It is also of some value to have good r-f selectivity before the first detector in order to reduce noises produced by beating noise at one frequency against noise at another, to produce noise at the intermediate frequency in a superheterodyne.

The frequency limit of a tube is reached when the shortest possible external connections are used as the tuned circuit, except for abnormal types of oscillation. Wires or sizeable components are often best considered as sections of transmission lines rather than as simple resistances, capacitances, or inductances.

So long as small triodes and pentodes will operate normally, they are generally preferred as vhf tubes over other receiving methods that have been devised. However, the input capacitance, input conductance, and transit time of these tubes limit the upper frequency at which they may be operated. The input resistance, which drops to a low value at very short wavelengths, limits the stage gain and broadens the tuning.

VHF Tubes The first tube in a vhf receiver is most important in raising the signal above the noise generated in successive stages, for which reason small vhf types are definitely preferred.

Tubes employing the conventional grid-controlled and diode rectifier principles have been modernized, through various expedients, for operation at frequencies as high, in some new types, as 4000 MHz. Beyond that frequency, electron transit time becomes the limiting factor and new principles must be enlisted. In general, the improvements embodied in existing tubes have consisted of (1) reducing electrode spacing to cut down electron transit time, (2) reducing electrode areas to decrease interelectrode capacitances, and (3) shortening of electrode leads either by mounting the electrode assembly close to the tube base or by bringing the leads out directly through the glass envelope at nearby points. Through reduction of lead inductance and interelectrode capacitances, input and output resonant frequencies due to tube construction have been increased substantially.

Tubes embracing one or more of the features just outlined include the later loctal types, high-frequency acorns, button-base types, and the lighthouse types. The button-base triode and the 6CW4 *Nuvistor* will reach 500 MHz. Type 6F4 acorn triode is recommended for use up to 1200 MHz. Type 1A3 button-base diode has a resonant frequency of 1000 MHz, while type 9005 acorn diode resonates at 1500 MHz. Lighthouse type 2C40 can be used at frequencies up to 3500 MHz as an oscillator.

Crystal Rectifiers More than three decades have passed since the crystal (mineral) rectifier enjoyed widespread use in radio receivers. Low-priced tubes completely supplanted the fragile and relatively insensitive crystal detector, although it did continue for a few years as a simple meter rectifier in absorption wavemeters after its demise as a receiver component.

Today, the crystal detector is of new importance in microwave communication. It is being employed as a detector and as a mixer in receivers and test instruments used at extremely high radio frequencies. At some of the frequencies employed in microwave operations, the crystal rectifier is the only satisfactory detector or mixer.

The chief advantages of the crystal rectifier are very low capacitance, relative freedom from transit-time difficulties, and its two-terminal nature. No batteries or a-c power supply are required for its operation.

The crystal detector consists essentially of a small piece of silicon or germanium mounted in a base of low-melting-point alloy and contacted by means of a thin, springy feeler wire.

The complex physics of crystal rectification is beyond the scope of this discussion.

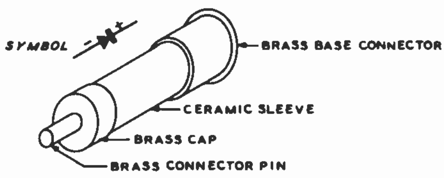


Figure 38

1N23 MICROWAVE-TYPE CRYSTAL DIODE

A small silicon crystal is attached to the base connector and a fine feeler wire is set to the most sensitive spot on the crystal. After adjustment the ceramic shell is filled with compound to hold the contact wire in position. Crystals of this type are used to over 30,000 MHz.

It is sufficient to state that current flows from several hundred to several thousand times more readily in one direction through the contact of the feeler wire and crystal than in the opposite direction. Consequently, an alternating current (including one of microwave frequency) will be rectified by the crystal detector. The load, through which the rectifier current flows, may be connected in series or shunt with the crystal, although the former connection is most generally employed.

The basic arrangement of a modern fixed crystal detector developed during World War II for microwave work, particularly radar, is shown in figure 38. Once the feeler wire of this unit is set at the factory to the most sensitive spot on the surface of the silicon crystal and its pressure is adjusted, a filler compound is injected through the filling hole to hold the feeler wire permanently in position.

10-11 Receiver Adjustment

A simple regenerative receiver requires little adjustment other than that necessary to ensure correct tuning and smooth regeneration over some desired range. Receivers of the tuned-radio-frequency type and superheterodynes require precise alignment to obtain the highest possible degree of selectivity and sensitivity.

Good results can be obtained from a receiver only when it is properly aligned and adjusted. The most practical technique for making these adjustments is given below.

Instruments A very small number of instruments will suffice to check and align a communications receiver, the most important of these testing units being a modulated oscillator and a d-c and a-c voltmeter. The meters are essential in checking the voltage applied at each circuit point from the power supply. If the a-c voltmeter is of the oxide-rectifier type, it can be used, in addition, as an output meter when connected across the receiver output when tuning to a modulated signal. If the signal is a steady tone, such as from a test oscillator, the output meter will indicate the value of the detected signal. In this manner, alignment results may be visually noted on the meter.

TRF Receiver Alignment Alignment procedure in a multistage trf receiver is exactly the same as aligning a single stage. If the detector is regenerative, each preceding stage is successively aligned while keeping the detector circuit tuned to the test signal, the latter being a station signal or one locally generated by a test oscillator loosely coupled to the antenna lead. During these adjustments, the r-f amplifier gain control is adjusted for maximum sensitivity, assuming that the r-f amplifier is stable and does not oscillate. Often a sensitive receiver can be roughly aligned by tuning for maximum noise pickup.

Superheterodyne Alignment Aligning a superhet is a detailed task requiring a great amount of care and patience. It should never be undertaken without a thorough understanding of the involved job to be done and then only when there is abundant time to devote to the operation. There are no shortcuts; every circuit must be adjusted individually and accurately if the receiver is to give peak performance. The precision of each adjustment is dependent on the accuracy with which the preceding one was made.

Superhet alignment requires (1) a good signal generator (modulated oscillator) covering the radio and intermediate frequencies and equipped with an attenuator; (2) the necessary socket wrenches, screwdrivers, or "neutralizing tools' to adjust the various i-f and r-f trimmer capacitors; and (3) some convenient type of tuning indicator, such as a copper-oxide or electronic voltmeter.

Throughout the alignment process, unless specifically stated otherwise, the r-f gain control must be set for maximum output, the beat oscillator switched off, and the avc turned off or shorted out. When the signal output of the receiver is excessive, either the attenuator or the a-f gain control may be turned down, but never the r-f gain control.

I-F Alignment After the receiver has been given a rigid electrical and mechanical inspection, and any faults which may have been found in wiring or the selection and assembly of parts are corrected, the i-f amplifier may be aligned as the first step in the checking operations.

With the signal generator set to give a modulated signal on the frequency at which the i-f amplifier is to operate, clip the "hot" output lead from the generator through a small fixed capacitor to the control grid of the last i-f tube. Adjust both trimmer capacitors in the last i-f transformer (the one between the last i-f amplifier tube and the second detector) to resonance as indicated by maximum deflection of the output meter.

Each i-f stage is adjusted in the same manner, moving the hot lead, stage by stage, back toward the front end of the receiver and backing off the attenuator as the signal strength increases in each new position. The last adjustment will be made to the first i-f transformer, with the hot signal generator lead connected to the control grid of the mixer. Occasionally it is necessary to disconnect the mixer grid lead from the coil, grounding it through a 1000- or 5000-ohm resistor, and then couple the signal generator through a small capacitor to the grid.

When the last i-f adjustment has been completed, it is good practice to go back through the i-f channel, re-peaking all of the transformers. It is imperative that this recheck be made in sets which do not include a crystal filter, and where the simple alignment of the i-f amplifier to the generator is final.

I-F with Crystal Filter There are several ways of aligning an i-f channel which contains a crystal-filter circuit.

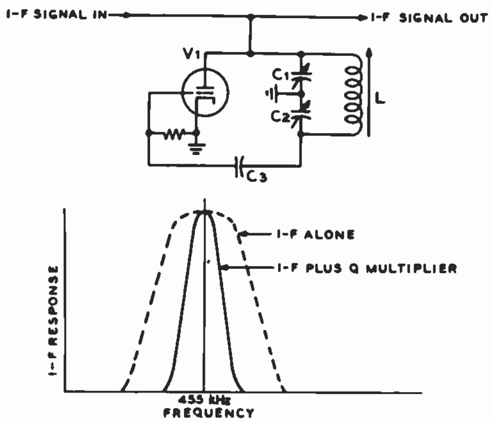


Figure 39

The Q-MULTIPLIER

The loss resistance of a high-Q circuit is neutralized by regeneration in a simple feedback amplifier. A highly selective passband is produced which is coupled to the i-f circuit of the receiver.

However, the following method is one which has been found to give satisfactory results in every case: An unmodulated signal generator capable of tuning to the frequency of the filter crystal in the receiver is coupled to the grid of the stage which precedes the crystal filter in the receiver. Then, with the crystal filter switched in, the signal generator is tuned *slowly* to find the frequency where the crystal peaks. The receiver "S" meter may be used as the indicator, and the sound heard from the speaker will be of assistance in finding the point. When the frequency at which the crystal peaks has been found, all the i-f transformers in the receiver should be touched up to peak at that frequency.

BFO Adjustment Adjusting the beat oscillator on a receiver that has no front-panel adjustment is relatively simple. It is only necessary to tune the receiver to resonance with any signal, as indicated by the tuning indicator, and then turn on the bfo and set its trimmer (or trimmers) to produce the desired beat note. Setting the beat oscillator in this way will result in the beat note being stronger on one "side" of the signal than on the other, which is what is desired for c-w reception. The bfo should *not* be set to *zero beat* when the receiver is tuned to resonance with the signal, as this will cause an equally strong beat to be obtained on both sides of resonance.

Front-End Alignment Alignment of the front end of a home-constructed receiver is a relatively simple process, consisting of first getting the oscillator to cover the desired frequency range and then of peaking the various r-f circuits for maximum gain. However, if the frequency range covered by the receiver is very wide a fair amount of cut and try will be required to obtain satisfactory tracking between the r-f circuits and the oscillator. Manufactured communications receivers should always be tuned in accordance with the instructions given in the maintenance manual.

10-12 Receiving Accessories

The Q-Multiplier The selectivity of a receiver may be increased by raising the Q of the tuned circuits of the i-f strip. A simple way to accomplish this is to add a controlled amount of positive feedback to a tuned circuit, thus increasing its Q. This is done in the *Q-multiplier,* whose

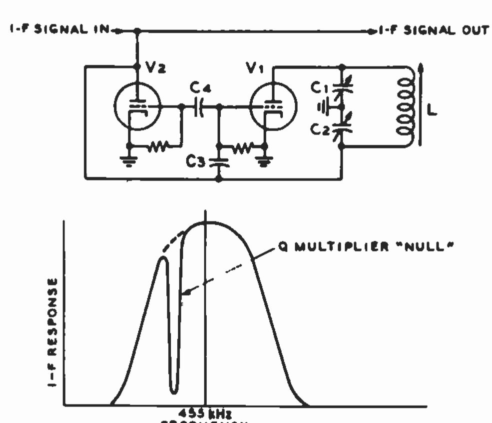
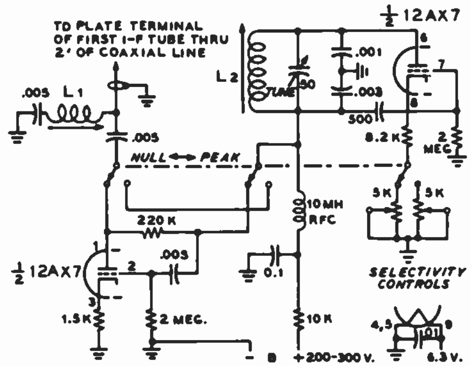


Figure 40

Q-MULTIPLIER NULL CIRCUIT

The addition of a second triode permits the Q-Multiplier to be used for nulling out an unwanted heterodyne.



L1 = GRAYBURNE V6 CHOKE (0.6 – 6.0 MH)
L2 = GRAYBURNE "LOOPSTICK" COIL

Figure 41

SCHEMATIC OF A 455-kHz Q-MULTIPLIER

Coil L_1 is required to tune out the reactance of the coaxial line. It is adjusted for maximum signal response. L_1 may be omitted if the Q-multiplier is connected to the receiver with a short length of wire, and the i-f transformer within the receiver is retuned.

basic circuit is shown in figure 39. The circuit L-C_1-C_2 is tuned to the intermediate frequency, and the loss resistance of the circuit is neutralized by the positive-feedback circuit composed of C_3 and the vacuum tube. Too great a degree of positive feedback will cause the circuit to break into oscillation.

At the resonant frequency, the impedance of the tuned circuit is very high, and when shunted across an i-f stage will have little effect upon the signal. At frequencies removed from resonance, the impedance of the circuit is low, resulting in high attenuation of the i-f signal. The resonant frequency of the Q-multiplier may be varied by changing the value of one of the components in the tuned circuit.

The Q-multiplier may also be used to "null" a signal by employing negative feedback to control the plate resistance of an auxiliary amplifier stage as shown in figure 40. Since the grid-cathode phase shift through the Q-multiplier is zero, the plate resistance of a second tube may be readily controlled by placing it across the Q-multiplier. At resonance, the high negative feedback drops the plate resistance of V_2, shunting the i-f circuit. Off resonance, the feedback is reduced and the plate resistance of V_2 rises, reducing the amount of signal attenuation in the i-f strip. A circuit combining both the "peak" and "null" features is shown in figure 41.

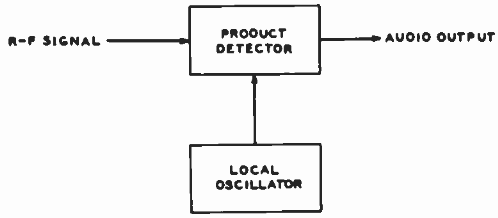


Figure 42

THE PRODUCT DETECTOR

Audio output signal is developed only when local oscillator is on.

The Product Detector A version of the common mixer or converter stage may be used as a second detector in a receiver in place of the usual diode detector. The diode is an envelope detector (section 12-1) and develops a d-c output voltage from a single r-f signal, and audio "beats" from two or more input signals. A *product detector* (figure 42) requires that a local carrier voltage be present in order to produce an audio ouput signal. Such a detector is useful for single-sideband work, since the intermodulation distortion is extremely low.

A pentagrid product detector is shown in figure 43. The incoming signal is applied to

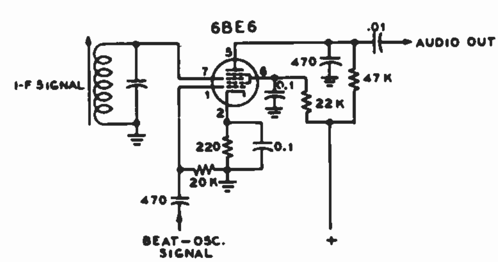


Figure 43

PENTAGRID MIXER USED AS PRODUCT DETECTOR

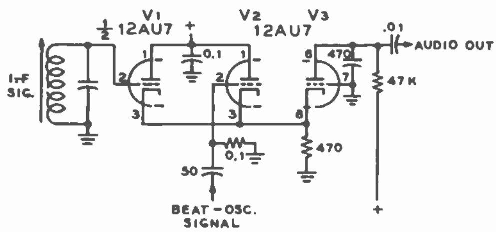


Figure 44

TRIPLE-TRIODE PRODUCT DETECTOR

V_1 and V_2 act as cathode followers, delivering sideband signal and local oscillator signal to grounded grid triode mixer (V_3).

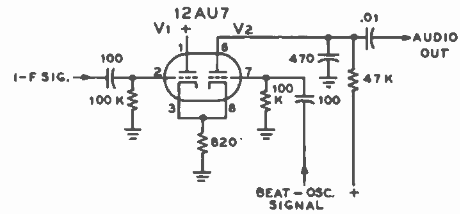


Figure 45

DOUBLE-TRIODE PRODUCT DETECTOR

grid 3 of the mixer tube, and the local oscillator is injected on grid 1. Grid bias is adjusted for operation over the linear portion of the tube-characteristic curve. When grid-1 injection is removed, the audio output from an unmodulated signal applied to grid 3 should be reduced approximately 30 to 40 db below normal detection level. When the frequency of the local oscillator is synchronized with the incoming carrier, amplitude-modulated signals may be received by *exalted-carrier* reception, wherein the local carrier substitutes for the transmitted carrier of the a-m signal.

Three triodes may be used as a product detector (figure 44). Triodes V_1 and V_2 act as cathode followers, delivering the sideband signal and the local oscillator signal to a grounded-grid triode (V_3) which functions as the mixer stage. A third version of the product detector is illustrated in figure 45. A twin-triode tube is used. Section V_1 functions as a cathode-follower amplifier. Section V_2 is a "plate" detector, the cathode of which is common with the cathode-follower amplifier. The local-oscillator signal is injected into the grid circuit of tube V_2.

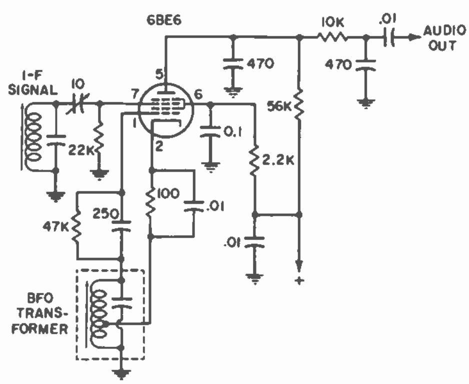


Figure 46

COMBINED BEAT OSCILLATOR AND PRODUCT DETECTOR

The variable i-f coupling capacitor is adjusted to provide approximately 0.2 volt peak signal at pin 7 of the 6BE6.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Generation of Radio-Frequency Energy

A radio communication or broadcast transmitter consists of a source of radio frequency power, or *carrier;* a system for *modulating* the carrier whereby voice or telegraph keying or other modulation is superimposed upon it; and an antenna system, including feedline, for *radiating* the intelligence-carrying radio-frequency power. The power supply employed to convert primary power to the various voltages required by the r-f and modulator portions of the transmitter may also be considered part of the transmitter.

Voice modulation usually is accomplished by varying either the amplitude or the frequency of the radio-frequency carrier in accord with the components of intelligence to be transmitted.

Radiotelegraph modulation (keying) normally is accomplished either by interrupting, shifting the frequency of, or superimposing an audio tone on the radio-frequency carrier in accordance with the dots and dashes to be transmitted.

The complexity of the radio-frequency generating portion of the transmitter is dependent on the power, order of stability, and frequency desired. An oscillator feeding an antenna directly is the simplest form of radio-frequency generator. A modern high-frequency transmitter, on the other hand, is a very complex generator. Such equipment comprises a very stable crystal-controlled or self-controlled oscillator to stabilize the output frequency. a series of frequency multipliers, or mixers, one or more amplifier stages to increase the power up to the level which is desired for feeding the antenna system, and a filter system for keeping the harmonic energy generated in the transmitter from being fed to the antenna system.

11-1 Self-Controlled Oscillators

In Chapter Four, it was explained that the amplifying properties of a tube having three or more elements give it the ability to generate an alternating current of a frequency determined by the components associated with it. A vacuum tube operated in such a circuit is called an *oscillator*, and its function is essentially to convert direct current into radio-frequency alternating current of a predetermined frequency.

Oscillators for controlling the frequency of conventional radio transmitters can be

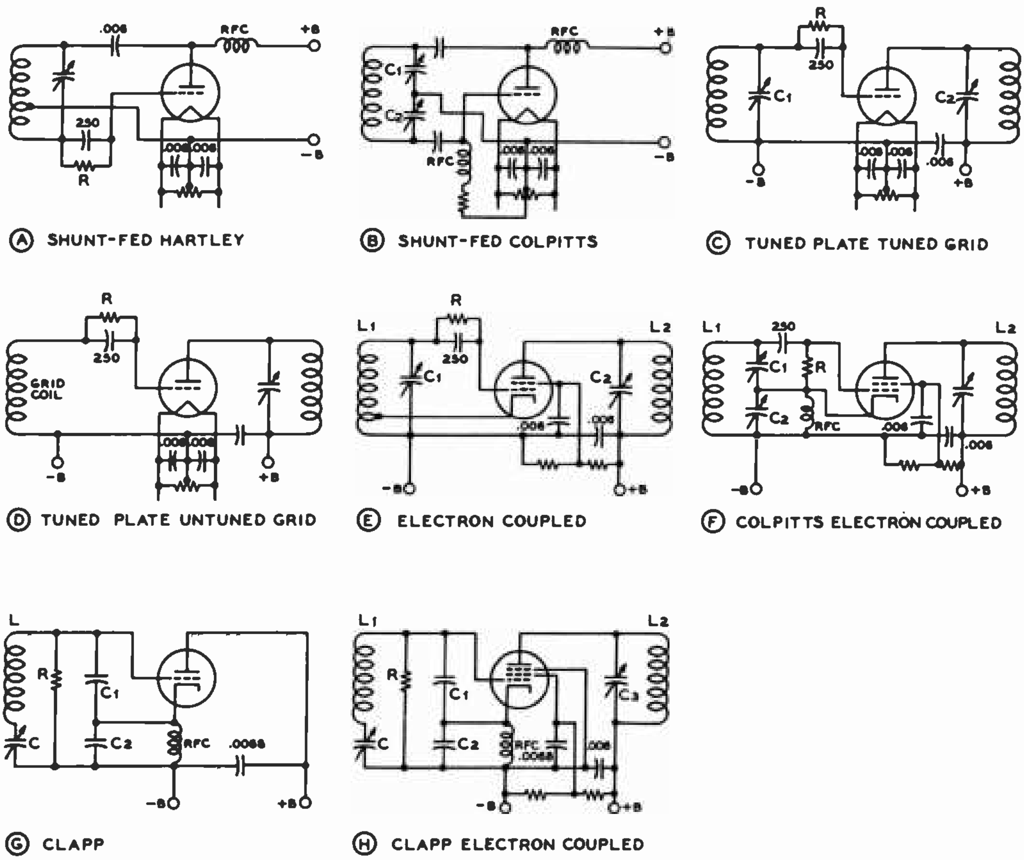


Figure 1

COMMON TYPES OF SELF-EXCITED OSCILLATORS

Fixed capacitor values are typical, but will vary somewhat with the application. In the Clapp oscillator circuits (G) and (H), capacitors C_1 and C_2 should have a reactance of 50 to 100 ohms at the operating frequency of the oscillator. Tuning of these two oscillators is accomplished by capacitor C. In the circuits of (E), (F), and (H), tuning of the tank circuit in the plate of the oscillator tube will have relatively small effect on the frequency of oscillation. The plate tank circuit also may, if desired, be tuned to a harmonic of the oscillation frequency, or a broadly resonant circuit may be used in this circuit position.

divided into two general classes: *self-controlled* and *crystal-controlled.*

There are a great many types of self-controlled oscillators, each of which is best suited to a particular application. They can further be subdivided into the classifications of: negative-grid oscillators, electron-orbit oscillators, negative-resistance oscillators, velocity-modulation oscillators, and magnetron oscillators.

Negative-Grid Oscillators A *negative-grid* oscillator is essentially a vacuum-tube amplifier with a sufficient portion of the output energy coupled back into the input circuit to sustain oscillation. The control grid is biased negatively with respect to the cathode. Common types of negative-grid oscillators, which can be used as fundamental or harmonic oscillators, are diagrammed in figure 1.

The Hartley Illustrated in figure 1 (A) is the oscillator circuit which finds the most general application at the present time; this circuit is commonly called the *Hartley*. The operation of this oscillator will be described as an index to the operation of all negative-grid oscillators; the only real difference between the various circuits is the manner in which energy for excitation is coupled from the plate to the grid circuit.

When plate voltage is applied to the Hartley oscillator shown at (A), the sudden flow of plate current accompanying the application of plate voltage will cause an electromagnetic field to be set up in the vicinity of the coil. The building-up of this field will cause a potential drop to appear from turn to turn along the coil. Due to the inductive coupling between the portion of the coil in which the plate current is flowing and the grid portion, a potential will be induced in the grid portion.

Since the cathode tap is between the grid and plate ends of the coil, the induced grid voltage acts in such a manner as to increase further the plate current to the tube. This action will continue for a short period of time determined by the inductance and capacitance of the tuned circuit, until the *flywheel effect* of the tuned circuit causes this action to come to a maximum and then to reverse itself. The plate current then decreases (the magnetic field around the coil also decreasing) until a minimum is reached, when the action starts again in the original direction and at a greater amplitude than before. The amplitude of these oscillations, the frequency of which is determined by the coil-capacitor circuit, will increase in a very short period of time to a limit determined by the plate voltage of the oscillator tube.

The Colpitts Figure 1 (B) shows a version of the *Colpitts* oscillator. It can be seen that this is essentially the same circuit as the Hartley except that the ratio of a pair of capacitances in series determines the effective cathode tap, instead of actually using a tap on the tank coil. Also, the net capacitance of these two capacitors comprises the tank capacitance of the tuned circuit. This oscillator circuit is somewhat less susceptible to parasitic (spurious) oscillations than the Hartley.

For best operation of the Hartley and Colpitts oscillators, the voltage from grid to cathode, determined by the tap on the coil or the setting of the two capacitors, normally should be from 1/3 to 1/5 that appearing between plate and cathode.

The T.P.T.G. The *tuned-plate tuned-grid* oscillator illustrated at (C) has a tank circuit in both the plate and grid circuits. The feedback of energy from the plate to the grid circuits is accomplished by the plate-to-grid interelectrode capacitance within the tube. The necessary phase reversal in feedback voltage is provided by tuning the grid tank capacitor to the low side of the desired frequency and the plate capacitor to the high side. A broadly resonant coil may be substituted for the grid tank to form the T.N.T. (tuned–not tuned) oscillator shown at D.

Electron-Coupled Oscillators In any of the oscillator circuits just described it is possible to take energy from the oscillator circuit by coupling an external load to the tank circuit. Since the tank circuit determines the frequency of oscillation of the tube, any variations in the conditions of the external circuit will be coupled back into the frequency-determining portion of the oscillator. These variations will result in frequency instability.

The frequency-determining portion of an oscillator may be coupled to the load circuit only by an electron stream, as illustrated in (E) and (F) of figure 1. When it is considered that the screen of the tube acts as the plate to the oscillator circuit, the plate merely acting as a coupler to the load, then the similarity between the cathode-grid-screen circuit of these oscillators and the cathode-grid-plate circuits of the corresponding prototype can be seen.

The *electron-coupled* oscillator has good stability with respect to load and voltage variation. Load variations have a relatively small effect on the frequency, since the only coupling between the oscillating circuit and the load is through the electron stream flowing through the other elements to the plate. The plate is electrostatically shielded from the oscillating portion by the bypassed screen.

The stability of the e.c.o. with respect to variations in supply voltages is explained as follows: The frequency will shift in one direction with an increase in screen voltage, while an increase in plate voltage will cause it to shift in the other direction. By a proper proportioning of the resistors that comprise the voltage divider supplying screen voltage, it is possible to make the frequency of the oscillator substantially independent of supply voltage variations.

The Clapp Oscillator A relatively new type of oscillator circuit which is capable of giving excellent frequency stability is illustrated in figure 1G. Comparison between the more standard circuits of figure 1A through 1F and the *Clapp* oscillator circuits of figures 1G and 1H will immediately show one marked difference: the tuned circuit which controls the operating frequency in the Clapp oscillator is *series* resonant, while in all the more standard oscillator circuits the frequency-controlling circuit is *parallel* resonant. Also, the capacitors C_1 and C_2 are relatively large in terms of the usual values for a Colpitts oscillator. In fact, the value of capacitors C_1 and C_2 will be in the vicinity of 0.001 μfd. to 0.0025 μfd. for an oscillator which is to be operated in the 1.8-MHz band.

The Clapp oscillator operates in the following manner: at the resonant frequency of the oscillator tuned circuit (L, C) the impedance of this circuit is at minimum (since it operates in series resonance) and maximum current flows through it. Note however, that C_1 and C_2 also are included within the current path for the series-resonant circuit, so that at the frequency of resonance an appreciable voltage drop appears across these capacitors. The voltage drop appearing across C_1 is applied to the grid of the oscillator tube as excitation, while the amplified output of the oscillator tube appears across C_2 as the driving power to keep the circuit in oscillation.

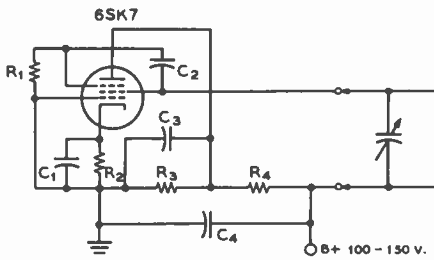
Capacitors C_1 and C_2 should be made as large in value as possible, while still permitting the circuit to oscillate over the full tuning range of C. The larger these capacitors are made, the smaller will be the coupling between the oscillating circuit and the tube, and consequently the better will be oscillator stability with respect to tube variations. High-g_m tubes such as the 6AH6, 5763, and 6CB6 will permit the use of larger values of capacitance at C_1 and C_2 than will more conventional tubes such as the 6BA6, 6AQ5, and such types. In general it may be said that the reactance of capacitors C_1 and C_2 should be on the order of 40 to 120 ohms at the operating frequency of the oscillator—with the lower values of reactance going with high-g_m tubes and the higher values being necessary to permit oscillation with tubes having g_m in the range of 2000 micromhos.

It will be found that the Clapp oscillator will have a tendency to vary in power output over the frequency range of tuning capacitor C. The output will be greatest where C is at its largest setting, and will tend to fall off with C at minimum capacitance. In fact, if capacitors C_1 and C_2 have too large a value the circuit will stop oscillation near the *minimum* capacitance setting of capacitor C.

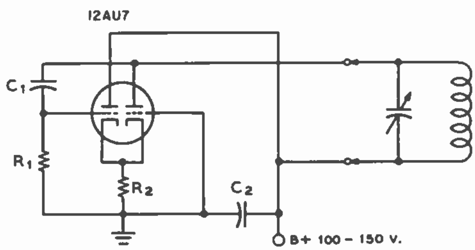
Hence it will be necessary to use a slightly *smaller* value of capacitance at C_1 and C_2 (to provide an increase in the capacitive reactance at this point), or else the frequency range of the oscillator must be restricted by paralleling a fixed capacitor across C so that its effective capacitance at minimum setting will be increased to a value which will sustain oscillation.

In the triode Clapp oscillator, such as shown at figure 1G, output voltage for excitation of an amplifier, doubler, or isolation stage normally is taken from the cathode of the oscillator tube by capacitive coupling to the grid of the next tube. However, where greater isolation of succeeding stages from the oscillating circuit is desired, the electron-coupled Clapp oscillator diagrammed in figure 1H may be used. Output then may be taken from the plate circuit of the tube by capacitive coupling with either a tuned circuit, as shown, or with an r-f choke or a broadly resonant circuit in the plate return. Alternatively, energy may be coupled from the output circuit L_2-C_3 by link coupling to L_2.

The considerations with regard to C_1 C_2, and the grid tuned circuit are the same as for the triode oscillator arrangement of figure 1G.



(A) TRANSITRON OSCILLATOR



(B) CATHODE COUPLED OSCILLATOR

Figure 2

TWO-TERMINAL OSCILLATOR CIRCUITS

Both circuits may be used for an audio oscillator or for frequencies into the vhf range simply by placing a tank circuit tuned to the proper frequency where indicated on the drawing. Recommended values for the components are given below for both oscillators.

TRANSITRON OSCILLATOR

C_1—0.01-μfd mica for r.f. 10-μfd elect. for a.f.
C_2—0.00005-μfd mica for r.f. 0.1-μfd paper for a.f.
C_3—0.003-μfd mica for r.f. 0.5-μfd paper for a.f.
C_4—0.01-μfd mica for r.f. 8-μfd elect. for a.f.
R_1—220K ½-watt carbon
R_2—1800 ohms ½-watt carbon
R_3—22K 2-watt carbon
R_4—22K 2-watt carbon

CATHODE-COUPLED OSCILLATOR

C_1—0.00005-μfd mica for r.f. 0.1-μfd paper for audio
C_2—0.003-μfd mica for r.f. 8-μfd elect. for audio
R_1—47K ½-watt carbon
R_2—1K 1-watt carbon

Negative-Resistance Oscillators *Negative - resistance* oscillators often are used when unusually high frequency stability is desired, as in a frequency meter. The *dynatron* of a few years ago and the newer *transitron* are examples of oscillator circuits which make use of the negative-resistance characteristic between different elements in some multigrid tubes.

In the dynatron, the negative resistance is a consequence of secondary emission of electrons from the plate of a tetrode tube. By a proper proportioning of the electrode voltage, an increase in screen voltage will cause a decrease in screen current, since the increased screen voltage will cause the screen to attract a larger number of the secondary electrons emitted by the plate. Since the net screen current flowing from the screen supply will be decreased by an increase in screen voltage, it is said that the screen circuit presents a negative resistance.

If any type of tuned circuit, or even a resistance-capacitance circuit, is connected in series with the screen, the arrangement will oscillate—provided, of course, that the external circuit impedance is greater than the negative resistance. A negative-resistance effect similar to the dynatron is obtained in the *transitron* circuit, which uses a pentode with the suppressor coupled to the screen. The negative resistance in this case is obtained from a combination of secondary emission and interelectrode coupling, and is considerably more stable than that obtained from uncontrolled secondary emission alone in the dynatron. A representative transitron oscillator circuit is shown in figure 2.

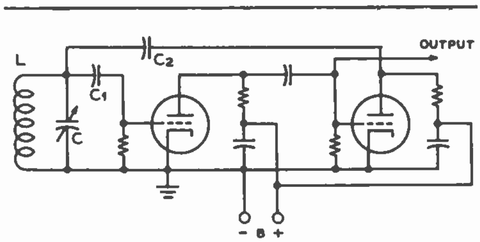


Figure 3

THE FRANKLIN OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT

A separate phase-inverter tube is used in this oscillator to feed a portion of the output back to the input in the proper phase to sustain oscillation. The values of C_1 and C_2 should be as small as will permit oscillations to be sustained over the desired frequency range.

The chief distinction between a conventional *negative-grid* oscillator and a *negative-resistance* oscillator is that in the former the tank circuit must act as a phase inverter in order to permit the amplification of the tube to act as a negative resistance, while in the latter the tube acts as its own phase inverter. Thus a negative-resistance oscillator requires only an untapped coil and a single capacitor as the frequency-determining tank circuit, and is classed as a *two-terminal oscillator*. In fact, the time constant of an RC circuit may be used as the frequency-determining element and such an oscillator is rather widely used as a tunable audio-frequency oscillator.

The Franklin Oscillator The *Franklin* oscillator makes use of two cascaded tubes to obtain the negative-resistance effect (figure 3). The tubes may be either a pair of triodes, tetrodes, or pentodes; a dual triode; or a combination of a triode and a multigrid tube. The chief advantage of this oscillator circuit is that the frequency-determining tank only has two terminals, and one side of the circuit is grounded.

The second tube acts as a phase inverter to give an effect similar to that obtained with the dynatron or transitron, except that the effective transconductance is much higher. If the tuned circuit is omitted or is replaced by a resistor, the circuit becomes a *relaxation* oscillator or a *multivibrator*.

Oscillator Stability The Clapp oscillator has proved to be inherently the most stable of all the oscillator circuits discussed above, since minimum coupling between the oscillator tube and its associated tuned circuit is possible. However, this inherently good stability is with respect to tube variations; instability of the tuned circuit with respect to vibration or temperature will of course have as much effect on the frequency of oscillation as with any other type of oscillator circuit. Solid mechanical construction of the components of the oscillating circuit, along with a small negative-coefficient compensating capacitor included as an element of the tuned circuit, usually will afford an adequate degree of oscillator stability.

VFO Transmitter Controls When used to control the frequency of a transmitter in which there are stringent limitations on frequency tolerance, several precautions are taken to ensure that a variable-frequency oscillator will stay on frequency. The oscillator is fed from a voltage-regulated power supply, uses a well-designed and temperature-compensated tank circuit, is of rugged mechanical construction to avoid the effects of shock and vibration, is protected against excessive changes in ambient room temperature, and is isolated from feedback or stray coupling from other portions of the transmitter by shielding, filtering of voltage supply leads, and incorporation of one or more buffer-amplifier stages. In a high-power transmitter a small amount of stray coupling from the final amplifier to the oscillator can produce appreciable degradation of the oscillator stability if both are on the same frequency. Therefore, the oscillator usually is operated on a subharmonic of the transmitter output frequency, with one or more frequency multipliers between the oscillator and final amplifier.

11-2 Quartz Crystal Oscillators

Quartz is a naturally occurring crystal having a structure such that when plates are cut in certain definite relationships to the crystallographic axes, these plates will show the *piezoelectric* effect—the plates will be deformed in the influence of an electric field, and, conversely, when such a plate is compressed or deformed in any way a potential difference will appear on its opposite sides.

The crystal has mechanical resonance, and will vibrate at a very high frequency because of its stiffness, the natural period of vibration depending on the dimensions, the method of electrical excitation, and crystallographic orientation. Because of the piezoelectric properties, it is possible to cut a quartz plate which, when provided with suitable electrodes, will have the characteristics of a series-resonant circuit with a very high LC ratio and very high Q. The Q is several times as high as can be obtained with an inductor-capacitor combination in conventional physical sizes. The equivalent electrical circuit is shown in figure 4A, the resistance component simply being an acknowledgement of the fact that the Q, while high, does not have an infinite value.

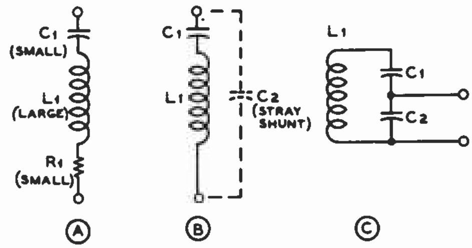


Figure 4

EQUIVALENT ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT OF QUARTZ PLATE IN A HOLDER

At A is shown the equivalent series-resonant circuit of the crystal itself, at B is shown how the shunt capacitance of the holder electrodes and associated wiring affects the circuit to the combination circuit of C which exhibits both series resonance and parallel resonance (antiresonance), the separation in frequency between the two modes being very small and determined by the ratio of C_1 to C_2.

The shunt capacitance of the electrodes and associated wiring (crystal holder and socket, plus circuit wiring) is represented by the dotted portion of figure 4B. In a high-frequency crystal this will be considerably greater than the capacitance component of an equivalent series LC circuit, and unless the shunt capacitance is balanced out in a bridge circuit, the crystal will exhibit both resonant (series-resonant) and antiresonant (parallel-resonant) frequencies, the latter being slightly higher than the series-resonant frequency and approaching it as C_2 is increased.

The series-resonance characteristic is employed in crystal filter circuits in receivers and also in certain oscillator circuits wherein the crystal is used as a selective feedback element in such a manner that the phase of the feedback is correct and the amplitude adequate only at or very close to the series-resonant frequency of the crystal.

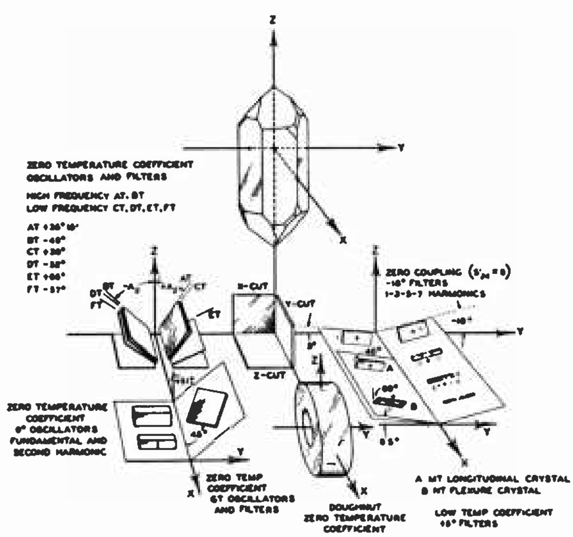
While quartz, tourmaline, Rochelle salts, ADP, and EDT crystals all exhibit the piezoelectric effect, quartz is the material widely employed for frequency control.

As the cutting and grinding of quartz plates has progressed to a high state of development and these plates may be purchased at prices which discourage the cutting and grinding by simple hand methods for one's own use, the procedure will be only lightly touched on here.

The crystal blank is cut from the raw quartz at a predetermined orientation with respect to the optical and electrical axes, the orientation determining the activity, temperature coefficient, thickness coefficient, and other characteristics. Various orientations or "cuts" having useful characteristics are illustrated in figure 5.

Figure 5

ORIENTATION OF THE COMMON CRYSTAL CUTS



The crystal blank is then rough-ground almost to frequency, the frequency increasing in inverse ratio to the oscillating dimension (usually the thickness). It is then finished to exact frequency either by careful lapping, by etching, or plating. The latter process consists of finishing it to a frequency slightly higher than that desired and then silver plating the electrodes right on the crystal, the frequency decreasing as the deposit of silver is increased. If the crystal is not etched, it must be carefully scrubbed and "baked" several times to stabilize it, or otherwise the frequency and activity of the crystal will change with time. Irradiation by X-rays recently has been used in crystal finishing.

Unplated crystals usually are mounted in pressure holders, in which two electrodes are held against the crystal faces under slight pressure. Unplated crystals also are sometimes mounted in an air-gap holder in which there is a very small gap between the crystal and one or both electrodes. By making this gap variable, the frequency of the crystal may be altered over narrow limits (about 0.3% for certain types).

The temperature coefficient of frequency for various crystal cuts of the "T"-rotated family is indicated in figure 5. These angles are typical, but crystals of a certain cut will vary slightly. By controlling the orientation and dimensioning, the *turning point* (point of zero temperature coefficient) for a BT-cut plate may be made either lower or higher than the 75 degrees shown. Also, by careful control of axes and dimensions, it is possible to get AT-cut crystals with a very flat temperature-frequency characteristic.

The first quartz plates used were either Y-cut or X-cut. The former had a very high temperature coefficient which was discontinuous, causing the frequency to jump at certain critical temperatures. The X-cut had a moderately bad coefficient, but it was more continuous, and by keeping the crystal in a temperature controlled oven, a high order of stability could be obtained. However, the X-cut crystal was considerably less active than the Y-cut, especially in the case of poorly grounded plates.

For frequencies between 500 kHz and about 6 MHz, the AT-cut crystal now is the most widely used. It is active, can be made free from spurious responses, and has an excellent temperature characteristic. However, above about 6 MHz it becomes quite thin and a difficult production job. Between 6 MHz and about 12 MHz, the BT-cut plate is widely used. It also works well between 500 kHz and 6MHz, but the AT-cut is more desirable when a high order of stability is desired and no crystal oven is employed.

For low-frequency operation on the order of 100 kHz, such as is required in a frequency standard, the GT-cut crystal is recommended, though CT- and DT-cuts also are widely used for applications between 50 and 500 kHz. The CT-, DT-, and GT-cut plates are known as *contour* cuts, as these plates oscillate along the long dimension of the plate or bar, and are much smaller physically than would be the case for a regular AT- or BT-cut crystal for the same frequency.

Crystal Holders Crystals normally are purchased ready mounted. The best type mount is determined by the type crystal and its application, and usually an optimum mounting is furnished with the crystal. However, certain features are desirable in all holders. One of these is exclusion of moisture and prevention of electrode oxidization. The best means of accomplishing this is a metal holder, hermetically sealed, with glass insulation and a metal-to-glass bond. However, such holders are more expensive, and a ceramic or phenolic holder with rubber gasket will serve where requirements are not too exacting.

Temperature-Control; Crystal Ovens Where the frequency tolerance requirements are not too stringent and the ambient temperature does not include extremes, an AT-cut plate, or a BT-cut plate with optimum (mean-temperature) turning point, will often provide adequate stability without resorting to a temperature-controlled oven. However, for broadcast stations and other applications where very close tolerances must be maintained, a thermostatically controlled oven, adjusted for a temperature slightly higher than the highest ambient likely to be encountered, must of necessity be employed.

Overtone-Cut Crystals Just as a vibrating string can be made to vibrate on its harmonics, a quartz crystal will exhibit mechanical resonance (and therefore electrical resonance) at harmonics of its fundamental frequency. When employed in the usual holder, it is possible to excite the crystal only on its odd harmonics (overtones).

By grinding the crystal especially for harmonic operation, it is possible to enhance its operation as a harmonic resonator. BT- and AT-cut crystals designed for optimum operation on the 3rd, 5th and even the 7th overtone are available. The 5th- and 7th-overtone types, especially the latter, require special holder and oscillator circuit precautions for satisfactory operation, but the 3rd-overtone type needs little more consideration than a regular fundamental type. A crystal ground for optimum operation on a particular overtone may or may not be a good oscillator on a different overtone or on the fundamental. One interesting characteristic of an overtone-cut crystal is that its overtone frequency is not quite an exact multiple of its fundamental, though the disparity is very small.

The overtone frequency for which the crystal was designed is the *working frequency*. It is not the fundamental since the crystal itself actually oscillates on this working frequency when it is functioning in the proper manner.

When an overtone-cut crystal is employed, a selective tuned circuit must be employed somewhere in the oscillator in order to discriminate against the fundamental frequency or undesired overtones, otherwise the crystal might not always oscillate on the intended frequency. For this reason the *Pierce* oscillator (later described in this chapter) is not suitable for use with overtone-cut crystals, because the only tuned element in this oscillator circuit is the crystal itself.

Crystal Current; Heating and Fracture For a given crystal operating as an antiresonant tank in a given oscillator fixed load impedance and plate and screen voltages, the r-f current through the crystal will increase as the shunt capacitance (C_2 of figure 4) is increased, because this effectively increases the step-up ratio of

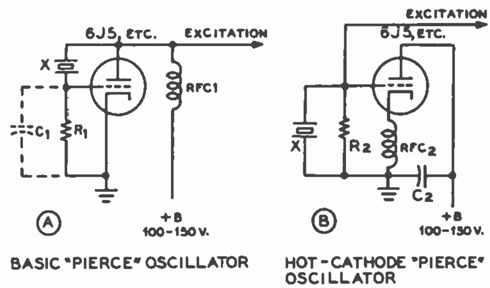


Figure 6

THE PIERCE CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR CIRCUIT

Shown at A is the basic Pierce crystal oscillator circuit. A capacitance of 10 to 75 pf. normally will be required at C_1 for optimum operation. If a plate supply voltage higher than indicated is to be used, RFC_1 may be replaced by a 22,000-ohm 2-watt resistor. Shown at B is an alternative arrangement with the r-f ground moved to the plate, and with the cathode floating. This alternative circuit has the advantage that the full r-f voltage developed across the crystal may be used as excitation to the next stage, since one side of the crystal is grounded.

C_1 to C_2. For a given shunt capacitance (C_2) the crystal current for a given crystal is directly proportional to the r-f voltage across C_2. This voltage may be measured by means of a vacuum-tube voltmeter having a low input capacitance, and such a measurement is a more pertinent one than a reading of r-f current by means of a thermogalvanometer inserted in series with one of the leads to the crystal holder.

The function of a crystal is to provide accurate frequency control, and unless it is used in such a manner as to take advantage of its inherent high stability, there is no point in using a crystal oscillator. For this reason a crystal oscillator should not be run at high plate input in an attempt to obtain considerable power directly from the oscillator, as such operation will cause the crystal to heat, with resultant frequency drift and possible fracture.

11-3 Crystal Oscillator Circuits

Considerable confusion exists as to nomenclature of crystal oscillator circuits, due to a tendency to name a circuit after its discoverer. Nearly all the basic crystal oscillator circuits were either first used or else developed independently by G. W. Pierce, but he has not been so credited in all the literature.

Use of the crystal oscillator in master oscillator circuits in radio transmitters dates back to about 1924 when the first application articles appeared.

The Pierce Oscillator The circuit of figure 6A is the simplest crystal oscillator circuit. It is one of those developed by Pierce, and is generally known among amateurs as the *Pierce oscillator*. The crystal simply replaces the tank circuit in a Colpitts or ultra-audion oscillator. The r-f excitation voltage available to the next stage is low, being somewhat less than that developed across the crystal. Capacitor C_1 will make more of the voltage across the crystal available for excitation, and sometimes will be found necessary to ensure oscillation. Its value is small, usually approximately equal to or slightly greater than the stray capacitance from the plate circuit to ground (including the grid of the stage being driven).

If the r-f choke has adequate inductance, a crystal (even an overtone-cut crystal) will almost invariably oscillate on its fundamental. The Pierce oscillator therefore cannot be used with overtone-cut crystals.

The circuit at B is the same as that of A except that the plate instead of the cathode is operated at ground r-f potential. All of the r-f voltage developed across the crystal is available for excitation to the next stage, but still is low for reasonable values of crystal current. For best operation a tube with low heater-cathode capacitance is required. Excitation for the next stage may also be taken from the cathode when using this circuit.

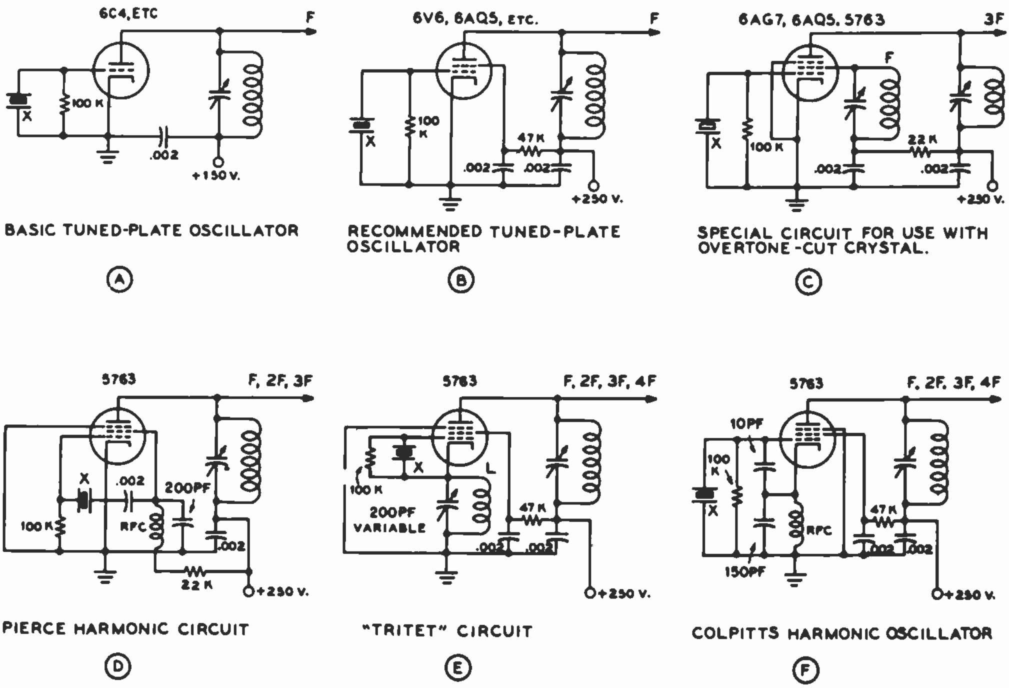
Tuned-Plate Crystal Oslillator The circuit shown in figure 7A is also one used by Pierce, but is more widely referred to as the *Miller* oscillator. To avoid confusion, we shall refer to it as the *tuned-plate crystal oscillator*. It is essentially an Armstrong or tuned-plate/tuned-grid oscillator with the crystal replacing the usual LC grid tank. The plate tank must be tuned to a frequency slightly higher than the antiresonant (parallel-resonant) frequency of the crystal. Whereas the Pierce circuits of figure 6 will oscillate at (or very close to) the antiresonant frequency of the crystal, the circuits of figure 7 will oscillate at a frequency a little above the antiresonant frequency of the crystal.

The diagram shown in figure 7A is the basic circuit. The most popular version of the tuned-plate oscillator employs a pentode or beam tetrode with cathode bias to prevent excessive plate dissipation when the circuit is not oscillating. The cathode resistor is optional. Its omission will reduce both crystal current and oscillator efficiency, resulting in somewhat more output for a given crystal current. The tube usually is an audio or video beam pentode or tetrode, the plate-grid capacitance of such tubes being sufficient to ensure stable oscillation but not so high as to offer excessive feedback with resulting high crystal current. The 6CL6 makes an excellent all-around tube for this type circuit.

Pentode Harmonic Crystal Oscillator Circuits The usual type of crystal-controlled h-f transmitter operates, at least part of the time, on a frequency which is an integral multiple of the operating frequency of the controlling crystal. Hence, oscillator circuits which are capable of providing output on the crystal frequency if desired, but which also can deliver output energy on harmonics of the crystal frequency have come into wide use. Four such circuits which have found wide application are illustrated in figures 7C, 7D, 7E, and 7F.

The circuit shown in figure 7C is recommended for use with overtone-cut crystals when output is desired on a multiple of the oscillating frequency of the crystal. As an example, a 25-MHz overtone-cut crystal may be used in this circuit to obtain output on 50 MHz or a 48-MHz overtone-cut crystal may be used to obtain output on the 144-MHz amateur band. The circuit is not recommended for use with the normal type of fundamental-frequency crystal since more output with fewer variable elements can be obtained with the circuits of 7D and 7F.

The *Pierce harmonic* circuit shown in figure 7D is satisfactory for many applications which require very low crystal current, but



BASIC TUNED-PLATE OSCILLATOR (A)

RECOMMENDED TUNED-PLATE OSCILLATOR (B)

SPECIAL CIRCUIT FOR USE WITH OVERTONE-CUT CRYSTAL. (C)

PIERCE HARMONIC CIRCUIT (D)

"TRITET" CIRCUIT (E)

COLPITTS HARMONIC OSCILLATOR (F)

Figure 7

COMMONLY USED CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR CIRCUITS

Shown at A is the basic tuned-plate crystal oscillator with a triode oscillator tube. The plate tank must be tuned on the low-capacitance side of resonance to sustain oscillation. B shows the tuned-plate oscillator as it is normally used, with an a-f power pentode to permit high output with relatively low crystal current. Schematics C, D, E, and F illustrate crystal oscillator circuits which can deliver moderate output energy on harmonics of the oscillating frequency of the crystal. C shows a special circuit which will permit use of an overtone-cut crystal to obtain output energy well into the vhf range. D is valuable when extremely low crystal current is a requirement, but delivers relatively low output. E is commonly used, but is subject to crystal damage if the cathode circuit is mistuned. F is recommended as the most generally satisfactory from the standpoints of: low crystal current regardless of misadjustment, good output on harmonic frequencies, one side of crystal is grounded, will oscillate with crystals from 1.5 to 10 MHz without adjustment, output tank may be tuned to the crystal frequency for fundamental output without stopping oscillation or changing frequency.

has the disadvantage that both sides of the crystal are above ground potential. The *Tritet* circuit of figure 7E is widely used and can give excellent output with low crystal current. However, the circuit has the disadvantages of requiring a cathode coil, of requiring careful setting of the variable cathode capacitor to avoid damaging the crystal when changing frequency ranges, and of having both sides of the crystal above ground potential.

The *Colpitts harmonic oscillator* of figure 7F is recommended as being the most generally satisfactory harmonic crystal oscillator circuit since it has the following advantages: (1) the circuit will oscillate with crystals over a very wide frequency range with no change other than plugging in or switching in the desired crystal; (2) crystal current is extremely low; (3) one side of the crystal is grounded, which facilitates crystal-switching circuits; (4) the circuit will operate straight through without frequency pulling, or it may be operated with output on the second, third, or fourth harmonic of the crystal frequency.

Crystal Oscillator Tuning The tunable circuits of all oscillators illustrated should be tuned for max-

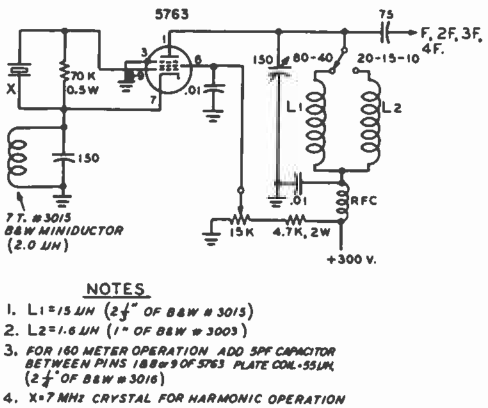


Figure 8

ALL-BAND CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR CAPABLE OF DRIVING BEAM-TETRODE TUBE. 6CL6 OR 5763 MAY BE USED

imum output as indicated by maximum excitation to the following stage, except that the oscillator tank of tuned-plate oscillators (figure 7A and figure 7B) should be backed off slightly towards the low capacitance side from maximum output, as the oscillator then is in a more stable condition and sure to start immediately when power is applied. This is especially important when the oscillator is keyed, as for break-in c-w operation.

Crystal Switching It is desirable to keep stray shunt capacitances in the crystal circuit as low as possible, regardless of the oscillator circuit. If a selector switch is used, this means that both switch and crystal sockets must be placed close to the oscillator-tube socket. This is especially true of overtone-cut crystals operating on a comparatively high frequency. In fact, on the highest frequency crystals it is preferable to use a turret arrangement for switching, as the stray capacitances can be kept lower.

Crystal-Oscillator Keying When the crystal oscillator is keyed, it is necessary that crystal activity and oscillator-tube transconductance be moderately high, and that oscillator loading and crystal shunt capacitance be low. Below 2500 kHz and above 6 MHz these considerations become especially important. Keying of the plate voltage (in the negative lead) of a crystal oscillator, with the screen voltage regulated at about 150 volts, has been found to give satisfactory results.

A Versatile 5763 Crystal Oscillator The 5763 tube may be used in a modified Tri-tet crystal oscillator, capable of delivering sufficient power on all bands from 160 meters through 10 meters to fully drive a pentode tube, such as the 807, 2E26 or 6146. Such an oscillator is extremely useful for portable or mobile work, since it combines all essential exciter functions in one tube. The circuit of this oscillator is shown in figure 8. For 160-, 80- and 40-meter operation the 5763 functions as a tuned-plate oscillator. Fundamental-frequency crystals are used on these three bands. For 20-, 15- and 10-meter operation the 5763 functions as a Tri-tet oscillator with a fixed-tuned cathode circuit. The impedance of this cathode circuit does not affect operation of the 5763 on the lower frequency bands so it is left in the circuit at all times. A 7-MHz crystal is used for fundamental output on 40 meters and for harmonic output on 20, 15, and 10 meters. Crystal current is extremely low regardless of the output frequency of the oscillator. The plate circuit of the 5763 is capable of tuning a frequency range of 2:1, requiring only two output coils: one for 80- 40-meter operation, and one for 20-, 15-, and 10-meter operation. In some cases it may be necessary to add 5 picofarads of external feedback capacity between the plate and control grid of the 5763 tube to sustain oscillation with sluggish 160-meter crystals.

Triode Overtone Oscillators The recent development of reliable overtone crystals capable of operation on the third, fifth, seventh (or higher) overtones has made possible vhf output from a low-frequency crystal by the use of a double-triode regenerative oscillator circuit. Some of the twin triode tubes such as the 12AU7, 12AV7 and 6J6 are especially satisfactory when used in this type of circuit. Crystals that are ground for overtone service may be made to oscillate on odd-overtone frequencies other than the one marked on the

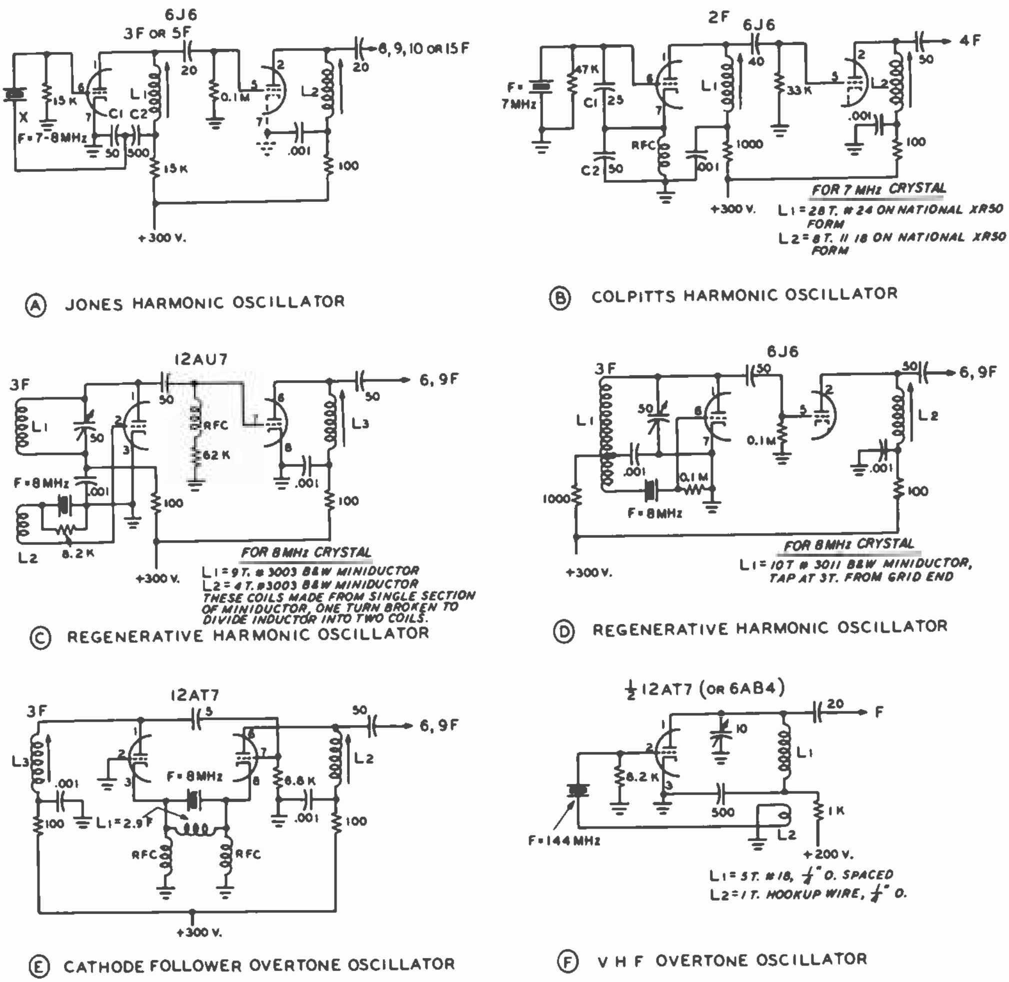


Figure 9

VARIOUS TYPES OF OVERTONE OSCILLATORS USING MINIATURE DOUBLE-TRIODE VACUUM TUBES

crystal holder. A 24-MHz overtone crystal, for example, is a specially ground 8-MHz crystal operating on its third overtone. In the proper circuit it may be made to oscillate on 40 MHz (fifth overtone), 56 MHz (seventh overtone), or 72 MHz (ninth overtone). Even the ordinary 8-MHz crystals not designed for overtone operation may be made to oscillate readily on 24 MHz (third overtone) in these circuits.

A variety of overtone oscillator circuits is shown in figure 9. The oscillator of figure 9A is attributed to Frank Jones, W6AJF. The first section of the 6J6 dual triode comprises a regenerative oscillator, with output on either the third or fifth overtone of the crystal frequency. The regenerative loop of this oscillator consists of a capacitance bridge made up of C_1 and C_2 with the ratio C_2/C_1 determining the amount of regenerative feedback in the circuit. With an 8-MHz crystal, output from the first section of the 6J6 tube may be obtained on either 24 or 40 MHz, depending on the resonant frequency of the plate circuit inductor (L_1). The second half of the 6J6 acts as a frequency multiplier, its plate circuit (L_2) tuned to the sixth- or ninth-harmonic frequency when L_1 is tuned to the third overtone, or to the tenth-harmonic frequency when L_1 is tuned to the fifth overtone.

Figure 9B illustrates a Colpitts overtone oscillator employing a 6J6 tube. This is an outgrowth of the Colpitts harmonic oscillator of figure 7F. The regenerative loop in this case consists of C_1, C_2, and RFC between the grid, cathode, and ground of the first section of the 6J6. The plate circuit of the first section is tuned to the second, harmonic of the crystal, and the second section of the 6J6 doubles to the fourth harmonic of the crystal. This circuit is useful in obtaining 28-MHz output from a 7-MHz crystal and is highly popular in mobile work.

The circuit of figure 9C shows a typical regenerative overtone oscillator employing a 12AU7 double-triode tube. Feedback is controlled by the number of turns in L_2, and the coupling between L_2 and L_1. Only enough feedback should be employed to maintain proper oscillation of the crystal. Excessive feedback will cause the first section of the 12AU7 to oscillate as a self-excited T.N.T. oscillator, independent of the crystal. A variety of this circuit is shown in figure 9D, wherein a tapped coil, (L_1) is used in place of the two separate coils. Operation of the circuit is the same in either case, regeneration now being controlled by the placement of the tap on L_1.

A cathode-follower overtone oscillator is shown in figure 9E. The cathode coil (L_1) is chosen so as to resonate with the crystal and tube capacities *just below* the third-overtone frequency of the crystal. For example, with an 8-MHz crystal, L_3 is tuned to 24 MHz, L_1 resonates with the circuit capacities to 23.5 MHz, and the harmonic tank circuit of the second section of the 12AT7 is tuned either to 48 MHz or 72 MHz. If a 24-MHz overtone crystal is used in this circuit, L_3 may be tuned to 72 MHz, L_1 resonates with the circuit capacities to 70 MHz, and the harmonic tank circuit (L_2) is tuned to 144 MHz. If there is any tendency towards self-oscillation in the circuit, it may be eliminated by a small amount of inductive coupling and between L_2 and L_3. Placing these coils near each other, with the winding of L_2 correctly polarized with respect to L_3 will prevent self-oscillation of the circuit.

The use of a 144-MHz overtone crystal is illustrated in figure 9F. A 6AB4 or one-half of a 12AT7 tube may be used, with output directly in the 2-meter amateur band. A slight amount of regeneration is provided by the one turn link, (L_2) which is loosely coupled to the 144-MHz tuned tank circuit (L_1) in the plate circuit of the oscillator tube. If a 12AT7 tube and a 110-MHz crystal are employed, direct output in the 220-MHz amateur band may be obtained from the second half of the 12AT7.

11-4 Radio-Frequency Amplifiers

The output of the oscillator stage in a transmitter (whether it be self-controlled or crystal controlled) must be kept down to a fairly low level to maintain stability and to maintain a factor of safety from fracture of the crystal when one is used. The low power output of the oscillator is brought up to the desired power level by means of radio-frequency amplifiers. The two classes of r-f amplifiers that find widest application in radio transmitters are the class-B and class-C types.

The Class-B Amplifier *Class-B amplifiers* are used in a radio-telegraph transmitter when maximum power gain and minimum harmonic output is desired in a particular stage. A *class-B amplifier* operates with cutoff bias and a comparatively small amount of excitation. Power gains of 20 to 200 or so are obtainable in a well-designed class-B amplifier. The plate efficiency of a class-B c-w amplifier will run around 65 percent.

The Class-B Linear Another type of class-B amplifier is the *class-B linear* stage as employed in radiophone work. This type of amplifier is used to increase the level of a modulated signal, and depends for its operation on the linear relation between excitation voltage and output voltage. Or, to state the fact in another manner, the power output of a class-B linear stage varies linearly with the square of the excitation voltage.

The class-B linear amplifier is operated with cutoff bias and a small value of excitation, the actual value of exciting power being such that the power output under carrier conditions is one-fourth of the peak power capabilities of the stage. Class-B linears are very widely employed in broadcast and commercial installations, and are common in amateur application for single-sideband transmitters. Tubes with high plate dissipation are required for moderate output in this mode. The *carrier* efficiency of such an amplifier will vary from 30 to 35 percent.

The Class-C Amplifier *Class-C amplifiers* are very widely used in a-m and c-w transmitters. Good power gain may be obtained (values of gain from 3 to 20 are common) and the plate-circuit efficiency may under certain conditions be as high as 85 percent. Class-C amplifiers operate with considerably more than cutoff bias and ordinarily with a large amount of excitation as compared to a class-B amplifier. The bias for a normal class-C amplifier is such that plate current on the stage flows for approximately 120° of the 360° excitation cycle. Class-C amplifiers are used in transmitters where a fairly large amount of excitation power is available and good plate-circuit efficiency is desired.

Plate Modulated Class-C The characteristic of a class-C amplifier which makes it linear with respect to changes in plate voltage is that which allows such an amplifier to be *plate modulated* for radiotelephony. Through the use of higher bias than is required for a c-w class-C amplifier and greater excitation, the linearity of such an amplifier may be extended from zero plate voltage to twice the normal value. The output power of a class-C amplifier, adjusted for plate modulation, varies with the square of the plate voltage. This is the same condition that would take place if a resistor equal to the voltage on the amplifier, divided by its plate current, were substituted for the amplifier. Therefore, the stage presents a resistive load to the modulator.

Grid-Modulated Class-C If the grid current to a class-C amplifier is reduced to a low value, and the plate loading is increased to the point where the plate dissipation approaches the rated value, such an amplifier may be grid modulated for radiotelephony. If the plate voltage is raised to quite a high value and the stage is adjusted carefully, efficiencies as high as 40 to 43 percent with good modulation capability and comparatively low distortion may be obtained. Fixed bias is required. This type of operation is termed class-C grid-bias modulation.

Grid Excitation Adequate grid excitation must be available for class-B or class-C service. The excitation for a plate-modulated class-C stage must be sufficient to produce a normal value of d-c grid current with rated bias voltage. The bias voltage preferably should be obtained from a combination of grid leak and fixed C-bias supply.

Cutoff bias can be calculated by dividing the amplification factor of the tube into the d-c plate voltage. This is the value normally used for class-B amplifiers (fixed bias, no grid resistor). Class-C amplifiers use from 1.5 to 5 times this value, depending on the available grid drive, or excitation, and the desired plate efficiency. Less grid excitation is needed for c-w operation, and the values of fixed bias (if greater than cutoff) may be reduced, or the value of the grid-bias resistor can be lowered until normal rated d-c grid current flows.

The values of grid excitation listed for each type of tube may be reduced by as much as 50 percent if only moderate power output and plate efficiency are desired. When consulting the tube tables, it is well to remember that the power lost in the tuned circuits must be taken into consideration when calculating the available grid drive. At very-high frequencies, the r-f circuit losses may even exceed the power required for actual grid excitation.

Link-coupling between stages, particularly to the final amplifier grid circuit, normally will provide more grid drive than can be obtained from other coupling systems. The number of turns in the coupling link, and the location of the turns on the coil, can be

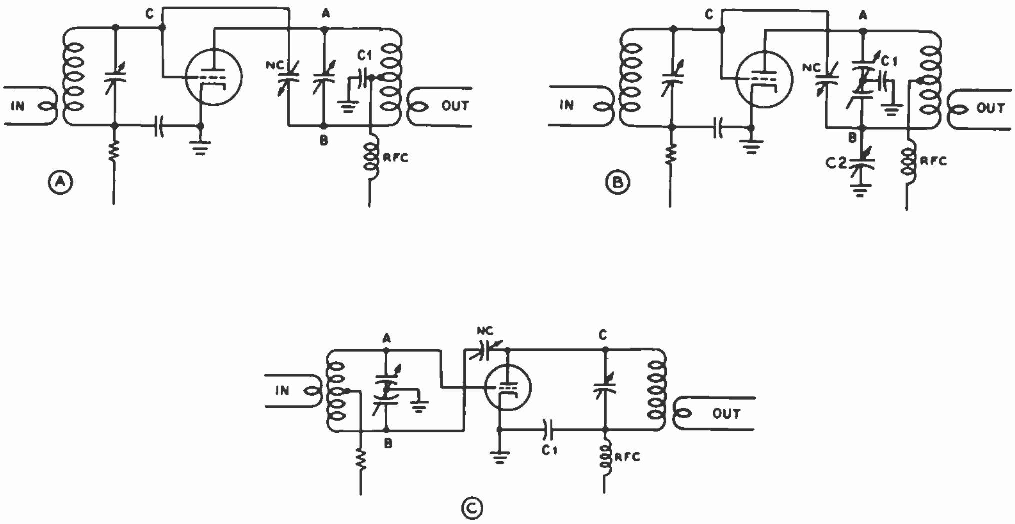


Figure 10

COMMON NEUTRALIZING CIRCUITS FOR SINGLE-ENDED AMPLIFIERS

varied with respect to the tuned circuits to obtain the greatest grid drive for allowable values of buffer or doubler plate current. Slight readjustments sometimes can be made after plate voltage has been applied to the driver tube.

Excessive grid current damages tubes by overheating the grid structure; beyond a certain point of grid drive, no increase in power output can be obtained for a given plate voltage.

11-5 Neutralization of R-F Amplifiers

The plate-to-grid feedback capacitance of triodes makes it necessary that they be neutralized for operation as r-f amplifiers at frequencies above about 500 kHz. Those screen-grid tubes, pentodes, and beam tetrodes which have a plate-to-grid capacitance of 0.1 pf or less may be operated as an amplifier without neutralization in a well-designed amplifier up to 30 MHz.

Neutralizing Circuits The object of *neutralization* is to cancel or neutralize the capacitive feedback of energy from plate to grid. There are two general methods by which this energy feedback may be eliminated: the first, and the most common method, is through the use of a capacitance bridge, and the second method is through the use of a parallel reactance of equal and opposite polarity to the grid-to-plate capacitance, to nullify the effect of this capacitance.

Examples of the first method are shown in figure 10. Figure 10A shows a capacitance-neutralized stage employing a balanced tank circuit. Phase reversal in the tank circuit is obtained by grounding the center of the tank coil to radio-frequency energy by capacitor C_1. Points A and B are 180 degrees out of phase with each other, and the correct amount of out-of-phase energy is coupled through the neutralizing capacitor (NC) to the grid circuit of the tube. The equivalent bridge circuit of this is shown in figure 11A. It is seen that the bridge is not in balance, since the plate-filament capacitance of the tube forms one leg of the bridge, and there is no corresponding capacitance from the neutralizing capacitor (point B) to ground to obtain a complete balance. In addition, it is mechanically difficult to obtain a perfect electrical balance in the tank coil, and the potential between point A and ground and point B and ground, in most cases, is unequal. This circuit, therefore, holds neutralization over a very small operating range and unless tubes of low interelectrode capacitance are used the inherent unbalance of the circuit will permit only approximate neutralization.

Split-Stator Plate Neutralization Figure 10B shows the neutralization circuit which is widely used in single-ended r-f stages. The use of a split-stator plate capacitor makes the electrical balance of the circuit substantially independent of the mutual coupling within the coil and also makes the balance independent of the place where the coil is tapped. With conventional tubes this circuit will allow one neutralization adjustment to be made on, for example, 28 MHz, and this adjustment usually will hold sufficiently close for operation on all lower-frequency bands.

Capacitor C_2 is used to balance out the plate-filament capacity of the tube to allow a perfect neutralizing balance at all frequencies. The equivalent bridge circuit is shown in figure 11B. If the plate-filament capacitance of the tube is extremely low (100TH triode, for example), capacitor C_2 may be omitted, or may merely consist of the residual capacity of NC to ground.

Grid Neutralization A split grid-tank circuit may also be used for neutralization of a triode tube as shown in figure 10C. Out of phase voltage is developed across a balanced grid circuit, and coupled through NC to the single-ended plate circuit of the tube. The equivalent bridge circuit is shown in figure 11C. This circuit is in balance until the stage is in operation when the loading effect of the tube upon one-half of the grid circuit throws the bridge circuit out of balance. The amount of unbalance depends on the grid-plate capacitance of the tube, and the amount of mutual inductance between the two halves of the grid coil. If an r-f voltmeter is placed between point A and ground, and a second voltmeter placed between point B and ground, the loading effect of the tube will be noticeable. When the tube is supplied excitation with no plate voltage, NC may be adjusted until the circuit is in balance. When plate voltage is applied to the stage, the voltage from point A to ground will decrease, and the voltage from point B to ground will increase, both in direct proportion to the amount of circuit unbalance. The use of this circuit is not recommended above 7 MHz, and it should be used below that frequency only with low internal capacitance tubes.

Push-Pull Neutralization Two tubes of the same type can be connected for *push-pull* operation so as to obtain twice as much output as that of a single tube. A push-pull amplifier, such as that shown in figure 12 also has an advantage in that the circuit can more easily be balanced than a single-tube r-f amplifier. The various interelectrode capacitances and the neutralizing capacitors are connected in such a manner that the reactances on one side of

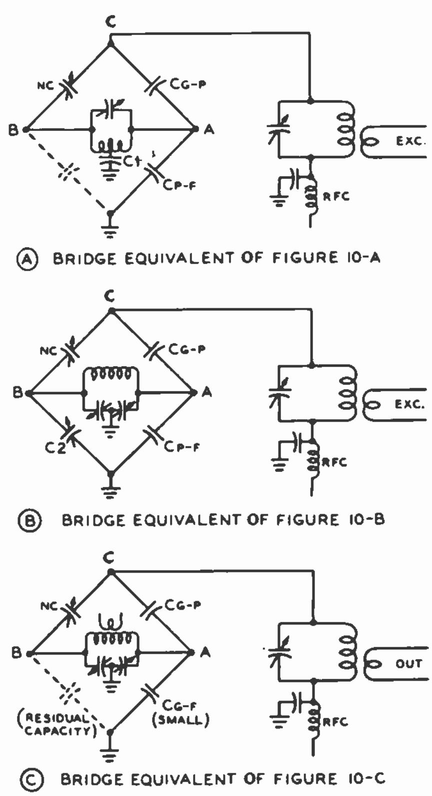


Figure 11

EQUIVALENT NEUTRALIZING CIRCUITS

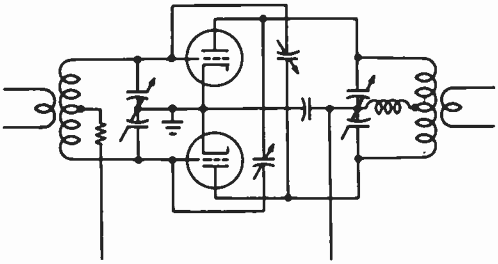


Figure 12

STANDARD CROSS-NEUTRALIZED PUSH-PULL TRIODE AMPLIFIER

the tuned circuits are exactly equal to those on the opposite side. For this reason, push-pull r-f amplifiers can be more easily neutralized in vhf transmitters; also, they usually remain in perfect neutralization when tuning the amplifier to different bands.

The circuit shown in figure 12 is perhaps the most commonly used arrangement for a push-pull r-f amplifier stage. The rotor of the grid capacitor is grounded, and the rotor of the plate tank capacitor is bypassed to ground.

Shunt or Coil Neutralization The feedback of energy from grid to plate in an unneutralized r-f amplifier is a result of the grid-to-plate capacitance of the amplifier tube. A neutralization circuit is merely an electrcial arrangement for nullifying the effect of this capacitance. All the previous neutralization circuits have made use of a bridge circuit for balancing out the grid-to-plate energy feedback by feeding back an equal amount of energy of opposite phase.

Another method of eliminating the feedback effect of this capacitance, and hence of neutralizing the amplifier stage, is shown in figure 13. The grid-to-plate capacitance in the triode amplifier tube acts as a capacitive reactance, coupling energy back from the plate to the grid circuit. If this capacitance is paralleled with an inductance having the same value of reactance of opposite sign, the reactance of one will cancel the reactance of the other and a high-impedance tuned circuit from grid to plate will result.

This neutralization circuit can be used on ultra high frequencies where other neutralization circuits are unsatisfactory. This is true because the lead length in the neutralization circuit is practically negligible. The circuit can also be used with push-pull r-f amplifiers. In this case, each tube will have its own neutralizing inductor connected from grid to plate.

The main advantage of this arrangement is that it allows the use of single-ended tank circuits with a single-ended amplifier.

The chief disadvantage of the shunt neutralized arrangement is that the stage must be neutralized each time the stage is retuned to a new frequency sufficiently removed that the grid and plate tank circuits must be retuned to resonance. However, by the use of plug-in coils it is possible to change to a different band of operation by changing the neutralizing coil at the same time that the grid and plate coils are changed.

The 0.0001-μfd capacitor in series with the neutralizing coil is merely a blocking capacitor to isolate the plate voltage from the grid circuit. The coil (L) will have to have a very large number of turns for the band of operation in order to be resonant with the comparatively small grid-to-plate

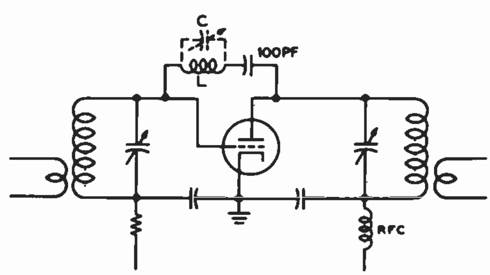


Figure 13

COIL-NEUTRALIZED AMPLIFIER

This neutralization circuit is very effective with triode tubes on any frequency, but is particularly effective in the vhf range. Coil L is adjusted so that it resonates at the operating frequency with the grid-to-plate capacitance of the tube. Capacitor C may be a very small unit of the low-capacitance neutralizing type and is used to trim the circuit to resonance at the operating frequency. If some means of varying the inductance of the coil a small amount is available, the trimmer capacitor is not needed.

capacitance. But since, in all ordinary cases with tubes operating on frequencies for which they were designed, the LC ratio of the tuned circuit will be very high, the coil can use comparatively small wire, although it must be wound on air or very low-loss dielectric and must be insulated for the sum of the plate r-f voltage and the grid r-f voltage.

11-6 Neutralizing Procedure

An r-f amplifier is neutralized to prevent self-oscillation or regeneration. A neon bulb, a flashlight bulb and a loop of wire, or a diode voltmeter can be used as a *null indicator* for neutralizing low-power stages. *The plate voltage lead is disconnected from the r-f amplifier stage while it is being neutralized.* Normal grid drive then is applied to the r-f stage, the neutralizing indicator is coupled to the plate coil, and the plate tuning capacitor is tuned to resonance. The neutralizing capacitor (or capacitors) then can be adjusted until *minimum* r.f. is indicated for resonant settings of both grid- and plate-tuning capacitors. Both neutralizing capacitors are adjusted simultaneously and to approximately the same value of capacitance when a physically symmetrical push-pull stage is being neutralized.

A final check for neutralization should be made with a d-c milliammeter connected in the grid-leak or grid-bias circuit. There will be no movement of the meter reading as the plate circuit is tuned through resonance (without plate voltage being applied) when the stage is completely neutralized.

Plate voltage should be *completely* removed by actually opening the d-c plate circuit. If there is a d-c return through the plate supply, a small amount of plate current will flow when grid excitation is applied, even though no primary a-c voltage is being fed to the plate transformer.

A further check on the neutralization of any r-f amplifier can be made by noting whether maximum grid current on the stage comes at the same point of tuning on the plate-tuning capacitor as minimum plate current. This check is made with plate voltage on the amplifier and with normal antenna coupling. As the *plate* tuning capacitor is detuned *slightly* from resonance on either side the grid current on the stage should *decrease* the same amount and without any sudden jumps on either side of resonance. This will be found to be a very precise indication of accurate neutralization in either a triode or beam-tetrode r-f amplifier stage, so long as the stage is feeding a load which presents a resistive impedance at the operating frequency.

Push-pull circuits usually can be more completely neutralized than single-ended circuits at very high frequencies. In the intermediate range of from 3 to 30 MHz, single-ended circuits will give satisfactory results.

Neutralization of Screen-Grid R-F Amplifiers Radio-frequency amplifiers using screen-grid tubes can be operated without any additional provision for neutralization at frequencies up to about 15 MHz, provided adequate shielding has been provided between the input and output circuits. Special vhf screen-grid and beam tetrode tubes such as the 2E26, 6146, and 5516 in the low-power category and 4E27A, 4-65A, 4-125A, and 4-250A in the medium-power category can frequently be operated at frequencies as high as 50 MHz without any additional provision for neutralization. Tubes such as the 807, 7094, and 813 can be operated with good circuit design at frequencies up to 30 MHz without any additional provision for neutralization. The 829 tube has been found to require neutralization in many cases above 20 MHz although the 832A tube will operate quite stably at 100 MHz without neutralization.

None of these tubes, however, has perfect shielding between the grid and the plate, a condition brought about by the inherent inductance of the screen leads within the tube itself. In addition, unless "watertight" shielding is used between the grid and plate circuits of the tube a certain amount of external leakage between the two circuits is present. These difficulties may not be serious enough to require neutralization of the stage to prevent oscillation, but in many instances they show up in terms of key-clicks when the stage in question is keyed, or as parasitics when the stage is modulated. Unless the designer of the equipment can carefully

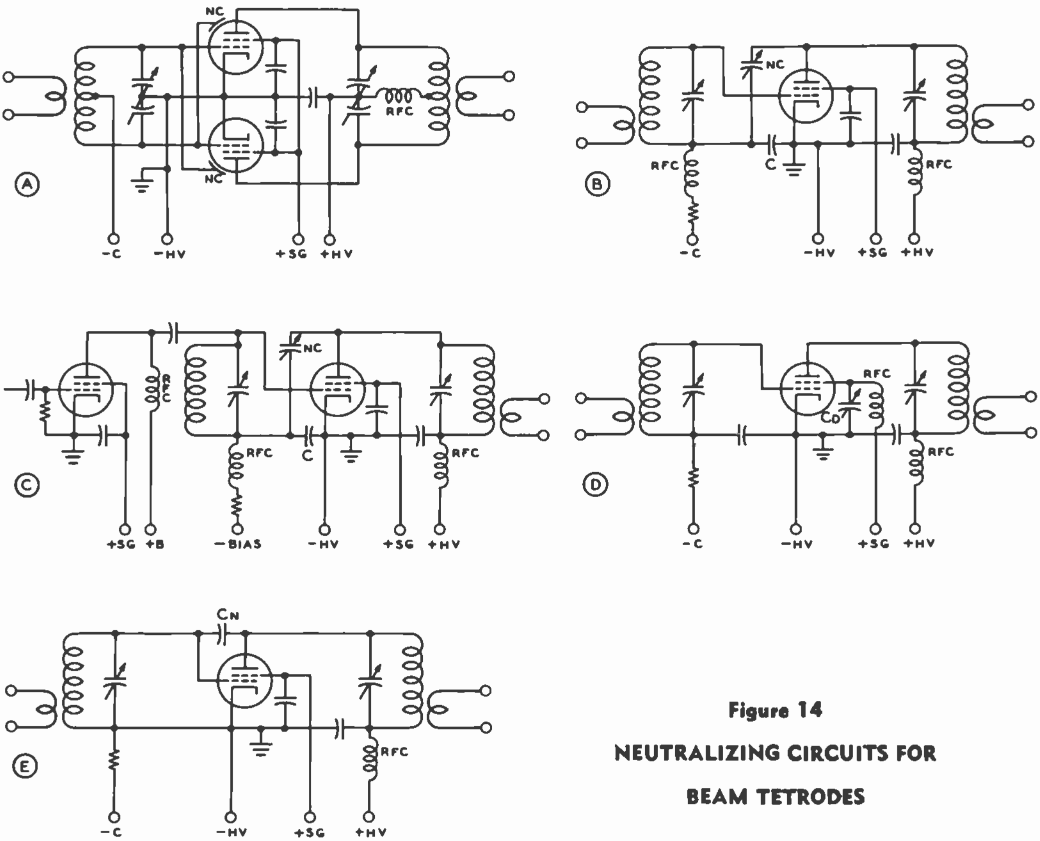


Figure 14

NEUTRALIZING CIRCUITS FOR BEAM TETRODES

A conventional cross-neutralized circuit for use with push-pull beam tetrodes is shown at A. The neutralizing capacitors (NC) usually consist of small plates or rods mounted alongside the plate elements of the tubes. B and C show grid-neutralized circuits for use with a single-ended tetrode having either link coupling or capacitive coupling into the grid tank. D shows a method of tuning the screen-lead inductance to accomplish neutralization in a single-ended vhf tetrode amplifier, while E shows a method of neutralization by increasing the grid-to-plate capacitance on a tetrode when the operating frequency is higher than that frequency where the tetrode is "self-neutralized" as a result of series resonance in the screen lead. Methods D and E normally are not practicable at frequencies below about 50 MHz with the usual types of beam tetrode tubes.

check the tetrode stage for miscellaneous feedback between the grid and plate circuits, and make the necessary circuit revisions to reduce this feedback to an absolute minimum, it is wise to neutralize the tetrode just as if it were a triode tube.

In most push-pull tetrode amplifiers the simplest method of accomplishing neutralization is to use the cross-neutralized capacitance bridge arrangement as normally employed with triode tubes. The neutralizing capacitances, however, must be very much smaller than used with triode tubes, values of the order of 0.2 pf normally being required with beam tetrode tubes. This order of capacitance is far less than can be obtained with a conventional neutralizing capacitor at minimum setting, so the neutralizing arrangement is most commonly made especially for the case at hand. Most common procedure is to bring a conductor (connected to the opposite grid) in the vicinity of the plate itself or of the plate tuning capacitor of one of the tubes. Either one or two such capacitors may be used, two being normally used on a higher-frequency amplifier in order to maintain balance within the stage.

An example of this is shown in figure 14A.

Neutralizing Single-Ended Tetrode Stages A single-ended tetrode r-f amplifier stage may be neutralized in the same manner as illustrated for a push-pull stage in figure 14A, provided a split-stator tank capacitor is in use in the plate circuit. However, in the majority of single-ended tetrode r-f amplifier stages a single-section capacitor is used in the plate tank. Hence, other neutralization procedures must be employed when neutralization is found necessary.

The circuit shown in figure 14B is not a true neutralizing circuit, in that the plate-to-grid capacitance is not balanced out. However, the circuit can afford the equivalent effect by isolating the high resonant impedance of the grid-tank circuit from the energy fed back from plate to grid. When *NC* and *C* are adjusted to bear the following ratio to the grid-to-plate capacitance and the total capacitance from grid-to-ground in the output tube,

$$\frac{NC}{C} = \frac{C_{gp}}{C_{gk}}$$

both ends of the grid tank circuit will be at the same voltage with respect to ground as a result of r-f energy fed back to the grid circuit. This means that the impedance from grid to ground will be effectively equal to the reactance of the grid-to-cathode capacitance in parallel with the stray grid-to-ground capacitance, since the high resonant impedance of the tuned circuit in the grid has been effectively isolated from the feedback path. It is important to note that the effective grid-to-ground capacitance of the tube being neutralized includes the rated grid-to-cathode or input capacitance of the tube, the capacitance of the socket, wiring capacitances and other strays, but it does *not* include the capacitances associated with the grid-tuning capacitor. Also, if the tube is being excited by capacitive coupling from a preceding stage (as in figure 14C), the effective grid-to-ground capacitance includes the output capacitance of the preceding stage and its associated socket and wiring capacitances.

Cancellation of Screen-Lead Inductance The provisions discussed in the previous paragraphs are for neutralization of the small (though still important at the higher frequencies) grid-to-plate capacitance of beam-tetrode tubes. However, in the vicinity of the upper frequency limit of each tube type the inductance of the screen lead of the tube becomes of considerable importance. With a tube operating at a frequency where the inductance of the screen lead is appreciable, the screen will allow a considerable amount of energy leak-through from plate to grid even though the socket terminal on the tube is carefully bypassed to ground. This condition takes place even though the socket pin is bypassed since the reactance of the screen lead will allow a moderate amount of r-f potential to appear on the screen itself inside the electrode assembly in the tube. This effect has been reduced to a very low amount in such tubes as the 4CX250B, 8122, and 4CX1000K, but it is still quite appreciable in most beam-tetrode tubes.

The effect of screen-lead inductance on the stability of a stage can be eliminated at any particular frequency by one of two methods. These methods are: (1) Tuning out the screen-lead inductance by series-resonating the screen-lead inductance with a capacitor to ground. This method is illustrated in figure 14D and is commonly employed in commercially built equipment for operation on a narrow frequency band in the range above about 75 MHz. The other method (2) is illustrated in figure 14E and consists in feeding back additional energy from plate to grid by means of a small capacitor connected between these two elements. Note that this capacitor is connected in such a manner as to *increase* the effective grid-to-plate capacitance of the tube. This method has been found to be effective with 6146 tubes in the range above 50 MHz and with tubes such as the 4-125A and 4-250A in the vicinity of their upper frequency limits.

Note that both these methods of stabilizing a beam-tetrode vhf amplifier stage by cancellation of screen-lead inductance are suitable only for operation over a relatively narrow band of frequencies in the vhf range. At lower frequencies both these expedients

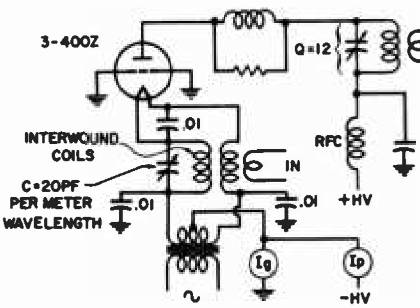


Figure 15

GROUNDED-GRID AMPLIFIER

This type of triode amplifier requires no neutralization, and is very popular as a zero-bias class-B linear stage for SSB service.

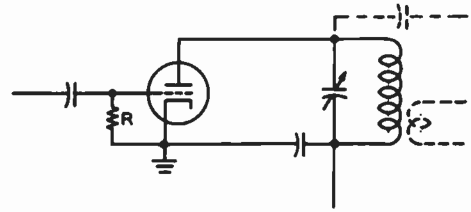


Figure 16

CONVENTIONAL TRIODE FREQUENCY MULTIPLIER

Small triodes such as the 6C4 operate satisfactorily as frequency multipliers, and can deliver output well into the vhf range. Resistor R normally will have a value in the vicinity of 100,000 ohms.

for reducing the effects of screen-lead inductance will tend to increase the tendency toward oscillation of the amplifier stage.

Neutralizing Problems When a stage cannot be completely neutralized, the difficulty usually can be traced to one or more of the following causes: (1) Filament leads not bypassed to the common ground of that particular stage. (2) Ground lead from the rotor connection of the split-stator tuning capacitor to filament open or too long. (3) Neutralizing capacitors in a field of excessive r.f. from one of the tuning coils. (4) Electromagnetic coupling between grid and plate coils, or between plate and preceding buffer or oscillator circuits. (5) Insufficient shielding or spacing between stages, or between grid and plate circuits in compact transmitters. (6) Shielding placed too close to plate-circuit coils, causing induced currents in the shields. (7) Parasitic oscillations when plate voltage is applied. The cure for the latter is mainly a matter of cut and try—rearrange the parts, change the length of grid, plate, or neutralizing leads, insert a parasitic choke in the grid lead or leads, or eliminate the grid r-f chokes which may be the cause of a low-frequency parasitic (in conjunction with plate r-f chokes).

11-7 Grounded-Grid Amplifiers

Certain triodes such as the 3-400Z have a grid structure and lead arrangement which result in a very low plate-to-filament capacitance when the grid is grounded, the grid acting as an effective shield much in the manner of the screen of a tetrode tube. By connecting such a triode in the typical circuit of figure 15, taking the usual precautions against stray capacitive and inductive coupling between input and output circuits, a stable power amplifier is realized which requires no neutralization in the hf region. A high-μ triode may not require grid bias to operate in the class-B mode, however, some amount of grid bias may be added to achieve class-C operation.

The *grounded-grid* (cathode-driven) amplifier requires considerably more excitation than if the same tube were employed in a conventional grounded-cathode circuit. The additional drive power required to drive a tube in a grounded-grid circuit is not lost, however, as it shows up in the output circuit and adds to the power delivered to the load. Nevertheless it means that a larger driver stage is required for an amplifier of given output power as a portion of the drive power is delivered to the load (*feedthrough* power). Stage gains of 10 to 12 decibels are common in grounded-grid circuits.

Some tetrodes may be strapped as triodes (screen and grid grounded) and operated as class-B grounded-grid tubes. Data on this class of operation may often be obtained from the tube manufacturer.

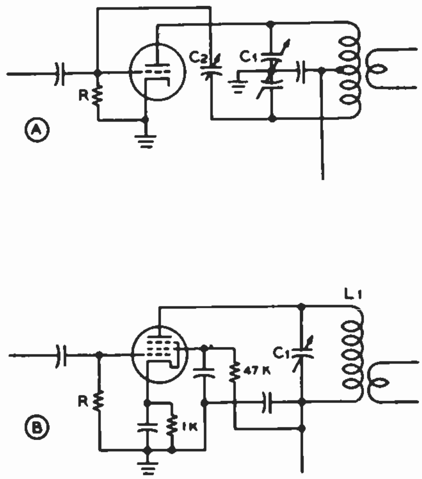


Figure 17

FREQUENCY-MULTIPLIER CIRCUITS

The output of a triode vhf frequency multiplier often may be increased by neutralization of the grid-to-plate capacitance as shown at A. Such a stage also may be operated as a straight amplifier when the occasion demands. A pentode frequency multiplier is shown at B. Conventional power tetrodes operate satisfactorily as multipliers so long as the output frequency is below about 100 MHz. About this frequency special vhf tetrodes must be used to obtain satisfactory output.

11-8 Frequency Multipliers

Quartz crystals and variable-frequency oscillators are not ordinarily used for direct control of the output of high-frequency transmitters. *Frequency multipliers* are usually employed to multiply the frequency to the desired value. These multipliers operate on exact multiples of the excitation frequency; a 3.6-MHz crystal oscillator can be made to control the output of a transmitter on 7.2 or 14.4 MHz, or on 28.8 MHz, by means of one or more frequency multipliers. When used at twice frequency, they are often termed *frequency doublers*. A simple doubler circuit is shown in figure 16. It consists of a vacuum tube with its plate circuit tuned to *twice* the frequency of the grid-driving circuit. This doubler can be excited from a crystal oscillator or another multiplier or amplifier stage.

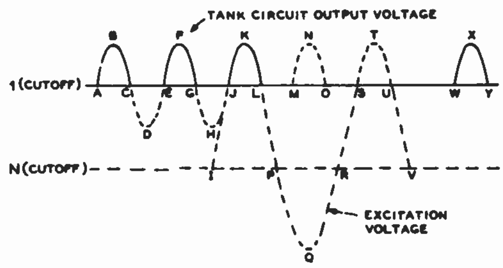


Figure 18

ILLUSTRATING THE ACTION OF A FREQUENCY DOUBLER

Doubling is best accomplished by operating the tube with high grid bias. The grid circuit is driven approximately to the normal value of d-c grid current through the r-f choke and grid-leak resistor, shown in figure 16. The resistance value generally is from two to five times as high as that used with the same tube for straight amplification. Consequently, the grid bias is several times as high for the same value of grid current.

Neutralization is seldom necessary in a doubler circuit, since the plate is tuned to twice the frequency of the grid circuit. The impedance of the grid-driving circuit is very low at the doubling frequency, and thus there is little tendency for self-excited oscillation.

Frequency doublers require bias of several times cutoff; high-μ tubes therefore are desirable for this type of service. Tubes which have amplification factors from 20 to 200 are suitable for doubler circuits. Tetrodes and pentodes make excellent doublers. Low-μ triodes, having amplification constants of from 3 to 10, are not applicable for doubler service. In extreme cases the grid voltage must be as high as the plate voltage for efficient doubling action.

Angle of Flow in Frequency Multipliers The angle of plate-current flow in a frequency multiplier is a very important factor in determining the plate efficiency. As the angle of flow is decreased for a given value of grid current, the efficiency increases. To reduce the angle of flow, higher grid bias is required so that the grid excitation voltage will exceed the cutoff value for a shorter portion of the exciting-voltage cycle. For a high order of efficiency, frequency doublers should

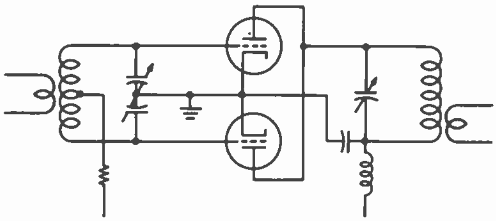


Figure 19

PUSH-PUSH FREQUENCY DOUBLER

The output of a doubler stage may be materially increased through the use of a push-push circuit such as illustrated above.

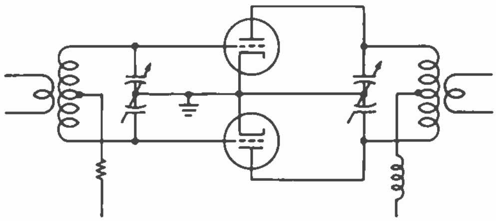


Figure 20

PUSH-PULL FREQUENCY TRIPLER

The push-pull tripler is advantageous in the vhf range since circuit balance is maintained both in the input and output circuits. If the circuit is neutralized it may be used either as a straight amplifier or as a tripler. Either triodes or tetrodes may be used; dual-unit tetrodes such as the 6360, 832A, and 829B are particularly effective in the vhf range.

have an angle of flow of 90 degrees or less, triplers 60 degrees or less, and quadruplers 45 degrees or less. Under these conditions the efficiency will be on the same order as the reciprocal of the harmonic on which the stage operates. In other words the efficiency of a doubler will be approximately ½ or 50 percent, the efficiency of a tripler will be approximately 1/3 or 33 percent and that of a quadrupler will be about 25 percent. With good stage design the efficiency can be somewhat greater than these values, but as the angle of flow is made greater than these limiting values, the efficiency falls off rapidly. The reason is apparent from a study of figure 18.

The pulses ABC, EFG, and JKL illustrate 180-degree excitation pulses under class-B operation, the solid straight line indicating cutoff bias. If the bias is increased by *N* times, to the value indicated by the dotted straight line, and the excitation increased until the peak r-f voltage with respect to ground is the same as before, then the excitation frequency can be cut in half and the effective excitation pulses will have almost the same shape as before. The only difference is that every other pulse is missing; MNO simply shows where the missing pulse would go. However, if the Q of the plate tank circuit is high, it will have sufficient *flywheel effect* to carry over through the missing pulse, and the only effect will be that the plate input and r-f output at optimum loading drop to approximately half. As the input frequency is half the output frequency, an efficient frequency doubler is the result.

By the same token, a tripler or quadrupler can be analyzed, the tripler skipping two excitation pulses and the quadrupler three. In each case the excitation pulse ideally should be short enough that it does not exceed 180 degrees at the output frequency; otherwise the excitation actually is *bucking* the output over a portion of the cycle.

In actual practice, it is found uneconomical to provide sufficient excitation to run a tripler or quadrupler in this fashion. Usually the excitation pulses will be at least 90 degrees at the exciting frequency, with correspondingly low efficiency, but it is more practicable to accept the low efficiency and build up the output in succeeding amplifier stages. The efficiency can become quite low before the power gain becomes less than unity.

Push-Push Multipliers Two tubes can be connected in parallel to give twice the output of a single-tube doubler. If the grids are driven *out* of phase instead of *in* phase, the tubes then no longer work simultaneously, but rather one at a time. The effect is to fill in the missing pulses (figure 18). Not only is the output doubled, but several advantages accrue which cannot be obtained by straight parallel operation.

Chief among these is the effective neutralization of the fundamental and all *odd* harmonics, an advantage when spurious emissions must be minimized. Another advantage is that when the available excitation is low and excitation pulses exceed 90 degrees, the output and efficiency will be greater than for the same tubes connected in parallel.

The same arrangement may be used as a quadrupler, with considerably better efficiency than for straight parallel operation, because seldom is it practicable to supply sufficient excitation to permit 45-degree excitation pulses. As pointed out above, the push-push arrangement exhibits better efficiency than a single-ended multiplier when excitation is inadequate for ideal multiplier operation.

A typical push-push doubler is illustrated in figure 19. When high-transconductance tubes are employed, it is necessary to employ a split-stator grid-tank capacitor to prevent self-oscillation. With well screened tetrodes or pentodes having medium values of transconductance, a split-coil arrangement with a single-section capacitor may be employed (the center tap of the grid coil being bypassed to ground).

Push-Pull Frequency Triplers It is frequently desirable in the case of uhf and vhf transmitters that frequency multiplication stages be balanced with respect to ground. Further it is just as easy in most cases to multiply the crystal or vfo frequency by powers of three rather than multiplying by powers of two as is frequently done in lower-frequency transmitters. Hence the use of push-pull triplers has become quite prevalent in both commercial and amateur vhf and uhf transmitter designs. Such stages are balanced with respect to ground and appear in construction and on paper essentially the same as a push-pull r-f amplifier stage with the exception that the output tank circuit is tuned to three times the frequency of the grid-tank circuit. A circuit for a push-pull tripler stage is shown in figure 20.

A push-pull tripler stage has the further advantage in amateur work that it can also be used as a conventional push-pull r-f amplifier merely by changing the grid and plate coils so that they tune to the same frequency. This is of some advantage in the case of operating the 50-MHz band with 50-MHz excitation, and then changing the plate coil to tune to 144 MHz for operation of the stage as a tripler from excitation on 48 MHz. This circuit arrangement is excellent for operation with push-pull beam tetrodes such as the 6360 and 829B, although a pair of tubes such as the 2E26, or 5763 could just as well be used if proper attention were given to the matter of screen-lead inductance.

11-9 Tank-Circuit Capacitances

It is necessary that the proper value of Q be used in the plate tank circuit of any r-f amplifier. The following section has been devoted to a treatment of the subject, and charts are given to assist the reader in the determination of the proper LC ratio to be used in a radio-frequency amplifier stage.

A class-C amplifier draws plate current in the form of very distorted pulses of short duration. Such an amplifier is always operated into a tuned inductance-capacitance or tank circuit which tends to smooth out these pulses, by its storage or tank action, into a sine wave of radio-frequency output. Any waveform distortion of the carrier frequency results in harmonic interference in higher-frequency channels.

A class-A r-f amplifier would produce a sine wave of radio-frequency output if its exciting waveform were also a sine wave. However, a class-A amplifier stage converts its d-c input to r-f output by acting as a variable resistance, and therefore heats considerably. A class-B or-C amplifier driven hard with short pulses at the peak of the exciting waveform acts more as an electronic switch, and therefore can convert its d-c input to r-f output with relatively good efficiency. Values of plate-circuit efficiency from 65 to 85 percent are common in class-C amplifiers operating under optimum conditions of excitation, grid bias, and loading.

Tank Circuit Q As stated before, the tank circuit of a class-C amplifier receives energy in the form of short pulses of plate current which flow in the amplifier tube. But the tank circuit must be able to store enough energy so that it can deliver a current essentially sine wave in form to the load. The ability of a tank to store energy in this manner may be designated as the effective Q of the tank circuit. The effective cir-

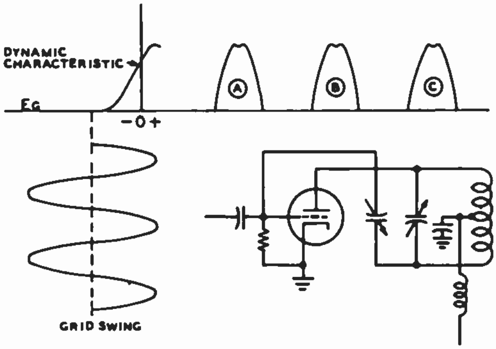


Figure 21

CLASS-C AMPLIFIER OPERATION

Plate current pulses are shown at A, B, and C. The dip in the top of the plate current waveform will occur when the excitation voltage is such that the minimum plate voltage dips below the maximum grid voltage. A detailed discussion of the operation of class-C amplifiers is given in Chapter Six.

cuit Q may be stated in any of several ways, but essentially the Q of a tank circuit is the *ratio of the energy stored to 2π times the energy lost per cycle*. Further, the *energy lost per cycle* must, by definition, be equal to *the energy delivered* to the tank circuit by the class-B or-C amplifier tube or tubes.

The Q of a tank circuit at resonance is equal to its parallel-resonant impedance (the resonant impedance is resistive at resonance) divided by the reactance of either the capacitor or the inductor which go to make up the tank. The inductive reactance is equal to the capacitive reactance, by definition, at resonance. Hence we may state:

$$Q = \frac{R_L}{X_C} = \frac{R_L}{X_L}$$

where,

R_L is the resonant impedance of the tank,
X_C is the reactance of the tank capacitor,
X_L is the reactance of the tank coil.

This value of resonant impedance (R_L) is the load which is presented to the class-C amplifier tube in a single-ended circuit such as shown in figure 21.

The value of load impedance (R_L) which the class-B/C amplifier tube sees may be obtained, looking in the other direction from the tank coil, from a knowledge of the operating conditions on the class-B/C tube. This load impedance may be obtained from the following expression, which is true in the general case of any class-B/C amplifier:

$$R_L = \frac{E_{pm}^2}{2\, N_p\, I_b\, E_{bb}}$$

where the values in the equation have the characteristics listed in the beginning of Chapter 6.

The expression is academic, since the peak value of the fundamental component of plate voltage swing (E_{pm}) is not ordinarily known unless a high-voltage peak a-c voltmeter is available for checking. Also, the decimal value of plate-circuit efficiency is not ordinarily known with any degree of accuracy. However, in a *normally operated* class-B/C amplifier the plate voltage swing will be approximately equal to 0.85 to 0.9 times the d-c plate voltage on the stage, and the plate-circuit efficiency will be from 70 to 80 percent (N_p of 0.7 to 0.8), the higher values of efficiency normally being associated with the higher values of plate voltage swing. With these two assumptions as to the normal class-B/C amplifier, the expression for the plate load impedance can be greatly simplified to the following approximate expression, which also applies to class-AB_1 stages:

$$R_L \sim \frac{R_{d.c.}}{2}$$

which means simply that the resistance presented by the tank circuit to the class-B/C

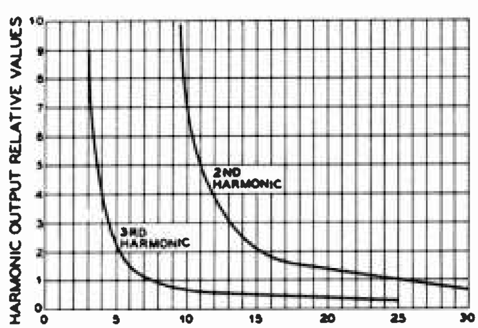


Figure 22

RELATIVE HARMONIC OUTPUT PLOTTED AGAINST TANK CIRCUIT Q

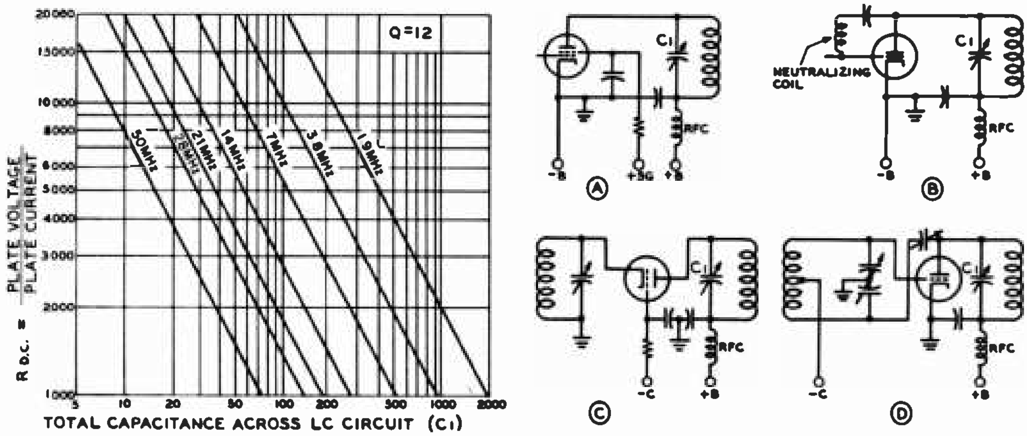


Figure 23

PLATE TANK-CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENTS

Shown above in the case of each of the tank-circuit types is the recommended tank circuit capacitance. A is a conventional tetrode amplifier, B is a coil-neutralized triode amplifier, C is a grounded-grid triode amplifier, D is a grid-neutralized triode amplifier.

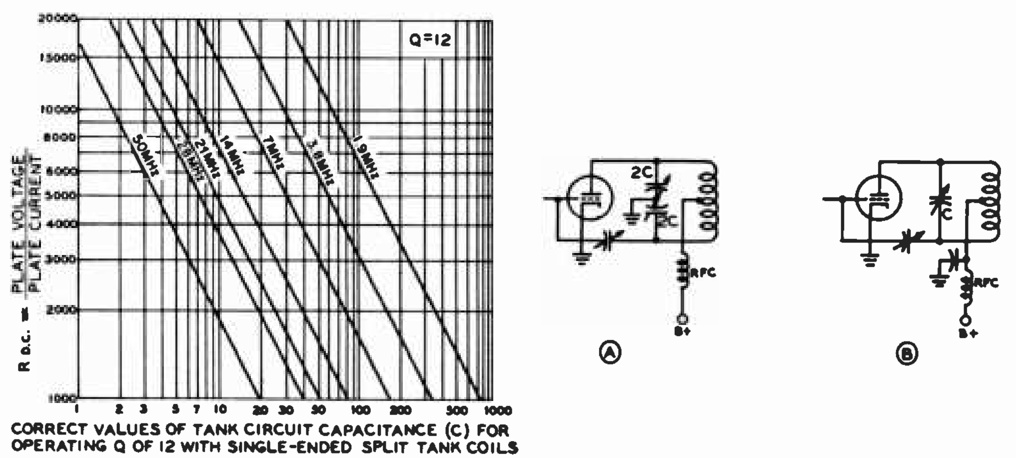


Figure 24

PLATE CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENTS

Shown above for each of the tank circuit types is the recommended tank circuit capacitance at the operating frequency for an operating Q of 12. A is a split-stator tank, each section of which is twice the capacitance value read on the graph. B is circuit using tapped coil for phase reversal.

tube is approximately equal to one-half the d-c load resistance which the class-C stage presents to the power supply (and also to the modulator in case high-level modulation of the stage is to be used).

Combining the above simplified expression for the r-f impedance presented by the tank to the tube, with the expression for tank Q given in a previous paragraph we have the following expression which relates the reactance of the tank capacitor or coil to the d-c input to the class-B/C stage:

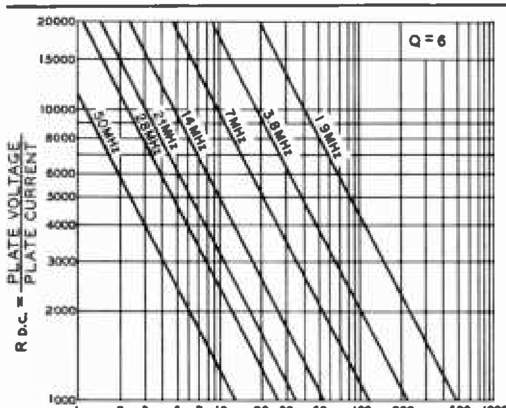
$$X_C = X_L \sim \frac{R_{d.c.}}{2\,Q}$$

The foregoing expression is the basis of the usual charts giving tank capacitance for the various bands in terms of the d-c plate voltage and current to the class-B/C stage, including the charts of figure 23, figure 24, and figure 25.

Harmonic Radiation versus Q The problem of harmonic radiation from transmitters has long been present, but it has become critical during the past decades along with the extensive occupation of the vhf range. Television signals are particularly susceptible to interference from other signals falling within the passband of the receiver, so that the TVI problem has received the major emphasis of all the services in the vhf range which are susceptible to interference from harmonics of signals in the hf or lower-vhf range.

Inspection of figure 22 will show quickly that the tank circuit of an r-f amplifier should have an operating Q of 12 or greater to afford satisfactory rejection of second-harmonic energy. The curve begins to straighten out above a Q of about 15, so that a considerable increase in Q must be made before an appreciable reduction in second-harmonic energy is obtained. Above a circuit Q of about 10 any increase will not afford appreciable reduction in the third-harmonic energy, so that additional harmonic filtering circuits external to the amplifier proper must be used if increased attenuation of higher-order harmonics is desired. The curves also show that push-pull amplifiers may be operated at Q values of 6 or so, since the second harmonic is cancelled to a large extent if there is no unbalanced coupling between the output tank circuit and the antenna system.

Capacity Charts for Optimum Tank Q Figures 23, 24, and 25 lustrate the correct value of tank capacitance for various circuit configurations. A Q value of 12 has been chosen as optimum for single-ended circuits, and a value of 6 has been chosen for push-pull circuits. Figure 23 is used when a single-ended stage is employed, and the capacitance values given are for the total capacitance across the tank coil. This value includes the tube interelectrode capacitance (plate to ground), coil distributed capacitance, wiring capacitance, and the value of any low-inductance plate-to-ground bypass capacitor as used for reducing harmonic generation, in addition to the actual "in-use" capacitance of the plate tuning capacitor. Total circuit stray capacitance may vary from perhaps 5 picofarads for a vhf stage to 30 picofarads for a medium-power tetrode h-f stage.



CORRECT VALUES OF TANK CIRCUIT CAPACITANCE (C1) FOR OPERATING Q OF 6 WITH PUSH-PULL TANK CIRCUITS

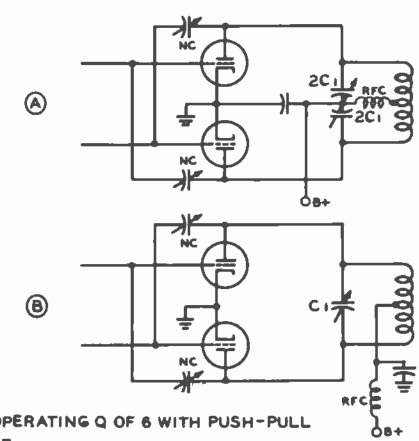


Figure 25

PLATE-TANK CIRCUIT ARRANGEMENTS FOR PUSH-PULL STAGES

Shown above is recommended tank circuit capacitance at operating frequency for a Q of 6. A is split-stator tank, each section of which is twice the capacitance value read on the graph. B is circuit using tapped coil for phase reversal.

When a split plate-tank coil is employed in the stage in question, the graph of figure 24 should be used. The capacitance read from the graph is the total capacitance across the tank coil. If the split-stator tuning capacitor is used, each section of the capacitor should have a value of capacitance equal to *twice* the value indicated by the graph. As in the case of figure 23, the values of capacitance read on the graph of figure 24 include all residual circuit capacitances.

For push-pull operation, the correct values of tank circuit capacitance may be determined with the aid of figure 25. The capacitance values obtained from figure 25 are the effective values across the tank circuit, and if a split-stator tuning capacitor is used, each section of the capacitor should have a value of capacitance equal to *twice* the value indicated by the graph. As in the case of figures 23 and 24, the values of capacitance read on the graph of figure 25 include all residual circuit capacitances.

The tank circuit operates in the same manner whether the tube feeding it is pentode, beam tetrode, neutralized triode, grounded-grid triode; whether it is single-ended or push-pull; or whether it is shunt-fed or series-fed. The important thing in establishing the operating Q of the tank circuit is the ratio of the loaded resonant impedance across its terminals to the reactance of the L and the C which make up the tank.

Figure 26

USUAL BREAKDOWN RATINGS OF COMMON PLATE SPACINGS

Air-gap in inches	Peak voltage breakdown
.030	1000
.050	2000
.070	3000
.100	4000
.125	4500
.150	5200
.170	6000
.200	7500
.250	9000
.350	11,000
.500	15,000
.700	20,000

Recommended air-gap for use when no d-c voltage appears across plate tank capacitor (when plate circuit is shunt fed, or when the plate tank capacitor is insulated from ground).

D-C plate voltage	C-W	Plate mod.
400	.030	.050
600	.050	.070
750	.050	.084
1000	.070	.100
1250	.070	.144
1500	.078	.200
2000	.100	.250
2500	.175	.375
3000	.200	.500
3500	.250	.600

Spacings should be multiplied by 1.5 for same safety factor when d-c voltage appears across plate tank capacitor.

Due to the unknowns involved in determining circuit stray capacitances it is sometimes more convenient to determine the value of L required for the proper circuit Q (by the method discussed earlier in this Section) and then to vary the tuned-circuit capacitance until resonance is reached. This method is most frequently used in obtaining proper circuit Q in commercial transmitters.

The values of R_p for using the charts are easily calculated by dividing the d-c plate-supply voltage by the total d-c plate current (expressed in amperes). Correct values of total tuning capacitance are shown in the chart for the different amateur bands. The shunt stray capacitance can be estimated closely enough for all practical purposes. The coil inductance should then be chosen which will produce resonance at the desired frequency with the total calculated tuning capacitance.

Effect of Loading on Q The Q of a circuit depends on the resistance in series with the capacitance and inductance. This series resistance is very low for a low-loss coil not loaded by an antenna circuit. The value of Q may be from 100 to 600 under these conditions. Coupling an antenna circuit has the effect of increasing the series resistance, though in this case the power is consumed as useful radiation by the antenna. Mathematically, the antenna increases the value of R in the expression $Q = \omega L/R$ where L is the coil inductance in microhenrys and ω is the term $2\pi f$ (f being in MHz).

The coupling from the final tank circuit to the antenna or antenna transmission line can be varied to obtain values of Q from perhaps 3 at maximum coupling to a value of Q equal to the unloaded Q of the circuit at zero antenna coupling. This value of unloaded Q can be as high as 500 or 600, as mentioned in the preceding paragraph. However, the value of $Q = 12$ will not be obtained at values of normal d-c plate current in the class-C amplifier stage unless the C-to-L ratio in the tank circuit is correct for that frequency of operation.

Tuning Capacitor Air Gap To determine the required tuning-capacitor air gap for a particular amplifier circuit it is first necessary to estimate the peak r-f voltage which will appear between the plates of the tuning capacitor. Then, using figure 26, it is possible to estimate the plate spacing which will be required.

The instantaneous r-f voltage in the plate circuit of a class-C amplifier tube varies from nearly zero to nearly twice the d-c plate voltage. If the d-c voltage is being 100 percent modulated by an audio voltage, the r-f peaks will reach nearly four times the d-c voltage.

These rules apply to a loaded amplifier or buffer stage. If either is operated without an r-f load, the peak voltages will be greater and can *exceed* the d-c plate supply voltage. For this reason no amplifier should be operated without load when anywhere near normal d-c plate voltage is applied.

If a plate blocking capacitor is used, it must be rated to withstand the d-c plate voltage plus any audio voltage. This capacitor should be rated at a d-c working voltage of at least *twice the d-c plate supply in a plate-modulated amplifier*, and at least *equal to the d-c supply* in any other type of r-f amplifier.

11-10 L- and Pi-Matching Networks

The L-and pi-networks often can be put to advantageous use in accomplishing an impedance match between two differing impedances. Common applications are the matching between a transmission line and an antenna, or between the plate circuit of a single-ended amplifier stage and an antenna transmission line. Such networks may be used to accomplish a match between the plate tank circuit of an amplifier and a transmission line, or they may be used to match directly from the plate circuit of an amplifier to the line without the requirement for a tank circuit—provided the network is designed in such a manner that it has sufficient operating Q for accomplishing harmonic attenuation.

The L-Matching Network The L-network is of limited utility in impedance matching since its ratio of impedance transformation is fixed at a value equal

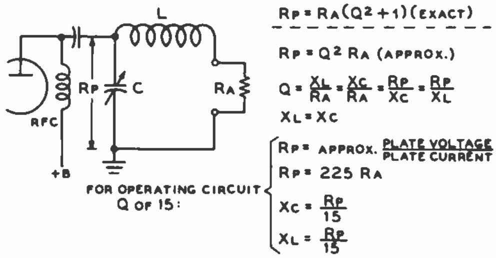


Figure 27

THE L-NETWORK IMPEDANCE TRANSFORMER

The L-network is useful with a moderate operating Q for high values of impedance transformation, and it may be used for applications other than in the plate circuit of a tube with relatively low values of operating Q for moderate impedance transformations. Exact and approximate design equations are given.

to $(Q^2 + 1)$. The operating Q may be relatively low (perhaps 3 to 6) in a matching net work between the plate *tank circuit* of an amplifier and a transmission line; hence impedance transformation ratios of 10 to 1 and even lower may be attained. But when the network also acts as the plate tank circuit of the amplifier stage, as in figure 27, the operating Q should be at least 12 and preferably 15. An operating Q of 15 represents an impedance transformation of 225; this value normally will be too high even for transforming from the 2000- to 10,000-ohm plate impedance of a class-C amplifier stage down to a 50-ohm transmission line.

However, the L-network is interesting since it forms the basis of design for the pi-network. Inspection of figure 27 will show that the L-network in reality must be considered as a parallel-resonant tank circuit in which R_A represents the coupled-in load resistance; only in this case the load resistance is directly coupled into the tank circuit rather than being inductively coupled as in the conventional arrangement where the load circuit is coupled to the tank circuit by means of a link. When R_A is shorted, L and C comprise a conventional parallel-resonant tank circuit, since for proper operation L and C must be resonant in order for the network to present a resistive load to the class-C amplifier.

The Pi-Network The *pi impedance-matching network,* illustrated in figure 28, is much more general in its application than the L network since it offers greater harmonic attenuation, and since it can be used to match a relatively wide range of impedances while still maintaining any desired operating Q. The values of C_1 and L_1 in the pi-network of figure 28 can be thought of as having the same values of the L network in figure 27 for the same operating Q, but, what is more important from the comparison standpoint these values will be about the *same as in a conventional tank circuit.*

The value of the capacitance may be determined by calculation with the operating Q and the load impedance which should be reflected to the plate of the class-C amplifier as the two knowns—or the actual values of the capacitance may be obtained for an operating Q of 12 by reference to figures 23, 24 and 25.

The inductive arm in the pi-network can be thought of as consisting of two inductances in series, as illustrated in figure 28. The first portion of this inductance (L_1) is that value of inductance which would resonate with C_1 at the operating frequency—the same as in a conventional tank circuit. However, the actual value of inductance in this arm of the pi-network, L_{Tot} will be greater than L_1 for normal values of impedance transformation. For high transformation ratios L_{Tot} will be only slightly greater than L_1; for a transformation ratio of 1.0, L_{Tot} will be twice as great as L_1. The amount of

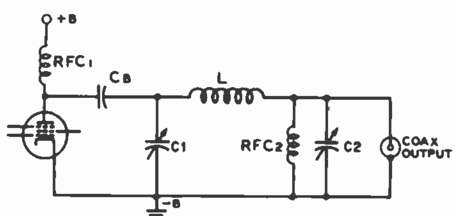


PLATE LOAD (OHMS) $\frac{E_B}{2 \times I_B}$ WHERE EB IS PLATE VOLTAGE AND IB IS PLATE CURRENT IN AMPERES.

CB—.00025 µF. MICA CAPACITOR RATED AT TWICE THE D.C. PLATE VOLTAGE.

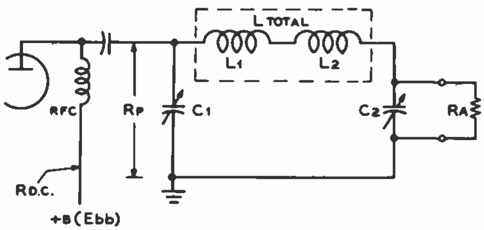
RFC1—Nº 28 ENAMELED, CLOSE-WOUND ON A CERAMIC INSULATOR 1" DIA., 4" LONG OR NATIONAL R-175A

RFC2—2½ MH, NATIONAL R-100

Estimated Plate Load (ohms)	1000	1500	2000	2500	3000	3500	4000	4500	5000	6000*	Notes
C_1 in pf, 3.5 MHz	520	360	280	210	180	155	135	120	110	90	The actual capacitance setting for C_1 equals the value in this table minus the published tube output capacitance. Air gap approx. 10 mils/100 v E_b.
7	260	180	140	105	90	76	68	60	56	45	
14	130	90	70	52	45	38	34	30	28	23	
21	85	60	47	35	31	25	23	20	19	15	
28	65	45	35	26	23	19	17	15	14	11	
L in µh, 3.5 MHz	4.5	6.5	8.5	10.5	12.5	14	15.5	18	20	25	Inductance values are for a 50-ohm load. For a 70-ohm load, values are approx. 3% higher.
7	2.2	3.2	4.2	5.2	6.2	7	7.8	9	10	12.5	
14	1.1	1.6	2.1	2.6	3.1	3.5	3.9	4.5	5	6.2	
21	0.73	1.08	1.38	1.7	2.05	2.3	2.6	3	3.3	4.1	
28	0.55	0.8	1.05	1.28	1.55	1.7	1.95	2.5	2.5	3.1	
C_2 in pf, 3.5 MHz	2400	2100	1800	1550	1400	1250	1100	1000	900	700	For 50-ohm transmission line. Air gap for C_2 is approx. 1 mil/100 v E_b.
7	1200	1060	900	760	700	630	560	500	460	350	
14	600	530	450	380	350	320	280	250	230	175	
21	400	350	300	250	230	210	185	165	155	120	
28	300	265	225	190	175	160	140	125	115	90	
C_2 in pf, 3.5 MHz	1800	1500	1300	1100	1000	900	800	720	640	500	For 70-ohm transmission line.
7	900	750	650	560	500	450	400	360	320	250	
14	450	370	320	280	250	220	200	180	160	125	
21	300	250	215	190	170	145	130	120	110	85	
28	225	185	160	140	125	110	100	90	80	65	

*Values given are approximations. All components shown in Table I are for a Q of 12. For other values of Q, use $\frac{Q_a}{Q_b} = \frac{C_a}{C_b}$ $\frac{Q_a}{Q_b} = \frac{L_b}{L_a}$. When the estimated plate load is higher than 5000 ohms, it is recommended that the components be selected for a circuit Q between 20 and 30.

Table 1. Components for Pi-Coupled Final Amplifiers (class AB, B, and C)



$R_{D.C.} = \frac{E_{bb}}{I_b}$ $\qquad X_{C2} = -R_A\sqrt{\frac{R_P}{R_A(Q^2+1)-R_P}}$

$R_P \approx \frac{R_{D.C.}}{2}$

$X_{L2} = -\frac{R_A^2\, X_{C2}}{R_A^2+X_{C2}^2}$

$X_{C1} = \frac{R_P}{Q}$

$X_{L1} = \frac{R_P}{Q}$ $\qquad X_{L\,TOT.} = X_{L1} + X_{L2}$

Figure 28

THE PI-NETWORK

The pi-network is valuable for use as an impedance transformer over a wide ratio of transformation values. The operating Q should be at least 12 when the circuit is to be used in the plate circuit of a class-C amplifier. Design equations are given above. Inductor L_{Tot} represents a single inductance, usually variable, with a value equal to the sum of L_1 and L_2.

inductance which must be added to L_1 to restore resonance and maintain circuit Q is obtained through use of the expression for X_{L1} and X_{L2} in figure 28.

The peak voltage rating of the main tuning capacitor (C_1) should be the normal value for a class-C amplifier operating at the plate voltage to be employed. The inductor (L_{Tot}) may be a plug-in coil which is changed for each band of operation, or some sort of variable inductor may be used. A continuously variable slider-type variable inductor, such as used in certain items of surplus military equipment, may be used to good advantage if available, or a tapped inductor such as used in the ART-13 may be employed. However, to maintain good circuit Q on the higher frequencies when a variable or tapped coil is used on the lower frequencies, the tapped or variable coil should be removed from the circuit and replaced by a smaller coil which has been especially designed for the higher frequency ranges.

The peak voltage rating of the output or loading capacitor (C_2) is determined by the power level and the impedance to be fed. If a 50-ohm coaxial line is to be fed from the pi-network, receiving-type capacitors will be satisfactory even up to the power level of a plate-modulated kilowatt amplifier. In any event, the peak voltage which will be impressed across the output capacitor is expressed by:

$$E_{pk}^2 = 2R_a W_o$$

where,

E_{pk} is the peak voltage across the capacitor,
R_a is the value of resistive load which the network is feeding,
W_o is the maximum value of the average power output of the stage.

The harmonic attenuation of the pi network is quite good, although an external low-pass filter will be required to obtain harmonic attenuation value upward of 100 db such as normally required. The attenuation to second-harmonic energy will be approximately 40 db for an operating Q of 15 for the pi-network; the value increases to about 45 db for a 1:1 transformation and falls to about 38 db for an impedance step-down of 80:1, assuming that the operating Q is maintained at 15.

Component Chart for Pi-Networks To simplify design procedure, a pi-network chart is given in Table I, summarizing the calculations of figure 28 for various values of plate load impedance for class AB_1, class-B and class-C amplifiers.

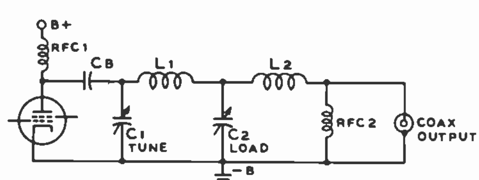


PLATE LOAD (OHMS) $= \frac{E_B}{2 \times I_B}$ WHERE E_B IS PLATE VOLTAGE AND I_B IS PLATE CURRENT IN AMPERES

C1 - SEE TABLE I
C2 - ONE-HALF TO TWO-THIRDS THAT VALUE OF C2 GIVEN IN TABLE I
L1 - 1.25 TIMES THAT VALUE OF L, GIVEN IN TABLE I
L2 - ONE-THIRD VALUE OF L1, ABOVE

Table 2. The Pi-L Network

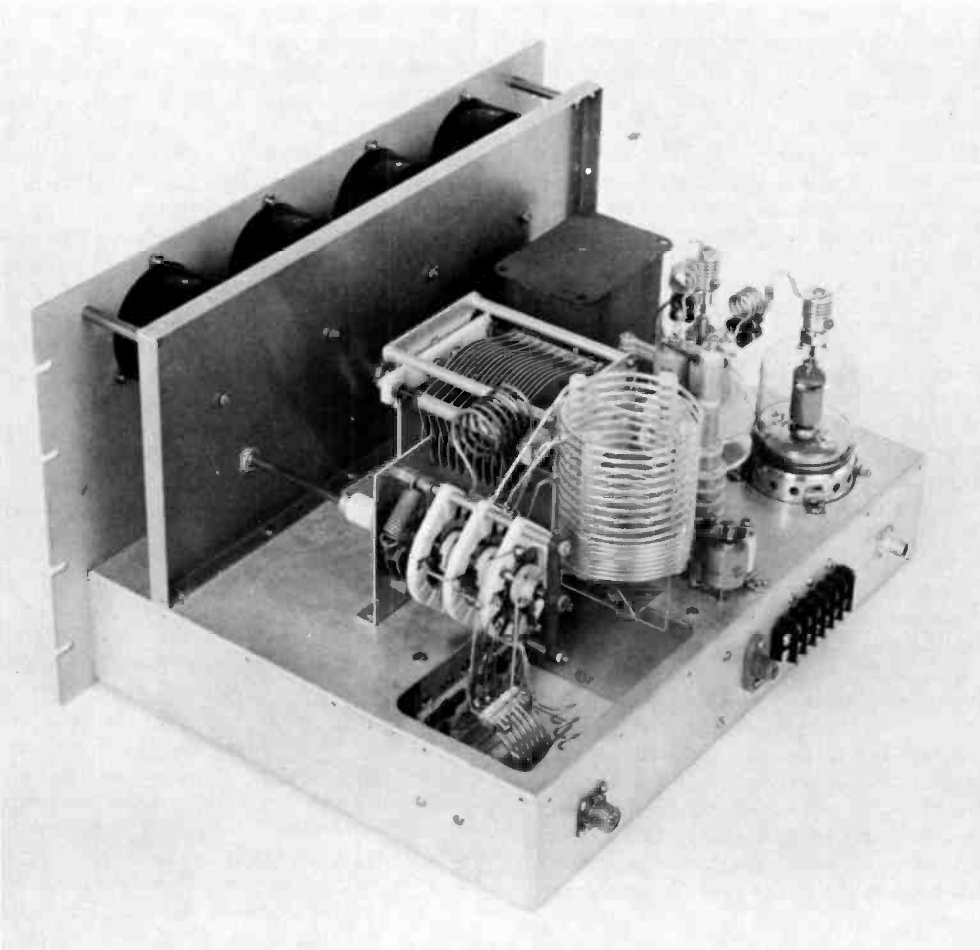


Figure 29

PI-L NETWORK PROVIDES EXTRA HARMONIC ATTENUATION

This linear amplifier makes use of a pi-L network in the plate circuit. The large vertical coil is the main portion of the pi section, with the 10-meter coil placed horizontally in front of it. The L section is placed beneath the chassis in the recessed area. A three-deck bandswitch is used: one deck for the Pi coil, one deck for the L coil and the third deck for additional 80-meter loading capacitance. A small series-tuned circuit (adjusted to TV channel 2 or 3) is placed across the coaxial antenna receptacle to provide additional harmonic protection at this band of frequencies.

The Pi-L Network The *pi-L network* shown in Table II will provide 10 to 15 db more attenuation of the second harmonic than will the pi, and even more attenuation to the higher harmonics. A pi-network may be converted to the pi-L configuration by reducing the loading capacitor (C_2) to about one-half to two-thirds that value required for the equivalent pi-circuit capacitor, and increasing the voltage rating by a factor of three over that minimum rating established for the pi-capacitor. The pi-section coil (L_1) will have an inductance about 1.25 times that of its pi-circuit counterpart (coil L, Table I). The L-section coil (L_2) has no equivalent in the pi-circuit and should be about one-third the inductance of the pi-section coil (L_1) as determined above. A formal calculation of the pi-L circuit parameters is given in the article *"The Pi-L Plate Circuit in Kilowatt Amplifiers"*, by Rinaudo, *QST*, July 1962. (A free reprint of this article may be obtained by writing to: Amateur Service Department, EIMAC Division of Varian, San Carlos, California).

11-11 Grid Bias

Radio-frequency amplifiers require some form of *grid bias* for proper operation. Practically all r-f amplifiers operate in such a manner that plate current flows in the form of short pulses which have a duration of only a fraction of an r-f cycle. To accomplish this with a sinusoidal excitation voltage, the operating grid bias must be at least sufficient to cut off the plate current. In very high efficiency class-C amplifiers the operating bias may be many times the cutoff value. Cutoff bias, it will be recalled, is that value of grid voltage which will reduce the plate current to zero at the plate voltage employed. The method for calculating it has been indicated previously. This theoretical value of cutoff will not reduce the plate current completely to zero, due to the variable-μ tendency or "knee" which is characteristic of all tubes as the cutoff point is approached.

Class-C Bias Amplitude-modulated class-C amplifiers should be operated with the grid bias adjusted to a value greater than twice cutoff at the operating plate voltage. This procedure will ensure that the tube is operating at a bias greater than cutoff when the plate voltage is doubled on positive modulation peaks. C-w telegraph and f-m transmitters can be operated with bias as low as cutoff, if only limited excitation is available and moderate plate efficiency is satisfactory. In a c-w transmitter, the bias supply or resistor should be adjusted to the point which will allow normal grid current to flow for the particular amount of grid driving r-f power available. This form of adjustment will allow more output from the underexcited r-f amplifier than when higher bias is used with corresponding lower values of grid current. In any event, the operating bias should be set at as low a value as will give satisfactory operation, since harmonic generation in a stage increases rapidly as the bias is increased.

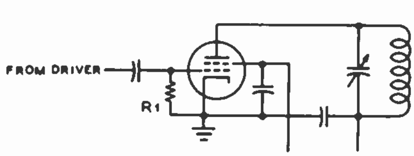


Figure 30

SELF BIAS

The grid resistor on an amplifier or multiplier stage may also be used as the shunt feed impedance to the grid of the tube when a high value of resistor (greater than perhaps 20,000 ohms) is used. When a lower value of grid resistor is to be employed, an r-f choke should be used between the grid of the tube and the grid resistor to reduce r-f losses in the grid resistance.

Self Bias A resistor can be connected in the grid circuit of a class-C amplifier to provide self bias. This resistor (R_1 in figure 30), is part of the d-c path in the grid circuit.

The r-f excitation applied to the grid circuit of the tube causes a pulsating direct current to flow through the bias supply lead, due to the rectifying action of the grid, and any current flowing through R_1 produces a voltage drop across that resistor. The grid of the tube is positive for a short duration of each r-f cycle, and draws electrons from the filament or cathode of the tube during that time. These electrons complete the circuit through the d-c *grid return.* The voltage drop across the resistance in the grid return provides a *negative bias* for the grid.

Self bias automatically adjusts itself over fairly wide variations of r-f excitation. The value of grid resistance should be such that normal values of grid current will flow at the maximum available amount of r-f excitation. Self bias cannot be used for grid-modulated or linear amplifiers in which the average d-c current is constantly varying with modulation.

Safety Bias Self bias alone provides no protection against excessive plate current in case of failure of the source of r-f grid excitation. A *C-battery* or *C-bias* supply can be connected in series with the grid resistor as shown in figure 31. This fixed protec-

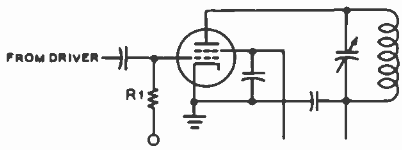


Figure 31

COMBINATION SELF AND FIXED BIAS

Self bias often is used in conjunction with a fixed minimum value of power supply bias. This arrangement permits the operating bias to be established by the excitation energy, but in the absence of excitation the electrode currents to the tube will be held to safe values by the fixed-minimum power supply bias. If a relatively low value of grid resistor is to be used, an r-f choke should be connected between the grid of the tube and the resistor as discussed in figure 30.

tive bias will protect the tube in the event of failure of grid excitation. "Zero-bias" tubes do not require this bias source, since their plate current will drop to a safe value when the excitation is removed.

Cathode Bias A resistor can be connected in series with the cathode or center-tapped filament lead of an amplifier to secure *automatic bias*. The plate current flows through this resistor, then back to the cathode or filament, and the voltage drop across the resistor can be applied to the grid circuit by connecting the grid bias lead to the grounded or power supply end of resistor R, as shown in figure 32.

The grounded (B-minus) end of the cathode resistor is negative relative to the cathode by an amount equal to the voltage drop across the resistor. The value of resistance must be so chosen that the sum of the desired grid and plate current flowing through the resistor will bias the tube for proper operation.

This type of bias is used more extensively in audio-frequency than in radio-frequency amplifiers. The voltage drop across the resistor must be subtracted from the total plate supply voltage when calculating the power input to the amplifier, and this loss of plate voltage in an r-f amplifier may be excessive. A class-A audio amplifier is biased only to approximately one-half cutoff, whereas an r-f amplifier may be biased to twice cutoff, or more, and thus the plate supply voltage loss may be a large percentage of the total available voltage when using low- or medium-μ tubes.

Often just enough cathode bias is employed in an r-f amplifier to act as safety bias to protect the tubes in case of excitation failure, with the rest of the bias coming from a grid resistor.

Separate Bias Supply An external supply often is used for grid bias, as shown in figure 33. Battery bias gives very good voltage regulation and is satisfactory for grid-modulated or linear amplifiers, which operate at low grid current. In the case of class-C amplifiers which operate with high grid current, battery bias is not satisfactory. This direct current has a charging effect on the dry batteries; after a few months of service the cells will become unstable, bloated, and noisy.

A separate a-c operated power supply is commonly used for grid bias. The bleeder resistance across the output of the filter can be made sufficiently low in value that the grid current of the amplifier will not appreciably change the amount of negative grid-

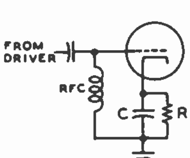


Figure 32

R-F STAGE WITH CATHODE BIAS

Cathode bias sometimes is advantageous for use in an r-f stage that operats with a relatively small amount of r-f excitation.

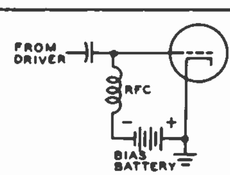


Figure 33

R-F STAGE WITH BATTERY BIAS

Battery bias is seldom used, due to deterioration of the cells by the reverse grid current. However, it may be used in certain special applications, or the fixed bias voltage may be supplied by a bias power supply.

bias voltage. Alternately, a voltage-regulated grid-bias supply can be used. This type of bias supply is used in class-B audio and class-B r-f linear amplifier service where the voltage regulation in the C-bias supply is important. For a class-C amplifier, regulation is not so important, and an economical design of components in the power supply, therefore, can be utilized. In this case, the bias voltage must be adjusted with normal grid current flowing, as the grid current will raise the bias considerably when it is flowing through the bias-supply bleeder resistance.

11-12 Protective Circuits for Tetrode Transmitting Tubes

The tetrode transmitting tube requires three operating voltages: grid bias, screen voltage, and plate voltage. The current requirements of these three operating voltages are somewhat interdependent, and a change in potential of one voltage will affect the current drain of the tetrode in respect to the other two voltages. In particular, if the grid excitation voltage is interrupted as by keying action, or if the plate supply is momentarily interrupted, the resulting voltage or current surges in the screen circuit are apt to permanently damage the tube.

The Series Screen Supply A simple method of obtaining screen voltage is by means of a dropping resistor from the high-voltage plate supply, as shown in figure 34. Since the current drawn by the screen is a function of the exciting voltage applied to the tetrode, the screen voltage will rise to equal the plate voltage under conditions of no exciting voltage. If the control grid is overdriven, on the other hand, the screen current may become excessive. In either case, damage to the screen and its associated components may result. In addition, fluctuations in the plate loading of the tetrode stage will cause changes in the screen current of the tube. This will result in screen voltage fluctuations due to the inherently poor voltage regulation of the screen series dropping resistor. These effects become dangerous to tube life if the plate voltage is greater than the screen voltage by a factor of 2 or so.

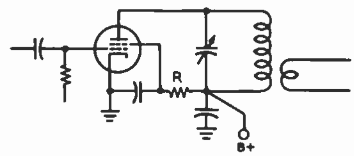


Figure 34
DROPPING-RESISTOR SCREEN SUPPLY

The Clamp Tube A clamp tube may be added to the series screen supply, as shown in figure 35. The clamp tube is normally cut off by virtue of the d-c grid bias drop developed across the grid resistor of the tetrode tube. When excitation is removed from the tetrode, no bias appears across the grid resistor, and the clamp tube conducts heavily, dropping the screen voltage to a safe value. When excitation is applied to the tetrode the clamp tube is inoperative, and fluctuations of the plate loading of the tetrode tube could allow the screen voltage to rise to a damaging value. Because of this factor, the clamp tube does not offer complete protection to the tetrode.

The Separate Screen Supply A low-voltage screen supply may be used instead of the series screen-dropping resistor. This will protect the screen circuit from excessive voltages when the other tetrode operating parameters shift. However, the screen can be easily damaged if plate or bias voltage is removed from the tetrode, as the screen current will reach high values and the screen dissipation will be exceeded. If the screen supply is capable of providing slightly more screen voltage than the tetrode requires for proper operation, a series wattage-limiting resistor may be added to the circuit

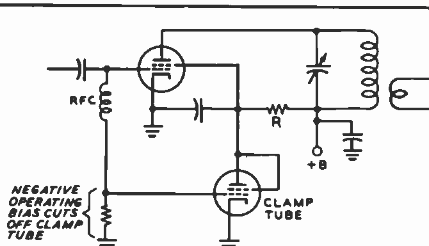


Figure 35
CLAMP-TUBE SCREEN SUPPLY

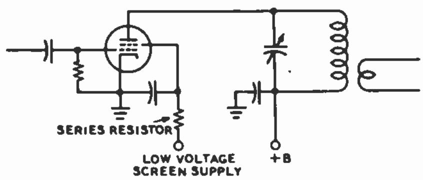


Figure 36

A PROTECTIVE WATTAGE-LIMITING RESISTOR FOR USE WITH LOW-VOLTAGE SCREEN SUPPLY

as shown in figure 36. With this resistor in the circuit it is possible to apply excitation to the tetrode tube with screen voltage present (but in the absence of plate voltage) and still not damage the screen of the tube. The value of the resistor should be chosen so that the product of the voltage applied to the screen of the tetrode times the screen current never exceeds the maximum rated screen dissipation of the tube.

11-13 Interstage Coupling

Energy is usually coupled from one circuit of a transmitter into another either by *capacitive coupling*, *inductive coupling*, or *link coupling*. The latter is a special form of inductive coupling. The choice of a coupling method depends on the purpose for which it is to be used.

Capacitive Coupling Capacitive coupling between an amplifier or doubler circuit and a preceding driver stage is shown in figure 37. The coupling capacitor (C) isolates the d-c plate supply from the next grid and provides a low-impedance path for the rf energy between the tube being driven and the driver tube. This method of coupling is simple and economical for low-power amplifier or exciter stages, but has certain disadvantages, particularly for high-frequency stages. The grid leads in an amplifier should be as short as possible, but this is difficult to attain in the physical arrangement of a high-power amplifier with respect to a capacitively coupled driver stage.

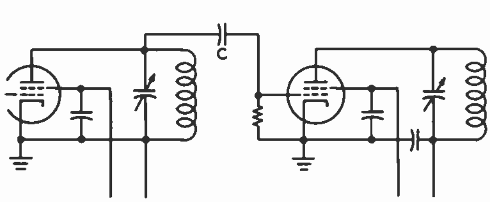


Figure 37

CAPACITIVE INTERSTAGE COUPLING

Disadvantages of Capacitive Coupling One significant disadvantage of capacitive coupling is the difficulty of adjusting the load on the driver stage. Impedance adjustment can be accomplished by tapping the coupling lead a part of the way down on the plate coil of the tuned stage of the driver circuit; but often when this is done a parasitic oscillation will take place in the stage being driven.

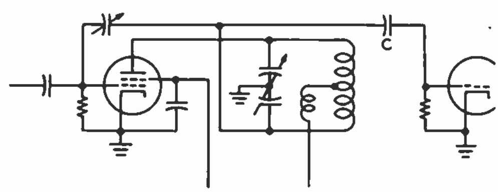


Figure 38

BALANCED CAPACITIVE COUPLING

Balanced capacitive coupling sometimes is useful when it is desirable to use a relatively large inductance in the interstage tank circuit, or where the exciting stage is neutralized as shown above.

One main disadvantage of capacitive coupling lies in the fact that the grid-to-filament capacitance of the driven tube is placed directly across the driver tuned circuit. This condition sometimes makes the r-f amplifier difficult to neutralize, and the increased minimum circuit capacitance makes it difficult to use a reasonable size coil in the vhf range. Difficulties from this source can be partially eliminated by using a center-tapped or split-stator tank circuit in the plate of the driver stage, and coupling capacitively to the opposite end from the plate. This method places the plate-to-filament capacitance of the driver across one-half of the tank and the grid-to-filament capacitance of the following stage across the other

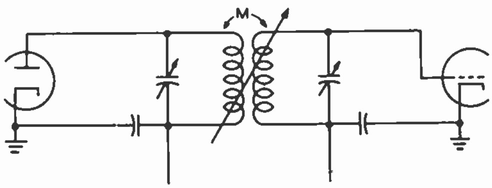


Figure 39

INDUCTIVE INTERSTAGE COUPLING

half. This type of coupling is shown in figure 38.

Capacitive coupling can be used to advantage in reducing the total number of tuned circuits in a transmitter so as to conserve space and cost. It also can be used to advantage between stages for driving beam tetrode or pentode amplifier or doubler stages.

Inductive Coupling *Inductive coupling* (figure 39) results when two coils are electromagnetically coupled to one another. The degree of coupling is controlled by varying the mutual inductance of the two coils, which is accomplished by changing the spacing or the relationship between the axes of the coils.

Inductive coupling is used extensively for coupling r-f amplifiers in radio receivers. However, the mechanical problems involved in adjusting the degree of coupling limit the usefulness of direct inductive coupling in transmitters. Either the primary or the secondary or both coils may be tuned.

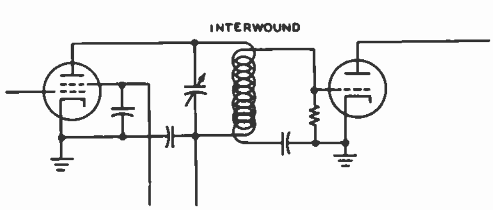


Figure 40

"UNITY" INDUCTIVE COUPLING

Due to the high value of coupling between the two coils, one tuning capacitor tunes both circuits. This arrangement often is useful in coupling from a single-ended to a push-pull stage.

Unity Coupling If the grid-tuning capacitor of figure 39 is removed and the coupling increased to the maximum practicable value by interwinding the turns of the two coils, the circuit insofar as r.f. is concerned, acts like that of figure 37, in which one tank serves both as plate tank for the driver and grid tank for the driven stage. The interwound grid winding serves simply to isolate the d-c plate voltage of the driver from the grid of the driven stage, and to provide a return for d-c grid current. This type of coupling, illustrated in figure 40, is commonly known as *unity coupling*.

Because of the high mutual inductance, both primary and secondary are resonated by the one tuning capacitor.

Link Coupling A special form of inductive coupling which is widely employed in radio transmitter circuits is known as *link coupling*. A low impedance r-f transmission line couples the two tuned circuits together. Each end of the line is terminated in one or more turns of wire, or links, wound around the coils which are being coupled together. These links should be coupled to each tuned circuit at the point of zero r-f potential, or *nodal point*. A ground connection to one side of the link usually is used to reduce harmonic coupling, or where capacitive coupling between two circuits must be minimized. Coaxial line is commonly used to transfer energy between the two coupling links, although twin-lead may be used where harmonic attenuation is not so important.

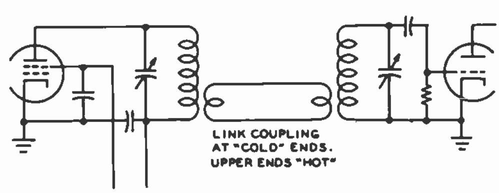


Figure 41

INTERSTAGE COUPLING BY MEANS OF A LINK

Link interstage coupling is very commonly used since the two stages may be separated by a considerable distance, since the amount of a coupling between the two stages may be easily varied, and since the capacitances of the two stages may be isolated to permit use of larger inductances in the vhf range.

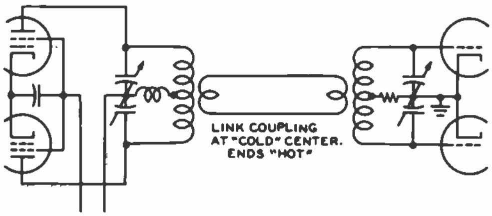


Figure 42

PUSH-PULL LINK COUPLING

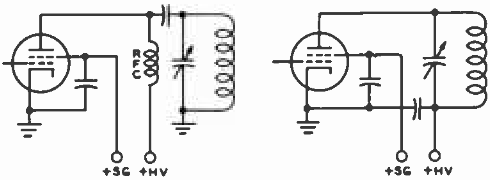
Typical link-coupled circuits are shown in figure 41 and 42. Some of the advantages of link coupling are the following:

(1) It eliminates coupling taps on tuned circuits.
(2) It permits the use of series power supply connections in both tuned-grid and tuned-plate circuits, and thereby eliminates the need of shunt-feed r-f chokes.
(3) It allows considerable separation between transmitter stages without appreciable r-f losses or stray chassis currents.
(4) It reduces capacitive coupling and thereby makes neutralization more easily attainable in r-f amplifiers.
(5) It provides semiautomatic impedance matching between plate and grid tuned circuits, with the result that greater grid drive can be obtained in comparison to capacitive coupling.
(6) It effectively reduces the coupling of harmonic energy.

The link-coupling line and links can be made of No. 18 pushback wire for coupling between low-power stages. For coupling between higher-powered stages the 150-ohm twin-lead transmission line is quite effective and has very low loss. Coaxial transmission is most satisfactory between high powered amplifier stages, and should always be used where harmonic attenuation is important.

11-14 Radio-Frequency Chokes

Radio-frequency chokes are connected in circuits for the purpose of stopping the passage of r-f energy while still permitting a direct current or audio-frequency current to pass. They consist of inductances wound with a large number of turns, either in the form of a solenoid, a series of solenoids, a single universal pie winding, or a series of pie windings. These inductors are designed to have as much inductance and as little distributed or shunt capacitance as possible. The unavoidable small amount of distributed capacitance resonates the inductance, and this frequency normally should be much lower than the frequency at which the

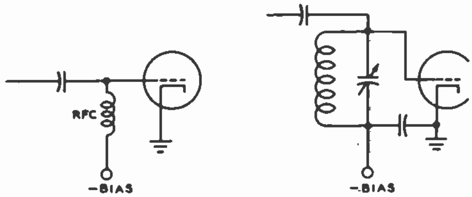


PARALLEL PLATE FEED SERIES PLATE FEED

Figure 43

ILLUSTRATING PARALLEL AND SERIES PLATE FEED

Parallel plate feed is desirable from a safety standpoint since the tank circuit is at ground potential with respect to d.c. However, a high-impedance r-f choke is required, and the r-f choke must be able to withstand the peak r-f voltage output of the tube. Series plate feed eliminates the requirement for a high-performance r-f choke, but requires the use of a relatively large value of bypass capacitance at the bottom end of the tank circuit, as contrasted to the moderate value of coupling capacitance which may be used at the top of the tank circuit for parallel plate feed.



PARALLEL BIAS FEED SERIES BIAS FEED

Figure 44

ILLUSTRATING SERIES AND PARALLEL BIAS FEED

transmitter or receiver circuit is operating. R-f chokes for operation on several bands must be designed carefully so that the impedance of the choke will be extremely high (several hundred thousand ohms) in each of the bands.

The direct current which flows through the r-f choke largely determines the size of wire to be used in the winding. The inductance of r-f chokes for the vhf range is much less than for chokes designed for broadcast and ordinary short-wave operation. A very high-inductance r-f choke has more distributed capacitance than a smaller one, with the result that it will actually offer *less* impedance at very high frequencies.

Another consideration, just as important as the amount of d.c. the winding will carry, is the r-f voltage which may be placed across the choke without its breaking down. This is a function of insulation, turn spacing, frequency, number and spacing of pies, and other factors.

Some chokes which are designed to have a high impedance over a very wide range of frequency are, in effect, really two chokes: a uhf choke in series with a high-frequency choke. A choke of this type is polarized; that is, it is important that the correct end of the combination choke be connected to the "hot" side of the circuit.

Shunt and Series Feed Direct-current grid and plate connections are made either by *series-* or *parallel-feed* systems. Simplified forms of each are shown in figures 43 and 44.

Series feed can be defined as that in which the d-c connection is made to the grid or plate circuits at a point of very low r-f potential. Shunt feed always is made to a point of high r-f voltage and always requires a high-impedance r-f choke or a relatively high resistance to prevent waste of r-f power.

11-15 Parallel and Push-Pull Tube Circuits

The comparative r-f power output from parallel or push-pull operated amplifiers is the same if proper impedance matching is accomplished, if sufficient grid excitation is available in both cases, and if the frequency of measurement is considerably lower than the frequency limit of the tubes.

Parallel Operation Operating tubes in parallel has some advantages in transmitters designed for operation below 30 MHz, particularly when tetrode or pentode tubes are to be used. Only one neutralizing capacitor is required for parallel operation of triode tubes, as against two for push-pull. Above about 30 MHz, depending on the tube type, parallel-tube operation is not ordinarily recommended with triode tubes. However, parallel operation of grounded-grid stages and stages using low-C beam tetrodes often will give excellent results well into the vhf range.

Push-Pull Operation The push-pull connection provides a well-balanced circuit insofar as miscellaneous capacitances are concerned; in addition, the circuit can be neutralized more completely, especially in high-frequency amplifiers. The LC ratio in a push-pull amplifier can be made higher than in a plate-neutralized parallel-tube operated amplifier. Push-pull amplifiers, when perfectly balanced, have less second-harmonic output than parallel- or single-tube amplifiers, but in practice undesired capacitive coupling and circuit unbalance more or less offset the theoretical harmonic-reducing advantages of push-pull r-f circuits.

R-F Feedback

Comparatively high gain is required in single-sideband equipment because the signal is usually generated at levels of one watt or less. To get from this level to a kilowatt requires about 30 db of gain. High gain tetrodes may be used to obtain this increase with a minimum number of stages and circuits. Each stage contributes some distortion; therefore, it is good practice to keep the number of stages to a minimum. It is generally considered good practice to operate the low-level amplifiers below their maximum power capability in order to confine most of the distortion to the last two amplifier stages. *R-f feedback* can then be utilized to reduce the distortion in the last two stages. This type of feedback is no different from the common audio feedback used in high-fidelity sound systems. A sample of the output waveform is applied to the amplifier input to correct the distortion developed in the amplifier. The same advantages can be obtained at radio frequencies that are obtained at audio frequencies when feedback is used.

12-1 R-F Feedback Circuits

R-f feedback circuits have been developed by the *Collins Radio Co.* for use with linear amplifiers. Tests with large receiving and small transmitting tubes showed that amplifiers using these tubes without feedback developed signal-to-distortion ratios no better than 30 db or so. Tests were run employing cathode-follower circuits, such as shown in figure 1A. Lower distortion was achieved, but at the cost of low gain per stage. Since the voltage gain through the tube is less than unity, all gain has to be achieved by voltage step-up in the tank circuits. This gain is limited by the dissipation of the tank coils, since the circuit capacitance across the coils in a typical transmitter is quite high. In addition, the tuning of such a stage is sharp because of the high-Q circuits.

The cathode-follower performance of the tube can be retained by moving the r-f ground

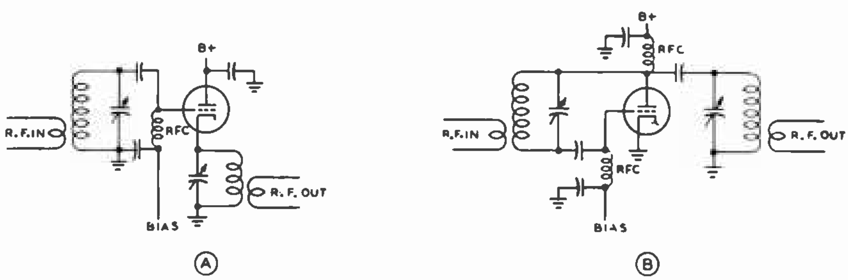


Figure 1
SIMILAR CATHODE-FOLLOWER CIRCUITS HAVING DIFFERENT R-F GROUND POINTS.

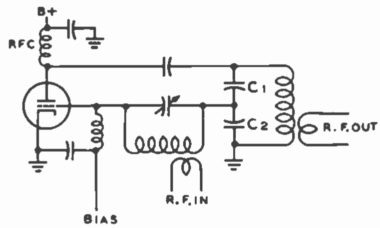


Figure 2
SINGLE STAGE AMPLIFIER WITH R-F FEEDBACK CIRCUIT

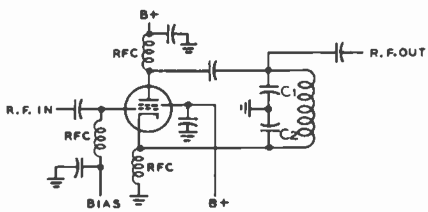


Figure 3
SINGLE STAGE FEEDBACK AMPLIFIER WITH GROUND RETURN POINT MODIFIED FOR UNBALANCED INPUT AND OUTPUT CONNECTIONS.

point of the circuit from the plate to the cathode as shown in figure 1B. Both ends of the input circuit are at high r-f potential so inductive coupling to this type of amplifier is necessary.

Inspection of figure 1B shows that by moving the top end of the input tank down on a voltage-divider tap across the plate tank circuit, the feedback can be reduced from 100%, as in the case of the cathode-follower circuit, down to any desired value. A typical feedback circuit is illustrated in figure 2. This circuit is more practical than those of figure 1, since the losses in the input tank are greatly reduced. A feedback level of 12 db may be achieved as a good compromise between distortion and stage gain. The voltage developed across C_2 will be three times the grid-cathode voltage.

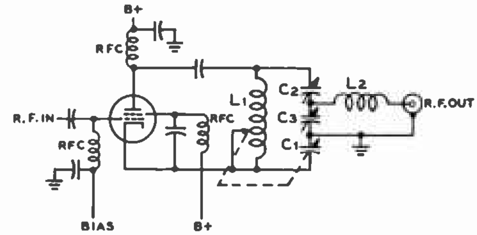


Figure 4
R-F AMPLIFIER WITH FEEDBACK AND IMPEDANCE MATCHING OUTPUT NETWORK.
Tuning and loading are accomplished by C_2 and C_3. C_1 and L_1 are tuned in unison to establish the correct degree of feedback.

Inductive coupling is required for this circuit, as shown in the illustration.

The circuit of figure 3 eliminates the need for inductive coupling by moving the r-f ground to the point common to both tank circuits. The advantages of direct coupling between stages far outweigh the disadvantages of having the r-f feedback voltage appear on the cathode of the amplifier tube.

In order to match the amplifier to a load, the circuit of figure 4 may be used. The ratio of X_{L1} to X_{C1} determines the degree of feedback, so it is necessary to tune them in unison when the frequency of operation is changed. Tuning and loading functions are accomplished by varying C_2 and C_3. L_2 may also be varied to adjust the loading.

Feedback Around a Two-Stage Amplifier The maximum phase shift obtainable over two simple tuned circuits does not exceed 180 degrees, and feedback around a two-stage amplifier is possible. The basic circuit of a two stage feedback amplifier is shown in figure 5. This circuit is a conventional two-stage tetrode amplifier except that r.f. is fed back from the plate circuit of the PA tube to the cathode of the driver tube. This will reduce the distortion

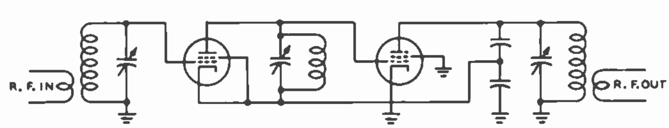


Figure 5
BASIC CIRCUIT OF TWO-STAGE AMPLIFIER WITH R-F FEEDBACK
Feedback voltage is obtained from a voltage divider across the output circuit and applied directly to the cathode of the first tube. The input tank circuit is thus outside the feedback loop.

of both tubes as effectively as using individual feedback loops around each stage, yet will allow a higher level of over-all gain. With only two tuned circuits in the feedback loop, it is possible to use 12 to 15 db of feedback and still leave a wide margin for stability. It is possible to reduce the distortion by nearly as many db as are used in feedback. This circuit has two advantages that are lacking in the single-stage feedback amplifier. First, the filament of the output stage can now be operated at r-f ground potential. Second, any conventional pi output network may be used.

R-f feedback will correct several types of distortion. It will help correct distortion caused by poor power supply regulation, too low grid bias, and limiting on peaks when the plate voltage swing becomes too high.

Neutralization and R-F Feedback The purpose of neutralization of an r-f amplifier stage is to balance out effects of the grid-plate capacitance coupling in the amplifier. In a conventional amplifier using a tetrode tube, the effective input capacity is given by:

$$\text{Input capacitance} = C_{in} + C_{gp}\ (1 + A \cos \theta)$$

where,

C_{in} equals tube input capacitance,

C_{gp} equals grid-plate capacitance,

A equals grid-to-plate voltage amplification,

θ equals angle of load.

In a typical unneutralized tetrode amplifier having a stage gain of 33, the input capacitance of the tube with the plate circuit in resonance is increased by 8 pf due to the unneutralized grid-plate capacitance. This is unimportant in amplifiers where the gain (A) remains constant but if the tube gain varies, serious detuning and r-f phase shift may result. A grid or screen modulated r-f amplifier is an example of the case where the stage gain varies from a maximum down to zero. The gain of a tetrode r-f amplifier operating below plate current saturation varies with loading so that if it drives a following stage into grid current the loading increases and the gain falls off.

The input of the grid circuit is also affected by the grid-plate capacitance, as shown in this equation:

$$\text{Input resistance} = \frac{1}{2\pi f \times C_{gp}\ (A \sin\theta)}$$

This resistance is in shunt with the grid current loading, grid tank circuit losses, and driving source impedance. When the plate circuit is inductive there is energy transferred from the plate to the grid circuit (positive feedback) which will introduce negative resistance in the grid circuit. When this shunt negative resistance across the grid circuit is lower than the equivalent positive resistance of the grid loading, circuit losses, and driving source impedance, the amplifier will oscillate.

When the plate circuit is in resonance (phase angle equal to zero) the input resistance due to the grid-plate capacitance becomes infinite. As the plate circuit is tuned to the capacitive side of resonance, the input resistance becomes positive and power is actually transferred from the grid to the plate circuit. This is the reason that the grid current in an unneutralized tetrode r-f amplifier varies from a low value with the plate circuit tuned on the low-frequency side of resonance to a high value on the high-frequency side of resonance The grid current is proportional to the r-f voltage on the grid which is varying under these conditions. In a tetrode class-AB_1 amplifier, the effect of grid-plate feedback can be observed by placing a r-f voltmeter across the grid circuit and observing the voltage change as the plate circuit is tuned through resonance.

If the amplifier is over-neutralized, the effects reverse so that with the plate circuit tuned to the low-frequency side of resonance, the grid voltage is high, and on the high-frequency side of resonance, it is low.

Amplifier Neutralization Check A useful "rule of thumb" method of checking neutralization of an amplifier stage (assuming that it is nearly correct to start with) is to tune both grid and plate circuits to resonance. Then, observing the r-f grid current, tune the plate circuit to the high-frequency side of resonance. If the grid current rises, more neutralization capacitance is required. Conversely, if the grid current decreases, less capacitance is needed. This indication is very sensitive in a neutralized triode amplifier, and correct neutralization exists when the grid current peaks at the point of plate current dip. In tetrode power amplifiers this indication is less pronounced. Sometimes in a supposedly neutralized tetrode amplifier, there is practically no change in grid voltage as the plate circuit is tuned through resonance, and in some amplifiers it is unchanged on one side of resonance and drops slightly on the other side. Another observation sometimes made is a small dip in the center of a broad peak of grid current. These various effects are probably caused by

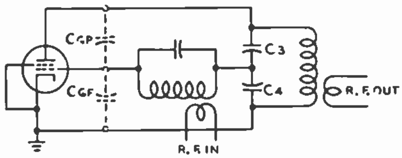


Figure 6
SINGLE STAGE R-F AMPLIFIER WITH FEEDBACK RATIO OF C_3/C_4 to C_{gp}/C_{gf} DETERMINES STAGE NEUTRALIZATION

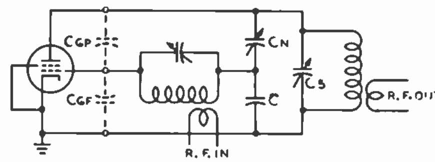


Figure 7
NEUTRALIZED AMPLIFIER AND INHERENT FEEDBACK CIRCUIT
Neutralization is achieved by varying the capacity of C_N.

coupling from the plate to the grid circuit through other paths which are not balanced out by the particular neutralizing circuit used.

Feedback and Neutralization of a One-Stage R-F Amplifier Figure 6 shows an r-f amplifier with negative feedback. The voltage developed across C_4 due to the divider action of C_3 and C_4 is introduced in series with the voltage developed across the grid tank circuit and is in phase-opposition to it. The feedback can be made any value from zero to 100% by properly choosing the values of C_3 and C_4.

For reasons stated previously, it is necessary to neutralize this amplifier, and the relationship for neutralization is:

$$\frac{C_3}{C_4} = \frac{C_{gp}}{C_{gf}}$$

It is often necessary to add capacitance from plate to grid to satisfy this relationship

Figure 7 is identical to figure 6 except that it is redrawn to show the feedback inherent in this neutralization circuit more clearly. C_N and C replace C_3 and C_4, and the main plate tank tuning capacitance is C_5. The circuit of figure 7 presents a problem in coupling to the grid circuit. Inductive coupling is ideal, but the extra tank circuits complicate the tuning of a transmitter which uses several cascaded amplifiers with feedback around each one. The grid could be coupled to a high source impedance such as a tetrode plate, but the driver then cannot use feedback because this would cause the source impedance to be low. A possible solution is to move the circuit ground point from the cathode to the bottom end of the grid tank circuit. The feedback voltage then appears between the cathode and ground (figure 8). The input can be capacitively coupled, and the plate of the amplifier can be capacitively coupled to the next stage. Also, cathode type transmitting tubes are available that allow the heater to remain at ground potential when r.f. is impressed upon the cathode. The output voltage available with capacity coupling, of course, is less than the plate-cathode r-f voltage developed by the amount of feedback voltage across C_4.

12-2 Feedback and Neutralization of a Two-Stage R-F Amplifier

Feedback around two r-f stages has the advantage that more of the tube gain can be realized and nearly as much distortion reduction can be obtained using 12 db around two stages as is realized using 12 db around each of two stages separately. Figure 9 shows a basic circuit of a two-stage feedback amplifier. Inductive output coupling is used, although a pi-network configuration will also work well. The small feedback voltage required is obtained from the voltage divider (C_1-C_2) and is applied to the cathode of the driver tube. C_1 is only a few pf, so this feedback voltage divider may be left fixed for a wide frequency range. If the combined tube gain is 160, and 12 db of feedback is desired, the ratio of C_2 to C_1 is about 40 to 1. This ratio in practice may be 100 pf to 2.5 pf, for example.

A complication is introduced into this simplified circuit by the cathode-grid capacitance

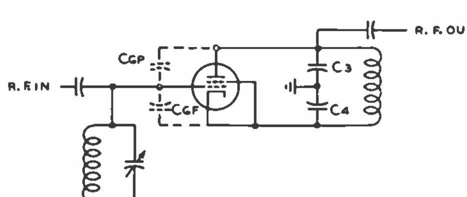


Figure 8

UNBALANCED INPUT AND OUTPUT CIRCUITS FOR SINGLE-STAGE R-F AMPLIFIER WITH FEEDBACK

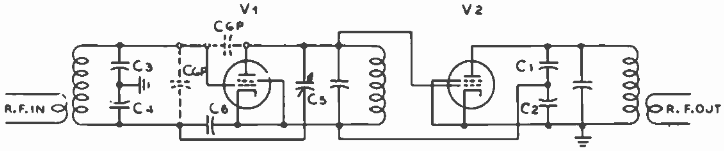


Figure 9

TWO-STAGE AMPLIFIER WITH FEEDBACK.

Included is a capacitor (C_6) for neutralizing the cathode-grid capacity of the first tube. V_1 is neutralized by capacitor C_5, and V_2 is neutralized by the correct ratio of C_1/C_2.

of the first tube which causes an undesired coupling to the input grid circuit. It is necessary to neutralize out this capacitance coupling, as illustrated in figure 9. The relationship for neutralization is:

$$\frac{C_3}{C_4} = \frac{C_{gf}}{C_6}$$

The input circuit may be made unbalanced by making C_4 five times the capacity of C_3. This will tend to reduce the voltage across the coil and to minimize the power dissipated by the coil. For proper balance in this case, C_6 must be five times the grid-filament capacitance of the tube.

Except for tubes having extremely small grid-plate capacitance, it is still necessary to properly neutralize both tubes. If the ratio of C_1 to C_2 is chosen to be equal to the ratio of the grid-plate capacitance to the grid-filament capacitance in the second tube (V_2), this tube will be neutralized. Tubes such as a 4X-150A have very low grid-plate capacitance and probably will not need to be neutralized when used in the first (V_1) stage. If neutralization is necessary, capacitor C_5 is added for this purpose and the proper value is given by the following relationship:

$$\frac{C_{gp}}{C_5} = \frac{C_{gf}}{C_6} = \frac{C_3}{C_4}$$

If neither tube requires neutralization, the bottom end of the interstage tank circuit may be returned to r-f ground. The screen and suppressor of the first tube should then be grounded to keep the tank output capacitance directly across this interstage circuit and to avoid common coupling between the feedback on the cathode and the interstage circuit. A slight amount of degeneration occurs in the first stage since the tube also acts as a grounded grid amplifier with the screen as the grounded grid. The μ of the screen is much lower than that of the control grid so that this effect may be unnoticed and would only require slightly more feedback from the output stage to overcome.

Tests For Neutralization Neutralizing the circuit of figure 9 balances out coupling between the input tank circuit and the output tank circuit, but it does not remove all coupling from the plate circuit to the grid-cathode tube input. This latter coupling is degenerative, so applying a signal to the plate circuit will cause a signal to appear between grid and cathode, even though the stage is neutralized. A bench test for neutralization is to apply a signal to the plate of the tube and detect the presence of a signal in the grid coil by inductive coupling to it. No signal will be present when the stage is neutralized. Of course, a signal could be inductively coupled to the input and neutralization accomplished by adjusting one branch of the neutralizing circuit bridge (C_5 for example) for minimum signal on the plate circuit.

Neutralizing the cathode-grid capacitance of the first stage of figure 9 may be accomplished by applying a signal to the cathode of the tube and adjusting the bridge balance for minimum signal on a detector inductively coupled to the input coil.

Tuning a Two-Stage Feedback Amplifier Tuning the two-stage feedback amplifier of figure 9 is accomplished in an unconventional way because the output circuit cannot be tuned for maximum output signal. This is because the output circuit must be tuned so the feedback voltage applied to the cathode is in-phase with the input signal applied to the first grid. When the feedback voltage is not in-phase, the resultant grid-cathode voltage increases as shown in figure 10. When the output circuit is properly tuned, the resultant grid-cathode voltage on the first tube will be at a minimum, and the voltage on the interstage tuned circuit will also be at a minimum.

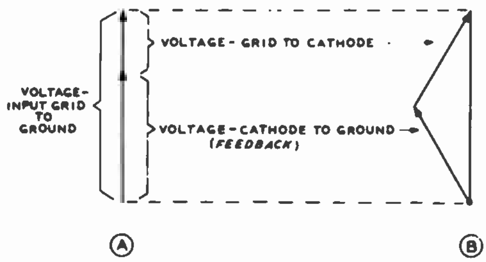


Figure 10
VECTOR RELATIONSHIP OF FEEDBACK VOLTAGE
A = Output Circuit Properly Tuned
B = Output Circuit Mis-Tuned

The two-stage amplifier may be tuned by placing a r-f voltmeter across the interstage tank circuit ("hot" side to ground) and tuning the input and interstage circuits for maximum meter reading, and tuning the output circuit for minimum meter reading. If the second tube is driven into the grid current region, the grid current meter may be used in place of the r-f voltmeter. On high powered stages where operation is well into the class-AB region, the plate current dip of the output tube indicates correct output circuit tuning, as in the usual amplifier.

Parasitic Oscillations in the Feedback Amplifier Quite often low frequency parasitics may be found in the interstage circuit of the two-stage feedback amplifier. Oscillation occurs in the first stage due to low frequency feedback in the cathode circuit. R-f chokes, coupling capacitors, and bypass capacitors provide the low frequency tank circuits. When the feedback and second stage neutralizing circuits are combined, it is necessary to use the configuration of figure 11. This circuit has the advantage that only one capacitor (C_3) is required from the plate of the output tube, thus keeping the added capacitance across the output tank at a minimum.

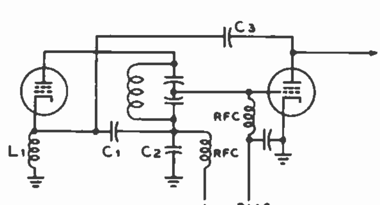


Figure 11
INTERSTAGE CIRCUIT COMBINING NEUTRALIZATION AND FEEDBACK NETWORKS.

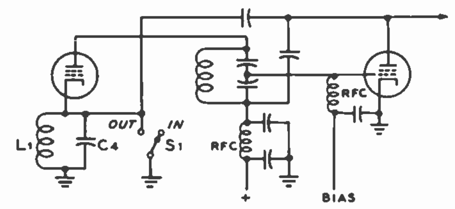


Figure 12
INTERSTAGE CIRCUIT WITH SEPARATE NEUTRALIZING AND FEEDBACK CIRCUITS.

It is convenient, however, to separate these circuits so neutralization and feedback can be adjusted independently. Also, it may be desirable to be able to switch the feedback out of the circuit. For these reasons, the circuit shown in figure 12 is often used. Switch S_1 removes the feedback loop when it is closed.

A slight tendency for low-frequency parasitic oscillations still exists with this circuit. L_1 should have as little inductance as possible without upsetting the feedback. If the value of L_1 is too low, it cancels out part of the reactance of feedback capacitor C_4 and causes the feedback to increase at low values of radio frequency. In some cases, a swamping resistor may be necessary across L_1. The value of this resistor should be high compared to the reactance of C_1 to avoid phase-shift of the r-f feedback.

12-3 Neutralization Procedure in Feedback-Type Amplifiers

Experience with feedback amplifiers has brought out several different methods of neutralizing. An important observation is that when all three neutralizing adjustments are correctly made the peaks and dips of various tuning meters all coincide at the point of circuit resonance. For example, the coincident indications when the various tank circuits are tuned through resonance with feedback operating are:

A—When the *PA plate circuit* is tuned through resonance:
1—PA plate current dip
2—Power output peak
3—PA r-f grid voltage dip
4—PA grid current dip
(Note: The PA grid current peaks when feedback circuit is disabled and the tube is heavily driven)

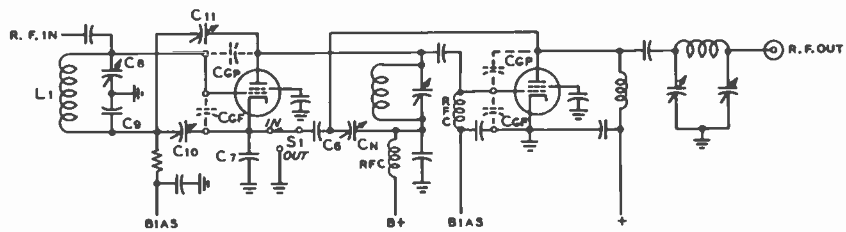


Figure 13
TWO-STAGE AMPLIFIER WITH FEEDBACK CIRCUIT

B—When the *PA grid circuit* is tuned through resonance:
1—Driver plate current dip
2—PA r-f grid voltage peak
3—PA grid current peak
4—PA power output peak

C—When the *driver grid circuit* is tuned through resonance:
1—Driver r-f grid voltage peak
2—Driver plate current peak
3—PA r-f grid current peak
4—PA plate current peak
5—PA power output peak

Four meters may be employed to measure the most important of these parameters. The meters should be arranged so that the following *pairs of readings* are displayed on meters located close together for ease of observation of coincident peaks and dips:

1—PA plate current and power output
2—PA r-f grid current and PA plate current
3—PA r-f grid voltage and power output
4—Driver plate current and PA r-f grid voltage

The third pair listed above may not be necessary if the PA plate current dip is pronounced. When this instrumentation is provided, the neutralizing procedure is as follows:

1—Remove the r-f feedback
2—Neutralize the grid-plate capacitance of the driver stage
3—Neutralize the grid-plate capacitance of the power amplifier (PA) stage
4—Apply r-f feedback
5—Neutralize driver grid-cathode capacitance

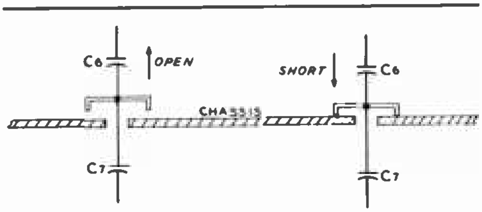


Figure 14
FEEDBACK SHORTING DEVICE.

These steps will be explained in more detail in the following paragraphs:

Step 1. The removal of r-f feedback through the feedback circuit must be complete. The switch (S_1) shown in the feedback circuit (figure 13) is one satisfactory method. Since C_6 is effectively across the PA plate tank circuit it is desirable to keep it across the circuit when feedback is removed to avoid appreciable detuning of the plate tank circuit. Another method that can be used if properly done is to ground the junction of C_6 and C_7. Grounding this common point through a switch or relay is not good enough because of common coupling through the length of the grounding lead. The grounding method shown in figure 14 is satisfactory.

Step 2. Plate power and excitation are applied. The driver grid tank is resonated by tuning for a peak in driver r-f grid voltage or driver plate current. The power amplifier grid tank circuit is then resonated and adjusted for a dip in driver plate current. Driver neutralization is now adjusted until the PA r-f grid voltage (or PA grid current) peaks at exactly the point of driver plate current dip. A handy rule for adjusting grid-plate neutralization of a tube without feedback: with all circuits in resonance, detune the plate circuit to the high frequency side of resonance: If grid current to next stage (or power output of the stage under test) increases, more neutralizing capacitance is required and vice versa.

If the driver tube operates class A so that a plate current dip cannot be observed, a dif-

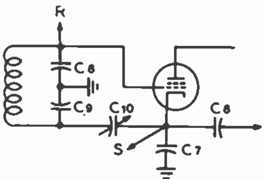


Figure 15
FEEDBACK NEUTRALIZING CIRCUIT USING AUXILIARY RECEIVER.

ferent neutralizing procedure is necessary This will be discussed in a subsequent section.

Step 3. This is the same as step 2 except it is applied to the power amplifier stage. Adjust the neutralization of this stage for a peak in power output at the plate current dip.

Step 4. Reverse step 1 and apply the r-f feedback.

Step 5. Apply plate power and an exciting signal to drive the amplifier to nearly full output. Adjust the feedback neutralization for a peak in amplifier power output at the exact point of minimum amplifier plate current. Decrease the feedback neutralization capacitance if the power output rises when the tank circuit is tuned to the high frequency side of resonance.

The above sequence applies when the neutralizing adjustments are approximately correct to start with. If they are far off, some "cut-and-try" adjustment may be necessary. Also, the driver stage may break into oscillation if the feedback neutralizing capacitance is not near the correct setting.

It is assumed that a single-tone test signal is used for amplifier excitation during the above steps, and that all tank circuits are at resonance except the one being detuned to make the observation. There is some interaction between the driver neutralization and the feedback neutralization so if an appreciable change is made in any adjustment the others should be rechecked. It is important that the grid-plate neutralization be accomplished first when using the above procedure, otherwise the feedback neutralization will be off a little, since it partially compensates for that error.

Neutralization Techniques The method of neutralization employing a sensitive r-f detector inductively coupled to a tank coil is difficult to apply in some cases because of mechanical construction of the equipment, or because of undesired coupling. Another method for observing neutralization can be used, which appears to be more accurate in actual practice. A sensitive r-f detector such as a receiver is loosely coupled to the grid of the stage being neutralized, as shown in figure 15. The coupling capacitance is of the order of one or two pf. It must be small enough to avoid upsetting the neutralization when it is removed because the total grid-ground capacitance is one leg of the neutralizing bridge. A signal generator is connected at point S and the receiver at point R. If C_{10} is not properly adjusted the S-meter on the receiver will either kick up or down as the grid tank circuit is tuned through resonance. C_{10} may be adjusted for minimum deflection of the S-meter as the grid circuit is tuned through resonance.

The grid-plate capacitance of the tube is then neutralized by connecting the signal generator to the plate of the tube and adjusting C_{11} of figure 13 for minimum deflection again as the grid tank is tuned through resonance. The power amplifier stage is neutralized in the same manner by connecting a receiver loosely to the grid circuit, and attaching a signal generator to the plate of the tube. The r-f signal can be fed into the amplifier output terminal if desired.

Some precautions are necessary when using this neutralization method. First, some driver tubes (the 6CL6, for example) have appreciably more effective input capacitance when in operation and conducting plate current than when in standby condition. This increase in input capacitance may be as great as three or four pf, and since this is part of the neutralizing bridge circuit it must be taken into consideration. The result of this change in input capacitance is that the neutralizing adjustment of such tubes must be made when they are conducting normal plate current. Stray coupling must be avoided, and it may prove helpful to remove filament power from the preceding stage or disable its input circuit in some manner.

It should be noted that in each of the above adjustments that minimum reaction on the grid is desired, not minimum voltage. Some residual voltage is inherent on the grid when this neutralizing circuit is used.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

Amplitude Modulation

If the output of a c-w transmitter is varied in amplitude at an audio frequency rate instead of interrupted in accordance with code characters, a tone will be heard on a receiver tuned to the signal. If the audio signal consists of a band of audio frequencies comprising voice or music intelligence, then the voice or music which is superimposed on the radio-frequency carrier will be heard on the receiver.

When voice, music, video, or other intelligence is superimposed on a radio frequency carrier by means of a corresponding variation in the *amplitude* of the radio frequency output of a transmitter, *amplitude modulation* is the result. Telegraph keying of a c-w transmitter is the simplest form of amplitude modulation, while video modulation in a television transmitter represents a highly complex form. Systems for modulating the amplitude of a carrier envelope in accordance with voice, music, or similar types of complicated audio waveforms are many and varied, and will be discussed later in this chapter.

13-1 Sidebands

Modulation is essentially a form of *mixing*, or *combining*, already covered in a previous chapter. To transmit voice at radio frequencies by means of amplitude modulation, the voice frequencies are mixed with a radio-frequency carrier so that the voice frequencies are converted to radio-frequency *sidebands*. Though it may be difficult to visualize, *the amplitude of the radio-frequency carrier does not vary during conventional amplitude modulation.*

Even though the amplitude of radio-frequency voltage representing the composite signal (resultant of the carrier and sidebands, called the *envelope*) will vary from zero to twice the unmodulated signal value during full modulation, the amplitude of the *carrier* component does not vary. Also, as long as the amplitude of the modulating voltage does not vary, the amplitude of the sidebands will remain constant. For this to be apparent, however, it is necessary to measure the amplitude of each component with a highly selective filter. Otherwise, the measured power or voltage will be a *resultant* of two or more of the components, and the amplitude of the resultant will vary at the modulation rate.

If a carrier frequency of 5000 kHz is modulated by a pure tone of 1000 Hz, or 1 kHz, two sidebands are formed: one at 5001 kHz (the sum frequency) and one at 4999 kHz (the difference frequency). The frequency of each sideband is independent of the amplitude of the modulating tone, or *modulation percentage;* the frequency of each sideband is determined only by the frequency of the modulating tone. This assumes, of course, that the transmitter is not modulated in excess of its linear capability.

When the modulating signal consists of multiple frequencies, as is the case with voice or music modulation, two sidebands will be formed by each modulating frequency (one on each side of the carrier), and the radiated signal will consist of a *band* of frequencies. The ***bandwidth,*** or ***channel,*** taken up in the frequency spectrum by a conventional double-sideband amplitude-modulated signal, is equal to twice the highest modulating frequency. For example, if the highest modulating frequency is 5000 Hz, then the signal (assuming modulation of complex and varying waveform) will occupy a band extending from 5000 Hz below the carrier to 5000 Hz above the carrier.

Frequencies up to at least 2500 Hz, and preferably 3500 Hz, are necessary for good speech intelligibility. If a filter is incorporated in the audio system to cut out all frequencies above approximately 3000 Hz, the bandwidth of a radiotelephone signal can be limited to 6 kHz without a significant loss in intelligibility. However, if harmonic distortion is introduced subsequent to the filter, as would happen in the case of an overloaded modulator or overmodulation of the carrier, new frequencies will be generated and the signal will occupy a band wider than 6 kHz.

13-2 Mechanics of Modulation

A c-w or unmodulated r-f carrier wave is represented in figure 1A. An audio-frequency sine wave is represented by the curve of figure 1B. When the two are combined or "mixed," the carrier is said to be amplitude modulated, and a resultant similar to 1C or 1D is obtained. It should be noted that under modulation, each half cycle of r-f voltage differs slightly from the preceding one and the following one; therefore at no time during modulation is the r-f waveform a pure sine wave. This is simply another way of saying that during modulation, the transmitted r-f energy no longer is confined to a single radio frequency.

It will be noted that the *average* amplitude of the peak r-f voltage, or modulation envelope, is the same with or without modulation. This simply means that the modulation is symmetrical (assuming a symmetrical modulating wave) and that for distortionless

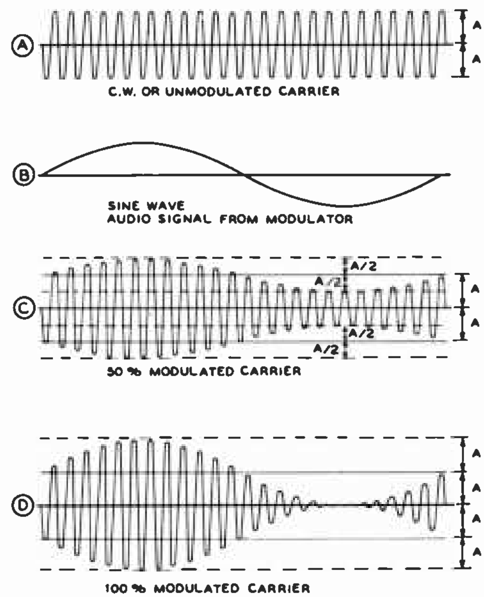


Figure 1

AMPLITUDE-MODULATED WAVE

Top drawing A represents an unmodulated carrier wave; B shows the audio output of the modulator. Drawing C shows the audio signal impressed on the carrier wave to the extent of 50 percent modulation; D shows the carrier with 100 percent amplitude modulation.

modulation the upward modulation is limited to a value of twice the unmodulated carrier wave amplitude because the amplitude cannot go below zero on downward portions of the modulation cycle. Figure 1D illustrates the maximum obtainable distortionless modulation with a sine modulating wave, the r-f voltage at the peak of the r-f cycle varying from zero to twice the unmodulated value, and the r-f power varying from zero to four times the unmodulated value (the power varies as the square of the voltage).

While the average r-f *voltage* of the modulated wave over a modulation cycle is the same as for the unmodulated carrier, the average *power* increases with modulation. If the radio-frequency power is integrated over the audio cycle, it will be found with 100 percent sine-wave modulation the average r-f power has increased 50 percent. This additional power is represented by the sidebands, because, as previously mentioned, the carrier power does not vary under modulation. Thus, when a 100-watt carrier is modulated 100 percent by a sine wave, the total r-f power is 150 watts—100 watts in the carrier and 25 watts in each of the two sidebands.

Modulation Percentage So long as the *relative proportion* of the various sidebands making up voice modulation is maintained, the signal may be received and detected without distortion. However, the higher the average amplitude of the sidebands, the greater the audio signal produced at the receiver. For this reason it is desirable to increase the *modulation percentage,* or degree of modulation, to the point where maximum peaks just hit 100 percent. If the modulation percentage is increased so that the peaks exceed this value, distortion is introduced, and if carried very far, bad interference to signals on nearby channels will result.

Modulation Measurement The amount by which a carrier is being modulated may be expressed either as a modulation factor, varying from zero to 1.0 at maximum modulation, or as a percentage. The percentage of modulation is equal to 100 times the modulation factor. Figure 2A shows a carrier wave modulated by a sine-wave audio tone. A picture such as this might be seen on the screen of a cathode-ray oscilloscope with sawtooth sweep on the horizontal plates and the modulated carrier impressed on the vertical plates. The same carrier without modulation would appear on the oscilloscope screen as figure 2B.

The percentage of modulation of the positive peaks and the percentage of modulation of the negative peaks can be determined separately from two oscilloscope pictures such as shown.

The modulation factor of the positive peaks may be determined by the formula:

$$M = \frac{E_{max} - E_{car}}{E_{car}}$$

The factor for negative peaks may be determined from the formula:

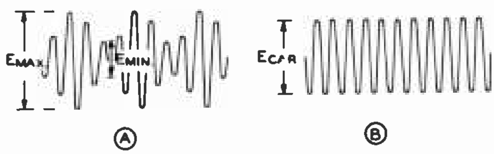


Figure 2

GRAPHICAL DETERMINATION OF MODULATION PERCENTAGE

The procedure for determining modulation percentage from the peak voltage points indicated is discussed in the text.

$$M = \frac{E_{car} - E_{min}}{E_{car}}$$

In the above two formulas E_{max} is the maximum carrier amplitude with modulation and E_{min} is the minimum amplitude; E_{car} is the steady-state amplitude of the carrier without modulation. Since the deflection of the spot on a cathode-ray tube is linear with respect to voltage, the relative voltages of these various amplitudes may be determined by measuring the deflections, as viewed on the screen, with a rule calibrated in inches or centimeters. The percentage of modulation of the carrier may be found by multiplying the modulation factor thus obtained by 100. The above procedure assumes that there is no *carrier shift,* or change in average carrier amplitude with modulation.

If the modulating voltage is symmetrical, such as a sine wave, and modulation is accomplished without the introduction of distortion, then the percentage modulation will be the same for both negative and positive peaks. However, the distribution and phase relationships of harmonics in voice and music waveforms are such that the percentage modulation of the negative modulation peaks may exceed the percentage modulation of the positive peaks, or vice versa. The percentage modulation when referred to without regard to polarity is an indication of the average of the negative and positive peaks.

Modulation Capability The modulation capability of a transmitter is the maximum percentage to which that transmitter may be modulated before spurious sidebands are generated in the output or before the distortion of the modulating waveform becomes objectionable. The highest modulation capability which *any* transmitter may have on the *negative* peaks is 100 percent. The maximum permissible modulation of many transmitters is less than 100 percent, especially on positive peaks. The modulation capability of a transmitter may be limited by tubes with insufficient filament emission, by insufficient excitation or grid bias to a plate-modulated stage, too light loading of any type of amplifier carrying modulated r.f., insufficient power output capability in the modulator, or too much excitation to a grid-modulated stage or a class-B linear amplifier. In any case, the FCC regulations specify that no transmitter may be modulated in excess of its modulation capability. Hence, it is desirable to make the modulation capability of a transmitter as near as possible to 100 percent so that the carrier power may be used most effectively.

Speech Waveform Dissymmetry The manner in which the human voice is produced by the vocal cords gives rise to a certain dissymmetry in the waveform of voice sounds when they are picked up by a good quality microphone. This is especially pronounced in the male voice, and more so on certain voice sounds than on others. The result of this dissymmetry in the waveform is that the voltage peaks on one side of the average value of the wave will be considerably greater, often two or three times as great, as the voltage excursions on the other side of the zero axis. The *average* value of voltage on both sides of the wave is, of course, the same.

As a result of this dissymmetry in the male voice waveform, there is an optimum polarity of the modulating voltage that must be observed if maximum sideband energy is to be obtained without negative peak clipping and generation of *splatter* on adjacent channels.

A double-pole double-throw *phase-reversing* switch in the input or output leads of any transformer in the speech amplifier system will permit switching the extended peaks in the direction of maximum modulation capability. The optimum polarity may be determined easily by listening on a selective receiver tuned to a frequency 30 to 50 kHz removed from the desired signal and adjusting the phase-reversing switch to the position which gives the least "splatter" when the transmitter is modulated rather heavily. If desired, the switch then may be replaced with permanent wiring, so long as the microphone and speech system are not to be changed.

A more conclusive illustration of the lopsidedness of a speech waveform may be obtained by observing the modulated waveform of a radiotelephone transmitter on an oscilloscope. A portion of the carrier energy of the transmitter should be coupled by means of a link directly to the vertical plates of the 'scope, and the horizontal sweep should be a sawtooth or similar wave occurring at a rate of approximately 30 to 70 sweeps per second.

With the speech signal from the speech amplifier connected to the transmitter with one polarity it will be noticed that negative-peak clipping—as indicated by bright "spots" in the center of the 'scope pattern whenever the carrier amplitude goes to zero—will occur at a considerably lower level of average modulation than with the speech signal being fed to the transmitter with the other polarity. When the input signal to the transmitter is polarized in such a manner that the "fingers" of the speech wave extend in the direction of positive modulation these fingers usually will be clipped in the plate circuit of the modulator at an acceptable peak modulation level.

The use of the proper polarity of the incoming speech wave in modulating a transmitter can afford an increase of approximately two to one in the amount of speech audio power which may be placed on the carrier of an amplitude-modulated transmitter for the same amount of sideband splatter. More effective methods for increasing the amount of audio power on the carrier of an a-m phone transmitter are discussed later in this chapter.

13-3 Systems of Amplitude Modulation

There are many different systems and methods for amplitude-modulating a carrier, but most may be grouped under three general classifications: (1) *variable-efficiency* systems in which the average input to the stage remains constant with and without modulation and the variations in the efficiency of the stage in accordance with the modulating signal accomplish the modulation; (2) *constant-efficiency* systems in which the input to the stage is varied by an external source of modulating energy to accomplish the modulation; and (3) so-called *high-efficiency* systems in which circuit complexity is increased to obtain high plate-circuit efficiency in the modulated stage without the requirement of an external high-level modulator. The various systems under each classification have individual characteristics which make certain ones best suited to particular applications.

Variable-Efficiency Modulation Since the *average* input remains constant in a stage employing variable-efficiency modulation, and since the average power output of the stage increases with modulation, the additional average power output from the stage *with* modulation must come from the plate dissipation of the tubes in the stage. Hence, for the best relation between tube cost and power output, the tubes employed should have as high a plate dissipation rating per dollar as possible.

The plate efficiency in such an amplifier is doubled when going from the unmodulated condition to the peak of the modulation cycle. Hence, the unmodulated efficiency of such an amplifier *must always be less than 45 percent*, since the maximum peak efficiency obtainable in a conventional amplifier is in the vicinity of 90 percent. Since the peak efficiency in certain types of amplifiers will be as low as 60 percent, the unmodulated efficiency in such amplifiers will be in the vicinity of 30 percent.

Assuming a typical amplifier having a peak efficiency of 70 percent, the following figures give an idea of the operation of an idealized efficiency-modulated stage adjusted for 100 percent sine-wave modulation. It should be kept in mind that the plate voltage is constant at all times, even over the audio cycles.

Plate input without modulation ....100 watts
Output without modulation .... 35 watts
Efficiency without modulation 35%
Input on 100% positive modulation peak (plate current doubles) ....200 watts
Efficiency on 100% positive peak .. 70%
Output on 100% positive modulation peak ....140 watts
Input on 100% negative peak ...... 0 watts
Efficiency on 100% negative peak.. 0%
Output on 100% negative peak .... 0 watts
Average input with 100% modulation ....100 watts
Average output with 100% modulation (35 watts carrier plus 17.5 watts sideband) ....52.5 watts
Average efficiency with 100% modulation 52.5%

Systems of Efficiency Modulation There are many systems of efficiency modulation, but they *all* have the general limitation discussed in the previous paragraph—so long as the carrier amplitude is to remain constant with and without modulation, the efficiency at carrier level must be not greater than one-half the peak modulation efficiency if the stage is to be capable of 100 percent modulation.

The classic example of efficiency modulation is the class-B linear r-f amplifier, to be discussed below. The other three common forms of efficiency modulation are control-grid modulation, screen-grid modulation, and suppressor-grid modulation. In each case, including that of the class-B linear amplifier, note that the modulation, or the modulated signal, is impressed on a control electrode of the stage.

The Class-B Linear Amplifier This is the simplest practicable type amplifier for an amplitude-modulated wave or a single-sideband signal. The system possesses the disadvantage that excitation, grid bias, and loading must be carefully controlled to preserve the linearity of the stage. Also, the grid circuit of the tube, in the usual application where grid current is drawn on peaks, presents a widely varying value of load impedance to the source of excitation. Hence it is necessary to include some sort of *swamping resistor* to reduce the effect of grid-impedance variations with modulation. If such a swamping resistance across the grid tank is not included, or is too high in value, the positive modulation peaks of the incoming modulated signal will tend to be flattened with resultant distortion of the wave being amplified.

The class-B linear amplifier has long been used in broadcast transmitters, but recently has received much more general usage in the hf range for two significant reasons: (a) the class-B linear is an excellent way of increasing the power output of a single-sideband transmitter, since the plate efficiency with full signal will be in the vicinity of 70 percent, while with no modulation the input to the stage drops to a relatively low value; and (b) the class-B linear amplifier operates with relatively low harmonic output since the grid bias on the stage normally is slightly less than the value which will cut off plate current to the stage in the absence of excitation.

Since a class-B linear amplifier is biased to *extended* cutoff with no excitation (the grid bias at extended cutoff will be approximately equal to the plate voltage divided by the amplification factor for a triode, and will be approximately equal to the screen voltage divided by the grid-screen μ factor for a tetrode or pentode) the plate current will essentially flow in 180-degree pulses. Due to the relatively large operating angle of plate current flow the theoretical peak plate efficiency is limited to 78.5 percent, with 65 to 70 percent representing a range of efficiency normally attainable.

The carrier power output from a class-B linear amplifier of a normal 100 percent modulated a-m signal will be about one-half the rated plate dissipation of the stage, with optimum operating conditions. The peak output from a class-B linear, which represents the maximum-signal output as a single-sideband amplifier, or peak output with a 100 percent a-m signal, will be about twice the plate dissipation of the tubes in the stage. Thus the carrier-level input power to a class-B linear should be about 1.5 times the rated plate dissipation of the stage.

The schematic circuit of a class-B linear amplifier is the same as a conventional single-ended or push-pull stage, whether triodes or beam tetrodes are used. However, a swamping resistor, as mentioned before, must be placed across the grid tank of the stage if the operating conditions of the tube are such that appreciable grid current will be drawn on modulation peaks. Also, a *fixed* source of grid bias must be provided for the stage. A regulated grid-bias power supply is the usual source of negative bias voltage.

Adjustment of a Class-B Linear Amplifier With grid bias adjusted to the correct value, and with provision for varying the excitation voltage to the stage and the loading of the plate circuit, a fully modulated signal is applied to the grid circuit of the stage. Then with an oscilloscope coupled to the output of the stage, excitation and loading are varied until the stage is drawing the normal plate input and the output waveshape is a good replica of the input signal. The adjustment procedure normally will require a succession of approximations, until the optimum set of adjustments is attained. Then the modulation being applied to the input signal should be removed to check the linearity. With modulation removed, in the case of a 100 percent a-m signal, the input to the stage should remain constant, and the peak output of the r-f envelope should fall to one-half the value obtained on positive modulation peaks.

Class-C Grid Modulation One effective system of efficiency modulation for communications work is class-C control-grid bias modulation. The distortion is slightly higher than for a properly operated class-B linear amplifier, but the efficiency is also higher, and the distortion can be kept within tolerable limits for communications work.

Class-C grid modulation requires high plate voltage on the modulated stage if maximum output is desired. The plate voltage is normally run about 50 percent higher than for maximum output with plate modulation.

The driving power required for operation of a grid-modulated amplifier under these conditions is somewhat more than is required for operation at lower bias and plate voltage, but the increased power output obtainable overbalances the additional excitation requirement. Actually, almost half as much excitation is required as would be needed if the same stage were to be operated as a class-C plate-modulated amplifier. A resistor across the grid tank of the stage serves as *swamping* to stabilize the r-f driving voltage. At least 50 percent of the output of the driving stage should be dissipated in this swamping resistor under carrier conditions.

A comparatively small amount of audio power will be required to modulate the amplifier stage 100 percent. An audio amplifier having 20 watts output will be sufficient to modulate an amplifier with one kilowatt input. Proportionately smaller amounts of audio will be required for lower-powered stages. However, the audio amplifier that is being used as the grid modulator should, in any case, either employ low-plate-resistance tubes such as 2A3's, employ degenerative feedback from the output stage to one of the preceding stages of the speech amplifier, or be resistance loaded with a resistor across the secondary of the modulation transformer. This provision of low driving impedance in the grid modulator is to ensure good regulation in the audio driver for the grid-modulated stage. Good regulation of both the audio and the r-f drivers of a grid-modulated stage is quite important if distortion-free modulation approaching 100 percent is desired, because the grid impedance of the modulated stage varies widely over the audio cycle.

A practical circuit for obtaining grid-bias modulation is shown in figure 3. The modulator and bias regulator tube have been combined in a single 2A3 tube.

The regulator-modulator tube operates as a cathode-follower. The average d-c voltage on the control grid is controlled by the 70,000-ohm wirewound potentiometer and this potentiometer adjusts the average grid bias on the modulated stage. However, a-c signal voltage is also impressed on the control grid of the tube and since the cathode follows this a-c wave the incoming speech wave is superimposed on the average grid bias, thus effecting grid-bias modulation of the r-f amplifier stage. An audio voltage swing is required on the grid of the 2A3 of approximately the same peak value as will be required as bias-voltage swing on the grid-bias modulated stage. This voltage swing will normally be in the region from 50 to 200 peak volts. Up to about 100 volts peak swing can be obtained from a 6AU6 tube as conventional speech amplifier stage. The higher voltages may be obtained from a tube such as a 6C4 through an audio transformer of 2:1 or 2.5:1 ratio.

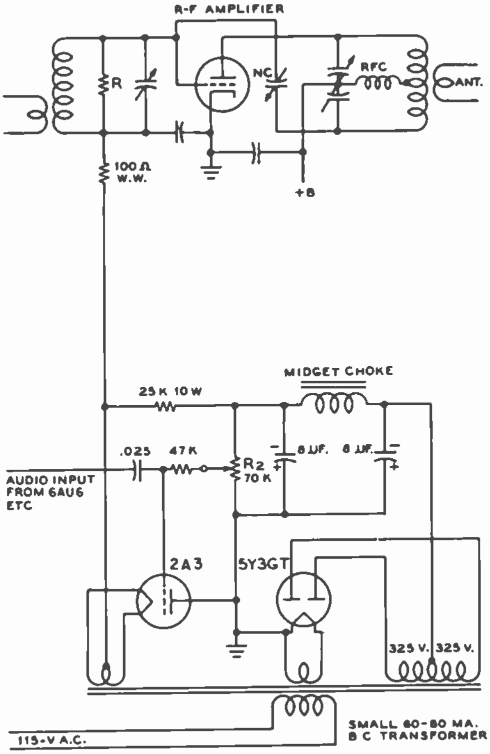


Figure 3

GRID-BIAS MODULATOR CIRCUIT

With the normal amount of comparatively tight antenna coupling to the modulated stage, an unmodulated carrier efficiency of 40 percent can be obtained, with substantially distortion-free modulation up to practically 100 percent. If the antenna coupling is decreased slightly from the condition just described, and the excitation is increased to the point where the amplifier draws the same input, carrier efficiency of 50 percent is obtainable with tolerable distortion at 90 percent modulation.

Tuning the Grid-Bias Modulated Stage The most satisfactory procedure for tuning a stage for grid-bias modulation of the class-C type is as follows. The amplifier should first be neutralized, and any possible tendency toward parasitics under any condition of operation should be eliminated. Then the antenna should be coupled to the plate circuit, the grid bias should be run up to the maximum available value, and the plate voltage and excitation should be applied. The grid-bias voltage should then be reduced until the amplifier draws the approximate amount of plate current it is desired to run, and modulation corresponding to about 80 percent is then applied. If the plate current kicks up when modulation is applied, the grid bias should be reduced; if the plate meter kicks down, increase the grid bias.

When the amount of bias voltage has been found (by adjusting the fine control (R_2) on the bias supply) where the plate meter remains constant with modulation, it is more than probable that the stage will be drawing either too much or too little input. The antenna coupling should then be either increased or decreased (depending on whether the input was too little or too much, respectively) until the input is more nearly the correct value. The bias should then be readjusted until the plate meter remains constant with modulation as before. By slight jockeying back and forth of antenna coupling and grid bias, a point can be reached where the tubes are running at rated plate dissipation, and where the plate milliammeter on the modulated stage remains substantially constant with modulation.

The linearity of the stage should then be checked by any of the conventional methods; the trapezoidal pattern method employing a cathode-ray oscilloscope is probably the most satisfactory. The check with the trapezoidal pattern will allow the determination of the proper amount of gain to employ on the speech amplifier. Too much audio power on the grid of the modulated stage should not be used in the tuning-up process, as the plate meter will kick erratically and it will be impossible to make a satisfactory adjustment.

Screen-Grid Modulation Amplitude modulation may be accomplished by varying the screen-grid voltage in a class-C amplifier which employs a pentode, beam tetrode, or other type of screen-grid tube. The modulation obtained in this way is not especially linear, but *screen-grid modulation* does offer other advantages and the linearity is quite adequate for communications work.

There are two significant and worthwhile advantages of screen-grid modulation for communications work: (1) The excitation requirements for an amplifier which is to be screen modulated are not at all critical, and good regulation of the excitation voltage is not required. The normal rated grid-circuit operating conditions specified for class-C c-w operation are quite adequate for screen-grid modulation. (2) The audio modulating power requirements for screen-grid modulation are relatively low.

A screen-grid modulated r-f amplifier operates as an efficiency-modulated amplifier, the same as does a class-B linear amplifier and a grid-modulated stage. Hence, *plate circuit* loading is relatively critical as in any efficiency-modulated stage, and must be adjusted to the correct value if normal power output with full modulation capability is to be obtained. As in the case of any efficiency-modulated stage, the operating efficiency at the peak of the modulation cycle will be between 70 and 80 percent, with efficiency at the carrier level (if the stage is operating in the normal manner with full carrier) about half of the peak-modulation value.

There are two main disadvantages of screen-grid modulation, and several factors which must be considered if satisfactory operation of the screen-grid modulated stage is to be obtained. The disadvantages are: (1) As mentioned before, the linearity of modulation with respect to screen-grid voltage of such a stage is satisfactory only for communications work, unless carrier-rectified degenerative feedback is employed around the modulated stage to improve the linearity of modulation. (2) The impedance of the screen grid to the modulating signal is nonlinear. This means that the modulating signal must be obtained from a source of quite low impedance if audio distortion of the signal appearing at the screen grid is to be avoided.

Screen-Grid Impedance Instead of being linear with respect to modulating voltage, as is the plate circuit of a plate-modulated class-C amplifier, the screen grid presents approximately a square-law impedance to the modulating signal over the region of signal excursion where the screen is positive with respect to ground. This nonlinearity may be explained in the following manner: At the carrier level of a conventional screen-modulated stage the plate-voltage swing of the modulated tube is one-half the voltage swing at peak-modulation level. This condition must exist in any type of conventional efficiency-modulated stage if 100 per cent positive modulation is to be attainable. Since the plate-voltage swing is at half amplitude, and since the screen voltage is at half its full modulation value, the screen current is relatively low. But at the positive modulation peak the screen voltage is approximately doubled, and the plate-voltage swing also is at twice the carrier amplitude. Due to the increase in plate-voltage swing with rising screen voltage, the screen current increases more than linearly with rising screen voltage.

In a test made on an amplifier with an 813 tube, the screen current at carrier level was about 6 ma with screen potential of 190 volts; but under conditions which represented a positive modulation peak the screen current measured 25 ma at a potential of 400 volts. Thus instead of screen current doubling with twice screen voltage as would be the case if the screen presented a resistive impedance, the screen current became about four times as great with twice the screen voltage.

Another factor which must be considered in the design of a screen-modulated stage, if full modulation is to be obtained, is that the power output of a screen-grid stage with zero screen voltage is still relatively large. Hence, if anything approaching full modulation on negative peaks is to be obtained, the screen potential must be made negative with respect to ground on negative modulation peaks. In the usual types of beam tetrode tubes the screen potential must be 20 to 50 volts negative with respect to ground before cutoff of output is obtained. This condition further complicates the problem of obtaining good linearity in the audio modulating voltage for the screen-modulated stage, since the screen voltage must be driven negative with respect to ground over a portion of the cycle. Hence the screen draws *no* current over a portion of the modulating cycle, and over the major portion of the cycle when the screen does draw current, it presents approximately a square-law impedance.

Circuits for Screen-Grid Modulation Laboratory analysis of a large number of circuits for accomplishing screen modulation has led to the conclusion that the audio modulating voltage *must* be obtained from a low-impedance source if low-distortion modulation is to be obtained. Figure 4 shows a group of sketches of the modulation envelope obtained with various types of modulators and also with insufficient antenna coupling. The result of this laboratory work led to the conclusion that the cathode-follower modulator of the basic circuit shown in figure 5 *is* capable of giving good-quality screen-grid modulation, and in addition the circuit provides convenient adjustments for the carrier level and the output level on *negative* modulation peaks. This latter control (P_2) in figure 5, allows the amplifier to be adjusted in such a manner that negative-peak clipping cannot take place, yet the negative modulation peaks may be adjusted to a level just above that at which sideband splatter will occur.

The Cathode-Follower Modulator The cathode follower is ideally suited for use as the modulator for a screen-grid stage since it acts as a relatively low-impedance source of modulating voltage for the screen-grid circuit. In addition the cathode-follower modulator allows the supply voltage both for the modulator and for the screen grid of the modulated tube to be obtained from the high-voltage supply for the plate of the screen-grid tube or beam tetrode. In the usual case the plate supply for the cathode follower, and hence for the screen grid of the modulated tube, may be taken from the bleeder on the high-voltage power supply. A tap on the bleeder may be used, or two resistors may be connected in series to make up the bleeder, with appropriate values such that the voltage applied to the plate of the cathode follower is appropriate for the tube to be modulated. It is important that a bypass capacitor be used from the plate of the cathode-follower modulator to ground.

The voltage applied to the plate of the cathode follower should be about 100 volts

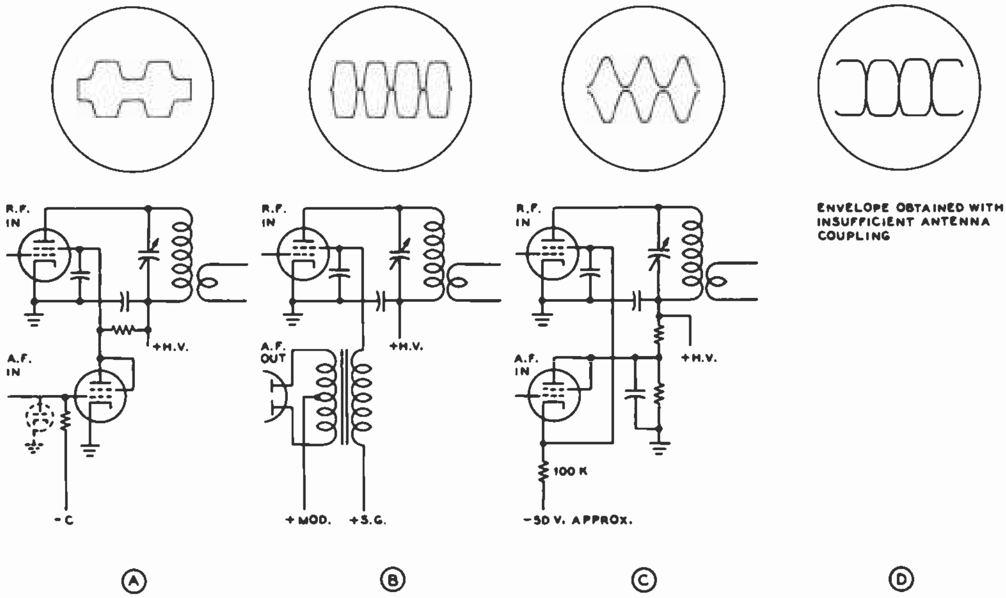


Figure 4

SCREEN-MODULATION CIRCUITS

Three common screen-modulation circuits are illustrated above. All three circuits are capable of giving intelligible voice modulation although the waveform distortion in the circuits of A and B is likely to be rather severe. The arrangement at A is often called "clamp-tube" screen modulation; by returning the grid resistor on the clamp tube to ground the circuit will give controlled-carrier screen modulation. This circuit has the advantage that it is simple and is well suited to use in mobile transmitters. B is an arrangement using a transformer-coupled modulator, and offers no particular advantages. The arrangement at C is capable of giving good modulation linearity due to the low impedance of the cathode-follower modulator. However, due to the relatively low heater-cathode ratings on tubes suited for use as the modulator, a separate heater supply for the modulator tube normally is required. This limitation makes application of the circuit to the mobile transmitter a special problem, since an isolated heater supply normally is not available. Shown at D as an assistance in the tuning of a screen-modulated transmitter (or any efficiency-modulated transmitter for that matter) is the type of modulation envelope which results when loading to the modulated stage is insufficient.

greater than the rated screen voltage for the tetrode tube as a c-w class-C amplifier. Hence the cathode-follower plate voltage should be about 350 volts for an 815, 2E26, or 829B, about 400 volts for an 807 or 4-125A, about 500 volts for an 813, and about 600 volts for a 4-250A or a 4E27. Then potentiometer (P_1) in figure 5 should be adjusted until the carrier-level screen voltage on the modulated stage is about one-half the rated screen voltage specified for the tube as a class-C c-w amplifier. The current taken by the screen of the modulated tube under carrier conditions will be about one-fourth the normal screen current for c-w operation.

The only current taken by the cathode follower itself will be that which will flow through the 100,000-ohm resistor between the cathode of the 6L6 modulator and the negative supply. The current taken from the bleeder on the high-voltage supply will be the carrier-level screen current of the tube being modulated (which current passes of course through the cathode follower) plus that current which will pass through the 100,000-ohm resistor.

The loading of the modulated stage should be adjusted until the input to the tube is about 50 percent greater than the rated plate dissipation of the tube or tubes in the stage. If the carrier-level screen voltage value

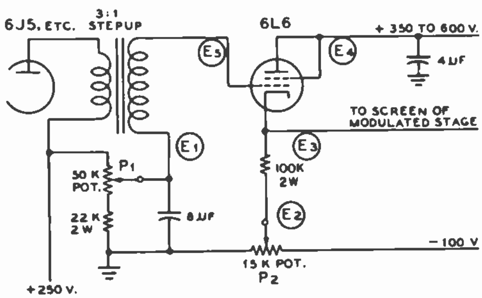


Figure 5

CATHODE-FOLLOWER SCREEN-MODULATION CIRCUIT

A detailed discussion of this circuit, which also is represented in figure 4C, is given in the accompanying text.

is correct for linear modulation of the stage, the loading will have to be somewhat *greater* than that amount of loading which gives maximum output from the stage. The stage may then be modulated by applying an audio signal to the grid of the cathode-follower modulator, while observing the modulated envelope on an oscilloscope.

If good output is being obtained, and the modulation envelope appears as shown in figure 4C, all is well, except that P_2 in figure 5 should be adjusted until negative modulation peaks, even with excessive modulating signal, do not cause carrier cutoff with its attendant sideband splatter. If the envelope appears as at figure 4D, antenna coupling should be increased while the carrier level is backed down by potentiometer P_1 in figure 5 until a set of adjustments is obtained which will give a satisfactory modulation envelope as shown in figure 4C.

Changing Bands After a satisfactory set of adjustments has been obtained, it is *not* difficult to readjust the amplifier for operation on different bands. Potentiometers P_1 (carrier level), and P_2 (negative-peak level) may be left fixed after a satisfactory adjustment, with the aid of the scope, has once been found. Then when changing bands it is only necessary to adjust excitation until the correct value of grid current is obtained, and then to adjust antenna coupling until correct plate current is obtained. Note that the correct plate current for an efficiency-modulated amplifier is only slightly less than the out-of-resonance plate current of the stage. Hence carrier-level screen voltage must be low so that the out-of-resonance plate current will not be too high, and relatively heavy antenna coupling must be used so that the operating plate current will be near the out-of-resonance value, and so that the operating input will be slightly greater than 1.5 times the rated plate dissipation of the tube or tubes in the stage. Since the carrier efficiency of the stage will be only 35 to 40 percent, the tubes will be operating with plate dissipation of approximately the rated value without modulation.

Speech Clipping in the Modulated Stage The maximum r-f output of an efficiency-modulated stage is limited by the maximum permissible plate-voltage swing on positive modulation peaks. In the modulation circuit of figure 5 the *minimum* output is limited by the minimum voltage which the screen will reach on a negative modulation peak, as set by potentiometer P_2. Hence the screen-grid-modulated stage, when using the modulator of figure 5, acts effectively as a speech clipper, provided the modulating signal amplitude is not too much more than that value which will accomplish full modulation. With correct adjustments of the operating conditions of the stage it can be made to clip positive and negative modulation peaks symmetrically. However, the inherent peak-clipping ability of the stage should *not* be relied upon as a means of obtaining a large amount of speech compression, since excessive audio distortion and excessive screen current on the modulated stage will result.

Characteristics of a Typical Screen-Modulated Stage An important characteristic of the screen-modulated stage, when using the cathode-follower modulator, is that excessive plate voltage on the modulated stage is not required. In fact, full output usually may be obtained with the larger tubes at an operating plate voltage from one-half to two-thirds the maximum rated plate voltage for c-w operation. This desirable condition is the natural result of using a low-impedance source of modulating signal for the stage.

As an example of a typical screen-modulated stage, full output of 75 watts of carrier may be obtained from an 813 tube operating with a plate potential of only 1250 volts. No increase in output from the 813 may be obtained by increasing the plate voltage, since the tube may be operated with full rated plate dissipation of 125 watts, with normal plate efficiency for a screen-modulated stage—37.5 percent, at the 1250-volt potential.

The operating conditions of a screen-modulated 813 stage are as follows:

Plate voltage—1250 volts
Plate current—160 ma
Plate input—200 watts
Grid current—11 ma
Grid bias— − 110 volts
Carrier screen voltage—190 volts
Carrier screen current—6 ma
Power output—approx. 75 watts

With full 100 percent modulation the plate current decreases about 2 ma and the screen current increases about 1 ma; hence plate, screen, and grid current remain essentially constant with modulation. Referring to figure 5, which was the circuit used as modulator for the 813, E_1 measured + 155 volts, E_2 measured − 50 volts, E_3 measured + 190 volts, E_4 measured + 500 volts, and the rms swing at E_5 for full modulation measured 210 volts, which represents a peak swing of about 296 volts. Due to the high positive voltage, and the large audio swing, on the cathode of the 6L6 (triode connected) modulator tube, it is important that the heater of this tube be fed from a separate filament transformer or filament winding. Note also that the operating plate-to-cathode voltage on the 6L6 modulator tube does not exceed the 360-volt rating of the tube, since the operating potential of the cathode is considerably above ground potential.

Suppressor-Grid Modulation Still another form of efficiency modulation may be obtained by applying the audio modulating signal to the suppressor grid of a pentode class-C r-f amplifier. Basically, *suppressor-grid modulation* operates in the same general manner as other forms of efficiency modulation; carrier plate-circuit efficiency is about 35 percent, and antenna coupling must be rather tight. However, suppressor-grid modulation has one sizeable disadvantage, in addition to the fact that pentode tubes are not nearly so widely used as beam tetrodes which of course do not have the suppressor element. This disadvantage is that the screen-grid current to a suppressor-grid modulated amplifier is rather high. The high screen current is a natural consequence of the rather high negative bias on the suppressor grid, which reduces the plate-voltage swing and plate current with a resulting increase in the screen current.

In tuning a suppressor-grid modulated amplifier, the grid bias, grid current, screen voltage, and plate voltage are about the same as for class-C c-w operation of the stage. But the suppressor grid is biased negatively to a value which reduces the plate-circuit efficiency to about one-half the maximum obtainable from the particular amplifier, with antenna coupling adjusted until the plate input is about 1.5 times the rated plate dissipation of the stage. It is important that the input to the screen grid be measured to make sure that the rated screen dissipation of the tube is not being exceeded.

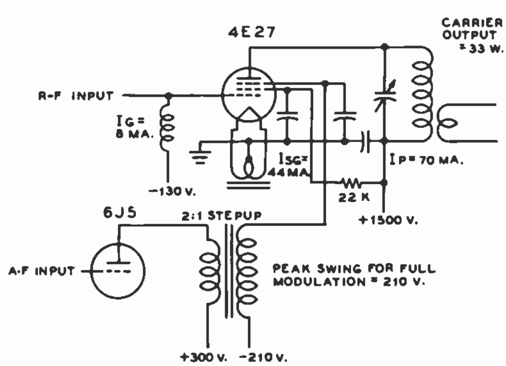


Figure 6

AMPLIFIER WITH SUPPRESSOR-GRID MODULATION

Recommended operating conditions for linear suppressor-grid modulation of a 4E27/5-125B stage are given on the drawing.

Then the audio signal is applied to the suppressor grid. In the normal application the audio voltage swing on the suppressor will be somewhat greater than the negative bias on the element. Hence suppressor-grid current will flow on modulation peaks, so that the source of audio signal voltage must have good regulation. Tubes suitable for suppressor-grid modulation are: the 4E27A/5-125B and 803. A typical suppressor-grid modulated amplifier is illustrated in figure 6.

13-4 Input Modulation Systems

Constant-efficiency variable-input modulation systems operate by virtue of the addition of external power to the modulated stage to effect the modulation. There are two general classifications that come under this heading; those systems in which the additional power is supplied as audio-frequency energy from a modulator (usually called *plate-modulation systems*) and those systems in which the additional power to effect modulation is supplied as direct current from the plate supply.

Under the former classification comes *Heising* modulation (probably the oldest type of modulation to be applied to a continuous carrier), class-B plate modulation, and series modulation. These types of plate modulation are by far the easiest to get into operation, and they give a very good ratio of power input to the modulated stage to power output; 65 to 80 percent efficiency is the general rule. It is for these two important reasons that these modulation systems, particularly class-B plate modulation, are at present the most popular for a-m communications work.

Modulation systems coming under the second classification are of comparatively recent development but have been widely applied to broadcast work. There are quite a few systems in this class. Two of the more widely used are the *Doherty* linear amplifier, and the *Terman-Woodyard* high-efficiency grid-modulated amplifier. Both systems operate by virtue of a carrier amplifier and a peak amplifier connected together by electrical quarter-wave lines. They will be described later in this section.

Plate Modulation Plate modulation is the application of the audio power to the *plate circuit* of an r-f amplifier. The r-f amplifier must be operated class C for this type of modulation in order to obtain a radio-frequency output which changes in exact accord with the variation in plate voltage. *The r-f amplifier is 100 percent modulated when the peak a-c voltage from the modulator is equal to the d-c voltage applied to the r-f tube.* The positive peaks of audio voltage increase the instantaneous plate voltage on the r-f tube to *twice* the d-c value, and the negative peaks reduce the voltage to zero.

The instantaneous plate *current* to the r-f stage also varies in accord with the modulating voltage. The peak alternating current in the output of a modulator must be equal to the d-c plate current of the class-C r-f stage at the point of 100 percent modulation. This combination of change in audio voltage and current can be most easily referred to in terms of *audio power in watts.*

In a sinusoidally modulated wave, the antenna current increases approximately 22 percent for 100 percent modulation with a pure tone input; an r-f meter in the antenna circuit indicates this increase in antenna current. The *average power* of the r-f wave increases 50 percent for 100 percent modulation, the efficiency remaining constant.

This indicates that in a plate-modulated radiotelephone transmitter, the audio-frequency channel must supply this additional 50 percent increase in average power for sine-wave modulation. If the power input to the modulated stage is 100 watts, for example, the *average power* will increase to 150 watts at 100 percent modulation, and this additional 50 watts of power must be supplied by the *modulator* when plate modulation is used. The actual antenna power is a constant percentage of the total value of input power.

One of the advantages of plate (or power) modulation is the ease with which proper adjustments can be made in the transmitter. Also, there is less plate loss in the r-f amplifier for a given value of carrier power than

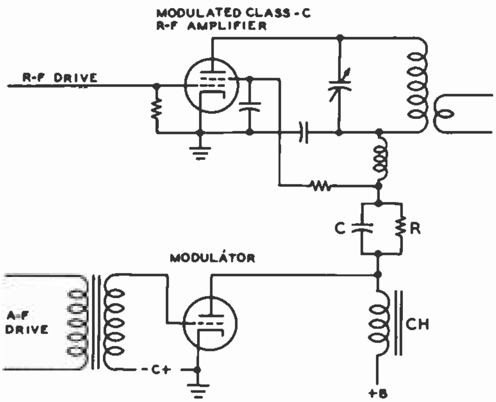


Figure 7

HEISING PLATE MODULATION

This type of modulation was the first form of plate modulation. It is sometimes known as "constant-current" modulation. Because of the effective 1:1 ratio of the coupling choke, it is impossible to obtain 100 percent modulation unless the plate voltage to the modulated stage is dropped slightly by resistor R. The capacitor (C) merely bypasses the audio around R, so that the full a-f output voltage of the modulator is impressed on the class-C stage.

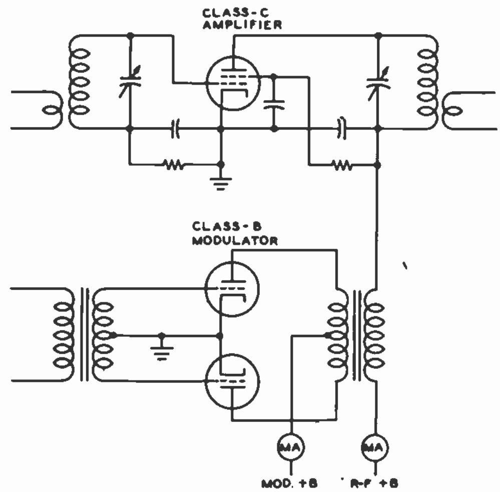


Figure 8

CLASS-B PLATE MODULATION

This type of modulation is the most flexible in that the loading adjustment can be made in a short period of time and without elaborate test equipment after a change in operating frequency of the class-C amplifier has been made.

with other forms of modulation because the plate efficiency is higher.

By properly matching the plate impedance of the r-f tube to the output of the modulator, the ratio of voltage and current swing to d-c voltage and current is automatically obtained. The modulator should have a peak voltage output equal to the average d-c plate voltage on the modulated stage. The modulator should also have a *peak* power output equal to the d-c plate input power to the modulated stage.

The *average* power output of the modulator will depend on the type of waveform. If the amplifier is being Heising modulated by a class-A stage, the modulator must have an average power output capability of one-half the input to the class-C stage. If the modulator is a class-B audio amplifier, the average power required of it may vary from one-quarter to more than one-half the class-C input depending on the waveform. However, the *peak* power output of any modulator must be equal to the class-C input to be modulated.

Heising Modulation Heising modulation is the oldest system of plate modulation, and usually consists of a class-A audio amplifier coupled to the r-f amplifier by means of a modulation choke coil, as shown in figure 7.

The d-c plate voltage and plate current of the r-f amplifier must be adjusted to a value which will cause the plate impedance to match the output of the modulator, since the modulation choke gives a 1-to-1 coupling ratio. A series resistor, bypassed for audio frequencies by means of a capacitor, must be connected in series with the plate of the r-f amplifier to obtain modulation up to 100 percent. The peak output voltage of a class-A amplifier does not reach a value equal to the d-c voltage applied to the amplifier and, consequently, the d-c plate voltage impressed across the r-f tube must be reduced to a value equal to the maximum available a-c peak voltage if 100% modulation is to be obtained.

A higher degree of distortion can be tolerated in low-power emergency phone transmitters which use a pentode modulator tube, and the series resistor and bypass capacitor are usually omitted in such transmitters.

Class-B Plate Modulation High-level class-B plate modulation is the least expensive method of plate modulation. Figure 8 shows a conventional class-B plate-modulated class-C amplifier.

The statement that the modulator output power must be one-half the class-C input for 100 percent modulation is correct only if the waveform of the modulating power is a *sine wave*. Where the modulator waveform is unclipped speech waveforms, the average modulator power for 100 percent modulation is considerably less than one-half the class-C input.

Power Relations in Speech Waveforms It has been determined experimentally that the ratio of peak-to-average power in a speech waveform is approximately 4 to 1 as contrasted to a ratio of 2 to 1 in a sine wave. This is due to the high harmonic content of such a waveform, and to the fact that this high harmonic content manifests itself by making the wave unsymmetrical and causing sharp peaks or "fingers" of high energy content to appear. Thus for unclipped speech, the *average* modulator plate current, plate dissipation, and power output are approximately one-half the sine wave values for a given *peak* output power.

Both peak power and average power are necessarily associated with waveform. *Peak* power is just what the name implies; the power at the peak of a wave. Peak power, although of the utmost importance in modulation, is of no great significance in a-c power work, except insofar as the *average* power may be determined from the peak value of a known waveform.

There is no time element implied in the definition of peak power; peak power may be instantaneous—and for this reason average power, which is definitely associated with time, is the important factor in plate dissipation. It is possible that the peak power of a given waveform be several times the average value; for a sine wave, the peak power is twice the average value and for unclipped speech the peak power is approximately four times the *average* value. For 100 percent modulation, the *peak* (instantaneous) audio power must equal the class-C input, although the average power for this value of peak varies widely depending on the modulation waveform, being greater than 50 percent for speech that has been clipped and filtered, 50 percent for a sine wave, and about 25 percent for typical unclipped speech tones.

Modulation Transformer Calculations The modulation transformer is a device for matching the load impedance of the class-C amplifier to the recommended load impedance of the class-B modulator tubes. Modulation transformers intended for communications work are usually designed to carry the class-C plate current through their secondary windings, as shown in figure 8. The manufacturer's ratings should be consulted to ensure that the d-c plate current passed through the secondary winding does not exceed the maximum rating.

A detailed discussion of the method of making modulation transformer calculations has been given in Chapter Six. However, to emphasize the method of making the calculation, an additional example will be given.

Suppose we take the case of a class-C amplifier operating at a plate voltage of 2000 volts with 225 ma of plate current. This amplifier would present a load resistance of 2000 divided by 0.225 ampere or 8888 ohms. The plate power input would be 2000 times 0.225 or 450 watts. By reference to Chapter Six we see that a pair of 811 tubes operating at 1500 plate volts will deliver 225 watts of audio output. The plate-to-plate load resistance for these tubes under the specified operating conditions is 18,000 ohms. Hence our problem is to match the class-C amplifier load resistance of 8888 ohms to the 18,000-ohm load resistance required by the modulator tubes.

A 200- to 300-watt modulation transformer will be required for the job. If the taps on the transformer are given in terms of impedances it will only be necessary to connect the secondary for 8888 ohms (or a value approximately equal to this such as 9000 ohms) and the primary for 18,000 ohms. If it is necessary to determine the proper turns ratio required of the transformer it can be determined in the following manner. The square root of the impedance ratio is equal to the turns ratio, hence:

$$\sqrt{\frac{8888}{18000}} = \sqrt{0.494} = 0.703$$

The transformer must have a turns ratio of approximately 1-to-0.7 step down, total primary to total secondary. The greater number of turns always goes with the higher impedance, and vice versa.

Plate-and-Screen Modulation When *only* the plate of a screen-grid tube is modulated, it is difficult to obtain high-percentage linear modulation under ordinary conditions. The plate current of such a stage is not linear with plate voltage. However, if the screen is modulated simultaneously with the plate, the instantaneous screen voltage drops in proportion to the drop in the plate voltage, and linear modulation can then be obtained. Four satisfactory circuits for accomplishing combined plate and screen modulation are shown in figure 9.

The screen r-f bypass capacitor (C_2) should not have a greater value than 0.005 μfd, preferably not larger than 0.001 μfd. It should be large enough to bypass effectively all r-f voltage without short-circuiting high-frequency audio voltages. The plate bypass capacitor can be of any value from 0.002 μfd to 0.005 μfd. The screen-dropping resistor (R_1) should reduce the applied high voltage to the value specified for operating the particular tube in the circuit. Capacitor C_1 is seldom required yet some tubes may require this capacitor in order to keep C_2 from attenuating the high frequencies. Different values between .0002 and .002 μfd. should be tried for best results.

Figure 9C shows another method which uses a third winding on the modulation transformer, through which the screen grid is connected to a low-voltage power supply. The ratio of turns between the two output windings depends on the type of screen-grid tube which is being modulated. Normally it will be such that the screen voltage is being modulated 60 percent when the plate voltage is receiving 100 percent modulation.

If the screen voltage is derived from a dropping resistor (*not* a divider) that is bypassed for r.f. but not a.f., it is possible to secure quite good modulation by applying modulation only to the plate. Under these conditions, the screen tends to modulate itself, the screen voltage varying over the audio cycle as a result of the screen impedance increasing with plate voltage, and decreasing with a decrease in plate voltage. This circuit arrangement is illustrated in figure 9B.

A similar application of this principle is shown in figure 9D. In this case the screen voltage is fed directly from a low-voltage supply of the proper potential through choke L. A conventional filter choke having an inductance from 10 to 20 henrys will be satisfactory for L.

To afford protection of the tube when plate voltage is not applied but screen voltage is supplied from the exciter power supply, when using the arangement of figure 9D, a resistor of 3000 to 10,000 ohms can be connected in series with choke L. In this case the screen supply voltage should be at least 1.5 times as much as is required for actual screen voltage, and the value of resistor is chosen such that with normal screen current the drop through the resistor and choke will be such that normal screen voltage will be applied to the tube. When the plate voltage is removed the screen current will increase greatly and the drop through resistor R will increase to such a value that the screen voltage will be lowered to the point where the screen dissipation on the tube will not be exceeded. However, the supply voltage and value of resistor R must be chosen carefully so that the maximum rated screen dissipation cannot be exceeded. The maximum possible screen dissipation using this arrangement is equal to: $W = E^2/4R$ where E is the screen supply voltage and R is the combined resistance of the resistor in figure 9D and the d-c resistance of the choke (L). It is wise, when using this arrangement to check, using the above formula, to see that the value of W obtained is less than the maximum rated screen dissipation of the tube or tubes used in the modulated stage. This same system can of course also be used in figuring the screen supply circuit of a pentode or tetrode amplifier stage where modulation is not to be applied.

The modulation transformer for plate-and-screen modulation, when utilizing a dropping resistor as shown in figure 9A, is similar to the type of transformer used for

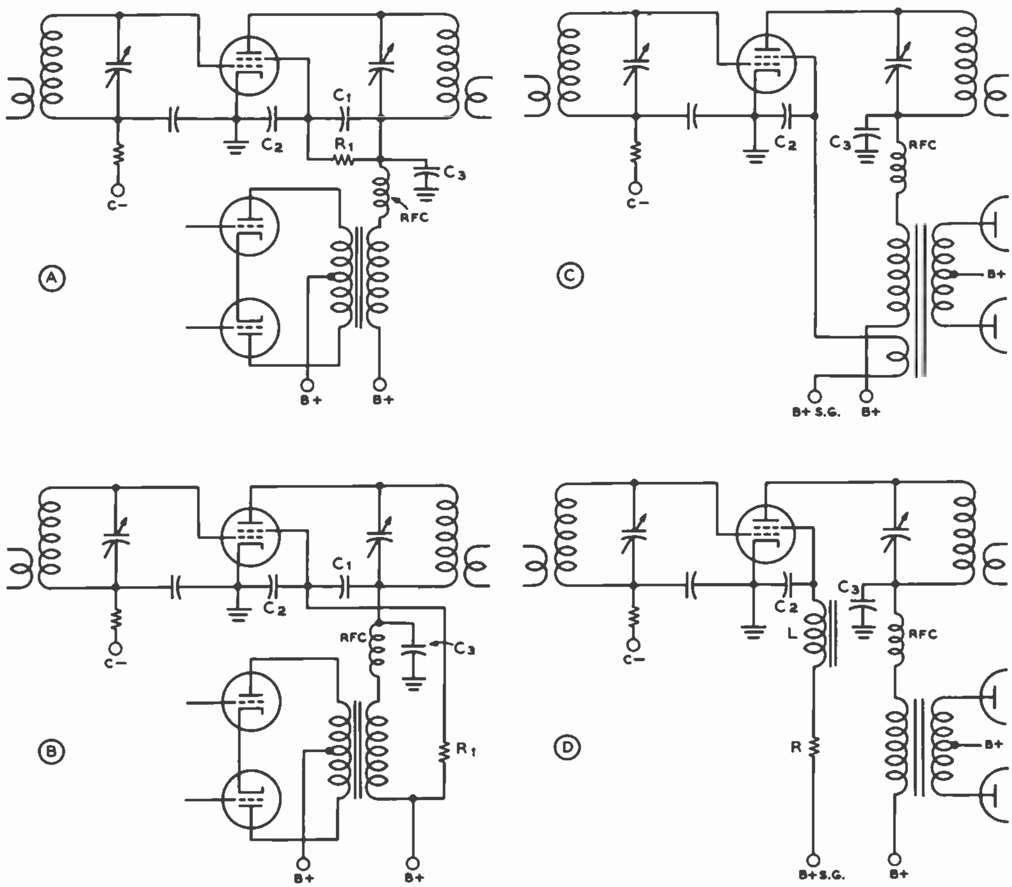


Figure 9

PLATE MODULATION OF A BEAM-TETRODE OR SCREEN-GRID TUBE

These alternative arrangements for plate modulation of tetrodes or pentodes are discussed in detail in the text. The arrangements shown at B or D are recommended for most applications.

any plate-modulated transmitter. The combined screen and plate current is divided into the plate voltage in order to obtain the class-C amplifier load impedance. The peak audio power required to obtain 100 percent modulation is equal to the d-c power input to the screen, screen resistor, and plate of the modulated r-f stage.

13-5 Cathode Modulation

Cathode modulation offers a workable compromise between the good plate efficiency but expensive modulator of high-level plate modulation, and the poor plate-efficiency but inexpensive modulator of grid modulation. Cathode modulation consists essentially of a mixture of the two.

The efficiency of the average well-designed plate-modulated transmitter is in the vicinity of 75 to 80 percent, with a compromise at perhaps 77.5 percent. On the other hand, the efficiency of a good grid-modulated transmitter may run from 28 to perhaps 40 percent with the average falling at about 34 percent. Now since cathode modulation consists of simultaneous grid and plate modulation, in phase with each other, we can theoretically obtain any efficiency from about 34 to 77.5 percent from our cathode-modulated stage, depending on the relative percentages of grid and plate modulation.

Since the system is a compromise between the two fundamental modulation arrangements, a value of efficiency approximately half way between the two would seem to be the best compromise. Experience has proved this to be the case. A compromise efficiency of about 56.5 percent, roughly half way between the two limits, has proved to be optimum. Calculation has shown that this value of efficiency can be obtained from a cathode-modulated amplifier when the audio-frequency modulating power is approximately 20 percent of the d-c input to the cathode-modulated stage.

An Economical Series Cathode Modulator Series cathode modulation is ideally suited as an economical modulating arrangement for a high-power triode c-w transmitter. The modulator can be constructed quite compactly and for a minimum component cost since no power supply is required for it. When it is desired to change over from c-w to 'phone, it is only necessary to cut the series modulator into the cathode-return circuit of the c-w amplifier stage. The plate voltage for the modulator tubes and for the speech amplifier is taken from the cathode voltage drop of the modulated stage across the modulator unit.

Figure 10 shows the circuit of such a modulator, designed to cathode-modulate a class-C amplifier using push-pull 810 tubes, running at a supply voltage of 2500, and with a plate input of 660 watts. The modulated stage runs at about 50 percent efficiency, giving a power output of nearly 350 watts, fully modulated. The voltage drop across the cathode modulator is 400 volts, allowing a net plate to cathode voltage of 2100 volts on the final amplifier. The plate current of the 810's should be about 330 ma, and the grid current should be approximately 40 ma, making the total cathode current of the modulated stage 370 ma. Four parallel 6L6 modulator tubes can pass this amount of plate current without difficulty. It must be remembered that the voltage drop across the cathode modulator is also the cathode bias of the modulated stage. In most cases, no extra grid bias is necessary. If a bias supply is used for c-w operation, it may be removed for cathode modulation, as shown in figure 11. With low-μ triodes, some extra grid bias (over and above that amount supplied by the cathode modulator) may be needed to achieve proper linearity of the modulated stage. In any case, proper operation of a cathode-modulated stage should be determined by examining the modulated output waveform of the stage on an oscilloscope.

Excitation The r-f driver for a cathode-modulated stage should have about the same power output capabilities as would be required to drive a c-w amplifier to the same input as it is desired to drive the cathode-modulated stage. However, some form of excitation control should be available since the amount of excitation power has a direct bearing on the linearity of a cathode-modulated amplifier stage. If link coupling is used between the driver and the modulated stage, variation in the amount of link coupling will afford ample excitation variation. If much less than 40 percent plate modulation is employed, the stage begins to resemble a grid-bias modulated stage, and the necessity for good r-f regulation will apply.

Cathode Modulation of Tetrodes Cathode modulation has not proved too satisfactory for use with beam tetrode tubes. This is a result of the small excitation and grid-swing requirements for such tubes, plus the fact that some means for holding the screen voltage at the potential of the cathode as far as audio is concerned is usually necessary. Because of these factors, cathode modulation is not recommended for use with tetrode r-f amplifiers.

13-6 The Doherty and the Terman-Woodyard Modulated Amplifiers

These two amplifiers will be described together since they operate on very similar principles. Figure 12 shows a greatly simplified schematic diagram of the operation of both types. Both systems operate by virtue of a *carrier tube*, (V_1 in both figures 12 and 13) which supplies the unmodulated carrier,

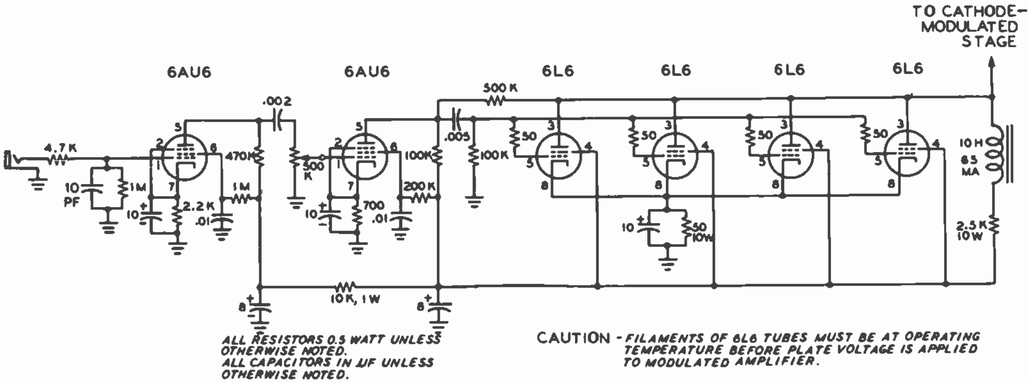


Figure 10

SERIES CATHODE MODULATOR FOR A HIGH-POWER TRIODE R-F AMPLIFIER

and whose output is reduced to supply negative peaks, and a *peak tube*, (V_2) whose function is to supply approximately half the positive peak of the modulation cycle and whose additional function is to lower the load impedance on the carrier tube so that it will be able to supply the other half of the positive peak of the modulation cycle.

The peak tube is able to increase the output of the carrier tube by virtue of an impedance-inverting line between the plate circuits of the two tubes. This line is designed to have a characteristic impedance of one-half the value of load into which the carrier tube operates under the carrier conditions. Then a load of one-half the characteristic impedance of the quarter-wave line is coupled into the output. By experience with quarter-wave lines in antenna-matching circuits we know that such a line will vary the impedance at one end of the line in such a manner that the geometric mean between the two terminal impedances will be equal to the characteristic impedance of the line. Thus, if we have a value of load of *one-half* the characteristic impedance of the line at one end, the other end of the line will present a value of *twice* the characteristic impedance of the lines to carrier tube V_1.

This is the situation that exists under the carrier conditions when the peak tube merely floats across the load end of the line and contributes no power. Then as a positive peak of modulation comes along, the peak tube starts to contribute power to the load until at the peak of the modulation cycle it is contributing enough power so that the impedance at the load end of the line is equal to R, instead of the $R/2$ that is presented under the carrier conditions. This is true because at a positive modulation peak (since it is delivering full power) the peak tube subtracts a negative resistance of $R/2$ from the load end of the line.

Now, since under the peak condition of modulation the load end of the line is termi-

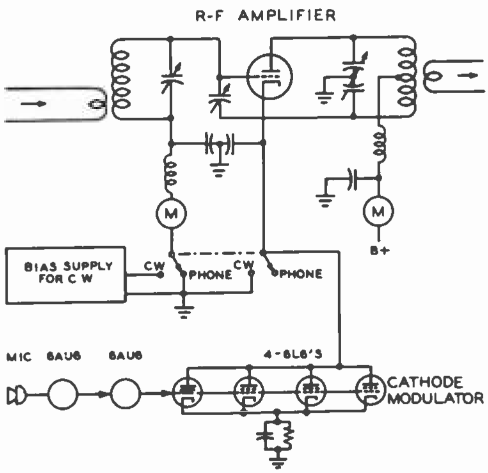


Figure 11

CATHODE-MODULATOR INSTALLATION SHOWING PHONE-CW TRANSFER SWITCH

nated in R ohms instead of $R/2$, the impedance at the *carrier-tube* will be *reduced* from $2R$ ohms to R ohms. This again is due to the impedance-inverting action of the line. Since the load resistance on the carrier tube has been reduced to half the carrier value, its output at the peak of the modulation cycle will be doubled. Thus we have the necessary condition for a 100 percent modulation peak; the amplifier will deliver four times as much power as it does under the carrier conditions.

On negative modulation peaks the peak tube does not contribute; the output of the carrier tube is reduced until, on a 100 percent negative peak, its output is zero.

The Electrical Quarter-Wave Line While an electrical quarter-wave line (consisting of a pi network with the inductance and capacitance units having a reactance equal to the characteristic impedance of the line) does have the desired impedance-inverting effect, it also has the undesirable effect of introducing a 90° phase shift across such a line. If the shunt elements are capacitances, the phase shift across the line lags by 90°; if they are inductances, the phase shift leads by 90°. Since there is an undesirable phase shift of 90° between the plate circuits of the carrier and peak tubes, an equal and opposite phase shift must be introduced in the exciting voltage of the grid circuits of the two tubes so that the resultant output in the plate circuit will be in phase. This additional phase shift has been indicated in figure 12 and a method of obtaining it has been shown in figure 13.

Comparison Between Doherty and Terman-Woodyard Amplifiers The difference between the Doherty linear amplifier and the Terman-Woodyard grid-modulated amplifier is the same as the difference between any linear and grid-modulated stages. Modulated r.f. is applied to the grid circuit of the Doherty linear amplifier with the carrier tube biased to cutoff and the peak tube biased to the point where it draws substantially zero plate current at the carrier condition.

In the Terman-Woodyard grid-modulated amplifier the carrier tube runs class-C with comparatively high bias and high plate effi-

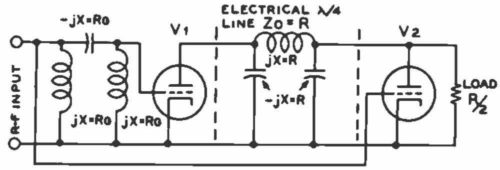


Figure 12

DIAGRAMMATIC REPRESENTATION OF THE DOHERTY LINEAR

ciency, while the peak tube again is biased so that it draws almost no plate current. Unmodulated r.f. is applied to the grid circuits of the two tubes and the modulating voltage is inserted in series with the fixed bias voltages. From one-half to two-thirds as much *audio* voltage is required at the grid of the peak tube as is required at the grid of the carrier tube.

Operating Efficiencies The resting carrier efficiency of the grid-modulated amplifier may run as high as is obtainable in any class-C stage—80 percent or better. The resting carrier efficiency of the linear will be about as good as is obtainable in any class-B amplifier—60 to 70 percent. The over-all efficiency of the bias-modulated amplifier at 100 percent modulation will run about 75 percent; of the linear—about 60 percent.

In figure 13 the plate tank circuits are detuned enough to give an effect equivalent to the shunt elements of the quarter-wave "line" of figure 12. At resonance, coils L_1 and L_2 in the grid circuits of the two tubes have each an inductive reactance equal to the capacitive reactance of capacitor C_1. Thus we have the effect of a pi network consisting of shunt inductances and series capacitance. In the plate circuit we want a phase shift of the same magnitude but in the opposite direction; so our series element is inductance L_3 whose reactance is equal to the characteristic impedance desired of the network. Then the plate tank capacitors of the two tubes (C_2 and C_3) are increased an amount past resonance, so that they have a capacitive reactance equal to the inductive reactance of the coil L_3. It is quite important that there be no coupling between the inductors.

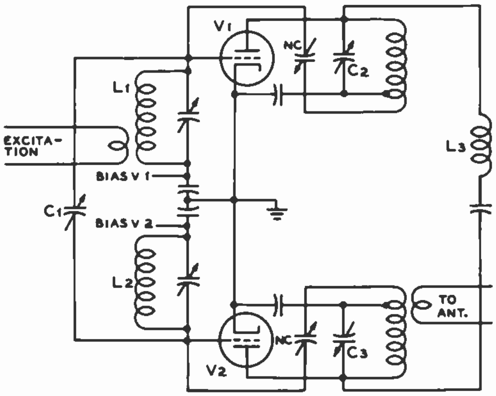


Figure 13

SIMPLIFIED SCHEMATIC OF A "HIGH-EFFICIENCY" AMPLIFIER

The basic system, comprising a "carrier" tube and a "peak" tube interconnected by lumped-constant quarter-wave lines, is the same for either grid-bias modulation or for use as a linear amplifier of a modulated wave.

Although both these types of amplifiers are highly efficient and require no high-level audio equipment, they are difficult to adjust —particularly so on the higher frequencies —and it would be an extremely difficult problem to design a multiband transmitter employing the circuit. However, the grid-bias modulation system has advantages for the high-power transmitter which will be operated on a single frequency band.

Other High-Efficiency Modulation Systems Many other high-efficiency modulation systems have been described since about 1936. The majority of these, however, have received little application either by commercial interests or by amateurs. In most cases the circuits are difficult to adjust, or they have other undesirable features which make their use impracticable alongside the more conventional modulation systems. Nearly all these circuits have been published in the *I.E.E.E. Proceedings* and the interested reader can refer to them in back copies of that journal.

13-7 Speech Clipping

Speech waveforms are characterized by frequently recurring high-intensity peaks of very short duration. These peaks will cause overmodulation if the *average* level of modulation on loud syllables exceeds approximately 30 percent. Careful checking into the nature of speech sounds has revealed that these high-intensity peaks are due primarily to the vowel sounds. Further research has revealed that the vowel sounds add little to intelligibility, the major contribution to intelligibility coming from the consonant sounds such as *v*, *b*, *k*, *s*, *t*, and *l*. Measurements have shown that the power contained in these consonant sounds may be down 30 db or more from the energy in the vowel sounds in the same speech passage. Obviously, then, if we can increase the relative energy content of the consonant sounds with respect to the vowel sounds it will be possible to understand a signal modulated with such a waveform in the presence of a much higher level of background noise and interference. Experiment has shown that it is possible to accomplish this desirable result simply by cutting off or *clipping* the high-intensity peaks and thus building up in a relative manner the effective level of the weaker sounds.

Such clipping theoretically can be accomplished simply by increasing the gain of the speech amplifier until the average level of modulation on loud syllables approaches 90 percent. This is equivalent to increasing the speech power of the consonant sounds by about 10 times or, conversely, we can say that 10 db of clipping has been applied to the voice wave. However, the clipping when accomplished in this manner *will produce higher order sidebands known as "splatter,"* and the transmitted signal would occupy a relatively tremendous spectrum width. So another method of accomplishing the desirable effects of clipping must be employed.

A considerable reduction in the amount of splatter caused by a moderate increase in the gain of the speech amplifier can be obtained by phasing the signal from the speech amplifier to the transmitter such that the high-intensity peaks occur on *upward* or positive modulation. Overloading on positive modulation peaks produces less splatter than the negative-peak clipping which occurs with overloading on the negative peaks of modulation. This aspect of the problem has been discussed in more detail in the section on

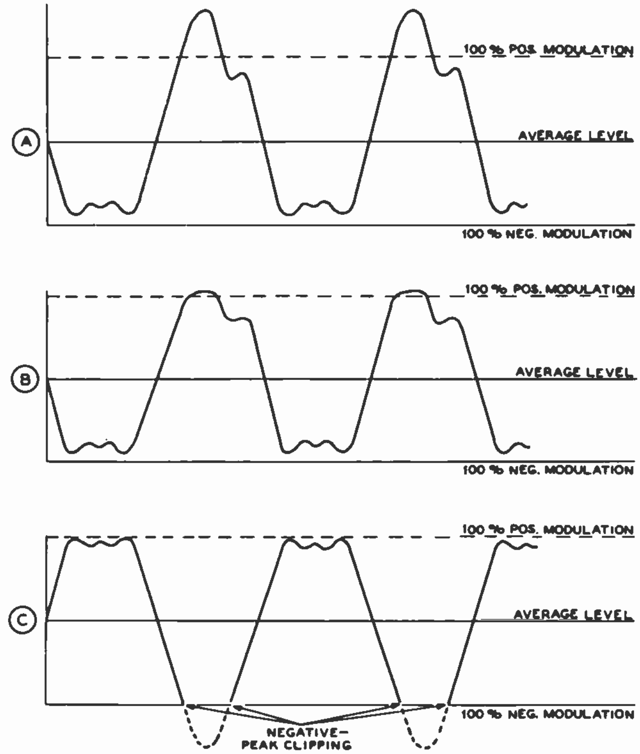


Figure 14

SPEECH-WAVEFORM AMPLITUDE MODULATION

Showing the effect of using the proper polarity of a speech wave for modulating a transmitter. A shows the effect of proper speech polarity on a transmitter having an upward modulation capability of greater than 100 percent. B shows the effect of using proper speech polarity on a transmitter having an upward modulation capability of only 100 percent. Both these conditions will give a clean signal without objectionable splatter. C shows the effect of the use of improper speech polarity. This condition will cause serious splatter due to negative-peak clipping in the modulated-amplifier stage.

Speech Waveform Dissymmetry earlier in this chapter. The effect of deriving proper speech polarity from the speech amplifier is shown in figure 14.

A much more desirable and effective method of obtaining speech clipping is actually to employ a clipper circuit in the earlier stages of the speech amplifier, and then to filter out the objectionable distortion components by means of a sharp low-pass filter having a cutoff frequency of approximately 3000 Hz. Tests on *clipper-filter* speech systems have shown that 6 db of clipping on voice is just noticeable, 12 db of clipping is quite acceptable, and values of clipping from 20 to 25 db are tolerable under such conditions that a high degree of clipping is necessary to get through heavy QRM or QRN. A signal with 12 db of clipping doesn't sound quite *natural* but it is not unpleasant to listen to and is much more readable than an unclipped signal in the presence of strong interference.

The use of a clipper-filter in the speech amplifier, to be completely effective, requires that phase shift between the clipper-filter stage and the final modulated amplifier be kept to a minimum. However, if there is phase shift after the clipper-filter the system does not completely break down. The presence of phase shift merely requires that the audio gain following the clipper-filter be reduced to the point where the *cant* applied to the clipped speech waves still cannot cause overmodulation. This effect is illustrated in figures 15 and 16.

The *cant* appearing on the tops of the square waves leaving the clipper-filter centers about the clipping level. Hence, as the frequency being passed through the system is lowered, the amount by which the peak of the *canted* wave exceeds the clipping level is increased.

Phase-Shift Correction In a normal transmitter having a moderate amount of phase shift the *cant* applied to the tops of the waves will cause overmodulation on frequencies below those for which the

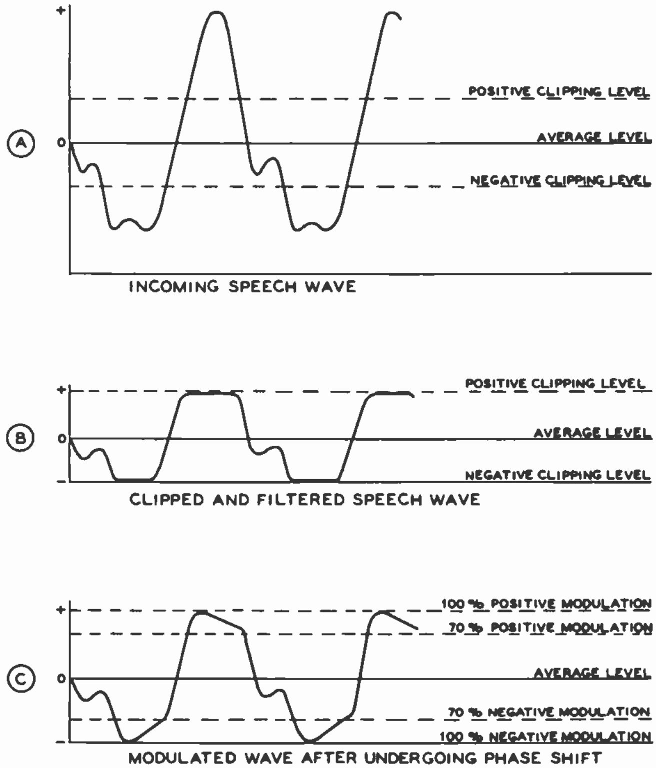


Figure 15

ACTION OF A CLIPPER-FILTER ON A SPEECH WAVE

Drawing A shows the incoming speech wave before it reaches the clipper stage. B shows the output of the clipper-filter, illustrating the manner in which the peaks are clipped and then the sharp edges of the clipped wave removed by the filter. C shows the effect of phase shift in the stages following the clipper-filter and the manner in which the transmitter may be adjusted for 100 percent modulation of the "canted" peaks of the wave, the sloping top of the wave reaching about 70 percent modulation.

gain following the clipper-filter has been adjusted unless remedial steps have been taken. The following steps are advised:

1. Introduce bass *suppression* into the speech amplifier *ahead* of the clipper-filter.
2. *Improve* the low-frequency response characteristic insofar as it is possible in the stages *following* the clipper-filter. Feeding the plate current to the final amplifier through a choke rather than through the secondary of the modulation transformer will help materially.

Even with the normal amount of improvement which can be attained through the steps mentioned above there will still be an amount of wave cant which must be compensated in some manner. This compensation can be done in either of two ways. The first and simpler way is as follows:

1. Adjust the speech gain *ahead* of the clipper-filter until with normal talking into the microphone the distortion being introduced by the clipper-filter circuit is quite apparent but not objectionable. This amount of distortion will be apparent to the normal listener when 10 to 15 db of clipping is taking place.
2. Tune a selective communications receiver about 15kHz to one side or the other of the frequency being transmitted. Use a short antenna or no antenna at all on the receiver so that the transmitter is not blocking the receiver.
3. Again, with normal talking into the microphone, adjust the gain *following* the clipper-filter to the point where the sideband splatter is being heard, and then slightly back-off the gain after the clipper-filter until the splatter disappears.

If the phase shift in the transmitter or modulator is not excessive the adjustment procedure given above will allow a clean

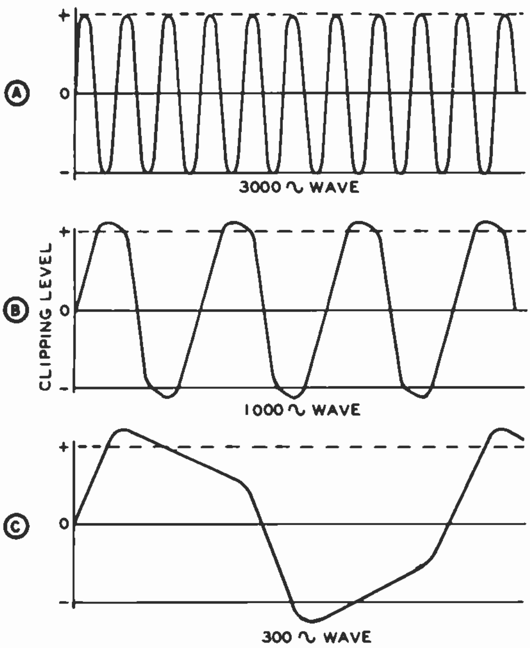


Figure 16

ILLUSTRATING THE EFFECT OF PHASE SHIFT AND FILTERED WAVES OF DIFFERENT FREQUENCY

Sketch A shows the effect of a clipper and a filter having a cutoff of about 3500 Hz on a wave of 3000 Hz. Note that no harmonics are present in the wave so that phase shift following the clipper-filter will have no significant effect on the shape of the wave. B and C show the effect of phase shift on waves well below the cutoff frequency of the filter. Note that the "cant" placed on the top of the wave causes the peak value to rise higher and higher above the clipping level as the frequency is lowered. It is for this reason that bass suppression before the clipper stage is desirable. Improved low-frequency response following the clipper-filter will reduce the phase shift and therefore the "canting" of the wave at the lower voice frequencies.

signal to be radiated regardless of any reasonable voice level being fed into the microphone.

If a cathode-ray oscilloscope is available the modulated envelope of the transmitter should be checked with 30-to 70-Hz sawtooth waves on the horizontal axis. If the upper half of the envelope appears in general the same as the drawing of figure 15C, all is well and phase-shift is not excessive. However, if much more slope appears on the tops

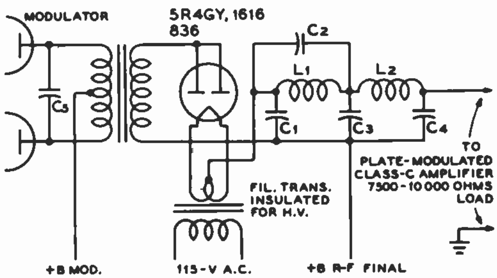


Figure 17

HIGH-LEVEL SPLATTER SUPPRESSOR

This circuit is effective in reducing splatter caused by negative-peak clipping in the modulated amplifier stage. The use of a two-section filter as shown is recommended, although either a single m-derived or a constant-k section may be used for greater economy. Suitable chokes, along with recommended capacitor values, are available from several manufacturers.

of the waves than is illustrated in this figure, it will be well to apply the second step in compensation in order to ensure that sideband splatter cannot take place and to afford a still higher average percentage of modulation. This second step consists of the addition of a high-level *splatter suppressor* such as is illustrated in figure 17.

The use of a high-level splatter suppressor after a clipper-filter system will afford the result shown in figure 18 since such a device will not permit the negative-peak clipping which the wave cant caused by audio-system phase shift can produce. The high-level splatter suppressor operates by virtue of the fact that it will not permit the plate voltage on the modulated amplifier to go completely to zero regardless of the incoming signal amplitude. Hence negative-peak clipping with its attendant splatter cannot take place. Such a device can, of course, also be used in a transmitter which does not incorporate a clipper-filter system. However, the full increase in average modulation level without serious distortion, afforded by the clipper-filter system, will not be obtained.

A word of caution should be noted at this time in the case of tetrode-final modulated amplifier stages which afford screen-voltage modulation by virtue of a tap or a separate winding on the modulation transformer such as is shown in figure 9C of this chapter. If

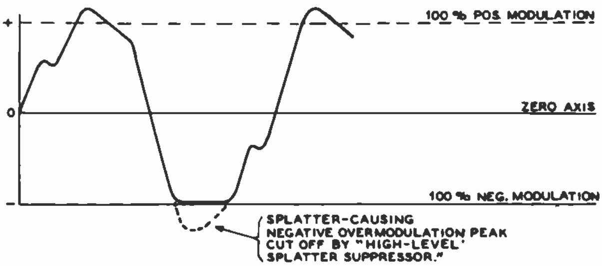


Figure 18

ACTION OF HIGH-LEVEL SPLATTER SUPPRESSOR

A high-level splatter suppressor may be used in a transmitter without a clipper-filter to reduce negative-peak clipping, or such a unit may be used following a clipper-filter to allow a higher average modulation level by eliminating the negative-peak clipping which the wave cant caused by phase shift might produce.

such a system of modulation is in use, the high-level splatter suppressor shown in figure 17 will not operate satisfactorily since negative-peak clipping in the stage can take place when the *screen* voltage goes too low.

Clipper Circuits Two effective low-level clipper-filter circuits are shown in figures 19 and 20. The circuit of figure 19 employs a 6J6 double triode as a clipper, each half of the 6J6 clipping one side of the impressed waveform. The optimum level at which the clipping operation begins is set by the value of the cathode resistor. A maximum of 12 to 14 db of clipping may be used with this circuit, which means that an extra 12 to 14 db of speech gain must precede the clipper. For a peak output of 8 volts from the clipper filter, a peak audio signal of about 40 volts must be impressed on the clipper input circuit. The 6C4 speech-amplifier stage must therefore be considered as a part of the clipper circuit since it compensates for the 12 to 14 db loss of gain incurred in the clipping process. A simple low-pass filter made up of a 20 henry a-c/d-c replacement type filter choke and two mica capacitors follows the 6J6 clipper. This filter is designed for a cutoff frequency of about 3500 Hz when operating into a load impedance of 0.5 megohm. The output level of 8 volts peak is ample to drive a triode speech-amplifier stage, such as a 6C4.

A 6AL5 double-diode series clipper is employed in the circuit of figure 20, and a commercially made low-pass filter is used to give somewhat better high-frequency cutoff characteristics. A double triode is employed as a speech amplifier ahead of the clipper circuit. The actual performance of either circuit is about the same.

To eliminate higher-order products that may be generated in the stages following the clipper-filter, it is wise to follow the modulator with a high-level filter, as shown in figure 21.

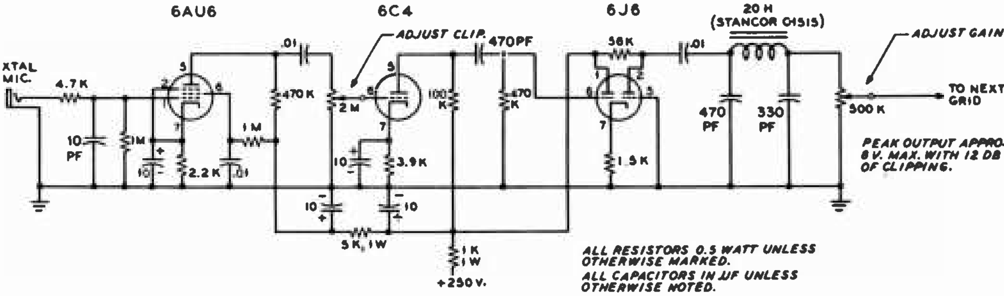


Figure 19

CLIPPER FILTER USING 6J6 DOUBLE TRIODE STAGE

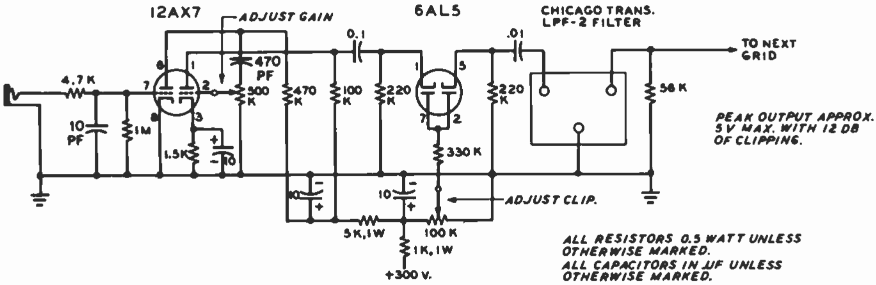


Figure 20

CLIPPER FILTER USING 6AL5 STAGE

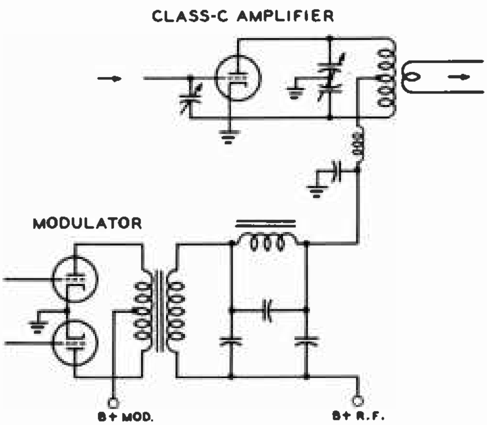


Figure 21

ADDITIONAL HIGH-LEVEL LOW-PASS FILTER TO FOLLOW MODULATOR WHEN A LOW-LEVEL CLIPPER FILTER IS USED

Suitable choke, along with recommended capacitor values, is available from several manufacturers.

Clipper Adjustment These clipper circuits have two adjustments: *Adjust Gain* and *Adjust Clipping*. The *Adj. Gain* control determines the modulation level of the transmitter. This control should be set so that overmodulation of the transmitter is impossible, regardless of the amount of clipping used. Once the *Adj. Gain* control has been roughly set, the *Adj. Clip.* control may be used to set the modulation level to any percentage below 100 percent. As the modulation level is decreased, more and more clipping is introduced into the circuit, until a full 12 db of clipping is used. This means that the *Adj. Gain* control may be advanced some 12 db past the point where the clipping action started. Clipping action should start at 85 to 90 percent modulation when a sine wave is used for circuit-adjustment purposes.

High-Level Filters Even though we may have cut off all frequencies above 3000 or 3500 Hz through the use of a filter system such as is shown in the circuits

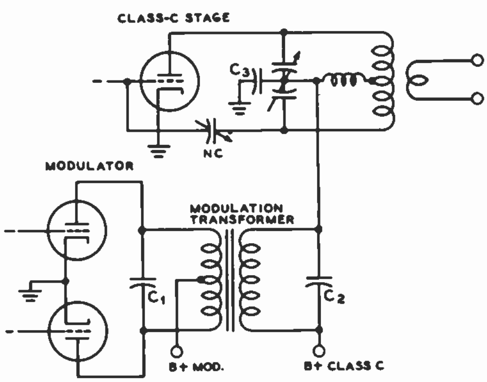


Figure 22

"BUILDING-OUT" THE MODULATION TRANSFORMER

This expedient utilizes the leakage reactance of the modulation transformer in conjunction with the capacitors shown to make up a single-section low-pass filter. In order to determine exact values for C_1 and C_2 plus C_3, it is necessary to use a measurement setup such as is shown in figure 23. However, experiment has shown in the case of a number of commercially available modulation transformers that a value for C_1 of 0.002 µfd and C_2 plus C_3 of 0.004 µfd will give satisfactory results.

of figures 19 and 20, higher frequencies may again be introduced into the modulated wave by distortion in stages following the speech amplifier. Harmonics of the incoming audio frequencies may be generated in the driver stage for the modulator; they may be generated in the plate circuit of the modulator; or they may be generated by nonlinearity in the modulated amplifier itself.

Regardless of the point in the system following the speech amplifier where the high audio frequencies may be generated, these frequencies can still cause a broad signal to be transmitted even though all frequencies above 3000 or 3500 Hz have been cut off in the speech amplifier. The effects of distortion in the audio system *following* the speech amplifier can be eliminated quite effectively through the use of a *post-modulator* filter. Such a filter may be used between the modulator plate circuit and the r-f amplifier which is being modulated.

This filter may take three general forms in a normal case of a class-C amplifier plate modulated by a class-B modulator. The best method is to use a high-level low-pass filter as shown in figure 21 and discussed previously. Another method which will give excellent results in some cases and poor results in others, dependent on the characteristics of the modulation transformer, is to "build-out" the modulation transformer into a filter section. This is accomplished as shown in figure 22 by placing mica capacitors of the correct value across the primary and secondary of the modulation transformer. The proper values for capacitors C_1 and C_2 must, in the ideal case, be determined by trial and error. Experiment with a number of modulators has shown, however, that if a 0.002-μfd. capacitor is used for C_1, and if the sum of C_2 and C_3 is made 0.004-μfd (0.002 μfd for C_2 and 0.002 for C_3) the ideal condition of cutoff above 3000 Hz will be approached in most cases with the "multiple-match" type of modulation transformer.

If it is desired to determine the optimum values of the capacitors across the transformer this can be determined in several ways, all of which require the use of a calibrated audio oscillator. One way is diagrammed in figure 23. The series resistors (R_1 and R_2) should each be equal to 0.5 the value of the recommended plate-to-plate load resistance for the class-B modulator tubes. Resistor R_3 should be equal to the value of load resistance which the class-C modulated stage will present to the modulator. The meter (V) can be any type of a-c voltmeter. The indicating instrument on the secondary of the transformer can be either a cathode-ray oscilloscope or a high-impedance a-c voltmeter of the vacuum-tube or rectifier type.

With a setup as shown in figure 23 a plot of output voltage against frequency is made, at all times keeping the voltage across V constant, using various values of capacitance for C_1 and C_2 plus C_3. When the proper values of capacitance have been determined which give substantially constant output up to about 3000 or 3500 Hz and decreasing output at all frequencies above, high-voltage mica capacitors can be substituted if receiving types were used in the tests and the transformer connected to the modulator and class-C amplifier.

With the transformer reconnected in the transmitter a check of the modulated-wave output of the transmitter should be made using an audio oscillator as signal generator and an oscilloscope coupled to the transmitter output. With an input signal amplitude fed to the speech amplifier of such amplitude that limiting does not take place, a substantially clean sine wave should be obtained on the carrier of the transmitter at all input frequencies up to the cutoff frequency of the filter system in the speech amplifier and of the filter which includes the modulation transformer. Above these cutoff frequencies

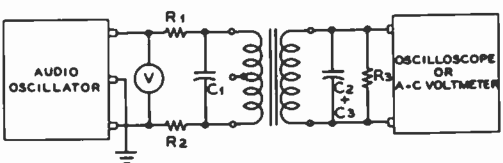


Figure 23

TEST SETUP FOR BUILDING-OUT MODULATION TRANSFORMER

Through the use of a test setup such as is shown and the method described in the text it is possible to determine the correct values for a specified filter characteristic in the built-out modulation transformer.

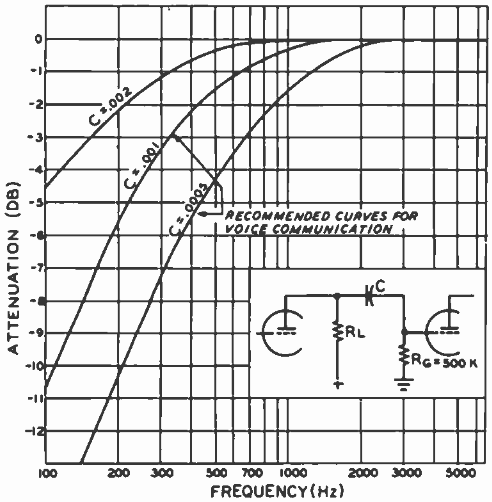


Figure 24

BASS-ATTENUATION CHART

Frequency attenuation caused by various values of coupling capacitor with a grid resistor of 0.5 megohm in the following stage ($R_G > R_L$)

very little modulation of the carrier wave should be obtained. To obtain a check on the effectiveness of the built-out modulation transformer, the capacitors across the primary and secondary should be removed for the test. In most cases a marked deterioration in the waveform output of the modulator will be noticed with frequencies in the voice range from 500 to 1500 Hz being fed into the speech amplifier.

A filter system similar to that shown in figure 17 may be used between the modulator and the modulated circuit in a grid-modulated or screen-modulated transmitter. Lower-voltage capacitors and low-current chokes may of course be employed.

Bass Suppression Most of the power represented by ordinary speech (particularly the male voice) lies below 1000 Hz. If all frequencies below 400 or 500 Hz are eliminated or substantially attenuated, there is a considerable reduction in power but insignificant reduction in intelligibility. This means that the speech level may be increased considerably without overmodulation or overload of the audio system. In addition, if speech clipping is used, attenuation of the lower audio frequencies before the clipper will reduce phase shift and canting of the clipper output.

A simple method of bass suppression is to reduce the size of the interstage coupling capacitors in a resistance-coupled amplifier. Figure 24 shows the frequency characteristics caused by such a suppression circuit. A second simple bass-suppression circuit is to place a small a-c/d-c type filter choke from grid to ground in a speech-amplifier stage, as shown in figure 25.

Modulated-Amplifier Distortion The systems described in the preceding paragraphs will have no effect in reducing a broad signal caused by nonlinearity in the modulated amplifier. Even though the modulating waveform impressed on the modulated stage may be distortion free, if the modulated amplifier is nonlinear, distortion will be generated in the amplifier. The only way in which this type of distortion may be corrected is by making the modulated amplifier more linear. Degenerative feedback which includes the modulated amplifier in the loop will help in this regard.

Plenty of grid excitation and high grid bias will go a long way toward making a plate-modulated class-C amplifier linear, although such operating conditions will make more difficult the problem of TVI reduction. If this still does not give adequate linearity, the preceding buffer stage may be modulated 50 percent or so at the same time and in the same phase as the final amplifier. The use of a grid resistor to obtain the majority of the bias for a class-C stage will improve its linearity.

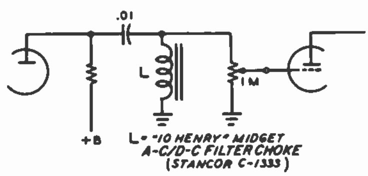


Figure 25

USE OF PARALLEL INDUCTANCE FOR BASS SUPPRESSION

The linearity of a grid-bias modulated r-f amplifier can be improved, after proper adjustments of excitation, grid-bias, and antenna coupling have been made by modulating the stage which excites the grid-modulated amplifier. The preceding driver stage may be grid-bias modulated or it may be plate modulated. Modulation of the driver stage should be in the same phase as that of the final modulated amplifier.

13-8 The Bias-Shift Heising Modulator

The simple class-A modulator is limited to an efficiency of about 30 percent, and the tube must dissipate the full power input during periods of quiescence. Class-AB and class-B audio systems have largely taken the place of the old Heising modulator because of this great waste of power. It is possible, however, to vary the operating bias of the class-A modulator in such a way as to allow class-A operation only when an audio signal is applied to the grid of the tube. During resting periods, the bias can be shifted to a higher value, dropping the resting plate current and plate dissipation of the tube. When voice waveforms having low average power are employed, the efficiency of the system is comparable to the popular class-B modulator.

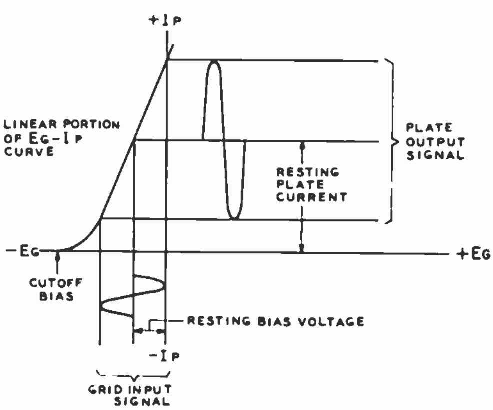


Figure 26

CHARACTERISTIC GRID-VOLTAGE PLATE-CURRENT CURVE FOR CLASS-A HEISING MODULATOR

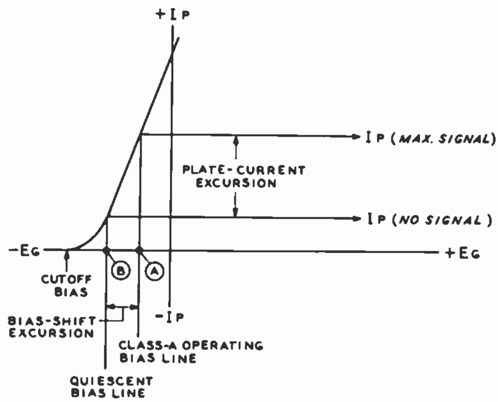


Figure 27

BIAS-SHIFT MODULATOR OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS

Modulator is biased close to plate current cutoff under no-signal, condition (B). On application of audio signal, the bias of the stage is shifted toward the class-A operating point (A). Bias-shift voltage is obtained from the audio signal.

The characteristic curve for a class-A modulator is shown in figure 26. Normal bias is used, and the operating point is placed in the middle of the linear portion of the *Eg–Ip* curve. Maximum plate input is limited by the plate dissipation of the tube under quiescent condition. The *bias-shift* modulator is biased close to plate current cutoff under no-signal condition (figure 27). Resting plate current and plate dissipation are therefore quite low. On application of an audio signal, the bias of the stage is shifted toward the class-A operating point, preventing the negative peaks of the applied audio voltage from cutting off the plate current of the tube. As the audio voltage increases, the operating-bias point is shifted to the right on figure 27 until the class-A operating point is reached at maximum excitation.

The bias-shift voltage may be obtained directly from the exciting signal by rectification, as shown in figure 28. A simple low-pass filter system is used that will pass only the syllabic components of speech. Enough negative bias is applied to the *bias-*

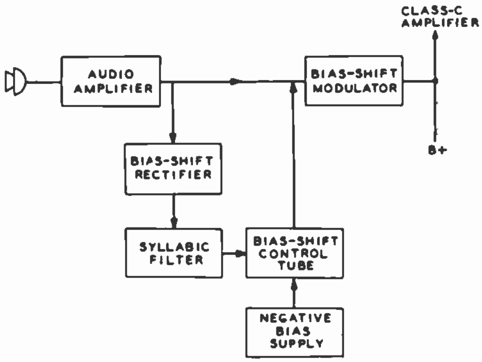


Figure 28

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF BIAS-SHIFT MODULATOR

shift modulator to cut the resting plate current to the desired value, and the output of the bias control rectifier is polarized so as to "buck" the fixed bias voltage. No spurious modulation frequencies are generated, since the modulator operates class-A throughout the audio cycle.

This form of grid pulsing permits the modulator stage to work with an over-all efficiency of greater than 50 percent, comparing favorably with the class-B modulator. The expensive class-B driver and output transformers are not required, since resistance-coupling may be used in the input

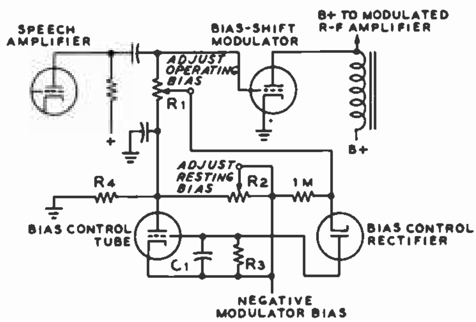


Figure 29

SERIES CONTROL CIRCUIT FOR BIAS-SHIFT MODULATOR

The internal resistance of the bias control tube is varied at a syllabic rate to change the operating bias of the modulator tube.

circuit of the bias-shift modulator, and a heavy-duty filter choke will serve as an impedance coupler for the modulated stage.

Series and Parallel Control Circuits The bias-shift system may take one of several forms. A "series" control circuit is shown in figure 29. Resting bias is applied to the bias-shift modulator tube through the voltage divider R_2/R_4. The bias control tube is placed across resistor R_2. Quiescent bias for the modulator is set by adjusting R_2. As the internal resistance of the bias control tube is varied at a syllabic rate the voltage drop across R_2 will vary in

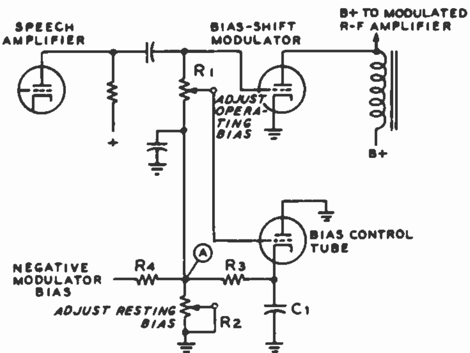


Figure 30

PARALLEL CONTROL CIRCUIT FOR BIAS-SHIFT MODULATOR

The resistance to ground of point A in the bias network is varied at a syllabic rate by the bias control tube.

unison. The modulator bias, therefore varies at the same rate. Excitation for the bias control tube is obtained from the audio signal through potentiometer R_1 which regulates the amplitude of the control signal. The audio signal is rectified by the bias control rectifier, and filtered by network R_3-C_1 in the grid circuit of the bias control tube.

The "parallel" control system is illustrated in figure 30. Resting bias for the modulator is obtained from the voltage divider R_2-R_4. Potentiometer R_2 adjusts the resting bias level, determining the static plate current of the modulator. Resistor R_3 serves as a bias resistor for the control tube, reducing its plate current to a low level. When an audio signal is applied via R_1 to the grid of the control tube the internal resistance is lowered, decreasing the shunt resistance across R_2. The negative modulator bias is therefore reduced. The bias axis of the modulator is shifted from the cutoff region to a point on the linear portion of the operating curve. The amount of bias-shift is controlled by the setting of potentiometer R_1. Capacitor C_1 in conjunction with bias resistor R_3 form a syllabic filter for the control bias that is applied to the modulator stage.

A large value of plate dissipation is required for the bias-shift modulator tube. For plate voltages below 1500, the 211 (VT-4C) may be used, while the 304-TL is suitable for voltages up to 3000. As with normal class-A amplifiers, low-μ tubes function best in this circuit.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

Frequency Modulation

Exciter systems for f-m and single-sideband transmission are basically similar in that modification of the signal in accordance with the intelligence to be transmitted is normally accomplished at a relatively low level. Then the intelligence-bearing signal is amplified to the desired power level for ultimate transmission. True, amplifiers for the two types of signals are basically different; linear amplifiers of the class-A or class-B type being used for SSB signals, while class-C or nonlinear class-B amplifiers may be used for f-m amplification. But the principle of low-level generation and subsequent amplification is standard for both types of transmission.

14-1 Frequency Modulation

The use of *frequency modulation* and the allied system of *phase modulation* has become of increasing importance in recent years. For amateur communication, frequency and phase modulation offer important advantages in the reduction of broadcast and TV interference and in the elimination of the costly high-level modulation equipment most commonly employed with amplitude modulation. For broadcast work frequency modulation offers an improvement in signal-to-noise ratio for the high field intensities available in the local-coverage area of f-m and TV broadcast stations.

In this chapter various points of difference between frequency-modulation and amplitude-modulation transmission and reception will be discussed and the advantages of frequency-modulation for certain types of communication pointed out. Since the distinguishing features of the two types of transmission lie entirely in the modulating circuits at the transmitter and in the detector and limiter circuits in the receiver, these parts of the communication system will receive the major portion of attention.

Modulation *Modulation* is the process of altering a radio wave in accord with the intelligence to be transmitted. The nature of the intelligence is of little importance as far as the process of modulation is concerned; it is the *method,* by which this intelligence is made to give a distinguishing characteristic to the radio wave which will enable the receiver to convert it back into intelligence, that determines the type of modulation being used.

Figure 1 is a drawing of an r-f carrier amplitude-modulated by a sine-wave audio voltage. After modulation the resultant modulated r-f wave is seen still to vary about the zero axis at a constant rate, but the strength of the individual r-f waves is proportional to the amplitude of the modulation voltage.

In figure 2, the carrier of figure 1 is shown frequency-modulated by the same modulating voltage. Here it may be seen that modulation voltage of one polarity causes the

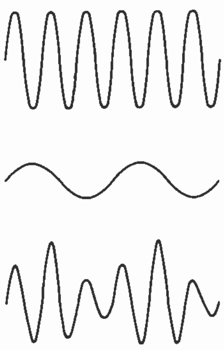


FIGURE 1

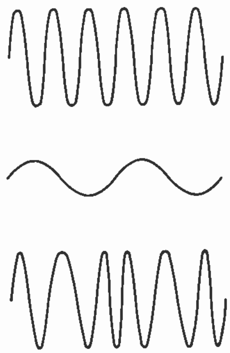


FIGURE 2

A-M AND F-M WAVES

Figure 1 shows a sketch of the scope pattern of an amplitude-modulated wave at the bottom. The center sketch shows the modulating wave and the upper sketch shows the carrier wave.

Figure 2 shows at the bottom a sketch of a frequency-modulated wave. In this case the center sketch also shows the modulating wave and the upper sketch shows the carrier wave. Note that the carrier wave and the modulating wave are the same in either case, but that the waveform of the modulated wave is quite different in the two cases.

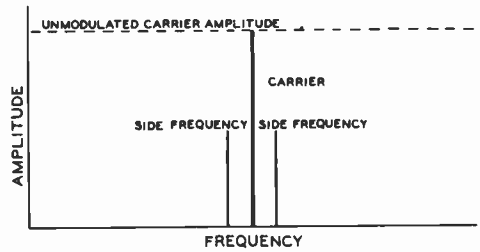


Figure 3

A-M SIDE FREQUENCIES

For each a-m modulating frequency, a pair of side frequencies is produced. The side frequencies are spaced away from the carrier by an amount equal to the modulation frequency, and their amplitude is directly proportional to the amplitude of the modulation. The amplitude of the carrier does not change under modulation.

carrier frequency to decrease, as shown by the fact that the individual r-f waves of the carrier are spaced farther apart. A modulating voltage of the opposite polarity causes the frequency to increase, and this is shown by the r-f waves being compressed together to allow more of them to be completed in a given time interval.

Figures 1 and 2 reveal two very important characteristics about amplitude- and frequency-modulated waves. First, it is seen that while the amplitude (power) of the signal is varied in a-m transmission, no such variation takes place in frequency modulation. In many cases this advantage of frequency modulation is probably of equal or greater importance than the widely publicized noise-reduction capabilities of the system. When 100 percent amplitude modulation is obtained, the average power output of the transmitter must be increased by 50 percent. This additional output must be supplied either by the modulator itself, in the high-level system, or by operating one or more of the transmitter stages at such a low output level that they are capable of producing the additional output without distortion in the low-level system. On the other hand, a frequency-modulated transmitter requires an insignificant amount of power from the modulator and needs no provision for increased power output on modulation peaks. All of the stages between the oscillator and the antenna may be operated as high-efficiency class-B or class-C amplifiers or frequency multipliers.

Carrier-Wave Distortion The second characteristic of f-m and a-m waves revealed by figures 1 and 2 is that both types of modulation result in distortion of the r-f carrier. That is, after modulation, the r-f waves are no longer sine waves, as they would be if no frequencies other than the fundamental carrier frequency were present. It may be shown in the amplitude-modulation case illustrated, that there are only two additional frequencies present, and these are the familiar *side frequencies*, one located on each side of the carrier, and each spaced from the carrier by a frequency interval equal to the modulation frequency. In regard to frequency and amplitude, the situation is as shown in figure 3. The strength of the carrier itself does not vary during modulation, but the strength of the side frequencies depends on the percentage of modulation. At 100 percent modulation the power in the

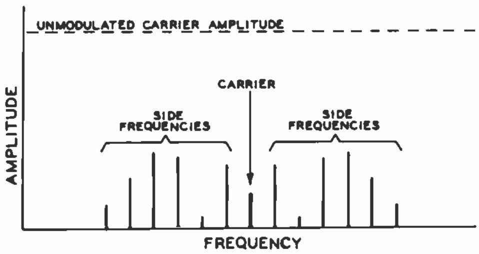


Figure 4

F-M SIDE FREQUENCIES

With frequency modulation, each modulation frequency component causes a large number of side frequencies to be produced. The side frequencies are separated from each other and the carrier by an amount equal to the modulation frequency, but their amplitude varies greatly as the amount of modulation is changed. The carrier strength also varies greatly with frequency modulation. The side frequencies shown represent a case where the deviation each side of the "carrier" frequency is equal to five times the modulating frequency. Other amounts of deviation with the same modulation frequency would cause the relative strengths of the various sidebands to change widely.

side frequencies is equal to one-half that of the carrier.

Under frequency modulation, the carrier wave again becomes distorted, as shown in figure 2. But, in this case, many more than two additional frequencies are formed. The first two of these frequencies are spaced from the carrier by the modulation frequency, and the additional side frequencies are located out on each side of the carrier and are also spaced from each other by an amount equal to the modulation frequency. Theoretically, there are an infinite number of side frequencies formed, but, fortunately, the strength of those beyond the frequency *swing* of the transmitter under modulation is relatively low.

One set of side frequencies that might be formed by frequency modulation is shown in figure 4. Unlike amplitude modulation, the strength of the component at the carrier frequency varies widely in frequency modulation and it may even disappear entirely under certain conditions. The variation of strength of the carrier component is useful in measuring the amount of frequency modulation, and will be discussed in detail later in this chapter.

One of the great advantages of frequency modulation over amplitude modulation is the reduction in noise at the receiver which the system allows. If the receiver is made responsive only to changes in frequency, a considerable increase in signal-to-noise ratio is made possible through the use of frequency modulation, when the signal is of greater strength than the noise. The noise-reducing capabilities of frequency modulation arise from the inability of noise to cause appreciable frequency modulation of the noise-plus-signal voltage which is applied to the detector in the receiver.

F-M Terms Unlike amplitude modulation, the term *percentage modulation* means little in f-m practice, unless the receiver characteristics are specified. There are, however, three terms, *deviation*, *modulation index*, and *deviation ratio*, which convey considerable information concerning the character of the f-m wave.

Deviation is the amount of frequency shift each side of the unmodulated carrier frequency which occurs when the transmitter is modulated. Deviation is ordinarily measured in kilohertz, and in a properly operating f-m transmitter it will be directly proportional to the amplitude of the modulating signal. When a symmetrical modulating signal is applied to the transmitter, equal deviation each side of the resting frequency is obtained during each cycle of the modulating signal, and the total frequency range covered by the f-m transmitter is sometimes known as the *swing*. If, for instance, a transmitter operating on 1000 kHz has its frequency shifted from 1000 kHz to 1010 kHz, back to 1000 kHz, then to 990 kHz, and again back to 1000 kHz during one cycle of the modulating wave, the *deviation* would be 10 kHz and the *swing* 20 kHz.

The *modulation index* of an f-m signal is the ratio of the deviation to the audio modulating frequency, when both are expressed in the same units. Thus, in the example above if the signal is varied from 1000 kHz to 1010 kHz to 990 kHz, and back to 1000 kHz at a rate (frequency) of 2000 times a second, the modulation index would be 5, since the deviation (10 kHz) is 5 times the modulating frequency (2 kHz).

The relative strengths of the f-m carrier and the various side frequencies depend directly on the modulation index, these relative strengths varying widely as the modulation index is varied. In the preceding example, for instance, side frequencies occur on the high side of 1000 kHz at 1002, 1004, 1006, 1008, 1010, 1012, etc., and on the low frequency side at 998, 996, 994, 992, 990, 988, etc. In proportion to the unmodulated carrier strength (100 percent), these side frequencies have the following strengths, as indicated by a modulation index of 5: 1002 and 998—33 percent; 1004 and 996—5 percent; 1006 and 994—36 percent; 1008 and 992—39 percent; 1010 and 990—26 percent; 1012 and 998–13 percent. The carrier strength (1000 kHz) will be 18 percent of its modulated value. Changing the amplitude of the modulating signal will change the deviation, and thus the modulation index will be changed, with the result that the side frequencies, while still located in the same places, will have different strength values from those given above.

The *deviation ratio* is similar to the modulation index in that it involves the ratio between a modulating frequency and deviation. In this case, however, the deviation in question is the peak frequency shift obtained under full modulation, and the audio frequency to be considered is the maximum audio frequency to be transmitted. When the maximum audio frequency to be transmitted is 5000 Hz, for example, a deviation ratio of 3 would call for a peak deviation of 3×5000, or 15 kHz at full modulation. The noise-suppression capabilities of frequency modulation are directly related to the deviation ratio. As the deviation ratio is increased, the noise suppression becomes better *if* the signal is somewhat stronger than the noise. Where the noise approaches the signal in strength, however, low deviation ratios allow communication to be maintained in many cases where high-deviation-ratio frequency modulation and conventional amplitude modulation are incapable of giving service. This assumes that a narrow-band f-m receiver is in use. For each value of r-f signal-to-noise ratio at the receiver, there is a maximum deviation ratio which may be used, beyond which the output audio signal-to-noise ratio decreases. Up to this critical deviation ratio, however, the noise suppression becomes progressively better as the deviation ratio is increased.

For high-fidelity f-m broadcasting purposes, a deviation ratio of 5 is ordinarily used, the maximum audio frequency being 15,000 Hz, and the peak deviation at full modulation being 75 kHz. Since a swing of 150 kHz is covered by the transmitter, it is obvious that wide-band f-m transmission must necessarily be confined to the vhf range or higher, where room for the signals is available.

In the case of television sound, the deviation ratio is 1.67; the maximum modulation frequency is 15,000 Hz, and the transmitter deviation for full modulation is 25 kHz. The sound carrier frequency in a standard TV signal is located exactly 4.5 MHz higher than the picture carrier frequency. In the *intercarrier* TV sound system, which is widely used, this constant difference between the picture carrier and the sound carrier is employed within the receiver to obtain an f-m subcarrier at 4.5 MHz. This 4.5 MHz subcarrier then is demodulated by the f-m detector to obtain the sound signal which accompanies the picture.

Narrow-Band F-M Transmission Narrow-band f-m transmission has become standardized for use by the mobile services such as police, fire, and taxicab communications, and is also authorized for amateur work in portions of each of the amateur radiotelephone bands. A maximum deviation of 15 kHz has been standardized for the mobile and commercial communication services, while a maximum deviation of 3 kHz is authorized for amateur narrow-band f-m communication.

Bandwidth Required by Frequency Modulation As the above discussion has indicated, many side frequencies are set up when a radio-frequency carrier is frequency modulated; theoretically, in fact, an infinite number of side frequencies is formed. Fortunately, however, the amplitudes of those side frequencies falling outside the frequency range over which the transmitter is *swung* are so small that most of them may be ignored. In f-m transmis-

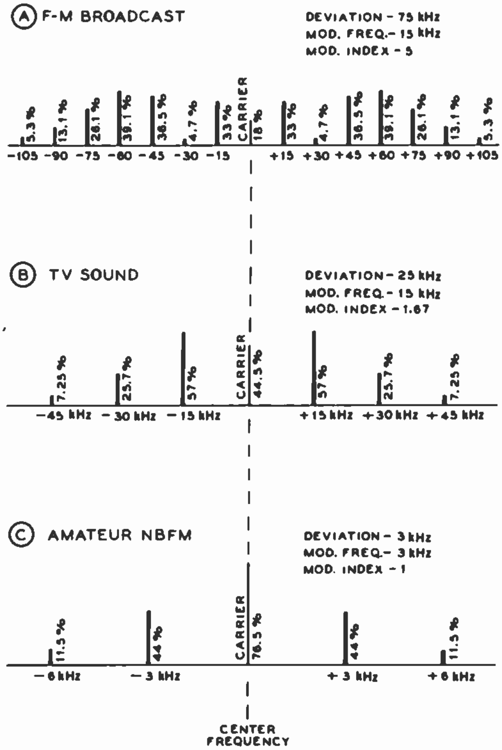


Figure 5

EFFECT OF F-M MODULATION INDEX

Showing the side-frequency amplitude and distribution for the three most common modulation indices used in f-m work. The maximum modulating frequency and maximum deviation are shown in each case.

sion, when a complex modulating wave (speech or music) is used, still additional side frequencies resulting from a beating together of the various frequency components in the modulating wave are formed. This is a situation that does not occur in amplitude modulation and it might be thought that the large number of side frequencies thus formed might make the frequency spectrum produced by an f-m transmiter prohibitively wide. Analysis shows, however, that the additional side frequencies are of very small amplitude, and, instead of increasing the bandwidth, modulation by a complex wave actually reduces the effective bandwidth of the f-m wave. This is especially true when speech modulation is used, since most of the power in voiced sounds is concentrated at low frequencies in the vicinity of 400 Hz.

The bandwidth required in an f-m receiver is a function of a number of factors, both theoretical and practical. Basically, the bandwidth required is a function of the deviation ratio and the maximum frequency of modulation, although the practical consideration of drift and ease of receiver tuning also must be considered. Shown in figure 5 are the frequency spectra (carrier and sideband frequencies) associated with the standard f-m broadcast signal, the TV sound signal, and an amateur-band narrow-band f-m signal with full modulation using the highest permissible modulating frequency in each case. It will be seen that for low deviation ratios the receiver bandwidth should be at least four times the maximum frequency deviation, but for a deviation ratio of 5 the receiver bandwidth need be only about 2.5 times the maximum frequency deviation.

14-2 Direct F-M Circuits

Frequency modulation may be obtained either by the direct method, in which the frequency of an oscillator is changed directly by the modulating signal, or by the indirect method which makes use of phase modulation. Phase-modulation circuits will be discussed in section 14-3.

A successful frequency-modulated transmitter must meet two requirements: (1) The frequency deviation must be symmetrical about a fixed frequency, for symmetrical modulation voltage. (2) The deviation must be directly proportional to the amplitude of the modulation, and independent of the modulation frequency. There are several methods of direct frequency modulation which will fullfill these requirements. Some of these methods will be described in the following paragraphs.

Reactance-Tube Modulators One of the most practical ways of obtaining direct frequency modulation is through the use of a *reactance-tube modulator.* In this arrangement the modulator plate-cathode circuit is connected across the oscillator tank circuit, and made to appear as either a capacitive or inductive reactance by exciting the modulator grid with a voltage

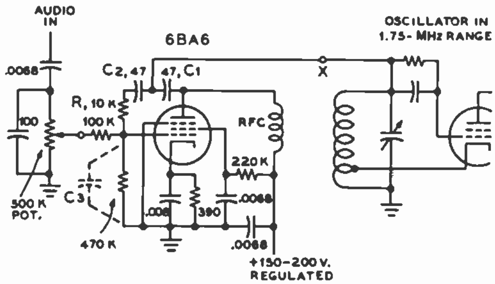


Figure 6

REACTANCE-TUBE MODULATOR

This circuit is convenient for direct frequency modulation of an oscillator in the 1.75-MHz range. Capacitor C_3 may be only the input capacitance of the tube, or a small trimmer capacitor may be included to permit a variation in the sensitivity of the reactance tube.

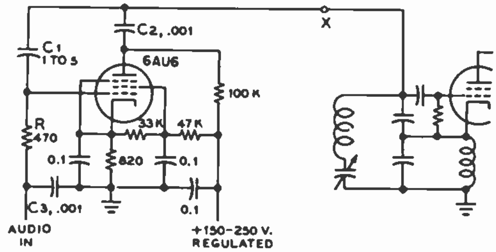


Figure 7

ALTERNATIVE REACTANCE-TUBE MODULATOR

This circuit is often preferable for use in the lower frequency range, although it may be used at 1.75 MHz and above if desired. In the schematic above the reactance tube is shown connected across the voltage-divider capacitors of a Clapp oscillator, although the modulator circuit may be used with any common type of oscillator.

which either leads or lags the oscillator tank voltage by 90 degrees. The leading or lagging grid voltage causes a corresponding leading or lagging plate current, and the plate-cathode circuit appears as capacitive or inductive reactance across the oscillator tank circuit. When the transconductance of the modulator tube is varied, by varying one of the element voltages, the magnitude of the reactance across the oscillator tank is varied. By applying audio modulating voltage to one of the elements, the transconductance (and hence the frequency) may be varied at an audio rate. When properly designed and operated, the reactance-tube modulator gives linear frequency modulation, and is capable of producing large amounts of deviation.

There are numerous possible configurations of the reactance-tube modulator circuit. The difference in the various arrangements lies principally in the type of phase-shifting circuit used to give a grid voltage which is in phase quadrature with the r-f voltage at the modulator plate.

Figure 6 is a diagram of one of the most popular forms of reactance-tube modulators. The modulator tube, which is usually a pentode such as a 6BA6, 6AU6, or 6CL6, has its plate coupled through a blocking capacitor (C_1) to the "hot" side of the oscillator grid circuit. Another blocking capacitor (C_2) feeds r.f. to the phase-shifting network (R-C_3) in the modulator grid circuit. If the resistance of R is made large in comparison with the reactance of C_3 at the oscillator frequency, the current through the R-C_3 combination will be nearly in phase with the voltage across the tank circuit, and the voltage across C_3 will lag the oscillator tank voltage by almost 90 degrees. The result of the 90-degree lagging voltage on the modulator grid is that its plate current lags the tank voltage by 90 degrees, and the reactance tube appears as an inductance in shunt with the oscillator inductance, thus raising the oscillator frequency.

The phase-shifting capacitor (C_3) can consist of the input capacitance of the modulator tube and stray capacitance between grid and ground. However, better control of the operating conditions of the modulator may be had through the use of a variable capacitor as C_3. Resistance R will usually have a value of between 4700 and 100,000 ohms.

Either resistance or transformer coupling may be used to feed audio voltage to the modulator grid. When a resistance coupling is used, it is necessary to shield the grid circuit adequately, since the high-impedance grid circuit is prone to pickup stray r-f and low-frequency a-c voltage, and cause undesired frequency modulation.

An alternative reactance-modulator circuit is shown in figure 7. The operating conditions are generally the same, except that

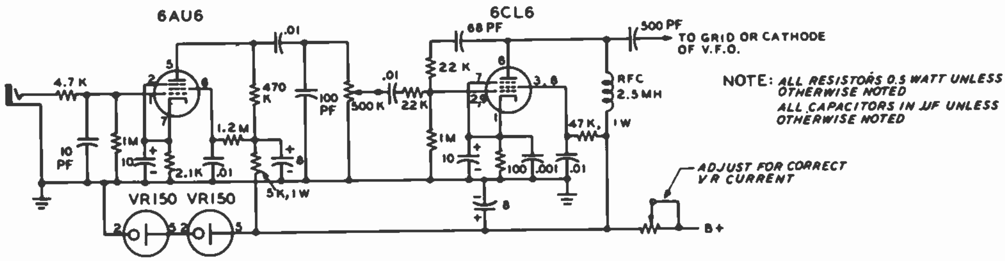


Figure 8

SIMPLE F-M REACTANCE-TUBE MODULATOR

the r-f excitation voltage to the grid of the reactance tube is obtained effectively through reversing the R and C_3 of figure 6. In this circuit a small capacitance is used to couple r.f. into the grid of the reactance tube, with a relatively small value of resistance from grid to ground. This circuit has the advantage that the grid of the tube is at relatively low impedance with respect to r.f. However, the circuit normally is not suitable for operation above a few MHz due to the shunting capacitance within the tube from grid to ground.

Either of the reactance-tube circuits may be used with any of the common types of oscillators. The reactance modulator of figure 6 is shown connected to the high-impedance point of a conventional hot-cathode Hartley oscillator, while that of figure 7 is shown connected across the low-impedance capacitors of a series-tuned Clapp oscillator.

There are several possible variations of the basic reactance-tube modulator circuits shown in figures 6 and 7. The audio input may be applied to the suppressor grid, rather than the control grid, if desired. Another modification is to apply the audio to a grid other than the control grid in a mixer or pentagrid converter tube which is used as the modulator.

Generally it will be found that the transconductance variation per volt of control-element voltage variation will be greatest when the control (audio) voltage is applied to the control grid. In cases where it is desirable to separate completely the audio and r-f circuits, however, applying audio voltage to one of the other elements will often be found advantageous despite the somewhat lower sensitivity.

Adjusting the Phase Shift One of the simplest methods of adjusting the phase shift to the correct amount is to place a pair of earphones in series with the oscillator cathode-to-ground circuit and adjust the phase-shift network until minimum sound is heard in the phones when frequency modulation is taking place. If an electron-coupled or Hartley oscillator is used, this method requires that the cathode circuit of the oscillator be inductively or capacitively coupled to the grid circuit, rather than tapped on the grid coil. The phones should be adequately bypassed to r.f. of course.

Stabilization Due to the presence of the reactance-tube frequency modulator, the stabilization of an f-m oscillator in regard to voltage changes is considerably more involved than in the case of a simple self-controlled oscillator for transmitter frequency control. If desired, the oscillator itself may be made perfectly stable under voltage changes, but the presence of the frequency modulator destroys the beneficial effect of any such stabilization. It thus becomes desirable to apply the stabilizing arrangement to the modulator as well as the oscillator. If the oscillator itself is stable under voltage changes, it is only necessary to apply voltage-frequency compensation to the modulator.

Reactance-Tube Modulators Two simple reactance-tube modulators that may be applied to an existing vfo are illustrated in figures 8 and 9. The circuit of figure 8 is extremely simple, yet effective. Only two tubes are used exclusive of the voltage regulator tubes which perhaps may

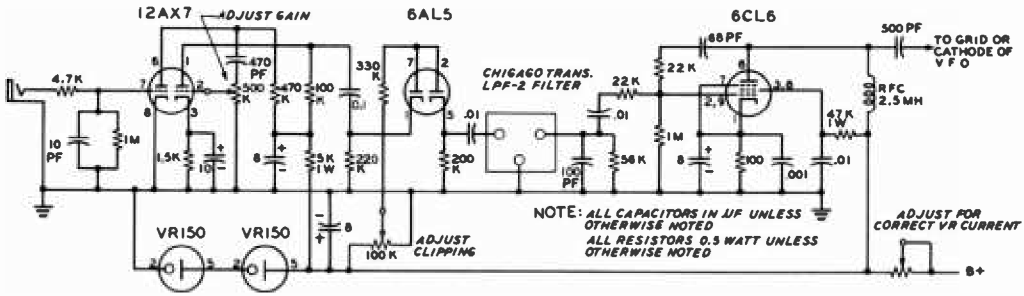


Figure 9

F-M REACTANCE MODULATOR WITH SPEECH CLIPPER

be already incorporated in the vfo. A 6AU6 serves as a high-gain voltage amplifier stage, and a 6CL6 is used as the reactance modulator since its high value of transconductance will permit a large value of lagging current to be drawn under modulation swing. The unit should be mounted in close proximity to the vfo so that the lead from the 6CL6 to the grid circuit of the oscillator can be as short as possible. A practical solution is to mount the reactance modulator in a small box on the side of the vfo cabinet.

By incorporating speech clipping in the reactance modulator unit, a much more effective use is made of a given amount of deviation. When the f-m signal is received on an a-m receiver by means of slope detection, the use of speech clipping will be noticed by the greatly increased modulation level of the f-m signal, and the attenuation of the center frequency null of no modulation. In many cases, it is difficult to tell a speech-clipped f-m signal from the usual a-m signal.

A more complex f-m reactance modulator incorporating a speech clipper is shown in figure 9. A 12AX7 double-triode speech amplifier provides enough gain for proper clipper action when a high-level crystal microphone is used. A double-diode 6AL5 speech clipper is used, the clipping level being set by the potentiometer controlling the plate voltage applied to the diode. A 6CL6 serves as the reactance modulator.

The reactance modulator may best be adjusted by listening to the signal of the vfo exciter at the operating frequency and adjusting the gain and clipping controls for the best modulation level consistent with minimum sideband splatter. Minimum clipping occurs when the *Adj. Clip.* potentiometer is set for maximum voltage on the plates of the 6AL5 clipper tube. As with the case of all reactance modulators, a voltage-regulated plate supply is required.

Linearity Test It is almost a necessity to run a static test on the reactance-tube frequency modulator to determine its linearity and effectiveness, since small changes in the values of components, and in stray capacitances will almost certainly alter the modulator characteristics. A frequency-versus-control-voltage curve should be plotted to ascertain that equal increments in control voltage, both in a positive and a negative direction, cause equal changes in frequency. If the curve shows that the modulator has an appreciable amount of nonlinearity, changes in bias, electrode voltages, r-f excitation, and resistance values may be made to obtain a straight-line characteristic.

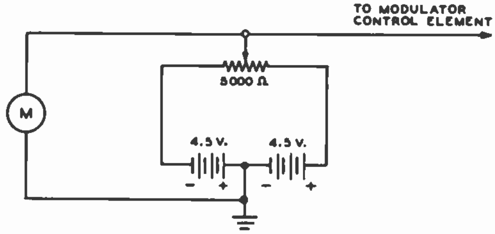


Figure 10

REACTANCE-TUBE LINEARITY CHECKER

Figure 10 shows a method of connecting two 4.5-volt C batteries and a potentiometer to plot the characteristic of the modulator. It will be necessary to use a zero-center voltmeter to measure the grid voltage, or else reverse the voltmeter leads when changing from positive to negative grid voltage. When a straight-line characteristic for the modulator is obtained by the static test method, the capacitances of the various bypass capacitors in the circuit must be kept small to retain this characteristic when an audio voltage is used to vary the frequency in place of the d-c voltage with which the characteristic was plotted.

14-3 Phase Modulation

By means of *phase modulation* (pm) it is possible to dispense with self-controlled oscillators and to obtain directly crystal-controlled frequency modulation. In the final analysis, phase modulation is simply frequency modulation in which the deviation is directly proportional to the modulation frequency. If an audio signal of 1000 Hz causes a deviation of 0.5 kHz, for example, a 2000-Hz modulating signal of the same amplitude will give a deviation of 1 kHz, and so on. To produce an f-m signal, it is necessary to make the deviation independent of the modulation frequency, and proportional only to the modulating signal. With phase modulation this is done by including a frequency-correcting network in the transmitter. The audio-correction network must have an attenuation that varies directly with frequency, and this requirement is easily met by a very simple resistance-capacitance network.

The only disadvantage of phase modulation, as compared to direct frequency modulation such as is obtained through the use of a reactance-tube modulator, is the fact that very little frequency deviation is produced directly by the phase moduator. The deviation produced by a phase modulator is independent of the actual carrier frequency on which the modulator operates, but is dependent only on the phase deviation which is being produced and on the modulation frequency. Expressed as an equation:

$$F_d = M_p \text{ modulating frequency}$$

where,

F_d is the frequency deviation one way from the mean value of the carrier,

M_p is the phase deviation accompanying modulation expressed in radians (a radian is approximately 57.3°).

Thus, to take an example, if the phase deviation is ½ radian and the modulating frequency is 1000 Hz, the frequency deviation applied to the carrier being passed through the phase modulator will be 500 Hz.

It is easy to see that an enormous amount of multiplication of the carrier frequency is required in order to obtain from a phase modulator the frequency deviation of 75 kHz required for commercial f-m broadcasting. However, for amateur and commercial narrow-band f-m work (nbfm) only a quite reasonable number of multiplier stages are required to obtain a deviation ratio of approximately one.

Actually, phase modulation of approximately one-half radian on the output of a crystal oscillator in the 80-meter band will give adequate deviation for 29-MHz nbfm radiotelephony. For example; if the crystal frequency is 3700 kHz, the deviation in phase produced is ½ radian, and the modulating frequency is 500 Hz, the deviation in the 80-meter band will be 250 Hz. But when the crystal frequency is multiplied on up to 29,600 kHz the frequency deviation will also be multiplied by 8 so that the resulting deviation on the 10-meter band will be 2 kHz either side of the carrier for a total swing in carrier frequency of 4 kHz. This amount of deviation is quite adequate for nbfm work.

Odd-harmonic distortion is produced when frequency-modulation is obtained by the phase-modulation method, and the amount of this distortion that can be tolerated is the limiting factor in determining the amount of phase modulation that can be used. Since the aforementioned frequency-correcting network causes the lowest modulating frequency to have the greatest amplitude, maximum phase modulation takes place at the lowest modulating frequency, and the amount of

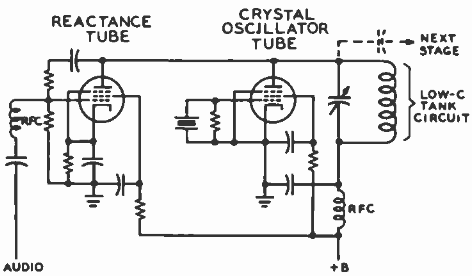


Figure 11

REACTANCE-TUBE MODULATION OF CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR STAGE

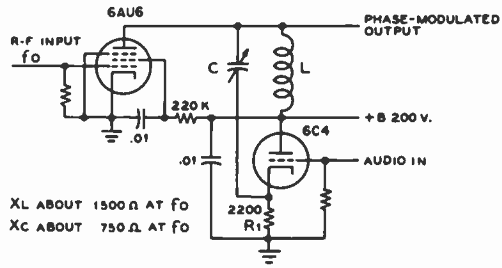


Figure 13

CATHODE-FOLLOWER PHASE MODULATOR

The phase modulator illustrated above is quite satisfactory when the stage is to be operated on a single frequency or over a narrow range of frequencies.

distortion that can be tolerated at this frequency determines the maximum deviation that can be obtained by the p-m method. For high-fidelity broadcasting, the deviation produced by phase modulation is limited to an amount equal to about one-third of the lowest modulating frequency. But for nbfm work the deviation may be as high as 0.6 of the modulating frequency before distortion becomes objectionable on voice modulation. In other terms this means that phase deviations as high as 0.6 radian may be used for amateur and commercial nbfm transmission.

Phase-Modulation Circuits A simple reactance modulator normally used for f-m may also be used for phase modulation by connecting it to the plate circuit of a crystal oscillator stage as shown in figure 11.

Another p-m circuit, suitable for operation on 20, 15, and 10 meters with the use of 80-meter crystals is shown in figure 12. A double-triode 12AX7 is used as a combination Pierce crystal oscillator and phase modulator. C_1 should not be thought of as a neutralizing capacitor, but rather as an adjustment for the phase of the r-f voltage acting between the grid and plate of the 12AX7 phase modulator. C_2 acts as a phase-angle and magnitude control, and both these

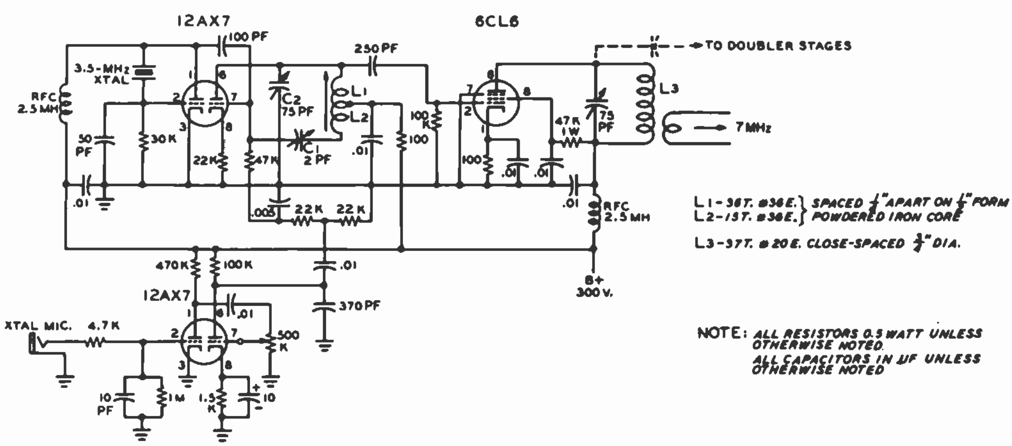


Figure 12

REACTANCE MODULATOR FOR 10, 15, AND 20 METER OPERATION

capacitors should be adjusted for maximum phase-modulation capabilities of the circuit. Resonance of the circuit is established by the iron slug of coil L_1-L_2. A 6CL6 is used as a doubler to 7 MHz and delivers approximately 2 watts on this band. Additional doubler stages may be added after the 6CL6 stage to reach the desired band of operation.

Still another p-m circuit, which is quite widely used commercially, is shown in figure 13. In this circuit L and C are made resonant at a frequency which is 0.707 times the operating frequency. Hence at the operating frequency the inductive reactance is twice the capacitive reactance. A cathode-follower tube acts as a variable resistance in series with L and C to make up the tank circuit. The operating point of the cathode follower should be chosen so that the effective resistance in series with the tank circuit (made up of the resistance of the cathode-follower tube in parallel with the cathode bias resistor of the cathode follower) is equal to the capacitive reactance of the tank capacitor at the operating frequency. The circuit is capable of about plus or minus ½ radian deviation with tolerable distortion.

Measurement of Deviation When a single-frequency modulating voltage is used with an f-m transmitter the relative amplitudes of the various sidebands and the carrier vary widely as the deviation is varied by increasing or decreasing the amount of modulation. Since the relationship between the amplitudes of the various sidebands and carrier to the audio modulating frequency and the deviation is known, a simple method of measuring the deviation of a frequency-modulated transmitter is possible. In making the measurement, the result is given in the form of the modulation index for a certain amount of audio input. As previously described, the modulation index is the frequency of the audio modulation.

The measurement is made by applying a sine-wave audio voltage of known frequency to the transmitter, and increasing the modulation until the amplitude of the carrier component of the frequency-modulated wave reaches zero. The modulation index for zero carrier may then be determined from the table below. As may be seen from the table, the first point of zero carrier is obtained when the modulation index has a value of 2.405—in other words, when the deviation is 2.405 times the modulation frequency. For example, if a modulation frequency of 1000 Hz is used, and the modulation is increased until the first carrier null is obtained, the deviation will then be 2.405 times the modulation frequency, or 2.405 kHz. If the modulating frequency happened to be 2000 Hz, the deviation at the first null would be 4.810 kHz. Other carrier nulls will be obtained when the index is 5.52, 8.654, and at increasing values separated approximately by π. The following is a listing of the modulation index at successive carrier nulls up to the tenth:

Zero carrier point no.	Modulation index
1	2.405
2	5.520
3	8.654
4	11.792
5	14.931
6	18.071
7	21.212
8	24.353
9	27.494
10	30.635

The only equipment required for making the measurements is a calibrated audio oscillator of good wave form, and a communication receiver equipped with a beat oscillator and crystal filter. The receiver should be used with its crystal filter set for minimum bandwidth to exclude sidebands spaced from the carrier by the modulation frequency. The unmodulated carrier is accurately tuned on the receiver with the beat oscillator operating. Then modulation from the audio oscillator is applied to the transmitter, and the modulation is increased until the first carrier null is obtained. This carrier null will correspond to a modulation index of 2.405, as previously mentioned. Successive null points will correspond to the indices listed in the table.

A volume indicator in the transmitter audio system may be used to measure the audio level required for different amounts of deviation, and the indicator thus calibrated in terms of frequency deviation. If the measurements are made at the fundamental frequency of the oscillator, it will be necessary to multiply the frequency deviation by the harmonic upon which the transmitter is operating, of course. It will probably be most convenient to make the determination at some frequency intermediate between that of the oscillator and that at which the transmitter is operating, and then to multiply the result by the frequency multiplication between that frequency and the transmitter output frequency.

14-4 Reception of F-M Signals

A conventional communications receiver may be used to receive narrow-band f-m transmission, although performance will be much poorer than can be obtained with an nbfm receiver or adapter. However, a receiver specifically designed for f-m reception must be used when it is desired to receive high deviation f-m such as used by f-m broadcast stations, TV sound, and mobile communications.

The f-m receiver must have, first of all, a bandwidth sufficient to pass the range of frequencies generated by the f-m transmitter. And since the receiver must be superheterodyne if it is to have good sensitivity at the frequencies to which frequency modulation is restricted, i-f bandwidth is an important factor in its design.

The second requirement of the f-m receiver is that it incorporate some sort of device for converting frequency changes into amplitude changes, in other words, a detector operating on frequency variations rather than amplitude variations. The third requirement, and one which is necessary if the full noise-reducing capabilities of the f-m system of transmission are desired, is a limiting device to eliminate amplitude variations before they reach the detector. A block diagram of the essential parts of an f-m receiver is shown in figure 14.

The Frequency Detector The simplest device for converting frequency variations to amplitude variations is an "off-tune" resonant circuit, as illustrated in figure 15. With the carrier tuned in at point A, a certain amount of r-f voltage will be developed across the tuned circuit, and, as the frequency is varied either side of this frequency by the modulation, the r-f voltage will increase and decrease to point C and B in accordance with the modulation. If the voltage across the tuned circuit is applied to an ordinary detector, the detector output will vary in accordance with the modulation, the amplitude of the variation being proportional to the deviation of the signal, and the rate being equal to the modulation frequency. It is obvious from figure 15 that only a small portion of the resonance curve is usable for linear conversion of frequency variations into amplitude variations, since the linear portion of the curve is rather

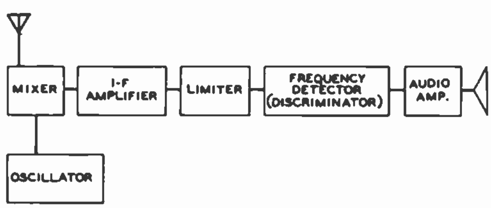


Figure 14

F-M RECEIVER BLOCK DIAGRAM

Up to the amplitude limiter stage, the f-m receiver is similar to an a-m receiver, except for a somewhat wider i-f bandwidth. The limiter removes any amplitude modulation, and the frequency detector following the limiter converts frequency variations into amplitude variations.

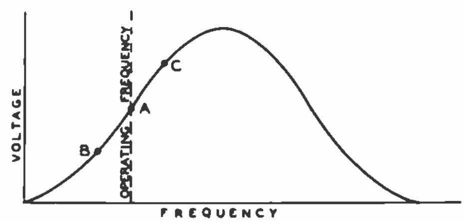


Figure 15

SLOPE DETECTION OF F-M SIGNAL

One side of the response characteristic of a tuned circuit or of an i-f amplifier may be used as shown to convert frequency variations of an incoming signal into amplitude variations.

short. Any frequency variation which exceeds the linear portion will cause distortion of the recovered audio. It is also obvious by inspection of figure 15 that an a-m receiver used in this manner is vulnerable to signals on the peak of the resonance curve and also to signals on the other side of the resonance curve. Further, no noise-limiting action is afforded by this type of reception. This system, therefore, is not recommended for f-m reception, although it may be widely used by amateurs for occasional nbfm reception.

Travis Discriminator Another form of frequency detector or *discriminator*, is shown in figure 16. In this arrangement two tuned circuits are used, one tuned on each side of the i-f amplifier frequency, and with their resonant frequencies spaced slightly more than the expected transmitter swing. Their outputs are combined in a differential rectifier so that the voltage across series load resistors R_1 and R_2 is equal to the algebraic sum of the individual output voltages of each rectifier. When a signal at the i-f midfrequency is received, the voltages across the load resistors are equal and opposite, and the sum voltage is zero. As the r-f signal varies from the midfrequency, however, these individual voltages become unequal, and a voltage having the polarity of the larger voltage and equal to the difference between the two voltages appears across the series resistors, and is applied to the audio amplifier. The relationship between frequency and discriminator output voltage is shown in figure 17. The separation of the discriminator peaks and the linearity of the output voltage-versus-frequency curve depend on the discriminator frequency, the Q of the tuned circuits, and the value of the diode load resistors. As the intermediate (and discriminator) frequency is increased, the peaks must be separated further to secure good linearity and output. Within limits, as the diode load resistance or the Q is reduced, the linearity improves, and the separation between the peaks must be greater.

Foster-Seeley Discriminator The most widely used form of discriminator is that shown in figure 18. This type of discriminator yields an output voltage-versus-frequency characteristic similar to that shown in figure 19. Here, again, the output voltage is equal to the algebraic sum of the voltages developed across the load resistors of the two diodes, the resistors being connected in series to ground. However, this *Foster-Seeley* discriminator requires only two tuned circuits instead of the three used in the previous discriminator. The operation of the circuit results from the phase relationships existing in a transformer having a tuned secondary. In effect, as a close examination of the circuit will reveal, the primary circuit is in series for r.f. with each half of the secondary to ground. When the received. signal is at the resonant frequency of the secondary, the r-f voltage across the secondary is 90 degrees out of phase with that across the primary. Since each diode is connected across one half of the secondary winding and the primary winding in series, the resultant r-f voltages applied to each are equal, and the voltages developed across each diode load resistor are equal and of opposite

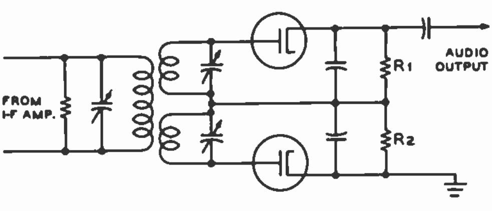


Figure 16

TRAVIS DISCRIMINATOR

This type of discriminator makes use of two off-tuned resonant circuits coupled to a single primary winding. The circuit is capable of excellent linearity, but is difficult to align.

As its "center" frequency the discriminator produces zero output voltage. On either side of this frequency it gives a voltage of a polarity and magnitude which depend on the direction and amount of frequency shift.

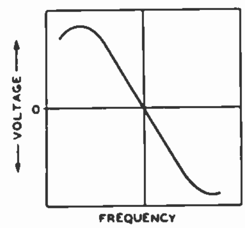


Figure 17

DISCRIMINATOR VOLTAGE-FREQUENCY CURVE

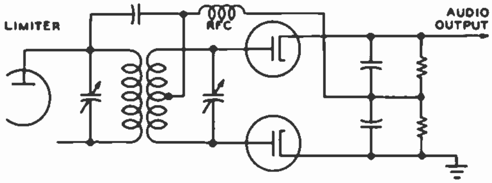


Figure 18

FOSTER-SEELEY DISCRIMINATOR

This discriminator is the most widely used circuit since it is capable of excellent linearity and is relatively simple to align when proper test equipment is available.

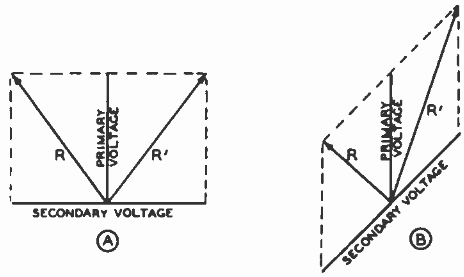


Figure 19

DISCRIMINATOR VECTOR DIAGRAM

A signal at the resonant frequency of the secondary will cause the secondary voltage to be 90 degrees out of phase with the primary voltage, as shown at A, and the resultant voltages R and R' are equal. If the signal frequency changes, the phase relationship also changes, and the resultant voltages are no longer equal, as shown at B. A differential rectifier is used to give an output voltage proportional to the difference between R and R'.

polarity. Hence, the net voltage between the top of the load resistors and ground is zero. This is shown vectorially in figure 19A where the resultant voltages R and R' which are applied to the two diodes are shown to be equal when the phase angle between primary and secondary voltages is 90 degrees. If, however, the signal varies from the resonant frequency, the 90-degree phase relationship no longer exists between primary and secondary.

The result of this effect is shown in figure 19B where the secondary r-f voltage is no longer 90 degrees out of phase with respect to the primary voltage. The resultant voltages applied to the two diodes are now no longer equal, and a d-c voltage proportional to the difference between the r-f voltages applied to the two diodes will exist across the series load resistors. As the signal frequency varies back and forth across the resonant frequency of the discriminator, an a-c voltage of the same frequency as the original modulation, and proportional to the deviation, is developed and passed on to the audio amplifier.

Ratio Detector One of the more recent types of f-m detector circuits, called the *ratio detector* is diagrammed in figure 20. The input transformer can be designed so that the parallel input voltage to the diodes can be taken from a tap on the primary of the transformer, or this voltage may be obtained from a tertiary winding coupled to the primary. The r-f choke used must have high impedance at the intermediate frequency used in the receiver, although this choke is not needed if the transformer has a tertiary winding.

The circuit of the ratio detector appears very similar to that of the more conventional discriminator arrangement. However, it will be noted that the two diodes in the ratio detector are polarized so that their d-c output voltages add, as contrasted to the Foster-Seeley circuit wherein the diodes are polarized so that the d-c output voltages buck

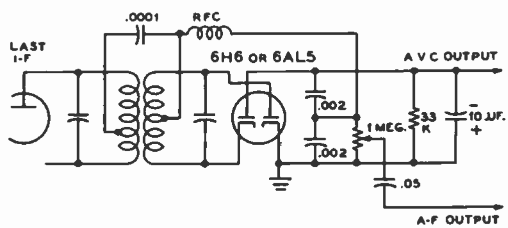


Figure 20

RATIO-DETECTOR CIRCUIT

The parallel voltage to the diodes in a ratio detector may be obtained from a tap on the primary winding of the transformer or from a third winding. Note that one of the diodes is reversed from the system used with the Foster-Seeley discriminator, and that the output circuit is completely different. The ratio detector does not have to be preceded by a limiter, but is more difficult to align for distortion-free output than the conventional discriminator.

each other. At the center frequency to which the discriminator transformer is tuned, the voltage appearing at the top of the 1-megohm potentiometer will be one-half the d-c voltage appearing at the *avc output* terminal, since the contribution of each diode will be the same. However, as the input frequency varies to one side or the other of the tuned value (while remaining within the passband of the i-f amplifier feeding the detector) the relative contributions of the two diodes will be different. The voltage appearing at the top of the 1-megohm volume control will increase for frequency deviations in one direction and will decrease for frequency deviations in the other direction from the mean or tuned value of the transformer. The audio output voltage is equal to the ratio of the relative contributions of the two diodes, hence the name ratio detector.

The ratio detector offers several advantages over the simple discriminator circuit. The circuit does not require the use of a limiter preceding the detector since the circuit is inherently insensitive to amplitude modulation on an incoming signal. This factor alone means that the r-f and i-f gain ahead of the detector can be much less than the conventional discriminator for the same over-all sensitivity. Further, the circuit provides avc voltage for controlling the gain of the preceding r-f and i-f stages. The ratio detector is, however, susceptible to variations in the amplitude of the incoming signal as in any other detector circuit except the discriminator *with* a limiter preceding it, so that avc should be used on the stage preceding the detector.

Limiters The limiter of an f-m receiver using a conventional discriminator serves to remove amplitude modulation and pass on to the discriminator a frequency-modulated signal of constant amplitude; a typical circuit is shown in figure 21. The limiter tube is operated as an i-f stage with very low plate voltage and with grid-leak bias, so that it overloads quite easily. Up to a certain point the output of the limiter will increase with an increase in signal. Above this point, however, the limiter becomes overloaded, and further large increases in signal will not give any increase in output. To operate successfully, the limiter must be supplied with a large amount of signal, so that the amplitude of its output will not change for rather wide variations in amplitude of the signal. Noise, which causes little frequency modulation but much amplitude modulation of the received signal, is virtually wiped out in the limiter.

The voltage across the grid resistor varies with the amplitude of the received signal. For this reason, conventional amplitude-modulated signals may be received on the f-m receiver by connecting the input of the audio amplifier to the top of this resistor, rather than to the discriminator output. When properly filtered by a simple RC circuit, the voltage across the grid resistor may also be used as avc voltage for the receiver. When the limiter is operating properly avc is neither necessary nor desirable, however, for f-m reception alone.

Receiver Design Considerations One of the most important factors in the design of an f-m receiver is the frequency swing which it is intended to handle. It will be apparent from figure 17 that if the straight portion of the discriminator circuit covers a wider range of frequencies than those generated by the transmitter, the audio output will be reduced from the maximum value of which the receiver is capable.

In this respect, the term *modulation percentage* is more applicable to the f-m receiver than it is to the transmitter, since the modulation capability of the communication system is limited by the receiver bandwidth and the discriminator characteristic; full utilization of the linear portion of the characteristic amounts, in effect, to 100 percent modulation. This means that some sort of standard must be agreed on, for any particular type of communication, to make it unnecessary to vary the transmitter swing to accommodate different receivers.

Two considerations influence the receiver bandwidth necessary for any particular type of communication. These are the maximum audio frequency which the system will handle, and the deviation ratio which will be employed. For voice communication, the maximum audio frequency is more or less fixed at 3000 to 4000 Hz. In the matter of deviation ratio, however, the amount of noise suppression which the f-m system will

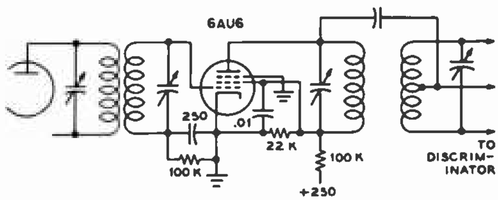


Figure 21

LIMITER CIRCUIT

One, or sometimes two, limiter stages normally precede the discriminator so that a constant signal level will be fed to the f-m detector. This procedure eliminates amplitude variations in the signal fed to the discriminator, so that it will respond only to frequency changes.

provide is influenced by the ratio chosen, since the improvement in signal-to-noise ratio which the f-m system shows over amplitude modulation is equivalent to a constant *multiplied by the deviation ratio.* This assumes that the signal is somewhat stronger than the noise at the receiver, however, as the advantages of wideband frequency modulation in regard to noise suppression disappear when the signal-to-noise ratio approaches unity.

On the other hand, a low deviation ratio is more satisfactory for strictly communication work, where readability at low signal-to-noise ratios is more important than additional noise suppression when the signal is already appreciably stronger than the noise.

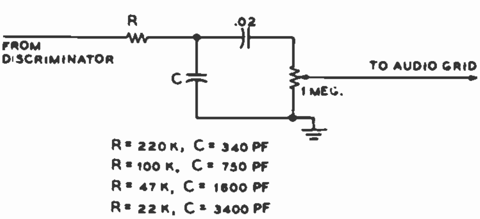


Figure 22

75-MICROSECOND DE-EMPHASIS CIRCUIT

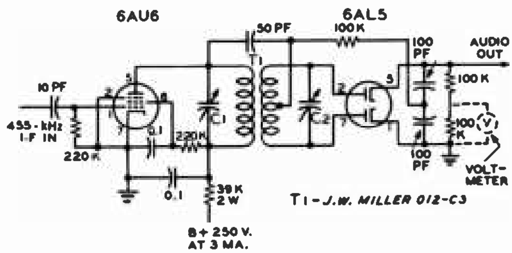
The audio signal transmitted by f-m and TV stations has received high-frequency pre-emphasis, so that a de-emphasis circuit should be included between the output of the f-m detector and the input of the audio system.

As mentioned previously, broadcast f-m practice is to use a deviation ratio of 5. When this ratio is applied to a voice-communication system, the total swing becomes 30 to 40 kHz. With lower deviation ratios, such as are most frequently used for voice work, the swing becomes proportionally less, until at a deviation ratio of 1 the swing is equal to twice the highest audio frequency. Actually, however, the receiver bandwidth must be slightly greater than the expected transmitter swing, since for distortionless reception the receiver must pass the complete band of energy generated by the transmitter, and this band will always cover a range somewhat wider than the transmitter swing.

Pre-Emphasis and De-Emphasis Standards in f-m broadcast and TV sound work call for the pre-emphasis of all audio modulating frequencies above about 2000 Hz, with a rising slope such as would be produced by a 75-microsecond RL network. Thus the f-m receiver should include a compensating de-emphasis RC network with a time constant of 75 microseconds so that the over-all frequency response from microphone to speaker will approach linearity. The use of pre-emphasis and de-emphasis in this manner results in a considerable improvement in the over-all signal-to-noise ratio of an f-m system. Appropriate values for the de-emphasis network, for different values of circuit impedance are given in figure 22.

A NBFM 455-kHz Adapter Unit The unit diagrammed in figure 23 is designed to provide nbfm reception when attached to any communication receiver having a 455-kHz i-f amplifier. Although nbfm can be received on an a-m receiver by tuning the receiver to one side or the other of the incoming signal, a tremendous improvement in signal-to-noise ratio and in signal to amplitude ratio will be obtained by the use of a true f-m detector system.

The adapter uses two tubes. A 6AU6 is used as a limiter, and a 6AL5 as a discriminator. The audio level is approximately 10 volts peak for the maximum deviation which can be handled by a conventional 455-kHz



NOTE: *ALL CAPACITORS IN µF UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED*
ALL RESISTORS 0.5 WATT UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED

Figure 23

NBFM ADAPTER FOR 455-kHz I-F SYSTEM

i-f system. The unit may be tuned by placing a high resistance d-c voltmeter across R_1 and tuning the trimmers of the i-f transformer for maximum voltage when an unmodulated signal is injected into the i-f strip of the receiver. The voltmeter should next be connected across the audio output terminal of the discriminator. The receiver is now tuned back and forth across the frequency of the incoming signal, and the movement of the voltmeter noted. When the receiver is exactly tuned on the signal the voltmeter reading should be zero. When the receiver is tuned to one side of center, the voltmeter reading should increase to a maximum value and then decrease gradually to zero as the signal is tuned out of the passband of the receiver. When the receiver is tuned to the other side of the signal the voltmeter should increase to the same maximum value but in the opposite direction or polarity, and then fall to zero as the signal is tuned out of the passband. It may be necessary to make small adjustments to C_1 and C_2 to make the voltmeter read zero when the signal is tuned in the center of the passband.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

Radioteletype Systems

Teleprinting is a form of intelligence based on a simple binary (on-off) code designed for electromechanical transmission. The code consists of d-c pulses generated by a special electric typewriter, which can be reproduced at a distance by a separate machine. The pulses may be transmitted from one machine to another by wire or by a radio circuit. When radio transmission is used, the system is termed *radioteletype* (RTTY). The name *teletype* is a registered trademark of *Teletype Corporation* and the term *teleprinter* is used in preference to the registered term.

15-1 Radioteletype Systems

The d-c pulses that comprise the teleprinter signal may be converted into three basic forms of emission suitable for radio transmission. These are: (1) *frequency-shift keying* (*FSK*), designated as F1 emission; (2) *make-break keying* (*MBK*), designated as A1 emission; and (3) *audio frequency-shift keying* (*AFSK*), designated as F2 emission.

Frequency-shift keying is achieved by varying the transmitted frequency of the radio signal a fixed amount (usually 850 Hertz or less) during the keying process. The shift is accomplished in discrete intervals designated *mark* and *space*. Both types of intervals convey information to the teleprinter. *Make-break keying* is analogous to simple c-w transmission in that the radio carrier conveys information by changing from an *on* to an *off* condition. Early RTTY circuits employed MBK equipment, which is now considered obsolete since it is less reliable than the frequency-shift technique. *Audio frequency-shift keying* employs a steady radio carrier modulated by an audio tone which is shifted in frequency according to the RTTY pulses. Other forms of information transmission may be employed by a RTTY system which also encompass translation of binary pulses into r-f signals.

The Teleprinter Code The teleprinter code consists of 26 letters of the alphabet and additional characters that accomplish machine functions, such as line feed, carriage return, bell, and upper- and lower-case shift. These special characters are required for the complete automatic process of teleprinter operation in printing received copy. Numerals, punctuation, and symbols may be taken care of in the case shift, since all transmitted letters are capitals.

The teleprinter code is made up of spaces and pulses, each of 22 milliseconds duration for radio amateur transmission at 60 words per minute. Each character is made up of five elements, plus a 22 millisecond *start space* and a 31 millisecond *stop pulse*. All characters are equal in total transmission time to 163 milliseconds duration to achieve machine synchronization at both ends of the RTTY circuit. Timing is usually accomplished by the use of synchronous motors in

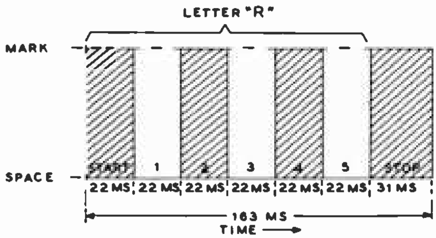


Figure 1

THE TELEPRINTER CODE

Teleprinting is based on a simple binary code made up of spaces and pulses, each of 22 milliseconds duration. Normal transmission is at the rate of 60 w.p.m. The sequence of mark and space pulses for the letter R are shown here. Start space provides time for machine synchronization and stop pulse provides time for sending and receiving mechanisms to position themselves for transmission of the following character.

the equipment, locked to the a-c line frequency. The sequence of mark and space pulses for the letter *R* is shown in figure 1. The start space provides time for synchronization of the receiving machine with the sending machine. The stop pulse provides time for the sending mechanism as well as the receiving mechanism to properly position themselves for transmission of the following character.

The FSK system normally employs the higher radio frequency as the mark and the lower frequency as the space. This relationship often holds true in the AFSK system also. The lower audio frequency may be 2125 Hz and the higher audio frequency 2975 Hz, giving a frequency difference or shift of 850 Hz. Other, more narrow shifts are gradually coming into popularity in radio amateur RTTY work.

The Teleprinter The teleprinter resembles a typewriter in appearance, having a keyboard, a type basket, a carriage, and other familiar appurtenances. The keyboard, however, is not mechanically linked to the type basket or printer. When a key is pressed on the keyboard of the sending apparatus a whole code sequence for that character is generated in the form of pulses and spaces. When this code sequence is received on a remote machine, a type bar is selected and made to print the letter corresponding to the key pressed. Synchronization of machines is accomplished by means of start and stop pulses transmitted with each character. An electromechanical device driven by the motor of the teleprinter is released when a key is pressed and transmission of the complete character is automatic.

The receiving apparatus operates in reverse sequence, being set in operation by the first pulse of a character sent by the transmitter mechanism. While each character is sent at the speed of 60 w.p.m., actual transmission of a sequence of characters may be much slower, depending on the speed of the operator. A simplified diagram of a one-way RTTY circuit is shown in figure 2.

15-2 RTTY Reception

The RTTY receiving mechanism must respond to a sequence of pulses and spaces transmitted by wire or radio. Frequency-shift keying may be demodulated by a beat-frequency technique, or by means of a discriminator as employed in f-m service. The received signal is converted into d-c pulses which are used to operate the printing magnets in the teleprinter. Conversion of RTTY signals into proper pulses is accomplished by a *receiving converter* (*terminal unit*, abbreviated TU). RTTY converters may be either i-f

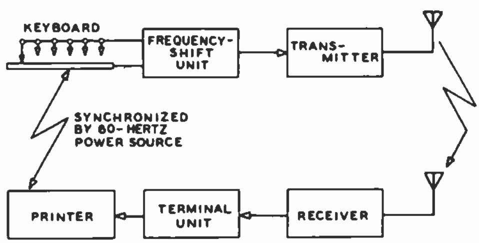


Figure 2

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ONE-WAY-RTTY CIRCUIT

The teleprinter generates code sequence in the form of on-off pulses for the alphabet and additional special characters. Teleprinter code is transmitted at rate of 60 w.p.m. by means of frequency-shift technique. The receiving apparatus drives a mechanical printer that is usually synchronized with the keyboard by the common 60-Hz power source.

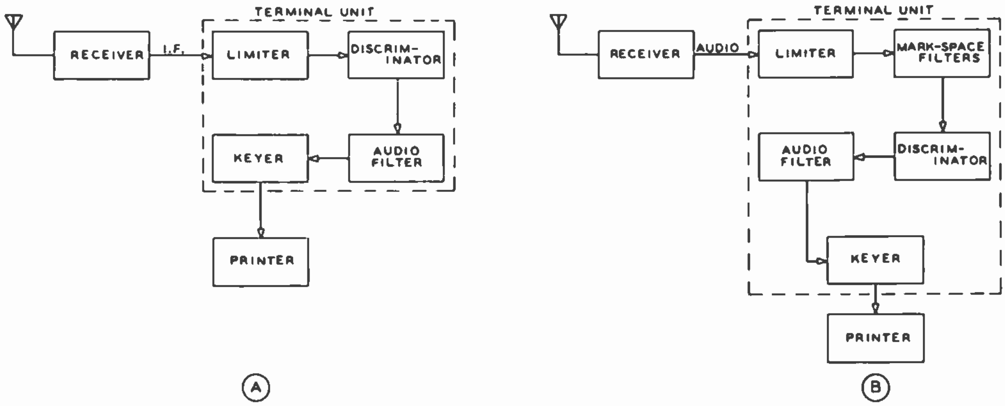


Figure 3

A shows block diagram of i-f terminal unit employing f-m discriminator technique. I-f converter requires that selectivity and interference rejection be achieved by means of selective tuned circuits of the receiver. B shows block diagram of audio-frequency terminal unit. Mark and space filters are used ahead of audio discriminator, followed by a low-pass audio filter. Beat oscillator of receiver is used to provide audio beat tones of 2125 and 2975 Hz required for nominal 850-Hz shift system.

discriminator or audio discriminator units. A block diagram of an intermediate-frequency converter is shown in figure 3A. The RTTY signal in the i-f system of the receiver is considered to be a carrier frequency-modulated by a 22.8-Hz square wave having a deviation of plus and minus 425 Hz (for 850-Hz shift). Amplitude variations are removed by the limiter stage and the discriminator stage converts the frequency shift into a 22.8-Hz waveform, applied to the teleprinter by means of an electronic keyer. In its simplest form, the i-f converter requires that adequate selectivity and interference rejection be achieved by means of the i-f system of the receiver.

The schematic of a typical i-f RTTY converter is shown in figure 4.

A block diagram of an *audio-frequency converter* is shown in figure 3B. An audio limiter is followed by mark-frequency and space-frequency filters placed ahead of the discriminator stage. A low-pass filter and electronic keyer provide the proper d-c sig-

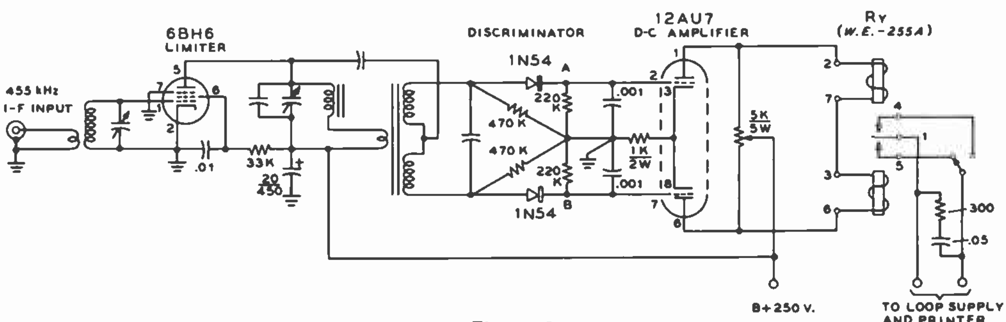


Figure 4

I-F RTTY CONVERTER

Typical i-f converter circuit illustrates this technique. Some type of indication that the RTTY signal is properly tuned is required, particularly on the hf bands. With the i-f terminal unit, a zero-center microammeter may be connected across discriminator load resistors (A-B).

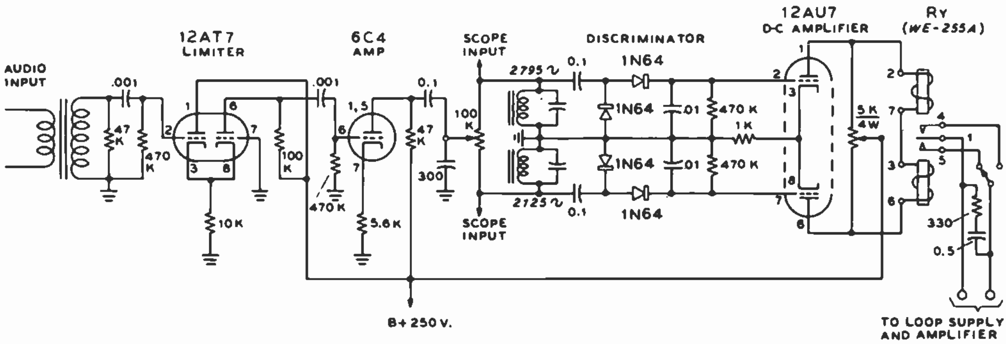


Figure 5

AUDIO RTTY CONVERTER

The audio terminal unit usually has an oscilloscope presentation in the form of a cross, with the horizontal input for "mark" and the vertical input for "space."

nal required by the teleprinter. The beat oscillator of the receiver is used to provide the beat tones of 2125 and 2975 Hz required in the usual 850-Hz shift system. Either frequency may be used for either mark or space, and the signals may be easily inverted by tuning the beat oscillator to the opposite side of the i-f passband of the receiver. The schematic of a simple audio-frequency RTTY converter is shown in figure 5.

Receiving converters of both types usually include clipping and limiting stages which hold the signal at constant amplitude and converters occasionally include pulse-forming circuits which help to overcome distortion that occurs during transmission of the intelligence.

Teleprinters are actuated by electromagnets which release the motor-driven mechanism driving the type bars. The magnets require 20 or 60 milliamperes of current which may be obtained from an electronic keyer such as the one shown in figure 6. A single teleprinter may be run as an electric typewriter on a *local loop supply* which couples the keyboard and typing mechanisms in a single circuit (figure 7).

15-3 Frequency-Shift Keying

The keyed d-c voltage from the teleprinter is used to operate a keyer circuit to shift the transmitter carrier back and forth in frequency in accord with the mark and space intelligence of the RTTY code. Frequency-shift keying (FSK) may be accomplished by varying the frequency of the transmitter oscillator in a stable manner between two chosen frequencies. The amount of shift must be held within close tolerances as the shift must match the frequency difference between the selective filters in the receiving terminal unit. The degree of fre-

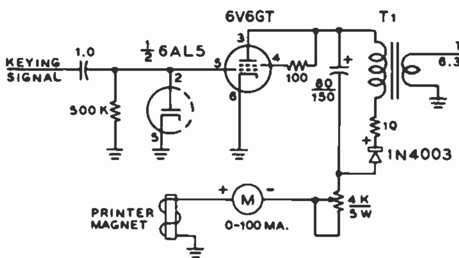


Figure 6

ELECTRONIC KEYER FOR RTTY PRINTER

The polar relay may be eliminated and the teleprinter mechanism driven directly by a keyer such as shown here. This circuit provides loop supply and keeps the printer magnets in the ground circuit. Printer coils are placed in series for 20-ma loop operation, or in parallel for 60-ma operation. Additional printer magnets are connected either in series or parallel, to a limit of two or three before inductive effects of coils introduce undesirable side effects.

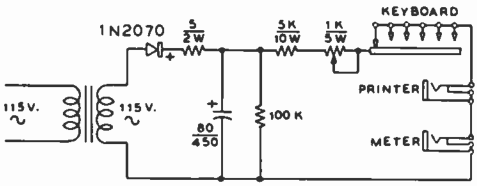


Figure 7

LOCAL LOOP SUPPLY FOR TELEPRINTER

A single teleprinter may be run as electric typewriter on local loop supply which couples the keyboard and typing mechanism in a single circuit. Depending on how the machine is wired, the keyboard and magnets can be on plugs, or connected in series internally, with only one plug (usually "red") to the loop supply.

quency shift of the oscillator is, of course, multiplied by any factor of multiplication realized in succeeding doubler stages of the transmitter. A simple diode switch suitable for many variable-frequency oscillators is shown in figure 8. Older systems often made use of a reactance tube to obtain an adjustable shift.

Auxiliary RTTY Equipment RTTY transmission by prepunched tape is made possible by means of a *transmitter-distributor* (T-D) unit. This is an electromechanical device which senses perforations in a teleprinter tape and translates this information into electrical impulses of the five-unit teleprinter code at a constant speed (55-65 w.p.m. in the amateur radio service). The information derived from the

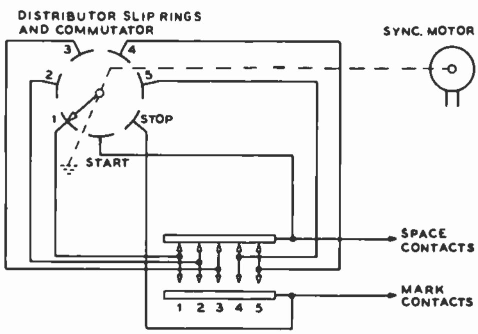


Figure 9

TRANSMITTER-DISTRIBUTOR (T-D) UNIT

T-D unit is electromechanical device which senses perforations in a teleprinter tape and translates this information into the electrical impulses of the teleprinter code. Information derived from the tape by contact fingers is transmitted in proper time sequence by a commutator-distributor driven by a constant-speed motor.

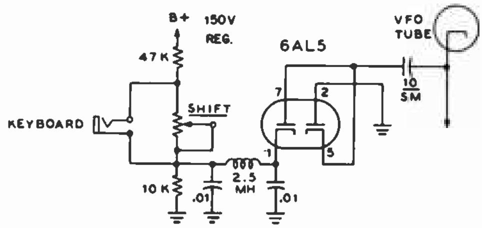


Figure 8

DIODE KEYER FOR FREQUENCY-SHIFT KEYING OF VFO

A simple diode switch may be used to vary the frequency of the transmitter in a stable manner between two chosen frequencies. The amount of shifts must match the frequency difference between the selective filters in the receiving terminal unit.

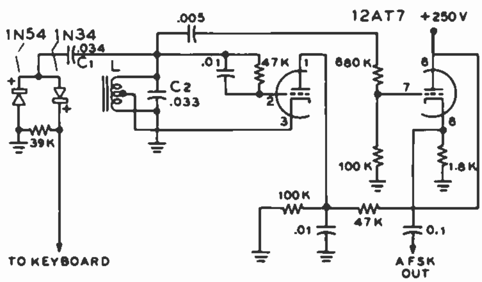


Figure 10

AFSK OSCILLATOR

Audio frequency-shift keying is often used on vhf bands to avoid problems of holding close radio-frequency stability. The L-C_2 circuit is tuned to 2975 Hz (with keyboard open). Closing the keyboard parallels capacitor C_1 and lowers the oscillator frequency to 2125 Hz. The coil L is an 88 mH toroid (with about 44" of wire removed). Capacitors C_1 and C_2 are high quality paper or mylar. Compression mica capacitors may be used as padders to place the oscillator on the correct frequencies.

punched tape by contact fingers is transmitted in the proper time sequence by a commutator-distributor driven at a constant speed by a synchronous motor (figure 9). Used in conjunction with the T-D is a *tape perforator* which punches the teleprinter code in a paper tape. The perforator operates mechanically from a teleprinter keyboard for originating messages. A *reperforator* may be connected to receiving equipment to "tape" an incoming message for storage or retransmission.

Audio Frequency-Shift Keying Audio frequency-shift keying (AFSK) is often used by radio amateurs on the vhf bands in order to avoid the problems of holding close radio-frequency stability. An audio oscillator is employed to generate a 2125-Hz tone (mark) and a 2975-Hz tone (space) when driven by the keyboard of a teleprinter, or by a tape T-D unit. The audio signal is then applied to the modulator of the vhf transmitter and the resulting amplitude-modulated signal is detected and put to use by an audio converter of the type shown in figure 4. The beat oscillator in the receiver is not used for this form of reception. AFSK is permitted only on those amateur bands on which A2 emission is authorized. A simple AFSK oscillator circuit is shown in figure 10.

Obtaining Teleprinter Machines Sources available to radio amateurs include several nonprofit RTTY societies, established in various areas of the United States for the purpose of disposing of teleprinter equipment discarded by commercial services. These societies can be contacted through active RTTY amateurs. The commercial services, including the Bell Telephone Company, generally cannot dispose of used equipment directly to radio amateurs. Commercial services should not be contacted regarding used teleprinters. Many radio amateurs, active in RTTY, rebuild machines from junked or damaged equipment at nominal cost. These amateurs are also an excellent source of maintenance support.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

Sideband Transmission

While *single-sideband transmission* (SSB) has attracted significant interest on amateur frequencies only in the past few years, the principles have been recognized and put to use in various commercial applications for many years. Expansion of single-sideband for both commercial and amateur communication has awaited the development of economical components possessing the required characteristics (such as sharp-cutoff filters and high-stability crystals) demanded by SSB techniques. The availability of such components and precision test equipment now makes possible the economical testing, adjustment, and use of SSB equipment on a wider scale than before. Many of the seemingly insurmountable obstacles of past years no longer prevent the amateur from achieving the advantages of SSB for his class of operation.

16-1 Commercial Applications of SSB

Before discussion of amateur SSB equipment, it is helpful to review some of the commercial applications of SSB in an effort to avoid problems that are already solved.

The first and only large scale use of SSB has been for multiplexing additional voice circuits on long-distance telephone toll wires. Carrier systems came into wide use during the 30's, accompanied by the development of high-Q toroids and copper-oxide ring modulators of controlled characteristics.

The problem solved by the carrier system was that of translating the 300- to 3000-Hz voice band of frequencies to a higher frequency (for example, 40.3 to 43.0 kHz) for transmission on the toll wires, and then to reverse the translation process at the receiving terminal. It was possible in some short-haul equipment to amplitude modulate a 40-kHz carrier with the voice frequencies, in which case the resulting signal would occupy a band of frequencies between 37 and 43 kHz. Since the transmission properties of wires and cable deteriorate rapidly with increasing frequency, most systems required the bandwidth conservation characteristics of single-sideband transmission. In addition, the carrier wave was generally suppressed to reduce the power handling capability of the repeater amplifiers and diode modulators. A large body of literature on the components and techniques of SSB has been generated by the continuing development effort to produce economical carrier telephone systems.

The use of SSB for overseas radiotelephony has been practiced for several years though the number of such circuits is small but growing. Moreover, the economic value of such circuits has been great enough to warrant elaborate station equipment. It is from these stations that the impression has been obtained that SSB is too complicated for all but a corps of engineers and technicians to handle. Components such as lattice filters with 40 or more crystals have suggested astronomical expense.

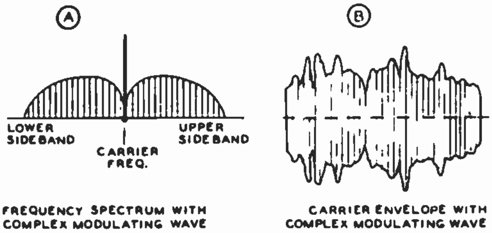


Figure 1

REPRESENTATION OF A CONVENTIONAL A-M SIGNAL

More recently, SSB techniques have been used to multiplex large numbers of voice channels on a microwave radio band using equipment principally developed for telephone carrier applications. It should be noted that all production equipment employed in these services uses the *filter method* of generating the single-sideband signal, though there is a wide variation in the types of filters actually used. The SSB signal is generated at a low frequency and at a low level, and then translated and linearly amplified to a high level at the operating frequency.

Considerable development effort has been expended on high-level phasing-type transmitters wherein the problems of linear amplification are exchanged for the problems of accurately controlled phase shifts. Such equipment has featured automatic tuning circuits, servo-driven to facilitate frequency changing, but no transmitter of this type has been sufficiently attractive to warrant appreciable production.

16-2 Derivation of Single-Sideband Signals

The single-sideband method of communication is, essentially, a procedure for obtaining more efficient use of available frequency spectrum and of available transmitter capability. As a starting point for the discussion of single-sideband signals, let us take a conventional a-m signal, such as shown in figure 1, as representing the most common method for transmitting complex intelligence such as voice or music.

It will be noted in figure 1 that there are three distinct portions to the signal: the *carrier*, and the *upper* and the *lower sideband* group. These three portions always are present in a conventional a-m signal. Of all these portions the carrier is the least necessary and the most expensive to transmit. It is an actual fact, and it can be proved mathematically (and physically with a highly selective receiver) that the carrier of an a-m signal remains unchanged in amplitude, whether it is being modulated or not. Of course the carrier *appears* to be modulated when we observe the modulated signal on a receiving system or indicator which passes a sufficiently wide band that the carrier and the modulation sidebands are viewed at the same time. This apparent change in the amplitude of the carrier with modulation is simply the result of the sidebands beating with the carrier. However, if we receive the signal on a highly selective receiver, and if we modulate the carrier with a sine wave of 3000 to 5000 Hz, we will readily see that the carrier, or either of the sidebands can be tuned in separately; the carrier amplitude, as observed on a signal strength meter, will remain constant, while the amplitude of the side-bands will vary in direct proportion to the modulation percentage.

Elimination of the Carrier and One Sideband It is obvious from the previous discussion that the carrier is superfluous so far as the transmission of intelligence is concerned. It is obviously a convenience, however, since it provides a signal at the receiving end for the sidebands to beat with and thus to reproduce the original modulating signal. It is equally true that the transmission of both sidebands under ordinary conditions is superfluous since identically the same intelligence is contained in both sidebands. Several systems for carrier and sideband elimination will be discussed in this chapter.

Power Advantage of SSB over AM Single sideband is a very efficient form of voice communication by radio. The amount of radio-frequency spectrum occupied can be no greater than the frequency range of the audio or speech signal transmitted, whereas other forms of radio transmission require from two to several times as much spectrum space. The r-f power in the transmitted SSB signal is directly proportional to the power in the original audio signal and no strong carrier is transmitted. Except for a weak pilot carrier present in some commercial usage, there is no r-f output when there is no audio input.

The power output rating of an SSB transmitter is given in terms of *peak envelope power* (PEP). This may be defined as the rms power at the crest of the modulation envelope. The peak envelope power of a conventional amplitude-modulated signal at 100% modulation is four times the carrier power. The average power input to an SSB transmitter is therefore a very small fraction of the power input to a conventional amplitude-modulated transmitter of the same power rating.

Single sideband is well suited for long-range communications because of its spectrum and power economy and because it is less susceptible to the effects of selective fading and interference than amplitude modulation. The principal advantages of SSB arise from the elimination of the high-energy carrier and from further reduction in sideband power permitted by the improved performance of SSB under unfavorable propagation conditions.

In the presence of narrow-band manmade interference, the narrower bandwidth of SSB reduces the probability of destructive interference. A statistical study of the distribution of signals on the air versus the signal strength shows that the probability of successful communication will be the same if the SSB power is equal to one-half the power of one of the two a-m sidebands. Thus SSB can give from 0 to 9 db improvement under various conditions when the *total* sideband power is equal in SSB and regular amplitude modulation. In general, it may be assumed that 3 db of the possible 9 db advantage will be realized on the average contact. In this case, the SSB power required for equivalent performance is equal to the power in one of the a-m sidebands. For example, this would rate a 100-watt SSB and a 400-watt (carrier) a-m transmitter as having equal performance. It should be noted that in this comparison it is assumed that the receiver bandwidth is just sufficient to accept the transmitted intelligence in each case.

To help evaluate other methods of comparison the following points should be con-

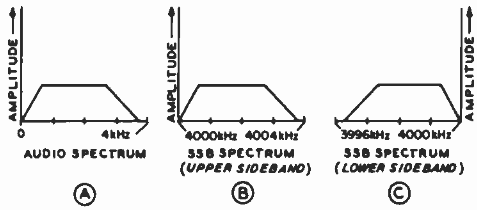


Figure 2

RELATIONSHIP OF AUDIO AND SSB SPECTRUMS

The single-sideband components are the same as the original audio components except that the frequency of each is raised by the frequency of the carrier. The relative amplitude of the various components remains the same.

sidered. In conventional amplitude modulation two sidebands are transmitted, each having a peak envelope power equal to 1/4 carrier power. For example, a 100-watt a-m signal will have 25-watt peak envelope power in each sideband, or a total of 50 watts. When the receiver detects this signal, the voltages of the two sidebands are added in the detector. Thus the detector output voltage is equivalent to that of a 100-watt SSB signal. This method of comparison says that a 100-watt SSB transmitter is just equivalent to a 100-watt a-m transmitter. This assumption is valid only when the receiver bandwidth used for SSB is the same as that required for amplitude modulation (e.g., 6 kHz), when there is no noise or interference other than broadband noise, and if the a-m signal is not degraded by propagation. By using half the bandwidth for SSB reception (e.g., 3 kHz) the noise is reduced 3 db so the 100-watt SSB signal becomes equivalent to a 200-watt carrier a-m signal. It is also possible for the a-m signal to be degraded another 3 db on the average due to narrow-band interference and poor propagation conditions, giving a possible 4 to 1 power advantage to the SSB signal.

It should be noted that 3 db signal-to-noise ratio is lost when receiving only one sideband of an a-m signal. The narrower receiving bandwidth reduces the noise by 3 db but the 6 db advantage of coherent detection is lost, leaving a net loss of 3 db. Poor propagation will degrade this "one-sideband" reception of an a-m signal less than double-sideband reception, however. Also under

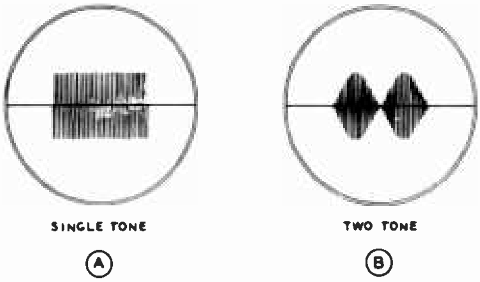


Figure 3

A SINGLE SINE-WAVE TONE INPUT TO AN SSB TRANSMITTER RESULTS IN A STEADY SINGLE SINE WAVE R-F OUTPUT (A). TWO AUDIO TONES OF EQUAL AMPLITUDE BEAT TOGETHER TO PRODUCE HALF-SINE WAVES AS SHOWN IN B

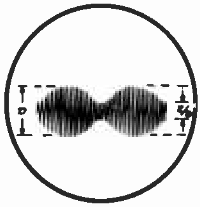


Figure 5

TWO-TONE SSB ENVELOPE WHEN ONE TONE HAS TWICE THE AMPLITUDE OF THE OTHER

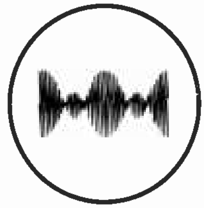


Figure 6

THREE-TONE SSB ENVELOPE WHEN EQUAL TONES OF EQUAL FREQUENCY SPACINGS ARE USED

severe narrowband interference conditions (e.g., an adjacent strong signal) the ability to reject all interference on one side of the carrier is a great advantage.

The Nature of an SSB Signal The nature of a single-sideband signal is easily visualized by noting that the SSB signal components are exactly the same as the original audio components except that the frequency of each is *raised* by the frequency of the carrier. The relative amplitude of the various components remains the same, however. (The first statement is only true for the upper sideband since the lower sideband frequency components are the *difference* between the carrier and the original audio signal). Figure 2A, B, and C shows how the audio spectrum is simply moved up into the radio spectrum to give the upper sideband. The lower sideband is the same except inverted, as shown in figure 2C. Either sideband may be used. It is apparent that the carrier frequency of an SSB signal can only be changed by adding or subtracting to the original carrier frequency. This is done by heterodyning—using converter or mixer circuits similar to those employed in a superheterodyne receiver.

It is noted that a single sine-wave tone input to an SSB transmitter results in a single steady sine-wave r-f output, as shown in figure 3A. Since it is difficult to measure the performance of a linear amplifier with a single tone, it has become standard practice to use two tones of equal amplitude for test purposes. The two radio frequencies thus produced beat together to give the SSB envelope shown in figure 3B. This figure has the shape of half sine waves, and from one null to the next represents one full cycle of the difference frequency. How this envelope is generated is shown more fully in figures 4A and 4B; f_1 and f_2 represent the two tone signals. When a vector representing the lower-frequency tone signal is used as a reference, the other vector rotates around it as shown, and this action generates the SSB envelope. When the two vectors are exactly opposite in phase, the output is zero and this causes the null in the envelope. If one tone has twice the amplitude of the other, the envelope shape is shown in figure 5. Figure 6 shows the SSB envelope of three equal tones of equal frequency spacings and at one

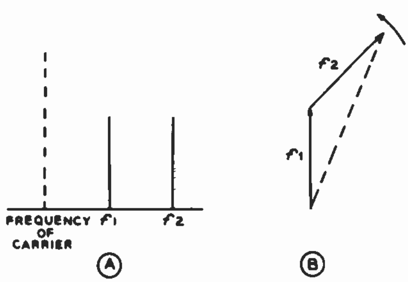
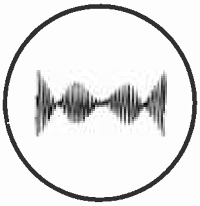


Figure 4

VECTOR REPRESENTATION OF TWO-TONE SSB ENVELOPE

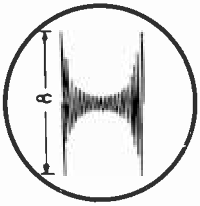


(A)

Figure 7A

FOUR TONE SSB ENVELOPE

When equal tones with equal frequency spacings are used



(B)

Figure 7B

SSB ENVELOPE OF A SQUARE WAVE.

Peak of wave reaches infinite amplitude.

particular phase relationship. Figure 7A shows the SSB envelope of four equal tones with equal frequency spacings and at one particular phase relationship. The phase relationships chosen are such that at some instant the vectors representing the several tones are all in phase. Figure 7B shows the SSB envelope of a square wave. *A pure square wave requires infinite bandwidth, so its SSB envelope requires infinite amplitude. This emphasizes the point that the SSB envelope shape is not the same as the original audio wave shape, and usually bears no similarity to it.* This is because the percentage difference between the radio frequencies is very small, even though one audio tone may be several times the other in terms of frequency. Speech clipping as used in amplitude modulation is of limited value in SSB because the SSB r-f envelopes are so different from the audio envelopes. A heavily clipped wave approaches a square wave and a square wave gives an SSB envelope with peaks of infinite amplitude as shown in figure 7B.

Carrier Frequency-Stability Requirements Reception of an SSB signal is accomplished by simply heterodyning the carrier down to zero frequency. (The conversion frequency used in the last heterodyne step is often called the *reinserted carrier*). If the SSB signal is not heterodyned down to exactly zero frequency, each frequency component of the detected audio signal will be high or low by the amount of this error. An error of 10 to 20 Hz for speech signals is acceptable from an intelligibility standpoint, but an error of the order of 50 Hz seriously degrades the intelligibility. An error of 20 Hz is not acceptable for the transmission of music, however, because the harmonic relationship of the notes would be destroyed. For example, the harmonics of 220 Hz are 440, 660, 880, etc., but a 10 Hz error gives 230, 460, 690, 920, etc., or 210, 420, 630, 840, etc., if the original error is on the other side. This error would destroy the original sound of the tones, and the harmony between the tones.

Suppression of the carrier is common in amateur SSB work, so the combined frequency stabilities of all oscillators in both the transmitting and receiving equipment add together to give the frequency error found in detection. In order to overcome much of the frequency stability problem, it is common commercial practice to transmit a *pilot carrier* at a reduced amplitude. This is usually 20 db below one tone of a two-tone signal, or 26 db below the peak envelope power rating of the transmitter. This pilot carrier is filtered out from the other signals at the receiver and either amplified and used for the reinserted carrier or used to control the frequency of a local oscillator. By this means, the frequency drift of the carrier is eliminated as an error in detection.

Advantage of SSB with Selective Fading On long distance communication circuits using amplitude modulation, selective fading often causes severe distortion and at times makes the signal unintelligible. When one sideband is weaker than the other, distortion results; but when the carrier becomes weak and the sidebands are strong, the distortion is extremely severe and the signal may sound like "monkey chatter." This is because a carrier of at least twice the amplitude of either sideband is necessary to demodulate the signal properly. This can be overcome by using *exalted-carrier reception* in which the carrier is amplified separately and then reinserted before the signal is demodulated or detected. This is a great help, but the reinserted carrier must be very close to the same phase as the original carrier. For example, if the reinserted carrier were 90 degrees from the original source, the a-m signal would be converted to phase modula-

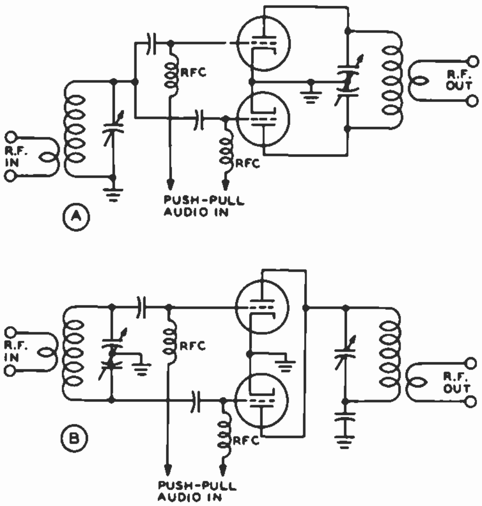


Figure 8

SHOWING TWO COMMON TYPES OF BALANCED MODULATORS

Notice that a balanced modulator changes the circuit condition from single ended to push-pull, or vice versa. Choice of circuit depends on external circuit conditions since both the A and B arrangements can give satisfactory generation of a double-sideband suppressed-carrier signal.

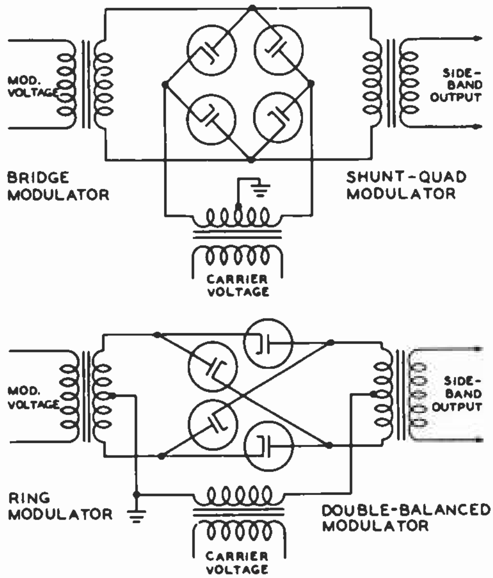


Figure 9

TWO TYPES OF DIODE BALANCED MODULATOR

Such balanced modulator circuits are commonly used in carrier telephone work and in single-sideband systems where the carrier frequency and modulating frequency are relatively close together. Vacuum diodes, copper-oxide rectifiers, or crystal diodes may be used in the circuits.

tion and the usual a-m detector would deliver no output.

The phase of the reinserted carrier is of no importance in SSB reception and by using a strong reinserted carrier, exalted-carrier reception is in effect realized. Selective fading with one sideband simply changes the amplitude and the frequency response of the system and very seldom causes the signal to become unintelligible. Thus the receiving techniques used with SSB are those which inherently greatly minimize distortion due to selective fading.

16-3 Carrier-Elimination Circuits

Various circuits may be employed to eliminate the carrier to provide a double-sideband signal. A selective filter may follow the carrier-elimination circuit to produce a single-sideband signal.

Two modulated amplifiers may be connected with the carrier inputs 180° out of phase, and with the carrier outputs in parallel. The carrier will be balanced out of the output circuit, leaving only the two sidebands. Such a circuit is called a *balanced modulator*.

Any nonlinear element will produce modulation. That is, if two signals are put in, sum and difference frequencies as well as the original frequencies appear in the output. This phenomenon is objectionable in amplifiers and desirable in modulators or mixers.

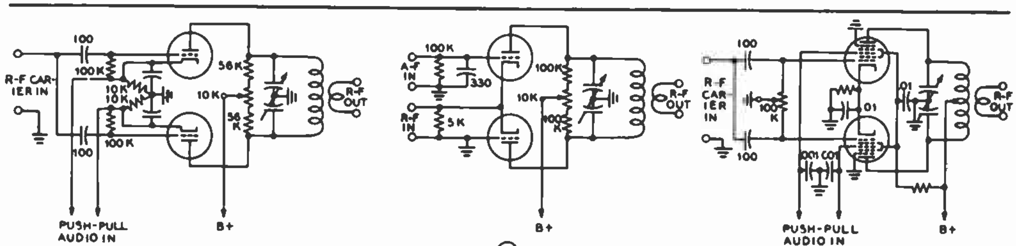
In addition to the sum and difference frequencies, other outputs (such as twice one frequency plus the other) may appear. All combinations of all harmonics of each input frequency may appear, but in general these are of decreasing amplitude with increasing order of harmonic. These outputs are usually rejected by selective circuits following the modulator. All modulators are not alike in the magnitude of these higher-order outputs. Balanced diode rings operating in the square-law region are fairly good and pentagrid converters much poorer. Excessive carrier level in tube mixers will increase the relative magnitude of the higher-order outputs. Two types of triode balanced modulators are shown in figure 8, and two types of diode modulators in figure 9. Balanced modulators employing vacuum tubes may be made to work very easily to a point. Circuits may be devised wherein both input signals may be applied to a high-impedance grid, simplifying isolation and loading problems. The most important difficulties with these vacuum-tube modulator circuits are: (1) Balance is not independent of signal level. (2) Balance drifts with time and environment. (3) The carrier level for low high-order output is critical. (4) Such circuits have limited dynamic range.

A number of typical circuits are shown in figure 10. Of the group the most satisfactory performance is to be had from plate-modulated triodes.

Diode Ring Modulators Modulation in telephone carrier equipment has been very successfully accomplished with copper-oxide double balanced *ring modulators*. More recently, germanium diodes have been applied to similar circuits. The basic diode ring circuits are shown in figure 11. The most widely applied is the double balanced ring (A). Both carrier and input are balanced with respect to the output, which is advantageous when the output frequency is not sufficiently different from the inputs to allow ready separation by filters. It should be noted that the carrier must pass through the balanced input and output transformers. Care must be taken in adapting this circuit to minimize the carrier power that will be lost in these elements. The shunt and series quad circuits are usable when the output frequencies are entirely different (i.e.: audio and r.f.). The shunt quad (B) is used with high source and load impedances and the series quad (C) with low source and load impedances. These two circuits may be adapted to use only two diodes, substituting a balanced transformer for one side of the bridge, as shown in figure 12. It should be noted that these circuits present a half-wave load to the carrier source. In applying any of these circuits, r-f chokes and capacitors must be employed to control the path of signal and carrier currents. In the shunt pair shown, a blocking capacitor is used to prevent the r-f load from shorting the audio input.

To a first approximation, the source and load impedances should be an arithmetical mean of the forward and back resistances of the diodes employed. A workable rule of thumb is that the source and load impedances be ten to twenty times the forward resistance for semiconductor rings. The high-frequency limit of operation in the case of junction and copper-oxide diodes may be appreciably extended by the use of very low source and load impedances.

Copper-oxide diodes suitable for carrier work are normally manufactured to order. They offer no particular advantage to the amateur, though their excellent long-term stability is important in commercial applications. Rectifier types intended to be used as meter rectifiers are not likely to have the balance or high-frequency response desirable in amateur SSB transmitters.



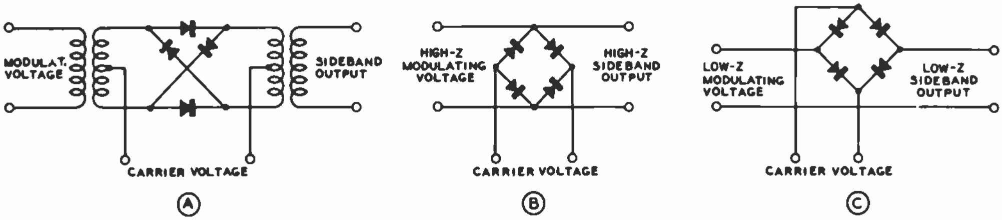
(A) PLATE MODULATED BALANCED TRIODE MODULATOR

(B) BALANCED TRIODE MODULATOR WITH SINGLE ENDED INPUT CIRCUITS

(C) BALANCED PENTAGRID CONVERTER MODULATOR

Figure 10

BALANCED MODULATORS



DOUBLE-BALANCED RING MODULATOR — SHUNT-QUAD MODULATOR — SERIES-QUAD MODULATOR

Figure 11

DIODE RING MODULATORS

Vacuum diodes such as the 6AL5 may be used as modulators. Balancing the heater-cathode capacitance is a major difficulty except when the 6AL5 is used at low source and load impedance levels. In addition, contact potentials of the order of a few tenths of a volt may also disturb low-level applications (figure 13).

The double-diode circuits appear attractive, but in general it is more difficult to balance a transformer at carrier frequency than an additional pair of diodes. Balancing potentiometers may be employed, but the actual cause of the unbalance is far more subtile, and cannot be adequately corrected with a single adjustment.

A signal produced by any of the above circuits may be classified as a *double-sideband, suppressed-carrier* signal.

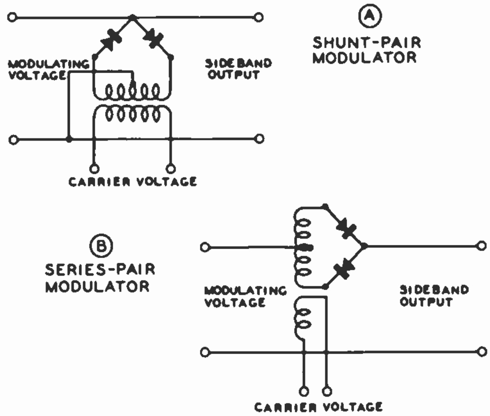
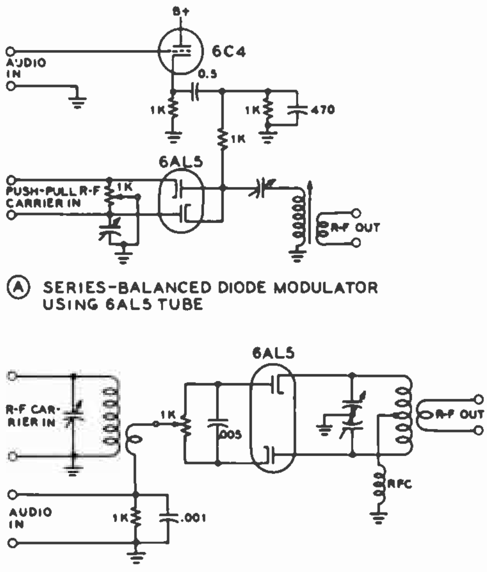


Figure 12
DOUBLE-DIODE PAIRED MODULATORS

16-4 Generation of Single-Sideband Signals

In general, there are two commonly used methods by which a single-sideband signal may be generated. These systems are: (1) the *filter method,* and (2) the *phasing method*. The systems may be used singly or in combination, and either method, in theory, may be used at the operating frequency of the transmitter or at some other frequency with the signal at the operating frequency being obtained through the use of mixers.

The Filter Method The filter method for obtaining an SSB signal is the classic method which has been in use by the telephone companies for many years both for land-line and radio communications. The mode of operation of the filter method is diagramed in figure 14, in terms of components and filters which normally would be available to the amateur or experimenter. The output of the speech amplifier passes through a conventional speech filter to limit the frequency range of the speech to about 200 to 3000 Hz. This signal then is fed to a balanced modulator along with a 50,000-Hz first carrier from a self-excited oscillator. A low-frequency balanced modulator of this type most conveniently may be made up of four diodes of the vacuum or crystal type cross-connected in a balanced bridge or ring modulator circuit. Such a modulator passes only the sideband components resulting from the sum and difference between the two signals being fed to the balanced modulator. The audio signal and the 50-kHz carrier signal from the oscillator both cancel out in the balanced modulator so that a band of frequencies between 47 and 50 kHz and another band of frequencies between 50 and 53 kHz appear in the output.



Ⓑ RING-DIODE MODULATOR USING 6AL5 TUBE

Figure 13

VACUUM DIODE MODULATOR CIRCUITS

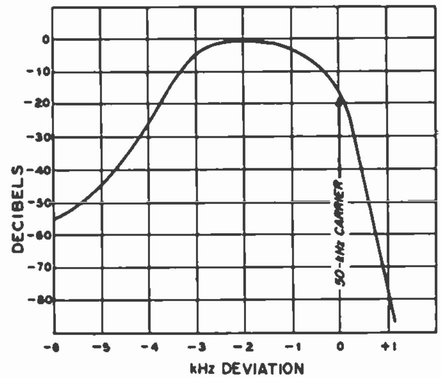


Figure 15

BANDPASS CHARACTERISTIC OF A LOW-FREQUENCY (50 kHz) SINGLE-SIDEBAND FILTER

The signals from the first balanced modulator are then fed through the most critcial component in the whole system—the first sideband filter. It is the function of this sideband filter to separate the desired 47- to 50-kHz sideband from the unneeded and undesired 50- to 53-kHz sideband. Hence this filter must have low attenuation in the region between 47 and 50 kHz, a very rapid slope in the vicinity of 50 kHz, and a very high attenuation to the sideband components falling between 50 and 53 kHz. The pass-band of this filter is shown in figure 15.

Appearing, then, at the output of the filter is a single sideband of 47 kHz to 50 kHz. This sideband may be passed through a phase inverter to obtain a balanced output, and then fed to a balanced mixer. A local oscillator operating in the range of 1750 to 1950 kHz is used as the conversion oscillator. Additional conversion stages may now be added to translate the SSB signal to the desired frequency. Since only linear amplification may be used, it is not possible to use frequency multiplying stages. Any frequency changing must be done by the beating oscillator technique. An operational circuit of this type of SSB exciter is shown in figure 16.

A second type of filter-exciter for SSB may be built around the *Collins* Mechanical Filter. Such an exciter is diagramed in figure 17. Voice frequencies in the range of 200 to 3000 Hz are amplified and fed to a low-impedance phase inverter to furnish balanced audio. This audio, together with a suitably

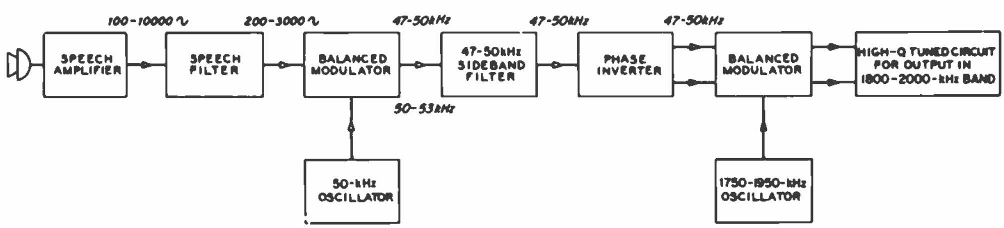


Figure 14

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF FILTER EXCITER EMPLOYING A 50-kHz SIDEBAND FILTER

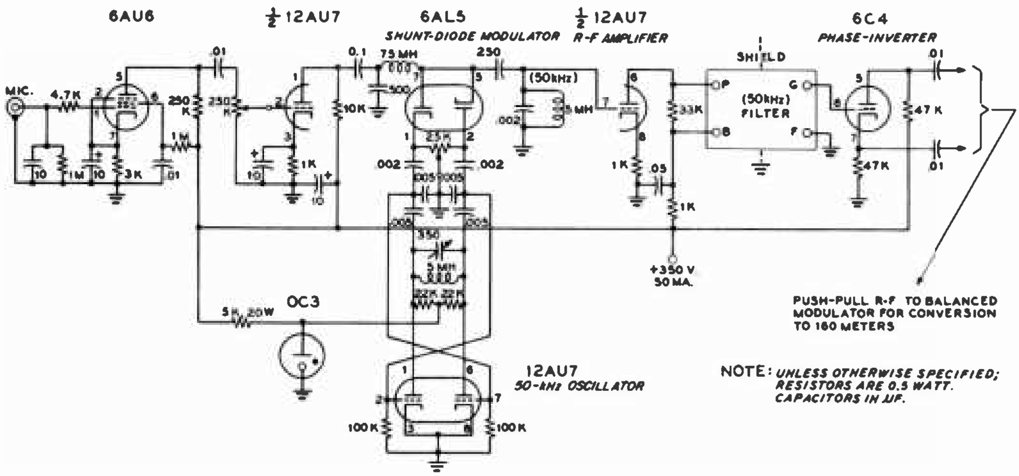


Figure 16

OPERATIONAL CIRCUIT FOR SSB EXCITER USING A 50-kHz SIDEBAND FILTER

chosen r-f signal, is mixed in a ring modulator, made up of small germanium diodes. Depending on the choice of frequency of the r-f oscillator, either the upper or lower sideband may be applied to the input of the mechanical filter. The carrier, to some extent, has been rejected by the ring modulator. Additional carrier rejection is afforded by the excellent passband characteristics of the mechanical filter. For simplicity, the mixing and filtering operation usually takes place at a frequency of 455 kHz. The single-sideband signal appearing at the output of the mechanical filter may be translated directly to a higher operating frequency. Suitable tuned circuits must follow the conversion stage to eliminate the signal from the conversion oscillator.

Wave Filters The heart of a filter-type SSB exciter is the sideband filter. Conventional coils and capacitors may be used to construct a filter based on standard wave-filter techniques. The Q of the filter inductances must be high when compared with the reciprocal of the fractional bandwidth. If a bandwidth of 3 kHz is needed at a carrier frequency of 50 kHz, the bandwidth expressed in terms of the carrier frequency is 3/50, or 6 percent. This is expressed in terms of fractional bandwidth as 1/16. For satisfactory operation, the Q of the filter inductances should be 10 times the reciprocal of this, or 160. Appropriate Q is generally obtained from toroidal inductances, though there is some possibility of using iron-core solenoids between 10 and 20 kHz.

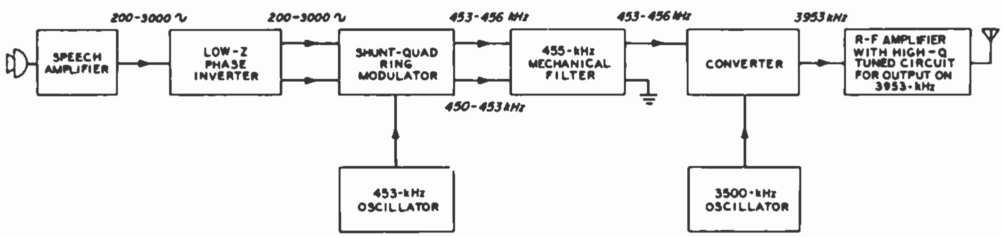
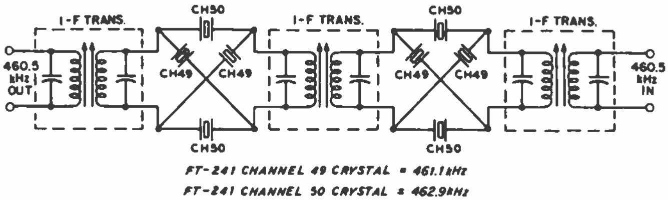


Figure 17

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF FILTER EXCITER EMPLOYING A 455-kHz MECHANICAL FILTER FOR SIDEBAND SELECTION



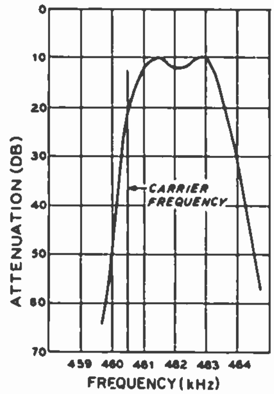


Figure 18

CRYSTAL LATTICE FILTER

Two pairs of identical crystals may be connected in a lattice filter, and filter stages cascaded, as shown. Inexpensive i-f transformers are used as coupling units and the filter passband is shown at the right. Insertion loss of this configuration is about 15 db at the center of the passband. For best results, matched pairs of crystals should be used.

A characteristic impedance below 1000 ohms should be selected to prevent distributed capacitance of the inductances from spoiling over-all performance. Paper capacitors intended for bypass work may not be trusted for stability or low loss and should not be used in filter circuits. Care should be taken that the levels of both accepted and rejected signals are low enough so that saturation of the filter inductances does not occur.

Crystal Filters The best known filter responses have been obtained with crystal filters. Types designed for program carrier service cut off 80 db in less than 50 Hz. More than 80 crystals are used in this type of filter. The crystals are cut to control reactance and resistance as well as the resonant frequency. The circuits used are based on full lattices.

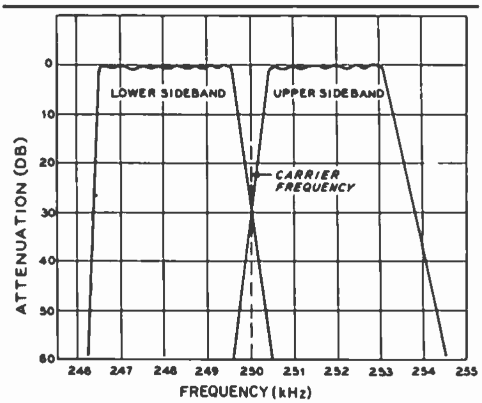


Figure 19

PASSBAND OF LOWER AND UPPER SIDEBAND MECHANICAL FILTER

The war-surplus low-frequency crystals may be adapted to this type of filter with some success. Experimental designs usually synthesize a selectivity curve by grouping sharp notches at the side of the passband. Where the width of the passband is greater than twice the spacing of the series and parallel resonance of the crystals, special circuit techniques must be used. A typical crystal filter using these surplus crystals, and its approximate passband is shown in figure 18.

Mechanical Filters Filters using mechanical resonators have been studied by a number of companies and are offered commercially by the *Collins Radio Co.* They are available in a variety of bandwidths at center frequencies of 250 and 455 kHz. The 250-kHz series is specifically intended for sideband selection. The selectivity attained by these filters is intermediate between good LC filters at low center frequencies and engineered quartz-crystal filters. A passband of two 250-kHz filters is shown in figure 19. In application of the mechanical filters some special precautions are necessary. The driving and pickup coils should be carefully resonated to the operating frequency. If circuit capacitances are unknown, trimmer capacitors should be used across the coils. Maladjustment of these tuned coils will increase insertion loss and the peak-to-valley ratio. On high-impedance filters (ten- to twenty-thousand ohms) signals greater than 2 volts at the input should be avoided. Direct current should be blocked out of the end coils. While the filters are rated for 5 ma of coil current, they are not rated for d-c plate voltage.

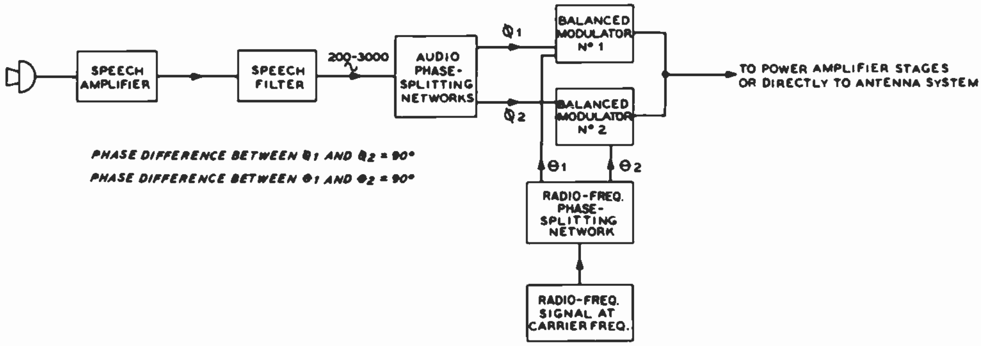


Figure 20

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE "PHASING" METHOD

The phasing method of obtaining a single-sideband signal is simpler than the filter system in regard to the number of tubes and circuits required. The system is also less expensive in regard to the components required, but is more critical in regard to adjustments for the transmission of a pure single-sideband signal.

The Phasing System There are a number of points of view from which the operation of the phasing system of SSB generation may be described. We may state that we generate two double-sideband suppressed-carrier signals, each in its own balanced modulator, that both the r-f phase and the audio phase of the two signals differ by 90 degrees, and that the outputs of the two balanced modulators are added with the result that one sideband is increased in amplitude and the other one is cancelled. This, of course, is a true description of the action that takes place. But it is much easier to consider the phasing system as a method simply of adding (or of subtracting) the desired modulation frequency and the nominal carrier frequency. The carrier frequency of course is not transmitted, as is the case with all SSB transmissions, but only the sum or the difference of the modulation band from the nominal carrier is transmitted (figure 20).

The phasing system has the obvious advantage that all the electrical circuits which give rise to the single sideband can operate in a practical transmitter at the nominal output frequency of the transmitter. That is to say that if we desire to produce a single sideband whose nominal carrier frequency is 3.9 MHz, the balanced modulators are fed with a 3.9-MHz signal and with the audio signal from the phase splitters. It is not necessary to go through several frequency conversions in order to obtain a sideband at the desired output frequency, as in the case with the filter method of sideband generation.

Assuming that we feed a speech signal to the balanced modulators along with the 3900-kHz carrier we will obtain in the output of the balanced modulators a signal which is either the sum of the carrier signal and the speech band, or the difference between the carrier and the speech band. Thus if our speech signal covers the band from 200 to 3000 Hz, we will obtain in the output a band of frequencies from 3900.2 to 3903 kHz (the sum of the two, or the "upper" sideband), or a band from 3897 to 3899.8 kHz (the difference between the two, or the "lower" sideband). A further advantage of the phasing system of sideband generation is the fact that it is a very simple matter to select either the upper sideband or the lower sideband for transmission. A simple double-pole double-throw reversing switch in two of the four audio leads to the balanced modulators is all that is required.

High-Level Phasing Versus Low-Level Phasing The plate-circuit efficiency of the four tubes usually used to make up the two balanced modulators of the phasing system may run as high as 50 to 70 percent, depending on the operating angle of plate current flow. Hence it is possible to operate the double balanced

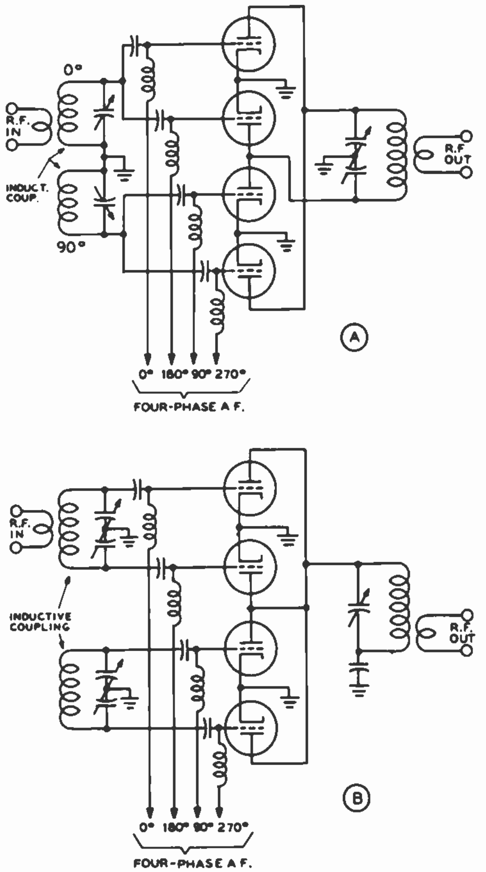


Figure 21

TWO CIRCUITS FOR SINGLE-SIDEBAND GENERATION BY THE PHASING METHOD.

The circuit of A offers the advantages of simplicity in the single-ended input circuits plus a push-pull output circuit. Circuit B requires double-ended input circuits but allows all the plates to be connected in parallel for the output circuit.

modulator directly into the antenna system as the output stage of the transmitter.

The alternative arrangement is to generate the SSB signal at a lower level and then to amplify this signal to the level desired by means of class-A or class-B r-f power amplifiers. If the SSB signal is generated at a level of a few milliwatts it is most common to make the first stage in the amplifier chain a class-A amplifier, then to use one or more class-B linear amplifiers to bring the output up to the desired level.

Balanced Modulator Circuits Illustrated in figure 8 are the two basic balanced modulator circuits which give good results with a radio-frequency carrier and an audio modulating signal. Note that one push-pull and one single-ended tank circuit is required, but that the push-pull circuit may be placed either in the plate or the grid circuit. Also, the audio modulating voltage always is fed into the stage in push-pull, and the tubes normally are operated class A.

When combining two balanced modulators to make up a double balanced modulator as used in the generation of an SSB signal by the phasing system, only one plate circuit is required for the two balanced modulators. However, separate grid circuits are required since the grid circuits of the two balanced modulators operate at an r-f phase difference of 90 degrees. Shown in figure 21 are the two types of double balanced modulator circuits used for generation of an SSB signal. Note that the circuit of figure 21A is derived from the balanced modulator of figure 8A, and similarly figure 21B is derived from figure 8B.

Another circuit that gives excellent performance and is very easy to adjust is shown in figure 22. The adjustments for carrier balance are made by adjusting the potentiometer for voltage balance and then the small variable capacitor for exact phase balance of the balanced carrier voltage feeding the diode modulator.

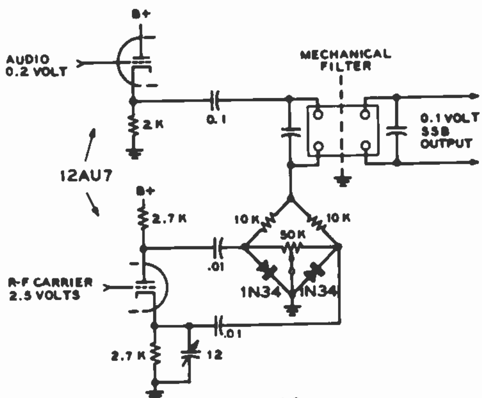


Figure 22

BALANCED MODULATOR FOR USE WITH MECHANICAL FILTER

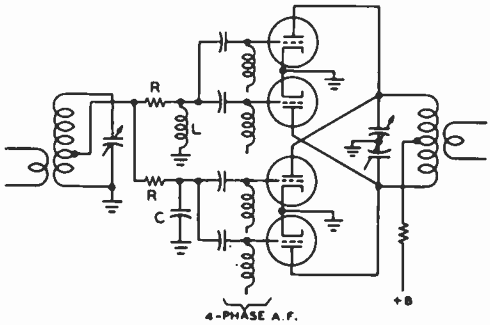


Figure 23

LOW-Q R-F PHASE-SHIFT NETWORK

The r-f phase-shift system illustrated above is convenient in a case where it is desired to make small changes in the operating frequency of the system without the necessity of being precise in the adjustment of two coupled circuits as used for r-f phase shift in the circuit of figure 21.

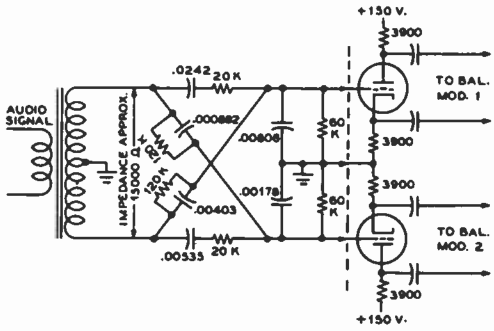


Figure 24

DOME AUDIO-PHASE-SHIFT NETWORK

This circuit arrangement is convenient for obtaining the audio phase shift when it is desired to use a minimum of circuit components and tube elements.

Radio-Frequency Phasing A single-sideband generator of the phasing type requires that the two balanced modulators be fed with r-f signals having a 90-degree phase difference. This r-f phase difference may be obtained through the use of two loosely coupled resonant circuits, such as illustrated in figure 21A and 21B. The r-f signal is coupled directly or inductively to one of the tuned circuits, and the coupling between the two circuits is varied until, at resonance of both circuits, the r-f voltages developed across each circuit have the same amplitude and a 90-degree phase difference.

The 90-degree r-f phase difference also may be obtained through the use of a low-Q phase-shifting network, such as illustrated in figure 23; or it may be obtained through the use of a lumped-constant quarter-wave line. The low-Q phase-shifting system has proved quite practical for use in single-sideband systems, particularly on the lower frequencies. In such an arrangement the two resistances (R) have the same value, usually in the range between 100 and a few thousand ohms. Capacitor C, in shunt with the input capacitances of the tubes and circuit capacitances, has a reactance at the operating frequency equal to the value of resistor R. Also, inductor L has a *net* inductive reactance equal in value at the operating frequency to resistance R.

The inductance chosen for use at L must take into account the cancelling effect of the input capacitance of the tubes and the circuit capacitance; hence the inductance should be variable and should have a *lower* value of inductance than that value of inductance which would have the same reactance as resistor R. Inductor L may be considered as being made up of two values of inductance in parallel: (1) a value of inductance which will resonate at the operating frequency with the circuit and tube capacitances, and (2) the value of inductance which is equal in reactance to resistance R. In a network such as shown in figure 23, equal and opposite 45-degree phase shifts are provided by the RL and RC circuits, thus providing a 90-degree phase difference between the excitation voltages applied to the two balanced modulators.

Audio-Frequency Phasing The audio-frequency phase-shifting networks used in generating a single-sideband signal by the phasing method usually are based on those described by Dome in an article in the December, 1946, *Electronics*. A relatively simple network for accomplishing the 90-degree phase shift over the range from 160 to 3500 Hz is illustrated in figure 24. The values of resistance and capacitance must be carefully checked to ensure minimum deviation from a 90-degree phase shift over the 200- to 3000-Hz range.

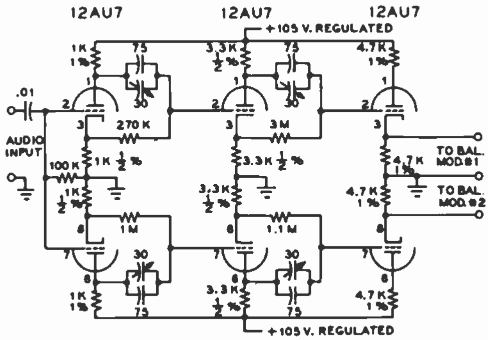


Figure 25

A VERSION OF THE DOME AUDIO-PHASE-SHIFT NETWORK

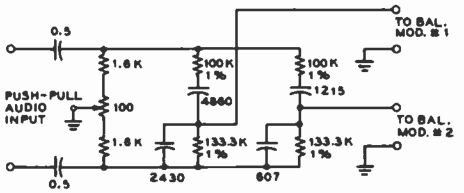


Figure 26

PASSIVE AUDIO-PHASE-SHIFT NETWORK, USEFUL OVER RANGE OF 300 TO 3000 Hz.

Another version of the Dome network is shown in figure 25. This network employs three 12AU7 tubes and provides balanced output for the two balanced modulators. As with the previous network, values of the resistances within the network must be held to very close tolerances. It is necessary to restrict the speech range to 300 to 3000 Hz with this network. Audio frequencies outside this range will not have the necessary phase-shift at the output of the network and will show up as spurious emissions on the sideband signal, and also in the region of the rejected sideband. A low-pass 3500-Hz speech filter, such as the *Stancor Electronics Co. LPF-2* should be used ahead of this phase-shift network.

A passive audio phase-shift network that employs no tubes is shown in figure 26. This network has the same type of operating restrictions as those described above. Additional information concerning phase-shift networks will be found in *The Single Sideband Digest* published by the American Radio Relay League. A comprehensive sideband review is contained in the December, 1956 issue of *Proceedings of the I.E.E.E.*

Comparison of Filter and Phasing Methods of SSB Generation Either the filter or the phasing method of single-sideband generation is theoretically capable of a high degree of performance.

In general, it may be said that a high degree of unwanted signal rejection may be attained with less expense and circuit complexity with the filter method. The selective circuits for rejection of unwanted frequencies operate at a relatively low frequency, are designed for this one frequency and have a relatively high order of Q. Carrier rejection of the order of 50 db or so may be obtained with a relatively simple filter and a balanced modulator, and unwanted sideband rejection in the region of 60 db is economically possible.

The phasing method of SSB generation exchanges the problems of high-Q circuits and linear amplification for the problems of accurately controlled phase-shift networks. If the phasing method is employed on the actual transmitting frequency, change of frequency must be accompanied by a corresponding rebalance of the phasing networks. In addition, it is difficult to obtain a phase balance with ordinary equipment within 2 percent over a band of audio frequencies. This means that carrier suppression is limited to a maximum of 40 db or so. However, when a relatively simple SSB transmitter is needed for spot-frequency operation, a phasing unit will perform in a satisfactory manner.

Where a high degree of performance in the SSB exciter is desired, the filter method and the phasing method may be combined. Through the use of the phasing method in the first balanced modulator those undesired sideband components lying within 1000 Hz of the carrier may be given a much higher degree of rejection than is attainable with the filter method alone, with any reasonable amount of complexity in the sideband filter. Then the sideband filter may be used in its normal way to attain very high attenuation of all undesired sideband components lying perhaps further than 500 Hz away from the

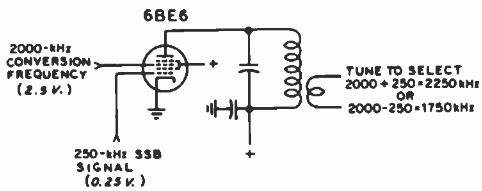


Figure 27

PENTAGRID MIXER CIRCUIT FOR SSB FREQUENCY CONVERSION

carrier, and to restrict the sideband width on the *desired* side of the carrier to the specified frequency limit.

16-5 Single-Sideband Frequency-Conversion Systems

In many instances the band of sideband frequencies generated by a low-level SSB transmitter must be heterodyned up to the desired carrier frequency. In receivers the circuits which perform this function are called *converters* or *mixers*. In sideband work they are usually termed *mixers* or *modulators*.

Mixer Stages One circuit which can be used for this purpose employs a receiving-type mixer tube, such as the 6BE6. The output signal from the SSB generator is fed into the #1 grid and the conversion frequency into the #3 grid. This is the reverse of the usual grid connections, but it offers about 10 db improvement in distortion. The plate circuit is tuned to select the desired output frequency product. Actually, the output of the mixer tube contains all harmonics of the two input signals and all possible combinations of the sum and difference frequencies of all the harmonics. In order to avoid distortion of the SSB signal, it is fed to the mixer at a low level, such as 0.1 to 0.2 volts. The conversion frequency is fed in at a level about 20 db higher, or about 2 volts. By this means, harmonics of the incoming SSB signal generated in the mixer tube will be very low. Usually the desired output frequency is either the sum or the difference of the SSB generator carrier frequency and the conversion frequency. For example, using an SSB generator carrier frequency of 250 kHz and a conversion injection frequency of 2000 kHz as shown in figure 27, the output may be tuned to select either 2250 or 1750 kHz.

Not only is it necessary to select the desired mixing product in the mixer output but also the undesired products must be highly attenuated to avoid having spurious output signals from the transmitter. In general, all spurious signals that appear within the assigned frequency channel should be at least 60 db below the desired signal, and those appearing outside of the assigned frequency channel at least 80 db below the signal level.

When mixing 250 kHz with 2000 kHz as in the above example, the desired product is the 2250-kHz signal, but the 2000-kHz injection frequency will appear in the output about 20 db stronger than the desired signal. To reduce it to a level 80 db below the desired signal means that it must be attenuated 100 db.

The principal advantage of using balanced-modulator mixer stages is that the injection frequency theoretically does not appear in the output. In practice, when a considerable frequency range must be tuned by the balanced modulator and it is not practical to trim the push-pull circuits and the tubes into exact amplitude and phase balance, about 20 db of injection-frequency cancellation is all that can be depended on. With suitable trimming adjustments the cancellation can be made as high as 40 db, however, in fixed-frequency circuits.

The Twin-Triode Mixer The mixer circuit shown in figure 28 has about 10 db lower distortion than the conventional 6BE6 converter tube. It has a lower voltage gain of about unity and a

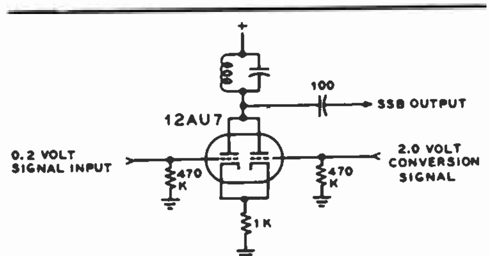


Figure 28

TWIN-TRIODE MIXER CIRCUIT FOR SSB FREQUENCY CONVERSION

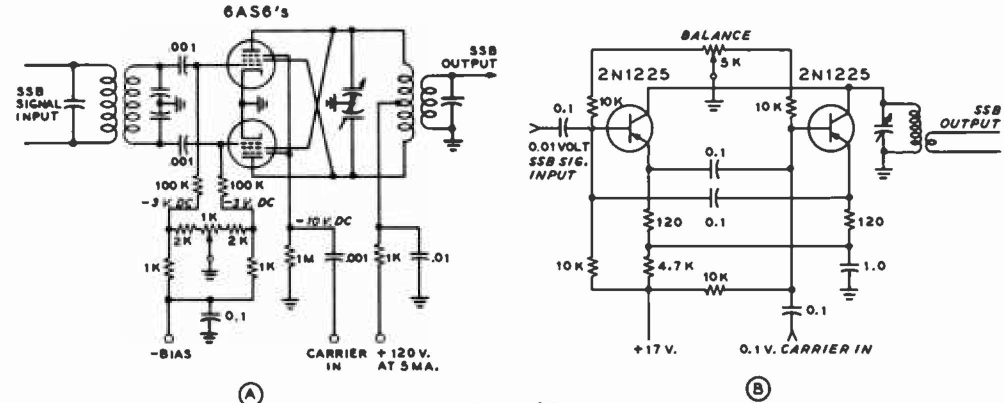


Figure 29

BALANCED MODULATOR CIRCUITS FOR SSB FREQUENCY CONVERSION

A is a balanced modulator using 6AS6 tubes with screen elements cross-connected for maximum carrier suppression. Bias potentiometer allows adjustment for variation in tube parameters. B is a transistor balanced modulator. Balance is achieved by varying the base bias on the 2N1255 transistors.

lower output impedance which loads the first tuned circuit and reduces its selectivity. In some applications the lower gain is of no consequence but the lower distortion level is important enough to warrant its use in high performance equipment. The signal-to-distortion ratio of this mixer is of the order of 70 db compared to approximately 60 db for a 6BE6 mixer when the level of each of two tone signals is 0.5 volt. With stronger signals, the 6BE6 distortion increases very rapidly, whereas the 12AU7 distortion is comparatively much better.

In practical equipment where the injection frequency is variable and trimming adjustments and tube selection cannot be used, it may be easier and more economical to obtain this extra 20 db of attenuation by using an extra tuned circuit in the output than by using a balanced modulator circuit. Two balanced modulator circuits of interest are shown in figure 29, providing a minimum of 20 db of carrier attenuation.

Selective Tuned Circuits The selectivity requirements of the tuned circuits following a mixer stage often become quite severe. For example, using an input signal at 250 kHz and a conversion injection frequency of 4000 kHz the desired output may be 4250 kHz. Passing the 4250-kHz signal and the associated sidebands without attenuation and realizing 100 db of attenuation at 4000 kHz (which is only 250 kHz away) is a practical example. Adding the requirement that this selective circuit must tune from 2250 to 4250 kHz further complicates the basic requirement. The best solution is to cascade a number of tuned circuits. Since a large number of such circuits may be required, the most practical solution is to use permeability tuning, with the circuits tracked together. An example of such circuitry is found in the *Collins* 32S sideband transmitter.

If an amplifier tube is placed between each tuned circuit, the over-all response will be the sum of one stage multipled by the number of stages (assuming identical tuned circuits). Figure 30 is a chart which may be used to determine the number of tuned circuits required for a certain degree of attenuation at some nearby frequency. The Q of the circuits is assumed to be 50, which is normally realized in small permeability-tuned coils. The number of tuned circuits with a Q of 50 required for providing 100 db of attenuation at 4000 kHz while passing 4250 kHz may be found as follows:

$$\Delta f \text{ is } 4250 - 4000 = 250 \text{ kHz}$$

where,

f_r is the resonant frequency (4250 kHz),

and,

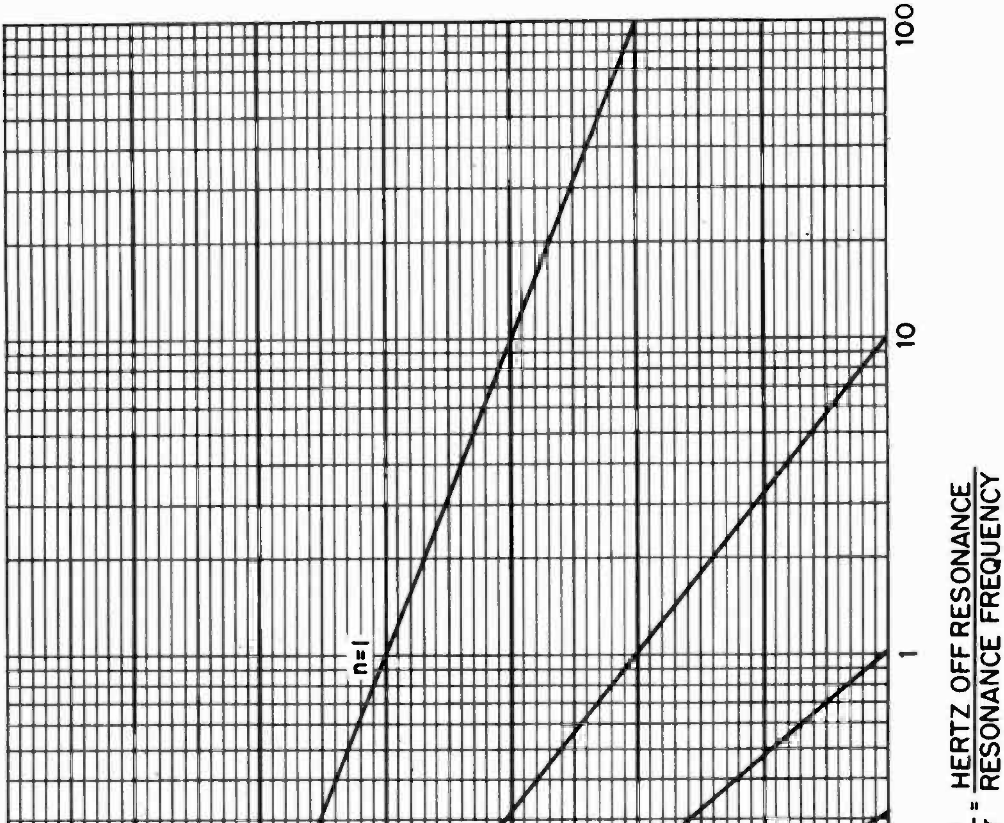


Figure 30

RESPONSE OF "N" NUMBER OF TUNED CIRCUITS, ASSUMING EACH CIRCUIT Q IS 50

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f_r} = \frac{250}{4250} = 0.059$$

The point on the chart where .059 intersects 100 db is between the curves for 6 and 7 tuned circuits, so 7 tuned circuits are required.

Another point which must be considered in practice is the tuning and tracking error of the circuits. For example, if the circuits were actually tuned to 4220 kHz instead of 4250 kHz, the $\frac{\Delta f}{f_r}$ would be $\frac{220}{4220}$ or 0.0522. Checking the curves shows that 7 circuits would just barely provide 100 db of attenuation. This illustrates the need for very accurate tuning and tracking in circuits having high attenuation properties.

Coupled Tuned Circuits When as many as 7 tuned circuits are required for proper attenuation, it is not necessary to have the gain that 6 isolating amplifier tubes would provide. Several vacuum tubes can be eliminated by using two or three coupled circuits between the amplifiers. With a coefficient of coupling between circuits 0.5 of critical coupling, the over-all response is very nearly the same as isolated circuits. The gain through a pair of circuits having 0.5 coupling is only eight-tenths that of two critically coupled circuits, however. If critical coupling is used between two tuned circuits, the nose of the response curve is broadened and about 6 db is lost on the skirts of each pair of critically coupled circuits. In some cases it may be necessary to broaden the nose of the response curve to avoid adversely affecting the frequency response of the desired passband. Another tuned circuit may be required to make up for the loss of attenuation on the skirts of critically coupled circuits. In some cases it may be necessary to broaden the nose of the response curve to avoid adversely affecting the frequency response of the desired passband. Another tuned circuit may be required to make up for the loss of attenuation on the critically coupled circuits.

Frequency Conversion Problems The example in the previous section shows the difficult selectivity problem encountered when strong undesired signals appear near the desired frequency. A high-frequency SSB transmitter may be required to operate at any carrier frequency in the range of 1.7 to 30 MHz. The problem is to find a practical and economical means of heterodyning the generated SSB frequency to any carrier frequency in this

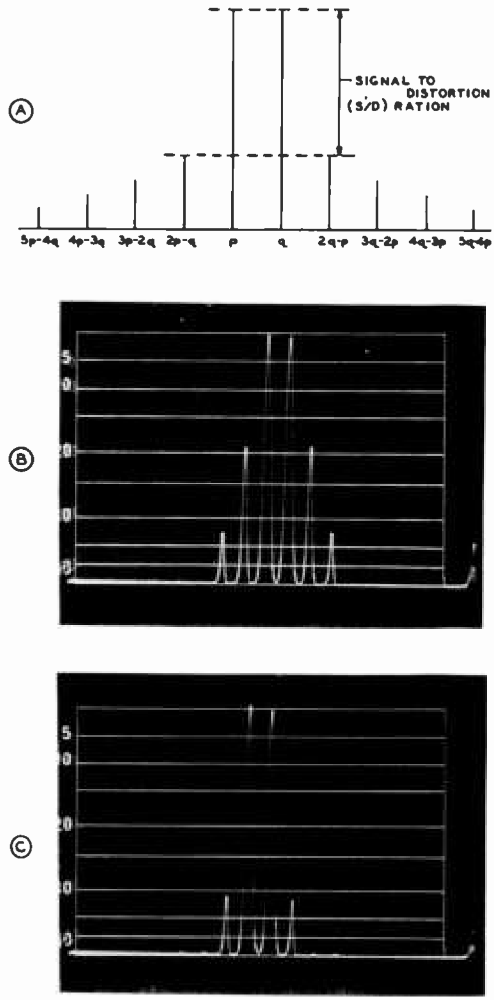


Figure 31

A shows SSB distortion products pictured up to ninth order. B shows SSB distortion products as seen on a panoramic analyzer. Third-order products are 19 decibels below two-tone test signal and fifth-order products are 32 decibels below the test signal. C illustrates that third-order products are about 31 decibels below test signal and higher-order products are better than 40 decibels down from test signal.

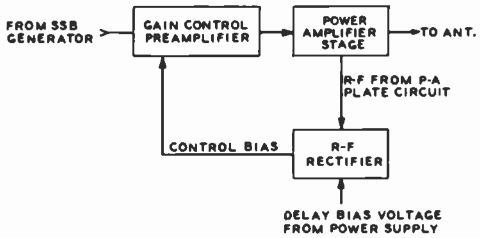


Figure 32
BLOCK DIAGRAM OF AUTOMATIC LOAD CONTROL (A.L.C.) SYSTEM

range. There are many modulation products in the output of the mixer and a frequency scheme must be found that will not have undesired output of appreciable amplitude at or near the desired signal. When tuning across a frequency range some products may "cross over" the desired frequency. These undesired crossover frequencies should be at least 60 db below the desired signal to meet modern standards. The amplitude of the undesired products depends on the particular characteristics of the mixer and the particular order of the product. In general, most products of the 7th order and higher will be at least 60 db down. Thus any crossover frequency lower than the 7th order must be avoided since there is no way of attenuating them if they appear within the desired passband. The book *Single Sideband Principles and Circuits* by Pappenfus, McGraw Hill Book Co., Inc., N. Y., covers the subject of spurious products and incorporates a "mix selector" chart that is useful in determining spurious products for various different mixing schemes.

In general, for most applications when the intelligence-bearing frequency is lower than the conversion frequency, it is desirable that the ratio of the two frequencies be between 5 to 1 and 10 to 1. This a compromise between avoiding low-order harmonics of this signal input appearing in the output, and minimizing the selectivity requirements of the circuits following the mixer stage.

16-6 Distortion Products Due to Nonlinearity of R-F Amplifiers

When the SSB envelope of a *voice* or *multitone* signal is distorted, a great many new frequencies are generated. These represent all of the possible combinations of the sum and difference frequencies of all harmonics of the original frequencies. For purposes of test and analysis, a *two-tone* test signal (two equal-amplitude tones) is used as the SSB source. Since the SSB radio-frequency amplifiers use tank circuits, all distortion products are filtered out except those which lie close to the desired frequencies. These are all odd-order products; third order, fifth order, etc. The third-order products are $2p-q$ and $2q-p$ where p and q represent the two SSB r-f tone frequencies. The fifth order products are $3p-2q$ and $3q-2p$. These and some higher order products are shown in figure 31 A, B, and C. It should be noted that the frequency spacings are always equal to the difference frequency of the two original tones. Thus when an SSB amplifier is badly overloaded, these spurious frequencies can extend far outside the original channel width and cause an unintelligible "splatter" type of interference in adjacent channels. This is usually of far more importance than the distortion of the original tones with regard to intelligibility or fidelity. To avoid interference in another channel, these distortion products should be down at least 30 db below the adjacent channel signal. Using a two-tone test, the distortion is given as the ratio of the amplitude of one test tone to the amplitude of a third-order product. This is called the *signal-to-distortion ratio* (S/D) and is usually given in decibels. The use of feedback r-f amplifiers make S/D ratios of greater than 40 db possible and practical.

Automatic Load Control Two means may be used to keep the amplitude of these distortion products down to acceptable levels. One is to design the amplifier for excellent linearity over its amplitude or power range. The other is to employ a means of limiting the amplitude of the SSB envelope to the capabilities of the amplifier. An *automatic load control system* (ALC) may be used to accomplish this result. It should be noted that the r-f wave shapes of the SSB signal are always sine waves because the tank circuits make them so. It is the *change in gain* with signal level in an amplifier that distorts the SSB envelope and generates unwanted distortion products. An ALC system may be used to limit the input

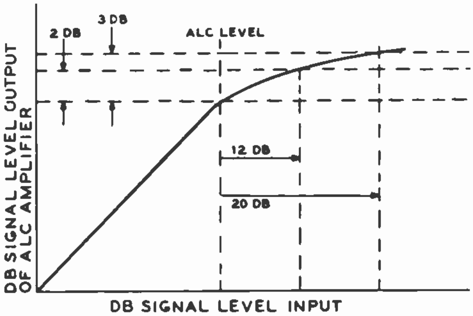


Figure 33

PERFORMANCE CURVE OF ALC CIRCUIT

signal to an amplifier to prevent a change in gain level caused by excessive input level.

The ALC system is adjusted so the power amplifier is operating near its maximum power capability and at the same time is protected from being over-driven.

In amplitude-modulated systems it is common to use speech compressors and speech clipping systems to perform this function. These methods are not equally useful in SSB. The reason for this is that the SSB envelope is different from the audio envelope and the SSB peaks do not necessarily correspond with the audio peaks as explained earlier in this chapter. For this reason an r-f compressor of some sort located between the SSB generator and the power amplifier is most effective because it is controlled by SSB envelope peaks rather than audio peaks. Such a "SSB signal compressor" and the means of obtaining its control voltage comprises a satisfactory ALC system.

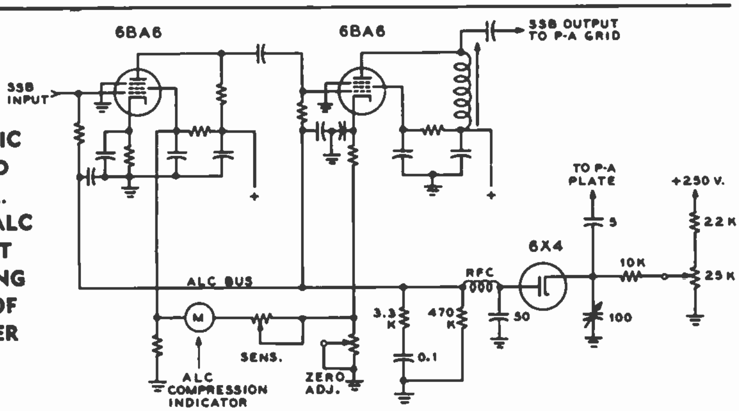
The ALC Circuit A block diagram of an ALC circuit is shown in figure 32. The compressor or gain control part of this circuit uses one or two stages of remote cutoff tubes such as 6BA6, operating very similarly to the intermediate-frequency stages of a receiver having automatic volume control.

The grid bias voltage which controls the gain of the tubes is obtained from a voltage detector circuit connected to the power amplifier tube plate circuit. A large delay bias is used so that no gain reduction takes place until the signal is nearly up to the full power capability of the amplifier. At this signal level, the rectified output overcomes the delay bias and the gain of the preamplifier is reduced rapidly with increasing signal so that there is very little rise in output power above the threshold of gain control.

When a signal peak arrives that would normally overload the power amplifier, it is desirable that the gain of the ALC amplifier be reduced in a few milliseconds to a value where overloading of the power amplifier is overcome. After the signal peak passes, the gain should return to the normal value in about one-tenth second. These attack and release times are commonly used for voice communications. For this type of work, a dynamic range of at least 10 db is desirable. Input peaks as high as 20 db above the threshold of compression should not cause loss of control although some increase in distortion in the upper range of compression can be tolerated because peaks in this range are infrequent. Another limitation is that the preceding SSB generator must be capable of

Figure 34

SIMPLIFIED SCHEMATIC OF AUTOMATIC LOAD CONTROL AMPLIFIER. OPERATING POINT OF ALC CIRCUIT MAY BE SET BY VARYING BLOCKING BIAS ON CATHODE OF 6X4 SIGNAL RECTIFIER



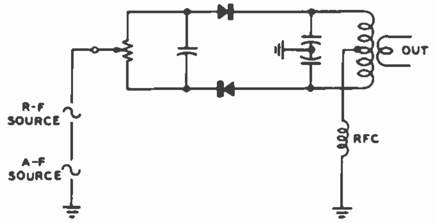


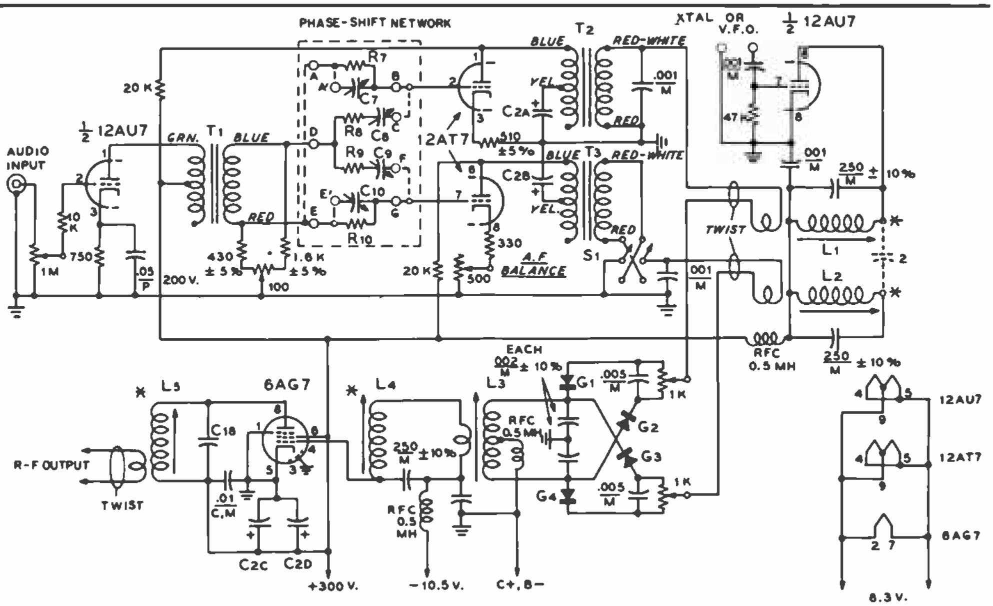
Figure 35

SSB JR. MODULATOR CIRCUIT

R-F and A-F sources are applied in series to balanced modulator.

passing signals above full power output by the amount of compression desired. Since the signal level through the SSB generator should be maintained within a limited range, it is unlikely that more than 12 db ALC action will be useful. If the input signal varies more than this, a speech compressor should be used to limit the range of the signal fed into the SSB generator.

Figure 33 shows the effectiveness of the ALC in limiting the output signal to the capabilities of the power amplifier. An adjustment of the delay bias will place the threshold of compression at the desired power output. Figure 34 shows a simplified schematic of an ALC system. This ALC uses two variable-gain amplifier stages and the maximum over-all gain is about 20 db. A meter is incorporated which is calibrated in db of compression. This is useful in adjusting the gain for the desired amount of load control. A capacitance voltage divider is used to step down the r-f voltage at the plate of the amplifier tube to about 50 volts for the ALC rectifier. The output of the ALC rectifier passes through RC networks to obtain the desired attack and release times



C2A,B,C,D = EACH SECTION 20 µF, 450 V. ELECTROLYTIC
C7 = 2430 PF (.002 µFD MICA ±5% WITH 170-780 PF TRIMMER)
C8 = 4860 PF (.0043 µFD MICA ±5% WITH 170-780 PF TRIMMER)
C9 = 1215 PF (.001 µFD MICA ±5% WITH 50-380 PF TRIMMER)
C10 = 607.5 PF (500 PF MICA ±5% WITH 9-180 PF TRIMMER)
C18 = 350 PF 600 V. MICA ±10% (250 PF AND 100 PF PARALLEL)
R7, R10 = 133,300 OHMS, 1/2 WATT ±1%
R8, R9 = 100,000 OHMS, 1/2 WATT ±1%
T1 = *STANCOR A-53C* TRANSFORMER.
T2, T3 = *UTC R-38A* TRANSFORMER.
S1 = DPDT TOGGLE SWITCH

G1,2,3,4 = 1N52 GERMANIUM DIODE OR EQUIVALENT
L1, L2 = 33 T. N° 21 E. WIRE CLOSEWOUND ON *MILLEN N° 69046* IRON-CORE ADJUSTABLE SLUG COIL FORM. LINK OF 6 TURNS OF HOOKUP WIRE WOUND ON OPEN END.
L3 = 18 T. N° 19 E. WIRE SPACED TO FILL *MILLEN N° 69046* COIL FORM. TAP AT 8 TURNS. LINK OF 1 TURN AT CENTER.
L4 = SAME AS L1 EXCEPT NO LINK USED.
L5 = 28 T. OF N° 19 E. WIRE. LINK ON END TO MATCH LOAD. (4 TURN LINK MATCHES 72 OHM LOAD)

* = MOUNTING END OF COILS

Figure 36

SCHEMATIC, SSB, JR. FOR 80 METERS

and through r-f filter capacitors. The 3.3K resistor and 0.1-μfd capacitors across the rectifier output stabilize the gain around the ALC loop to prevent "motorboating."

16-7 Sideband Exciters

Some of the most popular sideband exciters in use today are variations of the simple phasing circuit introduced in the November, 1950 issue of *General Electric Ham News*. Employing only three tubes, the *SSB, Jr.* is a classic example of sideband generation reduced to its simplest form.

The SSB, Jr. This phasing exciter employs audio and r-f phasing circuits to produce an SSB signal at one spot frequency. The circuit of one of the balanced modulator stages is shown in figure 35. The audio signal and r-f source are applied in series to two germanium diodes serving as balanced modulators having a push-pull output circuit tuned to the r-f carrier frequency. The modulator drives a linear amplifier directly at the output frequency. The complete circuit of the exciter is shown in figure 36.

The first tube, a 12AU7, is a twin triode serving as a speech amplifier and a crystal oscillator. The second tube is a 12AT7, acting as a twin-channel audio amplifier following the phase-shift audio network. The linear amplifier stage is a 6AG7, capable of a peak power output of 5 watts.

Sideband switching is accomplished by the reversal of audio polarity in one of the audio channels (switch S_1), and provision is made for equalization of gain in the audio channels (R_{12}). This adjustment is necessary in order to achieve normal sideband cancellation, which may be of the order of 35 db or better. Phase-shift network adjustment may be achieved by adjusting potentiometer R_5. Stable modulator balance is achieved by the balance potentiometers (R_{16} and R_{17}) in conjunction with the germanium diodes.

The *SSB, Jr.* is designed for spot-frequency operation. Note that when changing frequency L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, and L_5 should be readjusted, since these circuits constitute the tuning adjustments of the rig. The principal effect of mistuning L_3, L_4, and L_5 will be lower output. The principal effect of mistuning L_2, however, will be degraded sideband suppression.

Power requirements of the *SSB, Jr.* are 300 volts at 60 ma, and —10.5 volts at 1 ma.

The "Ten-A" Exciter The *Model 10-A* phasing exciter is an advanced version of the *SSB, Jr.* incorporating extra features such as vfo control, voice operation, and multiband operation. A simplified schematic of the *Model 10A* is shown in figure 37. The 12AX7 two-stage speech amplifier excites a transformer-coupled ½-12BH7 low-impedance driver stage and a voice operated (VOX) relay system employing a 12AX7 and a 6AL5. A transformer-coupled 12AT7 follows the audio phasing network, providing two audio channels having a 90-degree phase difference. A simple 90-degree r-f phase shift network in the plate circuit of the 9-MHz crystal oscillator stage works into the matched, balanced modulator consisting of four 1N48 diodes.

The resulting 9-MHz SSB signal may be converted to the desired operating frequency in a 6BA7 mixer stage. Eight volts of r-f from an external vfo injected on grid #1 of the 6BA7 is sufficient for good conversion efficiency and low distortion. The plate circuit of the 6BA7 is tuned to the sum or difference mixing frequency and the resulting signal is amplified in a 6AG7 linear amplifier stage. Two "tweet" traps are incorporated in the 6BA7 stage to reduce unwanted responses of the mixer which are apparent when the unit is operating in the 14-MHz band. Band changing is accomplished by changing coils L_8 and L_9 and the frequency of the external mixing signal. Maximum power output is of the order of 5 watts at any operating frequency.

A Transistorized SSB Filter Exciter A transistorized SSB filter exciter is illustrated in Figure 38. It is designed for operation in the 2- to 30-MHz range and makes use of a 9-MHz crystal filter. A GE-1 transistor crystal oscillator provides the carrier for the balanced modulator via a link-coupled circuit. Capacitive and resistive carrier-balance controls provide over 30 decibels carrier suppression. The balanced modulator is of the configuration shown in Figure 35. A two-stage speech

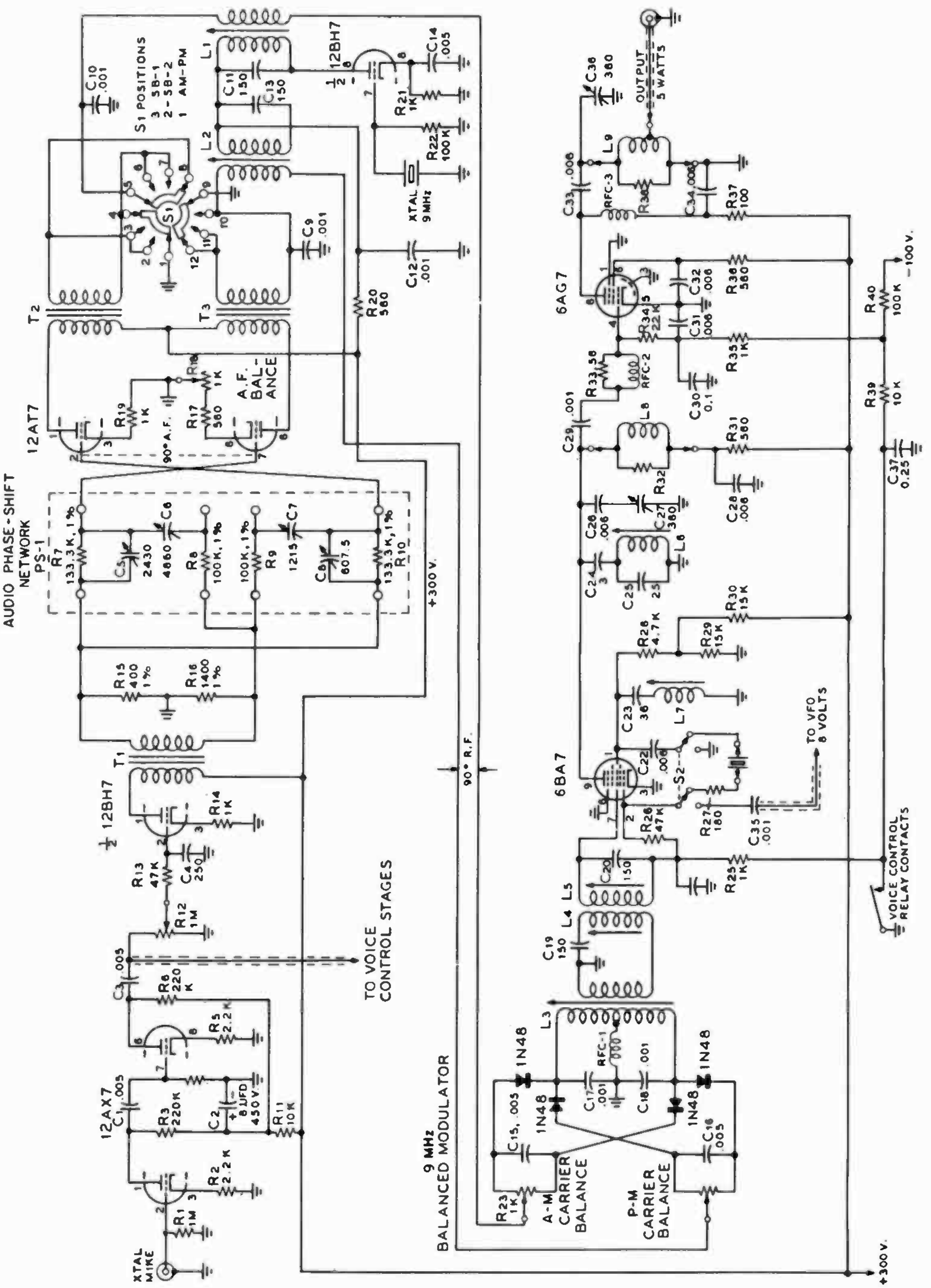


Figure 37

SIMPLIFIED SCHEMATIC OF "TEN-A" EXCITER

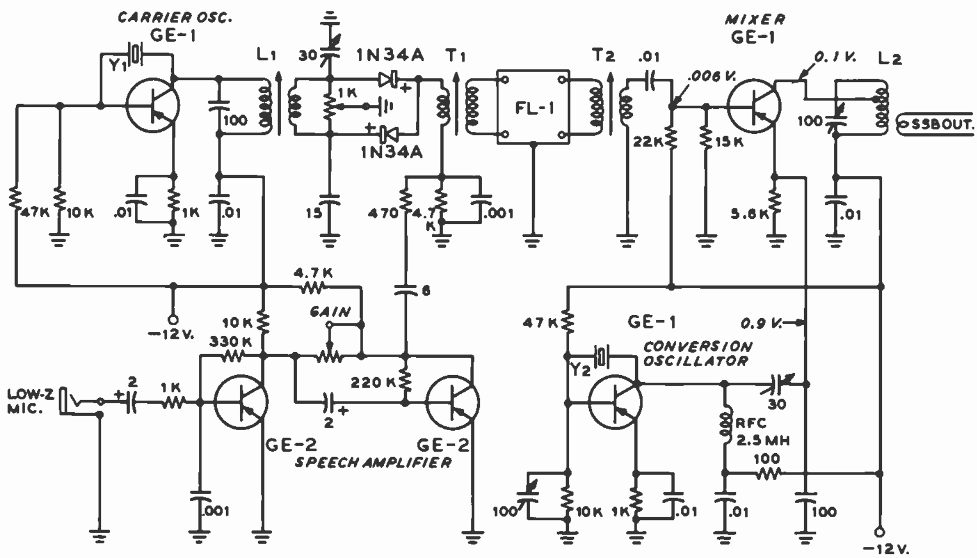


Figure 38

TRANSISTOR SSB EXCITER USING 9-MHz CRYSTAL FILTER

This simple SSB exciter employs "entertainment-type" transistors and a packaged 9-MHz crystal filter. Transistors are General Electric types. Transformers T_1 and T_2 may be supplied by filter manufacturer and vary according to filter design. Selection of sideband is accomplished by choice of crystal oscillator frequency, placing the carrier oscillator crystal (Y_1) on the proper slope of the sideband filter.

amplifier provides ample gain for use of a low-impedance dynamic microphone. Audio gain is controlled by varying the base bias on the second speech amplifier stage.

The 9-MHz SSB signal from the filter is beat to the desired operating frequency in a transistor mixer stage. Typical r-f voltages in the mixer stage are indicated in the schematic. The collector of the mixer is tapped down on the output tank circuit to provide optimum impedance match. Output of the mixer stage is about 0.1 volt.

Selection of the upper or lower sideband is accomplished by placing the carrier oscillator on the proper slope of the sideband filter. The oscillator should be set at approximately the 20-decibel suppression point of the passband for best operation. If the oscillator is closer in frequency to the filter passband than this, carrier rejection will suffer. If the oscillator is moved further away in frequency from the passband, the lower voice frequencies will be attenuated and the SSB signal will sound high-pitched and tinny. The two carrier-balance controls are adjusted for a carrier null indication on the S meter of a receiver coupled to the output of the sideband filter.

A crystal is now placed in the conversion oscillator and proper operation is checked by monitoring the conversion frequency with the nearby receiver. The mixer stage is finally adjusted for maximum output at the desired frequency.

16-8 Reception of Single-Sideband Signals

Single-sideband signals may be received, after a certain degree of practice in the technique, in a quite adequate and satisfactory manner with a good communications receiver. However, the receiver must have quite good frequency stability both in the high-frequency oscillator and in the beat oscillator. For this reason, receivers which use a crystal-controlled first oscillator are likely to offer a greater degree of satisfaction than the self-controlled oscillator type.

Beat-oscillator stability in most receivers is usually quite adequate, but many receivers do not have a sufficient amplitude of beat oscillator injection to allow reception of strong SSB signals without distortion. In such receivers it is necessary either to increase the amount of beat-oscillator injection into the diode detector, or the manual gain control of the receiver must be turned down quite low.

The tuning procedure for SSB signals is as follows: The SSB signals may first be located by tuning over the band with receiver set for the reception of c-w; that is, with the manual gain at a moderate level and with the beat oscillator operating. By tuning in this manner SSB signals may be *located* when they are far below the amplitude of conventional a-m signals on the frequency band.

With the beat oscillator on the wrong side of the sideband, the speech will sound inverted; that is to say that low-frequency modulation tones will have a high pitch and high-frequency modulation tones will have a low pitch—and the speech will be quite unintelligible. With the beat oscillator on the correct side of the sideband but too far from the correct position, the speech will have some intelligibility but the voice will sound quite high pitched. Then as the correct setting for the beat oscillator is approached the voice will begin to sound natural but will have a background growl on each syllable. At the correct frequency for the beat oscillator the speech will clear completely and the voice will have a clean, crisp, quality. It should also be mentioned that there is a narrow region of tuning of the beat oscillator a small distance on the wrong side of the sideband where the voice will sound quite bassy and difficult to understand.

With a little experience it will be possible to identify the sound associated with improper settings of the beat-oscillator control so that corrections in the setting of the control can be made. Note that the main tuning control of the receiver is not changed after the sideband once is tuned into the passband of the receiver. All the fine tuning should be done with the beat oscillator control. Also, it is very important that the r-f gain control be turned to quite a low level during the tuning process. Then after the signal has been tuned properly the r-f gain may be increased for good signal level, or until the point is reached where best oscillator injection becomes insufficient and the signal begins to distort.

Single-Sideband Receivers and Adapters Greatly simplified tuning, coupled with strong attenuation of undesired signals, can be obtained through the use of a single-sideband receiver or receiver adapter. The exalted-carrier principle usually is employed in such receivers, with a phase-sensitive system sometimes included for locking the local oscillator to the frequency of the carrier of the incoming signal. In order for the locking system to operate, some carrier must be transmitted along with the SSB signal. Such receivers and adapters include a means for selecting the upper or lower sideband by the simple operation of a switch. For the reception of a single-sideband signal the switch obviously must be placed in the correct position. But for the reception of a conventional a-m or phase-modulated signal, either sideband may be selected, allowing the sideband with the least interference to be used.

The Product Detector An unusually satisfactory form of demodulator for SSB service is the *product detector*, shown in one form in figure 39. This circuit is preferred since it reduces intermodulation products and does not require a large local carrier voltage, as contrasted to the more common diode envelope detector. This product detector operates much in the same manner as a multigrid mixer tube. The SSB

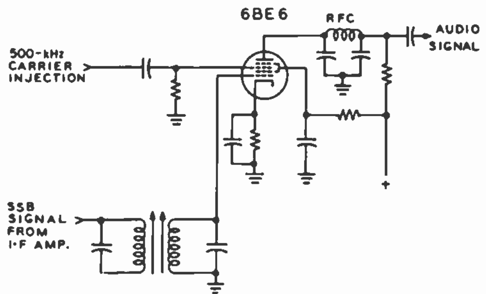


Figure 39

A PRODUCT DETECTOR

The above configuration resembles a pentagrid converter circuit.

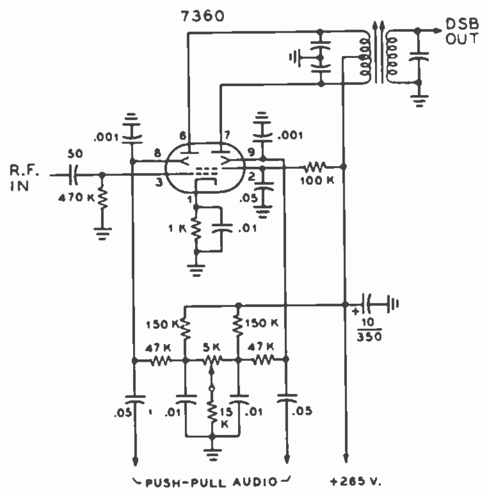


Figure 40

BALANCED MODULATOR CIRCUIT USING 7360 BEAM DEFLECTION TUBE.

signal is applied to the control grid of the tube and the locally generated carrier is impressed on the other control grid. The desired audio output signal is recovered across the plate resistance of the demodulator tube. Since the cathode current of the tube is controlled by the simultaneous action of the two grids, the current will contain frequencies equal to the sum and difference between the sideband signal and the carrier. Other frequencies are suppressed by the low-pass r-f filter in the plate circuit of the stage, while the audio frequency is recovered from the r-f sideband signal.

An interesting development in the single-sideband field is the *beam deflection tube* (type 7360). This miniature tube employs a simple electron "gun" which generates, controls, and accelerates a beam of electrons directed toward identical plates. The total plate current is determined by the voltages applied to the control grid and screen grid of the "gun." The division of plate current between the two plates is determined by the difference in voltage between two deflecting electrodes placed between the "gun" and the plates. R-f voltage is used to modulate the control grid of the electron "gun" and the electron stream within the tube may be switched between the plates by means of an audio signal applied to the deflecting electrodes. The 7360 makes an excellent balanced modulator (figure 40) or product detector having high-impedance input circuits, low distortion, and excellent carrier suppression.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

Transmitter Design

The performance of a transmitter is a function of the design, and is dependent on the execution of the design and the proper choice of components. This chapter deals with the study of transmitter circuitry and the basic components that go to make up this circuitry. Modern components are far from faultless. Resistors have inductance and distributed capacity. Capacitors have inductance and resistance, and inductors have resistance and distributed capacitance. None of these residual attributes show up on circuit diagrams, yet they are as much responsible for the success or failure of the transmitter as are the necessary and vital bits of resistance, capacitance, and inductance. Because of these unwanted attributes, the job of translating a circuit on paper into a working piece of equipment often becomes an impossible task to those individuals who disregard such important trivia. Rarely do circuit diagrams show such pitfalls as ground loops and residual inductive coupling between stages. Parasitic resonant circuits are seldom visible from a study of the schematic. Too many times radio equipment is rushed into service before it has been entirely checked. The immediate and only too apparent results of this enthusiasm are transmitter instability, difficulty of neutralization, r.f. wandering all over the equipment, and a general "touchiness" of adjustment. Hand in glove with these problems go the more serious ones of TVI, keyclicks, and parasitics. By paying attention to detail, with a good working knowledge of the limitations of the components, and with a basic concept of the actions of ground currents, the average amateur will be able to build equipment that will work "just like the book says."

The twin problems of TVI and parasitics are an outgrowth of the major problem of over all circuit design. If close attention is paid to the cardinal points of circuitry design, the secondary problems of TVI and parasitics will in themselves be solved.

17-1 Resistors

The resistance of a conductor is a function of the material, the form the material takes, the temperature of operation, and the frequency of the current passing through the resistance. In general, the variation in resistance due to temperature is directly proportional to the temperature change. With most wirewound resistors, the resistance increases with temperature and returns to its original value when the temperature drops to normal. So called composition or carbon resistors have less reliable temperature/resistance characteristics. They usually have a positive temperature coefficient, but the retrace curve as the resistor is cooled is often erratic, and in many cases the resistance does not return to its original value after a heat cycle. It is for this reason that care must be taken when soldering composition resistors in circuits that require close control of the

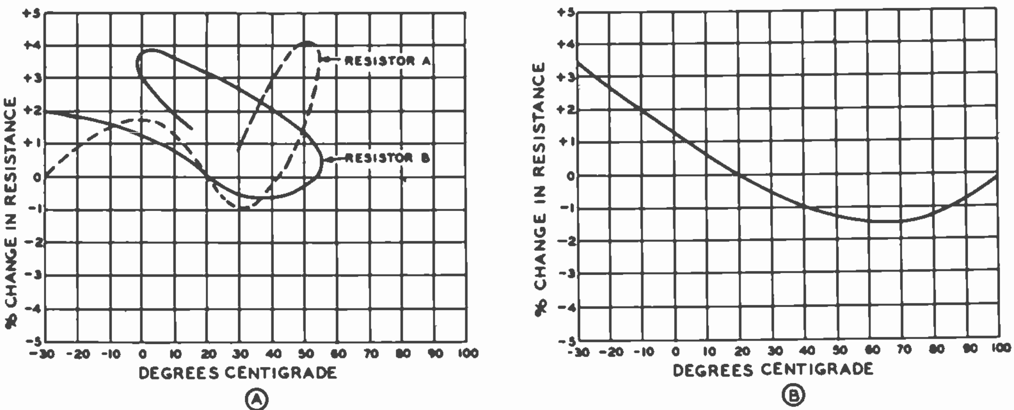


Figure 1

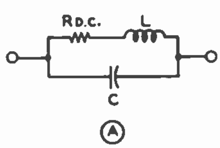
HEAT CYCLE OF UNCONDITIONED COMPOSITION RESISTORS

HEAT CYCLE OF CONDITIONED COMPOSITION RESISTORS

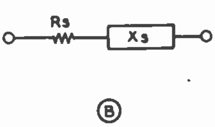
resistance value. Matched resistors used in phase-inverter service can be heated out of tolerance by the act of soldering them into the circuit. Long leads should be left on the resistors and long-nose pliers should grip the lead between the iron and the body of the resistor to act as a heat block. General temperature characteristics of typical carbon resistors are shown in figure 1. The behavior of an individual resistor will vary from these curves depending on the manufacturer, the size and wattage of the resistor, etc.

Inductance of Resistors Every resistor because of its physical size has in addition to its desired resistance, less desirable amounts of inductance and distributed capacitance. These quantities are illustrated in figure 2A, the general equivalent circuit of a resistor. This circuit represents the actual impedance network of a resistor at any frequency. At a certain specified frequency the impedance of the resistor may be thought of as a series reactance (X_s) as shown in figure 2B. This reactance may be either inductive or capacitive depending on whether the residual inductance or the distributed capacitance of the resistor is the dominating factor. As a rule, skin effect tends to increase the reactance with frequency, while the capacitance between turns of a wirewound resistor, or capacitance be-

Figure 2



EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT OF A RESISTOR



EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT OF A RESISTOR AT A PARTICULAR FREQUENCY

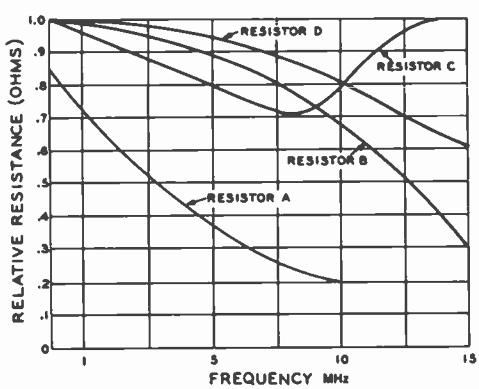


Figure 3
FREQUENCY EFFECTS ON SAMPLE COMPOSITION RESISTORS

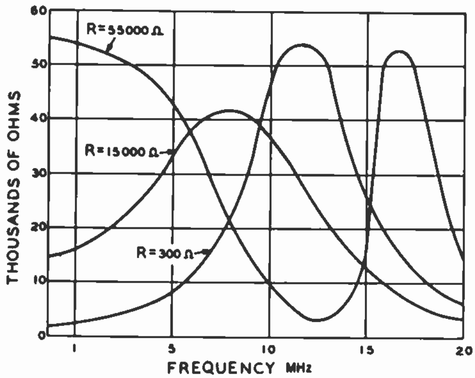


Figure 4

CURVES OF THE IMPEDANCE OF WIRE-WOUND RESISTORS AT RADIO FREQUENCIES

tween the granules of a composition resistor tends to cause the reactance and resistance to drop with frequency. The behavior of various types of composition resistors over a large frequency range is shown in figure 3. By proper component design, noninductive resistors having a minimum of residual reactance characteristics may be constructed. Even these have reactive effects that cannot be ignored at high frequencies.

Wirewound resistors act as low-Q inductors at radio frequencies. Figure 4 shows typical curves of the high-frequency characteristics of cylindrical wirewound resistors. In addition to resistance variations wirewound resistors exhibit both capacitive and inductive reactance, depending on the type of resistor and the operating frequency. In fact, such resistors perform in a fashion as low-Q r-f chokes below their parallel self-resonant frequency.

17-2 Capacitors

The inherent residual characteristics of capacitors include series resistance, series inductance and shunt resistance, as shown in figure 5. The series resistance and inductance depend to a large extent on the physical configuration of the capacitor and on the material from which it is composed. Of great interest to the amateur constructor is the series inductance of the capacitor. At a cer-

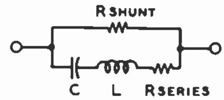


Figure 5

EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT OF A CAPACITOR

tain frequency the series inductive reactance of the capacitor and the capacitive reactance are equal and opposite, and the capacitor is in itself series resonant at this frequency. As the operating frequency of the circuit in which the capacitor is used is increased above the series-resonant frequency, the effectiveness of the capacitor as a bypassing element deteriorates until the unit is useless.

Bypass Capacitors The usual forms of bypass capacitors have dielectrics of paper, mica, or ceramic. For audio work, and low-frequency r-f work up to perhaps 2 MHz or so, the paper capacitors are satisfactory as their relatively high internal inductance has little effect on the proper operation of the circuit. The actual amount of internal inductance will vary widely with the manufacturing process, and some types of paper capacitors have satisfactory characteristics up to a frequency of 5 MHz or so.

When considering the design of transmitting equipment, it must be remembered that while the transmitter is operating at some relatively low frequency (for example, 7 MHz), there will be harmonic currents flowing through the various bypass capacitors of the order of 10 to 20 times the operating frequency. A capacitor that behaves properly at 7 MHz however, may offer considerable impedance to the flow of these harmonic currents. For minimum harmonic generation and radiation, it is obviously of greatest importance to employ bypass capacitors having the lowest possible internal inductance.

Mica-dielectric capacitors have much less internal inductance than do most paper capacitors. Figure 6 lists self-resonant frequencies of various mica capacitors having various lead lengths. It can be seen from inspection of this table that most mica capacitors become self-resonant in the 12- to 50-MHz region. The inductive reactance

CAPACITOR		LEAD LENGTHS	RESONANT FREQ.
.02	μfd MICA	NONE	44.5 MHz
.002	μfd MICA	NONE	23.5 MHz
.01	μfd MICA	¼"	10 MHz
.0009	μfd MICA	¼"	55 MHz
.002	μfd CERAMIC	⅝"	24 MHz
.001	μfd CERAMIC	¼"	55 MHz
500	pfd BUTTON	NONE	220 MHz
.0005	μfd CERAMIC	¼"	90 MHz
.01	μfd CERAMIC	½"	14.5 MHz

Figure 6

SELF-RESONANT FREQUENCIES OF VARIOUS CAPACITORS WITH RANDOM LEAD LENGTH

they would offer to harmonic currents of 100 MHz, or so, would be of considerable magnitude. In certain instances it is possible to deliberately series-resonate a mica capacitor to a certain frequency somewhat below its normal self-resonant frequency by trimming the leads to a critical length. This is sometimes done for maximum bypassing effect in the region of 40 to 60 MHz.

The *button-mica* capacitors shown in figure 7 are especially designed to have extremely low internal inductance. Certain types of button-mica capacitors of small physical size have a self-resonant frequency in the region of 600 MHz.

Ceramic-dielectric capacitors in general have the lowest amount of series inductance per unit of capacitance of these three universally used types of bypass capacitors. Typical resonant frequencies of various ceramic units are listed in figure 6. Ceramic capacitors are available in various voltage and capacitance ratings and different physical configurations. Standoff types such as shown in figure 7 are useful for bypassing socket and transformer terminals. Two of these capacitors may be mounted in close proximity on a chassis and connected together by an r-f choke to form a highly effective r-f filter. The inexpensive *disc* type of ceramic capacitor is recommended for general bypassing in r-f circuitry, as it is effective as a bypass unit to well over 100 MHz.

The large TV *doorknob* capacitors are useful as by-pass units for high voltage lines. These capacitors have a value of 500 pf, and are available in voltage ratings up to 40,000 volts. The dielectric of these capacitors is usually titanium dioxide. This material exhibits piezoelectric effects, and capacitors employing it for a dielectric will tend to "talk-back" when a-c voltages are applied across them. When these capacitors are used as plate bypass units in a modulated transmitter they will cause acoustical noise. Otherwise they are excellent for general r-f work.

A recent addition to the varied line of capacitors is the *coaxial*, or *Hypass*, type of capacitor. These capacitors exhibit superior bypassing qualities at frequencies up to 200 MHz and the bulkhead type are especially effective when used to filter leads passing through partition walls between two stages.

Variable Air Capacitors Even though air is the perfect dielectric, air capacitors exhibit losses because of the inherent resistance of the metallic parts that make up the capacitor. In addition, the leakage loss across the insulating supports may become of some consequence at high frequencies. Of greater concern is the inductance of the capacitor at high frequencies. Since the capacitor must be of finite size, it will have tie rods, metallic braces, and end plates; all of which contribute to the inductance of the unit. The actual amount of the inductance will depend on the physical size of the capacitor

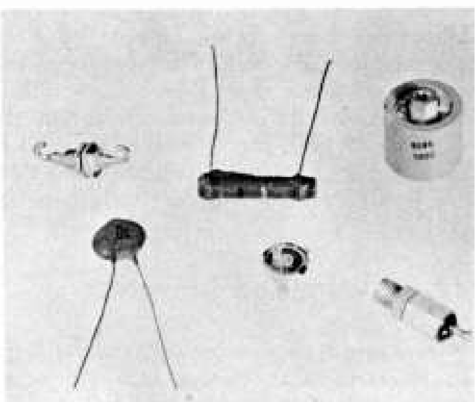


Figure 7

TYPES OF CERAMIC AND MICA CAPACITORS SUITABLE FOR HIGH-FREQUENCY BYPASSING

The Centralab 858S (1000 pf) is recommended for screen and plate circuits of tetrode tubes.

and the method used to make contact to the stator and rotor plates. This inductance may be cut to a minimum value by using as small a capacitor as is practical, by using insulated tie rods to prevent the formation of closed inductive loops in the frame of the unit, and by making connections to the centers of the plate assemblies rather than to the ends as is commonly done. A large transmitting capacitor may have an inherent inductance as large as 0.1 microhenry, making the capacitor susceptible to parasitic resonances in the 50- to 150-MHz range of frequencies.

The question of optimum C/L ratio and capacitor plate spacing is covered in Chapter Eleven. For all-band operation of a high power stage, it is recommended that a capacitor just large enough for 40-meter phone operation be chosen. (This will have sufficient capacitance for phone operation on all higher-frequency bands.) Then use fixed padding capacitors for operation on 80 meters. Such padding capacitors are available in air, ceramic, and vacuum types.

Specially designed variable capacitors are recommended for uhf work; ordinary capacitors often have "loops" in the metal frame which may resonate near the operating frequency.

Variable Vacuum Capacitors Variable vacuum capacitors because of their small physical size have less inherent inductance per unit of capacity than do variable air capacitors. Their losses are extremely low, and their dielectric strength is high. Because of increased production the cost of such units is now within the reach of the designer of amateur equipment, and their use is highly recommended in high-power tank circuits.

17-3 Wire and Inductors

Any length of wire, no matter how short, has a certain value of inductance. This property is of great help in making coils and inductors, but may be of great hindrance when it is not taken into account in circuit design and construction. Connecting circuit elements (themselves having residual inductance) together with a conductor possessing additional inductance can often lead to puzzling difficulties. A piece of No. 10 copper wire ten inches long (a not uncommon length for a plate lead in a transmitter) can have a self-inductance of 0.15 microhenrys. This inductance and that of the plate tuning capacitor together with the plate-to-ground capacity of the vacuum tube can form a resonant circuit which may lead to parasitic oscillations in the vhf regions. To keep the self-inductance at a minimum, all r-f carrying leads should be as short as possible and should be made out of as heavy material as possible.

At the higher frequencies, solid enameled copper wire is most efficient for r-f leads. Tinned or stranded wire will show greater losses at these frequencies. Tank-coil and tank-capacitor leads should be of heavier wire than other r-f leads.

The best type of flexible lead from the envelope of a tube to a terminal is thin copper strip, cut from thin sheet copper. Heavy, rigid leads to these terminals may crack the envelope glass when a tube heats or cools.

Wires carrying only audio frequencies or direct current should be chosen with the voltage and current in mind. Some of the low-filament-voltage transmitting tubes draw heavy current, and heavy wire must be used to avoid voltage drop. The voltage is low, and hence not much insulation is required. Filament and heater leads are usually twisted together. An initial check should be made on the filament voltage of all tubes of 25 watts or more plate dissipation rating. This voltage should be measured right at the tube sockets. If it is low, the filament-transformer voltage should be raised. If this is impossible, heavier or parallel wires should be used for filament leads, cutting down their length if possible.

Coaxial cable may be used for high-voltage leads when it is desirable to shield them from r-f fields. RG-8/U cable may be used at d-c potentials up to 8000 volts, and the lighter RG-17/U may be used to potentials of 3000 volts. Spark plug-type high-tension wire may be used for unshielded leads, and will withstand 10,000 volts.

If this cable is used, the high-voltage leads may be cabled with filament and other low-voltage leads. For high-voltage leads in low-power exciters, where the plate voltage is not over 450 volts, ordinary radio hookup wire of good quality will serve the purpose.

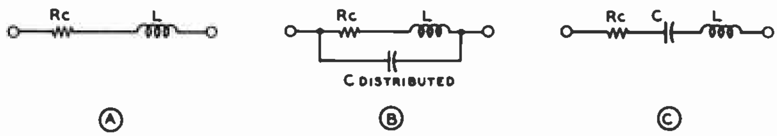


Figure 8

ELECTRICAL EQUIVALENT OF R-F CHOKE AT VARIOUS FREQUENCIES

No r-f leads should be cabled; in fact it is better to use enameled or bare copper wire for r-f leads and rely on spacing for insulation. All r-f joints should be soldered, and the joint should be a good mechanical junction before solder is applied.

The efficiency and Q of air coils commonly used in amateur equipment is a factor of the shape of the coil, the proximity of the coil to other objects (including the coil form), and the material from which the coil is made. Dielectric losses in so-called "air-wound" coils are low and the Q of such coils runs in the neighborhood of 300 to 500 at medium frequencies. Unfortunately, most of the transmitting-type plug-in coils on the market designed for link coupling have far too small a pickup link for proper operation at 3.5 and 7 MHz. The coefficient of coupling of these coils is about 0.5, and additional means must be employed to provide satisfactory coupling at these low frequencies. Additional inductance in series with the pickup link, the whole being resonated to the operating frequency, will often permit satisfactory coupling.

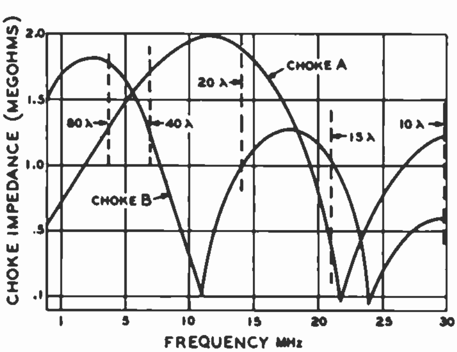


Figure 9

FREQUENCY-IMPEDANCE CHARACTERISTICS FOR TYPICAL PIE-WOUND R-F CHOKES

Coil Placement For best Q a coil should be in the form of a solenoid with length from one to two times the diameter. For minimum interstage coupling, coils should be made as small physically as is practicable. The coils should then be placed so that adjoining coils are oriented for minimum mutual coupling. To determine if this condition exists, apply the following test: the axis of one of the two coils must lie in the plane formed by the center turn of the other coil. If this condition is not met, there will be appreciable coupling unless the unshielded coils are very small in diameter or are spaced a considerable distance from each other.

Insulation On frequencies above 7 MHz, ceramic, polystyrene, or *Mycalex* insulation is to be recommended. Cold flow must be considered when using polystyrene (*Amphenol* 912, etc.). Bakelite has low losses on the lower frequencies but should never be used in the field of high-frequency tank circuits.

Lucite (or *Plexiglas*), which is available in rods, sheets, or tubing, is satisfactory for use at all radio frequencies *where the r-f voltages are not especially high.* It is very easy to work with ordinary tools and is not expensive. The loss factor depends to a considerable extent on the amount and kind of plasticizer used.

The most important thing to keep in mind regarding insulation is that the best insulation is air. If it is necessary to reinforce air-wound coils to keep turns from vibrating or touching, use strips of *Lucite* or polystyrene cemented in place with *Amphenol* 912 coil dope. This will result in lower losses than the commonly used celluloid ribs and *Duco* cement.

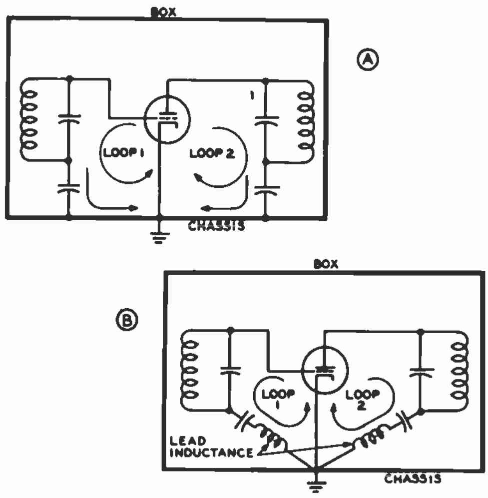


Figure 10

GROUND LOOPS IN AMPLIFIER STAGES

A. Using chassis return
B. Common ground point

Radio-Frequency Chokes *R-f chokes* may be considered to be special inductances designed to have a high value of impedance over a large range of frequencies. A practical r-f choke has inductance, distributed capacitance, and resistance. At low frequencies, the distributed capacitance has little effect and the electrical equivalent circuit of the r-f choke is as shown in figure 8A. As the operating frequency of the choke is raised the effect of the distributed capacitance becomes more evident until at some particular frequency the distributed capacitance resonates with the inductance of the choke and a parallel-resonant circuit is formed. This point is shown in figure 8B. As the frequency of operating is further increased the over-all reactance of the choke becomes capacitive, and finally a point of series resonance is reached (figure 8C). This cycle repeats itself as the operating frequency is raised above the series-resonant point, the impedance of the choke rapidly becoming lower on each successive cycle. A chart of this action is shown in figure 9. It can be seen that as the r-f choke approaches and leaves a condition of series resonance, the performance of the choke is seriously impaired. The condition of series resonance may easily be found by shorting the terminals of the r-f choke in question with a piece of wire and exploring the windings of the choke with a grid-dip oscillator. Most commercial transmitting-type chokes have series resonances in the vicinity of 11 or 24 MHz.

17-4 Grounds

At frequencies of 30 MHz and below, a chassis may be considered as a fixed ground reference, since its dimensions are only a fraction of a wavelength. As the frequency is increased above 30 MHz, the chassis must be considered as a conducting sheet on which there are points of maximum current and potential. However, for the lower amateur frequencies, an object may be assumed to be at ground potential when it is affixed to the chassis.

In transmitter stages, two important current loops exist. One loop consists of the grid circuit and chassis return, and the other loop consists of the plate circuit and chassis return. These two loops are shown in figure 10A. It can be seen that the chassis forms a return for both the grid and plate circuits, and that *ground currents* flow in the chassis towards the cathode circuit of the stage. For some years the theory has been to separate these ground currents from the chassis by returning all ground leads to one point, usually the cathode of the tube for the stage in question. This is well and good if the ground leads are of minute length and do not introduce cross couplings between the leads. Such a technique is illustrated in figure 10B. wherein all stage components are grounded to the cathode pin of the stage socket. However, in transmitter construction the physical size of the components prevent such close grouping. It is necessary to spread the components of such a stage over a fairly large area. In this case it is best to ground items directly to the chassis at the nearest possible point, with short, direct grounding leads. The ground currents will flow from these points through the low inductance chassis to the cathode return of the stage. Components grounded on the top of the chassis have their ground currents flow through holes to the cathode circuit which is usually located on the bottom of the chassis, since such currents travel on the surface

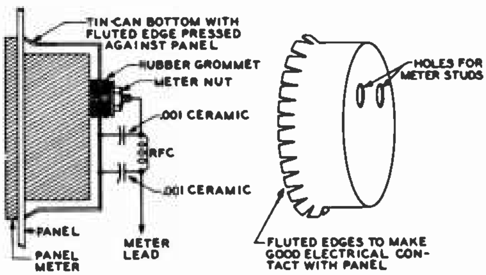


Figure 11A

SIMPLE METER SHIELD

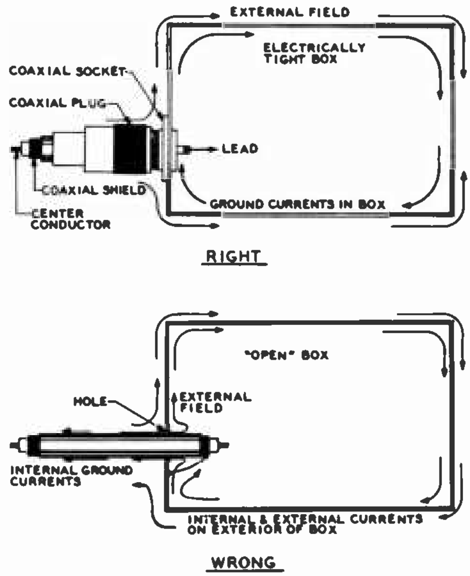


Figure 11B

Use of coaxial connectors on electrically tight box prevents escape of ground currents from interior of box. At the same time external fields are not conducted into the interior of the box.

of the chassis. The usual "top to bottom" ground path is through the hole cut in the chassis for the tube socket. When the gain per stage is relatively low, or there are only a small number of stages on a chassis this universal grounding system is ideal. It is only in high gain stages (i-f strips) where the "gain per inch" is very high that circulating ground currents will cause operational instability.

Intercoupling of Ground Currents It is important to prevent intercoupling of various different ground currents when the chassis is used as a common ground return. To keep this intercoupling at a minimum, the stage should be completely shielded. This will prevent external fields from generating spurious ground currents, and prevent the ground currents of the stage from upsetting the action of nearby stages. Since the ground currents travel on the surface of the metal, the stage should be enclosed in an electrically tight box. When this is done, all ground currents generated inside the box will remain in the box. The only possible means of escape for fundamental and harmonic currents are imperfections in this electrically tight box. Whenever we bring a wire lead into the box, make a ventilation hole, or bring a control shaft through the box we create an imperfection. It is important that the effect of these imperfections be reduced to a minimum.

17-5 Holes, Leads, and Shafts

Large size holes for ventilation may be put in an electrically tight box provided they are properly screened. Perforated metal stock having many small, closely spaced holes is the best screening material. Copper wire screen may be used provided the screen wires are bonded together every few inches. As the wire corrodes, an insulating film prevents contact between the individual wires, and the attenuation of the screening suffers. The screening material should be carefully soldered to the box, or bolted with a spacing of not less than two inches between bolts. Mating surfaces of the box and the screening should be clean.

A screened ventilation opening should be roughly three times the size of an equivalent unscreened opening, since the screening represents about a 70 percent coverage of the area. Careful attention must be paid to equipment heating when an electrically tight box is used.

Commercially available panels having half-inch ventilating holes may be used as part of the box. These holes have much less attenuation than does screening, but will perform in a satisfactory manner in all but the areas of weakest TV reception. If it is

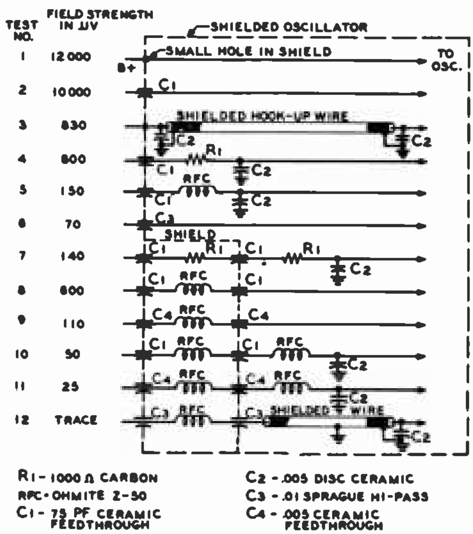


Figure 12

LEAD LEAKAGE WITH VARIOUS LEAD-FILTERING SYSTEMS

desired to reduce leakage from these panels to a minimum, the back of the grill must be covered with screening tightly bonded to the panel.

Doors may be placed in electrically tight boxes provided there is no r-f leakage around the seams of the door. Electronic weather-stripping or metal "finger stock" may be used to seal these doors. A long, narrow slot in a closed box has the tendency to act as a slot antenna and harmonic energy may pass more readily through such an opening than it would through a much larger circular hole.

Variable-capacitor or switch shafts may act as antennas, picking up currents inside the box and re-radiating them outside of the box. It is necessary either to ground the shaft securely as it leaves the box, or else to make the shaft of some insulating material.

A two- or three-inch panel meter causes a large leakage hole if it is mounted in the wall of an electrically tight box. To minimize leakage, the meter leads should be bypassed and shielded. The meter should be encased in a metal shield that makes contact to the box entirely around the meter. The connecting studs of the meter may project through the back of the metal shield. Such a shield may be made out of the end of a tin or aluminum can of correct diameter, cut to fit the depth of the meter. This complete shield assembly is shown in figure 11A.

Careful attention should be paid to leads entering and leaving the electrically tight box. Harmonic currents generated inside the box can easily flow out of the box on power or control leads, or even on the outer shields of coaxially shielded wires. Figure 11B illustrates the correct method of bringing shielded cables into a box where it is desired to preserve the continuity of the shielding.

Unshielded leads entering the box must be carefully filtered to prevent fundamental and harmonic energy from escaping down the lead. Combinations of r-f chokes and low-inductance bypass capacitors should be used in power leads. If the current in the lead is high, the chokes must be wound of large-gauge wire. Composition resistors may be substituted for the r-f chokes in high-impedance circuits. Bulkhead or feedthrough type capacitors are preferable when passing a lead through a shield partition. A summary of lead leakage with various filter arrangements is shown in figure 12.

Internal Leads Leads that connect two points within an electrically tight box may pick up fundamental and harmonic currents if they are located in a strong field of flux. Any lead forming a closed loop with itself will pick up such currents, as shown in figure 13. This effect is enhanced if the lead happens to be self-resonant at the frequency of the exciting energy. The solution for all of this is to bypass all internal power leads and control leads at each end, and to shield these leads their entire length. All filament, bias, and meter leads should be so treated. This will make the job of filtering the leads as they leave the box much easier, since normally "cool" leads within the box will not have picked up spurious currents from nearby "hot" leads.

17-6 Parasitic Resonances

Filament leads within vacuum tubes may resonate with the filament bypass capacitors at some particular frequency and cause instability in an amplifier stage. Large tubes of the 810 and 250TH type are prone to this

Figure 13

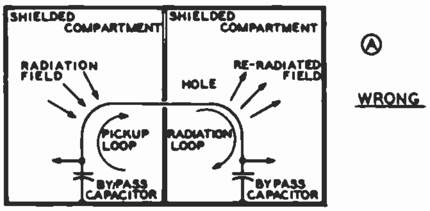


ILLUSTRATION OF HOW A SUPPOSEDLY GROUNDED POWER LEAD CAN COUPLE ENERGY FROM ONE COMPARTMENT TO ANOTHER

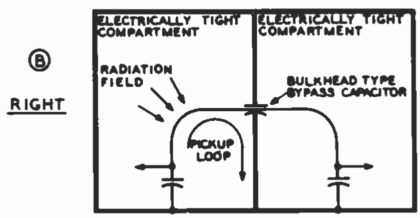


ILLUSTRATION OF LEAD ISOLATION BY PROPER USE OF BULKHEAD BYPASS CAPACITOR

spurious effect. In particular, a push-pull 810 amplifier using .001-μfd filament bypass capacitors had a filament resonant loop that fell in the 7-MHz amateur band. When the amplifier was operated near this frequency marked instability was noted, and the filaments of the 810 tubes increased in brilliance when plate voltage was applied to the amplifier, indicating the presence of r.f. in the filament circuit. Changing the filament bypass capacitors to .01 μfd lowered the filament resonance frequency to 2.2 MHz and cured this effect. A ceramic capacitor of .01 μfd used as a filament bypass capacitor on each filament leg seems to be satisfactory from both a resonant and a TVI point of view. Filament bypass capacitors smaller in value than .01 μfd should be used with caution.

Various parasitic resonances are also found in plate and grid tank circuits. Push-pull tank circuits are prone to double resonances, as shown in figure 14. The parasitic resonance circuit is usually several MHz higher than the actual resonant frequency of the full tank circuit. The cure for such a double resonance is the inclusion of an r-f choke in the center-tap lead to the split coil.

Chassis Material From a point of view of electrical properties, aluminum is a poor chassis material. It is difficult to make a soldered joint to it, and all grounds must rely on a pressure joint. These pressure joints are prone to give trouble at a later date because of high resistivity caused by the formation of oxides from electrolytic action in the joint. However, the ease of working and forming the aluminum material far outweighs the electrical shortcomings, and aluminum chassis and shielding may be used with good results provided care is taken in making all grounding connections. Cadmium and zinc plated chassis are preferable from a corrosion standpoint, but are much more difficult to handle in the home workshop.

17-7 Parasitic Oscillation in R-F Amplifiers

Parasitics (as distinguished from *self-oscillation* on the normal tuned frequency of the amplifier) are undesirable oscillations either of very-high or very-low frequencies which may occur in radio-frequency amplifiers.

They may cause spurious signals (which are often rough in tone) other than normal harmonics, hash on each side of a modulated carrier, key clicks, voltage breakdown or flash-

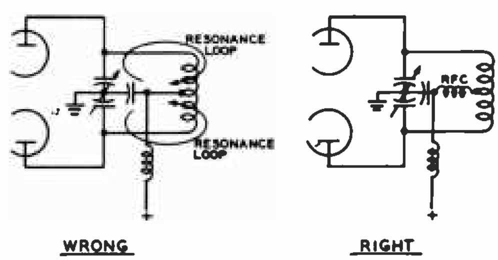
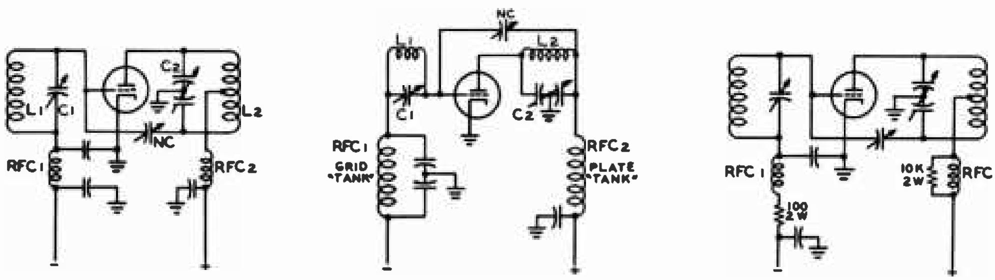


Figure 14

DOUBLE RESONANCE EFFECTS IN PUSH-PULL TANK CIRCUIT MAY BE ELIMINATED BY THE INSERTION OF AN R-F CHOKE IN THE COIL CENTER TAP LEAD



R-F CIRCUIT (A)

PARASITIC CIRCUIT FOR LOW-FREQ. OSCILLATION (B)

CURE (C)

Figure 15

LOW-FREQUENCY PARASITIC SUPPRESSION

A—Low-frequency parasitic circuit is formed by grid and plate r-f chokes and associated by-pass capacitors, as shown at B. Fundamental-frequency tank circuits have little effect on parasitic frequency. C—Parasitic circuits are "de-Q'ed" by addition of either series or parallel resistance until circuit will not sustain oscillation.

over, instability or inefficiency, and shortened life or failure of the tubes. They may be damped and stop by themselves after keying or modulation peaks, or they may be undamped and build up during ordinary unmodulated transmission, continuing if the excitation is removed. They may result from series- or parallel-resonant circuits of all types. Due to neutralizing lead length and the nature of most parasitic circuits, the amplifier usually is not neutralized for the parasitic frequency.

Sometimes the fact that the plate supply is keyed will obscure parasitic oscillations in a final amplifier stage that might be very severe if the plate voltage were left on and the excitation were keyed.

In some cases, an all-wave receiver will prove helpful in locating vhf spurious oscillations, but it may be necessary to check from several hundred MHz downward in frequency to the operating range. A normal harmonic is weaker than the fundamental but of good tone; a strong harmonic or a rough note at any frequency generally indicates a parasitic.

In general, the cure for parasitic oscillation is twofold: The oscillatory circuit is damped until sustained oscillation is impossible, or it is detuned until oscillation ceases. An examination of the various types of parasitic oscillations and of the parasitic oscillatory circuits will prove handy in applying the correct cure.

Low-Frequency Parasitic Oscillations One type of unwanted oscillation often occurs in shunt-fed circuits in which the grid and plate chokes resonate, coupled through the tube's interelectrode capacitance. This also can happen with series feed. This oscillation is generally at a much lower frequency than the operating frequency and will cause additional carriers to appear, spaced from perhaps twenty to a few hundred kHz on either side of the main wave. Such a circuit is illustrated in figure 15. In this case, RFC_1 and RFC_2 form the grid and plate inductances of the parasitic oscillator. The neutralizing capacitor, no longer providing out-of-phase feedback to the grid circuit, actually enhances the low-frequency oscillation. Because of the low Q of the r-f chokes, they will usually run warm when this type of parasitic oscillation is present and may actually char and burn up. A neon bulb held near the oscillatory circuit will glow a bright yellow, the color appearing near the glass of the neon bulb and not between the electrodes.

One cure for this type of oscillation is to change the type of choke in either the plate or the grid circuit. This is a marginal cure, because the amplifier may again break into the same type of oscillation when the plate voltage is raised slightly. The best cure is to remove the grid r-f choke entirely and replace it with a wirewound resistor of sufficient wattage to carry the amplifier grid current. If the inclusion of such a resistor upsets the operating bias of the stage, an r-f choke may be used, with a 100-ohm 2-watt carbon resistor in series with the choke to lower the operating Q of the choke. If this expedient does not eliminate the condition, and the stage under investigation uses a beam-tetrode tube, negative resistance can exist in the screen circuit of such tubes. Try larger and smaller screen bypass capacitors to determine whether or not they have any effect. If the condition is coming from the screen circuit an audio choke with a resistor across it in series with the screen-feed lead will often eliminate the trouble.

Low-frequency parasitic oscillations can often take place in the audio system of an a-m transmitter, and their presence will not be known until the transmitter is checked on a receiver. It is easy to determine whether or not the oscillations are coming from the modulator simply by switching off the modulator tubes. If the oscillations are coming from the modulator, the stage in which they are being generated can be determined by removing tubes successively, starting with the first speech amplification stage, until the oscillation stops. When the stage has been found, remedial steps can be taken on that stage.

If the stage causing the oscillation is a low-level speech stage it is possible that the trouble is coming from r-f or power-supply feedback, or it may be coming about as a result of inductive coupling between two transformers. If the oscillation is taking place in a high-level audio stage, it is possible that inductive or capacitive coupling is taking place back to one of the low-level speech stages. It is also possible, in certain cases, that parasitic push-pull oscillation can take place in a class-B or class-AB modulator as a result of the grid-to-plate capacitance within the tubes and in the stage wiring. This condition is more likely to occur if capacitors have been placed across the secondary of the driver transformer and across the primary of the modulation transformer to act in the reduction of the amplitude of the higher audio frequencies. Relocation of wiring or actual neutralization of the audio stage in the manner used for r-f stages may be required.

It may be said in general that the presence of low-frequency parasitics indicates that somewhere in the oscillating circuit there is an impedance which is high at a frequency in the upper-audio or low r-f range. This impedance may include one or more r-f chokes of the conventional variety, power supply chokes, modulation components, or the high-impedance may be presented simply by an RC circuit such as might be found in the screen-feed circuit of a beam-tetrode.

17-8 Elimination of VHF Parasitic Oscillations

Vhf parasitic oscillations are often difficult to locate and difficult to eliminate since their frequency often is only moderately above the desired frequency of operation. But it may be said that vhf parasitics always may be eliminated if the operating frequency is appreciably below the upper frequency limit for the tubes used in the stage. However, the elimination of a persistent parasitic oscillation on a frequency only moderately higher than the desired operating frequency will involve a sacrifice in either the power output or the power sensitivity of the stage, or in both.

Beam-tetrode stages, particularly those using 807 type tubes, will almost invariably have one or more vhf parasitic oscillations unless adequate precautions have been taken in advance. Many of the units described in the constructional section of this edition had parasitic oscillations when first constructed. But these oscillations were eliminated in each case; hence, the expedients used in these equipments should be studied. Vhf parasitics may be readily identified, as they cause a neon lamp to have a purple glow close to the electrodes when it is excited by the parasitic energy.

Parasitic Oscillations with Triodes Triode stages are less subject to parasitic oscillations primarily because of the much lower power sensitivity of such tubes as compared to beam tetrodes. But such oscillations can and do take place. Often, however, it is not necessary to incorporate suppressors as normally is the case with beam tetrodes, unless the triodes are operated quite near to their upper fre-

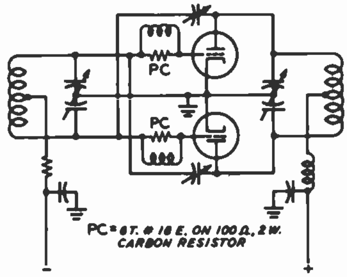


Figure 16

GRID PARASITIC SUPPRESSORS IN PUSH-PULL TRIODE STAGE

quency limit, or the tubes are characterized by a relatively high transconductance. Triode vhf parasitic oscillations normally may be eliminated by adjustment of the lengths and effective inductance of the leads to the elements of the tubes.

In the case of triodes, vhf parasitic oscillations often come about as a result of inductance in the neutralizing leads. This is particularly true in the case of push-pull amplifiers. The cure for this effect will usually be found in reducing the length of the neutralizing leads and increasing their diameter. Both the reduction in length and increase in diameter will reduce the inductance of the leads and tend to raise the parasitic oscillation frequency until it is out of the range at which the tubes will oscillate. The use of straightforward circuit design with short leads will assist in forestalling this trouble at the outset.

Vhf parasitic oscillations may take place as a result of inadequate bypassing or long bypass leads in the filament, grid-return, and plate-return circuits. Such oscillations also can take place when long leads exist between the grids and the grid tuning capacitor or between the plates and the plate tuning capacitor. The grid and plate leads should be kept short, but the leads from the tuning capacitors to the tank coils can be of any reasonable length insofar as parasitic oscillations are concerned. In an amplifier where oscillations have been traced to the grid or plate leads, their elimination can often be effected by making the grid leads much longer than the plate leads or vice versa. Sometimes parasitic oscillations can be eliminated by using iron or nichrome wire for the neutralizing leads. But in any event it will always be found best to make the neutralizing leads as short and of as heavy conductor as is practicable.

In cases where it has been found that increased length in the grid leads for an amplifier is required, this increased length can often be wound into the form of a small coil and still obtain the desired effect. Winding these small coils of iron or nichrome wire may sometimes be of assistance.

To increase losses at the parasitic frequency, the parasitic coils may be wound on 100-ohm 2-watt resistors. These "lossy" suppressors should be placed in the grid leads of the tubes close to the grid connection, as shown in figure 16.

Parasitics with Beam Tetrodes Where beam-tetrode tubes are used in the stage which has been found to be generating the parasitic oscillation, all the foregoing suggestions apply in general. However, there are certain additional considerations involved in elimination of parasitics from beam-tetrode amplifier stages. These considerations involve the facts that a beam-tetrode amplifier stage has greater power sensitivity than an equivalent triode amplifier, such a stage has a certain amount of screen-lead inductance which may give rise to trouble, and such stages have a small amount of feedback capacitance.

Beam-tetrode stages often will require the inclusion of a neutralizing circuit to eliminate oscillation on the operating frequency. However, oscillation on the operating fre-

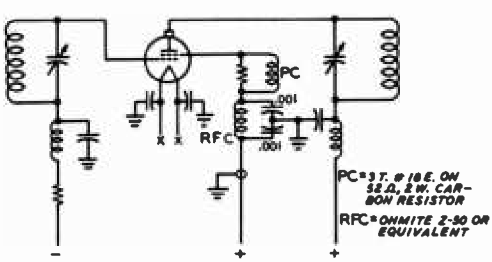


Figure 17

SCREEN PARASITIC SUPPRESSION CIRCUIT FOR TETRODE TUBES

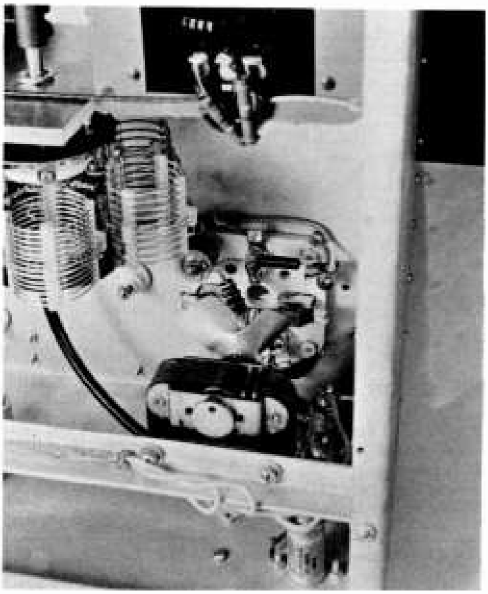


Figure 18

PHOTO OF APPLICATION OF SCREEN PARASTIC SUPPRESSION CIRCUIT OF FIGURE 17

quency normally is not called a parasitic oscillation, and different measures are required to eliminate the condition.

Basically, parasitic oscillations in beam-tetrode amplifier stages fall into two classes: cathode-grid-screen oscillations, and cathode-screen-plate oscillations. Both these types of oscillation can be eliminated through the use of a parasitic suppressor in the lead between the screen terminal of the tube and the screen bypass suppressor, as shown in figure 17. Such a suppressor has negligible effect on the bypassing effect on the screen at the operating frequency. The method of connecting this suppressor to tubes having dual screen leads is shown in figure 18. At the higher frequencies at which parasitics occur, the screen is no longer at ground potential. It is therefore necessary to include an r-f choke/bypass capacitor filter in the screen lead after the parasitic suppressor. The screen lead, in addition, should be shielded for best results.

During parasitic oscillations, considerable r-f voltage appears on the screen of a tetrode tube, and the screen bypass capacitor can easily be damaged. It is best, therefore, to employ screen bypass capacitors whose d-c working voltage is equal to twice the maximum applied screen voltage.

The grid-screen oscillations may occasionally be eliminated through the use of a parasitic suppressor in series with the grid lead of the tube. The screen-plate oscillations may also be eliminated by inclusion of a parasitic suppressor in series with the plate lead of the tube. A suitable grid suppressor may be made of a 22-ohm 2-watt *Ohmite* or *Allen-Bradley* resistor wound with 8 turns of no. 18 enameled wire. A plate-circuit suppressor is more of a problem, since it must dissipate a quantity of power that is dependent on just how close the parasitic frequency is to the operating frequency of the tube. If the two frequencies are close, the suppressor will absorb some of the fundamental plate-circuit power. For kilowatt stages operating no higher than 30 MHz a satisfactory plate-circuit suppressor may be made of five 570-ohm 2-watt carbon resistors in parallel, shunted by 5 turns of no. 16 enameled wire, ¼ inch diameter and ½ inch long (figure 19A and B).

The parasitic suppressor for the plate circuit of a small tube such as the 5763, 2E26, 807, 6146 or similar type normally may consist of a 47-ohm carbon resistor of 2-watt size with 6 turns of no. 18 enameled wire wound around the resistor. However, for operation above 30 MHz, special tailoring of the value of the resistor and the size of the coil wound around it will be required in order to attain satisfactory parasitic suppression without excessive power loss in he parasitic suppressor.

Tetrode Screening Isolation between the grid and plate circuits of a tetrode tube is not perfect. For maximum stability, it is recommended that the tetrode stage be neutralized. Neutralization is *absolutely necessary* unless the grid and plate circuits of the tetrode stage are each completely isolated from each other in electrically tight boxes. Even when this is done, the stage will show signs of regeneration when the plate and grid tank circuits are tuned to the same frequency. Neutralization will eliminate this regeneration. Any of the neutralization circuits described in the chapter *Generation of R-F Energy* may be used.

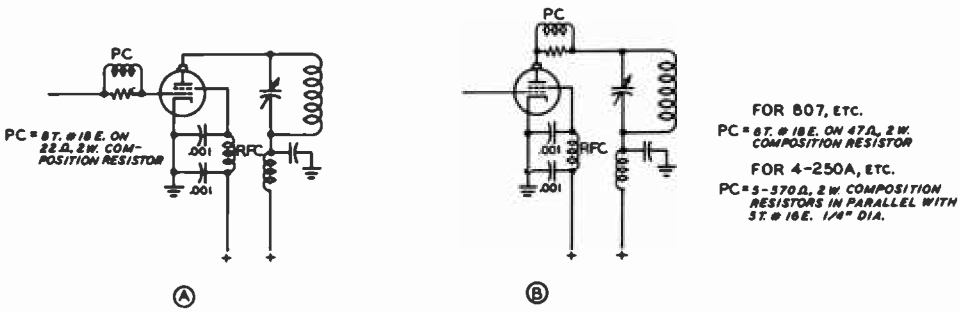


Figure 19

PLATE AND GRID PARASITIC SUPPRESSION IN TETRODE TUBES

RC-type parasitic chokes are placed in grid (A) or plate (B) lead of tetrode and pentode tubes as shown above. Too few turns on the parasitic choke will not completely suppress the parasitic, whereas too many turns will permit the shunt resistor to absorb too much fundamental power. Five turns for the shunt coil will work well to 14MHz. For 21 and 28 MHz, the shunt coil should be reduced to three turns.

17-9 Checking for Parasitic Oscillations

It is an unusual transmitter which harbors no parasitic oscillations when first constructed and tested. Therefore it is always wise to follow a definite procedure in checking a new transmitter for parasitic oscillations.

Parasitic oscillations of all types are most easily found when the stage in question is running by itself, with full plate (and screen) voltage, sufficient protective bias to limit the plate current to a safe value, and no excitation. One stage should be tested at a time, and the complete transmitter should never be put on the air until all stages have been thoroughly checked for parasitics.

To protect tetrode tubes during tests for parasitics, the screen voltage should be applied through a series resistor which will limit the screen current to a safe value in case the plate voltage of the tetrode is suddenly removed when the screen supply is on. The correct procedure for parasitic testing is as follows (figure 20):

1. The stage in question should be coupled to a dummy load, and tuned up in correct operating shape. Sufficient protective bias should be applied to the tube at all times. For protection of the stage under test, a lamp bulb should be added in series with one leg of the primary circuit of the high voltage power supply. As the plate-supply load increases during a period of parasitic oscillation, the voltage drop across the lamp increases, and the effective plate voltage drops. Bulbs of various sizes may be tried to adjust the voltage under testing conditions to the correct amount. If a *Variac* or *Powerstat* is at hand, it may be used in place of the bulbs for smoother voltage control. Don't test for parasitics unless some type of voltage control is used on the high-voltage supply! When a stage breaks into parasitic oscillations, the plate current increases violently and some protection to the tube under test *must* be used.

2. The r-f excitation to the tube should now be removed. When this is done, the grid, screen, and plate currents of the tube should drop to zero. Grid and plate tuning capaci-

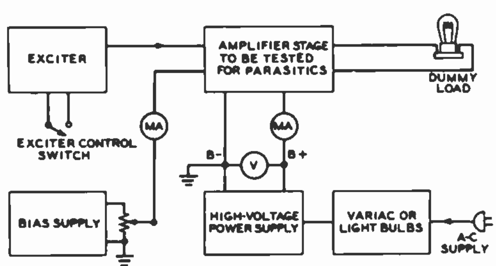


Figure 20

SUGGESTED TEST SETUP FOR PARASITIC TESTS

tors should be tuned to minimum capacity. No change in resting grid, screen, or plate current should be observed. If a parasitic is present, grid current will flow, and there will be an abrupt increase in plate current. The size of the lamp bulb in series with the high-voltage supply may be varied until the stage can oscillate continuously, without exceeding the rated plate or screen dissipation of the tube.

3. The frequency of the parasitic may now be determined by means of an absorption wavemeter, or a neon bulb. Low-frequency oscillations will cause a neon bulb to glow yellow. High-frequency oscillations will cause the bulb to have a soft, violet glow.

4. When the stage can pass the above test with no signs of parasitics, the bias supply of the tube in question should be decreased until the tube is dissipating its full plate rating when full plate voltage is applied, with no r-f excitation. Excitation may now be applied and the stage loaded to full input into a dummy load. The signal should now be monitored in a nearby receiver which has the antenna terminals grounded or otherwise shorted out. A series of rapid dots should be sent, and the frequency spectrum for several MHz each side of the carrier frequency carefully searched. If any vestige of parasitic is left, it will show up as an oscasional "pop" on a keyed dot. This "pop" may be enhanced by a slight detuning of the grid or plate.

5. If such a parasitic shows up, it means that the stage is still not stable, and further measures must be applied to the circuit. Parasitic suppressors may be needed in both screen and grid leads of a tetrode, or perhaps in both grid and neutralizing leads of a triode stage. As a last resort, a 10,000-ohm 25-watt wirewound resistor may be shunted across the grid coil, or grid tuning capacitor of a high powered stage. This strategy removed a keying "pop" that showed up in a commercial transmitter, operating at a plate voltage of 5000.

Test for Parasitic Tendency in Tetrode Amplifiers It is common experience to develop an engineering model of a new equipment that is apparently free of parasitics and then find troublesome oscillations showing up in production units. The reason for this is that the equipment has a parasitic tendency that remains below the verge of oscillation until some change in a component, tube gain, or operating condition raises the gain of the parasitic circuit enough to start oscillation.

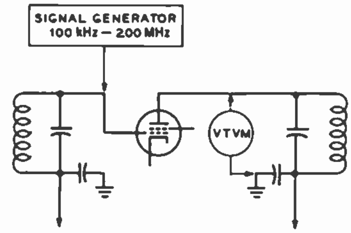


Figure 21

PARASITIC GAIN MEASUREMENT

Grid-dip oscillator and vacuum tube voltmeter may be used to measure parasitic stage gain over 100kHz-200MHz region.

In most high-frequency transmitters there are a great many resonances in the tank circuits at frequencies other than the desired operating frequency. Most of these parasitic resonant circuits are not coupled to the tube and have no significant tendency to oscillate. A few, however, are coupled to the tube in some form of oscillatory circuit. If the regeneration is great enough, oscillation at the parasitic frequency results. Those spurious circuits existing just below oscillation must be found and suppressed to a safe level.

One test method is to feed a signal from a grid-dip oscillator into the grid of a stage and measure the resulting signal level in the plate circuit of the stage, as shown in figure 21. The test is made with all operating voltages applied to the tubes. Class-C stages should have bias reduced so a reasonable amount of static plate current flows. The grid-dip oscillator is tuned over the range of 100 kHz to 200 MHz, the relative level of the r-f voltmeter is watched, and the frequencies at which voltage peaks occur are noted. Each significant peak in voltage gain in the stage must be investigated. Circuit changes or suppression must then be added to reduce all peaks by 10 db or more in amplitude.

Television and Broadcast Interference

The problem of interference to television reception is best approached by the philosophy discussed in Chapter Seventeen. By correct design procedure, spurious harmonic generation in low-frequency transmitters may be held to a minimum. The remaining problem is twofold: to make sure that the residual harmonics generated by the transmitter are not radiated, and to make sure that the fundamental signal of the transmitter does not overload the television receiver by reason of the proximity of one to the other.

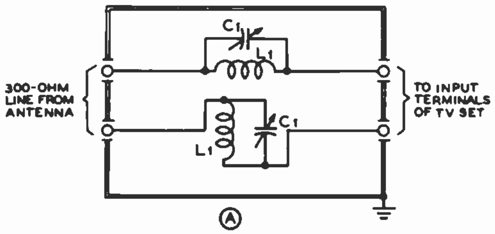
In an area of high TV-signal field intensity the TVI problem is capable of complete solution with routine measures both at the amateur transmitter and at the affected receivers. But in fringe areas of low TV-signal field strength the complete elimination of TVI is a difficult and challenging problem. The fundamentals illustrated in Chapter Seventeen must be closely followed, and additional antenna filtering of the transmitter is required.

18-1 Types of Television Interference

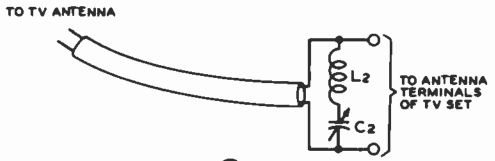
There are three main types of TVI which may be caused singly or in combination by the emissions from an amateur transmitter. These types of interference are:

1. Overloading of the TV set by the transmitter fundamental
2. Impairment of the picture by spurious emissions
3. Impairment of the picture by the radiation of harmonics

TV-Set Overloading Even if the amateur transmitter were perfect and had no harmonic radiation or spurious emissions whatever, it still would be likely to cause overloading to TV sets whose antennas were within a few hundred feet of the transmitting antenna. This type of overloading is essentially the same as the common type of BCI encountered when operating a medium-power or high-power amateur transmitter within a few hundred feet of the normal broadcast receiver. The field intensity in the immediate vicinity of the transmitting antenna is sufficiently high so that the amateur signal will get into the BC or TV set either through overloading of the front end, or through the i-f, video, or audio systems. A characteristic of this type of interference is that it always will be eliminated when the transmitter temporarily is operated into a dummy antenna. Another characteristic of this type of overloading is that its effects



(A)

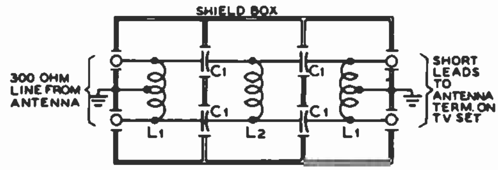


(B)

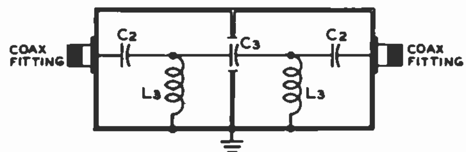
Figure 1

TUNED TRAPS FOR THE TRANSMITTER FUNDAMENTAL

The arrangement at A has proven to be effective in eliminating the condition of general blocking as caused by a 28-MHz transmitter in the vicinity of a TV receiver. The tuned circuits L_1C_1 are resonated separately to the frequency of transmission. The adjustment may be done at the station, or it may be accomplished at the TV receiver by tuning for minimum interference on the TV screen. Shown at B is an alternative arrangement with a series-tuned circuit across the antenna terminals of the TV set. The tuned circuit should be resonated to the operating frequency of the transmitter. This arrangement gives less attenuation of the interfering signal than that at A; the circuit has proven effective with interference from transmitters on the 50-MHz band, and with low-power 28-MHz transmitters.



(A) FOR 300-OHM LINE, SHIELDED OR UNSHIELDED



(B) FOR 50-75 OHM COAXIAL LINE

Figure 2

HIGH-PASS TRANSMISSION LINE FILTERS

The arrangement at A will stop the passing of all signals below about 45 MHz from the antenna transmission line into the TV set. Coils L_1 are each 1.2 microhenrys (17 turns No. 24 enam. closewound on 1/4-inch dia. polystyrene rod) with the center tap grounded. It will be found best to scrape, twist, and solder the center tap before winding the coil. The number of turns each side of the tap may then be varied until the tap is in the exact center of the winding. Coil L_2 is 0.6 microhenry (12 turns No. 24 enam. closewound on 1/4-inch dia. polystyrene rod). The capacitors should be about 16.5 pf, but either 15- or 20-pf ceramic capacitors will give satisfactory results. A similar filter for coaxial antenna transmission line is shown at B. Both coils should be 0.12 microhenry (7 turns No. 18 enam. spaced to 1/2 inch on 1/4-inch dia. polystyrene rod). Capacitors C_2 should be 75-pf midget ceramics, while C_3 should be a 40-pf ceramic.

will be substantially continuous over the entire frequency coverage of the BC or TV receiver. Channels 2 through 13 will be affected in approximately the same manner.

With the overloading type of interference, the problem is simply to keep the *fundamental* of the transmitter out of the affected receiver. Other types of interference may or may not show up when the fundamental is *taken out of the TV set* (they probably will appear), but at least the fundamental *must* be eliminated first.

The elimination of the transmitter fundamental from the TV set is normally the only operation performed on or in the vicinity of the TV receiver. After the fundamental has been eliminated as a source of interference to reception, work may then be begun on or in the vicinity of the transmitter toward eliminating the other two types of interference.

Taking Out the Fundamental More or less standard BCI-type practice is most commonly used in taking out fundamental interference. Wavetraps and filters are installed, and the antenna system may or may not be modified so as to offer less response to the signal from the amateur transmitter. In regard to a comparison between wavetraps and filters, the same considerations apply as have been effective in regard to BCI for many years; wavetraps are quite effective when properly installed and adjusted, but they must be readjusted whenever the band of operation is changed, or even when moving from one extreme end of a band to the other. Hence, wavetraps are not recommended except when operation will be confined to a relatively narrow portion of one amateur band. However, figure 1 shows two of the most common signal-trapping arrangements.

High-Pass Filters High-pass filters in the antenna lead of the TV set have proven to be quite satisfactory as a means of eliminating TVI of the overloading type. In many cases when the interfering transmitter is operated only on the bands below 7.3 MHz, the use of a high-pass filter in the antenna lead has completely eliminated all TVI. In some cases the installation of a highpass filter in the antenna transmission line and an a-c line filter of a standard variety has proven to be completely effective in eliminating the interference from a transmitter operating in one of the lower-frequency amateur bands.

In general, it is suggested that commercially manufactured high-pass filters be purchased. Such units are available from a number of manufacturers at a relatively moderate cost. However, such units may be home constructed; suggested designs are given in figures 2 and 3. Types for use both with coaxial and with balanced transmission lines have been shown. In most cases the filters may be constructed in one of the small shield boxes which are on the market. Input and output terminals may be standard connectors, or the inexpensive type of terminal strips usually used on BC and TV sets may be employed. Coaxial terminals should of course be employed when a coaxial feed line is used to the antenna. In any event, the leads from the filter box to the TV set should be very short, including both the antenna lead and the ground lead to the box itself. If the leads from the box to the set have much length, they may pick up enough signal to nullify the effects of the high-pass filter.

Blocking from 50-MHz Signals Operation on the 50-Mc. amateur band in an area where channel 2 is in use for TV imposes a special problem in the matter of blocking. The input circuits of most TV sets are sufficiently broad so that an amateur

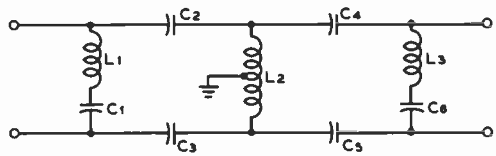


Figure 3

SERIES-DERIVED HIGH-PASS FILTER

This filter is designed for use in the 300-ohm transmission line from the TV antenna to the TV receiver. Nominal cut-off frequency is 36 MHz and maximum rejection is at about 29 MHz.
C_1,C_6—15-pf zero-coefficient ceramic
C_2,C_3,C_4,C_5—20-pf zero-coefficient ceramic
L_1 L_3—2.0 μh. About 24 turns No. 28 d.c.c. wound to 5/8" on 1/4" diameter polystyrene rod. Turns should be adjusted until the coil resonates to 29 MHz with the associated 15-pf capacitor.
L_2—0.66μh. 14 turns No. 28 d.c.c. wound to 5/8" on 1/4" dia. polystyrene rod. Adjust turns to resonate externally to 20 MHz with an auxiliary 100-pf capacitor whose value is accurately known.

signal on the 50-MHz band will ride through with little attenuation. Also, the normal TV antenna will have quite a large response to a signal in the 50-MHz band, since the lower limit of channel 2 is 54-MHz.

High-pass filters of the normal type simply are not capable of giving sufficient attenuation to a signal whose frequency is so close to the necessary passband of the filter. Hence, a resonant circuit element, as illustrated in figure 1, must be used to trap out the amateur field at the input of the TV set. The trap must be tuned, or the section of transmission line cut, if a section of line is to be used for a particular frequency in the 50-MHz band. This frequency will have to be near the lower frequency limit of the 50-MHz band to obtain adequate rejection of the amateur signal while still not materially affecting the response of the receiver to channel 2.

Elimination of Spurious Emissions All spurious emissions from amateur transmitters (ignoring harmonic signals for the time being) must be eliminated to comply with FCC regulations. But in the past many amateur transmitters have emitted spurious signals as a result of key clicks, parasitics, and overmodulation transients. In most cases the operators of the transmitters were not aware of these emis-

TRANSMITTER FUNDAMENTAL	2ND	3RD	4TH	5TH	6TH	7TH	8TH	9TH	10TH
7.0–7.3		21–21.9 TV I.F.			42–44 TV I.F.		56–58.4 CHANNEL 2	63–65.7 CHANNEL 3	70–73 CHANNEL 4
14.0–14.35		42–43 TV I.F.	56-57.6 CHANNEL 2	70-72 CHANNEL 4	84–86.4 CHANNEL 6	98—100.8 F-M BROADCAST			
21.0–21.45 (TV I.F.)		63–64.35 CHANNEL 3	84–85.8 CHANNEL 6	105–107.25 F-M BROADCAST				189–193 CHANNELS 9 10	210–214.5 CHANNEL 13
28.0—29.7	56–59.4 CHANNEL 2	84—89.1 CHANNEL 6			168–178.2 CHANNEL 7	196—207.9 CHANNELS 10 11 12			
50.0–54.0	100–108 F-M BROADCAST		200–216 CHANNELS 11 12 13				450–486 500–540 POSSIBLE INTERFERENCE TO UHF CHANNELS		

Figure 4

HARMONICS OF THE AMATEUR BANDS

Shown are the harmonic frequency ranges of the amateur bands between 7 and 54 MHz, with the TV channels (and TV i-f systems) which are most likely to receive interference from these harmonics. Under certain conditions amateur signals in the 1.8- and 3.5-MHz bands can cause interference as a result of direct pickup in the video systems of TV receivers which are not adequately shielded.

sions since they were radiated only for a short distance and hence were not brought to his attention. But with one or more TV sets in the neighborhood it is probable that such spurious signals will be brought quickly to the attention of the operator.

18-2 Harmonic Radiation

After any condition of blocking at the TV receiver has been eliminated, and when the transmitter is completely free of transients and parasitic oscillations, it is probable that TVI will be eliminated in certain cases. Certainly general interference should be eliminated, particularly if the transmitter is a well-designed affair operated on one of the lower frequency bands, and the station is in a high-signal TV area. But when the transmitter is to be operated on one of the higher frequency bands, and particularly in a marginal TV area, the job of TVI-proofing will just have begun. The elimination of harmonic radiation from the transmitter is a difficult and tedious job which must be done in an orderly manner if completely satisfactory results are to be obtained.

First it is well to become familiar with the TV channels presently assigned, with the TV intermediate frequencies commonly used, and with the channels which will receive interference from harmonics of the various amateur bands. Figures 4 and 5 give this information.

Even a short inspection of figures 4 and 5 will make obvious the seriousness of the interference which can be caused by harmonics of amateur signals in the higher frequency bands. With any sort of reasonable precautions in the design and shielding of the transmitter it is not likely that harmonics higher than the 6th will be encountered. For this reason, the most frequently found offenders in the way of harmonic interference will almost invariably be those bands above 14 MHz.

Nature of Harmonic Interference Investigations into the nature of the interference caused by amateur signals on the TV screen, assuming that blocking has been eliminated as described earlier in this chapter, have revealed the following facts:

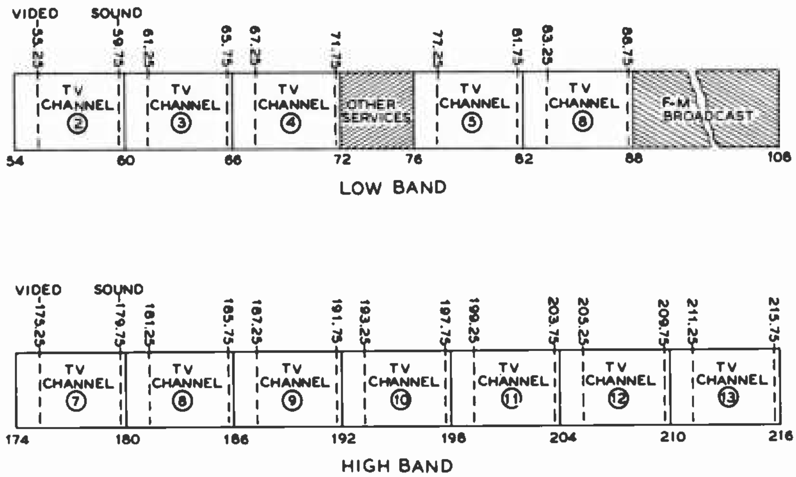


Figure 5

FREQUENCIES OF THE VHF TV CHANNELS

Showing the frequency ranges of TV channels 2 through 13, with the picture carrier and sound carrier frequencies also shown.

1. An unmodulated carrier, such as a c-w signal with the key down or an a-m signal without modulation, will give a crosshatch or herringbone pattern on the TV screen. This same general type of picture also will occur in the case of a narrow-band f-m signal either with or without modulation.
2. A relatively strong a-m or SSB signal will give in addition to the herringbone a very serious succession of light and dark bands across the TV picture.
3. A moderate strength c-w signal without transients, in the absence of overloading of the TV set, will result merely in the turning on and off of the herringbone on the picture.

To discuss condition 1 above, the herringbone is a result of the beat note between the TV video carrier and the amateur harmonic. Hence the higher the beat note the less obvious will be the resulting crosshatch. Further, it has been shown that a much stronger signal is required to produce a discernible herringbone when the interfering harmonic is as far away as possible from the video carrier, without running into the sound carrier. Thus, as a last resort, or to eliminate the last vestige of interference after all corrective measures have been taken, operate the transmitter on a frequency such that the interfering harmonic will fall as far as possible from the picture carrier. The worst possible interference to the picture from a continuous carrier will be obtained when the interfering signal is very close in frequency to the video carrier.

Isolating the Source of the Interference Throughout the testing procedure it will be necessary to have some sort of indicating device as a means of determining harmonic field intensities. The best indicator for field intensities some distance from the transmitting antenna will probably be the TV receiver of some neighbor with whom friendly relations are still maintained. This person will then be able to give a check, occasionally, on the relative nature of the interference. But it will probably be necessary to go periodically and personally check the results obtained, since the neighbor probably will not be able to give any sort of a quantitative analysis of the progress which has been made.

An additional device for checking relatively high field intensities in the vicinity of the transmitter will be almost a necessity. A simple crystal-diode wavemeter, shown in figure 6, will accomplish this function. Also, it will be very helpful to have a receiver, with an S meter, capable of covering at least the 50- to 100-MHz range and preferably the range to 216-MHz. This device may consist merely of a station receiver and a simple converter using the two halves of a 6J6 as oscillator and mixer.

The first check can best be made with the neighbor who is receiving the most serious or the most general interference. Turn on the transmitter and check all channels to determine the extent of the interference and the number of channels affected. Then disconnect the antenna and substitute a group of 100-watt lamps as a dummy load for the transmitter. Experience has shown that eight 100-watt lamps series-connected in two groups of four in parallel will take the output of a kilowatt transmitter on 28 MHz if connections are made symmetrically to the group of lamps. Then note the interference. Now remove plate voltage from the final amplifier and determine the extent of interference caused by the exciter stages.

In the average case, when the final amplifier is a beam-tetrode stage and the exciter is relatively low powered and adequately shielded, it will be found that the interference drops materially when the antenna is removed and a dummy load substituted. It will also be found in such an average case that the interference will stop when the exciter only is operating.

Transmitter Power Level It should be made clear at this point that the level of power used at the transmitter is not of great significance in the basic harmonic reduction problem. The difference in power level between a 20-watt transmitter and one rated at a kilowatt is only a matter of about 17 db. Yet the degree of harmonic attenuation required to eliminate interference caused by harmonic radiation is from 80 to 120 db, depending on the TV signal strength in the vicinity. This is not to say that it is not a simpler job to eliminate harmonic interference from a low-power transmitter than from a kilowatt equipment. It is simpler to suppress harmonic radiation from a low-power transmitter simply because it is a much easier problem to shield a low-power unit, and the filters for the leads which enter the transmitter enclosure may be constructed less expensively and smaller for a low-power unit.

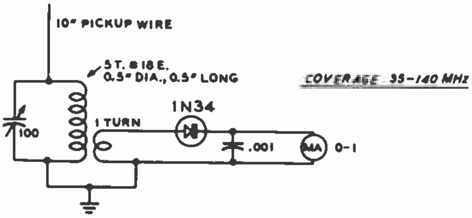


Figure 6

Crystal-diode wavemeter suitable for checking high-intensity harmonics in TV region.

18-3 Low-Pass Filters

After the transmitter has been shielded, and all power leads have been filtered in such a manner that the transmitter shielding has not been rendered ineffective, the only remaining available exit for harmonic energy lies in the antenna transmission line. Hence the main burden of harmonic attenuation will fall on the low-pass filter installed between the output of the transmitter and the antenna system.

Experience has shown that the low-pass filter can best be installed externally to the main transmitter enclosure, and that the transmission line from the transmitter to the lowpass filter should be of the coaxial type. Hence the majority of low-pass filters are designed for a characteristic impedance of 52 ohms, so that RG-8/U cable (or RG-58/U for a small transmitter) may be used between the output of the transmitter and the antenna transmission line or the antenna tuner.

Transmitting-type low-pass filters for amateur use usually are designed in such a manner as to pass frequencies up to about 30 MHz without attenuation. The nominal cutoff frequency of the filters is usually between 38 and 45 MHz, and *m*-derived sections with maximum attenuation in channel 2 usually are included. Well-designed filters capable of carrying any power level up to one kilowatt are available commercially from several manufacturers. Alternatively, filters in kit form are available from several manufacturers at a somewhat lower price. Effec-

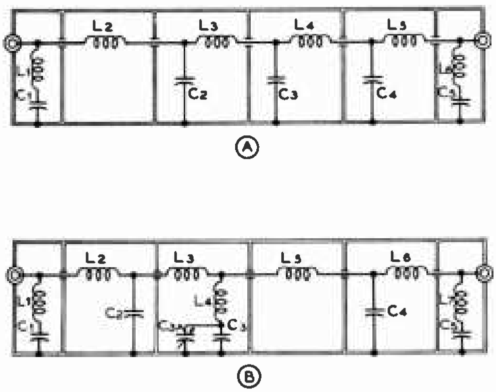


Figure 7

LOW-PASS FILTER SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS

The filter illustrated at A uses m-derived terminating half sections at each end, with three constant-k midsections. The filter at B is essentially the same except that the center section has been changed to act as an m-derived section which can be designed to offer maximum attenuation to channels 2, 4, 5, or 6 in accord with the constants given below. Cutoff frequency is 45 MHz in all cases. All coils, except L_4 in B above, are wound ½" i.d. with 8 turns per inch.

The A Filter
C_1, C_5—41.5 pf (40 pf will be found suitable.)
C_2, C_3, C_4—136 pf (130 to 140 pf may be used.)
L_1, L_6—0.2 μh; 3½ t. No. 14
L_2, L_5—0.3 μh; 5 t. No. 12
L_3, L_4—0.37 μh; 6½ t. No. 12

The B Filter with midsection tuned to Channel 2 (58 MHz)
C_1, C_5—41.5 μfd
C_2, C_4—136 pf
C_3—87 pf (50 pf fixed and 75 pf variable in parallel.)
L_1, L_7—0.2 μh; 3½ t. No. 14
L_2, L_3, L_5, L_6—0.3 μh; 5 t. No. 12
L_4—0.09 μh; 2 t. No. 14, ½" dia. by ¼" long

The B Filter with midsection tuned to Channel 4 (71 MHz). All components same except that:
C_3—106 pf
L_3, L_5—0.33 μh; 6 t. No. 12
L_4—0.05 μh; 1½ t. No. 14, ⅜" dia. by ⅜" long.

The B Filter with midsection tuned to Channel 5 (81 MHz). Change the following:
C_3—113 pf
L_3, L_5—0.34 μh; 6 t. No. 12
L_4—0.033 μh; 1 t. No. 14, ⅜" dia.

The B Filter with midsection tuned to Channel 6 (86 MHz). All components are essentially the same except that the theoretical value of L_4 is changed to 0.03 μh, and the capacitance of C_3 is changed to 117 pf.

tive filters may be home constructed, if the test equipment is available and if sufficient care is taken in the construction of the assembly.

Construction of Low-Pass Filters Figures 7, 8, and 9 illustrate high-performance low-pass filters which are suitable for home construction. All are constructed in slip-cover aluminum boxes (ICA No. 29110) with dimensions of 17 by 3 by 2⅝ inches. Five aluminum baffle plates have been installed in the chassis to make six shielded sections within the enclosure. Feedthrough bushings between the shielded sections are *Johnson No. 135-55.*

Both the A and B filter types are designed for a nominal cutoff frequency of 45 MHz, with a frequency of maximum rejection at about 57 MHz as established by the terminating half-sections at each end. Characteristic impedance is 52 ohms in all cases. The alternative filter designs diagramed in figure 7B have provision for an additional rejection trap in the center of the filter unit which may be designed to offer maximum rejection in channel 2, 4, 5, or 6, depending on which channel is likely to be received in the area in question. The only components which must be changed when changing the frequency of the maximum rejection notch in the center of the filter unit are inductors L_3, L_4, and L_5 and capacitor C_3. A trimmer capacitor has been included as a portion of C_3 so that the frequency of maximum rejection can be tuned accurately to the desired value. Reference to figure 4 and 5 will show the amateur bands which are most likely to cause interference to specific TV channels.

Either high-power or low-power components may be used in the filters diagramed in figure 7. With the small zero-coefficient ceramic capacitors used in the filter units of figure 7A or figure 7B, power levels up to 200 watts output may be used without

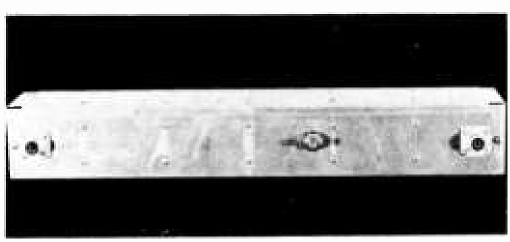


Figure 8

PHOTOGRAPH OF THE B FILTER WITH THE COVER IN PLACE

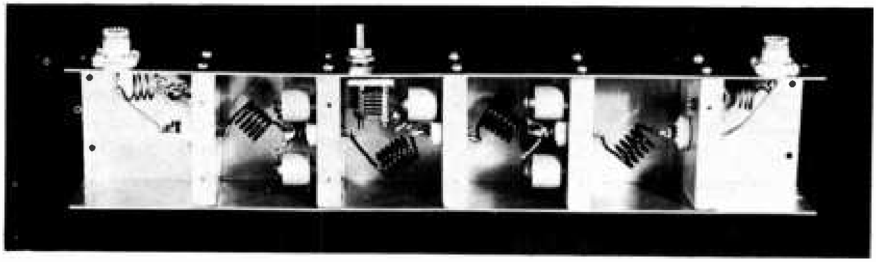


Figure 9

PHOTOGRAPH OF THE B FILTER WITH COVER REMOVED

The midsection in this filter is adjusted for maximum rejection of channel 4. Note that the main coils of the filter are mounted at an angle of about 45 degrees so that there will be minimum inductive coupling from one section to the next through the holes in the aluminum partitions. Mounting the coils in this manner was found to give a measurable improvement in the attenuation characteristics of the filter.

danger of damage to the capacitors, *provided* the filter is feeding a 52-ohm resistive load. It may be practical to use higher levels of power with this type of ceramic capacitor in the filter, but at a power level of 200 watts on the 28-MHz band the capacitors run just perceptibly warm to the touch. As a point of interest, it is the current rating which is of significance in the capacitors used in filters such as illustrated. Since current ratings for small capacitors such as these are not readily available, it is not possible to establish an accurate power rating for such a unit. The high-power unit illustrated in figure 9, which uses *Centralab type* 850S and 854S capacitors, has proven quite suitable for power levels up to one kilowatt.

Capacitors C_1, C_2, C_4, and C_5 can be standard manufactured units with normal 5 percent tolerance. The coils for the end sections can be wound to the dimensions given (L_1, L_6, and L_7). Then the resonant frequency of the series-resonant end sections should be checked with a grid-dip meter, after the adjacent input or output terminal has been shorted with a very short lead. The coils should be squeezed or spread until resonance occurs at 57 MHz.

The intermediate *m*-derived section in the filter of figure 7B may also be checked with a grid-dip meter for resonance at the correct rejection frequency, after the hot end of L_1 has been temporarily grounded with a low-inductance lead. The variable-capacitor portion of C_3 can be tuned until resonance at the correct frequency has been obtained. Note that there is so little difference between the constants of this intermediate section for channels 5 and 6 that variation in the setting of C_3 will tune to either channel without materially changing the operation of the filter.

The coils in the intermediate sections of the filter (L_2, L_3, L_4, and L_5 in figure 7A, and L_2, L_3, L_5, and L_6 in figure 7B) may be checked most conveniently outside the filter unit with the aid of a small ceramic capacitor of known value and a grid-dip meter. The ceramic capacitor is paralleled across the small coil with the shortest possible leads. Then the assembly is placed on a cardboard box and the resonant frequency checked with a grid-dip meter. A *reactance slide rule* may be used to ascertain the correct resonant frequency for the desired LC combination and the coil altered until the desired resonant frequency is attained. The coil may then be installed in the filter unit, making sure that it is not squeezed or compressed as it is being installed. However, if the coils are wound exactly as given under figure 7, the filter may be assembled with reasonable assurance that it will operate as designed.

Using Low-Pass Filters The low-pass filter connected in the output transmission line of the transmitter is capable of affording an enormous de-

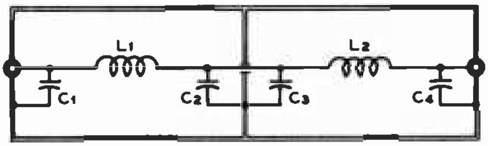


Figure 10

SCHEMATIC OF THE SINGLE-SECTION HALF-WAVE FILTER

The constants given below are for a characteristic impedance of 52 ohms, for use with RG-8/U and RG-58/U cable. Coil L_1 should be checked for resonance at the operating frequency with C_2, and the same with L_2 and C_4. This check can be made by soldering a low-inductance grounding strap to the lead between L_1 and L_2 where it passes through the shield. When the coils have been trimmed to resonance with a grid-dip meter, the grounding strap should of course be removed. This filter type will give an attenuation of about 30 db to the second harmonic, about 48 db to the third, about 60 db to the fourth, 67 to the fifth, etc., increasing at a rate of about 30 db per octave.

C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4—Silver mica or small ceramic for low power, transmitting type ceramic for high power. Capacitance for different bands is given below.

160 meters—1700 pf
80 meters— 850 pf
40 meters— 440 pf
20 meters— 220 pf
10 meters— 110 pf
6 meters— 60 pf

L_1, L_2—May be made up of sections of B&W Miniductor for power levels below 250 watts, or of No. 12 enam. for power up to one kilowatt. Approximate dimensions for the coils are given below, but the coils should be trimmed to resonate at the proper frequency with a grid-dip meter as discussed above. All coils except the ones for 160 meters are wound 8 turns per inch.
160 meters—4.2 μh; 22 turns No. 16 enam. 1" dia. 2" long
80 meters—2.1 μh; 13 t. 1" dia. (No. 3014 Miniductor or No. 12)
40 meters—1.1 μh; 8 t. 1" dia. (No. 3014 or No. 12 at 8 t.p.i.)
20 meters—0.55 μh; 7 t. ¾" dia. (No. 3010 or No. 12 at 8 t.p.i.)
10 meters—0.3 μh; 6 t. ½" dia. (No. 3002 or No. 12 at 8 t.p.i.)
6 meters—0.17 μh; 4 t. ½" dia. (No. 3002 or No. 12 at 8 t.p.i.)

gree of harmonic attenuation. However, the filter must be operated in the correct manner or the results obtained will not be up to expectations.

In the first place, all direct radiation from the transmitter and its control and power leads must be suppressed. This subject has been discussed in the previous section. Secondly, the filter must be operated into a load impedance approximately equal to its design characteristic impedance. The filter itself will have very low losses (usually less than 0.5 db) when operated into its nominal value of resistive load. But if the filter is not terminated correctly, its losses will become excessive, and it will not present the correct value of load impedance to the transmitter.

If a filter, being fed from a high-power transmitter, is operated into an incorrect termination it may be damaged; the coils may be overheated and the capacitors destroyed as a result of excessive r-f currents. Hence it is wise when first installing a low-pass filter, to check the standing-wave ratio of the load being presented to the output of the

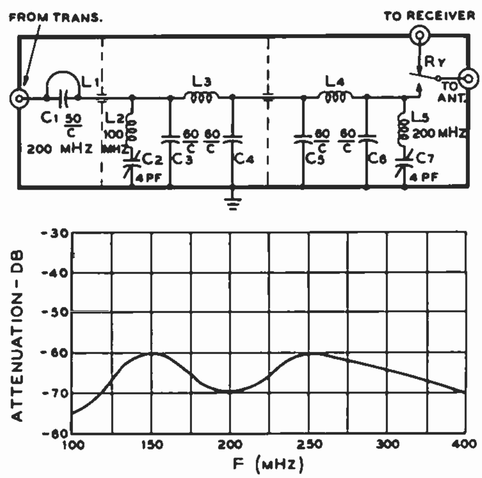


Figure 11

SIX METER TVI FILTER

C_1—50-pf Centralab 850S-50Z. Resonates with L_1 to 200 MHz.
C_2, C_7—4-pf piston capacitor. JFD type VC-4G.
C_3, C_4, C_5, C_6—60 pf. Three 20-pf capacitors in parallel. Centralab 853A-20Z.
L_1—Copper strap, ½" wide, 2¼" long, 1⅞" between mounting holes, approximately 0.01" thick. Strap is bent in U-shape around capacitor and bolted to capacitor terminals.
L_2—11 turns #18 enam. wire, ¼" diameter, ¾" long, airwound. Resonates to 100 MHz with capacitor C_2.
L_3, L_4—3 turns 3/16" tubing, 1¼" i.d., spaced to occupy about 2½". Turns are adjusted to resonate each section at 50 MHz.
L_5—6 turns #18 enam. wire, ¼" diameter, ⅝" long, airwound. Resonates to 200 MHz with capacitor C_7.

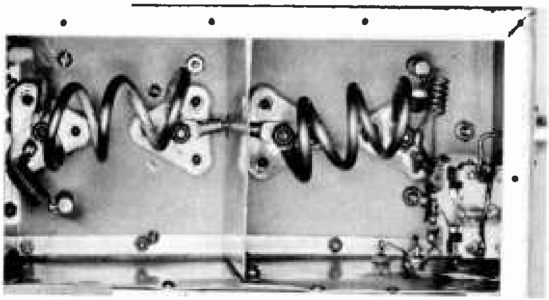


Figure 12

INTERIOR VIEW OF SIX-METER FILTER

The input compartment of the filter is at the left. The series coil is wound of copper tubing, and the connection to the output section (right) is made by a length of tubing which passes through a hole in the center shield. Series elements carry less current and employ wirewound coils. At right is antenna relay, with power leads bypassed as they leave filter compartment. Filter is set to correct frequency by adjusting the inductance of the tubing coils.

filter with a standing-wave meter of any of the conventional types. Then the antenna termination or the antenna coupling should be adjusted, with low power on the transmitter, until the s.w.r. of the load being presented to the filter is less than 2.0, and preferably below 1.5.

Half-Wave Filters A *half-wave filter* is an effective device for TVI suppression and is easily built. It offers the advantage of presenting the same value of impedance at the input terminal as appears as a load across the output terminal. The filter is a single-band unit, offering high attenuation to the second- and higher-order harmonics. Design data for high-frequency half-wave filters is given in figure 10.

A High-Power Filter for Six Meters The second and higher harmonics of a six-meter transmitter fall directly into the f-m and uhf and vhf television bands. An effective low-pass filter is required to adequately suppress unwanted transmitter emissions falling in these bands. Described in this section is a six-meter TVI filter rated at the two-kilowatt level which provides better than 75 decibels suppression of the second harmonic and better than 60 decibels suppression of higher harmonics of a six-meter transmitter (figure 11). The unit is composed of a halfwave filter with added end sections which are tuned to 100 MHz and 200 MHz. An auxiliary filter element in series with the input is tuned to 200 MHz to provide additional protection to television channels 11, 12, and 13.

The filter (figure 12) is built in an aluminum box measuring 4″ x 4″ x 10″ and uses *type-N* coaxial fittings. The half-wave filter coils are wound of 3/16-inch diameter copper tubing and have large copper lugs soldered to the ends. The 60-pf capacitors are made up of three 20-pf, 5kv ceramic units in parallel. A small sheet of copper is cut in triangular shape and joins the capacitor terminals and a coil lug is attached to the center of the triangle with heavy brass bolts.

The parallel-tuned 200-MHz series filter element at the input terminal is made of a length of copper strap shunted across a 50-pf, 5kv ceramic capacitor. In this particular filter, the parallel circuit was affixed to the output capacitor of the pi-network tank circuit of the transmitter and does not show in the photograph.

The filter is adjusted by removing the connections from the ends of the half-wave sections and adjusting each section to 50 MHz by spreading the turns of the coil with a screwdriver while monitoring the resonant frequency with a grid-dip oscillator. The next step is to ground the top end of each series-tuned section (C_2, L_2 and C_7, L_5) with a heavy strap. The input section is tuned to 100 MHz and the output section to 200 MHz. When tuning adjustments are completed, the straps are removed and the top of the filter box is held in place with sheet-metal screws.

18-4 Broadcast Interference

Interference to the reception of signals in the broadcast band (540 to 1600 kHz) or in the f-m broadcast band (88 to 108 MHz) by amateur transmissions is a serious matter to those amateurs living in densely populated areas. Although broadcast interference has recently been overshadowed by the seriousness of television interference, the condition of BCI is still present.

In general, signals from a transmitter operating properly are not picked up by receivers tuned to other frequencies unless the receiver is of inferior design, or is in poor condition. Therefore, if the receiver is of good design and is in good repair, the burden of rectifying the trouble rests with the owner of the interfering station. Phone and c-w stations both are capable of causing broadcast interference, key-click annoyance from the code transmitters being particularly objectionable.

A knowledge of each of the several types of broadcast interference, their cause, and methods of eliminating them is necessary for the successful disposition of this trouble. An effective method of combating one variety of interference is often of no value whatever in the correction of another type. Broadcast interference seldom can be cured by "rule-of-thumb" procedure.

Broadcast interference, as covered in this section refers primarily to standard (amplitude-modulated, 550-1600 kHz) broadcast. Interference with f-m broadcast reception is much less common, due to the wide separation in frequency between the f-m broadcast band and the more popular amateur bands, and due also to the limiting action which exists in all types of f-m receivers. Occasional interference with f-m broadcast by a harmonic of an amateur transmitter has been reported; if this condition is encountered, it may be eliminated by the procedures discussed in the first portion of this chapter under *Television Interference*.

The use of frequency-modulation transmission by an amateur station is likely to result in much less interference to broadcast reception than either amplitude-modulated telephony, SSB, or straight keyed c.w. This is true because, insofar as the broadcast receiver is concerned, the amateur f-m transmission will consist of a plain unmodulated carrier. There will be no key clicks or voice reception picked up by the broadcast set (unless it happens to be an f-m receiver which might pick up a harmonic of the signal), although there might be a slight click when the transmitter is put on or taken off the air.

Interference Classifications Depending on whether it is traceable directly to causes within the *station* or within the *receiver*, broadcast interference may be divided into two main classes. For example, that type of interference due to transmitter overmodulation is at once listed as being caused by improper operation, while an interfering signal that tunes in and out with a broadcast station is probably an indication of cross modulation or image response in the receiver, and the poorly designed input stage of the receiver is held liable. The various types of interference and recommended cures will be discussed in the following paragraphs.

Blanketing This is not a tunable effect, but a total blocking of the receiver. A more or less complete "washout" covers the entire receiver range when the carrier is switched on. This produces either a complete blotting out of all broadcast stations, or else knocks down their volume several decibels—depending on the severity of the interference. Voice modulation of the carrier causing the blanketing will be highly distorted or even unintelligible. Keying of the carrier which produces the blanketing will cause an annoying fluctuation in the volume of the broadcast signals.

Blanketing generally occurs in the immediate neighborhood (inductive field) of a powerful transmitter, the affected area being directly proportional to the power of the transmitter. Also it is more prevalent with transmitters which operate in the 160-meter and 80-meter bands, as compared to those on the higher frequencies.

The remedies are to (1) shorten the receiving antenna and thereby shift its resonant frequency, (2) remove it to the interior of the building, (3) change the direction of

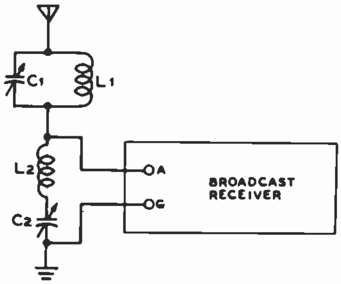


Figure 13

HIGH-ATTENUATION WAVETRAP CIRCUIT

The two circuits may be tuned to the same frequency for highest attenuation of a strong signal, or the two traps may be tuned separately for different bands of operation.

1.8 MHz	1 inch No. 30 enam. closewound on 1" form	75-pf var.
3.5 MHz	42 turns No. 30 enam. closewound on 1" form	50-pf var.
7.0 MHz	23 turns No. 24 enam. closewound on 1" form	50-pf var.
14 MHz	10 turns No. 24 enam. closewound on 1" form	50-pf var.
21 MHz	7 turns No. 24 enam. closewound on 1" form	50-pf var.
28 MHz	4 turns No. 24 enam. closewound on 1" form	25-pf var.
50 MHz	3 turns No. 24 enam. spaced ½" on 1" form	25-pf var.

Figure 14

COIL AND CAPACITOR TABLE FOR AMATEUR-BAND WAVETRAPS

either the receiving or transmitting antenna to minimize their mutual coupling, or, (4) keep the interfering signal from entering the receiver input circuit by installing a wavetrap tuned to the signal frequency (see figure 12) or a low-pass filter as shown in figure 21.

A suitable wavetrap is quite simple in construction, consisting only of a coil and midget variable capacitor. When the trap circuit is tuned to the frequency of the interfering signal, little of the interfering voltage reaches the grid of the first tube. Commercially manufactured wavetraps are available from several concerns, including the *J. W. Miller Co.* in Los Angeles. However, the majority of amateurs prefer to construct the traps from spare components selected from the junk box.

The circuit shown in figure 13 is particularly effective because it consists of two traps. The shunt trap blocks or rejects the frequency to which it is tuned, while the series trap across the antenna and ground terminals of the receiver provides a very-low-impedance path to ground at the frequency to which it is tuned and bypasses the signal to ground. In moderate interference cases, either the shunt or series trap may be used alone, while similarly, one trap may be tuned to one of the frequencies of the interfering transmitter and the other trap to a different interfering frequency. In either case, each trap is effective over but a small frequency range and must be readjusted for other frequencies.

The wavetrap must be installed as close to the receiver antenna terminal as practicable, hence it should be as small in size as possible. The variable capacitor may be a midget air-tuned trimmer type, and the coil may be wound on a 1-inch dia. form. The table of figure 14 gives winding data for wavetraps built around standard variable capacitors. For best results, both a shunt and a series trap should be employed as shown.

Figure 15 shows a two-circuit coupled wavetrap which is somewhat sharper in tuning and more efficient. The specifications for the secondary coil (L_1) may be obtained from the table of figure 14. The primary coil

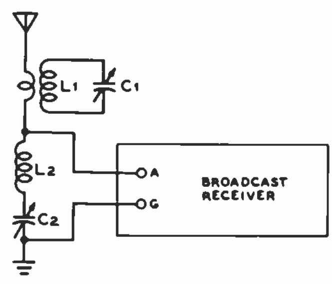


Figure 15

MODIFICATION OF THE FIGURE 13 CIRCUIT

In this circuit arrangement the parallel-tuned tank is inductively coupled to the antenna lead with a 3 to 6 turn link instead of being placed directly in series with the antenna lead.

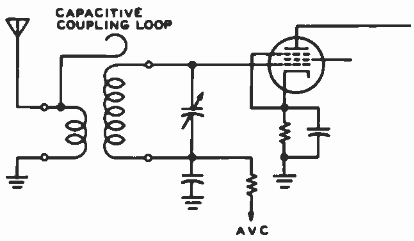


Figure 16

CAPACITIVE BOOST COUPLING CIRCUIT

Such circuits, included within the broadcast receiver to bring up the stage gain at the high-frequency end of the tuning range, have a tendency to increase the susceptibility of the receiver to interference from amateur-band transmissions.

of the shunt trap consists of 3 to 6 close-wound turns of the same size wire wound in the same direction on the same form as L_1 and separated from the latter by 1/8 inch.

Overmodulation A carrier modulated in excess of 100 percent acquires sharp cutoff periods which give rise to transients. These transients create a broad signal and generate spurious responses. Transients caused by overmodulation of a radiotelephone signal may at the same time bring about impact or shock excitation of nearby receiving antennas and power lines, generating interfering signals in that manner.

Broadcast interference due to overmodulation is frequently encountered. The remedy is to reduce the modulation percentage or to use a clipper-filter system or a high-level splatter suppressor in the speech circuit of the transmitter.

Cross Modulation Cross modulation or *crosstalk* is characterized by the amateur signal *riding in* on top of a strong broadcast signal. There is usually no heterodyne note, the amateur signal being tuned in and out with the program carriers.

This effect is due frequently to a faulty input stage in the affected receiver. Modulattion of the interfering carrier will swing the operating point of the input tube. This type of trouble is seldom experienced when a variable-μ tube is used in the input stage of the receiver.

Where the receiver does not incorporate such a tube, and is probably poorly shielded at the same time, it will be better to attach a wavetrap of the type shown in figure 12 rather than to attempt rebuilding the receiver. The addition of a good ground and a shield can over the input tube often adds to the effectiveness of the wavetrap.

Transmission via Capacitive Coupling A small amount of capacitive coupling is now widely used in receiver r-f and antenna transformers as a gain booster at the high-frequency end of the tuning range. The coupling capacitance is obtained by means of a small loop of wire cemented close to the grid end of the secondary winding, with one end directly connected to the plate or antenna end of the primary winding. (See figure 16.)

It is easily seen that a small capacitor at this position will favor the coupling of the higher frequencies. This type of capacitive coupling in the receiver coils will tend to pass amateur high-frequency signals into a receiver tuned to broadcast frequencies.

The amount of capacitive coupling may be reduced to eliminate interference by moving the coupling turn further away from the secondary coil. However, a simple wavetrap of the type shown in figure 12, inserted at the antenna input terminal, will generally accomplish the same result and is more to be recommended than reducing the amount of capacitive coupling (which lowers the receiver gain at the high-frequency end of the broadcast band). Should the wavetrap alone not suffice, it will be necessary to resort to a reduction in the coupling capacitance.

In some simple broadcast receivers, capacitive coupling is obtained by closely coupled primary and secondary coils, or as a result of running a long primary or antenna lead close to the secondary coil of an unshielded antenna coupler.

Phantoms With two strong local carriers applied to a nonlinear impedance, the beat note resulting from cross modulation between them may fall on some frequency within the broadcast band and will be audible at that point. If such a "phantom" signal falls on a local broadcast frequency, there will be heterodyne interference as well. This is a common occurrence with broadcast receivers in the neighborhood of two amateur stations, or an amateur and a police station. It also sometimes occurs when only one of the stations is located in the immediate vicinity.

As an example: an amateur signal on 3514 kHz might beat with a local 2414 kHz police carrier to produce a 1100-kHz phantom. If the two carriers are strong enough in the vicinity of a circuit which can cause rectification, the 1100-kHz phantom will be heard in the broadcast band. A poor contact between two oxidized wires can produce rectification.

Two stations must be transmitting simultaneously to produce a phantom signal; when either station goes off the air the phantom disappears. Hence, this type of interference is apt to be reported as highly intermittent and might be difficult to duplicate unless a test oscillator is used "on location" to simulate the missing station. Such interference cannot be remedied at the transmitter, and often the rectification takes place some distance from the receivers. In such occurrences it is most difficult to locate the source of the trouble.

It will also be apparent that a phantom might fall on the intermediate frequency of a simple superhet receiver and cause interference of the untunable variety if the manufacturer has not provided an i-f wavetrap in the antenna circuit.

This particular type of phantom may, in addition to causing i-f interference, generate harmonics which may be tuned in and out with heterodyne whistles from one end of the receiver dial to the other. It is in this manner that *birdies* often result from the operation of nearby amateur stations.

When one component of a phantom is a steady unmodulated carrier, only the intelligence presence on the other carrier is conveyed to the broadcast receiver.

Phantom signals almost always may be identified by the suddenness with which they are interrupted, signaling withdrawal of one party of the union. This is especially baffling to the inexperienced interference locater, who observes that the interference suddenly dissapears, even though his own transmitter remains in operation.

If the mixing or rectification is taking place in the receiver itself, a phantom signal may be eliminated by removing either one of the contributing signals from the receiver input circuit. A wavetrap of the type shown in figure 12, tuned to either signal, will do the trick. If the rectification is taking place outside the receiver, the wavetrap should be tuned to the frequency of the phantom, instead of to one of its components. I-f wavetraps may be built around a 2.5-millihenry r-f choke as the inductor, and a compression-type mica padding capacitor. The capacitor should have a capacitance range of 250-525 pf for the 175- and 260-kHz intermediate frequencies; 65-175 pf for 260 kHz and other intermediates lying between 250 and 400-kHz; and 17–80 pf for 456, 465, 495, and 500 kHz. Slightly more capacitance will be required for resonance with a 2.1 millihenry choke.

Spurious Emissions This sort of interference arises from the transmitter itself. The radiation of any signal (other than the intended carrier frequency) by an amateur station is prohibited by FCC regulations. Spurious radiation may be traced to imperfect neutralization, parasitic oscillations in the r-f or modulator stages, or to "broadcast-band" variable-frequency oscillators or e.c.o.'s.

Low-frequency parasitics may actually occur on broadcast frequencies or their near subharmonics, causing direct interference to programs. An all-wave monitor operated in the vicinity of the transmitter will detect these spurious signals.

The remedy will be obvious in individual cases. Elsewhere in this book are discussed methods of complete neutralization and the suppression of parasitic oscillations in r-f and audio stages.

A-c/d-c Receivers Inexpensive table-model a-c/d-c receivers are particularly susceptible to interference from amateur transmissions. In fact, it may be said with a fair degree of assurance that the majority of BCI encountered by amateurs operating in the 1.8- to 29-MHz range is a result of these inexpensive receivers. In most cases the receivers are at fault; but this does not absolve the amateur of his responsibility in attempting to eliminate the interference.

Stray Receiver Rectification In most cases of interference to inexpensive receivers, particularly those of the a-c/d-c type, it will be found that stray receiver rectification is causing the trouble. The offending stage usually will be found to be a high-μ triode as the first audio stage following the second detector. Tubes of this type are quite nonlinear in their grid characteristic, and hence will readily rectify any r-f signal appearing between grid and cathode. The r-f signal may get to the tube as a result of direct signal pickup due to the lack of shielding, but more commonly will be fed to the tube from the power line as a result of the series heater string.

The remedy for this condition is simply to ensure that the cathode and grid of the high-μ audio tube (usually a 6AV6 or equivalent) are at the same r-f potential. This is accomplished by placing an r-f bypass capacitor with the shortest possible leads directly from grid to cathode, and then adding an impedance in the lead from the volume control to the grid of the audio tube. The impedance may be an amateur band r-f choke (such as a National R-100U) for best results, but for a majority of cases it will be found that a 47,000-ohm ½-watt resistor in series with this lead will give satisfactory operation. Suitable circuits for such an operation on the receiver are given in figure 17.

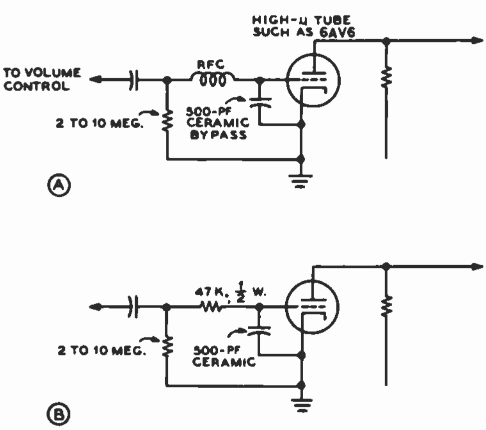


Figure 17

CIRCUITS FOR ELIMINATING AUDIO-STAGE RECTIFICATON

In many a-c/d-c receivers there is no r-f bypass included across the plate-supply rectifier for the set. If there is an appreciable level of r-f signal on the power line feeding the receiver, r-f rectification in the power rectifier of the receiver can cause a particularly bad type of interference which may be received on other broadcast receivers in the vicinity in addition to the one causing the rectification. The soldering of a 0.01-μfd disc ceramic capacitor directly from anode to cathode of the power rectifier (whether it is of the vacuum-tube or silicon-rectifier type) usually will bypass the r-f signal across the rectifier and thus eliminate the difficulty.

"Floating" Volume-Control Shafts Several sets have been encountered where there was only a slight interfering signal; but, on placing one's hand to the volume control, the signal would greatly increase. Investigation revealed that the volume control was installed with its shaft insulated from ground. The control itself was connected to a critical part of a circuit, in many instances to the grid of a high-gain audio stage. The cure is to install a volume control with *all* the terminals insulated from the shaft, and then to ground the shaft.

BAND	COIL, L	CAPACITOR, C
3.5 MHz	17 turns No. 14 enameled 3-inch diameter 2¼-inch length	100-pf var.
7.0 MHz	11 turns No. 14 enameled 2½-inch diameter 1½-inch length	100-pf var.
14 and 21 MHz	4 turns No. 10 enameled 3-inch diameter 1⅛-inch length	100-pf var.
28 MHz	3 turns ¼-in o.d. copper tubing 2-inch diameter 1-inch length	100-pf var.

Figure 18

COIL AND CAPACITOR TABLE FOR A-C LINE TRAPS

Power-Line Pickup When radio-frequency energy from a radio transmitter enters a broadcast receiver through the a-c power lines, it has either been fed back into the lighting system by the offending

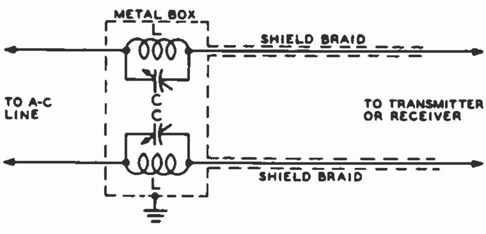


Figure 19

RESONANT POWER-LINE WAVE-TRAP CIRCUIT

The resonant type of power-line filter is more effective than the more conventional "brute force" type of line filter, but requires tuning to the operating frequency of the transmitter.

transmitter, or picked up from the air by overhead power lines. Underground lines are seldom responsible for spreading this interference.

To check the path whereby the interfering signals reach the line, it is only necessary to replace the transmitting antenna with a dummy antenna and adjust the transmitter for maximum output. If the interference then ceases, overhead lines have been picking up the energy. The trouble can be cleared up by installing a wavetrap or a commercial line filter in the power lines at the receiver. If the receiver is reasonably close to the transmitter, it is very doubtful that changing the direction of the transmitting antenna to right angles with the overhead lines will eliminate the trouble.

If, on the contrary, the interference continues when the transmitter is connected to the dummy antenna, radio-frequency energy is being fed directly into the power line by the transmitter, and the station must be inspected to determine the cause.

One of the following reasons for the trouble will usually be found: (1) the r-f stages are not sufficiently bypassed and/or choked, (2) the antenna coupling system is not performing efficiently, (3) the power transformers have no electrostatic shields; or, if shields are present, they are ungrounded, (4) power lines are running too close to an antenna or r-f circuits carrying high currents. If none of these causes apply, wavetraps must be installed in the power lines at the transmitter to remove r-f energy passing back into the lighting system.

The wavetraps used in the power lines at transmitter or receiver must be capable of passing relatively high current. The coils are accordingly wound with heavy wire. Figure 18 lists the specifications for power-line wavetrap coils, while figure 19 illustrates the method of connecting these wavetraps. Observe that these traps are enclosed in a shield box of iron or aluminum, well grounded.

Image Interference In addition to those types of interference already discussed, there are two more which are common to superhet receivers. The prevalence of these types is of great concern to the amateur, although the responsibility for their existence more properly rests with the broadcast receiver.

The mechanism whereby image production takes place may be explained in the following manner: when the first detector is set to the frequency of an incoming signal, the high-frequency oscillator is operating on another frequency which differs from the signal by the number of kHz of the intermediate frequency. Now, with the setting of these two stages undisturbed, there is another signal which will beat with the high-frequency oscillator to produce an i-f signal. This other signal is the so-called *image*, which is separated from the desired signal by twice the intermediate frequency.

Thus, in a receiver with a 175-kHz intermediate frequency tuned to 1000 kHz; the h-f oscillator is operating on 1175 kHz, and a signal on 1350 kHz (1000 kHz plus 2 × 175 kHz) will beat with this 1175 kHz oscillator frequency to produce the 175-kHz i-f signal. Similarly, when the same receiver is tuned to 1450 kHz, an amateur signal on 1800 kHz can come through.

If the image appears only a few Hz or kHz from a broadcast carrier, heterodyne interference will be present as well. Otherwise, it will be tuned in and out in the manner of a station operating in the broadcast band. Sharpness of tuning will be comparable to that of broadcast stations producing the same avc voltage at the receiver.

The second variety of superhet interference is the result of harmonics of the receiver high-frequency oscillator beating with amateur carriers to produce the intermediate frequency of the receiver. The amateur transmitter will always be found to be on a frequency equal to some harmonic of the receiver hf oscillator, *plus or minus the intermediate frequency.*

As an example: when a broadcast superhet with 465-kHz intermediate frequency is tuned to 1000 kHz, its high-frequency oscillator operates on 1465 kHz. The third harmonic of this oscillator frequency is 4395 kHz, which will beat with an amateur signal on 3930 kHz to send a signal through the i-f amplifier. The 3930 kHz signal would be tuned in at the 1000-kHz point on the dial.

Some oscillator harmonics are so related to amateur frequencies that more than one point of interference will occur on the receiver dial. Thus, a 3500-kHz signal may be tuned in at six points on the dial of a nearby broadcast superhet having a 175-kHz intermediate frequency and no r-f stage.

Insofar as remedies for image and harmonic superhet interference are concerned, it is well to remember that *if* the amateur signal did not in the first place reach the input stage of the receiver, the annoyance would not have been created. It is therefore good policy to try to eliminate it by means of a wavetrap or low-pass filter. Broadcast superhets are not always the acme of good shielding, however, and the amateur signal is apt to enter the circuit through channels other than the input circuit. If a wavetrap or filter will not cure the trouble, the only alternative will be to attempt to select a transmitter frequency such that neither image nor harmonic interference will be set up on favorite stations in the susceptible receivers. The equation given earlier may be used to determine the proper frequencies.

Low-Pass Filters The greatest drawback of the wavetrap is the fact that it is a single-frequency device; i.e., it may be set to reject at one time only one frequency (or, at best, an extremely narrow band of frequencies). Each time the frequency of the interfering transmitter is changed, every wavetrap tuned to it must be retuned. A much more satisfactory device is the *wave filter* which requires no tuning. One type, the low-pass filter, passes all frequencies below one critical frequency, and eliminates all higher frequencies. It is this property that makes the device ideal for the task of removing amateur frequencies from broadcast receivers.

A good low-pass filter designed for maximum attenuation around 1700 kHz will pass all broadcast carriers, but will reject signals originating in any amateur band. Naturally

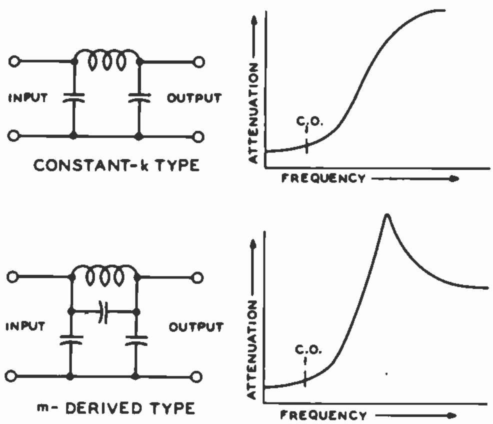


Figure 20

TYPES OF LOW-PASS FILTERS

Filters such as these may be used in the circuits between the antenna and the input of the receiver.

such a device should be installed only in standard broadcast receivers, never in all-wave sets.

Two types of low-pass filter sections are shown in figure 20. A composite arrangement comprising a section of each type is more effective than either type operating alone. A composite filter composed of one *k*-section and one shunt-derived *m*-section is shown in figure 21, and is highly recommended. The *m*-section is designed to have maximum attenuation at 1700 kHz, and for that reason C_3 should be of the close-tolerance variety. Likewise, C_3 should not be stuffed down inside L_2 in the interest of compactness, as this will alter the inductance of the coil appreciably, and likewise the resonant frequency.

If a fixed 150-pf mica capacitor of 5 percent tolerance is not available for C_1, a compression trimmer covering the range of 125-175 pf may be substituted and adjusted to

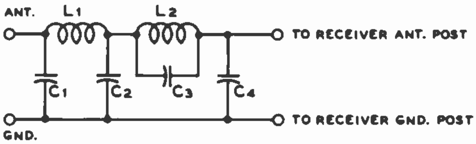


Figure 21

COMPOSITE LOW-PASS FILTER CIRCUIT

This filter is highly effective in reducing broadcast interference from all high-frequency stations, and requires no tuning. Constants for 400-ohm terminal impedance and 1600 kHz cutoff are as follows: L_1, 65 turns No. 22 d.c.c. closewound on 1½ in. dia. form. L_2, 41 turns ditto, not coupled to L_1. C_1, 250-pf fixed mica capacitor. C_2, 400-pf fixed mica capacitor. C_3 and C_4, 150-pf fixed mica capacitors, former of 5% tolerance. With some receivers, better results will be obtained with a 200-ohm carbon resistor inserted between the filter and antenna post on the receiver. With other receivers the effectiveness will be improved with a 600-ohm carbon resistor placed from the antenna post to the ground post on the receiver. The filter should be placed as close to the receiver terminals as possible.

give maximum attenuation at about 1700 kHz.

18-5 Hi-Fi Interference

The rapid growth of high-fidelity sound systems in the home has brought about many cases of interference from a nearby amateur transmitter. In most cases, the interference is caused by stray pickup of the r-f signal by the interconnecting leads of the hi-fi system and audio rectification in the low-level stages of the amplifier. The solution to this difficulty, in general, is to bypass and filter all speaker and power leads to the hi-fi amplifier and preamplifier. A combination of a vhf choke and 500-pf ceramic disc capacitors in each power and speaker lead will eliminate r-f pickup in the high-level section of the amplifier. A filter such as shown in figure 17A placed in the input circuit of the first audio stage of the preamplifier will reduce the level of the r-f signal reaching the input circuit of the amplifier. To prevent loss of the higher audio frequencies it may be necessary to decrease the value of the grid bypass capacitor to 50 pf or so.

Shielded leads should be employed between the amplifier and the turntable or f-m tuner. The shield should be grounded at both ends of the line to the chassis of the equipment, and care should be taken to see that the line does not approach an electrical half-wavelength of the radio signal causing the interference. In some instances, shielding the power cable to the hi-fi equipment will aid in reducing interference. The framework of the phonograph turntable should be grounded to the chassis of the amplifier to reduce stray r-f pickup in the turntable equipment.

CHAPTER NINETEEN

Transmitter Keying and Control

19-1 Power Systems

It is probable that the average amateur station that has been in operation for a number of years will have at least two transmitters available for operation on different frequency bands, at least two receivers or one receiver and a converter, at least one item of monitoring or frequency-measuring equipment and probably two, a vfo, a speech amplifier, a desk light, and a clock. In addition to the above 8 or 10 items, there must be an outlet available for a soldering iron and there should be one or two additional outlets available for plugging in one or two pieces of equipment which are being worked on.

It thus becomes obvious that 10 or 12 outlets connected to the 115-volt a-c line should be available at the operating desk. It may be practical to have this number of outlets installed as an outlet strip along the baseboard at the time a new home is being planned and constructed. Or it might be well to install the outlet strip on the operating desk so as to have the flexibility of moving the operating desk from one position to another. Alternatively, the outlet strip might be wall mounted just below the desk top.

Power Drain Per Outlet When the power drain of all the items of equipment, other than transmitters, used at the operating position is totalled, you probably will find that 350 to 600 watts will be required. Since the usual home outlet is designed to handle only about 600 watts maximum, the transmitter, unless it is of relatively low power, should be powered from another source. This procedure is desirable in any event so that the voltage supplied to the receiver, frequency control, and frequency monitor will be substantially constant with the transmitter on or off the air

So we come to two general alternative plans with their variations. Plan A is the more desirable and also the most expensive since it involves the installation of two separate lines from the meter box to the operating position either when the house is constructed or as an alteration. One line, with its switch, is for the transmitters and the other line and switch is for receivers and auxiliary equipment. Plan B is the more practical for the average amateur, but its use requires that all cords be removed from the outlets whenever the station is not in use in order to comply with the electrical codes.

Figure 1 shows a suggested arrangement for carrying out Plan A. In most cases an installation such as this will require approval of the plans by the city or county electrical inspector. Then the installation itself will also require inspection after it has been completed. It will be necessary to use approved outlet boxes at the rear of the transmitter where the cable is connected, and also at the operating bench where the other BX cable connects to the outlet strip. Also, the connectors at the rear of the transmitter will

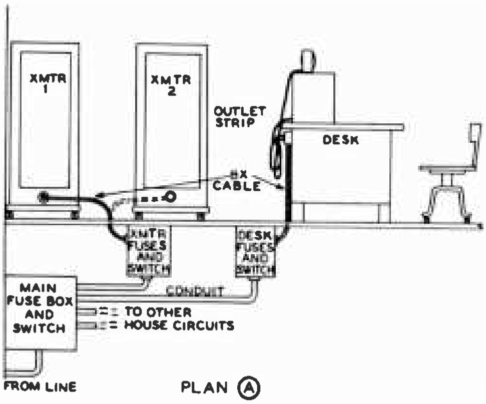


Figure 1

THE PLAN-A POWER SYSTEM

A-c line power from the main fuse box in the house is run separately to the receiving equipment and to the transmitting equipment. Separate switches and fuse blocks then are available for the transmitters and for the auxiliary equipment. Since the fuses in the boxes at the operating room will be in series with those at the main fuse box, those in the operating room should have a lower rating than those at the main fuse box. Then it will always be possible to replace blown fuses without leaving the operating room. The fuse boxes can conveniently be located alongside one another on the wall of the operating room.

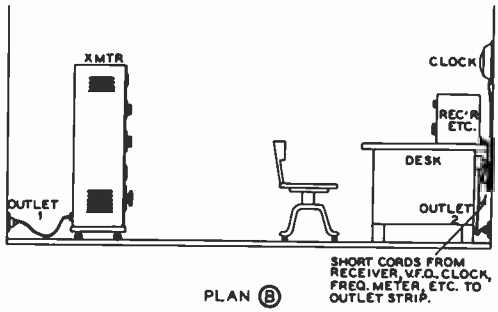


Figure 2

THE PLAN-B POWER SYSTEM

This system is less convenient than the plan-A system, but does not require extensive re-wiring of the electrical system within the house to accommodate the arrangement. Thus it is better for a temporary or semiperma-nent installation. In most cases it will be necessary to run an extra conduit from the main fuse box to the outlet from which the transmitter is powered, since the standard ar-rangement in most houses is to run all the outlets in one room (and sometimes all in the house) from a single pair of fuses and leads.

have to be of an approved type. It is possible also that the BX cable will have to be permanently affixed to the transmitter with the connector at the fuse-box end. These details may be worked out in advance with the electrical inspector for your area.

The general aspects of Plan B are shown in figure 2. The basic difference between the two plans is that A represents a *permanent* installation even though a degree of mobility is allowed through the use of BX for power leads, while plan B is definitely a *temporary* type of installation as far as the electrical inspector is concerned. While it will be permissible in most areas to leave the transmitter cord plugged into the outlet even though it is turned off, the Fire Insurance Underwriters codes will make it necessary that the cord which runs to the group of outlets at the back of the operating desk be removed whenever the equipment is not actually in use.

Whether the general aspects of plans A or B are used it will be necessary to run a number of control wires, keying, and audio leads, and an excitation cable from the operating desk to the transmitter. Control and keying wires can best be grouped into a multiple-wire rubber-covered cable between the desk and the transmitter. Such an arrangement gives a good appearance, and is particularly practical if cable connectors are used at each end. High-level audio at a moderate impedance level (600 ohms or below) may be run in the same control cable as the other leads. However, low-level audio can best be run in a small coaxial cable. Small coaxial cable such as RG-58/U or RG-59/U also is quite satisfactory and quite convenient for the signal from the vfo to the r-f stages in the transmitter. Coaxial-cable connectors of the UG series are quite satisfactory for the terminations both for the vfo lead and for any low-level audio cables.

Checking an Outlet with a Heavy Load To make sure that an outlet will stand the full load of the entire transmitter, plug in an electric heater rated at about 50 percent greater wattage than the power you expect to draw from the line. If the line voltage does not drop more than 5 volts (assuming a 115-volt line) under load and the wiring does not overheat, the wiring is adequate to supply the transmitter. About 600 watts total drain is the maximum that should be drawn from a 115-volt *lighting* outlet or circuit. For greater power, a separate pair of heavy conductors should be run right from the meter box. For a 1-kw. phone transmitter the total drain is so great that a 230-volt "split" system ordinarily will be required. Most of the newer homes are wired with this system, as are homes utilizing electricity for cooking and heating.

With a three-wire system, be sure there is no fuse in the neutral wire at the fuse box. A neutral fuse is not required if both "hot" legs are fused, and, should a neutral fuse blow, there is a chance that damage to the radio transmitter will result.

If you have a high-power transmitter and do a lot of operating, it is a good idea to check on your local power rates if you are on a straight *lighting* rate. In some cities a lower rate can be obtained (but with a higher "minimum") if electrical equipment such as an electric heater drawing a specified amount of current is permanently wired in. It is not required that you use this equipment, merely that it be permanently wired into the electrical system. Naturally, however, there would be no saving unless you expect to occupy the same dwelling for a considerable length of time.

Outlet Strips The *outlet strips* which have been suggested for installation in the baseboard or for use on the rear of a desk are obtainable from the large electrical-supply houses. If such a house is not in the vicinity it is probable that a local electrical contractor can order a suitable type of strip from one of the supply-house catalogs. These strips are quite convenient in that they are available in varying lengths with provision for inserting a-c line plugs throughout their length. The a-c plugs from the various items of equipment on the operating desk then may be inserted in the outlet strip throughout its length. In many cases it will be desirable to reduce the equipment cord lengths so that they will plug neatly into the outlet strip without an excess to dangle behind the desk.

Contactors and Relays The use of power-control contactors and relays often will add considerably to the operating convenience of the station installation. The most practical arrangement usually is to have a main a-c line switch on the front of the transmitter to apply power to the filament transformers and to the power-control circuits.

It also will be found quite convenient to have a single a-c line switch on the operating desk to energize or cut the power from the outlet strip on the rear of the operating desk. Through the use of such a switch it is not necessary to remember to switch off a large number of separate switches on each of the items of equipment on the operating desk.

The alternative arrangement, and that which is approved by the Underwriters, is to remove the plugs from the wall both for the transmitter and for the operating-desk outlet strip when a period of operation has been completed.

While the insertion of plugs or operation of switches usually will be found best for applying the a-c line power to the equipment, the changing over between transmit and receive can best be accomplished through the use of relays. Such a system usually involves three relays, or three groups of relays. The relays and their functions are: (1) power-control relay for the transmitter—applies 115-volt line to the primary of the high-voltage transformer and turns on the exciter; (2) control relay for the receiver—makes the receiver inoperative by any one of a number of methods when closed, also may apply power to the vfo and to a keying or a phone monitor; and (3) the antenna change-over relay—connects the antenna to the transmitter when the transmitter is energized and to the receiver when the transmitter is not operating. Several circuits illustrating the application of relays to such control arrangement are discussed in the paragraphs to follow in this chapter.

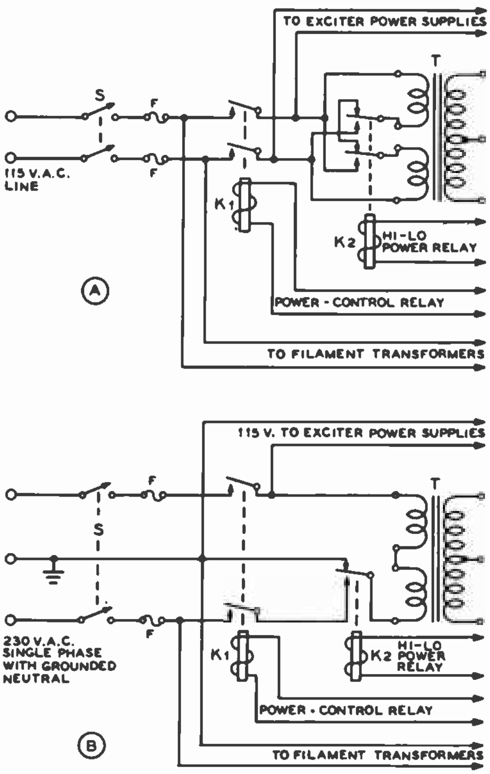


Figure 3

FULL-VOLTAGE/HALF-VOLTAGE SYSTEM OF POWER CONTROL

The circuit at A is for use with a 115-volt a-c line. Transformer T is of the standard type having two 115-volt primaries; these primaries are connected in series for half-voltage output when the power-control relay K_1 is energized but the hi-lo relay (K_2) is not operated. When both relays are energized the full output voltage is obtained. At B is a circuit for use with a standard 230-volt residence line with grounded neutral. The two relays control the output of the power supplies the same as at A.

Controlling Transmitter Power Output It is necessary, in order to comply with FCC regulations, that transmitter power output be limited to the minimum amount necessary to sustain communication. This requirement may be met in several ways. Many amateurs have two transmitters; one is capable of relatively high power output for use when calling, or when interference is severe, and the other is capable of considerably less power output. In many cases the lower-powered transmitter acts as the exciter for the higher-powered stage when full power output is required. But the majority of the amateurs using high-power equipment have some provision for reducing the plate voltage on the high-level stages when reduced power output is desired.

One of the most common arrangements for obtaining two levels of power output involves the use of a plate transformer having a double primary for the high-voltage power supply. The majority of the high-power plate transformers of standard manufacture have just such a dual-primary arrangement. The two primaries are designed for use with either a 115-volt or 230-volt line. When such a transformer is to be operated from a 115-volt line, operation of both primaries in parallel will deliver full output from the plate supply. Then when the two primaries are connected in series and still operated from the 115-volt line the output voltage from the supply will be reduced approximately to one half. In the case of the normal class-C amplifier, a reduction in plate voltage to one half will reduce the power input to the stage to one quarter.

If the transmitter is to be operated from a 230-volt line, the usual procedure is to operate the filaments from one side of the line, the low-voltage power supplies from the other side, and the primaries of the high-voltage transformer across the whole line for full power output. Then when reduced power output is required, the primary of the high-voltage plate transformer is operated from one side to center tap rather than across the whole line. This procedure places 115 volts across the 230-volt winding the same as in the case discussed in the previous paragraph. Figure 3 illustrates the two standard methods of power reduction with a plate transformer having a double primary; A shows the connections for use with a 115-volt line and B shows the arrangement for a 230-volt a-c power line to the transmitter.

The full-voltage/half-voltage methods for controlling the power input to the transmitter, as just discussed, are subject to the limitation that only two levels of power input (full power and quarter power) are obtainable. In many cases this will be found to be a limitation to flexibility. When tuning the transmitter, the antenna coupling network, or the antenna system itself it is desirable to

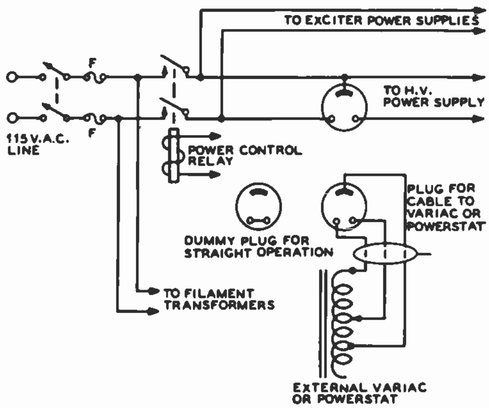


Figure 4

CIRCUIT WITH VARIABLE-RATIO AUTOTRANSFORMER

When the dummy plug is inserted into the receptacle on the equipment, closing of the power-control relay will apply full voltage to the primaries. With the cable from the Variac or Powerstat plugged into the socket the voltage output of the high-voltage power supply may be varied from zero to about 15 percent above normal.

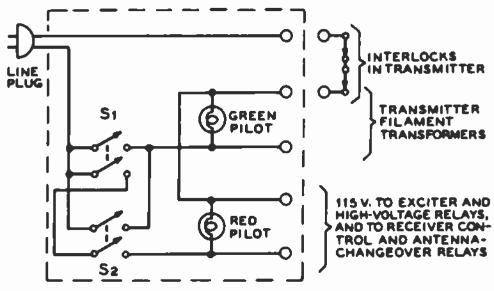


Figure 5

PROTECTIVE CONTROL CIRCUIT

With this circuit arrangement either switch may be closed first to light the heaters of all tubes and the filament pilot light. Then when the second switch is closed the high voltage will be applied to the transmitter and the red pilot will light. With a 30-second delay between the closing of the first switch and the closing of the second, the rectifier tubes will be adequately protected. Similarly, the opening of either switch will remove plate voltage from the rectifiers while the heaters remain lighted.

be able to reduce the power input to the final stage to a relatively low value, and it is further convenient to be able to vary the power input continuously from this relatively low input up to the full power capabilities of the transmitter. The use of a variable-ratio autotransformer in the circuit from the line to the primary of the plate transformer will allow a continuous variation in power input from zero to the full capability of the transmitter.

Variable-Ratio Autotransformers There are several types of variable-ratio autotransformers available on the market. Of these, the most common are the *Variac* manufactured by the *General Radio Company,* and the *Powerstat* manufactured by the *Superior Electric Company.* Both these types of variable-ratio transformers are excellently constructed and are available in a wide range of power capabilities. Each is capable of controlling the line voltage from zero to about 15 percent above the nominal line voltage. Each manufacturer makes a single-phase unit capable of handling an output power of about 175 watts, one capable of about 750 to 800 watts, and a unit capable of about 1500 to 1800 watts. The maximum power-output capability of these units is available only at approximately the nominal line voltage, and must be reduced to a maximum current limitation when the output voltage is somewhat above or below the input line voltage. This, however, is not an important limitation for this type of application since the output voltage seldom will be raised above the line voltage, and when the output voltage is reduced below the line voltage the input to the transmitter is reduced accordingly.

One convenient arrangement for using a *Variac* or *Powerstat* in conjunction with the high-voltage transformer of a transmitter is illustrated in figure 4. In this circuit a heavy three-wire cable is run from a plug on the transmitter to the *Variac* or *Powerstat.* The *Variac* or *Powerstat* then is installed so that it is accessible from the operating desk so that the input power to the transmitter may be controlled during operation. If desired, the cable to the *Variac* or *Powerstat* may be unplugged from the transmitter and a dummy plug inserted in its place. With the dummy plug in place the transmitter will operate at normal plate voltage. This arrangement allows the transmitter to be wired in such a manner that an external *Variac* or *Powerstat* may be used if desired, even though the unit is not available at the time that the transmitter is constructed.

Notes on the Use of the Variac or Powerstat Plate voltage to the modulators may be controlled at the same time as the plate voltage to the final amplifier is varied if the modulator stage uses beam-tetrode tubes; variation in the plate voltage on such tubes used as modulators causes only a moderate change in the standing plate current.

Since the final amplifier plate voltage is being controlled simultaneously with the modulator plate voltage, the conditions of impedance match will not be seriously upset. In several high-power transmitters using this system, and using beam-tetrode modulator tubes, it is possible to vary the plate input from about 50 watts to one kilowatt without a change other than a slight increase in audio distortion at the adjustment which gives the lowest power output from the transmitter.

With triode tubes as modulators it usually will be found necessary to vary the grid bias at the same time that the plate voltage is changed. This will allow the tubes to be operated at approximately the same relative point on their operating characteristic when the plate voltage is varied. When the modulator tubes are operated with zero bias at full plate voltage, it will usually be possible to reduce the modulator voltage along with the voltage on the modulated stage, with no apparent change in the voice quality. However, it will be necessary to reduce the audio gain at the same time that the plate voltage is reduced.

19-2 Transmitter Control Methods

Almost everyone, when getting a new transmitter on the air, has had the experience of having to throw several switches and pull or insert a few plugs when changing from receive to transmit. This is one extreme in the direction of how *not* to control a transmitter. At the other extreme we find systems where it is only necessary to speak into the microphone or touch the key to change both transmitter and receiver over to the transmit condition. Most amateur stations are intermediate between the two extremes in the control provisions and use some relatively simple system for transmitter control.

In figure 5 is shown an arrangement which protects mercury-vapor rectifiers against premature application of plate voltage without resorting to a time-delay relay. No matter which switch is thrown first, the filament will be turned on first and off last. However, double-pole switches are required in place of the usual single-pole switches.

When assured time delay of the proper interval and greater operating convenience are desired, a group of inexpensive a-c relays may be incorporated into the circuit to give a control circuit such as is shown in figure 6. This arrangement uses a 115-volt thermal (or motor-operated) time-delay relay and a dpdt 115-volt control relay. Note that the protective interlocks are connected in series with the coil of the relay which applies high voltage to the transmitter. A tune-up switch has been included so that the transmitter may be tuned up as far as the grid circuit of the final stage is concerned before application of high voltage to the final amplifier. Provisions for operating an antenna-changeover relay and for cutting the plate voltage to the receiver when the transmitter is operating have been included.

A circuit similar to that of figure 6 but incorporating push-button control of the transmitter is shown in figure 7. The circuit features a set of START-STOP and TRANSMIT-RECEIVE buttons at the transmitter and a separate set at the operating position. The control push buttons operate independently so that either set may be used to control the transmitter. It is only necessary to push the START button momentarily to light the transmitter filaments and start the time-delay relay in its cycle. When the standby light comes on it is only necessary to touch the TRANSMIT button to put the transmitter on the air and disable the receiver. Touching the RECEIVE button will turn off the transmitter and restore the receiver. After a period of operation it is only necessary to touch the STOP button at either the transmitter or the operating posi-

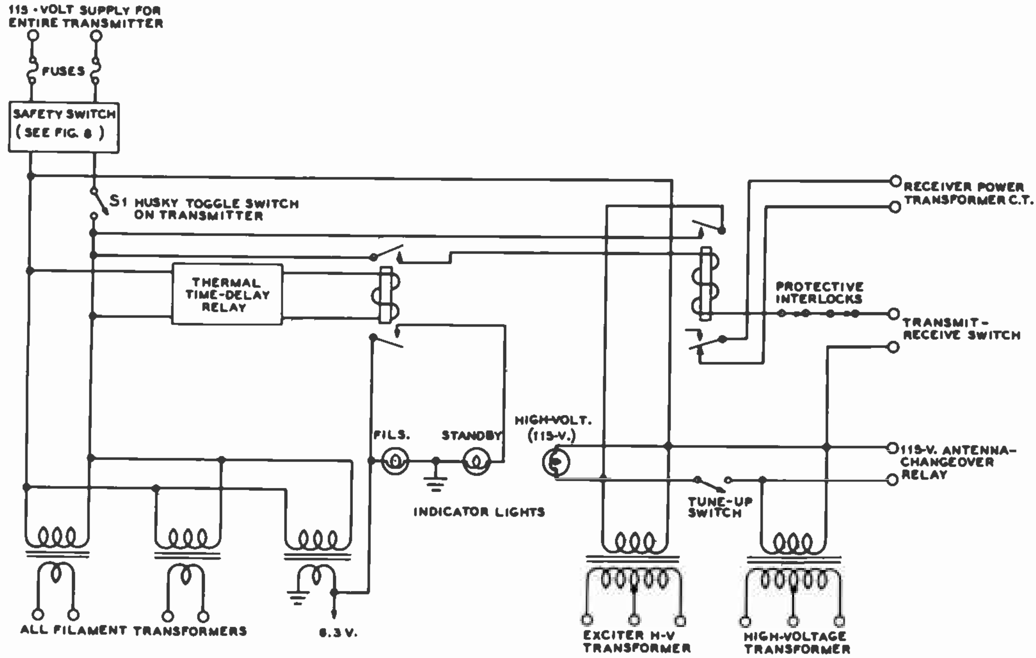


Figure 6

TRANSMITTER CONTROL CIRCUIT

Closing S_1 lights all filaments in the transmitter and starts the time-delay in its cycle. When the time-delay relay has operated, closing the transmit-receive switch at the operating position will apply plate power to the transmitter and disable the receiver. A tune-up switch has been provided so that the exciter stages may be tuned without plate voltage on the final amplifier.

tion to shut down the transmitter. This type of control arrangement is called an electrically locking push-to-transmit control system. Such systems are frequently used in industrial electronic control.

19-3 Safety Precautions

The best way for an operator to avoid serious accidents from the high voltage supplies of a transmitter is for him to use his head, act only with deliberation, and not take unnecessary chances. However, no one is infallible, and chances of an accident are greatly lessened if certain factors are taken into consideration in the design of a transmitter, in order to protect the operator in the event of a lapse of caution. If there are too many things one must "watch out for" or keep in mind there is a good chance that sooner or later there will be a mishap; and it only takes *one*. When designing or constructing a transmitter, the following safety considerations should be given attention.

Grounds For the utmost in protection, everything of metal on the front panel of a transmitter capable of being touched by the operator should be at ground potential. This includes dial set screws, meter *zero-adjustment* screws, meter cases if of metal, meter jacks, *everything* of metal protruding through the front panel or capable of being touched or *nearly* touched by the operator. This applies whether or not the panel itself is of metal. Do not rely on the insulation of meter cases or tuning knobs for protection.

The B negative or chassis of all plate power supplies should be connected together, and to an external ground such as a waterpipe.

Exposed Wires and Components It is not necessary to resort to rack-and-panel construction in order to provide complete enclosure of all components

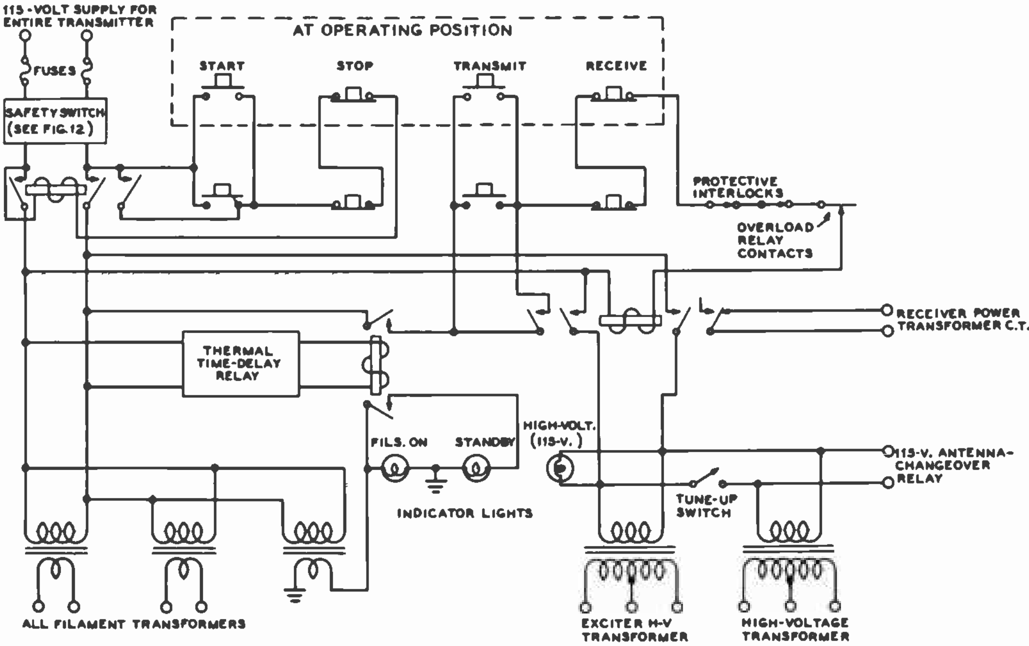


Figure 7

PUSH-BUTTON TRANSMITTER-CONTROL CIRCUIT

Pushing the START button either at the transmitter or at the operating position will light all filaments and start the time-delay relay in its cycle. When the cycle has been completed, a touch of the TRANSMIT button will put the transmitter on the air and disable the receiver. Pushing the RECEIVE button will disable the transmitter and restore the receiver. Pushing the STOP button will instantly drop the entire transmitter from the a-c line. If desired, a switch may be placed in series with the lead from the RECEIVE button to the protective interlocks; opening the switch will make it impossible for any person accidentally to put the transmitter on the air. Various other safety provisions, such as the protective-interlock arrangement described in the text have been incorporated. With the circuit arrangement shown for the overload-relay contacts, it is only necessary to use a simple normally closed d-c relay with a variable shunt across the coil of the relay. When the current through the coil becomes great enough to open the normally closed contacts the hold circuit on the plate-voltage relay will be broken and the plate voltage will be removed. If the overload is only momentary, such as a modulation peak or a tank flashover, merely pushing the TRANSMIT button will again put the transmitter on the air. This simple circuit provision eliminates the requirement for expensive overload relays of the mechanically latching type, but still gives excellent overload protection.

and wiring of the transmitter. Even with metal-chassis construction it is possible to arrange things so as to incorporate a protective shielding housing which will not interfere with ventilation yet will prevent contact with all wires and components carrying high voltage d.c. or a.c., in addition to offering shielding action.

If everything on the front panel is at ground potential (with respect to external ground) and all units are effectively housed with protective covers, then there is no danger except when the operator must reach into the interior part of the transmitter, as when changing coils, neutralizing, adjusting coupling, or troubleshooting. The latter procedure can be made safe by making it possible for the operator to be *absolutely certain* that all voltages have been turned off and that they cannot be turned on either by short circuit or accident. This can be done by incorporation of the following system of main primary switch and safety signal lights.

Combined Safety Signal and Switch The common method of using red pilot lights to show when a circuit is *on* is useless except from an ornamental stand-

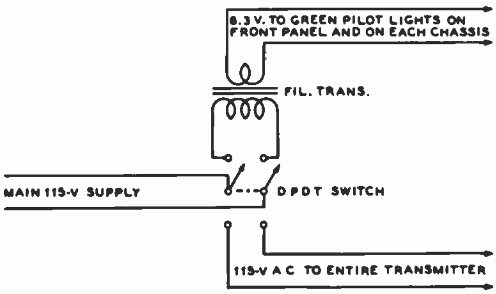


Figure 8

COMBINED MAIN SWITCH AND SAFETY SIGNAL

When shutting down the transmitter, throw the main switch to neutral. If work is to be done on the transmitter, throw the switch all the way to "pilot," thus turning on the green pilot lights on the panel and on each chassis, and ensuring that no voltage can exist on the primary of any transformer, even by virtue of a short or accidental ground.

point. When the red pilot is not lit it *usually* means that the circuit is turned off, but it *can* mean that the circuit is on but the lamp is burned out or not making contact.

To enable you to touch the tank coils in your transmitter with absolute assurance that it is impossible for you to obtain a shock except from possible undischarged filter capacitors (see following topic for elimination of this hazard), it is only necessary to incorporate a device similar to that of figure 8. It is placed near the point where the main 115-volt leads enter the room (preferably near the door) and in such a position as to be inaccessible to small children. Notice that this switch breaks *both* leads; switches that open just one lead do not afford complete protection, as it is sometimes possible to complete a primary circuit through a short or accidental ground. Breaking just one side of the line may be all right for turning the transmitter on and off, but when you are going to place an arm inside the transmitter, *both* 115-volt leads should be broken.

When you are all through working your transmitter for the time being, simply throw the main switch to neutral.

When you find it necessary to work on the transmitter or change coils, throw the switch so that the green pilots light up. These can be ordinary 6.3-volt pilot lamps behind green bezels or dipped in green lacquer. One should be placed on the front panel of the transmitter; others should be placed so as to be easily visible when changing coils or making adjustments requiring the operator to reach inside the transmitter.

For 100 percent protection, just obey the following rule: *never work on the transmitter or reach inside any protective cover except when the green pilots are glowing.* To avoid confusion, no other green pilots should be used on the transmitter; if you want an indicator jewel to show when the filaments are lighted, use amber instead of green.

Safety Bleeders Filter capacitors of good quality hold their charge for some time, and when the voltage is more than 100 volts it is just about as dangerous to get across an undischarged 4-μfd filter capacitor as it is to get across a high-voltage supply that is turned on. Most power supplies incorporate bleeders to improve regulation, but as these are generally wirewound resistors, and as wirewound resistors occasionally open up without apparent cause, it is desirable to incorporate an auxiliary safety bleeder across each heavy-duty bleeder. Carbon resistors will not stand much dissipation and sometimes change in value slightly with age. However, the chance of their opening up when run well within their dissipation rating is very small.

To make *sure* that all capacitors are bled, it is best to short each one with an insulated screwdriver. However, this is sometimes awkward and always inconvenient. One can be virtually sure by connecting auxiliary carbon bleeders across all wirewound bleeders used on supplies of 1000 volts or more. For every 500 volts, connect in series a 500,000-ohm 1-watt carbon resistor. The drain will be negligible (1 ma) and each resistor will have to dissipate only 0.5 watt. Under these conditions the resistors will last indefinitely with little chance of opening up. For a 1500-volt supply, connect three 500,000-ohm resistors in series. If the voltage exceeds an integral number of 500-volt divisions, assume it is the next higher integral value; for instance, assume 1800 volts as 2000 volts and use four resistors.

Do *not* attempt to use fewer resistors by using a higher value for the resistors; not over 500 volts should appear across any single 1-watt resistor.

In the event that the regular bleeder opens up, it will take several seconds for the auxiliary bleeder to drain the capacitors down to a safe voltage, because of the very high resistance. Therefore it is best to allow 10 or 15 seconds to elapse after turning off the plate supply before attempting to work on the transmitter.

If a 0-1 d-c milliammeter is at hand, it may be connected in series with the auxiliary bleeder to act as a high-voltage voltmeter.

"Hot" Adjustments Some amateurs contend that it is almost impossible to make certain adjustments, such as coupling and neutralizing, unless the transmitter is running. The best thing to do is to make all neutralizing and coupling devices adjustable from the front panel by means of flexible control shafts which are broken with insulated couplings to permit grounding of the panel bearing.

If your particular transmitter layout is such that this is impractical and you refuse to throw the main switch to make an adjustment—throw the main switch—take a reading—throw the main switch—make an adjustment—and so on, then protect yourself by making use of long adjustment rods made from ½-inch dowel sticks which have been wiped with oil when perfectly free from moisture.

Protective Interlocks With the increasing tendency toward construction of transmitters in enclosed steel cabinets a transmitter becomes a particularly lethal device unless adequate safety provisions have been incorporated. Even with a combined safety signal and switch as shown in figure 8 it is still conceivable that some person unfamiliar with the transmitter could come in contact with high voltage. It is therefore recommended that the transmitter, whenever possible, be built into a complete metal housing or cabinet and that *all* doors or access covers be provided with protective interlocks (all interlocks must be connected in *series*) to remove the high voltage whenever these doors or covers are opened. The term "high voltage" should mean any voltage above approximately 150 volts, although it is still possible to obtain a serious burn from a 150-volt circuit under certain circumstances. The 150-volt limit usually will mean that grid-bias packs as well as high-voltage packs should have their primary circuits opened when any interlock is opened.

19-4 Transmitter Keying

The carrier from a c-w telegraph transmitter must be broken into dots and dashes for the transmission of code characters. The carrier signal is of constant amplitude while the key is closed, and is entirely removed when the key is open. When code characters are being transmitted, the carrier may be considered as being modulated by the keying. If the change from the no-output condition to full-output, or vice versa, occurs too rapidly, the rectangular pulses which form the keying characters contain high-frequency components which take up a wide frequency band as sidebands and are heard as clicks.

To be capable of transmitting code characters and at the same time not splitting the eardrums of neighboring amateurs, the c-w transmitter *must* meet two important specifications.

1. It must have no parasitic oscillations either in the stage being keyed or in any succeeding stage.
2. It must have some device in the keying circuit capable of shaping the leading and trailing edge of the waveform.

Both these specifications must be met before the transmitter is capable of c-w operation. Merely turning a transmitter on and off by the haphazard insertion of a telegraph key in some power lead is an invitation to trouble.

The two general methods of keying a transmitter are those which control the excitation to the keyed amplifier, and those which control the plate or screen voltage applied to the keyed amplifier.

Key-Click Elimination Key-click elimination is accomplished by preventing a too-rapid make and break of power to the antenna circuit, thus rounding off the keying characters so as to limit the sidebands to a value which does not cause interference to adjacent channels. Too much lag will prevent fast keying, but fortunately key clicks can be practically eliminated without limiting the speed of manual (hand) keying. Some circuits which eliminate key clicks introduce too much time lag and thereby add *tails* to the dots. These tails may cause the signals to be difficult to copy at high speeds.

Location of Keyed Stage Considerable thought should be given as to which stage in a transmitter is the proper one to key. If the transmitter is keyed in a stage close to the oscillator, the change in r-f loading of the oscillator will cause the oscillator to shift frequency with keying. This will cause the signal to have a distinct chirp. The chirp will be multiplied as many times as the frequency of the oscillator is multiplied. A chirpy oscillator that would be passable on 80 meters would be unusable on 28-MHz c.w.

Keying the oscillator itself is an excellent way to run into keying difficulties. If no key-click filter is used in the keying circuit, the transmitter will have bad key clicks. If a key-click filter is used, the slow rise and decay of oscillator voltage induced by the filter action will cause a keying chirp. This action is true of all oscillators, whether electron coupled or crystal controlled.

The more amplifier or doubler stages that follow the keyed stage, the more difficult it is to hold control of the shape of the keyed

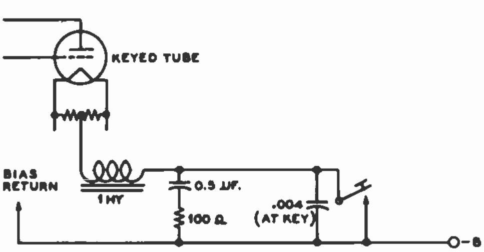


Figure 9

CENTER-TAP KEYING WITH CLICK FILTER

The constants shown above are suggested as starting values; considerable variation in these values can be expected for optimum keying of amplifiers of different operating conditions. It is suggested that a keying relay be substituted for the key in the circuit above wherever practical.

waveform. A heavily excited doubler stage or class-C stage acts as a peak clipper, tending to square up a rounded keying impulse, and the cumulative effect of several such stages cascaded is sufficient to square up the keyed waveform to the point where bad clicks are reimposed on a clean signal.

A good rule of thumb is to never key back farther than one stage removed from the final amplifier stage, and never key closer than one stage removed from the frequency-controlling oscillator of the transmitter. Thus there will always be one isolating stage between the keyed stage and the oscillator, and one isolating stage between the keyed stage and the antenna. At this point the waveform of the keyed signal may be most easily controlled.

Keyer Circuit Requirements In the first place it may be established that the majority of new design transmitters, and many of those of older design as well, use a medium power beam tetrode tube either as the output stage or as the exciter for the output stage of a high power transmitter. Thus the transmitter usually will end up with a tube such as type 2E26, 807, 6146, 813, 4-65A, 4E27/5-125B, 4-125A or similar, or one of these tubes will be used as the stage just ahead of the output stage.

Second, it may be established that it is undesirable to key further down in the transmitter chain than the stage just ahead of the final amplifier. If a low-level stage, which is followed by a series of class-C amplifiers, is keyed, serious transients will be generated in the output of the transmitter even though the keyed stage is being turned on and off very smoothly. This condition arises as a result of *pulse sharpening*, which has been discussed previously.

Third, the output from the stage should be completely cut off when the key is up, and the time constant of the rise and decay of the keying wave should be easily controllable.

Fourth, it should be possible to make the rise period and the decay period of the keying wave approximately equal. This type of keying envelope is the only one tolerable for commercial work, and is equally desirable for obtaining clean-cut and easily readable signals in amateur work.

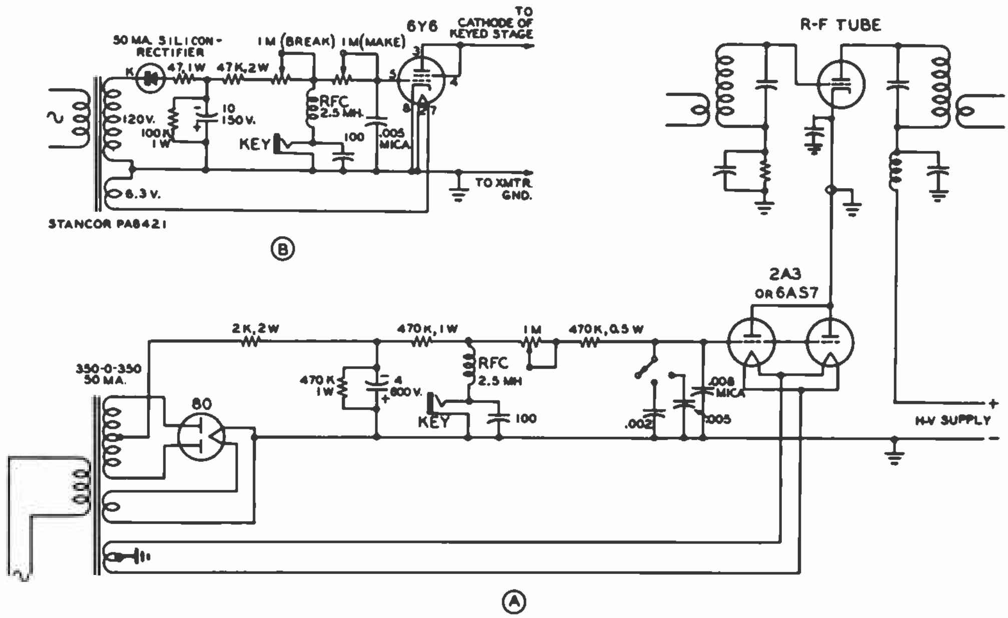


Figure 10

VACUUM-TUBE KEYERS FOR CENTER-TAP KEYING CIRCUIT

The type-A keyer is suitable for keying stages running up to 1250 volts on the plate. Two 2A3's or a 6AS7 tube can safely key 160 milliamperes of cathode current. The simple 6Y6 keyer in figure B is for keying stages running up to 650 volts on the plate. A single 6Y6 can key 80 milliamperes. Two in parallel may be used for plate currents under 160 ma. If softer keying is desired, the .005 µfd mica capacitor should be increased to .01 µfd.

Fifth, it is desirable that the keying circuit be usable without a keying relay, even when a high-power stage is being keyed.

Last, for the sake of simplicity and safety, it should be possible to ground the frame of the key, and yet the circuit should be such that placing the fingers across the key will not result in an electrical shock. In other words, the keying circuit should be inherently safe.

All these requirements have been met in the keying circuits to be described.

19-5 Cathode Keying

The lead from the cathode or center-tap connection of the filament of an r-f amplifier can be opened and closed for a keying circuit. Such a keying system opens the plate voltage circuit and at the same time opens the grid bias return lead. For this reason, the grid circuit is blocked at the same time the plate circuit is opened. This helps to reduce the backwave that might otherwise leak through the keyed stage.

The simplest cathode keying circuit is illustrated in figure 9, where a key-click filter is employed, and a hand key is used to break the circuit. This simple keying circuit is not recommended for general use, as considerable voltage will be developed across the key when it is open.

An electronic switch can take the place of the hand key. This will remove the danger of shock. At the same time, the opening and closing characteristics of the electronic switch may easily be altered to suit the particular need at hand. Such an electronic switch is called a *vacuum-tube keyer*. Low internal resistance triode tubes such as the 2A3 or 6AS7 are used in the keyer. These tubes act as a very high resistance when sufficient blocking bias is applied to them, and as a very low resistance when the bias is removed. The desired amount of lag or *cushioning effect* can be obtained by em-

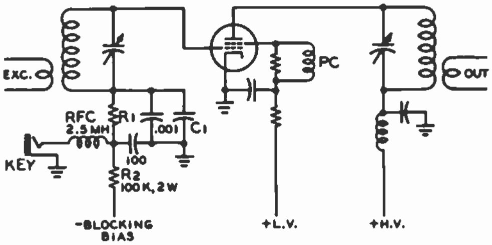


Figure 11

SIMPLE BLOCKED-GRID KEYING SYSTEM

The blocking bias must be sufficient to cut off plate current to the amplifier stage in the presence of the excitation voltage. R_1 is normal bias resistor for the tube. R_2 and C_1 should be adjusted for correct keying waveform.

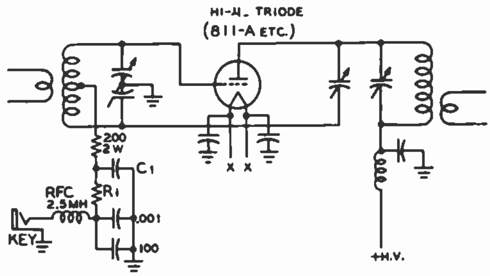


Figure 12

SELF-BLOCKING KEYING SYSTEM FOR HIGH-MU TRIODE

R_1 and C_1 adjusted for correct keying waveform. R_1 is bias resistor of tube.

ploying suitable resistance and capacitance values in the grid of the keyer tube(s). Because very little spark is produced at the key, due to the small amount of power in the key circuit, sparking clicks are easily suppressed.

One type 6AS7 tube (both sections) should be used for every 250 ma of plate current. Type 2A3 tubes may also be used; allow one 2A3 tube for every 80 ma of plate current.

Because of the series resistance of the keyer tubes, the plate voltage at the keyed tube will be from 30 to 60 volts less than the power supply voltage. This voltage appears as cathode bias on the keyed tube, assuming the bias return is made to ground, and should be taken into consideration when providing bias.

Some typical cathode circuit vacuum-tube keying units are shown in figure 10.

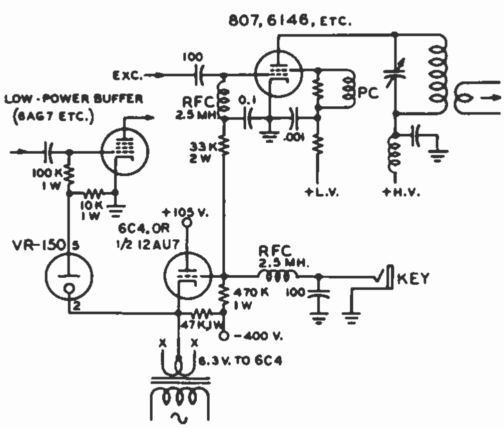


Figure 13

TWO-STAGE BLOCKED-GRID KEYER

A separate filament transformer must be used for the tube, as its filament is at a potential of −400 volts.

19-6 Grid-Circuit Keying

Grid-circuit, or *blocked-grid keying* is another effective method of keying a c-w transmitter. A basic blocked-grid keying circuit is shown in figure 11. The time constant of the keying is determined by the RC circuit, which also forms part of the bias circuit of the tube. When the key is closed, operating bias is developed by the flow of grid current through R_1. When the key is open, sufficient fixed bias is applied to the tube to block it, preventing the stage from functioning. If an un-neutralized tetrode is keyed by this method, there is the possibility of a considerable backwave caused by r-f leakage through the grid-plate capacitance of the tube.

Certain high-μ triode tubes, such as the 811-A and the 3-400Z, automatically block themselves when the grid-return circuit is opened. It is merely necessary to insert a key and associated key-click filter in the grid-return lead of these tubes. No blocking bias supply is needed. This circuit is shown in figure 12.

A more elaborate blocked-grid keying system using a 6C4 and VR-150 is shown in figure 13. Two stages are keyed, preventing

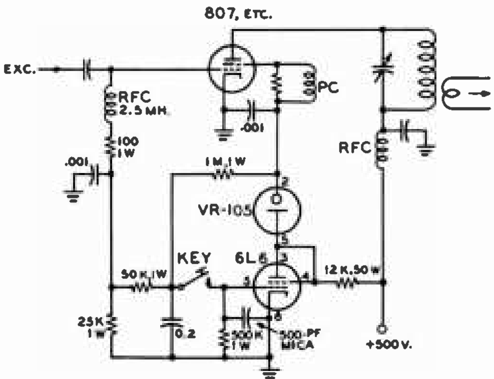


Figure 14

SINGLE-STAGE SCREEN-GRID KEYER FOR TETRODE TUBES

any backwave emission. The first keyed stage may be the oscillator, or a low-powered buffer. The last keyed stage may be the driver stage to the power amplifier, or the amplifier itself. Since the circuit is so proportioned that the lower-powered stage comes on *first* and goes off *last*, any keying chirp in the oscillator is not emitted on the air. Keying lag is applied to the high-powered keyed stage only.

19-7 Screen-Grid Keying

The screen circuit of a tetrode tube may be keyed for c-w operation. Unfortunately, when the screen grid of a tetrode tube is brought to zero potential, the tube still delivers considerable output. Thus it is necessary to place a negative blocking voltage on the screen grid to reduce the backwave through the tube. A suitable keyer circuit which will achieve this is shown in figure 14. A 6L6 is used as a combined clamper tube and keying tube. When the key is closed, the 6L6 tube has blocking bias applied to its control grid. This bias is obtained from the rectified grid bias of the keyed tube. Screen voltage is applied to the keyed stage through a screen dropping resistor and a VR-105 regulator tube. When the key is open, the 6L6 is no longer cutoff, and conducts heavily. The voltage drop across the dropping resistor caused by the heavy plate current of the 6L6 lowers the voltage on the VR-105 tube until it is extinguished, removing the screen voltage from the tetrode r-f tube. At the same time, rectified grid bias is applied to the screen of the tetrode through the 1 megohm resistor between screen and key. This voltage effectively cuts off the screen of the tetrode until the key is closed again. The RC circuit in the grid of the 6L6 tube determines the keying characteristic of the tetrode tube.

A more elaborate screen-grid keyer is shown in figures 15 and 16. This keyer is designed to block-grid key the oscillator or a low-powered buffer stage, and to screen-key a medium-powered tetrode tube such as an 807, 2E26 or 6146. The unit described includes a simple dual-voltage power supply

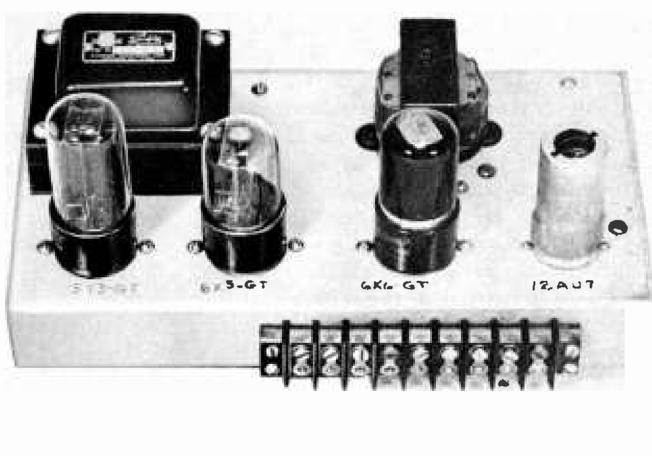
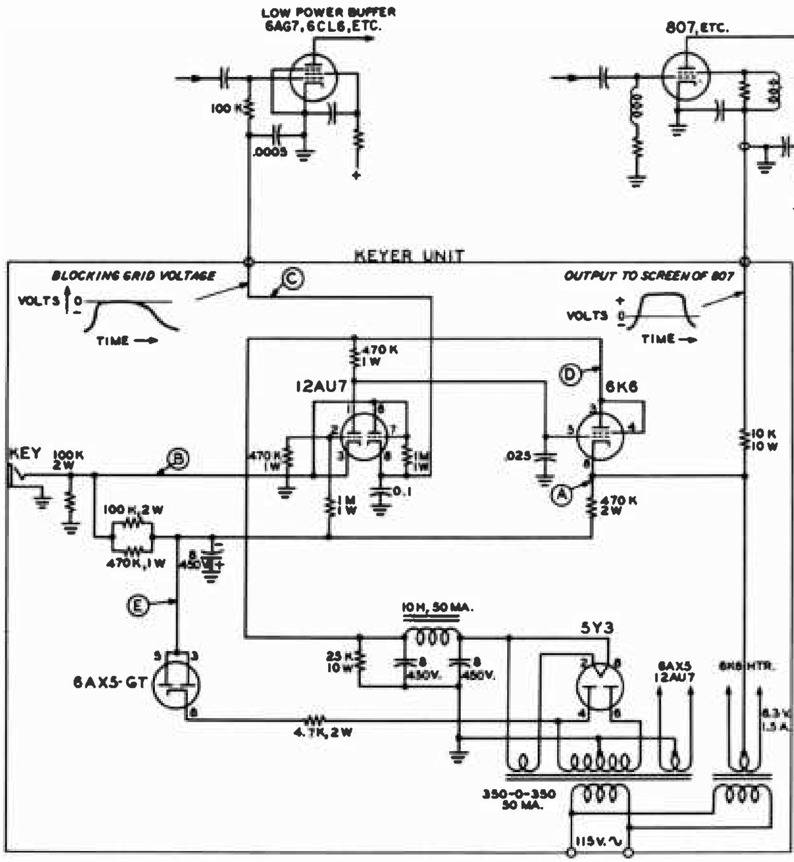


Figure 15

TOP VIEW OF SCREEN-GRID KEYER SHOWN IN FIGURE 16



REFERENCE VOLTAGES

POINT	KEY UP	KEY DOWN
A	-35	360
B	-110	0
C	-110	0
D	375	375
E	-275	-275

Figure 16

TWO-STAGE SCREEN-GRID KEYER UNIT

for the positive screen voltage of the tetrode, and a negative supply for the keyer stages. A 6K6 is used as the screen keyer, and a 12AU7 is used as a cathode follower and grid-block keyer. As in the figure 13 circuit, this keyer turns on the exciter a moment before the tetrode stage is turned on. The tetrode stage goes off on instant before the exciter does. Thus any keying chirp of the oscillator is effectively removed from the keyed signal.

By listening in the receiver one can hear the exciter stop operating a fraction of a second after the tetrode stage goes off. In fact, during rapid keying, the exciter may be heard as a steady signal in the receiver, as it has appreciable time lag in the keying circuit. The clipping effect of following stages has a definite hardening effect on this, however.

19-8 Differential Keying Circuits

Excellent waveshaping may be obtained by a *differential keying system* whereby the master oscillator of the transmitter is turned on a moment before the rest of the stages are energized, and remains on a moment longer than the other stages. The chirp, or frequency shift, associated with abrupt switching of the oscillator is thus removed from the emitted signal. In addition, the differential keyer can apply waveshaping to the amplifier section of the transmitter, eliminating the click caused by rapid keying of the latter stages.

The ideal keying system would perform as illustrated in figure 17. When the key is

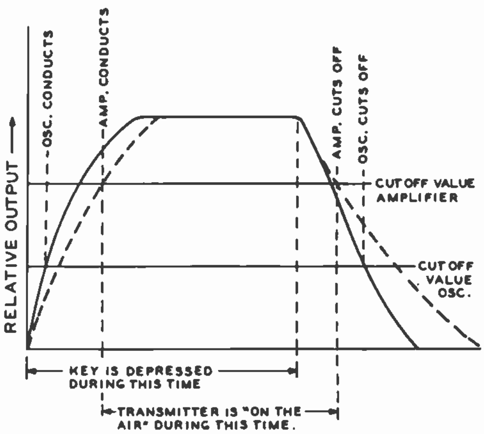


Figure 17

TIME SEQUENCE OF A DIFFERENTIAL KEYER

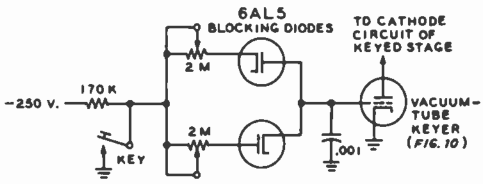


Figure 18

BLOCKING DIODES EMPLOYED TO VARY TIME CONSTANT OF "MAKE" AND "BREAK" CHARACTERISTICS OF VACUUM-TUBE KEYER

closed, the oscillator reaches maximum output almost instantaneously. The following stages reach maximum output in a fashion determined by the waveshaping circuits of the keyer. When the key is released, the output of the amplifier stages starts to decay in a predetermined manner, followed shortly thereafter by cessation of the oscillator. The over-all result of these actions is to provide relatively soft "make" and "break" to the keyed signal, meanwhile preventing oscillator frequency shift during the keying sequence.

The rates of charge and decay in a typical RC keying circuit may be varied independently of each other by the blocking-diode system of figure 18. Each diode permits the charging current of the timing capacitor to flow through only one of the two variable potentiometers, thus permitting independent adjustment of the "make" and "break" characteristics of the keying system.

A practical differential keying system making use of this differential technique is shown in figure 19. A 6AL5 switch tube turns the oscillator on before the keying action starts, and holds it on until after the keying sequence is completed. Time constant of the keying cycle is determined by values of C and R. When the key is open, a

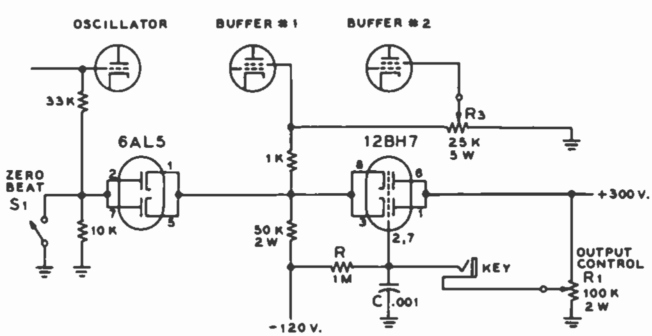


Figure 19

DIFFERENTIAL KEYING SYSTEM WITH OSCILLATOR SWITCHING DIODE

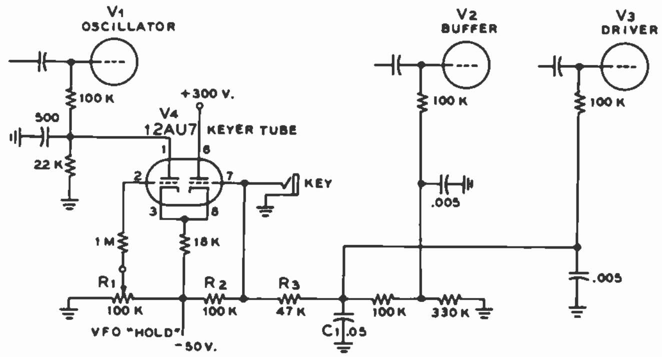


Figure 20

DIFFERENTIAL KEYER USING A 12AU7 DOUBLE TRIODE

cutoff bias of about −110 volts is applied to the screen-grid circuits of the keyed stages. When the key is closed, the screen-grid voltage rises to the normal value at a rate determined by the time constant (RC). On opening the key again, the screen voltage returns to cutoff value at the predetermined rate.

The potentiometer (R_1) serves as an output control, varying the minimum internal resistance of the 12BH7 keyer tube, and is a useful device to limit power input during tuneup periods. Excitation to the final amplifier stage may be controlled by the screen potentiometer (R_3) in the second buffer stage. An external bias source of approximately −120 volts at 10 ma is required for operation of the keyer, in addition to the 300-volt screen supply.

Blocking voltage may be removed from the oscillator for zeroing purposes by closing switch S_1, rendering the diode switch inoperative.

A second popular keying system is shown in figure 20. Grid-block keying is used on tubes V_2 and V_3. A waveshaping filter consisting of R_2, R_3, and C_1 is used in the keying control circuit of V_2 and V_3. To avoid chirp when the oscillator (V_1) is keyed, the keyer tube V_4 allows the oscillator to start quickly—before V_2 and V_3 start conducting—and then continue operating until after V_2 and V_3 have stopped conducting. Potentiometer R_1 adjusts the "hold" time for vfo operation after the key is opened. This may be adjusted to cut off the vfo between marks of keyed characters, thus allowing rapid break-in operation.

19-9 VOX Circuitry

A form of VOX (*voice-operated transmission*) is often employed in SSB operation. The VOX circuitry makes use of a transmitter control relay that is actuated by the operator's voice and is held open by an *anti-vox* circuit actuated by the audio system of the station receiver. Voice-controlled break-in operation is thus made possible without annoying feedback from the receiver speaker.

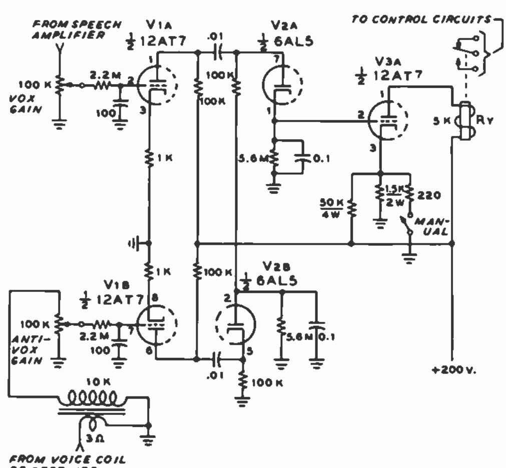


Figure 21

A REPRESENTATIVE VOX CIRCUIT

A representative VOX system is illustrated in figure 21. The VOX signal voltage is taken from the speech amplifier of the SSB transmitter and adjusted to the proper amplitude by means of *VOX-gain* potentiometer. The signal is rectified by diode V_2A and the positive voice impulses are applied to the grid of the VOX relay tube (V_3A) which is normally biased to cutoff. An RC network in the VOX rectifier circuit permits rapid relay action yet delays the opening of the relay so that VOX action is sustained during syllables and between words. Delay periods of up to 0.5 second are common.

The antivox signal voltage is derived from the speaker circuit of the receiver, adjusted to the proper amplitude by the *antivox-gain* potentiometer and rectified by diode V_2B to provide a negative voice impulse which biases the vox diode (V_2A) to a nonconducting state. The relay is held in a cut-off position until a positive override signal from the VOX circuit defeats the antivox signal taken from the station receiver. The relay tube may also be actuated by the *manual* switch which drops the bias level, causing the tube to draw a heavy plate current and trip the VOX relay.

CHAPTER TWENTY

Radiation, Propagation, and Transmission Lines

Radio waves are electromagnetic waves similar in nature to, but much lower in frequency than, light waves or heat waves. Such waves represent electric energy traveling through space. Radio waves travel in free space with the velocity of light and can be reflected and refracted much the same as light waves.

20-1 Radiation from an Antenna

Alternating current passing through a conductor creates an alternating electromagnetic field around that conductor. Energy is alternately stored in the field, and then returned to the conductor. As the frequency is raised, more and more of the energy does not return to the conductor, but instead is radiated off into space in the form of electromagnetic waves, called radio waves. Radiation from a wire, or wires, is materially increased whenever there is a sudden *change* in the *electrical constants* of the line. These sudden changes produce reflection, which places *standing waves* on the line.

When a wire in space is fed radio-frequency energy having a wavelength of approximately 2.1 times the length of the wire in meters, the wire *resonates* as a *half-wave dipole* antenna at that wavelength or frequency. The greatest possible change in the electrical constants of a line is that which occurs at the open end of a wire. Therefore, a dipole has a great mismatch at each end, producing a high degree of reflection. We say that the ends of a dipole are terminated in an *infinite impedance*.

A returning wave which has been reflected meets the next incident wave, and the voltage and current at any point along the antenna are the vector sum of the two waves. At the ends of the dipole, the voltages add, while the currents of the two waves cancel, thus producing *high voltage* and *low current* at the *ends* of the dipole or half-wave section of wire. In the same manner, it is found that the currents add while the voltages cancel at the center of the dipole. Thus, at the *center* there is *high current* but *low voltage*.

Inspection of figure 1 will show that the current in a dipole decreases sinusoidally toward either end, while the voltage similarly increases. The voltages at the two ends of the antenna are 180° out of phase, which means that the polarities are opposite, one being plus while the other is minus at any instant. A curve representing either the voltage or current on a dipole represents a *standing wave* on the wire.

Radiation From Sources Other Than Antennas Radiation can and does take place from sources other than antennas. Undesired radiation can take place from open-wire transmission lines, both from sin-

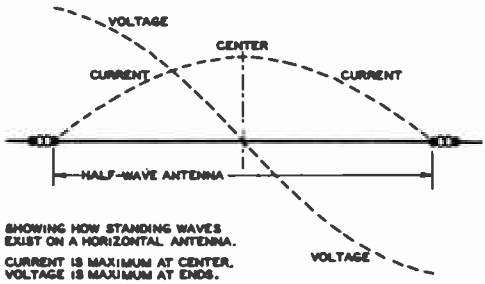


Figure 1

STANDING WAVES ON A RESONANT ANTENNA

gle-wire lines and from lines comprised of more than one wire. In addition, radiation can be made to take place in a very efficient manner from electromagnetic horns, from plastic lenses or from electromagnetic lenses made up of spaced conducting planes, from slots cut in a piece of metal, from dielectric wires, or from the open end of a waveguide.

Directivity of Radiation The radiation from any physically practical radiating systm is directive to a certain degree. The degree of directivity can be enhanced or altered when desirable through the combination of radiating elements in a prescribed manner, through the use of reflecting planes or curved surfaces, or through the use of such systems as mentioned in the preceding paragraph. The construction of directive antenna arrays is covered in detail in the chapters which follow.

Polarization Like light waves, radio waves can have a definite polarization. In fact, while light waves ordinarily have to be reflected or passed through a polarizing medium before they have a definite polarization, a radio wave leaving a simple radiator will have a definite polarization, the polarization being indicated by the orientation of the electric-field component of the wave. This, in turn, is determined by the orientation of the radiator itself, as the magnetic-field component is always at right angles to a linear radiator, and the electric-field component is always in the same plane as the radiator. Thus we see that an antenna that is vertical with respect to the earth will transmit a vertically polarized wave, as the electrostatic lines of force will be vertical. Likewise, a simple horizontal antenna will radiate horizontally polarized waves.

Because the orientation of a simple linear radiator is the same as the polarization of the waves emitted by it, the radiator itself is referred to as being either vertically or horizontally polarized. Thus, we say that a horizontal antenna is horizontally polarized.

Figure 2A illustrates the fact that the polarization of the electric field of the radiation from a vertical dipole is vertical. Figure 2B, on the other hand, shows that the polarization of electric-field radiation from a vertical *slot* radiator is horizontal. This fact has been utilized in certain commercial f-m antennas where it is desired to have horizontally polarized radiation but where it is more convenient to use an array of vertically stacked slot arrays. If the metallic sheet is bent into a cylinder with the slot on one side, substantially omnidirectional horizontal coverage is obtained with horizontally polarized radiation when the cylinder with the slot in one side is oriented vertically. An arrangement of this type is shown in figure 2C. Several such cylinders may be stacked vertically to reduce high-angle radiation and to concentrate the radiated energy at the useful low radiation angles.

In any event the polarization of radiation from a radiating system is parallel to the electric field as it is set up inside or in the vicinity of the radiating system.

20-2 General Characteristics of Antennas

All antennas have certain general characteristics to be enumerated. It is the result of differences in these general characteristics which makes one type of antenna system most suitable for one type of application and another type best for a different application. Six of the more important characteristics are: (1) polarization, (2) radiation resistance, (3) horizontal directivity, (4) vertical directivity, (5) bandwidth, and (6) effective power gain.

The *polarization* of an antenna or radiating system is the direction of the electric field and has been defined in Section 20-1.

The *radiation resistance* of an antenna system is normally referred to the feed point

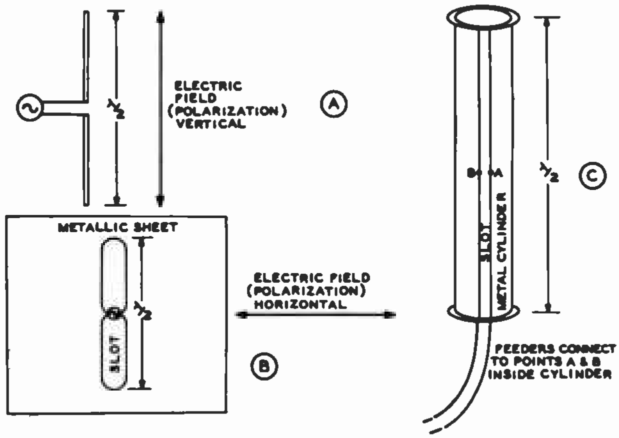


Figure 2

ANTENNA POLARIZATION

The polarization (electric field) of the radiation from a resonant dipole such as shown at A is parallel to the length of the radiator. In the case of a resonant slot cut in a sheet of metal and used as a radiator, the polarization (of the electric field) is perpendicular to the length of the slot. In both cases, however, the polarization of the radiated field is parallel to the potential gradient of the radiator; in the case of the dipole the electric lines of force are from end to end, while in the case of the slot the field is across the sides of the slot. The metallic sheet containing the slot may be formed into a cylinder to make up the radiator shown at C. With this type of radiator the radiated field will be horizontally polarized even though the radiator is mounted vertically.

in an antenna fed at a current loop, or it is referred to a current loop in an antenna system fed at another point. The radiation resistance is that value of resistance which, when substituted for the antenna at a current loop, would dissipate the same energy as is actually radiated by the antenna if the antenna current at the feed point were to remain the same.

The *horizontal* and *vertical directivity* can best be expressed as a *directive pattern* which is a graph showing the relative radiated field intensity against *azimuth* angle for horizontal directivity and field intensity against *elevation* angle for vertical directivity.

The *bandwidth* of an antenna is a measure of its ability to operate within specified limits over a range of frequencies. Bandwidth can be expessed as either *operating frequency plus or minus a specified percent of operating frequency*, or *operating frequency plus or minus a specified number of MHz* for a certain standing-wave-ratio limit on the transmission line feeding the antenna system.

The *effective power gain* or *directive gain* of an antenna is the ratio between the power required in the specified antenna and the power required in a reference antenna (usually a half-wave dipole) to attain the same field strength in the favored direction of the antenna under measurement. Directive gain may be expressed either as an actual power ratio, or as is more common, the power ratio may be expressed in decibels.

Physical Length of a Half-Wave Antenna If the cross section of the conductor which makes up the antenna is kept very small with respect to the antenna length, an electrical half wave is a fixed percentage shorter than a physical half wavelength. This percentage is approximately 5 percent. Therefore, most linear half-wave antennas are close to 95 percent of a half wavelength long physically. Thus, a half-wave antenna resonant at exactly 80 meters would be one-half of 0.95 times 80 meters in length. Another way of saying the same thing is that a wire resonates at a wavelength of about 2.1 times its length in meters. If the diameter of the conductor begins to be an appreciable fraction of a wavelength, as when tubing is used as a vhf radiator, the factor becomes slightly less than 0.95. For the use of wire and not tubing on frequencies below 30 MHz, however, the figure of 0.95 may be taken as accurate. This assumes a radiator removed from surrounding objects, and with *no bends*.

Simple conversion into feet can be obtained by using the factor 1.56. To find the physical length of a half-wave 80-meter antenna, we multiply 80 times 1.56, and get 124.8 feet for the length of the radiator.

It is more common to use frequency than wavelength when indicating a specific spot in the radio spectrum. For this reason, the relationship between wavelength and frequency must be kept in mind. As the velocity of radio waves through space is constant at the speed of light, it will be seen that the more waves that pass a point per second (higher frequency), the closer together the peaks of those waves must be (shorter wavelength). Therefore, the higher the frequency, the lower will be the wavelength.

A radio wave in space can be compared to a wave in water. The wave, in either case, has peaks and troughs. One peak and one trough constitute a *full wave*, or *one wavelength*.

Frequency describes the number of wave cycles or peaks passing a point per second. *Wavelength* describes the distance the wave travels through space during one cycle or oscillation of the antenna current; it is the distance in meters between adjacent peaks or adjacent troughs of a wave train.

As a radio wave travels 300,000,000 meters a second (speed of light), a frequency of 1 cycle per second (1 Hz) corresponds to a wavelength of 300,000,000 meters. So, if the frequency is multiplied by a million, the wavelength must be divided by a million, in order to maintain their correct ratio.

A frequency of 1,000,000 cycles per second (1000 kHz) equals a wavelength of 300 meters. Multiplying frequency by 10 and dividing wavelength by 10, we find: a frequency of 10,000 kHz equals a wavelength of 30 meters. Multiplying and dividing by 10 again, we get: a frequency of 100,000 kHz equals 3 meters wavelength. Therefore, to change wavelength to frequency (in kilohertz), simply divide 300,000 by the wavelength in meters (λ).

$$F_{kHz} = \frac{300,000}{\lambda}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{300,000}{F_{kHz}}$$

Now that we have a simple conversion formula for converting wavelength to frequency and vice versa, we can combine it with our wavelength-versus-antenna length formula, and we have the following:

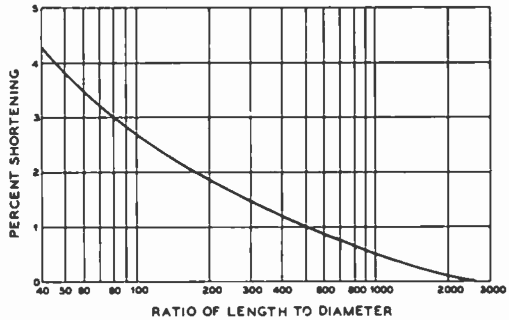


Figure 3

CHART SHOWING SHORTENING OF A RESONANT ELEMENT IN TERMS OF RATIO OF LENGTH TO DIAMETER

The use of this chart is based on the basic formula where radiator length in feet is equal to 468/frequency in MHz. This formula applies to frequencies below perhaps 30 MHz when the radiator is made from wire. On higher frequencies, or on 14 and 28 MHz when the radiator is made of large-diameter tubing, the radiator is shortened from the value obtained with the above formula by an amount determined by the ratio of length to diameter of the radiator. The amount of this shortening is obtainable from the chart shown above.

Length of a half-wave radiator made from wire (No. 14 to No. 10):

3.5-MHz to 30-MHz bands

$$\textit{Length in feet} = \frac{468}{\textit{Freq. in MHz}}$$

50-MHz band

$$\textit{Length in feet} = \frac{460}{\textit{Freq. in MHz}}$$

$$\textit{Length in inches} = \frac{5600}{\textit{Freq. in MHz}}$$

144-MHz band

$$\textit{Length in inches} = \frac{5500}{\textit{Freq. in MHz}}$$

Length-to-Diameter Ratio When a half-wave radiator is constructed from tubing or rod whose diameter is an appreciable fraction of the length of the radiator, the resonant length of a half-wave antenna will be shortened. The amount of shortening can be determined with the aid of the chart of figure 3. In this chart the amount of additional shortening over the values given in the previous paragraph is plotted against the ratio of the length to the diameter of the half-wave radiator.

The length of a wave in free space is somewhat longer than the length of an antenna for the same frequency. The actual free-space half wavelength is given by the following expressions:

$$\text{Half wavelength} = \frac{492}{\text{Freq. in MHz}} \text{ in feet}$$

$$\text{Half wavelength} = \frac{5905}{\text{Freq. in MHz}} \text{ in inches}$$

Harmonic Resonance A wire in space can resonate at more than one frequency. The *lowest* frequency at which it resonates is called its *fundamental* frequency, and at that frequency it is approximately a half wavelength long. A wire can have two, three, four, five, or more standing waves on it, and thus it resonates at approximately the integral harmonics of its fundamental frequency. However, the higher harmonics are not exactly integral multiples of the lowest resonant frequency as a result of *end effects*.

A harmonic-operated antenna is somewhat longer than the corresponding integral number of dipoles, and for this reason, the dipole length formula cannot be used simply by multiplying by the corresponding harmonic. The intermediate half-wave sections do not have *end effects*. Also, the current distribution is disturbed by the fact that power can reach some of the half-wave sections only by flowing through other sections, the latter then acting not only as radiators, but also as transmission lines. For the latter reason, the resonant length will be dependent to an extent on the method of feed, as there will be less attenuation of the current along the antenna if it is fed at or near the center than if fed toward or at one end. Thus, the antenna would have to be somewhat longer if fed near one end than if fed near the center. The difference would be small, however, unless the antenna were many wavelengths long.

The length of a center-fed harmonically operated doublet may be found from the formula:

$$L = \frac{(K - .05) \times 492}{\text{Freq. in MHz}}$$

where,
K equals number of ½ waves on antenna,
L equals length in feet.

Under conditions of severe current attenuation, it is possible for some of the nodes, or loops, actually to be slightly greater than a physical half wavelength apart. Practice has shown that the most practical method of resonating a harmonically operated antenna accurately is by cut and try, or by using a feed system in which both the feedline and antenna are resonated at the station end as an integral system.

A dipole or half-wave antenna is said to operate on its fundamental or first harmonic. A full-wave antenna, 1 wavelength long, operates on its second harmonic. An antenna with five half wavelengths on it would be operating on its fifth harmonic. Observe that the fifth harmonic antenna is 2½ *wavelengths* long, *not* 5 wavelengths.

Antenna Resonance Most types of antennas operate most efficiently when tuned, or *resonated,* to the frequency of operation. This consideration of course does not apply to the rhombic antenna and to the parasitic elements of Yagi arrays. However,

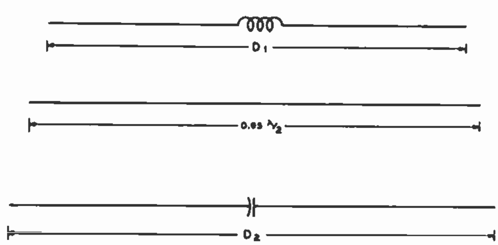


Figure 4

EFFECT OF SERIES INDUCTANCE AND CAPACITANCE ON THE LENGTH OF A HALF-WAVE RADIATOR

The top antenna has been electrically lengthened by placing a coil in series with the center. In other words, an antenna with a lumped inductance in its center can be made shorter for a given frequency than a plain wire radiator. The bottom antenna has been capacitively shortened electrically. In other words, an antenna with a capacitor in series with it must be made longer for a given frequency since its effective electrical length as compared to plain wire is shorter.

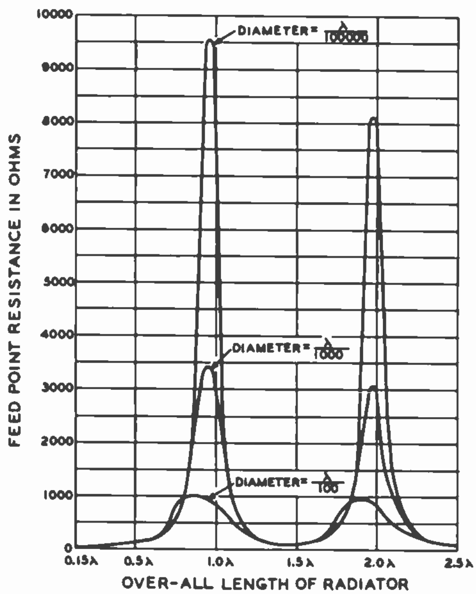


Figure 5

FEED-POINT RESISTANCE OF A CENTER-DRIVEN RADIATOR AS A FUNCTION OF PHYSICAL LENGTH IN TERMS OF FREE SPACE WAVELENGTH

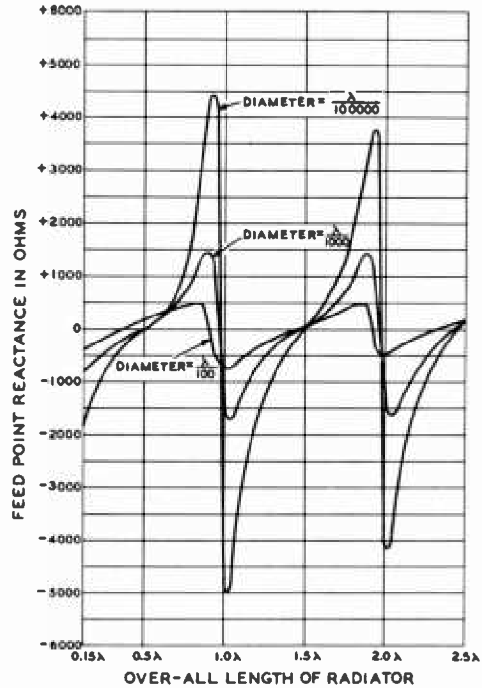


Figure 6

REACTIVE COMPONENT OF THE FEED-POINT IMPEDANCE OF A CENTER-DRIVEN RADIATOR AS A FUNCTION OF PHYSICAL LENGTH IN TERMS OF FREE-SPACE WAVELENGTH

in practically every other case it will be found that increased efficiency results when the entire antenna system is resonant, whether it be a simple dipole or an elaborate array. The radiation efficiency of a resonant wire is many times that of a wire which is not resonant.

If an antenna is slightly too long, it can be resonated by series insertion of a variable capacitor at a high-current point. If it is slightly too short, it can be resonated by means of a variable inductance. These two methods, illustrated schematically in figure 4, are generally employed when part of the antenna is brought into the operating room.

With an antenna array, or an antenna fed by means of a transmission line, it is more common to cut the elements to exact resonant length by "cut-and-try" procedure. Exact antenna resonance is more important when the antenna system has low radiation resistance; an antenna with low radiation resistance has higher Q (tunes sharper) than an antenna with high radiation resistance. The higher Q does not indicate greater efficiency; it simply indicates a sharper resonance curve.

20-3 Radiation Resistance and Feed-point Impedance

In many ways, a half-wave antenna is like a tuned tank circuit. The main difference lies in the fact that the elements of inductance, capacitance, and resistance are *lumped* in the tank circuit, and are *distributed* throughout the length of an antenna. The center of a half-wave radiator is effective at ground potential as far as r-f voltage is concerned, although the current is highest at that point.

When the antenna is resonant, and it always should be for best results, the impedance at the center is substantially resistive, and is termed the ***radiation resistance***. Radiation resistance is a fictitious term; it is that value of resistance (referred to the current loop) which would dissipate the same amount of power as being radiated by the antenna, when fed with the current flowing at the current loop.

The radiation resistance depends on the antenna length and its proximity to nearby objects which either absorb or re-radiate power, such as the ground, other wires, etc.

The Marconi Antenna Before going too far with the discussion of radiation resistance, an explanation of the *Marconi* (grounded quarter-wave) antenna is in order. The Marconi antenna is a special type of Hertz antenna in which the earth acts as the "other half" of the dipole. In other words, the current flows into the earth instead of into a similar quarter-wave section. Thus, the current loop of a Marconi antenna is at the *base* rather than in the *center.*

A half-wave dipole far from ground and other reflecting objects has a radiation resistance at the center of about 73 ohms. A Marconi antenna is simply one-half of a dipole. For that reason, the radiation resistance is roughly half the 73-ohm impedance of the dipole, or 36.5 ohms. The radiation resistance of a Marconi antenna, such as a mobile whip, will be lowered by the proximity of the automobile body.

Antenna Impedance Because the power throughout the antenna is the same, the *impedance* of a resonant antenna at any point along its length merely expresses the ratio between voltage and current at that point. Thus, the lowest impedance occurs where the current is highest, namely, at the center of a dipole, or a quarter wave from the end of a Marconi. The impedance rises uniformly toward each end, where it is about 2000 ohms for a dipole remote from ground, and about twice as high for a vertical Marconi.

If a vertical half-wave antenna is set up so that its lower end is at the ground level, the effect of the ground reflection is to increase the radiation resistance to approximately 100 ohms. When a horizontal half-wave antenna is used, the radiation resistance (and, of course, the amout of energy radiated for a given antenna current) depends on the height of the antenna above

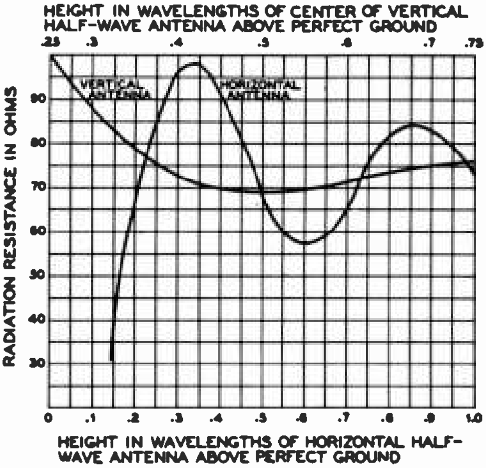


Figure 7

EFFECT OF HEIGHT ON THE RADIATION RESISTANCE OF A DIPOLE SUSPENDED ABOVE PERFECT GROUND

ground, since the height determines the phase and amplitude of the wave reflected from the ground back to the antenna. Thus the resultant current in the antenna for a given power is a function of antenna height.

Center-Fed Feed-Point Impedance When a linear radiator is series fed at the center, the resistive and reactive components of the driving-point impedance are dependent on both the length and diameter of the radiator expressed in wavelengths. The manner in which the resistive component varies with the physical dimensions of the radiator is illustrated in figure 5. The manner in which the reactive component varies is illustrated in figure 6.

Several interesting things will be noted with respect to these curves. The reactive component disappears when the over-all physical length is slightly less than any number of half waves long, the differential increasing with conductor diameter. For over-all lengths in the vicinity of an odd number of half wavelengths, the center feed point looks like a series-resonant lumped circuit to the generator or transmission line, while for over-all lengths in the vicinity of an *even* number of half wavelengths, it looks like a parallel-resonant or antiresonant lumped circuit. Both the feed-point resistance and the feed-point reactance *change more slowly* with over-all radiator length (or with frequency with a fixed length) *as the conductor diameter is increased*, indicating that the effective Q is lowered as the diameter is increased. However, in view of the fact that the damping resistance is nearly all radiation resistance rather than loss resistance, the lower Q does not represent lower efficiency. Therefore, the lower Q is desirable, because it permits use of the radiator over a wider frequency range without resorting to means for eliminating the reactive component. Thus, the use of a large diameter conductor makes the over-all system less frequency sensitive. If the diameter is made sufficiently large in terms of wavelengths, the Q will be low enough to qualify the radiator as a *broadband* antenna.

The curves of figure 7 indicate the theoretical center-point radiation resistance of a half-wave antenna for various heights above perfect ground. These values are of importance in matching untuned radio-frequency feeders to the antenna, in order to obtain a good impedance match and an absence of standing waves on the feeders.

Ground Losses Above *average* ground, the actual radiation resistance of a dipole will vary from the exact value of figure 7 since the latter assumes a hypothetical, perfect ground having no loss and perfect reflection. Fortunately, the curves for the radiation resistance over most types of earth will correspond rather closely with those of the chart, except that the radiation resistance for a horizontal dipole does not fall off as rapidly as is indicated for heights below an eighth wavelength. However, with the antenna so close to the ground and the soil in a strong field, much of the radiation resistance is actually represented by ground loss; this means that a good portion of the antenna power is being dissipated in the earth, which, unlike the hypothetical perfect ground, has resistance. In this case, an appreciable portion of the *radiation resistance* actually is loss resistance. The type of soil also has an effect upon the radiation *pattern*, especially in the vertical plane, as will be seen later.

The radiation resistance of an antenna generally increases with length, although this increase varies up and down about a constantly increasing average. The peaks and dips are caused by the reactance of the antenna, when its length does not allow it to resonate at the operating frequency.

Antenna Efficiency Antennas have a certain loss resistance as well as a radiation resistance. The loss resistance defines the power lost in the antenna due to ohmic resistance of the wire, ground resistance (in the case of a Marconi), corona discharge, and insulator losses.

The approximate effective radiation efficiency (expressed as a decimal) is equal to:

$$N_r = \frac{R_a}{R_a + R_L}$$

where,

R_a equals the radiation resistance,
R_L equals loss resistance of antenna.

The loss resistance will be of the order of 0.25 ohm for large-diameter tubing conductors such as are most commonly used in multi-element parasitic arrays, and will be of the order of 0.5 to 2.0 ohms for arrays of normal construction using copper wire.

When the radiation resistance of an antenna or array is very low, the current at a voltage node will be quite high for a given power. Likewise, the voltage at a current node will be very high. Even with a heavy conductor and excellent insulation, the losses due to the high voltage and current will be appreciable if the radiation resistance is sufficiently low.

Usually, it is not considered desirable to use an antenna or array with a radiation resistance of less than approximately 5 ohms unless there is sufficient directivity, compactness, or other advantage to offset the losses resulting from the low radiation resistance.

Ground Resistance The radiation resistance of a Marconi antenna, especially, should be kept as high as possible. This will reduce the antenna current for a given power, thus minimizing loss resulting from the series resistance offered by the earth connection. The radiation resistance can be kept high by making the Marconi radiator somewhat longer than a quarter wave, and shortening it by series capacitance to an electrical quarter wave. This reduces the current flowing in the earth connection. It also should be removed from ground as much as possible (vertical being ideal). Methods of minimizing the resistance of the earth connection will be found in the discussion of the Marconi antenna.

20-4 Antenna Directivity

All practical antennas radiate better in some directions than others. This characteristic is called *directivity*. The more *directive* an antenna is, the more it concentrates the radiation in a certain direction, or directions. The more the radiation is concentrated in a certain direction, the greater will be the field strength produced in that direction for a given amount of total radiated power. Thus the use of a directional antenna or *array* produces the same result in the favored direction as an increase in the power of the transmitter.

The increase in radiated power in a certain direction with respect to an antenna in free space as a result of inherent directivity is called the *free-space directivity power gain* or just *space directivity gain* of the antenna (referred to a hypothetical *isotropic radiator* which is assumed to radiate equally well in all directions). Because the fictitious isotropic radiator is a purely academic antenna, not physically realizable, it is common practice to use as a reference antenna the simplest ungrounded resonant radiator, the half-wave dipole, or resonant doublet. As a half-wave doublet has a space directivity gain of 2.15 db over an isotropic radiator, the use of a resonant dipole as the comparison antenna reduces the *gain figure* of an array by 2.15 db. However, it should be understood that power gain can be expressed with regard to *any* antenna, just so long as it is specified.

As a matter of interest, the directivity of an *infinitesimal dipole* provides a free-space directivity power gain of 1.5 (or 1.76 db) over an isotropic radiator. This means that *in the direction of maximum radiation* the infinitesimal dipole will produce the same field of strength as an isotropic radiator which is radiating 1.5 times as much total power.

A half-wave resonant doublet, because of its different current distribution and significant length, exhibits slightly more free-space power gain as a result of directivity than does the infinitesimal dipole, for reasons which will be explained in a later section. The space-directivity power gain of a half-wave resonant doublet is 1.63 (or 2.15 db) referred to an isotropic radiator.

Horizontal Directivity When choosing and orienting an antenna system, the radiation patterns of the various common types of antennas should be given careful consideration. The directional characteristics are of still greater importance when a directive antenna array is used.

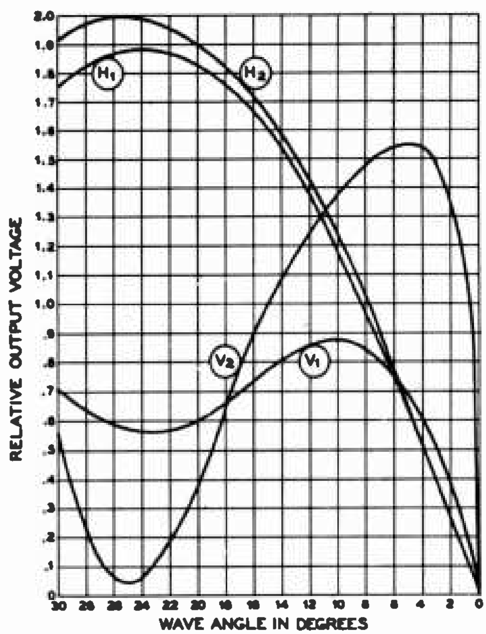


Figure 8

VERTICAL-PLANE DIRECTIONAL CHARACTERISTICS OF HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL DOUBLETS ELEVATED 0.6 WAVELENGTH AND ABOVE TWO TYPES OF GROUND

H_1 represents a horizontal doublet over typical farmland. H_2 over salt water. V_1 is a vertical pattern of radiation from a vertical doublet over typical farmland, V_2 over salt water. A salt water ground is the closest approach to an extensive ideally perfect ground that will be met in actual practice.

Horizontal directivity is always desirable on any frequency for point-to-point work. However, it is not always attainable with reasonable antenna dimensions on the lower frequencies. Further, when it is attainable, as on the frequencies above perhaps 7 MHz, with reasonable antenna dimensions, operating convenience is greatly furthered if the maximum lobe of the horizontal directivity is controllable. It is for this reason that rotatable antenna arrays have come into such common usage.

Considerable horizontal directivity can be used to advantage when: (1) only point-to-point work is necessary, (2) several arrays are available so that directivity may be changed by selecting or reversing antennas, (3) a single rotatable array is in use. Signals follow the great-circle path, or within 2 or 3 degrees of that path under all normal propagation conditions. However, under turbulent ionospheric conditions, or when unusual propagation conditions exist, the deviation from the great-circle path for greatest signal intensity may be as great as 90°. Making the array rotatable overcomes these difficulties, but arrays having extremely high horizontal directivity become too cumbersome to be rotated, except perhaps when designed for operation on frequencies above 50 MHz.

Vertical Directivity Vertical directivity is of the greatest importance in obtaining satisfactory communication above 14 MHz whether or not horizontal directivity is used. This is true simply because *only* the energy radiated between certain definite *elevation* angles is useful for communication. Energy radiated at other elevation angles is lost and performs no useful function.

Optimum Angle of Radiation The optimum angle of radiation for propagation of signals between two points is dependent on a number of variables. Among these significant variables are: (1) height of the ionosphere layer which is providing the reflection, (2) distance between the two stations, (3) number of hops for propagation between the two stations. For communication on the 14-MHz band it is often possible for different modes of propagation to provide signals between two points. This means, of course, that more than one angle of radiation can be used. If *no* elevation directivity is being used under this condition of propagation, selective fading will take place because of interference between the waves arriving over the different paths.

On the 28-MHz band it is by far the most common condition that only one mode of propagation will be possible between two points at any one time. This explains, of course, the reason why rapid fading in general and selective fading in particular are almost absent from signals heard on the 28-MHz band (except for fading caused by local effects).

Measurements have shown that the angles useful for communication on the 14-MHz band are from 3° to about 30°, angles above about 15° being useful only for local work. On the 28-MHz band, measurements have shown that the useful angles range from about 3° to 18°; angles above about 12° being useful only for local (less than 3000 miles) work. These figures assume normal propagation by virtue of the F_2 layer.

Angle of Radiation of Typical Antennas and Arrays It now becomes of interest to determine the amount of radiation available at these useful lower angles of radiation from commonly used antennas and antenna arrays. Figure 8 shows relative output voltage plotted against elevation angle (wave angle) in degrees above the horizontal, for horizontal and vertical doublets elevated 0.6 wavelength above two types of ground. It is obvious by inspection of the curves that a horizontal dipole mounted at this height above ground (20 feet on the 28-MHz band) is radiating only a small amount of energy at angles useful for communication on the 28-MHz band. Most of the energy is being radiated uselessly upward. The vertical antenna above a good reflecting surface appears much better in this respect—and this fact has been proven many times by actual installations.

It might immediately be thought that the amount of radiation from a horizontal or vertical dipole could be increased by raising the antenna higher above the ground. This is true to an extent in the case of the hori-

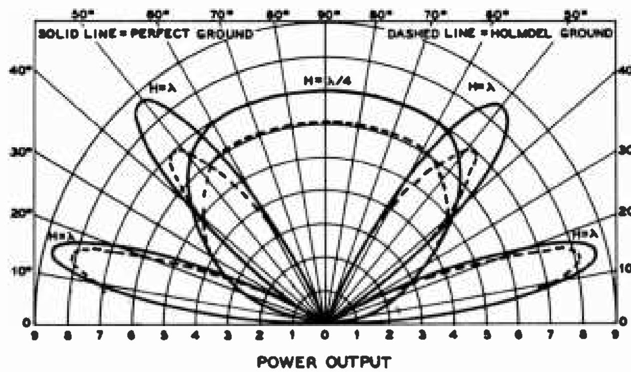


Figure 9

VERTICAL RADIATION PATTERNS

Showing the vertical radiation patterns for half-wave antennas (or collinear half-wave or extended half-wave antennas) at different heights above average ground and perfect ground. Note that such antennas one-quarter wave above ground concentrate most of the radiation at the very high angles which are useful for communication only on the lower- frequency bands. Antennas one-half wave above ground are not shown, but the elevation pattern shows one lobe on each side at an angle of 30° above horizontal.

zontal dipole; the low-angle radiation does increase *slowly* after a height of 0.6 wavelength is reached but at the expense of greatly increased high-angle radiation and the formation of a number of nulls in the elevation pattern. No signal can be transmitted or received at the elevation angles where these nulls have been formed. Tests have shown that a center height of 0.6 wavelength for a vertical dipole (0.35 wavelength to the bottom end) is about optimum for this type of array.

Figure 9 shows the effect of placing a horizontal dipole at various heights above ground. It is easily seen by reference to figure 9 (and figure 10 which shows the radiation from a dipole at ¾ wave height) that a large percentage of the total radiation from the dipole is being radiated at relatively high angles which are useless for communication on the 14-MHz and 28-MHz bands. Thus we see that in order to obtain a worthwhile increase in the ratio of low-angle radiation to high-angle radiation it is necessary to place the antenna high above ground, *and in addition* it is necessary to use additional means for suppressing high-angle radiation.

Suppression of High-angle Radiation High-angle radiation can be suppressed, and this radiation can be added to that going out at low angles, only through the use of some sort of *directive* antenna system. There are three general types of antenna arrays composed of dipole elements commonly used which concentrate radiation at the lower more effective angles for high-frequency communication. These types are: (1) The close-spaced out-of-phase system as exemplified by the "flat-top" beam, or W8JK array. Such configurations are classified as *end-fire arrays* . (2) The wide-spaced in-phase arrays, as exemplified by the "Lazy H" antenna. These configurations are classified as *broadside arrays.* (3) The close-

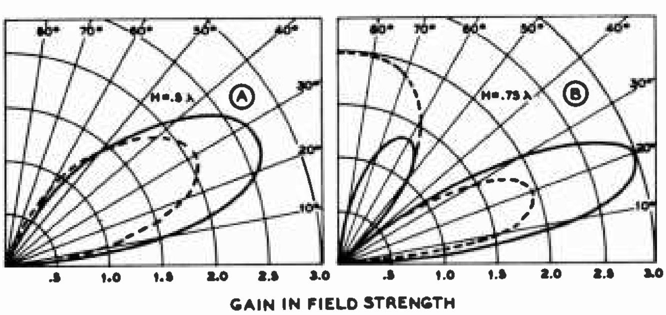


Figure 10

VERTICAL RADIATION PATTERNS

Showing vertical-plane radiation patterns of a horizontal single-section flat-top beam with one-eighth wave spacing (solid curves) and a horizontal half-wave antenna (dashed curves) when both are 0.5 wavelength (A) and 0.75 wavelength (B) above ground.

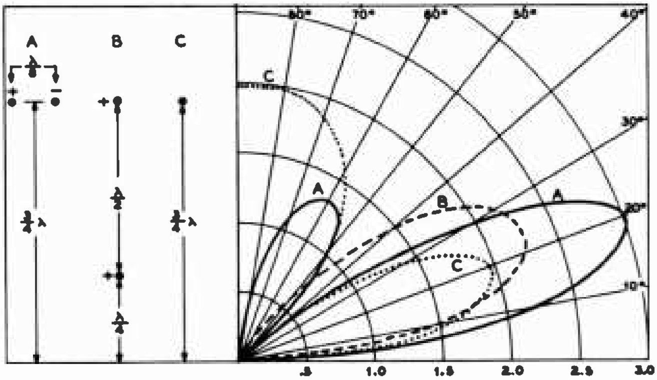


Figure 11

COMPARATIVE VERTICAL RADIATION PATTERNS

Showing the vertical radiation patterns of a horizontal single-section flat-top beam (A), an array of two stacked horizontal in-phase half-wave elements—half of a "Lazy H"—(B), and a horizontal dipole (C). In each case the top of the antenna system is 0.75 wavelength above ground, as shown to the left of the curves.

spaced parasitic systems, as exemplified by the three-element rotary beam.

A comparison between the radiation from a dipole, a "flat-top beam" and a pair of dipoles stacked one above the other (half of a "lazy H"), in each case with the top of the antenna at a height of ¾ wavelength is shown in figure 11. The improvement in the amplitude of low-angle radiation at the expense of the useless high-angle radiation with these simple arrays as contrasted to the dipole is quite marked.

Figure 12 compares the patterns of a 3-element beam and a dipole radiator at a height of 0.75 wavelength. It will be noticed that although there is more energy in the lobe of the beam as compared to the dipole, the axis of the beam is at the same angle above the horizontal. Thus, although more radiated energy is provided by the beam at low angles, the average angle of radiation of the beam is no lower than the average angle of radiation of the dipole.

20-5 Bandwidth

The *bandwidth* of an antenna or an antenna array is a function primarily of the radiation resistance and of the shape of the conductors which make up the antenna system. For arrays of essentially similar construction the bandwidth (or the deviation in frequency which the system can handle without mismatch) is increased with increasing radiation resistance, and the bandwidth is increased with the use of conductors of large diameter (smaller ratio of length to diameter). This is to say that if an array of any type is constructed of large diameter tubing or spaced wires, its bandwidth will be greater than that of a similar array constructed of single wires.

The radiation resistance of antenna arrays of the types mentioned in the previous paragraphs may be increased through the use of wider spacing between elements. With increased radiation resistance in such arrays the *radiation efficiency* increases since the ohmic losses within the conductors become a smaller percentage of the radiation resistance, and the bandwidth is increased proportionately.

20-6 Propagation of Radio Waves

The preceding sections have discussed the manner in which an electromagnetic-wave

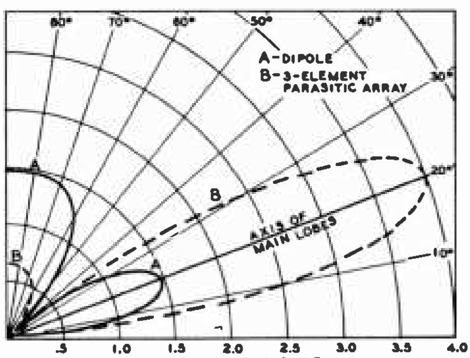


Figure 12

VERTICAL RADIATION PATTERNS

Showing vertical radiation patterns of a horizontal dipole (A) and a horizontal 3-element parasitic array (B) at a height above ground of 0.75 wavelength. Note that the axes of the main radiation lobes are at the same angle above the horizontal. Note also the suppression of high angle radiation by the parasitic array.

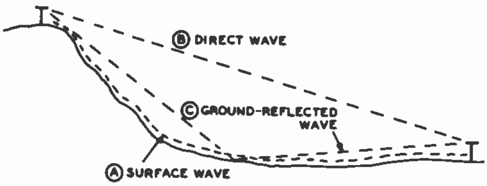


Figure 13

GROUND-WAVE SIGNAL PROPAGATION

The illustration above shows the three components of the ground wave: A, the surface wave; B, the direct wave; and C, the ground-reflected wave. The direct wave and the ground-reflected wave combine at the receiving antenna to make up the space wave.

or radio-wave field may be set up by a radiating system. However, for this field to be useful for communication it must be propagated to some distant point where it can be received, or where it may be reflected so that it can be received at some other point. Radio waves may be propagated to a remote point by either or both of two general methods. Propagation may take place as a result of the *ground wave*, or as a result of the *sky wave* or *ionospheric wave*.

The Ground Wave The term *ground wave* actually includes several different types of waves which usually are called: (1) the *surface wave*, (2) the *direct wave*, and (3) the *ground-reflected wave*. The latter two waves combine at the receiving antenna to form the *resultant wave* or the *space wave*. The distinguishing characteristic of the components of the ground wave is that all travel along or over the surface of the earth, so that they are affected by the conductivity and terrain of the earth's surface.

The Ionospheric Wave or Sky Wave Intense bombardment of the upper regions of the atmosphere by radiations from the sun results in the formation of ionized layers. These ionized layers, which form the *ionosphere*, have the capability of reflecting or refracting radio waves which impinge on them. A radio wave which has been propagated as a result of one or more reflections from the ionosphere is known as an *ionospheric wave* or a *sky wave*. Such waves make possible long distance radio communication. Propagation of radio signals by ionospheric waves is discussed in detail in Section 20-8.

20-7 Ground-Wave Communication

As stated in the preceding paragraph, the term *ground wave* applies both to the *surface wave* and to the *space wave* (the resultant wave from the combination of the direct wave and the ground-reflected wave) or to a combination of the two. The three waves which may combine to make up the ground wave are illustrated in figure 13.

The Surface Wave The surface wave is that wave which we normally receive from a standard broadcast station. It travels directly along the ground and terminates on the earth's surface. Since the earth is a relatively poor conductor, the surface wave is attenuated quite rapidly. The surface wave is attenuated less rapidly as it passes over sea water, and the attenuation decreases for a specific distance as the frequency is decreased. The rate of attenuation with distance becomes so large as the frequency is increased above about 3 MHz that the surface wave becomes of little value for communication.

The Space Wave The resultant wave or space wave is illustrated in figure 13 by the combination of B and C. It is this wave path, which consists of the combination of the direct wave and the ground-reflected wave at the receiving antenna, which is the *normal* path of signal propagation for line-of-sight or near line-of-sight communication or f-m and TV reception on frequencies above about 40 MHz.

Below line-of-sight over plane earth or water, when the signal source is effectively at the horizon, the ground-reflected wave does not exist, so that the *direct* wave is the only component which goes to make up the space wave. But when both the signal source and the receiving antenna are elevated with respect to the intervening terrain, the ground-reflected wave is present and adds vectorially to the direct wave at the receiving antenna. The vectorial addition of the two waves, which travel over different path lengths (since one of the waves has been reflected from the ground) results in an interference pattern. The interference between the two waves brings about a cyclic variation in signal strength as the receiving antenna is raised above the ground. This effect is illustrated in figure 14. From this figure it can be seen that best spacewave reception of a vhf signal often will be obtained with the receiving antenna quite close to the ground.

The distance from an elevated point to the geometrical horizon is given by the approximate equation: $d = 1.22\sqrt{H}$ where distance d is in miles and antenna height H is in feet. This equation must be applied separately to the transmitting and receiving antennas and the results added. However, refraction and diffraction of the signal around the spherical earth cause a smaller reduction in field strength than would occur in the absence of such bending, so that the average radio horizon is somewhat beyond the geometrical horizon. The equation $d = 1.4\sqrt{H}$ is sometimes used for determining the radio horizon.

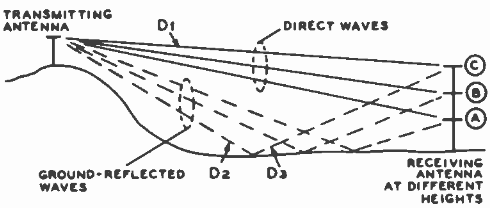


Figure 14

WAVE INTERFERENCE WITH HEIGHT

When the source of a horizontally-polarized space-wave signal is above the horizon, the received signal at a distant location will go through a cyclic variation as the antenna height is progressively raised. This is due to the difference in total path length between the direct wave and the ground-reflected wave, and to the fact that this path length difference changes with antenna height. When the path length difference is such that the two waves arrive at the receiving antenna with a phase difference of 360° or some multiple of 360°, the two waves will appear to be in phase as far as the antenna is concerned and maximum signal will be obtained. On the other hand, when the antenna height is such that the path length difference for the two waves causes the waves to arrive with a phase difference of an odd multiple of 180° the two waves will substantially cancel, and a null will be obtained at that antenna height. The difference between D_1 and D_2 plus D_3 is the path-length difference. Note also that there is an additional 180° phase shift in the ground-reflected wave at the point where it is reflected from the ground. It is this latter phase shift which causes the space-wave field intensity of a horizontally polarized wave to be zero with the receiving antenna at ground level.

Tropospheric Propagation Propagation by signal bending in the lower atmosphere, called *tropospheric propagation*, can result in the reception of signals over a much greater distance than would be the case if the lower atmosphere were homogeneous. In a homogeneous or well-mixed lower atmosphere, called a *normal*, or *standard*, atmosphere, there is a gradual and uniform decrease in index of refraction with height. This effect is due to the combined effects of a decrease in temperature, pressure, and water-vapor content with height.

This gradual decrease in refractive index with height causes waves radiated at very low angles with respect to the horizontal to be bent downward slightly in a curved path. The result of this effect is that such waves will be propagated beyond the *true*, or *geometrical*, horizon. In a so-called standard atmosphere the effect of the curved path is the same as though the radius of the earth were increased by approximately one-third. This condition extends the horizon by approximately 30 percent for normal propagation, and the extended horizon is known as the *radio-path horizon*, mentioned before.

Conditions Leading to Tropospheric Stratification When the temperature, pressure, or water-vapor content of the atmosphere does not change smoothly with rising altitude, the discontinuity or stratification will result in the reflection or refraction of incident vhf signals. Ordinarily this condition is more prevalent at night and in the summer. In certain areas, such as along the west coast of North America, it is frequent enough to be considered normal. Signal strength decreases slowly with distance and, if the favorable condition in the lower atmosphere covers sufficient area, the range is limited only by the transmitter power, antenna gain, receiver sensitivity, and signal-to-noise ratio. There is no skip distance. Usually, transmission due to this condition is accompanied by slow fading, although fading can be violent at a point where direct waves of about the same strength are also received.

Bending in the troposphere, which refers to the region from the earth's surface up to about 10 kilometers, is more likely to occur on days when there are stratus clouds than on clear, cool days with a deep blue sky. The temperature or humidity discontinuities may be broken up by vertical convection currents over land in the daytime but are more likely to continue during the day over water. This condition is in some degree predictable from weather information several days in advance. It does not depend on the sunspot cycle. Like direct communication, best results require similar antenna polarization or orientation at both the transmitting and receiving ends, whereas in transmission via reflection in the ionosphere (that part of the atmosphere between about 50 and 500 kilometers high) it makes little difference whether antennas are similarly polarized.

Duct Formation When bending conditions are particularly favorable they may give rise to the formation of a *duct* which can propagate waves with very little attenuation over great distances in a manner similar to the propagation of waves through a waveguide. *Guided propagation* through a duct in the atmosphere can give quite remarkable transmission conditions (figure

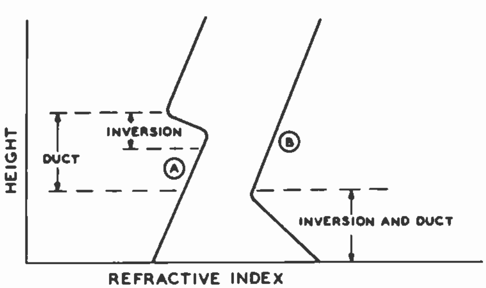


Figure 15

ILLUSTRATING DUCT TYPES

Showing two types of variation in refractive index with height which will give rise to the formation of a duct. An elevated duct is shown at A, and a ground-based duct is shown at B. Such ducts can propagate ground-wave signals far beyond their normal range.

15). However, such ducts usually are formed only on an over-water path. The depth of the duct over the water's surface may be only 20 to 50 feet, or it may be 1000 feet deep or more. Ducts exhibit a low-frequency cutoff characteristic similar to a waveguide. The cutoff frequency is determined by depth of the duct and by the strength of the discontinuity in refractive index at the upper surface of the duct. The lowest frequency that can be propagated by such a duct seldom goes below 50 MHz, and usually will not be greater than 450 MHz even along the Pacific Coast.

Stratospheric Reflection Communication by virtue of stratospheric reflection can be brought about during magnetic storms, aurora borealis displays, and during meteor showers. DX communication during extensive meteor showers is characterized by frequent bursts of great signal strength followed by a rapid decline in strength of the received signal. The motion of the meteor forms an ionized trail of considerable extent which can bring about effective reflection of signals. However, the ionized region persists only for a matter of seconds so that a shower of meteors is necessary before communication becomes possible.

The type of communication which is possible during visible displays of the aurora borealis and during magnetic storms has been called *aurora-type DX*. These conditions reach a maximum somewhat after the sunspot cycle peak, possibly because the spots on the sun are nearer to its equator (and more directly in line with the earth) in the latter part of the cycle. Ionospheric storms generally accompany magnetic storms. The normal layers of the ionosphere may be churned or broken up, making radio transmission over long distances difficult or impossible on high frequencies. Unusual conditions in the ionosphere sometimes modulate vhf waves so that a definite tone or noise modulation is noticed even on transmitters located only a few miles away.

A peculiarity of this type of auroral propagation of vhf signals in the northern hemisphere is that directional antennas usually must be pointed in a northerly direction for best results for transmission or reception. regardless of the direction of the other station being contacted. Distances out to 700 or 800 miles have been covered during magnetic storms, using 30- and 50-MHz transmitters, with little evidence of any silent zone between the stations communicating with each other. Generally, voice-modulated transmissions are difficult or impossible due to the tone or noise modulation on the signal. Most of the communication of this type has taken place by c.w. or by tone-modulated waves with a keyed carrier.

20-8 Ionospheric Propagation

Propagation of radio waves for communication on frequencies between perhaps 3 and 30 MHz is normally carried out by virtue of *ionospheric reflection* or *refraction*. Under conditions of abnormally high ionization in the ionosphere, communication has been known to have taken place by ionospheric reflection on frequencies higher than 50 MHz.

The ionosphere consists of layers of ionized gas located above the stratosphere, and extending up to possibly 300 miles above

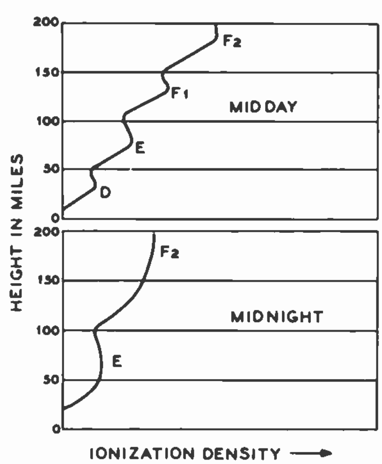


Figure 16

IONIZATION DENSITY IN THE IONOSPHERE

Showing typical ionization density of the ionosphere in midsummer. Note that the F_1 and D layers disappear at night, and that the density of the E layer falls to such a low value that it is ineffective.

the earth. Thus we see that high-frequency radio waves may travel over short distances in a direct line from the transmitter to the receiver, or they can be radiated upward into the ionosphere to be bent downward in an indirect ray, returning to earth at considerable distance from the transmitter. The wave reaching a receiver via the ionosphere route is termed a *sky wave*. The wave reaching a receiver by traveling in a direct line from the transmitting antenna to the receiving antenna is commonly called a *ground wave*.

The amount of bending at the ionosphere which the sky wave can undergo depends on its frequency, and the amount of *ionization* in the ionosphere, which is in turn dependent on radiation from the sun. The sun increases the density of the ionosphere layers (figure 16) and lowers their effective height. For this reason, the ionosphere acts very differently at different times of day, and at different times of the year.

The higher the frequency of a radio wave, the farther it penetrates the ionosphere, and the less it tends to be bent back toward the earth. The lower the frequency, the more easily the waves are bent, and the less they penetrate the ionosphere. 160-meter and 80-meter signals will usually be bent back to earth even when sent straight up, and may be considered as being *reflected* rather than *refracted*. As the frequency is raised beyond about 5000 kHz (dependent on the critical frequency of the ionosphere at the moment), it is found that waves transmitted at angles higher than a certain critical angle *never return to earth*. Thus, on the higher frequencies, it is necessary to confine radiation to low angles, since the high-angle waves simply penetrate the ionosphere and are lost.

The F_2 Layer The higher of the two major reflection regions of the ionosphere is called the F_2 layer. This layer has a virtual height of approximately 175 miles at night, and in the daytime it splits up into two layers, the upper one being called the F_2 layer and the lowerbeing called the F_1 layer. The height of the F_2 layer during daylight hours is normally about 250 miles on the average and the F_1 layer often has a height of as low as 140 miles. It is the F_2 layer which supports all nighttime DX communication and nearly all daytime DX propagation.

The E Layer Below the F_2 layer is another layer, called the *E* layer, which is of importance in daytime communication over moderate distances in the frequency range between 3 and 8 MHz. This layer has an almost constant height of about 70 miles. Since the recombination time of the ions at this height is rather short, the *E* layer disappears almost completely a short time after local sunset.

The D Layer Below the *E* layer at a height of about 35 miles is an *absorbing* layer, called the *D* layer, which exists in the middle of the day in the summertime. The layer also exists during midday in winter during periods of high solar activity, but the layer disappears completely at night. It is this layer which causes high absorption of signals in the medium- and high-frequency range during the middle of the day.

Critical Frequency The *critical frequency* of an ionospheric layer is the highest frequency which will be reflected when the wave strikes the layer at vertical incidence. The critical frequency of the most highly ionized layer of the ionosphere may be as low as 2 MHz at night and as high as 12 to 13 MHz in the middle of the day. The critical frequency is directly of interest in that a *skip-distance zone* will exist on all frequencies *greater* than the highest critical frequency at that time. The critical frequency is a measure of the density of ionization of the reflecting layers. The higher the critical frequency the greater the density of ionization.

Maximum Usable Frequency The *maximum usable frequency* or *m. u. f.* is of great importance in long-distance communication since this frequency is the highest that can be used for communication *between any two specified areas.* The m.u.f. is the highest frequency at which a wave projected into space in a certain direction will be returned to earth in a specified region by ionospheric reflection. The m.u.f. is highest at noon or in the early afternoon and is highest in periods of greatest sunspot activity, often going to frequencies higher than 30 MHz. (figure 17).

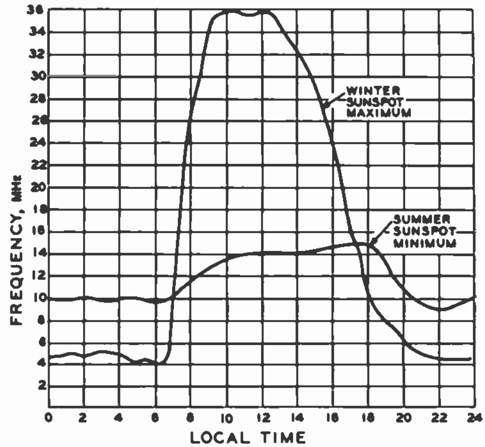


Figure 17

TYPICAL CURVES SHOWING CHANGE IN M.U.F. AT MAXIMUM AND MINIMUM POINTS IN SUNSPOT CYCLE

The m.u.f. often drops to frequencies below 10 MHz in the early morning hours. The high m.u.f. in the middle of the day is brought about by reflection from the F_2 layer. M.u.f. data is published periodically in the magazines devoted to amateur work, and the m.u.f. can be calculated with the aid of *Basic Radio Propagation Predictions,* CRPL-D, published monthly by the Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.

Absorption and Optimum Working Frequency The *optimum working frequency* for any particular direction and distance is usually about 15 percent less than the m.u.f. for contact with that particular location. The absorption by the ionosphere becomes greater and greater as the operating frequency is progressively lowered below the m.u.f. It is this condition which causes signals to increase tremendously in strength on the 14- and 28-MHz bands just before the signals drop completely out. At the time when the signals are greatest in amplitude the operating frequency is equal to the m.u.f. Then as the signals drop out the m.u.f. has become lower than the operating frequency.

Skip Distance The shortest distance from a transmitting location at which signals reflected from the ionosphere can be returned to the earth is called the *skip distance.* As was mentioned above under *critical frequency,* there is no skip distance for a frequency below the critical frequency of the most highly ionized layer of the ionosphere at the time of transmission. However, the skip distance is always present on the 14-MHz band and is almost always present on the 3.5 and 7 MHz bands at night. The actual measure of the skip distance is the distance between the point where the ground wave falls to zero and the point where the sky wave begins to return to earth. This distance may vary from 40 to 50 miles on the 3.5-MHz band to thousands of miles on the 28-MHz band.

The Sporadic-E Layer Occasional patches of extremely high ionization density appear at intervals throughout the year at a height approximately equal to that of the *E* layer. These patches, called the *sporadic-E* layer may be very small or may be up to several hundred miles in extent. The critical frequency of the *sporadic-E* layer may be greater than twice that of the normal ionosphere layers which exist at the same time.

It is this *sporadic-E* condition which provides "short-skip" contacts from 400 to perhaps 1200 miles on the 28-MHz band in the evening. It is also the *sporadic-E* condition which provides the more common type of "band opening" experienced on the 50-MHz band when very loud signals are received from stations from 400 to 1200 miles distant.

Cycles in Ionosphere Activity The ionization density of the ionosphere is determined by the amount of radiation (probably ultraviolet) which is being received from the sun. Consequently, ionosphere activity is a function of the amount of radiation of the proper character being emitted by the sun and is also a function of the relative aspect of the regions in the vicinity of the location under discussion to the sun. There are four main cycles in ionosphere activity. These cycles are: the daily cycle which is brought about by the rotation of the earth, the 27-day cycle which is caused by the rotation of the sun, the seasonal cycle which is caused by the movement of the earth in its orbit, and the

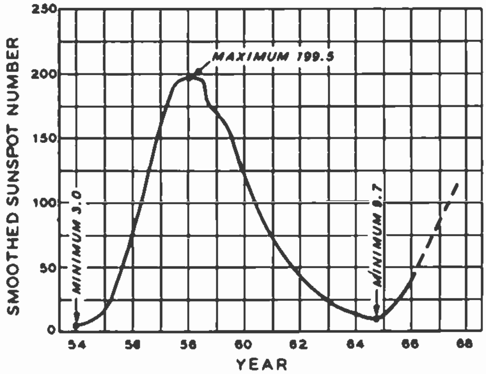


Figure 18

THE YEARLY TREND OF THE SUNSPOT CYCLE. RADIO CONDITIONS IN GENERAL WILL IMPROVE DURING 1966-1969 AS THE CYCLE INCREASES

11-year cycle which is a cycle in sunspot activity. The effects of these cycles are superimposed insofar as ionosphere activity is concerned. Also, the cycles are subject to short term variations as a result of magnetic storms and similar terrestrial disturbances.

The most recent minimum of the 11-year sunspot cycle occurred during the winter of 1964-1965, and we are currently moving along the slope of a new cycle, the maximum of which will occur probably during 1969. The current cycle is pictured in figure 18.

Fading The lower the angle of radiation of the wave, with respect to the horizon, the farther away will the wave return to earth, and the greater the skip distance. The wave can be reflected back up into the ionosphere by the earth, and then be reflected back down again, causing a second skip distance area. The drawing of figure 19 shows the multiple reflections possible. When the receiver receives signals which have traveled over more than one path between transmitter and receiver, the signal impulses will not all arrive at the same instant, since they do not all travel the same distance. When two or more signals arrive in the same phase at the receiving antenna, the resulting signal in the receiver will be quite strong. On the other hand, if the signals arrive 180° out of phase, so they tend to cancel each other, the received signal will drop—perhaps

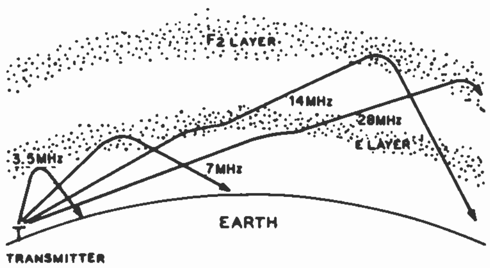


Figure 19

IONOSPHERE-REFLECTION WAVE PATHS

Showing typical ionosphere-reflection wave paths during daylight hours when ionization density is such that frequencies as high as 28 MHz will be returned to earth. The distance between ground-wave range and that range where the ionosphere-reflected wave of a specific frequency first will be returned to earth is called the skip distance.

to zero if perfect cancellation occurs. This explains why high-frequency signals are subject to fading.

Fading can be greatly reduced on the high frequencies by using a transmitting antenna with sharp vertical directivity, thus cutting down the number of possible paths of signal arrival. A receiving antenna with similar characteristics (sharp vertical directivity) will further reduce fading. It is desirable, when using antennas with sharp vertical directivity, to use the lowest vertical angle consistent with good signal strength for the frequency used.

Scattered Reflections Scattered reflections are random, diffused, substantially isotropic reflections which are partly responsible for reception within the skip zone, and for reception of signals from directions off the great circle path.

In a heavy fog or mist, it is difficult to see the road at night because of the bright glare caused by scattered reflection of the headlight beam by the minute droplets. In fact, the road directly to the side of the car will be weakly illuminated under these conditions, whereas it would not on a clear night (assuming flat, open country). This is a good example of propagation of waves by scattered reflections into a zone which otherwise would not be illuminated.

Scattering occurs in the ionosphere at all times, because of irregularities in the medium (which result in "patches" corresponding to the water droplets) and because of random-phase radiation due to the collision or recombination of free electrons. However, the nature of the scattering varies widely with time, in a random fashion. Scattering is particularly prevalent in the *E* region, but scattered reflections may occur at any height, even well out beyond the virtual height of the F_2 layer.

There is no "critical frequency" or "lowest perforating frequency" involved in the scattering mechanism, though the intensity of the scattered reflections due to typical scattering in the *E* region of the ionosphere decreases with frequency.

When the received signal is due primarily to scattered reflections, as is the case in the skip zone or where the great circle path does not provide a direct sky wave (due to low critical or perforation frequency, or to an ionosphere storm) very bad distortion will be evident, particularly a "flutter fade" and a characteristic "hollow" or echo effect.

Deviations from a great circle path are especially noticeable in the case of great circle paths which cross or pass near the auroral zones, because in such cases there often is complete or nearly complete absorption of the direct sky wave, leaving off-path scattered reflections the only mechanism of propagation. Under such conditions the predominant wave will appear to arrive from a direction closer to the equator, and the signal will be noticeably, if not considerably, weaker than a direct sky wave which is received under favorable conditions.

Irregular reflection of radio waves from "scattering patches" is divided into two categories: *short scatter* and *long scatter.*

Short scatter is the scattering that occurs when a radio wave first reaches the scattering patches or media. Ordinarily it is of no particular benefit, as in most cases it only serves to fill in the inner portion of the skip zone with a weak, distorted signal.

Long scatter occurs when a wave has been refracted from the F_2 layer and strikes scattering patches or media on the way down. When the skip distance exceeds several hundred miles, long scatter is primarily responsible for reception within the skip zone, particularly the outer portion of the skip zone. Distortion is much less severe than in the case of short scatter, and while the signal is likewise weak, it sometimes can be utilized for satisfactory communication.

During a severe ionosphere disturbance in the north auroral zone, it sometimes is possible to maintain communication between the Eastern United States and Northern Europe by the following mechanism: That portion of the energy which is radiated in the direction of the great circle path is completely absorbed on reaching the auroral zone. However, the portion of the wave leaving the United States in a *southeasterly* direction is refracted downward from the F_2 layer and encounters scattering patches or media on its downward trip at a distance of approximately 2000 miles from the transmitter. There it is reflected by "long scatter" in all directions, this scattering region acting like an isotropic radiator fed with a very small fraction of the original transmitter power. The great circle path from this southerly point to northern Europe does not encounter unfavorable ionosphere conditions, and the wave is propagated the rest of the trip as though it had been radiated from the scattering region.

Another type of scatter is produced when a sky wave strikes certain areas of the earth. On striking a comparatively smooth surface such as the sea, there is little scattering, the wave being shot up again by what could be considered specular, or mirror, reflection. But on striking a mountain range, for instance, the reradiation or reflected energy is scattered, some of it being directed back toward the transmitter, thus providing another mechanism for producing a signal within the skip zone.

Meteors and "Bursts" When a meteor strikes the earth's atmosphere, a cylindrical region of free electrons is formed at approximately the height of the *E* layer. This slender ionized column is quite long, and when first formed is sufficiently dense to reflect radio waves back to earth most readily, *including vhf waves which are not ordinarily returned by the F_2 layer.*

The effect of a single meteor, or normal size, shows up as a sudden "burst" of signal of short duration at points not ordinarily reached by the transmitter. After a period of from 10 to 40 seconds, recombination and diffusion have progressed to the point where the effect of a *single* fairly large meteor is not perceptible. However, there are many *small* meteors impinging on earth's atmosphere every minute, and the *aggregate* effect of their transient ionized trails, including the small amount of residual ionization that exists for several minutes after the original flash but is too weak and dispersed to prolong a "burst," is believed to contribute to the existence of the *nighttime-E* layer, and perhaps also to *sporadic-E* patches.

While there are many of these very small meteors striking the earth's atmosphere every minute, meteors of normal size (sufficiently large to produce individual "bursts") do not strike nearly so frequently except during some of the comparatively rare meteor "showers." During one of these displays a "quivering" ionized layer is produced which is intense enough to return signals in the lower vhf range with good strength, but with a type of "flutter" distortion which is characteristic of this type of propagation.

20-9 Transmission Lines

For many reasons it is desirable to place an antenna or radiating system as high and in the clear as is physically possible, utilizing some form of nonradiating transmission line to carry energy with as little loss as possible from the transmitter to the radiating antenna, and conversely from the antenna to the receiver.

There are many different types of transmission lines and, generally speaking, practically any type of transmission line or feeder system may be used with any type of antenna. However, mechanical or electrical considerations often make one type of transmission line better adapted for use to feed a particular type of antenna than any other type.

Transmission lines for carrying r-f energy are of two general types: *nonresonant* and *resonant*. A nonresonant transmission line is one on which a successful effort has been made to eliminate reflections from the termination (the antenna in the transmitting case and the receiver for a receiving antenna) and hence one on which standing waves do not exist or are relatively small in magnitude. A resonant line, on the other hand, is a transmission line on which standing waves of appreciable magnitude do appear, either through inability to match the characteristic impedance of the line to the termination or through intentional design.

The principal types of transmission line in use or available at this time include the open-wire line (two-wire and four-wire types), two-wire solid-dielectric line (*twin-lead* and similar ribbon or tubular types), two-wire polyethylene-filled shielded line, coaxial line of the solid-dielectric, beaded, stub-supported, or pressurized type, rectangular and cylindrical waveguide, and the single-wire feeder operated against ground. The significant characteristics of the more popular types of transmission line available at this time are given in the chart of figure 21.

20-10 Nonresonant Transmission Lines

A nonresonant or untuned transmission line is a line with negligible standing waves. Hence, a nonresonant line is a line carrying r-f power only in one direction—from the source of energy to the load.

Physically, the line itself should be *identical throughout its length.* There will be a smooth distribution of voltage and current throughout its length, both tapering off very slightly towards the load end of the line as a result of line losses. The attenuation (loss) in certain types of untuned lines can be kept very low for line lengths up to several thousand feet. In other types, particularly where the dielectric is not air (such as in the twisted-pair line), the losses may become excessive at the higher frequencies, unless the line is relatively short.

Transmission-Line Impedance All transmission lines have distributed inductance, capacitance, and resistance. Neglecting the resistance, as it is of minor importance in short lines, it is found that the *inductance and capacitance per unit length* determine the characteristic or surge impedance of the line. Thus, the surge impedance depends upon the nature and spacing of the conductors, and the dielectric separating them.

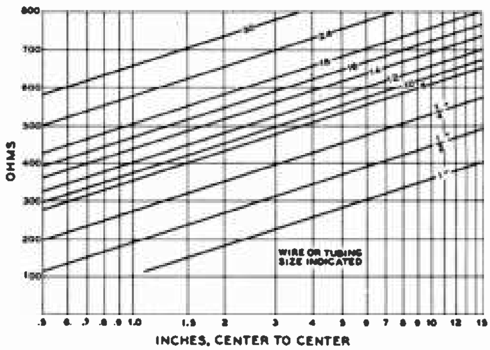


Figure 20

CHARACTERISTIC IMPEDANCE OF TYPICAL TWO-WIRE OPEN LINES

Speaking in electrical terms, the characteristic impedance of a transmission line is simply the ratio of the voltage across the line to the current which is flowing, the same as is the case with a simple resistor: $Z_0 = E/I$. Also, in a substantially lossless line (one whose attenuation per wavelength is small) the energy stored in the line will be equally divided between the electric field and the magnetic field which serve to propagate the energy along the line. Hence the characteristic impedance of a line may be expressed as:

$$Z_0 = \sqrt{L/C}.$$

Two-Wire Open Line A two-wire transmission system is easy to construct. Its surge impedance can be calculated quite easily, and when properly adjusted and balanced to ground, with a conductor spacing which is negligible in terms of the wavelength of the signal carried, undesirable feeder radiation is minimized; the current flow in the adjacent wires is in opposite directions, and the magnetic fields of the two wires are in opposition to each other. When a two-wire line is terminated with the equivalent of a pure resistance equal to the characteristic impedance of the line, the line becomes a nonresonant line.

Expressed in physical terms, the characteristic impedance of a two-wire open line is equal to:

$$Z_0 = 276 \log_{10} \frac{2S}{d}$$

CHARACTERISTICS OF COMMON TRANSMISSION LINES

	Attenuation db/100 feet VSWR = 1.0			Velocity factor V	pf per ft.	REMARKS
	30 MHz	100 MHz	300 MHz			
Open wire line, No. 12 copper.	0.15	0.3	0.8	0.96-0.99	—	Based on 4" spacing below 50 MHz; 2" spacing above 50 MHz. Radiation losses included. Clean, low-loss ceramic insulation assumed. Radiation high above 150 MHz.
Ribbon line, rec. type, 300 ohms. (7/28 conductors)	0.86	2.2	5.3	0.82*	6*	For clean dry line, wet weather performance rather poor, best line is slightly convex. Avoid line that has concave dielectric. Suitable for low-power transmitting applications. Losses increase as line weathers. Handles 400 watts at 30 MHz if SWR is low.
Tubular "twin-lead" rec. type, 300 ohms, 5/16" O.D., (Amphenal type 14-271)	—	—	—	—	—	Characteristics similar to receiving-type ribbon line except for much better wet-weather performance.
Ribbon line, trans. type, 300 ohms.	—	—	—	—	—	Characteristics vary somewhat with manufacturer, but approximate those of receiving-type ribbon except for greater power-handling capability and slightly better wet weather performance.
Tubular "twin-lead" trans. type, 7/16 O.D. (Amphenol 14-076)	0.85	2.3	5.4	0.79	6.1	For use where receiving-type tubular "twin-lead" does not have sufficient power-handling capability. Will handle 1 kw at 30 MHz if SWR is low.
Ribbon line, receive type, 150 ohms.	1.1	2.7	6.0	0.77*	10*	Useful for quarter-wave matching sections. No longer widely used as a line.
Ribbon line, receive type, 75 ohms.	2.0	5.0	11	0.68*	19*	Useful mainly in the hf range because of excessive losses at vhf and uhf. Less affected by weather than 300-ohm ribbon.
Ribbon line, trans. type, 75 ohms.	1.5	3.9	8.0	0.71*	18*	Very satisfactory for transmitting applications below 30 MHz at powers up to 1 kw. Not significantly affected by wet weather.
RG-8/U coax (52 ohms)	1.0	2.1	4.2	0.66	29.5	Will handle 2 kw at 30 MHz if SWR is low. 0.4" O.D. 7/21 conductor.
RG-11/U coax (75 ohms)	0.94	1.9	3.8	0.66	20.5	Will handle 1.4 kw at 30 MHz if SWR is low. 0.4" O.D. 7/26 conductor.
RG-17/U coax (52 ohms)	0.38	0.85	1.8	0.66	29.5	Will handle 7.8 kw at 30 MHz if SWR is low. 0.87" O.D. 0.19" dia. conductor.
RG-58/U coax (53 ohms)	1.95	4.1	8.0	0.66	28.5	Will handle 430 watts at 30 MHz if SWR is low. 0.2" O.D. No. 20 conductor.
RG-59/U coax (73 ohms)	1.9	3.8	7.0	0.66	21	Will handle 680 watts at 30 MHz if SWR is low. 0.24" O.D. No. 22 conductor.
TV-59 coax (72 ohms)	2.0	4.0	7.0	0.66	22	"Commercial" version of RG-59/U for less exacting applications. Less expensive.
RG-22/U shielded pair (95 ohms)	1.7	3.0	5.5	0.66	16	For shielded, balanced-to-ground applications. Very low noise pickup. 0.4" O.D.
K-111 shielded pair (300 ohms)	2.0	3.5	6.1	—	4	Designed for TV lead-in in noisy locations. Losses higher than regular 300-ohm ribbon, but do not increase as much from weathering.

* Approximate. Exact figure varies slightly with manufacturer.

FIGURE 21

Older type coaxial lines have a useful life of three to six years after which the cable attenuation gradually rises, especially under conditions of heat. Newer cables (designated by the suffix A: RG-8A/U for example) have useful life up to twelve years or so. The 52-ohm series cables have been recently replaced with 50-ohm cables, RG-8A/U now being designated RG-213/U. Long-life versions of the RG-58 family are: RG-58B/U (53.5-ohm) and RG-58C/U (50-ohm).

where,

S is the exact distance between wire centers in some convenient unit of measurement,

d is the diameter of the wire measured in the same units as the wire spacing, S.

Since $\frac{2S}{d}$ expresses a ratio only, the units of measurement may be centimeters, millimeters, or inches. This makes no difference in the answer, so long as the substituted values for S and d are in the *same units*.

The equation is accurate *so long as the wire spacing is relatively large as compared to the wire diameter.*

Surge impedance values of less than 200 ohms are seldom used in the open-type two-wire line, and, even at this rather high value of Z_0 the wire spacing S is uncomfortably close, being only 2.7 times the wire diameter.

Figure 20 gives in graphical form the surge impedance of practical two-wire lines. The chart is self-explanatory, and is sufficiently accurate for practical purposes.

Ribbon and Tubular Transmission Line Instead of using spacer insulators placed periodically along the transmission line it is possible to mold the line conductors into a ribbon or tube of flexible low-loss dielectric material. Such line, with polyethylene dielectric, is used in enormous quantities as the lead-in transmission line for f-m and TV receivers. The line is available from several manufacturers in the ribbon and tubular configuration, with characteristic impedance values from 75 to 300 ohms. Receiving types, and transmitting types of power levels up to one kilowatt in the hf range, are listed with their pertinent characteristics, in the table of figure 21.

Coaxial Line Several types of coaxial cable have come into wide use for feeding power to an antenna system. A cross-sectional view of a coaxial cable (sometimes called concentric cable or line) is shown in figure 22.

As in the parallel-wire line, the power lost in a properly terminated coaxial line is the sum of the effective resistance losses along the length of the cable and the dielectric losses between the two conductors.

Of the two losses, the effective resistance loss is the greater; since it is largely due to the skin effect, the line loss (all other conditions the same) will increase directly as the square root of the frequency.

Figure 22 shows that, instead of having two conductors running side by side, one of the conductors is placed *inside* the other. Since the outside conductor completely shields the inner one, no radiation takes place. The conductors may both be tubes, one within the other; the line may consist of a solid wire within a tube, or it may consist of a stranded or solid inner conductor with the outer conductor made up of one or two wraps of copper shielding braid.

In the type of cable most popular for military and noncommercial use the inner conductor consists of a heavy stranded wire, the outer conductor consists of a braid of copper wire, and the inner conductor is supported within the outer by means of a semisolid dielectric of exceedingly low-loss characteristics called polyethylene. The Army-Navy designation on one size of this cable suitable for power levels up to one kilowatt at frequencies as high as 30 MHz is RG-8/u. The outside diameter of this type of cable is approximately one-half inch. The characteristic impedance of this cable type is 52 ohms, but other similar types of greater and smaller power-handling capacity are available in impedances of 52, 75, and 95 ohms.

When using solid dielectric coaxial cable it is necessary that precautions be taken to ensure that moisture cannot enter the line. If the better grade of connectors manufactured for the line are employed as terminations, this condition is automatically satisfied. If connectors are not used, it is necessary that some type of moisture-proof sealing com-

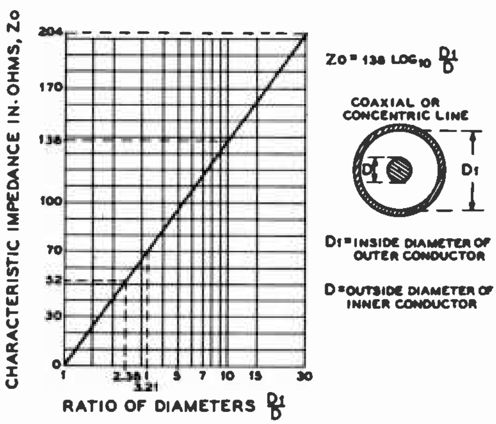


Figure 22

CHARACTERISTIC IMPEDANCE OF AIR-FILLED COAXIAL LINES

If the filling of the line is a dielectric material other than air, the characteristic impedance of the line will be reduced by a factor proportional to the square-root of the dielectric constant of the material used as a dielectric within the line.

pound be applied to the end of the cable where it will be exposed to the weather.

Nearby metallic objects cause no loss, and coaxial cable may be run up air ducts or elevator shafts, inside walls, or through metal conduit. Insulation troubles can be forgotten. The coaxial cable may be buried in the ground or suspended above ground.

Standing Waves Standing waves on a transmission line *always* are the result of the reflection of energy. The only significant reflection which takes place in a normal installation is that at the load end of the line. But reflection can take place from discontinuities in the line, such as caused by insulators, bends, or metallic objects adjacent to an unshielded line.

When a uniform transmission line is terminated in an impedance equal to its surge impedance, reflection of energy does not occur, and no standing waves are present. Thus, for proper operation of an untuned line (with standing waves eliminated), some form of impedance-matching arrangement must be used between the transmission line and the antenna, so that the radiation resistance of the antenna is reflected back into the line as a nonreactive impedance equal to the line impedance.

The termination at the antenna end is the only critical characteristic about the untuned line fed by a transmitter. It is the reflection from the antenna end which starts waves moving back toward the transmitter end. When waves moving in both directions along a conductor meet, standing waves are set up.

Semiresonant Parallel-Wire Lines A well-constructed open-wire line has acceptably low losses when its length is less than about two wavelengths even when the voltage standing-wave ratio is as high as 10 to 1. A transmission line constructed of ribbon or tubular line, however, should have the standing-wave ratio kept down to not more than about 3 to 1 both to reduce power loss and because the energy dissipation on the line will be localized, causing overheating of the line at the points of maximum current.

Because moderate standing waves can be tolerated on open-wire lines without much loss, a standing-wave ratio of 2/1 or 3/1 is considered acceptable with this type of line, *even when used in an untuned system.* Strictly speaking, a line is untuned, or nonresonant, only when it is perfectly *flat*, with a standing-wave ratio of 1 (no standing waves). However, some mismatch can be tolerated with open-wire untuned lines, so long as the reactance is not objectionable, or is eliminated by cutting the line to approximately resonant length.

20-11 Tuned or Resonant Lines

If a transmission line is terminated in its *characteristic surge impedance*, there will be no reflection at the end of the line, and the current and voltage distribution will be uniform along the line. If the end of the line is either open-circuited or short-circuited, the reflection at the end of the line will be 100 percent, and *standing waves* of very great amplitude will appear on the line. There will still be practically no radiation from the line if it is closely spaced, but voltage nodes will be found every half wavelength, the voltage loops corresponding to current nodes (figure 23).

If the line is terminated in some value of resistance other than the characteristic surge impedance, there will be some reflection, the amount being determined by the amount of mismatch. With reflection, there will be standing waves (excursions of current and voltage) along the line, though not to the same extent as with an open-circuited or short-circuited line. The current and voltage loops will occur at the same *points* along the line as with the open- or short-circuited line, and as the terminating impedance is made to approach the characteristic impedance of the line, the current and voltage along the line will become more uniform. The foregoing assumes, of course, a purely resistive (nonreactive) load. If the load is reactive, standing waves also will be formed. But with a reactive load the nodes will occur at different locations from the node locations encountered with improper resistive termination.

A well built 500- to 600-ohm transmission line may be used as a resonant feeder for lengths up to several hundred feet with very low loss, so long as the amplitude of the standing waves (ratio of maximum to minimum voltage along the line) is *not too great.*

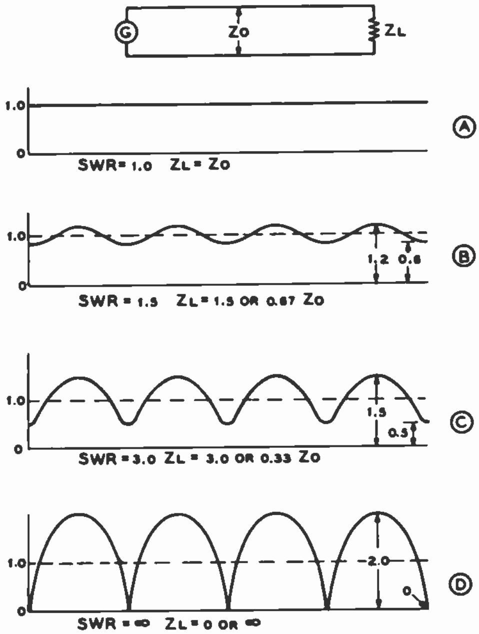


Figure 23

STANDING WAVES ON A TRANSMISSION LINE

As shown at A, the voltage and current are constant on a transmisson line which is terminated in its characteristic impedance, assuming that losses are small enough so that they may be neglected. B shows the variation in current or in voltage on a line terminated in a load with a reflection coefficient of 0.2 so that a standing-wave ratio of 1.5 to 1 is set up. At C the reflection coefficient has been increased to 0.5, with the formation of a 3-to-1 standing-wave ratio on the line. At D the line has been terminated in a load which has a reflection coefficient of 1.0 (short, open circuit, or a pure reactance) so that all the energy is reflected with the formation of an infinite standing-wave ratio.

The amplitude, in turn, depends on the mismatch at the line termination. A line of No. 12 wire, spaced 6 inches with good ceramic or plastic spreaders, has a surge impedance of approximately 600 ohms, and makes an excellent tuned feeder for feeding anything between 60 and 6000 ohms (at frequencies below 30 MHz). If used to feed a load of higher or lower impedance than this, the standing waves become great enough in amplitude that some loss will occur unless the feeder is kept short. At frequencies above 30 MHz, the spacing becomes an appreciable fraction of a wavelength, and radiation from the line no longer is negligible. Hence, coaxial line or close-spaced parallel-wire line is recommended for vhf work.

If a transmission line is not perfectly matched, it should be made *resonant*, even though the amplitude of the standing waves (voltage variation) is not particularly great. This prevents reactance from being coupled into the final amplifier. A feed system having moderate standing waves may be made to present a nonreactive load to the amplifier either by tuning or by pruning the feeders to approximate resonance.

Usually it is preferable with tuned feeders to have a current loop (voltage minimum) at the transmitter end of the line. This means that when voltage-feeding an antenna, the tuned feeders should be made an odd number of quarter wavelengths long, and when current-feeding an antenna, the feeders should be made an even number of quarter wavelengths long. Actually, the feeders are made about 10 percent of a quarter wave longer than the calculated value (the value given in the tables) when they are to be series tuned to resonance by means of a capacitor, instead of being trimmed and pruned to resonance.

When tuned feeders are used to feed an antenna on more than one band, it is necessary to compromise and make provision for both series and parallel tuning, inasmuch as it is impossible to cut a feeder to a length that will be optimum for several bands. If a voltage loop appears at the transmitter end of the line on certain bands, parallel tuning of the feeders will be required in order to get a transfer of energy. It is impossible to transfer energy by inductive coupling unless current is flowing. This is effected as a voltage loop by the presence of the resonant tank circuit formed by parallel tuning of the antenna coil.

20-12 Line Discontinuities

In the previous discussion we have assumed a transmission line which was uniform throughout its length. In actual practice, this is usually not the case.

Whenever there is any sudden change in the characteristic impedance of the line, partial reflection will occur at the point of discontinuity. Some of the energy will be transmitted and some reflected, which is essentially the same as having some of the energy absorbed and some reflected in so far as the effect on the line from the generator to that point is concerned. The discontinuity can be ascribed a reflection coefficient just as in the case of an unmatched load.

In a simple case, such as a finite length of uniform line having a characteristic impedance of 500 ohms feeding into an infinite length of uniform line having a characteristic impedance of 100 ohms, the behavior is easily predicted. The infinite 100-ohm line will have no standing waves and will accept the same power from the 500-ohm line as would a 100-ohm resistor, and the rest of the energy will be reflected at the discontinuity to produce standing waves from there back to the generator. However, in the case of a complex discontinuity placed at an odd distance down a line terminated in a complex impedance, the picture becomes complicated, especially when the discontinuity is neither sudden nor gradual, but intermediate between the two. This is the usual case with amateur lines that must be erected around buildings and trees.

In any case, when a discontinuity exists somewhere on a line and is not a smooth, gradual change embracing several wavelengths, it is not possible to avoid standing waves throughout the entire length of the line. If the discontinuity is sharp enough and is great enough to be significant, standing waves must exist on one side of the discontinuity, and may exist on both sides in many cases.

20-13 A Broadband 50-Ohm Balun

Many triband high-frequency beam antennas feature a balanced input system having a 50-ohm feed point. In order to reduce line discontinuities and to provide a better match between the antenna and an unbalanced transmission line, a *balun* (balance to unbalance) r-f transformer should be used. Shown in figure 24 is a broadband balun that is effective over the range of 6 to 30 MHz. The balun is an inexpensive coil made of a length of coaxial cable and is designed to be installed directly at the terminals of the antenna.

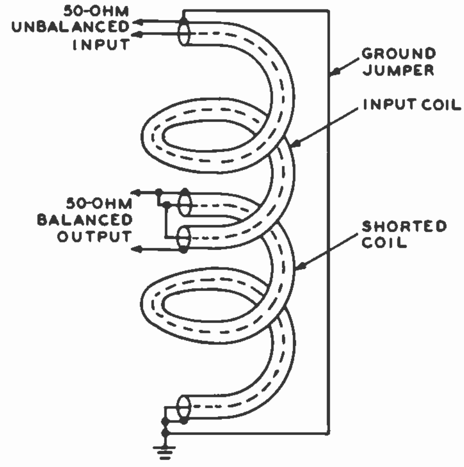


Figure 24

AN EFFECTIVE BROADBAND BALUN FOR MULTIBAND BEAMS

This lumped-constant balun is self-resonant near the center design frequency which, in this case, is about 15 MHz. The balun coil is made of a 16′8″-length of 50-ohm coaxial line (RG-213/U or RG-8/AU) closewound into a coil of 9 turns having an inside diameter of 6¾ inches. At one end of the coil the inner and outer conductors of the line are shorted together and grounded to the common ground point of the antenna assembly. The unbalanced coaxial transmission line is attached to the other end of the coil and a ground jumper is run between the outer ends of the braided conductor. At the center of the winding, the outer braid of the coaxial line is severed for a distance of about one inch, and a connection is made to the inner conductor at this point. In addition, the inner conductor is jumpered to the outer braid of the *shorted* coil section. A second connection is made to the outer braid of the input coil section, as shown in the illustration. These connections are wrapped with vinyl tape and coated with an aerosol plastic spray to protect the joint against the weather. A coaxial plug may be attached to the input terminals of the balun. Connection to the balanced antenna element is made at the center connections of the balun coil, using low-impedance copper straps about ¼ inch wide.

CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE

Antennas and Antenna Matching

Antennas for the lower-frequency portion of the high-frequency spectrum (from 1.8 to 7.0 MHz), and temporary or limited-use antennas for the upper portion of the high-frequency range, usually are of a relatively simple type in which directivity is not a prime consideration. Also, it often is desirable, in amateur work, that a single antenna system be capable of operation at least on the 3.5- and 7.0-MHz ranges, and preferably on other frequency ranges. Consequently, the first portion of this chapter will be devoted to a discussion of such antenna systems. The latter portion of the chapter is devoted to the general problem of matching the antenna transmission line to antenna systems of the fixed type. Matching the antenna transmission line to the rotatable directive array is discussed in Chapter Twenty-four.

21-1 End-Fed Half-Wave Horizontal Antennas

The half-wave horizontal dipole is the most common and the most practical antenna for the 3.5- and 7-MHz amateur bands. The form of the dipole, and the manner in which it is fed are capable of a large number of variations. Figure 2 shows a number of practical forms of the simple dipole antenna along with methods of feed.

Usually a high-frequency doublet is mounted as high and as much in the clear as possible, for obvious reasons. However, it is sometimes justifiable to bring part of the radiation system directly to the transmitter, feeding the antenna without benefit of a transmission line. This is permissible when (1) there is insufficient room to erect a 75- or 80-meter horizontal dipole and feed line, (2) when a long wire is also to be operated on one of the higher-frequency bands on a harmonic. In either case, it is usually possible to get the main portion of the antenna in the clear because of its length. This means that the power lost by bringing the antenna directly to the transmitter is relatively small.

Even so, it is not best practice to bring the high-voltage end of an antenna into the operating room because of the increased difficulty in eliminating BCI and TVI. For this reason one should dispense with a feed line in conjunction with a Hertz antenna only as a last resort.

End-Fed Antennas The end-fed antenna has no form of transmission line to couple it to the transmitter, but brings the radiating portion of the antenna right down to the transmitter, where some form of coupling system is used to transfer energy to the antenna.

Figure 1 shows two common methods of feeding the *Fuchs antenna*, or *end-fed Hertz*. Some harmonic-attenuating provision (in addition to the usual low-pass TVI filter) must be included in the coupling system, since an end-fed antenna itself offers no dis-

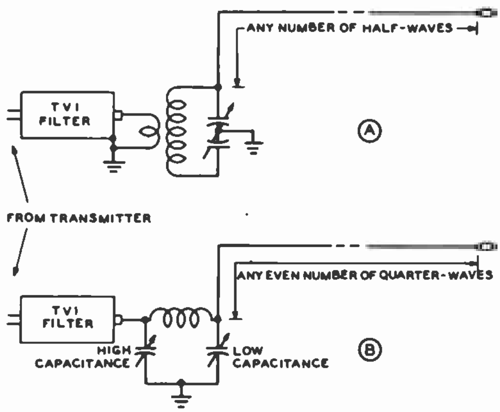


Figure 1

THE END-FED HERTZ ANTENNA

Showing the manner in which an end-fed Hertz antenna may be fed through a low-impedance line and low-pass filter by using a resonant tank circuit as at A, or through the use of a reverse-connected pi-network as at B.

crimination against harmonics, either odd or even.

The end-fed Hertz antenna has rather high losses unless at least three-quarters of the radiator can be placed outside the operating room and in the clear. As there is r-f voltage at the point where the antenna enters the operating room, the insulation at that point should be several times as effective as the insulation commonly used with low-voltage feeder systems. This antenna can be operated on all of its higher harmonics with good efficiency, and can be operated at half frequency against ground as a quarter-wave Marconi.

Since the frequency of an antenna is raised slightly when it is bent anywhere except at a voltage or current loop, an end-fed Hertz antenna usually is a few percent longer than a straight half-wave doublet for the same frequency, because, ordinarily, it is impractical to bring a wire in to the transmitter without making several bends.

The Zepp Antenna System The *zeppelin*, or *zepp antenna system*, illustrated in figure 2A is very convenient when it is desired to operate a single radiating wire on a number of harmonically related frequencies.

The zepp antenna system is easy to tune, and can be used on several bands by merely retuning the feeders. As the radiating portion of the zepp antenna system must always be some multiple of a half wave long, there is always high voltage present at the point where the live zepp feeder attaches to the end of the radiating portion of the antenna. Thus, this type of zepp antenna system is *voltage-fed.*

Stub-Fed Zepp-Type Radiator Figure 2C shows a modification of the zepp-type antenna system to allow the use of a nonresonant transmission line between the radiating portion of the antenna and the transmitter. The *zepp* portion of the antenna is resonated as a quarter-wave stub and the nonresonant feeders are connected to the stub at a point where standing waves on the feeder are minimized. The procedure for making these adjustments is described in detail in Section 21-8. This type of antenna system is quite satisfactory when it is physically necessary to end-feed the antenna, and where it is necessary also to use nonresonant feeders between the transmitter and the radiating system.

21-2 Center-Fed Half-Wave Horizontal Antennas

A center-fed half-wave antenna system is usually to be desired over an end-fed system since the center-fed system is inherently balanced to ground and is therefore less likely to be troubled by feeder radiation. A number of center-fed systems are illustrated in figure 2.

The Tuned Doublet The current-fed doublet with spaced feeders, sometimes called a *center-fed zepp*, is an inherently balanced system if the two legs of the radiator are electrically equal. This fact holds true regardless of the frequency, or of the harmonic, on which the system is operated. The system can successfully be operated over a wide range of frequencies if the system as a whole (both tuned feeders and the center-fed flat top) can be resonated to the operating frequency. It is usually possible to tune such an antenna system to resonance with the aid of a tapped coil and a

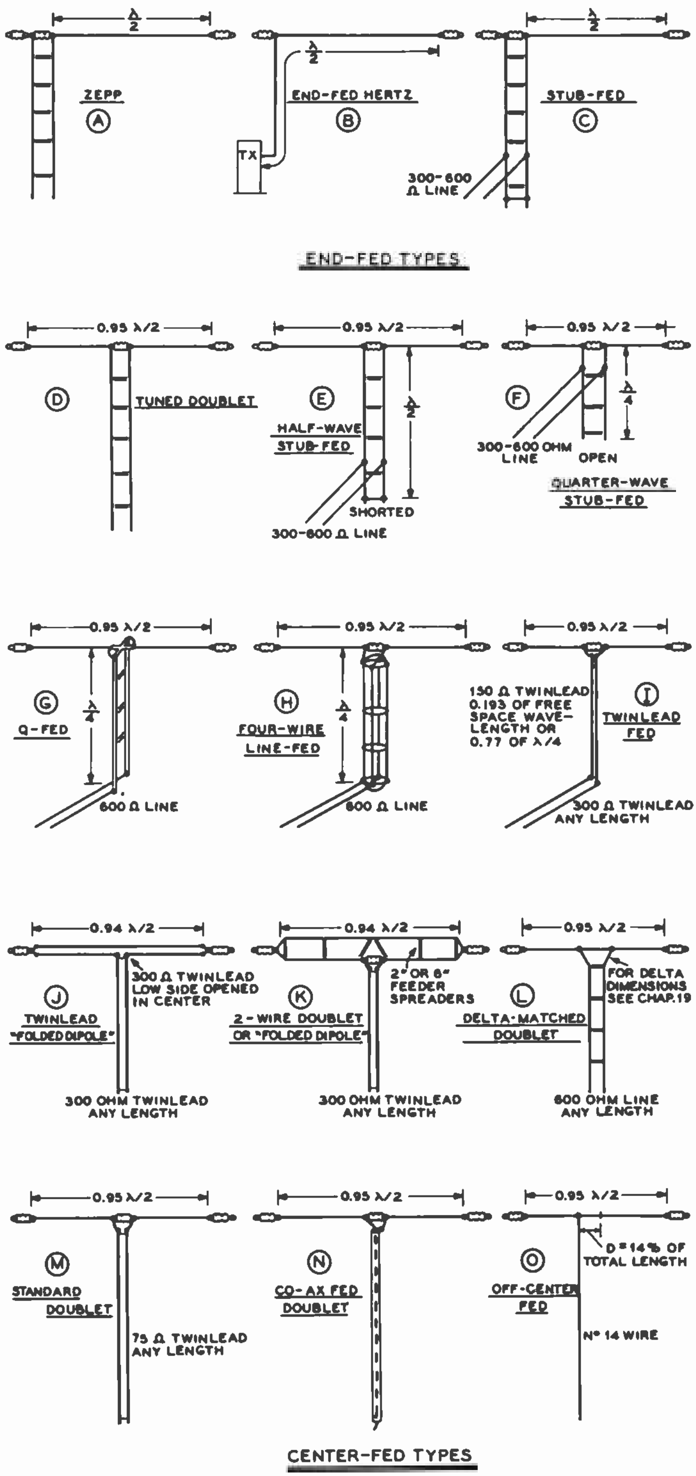


Figure 2

FEED SYSTEMS FOR A HALF-WAVE DIPOLE ANTENNA

The half-wave dipole antenna may be either center- or end-fed, as discussed in the text. For the hf region (below 30 MHz), the length of a simple dipole is computed by: length (feet) = 468/f, with f in MHz. For the folded dipole, length is computed by: length (feet) = 462/f, with f in MHz. Above 30 MHz, the length of the dipole is affected to an important degree by the diameter of the element and the method of supporting the dipole (see VHF and UHF Antennas and Radiation, Propagation, and Lines chapters).

tuning capacitor that can optionally be placed either in series with the antenna coil or in parallel with it. A series-tuning capacitor can be placed in series with one feeder leg without unbalancing the system.

The tuned-doublet antenna is shown in figure 2D. The antenna is a current-fed system when the radiating wire is a half wave long electrically, or when the system is operated on its odd harmonics, but becomes a voltage-fed radiator when operated on its even harmonics.

The antenna has a different radiation pattern when operated on its harmonics, as would be expected. The arrangement used on the second harmonic is better known as the *Franklin collinear array* and is described in Chapter Twenty-two. The pattern is similar to a half-wave dipole except that it is sharper in the broadside direction. On higher harmonics of operation there will be multiple lobes of radiation from the system.

Figures 2E and 2F show alternative arrangements for using an untuned transmission line between the transmitter and the tuned-doublet radiator. In figure 2E a half-wave shorted line is used to resonate the radiating system, while in figure 2F a quarter-wave open line is utilized. The adjustment of quarter-wave and half-wave stubs is discussed in Section 21-8.

Doublets with Quarter-Wave Transformers The average value of feed impedance for a center-fed half-wave doublet is 75 ohms. The actual value varies with height and is shown in Chapter Twenty. Other methods of matching this rather low value of impedance to a medium-impedance transmission line are shown in G, H, and I of figure 2. Each of these three systems uses a quarter-wave transformer to accomplish the impedance transformation. The only difference between the three systems lies in the type of transmission line used in the quarter-wave transformer. G shows the *Q-match system* whereby a line made up of ½-inch dural tubing is used for the low-impedance linear transformer. A line made up in this manner is frequently called a set of *Q bars*. Illustration H shows the use of a four-wire line as the linear transformer, and I shows the use of a piece of 150-ohm twin-lead electrically ¼-wave in length as the transformer between the center of the dipole and a piece of 300-ohm twin-lead. In any case the impedance of the quarter-wave transformer will be of the order of 150 to 200 ohms. The use of sections of transmission line as linear transformers is discussed in detail in Section 21-8.

Multiwire Doublets An alternative method for increasing the feed-point impedance of a dipole so that a medium-impedance transmission line may be used is shown in figures 2J and 2K. This system utilizes more than one wire in parallel for the radiating element, but only one of the wires is broken for attachment of the feeder. The most common arrangement uses two wires in the flat top of the antenna so that an impedance multiplication of four is obtained.

The antenna shown in figure 2J is the so-called *twin-lead folded dipole* which is a commonly used antenna system on the medium-frequency amateur bands. In this arrangement both the antenna and the transmission line to the transmitter are constructed of 300-ohm twin-lead. The flat top of the antenna is made slightly less than the conventional length ($462/F_{MHz}$ instead of $468/F_{MHz}$ for a single-wire flat top) and the two ends of the twin-lead are joined together at each end. The center of one of the conductors of the twin-lead flat top is broken and the two ends of the twin-lead feeder are spliced into the flat-top leads. As a protection against moisture, pieces of flat polyethylene taken from another piece of 300-ohm twin-lead may be molded over the joint between conductors with the aid of a soldering iron.

Better bandwidth characteristics can be obtained with a folded dipole made of ribbon line if the two conductors of the ribbon line are shorted a distance of 0.82 (the velocity factor of ribbon line) of a free-space quarter-wave-length from the center or feed point. This procedure is illustrated in figure 3A. An alternative arrangement for a twin-lead folded dipole is illustrated in figure 3B. This type of half-wave antenna system is convenient for use on the 3.5-MHz band when the 116- to 132-foot distance required for a full half-wave is not quite available in a straight line, since the

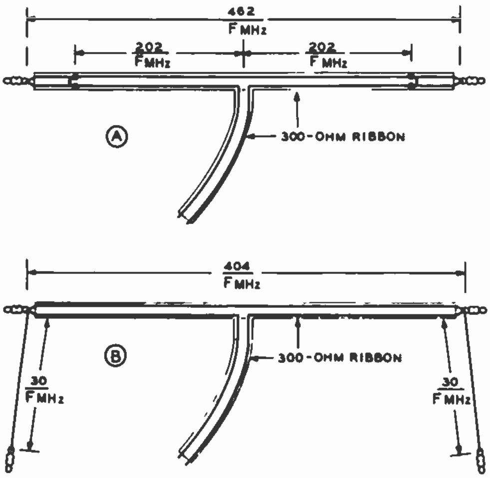


Figure 3

FOLDED DIPOLE WITH SHORTING STRAPS

The impedance match and bandwidth characteristics of a folded dipole may be improved by shorting the two wires of the ribbon a distance out from the center equal to the velocity factor of the ribbon times the half-length of the dipole as shown at A. An alternative arrangement with bent down ends for space conservation is illustrated at B.

single-wire end pieces may be bent away or downward from the direction of the main section of the antenna.

Figure 2K shows the basic type of two-wire doublet or *folded dipole* wherein the radiating section of the system is made up of standard antenna wire spaced by means of feeder spreaders. The feeder again is made of 300-ohm twin-lead since the feed-point impedance is approximately 300 ohms, the same as that of the twin-lead folded dipole.

The folded-dipole type of antenna has the broadest response characteristics (greatest bandwidth) of any of the conventional half-wave antenna systems constructed of small wires or conductors. Hence such an antenna may be operated over the greatest frequency range, without serious standing waves, of any common half-wave antenna types.

The increased bandwidth of the multi-wire doublet type of radiator, and the fact that the feed-point resistance is increased several times over the radiation resistance of the element, have both contributed to the frequent use of the multi-wire radiator as the driven element in a parasitic antenna array.

Delta-Matched Doublet and Standard Doublet These two types of radiating elements are shown in figure 2L and figure 2M. The delta-matched doublet is described in detail in Section eight of this chapter. The standard doublet, shown in figure 2M, is fed in the center by means of 75-ohm twin-lead, either the transmitting or the receiving type, or it may be fed by means of twisted-pair feeder or by means of parallel-wire lamp cord. Any of these types of feed line will give an approximate match to the center impedance of the dipole, but the 75-ohm twin-lead is far to be preferred over the other types of low-impedance feeder due to the much lower losses of the polyethylene-dielectric transmission line.

The coaxial-fed doublet shown in figure 2N is a variation on the system shown in figure 2M. Either 52-ohm or 75-ohm coaxial cable may be used to feed the center of the dipole, although the 52-ohm type will give a somewhat better impedance match at lower antenna heights. Due to the asymmetry of the coaxial feed system, difficulty may be encountered with waves traveling on the outside of the coaxial cable. For this reason the use of twin-lead is normally to be preferred over the use of coaxial cable for feeding the center of a half-wave dipole.

Off-Center–Fed Doublet The system shown in figure 2O is sometimes used to feed a half-wave dipole, especially

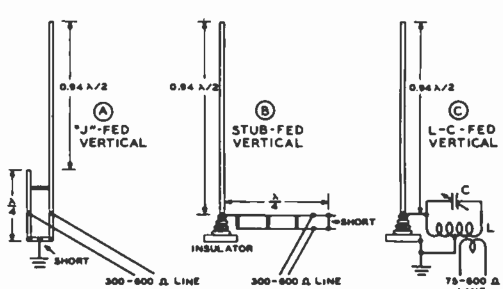


Figure 4

HALF-WAVE VERTICAL ANTENNA SHOWING ALTERNATIVE METHODS OF FEED

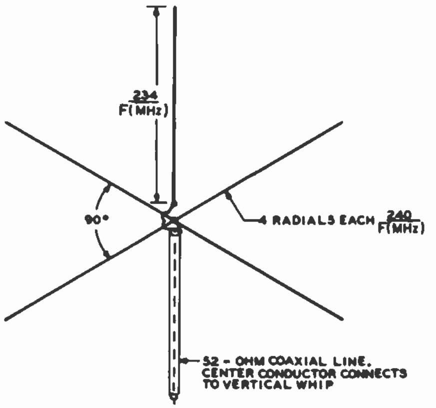


Figure 5

THE LOW-FREQUENCY GROUND PLANE ANTENNA

The radials of the ground plane antenna should lie in a horizontal plane, although slight departures from this caused by nearby objects is allowable. The whip may be mounted on a short post, or on the roof of a building. The wire radials may slope downwards toward their tips, acting as guy wires for the installation.

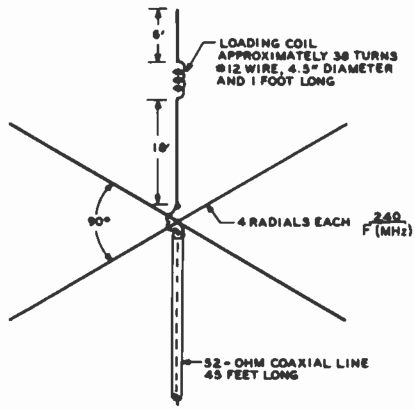


Figure 6

80-METER LOADED GROUND PLANE ANTENNA

Number of turns in loading coil to be adjusted until antenna system resonates at desired frequency in 80-meter band.

when it is desired to use the same antenna on a number of harmonically related frequencies. The feeder wire (No. 14 enameled wire should be used) is tapped a distance of 14 percent of the total length of the antenna either side of center. The feeder wire, operating against ground for the return current, has an impedance of approximately 600 ohms. The system works well over highly conducting ground, but will introduce rather high losses when the antenna is located above rocky or poorly conducting soil. The off-center-fed antenna has a further disadvantage that it is highly responsive to harmonics from the transmitter.

The effectiveness of the antenna system in radiating harmonics is of course an advantage when operation of the antenna on a number of frequency bands is desired. But it is necessary to use a harmonic filter to ensure that only the desired frequency is fed from the transmitter to the antenna.

21-3 The Half-Wave Vertical Antenna

The half-wave vertical antenna with its bottom end from 0.1 to 0.2 wavelength above ground is an effective transmitting antenna for low-angle radiation, where ground conditions in the vicinity of the antenna are good. Such an antenna is not good for short-range *sky-wave* communication, such as is the normal usage of the 3.5-MHz amateur band, but is excellent for short-range *ground-wave* communication such as on the standard broadcast band and on the amateur 1.8-MHz band. The vertical antenna may cause greater BCI than an equivalent horizontal antenna, due to the much greater ground-wave field intensity. Also, the vertical antenna is poor for receiving under conditions where man-made interference is severe, since such interference is predominantly of vertical polarization.

Three ways of feeding a half-wave vertical antenna with an untuned transmission line are illustrated in figure 4. The J-fed system shown in figure 4A is obviously not practical except on the higher frequencies where the extra length for the stub may easily be obtained. However, in the normal case the ground-plane vertical antenna is to be recommended over the J-fed system for high-frequency work.

21-4 The Ground-Plane Antenna

An effective low-angle radiator for any amateur band is the *ground-plane antenna*, shown in figure 5. So named because of the radial ground wires, the ground-plane antenna is not affected by soil conditions in its vicinity due to the creation of an artificial ground system by the radial wires. The base impedance of the ground plane is of the order of 30 to 35 ohms, and it may be fed with 52-ohm coaxial line with only a slight impedance mismatch. For a more exact match, the ground-plane antenna may be fed with a 72-ohm coaxial line and a quarter-wave matching section made of 52-ohm coaxial line.

The angle of radiation of the ground-plane antenna is quite low, and the antenna will be found more effective for communication over 400 miles or so on the 80 and 40 meter bands than a high-angle radiator, such as a dipole.

The 80-Meter Loaded Ground Plane A vertical antenna of 66 feet in height presents quite a problem on a small lot, as the supporting guy wires will tend to take up quite a large portion of the lot. Under such conditions, it is possible to shorten the length of the vertical radiator of the ground plane by the inclusion of a loading coil in the vertical whip section. The ground-plane antenna can be artificially loaded in this manner so that a 25-foot vertical whip may be used for the radiator. Such an antenna is shown in figure 6. The loaded ground plane tends to have a rather high Q and operates only over a narrow band of frequencies. An operating range of about 100 kHz with a low SWR is possible on 80 meters. Operation over a larger frequency range is possible if a higher standing wave ratio is tolerated on the transmission line. The radiation resistance of a loaded 80-meter ground plane is about 15 ohms. A quarter wavelength (45 feet) of 52-ohm coaxial line will act as an efficient feed line, presenting a load of approximately 180 ohms to the transmitter.

21-5 The Marconi Antenna

A grounded quarter-wave *Marconi antenna*, widely used on frequencies below 3 MHz, is sometimes used on the 3.5-MHz band, and is also used in vhf mobile services where a compact antenna is required. The Marconi type antenna allows the use of half the length of wire that would be required for a half-wave Hertz radiator. The ground acts as a mirror, in effect, and takes the place of the additional quarter wave of wire that would be required to reach resonance if the end of the wire were not returned to ground.

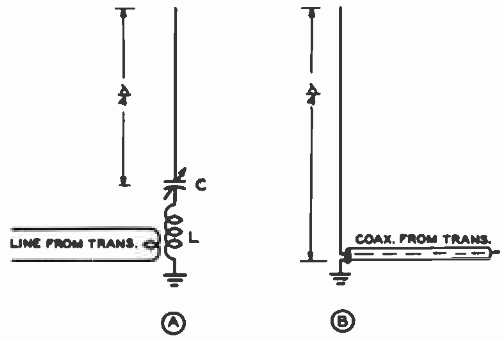


Figure 7

FEEDING A QUARTER-WAVE MARCONI ANTENNA

When an open-wire line is to be used, it may be link-coupled to a series-resonant circuit between the bottom end of the Marconi and ground, as at A. Alternatively, a reasonably good impedance match may be obtained between 52-ohm coaxial line and the bottom of a resonant quarter-wave antenna, as illustrated at B above.

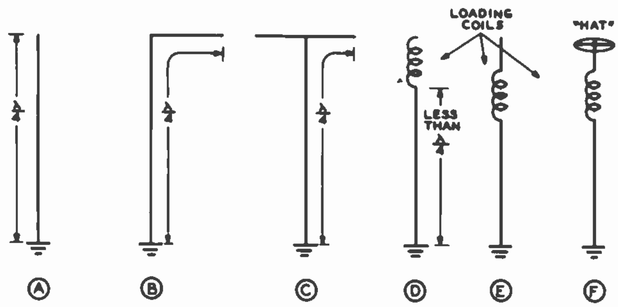
The fundamental practical form of the Marconi antenna system is shown in figure 7. Other Marconi antennas differ from this type primarily in regard to the method of feeding the energy to the radiator. The feed method shown in figure 7B can often be used to advantage, particularly in mobile work.

Variations on the basic Marconi antenna are shown in the illustrations of figure 8. Figures 8B and 8C show the L-type and T-type Marconi antennas. These arrangements have been more or less superseded by the top-loaded forms of the Marconi antenna shown in figures 8D, 8E, and 8F. In each of these latter three configurations an antenna somewhat less than one quarter wave in length has been *loaded* to increase its effective length by the insertion of a *loading coil* at or near the top of the radiator. The arrangement shown at figure 8D

Figure 8

LOADING THE MARCONI ANTENNA

The various loading systems are discussed in the accompanying text.



gives the least loading but is the most practical mechanically. The system shown at figure 8E gives an intermediate amount of loading, while that shown at figure 8F, utilizing a "hat" just above the loading coil, gives the greatest amount of loading. The object of all the top-loading methods shown is to produce an increase in the effective length of the radiator, and thus to raise the point of maximum current in the radiator as far as possible above ground. Raising the maximum-current point in the radiator above ground has two desirable results: The percentage of low-angle radiation is increased and the amount of ground current at the base of the radiator is reduced, thus reducing the ground losses.

Amateurs primarily interested in the higher-frequency bands, but liking to work 80 meters occasionally, can usually manage to resonate one of their antennas as a Marconi by working the whole system (feeders and all) against a water pipe ground, and resorting to a loading coil if necessary. A high-frequency rotary, zepp, doublet, or single-wire-fed antenna will make quite a good 80-meter Marconi if high and in the clear, with a rather long feed line to act as a radiator on 80 meters. Where two-wire feeders are used, the feeders should be tied together for Marconi operation.

Importance of Ground Connection With a quarter-wave antenna and a ground, the antenna current generally is measured with a meter placed in the antenna circuit close to the ground connection. If this current flows through a resistor, or if the ground itself presents some resistance, there will be a power loss in the form of heat. Improving the ground connection, therefore, provides a definite means of reducing this power loss, and thus increasing the radiated power.

The best possible ground consists of as many wires as possible, each at least a quarter wave long, buried just below the surface of the earth, and extending out from a common point in the form of *radials*. Copper wire of any size larger than No. 16 is satisfactory, and the larger sizes will take longer to disintegrate. In fact, the radials need not even be buried; they may be supported just above the earth, and insulated from it. This arrangement is called a *counterpoise*, and operates by virtue of its high capacitance to ground.

If the antenna is physically shorter than a quarter wavelength, the antenna current is higher, due to lower radiation resistance; consequently, the power lost in resistive soil is greater. The importance of a good ground with short, inductive-loaded Marconi radiators is, therefore, quite obvious. With a good ground system, even very short (one-eighth wavelength) antennas can be expected to give a high percentage of the efficiency of a quarter-wave antenna used with the same ground system. This is especially true when the short radiator is *top loaded* with a high-Q (low-loss) coil.

Water-Pipe Grounds Water pipe, because of its comparatively large surface and cross section, has a relatively low r-f resistance. If it is possible to attach to a junction of several water pipes (where they branch in several directions and run for some distance under ground), a satisfactory ground connection will be obtained. If one of the pipes attaches to a lawn or garden sprinkler system in the immediate vicinity of the antenna, the effectiveness of the system will approach that of buried copper radials.

The main objection to water-pipe grounds is the possibility of high-resistance joints in the pipe, due to the "dope" put on the coupling threads. By attaching the ground wire to a junction with three or more legs, the possibility of requiring the main portion of the r-f current to flow through a high resistance connection is greatly reduced.

The presence of water in the pipe adds nothing to the conductivity; therefore it does not relieve the problem of high-resistance joints. Bonding the joints is the best insurance, but this is, of course, impractical where the pipe is buried. Bonding the various water faucets with copper wire above the surface of the ground will improve the effectiveness of a water-pipe ground system hampered by high-resistance pipe couplings.

Marconi Dimensions A Marconi antenna is an odd number of electrical quarter waves long (usually only one quarter wave in length), and is always reso-

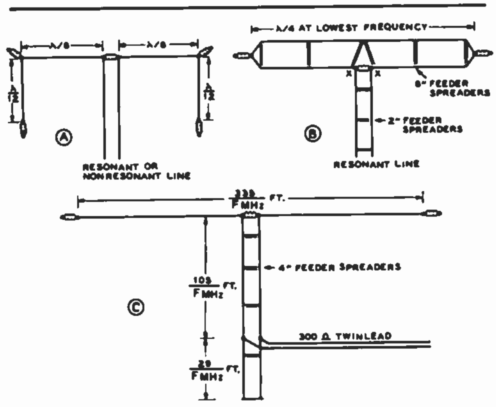


Figure 9

THREE EFFECTIVE SPACE-CONSERVING ANTENNAS

The arrangements shown at A and B are satisfactory where resonant feed line can be used. However, nonresonant 75-ohm feed line may be used in the arrangement at A when the dimensions in wavelengths are as shown. In the arrangement shown at B, low standing waves will be obtained on the feed line when the over-all length of the antenna is a half wave. The arrangement shown at C may be tuned for any reasonable length of flat top to give a minimum of standing waves.

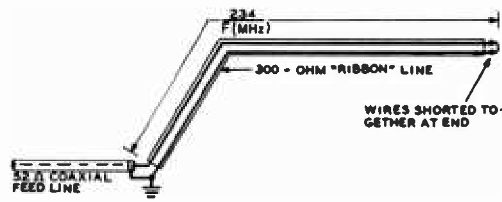


Figure 10

TWIN-LEAD MARCONI ANTENNA FOR THE 80- AND 160-METER BANDS

nated to the operating frequency. The correct loading of the final amplifier is accomplished by varying the coupling, rather than by detuning the antenna from resonance.

Physically, a quarter-wave Marconi may be made anywhere from one-eighth to three-eighths wavelength overall, including the total length of the antenna wire and ground lead from the end of the antenna to the point where the ground lead attaches to the junction of the radials or counterpoise wires, or where the water pipe enters the ground. The longer the antenna is made physically, the lower will be the current flowing in the ground connection, and the greater will be the over-all radiation efficiency. However, when the antenna length exceeds three-eights wavelength, the antenna becomes difficult to resonate by means of a series capacitor, and it begins to take shape as an end-fed Hertz, requiring a method of feed such as a pi-network.

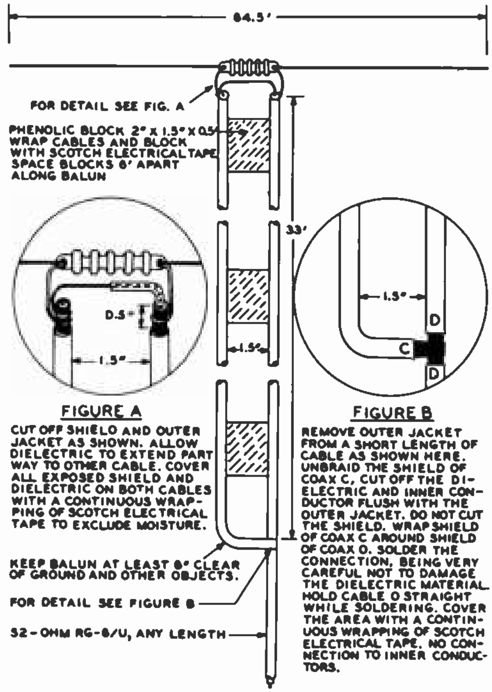
A radiator physically much shorter than a quarter wavelength can be lengthened electrically by means of a series loading coil, and used as a quarter-wave Marconi. However, if the wire is made shorter than approximately one-eighth wavelength, the radiation resistance will be quite low. This is a special problem in mobile work below about 20-MHz.

21-6 Space-Conserving Antennas

In many cases it is desired to undertake a considerable amount of operation on the 80- or 40-meter band, but sufficient space is simply not available for the installation of a half-wave radiator for the desired frequency of operation. This is a common experience of apartment dwellers. The shortened Marconi antenna operated against a good ground *can* be used under certain conditions, but the shortened Marconi is notorious for the production of broadcast interference and a good ground connection is usually unobtainable in an apartment house.

Essentially, the technique of producing an antenna for lower-frequency operation in restricted space is to erect a short radiator which is balanced with respect to ground and which is therefore independent of ground for its operation. Several antenna types meeting this set of conditions are shown in figure 9. Figure 9A shows a conventional center-fed doublet with bent-down ends. This type of antenna can be fed with 75-ohm twin-lead in the center, or it may be fed with a resonant line for operation on several bands. The over-all length of the radiating wire will be a few percent greater than the normal length for such an antenna since the wire is bent at a position intermediate between a current loop and a voltage loop. The actual length will have to be determined by the cut-and-try process because of the increased effect of interfering objects on the effective electrical length of an antenna of this type.

Figure 9B shows a method for using a two-wire doublet on one-half of its normal operating frequency. It is recommended that spaced open conductor be used both for the radiating portion of the folder dipole and for the feed line. The reason for this lies in the fact that the two wires of the flat top are *not* at the same potential throughout their length when the antenna is operated on one-half frequency. Twin-lead may be used for the feed line if operation on the frequency where the flat top is one half-wave in length is most common, and operation on half frequency is infrequent. However, if the antenna is to be used primarily on the half frequency as shown, it should be fed by means of an open-wire line. If it is desired to feed the antenna with a nonresonant line, a quarter-wave stub may be connected to the antenna at the points X—X in figure 9B. The stub should be tuned and the transmission line connected to it in the normal manner.



DIMENSIONS SHOWN HERE ARE FOR THE 40-METER BAND. THIS ANTENNA MAY BE BUILT FOR OTHER BANDS BY USING DIMENSIONS THAT ARE MULTIPLES OR SUBMULTIPLES OF THE DIMENSIONS SHOWN. BALUN SPACING IS 1.5" ON ALL BANDS.

Figure 11

HALF-WAVE ANTENNA WITH QUARTER-WAVE UNBALANCED-TO-BALANCED TRANSFORMER (BALUN) FEED SYSTEM FOR 40-METER OPERATION

The antenna system shown in figure 9C may be used when not quite enough length is available for a full half-wave radiator. The dimensions in terms of frequency are given on the drawing. An antenna of this type is 93 feet long for operation on 3600 kHz and 86 feet long for operation on 3900 kHz. This type of antenna has the additional advantage that it may be operated on the 7- and 14-MHz bands, when the flat top has been cut for the 3.5-MHz band, simply by changing the position of the shorting bar and the feeder line on the stub.

A sacrifice which must be made when using a shortened radiating system (as for example the types shown in figure 9), is in the bandwidth of the radiating system. The frequency range which may be covered

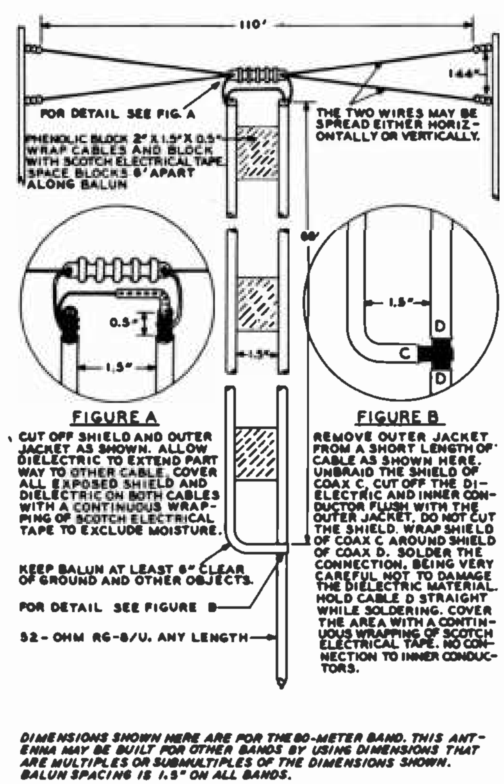


Figure 12

BROADBAND ANTENNA WITH QUARTER-WAVE UNBALANCED-TO-BALANCED TRANSFORMER (BALUN) FEED SYSTEM FOR 80-METER OPERATION

by a shortened antenna system is approximately in proportion to the amount of shortening which has been employed. For example, the antenna system shown in figure 9C may be operated over the range from 3800 to 4000 kHz without serious standing waves on the feed line. If the antenna had been made full length it would be possible to cover about half again as much frequency range for the same amount of mismatch at the extremes of the frequency range.

The Twin-Lead Marconi Antenna Much of the power loss in the Marconi antenna is a result of low radiation resistance and high ground resistance. In some cases, the ground resistance may even be higher than the radiation resistance, causing a loss of 50 percent or more of the transmitter power output. If the radiation resistance of the Marconi antenna is raised, the amount of power lost in the ground resistance is proportionately less. If a Marconi antenna is made out of 300-ohm TV-type ribbon line, as shown in figure 10, the radiation resistance of the antenna is raised from a low value of 10 or 15 ohms to a more reasonable value of 40 to 60 ohms. The ground losses are now reduced by a factor of 4. In addition, the antenna may be directly fed from a 50-ohm coaxial line, or directly from the unbalanced output of a pi-network transmitter.

Since a certain amount of power may still be lost in the ground connection, it is still of greatest importance that a good, low-resistance ground be used with this antenna.

A Broadband Dipole System Shown in figures 11 and 12 are broadband dipoles for the 40- and 80-meter amateur bands. These fan-type dipoles have excellent broadband response, and are designed to be fed with a 52-ohm unbalanced coaxial line. The antenna system consists of a fan-type dipole, a balun matching section, and a suitable coaxial feedline. The Q of the half-wave 80-meter doublet is lowered by decreasing the effective length-to-diameter ratio. The frequency range of operation of the doublet is increased considerably by this change. A typical SWR curve for the 80-meter doublet is shown in figure 13.

The balanced doublet is matched to the unbalanced coaxial line by the quarter-wave balun. If desired, a shortened balun may be used (figure 14). The short balun is capacitance loaded at the junction between the balun and the broadband dipole.

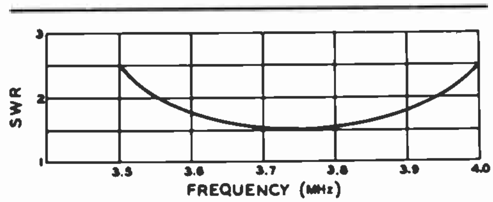


Figure 13

SWR CURVE OF 80-METER BROADBAND DIPOLE

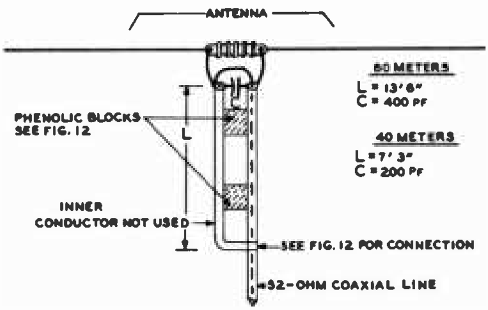


Figure 14

SHORT BALUN FOR 40 AND 80 METERS

21-7 Multiband Antennas

The availability of a *multiband antenna* is a great operating convenience to an amateur station. In most cases it will be found best to install an antenna which is optimum for the band which is used for the majority of the available operating time, and then to have an additional multiband antenna which may be pressed into service for operation on another band when propagation conditions on the most frequently used band are not suitable. Most amateurs use, or plan to install, at least one directive array for one of the higher-frequency bands, but find that an additional antenna which may be used on the 3.5-MHz and 7.0-MHz bands, or even up through the 28-MHz band is almost indispensable.

The choice of a multiband antenna depends on a number of factors such as the amount of space available, the band which is to be used for the majority of operation with the antenna, the radiation efficiency which is desired, and the type of antenna tuning network to be used at the transmitter. A number of recommended types are shown on the next pages.

The ¾-Wave Folded Doublet Figure 15 shows an antenna type which will be found to be very effective when a moderate amount of space is available, when most of the operating will be done on one band with occasional operation on the second harmonic. The system is quite satisfactory for use with high-power transmitters since a 600-ohm nonresonant line is used from the antenna to the transmitter and since the antenna system is balanced with respect to ground. With operation on the fundamental frequency of the antenna where the flat top is ¾ wave long the switch SW is left open. The system affords a very close match between the 600-ohm line and the feed point of the antenna. A standing-wave ratio of approximately 1.2 to 1 over the 14-MHz band exists when the antenna is located approximately one-half wave above ground.

For operation on the second harmonic the switch SW is *closed*. The antenna is still an effective radiator on the second harmonic but the pattern of radiation will be different from that on the fundamental, and the standing-wave ratio on the feed line will be greater. The flat top of the antenna must be made of open wire rather than ribbon or tubular line.

For greater operating convenience, the shorting switch may be replaced with a section of transmission line. If this transmission line is made one-quarter wavelength long for the fundamental frequency, and the free end of the line is shorted, it will act as an open circuit across the center insulator. At the second harmonic, the transmission line is one-half wavelength long, and reflects the low impedance of the shorted end across the center insulator.

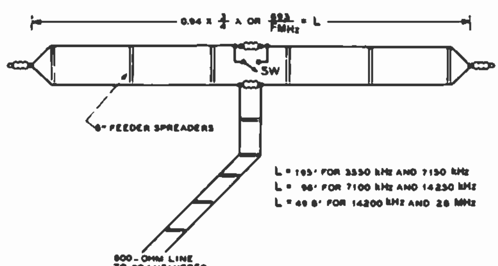


Figure 15

THE THREE-QUARTER WAVE FOLDED DOUBLET

This antenna arrangement will give very satisfactory operation with a 600-ohm feed line for operation with the switch open on the fundamental frequency and with the switch closed on twice frequency. A balun may be used to match the 600-ohm line to the transmitter.

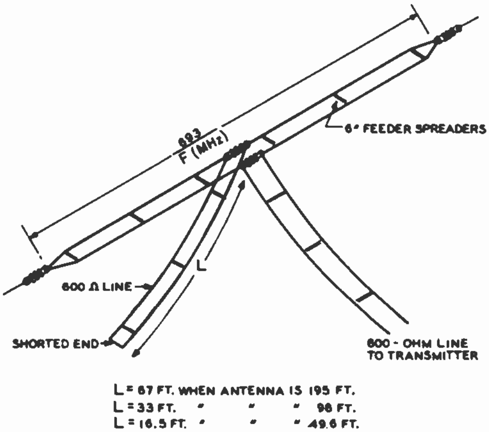


Figure 16

AUTOMATIC BANDSWITCHING STUB FOR THE THREE-QUARTER WAVE FOLDED DOUBLET

The antenna of Figure 15 may be used with a shorted stub line in place of the switch normally used for second-harmonic operation.

Thus the switching action is automatic as the frequency of operation is changed. Such an installation is shown in figure 16.

The End-Fed Hertz The end-fed Hertz antenna shown in figure 17 is not as effective a radiating system as many other antenna types, but it is particularly convenient when it is desired to install an antenna in a hurry for a test, or for field-day work. The flat top of the radiator should be as high and in the clear as possible. In any event at least three quarters of the total wire length should be in the clear. Dimension for optimum operation on various amateur bands are given in addition in figure 17.

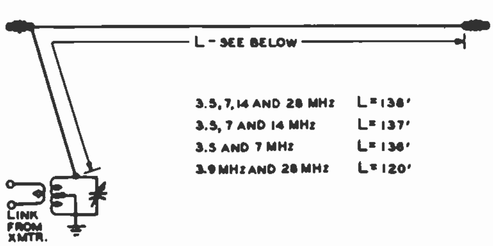
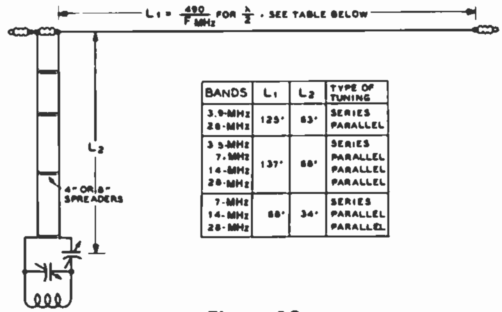


Figure 17

RECOMMENDED LENGTHS FOR THE END-FED HERTZ ANTENNA



BANDS	L_1	L_2	TYPE OF TUNING
3.9-MHz 28-MHz	125'	63'	SERIES PARALLEL
3.5-MHz 7-MHz 14-MHz 28-MHz	137'	68'	SERIES PARALLEL PARALLEL PARALLEL
7-MHz 14-MHz 28-MHz	68'	34'	SERIES PARALLEL PARALLEL

Figure 18

END-FED ZEPP

The End-Fed Zepp The end-fed zepp is convenient for multiband operation. It is shown in figure 18 along with recommended dimensions for operation on various amateur band groups. Since this antenna type is an unbalanced radiating system, its use is not recommended with high-power transmitters where interference to broadcast listeners is likely to be encountered.

The coupling coil at the transmitter end of the feeder system should be link-coupled to the output of the low-pass TVI filter in order to reduce harmonic radiation.

The Two-Band Marconi Antenna A three-eighths wavelength Marconi antenna may be operated on its harmonic frequency, providing good two band performance from a simple wire. Such an arrangement for operation on 160-80 meters, and 80-40 meters is shown in figure 19. On the fundamental (lowest) frequency, the antenna acts as a three-eighths wavelength series-tuned Marconi. On the second harmonic, the antenna is a current-fed three-quarter wavelength antenna operating against ground. For proper operation, the antenna should be resonated on its second harmonic by means of a grid-dip oscillator to the operating frequency most used on this particular band. The Q of the antenna is relatively low, and the antenna will perform well over a frequency range of several hundred kHz.

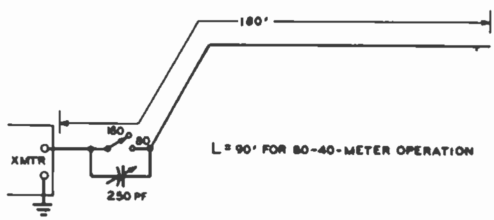


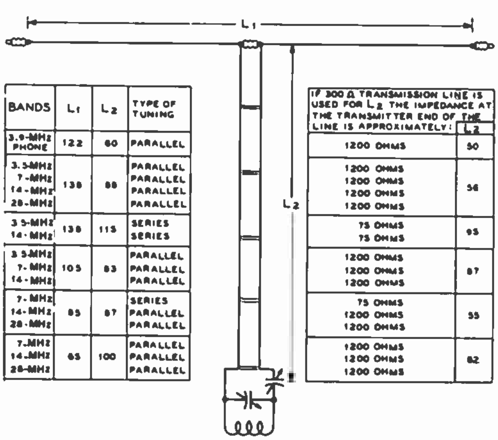
Figure 19

A TWO-BAND MARCONI ANTENNA FOR 160-80 METER OPERATION

The over-all length of the antenna may be varied slightly to place its self-resonant frequency in the desired region. Bends or turns in the antenna tend to make it resonate higher in frequency, and it may be necessary to lengthen it a bit to resonate it at the chosen frequency. For fundamental operation, the series capacitor is inserted in the circuit, and the antenna may be resonated to any point in the lower-frequency band. As with any Marconi-type antenna, the use of a good ground is essential. This antenna works well with transmitters employing coaxial antenna feed, since its transmitting impedance on both bands is in the neighborhood of 40 to 60 ohms. It may be attached directly to the output terminal of a pi-network transmitter coupling circuit. The use of a low-pass TVI filter is of course recommended.

The Center-Fed Multiband Antenna For multiband operation, the center-fed antenna is without doubt the best compromise. It is a balanced system on all bands, it requires no ground return, and when properly tuned has good rejection properties for the higher harmonics generated in the transmitter. It is well suited for use with the various multiband 150-watt transmitters that are currently so popular. For proper operation with these transmitters, an antenna tuning unit *must* be used with the center-fed antenna. In fact, some sort of tuning unit is necessary for any type of efficient, multiband antenna.

Various dimensions for center-fed antenna systems are shown in figure 20. If the feed line is made up in the conventional manner of No. 12 or No. 14 wire spaced 4 to 6 inches, the antenna system is sometimes called a *center-fed zepp*. With this type of feeder the impedance at the transmitter end of the feeder varies from about 70 ohms to approximately 5000 ohms, the same range encountered in an end-fed zepp antenna. This great impedance ratio requires provision for either series or parallel tuning of the feeders at the transmitter, and involves quite high r-f voltages at various points along the feed line.



BANDS	L1	L2	TYPE OF TUNING
3.9-MHz PHONE	122	60	PARALLEL
3.5-MHz 7-MHz 14-MHz 28-MHz	138	88	PARALLEL PARALLEL PARALLEL PARALLEL
3.5-MHz 14-MHz	138	115	SERIES SERIES
3.5-MHz 7-MHz 14-MHz	105	83	PARALLEL PARALLEL PARALLEL
7-MHz 14-MHz 28-MHz	85	67	SERIES PARALLEL PARALLEL
7-MHz 14-MHz 28-MHz	65	100	PARALLEL PARALLEL PARALLEL

IF 300 Ω TRANSMISSION LINE IS USED FOR L2 THE IMPEDANCE AT THE TRANSMITTER END OF THE LINE IS APPROXIMATELY:	L2
1200 OHMS	50
1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS	56
75 OHMS 75 OHMS	93
1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS	67
75 OHMS 1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS	55
1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS 1200 OHMS	82

Figure 20

DIMENSIONS FOR CENTER-FED MULTI-BAND ANTENNA

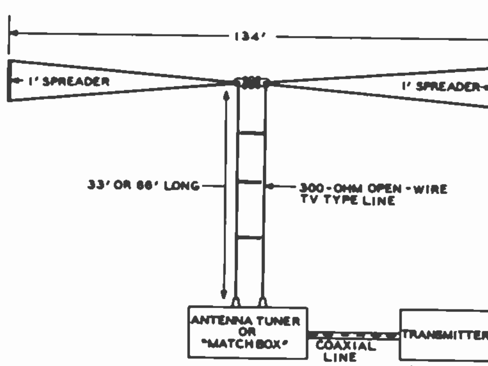


Figure 21

MULTIBAND ANTENNA USING FAN-DIPOLE TO LIMIT IMPEDANCE EXCURSIONS ON HARMONIC FREQUENCIES

If the feed line between the transmitter and the antenna is made to have a characteristic impedance of approximately 300 ohms the excursions in end-of-feeder impedance are greatly reduced.

There are several practical types of transmission line which can give an impedance of approximately 300 ohms. The first is, obviously, 300-ohm twin-lead. Twin-lead of the receiving type *may* be used as a resonant feed line in this case, but its use is not recommended with power levels greater than perhaps 150 watts, and it should not be used when lowest loss in the transmission line is desired.

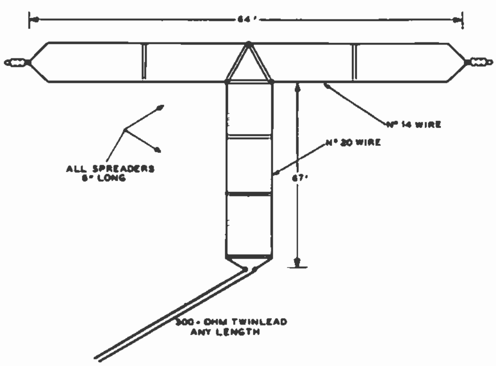


Figure 22

FOLDED-TOP DUAL-BAND ANTENNA

For power levels up to 250 watts or so, the transmitting type tubular 300-ohm line may be used, or the open-wire 300-ohm TV line may be employed. For power levels higher than this, a 4-wire transmission line, or a line built of one-quarter inch tubing should be used.

Even when a 300-ohm transmission line is used, the end-of-feeder impedance may reach a high value, particularly on the second harmonic of the antenna. To limit the impedance excursions, a two-wire flat top may be employed for the radiator, as shown in figure 21. The use of such a radiator will limit the impedance excursions on the harmonic frequencies of the antenna and make the operation of the antenna matching unit much less critical. The use of a two-wire radiator is highly recommended for any center-fed multiband antenna.

Folded Flat Top Dual-Band Antenna As has been mentioned earlier, there is an increasing tendency among amateur operators to utilize rotary or fixed arrays for the 14-MHz band and those higher in frequency. In order to afford complete coverage of the amateur bands it is then desirable to have an additional system which will operate with equal effectiveness an the 3.5- and 7-MHz bands, but this low-frequency antenna system will not be required to operate on any bands higher in frequency than the 7-MHz band. The antenna system shown in figure 22 has been developed to fill this need.

This system consists essentially of an open-wire folded dipole for the 7-MHz band with a special feed system which allows the antenna to be fed with minimum standing waves on the feed line on both the 7-MHz and 3.5-MHz bands. The feed-point impedance of a folded dipole on its fundamental frequency is approximately 300 ohms. Hence the 300-ohm twin lead shown in figure 22 can be connected directly into the center of the system for operation only on the 7-MHz band and standing waves on the feeder will be very small. However, it is possible to insert an electrical half wave of transmission line of any characteristic impedance into a feeder system such as this and the impedance at the far end of the line will be exactly the same value of impedance which the half-wave line "sees" at its termination. Hence this has been done in the antenna system shown in figure 22; an electrical half wave of line has been inserted between the feed point of the antenna and the 300-ohm transmission line to the transmitter.

The characteristic impedance of this additional half-wave section of transmission line has been made about 715 ohms (No. 20 wire spaced 6 inches), but since it is an electrical half wave long at 7 MHz and operates into a load of 300 ohms at the antenna the 300-ohm twin lead at the bottom of the half-wave section still "sees" an impedance of 300 ohms. The additional half-wave section of transmission line introduces a negligible amount of loss since the current flowing in the section of line is the same which would flow in a 300-ohm line at each end of the half-wave section, and at all other points it is *less* than the current which would flow in a 300-ohm line since the effective impedance is *greater* than 300 ohms in the center of the half-wave section. This means that the loss is less than it would be in an equivalent length of 300-ohm twin lead since this type of manufactured transmission line is made up of conductors which are equivalent to No. 20 wire.

So we see that the added section of 715-ohm line has substantially no effect on the operation of the antenna system on the 7-MHz band. However, when the flat top of the antenna is operated on the 3.5 MHz band the feed-point impedance of the flat top is approximately 3500 ohms. Since the section of 715-ohm transmission line is an electrical *quarter-wave* in length on the 3.5-MHz band, this section of line will have the effect of transforming the approximately 3500 ohms feed-point impedance of the antenna down to an impedance of about 150 ohms which will result in a 2:1 standing-wave ratio on the 300-ohm twin lead transmission line from the transmitter to the antenna system.

The antenna system of figure 22 operates with very low standing waves over the entire 7-MHz band, and it will operate with moderate standing waves from 3500 to 3800 kHz in the 3.5-MHz band and with sufficiently low standing-wave ratio so that it is quite usable over the entire 3.5-MHz band.

This antenna system, as well as all other types of multiband antenna systems, should be used in conjunction with some type of harmonic-reducing antenna tuning network even though the system does present a convenient impedance value on both bands.

The Multee Antenna An antenna that works well on 160 and 80 meters, or 80 and 40 meters and is sufficiently compact to permit erection on the average city lot is the *Multee* antenna, illustrated in figure 23. The antenna evolves from a vertical two-wire radiator, fed on one leg only. On the low-frequency band the top portion does little radiating, so it is folded down to form a radiator for the higher-frequency band. On the lower-frequency band, the antenna acts as a top-loaded vertical radiator, while on the higher-frequency band, the flat top does the radiating rather than the vertical portion. The vertical portion acts as a quarter-wave linear transformer, matching the 6000-ohm antenna impedance to the 50-ohm impedance of the coaxial transmission line.

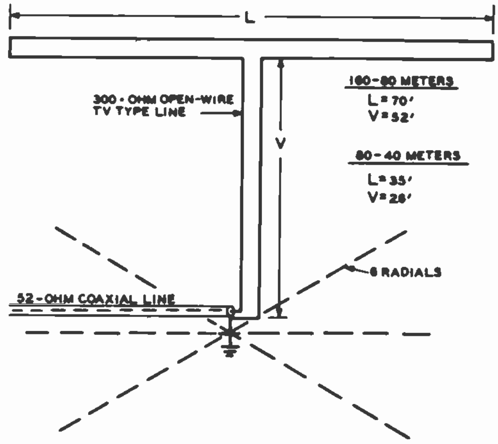
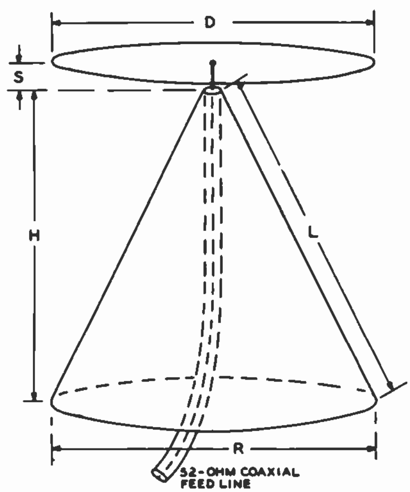


Figure 23

THE MULTEE TWO-BAND ANTENNA

This compact antenna can be used with excellent results on 160/80 and 80/40 meters. The feedline should be held as vertical as possible, since it radiates when the antenna is operated on its fundamental frequency.

The earth below a vertical radiator must be of good conductivity not only to provide a low-resistance ground connection, but also to provide a good reflecting surface for the waves radiated downward toward the ground. For best results, a radial system should be installed beneath the antenna. For 160/80-meter operation, six radials 50 feet in length, made of No. 16 copper wire should be buried just below the surface of the ground. While an ordinary water-pipe ground system with no radials may be used, a system of radials will provide a worthwhile increase in signal strength. For 80/40-meter operation, the length of the radials may be reduced to 25 feet. As with all multiband antennas that employ no lumped tuned circuits, this antenna offers no attenuation to harmonics of the transmitter. When operating on the lower-frequency band, it would be wise to check the transmitter for second-harmonic emission, since this antenna will effectively radiate this harmonic.



DIMENSIONS

20, 15, 11, 10, 6 METERS	15, 11, 10, 6 METERS	11, 10, 6, 2 METERS
D=12' L=18'	D=8' L=12'	D=6' L=9'6"
S=10" R=18'	S=8" R=12'	S=4" R=9'6"
H=15'7"	H=10'5"	H=8'3"

Figure 24

DIMENSIONS OF DISCONE ANTENNA FOR LOW-FREQUENCY CUTOFF AT 13.2 MHz, 20.1 MHz, AND 26 MHz

The Discone is a vertically polarized radiator, producing an omnidirectional pattern similar to a ground plane. Operation on several amateur bands with low SWR on the coaxial feed line is possible.

The Low-Frequency Discone The *discone* antenna is widely used on the vhf bands, but until recently it has not been put to any great use on the lower-frequency bands. Since the discone is a broadband device, it may be used on several harmonically related amateur bands. Size is the limiting factor in the use of a discone, and the 20-meter band is about the lowest practical frequency for a discone of reasonable dimensions. A discone designed for 20-meter operation may be used on 20, 15, 11, 10, and 6 meters with excellent results. It affords a good match to a 50-ohm coaxial feed system on all of these bands. A practical discone antenna is shown in figure 24, with a SWR curve for its operation over the frequency range of 13 to 55 MHz shown in figure 25. The discone antenna radiates a vertically polarized wave and has a very low angle of radiation. For vhf work the discone is constructed of sheet metal, but for low-frequency work it may be made of copper wire and aluminum angle stock. A suitable mechanical layout for a low-frequency discone is shown in figure 26. Smaller versions of this antenna may be constructed for 15, 11, 10, and 6 meters, or for 11, 10, 6, and 2 meters as shown in figure 24.

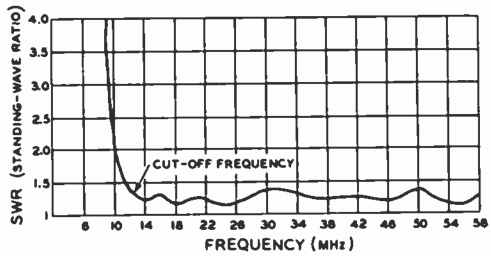


Figure 25

SWR CURVE FOR A 13.2-MHz DISCONE ANTENNA. SWR IS BELOW 1.5 TO 1 FROM 13.0 MHz TO 58 MHz

For minimum wind resistance, the top "hat" of the discone is constructed from three-quarter inch aluminum angle stock, the rods being bolted to an aluminum plate at the center of the structure. The tips of the rods are all connected together by lengths of No. 12 enamelled copper wire. The cone elements are made of No. 12 copper wire and act as guy wires for the discone structure. A very rigid arrangement may be made from this design, one that will give no trouble in high winds. A 4" × 4" post can be used to support the discone structure.

The discone antenna may be fed by a length of 50-ohm coaxial cable directly from the transmitter, with a very low SWR on all bands.

The Single-Wire-Fed Antenna The old favorite *single-wire-fed antenna* system is quite satisfactory for an impromptu all-band antenna system. It is widely used for portable installations and "Field Day" contests where a simple, multi-band antenna is required. A single-wire feeder has a characteristic impedance of approximately 500 ohms, depending on the wire size and the point of attachment to the antenna. The earth losses are comparatively low over ground of good conductivity. Since the single-wire feeder radiates, it is

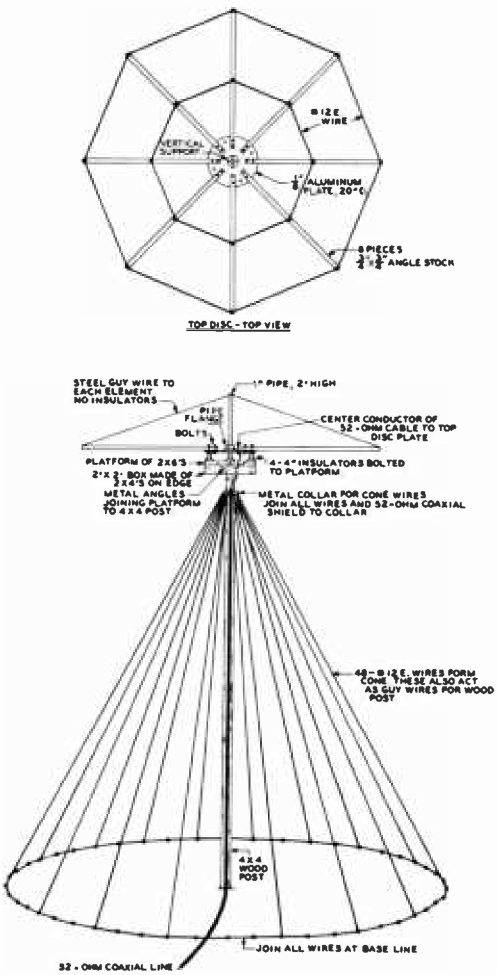


Figure 26

MECHANICAL CONSTRUCTION OF 20-METER DISCONE

necessary to bring it away from the antenna at right angles to the antenna wire for at least one-half the length of the antenna.

The correct point for best impedance match on the fundamental frequency is not suitable for harmonic operation of the antenna. In addition, the correct length of the antenna for fundamental operation is not correct for harmonic operation. Consequently, a compromise must be made in antenna length and point of feeder connection to enable the single-wire-fed antenna to operate on more than one band. Such a compromise introduces additional reactance into the single-wire feeder, and might cause loading difficulties with pi-network transmitters. To minimize this trouble, the single-wire feeder should be made a multiple of 33 feet long.

Two typical single-wire-fed antenna systems are shown in figure 27 with dimensions for multiband operation.

Multiband Vertical Antennas A vertical radiator can be used on several amateur bands either by employing a variable base-loading inductor or by the inclusion of trap elements in the radiator. In either case, tuned radial wires should be used for lowest ground loss at the higher frequencies. Shown in figure 28 is a 22-foot vertical antenna designed for operation on

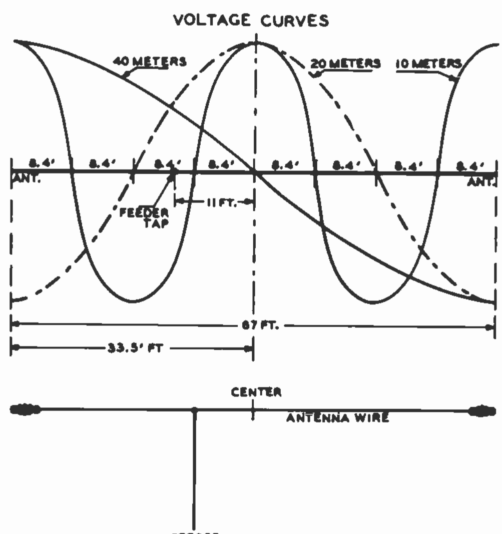


Figure 27

SINGLE-WIRE-FED ANTENNA FOR ALL-BAND OPERATION

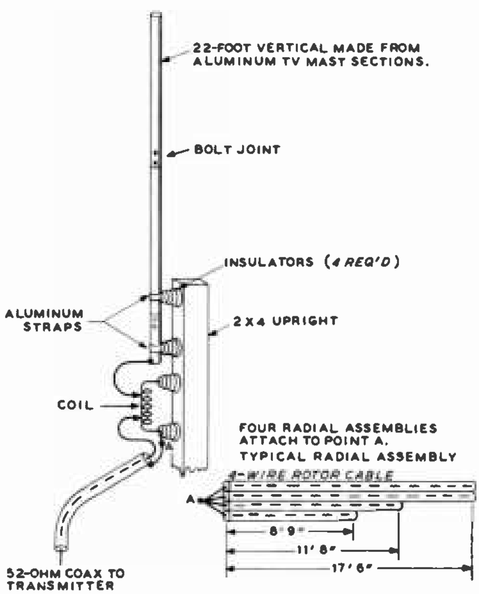
An antenna of this type for 40-, 20- and 10-meter operation would have a radiator 67 feet long, with the feeder tapped 11 feet off center. The feeder can be 33, 66 or 99 feet long. The same type of antenna for 80-, 40-, 20- and 10-meter operation would have a radiator 134 feet long, with the feeder tapped 22 feet off center. The feeder can be either 66 or 132 feet long. This system should be used only with those coupling methods which provide good harmonic attenuation.

amateur bands from 80 through 10 meters. The height is chosen to present a ¾-wavelength vertical for low angle radiation at the highest frequency of operation. Radial wires are used for the 10-, 15-, and 20-meter bands and an external ground connection is used on 40 and 80 meters. If the antenna is mounted on the roof of a building, it may be possible to use the metal rain gutter system as a ground.

Four-wire TV rotator cable can be used to construct the radial system, each cable including a radial wire for one of the three higher bands. The fourth wire may be extended for 40 meters, or two of the four wires can be cut for 20 meters, and one each for 15 and 10 meters. At least three and preferably four such radial assemblies should be used. These can be laid out on the roof, or possibly hidden in the attic.

The radiator is made from two ten-foot sections of aluminum TV mast, plus one five-foot section cut to the the proper length. The mast sections are assembled and self-tapping sheet-metal screws are run through each joint to make a good electrical connection. The radiator and base coil are attached to sturdy ceramic "beehive" insulators, using strips of aluminum bent to form clamps to encircle the tubing. The insulators are mounted to a vertical section of "two-by-four" lumber bolted to the frame of the building. If securely mounted, no guy wires are required for the vertical radiator.

The antenna is resonated to the center of each operative band with the aid of a SWR meter placed in the 52-ohm feedline. The taps are adjusted as indicated in the chart and sufficient power is applied to the antenna to cause a reading on the SWR



BAND	80	40	20	15
COAX TAP	7	5	3	2
ANTENNA TAP	25	12	6	3

TAPS MEASURED FROM GROUND END OF COIL. COIL NOT USED ON 10 METERS.

Figure 28

"ALL-BAND" VERTICAL ANTENNA

Base-loaded whip and multiple radial system may be used on all bands from 80 through 10 meters. Loading-coil taps are adjusted for lowest SWR on each band. The SWR on 10 meters may be improved by placing a 250-pf capacitor in series with the feedline connection to the base of the antenna and adjusting the capacitor for minimum SWR. Coil is 40 turns, 2" in diameter, 4" long (Air-Dux 1610).

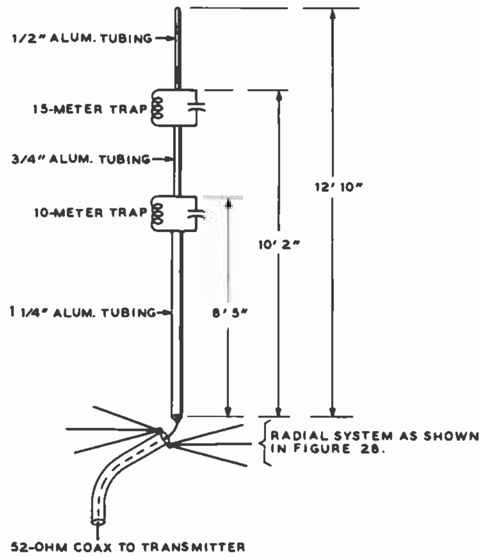


Figure 29

TRIBAND TRAP VERTICAL ANTENNA

Parallel-tuned trap assemblies are used in this vertical antenna designed for 20-, 15-, and 10-meter operation. The radial system of figure 28 is used. Automatic trap action electrically switches antenna for proper operation on each band.

meter. The number of active turns in the coil and the feedline tap are varied a turn at a time until proper transmitter loading is achieved with a reasonably low value of SWR on the transmission line (below 1.5/1 or so at the center frequency in each band).

The trap technique described in the *Directive Antennas* chapter can be used for a three-band vertical antenna as shown in figure 29. This antenna is designed for operation on 10, 15, and 20 meters and uses a separate radial system for each band. No adjustments need be made to the antenna when changing frequency from one band to another. Substitution of a ground connection for the radials is not recommended because of the high ground loss normally encountered at these frequencies. Typical trap construction is discussed in the reference chapter, and the vertical radiator is built of sections of aluminum tubing, as described earlier.

Each trap is built and grid-dipped to the proper frequency before it is placed in the radiator assembly. The 10-meter trap is self-resonant at about 27.9 MHz and the 15-meter trap is self-resonant at about 20.8 MHz. Once resonated, the traps need no further adjustment and do not enter into later adjustments made to the antenna. The complete antenna is resonated to each amateur band by placing a single-turn coil between the base of the vertical radiator and the radial connection and coupling the grid-dip oscillator to the coil. The coaxial line is removed for this test. The lower section

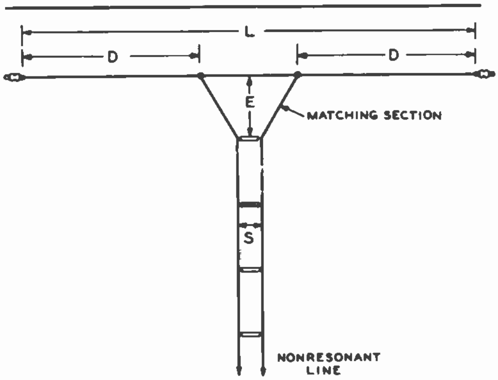


Figure 30

THE DELTA-MATCHED DIPOLE ANTENNA

The dimensions for the portions of the antenna are given in the text.

of the vertical antenna is adjusted in length for 10-meter resonance at about 28.7 MHz, followed by adjustment of the center section for resonance at 21.2 MHz. The last adjustment is to the top section for resonance at about 14.2 MHz.

It must be remembered that trap, or other multifrequency antennas are capable of radiating harmonics of the transmitter that may be coupled to them via the transmission line. It is well to check for harmonic radiation with a nearby radio amateur. If such harmonics are noted, an antenna tuner similar to the one described later in this chapter should be added to the installation to reduce unwanted harmonics to a minimum.

21-8 Matching Nonresonant Lines to the Antenna

Present practice in regard to the use of transmission lines for feeding antenna systems on the amateur bands is about equally divided between three types of transmission line: (1) Ribbon or tubular molded 300-ohm line is widely used up to moderate power levels (the "transmitting" type is usable up to the kilowatt level). (2) Open-wire 400- to 600-ohm line is most commonly used when the antenna is some distance from the transmitter, because of the low attenuation of this type of line. (3) Coaxial line (usually RG-8/U with a 52-ohm characteristic impedance) is widely used in vhf work and also on the lower frequencies where the feed line must run underground or through the walls of a building. Coaxial line also is of assistance in TVI reduction since the r-f field is entirely enclosed within the line. Molded 75-ohm line is sometimes used to feed a doublet antenna, but the doublet has been largely superseded by the folded-dipole antenna fed by 300-ohm ribbon or tubular line when an antenna for a single band is required.

Standing Waves As was discussed earlier, standing waves on the antenna transmission line, in the transmitting case, are a result of reflection from the point where the feed line joins the antenna system. The magnitude of the standing waves is determined by the degree of mismatch between the characteristic impedance of the transmission line and the input impedance of the antenna system. When the feed-point impedance of the antenna is resistive and of the same value as the characteristic impedance of the feed line, standing waves will not exist on the feeder. It may be well to repeat at this time that there is no adjustment which can be made at the transmitter end of the feed line which will change the magnitude of the standing waves on the antenna transmission line.

Delta-Matched Antenna System The *delta-type matched-impedance antenna* system is shown in figure 30. The impedance of the transmission line is transformed gradually into a higher value by the fanned-out Y portion of the feeders, and the Y portion is tapped on the antenna at points where the antenna impedance is a compromise between the impedance at the ends of the Y and the impedance of the unfanned portion of the line.

The constants of the system are rather critical, and the antenna must resonate at the operating frequency in order to minimize standing waves on the line. Some slight readjustment of the taps on the antenna is desirable, if appreciable standing waves persist in appearing on the line.

The constants for a doublet are determined by the following formulas:

$$L_{feet} = \frac{467.4}{F_{MHz}}$$

$$D_{feet} = \frac{175}{F_{MHz}}$$

$$E_{feet} = \frac{147.6}{F_{MHz}}$$

where,

L is antenna length,

D is the distance *in from each end* at which the Y taps on,

E is the height of the Y section.

Since these constants are correct only for a 600-ohm transmission line, the spacing S of the line must be approximately 75 times the diameter of the wire used in the transmission line. For No. 14 wire, the spacing will be slightly less than 5 inches. This system should never be used on either its even or odd harmonics, as entirely different constants are required when more than a single half wavelength appears on the radiating portion of the system.

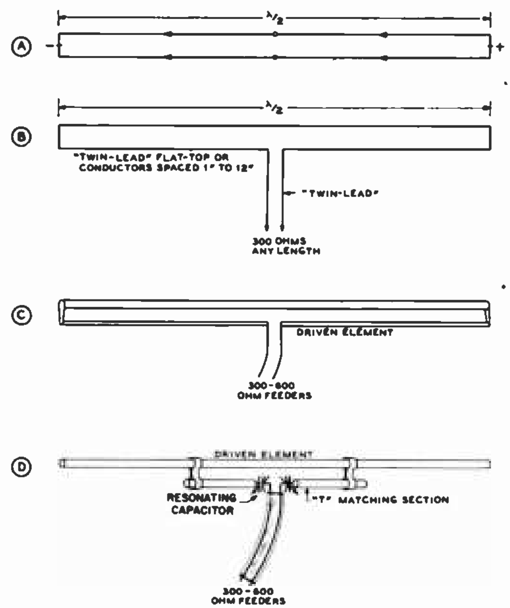


Figure 31

FOLDED-ELEMENT MATCHING SYSTEMS

Drawing A above shows a half-wave made up of two parallel wires. If one of the wires is broken as in B and the feeder connected, the feed-point impedance is multiplied by four; such an antenna is commonly called a "folded doublet." The feed-point impedance for a simple half-wave doublet fed in this manner is approximately 300 ohms, depending on antenna height. Drawing C shows how the feed-point impedance can be multiplied by a factor greater than four by making the half of the element that is broken smaller in diameter than the unbroken half. An extension of the principles of B and C is the arrangement shown at D where the section into which the feeders are connected is considerably shorter than the driven element. This system is most convenient when the driven element is too long (such as for a 28- or 14-MHz array) for a convenient mechanical arrangement of the system shown at C.

Multiwire Doublets When a doublet antenna or the driven element in an array consists of more than one wire or tubing conductor the radiation resistance of the antenna or array is increased slightly as a result of the increase in the effective diameter of the element. Further, if one wire of such a radiator is split, as shown in figure

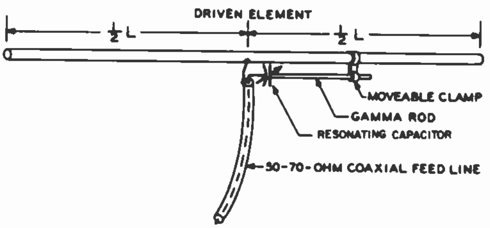


Figure 32

THE GAMMA MATCH FOR CONNECTING AN UNBALANCED COAXIAL LINE TO A BALANCED DRIVEN ELEMENT

31, the effective *feed-point* resistance of the antenna or array will be increased by a factor of N^2 where N is equal to the number of conductors, all in parallel, of the same diameter in the array. Thus if there are two conductors of the same diameter in the driven element or the antenna the feed-point resistance will be multiplied by 2^2, or 4. If the antenna has a radiation resistance of 75 ohms its feed-point resistance will be 300 ohms. This is the case of the conventional *folded dipole* as shown in figure 31B.

If three wires are used in the driven radiator the feed-point resistance is increased by a factor of 9; if four wires are used the impedance is increased by a factor of 16, etc. In certain cases when feeding a parasitic array it is desirable to have an impedance step up different from the value of 4:1 obtained with two elements of the same diameter and 9:1 with three elements of the same diameter. Intermediate values of impedance step up may be obtained by using two elements of different diameter for the complete driven element as shown in figure 31C. If the conductor that is broken for the feeder is of *smaller* diameter than the other conductor of the radiator, the impedance step up will be *greater* than 4:1. On the other hand if the *larger* of the two elements is broken for the feeder the impedance step up will be *less* than 4:1.

The "T" Match A method of matching a balanced low-impedance transmission line to the driven element of a parasitic array is the *T match* illustrated in figure 31D. This method is an adaptation of the multiwire doublet principle which is more practical for lower-frequency parasitic arrays such as those for use on the 14- and 28-MHz bands. In the system a section of tubing of approximately one-quarter the diameter of the driven element is spaced about four inches below the driven element by means of clamps which hold the T-section mechanically and which make electrical connection to the driven element. The length of the T-section is normally between 15 and 30 inches each side of the center of the dipole for transmission lines of 300 to 600 ohms impedance, assuming 28-MHz operation. In series with each leg of the T-section and the transmission line is a series resonating capacitor. These two capacitors tune out the reactance of the T-section. If they are not used, the T-section will detune the dipole when the T-section is attached to it. The two capacitors may be ganged together, and once adjusted for minimum detuning action, they may be locked. A suitable housing should be devised to protect these capacitors from the weather. Additional information on the adjustment of the T-match is given in the chapter covering rotary beam antennas.

The Gamma Match An unbalanced version of the T-match may be used to feed a dipole from an unbalanced coaxial line. Such a device is called a *Gamma match*, and is illustrated in figure 32.

The length of the Gamma rod and the spacing of it from the dipole determine the impedance level at the transmission line end of the rod. The series capacitor is used to tune out the reactance introduced into the system by the Gamma rod. The adjustment of the Gamma match is discussed in the chapter covering rotary beam antennas.

Matching Stubs By connecting a resonant section of transmission line (called a *matching stub*) to either a voltage or current loop and attaching parallel-wire nonresonant feeders to the resonant stub at a suitable voltage (impedance) point, standing waves on the line may be virtually eliminated. The stub is made to serve as an autotransformer. Stubs are particularly adapted to matching an open line to certain directional arrays, as will be described later.

Voltage Feed When the stub attaches to the antenna at a voltage loop, the stub should be a quarter wavelength long electrically, and be shorted at the bottom end. The stub can be resonated by sliding the shorting bar up and down before the nonresonant feeders are attached to the stub, the antenna being shock-excited from a separate radiator during the process. Slight errors in the length of the radiator can be compensated for by adjustment of the stub if both sides of the stub are connected to the radiator in a symmetrical manner. Where only one side of the stub connects to the radiating system, as in the zepp and in certain antenna arrays, the radiator length must be exactly right in order to prevent excessive unbalance in the untuned line.

A dial lamp may be placed temporarily in the center of the shorting stub to act as an r-f indicator.

Current Feed When a stub is used to current-feed a radiator, the stub should either be left *open* at the bottom end instead of shorted, or else made a *half wave* long. The open stub should be resonated in the same manner as the shorted stub before attaching the transmission line; however, in this case, it is necessary to prune the stub to resonance, as there is no shorting bar.

Sometimes it is handy to have a stub hang from the radiator to a point that can be reached from the ground, in order to facilitate adjustment of the position of the transmission-line attachment. For this reason, a quarter-wave stub is sometimes made three-quarters wavelength long at the higher frequencies, in order to bring the bottom nearer the ground. Operation with any *odd* number of quarter waves is the same as for a quarter-wave stub.

Stub Length Electrical)	Current-Fed Radiator	Voltage-Fed Radiator
¼-¾-1¼-etc. wavelengths	Open Stub	Shorted Stub
½-1-1½-2-etc. wavelengths	Shorted Stub	Open Stub

Any number of half waves can be added to either a quarter-wave stub or a half-wave stub without disturbing the operation, though losses and frequency sensitivity will

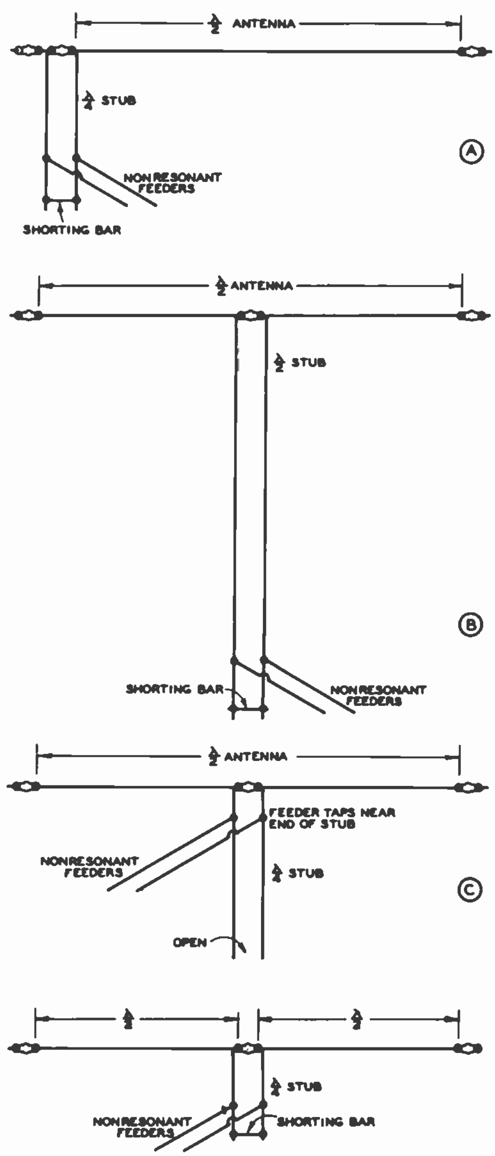


Figure 33

MATCHING STUB APPLICATIONS

An end-fed half-wave antenna with a quarter-wave shorted stub is shown at A. B shows the use of a half-wave shorted stub to feed a relatively low impedance point such as the center of the driven element of a parasitic array, or the center of a half-wave dipole. The use of an open-ended quarter-wave stub to feed a low impedance is illustrated at C. D shows the conventional use of a shorted quarter-wave stub to voltage-feed two half-wave antennas with a 180° phase difference.

be lowest if the shortest usable stub is employed (see chart).

Linear R-F Transformers A resonant quarter-wave line has the unusual property of acting much as a transformer. Let us take, for example, a section consisting of No. 12 wire spaced 6 inches, which happens to have a surge impedance of 600 ohms. Let the far end be terminated with a pure resistance, and let the near end be fed with radio-frequency energy at the frequency for which the line is a *quarter wavelength* long. If an impedance measuring set is used to measure the impedance at the near end while the impedance at the far end is varied, an interesting relationship between the 600-ohm characteristic surge impedance of this particular quarter-wave matching line, and the impedance at the ends will be discovered.

When the impedance at the far end of the line is the same as the characteristic surge impedance of the line itself (600 ohms), the impedance measured at the near end of the quarter-wave line will also be found to be 600 ohms.

Under these conditions, the line would not have any standing waves on it, since it is terminated in its characteristic impedance. Now, let the resistance at the far end of the line be doubled, or changed to 1200 ohms. The impedance measured at the near end of the line will be found to have been cut in half (to 300 ohms). If the resistance at the far end is made half the original value of 600 ohms or 300 ohms, the impedance at the near end doubles the original value of 600 ohms, and becomes 1200 ohms. As one resistance goes up, the other goes down proportionately.

It will always be found that the characteristic surge impedance of the quarter-wave matching line is the geometric mean between the impedance at both ends. This relationship is shown by the following formula:

$$Z_{MS} = \sqrt{Z_A Z_L}$$

where,

Z_{MS} equals impedance of matching section,
Z_A equals antenna resistance,
Z_L equals line impedance.

Quarter-Wave Matching Transformers The impedance inverting characteristic of a quarter-wave section of transmission line is widely used by making such a section of line act as a *quarter-wave transformer*. The quarter-wave transformer may be used in a wide number of applications wherever a transformer is required to match two impedances whose geometric mean is somewhere between perhaps 25 and 750 ohms when transmission-line sections can be used. Paralleled coaxial lines may be used to obtain the lowest impedance mentioned, and open-wire lines composed of small conductors spaced a moderate distance may be used to obtain the higher impedance. A short list of impedances, which may be matched by quarter-wave sections of transmission line having specified impedances, follows.

Load or Ant. Impedance ↓	300	480	600 ←	Feed-Line Impedance
20	77	98	110	Quarter-
30	95	120	134	Wave
50	110	139	155	Transformer
75	150	190	212	Impedance
100	173	220	245	

Q-Section Feed System The standard form of Q-*section* feed to a doublet is shown in figure 34. An impedance match is obtained by utilizing a matching section, the surge impedance of which is the geometric mean between the transmission-line surge impedance and the radiation resistance of the radiator. A sufficiently good match usually can be obtained by either designing or adjusting the matching section for a dipole to have a surge impedance that is the geometric mean between the line impedance and 72 ohms, the latter being the theoretical radiation resistance of a half-wave doublet either infinitely high or a half wave above a perfect ground.

Though the radiation resistance may depart somewhat from 72 ohms under actual conditions, satisfactory results will be obtained with this assumed value, so long as the dipole radiator is more than a quarter wave above effective earth, and reasonably in the clear.

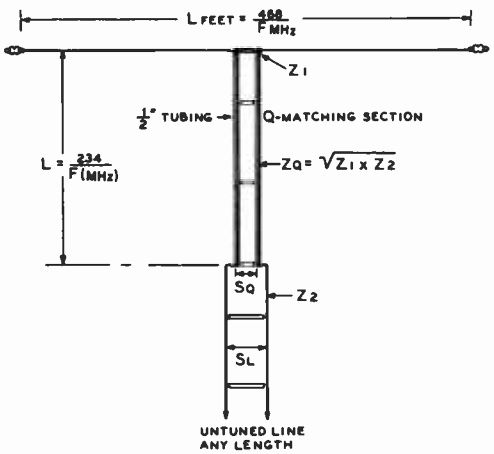


Figure 34

HALF-WAVE RADIATOR FED BY "Q BARS"

The Q matching section is simply a quarter-wave transformer whose impedance is equal to the geometric mean between the impedance at the center of the antenna and the impedance of the transmission line to be used to feed the bottom of the transformer. The transformer may be made up of parallel tubing, "ribbon" line, or any other type of transmission line which has the correct value of impedance.

A Q-matched system can be adjusted precisely, if desired, by constructing a matching section to the calculated dimensions with provision for varying the spacing of the Q-section conductors slightly, after the untuned line has been checked for standing waves.

Center to Center Spacing in Inches	Impedance in Ohms for ½" Diameters	Impedance in Ohms for ¼" Diameters
1.0	170	250
1.25	188	277
1.5	207	298
1.75	225	318
2.0	248	335

PARALLEL TUBING SURGE IMPEDANCE FOR MATCHING SECTIONS

The Collins Transmission Line Matching System The advantages of unbalanced output networks for transmitters are numerous; however this output system becomes awkward when it is desired to feed an antenna system utilizing a balanced input. For some time the *Collins Radio Co.* has been using a balun and tapered-line system for matching a coaxial-output transmitter to an open-wire balanced transmission line. Illustrated in figure 35 is one type of matching system which is proving satisfactory over a 4:1 frequency range. Z_1 is the transmitter end of the system and may be any length of 52-ohm coaxial cable. Z_2 is one-quarter wavelength long at the *midfrequency* of the range to be covered and is made of 75-ohm coaxial cable. Z_A is a quarter-wavelength shorted section of cable at the midfrequency. Z_0 (Z_A and Z_2) forms a 200-ohm quarter-wave section. The Z_A section is formed of a conductor of the same diameter as Z_2. The difference in length between Z_A and Z_2 is accounted for by the fact that Z_2 is a coaxial conductor with a solid dielectric, whereas the dielectric for Z_0 is air. Z_3 is one-quarter wavelength long at the *midfrequency* and has an impedance of 123 ohms. Z_4 is one-quarter wavelength long at the *midfrequency* and has an impedance of 224 ohms. Z_5 is the balanced line to be matched (in this case 300 ohms) and may be any length.

Other system parameters for different output and input impedances may be calculated from the following:

$$r = \sqrt[N]{\frac{Z_{out}}{Z_{in}}}$$

where,

N is the number of sections. In the above case:

$$r = \sqrt[3]{\frac{Z_5}{Z_1}}$$

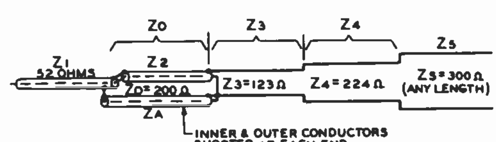


Figure 35

COLLINS TRANSMISSION-LINE MATCHING SYSTEM

A wide-band system for matching a 52-ohm coaxial line to a balanced 300-ohm line over a 4:1 frequency range.

Impedance between sections, as Z_{2-3}, is r times the preceding section. $Z_{2-3} = r \times Z_1$, and $Z_{3-4} = r \times Z_{2-3}$.

Midfrequency (m):

$$m = \frac{F_1 + F_2}{2}$$

$$\text{For 40-20-10 meters} = \frac{7 + 30}{2} = 18.5 \text{ MHz}$$

and one-quarter wavelength = 12 feet.

$$\text{For 20-10-6 meters} = \frac{14 + 54}{2} = 34 \text{ MHz}$$

and one-quarter wavelength = 5.5 feet.

The impedance of the sections are:

$$Z_2 = \sqrt{Z_1 \times Z_{2-3}}$$
$$Z_3 = \sqrt{Z_{2-3} \times Z_{3-4}}$$
$$Z_4 = \sqrt{Z_{3-4} \times Z_5}$$
$$Z_0 = 2/3 \times Z_5$$

Generally, the larger the number of taper sections the greater will be the bandwidth of the system.

21-9 Antenna Supports

The foregoing portion of this chapter has been concerned primarily with the *electrical* characteristics and considerations of antennas. Some of the physical aspects and mechanical problems incident to the actual erection of antennas and arrays will be discussed in the following section.

Up to 30 feet, there is little point in using mast-type antenna supports unless guy wires either must be eliminated or kept to a minimum. While a little more difficult to erect, because of their floppy nature, fabricated wood poles of the type to be described will be just as satisfactory as more rigid types, *provided* many guy wires are used.

Rather expensive when purchased through the regular channels, 40- and 50-foot telephone poles sometimes can be obtained quite reasonably. In the latter case, they are hard to beat, inasmuch as they require no guying if set in the ground six feet (standard depth), and the resultant pull in any lateral direction is not in excess of a hundred pounds or so.

For heights of 80 to 100 feet, either three- or four-sided lattice-type masts are most practical. They can be made self-supporting, but a few guys will enable one to use a smaller cross section without danger from high winds. The torque exerted on the base of a high self-supporting mast is terrific during a strong wind.

The "A-Frame" Mast Figures 36A and 36B show the standard method of construction of the *A-frame* type of mast. This type of mast is quite frequently used since there is only a moderate amount of work involved in the construction of the assembly and since the material cost is relatively small. The three pieces of selected 2 by 2 are first set up on three sawhorses or boxes and the holes drilled for the three ¼-inch bolts through the center of the assembly. Then the base legs are spread out to about 6 feet and the bottom braces installed. Finally the upper braces and the cross pieces are installed and the assembly given several coats of good-quality paint as a protection against weathering.

Figure 36C shows another common type of mast which is made up of sections of 2 by 4 placed end-to-end with stiffening sections of 1 by 6 bolted to the edge of the 2 by 4 section. Both types of mast will require a set of top guys and another set of guys about one-third of the way down from the top. Two guys spaced about 90 to 100 degrees and pulling against the load of the antenna will normally be adequate for the top guys. Three guys are usually used at the lower level, with one directly behind the load of the antenna and two more spaced 120 degrees from the rear guy.

Raising the mast is made much easier if a gin pole about 20 feet high is installed about 30 or 40 feet to the rear of the direction in which the antenna is to be raised. A line from a pulley on the top of the gin pole is then run to the top of the pole to be raised. The gin pole comes into play when the center of the mast has been raised 10 to 20 feet above the ground and an additional elevated pull is required to keep the top of the mast coming up as the center is raised further above ground.

Using TV Masts Steel tubing masts of the telescoping variety are widely available at a moderate price for use

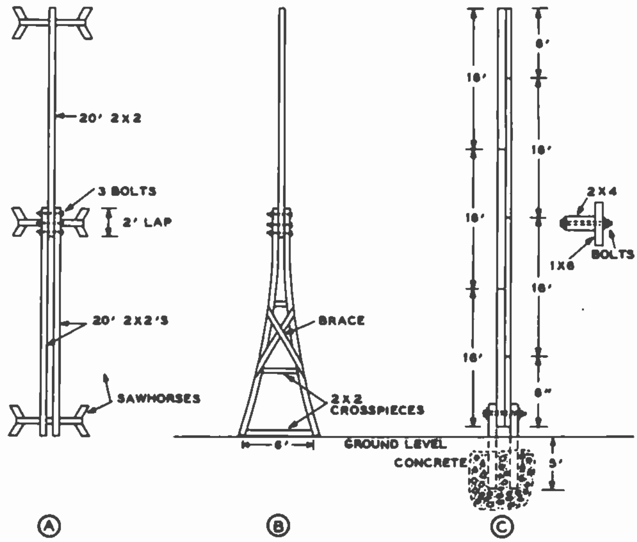


Figure 36

TWO SIMPLE WOOD MASTS

Shown at A is the method of assembly, and at B is the completed structure, of the conventional "A-frame" antenna mast. At C is shown a structure which is heavier but more stable than the A-frame for heights above about 40 feet.

in supporting television antenna arrays. These masts usually consist of several 10-foot lengths of electrical metal tubing (EMT) of sizes such that the sections will telescope. The 30- and 40-foot lengths are well suited as masts for supporting antennas and arrays of the type used on the amateur bands. The masts are constructed in such a manner that the bottom 10-foot length may be guyed permanently before the other sections are raised. Then the upper sections may be extended, beginning with the top-mast section, until the mast is at full length (provided a strong wind is not blowing) following which all the guys may be anchored. It is important that there be no load on the top of the mast when the "vertical" raising method is to be employed.

Guy Wires Guy wires should never be pulled taut; a *small* amount of slack is desirable. Galvanized wire, somewhat heavier than seems sufficient for the job, should be used. The heavier wire is a little harder to handle, but costs only a little more and takes longer to rust through. Care should be taken to make sure that no kinks exist when the pole or tower is ready for erection, as the wire will be greatly weakened at such points if a kink is pulled tight, even if it is later straightened.

If "dead men" are used for the guy wire terminations, the wire or rod reaching from the dead men to the surface should be of nonrusting material, such as brass, or given a heavy coating of asphalt or other protective substance to prevent destructive action by the damp soil. Galvanized iron wire will last only a short time when buried in moist soil.

Only strain-type (compression) insulators should be used for guy wires. Regular ones might be sufficiently strong for the job, but it is not worth taking chances, and egg-type strain halyard insulators are no more expensive.

Only a brass or bronze pulley should be used for the halyard, as a high pole with a rusted pulley is truly a sad affair. The bearing of the pulley should be given a few drops of heavy machine oil before the pole or tower is raised. The halyard itself should be of good material, preferably waterproofed. Hemp rope of good quality is better than window sash cord from several standpoints, and is less expensive. Soaking it thoroughly in engine oil of medium viscosity, and then wiping it off with a rag, will not only extend its life but minimize shrinkage in wet weather. Because of the difficulty of replacing a broken halyard it is a good idea to replace it periodically, without waiting for it to show excessive deterioration.

It is an excellent idea to tie both ends of the halyard line together in the manner of a flag-pole line. Then the antenna is tied onto the place where the two ends of the halyard are joined. This procedure of making the halyard into a loop prevents losing the top end of the halyard should the antenna break near the end, and it also prevents losing the halyard completely should the end of the halyard carelessly be allowed to go free and be pulled through the pulley at the top of the mast by the antenna load. A somewhat longer piece of line is required but the insurance is well worth the cost of the additional length of rope.

Trees as Supports Often a tall tree can be used to support one end of an antenna, but one should not attempt to attach anything to the top, as the swaying of the top of the tree during a heavy wind will complicate matters.

If a tree is utilized for support, provision should be made for keeping the antenna taut without submitting it to the possibility of being severed during a heavy wind. This can be done by the simple expedient of using a pulley and halyard, with weights attached to the lower end of the halyard to keep the antenna taut. Only enough weight to avoid excessive sag in the antenna should be tied to the halyard, as the continual swaying of the tree submits the pulley and halyard to considerable wear.

Galvanized iron pipe, or steel-tube conduit, is often used as a vertical radiator, and is quite satisfactory for the purpose. However, when used for supporting antennas, it should be remembered that the grounded supporting poles will distort the field pattern of a vertically polarized antenna unless spaced some distance from the radiating portion.

Painting The life of a wood mast or pole can be increased several hundred percent by protecting it from the elements with a coat or two of paint. And, of course, the appearance is greatly enhanced. The wood should first be given a primer coat of flat white outside house paint, which can be thinned down a bit to advantage with second-grade linseed oil. For the second coat, which should not be applied until the first is thoroughly dry, *aluminum paint* is not only the best from a preservative standpoint, but looks very well. This type of paint, when purchased in quantities, is considerably cheaper than might be gathered from the price asked for quarter-pint cans.

Portions of posts or poles below the surface of the soil can be protected from termites and moisture by painting with *cresote*. While not so strong initially, redwood will deteriorate much more slowly when buried than will the white woods, such as pine.

Antenna Wire The antenna or array itself presents no special problem. A few considerations should be borne in mind, however, For instance, soft-drawn copper should not be used, as even a short span will stretch several percent after whipping around in the wind a few weeks, thus affecting the resonant frequency. Enameled copper wire, as ordinarily available at radio stores, is usually soft-drawn, but by tying one end to some object such as a telephone pole and the other to the frame of an auto, a few husky tugs can be given and the wire, after stretching a bit, is equivalent to hard-drawn.

Where a long span of wire is required, or where heavy insulators in the center of the span result in considerable tension, copper-clad steel wire is somewhat better than hard-drawn copper. It is a bit more expensive, though the cost is far from prohibitive. The use of such wire, in conjunction with strain insulators is advisable where the antenna would endanger persons or property should it break.

For transmission lines and tuning stubs steel-core or hard-drawn wire will prove awkward to handle, and soft-drawn copper should, therefore, be used. If the line is long, the strain can be eased by supporting it at several points.

More important from an electrical standpoint than the actual size of wire used is the soldering of joints, especially at current loops in an antenna of low radiation resistance. In fact, it is good practice to solder *all* joints, thus ensuring quiet operation when the antenna is used for receiving.

Insulation A question that often arises is that of insulation. It depends, of course, on the r-f voltage at the point at which the insulator is placed. The r-f voltage, in turn, depends on the distance from a current node, and the radiation resistance of the antenna. Radiators having low radiation resistance have very high voltage at the voltage loops; consequently, better than usual insulation is advisable at those points.

Open-wire lines operated as nonresonant lines have little voltage across them; hence the most inexpensive ceramic types are sufficiently good electrically. With tuned lines, the voltage depends on the amplitude of the standing waves. If they are very great, the voltage will reach high values at the voltage loops, and the best spacers available are none too good. At the current loops the voltage is quite low, and almost anything will suffice.

When insulators are subject to very high r-f voltages, they should be cleaned occasionally if in the vicinity of sea water or smoke. Salt scum and soot are not readily dislodged by rain, and when the coating becomes heavy enough, the efficiency of the insulators is greatly impaired.

If a very pretentious installation is to be made, it is wise to check up on both Underwriter's rules and local ordinances which might be applicable. If you live anywhere near an airport, and are contemplating a tall pole, it is best to investigate possible regulations and ordinances pertaining to towers in the district, before starting construction.

21-10 Coupling to the Antenna System

When coupling an antenna feed system to a transmitter the most important considerations are as follows: (1) means should be provided for varying the load on the amplifier; (2) the load presented to the final amplifier should be resistive (nonreactive) in character; and (3) means should be provided to reduce harmonic coupling between the final amplifier plate tank circuit and the antenna or antenna transmission line to an *extremely low* value.

The Transmitter-Loading Problem The problem of coupling the power output of a high-frequency or vhf transmitter to the radiating portion of the antenna system has been complicated by the virtual necessity for eliminating interference to TV reception. However, the TVI-elimination portion of the problem may *always* be accomplished by adequate shielding of the transmitter, by filtering of the control and power leads which enter the transmitter enclosure, and by the inclusion of a harmonic-attenuating filter between the output of the transmitter and the antenna system.

Although TVI may be eliminated through inclusion of a filter between the output of a shielded transmitter and the antenna system, the fact that such a filter should be included in the link between transmitter and antenna makes it necessary that the transmitter-loading problem be re-evaluated in terms of the necessity for inclusion of such a filter.

Harmonic-attenuating filters must be operated at an impedance level which is close to their design value; therefore they must operate *into* a resistive termination substantially equal to the characteristic impedance of the filter. If such filters are operated into an impedance which is not resistive and approximately equal to their characteristic impedance: (1) the capacitors used in the filter sections will be subjected to high peak voltages and may be damaged, (2) the harmonic-attenuating properties of the filter will be decreased, and (3) the impedance at the input end of the filter will be different from that seen by the filter at the load end (except in the case of the half-wave type of filter). It is therefore important that the filter be included in the transmitter-to-antenna circuit at a point where the impedance is close to the nominal value of the filter, and at a point where this impedance is likely to remain fairly constant with variations in frequency.

Block Diagrams of Transmitter-to-Antenna Coupling Systems There are two basic arrangements which include all the provisions required in the transmitter-to-antenna coupling system, and which permit the harmonic-attenuating filter to be placed at a position in the coupling system where it can be operated at an impedance level close to its nominal value. These arrangements are illustrated in block diagram form in figures 37 and 38.

The arrangement of figure 37 is recommended for use with a single-band antenna system, such as a dipole or a rotatable array,

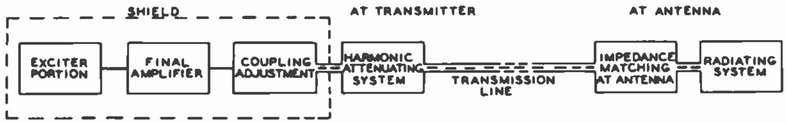


Figure 37

ANTENNA COUPLING SYSTEM

The harmonic suppressing antenna coupling system illustrated above is for use when the antenna transmission line has a low standing-wave ratio, and when the characteristic impedance of the antenna transmission line is the same as the nominal impedance of the low-pass harmonic-attenuating filter.

wherein an impedance matching system is included within or adjacent to the antenna. The feed line coming down from the antenna system should have a characteristic impedance equal to the nominal impedance of the harmonic filter, and the impedance matching at the antenna should be such that the standing-wave ratio on the antenna feed line is less than 2 to 1 over the range of frequency to be fed to the antenna. Such an arrangement may be used with open-wire line, ribbon or tubular line, or with coaxial cable. The use of coaxial cable is to be recommended, but in any event the impedance of the antenna transmission line should be the same as the nominal impedance of the harmonic filter. The arrangement of figure 37 is more or less standard for commercially manufactured equipment for amateur and commercial use in the high-frequency and vhf range.

The arrangement of figure 38 merely adds an antenna coupler between the output of the harmonic attenuating filter and the antenna transmission line. The antenna coupler will have some harmonic-attenuating action, but its main function is to transform the impedance at the station end of the antenna transmission line to the nominal value of the harmonic filter. Hence the arrangement of figure 38 is more general than the figure 37 system, since the inclusion of the antenna coupler allows the system to feed an antenna transmission line of any reasonable impedance value, and also without regard to the standing-wave ratio which might exist on the antenna transmission line. Antenna couplers are discussed in a following section.

Output Coupling Adjustment It will be noticed by reference to both figure 37 and figure 38 that a box labeled *Coupling Adjustment* is included in the block diagram. Such an element is necessary in the complete system to afford an adjustment in the value of load impedance presented to the tubes in the final amplifier stage of the transmitter. The impedance at the input terminal of the harmonic filter is established by the antenna, through its matching system and the antenna coupler, if used. In any event the impedance at the input terminal of the harmonic filter should be very close to the nominal impedance of the filter. Then the *Coupling Adjustment* provides means for transforming this impedance value to the correct operating value

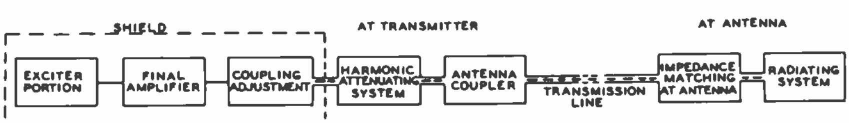


Figure 38

ANTENNA COUPLING SYSTEM

The antenna coupling system illustrated above is for use when the antenna transmission line does not have the same characteristic impedance as the TVI filter, and when the standing-wave ratio on the antenna transmission line may or may not be low.

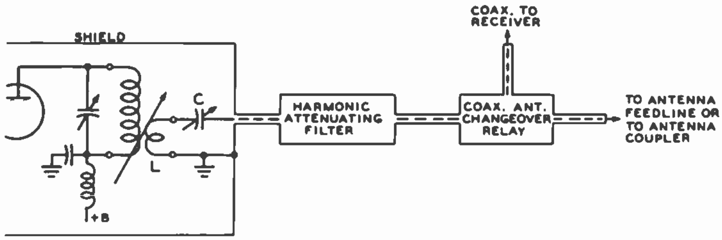


Figure 39

TUNED-LINK OUTPUT CIRCUIT

Capacitor C should be adjusted so as to tune out the inductive reactance of the coupling link, L. Amplifier loading is controlled by varying the coupling between the plate tank of the final amplifier and the antenna link.

of load impedance which should be presented to the final amplifier stage.

There are two common ways for accomplishing the antenna coupling adjustment, as illustrated in figures 39 and 40. Figure 39 shows the variable link arrangement often used in home-construction equipment, while the pi-network coupling arrangement is illustrated in figure 40. Either method may be used, and each has its advantages.

Variable Link Coupling The variable link method illustrated in figure 39 provides good rejection to subharmonics. For greatest bandwidth of operation of the coupling circuit, the reactance of link coil L and the reactance of link tuning capacitor C should both be between 3 and 4 times the nominal load impedance of the harmonic filter. This is to say that the inductive reactance of coupling link L should be tuned out or resonated by capacitor C, and the operating Q of the LC link circuit should be between 3 and 4. If the link coil is not variable with respect to the tank coil of the final amplifier, capacitor C *may* be used as a loading control; however, this system is not recommended since its use will require adjustment of C whenever a frequency change is made at the transmitter. If L and C are made resonant at the center of a band, with a link circuit Q of 3 to 4, and coupling adjustment is made by physical adjustment of L with respect to the final amplifier tank coil, it usually will be possible to operate over an entire amateur band without change in the coupling system. Capacitor C normally may have a low voltage rating, even with a high-power transmitter, due to the low Q and low impedance of the coupling circuit.

Pi-Network Coupling The pi-network coupling system offers two advantages: (1) a *mechanical* coupling variation is not required to vary the loading of the final amplifier, and (2) the pi-network (if used with an operating Q of about 10) offers within itself a harmonic attenuation of 30 db or more, in addition to the harmonic attenuation provided by the additional harmonic attenuating filter. Some commercial equipment incorporates an L-network in addition to the pi-network, for accomplishing the impedance transformation in two steps to provide additional harmonic attenuation.

Tuning the Pi-Section Coupler Tuning a pi-network coupling circuit such as illustrated in figure 40 is accomplished in the following manner: First place a dummy load on the output terminal of the transmitter. Tune C_2 to a capacitance which is large for the band in use, adding suitable additional capacitance by switch S if operation is to be on one of the lower-frequency bands. Apply reduced plate voltage to the stage and dip to resonance with C_1. It may be necessary to vary the inductance in coil L, but in any event, resonance should be reached with a setting of C_1 which is approximately correct for the desired value of operating Q of the pi-network.

Next, couple the load to the amplifier (through the harmonic filter), apply reduced plate voltage again and dip to resonance with C_1. If the plate-current dip with load is too low (taking into consideration

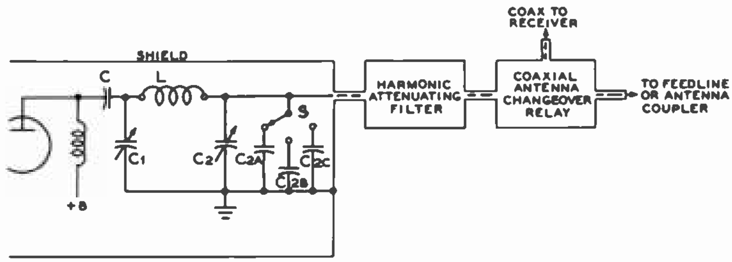


Figure 40

PI-NETWORK ANTENNA COUPLER

The design of pi-network circuits is discussed in Chapter Thirteen. The additional output-end shunting capacitors selected by switch S are for use on the lower frequency ranges. Inductor L may be selected by a tap switch; it may be continuously variable; or plug-in inductors may be used.

the reduced plate voltage), *decrease* the capacitance of C_2 and again dip to resonance, repeating the procedure until the correct value of plate current is obtained with full plate voltage on the stage. There should be a relatively small change required in the setting of C_1 (from the original setting of C_1 without load) if the operating Q of the network is correct and if a large value of impedance transformation is being employed—as would be the case when transforming from the plate impedance of a single-ended output stage down to the 50-ohm impedance of the usual harmonic filter and its subsequent load.

In a pi-network of this type the harmonic attenuation of the section will be adequate when the correct value of C_1 and L are being used and when the resonant dip in C_1 is sharp. If the dip in C_1 is broad, or if the plate current persists in being too high with C_2 at maximum setting, it means that a *greater* value of capacitance is required at C_2, assuming that the values of C_1 and L are correct.

21-11 Antenna Couplers

As stated in the previous section, an antenna coupler is not required when the impedance of the antenna transmission line is the same as the nominal impedance of the harmonic filter, and the antenna feed line is being operated with a low standing-wave ratio. However, there are many cases where it is desirable to feed a multiband antenna from the output of the harmonic filter, where a tuned line is being used to feed the antenna, or where a long wire without a separate feed line is to be fed from the output of the harmonic filter. In such cases an *antenna coupler* is required.

In certain cases when a pi-network is being used at the output of the transmitter, the addition of an antenna coupler will provide sufficient harmonic attenuation. But in all normal cases it is prudent to include a harmonic filter between the output of the transmitter and the antenna coupler.

Function of an Antenna Coupler The function of the antenna coupler is, basically, to transform the impedance of the antenna system being used to the correct value of *resistive* impedance for the harmonic filter, and hence for the transmitter. Thus the antenna coupler may be used to resonate the feeders or the radiating portion of the antenna system, in addition to its function of impedance transformation.

It is important to remember that there is *nothing* that can be done at the antenna coupler which will eliminate standing waves on the antenna transmission line. Standing waves are the result of reflection from the antenna, and the coupler can do nothing about this condition. However, the antenna coupler can resonate the feed line (by introducing a conjugate impedance) in addition to providing an impedance transformation. Thus, a resistive impedance of the correct value can be presented to the harmonic filter, as in figure 38, regardless of any *reason-*

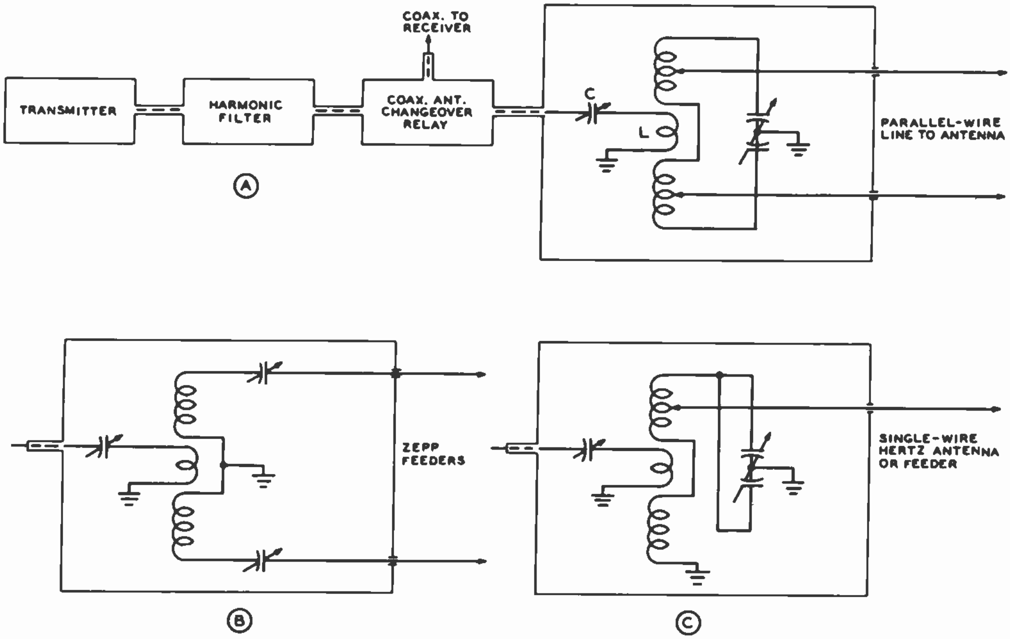


Figure 41

ALTERNATIVE ANTENNA COUPLER CIRCUITS

Plug-in coils, one or two variable capacitors of the split-stator variety, and a system of switches or plugs and jacks may be used in the antenna coupler to accomplish the feeding of different types of antennas and antenna transmission lines from the coaxial input line from the transmitter or from the antenna changeover relay. Link L should be resonated with capacitor C at the operating frequency of the transmitter so that the harmonic filter will operate into a resistive load impedance of the correct nominal value.

able value of standing-wave ratio on the antenna transmission line.

Types of Antenna Couplers All usual types of antenna couplers fall into two classifications: (1) inductively coupled resonant systems as exemplified by those shown in figure 41, and (2) conductively coupled pi-network systems such as shown in figure 42. The inductively coupled system is convenient for feeding a balanced line from the coaxial output of the usual harmonic filter. The pi-network system is most useful for feeding a length of wire from the output of a transmitter.

Several general methods for using the inductively coupled resonant types of antenna coupler are illustrated in figure 41. The coupling between link coil L and the main tuned circuit need not be variable; in fact it is preferable that the correct link size and placement be determined for the tank coil which will be used for each band, and then that the link be made a portion of the plug-in coil. Capacitor C then can be adjusted to a predetermined value for each

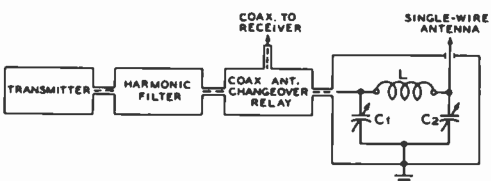


Figure 42

PI-NETWORK ANTENNA COUPLER

An arrangement such as illustrated above is convenient for feeding an end-fed Hertz antenna, or a random length of wire for portable or emergency operation, from the nominal value of impedance of the harmonic filter.

band so that it will resonate with the link coil for that band. The reactance of the link coil (and hence the reactance of the capacitor setting which will resonate the coil) should be about 3 or 4 times the impedance of the transmission line between the antenna coupler and the harmonic filter, so that the link coupling circuit will have an operating Q of 3 or 4. The use of capacitor C to resonate with the inductance of link coil L will make it easier to provide a low standing-wave ratio to the output of the harmonic filter, simply by adjustment of the antenna-coupler tank circuit to resonance.

The pi-network type of antenna coupler, as shown in figure 42, is useful for certain applications, but is primarily useful in feeding a single-wire antenna from a low-impedance transmission line. In such an application the operating Q of the pi-network may be somewhat lower than that of a pi-network in the plate circuit of the final amplifier of a transmitter, as shown in figure 40. An operating Q of 3 or 4 in such an application will be found to be adequate, since harmonic attenuation has been accomplished ahead of the antenna coupler.

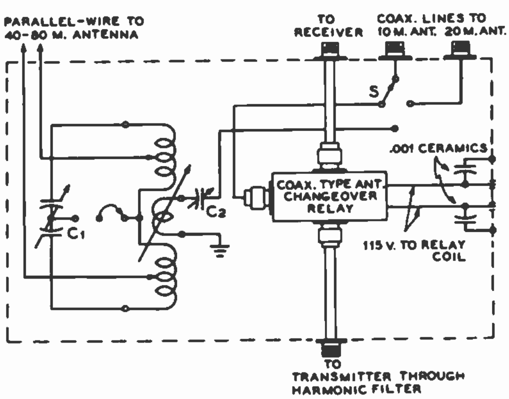


Figure 43

ALTERNATIVE COAXIAL ANTENNA COUPLER

This circuit is recommended for coaxial lines with low SWR used to feed antenna systems such as rotatable beams, and when it is desired to feed open-wire line to some sort of multiband antenna for the lower-frequency ranges. The tuned circuit of the antenna coupler is operative only when using the open-wire feed, and then it is in operation both for transmit and receive.

An alternative arrangement shown in figure 43 utilizes the antenna-coupling tank circuit only when feeding the coaxial output of the transmitter to the open-wire feed line (or similar multiband antenna) of the 40- and 80-meter antenna. The coaxial lines to the 10-meter beam and to the 20-meter beam would be fed directly from the output of the coaxial antenna-change-over relay through switch S.

21-12 A Single-Wire Antenna Tuner

One of the simplest and least expensive antennas for transmision and reception is the single-wire, end-fed Hertz antenna. When used over a wide range of frequencies, this type of antenna exhibits a very great range of input impedance. At the low-frequency end of the spectrum such an antenna may present a resistive load of less than one ohm to the transmitter, combined with a large positive or negative value of reactance. As the frequency of operation is raised, the resistive load may rise to several thousand ohms (near half-wave resonance) and the reactive component of the load can rapidly change from positive to negative values, or vice-versa.

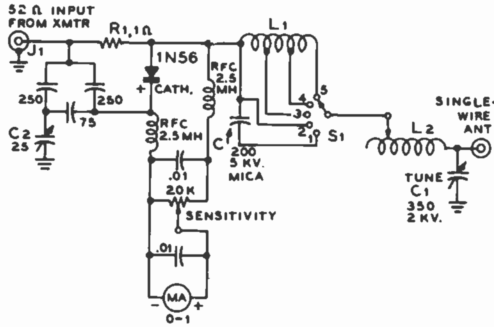
To provide indication for tuning the network, a radio-frequency bridge (SWR meter) is included to indicate the degree of mismatch (standing-wave ratio) existing at the input to the tuner. All adjustments to the tuner are made with the purpose of reaching unity standing-wave ratio on the coaxial feed system between the tuner and the transmitter.

A Practical Antenna Tuner A simple antenna tuner for use with transmitters of 250 watts power or less is shown in figures 44 through 46. An SWR-bridge circuit is used to indicate tuner resonance. The resistive arm of the bridge consists of ten 10-ohm, 1-watt carbon resistors connected in parallel to form a 1-ohm resistor (R_1). The other pair of bridge arms are capacitive rather than resistive. The bridge detector is a simple r-f voltmeter employing a 1N56 crystal diode and a 0-1 d-c milliammeter. A sensitivity control is incorporated to prevent overloading the meter when power is first applied to the tuner.

Figure 44

ANTENNA TUNER IS HOUSED IN METAL CABINET 7 INCHES × 8 INCHES IN SIZE

Inductance switch S_1 and sensitivity control are at left with counter dial for L_2 at center. Output tuning capacitor C_1 is at right. SWR meter is mounted above S_1.



L1 - 35 TURNS #18, 2" DIA., 3.5" LONG (*AIR-DUX*) TAP AT 15 T., 27 T., FROM POINT A

L2 - *JOHNSON 229-201* VARIABLE INDUCTOR (*10 μH*)

C1 - *JOHNSON 35DE20*

C2 - *CENTRALAB TYPE 822*

J1 - TYPE SO-239 RECEPTACLE

R1 - TEN 10-OHM 1-WATT CARBON RESISTORS IN PARALLEL. *IRC TYPE BTA*

Figure 45

SCHEMATIC OF A SINGLE-WIRE ANTENNA TUNER

Final adjustments are made with the sensitivity control at its maximum (clockwise) position. The bridge is balanced when the input impedance of the tuner is 52 ohms resistive. This is the condition for maximum energy transfer between transmission line and antenna. The meter is graduated in arbitrary units, since actual SWR value is not required.

Tuner Construction Major parts placement in the tuner is shown in figures 44 and 46. Tapped coil L_1 is mounted on ½-inch ceramic insulators, and all major components are mounted above deck with the exception of the SWR bridge (figure 47). The components of the bridge are placed below deck, adjacent to the coaxial input plug mounted on the rear apron of the chassis. The ten 10-ohm resistors are soldered to two 1-inch rings made of copper wire as shown in the photograph. The bridge capacitors are attached to this assembly with extremely short leads. The 1N56 crystal mounts at right angles to the resistors to ensure minimum amount of capacitive coupling between the resistors and the detector. The output lead from the bridge passes through a ceramic feedthrough insulator to the top side of the chassis.

Connection to the antenna is made by means of a large feedthrough insulator mounted on the back of the tuner cabinet. This insulator is not visible in the photographs.

Bridge Calibration The SWR bridge must be calibrated for 52-ohm service. This can be done by temporarily disconnecting the lead between the bridge and the antenna tuner and connecting a 2-watt, 52 ohm carbon resistor to the junction of R_1 and the negative terminal of the 1N56 diode. The opposite lead of the carbon resistor is grounded to the chassis of the bridge. A small amount of r-f energy is fed to the input of the bridge until a reading is obtained on the r-f voltmeter. The 25-pf bridge-balancing capacitor C_2 (see figure 47) is then adjusted with a fiber-blade screwdriver until a zero reading is obtained on the meter. The sensitivity control is advanced as the meter null grows, in order to obtain the exact point of bridge balance. When this point is found, the carbon resistor should be removed and the bridge attached to the antenna tuner. The bridge capacitor is sealed with a drop of nail polish to prevent misadjustment.

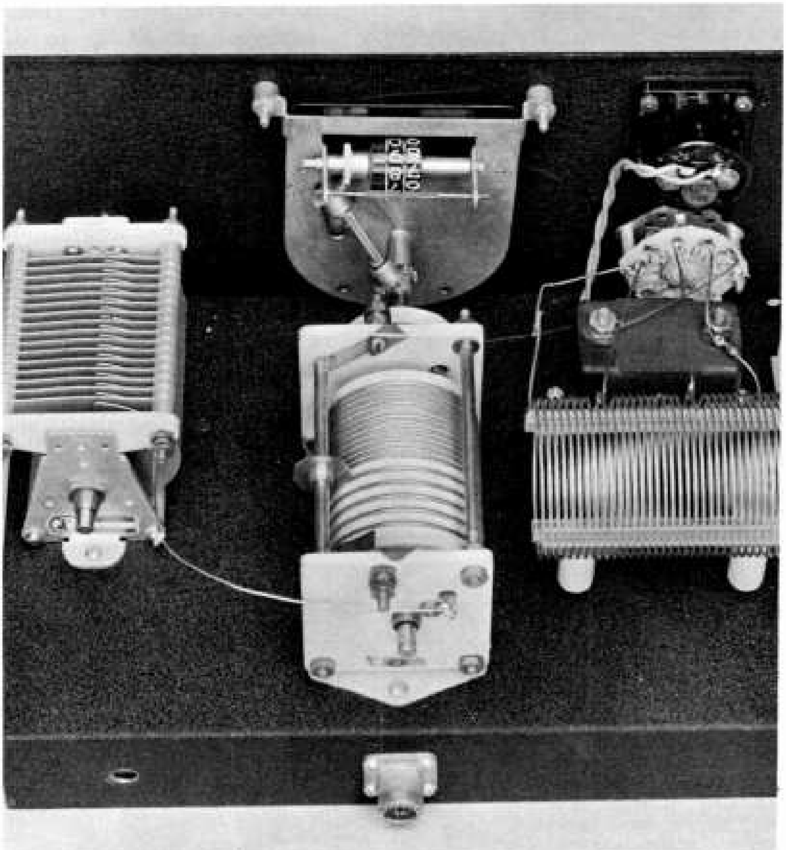


Figure 46

REAR VIEW OF TUNER SHOWING PLACEMENT OF MAJOR COMPONENTS

Rotary inductor is driven by Johnson 116-208-4 counter dial. Coaxial input receptacle J_1 is mounted directly below rotary inductor.

Tuner Adjustments All tuning adjustments are made to obtain proper transmitter loading with a balanced (zero-meter-reading) bridge condition. The tuner is connected to the transmitter through a random length of 52-ohm coaxial line, and the single-wire antenna is attached to the output terminal of the tuner. Transmitter loading controls are set to approximate a 52-ohm termination. The transmitter is turned on (preferably at reduced input) and resonance is established in the amplifier tank circuit. The sensitivity control of the tuner is adjusted to provide near full-scale deflection on the bridge meter. Various settings of S_1, L_2, and C_1 should be tried to obtain a reduction of bridge reading. As tuner resonance is approached, the meter reading will decrease and the sensitivity control should be advanced. When the system is in resonance, the meter will read zero. All loading adjustments may then be made with the transmitter controls. The tuner should be readjusted whenever the frequency of the transmitter is varied by an appreciable amount.

21-13 A Tuner for Center-Fed Antenna Systems

Center-fed antennas require a balanced antenna tuner to allow them to be used with transmitters having unbalanced coaxial antenna terminations. Shown in this section is a simple and inexpensive antenna tuner (figure 48) which, when used in conjunction with an SWR meter, will permit center-fed antennas of practically any configuration to be used with modern coaxial-output transmitters.

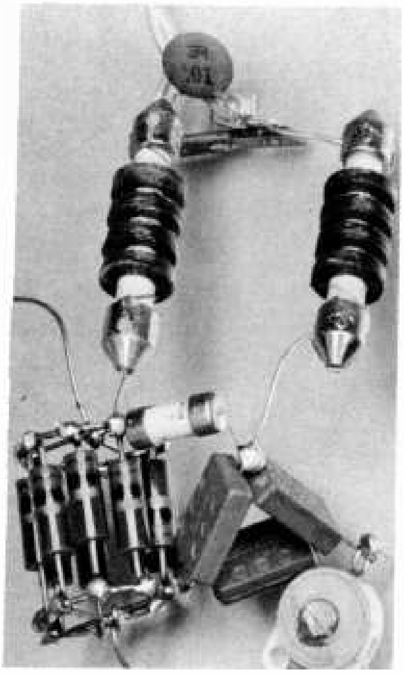


Figure 47

CLOSE-UP OF SWR BRIDGE

Simple SWR bridge is mounted below the chassis of the tuner. Carbon resistors are mounted to two copper rings to form low-inductance one-ohm resistor. Bridge capacitors form triangular configuration for lowest lead inductance. Balancing capacitor C_2 is at lower right.

The unit consists of a parallel-tuned circuit that may be adjusted to a variety of requirements by means of taps on the main coil (L_2 A and B). The number of turns in the circuit are adjusted by means of coil taps *A* and *B* (figure 49) and the impedance transformation presented to the two-wire feed system is adjusted by means of coil taps *C* and *D*. Additional flexibility is provided by switch (S_1 A and B) which permits coupling coils (L_1 A and B) to be placed in either a series or parallel connection. The tuner is capable of operation at the maximum power level on all amateur bands between 80 and 10 meters, and it may be used with open-wire or "ribbon" feeders and directly driven antennas, such as V-beams or other center-fed, long-wire arrays.

Tuner Construction To conserve space, yet allow maximum circuit Q to be achieved, the tuner is constructed in a wooden box measuring 13" wide, 10" high, and 12" deep. A piece of *masonite* is used for the panel. The two variable capacitors are mounted to the panel, as are the selector switch and the airwound inductor. The inductor is spaced away from the panel by two 2" long ceramic insulators. The four-winding inductor is made from a single section of coil stock, as shown in the drawing. Adjustable taps are made at the chosen coil turns by means of small phosphor-bronze clips attached to flexible insulated leads. The various terminals are mounted on a small aluminum plate which is mounted in a cutout area in the rear of the wood cabinet.

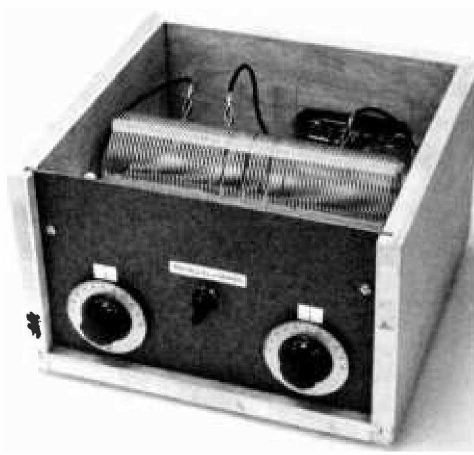


Figure 48

TUNER FOR CENTER-FED ANTENNA SYSTEMS

This balanced antenna tuner is designed to match center-fed antenna systems to transmitters employing the popular single-ended pi-network matching circuit. It may be connected to the transmitter with a random length of 52- or 75-ohm coaxial line. An SWR meter should be placed in the line for a tuning aid. The link-tuning capacitor is at the left, and the split-stator tank capacitor is at the right. Switch S_1 is between the two main tuning dials. The main inductor is made from a single section of coil stock, with the winding broken at appropriate points. Connections to the tuner are made at fittings mounted on the aluminum plate at the rear, right of the enclosure.

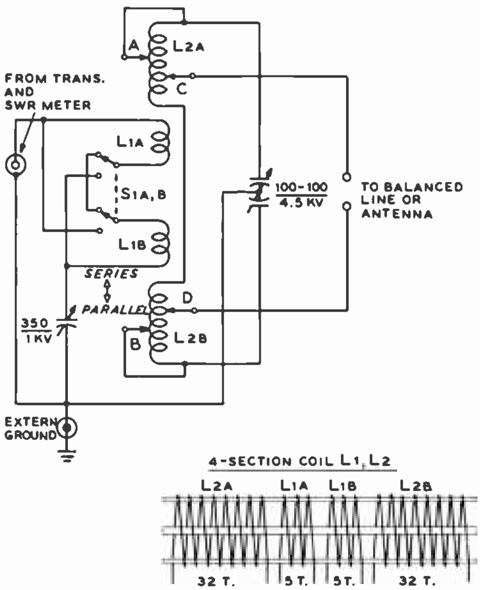


Figure 49

SCHEMATIC AND INDUCTOR FOR TUNER

Coil L_1A-B—L_2A-B is fabricated from a single length of coil stock (Illumitronix Air-Dux 2008, or equivalent). The coil is 2½" inside diameter, 8 turns per inch of No. 14 wire. Starting from one end (after leaving a 6" lead) thirty-two turns are counted and the thirty-third turn is broken at the center to make leads for L_2A and L_1A. Five more turns are counted and the coil is broken in the same manner to make the opposite connection to coil L_1A, and to coil L_1B. In like manner, the taps to L_1B and L_2B are made. The adjacent leads from coils L_1A and L_1B are connected to the arms of the switch. Taps A and B short out the following approximate number of turns from the outer ends of the inductor: 80 meters, 4 turns; 40 meters, 16 turns; 20 meters, 28 turns; 15 meters, 29 turns; 10 meters, 30 turns. Phosphor-bronze clips are Mueller #88.

Tuner Operation The tuner is connected to the transmitter with a short length of low-impedance coaxial line. An SWR meter should be placed in the line. Adjustments are made to the tuner to properly load the transmitter while holding a reasonably low value of SWR on the coaxial line. If a center-fed tuned dipole (such as shown in figure 2D) is used with the tuner, it may be operated on any high-frequency amateur band, provided the length of the flat top plus the feeder length is equal to or greater than one-half wavelength at the lowest operating frequency. For general "all-band" use, a 66-foot flat top with random-length open wire feedline is recommended. An antenna of this general type will be used as an example in discussing the adjustment of the tuner.

The transmitter is placed on the desired band and the coil taps are set as suggested in the illustration. Place both capacitors at full capacitance and place switch S_1 in the series position for 80- or 40-meter operation and in parallel position for 20-, 15-, or 10-meter operation. Adjust the capacitors and move clips *A* and *B* until resonance is established. (This may be determined with the aid of a grid-dip oscillator, if desired, before the transmitter is energized). Adjustment of the various clips and capacitors is done to provide proper loading of the transmitter with minimum SWR reading on the coaxial line. Adjustments should be symmetrical on each side of the coil and the taps should be set to employ the maximum value of inductance, since, quite probably, various tap settings and tuning adjustments may be found which will provide a degree of loading.

Adjustments should start with minimum circuit inductance for the band in use, progressively increasing inductance until the desired loading is achieved with maximum inductance in the circuit. Loading should finally be adjusted at the transmitter to provide proper settings for the output circuit of the transmitter. Once the adjustments of the tuner have been determined, the dial settings and tap points may be logged for future reference and the coil taps indentified with a small spot of nail polish on the wire.

CHAPTER TWENTY-TWO

High-Frequency Directive Antennas

It is becoming of increasing importance in most types of radio communication to be capable of concentrating the radiated signal from the transmitter in a certain desired direction and to be able to discriminate at the receiver against reception from directions other than the desired one. Such capabilities involve the use of directive antenna arrays.

Few simple antennas, except the single vertical element, radiate energy equally well in all azimuth (horizontal or compass) directions. All horizontal antennas, except those specifically designed to give an omnidirectional azimuth radiation pattern such as the turnstile, have some directive properties. These properties depend on the length of the antenna in wavelengths, the height above ground, and the slope of the radiator.

The various forms of the half-wave horizontal antenna produce maximum radiation at right angles to the wire, but the directional effect is not great. Nearby objects also minimize the directivity of a dipole radiator, so that it hardly seems worth while to go to the trouble to rotate a simple half-wave dipole in an attempt to improve transmission and reception in any direction.

The half-wave doublet, folded-dipole, zepp, single-wire-fed, matched-impedance, and Q-section antennas all have practically the same radiation pattern *when properly built and adjusted*. They all are dipoles, and the feeder system, if it does not radiate in itself, will have no effect on the radiation pattern.

22-1 Directive Antennas

When a multiplicity of radiating elements is located and phased so as to reinforce the radiation in certain desired directions and to neutralize radiation in other directions, a *directive antenna array* is formed.

The function of a directive antenna when used for transmitting is to give an increase in signal strength in some direction at the expense of radiation in other directions. For reception, one might find useful an antenna giving little or no gain in the direction from which it is desired to receive signals if the antenna is able to discriminate against interfering signals and static arriving from other directions. A good directive transmitting antenna, however, can also be used to good advantage for reception.

If radiation can be confined to a narrow beam, the signal intensity can be increased a great many times in the desired direction of transmission. This is equivalent to increasing the power output of the transmitter. On the higher frequencies, it is more economical to use a directive antenna than to increase transmitter power, if more than a few watts of power is being used.

Directive antennas for the high-frequency range have been designed and used commercially with gains as high as 23 db over a simple dipole radiator. Gains as high as 35

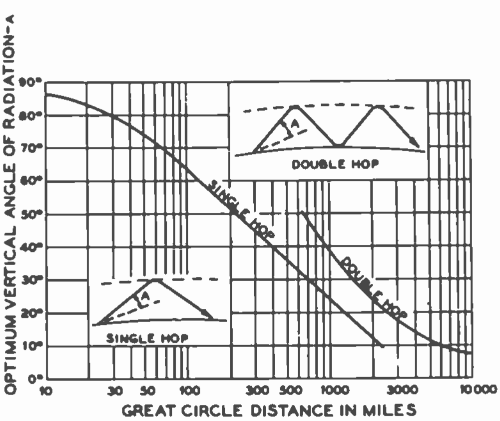


Figure 1

OPTIMUM ANGLE OF RADIATION WITH RESPECT TO DISTANCES

Shown above is a plot of the optimum angle of radiation for one-hop and two hop communication. An operating frequency close to of radiation for one-hop and two-hop communication distance is assumed.

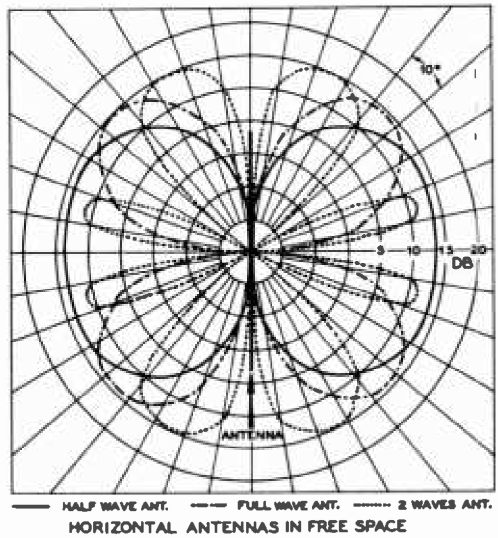


Figure 2

FREE-SPACE FIELD PATTERNS OF LONG-WIRE ANTENNAS

The presence of the earth distorts the field pattern in such a manner that the azimuth pattern becomes a function of the elevation angle.

db are common in direct-ray microwave communication and radar systems. A gain of 23 db represents a power gain of 200 times and a gain of 35 db represents a power gain of almost 3500 times. However, an antenna with a gain of only 15 to 20 db is so sharp in its radiation pattern that it is usable to full advantage only for point-to-point work.

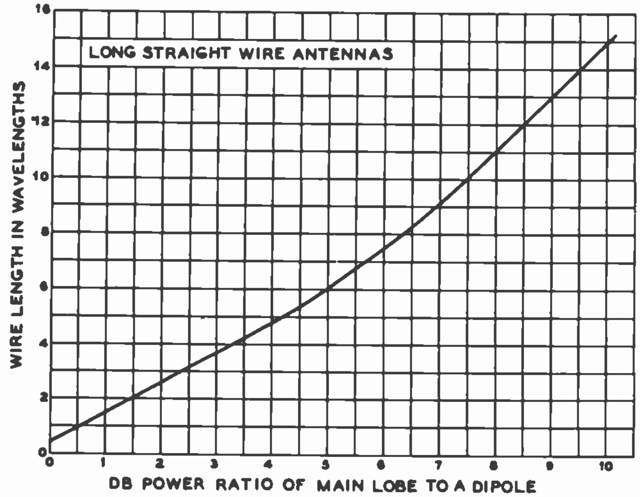
The increase in radiated power in the desired direction is obtained at the expense of radiation in the undesired directions. Power gains of 3 to 12 db seem to be most practical for amateur communication, since the width of a beam with this order of power gain is wide enough to sweep a fairly large area. Gains of 3 to 12 db represent effective transmitter power increases from 2 to 16 times.

Horizontal Pattern versus Vertical Angle There is a certain optimum vertical angle of radiation for sky-wave communication, this angle being dependent on distance, frequency, time of day, etc. Energy radiated at an angle much lower than this optimum angle is largely lost, while radiation at angles much higher than this optimum angle is often not nearly so effective.

For this reason, the horizontal directivity pattern as measured on the ground is of no import when dealing with frequencies and distances dependent on sky-wave propagation. It is the horizontal directivity (or gain, or discrimination) *measured at the most useful vertical angles of radiation* that is of consequence. The horizontal radiation pattern, as measured on the ground, is considerably different from the pattern obtained at a vertical angle of 15 degrees, and still more different from a pattern obtained at a vertical angle of 30 degrees. In general, the energy which is radiated at angles higher than approximately 30 degrees above the earth, is effective only for local work at any frequency.

For operation at frequencies in the vicinity of 14 MHz, the most effective angle of radiation is usually about 15 degrees above the horizon, from *any* kind of antenna. The most effective angles for 10-meter operation are those in the vicinity of 10 degrees. Figure 1 is a chart giving the optimum vertical angle of radiation for sky-wave propagation in terms of the great-circle distance between the transmitting and receiving antennas.

Figure 3
DIRECTIVE GAIN OF LONG-WIRE ANTENNAS



Types of Directive Arrays There is an enormous variety of directive antenna arrays that can give a substantial power gain in the desired direction of transmission or reception. However, some are more effective than others which require the same space. In general it may be stated that long-wire antennas of various types, such as the single long wire, the V beam, and the rhombic, are less effective for a given space than arrays composed of resonant elements, but the long-wire arrays have the significant advantage that they may be used over a relatively large frequency range while resonant arrays are usable only over a quite narrow frequency band.

22-2 Long-Wire Radiators

Harmonically operated long wires radiate better in certain directions than others, but cannot be considered as having appreciable directivity unless several wavelengths long. The current in adjoining half-wave elements flows in opposite directions at any instant, and, thus, the radiation from the various elements adds in certain directions and cancels in others.

A half-wave doublet in free space has a "doughnut" of radiation surrounding it. A full wave has 2 lobes, 3 half waves 3, etc. When the radiator is made more than 4 half wavelengths long, the *end* lobes (cones of radiation) begin to show noticeable power gain over a half-wave doublet, while the broadside lobes get smaller and smaller in amplitude, even though numerous (figure 2).

The horizontal radiation pattern of such antennas depends on the vertical angle of radiation being considered. If the wire is more than 4 wavelengths long, the maximum radiation at vertical angles of 15° to 20° (useful for DX) is in line with the wire, being slightly greater a few degrees either side of the wire than directly off the ends. The directivity of the main lobes of radiation is not particularly sharp, and the minor lobes fill in between the main lobes to permit working stations in nearly all directions, though the power radiated broadside to the radiator will not be great if the radiator is more than a few wavelengths long. The directive gain of long-wire antennas, in terms of the wire length in wavelengths is given in figure 3.

To maintain the out-of-phase condition in adjoining half-wave elements throughout the length of the radiator, it is necessary that a harmonic antenna be fed either at *one end* or at a *current* loop. If fed at a voltage loop, the adjacent sections will be fed *in phase*, and a different radiation pattern will result.

The directivity of a long wire does not increase very much as the length is increased beyond about 15 wavelengths. This is due to the fact that all long-wire antennas are adversely affected by the r-f resistance of the wire, and because the current

LONG-ANTENNA DESIGN TABLE Approximate Length in Feet—End-Fed Antennas								
Frequency In MHz	1λ	1½λ	2λ	2½λ	3λ	3½λ	4λ	4½λ
29	33	50	67	84	101	118	135	152
28	34	52	69	87	104	122	140	157
21.4	45	68	91 ½	114 ½	136 ½	160 ½	185 ½	209 ½
21.2	45 ¼	68 ¼	91 ¾	114 ¾	136 ¾	160 ¾	185 ¾	209 ¾
21.0	45 ½	68 ½	92	115	137	161	186	210
14.2	67 ½	102	137	171	206	240	275	310
14.0	68 ½	103 ½	139	174	209	244	279	314
7.3	136	206	276	346	416	486	555	625
7.15	136 ½	207	277	347	417	487	557	627
7.0	137	207 ½	277 ½	348	418	488	558	628
4.0	240	362	485	618	730	853	977	1100
3.8	252	381	511	640	770	900	1030	1160
3.6	266	403	540	676	812	950	1090	1220
3.5	274	414	555	696	835	977	1120	
2.0	480	725	972	1230	1475			
1.9	504	763	1020	1280				
1.8	532	805	1080					

amplitude begins to become unequal at different current loops as a result of attenuation along the wire caused by radiation and losses. As the length is increased, the tuning of the antenna becomes quite broad. In fact, a long wire about 15 waves long is practically *aperiodic*, and works almost equally well over a wide range of frequencies.

One of the most practical methods of feeding a long-wire antenna is to bring one end of it into the radio room for direct connection to a tuned antenna circuit which is link-coupled through a harmonic-attenuating filter to the transmitter. The antenna can be tuned effectively to resonance for operating on any harmonic by means of the tuned circuit which is connected to the end of the antenna. A ground is sometimes connected to the center of the tuned coil.

If desired, the antenna can be opened and current-fed at a point of *maximum current* by means of low-impedance ribbon line, or by a quarter-wave matching section and open line.

22-3 The V Antenna

If two long-wire antennas are built in the form of a V, it is possible to make two of the maximum lobes of one leg shoot in the same direction as two of the maximum lobes of the other leg of the V. The resulting antenna is bidirectional (two opposite directions) for the main lobes of radiation. Each side of the V can be made any odd or

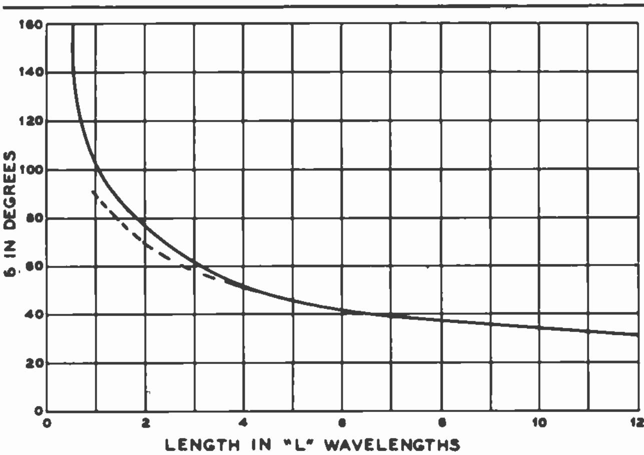


Figure 4

INCLUDED ANGLE FOR A V BEAM

Showing the included angle between the legs of a V beam for various leg lengths. For optimum alignment of the radiation lobe at the correct vertical angle with leg lengths less than three wavelengths, the optimum included angle is shown by the dashed curve.

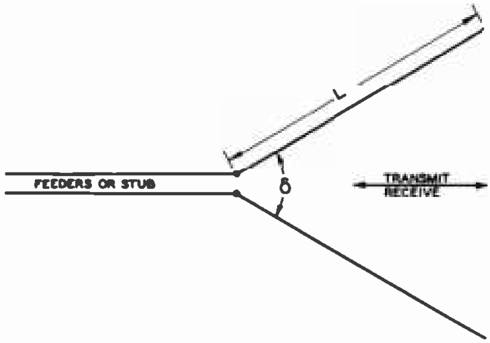


Figure 5

TYPICAL V BEAM ANTENNA

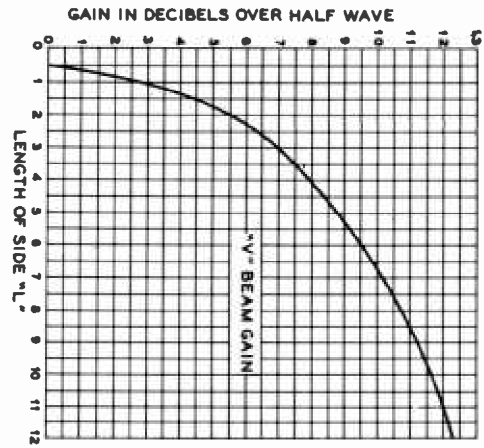


Figure 6

DIRECTIVE GAIN OF A V BEAM

This curve shows the approximate directive gain of a V beam with respect to a half-wave antenna located the same distance above ground, in terms of the side length L.

even number of quarter wavelengths, depending on the method of feeding the apex of the V. The complete system must be a multiple of half waves. If each leg is an even number of quarter waves long, the antenna must be voltage-fed at the apex; if an odd number of quarter waves long, current feed must be used.

By choosing the proper apex angle (figure 4 and figure 5) the lobes of radiation from the two long-wire antennas aid each other to form a bidirectional beam. Each wire by itself would have a radiation pattern similar to that for a long wire. The reaction of one on the other removes two of the four main lobes, and increases the other two in such a way as to form two lobes of still greater magnitude.

The correct wire lengths and the degree of the angle δ are listed in the *V-Antenna Design Table* for various frequencies in the 10-, 15-, 20- and 40-meter amateur bands. Apex angles for all side lengths are given in figure 4. The gain of a V beam in terms of the side length when optimum apex angle is used is given in figure 6.

The legs of a very long V antenna are usually so arranged that the included angle is twice the angle of the major lobe from a single wire if used alone. This arrangement concentrates the radiation of each wire along the bisector of the angle, and permits part of the other lobes to cancel each other.

With legs shorter than 3 wavelengths, the best directivity and gain are obtained with a somewhat smaller angle than that determined by the lobes. Optimum directivity for a one-wave V is obtained when the angle is 90° rather than 180°, as determined by the ground pattern alone.

V-ANTENNA DESIGN TABLE

Frequency in kHz	$L = \lambda$, $\delta = 90°$	$L = 2\lambda$, $\delta = 70°$	$L = 4\lambda$, $\delta = 52°$	$L = 8\lambda$, $\delta = 39°$
28000 29000	34′8″ 33′6″	69′8″ 67′3″	140′ 135′	280′ 271′
21100 21300	45′9″ 45′4″	91′9″ 91′4″	183′ 182′6″	366′ 365′
14050 14150 14250	69′ 68′6″ 68′2″	139′ 138′ 137′	279′ 277′ 275′	558′ 555′ 552′
7020 7100 7200	138′2″ 136′8″ 134′10″	278′ 275′ 271′	558′ 552′ 545′	1120′ 1106′ 1090′

If very long wires are used in the V, the angle between the wires is almost unchanged when the length of the wires in wavelengths is altered. However, an error of a few degrees causes a much larger loss in directivity and gain in the case of the longer V than in the shorter one.

The vertical angle at which the wave is best transmitted or received from a horizontal V antenna depends largely on the included angle. The sides of the V antenna should be at least a half wavelength above ground; commercial practice dictates a height of approximately a full wavelength above ground.

22-4 The Rhombic Antenna

The terminated *rhombic* or *diamond* is probably the most effective directional antenna that is practical for amateur communication. This antenna is nonresonant, with the result that it can be used on four amateur bands, such as 10, 15, 20, and 40 meters. When the antenna is nonresonant, i.e., properly terminated, the system is unidirectional, and the wire dimensions are not critical.

Rhombic Termination When the free end is terminated with a resistance of a value between 700 and 800 ohms the rear lobes are eliminated, the forward gain is increased, and the antenna can be used on several bands without changes. The terminating resistance should be capable of dissipating one-third the power output of the transmitter, and should have very little reactance. For medium- or low-power transmitters, the noninductive *plaque* resistors will serve as a satisfactory termination. Several manufacturers offer special resistors suitable for terminating a rhombic antenna. The terminating device should, for technical reasons, present a small amount of inductive reactance at the point of termination.

A compromise terminating device commonly used consists of a terminated 250-foot or longer length of line made of resistance wire which *does not have too much resistance per unit length.* If the latter qualification is not met, the reactance of the line will be excessive. A 250-foot line

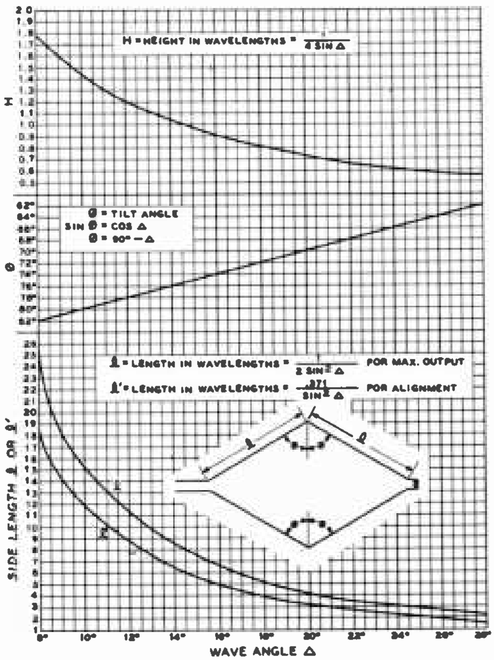


Figure 7

RHOMBIC ANTENNA DESIGN TABLE

Design data is given in terms of the wave angle (vertical angle of transmission and reception) of the antenna. The lengths l are for the "maximum output" design; the shorter lengths (l') are for the "alignment" method which gives approximately 1.5 db less gain with a considerable reduction in the space required for the antenna. The values of side length, tilt angle, and height for a given wave angle are obtained by drawing a vertical line upward from the desired wave angle.

consisting of No. 25 *nichrome* wire, spaced 6 inches and terminated with 800 ohms, will serve satisfactorily. Because of the attenuation of the line, the lumped resistance at the end of the line need dissipate but a few watts even when high power is used. A half dozen 5000-ohm 2-watt carbon resistors in parallel will serve for all except very high power. The attenuating line may be folded back on itself to take up less room.

The determination of the best value of terminating resistor may be made while receiving, if the input impedance of the receiver is approximately 800 ohms. The value of resistor which gives the best di-

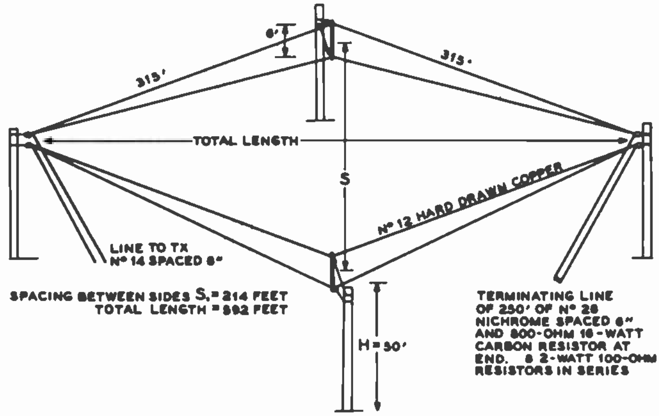


Figure 8

TYPICAL RHOMBIC ANTENNA DESIGN

The antenna system illustrated above may be used over the frequency range from 7 to 29 MHz without change. The directivity of the system may be reversed by the system discussed in the text.

rectivity on reception will not give the most gain when transmitting, but there will be little difference between the two.

The input resistance of the rhombic which is reflected into the transmission line that feeds it is always somewhat less than the terminating resistance, and is around 700 to 750 ohms when the terminating resistor is 800 ohms.

The antenna should be fed with a nonresonant line having a characteristic impedance of 650 to 700 ohms. The four corners of the rhombic should be at least one-half wavelength above ground for the lowest frequency of operation. For three-band operation the proper tilt angle (ϕ) for the center band should be observed.

The rhombic antenna transmits a horizontally polarized wave at a relatively low angle above the horizon. The angle of radiation (wave angle) decreases as the height above ground is increased in the same manner as with a dipole antenna. The rhombic should not be tilted in any plane. In other words, the poles should all be of the same height and the plane of the antenna should be parallel to the ground.

A considerable amount of directivity is lost when the terminating resistor is left off the end and the system is operated as a resonant antenna. If it is desired to reverse the direction of the antenna it is much better practice to run transmission lines to both ends of the antenna and then run the terminating line to the operating position. Then with the aid of two dpdt switches it will be possible to connect either feeder to the antenna changeover switch and the other feeder to the terminating line, thus reversing the direction of the array and maintaining the same termination for either direction of operation.

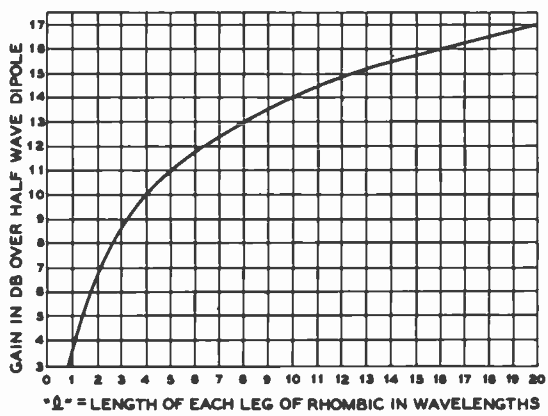


Figure 9

RHOMBIC ANTENNA GAIN

Showing the theoretical gain of a rhombic antenna, in terms of the side length, over a half-wave antenna mounted at the same height above the same type of soil.

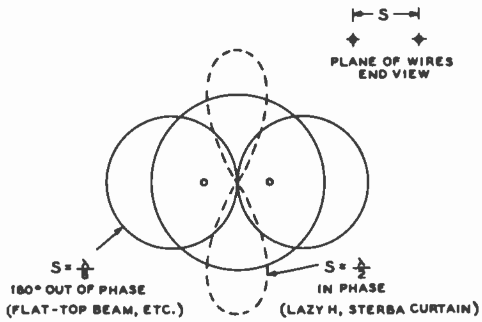


Figure 10

RADIATION PATTERNS OF A PAIR OF DIPOLES OPERATING WITH IN-PHASE EXCITATION, AND WITH EXCITATION 180° OUT OF PHASE

If the dipoles are oriented horizontally most of the directivity will be in the vertical plane; if they are oriented vertically most of the directivity will be in the horizontal plane.

Figure 7 gives curves for optimum-design rhombic attennas for both the maximum-output method and the alignment method. The alignment method is about 1.5 db down from the maximum output method but requires only about 0.74 as much leg length. The height and tilt angle are the same in either case. Figure 8 gives construction data for a recommended rhombic antenna for the 7.0- through 29.7-MHz bands. This antenna will give about 11 db gain in the 14.0-MHz band. The approximate gain of a rhombic antenna over a dipole (both above normal soil) is given in figure 9.

22-5 Stacked-Dipole Arrays

The characteristics of a half-wave dipole already have been described. When another dipole is placed in the vicinity and excited either directly or parasitically, the resultant radiation pattern will depend on the spacing and phase differential, as well as the relative magnitude of the currents. With spacings less than 0.65 wavelength, the radiation is mainly broadside to the two wires (bidirectional) when there is no phase difference, and *through* the wires (end fire) when the wires are 180° out of phase. With phase difference between 0° and 180° (45°, 90°, and 135° for instance), the pattern is unsymmetrical, the radiation being *greater in one direction* than in the opposite direction.

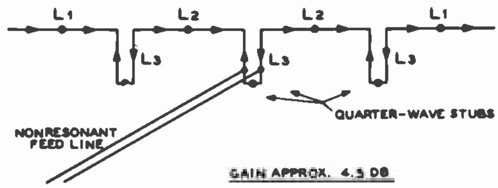


Figure 11

THE FRANKLIN OR COLLINEAR ANTENNA ARRAY

An antenna of this type, regardless of the number of elements, attains all of its directivity through sharpening of the horizontal or azimuth radiation pattern; no vertical directivity is provided. Hence a long antenna of this type has an extremely sharp azimuth pattern, but no vertical directivity.

With spacings of more than 0.8 wavelength, more than two main lobes appear for all phasing combinations; hence, such spacings are seldom used.

In-Phase Spacing With the dipoles driven so as to be in phase, the most effective spacing is between 0.5 and 0.7 wavelength. The latter provides greater gain, but minor lobes are present which do not appear at 0.5-wavelength spacing. The radiation is broadside to the plane of the wires, and the gain is slightly greater than can be obtained from two dipoles out of phase. The gain falls off rapidly for spacings less than 0.375 wavelength, and there is little point in using spacing of 0.25 wavelength or less with in-phase dipoles, except where it is desirable to increase the radiation resistance. (See *Multiwire Doublet.*)

Out-of-Phase Spacing When the dipoles are fed 180° *out of phase*, the directivity is through the plane of the wires, and is greatest with *close spacing*, though there is but little difference in the pattern after the spacing is made less than 0.125 wavelength. The radiation resistance becomes so low for spacings of less than 0.1 wavelength that such spacings are not practical.

In the three foregoing examples, most of the directivity provided is in a plane at a right angle to the wires, though when out

COLLINEAR ANTENNA DESIGN CHART

Frequency in MHz	L_1	L_2	L_3
28.5	16'8"	17'	8'6"
21.2	22'8"	23'3"	11'6"
14.2	33'8"	34'7"	17'3"
7.15	67'	68'8"	34'4"
4.0	120'	123'	61'6"
3.6	133'	136'5"	68'2"

of phase, the directivity is in a line *through* the wires, and when in phase, the directivity is *broadside* to them. Thus, if the wires are oriented vertically, mostly horizontal directivity will be provided. If the wires are oriented horizontally, most of the directivity obtained will be *vertical* directivity.

To increase the sharpness of the directivity in all planes that include one of the wires, additional identical elements are added *in the line of the wires,* and fed so as to be *in phase.* The familiar lazy-H array is one array utilizing both types of directivity in the manner prescribed. The two-section 8JK flat-top beam is another.

These two antennas in their various forms are directional in a horizontal plane, in addition to being low-angle radiators, and are perhaps the most practical of the *bidirectional* stacked-dipole arrays for amateur use. More phased elements can be used to provide greater directivity in planes including one of the radiating elements. The H then becomes a *Sterba-curtain* array.

For unidirectional work the most practical stacked-dipole arrays for amateur-band use are parasitically excited systems using relatively close spacing between the reflectors and the directors. Antennas of this type are described in detail in a later chapter. The next most practical unidirectional array is an H or a Sterba curtain with a similar system placed approximately one-quarter wave behind. The use of a reflector system in conjunction with any type of stacked-dipole broadside array will increase the gain by 3 db.

Collinear Arrays The simple *collinear antenna* array is a very effective radiating system for the 3.5- and 7.0-MHz bands, but its use is not recommended on higher frequencies since such arrays do not possess any vertical directivity. The elevation radiation pattern for such an array is essentially the same as for a half-wave

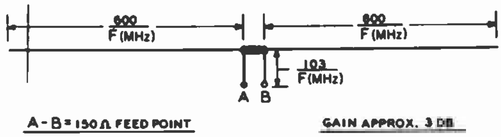


Figure 12

DOUBLE EXTENDED ZEPP ANTENNA

For best results, antenna should be tuned to operating frequency by means of grid-dip oscillator.

dipole. This consideration applies whether the elements are of normal length or are extended.

The collinear antenna consists of two or more radiating sections from 0.5 to 0.65 wavelengths long, with the current in phase in each section. The necessary phase reversal between sections is obtained through the use of resonant tuning stubs as illustrated in figure 11. The gain of a collinear array using half-wave elements (in decibels) is approximately equal to the number of elements in the array. The exact figures are as follows:

Number of Elements	2	3	4	5	6
Gain in Decibels	1.8	3.3	4.5	5.3	6.2

As additional in-phase collinear elements are added to a doublet, the radiation resistance goes up much faster than when additional half waves are added out of phase (harmonic operated antenna).

For a collinear array of from 2 to 6 elements, the terminal radiation resistance in ohms at any current loop is approximately 100 times the number of elements.

It should be borne in mind that the *gain* from a collinear antenna depends on the

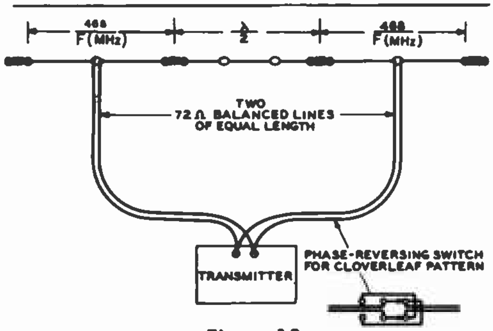


Figure 13

TWO COLLINEAR HALF-WAVE ANTENNAS IN PHASE PRODUCE A 3 DB GAIN WHEN SEPARATED ONE-HALF WAVELENGTH

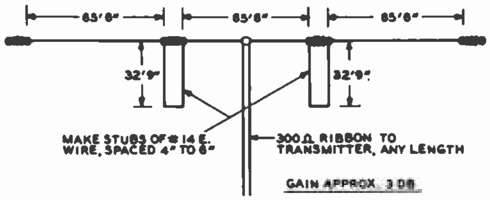


Figure 14

PRECUT LINEAR ARRAY FOR 40-METER OPERATION

sharpness of the horizontal directivity since no vertical directivity is provided. An array with several collinear elements will give considerable gain, but will have a sharp horizontal radiation pattern.

Double Extended Zepp The gain of a conventional two-element Franklin collinear antenna can be increased to a value approaching that obtained from a three-element Franklin, simply by making the two radiating elements 230° long instead of 180° long. The phasing stub is shortened correspondingly to maintain the whole array in resonance. Thus, instead of having 0.5-wavelength elements and 0.25-wavelength stub, the elements are made 0.64 wavelength long and the stub is approximately 0.11 wavelength long.

Dimensions for the double extended zepp are given in figure 12.

The *vertical* directivity of a collinear antenna having 230° elements is the same as for one having 180° elements. There is little advantage in using extended sections when the total length of the array is to be greater than about 1.5 wavelength over all since the gain of a collinear antenna is proportional to the overall length, whether the individual radiating elements are ¼-wave, ½-wave or ¾-wave in length.

Spaced Half Wave Antennas The gain of two collinear half waves may be increased by increasing the physical spacing between the elements, up to a maximum of about one-half wavelength. If the half-wave elements are fed with equal lengths of transmission line, correctly phased, a gain of about 3.3 db is produced. Such an antenna is shown in figure 13. By means of a phase reversing switch, the two elements may be operated out of phase, producing a cloverleaf pattern with slightly less maximum gain.

A three-element precut array for 40-meter operation is shown in figure 14. It is fed directly with 300-ohm ribbon line, and may be matched to a 52-ohm coaxial output transmitter by means of a balun.

22-6 Broadside Arrays

Collinear elements may be stacked above or below another string of collinear elements to produce what is commonly called a *broadside* array. Such an array, when horizontal elements are used, possesses vertical directivity in proportion to the number of broadsided (vertically stacked) sections which have been used.

Since broadside arrays do have good vertical directivity their use is recommended on the 14-MHz band and on those higher in frequency. One of the most popular of simple broadside arrays is the *Lazy H* array of figure 15. Horizontal collinear elements stacked two above two make up this antenna system which is highly recommended when moderate gain without too much directivity is desired. It has high radiation resistance and a gain of approximately 5.5 db. The high radiation resistance results in low voltages and a broad resonance curve, which permits use of inexpensive insulators and enables the array to be used over a fairly wide range in frequency. For dimensions, see the stacked dipole design table.

Stacked Dipoles Vertical stacking may be applied to strings of collinear elements longer than two half waves. In such arrays, the end quarter wave of each string of radiators usually is bent in to meet a similar bent quarter wave from the opposite-end radiator. This provides better balance and better coupling between the upper and lower elements when the array is current-fed. Arrays of this type are shown in figure 16, and are commonly known as *curtain arrays.*

Correct length for the elements and stubs can be determined for any stacked-dipole array from the *Stacked-Dipole Design Table.*

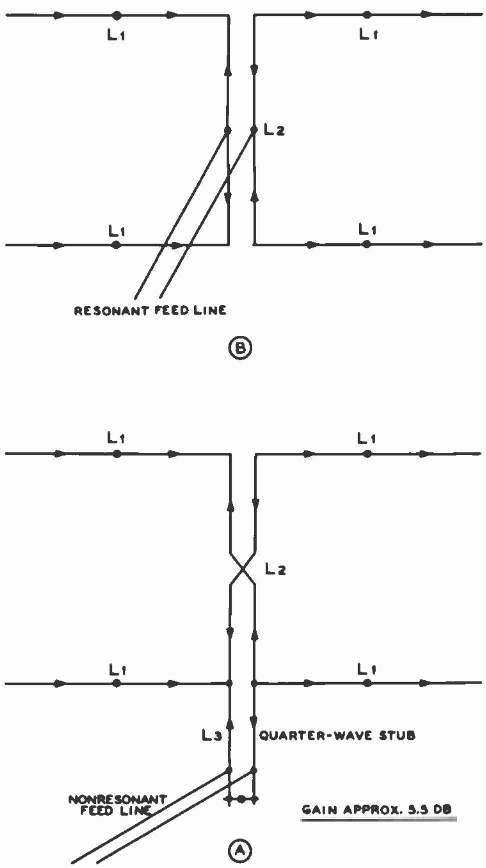


Figure 15

THE LAZY H ANTENNA SYSTEM

Stacking the collinear pairs gives both horizontal and vertical directivity. As shown, the array will give about 5.5 db gain. Note that the array may be fed either at the center of the phasing section or at the bottom; if fed at the bottom the phasing section must be twisted through 180°.

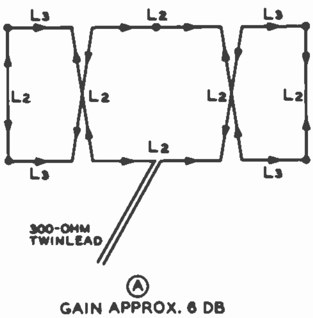
In the arrays of figure 16 the arrowheads represent the direction of current flow at any given instant. The dots on the radiators represent points of maximum current. All arrows should point in the same direction in each portion of the radiating sections of an antenna in order to provide a field in phase for broadside radiation. This condition is satisfied for the arrays illustrated in figure 16. Figures 16A and 16C show simple methods of feeding a short Sterba curtain, while an alternative method of feed is shown in the higher-gain antenna of figure 16B.

In the case of each of the arrays of figure 16, and also the Lazy H of figure 15, the array may be unidirectional and the gain increased by 3 db if an exactly similar array is constructed and placed approximately ¼ wave behind the driven array. A screen or mesh of wires, slightly greater in area than the antenna array, may be used instead of an additional array as a reflector to obtain a unidirectional system. The spacing between the reflecting wires may vary from 0.05 to 0.1 wavelength with the spacing between the reflecting wires the smallest directly behind the driven elements. The wires in the untuned reflecting system should be parallel to the radiating elements of the array, and the spacing of the complete reflector system should be approximately 0.2 to 0.25 wavelength behind the driven elements.

On frequencies below perhaps 100 MHz, it normally will be impractical to use a wire-screen reflector behind an antenna array such as a Sterba curtain or a Lazy H. Parasitic elements may be used as reflectors or directors, but parasitic elements have the disadvantage that their operation is selective with respect to relatively small changes in frequency. Nevertheless, parasitic reflectors for such arrays are quite widely used.

The X-Array In section 22-5 it was shown how two dipoles may be arranged in phase to provide a power gain of about 3 db. If two such pairs of dipoles are stacked in a vertical plane and properly phased, a simplified form of in-phase curtain is formed, providing an over-all gain of about 6 db. Such an array is shown in figure 17. In this *X-array*, the four dipoles are all in phase, and are fed by four sections of 300-ohm line, each one-half wavelength long, the free ends of all four lines being connected in parallel. The feed impedance at the junction of these four lines is about 75 ohms, and a length of 75-ohm twin lead may be used for the feedline to the array.

An array of this type is quite small for the 28-MHz band, and is not out of the question for the 21-MHz band. For best results, the bottom section of the array should be one-half wavelength above ground.



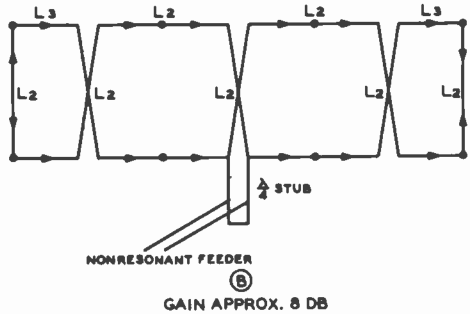
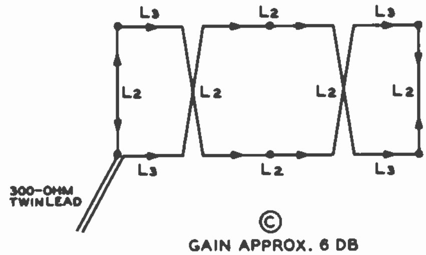


Figure 16

THE STERBA-CURTAIN ARRAY

Approximate directive gains along with alternative feed methods are shown.



LAZY H AND STERBA (STACKED-DIPOLE) DESIGN TABLE

Frequency in MHz	L_1	L_2	L_3
7.0 7.3	68'2" 65'10"	70' 67'6"	35' 33'9"
14.0 14.2 14.4	34'1" 33'8" 33'4"	35' 34'7" 34'2"	17'6" 17'3" 17'
21.0 21.5	22'9" 22'3"	23'3" 22'9"	11'8" 11'5"
27.3 28.0 29.0	17'7" 17' 16'6"	17'10" 17'7" 17'	8'11" 8'9" 8'6"
50.0 52.0 54.0	9'7" 9'3" 8'10"	9'10" 9'5" 9'1"	4'11" 4'8" 4'6"
144.0 146.0 148.0	39.8" 39" 38.4"	40.5" 40" 39.5"	20.3" 20" 19.8"

The Double-Bruce Array The *Bruce Beam* consists of a long wire folded so that vertical elements carry in-phase currents while the horizontal elements carry out-of-phase currents. Radiation from the horizontal sections is low since only a small current flows in this part of the wire, and it is largely phased-out. Since the height of the Bruce Beam is only one-quarter wavelength, the gain per linear foot of array is quite low. Two Bruce Beams may be combined as shown in figure 18 to produce the *Double Bruce* array. A four section *Double Bruce* will give a vertically polarized emission, with a power gain of 5 db over a simple dipole, and is a very simple beam to construct. This antenna, like other so-called broadside arrays, radiates

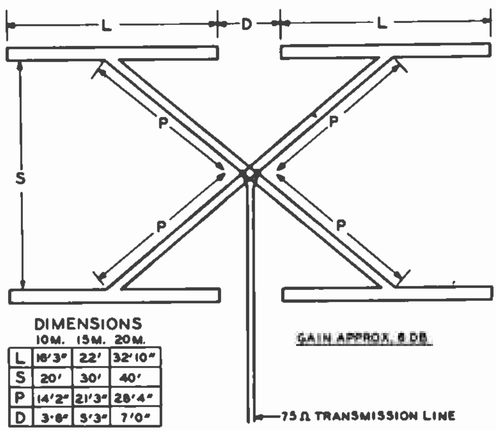
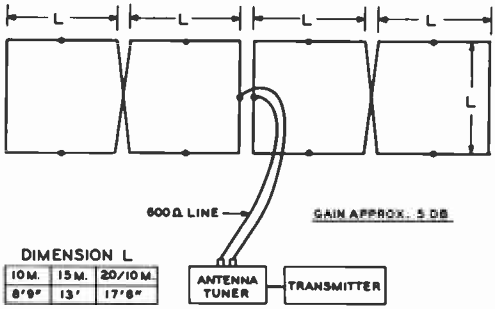


Figure 17

THE X-ARRAY FOR 28, 21, OR 14 MHz

The entire array (with the exception of the 75-ohm feedline) is constructed of 300-ohm ribbon line. Be sure phasing lines (P) are polarized correctly, as shown.



DIMENSION L

10M.	15M.	20/10M.
8'9"	13'	17'8"

Figure 18

THE DOUBLE-BRUCE ARRAY FOR 10, 15, AND 20 METERS

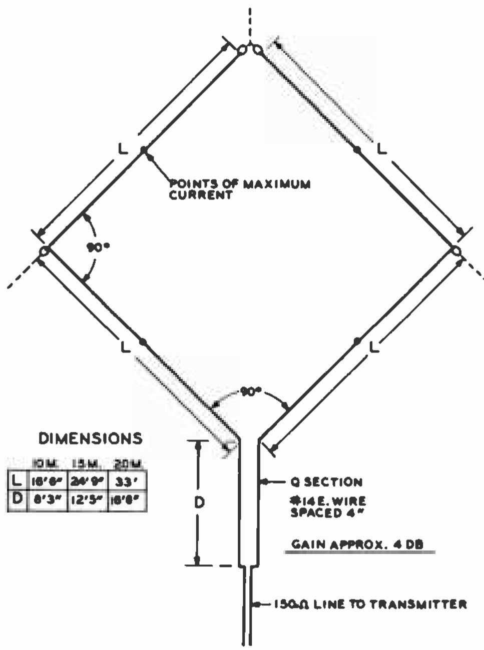
If a 600-ohm feed line is used, the 20-meter array will also perform on 10 meters as a Sterba curtain, with an approximate gain of 9 db.

maximum power at right angles to the plane of the array.

The feed impedance of the Double Bruce is about 750 ohms. The array may be fed with a quarter-wave stub made of 300-ohm ribbon line and a feedline made of 150-ohm ribbon line. Alternatively, the array may be fed directly with a wide-spaced 600-ohm transmission line (figure 18). The feedline should be brought away from the Double Bruce for a short distance before it drops downward, to prevent interaction between the feedline and the lower part of the center phasing section of the array. For best results, the bottom sections of the array should be one-half wavelength above ground.

Arrays such as the X-array and the Double Bruce are essentially high-impedance devices, and exhibit relatively broadband characteristics. They are less critical of adjustment than a parasitic array, and they work well over a wide frequency range such as is encountered on the 28- to 29.7-MHz band.

The Bi-Square Broadside Array Illustrated in figure 19 is a simple method of feeding a small broadside array. As two arrays of this type can be supported at right angles from a single pole without interaction, it offers a solution to the problem of suspending two arrays in a restricted space with a minimum of erection work. The free space directivity gain is slightly



DIMENSIONS

	10M.	15M.	20M.
L	16'6"	24'9"	33'
D	8'3"	12'5"	16'6"

Figure 19

THE BI-SQUARE BROADSIDE ARRAY

This bidirectional array is related to the Lazy H, and in spite of the oblique elements, is horizontally polarized. It has slightly less gain and directivity than the Lazy H, the free-space directivity gain being approximately 4 db. Its chief advantage is the fact that only a single pole is required for support, and two such arrays may be supported from a single pole without interaction if the planes of the elements are at right angles. A 600-ohm line may be substituted for the twin lead, and either operated as a resonant line, or made nonresonant by the incorporation of a matching stub.

less than that of a Lazy H, but is still worthwhile, being approximately 4 db over a half-wave horizontal dipole at the same average elevation.

When two *Bi-Square* arrays are suspended at right angles to each other (for general coverage) from a single pole, the Q-sections should be well separated or else symmetrically arranged in the form of a square (the diagonal conductors forming one Q-section) in order to minimize coupling between them. The same applies to the line if open construction is used instead of twin lead, but

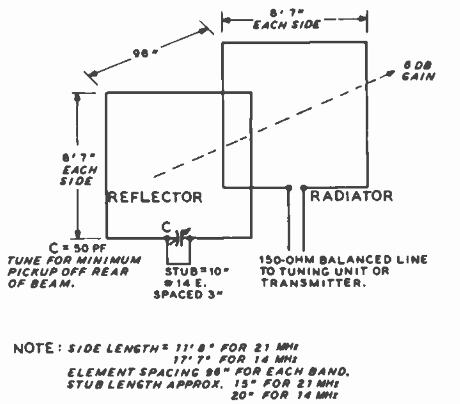


Figure 20

THE CUBICAL QUAD ANTENNA FOR THE 10-, 15-, OR 20-METER BANDS

if twin lead is used the coupling can be made negligible simply by separating the two twin-lead lines by at least two inches and twisting one twin lead so as to effect a transposition every foot or so.

When tuned feeders are employed, the Bi-Square array can be used on half frequency as an end-fire vertically polarized array, giving a slight practical DX signal gain over a vertical half-wave dipole at the same height.

A second Bi-Square serving as a reflector may be placed 0.15 wavelength behind this antenna to provide an over-all gain of 8.5 db. The reflector may be tuned by means of a quarter-wave stub which has a movable shorting bar at the bottom end.

The Cubical Quad Antenna A smaller version of the Bi-Square antenna is the *Cubical Quad* antenna. Two half waves of wire are folded into a square that is one-quarter wavelength on a side, as shown in figure 20. The array radiates a horizontally polarized signal. A reflector placed about 0.15 wavelength behind the antenna provides an over-all gain of some 6 db. A shorted stub with a paralleled tuning capacitor is used to resonate the reflector.

The Cubical Quad is fed with a 150-ohm line, and should employ some sort of antenna tuner at the transmitter end of the line if a pi-network type transmitter is used. Alternatively, a 72-ohm coaxial line may be used.

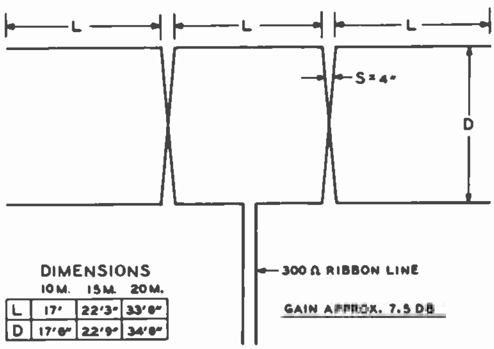
To tune the reflector, the *back* of the antenna is aimed at a nearby field-strength meter and the reflector stub capacitor is adjusted for *minimum* received signal at the operating frequency.

This antenna provides high gain for its small size, and is recommended for 28-MHz work. The elements may be made of No. 14 enameled wire, and the array may be built on a light bamboo or wood framework.

Full information on Quad antennas may be found in the handbook *All About Cubical Quad Antennas*, Radio Publications, Inc., Wilton, Conn.

The Six-Shooter Broadside Array The array of figure 21 is recommended for the 10- to 30-MHz range as a good compromise between gain, directivity, compactness, mechanical simplicity, ease of adjustment, and bandwidth, when the additional array width and greater directivity are not obtainable. The free-space directivity gain is approximately 7.5 db over one element, and the practical DX signal gain over one element at the same average elevation is of about the same magnitude when the array is sufficiently elevated. To show up to best advantage the array should be elevated sufficiently to put the lower elements well in the clear, and preferably at least 0.5 wavelength above ground.

The Bobtail Bidirectional Broadside Curtain Another application of vertical orientation of the radiating elements of an array in order to obtain

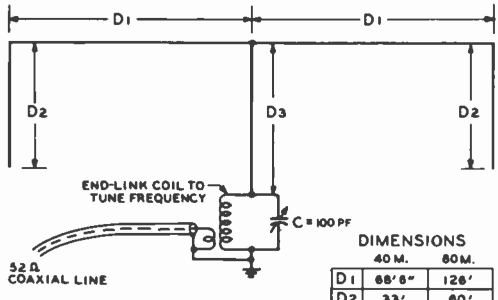


DIMENSIONS

	10 M.	15 M.	20 M.
L	17'	22'3"	33'0"
D	17'0"	22'9"	34'0"

Figure 21

THE SIX-SHOOTER BROADSIDE ARRAY



DIMENSIONS

	40 M.	80 M.
D1	68′ 6″	128′
D2	33′	60′
D3	30′ TO 38′	54′ TO 66′

Figure 22

BOBTAIL BIDIRECTIONAL BROADSIDE CURTAIN FOR THE 7-MHz OR THE 4.0-MHz AMATEUR BANDS

This simple vertically polarized array provides low angle radiation and response with comparatively low pole heights, and is very effective for DX work on the 7-MHz band or the 4.0-MHz phone band. Because of the phase relationships, radiation from the horizontal portion of the antenna is effectively suppressed. Very little current flows in the ground lead to the coupling tank; so an elaborate ground system is not required, and the length of the ground lead is not critical so long as it uses heavy wire and is reasonably short.

low-angle radiation at the lower end of the high-frequency range with low pole heights is illustrated in figure 22. When precut to the specified dimensions this single-pattern array will perform well over the 7-MHz amateur band or the 4-MHz amateur phone band. For the 4-MHz band, the required two poles need be only 70 feet high, and the array will provide a practical signal gain averaging from 7 to 10 db over a horizontal half-wave dipole utilizing the same pole height when the path length exceeds 2500 miles.

The horizontal directivity is only moderate, the beam width at the half-power points being slightly greater than that obtained from three cophased vertical radiators fed with equal currents. This is explained by the fact that the current in each of the two outer radiators of this array carries only about half as much current as the center-driven element. While this *binomial* current distribution suppresses the end-fire lobe that occurs when an odd number of parallel radiators with half-wave spacing are fed equal currents, the array still exhibits some high-angle radiation and response off the end as a result of imperfect cancellation in the flat-top portion. This is not sufficient to affect the power gain appreciably, but does degrade the discrimination somewhat.

A moderate amount of sag can be tolerated at the center of the flat top, where it connects to the driven vertical element. The poles and antenna tank should be so located with respect to each other that the driven vertical element drops approximately straight down from the flat top.

Normally the antenna tank will be located in the same room as the transmitter, to facilitate adjustment when changing frequency. In this case it is recommended that the link-coupled tank be located across the room from the transmitter if much power is used, in order to minimize r-f feedback difficulties which might occur as a result of the asymmetrical high-impedance feed. If tuning of the antenna tank from the transmitter position is desired, flexible shafting can be run from the antenna tank capacitor to a control knob at the transmitter.

The lower end of the driven element is quite "hot" if much power is used, and the lead-in insulator should be chosen with this in mind. The ground connection need not have very low resistance, as the current flowing in the ground connection is comparatively small. A stake or pipe driven a few feet in the ground will suffice. However, the ground lead should be of heavy wire and preferably the length should not exceed about 10 feet at 7 MHz or about 20 feet at 4 MHz in order to minimize reactive effects due to its inductance. If it is impossible to obtain this short a ground lead, a piece of screen or metal sheet about four feet square may be placed parallel to the earth in a convenient location and used as an artificial ground. A fairly high C/L ratio ordinarily will be required in the antenna tank in order to obtain adequate coupling and loading.

22-7 End-Fire Directivity

By spacing two half-wave dipoles, or collinear arrays, at a distance of from 0.1 to 0.25 wavelength and driving the two 180°

out of phase, directivity is obtained *through the two wires* at right angles to them. Hence, this type of bidirectional array is called *end-fire*. A better idea of end-fire directivity can be obtained by referring to figure 10.

Remember that *end-fire* refers to the radiation with *respect to the two wires* in the array rather than with respect to the array as a whole.

The vertical directivity of an end-fire bidirectional array which is oriented horizontally can be increased by placing a similar end-fire array a half wave below it, and excited in the same phase. Such an array is a combination broadside and end-fire affair.

8JK Flat-Top Beam A very effective bidirectional end-fire array is the *8JK Flat-Top Beam*. Essentially, this antenna consists of two close-spaced dipoles or collinear arrays. Because of the close spacing, it is possible to obtain the proper phase relationships in multisection flat tops by crossing the wires at the voltage loops, rather than by resorting to phasing stubs. This greatly simplifies the array. (See figure 23.) Any number of sections may be used, though the one- and two-section arrangements are the most popular. Little extra gain is obtained by using more than four sections, and trouble from phase shift may appear.

A center-fed single-section flat-top beam cut according to the table, can be used quite successfully on its second harmonic, the pattern being similar except that it is a little sharper. The single-section array can also be used on its fourth harmonic with some success, though there then will be four cloverleaf lobes, much the same as with a full-wave antenna.

If a flat-top beam is to be used on more than one band, tuned feeders are necessary.

The radiation resistance of a flat-top beam is rather low, especially when only one section is used. This means that the voltage will be high at the voltage loops. For this reason, especially good insulators should be used for best results in wet weather.

The exact lengths for the radiating elements are not especially critical, because slight deviations from the correct lengths can be compensated in the stub or tuned feeders. Proper stub adjustment is covered in Chapter Twenty-four. Suitable radiator lengths and approximate stub dimensions are given in the accompanying design table.

Figure 23 shows *top views* of eight types of flat-top beam antennas. The dimensions for using these antennas on different bands are given in the design table. The 7- and 28-MHz bands are divided into two parts, but the dimensions for either the low- or high-frequency ends of these bands will be satisfactory for use over the entire band.

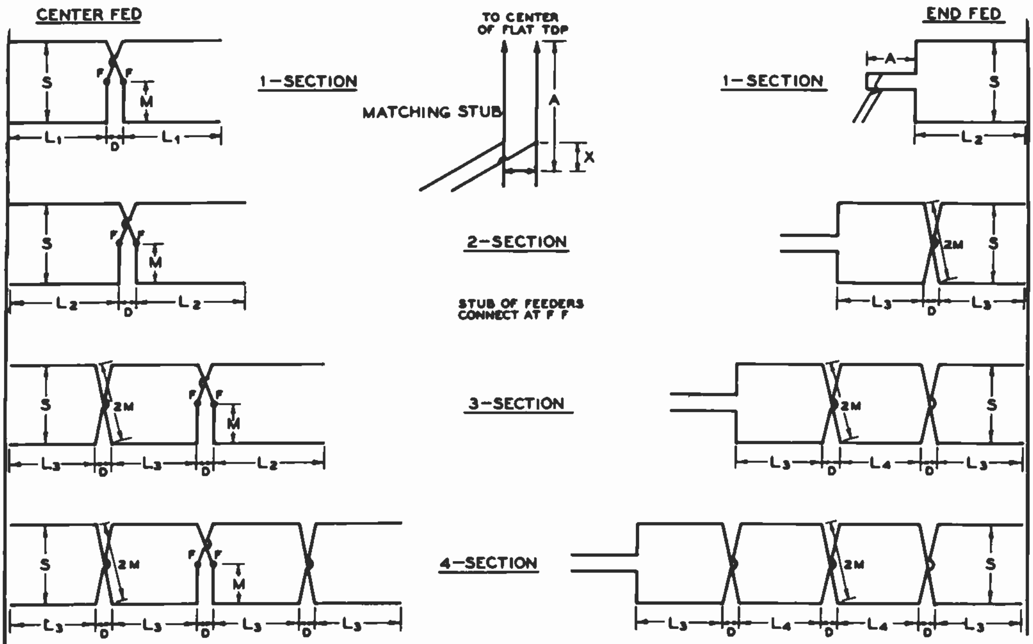
In any case, the antennas are tuned to the frequency used, by adjusting the shorting wire on the stub, or tuning the feeders, if no stub is used. The data in the table may be extended to other bands or frequencies by applying the proper factor. Thus, for 50- to 52-MHz operation, the values for 28 to 29 Mc. are divided by 1.8.

All of the antennas have a bidirectional horizontal pattern on their fundamental frequency. The maximum signal is broadside to the flat top. The single-section type has this pattern on both its fundamental frequency and second harmonic. The other types have four main lobes of radiation on the second and higher harmonics. The nominal gains of the different types over a half-wave comparison antenna are as follows: single-section, 4 db; two-section, 6 db; four-section, 8 db.

The maximum spacings given make the beams less critical in their adjustments. Up to one-quarter wave spacing may be used on the fundamental for the one-section types and also the two-section center-fed, but it is not desirable to use more than 0.15 wavelength spacing for the other types.

Although the center-fed type of flat-top generally is to be preferred because of its symmetry, the end-fed type often is convenient or desirable. For example, when a flat-top beam is used vertically, feeding from the lower end is in most cases more convenient.

If a multisection flat-top array is end-fed instead of center-fed, and tuned feeders are used, stations off the ends of the array can be worked by tying the feeders together and working the whole affair, feeders and all, as a long-wire harmonic antenna. A single-pole double-throw switch can be used for changing the feeders and directivity.



FLAT-TOP BEAM (8JK ARRAY) DESIGN DATA

Frequency	Spac-ing	S	L_1	L_2	L_3	L_4	M	D	A(1/4) approx.	A(1/2) approx.	A(3/4) approx.	X approx.
7.2-7.2 MHz	λ/8	17'4"	34'	60'	52'8"	44'	8'10"	4'	26'	60'	96'	4'
7.2-7.3	λ/8	17'0"	33'6"	59'	51'8"	43'1"	8'8"	4'	26'	59'	94'	4'
14.0-14.35	λ/8	8'8"	17'	30'	26'4"	22'	4'5"	2'	13'	30'	48'	2'
14.0-14.35	.15λ	10'5"	17'	30'	25'3"	20'	5'4"	2'	12'	29'	47'	2'
14.0-14.4	.20λ	13'11"	17'	30'	22'10"	....	7'2"	2'	10'	27'	45'	3'
14.0-14.4	λ/4	17'4"	7'	30'	20'8"	....	8'10"	2'	8'	25'	43'	4'
28.0-29.0	.15λ	5'2"	8'6"	15'	12'7"	10'	2'8"	1'6"	7'	15'	24'	1'
28.0-29.0	λ/4	8'8"	8'6"	15'	10'4"	....	4'5"	1'6"	5'	13'	22'	2'
28.7-29.7	.15λ	5'0"	8'3"	14'6"	12'2"	9'8"	2'7"	1'6"	7'	15'	23'	1'
28.7-29.7	λ/4	8'4"	8'3"	14'6"	10'0"	....	4'4"	1'6"	5'	13'	21'	2'

Dimension chart for flat-top beam antennas. The meanings of the symbols are as follows: L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, the lengths of the sides of the flap-top sections as shown. L_1 is length of the sides of single-section center-fed, L_2 single-section end-fed and 2-section center fed, L_3 4-section center-fed and end-sections of 4-section end-fed, and L_4 middle sections of 4-section end-fed.

S, the spacing between the flat-top wires.

M, the wire length from the outside to the center of each cross-over.

D, the spacing lengthwise between sections.

A (1/4), the approximate length for a quarter-wave stub.

A (1/2), the approximate length for a half-wave stub.

A (3/4), the approximate length for a three-quarter wave stub.

X, the approximate distance above the shorting wire of the stub for the connection of a 600-ohm line. This distance, as given in the table, is approximately correct only for 2-section flat-tops.

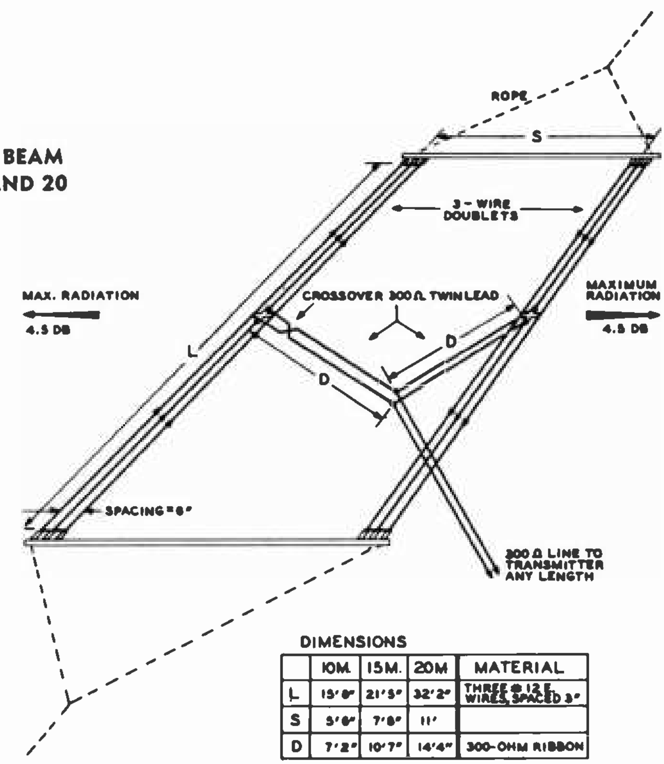
For single-section types it will be smaller and for 3- and 4-section types it will be larger.

The lengths given for a half-wave stub are applicable only to single-section center-fed flat-tops. To be certain of sufficient stub length, it is advisable to make the stub a foot or so longer than shown in the table, especially with the end-fed types. The lengths, A, are measured from the point where the stub connects to the flat-top.

Both the center and end-fed types may be used horizontally. However, where a vertical antenna is desired, the flat-tops can be turned on end. In this case, the end-fed types may be more convenient, feeding from the lower end.

Figure 24

THE TRIPLEX FLAT-TOP BEAM ANTENNA FOR 10, 15, AND 20 METERS



DIMENSIONS

	10M.	15M.	20M	MATERIAL
L	15'8"	21'5"	32'2"	THREE #12 E. WIRES, SPACED 3"
S	5'6"	7'8"	11'	
D	7'2"	10'7"	14'4"	300-OHM RIBBON

The Triplex Beam The *Triplex beam* is a modified version of the flat-top antenna which uses folded dipoles for the half wave elements of the array. The use of folded dipoles results in higher radiation resistance of the array, and a high over-all system performance. Three wire dipoles are used for the elements, and 300-ohm twin-lead is used for the two phasing sections. A recommended assembly for Triplex beams for 28, 21, and 14 MHz is shown in figure 24. The gain of a Triplex beam is about 4.5 db over a dipole.

22-8 Combination End-Fire and Broadside Arrays

Any of the end-fire arrays previously described may be stacked one above the other or placed end to end (side by side) to give greater directivity gain while maintaining a bidirectional characteristic. However, it must be kept in mind that to realize a worthwhile increase in directivity and gain while maintaining a bidirectional pattern the individual arrays must be spaced sufficiently to reduce the mutual impedances to a negligible value.

When two flat-top beams, for instance, are placed one above the other or end to end, a center spacing on the order of one wavelength is required in order to achieve a worthwhile increase in gain, or approximately 3 db.

Thus it is seen that, while maximum gain occurs with two stacked dipoles at a spacing of about 0.7 wavelength and the space directivity gain is approximately 5 db over one element under these conditions; the case of two flat-top or parasitic arrays stacked one above the other is another story. Maximum gain will occur at a greater spacing, and the gain over one array will not appreciably exceed 3 db.

When two broadside curtains are placed one ahead of the other in end-fire relationship, the aggregate mutual impedance between the two curtains is such that considerable spacing is required in order to realize a gain approaching 3 db (the required spacing being a function of the size of the curtains). While it is true that a space-directivity gain of approximately 4 db can be obtained by placing one half-wave dipole an eighth wavelength ahead of another and feeding them 180 degrees out of phase, a gain of less than 1 db is obtained when the same procedure is applied to two large broadside curtains. To obtain a gain of approximately 3 db and retain a bidirectional pattern, a spacing of many wavelengths is required between two large curtains placed one ahead of the other.

A different situation exists, however, when one driven curtain is placed ahead of an identical one and the two are phased so as to give a unidirectional pattern. When a unidirectional pattern is obtained, the gain over one curtain will be approximately 3 db regardless of the spacing. For instance, two large curtains one placed a quarter wavelength ahead of the other may have a space-directivity gain of only 0.5 db over one curtain when the two are driven 180 degrees out of phase to give a bidirectional pattern (the type of pattern obtained with a single curtain). However, if they are driven in phase quadrature (and with equal currents) the gain is approximately 3 db.

The directivity gain of a composite array also can be explained on the basis of the directivity patterns of the component arrays alone, but it entails a rather complicated picture. It is sufficient for the purpose of this discussion to generalize and simplify by saying that the greater the directivity of an end-fire array, the farther an identical array must be spaced from it in broadside relationship to obtain optimum performance; and the greater the directivity of a broadside array, the farther an identical array must be spaced from it in end-fire relationship to obtain optimum performance and retain the bidirectional characteristic.

It is important to note that while a bidirectional end-fire pattern is obtained with two driven dipoles when spaced anything under a half wavelength, and while the proper phase relationship is 180 degrees regardless of the spacing for all spacings not exceeding one half wavelength, the situation is different in the case of two curtains placed in end-fire relationship to give a bidirectional pattern. For maximum gain at zero wave angle, the curtains should be spaced an odd multiple of one-half wavelength and driven so as to be 180 degrees out of phase, or spaced an even multiple of one half wavelength and driven in the same phase. The optimum spacing and phase relationship will depend on the directivity pattern of the individual curtains used alone, and as previously noted the optimum spacing increases with the size and directivity of the component arrays.

A concrete example of a combination broadside and end-fire array is two Lazy H arrays spaced along the direction of maximum radiation by a distance of four wavelengths and fed in phase. The space-directivity gain of such an arrangement is slightly less than 9 db. However, approximately the same gain can be obtained by juxtaposing the two arrays side by side or one over the other in the same plane, so that the two combine to produce, in effect, one broadside curtain of twice the area. It is obvious that in most cases it will be more expedient to increase the area of a broadside array than to resort to a combination of end-fire and broadside directivity.

One exception, of course, is where two curtains are fed in phase quadrature to obtain a unidirectional pattern and space-directivity gain of approximately 3 db with a spacing between curtains as small as one quarter wavelength. Another exception is where very low angle radiation is desired and the maximum pole height is strictly limited. The two aforementioned Lazy H arrays when placed in endfire relationship will have a considerably lower radiation angle than when placed side by side if the array elevation is low, and therefore may *under some conditions* exhibit appreciably practical signal gain.

CHAPTER TWENTY-THREE

VHF and UHF Antennas

The *very-high-frequency* or *vhf* frequency range is defined as that range falling between 30 and 300 MHz. The *ultrahigh-frequency* or *uhf range* is defined as falling between 300 and 3000 MHz. This chapter will be devoted to the design and construction of antenna systems for operation on the amateur 50-, 144-, 235-, and 420-MHz bands. Although the basic principles of antenna operation are the same for all frequencies, the shorter physical length of a wave in this frequency range and the differing modes of signal propagation make it possible and expedient to use antenna systems different in design from those used in the range from 3 to 30 MHz.

23-1 Antenna Requirements

Any type of antenna system usable on the lower frequencies *may* be used in the vhf and uhf bands. In fact, simple nondirective half-wave or quarter-wave vertical antennas are very popular for general transmission and reception from all directions, especially for short-range work. But for serious vhf or uhf work the use of some sort of directional antenna array is a necessity. In the first place, when the transmitter power is concentrated into a narrow beam the apparent transmitter power at the receiving station is increased many times. A "billboard" array or a Sterba curtain having a gain of 16 db will make a 25-watt transmitter sound like a kilowatt at the other station. Even a much simpler and smaller three- or four-element parasitic array having a gain of 7 to 10 db will produce a marked improvement in the received signal at the other station.

However, as all vhf and uhf workers know, the most important contribution of a high-gain antenna array is in reception. If a remote station cannot be heard it obviously is impossible to make contact. The limiting factor in vhf and uhf reception is in almost every case the noise generated within the receiver itself. Atmospheric noise is almost nonexistent and ignition interference can almost invariably be reduced to a satisfactory level through the use of an effective noise limiter. Even with a grounded-grid or neutralized triode first stage in the receiver, the noise contribution of the first tuned circuit in the receiver will be relatively large. Hence it is desirable to use an antenna system which will deliver the greatest signal voltage to the first tuned circuit for a given field strength at the receiving location.

Since the field intensity being produced at the receiving location by a remote transmitting station may be assumed to be constant, the receiving antenna which intercepts the greatest amount of wave front (assuming that the polarization and directivity of the receiving antenna is proper, will be the antenna which gives the best received signal-to-noise ratio. An antenna which has two square wavelengths of effective area will pick up twice as much signal power as one which has one square wavelength area, assuming the same general type of antenna and that both are directed at the station being received. Many instances have been reported where a frequency band sounded completely dead with a simple dipole receiving antenna but when the receiver was switched to a three-element or larger array a considerable amount of activity from 80 to 160 miles distant was heard.

Angle of Radiation The useful portion of the signal in the vhf and uhf range for short- or medium-distance communication is that which is radiated at a very low angle with respect to the surface of the earth; essentially it is that signal which is radiated parallel to the surface of the earth. A vertical antenna transmits a portion of its radiation at a very low angle and is effective for this reason; its radiation is not necessarily effective simply because it is vertically polarized. A simple horizontal dipole radiates very litle low-angle energy and hence is not a satisfactory vhf or uhf radiator. Directive arrays which concentrate a major portion of the radiated signal at a low radiation angle will prove to be effective radiators whether their signal is horizontally or vertically polarized.

In all cases, the radiating system for vhf and uhf work should be as high and as much in the clear as possible. Increasing the height of the antenna system will produce a very marked improvement in the number and strength of the signals heard, regardless of the actual type of antenna used.

Transmission Lines Transmission lines to vhf and uhf antenna systems may be either of the parallel-conductor or coaxial-conductor type. Coaxial line is recommended for short runs and closely spaced open wire line for longer runs. Waveguides may be used under certain conditions for frequencies greater than perhaps 1500 MHz but their dimensions become excessively great for frequencies much below this value. Nonresonant transmission lines will be found to be considerably more efficient on these frequencies than those of the resonant type. It is wise to use the very minimum length of transmission line possible since transmission-line losses at frequencies above about 100 MHz mount very rapidly.

Open lines should preferably be spaced closer than is common for longer wavelengths, since a few inches are an appreciable fraction of a wavelength at 2 meters. Radiation from the line will be greatly reduced if 1-inch or 1½-inch spacing is used, rather than the wider spacing used in the uhf region.

Ordinary TV-type 300-ohm ribbon or the new coaxial *foamflex* line may be used on the 2-meter band for feeder lengths of about 50 feet or less. For longer runs, either the uhf or vhf TV open-wire lines may be used with good over-all efficiency. The vhf line is satisfactory for use on the amateur 420-MHz band.

Antenna Changeover It is recommended that the same antenna be used for transmitting and receiving in the vhf and uhf range. An ever-present problem in this connection, however, is the antenna changeover relay. Reflections at the antenna changeover relay become of increasing importance as the frequency of transmission is increased. When coaxial cable is used as the antenna transmission line, satisfactory coaxial antenna changeover relays with low reflection can be used.

On the 235- and 420-MHz amateur bands, the size of the antenna array becomes quite small, and it is practical to mount two identical antennas side by side. One of these antennas is used for the transmitter, and the other antenna for the receiver. Separate transmission lines are used, and the antenna relay may be eliminated.

Effect of Feed System on Radiation Angle A vertical radiator for general-coverage uhf use should be made either ¼- or ½-wavelength long. Longer vertical antennas do not have their maximum radiation at right angles to the line of the radiator (unless co-phased), and, therefore, are not practical for use where greatest possible radiation parallel to the earth is desired.

Unfortunately, a feed system which is not perfectly balanced and does some radiating, not only robs the antenna itself of that much power, but *distorts the radiation pattern of the antenna.* As a result, the pattern of a vertical radiator may be so altered that the radiation is bent upwards slightly, and the amount of power leaving the antenna parallel to the earth is greatly reduced. A vertical half-wave radiator fed at the bottom by a quarter-wave stub is a good example of this; the slight radiation from the matching section decreases the power radiated parallel to the earth by nearly 10 db.

The only cure is a feed system which does not disturb the radiation pattern of the antenna itself. This means that if a 2-wire line is used, the current and voltages must be exactly the same (though 180° out of phase) at any point on the feed line. It means that if a concentric feed line is used, there should be no current flowing on the outside of the outer conductor.

Radiator Cross Section There is no point in using aluminum tubing for a dipole on the medium frequencies. The reason is that considerable tubing would be required, and the cross section still would not be a sufficiently large fraction of a wavelength to improve the antenna bandwidth characteristics. At very high and ultrahigh frequencies, however, the radiator length is so short that the expense of large-diameter conductor is relatively small, even though copper pipe of 1-inch cross section is used. With such conductors, the antenna will tune much more broadly, and often a broad resonance characteristic is desirable. This is particularly true when an antenna or array is to be used over an entire amateur band.

It should be kept in mind that with such large-cross-section radiators, the resonant length of the radiator will be somewhat shorter, being only slightly greater than 0.90 of a half wavelength for a dipole when large-diameter pipe is used above 100 MHz.

Insulation The matter of insulation is of prime importance at very-high frequencies. Many insulators that have very low losses as high as 30 MHz show up rather poorly at frequencies above 100 MHz. Even the low-loss ceramics are none too good where the r-f voltage is high. One of the best and most practical insulators for use at this frequency is polystyrene. It has one disadvantage, however, in that it is subject to fracture and to deformation in the presence of heat.

TABLE OF WAVELENGTHS

Frequency in MHz	¼ Wave Free Space	¼ Wave Antenna	½ Wave Free Space	½ Wave Antenna
50.0	59.1	55.5	118.1	111.0
50.5	58.5	55.0	116.9	109.9
51.0	57.9	54.4	115.9	108.8
51.5	57.4	53.9	114.7	107.8
52.0	56.8	53.4	113.5	106.7
52.5	56.3	52.8	112.5	105.7
53.0	55.7	52.4	111.5	104.7
54.0	54.7	51.4	109.5	102.8
144	20.5	19.2	41.0	38.5
145	20.4	19.1	40.8	38.3
146	20.2	18.9	40.4	38.0
147	20.0	18.8	40.0	37.6
148	19.9	18.6	39.9	37.2
235	12.6	11.8	25.2	23.6
236	12.5	11.8	25.1	23.5
237	12.5	11.7	25.0	23.5
238	12.4	11.7	24.9	23.4
239	12.4	11.6	24.8	23.3
240	12.3	11.6	24.6	23.2
420	7.05	6.63	14.1	13.25
425	6.95	6.55	13.9	13.1
430	6.88	6.48	13.8	12.95

All dimensions are in inches. Lengths have in most cases been rounded off to three significant figures. "½-Wave Free-Space" column shown above should be used with Lecher wires for frequency measurement.

It is common practice to design vhf and uhf antenna systems so that the various radiators are supported only at points of relatively low voltage; the best insulation, obviously, is air. The voltages on properly operated untuned feed lines are not high, and the question of insulation is not quite so important, though insulation still should be of good grade.

Antenna Polarization Commercial broadcasting in the U.S.A. for both frequency modulation and television in the vhf range has been standardized on horizontal polarization. One of the main reasons for this standardization is the fact that ignition interference is reduced through the use of a horizontally polarized receiving antenna. Amateur practice, however, is divided between horizontal and vertical polarization in the vhf and uhf range. Mobile stations are usually vertically polarized due to the physical limitations imposed by the automobile antenna installation. Most of the stations doing intermittent or occasional work on these frequencies use a simple ground-plane vertical antenna for both transmission and reception. However, those stations doing serious work and striving for maximum-range contacts on the 50- and

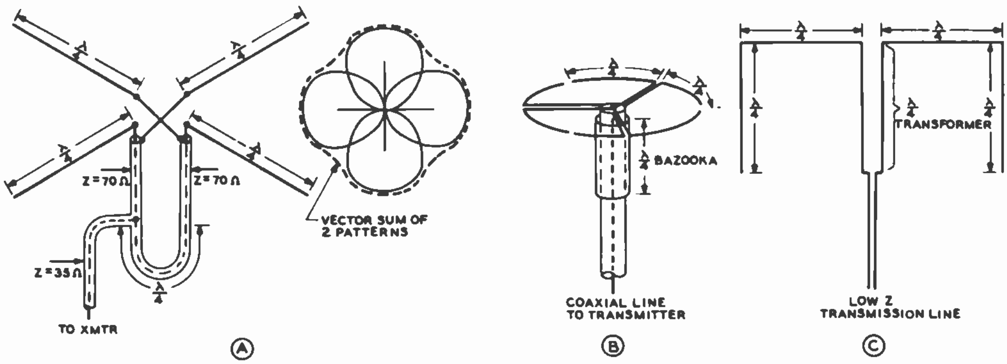


Figure 1

THREE NONDIRECTIONAL HORIZONTALLY POLARIZED ANTENNAS

144-MHz bands almost invariably use horizontal polarization.

Experience has shown that there is a great attenuation in signal strength when using crossed polarization (transmitting antenna with one polarization and receiving antenna with the other) for all normal ground-wave contacts on these bands. When contacts are being made through sporadic-*E* reflection, however, the use of crossed polarization seems to make no discernible difference in signal strength. So the operator of a station doing vhf work (particularly on the 50-MHz band) is faced with a problem: If contacts are to be made with all stations doing work on the same band, provision must be made for operation on both horizontal and vertical polarization. This problem has been solved in many cases through the construction of an antenna array that may be revolved in the plane of polarization in addition to being capable of rotation in the azimuth plane.

An alternate solution to the problem which involves less mechanical construction is simply to install a good ground-plane vertical antenna for all vertically-polarized work, and then to use a multielement horizontally polarized array for DX work.

23-2 Simple Horizontally Polarized Antennas

Antenna systems which do not concentrate radiation at the very low elevation angles are not recommended for vhf and uhf work. It is for this reason that the horizontal dipole and horizontally disposed collinear arrays are generally unsuitable for work on these frequencies. Arrays using broadside or end-fire elements do concentrate radiation at low elevation angles and are recommended for vhf work. Arrays such as the lazy H, Sterba curtain, flat-top beam, and arrays with parasitically excited elements are recommended for this work. Dimensions for the first three types of arrays may be determined from the data given in the previous chapter, and reference may be made to the *Table of Wavelengths* given in this chapter.

Arrays using vertically stacked horizontal dipoles, such as are used by commercial television and f-m stations, are capable of giving high gain *without* a sharp horizontal radiation pattern. If sets of crossed dipoles, as shown in figure 1A, are fed 90° out of phase the resulting system is called a *turnstile* antenna. The 90° phase difference between sets of dipoles may be obtained by feeding one set of dipoles with a feed line which is one-quarter wave longer than the feed line to the other set of dipoles. The field strength broadside to one of the dipoles is equal to the field from that dipole alone. The field strength at a point at any other angle is equal to the vector sum of the fields from the two dipoles at that angle. A nearly circular horizontal pattern is produced by this antenna.

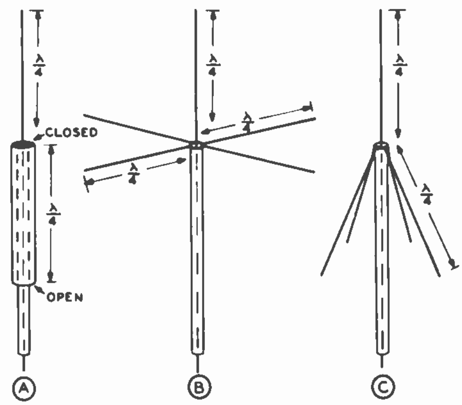


Figure 2

THREE VERTICALLY POLARIZED LOW-ANGLE RADIATORS

Shown at A is the "sleeve" or "hypodermic" type of radiator. At B is shown the ground-plane vertical, and C shows a modification of this antenna system which increases the feed-point impedance to a value such that the system may be fed directly from a coaxial line with no standing waves on the feed line.

A second antenna producing a uniform, horizontally polarized pattern is shown in figure 1B. This antenna employs three dipoles bent to form a circle. All dipoles are excited in phase, and are center fed. A bazooka is included in the system to prevent unbalance in the coaxial feed system.

A third nondirectional antenna is shown in figure 1C. This simple antenna is made of two half-wave elements, of which the end quarter wavelength of each is bent back 90 degrees. The pattern from this antenna is very much like that of the turnstile antenna. The field from the two quarter-wave sections that are bent back are additive because they are 180 degrees out of phase and are a half wavelength apart. The advantage of this antenna is the simplicity of its feed system and construction.

23-3 Simple Vertical-Polarized Antennas

For general coverage with a single antenna, a single vertical radiator is commonly employed. A two-wire open transmission line is not suitable for use with this type antenna, and coaxial polyethylene feed line such as RG-8/U is to be recommended. Three practical methods of feeding the radiator with concentric line, with a minimum of current induced in the outside of the line, are shown in figure 2. Antenna A is known as the *sleeve antenna,* the lower half of the radiator being a large piece of pipe up through which the concentric feed line is run. At B is shown the ground-plane vertical, and at C a modification of this latter antenna.

The radiation resistance of the ground-plane vertical is approximately 30 ohms, which is not a standard impedance for coaxial line. To obtain a good match, the first quarter wavelength of feeder may be of 52 ohms surge impedance, and the remainder of the line of approximately 75 ohms impedance. Thus, the first quarter-wave section of line is used as a matching transformer, and a good match is obtained.

In actual practice the antenna would consist of a quarter-wave rod, mounted by means of insulators atop a pole or pipe mast. Elaborate insulation is not required, as the voltage at the lower end of the quarter-wave radiator is very low. Self-supporting rods from 0.25 to 0.28 wavelength are extended out, as shown in the illustration, and connected together. Since the point of connection is effectively at ground potential, no insulation is required; the horizontal rods may be bolted directly to the supporting pole or mast, even if of metal. The coaxial line should be of the low-loss type especially designed for vhf use. The shield connects to the junction of the radials, and the inner conductor to the bottom end of the vertical radiator. An antenna of this type is moderately simple to construct and will give a good account of itself when fed at the lower end of the radiator directly by the 52-ohm RG-8/U coaxial cable. Theoretically the standing-wave ratio will be approximately 1.5-to-1 but in practice this moderate SWR produces no deleterious effects.

The modification shown in figure 2C permits matching to a standard 50- or 70-ohm flexible coaxial cable without a linear transformer. If the lower rods hug the line and supporting mast rather closely, the feed-point impedance is about 70 ohms. If they are bent out to form an angle of about 30°

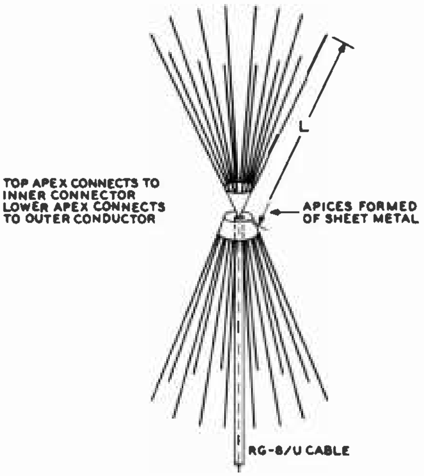


Figure 3

THE DOUBLE SKELETON CONE ANTENNA

A skeleton cone has been substituted for the single element radiator of figure 2C. This greatly increases the bandwidth. If at least 10 elements are used for each skeleton cone and the angle of revolution and element length are optimized, a low SWR can be obtained over a frequency range of at least two octaves. To obtain this order of bandwidth, element length L should be approximately 0.2 wavelength at the lower frequency end of the band, and the angle of revolution optimized for the lowest maximum SWR within the frequency range to be covered. A greater improvement in the impedance-frequency characteristic can be achieved by adding elements than by increasing the diameter of the elements. With only 3 elements per "cone" and a much smaller angle of revolution a low SWR can be obtained over a frequency range of approximately 1.3 to 1.0 when the element lengths are optimized.

with the support pipe the impedance is about 50 ohms.

The number of radial legs used in a ground-plane antenna of either type has an important effect on the feed-point impedance and on the radiation characteristics of the antenna system. Experiment has shown that three radials is the minimum number that should be used, and that increasing the number of radials above six adds substantially nothing to the effectiveness of the antenna and has no effect on the feed-point impedance. Measurement shows, however, that the radials should be slightly longer than one-quarter wave for best results. A length of 0.28 wavelength has been found to be the optimum value. This means that the radials for a 50-MHz ground-plane vertical antenna should be 65" in length.

Double Skeleton Cone Antenna The bandwidth of the antenna of figure 2C can be increased considerably by substituting several space-tapered rods for the single radiating element, so that the "radiator" and skirt are similar. If a sufficient number of rods are used in the skeleton cones and the angle of revolution is optimized for the particular type of feed line used, this antenna exhibits a very low SWR over a 2-to-1 frequency range. Such an arangement is illustrated schematically in figure 3.

A Nondirectional Vertical Array Half-wave elements may be stacked in the vertical plane to provide a nondirectional pattern with good horizontal gain. An array made up of four half-wave vertical elements is shown in figure 4A. This antenna provides a circular pattern with a gain of about 4.5 db over a vertical dipole. It may be fed with 300-ohm TV-type line. The feed line should be conducted in such a way that the vertical portion of the line is at least one-half wavelength away from the vertical antenna elements. A suitable mechanical assembly is shown in figure 4B for the 144- and 235-MHz amateur bands.

23-4 The Discone Antenna

The *Discone* antenna is a vertically polarized omnidirectional radiator which has very broad band characteristics and permits a simple, rugged structure. This antenna presents a substantially uniform feed-point impedance, suitable for direct connection of a coaxial line, over a range of several octaves. Also, the vertical pattern is suitable for ground-wave work over several octaves, the gain varying only slightly over a very wide frequency range.

A Discone antenna suitable for multiband amateur work in the uhf/vhf range is shown schematically in figure 5. The distance (D) should be made approximately equal to a free-space quarter wavelength at the lowest operating frequency. The antenna then will

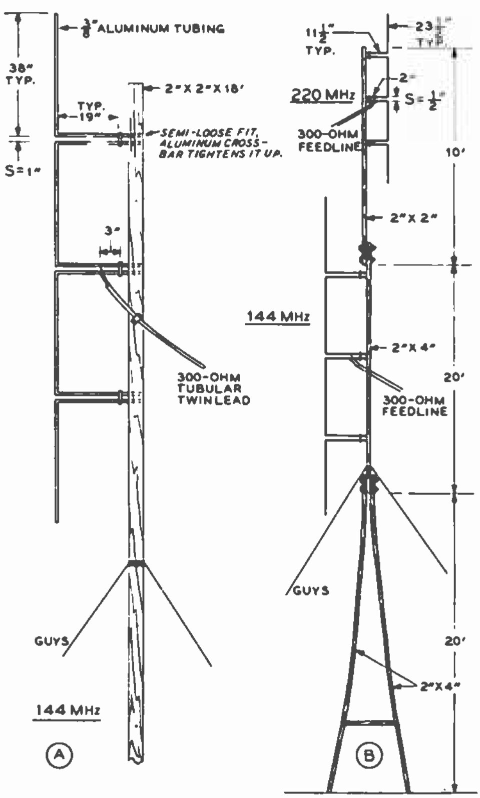


Figure 4

NONDIRECTIONAL ARRAYS FOR 144 AND 235 MHz

On right is shown a two-band installation. For portable use, the whole system may easily be dissembled and carried on a luggage rack atop a car.

perform well over a frequency range of at least 8 to 1. At certain frequencies within this range the vertical pattern will tend to rise slightly, causing a slight reduction in gain at zero angular elevation, but the reduction is very slight.

Below the frequency at which the slant height of the conical skirt is equal to a free-space quarter wavelength the standing-wave ratio starts to climb, and below a frequency approximately 20 percent lower than this the standing-wave ratio climbs very rapidly. This is termed the *cutoff frequency* of the antenna. By making the slant height approximately equal to a free-space quarter wavelength at the lowest frequency employed (refer to Chart 1), an SWR of less than 1.5 will be obtained throughout the operating range of the antenna.

The Discone antenna may be considered as a cross between an electromagnetic horn and an inverted ground-plane unipole antenna. It looks to the feed line like a properly terminated high-pass filter.

Construction Details The top disc and the conical skirt may be fabricated either from sheet metal, screen (such as "hardware cloth"), or 12 or more "spine" radials. If screen is used, a supporting framework of rod or tubing will be necessary for mechanical strength except at the higher frequencies. If spines are used, they should be terminated on a stiff ring for mechanical strength, except at the higher frequencies.

The top disc is supported by means of three insulating pillars fastened to the skirt. Either polystyrene or low-loss ceramic is suitable for the purpose. The apex of the conical skirt is grounded to the supporting

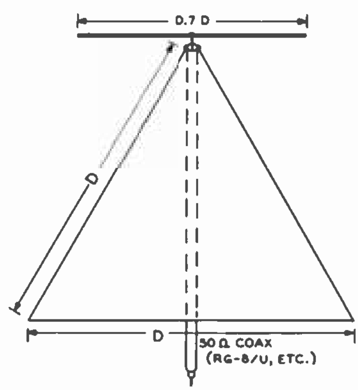


Figure 5

THE DISCONE BROADBAND RADIATOR

This antenna system radiates a vertically polarized wave over a very wide frequency range. The "disc" may be made of solid metal sheet, a group of radials, or wire screen; the "cone" may best be constructed by forming a sheet of thin aluminum. A single antenna may be used for operation on the 50-, 144-, and 220-MHz amateur bands. The dimension D is determined by the lowest frequency to be employed, and is given in Chart 1.

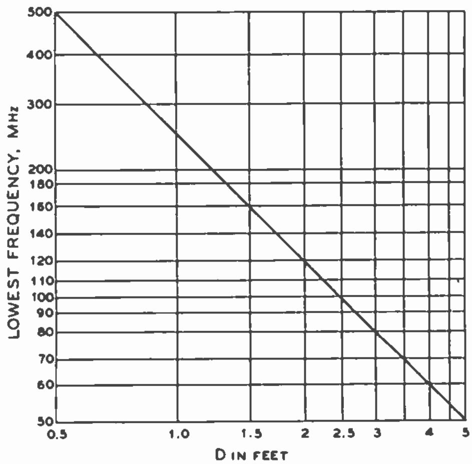


CHART 1

DESIGN CHART FOR THE DISCONE ANTENNA

mast and to the outer conductor of the coaxial line. The line is run down through the supporting mast. An alternative arrangement, one suitable for certain mobile applications, is to fasten the base of the skirt directly to an effective ground plane such as the top of an automobile.

23-5 Helical Beam Antennas

Most vhf and uhf antennas are either vertically polarized or horizontally polarized (plane polarization). However, *circularly* polarized antennas having interesting characteristics which may be useful for certain applications. The installation of such an antenna can effectively solve the problem of horizontal versus vertical polarization.

A circularly polarized wave has its energy divided equally between a vertically polarized component and a horizontally polarized component, the two being 90 degrees out of phase. The circularly polarized wave may be either "left handed" or "right handed," depending on whether the vertically polarized component leads or lags the horizontal component.

A circularly polarized antenna will respond to any plane polarized wave whether horizontally polarized, vertically polarized, or diagonally polarized. Also, a circular polarized wave can be received on a plane polarized antenna, regardless of the polarization of the latter.

When using circularly polarized antennas at *both* ends of the circuit, however, both must be left handed or both must be right handed. This offers some interesting possibilities with regard to reduction of interference. At the time of writing, there has been no standardization of the "twist" for general amateur work.

Perhaps the simplest antenna configuration for a directional beam antenna having circular polarization is the *helical beam* which consists simply of a helix working against a ground plane and fed with coaxial line. In the uhf and the upper vhf range the physical dimensions are sufficiently small to permit construction of a rotatable structure without much difficulty.

When the dimensions are optimized, the characteristics of the helical beam antenna are such as to qualify it as a broadband antenna. An optimized helical beam shows little variation in the pattern of the main lobe and a fairly uniform feed-point impedance averaging approximately 125 ohms over a frequency range of as much as 1.7

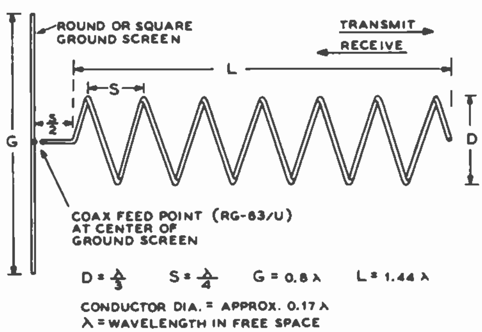


Figure 6

THE HELICAL BEAM ANTENNA

This type of directional antenna system gives excellent performance over a frequency range of 1.7 to 1.8 to 1. Its dimensions are such that it is ordinarily not practical, however, for use as a rotatable array on frequencies below about 100 MHz. The center conductor of the feed line should pass through the ground screen for connection to the feed point. The outer conductor of the coaxial line should be grounded to the ground screen.

to 1. The direction of "electrical twist" (right or left handed) depends on the direction in which the helix is wound.

A six-turn helical beam is shown schematically in figure 6. The dimensions shown will give good performance over a frequency range of plus or minus 20 percent of the design frequency. This means that the dimensions are not especially critical when the array is to be used at a single frequency or over a narrow band of frequencies, such as an amateur band. At the design frequency the beam width is about 50 degrees and the power gain about 12 db, referred to a non-directional circularly polarized antenna.

The Ground Screen For the frequency range 100 to 500 MHz a suitable ground screen can be made from "chicken wire" poultry netting of 1-inch mesh, fastened to a round or square frame of either metal or wood. The netting should be of the type that is galvanized *after* weaving. A small, sheet-metal ground plate of diameter equal to approximately D/2 should be centered on the screen and soldered to it. Tin, galvanized iron, or sheet copper is suitable. The outer conductor of the RG-63/U (125-ohm) coax is connected to this plate, and the inner conductor contacts the helix through a hole in the center of the plate. The end of the coax should be taped with *Scotch* electrical tape to keep water out.

The Helix It should be noted that the beam proper consists of six full turns. The start of the helix is spaced a distance of S/2 from the ground screen, and the conductor goes directly from the center of the ground screen to the start of the helix.

Aluminum tubing in the 2014 alloy grade is suitable for the helix. Alternatively, lengths of the relatively soft aluminum electrical conduit may be used. In the vhf range it will be necessary to support the helix on either two or four wooden longerons in order to achieve sufficient strength. The longerons should be of the smallest cross section which provides sufficient rigidity, and should be given several coats of varnish. The ground plane butts against the longerons and the whole assembly is supported from the balance point if it is to be rotated.

Aluminum tubing in the larger diameters ordinarily is not readily available in lengths greater than 12 feet. In this case several lengths can be spliced by means of short telescoping sections and sheet-metal screws.

The tubing is closewound on a drum and then spaced to give the specified pitch. Note that the length of one complete turn when spaced is somewhat greater than the circumference of a circle having the diameter D.

Broad-Band 144- to 225-MHz Helical Beam A highly useful vhf helical beam which will receive signals with good gain over the complete frequency range from 144 through 255 MHz may be constructed by using the following dimensions (180 MHz design center):

D	22 in.
S	16½ in.
G	53 in.
Tubing o.d.	1 in.

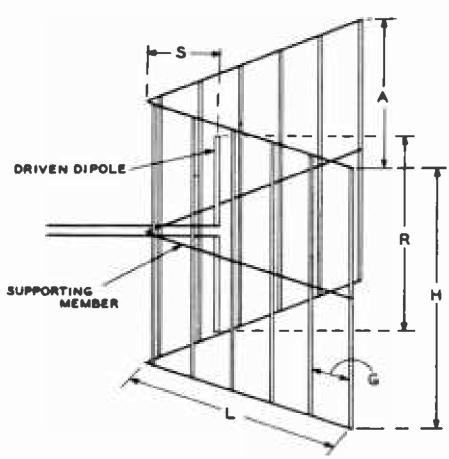


Figure 7

CONSTRUCTION OF THE CORNER REFLECTOR ANTENNA

Such an antenna is capable of giving high gain with a minimum of complexity in the radiating system. It may be used either with horizontal or vertical polarization. Design data for the antenna is given in the Corner-Reflector Design Table.

The D and S dimensions are to the center of the tubing. These dimensions must be held rather closely, since the range from 144 through 255 MHz represents just about the practical limit of coverage of this type of antenna system.

High-Band TV Coverage Note that an array constructed with the above dimensions will give unusually good high-band TV reception in addition to covering the 144- and 220-MHz amateur bands and the taxi and police services.

On the 144-MHz band the beam width is approximately 60 degrees to the half-power points, while the power gain is approximately 11 db over a nondirectional circularly polarized antenna. For high-band TV coverage the gain will be 12 to 14 db, with a beam width of about 50 degrees, and on the 220-MHz amateur band the beam width will be about 40 degrees with a power gain of approximately 15 db.

The antenna system will receive vertically polarized or horizontally polarized signals with equal gain over its entire frequency range. Conversely, it will transmit signals over the same range, which then can be received with equal strength on either horizontally polarized or vertically polarized receiving antennas. The standing-wave ratio will be very low over the complete frequency range if RG-63/U coaxial feed line is used.

23-6 The Corner-Reflector and Horn-Type Antennas

The corner-reflector antenna is a good directional radiator for the vhf and uhf region. The antenna may be used with the radiating element vertical, in which case the directivity is in the horizontal or azimuth plane, or the system may be used with the driven element horizontal, in which case the radiation is horizontally polarized, and most of the directivity is in the vertical plane. With the antenna used as a horizontally polarized radiating system the array is a very good low-angle beam array although the nose of the horizontal pattern is still quite sharp. When the radiator is oriented vertically the corner reflector operates very satisfactorily as a direction-finding antenna.

Design data for the corner-reflector antenna is given in figure 7 and in the chart *Corner-Reflector Design Data.* The planes which make up the reflecting corner may be made of solid sheets of copper or aluminum for the uhf bands, although spaced wires with the ends soldered together at top and bottom may be used as the reflector on the lower frequencies. Copper screen may also be used for the reflecting planes.

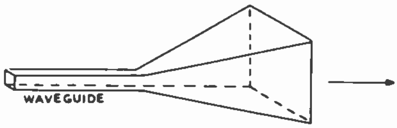
The values of spacing given in the corner-reflector chart have been chosen such that the center impedance of the driven element would be approximately 70 ohms. This means that the element may be fed directly with 70-ohm coaxial line, or a quarter-wave matching transformer such as a Q-section may be used to provide an impedance match between the center impedance of the element and a 460-ohm line constructed of No. 12 wire spaced 2 inches.

In many uhf antenna systems, waveguide transmission lines are terminated by *pyramidal horn* antennas. These horn antennas (figure 8A) will transmit and receive either horizontally or vertically polarized waves. The use of waveguides at 144 and 235 MHz, however, is out of the question because of the relatively large dimensions needed for a waveguide operating at these low frequencies.

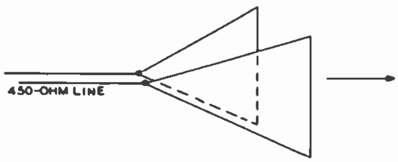
CORNER-REFLECTOR DESIGN DATA

Corner Angle	Freq. Band, MHz	R	S	H	A	L	G	Feed Imped.	Approx. Gain, db
90	50	110"	82"	140"	200"	230"	18"	72	10
60	50	110"	115"	140"	230"	230"	18"	70	12
60	144	38"	40"	48"	100"	100"	5"	70	12
60	220	24.5"	25"	30"	72"	72"	3"	70	12
60	420	13"	14"	18"	36"	36"	screen	74	12

NOTE: Refer to figure 7 for construction of corner-reflector antenna.



Ⓐ UHF HORN ANTENNA

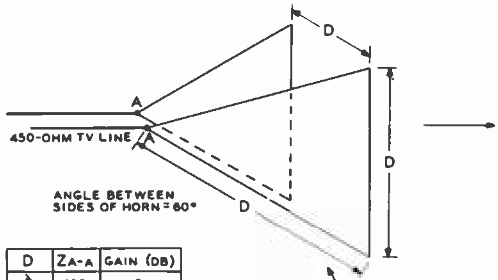


Ⓑ VHF HORIZONTALLY POLARIZED HORN

Figure 8

TWO TYPES OF HORN ANTENNAS

The "two-sided horn" of Figure 8B may be fed by means of an open-wire transmission line.



D	Z_{A-A}	GAIN (DB)
$\frac{\lambda}{4}$	400	3
λ	420	9
2λ	390	15

Figure 9

THE 60° HORN ANTENNA FOR USE ON FREQUENCIES ABOVE 144 MHz

A modified type of horn antenna may still be used on these frequencies, since only one particular plane of polarization is of interest to the amateur. In this case, the horn antenna can be simplified to two triangular sides of the pyramidal horn. When these two sides are insulated from each other, direct excitation at the apex of the horn by a two-wire transmission line is possible.

In a normal pyramidal horn, all four triangular sides are covered with conducting material, but when horizontal polarization alone is of interest (as in amateur work) only the *vertical* areas of the horn need be used. If vertical polarization is required, only the *horizontal* areas of the horn are employed. In either case, the system is unidirectional, away from the apex of the horn. A typical horn of this type is shown in figure 8B. The two metallic sides of the horn are insulated from each other, and the sides of the horn are made of small mesh "chicken wire" or copper window screening.

A pyramidal horn is essentially a high-pass device whose low-frequency cutoff is reached when a side of the horn is ½ wavelength. It will work up to infinitely high frequencies, the gain of the horn increasing by 6 db every time the operating frequency is doubled. The power gain of such a horn compared to a half-wave dipole at frequencies higher than cutoff is:

$$\text{Power gain (db)} = \frac{8.4\, A^2}{\lambda^2}$$

where A is the frontal area of the mouth of the horn. For the 60-degree horn shown in figure 8B the formula simplifies to:

Power gain (db) $= 8.4\, D^2$, when D is experssed in terms of wavelength.

When D is equal to one wavelength, the power gain of the horn is approximately 9 db. The gain and feed-point impedance of the 60-degree horn are shown in figure 9. A 450-ohm open-wire TV-type line may be used to feed the horn.

23-7 VHF Horizontal Rhombic Antenna

For vhf transmission and reception in a fixed direction, a horizontal *rhombic* permits 10 to 16 db gain with a simpler construction than does a phased dipole array, and has the further advantage of being useful over a wide frequency range.

Except at the upper end of the vhf range a rhombic array having a worthwhile gain is too large to be rotated. However, in locations 75 to 150 miles from a large metropolitan area a rhombic array is ideally suited for working into the city on extended (horizontally polarized) ground wave while at

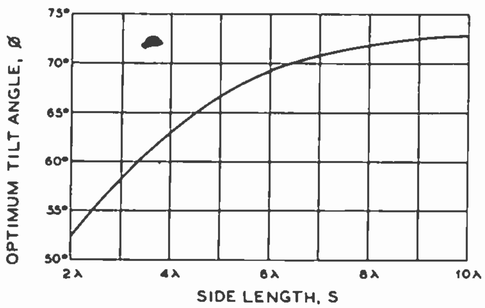


Figure 10

VHF RHOMBIC ANTENNA DESIGN CHART

The optimum tilt angle (see figure 11) for "zero-angle" radiation depends on the length of the sides.

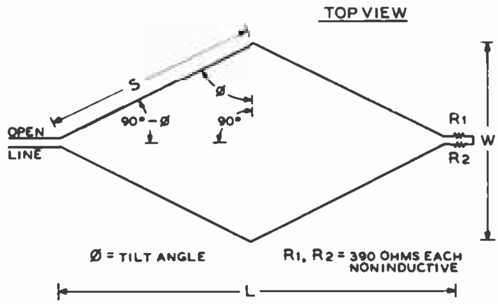


Figure 11

VHF RHOMBIC ANTENNA CONSTRUCTION

the same time making an ideal antenna for TV reception.

The useful frequency range of a vhf rhombic array is about 2 to 1, or about plus 40% and minus 30% from the *design frequency*. This coverage is somewhat less than that of a high-frequency rhombic used for sky-wave communication. For ground-wave transmission or reception the only effective vertical angle is that of the horizon, and a frequency range greater than 2 to 1 cannot be covered with a rhombic array without an excessive change in the vertical angle of maximum radiation or response.

The dimensions of a vhf rhombic array are determined from the design frequency and figure 10, which shows the proper *tilt angle* (see figure 11) for a given leg length. The gain of a rhombic array increases with leg length. There is not much point in constructing a vhf rhombic array with legs shorter than about 4 wavelengths, and the beam width begins to become excessively sharp for leg lengths greater than about 8 wavelengths. A leg length of 6 wavelengths is a good compromise between beam width and gain.

The tilt angle given in figure 10 is based on a wave angle of zero degrees. For leg lengths of 4 wavelengths or longer, it will be necessary to elongate the array a few percent (pulling in the sides slightly) if the horizon elevation exceeds about 3 degrees.

Table I gives dimensions for two dual purpose rhombic arrays. One covers the 6-meter amateur band and the "low" television band. The other covers the 2-meter amateur band, the "high" television band, and the 1¼-meter amateur band. The gain is approximately 12 db over a matched half wave dipole and the beam width is about 6 degrees.

The Feed Line The recommended feed line is an open-wire line having a surge impedance between 450 and 600 ohms. With such a line the SWR will be less than 2 to 1. A line with two-inch spacing is suitable for frequencies below 100 MHz, but one-inch spacing is recommended for higher frequencies.

The Termination If the array is to be used only for reception, a suitable termination consists of two 390-ohm carbon resistors in series. If 2-watt resistors are employed, this termination also is suit-

	6 METERS AND LOW-BAND TV	2 METERS, HIGH-BAND TV, AND 1¼ METERS
S (side)	90′	32′
L (length)	166′ 10″	59′ 4″
W (width)	67′ 4″	23′ 11″
S = 6 wavelengths at design frequency Tilt angle = 68°		

TABLE 1.

DIMENSIONS FOR TWO DUAL-PURPOSE RHOMBIC ARRAYS

able for transmitter outputs of 10 watts or less. For higher powers, however, resistors having greater dissipation with negligible reactance in the upper vhf range are not readily available.

For powers up to several hundred watts a suitable termination consists of a "lossy" line consisting of stainless-steel wire (corresponding to No. 24 or 26 gauge) spaced 2 inches, which in turn is terminated by two 390-ohm 2-watt carbon resistors. The dissipative line should be at least 6 wavelengths long.

23-8 Multielement VHF Beam Antennas

The rotary multielement beam is undoubtedly the most popular type of vhf antenna in use. In general, the design, assembly and tuning of these antennas follows a pattern similar to the larger types of rotary beam antennas used on the lower-frequency amateur bands. The characteristics of these low-frequency beam antennas are discussed in the next chapter of this Handbook, and the information contained in that chapter applies in general to the vhf beam antennas discussed herewith.

A Simple Three Element Beam Antenna The simplest vhf beam for the beginner is the three-element *Yagi* array illustrated in figure 12. Dimensions are given for Yagis cut for the 2-meter and 1¼-meter bands. The supporting boom for the Yagi may be made from a smoothed piece of 1" × 2" wood. The wood should be reasonably dry and should be painted to prevent warpage from exposure to sun and rain. The director and reflector are cut from lengths of ¼" copper tubing, obtainable from any appliance store that does service work on refrigerators. They should be cut to length as noted in figure 12. The elements should then be given a coat of aluminum paint. Two small holes are drilled at the center of the reflector and director and these elements are bolted to the wood boom by means of two 1-inch wood screws. These screws should be of the plated, or rustproof variety.

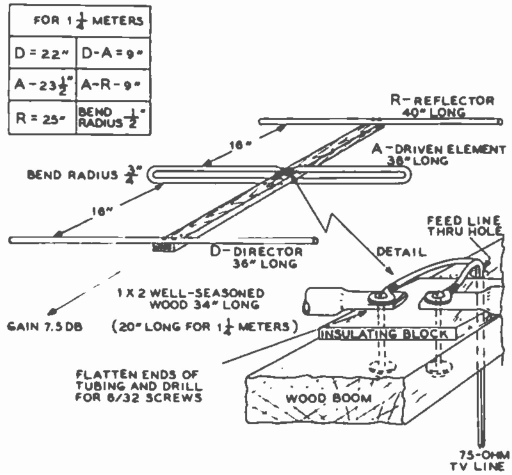


Figure 12

SIMPLE 3-ELEMENT BEAM FOR 2 AND 1¼ METERS

The driven element is made of a 78" length of ¼" copper tubing, the ends bent back to form a folded dipole. If the tubing is packed with fine sand and the bending points heated over a torch, no trouble will be had in the bending process. If the tubing does collapse when it is bent, the break may be repaired with solder and a heavy-duty soldering iron.

The driven element is next attached to the center of the wood boom, mounted atop a small insulating plate made of bakelite, micarta, or some other nonconducting material. It is held in place in the same manner as the parasitic elements. The two free ends of the folded dipole are hammered flat and drilled for a 6-32 bolt. These bolts pass through both the insulating block and the boom, and hold the free tips of the element in place.

A length of 75-ohm twin lead TV-type line should be used with this beam antenna. It is connected to each of the free ends of the folded dipole. If the antenna is mounted in the vertical plane, the 75-ohm line should be brought away from the antenna for a distance of four to six feet before it drops down the tower to lessen interaction between the antenna elements and the feed

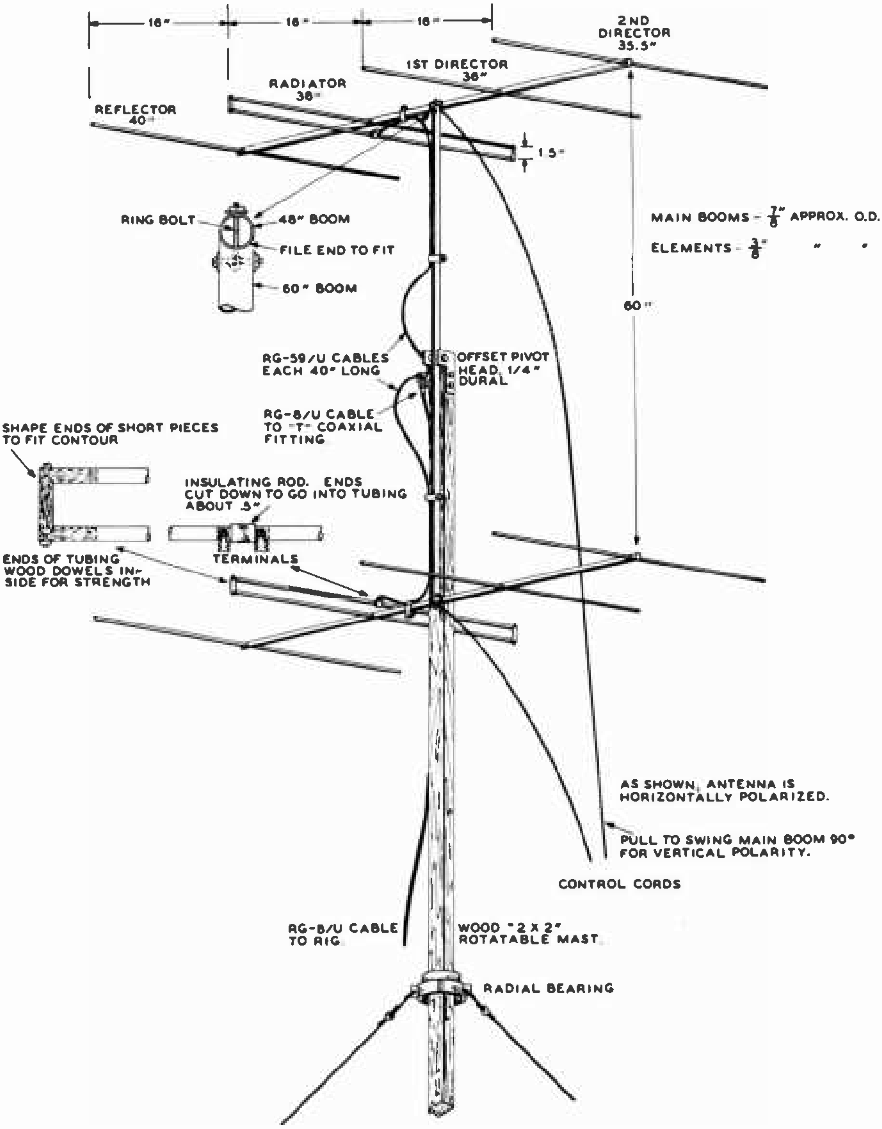


Figure 13
CONSTRUCTION DRAWING OF AN EIGHT-ELEMENT TILTABLE 144-MHz ARRAY

line. The complete antenna is light enough to be turned by a TV rotator.

A simple Yagi antenna of this type will provide a gain of 7 db over the entire 2-meter or 1¼-meter band, and is highly recommended as an "easy-to-build" beam involving very little expense for the novice or beginner.

An 8-Element "Tiltable" Array for 144 MHz

Figures 13 and 14 illustrate an 8-element rotary array for use on the 144-MHz amateur band. This array can be tilted to obtain either horizontal or vertical polarization. It is necessary that the transmitting and receiving station use the same polarization for the ground-

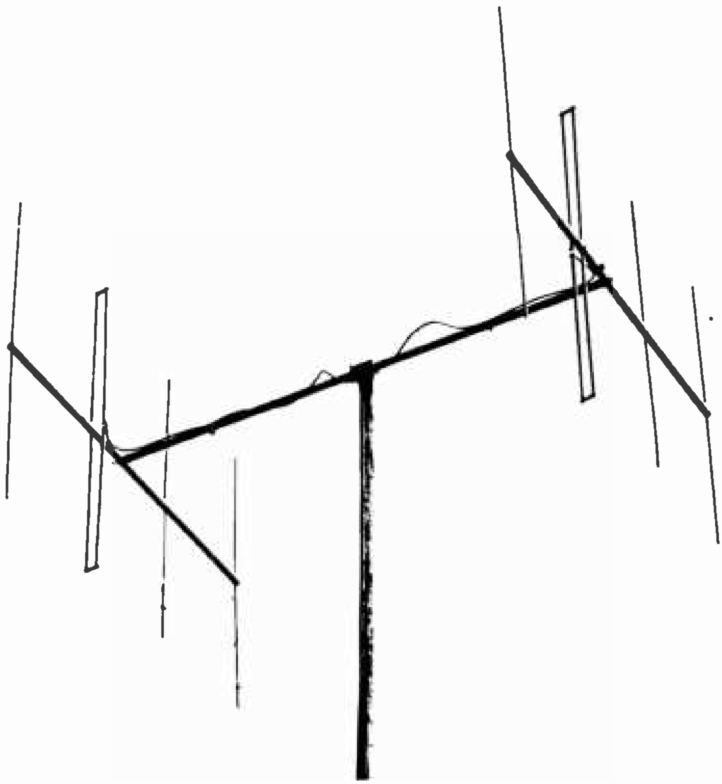


Figure 14

THE EIGHT-ELEMENT 144-MHz ARRAY IN A HORIZONTAL POSITION

wave signal propagation which is characteristic of this frequency range. Although polarization has been loosely standardized in various areas of the country, exceptions are frequent enough so that it is desirable that the polarization of antenna radiation be easily changeable from horizontal to vertical.

The antenna illustrated has shown a signal gain of about 11 db, representing a power gain of about 13. Although the signal gain of the antenna is the same whether it is oriented for vertical or horizontal polarization, the horizontal beam width is smaller when the antenna is oriented for vertical polarization. Conversely, the vertical pattern is sharper when the antenna system is oriented for horizontal polarization.

The changeover from one polarization to the other is accomplished simply by pulling on the appropriate cord. Hence, the operation is based on the offset head sketched in figure 13. Although a wood mast has been used, the same system may be used with a pipe mast.

The 40-inch lengths of RG-59/U cable electrically ¾-wavelength) running from the center of each folded dipole driven element to the coaxial T-junction allow enough slack to permit free movement of the main boom when changing polarity. Type RG-8/U cable is run from the T-junction to the operating position. Measured standing-wave ratio was less than 2:1 over the 144- to 148-MHz band, with the lengths and spacing given in figure 13.

Construction of the Array Most of the constructional aspects of the antenna array are self-evident from figure 13. However, the pointers given in the following paragraphs will be of assistance to those wishing to reproduce the array.

The drilling of holes for the small elements should be done carefully on accurately marked centers. A small angular error in the drilling of these holes will result in a considerable misalignment of the elements after the array is assembled. The same consideration is true of the filing out of the rounded notches in the ends of the main boom for the fitting of the two-antenna booms.

Short lengths of wood dowel are used freely in the construction of the array. The ends of the small elements are plugged with an inch or so of dowel, and the ends of the antenna booms are similarly treated with larger discs pressed into place.

The ends of the folded dipoles are made in the following manner: Drive a length of dowel into the short connecting lengths of aluminum tubing. Then drill down the center of the dowel with a clearance hole for the connecting screw. Then shape the ends of the connecting pieces to fit the sides of the element ends. After assembly the junctions may be dressed with a file and sandpaper until a smooth fit is obtained.

The mast used for supporting the array is a 30-foot spliced 2 by 2. A large discarded ball bearing is used as the radial load bearing and guy-wire termination. Enough of the upper-mast corners were removed with a drawknife to permit sliding the ball bearing down about 9 feet from the top of the mast. The bearing then was encircled by an assembly of three pieces of dural ribbon to form a clamp, with ears for tightening screws and attachment of the guy wires. The bearing then was greased and covered with a piece of auto inner tube to serve as protection from the weather. Another junk-box bearing was used at the bottom of the mast as a thrust bearing.

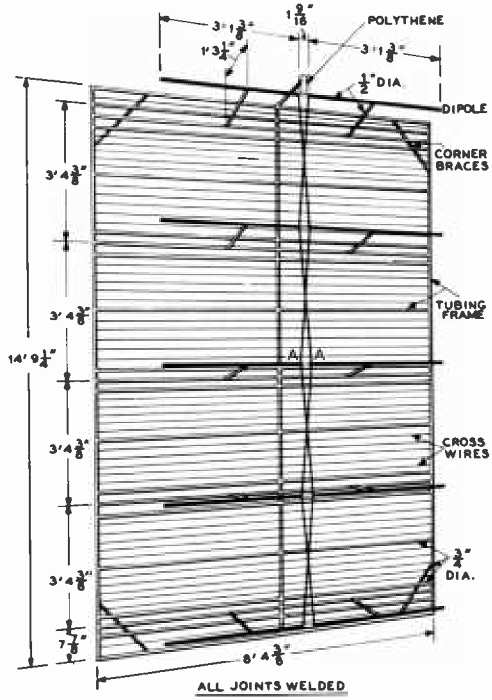


Figure 15

DETAIL OF LAYOUT AND DIMENSIONS OF SCREEN-BEAM

The main booms were made from ¾-inch aluminum electrical conduit. Any size of small tubing will serve for making the elements. Note that the main boom is mounted at the balance center and not necessarily at the physical center. The pivot bolt in the offset head should be tightened sufficiently so that there will be adequate friction to hold the array in position. Then an additional nut should be placed on the pivot bolt as a lock.

In connecting the phasing sections between the T-junction and the centers of the folded dipoles, it is important that the center conductors of the phasing sections be connected to the same side of the driven elements of the antennas. In other words, when the antenna is oriented for horizontal polarization and the center of the coaxial section goes to the left side of the top antenna, the center conductor of the other

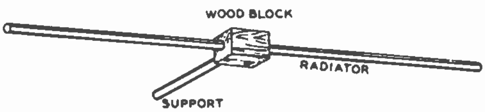


Figure 16

THE MOUNTING BLOCK FOR EACH SET OF ELEMENTS

coaxial phasing section should go to the left side of the bottom antenna.

The Screen Beam for 2 Meters This highly effective rotary array for the 144-MHz amateur band consists of 10 half-wave radiators fed in phase, and arranged in two stacked rows of five radiators. 0.2 wavelength behind this plane of radiators is a reflector screen, measuring approximately 15′ × 9′ in size. The antenna provides a power gain of 15 db, and a front-to-back ratio of approximately 28 db.

The 10 dipoles are fed in phase by means of a length of balanced transmission line, a quarter-wave matching transformer, and a balun. A 72-ohm coaxial line couples the array to the transmitter. A drawing of the array is shown in figure 15.

The reflecting screen measures 14′ 9″ high by 8′ 4″ wide, and is made of welded ½-inch diameter steel tubing. Three steel reinforcing bars are welded horizontally across the framework directly behind each pair of horizontal dipoles. The intervening spaces are filled with lengths of No. 12 enamel-coated copper wire to complete the screen. The spacing between the wires is 2 inches. Four cross braces are welded to the corners of the frame for additional bracing, and a single vertical ½-inch rod runs up the middle of the frame. The complete, welded frame is shown in figure 15. The No. 12 screening wires are run between 6-32 bolts placed in holes drilled in each outside vertical member of the frame.

The antenna assembly is supported away from the reflector screen by means of ten lengths of ½-inch steel tubing, each 1′ 3¼″

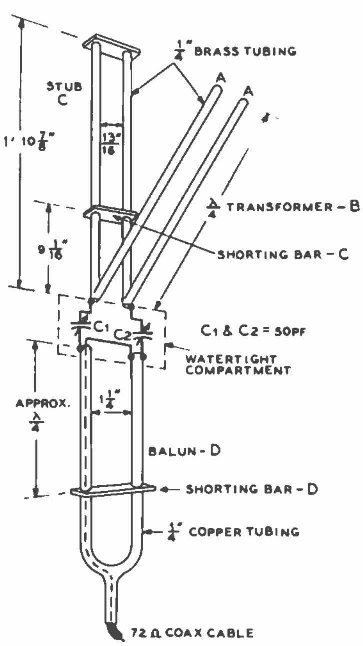


Figure 17

THE MATCHING UNIT IN DETAIL FOR THE SCREEN-BEAM DESIGN, WHICH ALLOWS THE USE OF 72-OHM COAX

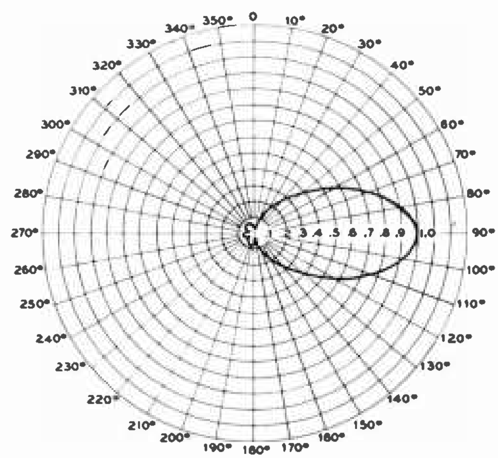


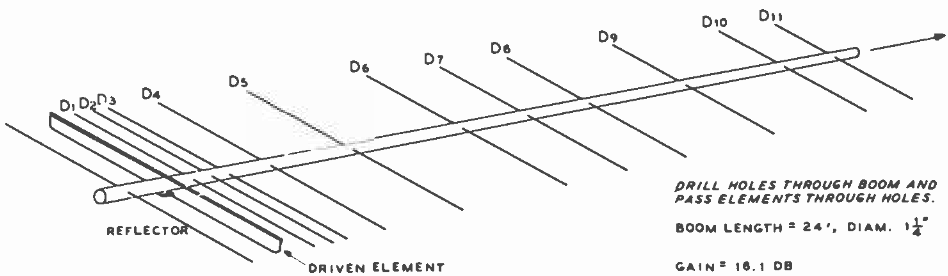
Figure 18

HORIZONTAL RADIATION PATTERN OF THE SCREEN-BEAM ARRAY. THE FRONT-TO-BACK RATIO IS ABOUT 28 db IN AMPLITUDE, AND THE FORWARD GAIN APPROXIMATELY 15 db

long. These tubes are welded onto the center tube of each group of three horizontal bracing tubes, and are so located to support the horizontal dipole at its exact center. The dipoles are attached to the supporting rods by means of small phenolic insulating blocks, as shown in figure 16. The radiators are therefore insulated from the screen reflector. The inner tips of the radiators are held by small polystyrene blocks for rigidity, and are cross connected to each other by a transposed length of TV-type 400-ohm open wire line. The entire array is fed at the point A-A, illustrated in figure 15.

The matching system for the beam is mounted behind the reflector screen, and is shown in figure 17. A quarter-wave transformer (B) drops the relatively high impedance of the antenna array to a suitable value for the low-impedance balun (D). An adjustable matching stub (C) and two variable capacitors (C_1 and C_2) are employed for impedance matching. The two variable capacitors are mounted in a watertight box, with the balun and matching stubs entering the bottom and top of the box, respectively.

The matching procedure is carried out by the use of a standing-wave meter (SWR bridge). A few watts of power are fed to the array through the SWR meter, and the setting of the shorting stub on C and the setting of the two variable capacitors are adjusted for lowest SWR at the chosen operating frequency. The capacitance settings of the two variable capacitors should be equal. The final adjustment is to set the shorting stub of the balun (D) to remove any residual reactance that might appear on the transmission line. With proper adjustment, the SWR of the array may be



ELEMENT DIMENSIONS, 2-METER BAND

ELEMENT (DIAM. 1/8")	LENGTH 144 MHz	145 MHz	146 MHz	147 MHz	SPACING FROM DIPOLE
REFLECTOR	41"	40 3/4"	40 7/16"	40 3/16"	19"
DIRECTORS	36 3/4"	36 1/2"	36 3/8"	36 3/16"	D1 = 7" D2 = 14.5" D3 = 22" D4 = 38" D5 = 70" D6 = 102" D7 = 134" D8 = 166" D9 = 198" D10 = 230" D11 = 242"

DRIVEN ELEMENT

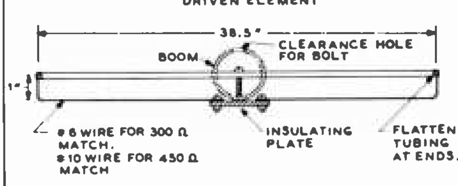


Figure 19

DESIGN DIMENSIONS FOR A 2-METER LONG YAGI ANTENNA

held to less than 1.5 to 1 over a 2 MHz range of the 2-meter band.

The horizontal radiation pattern of this array is shown in figure 18.

Long Yagi Antennas For a given power gain, the *Yagi antenna* can be built lighter, more compact, and with less wind resistance than any other type. On the other hand, if a Yagi array of the same approximate size and weight as another antenna type is built, it will provide a higher order of power gain and directivity than that of the other antenna.

The power gain of a Yagi antenna increases directly with the physical length of the array. The maximum practical length is entirely a mechanical problem of physically supporting the long series of director elements, although when the array exceeds a few wavelengths in length the element lengths, spacings, and Q's becomes more and more critical. The effectiveness of the array depends on a proper combination of the mutual coupling loops between adjacent directors and between the first director and the driven element.

Practically all work on Yagi antennas with more than three or four elements has been on an experimental, cut-and-try basis. Figure 19 provides dimensions for a typical long Yagi antenna for the 2-meter vhf band. Note that all directors have the same physical length. If the long Yagi is designed so that the directors gradually decrease in length as they progress from the dipole bandwidth will be increased, and both side lobes and forward gain will be reduced. One advantage gained from staggered director length is that the array can be shortened and lengthened by adding or taking away directors without the need for retuning the remaining group of parasitic elements. When all directors are the same length, they must be all shortened *en masse* as the array is lengthened, and vice versa when the array is shortened.

A full discussion of long Yagi antennas, including complete design and construction information may be had in the *VHF Handbook*, available through Radio Publications, Inc., Wilton, Conn.

CHAPTER TWENTY-FOUR

Rotary Beams

The rotatable antenna array has become almost standard equipment for operation on the 28- and 50-MHz bands and is commonly used on the 14- and 21-MHz bands and on those frequencies above 144 MHz. The rotatable array offers many advantages for both military and amateur use. The directivity of the antenna types commonly employed (particularly the unidirectional arrays) offers a worthwhile reduction in interference from undesired directions. Also, the increase in the ratio of low-angle radiation plus the theoretical gain of such arrays results in a relatively large increase in both the transmitted signal and the signal intensity from a station being received.

A significant advantage of a rotatable antenna array in the case of the normal station is that a relatively small amount of space is required for erection of the antenna system. In fact, one of the best types of installation uses a single telephone pole with the rotating structure holding the antenna mounted atop the pole. To obtain results in all azimuth directions from fixed arrays comparable to the gain and directivity of a single rotatable three-element parasitic beam would require several acres of surface.

There are two normal configurations of radiating elements which, when horizontally polarized, will contribute to obtaining a low angle of radiation. These configurations are the end-fire array and the broadside array. The conventional three- or four-element rotary beam may properly be called a *unidirectional parasitic end-fire array*, and is actually a type of *yagi* array. The flat-top beam is a type of *bidirectional end-fire array*. The *broadside type* of array is also quite effective in obtaining low-angle radiation, and, although widely used in f-m and TV broadcasting, has seen little use by amateurs in rotatable arrays because of its size.

24-1 Unidirectional Parasitic End-Fire Arrays (Yagi Type)

If a single parasitic element is placed on one side of a driven dipole at a distance of from 0.1 to 0.25 wavelength the parasitic element can be tuned to make the array substantially unidirectional.

This simple array is termed a *two-element parasitic beam*.

The Two-Element Beam The two-element parasitic beam provides the greatest amount of gain per unit size of any array commonly used by radio amateurs. Such an antenna is capable of a signal gain of 5 db over a dipole, with a front-to-back ratio of 7 to 15 db, depending on the adjustment of the parasitic element. The parasitic element may be used either as a director or as a reflector.

The optimum spacing for a reflector in a two-element array is approximately 0.13 wavelength and with optimum adjustment

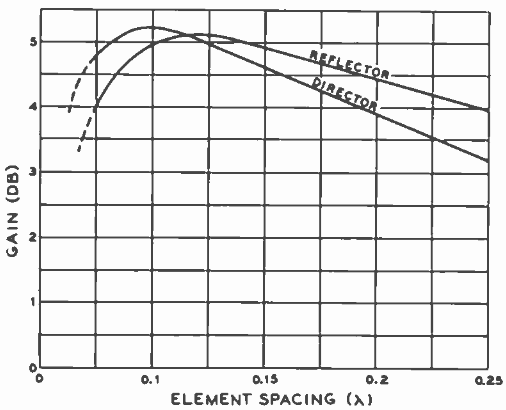


Figure 1

GAIN VERSUS ELEMENT SPACING FOR A TWO-ELEMENT CLOSE-SPACED PARASITIC BEAM ANTENNA WITH PARASITIC ELEMENT OPERATING AS A DIRECTOR OR REFLECTOR

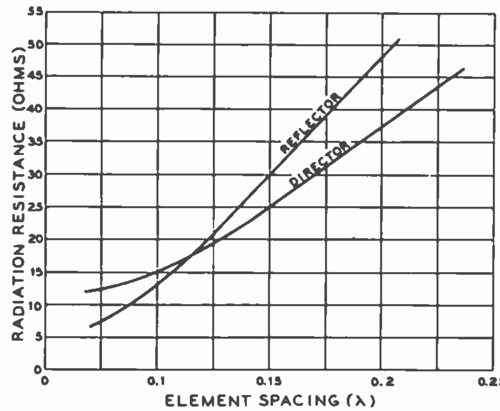


Figure 2

RADIATION RESISTANCE AS A FUNCTION OF THE ELEMENT SPACING FOR A TWO-ELEMENT PARASITIC ARRAY

of the length of the reflector a gain of approximately 5 db will be obtained, with a feed-point resistance of about 25 ohms.

If the parasitic element is to be used as a director, the optimum spacing between it and the driven element is 0.11 wavelength.

The general characteristics of a two-element parasitic array may be seen in figures 1, 2 and 3. The gain characteristics of a two-element array when the parasitic element is used as a director or as a reflector are shown. It can be seen that the director provides a maximum of 5.3 db gain at a spacing of slightly greater than 0.1 wavelength from the antenna. In the interests of greatest power gain and size conservation, therefore, the choice of a parasitic director would be wiser than the choice of a parasitic reflector, although the gain difference between the two is small.

Figure 2 shows the relationship between the element spacing and the radiation resistance for the two-element parasitic array for both the reflector and the director case. Since the optimum antenna-director spacing for maximum gain results in an antenna radiation resistance of about 17 ohms, and the optimum antenna-reflector spacing for maximum gain results in an antenna radiation resistance of about 25 ohms, it may be of advantage in some instances to choose the antenna with the higher radiation resistance, assuming other factors to be equal.

Figure 3 shows the *front-to-back* ratio for the two-element parasitic array for both the reflector and director cases. To produce these curves, the elements were tuned for maximum gain of the array. Better front-to-back ratios may be obtained at the expense of array gain, if desired, but the general shape of the curves remains the same. It can be readily observed that operation of the parasitic element as a reflector produces relatively poor front-to-back ratios except when the element spacing is greater than 0.15 wavelength. However, at this element spacing, the gain of the array begins to suffer.

Since a radiation resistance of 17 ohms is not unduly hard to match, it can be argued that the best all-around performance may be obtained from a two-element parasitic beam employing 0.11 element spacing, with the parasitic element tuned to operate as a director. This antenna will provide a forward gain of 5.3 db, with a front-to-back ratio of 10 db, or slightly greater. Closer spacing than 0.11 wavelength may be employed for greater front-to-back ratios, but the radiation resistance of the array becomes quite low, the bandwidth of the array becomes very narrow, and the tuning becomes quite critical. Thus the Q of the antenna system will be *increased* as the spacing between the elements is *decreased*, and smaller optimum frequency coverage will result.

Element Lengths When the parasitic element of a two-element array is used as a director, the following formulas may be used to determine the lengths of the driven element and the parasitic director, assuming an element diameter-to-length ratio of 200 to 400:

$$\text{Driven element length (feet)} = \frac{476}{F_{MHz}}$$

$$\text{Director length (feet)} = \frac{450}{F_{MHz}}$$

$$\text{Element spacing (feet)} = \frac{120}{F_{MHz}}$$

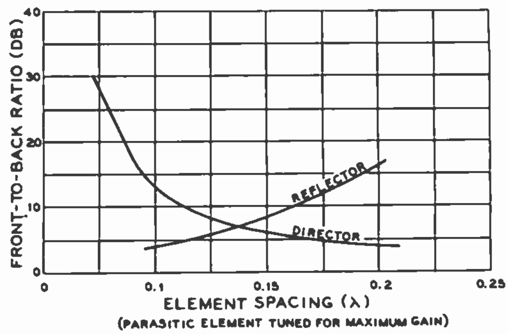


Figure 3

FRONT-TO-BACK RATIO AS A FUNCTION OF ELEMENT SPACING FOR A TWO-ELEMENT PARASITIC ARRAY

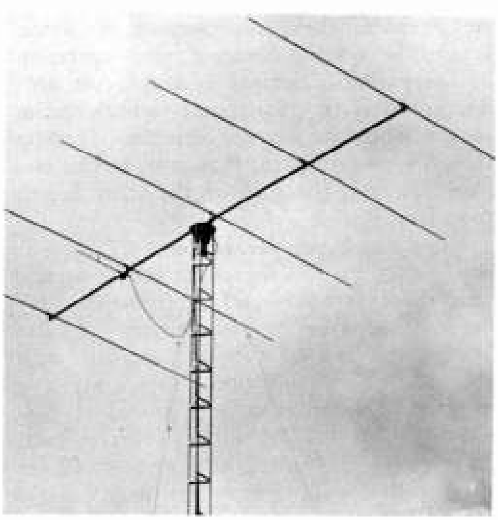
The effective bandwidth taken between the 1.5/1 standing-wave points of an array cut to the above dimensions is about 2.5 percent of the operating frequency. This means that an array precut to a frequency of 14,150 kHz would have a bandwidth of 350 kHz (plus or minus 175 kHz of the center frequency), and therefore would be effective over the whole 20-meter band. In like fashion, a 15-meter array should be precut to 21,200 kHz.

A beam designed for use on the 10-meter band would have an effective bandwidth of some 700 kHz. Since the 10-meter band is 1700 kHz in width, the array should either be cut to 28,500 kHz for operation in the low-frequency portion of the band, or to 29,200 kHz for operation in the high-frequency portion of the band. Operation of the antenna outside the effective bandwidth will increase the SWR on the transmission line, and noticeably degrade both the gain and front-to-back ratio performance. The height above ground also influences the F/B ratio.

Figure 4

FIVE ELEMENT 28-MHz BEAM ANTENNA AT W6SAI

Antenna boom is made of twenty foot length of three-inch aluminum irrigation pipe. Spacing between elements is five feet. Elements are made of twelve foot lengths of 7/8-inch aluminum tubing, with extension tips made of 3/4-inch tubing. Beam dimensions are taken from figure 5.



24-2 The Three-Element Array

The three-element array using a director, driven element, and reflector will exhibit as much as 30 db front-to-back ratio and 20 db front-to-side ratio for *low-angle radiation*. The theoretical gain is about 9 db over a dipole in free space. In actual practice, the array will often show 7 to 8 db apparent gain over a horizontal dipole placed the same height above ground (at 28 and 14 MHz).

The use of more than three elements is desirable when the length of the supporting structure is such that spacings of approximately 0.15 wavelength between elements becomes possible. Four-element arrays are quite common on the 28- and 50-MHz bands, and five elements are sometimes used for increased gain and discrimination. As the number of elements is increased the gain and front-to-back ratio increase but the radiation resistance decreases and the bandwidth or frequency range over which the antenna will operate without reduction in effectiveness is decreased.

Material for Elements While the elements may consist of wire supported on a wood framework, self-supporting elements of tubing are much to be preferred. The latter type array is easier to construct, looks better, is no more expensive, and avoids the problem of getting sufficiently good insulation at the ends of the elements. The voltages reach such high values toward the ends of the elements that losses will be excessive, unless the insulation is excellent.

The elements may be fabricated of thin-walled steel conduit, or hard-drawn thin-walled copper tubing, but *dural* tubing is much better. Dural tubing may be obtained in telescoping sizes from large metal-supply houses in many cities. Various manufacturers, moreover, supply beam antenna kits of all types and prices. The majority of these beams employ dural elements because of the good weather-capability of this material.

Element Spacing The optimum spacing for a two-element array is, as has been mentioned before, approximately 0.11 wavelength for a director and 0.13 wavelength for a reflector. However, when both a director and a reflector are combined with the driven element to make up a three-element array the optimum spacing is established by the bandwidth which the antenna will be required to cover. Wide spacing (of the order of 0.25 wavelength between elements) will result in greater bandwidth for a specified maximum standing-wave ratio on the antenna transmission line. Smaller spacings may be used when boom length is an important consideration, but for a specified standing-wave ratio and forward gain the frequency coverage will be smaller. Thus the Q of the antenna system will be *increased* as the spacing between the elements is *decreased*, resulting in smaller frequency coverage, and at the same time the feed-point impedance of the driven element will be decreased.

For broad-band coverage, such as the range from 28.0 to 29.7 MHz or from 50 to 54 MHz, 0.2 wavelength spacing from the driven element to each of the parasitic elements is recommended. For narrower bandwidth, such as would be adequate for the 14.0- to 14.4-MHz band or the 144- to 148-MHz band, the radiator-to-parasitic element spacing may be reduced to 0.12 wavelength, while still maintaining adequate array bandwidth for the amateur band in question.

Length of the Parasitic Elements Experience has shown that it is practical to cut the parasitic elements of a three-element parasitic array to a predetermined length before the installation of such an antenna. A pretuned antenna such as this will give good signal gain, adequate front-to-back ratio, and good bandwidth factor. By carefully tuning the array after it is in position the gain may be increased by a fraction of a db, and the front-to-back ratio by several db. However the slight improvement in performance is usually not worth the effort expended in tuning time.

The closer the lengths of the parasitic elements are to the resonant length of the driven element, the lower will be the feed-point resistance of the driven element, and the smaller will be the bandwidth of the array. Hence, for wide frequency coverage the director should be considerably shorter, and the reflector considerably longer than the driven element. For example, the directer should still be less than a resonant half-wavelength at the upper frequency limit of the range wherein the antenna is to be oper-

TYPE	DRIVEN ELEMENT LENGTH	REFLECTOR LENGTH	1ST DIRECTOR LENGTH	2ND DIRECTOR LENGTH	3RD DIRECTOR LENGTH	SPACING BETWEEN ELEMENTS	APPROX. GAIN DB	APPROX. RADIATION RESISTANCE (Ω)
3-ELEMENT	$\frac{473}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{501}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{445}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	—	—	.15–.15	7.5	20
3-ELEMENT	$\frac{473}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{501}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{450}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	—	—	.25–.25	8.5	35
4-ELEMENT	$\frac{473}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{501}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{450}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{450}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	—	.2–.2–.2	9.5	20
5-ELEMENT	$\frac{473}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{501}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{450}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{450}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	$\frac{450}{F\,(\text{MHz})}$	.2–.2–.2–.2	10.0	15

Figure 5

DESIGN CHART FOR PARASITIC ARRAYS (DIMENSIONS GIVEN IN FEET)

ated, and the reflector should still be long enough to act as a reflector at the lower frequency limit. Another way of stating the same thing is to say, in the case of an array to cover a wide frequency range such as the amateur range from 28 to 29.7 MHz that the director should be cut for the upper end of the band and the reflector for the lower end of the band. In the case of the 28- to 29.7-MHz range this means that the director should be about 8 percent shorter than the driven element and the reflector should be about 8 percent longer. Such an antenna will show a relatively constant gain of about 6 db over its range of coverage, and the pattern will not reverse at any point in the range.

Where the frequency range to be covered is somewhat less, such as the 14.0- to 14.4-MHz amateur band, or the lower half of the amateur 28-MHz phone band, the reflector should be about 5 percent longer than the driven element, and the director about 5 percent shorter. Such an antenna will perform well over its rated frequency band, will not reverse its pattern over this band, and will show a signal gain of 7 to 8 db. See figure 5 for design figures for 3-element arrays.

More Than Three Elements A small amount of additional gain may be obtained through use of more than two parasitic elements, at the expense of reduced feed-point impedance and lessened bandwidth. One additional director will add about 1 db, and a second additional director (making a total of five elements including the driven element) will add slightly less than 1 db more. In the vhf range, where the additional elements may be added without much difficulty, and where required bandwidths are small, the use of more than two parasitic elements is quite practical.

Stacking of Yagi Arrays Parasitic arrays (yagis) may be stacked to provide additional gain in the same manner that dipoles may be stacked. Thus if an array of six dipoles would give a gain of 10 db, the substitution of yagi arrays for each of the dipoles would add the gain of *one* yagi array to the gain obtained with the dipoles. However, the yagi arrays *must be more widely spaced* than the dipoles to obtain this theoretical improvement. As an example, if six 5-element yagi arrays having a gain of about 10 db were substituted for the dipoles, with appropriate increase in the spacing between the arrays, the gain of the whole system would approach the sum of the two gains, or 20 db. A group of arrays of yagi antennas, with recommended spacing and approximate gains, is illustrated in figure 6.

24-3 Feed Systems for Parasitic (Yagi) Arrays

The table of figure 5 gives, in addition to other information, the approximate radiation resistance referred to the center of the driven element of multielement parasitic arrays. It is obvious, from these low values of radiation resistance, that special care must be taken in materials used and in the construction of the elements of the array to ensure that ohmic losses in the conductors

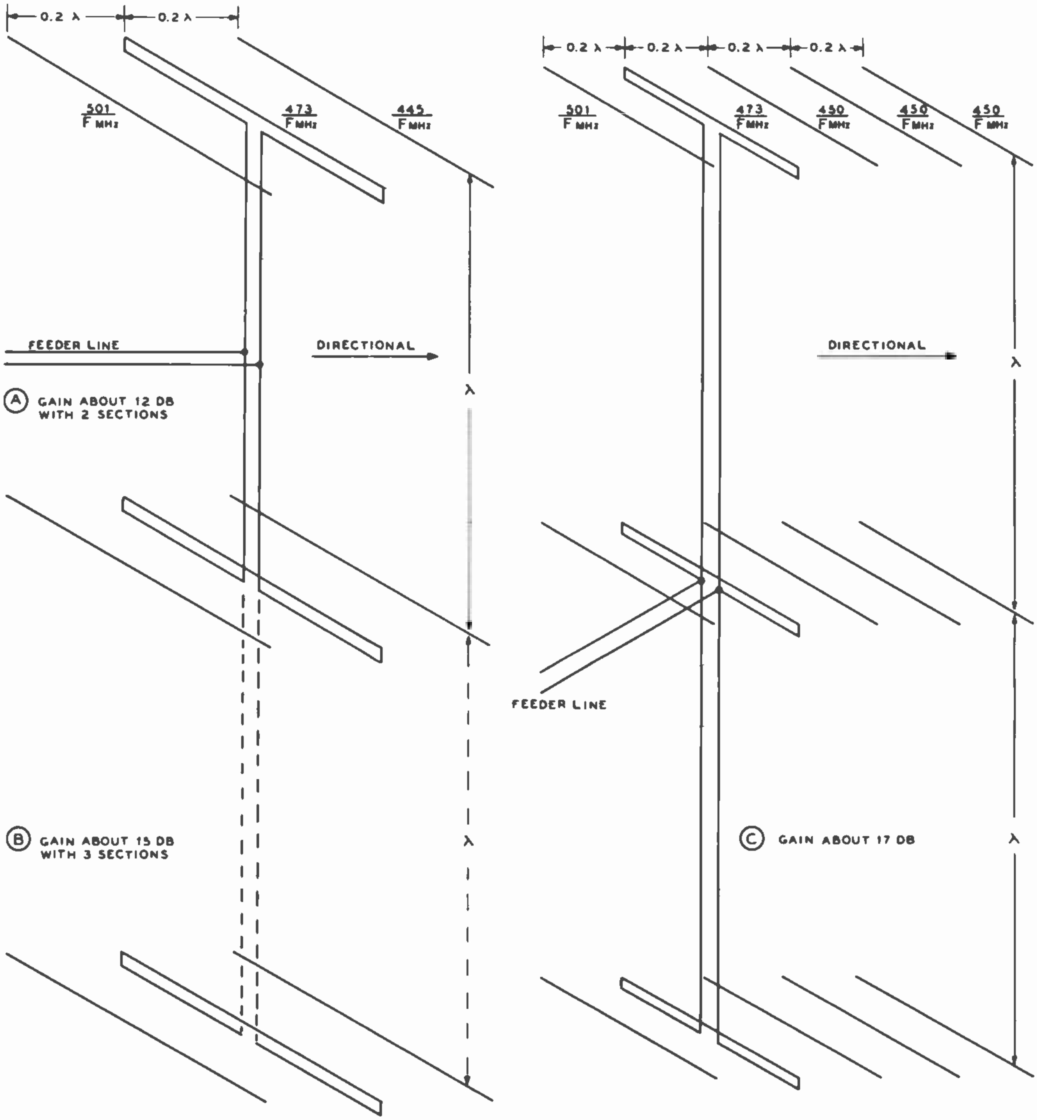


Figure 6

STACKED YAGI ARRAYS

It is possible to attain a relatively large amount of gain over a limited bandwidth with stacked yagi arrays. The two-section array at A will give a gain of about 12 db, while adding a third section will bring the gain up to about 15 db. Adding two additional parasitic directors to each section, as at C will bring the gain up to about 17 db.

will not be an appreciable percentage of the radiation resistance. It is also obvious that some method of impedance transformation must be used in many cases to match the low radiation resistance of these antenna arrays to the normal range of characteristic impedance used for antenna transmission lines.

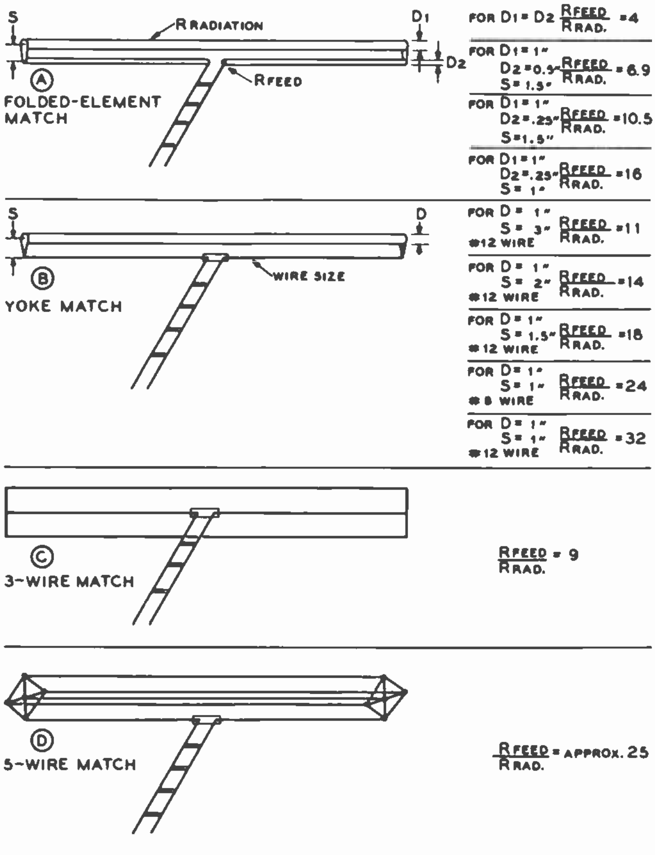


Figure 7

DATA FOR FOLDED-ELEMENT MATCHING SYSTEMS

In all normal applications of the data given the main element as shown is the driven element of a multielement parasitic array. Directors and reflectors have not been shown for the sake of clarity.

A group of possible methods of impedance matching is shown in figures 7, 8, 9 and 10. All these methods have been used but certain of them offer advantages over some of the other methods. Generally speaking it is not mechanically desirable to break the center of the driven element of an array for feeding the system. Breaking the driven element rules out the practicability of building an all-metal or "plumber's delight" type of array, and imposes mechanical limitations with any type of construction. However, when continuous rotation is desired, an arrangement such as shown in figure 9D utilizing a broken driven element with a rotatable transformer for coupling from the antenna transmission line to the driven element has proven to be quite satisfactory. In fact the method shown in figure 9D is probably the most practical method of feeding the driven element when continuous rotation of the antenna array is required.

The feed systems shown in figure 7 will, under normal conditions, show the lowest losses of any type of feed system since the currents flowing in the matching network are the lowest of all the systems commonly used. The *folded-element* match shown in figure 7A and the *Yoke* match shown in figure 7B are the most satisfactory, electrically, of all standard feed methods. However, both methods require the extension of an additional conductor out to the end of the driven element as a portion of the matching system. The folded-element match is best on the 50-MHz band and higher where the additional section of tubing may be supported below the main radiator element without undue difficulty. The yoke-match is more satisfactory mechanically on the 28- and 14-MHz bands since it is only necessary to suspend a wire below the driven ele-

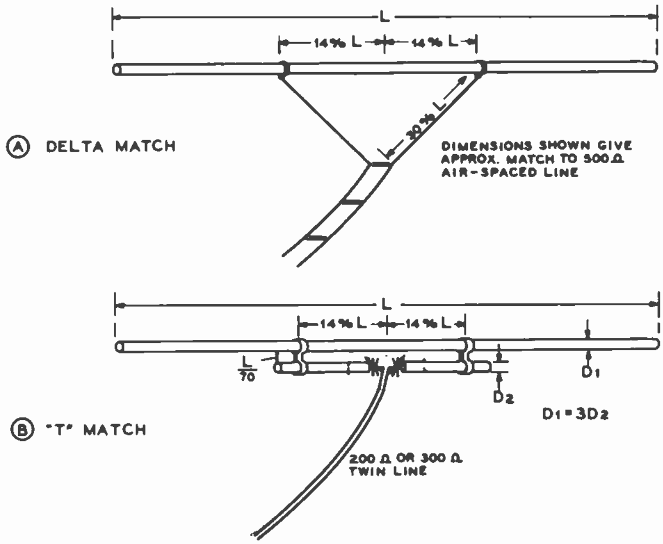


Figure 8

AVERAGE DIMENSIONS FOR THE DELTA AND "T" MATCH

ment proper. The wire may be spaced below the self-supporting element by means of several small strips of polystyrene which have been drilled for both the main element and the small wire and threaded on the main element.

The Folded-Element Match Calculations The calculation of the operating conditions of the folded-element matching systems and the yoke match, as shown in figures 7A and 7B is relatively simple. A selected group of operating conditions has been shown on the drawing of figure 7. In applying the system it is only necessary to multiply the ratio of feed to radiation resistance (given in the figures to the right of the suggested operating dimensions in figure 7) by the radiation resistance of the antenna system to obtain the impedance of the cable to be used in feeding the array. Approximate values of radiation resistance for a number of commonly used parasitic-element arrays are given in figure 5.

As an example, suppose a 3-element array with 0.15D-0.15R spacing between elements is to be fed by means of a 465-ohm line constructed of No. 12 wire spaced 2 inches. The approximate radiation resistance of such an antenna array will be 20 ohms. Hence we need a ratio of impedance step-up of 23 to obtain a match between the characteristic impedance of the transmission line and the radiation resistance of the driven element of the antenna array. Inspection of the ratios given in figure 7 shows that the fourth set of dimensions given under figure 7B will give a 24-to-1 step-up, which is sufficiently close. So it is merely necessary to use a 1-inch diameter driven element with a No. 8 wire spaced on 1-inch centers (½-inch below the outside wall of the 1-inch tubing). The No. 8 wire is broken and a 2-inch insulator placed in the center. The feed line then carries from this insulator down to the transmitter. The center insulator should be supported rigidly from the 1-inch tube so that the spacing between the piece of tubing and the No. 8 wire will be accurately maintained.

In many cases it will be desired to use the folded-element or yoke matching system with different sizes of conductors or different spacings than those shown in figure 7. Note, then, that the impedance transformation ratio of these types of matching systems is dependent *both on the ratio of conductor diameters and on their spacing*. The following equation has been given by Roberts (*RCA Review*, June, 1947) for the determination of the impedance transformation when using different diameters in the two sections of a folded element:

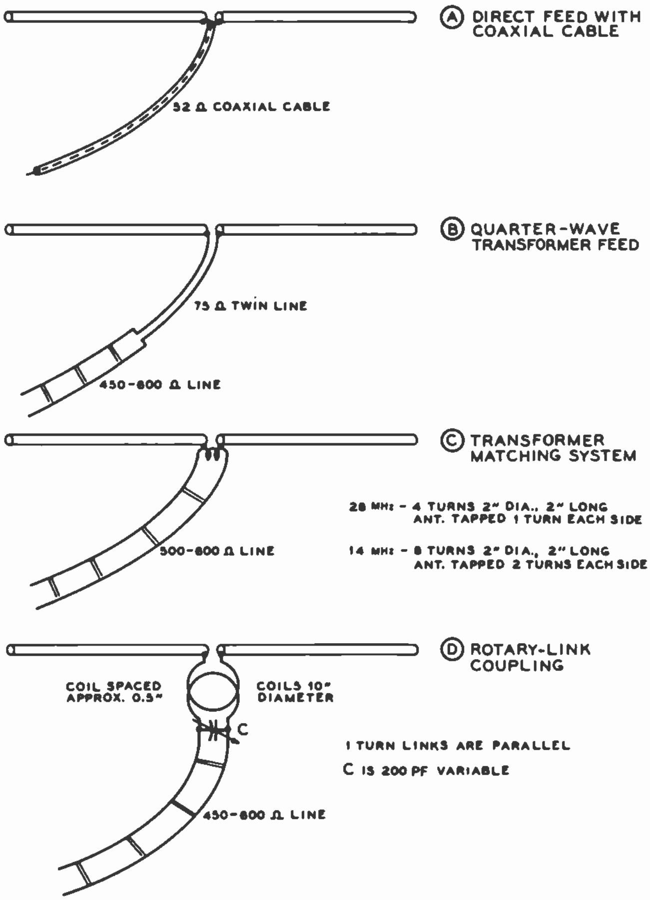


Figure 9

ALTERNATE FEED METHODS WHERE THE DRIVEN ELEMENT MAY BE BROKEN IN THE CENTER

$$\text{Transformation ration} = \left(1 + \frac{Z_1}{Z_2}\right)^2$$

In this equation Z_1 is the characteristic impedance of a line made up of the smaller of the two conductor diameters spaced the center-to-center distance of the two conductors in the antenna, and Z_2 is the characteristic impedance of a line made up of two conductors the size of the larger of the two. This assumes that the feed line will be connected in series with the *smaller* of the two conductors so that an impedance step-up of greater than four will be obtained. If an impedance step-up of less than four is desired, the feed line is connected in series with the *larger* of the two conductors and Z_1 in the above equation becomes the impedance of a hypothetical line made up of the larger of the two conductors and Z_2 is made up of the smaller. The folded vhf unipole is an example where the transmission line is connected in series with the larger of the two conductors.

The conventional 3-wire match to give an impedance multiplication of 9 and the 5-wire match to give a ratio of approximately 25 are shown in figures 7C and 7D. The 4-wire match, not shown, will give an impedance transformation ratio of approximately 16.

The Delta Match and T-Match The *delta match* and the *T-match* are shown in figure 8. The delta match has been largely superseded by the newer T-match, however, both these systems can be adjusted to give a low value of SWR on

50- to 600-ohm balanced transmission lines. In the case of the systems shown it will be necessary to make adjustments in the tapping distance along the driven radiator until minimum standing waves on the antenna transmission line are obtained. Since it is sometimes impractical to eliminate completely the standing waves from the antenna transmission line when using these matching systems, it is common practice to cut the feed line, after standing waves have been reduced to a minimum, to a length which will give satisfactory loading of the transmitter over the desired frequency range of operation.

The inherent reactance of the T-match is tuned out by the use of two identical resonating capacitors in series with each leg of the T-rod. These capacitors should each have a maximum capacity of 8 pf per meter of wavelength. Thus for 20 meters, each capacitor should have a maximum capacitance of at least 160 pf. For power up to a kilowatt, 1000-volt spacing of the capacitors is adequate. These capacitors should be tuned for minimum SWR on the transmission line. The adjustment of these capacitors should be made at the same time the correct setting of the T-match rods is made as the two adjustments tend to be interlocking. The use of the standing-wave meter (described in Test Equipment chapter) is recommended for making these adjustments to the T-match.

Feed Systems Using a Driven Element with Center Feed Four methods of exciting the driven element of a parasitic array are shown in figure 9. The system shown at A has proven to be quite satisfactory in the case of an antenna-reflector two-element array or in the case of a three-element array with 0.2 to 0.25 wavelength spacing between the elements of the antenna system. The feed-point impedance of the center of the driven element is close enough to the characteristic impedance of the 52-ohm coaxial cable that the standing-wave ratio on the 52-ohm coaxial cable is less than 2-to-1. B shows an arrangement for feeding an array with a broken driven element from an open-wire line with the aid of a quarter-wave matching transformer. With 465-ohm line from the transmitter to the antenna this system will give a close match to a 12-ohm impedance at the center of the driven element. C shows an arrangement which uses an untuned transformer with lumped inductance for matching the transmission line to the center impedance of the driven element.

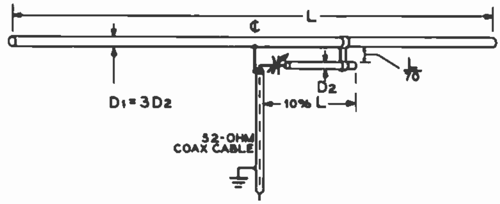


Figure 10

THE GAMMA MATCHING SYSTEM

See text for details of resonating capacitor

Rotary-Link Coupling In many cases it is desirable to be able to allow the antenna array to rotate continuously without regard to snarling of the feed line. If this is to be done some sort of slip rings or rotary joint must be made in the feed line. One relatively simple method of allowing unrestrained rotation of the antenna is to use the method of *rotary-link coupling* shown in figure 9D. The two coupling rings are 10 inches in diameter and are usually constructed of ¼-inch copper tubing supported one from the rotating structure and one from the fixed structure by means of standoff insulators. The capacitor (C in figure 9D) is adjusted, after the antenna has been tuned, for minimum standing-wave ratio on the antenna transmission line. The dimensions shown will allow operation with either 14- or 28-MHz elements, with appropriate adjustment of capacitor C. The rings must of course be parallel and must lie in a plane normal to the axis of rotation of the rotating structure.

The Gamma Match The use of coaxial cable to feed the driven element of a yagi array is becoming increasingly popular. One reason for this increased popularity lies in the fact that the TVI-reduction problem is simplified when coaxial feed line is used from the transmitter to the antenna system. Radiation from the feed

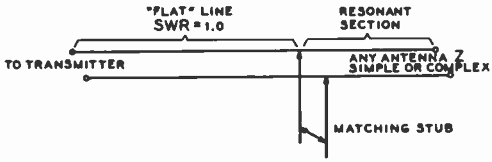


Figure 11

IMPEDANCE MATCHING WITH A CLOSED STUB ON A TWO-WIRE TRANSMISSION LINE

line is minimized when coaxial cable is used, since the outer conductor of the line may be grounded at several points throughout its length and since the intense field is entirely confined within the outer conductor of the coaxial cable. Other advantages of coaxial cable as the antenna feed line lie in the fact that coaxial cable may be run within the structure of a building without danger, or the cable may be run underground without disturbing its operation. Also, transmitting-type low-pass filters for 52-ohm impedance are more widely available and are less expensive than equivalent filters for two-wire line.

The *gamma-match* is illustrated in figure 10, and may be considered as one-half of a T-match. One resonating capacitor is used, placed in series with the gamma rod. The capacitor should have a capacity of 7 pf per meter of wavelength. For 15-meter operation the capacitor should have a maximum capacitance of 105 pf. The *length* of the gamma rod determines the impedance transformation between the transmission line and the driven element of the array, and the gamma capacitor tunes out the inductance of the gamma rod. By adjustment of the length of the gamma rod, and the setting of the gamma capacitor, the SWR on the coaxial line may be brought to a very low value at the chosen operating frequency. The use of an *Antennascope*, described in the Test Equipment chapter is recommended for precise adjustment of the gamma match.

The Matching Stub If an open-wire line is used to feed a low-impedance radiator, a section of the transmission line may be employed as a matching stub as shown in figure 11. The matching stub can transform any complex impedance to the characteristic impedance of the transmission line. While it is possible to obtain a perfect match and good performance with either an open stub or a shorted one by observing appropriate dimensions, a shorted stub is much more readily adjusted. Therefore, the following discussion will be confined to the problem of using a closed stub to match a low-impedance load to a high-impedance transmission line.

If the transmission line is so elevated that adjustment of a "fundamental" shorted stub cannot be accomplished easily from the ground, then the stub length may be increased by exactly one or two electrical half wavelengths, without appreciably affecting its operation.

While the correct position of the shorting bar and the point of attachment of the stub to the line can be determined entirely by experimental methods, the fact that the two adjustments are interdependent, or interlocking, makes such a cut-and-try procedure a tedious one. Much time can be saved by determining the approximate adjustments required by reference to a chart such as figure 12 and using them as a starter. Usual-

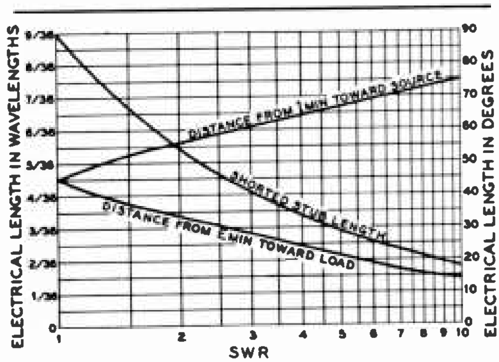


Figure 12

SHORTED-STUB LENGTH AND POSITION CHART

From the standing-wave ratio and current or voltage null position it is possible to determine the theoretically correct length and position of a shorted stub. In actual practice a slight discrepancy usually will be found between the theoretical and the experimentally optimized dimensions; therefore it may be necessary to "touch up" the dimensions after using the above data as a starting point.

ly only a slight "touching up" will produce a perfect match and flat line.

In order to utilize figure 12, it is first necessary to locate accurately a voltage node or current node on the line in the vicinity that has been decided on for the stub, and also to determine the SWR.

Stub adjustment becomes more critical as the SWR increases, and under conditions of high SWR the current and voltage nulls are more sharply defined than the current and voltage maxima, or loops. Therefore, it is best to locate either a current null or voltage null, depending on whether a current-indicating device or a voltage-indicating device is used to check the standing-wave pattern.

The SWR is determined by means of a *directional coupler*, or by noting the ratio of E_{max} to E_{min} or I_{max} to I_{min} as read on an indicating device.

It is assumed that the characteristic impedance of the section of line used as a stub is the same as that of the transmission line proper. It is preferable to have the stub section identical to the line physically as well as electrically.

24-4 Unidirectional Driven Arrays

Three types of unidirectional driven arrays are illustrated in figure 13. The array shown in figure 13A is an end-fire system which may be used in place of a parasitic array of similar dimensions when greater frequency coverage than is available with the yagi type is desired. Figure 13B is a combination end-fire and collinear system which will give approximately the same gain as the system of figure 13A, but which requires less boom length and greater total element length. Figure 13C illustrates the familiar lazy-H with driven reflectors (or directors, depending on the point of view) in a combination which will show wide bandwidth with a considerable amount of forward gain and good front-to-back ratio over the entire frequency coverage.

A simple driven array is the so-called *ZL Special*, which is one-half the array of figure 13B. The ZL Special is fed at the center point of the half-wave elements and provides a cardioid pattern with a gain of about 3 decibels.

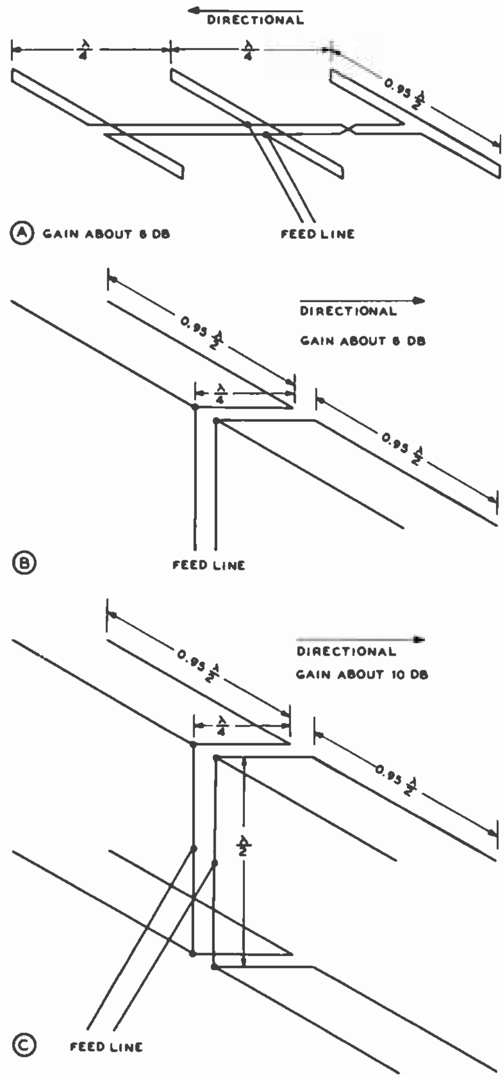


Figure 13

UNIDIRECTIONAL ALL-DRIVEN ARRAYS

A unidirectional all-driven end-fire array is shown at A. B shows an array with two half waves in phase with driven reflectors. A lazy-H array with driven reflectors is shown at C. Note that the directivity is through the elements with the greatest total feed-line length in arrays such as shown at B and C.

Unidirectional Stacked Broadside Arrays Three practical types of unidirectional stacked broadside arrays are shown in figure 14. The first type, shown at figure 14A, is the simple lazy-H

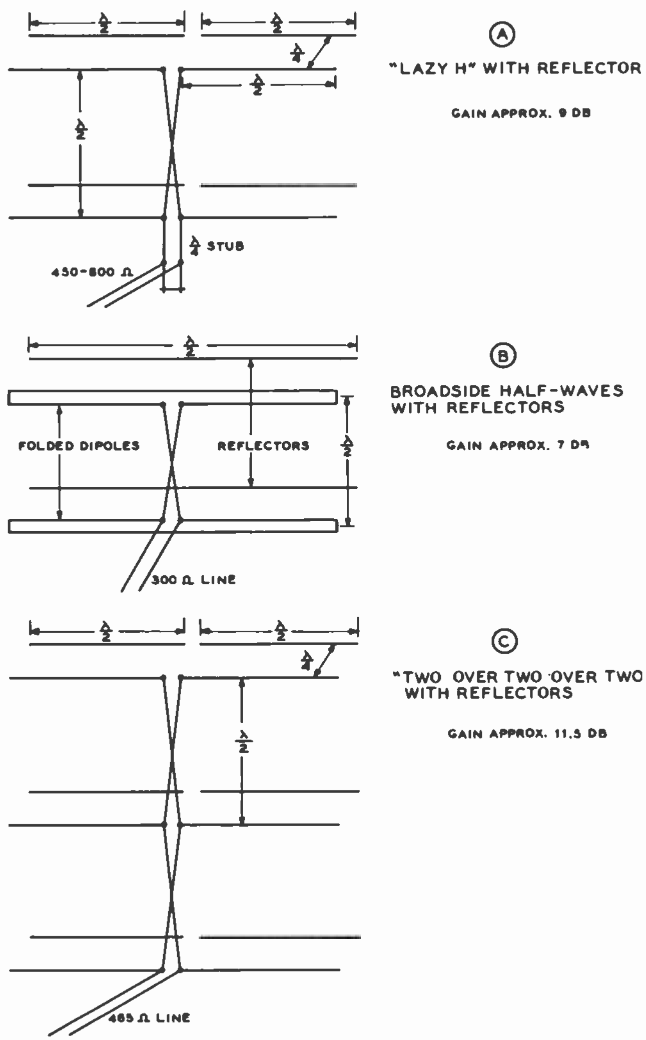


Figure 14

BROADSIDE ARRAYS WITH PARASITIC REFLECTORS

The apparent gain of the arrays illustrated will be greater than the values given due to concentration of the radiated signal at the lower elevation angles.

type of antenna with parasitic reflectors for each element. Figure 14B shows a simpler antenna array with a pair of folded dipoles spaced one-half wave vertically, operating with reflectors. In figure 14C is shown a more complex array with six half waves and six reflectors which will give a very worthwhile amount of gain.

In all three of the antenna arrays shown the spacing between the driven elements and the reflectors has been shown as one-quarter wavelength. This has been done to eliminate the requirement for tuning of the reflector, as a result of the fact that a half-wave element spaced exactly one-quarter wave from a driven element will make a unidirectional array when both elements are the same length. Using this procedure will give a gain of 3 db with the reflectors over the gain without the reflectors, with only a moderate decrease in the radiation resistance of the driven element. Actually, the radiation resistance of a half-wave dipole goes down from 73 ohms to 60 ohms when an identical half-wave element is placed one-quarter wave behind it.

A very slight increase in gain for the entire array (about 1 db) may be obtained at the expense of lowered radiation resistance, the necessity for tuning the reflectors, and decreased bandwidth by placing the reflectors 0.15 wavelength behind the driven elements and making them somewhat longer than the driven elements. The radiation resistance of each element will drop approximately to one-half the value obtained with untuned half-wave reflectors spaced one-quarter wave behind the driven elements.

Antenna arrays of the type shown in figure 14 require the use of some sort of lattice work for the supporting structure since the arrays occupy appreciable distance in space in all three planes.

Feed Methods The requirements for the feed systems for antenna arrays of the type shown in figure 14 are less critical than those for the close-spaced parasitic arrays shown in the previous section. This is a natural result of the fact that a larger number of the radiating elements are directly fed with energy, and of the fact that the effective radiation resistance of each of the driven elements of the array is much higher than the feed-point resistance of a parasitic array. As a consequence of this fact, arrays of the type shown in figure 14 can be expected to cover a somewhat greater frequency band for a specified value of standing-wave ratio than the parasitic type of array.

In most cases a simple open-wire line may be coupled to the feed point of the array without any matching system. The standing-wave ratio with such a system of feed will often be less than 2-to-1. However, if a more accurate match between the antenna transmission line and the array is desired a conventional quarter-wave stub, or a quarter-wave matching transformer of appropriate impedance, may be used to obtain a low standing-wave ratio.

24-5 Bidirectional Rotatable Arrays

The bidirectional type of array is sometimes used on the 28- and 50-MHz bands where signals are likely to be coming from only one general direction at a time. Hence the sacrifice of discrimination against signals arriving from the opposite direction is likely to be of little disadvantage. Figure 15 shows two general types of bidirectional arrays. The flat-top beam, which has been described in detail earlier, is well adapted to installation atop a rotating structure. When self-supporting elements are used in the flat-top beam the problem of losses due to insulators at the ends of the elements is somewhat reduced. With a single-section flat-top beam a gain of approximately 4 db can be expected, and with two sections a gain of approximately 6 db can be obtained.

Another type of bidirectional array which has seen less use than it deserves is shown in figure 15B. This type of antenna system has a relatively broad azimuth or horizontal beam, being capable of receiving signals with little diminution in strength over approximately 40 degrees, but it has a quite sharp elevation pattern since substantially all radiation is concentrated at the lower angles of radiation if more than a total of four elements is used in the antenna system. Figure 15B gives the approximate gain over a half-wave dipole at the height of the center of the array which can be expected. Also shown in this figure is a type of "rotating-mast" structure which is well suited to rotation of this type of array.

If six or more elements are used in the type of array shown in figure 15B, no matching section will be required between the antenna transmission line and the feed point of the antenna. When only four elements are used, the antenna is the familiar lazy H and a quarter-wave stub should be used for matching the antenna transmission line to the feed point of the antenna system.

If desired, and if mechanical considerations permit, the gain of the arrays shown in figure 15B may be increased by 3 db by placing a half-wave reflector behind each of the elements at a spacing of one-quarter wave. The array then becomes essentially the same as that shown in figure 14C and the same considerations in regard to reflector spacing and tuning will apply. However, the factor that a bidirectional array need be rotated through an angle of less than 180° should be considered in this connection.

24-6 Construction of Rotatable Arrays

A considerable amount of ingenuity may be exercised in the construction of the supporting structure for a rotatable array. Every person has his own ideas as to the best method of construction. Often the most practical method of construction will

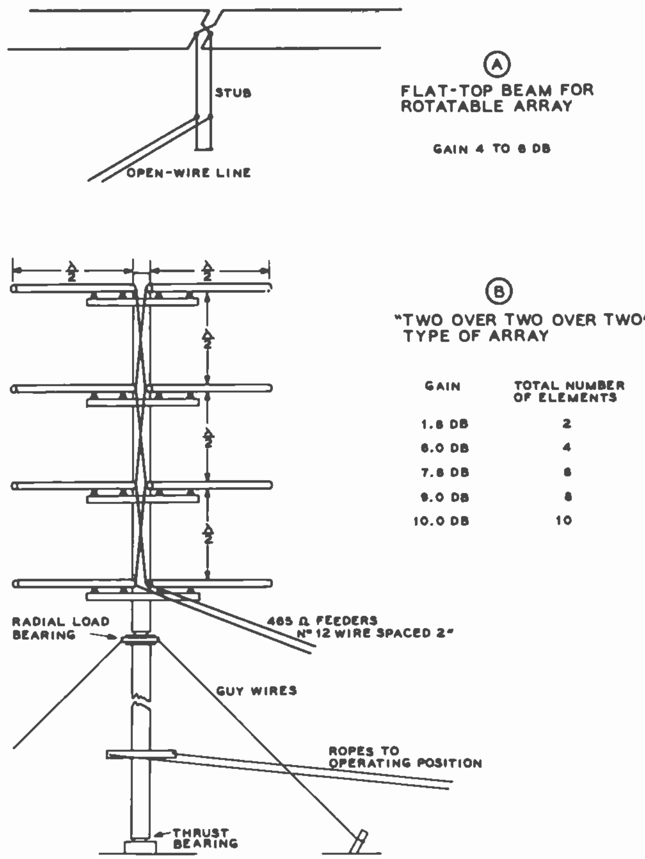


Figure 15

TWO GENERAL TYPES OF BIDIRECTIONAL ARRAYS

Average gain figures are given for both the flat-top beam type of array and for the broadside-collinear array with different numbers of elements.

be dictated by the availability of certain types of construction materials, but in any event be sure that sound mechanical engineering principles are used in the design of the supporting structure. There are few things quite as discouraging as the picking up of pieces, repairing of the roof, etc., when a newly constructed rotary comes down in the first strong wind. If the principles of mechanical engineering are understood it is wise to calculate the loads and torques which will exist in the various members of the structure with the highest wind velocity which may be expected in the locality of the installation. If this is not possible it will usually be worth the time and effort to look up a friend who understands these principles.

Radiating Elements One thing more or less standard about the construction of rotatable antenna arrays is the use of dural tubing for the self-supporting elements. Other materials may be used but an alloy known as 2024 has proven over a period of time to be quite satisfactory. Copper tubing is too heavy for a given strength, and steel tubing, unless copper plated, is likely to add an undesirably large loss resistance to the array. Also, steel tubing, even when plated, is not likely to withstand salt atmosphere (such as is encountered along the seashore) for a satisfactory period of time. Do not use a soft aluminum alloy for the elements unless they will be quite short; 2024 is a hard alloy and is noncorrosive. Alloy 2017 and 6061 are also satisfactory, cheaper, and easier to obtain. Do not use alloys 5052, 2014, or 3003 (EMT), as these signify alloys which have not been heat treated for strength and rigidity. However, these softer alloys, and aluminum electrical conduit, may be used for short radiating

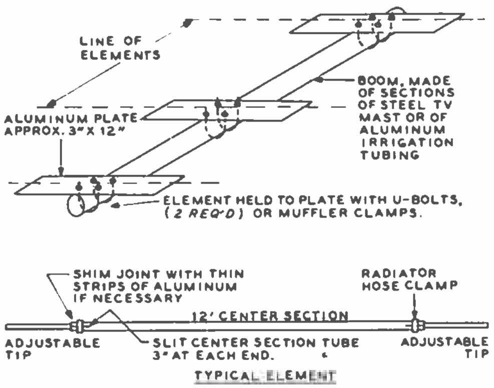


Figure 16

3-ELEMENT "PLUMBER'S DELIGHT" ANTENNA ARRAY

All-metal configuration permits rugged, light assembly. Joints are made with U-bolts and metal plates for maximum rigidity.

elements such as would be used for the 50-MHz band or as interconnecting conductors in a stacked array.

"Plumber's Delight" Construction It is characteristic of the conventional type of multielement parasitic array, such as discussed previously and outlined, that the centers of all the elements are at zero r-f potential with respect to ground. It is therefore possible to use a metallic structure without insulators for supporting the various elements of the array. A typical three-element array of this type is shown in figure 16. In this particular array, U-bolts and metal plates have been employed to fasten the elements to the boom. The elements are made of telescoping sections of aluminum tubing. The tips of the inner sections of tubing are split, and a tubing clamp is slipped over the joint, as shown in the drawing. Before assembly of the joint, the mating pieces of aluminum are given a thin coat of *Penetrox-A* compound. (This antioxidizing paste is manufactured by *Burndy Co.*, Norwalk, Conn. and is distributed by the *General Electric Supply Co.*) When the tubes are telescoped and the clamp is tightened, an airtight seal is produced, reducing corrosion to a minimum.

The boom of the parasitic array may be made from two or three sections of steel TV mast, or it may be made of a single section of aluminum irrigation pipe. This pipe is made by *Reynolds Aluminum Co.*, and others, and may often be purchased via the *Sears, Roebuck Co.* mail-order department. Three-inch pipe may be used for the 10- and 15-meter antennas, and the huskier four-inch pipe should be used for a 20-meter beam.

Automobile muffler clamps can often be used to affix the elements to the support plates. Larger clamps of this type will fasten the plates to the boom. In most cases, the muffler clamps are untreated, and they should be given one or two coats of rust-proof paint to protect them from inclement weather. All bolts, nuts, and washers used in the assembly of the array should be of the plated variety to reduce corrosion and rust.

If it is desired to use a split driven element for a balanced feed system, it is necessary to insulate the element from the supporting structure of the antenna. The element should be severed at the center, and the two halves driven onto a wooden dowel. The element may then be mounted on an aluminum support plate by means of four ceramic insulators. Metal-based insulators, such as the *Johnson 135-67* are recommended, since the all-ceramic types may

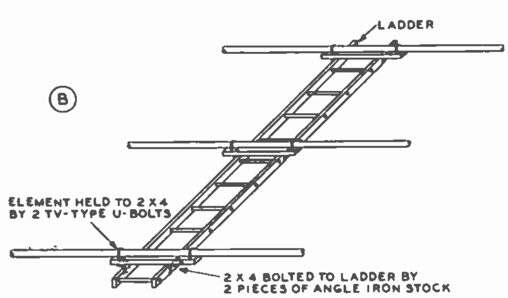


Figure 17

ALTERNATIVE WOODEN SUPPORTING ARRANGEMENT

A wooden ladder may be used to support a 10 or 15 meter array.

break at the mounting holes when the array is subject to heavy winds.

24-7 Tuning the Array

Although satisfactory results may be obtained by precutting the antenna array to dimensions given earlier in this chapter, the occasion might arise when it is desired to make a check on the operation of the antenna before calling the job complete.

The process of tuning an array may satisfactorily be divided into two more or less distinct steps: the actual tuning of the array for best front-to-back ratio or for maximum forward gain, and the adjustment to obtain the best possible impedance match between the antenna transmission line and the feed point of the array.

Tuning the Array The actual tuning of the array for best front-to-back ratio or maximum forward gain may best be accomplished with the aid of a low-power transmitter feeding a dipole antenna (polarized the same as the array being tuned) at least four or five wavelengths away from the antenna being tuned and located at the same elevation as that of the antenna under test. A calibrated field-strength meter of the remote-indicating type is then coupled to the feed point of the antenna array being tuned. The transmissions from the portable transmitter should be made as short as possible and the call sign of the station making the test should be transmitted at least every ten minutes.

It is, of course, possible to tune an array with the receiver connected to it and with a station a mile or two away making transmissions on your request. But this method is more cumbersome and is not likely to give complete satisfaction. It is also possible to carry out the tuning process with the transmitter connected to the array and with the field-strength meter connected to the remote dipole antenna. In this event the indicating instrument of the remote-indicating field-strength meter should be visible from the position where the elements are being tuned. However, when the array is being tuned with the transmitter connected to it there is always the problem of making continual adjustments to the transmitter so that a constant amount of power will be fed to the array under test. Also, if you use this system, use very low power (5 or 10 watts of power is usually sufficient) and make sure that the antenna transmission line is effectively grounded as far as d-c plate voltage is concerned. The use of the method described in the previous paragraph of course eliminates these problems.

One satisfactory method of tuning the array proper, assuming that it is a system with several parasitic elements, is to set the directors to the dimensions given in figure 5 and then to adjust the reflector for maximum forward signal. Then the first director should be varied in length until maximum forward signal is obtained, and so on if additional directors are used. Then the array may be reversed in direction and the reflector adjusted for best front-to-back ratio. Subsequent small adjustments may then be made in both the directors and the reflector for best forward signal with a reasonable ratio of front-to-back signal. The adjustments in the directors and the reflector will be found to be interdependent to a certain degree, but if small adjustments are made after the preliminary tuning process a satisfactory set of adjustments for maximum performance will be obtained. It is usually best to make the end sections of the elements smaller in diameter so that they will slip inside the larger tubing sections. The smaller sliding sections may be clamped inside the larger main sections.

In making the adjustments described, it is best to have the rectifying element of the remote-indicating field-strength meter directly at the feed point of the array, with a resistor at the feed point of the estimated value of feed-point impedance for the array.

Matching to the Antenna Transmission Line The problem of matching the impedance of the antenna transmission line to the array is much simplified if the process of tuning the array is made a substantially separate process as just described. *After* the tuning operation is complete, the resonant frequency of the driven element of the antenna should be checked, directly at the center of the driven element if practical, with a grid-dip meter. It is important that the resonant frequency

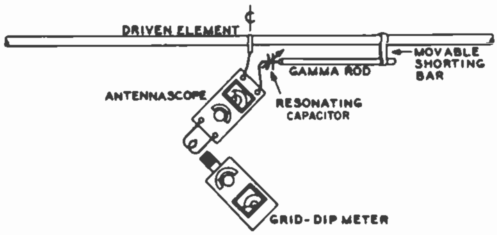


Figure 18

ADJUSTMENT OF GAMMA MATCH BY USE OF ANTENNASCOPE AND GRID-DIP METER

of the antenna be at the *center* of the frequency band to be covered. If the resonant frequency is found to be much different from the desired frequency, the length of the driven element of the array should be altered until this condition exists. A relatively small change in the length of the driven element will have only a second-order effect on the tuning of the parasitic elements of the array. Hence, a moderate change in the length of the driven element may be made without repeating the tuning process for the parasitic elements.

When the resonant frequency of the antenna system is correct, the antenna transmission line, with impedance-matching device or network between the line and antenna feed point, is then attached to the array and coupled to a low-power exciter unit or transmitter. Then, preferably, a standing-wave meter is connected in series with the antenna transmission line at a point relatively much closer to the transmitter than to the antenna.

If the standing-wave ratio is below 1.5 to 1 it is satisfactory to leave the installation as it is. If the ratio is greater than this range it will be best when twin line or coaxial line is being used, and advisable with open-wire line, to attempt to decrease the SWR.

It must be remembered that no adjustments made at the *transmitter* end of the transmission line will alter the SWR on the line. All adjustments to better the SWR must be made at the *antenna* end of the line and to the device which performs the impedance transformation necessary to match the characteristic impedance of the antenna to that of the transmission line.

Before any adjustments to the matching system are made, the resonant frequency of the driven element must be ascertained, as explained previously. If all adjustments to correct impedance mismatch are made at this frequency, the problem of reactance termination of the transmission line is eliminated, greatly simplifying the problem. The following steps should be taken to adjust the impedance transformation:

1. The output impedance of the matching device should be measured. An Antennascope and a grid-dip oscillator are required for this step. The Antennascope is connected to the output terminals of the matching device. If the driven element is a folded dipole, the Antennascope connects directly to the split section of the dipole. If a gamma match or T-match is used, the Antennascope connects to the transmission-line end of the device. If a Q-section is used, the Antennascope connects to the bottom end of the section. The grid-dip oscillator is coupled to the input terminals of the Antennascope as shown in figure 18.
2. The grid-dip oscillator is tuned to the resonant frequency of the antenna, which has been determined previously, and the Antennascope control is turned for a null reading on the meter of the Antennascope. The impedance presented to the Antennascope by the matching device may be read directly on the calibrated dial of the Antennascope.
3. Adjustments should be made to the matching device to present the desired impedance transformation to the Antennascope. If a folded dipole is used as the driven element, the transformation ratio of the dipole must be varied as explained previously in this chapter to provide a more exact match. If a T-match or gamma match system is used, the length of the matching rod may be changed to effect a proper match. If the Antennascope ohmic reading is *lower* than the desired reading, the length of the matching rod should be *increased.* If the Antennascope reading is *higher* than the de-

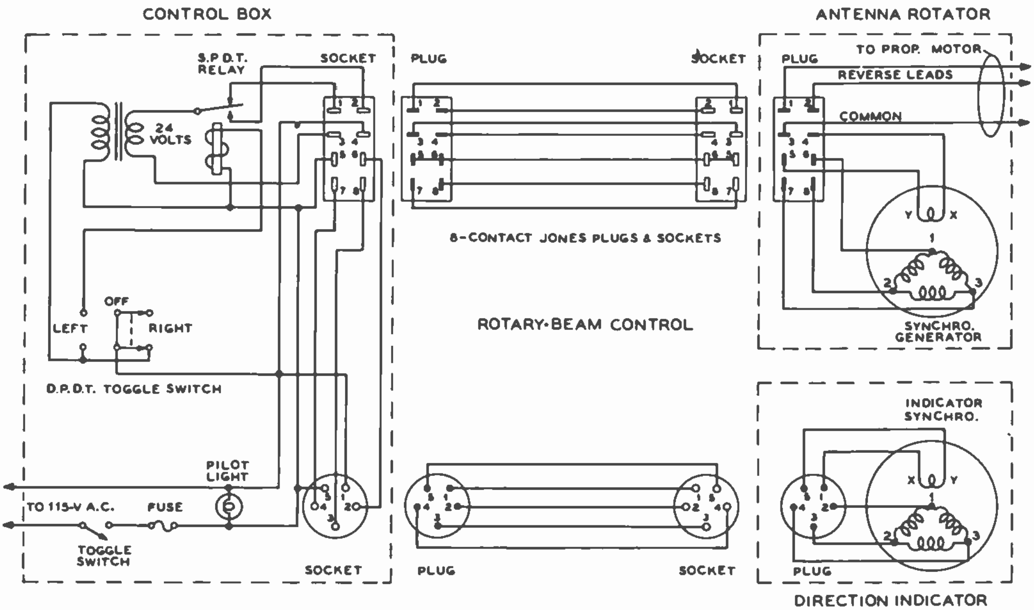


Figure 19

SCHEMATIC OF A COMPLETE ANTENNA CONTROL SYSTEM

sired reading, the length of the matching rod should be *decreased.* After each change in length of the matching rod, the series capacitor in the matching system should be re-resonated for best null on the meter of the Antennascope.

Raising and Lowering the Array A practical problem always present when tuning up and matching an array is the physical location of the structure. If the array is atop the mast it is inaccessible for adjustment, and if it is located on stepladders where it can be adjusted easily it cannot be rotated. One encouraging factor in this situation is the fact that experience has shown that if the array is placed 8 or 10 feet above ground on some stepladders for the preliminary tuning process, the raising of the system to its full height will not produce a serious change in the adjustments. So it is usually possible to make preliminary adjustments with the system located slightly greater than head height above ground, and then to raise the antenna to a position where it may be rotated for final adjustments. If the position of the matching device as determined near the ground is marked so that the adjustments will not be lost, the array may be raised to rotatable height and the fastening clamps left loose enough so that the elements may be slid in by means of a long bamboo pole. After a series of trials a satisfactory set of adjustments can be obtained.

The matching process does not require rotation, but it does require that the antenna proper be located at as nearly its normal operating position as possible. However, on a particular installation the standing-wave ratio on the transmission line near the transmitter may be checked with the array in the air, and then the array may be lowered to ascertain whether or not the SWR has changed. If it has not, and in most cases if the feeder line is strung out back and forth well above the ground as the antenna is lowered they will not change, the last adjustment may be determined, the standing-wave ratio again checked, and the antenna re-installed in its final location.

24-8 Indication of Direction

The most satisfactory method for indicating the direction of transmission of a rotatable array is that which uses *Selsyns* or *Synchros* for the transmission of the data from the rotating structure to the indicating pointer at the operating position. A number of Synchros and Selsyns of various types are available on the surplus market. Some of them are designed for operation on 115 volts at 60 *Hertz*, some are designed for operation on 60 Hertz but at a lowered voltage, and some are designed for operation from 400-Hertz or 800-*Hertz* energy. This latter type of high-frequency Selsyn is the most generally available type, and the high-frequency units are smaller and lighter than the 60-*Hertz* units. Since the indicating Selsyn must deliver an almost negligible amount of power to the pointer which it drives, the high-frequency types will operate quite satisfactorily from 60-Hertz power if the voltage on them is reduced to somewhere between 6.3 and 20 volts. In the case of many of the units available, a connection sheet is provided along with a recommendation in regard to the operating voltage when they are run on 60 Hertz. In any event the operating voltage should be held as low as it may be and still give satisfactory transmission of data from the antenna to the operating position. Certainly it should not be necessary to run such a voltage on the units that they become overheated.

A suitable Selsyn indicating system is shown in figure 19.

Systems using a potentiometer capable of continuous rotation and a milliammeter, along with a battery or other source of direct current, may also be used for the indication of direction.

24-9 Three-Band Beams

A popular form of beam antenna introduced during the past few years is the so-called *three-band beam*. An array of this type is designed to operate on three adjacent amateur bands, such as the 10-, 15-, and 20-meter group. The principle of operation of this form of antenna is to employ parallel-tuned circuits placed at critical positions in the elements of the beam which serve to electrically connect and disconnect the outer sections of the elements as the frequency of excitation of the antenna is changed. A typical three-band element is shown in figure 20. At the lowest operating frequency, the tuned *traps* exert a minimum influence on the element which resonates at a frequency determined by the electrical length of the configuration, plus a slight degree of loading contributed by the traps. At some higher frequency (generally about 1.5 times the lowest operating frequency) the outer set of traps is in a parallel resonant condition, placing a high impedance between the element and the tips beyond the traps. Thus, the element resonates at a frequency 1.5 times higher than that determined by the overall length of the element. As the frequency of operation is raised to approximately 2.0 times the lowest operating frequency, the inner set of traps becomes resonant, effectively disconnecting a larger portion of the element from the driven section. The length of the center section is resonant at the highest frequency of operation. The center section, plus the two adjacent inner sections are resonant at the intermediate frequency of operation, and the complete element is resonant at the lowest frequency of operation.

The efficiency of such a system is determined by the accuracy of tuning of both the element sections and the isolating traps. In addition the combined dielectric losses of the traps affect the overall antenna efficiency. As with all multipurpose devices, some compromise between operating convenience and efficiency must be made with antennas designed to operate over more than one narrow band of frequencies. Taking into account the theoretical difficulties that must be overcome it is a tribute to the designers of the better multiband beams that they perform as well as they do.

The Isolating Trap The parallel-tuned circuit which serves as an isolating trap for a multiband antenna should combine high circuit Q with good environmental protection. A highly satisfactory trap configuration based on the original design of W3DZZ is shown in figure 21. The trap capacitor, which has a value of about 25 pf, is made of two sections of aluminum tubing which form a portion of the antenna element. The capacitor dielectric is moulded lucite, or similar plastic material, given a coat of epoxy to

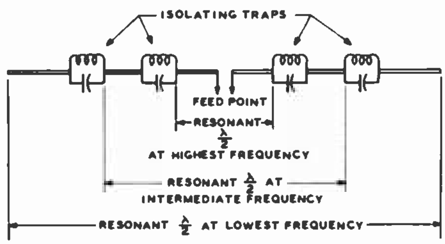


Figure 20

TRAP-TYPE "THREE BAND" ELEMENT

Isolating traps permit dipole to be self-resonant at three widely different frequencies.

help resist crazing and cracking caused by exposure to sunlight. The coil is wound of No. 8 aluminum wire and, with the capacitor placed within it, has a Q of nearly 300. The leads of the coil are bent around the tubing and a small aluminum block is used to form an inexpensive clamp. If desired, an aluminum cable clamp may be substituted for the homemade device.

The isolating trap is usually tuned to the lower edge of an amateur band, rather than to the center, to compensate for the length of the unit. In general, the 15-meter trap is tuned to approximately 20.8 MHz and the 10-meter trap is tuned near 27.8 MHz. The trap frequency is not critical within a few hundred kilohertz. Resonance is established by squeezing or expanding the turns of the coil while the trap is resonated on the bench with a grid-dip oscillator and a calibrated receiver.

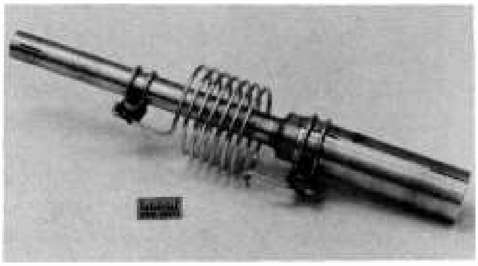


Figure 21

HIGH-Q ISOLATING TRAP

This trap has a Q of nearly 300 and is well suited for multiband antennas. The coil is wound of No. 8 aluminum clothesline wire and is 3" in diameter and 3" long. The 15-meter trap has seven turns (illustrated) and the 10-meter trap has five turns. The capacitor is made from two lengths of aluminum tubing, coaxially aligned in a lucite dielectric. Capacitor length is about five inches and tubing sizes are 3/4 inch and 1-1/4 inch. Capacitance is about 25 pf. Lucite projects from end of capacitor to form 1/2-inch collar which is coated with epoxy to prevent deterioration of the dielectric under exposure to sunlight. Similar traps have been made using teflon as a dielectric material. Ends of aluminum tubes are slotted to facilitate assembly to antenna elements.

A substitute for the moulded capacitor may be made up of two 40 pf, 5-kv ceramic capacitors connected in series (*Centralab 850S-50Z*) and mounted in a length of phenolic tubing of the proper diameter to slip within the aluminum antenna sections. The trap coil is then wound about the capacitor assembly in the manner shown in the photograph.

CHAPTER TWENTY-FIVE

Mobile Equipment Design and Installation

Mobile operation is permitted on all amateur bands. Tremendous impetus to this phase of the hobby was given by the suitable design of compact mobile equipment. Complete mobile installations may be purchased as packaged units, or the whole mobile station may be home built, according to the whim of the operator.

The problems involved in achieving a satisfactory two-way installation vary somewhat with the band, but many of the problems are common to all bands. For instance, ignition noise is more troublesome on 10 meters than on 75 meters, but on the other hand an efficient antenna system is much more easily accomplished on 10 meters than on 75 meters. Also, obtaining a worthwhile amount of transmitter output without excessive battery drain is a problem on all bands.

Specialized mobile equipment is available for operation on the 2- and 6-meter bands and a small amount of mobile use is made of the 432-MHz band. The availability of surplus equipment, moreover, has stimulated f-m mobile activity, especially on 2 meters, where the use of fixed f-m repeaters placed on elevated locations has done much to enhance vhf mobile operation.

The recent trend has been toward the use of SSB mobile transceivers for high-frequency operation. The low duty-cycle of SSB equipment, as contrasted to the heavy power drain of conventional a-m gear has encouraged the use of relatively high-power sideband equipment in many mobile installations. The rigid frequency stability requirement for satisfactory SSB reception, however, has obsoleted the once-popular tuned-converter and auto-receiver combination formerly used for a-m reception. Transistor, crystal-controlled converters have attained some measure of popularity when combined with transistor auto radios for casual mobile reception of amateur signals. If the converter includes a demodulating bfo, it may be used for satisfactory SSB reception.

25-1 A Transistorized Mobile Converter

This inexpensive three-transistor mobile converter may be used in conjunction with a transistor auto radio for a-m, c-w or SSB reception on the 80- or 40-meter amateur bands. The converter is self-powered from a 9-volt miniature battery and provides satisfactory reception when used in conjunction with a tuned mobile whip antenna.

The schematic of the converter is shown in figure 1. The unit uses inexpensive *RCA*

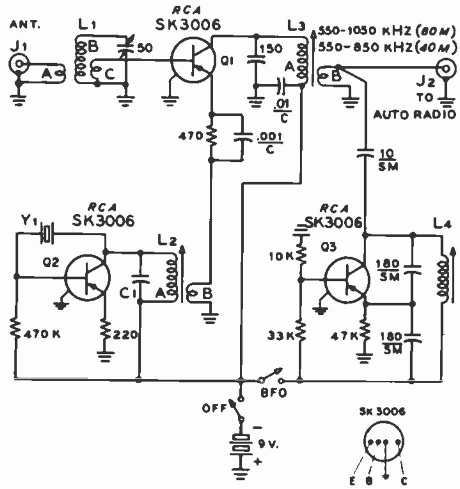


Figure 1

SCHEMATIC OF TRANSISTORIZED MOBILE CONVERTER

***L_1*—80 meters; Approx. 40 µH. 56 turns #24, 1" diam., approx. 2" long. (Air-Dux 832T). Link windings A and B are each 10 turns #22 d.c.c. at ground end of L_1**
40 meters; Approx. 17 µH. 24 turns #24, 1" diam., approx. 3/4" long. (Air-Dux 832T). Link windings A and B are each 7 turns #22 d.c.c. at ground end of L_1
***L_2*—80 meters; Approx. 35 µH. (J.W. Miller 21A335RBI). Link winding B is 4 turns #22 d.c.c. at end of winding A. Capacitor C_1 = 50 pf**
40 meters; Approx. 20 µH. (J. W. Miller 21A225RBI). Link winding same as for 80 meters. Capacitor C_1 = 30 pf
***L_3*—190-330 µH. (J. W. Miller 4513). Peak to portion of band in use. Link winding B is 30 turns #22 d.c.c. on bottom end of L_3**
***L_4*—3.3-4.1 mH (J. W. Miller 21A333RBI). Peak for proper SSB reception**
***Y_1*—80 meters, 2.950 MHz. 40 meters, 6.450 MHz**

"universal replacement" transistors in an easily constructed circuit. Transistor Q_1 serves as a mixer stage, with the incoming 80- or 40-meter signal impressed on the base circuit and the local mixing signal link coupled into the emitter circuit. A crystal-controlled transistor oscillator stage (Q_2) provides the proper mixing frequency. A separate beat oscillator (Q_3) is used for SSB and c-w reception, the bfo being tuned to the intermediate frequency of the auto radio which, in most cases, is 262 kHz. The bfo is coupled to the i-f circuitry through the stray capacitance of the input circuit of the auto radio.

Band selection is accomplished by the choice of proper coils and crystal. The cost of the converter is so moderate that it is better to construct separate converters for each amateur band than to try to make a band-change system for a single converter.

The converter may be built on a section of copper-plated phenolic circuit board and placed in a miniature aluminum utility box, much in the manner shown for the construction of the vhf converters in the next chapter of this Handbook. It is suggested that transistor sockets be used to prevent soldering heat from damaging the transistors.

The converter should be tested in stages. Operation of the mixing oscillator is checked by monitoring the crystal frequency in a nearby receiver as the slug of coil L_2 is adjusted. A test signal in the chosen amateur band should then be injected into the antenna receptacle (J_1) and the converter temporarily connected to the station receiver, or a broadcast set tuned to the lower end of the broadcast band. Tuned circuits L_1 and L_3 are peaked for maximum signal strength near the center of the amateur band. The last adjustment is to set the slug of bfo coil L_4 for best SSB reception. If oscillator injection is too weak for good SSB reception, it is suggested that the lead from the 10-pf coupling capacitor to coil L_3B be disconnected and run into the auto radio and placed near one of the i-f stages of the receiver.

Two-Meter Reception For reception on the 144-MHz amateur band, and those higher in frequency, the simple converter/auto-set combination has not proven very satisfactory. The primary reason for this is the fact that the relatively sharp i-f channel of the auto set imposes too severe a limitation on the stability of the high-frequency oscillator in the converter. And if a crystal-controlled beating oscillator is used in the converter, only a portion of the band may be covered by tuning the auto set.

The most satisfactory arrangement has been found to consist of a separately mounted i-f, audio, and power-supply system, with the converter mounted near the steering column. The i-f system should have

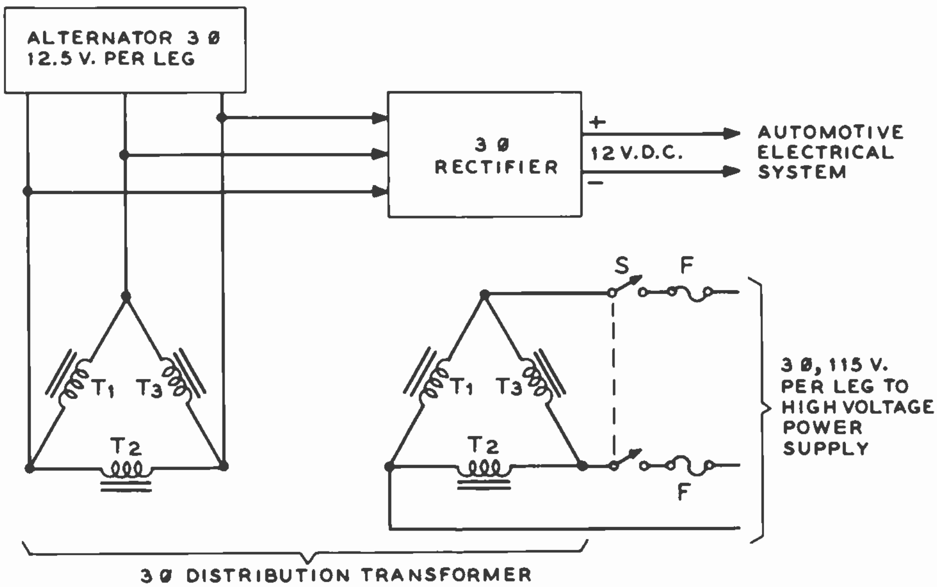


Figure 2

THREE-PHASE MOBILE POWER SYSTEM

Three filament transformers connected backwards in a delta configuration provide 115 volts for operation of high-power mobile equipment. T_1, T_2 and T_3 may be Triad F-84AC (115/230-to-12 volts at 20 amperes) or Signal 24-8 (115 volts to 12 volts at 16 amperes). Signal Transformer Co., 1661 McDonald Ave., Brooklyn 20, N.Y.

a bandwidth of 30 to 100 kHz and may have a center frequency of 10.7 MHz if standard i-f transformers are to be used. The control head may include the 144-MHz r-f, mixer, and oscillator sections, and sometimes the first i-f stage. Alternatively, the control head may include only the high-frequency oscillator, with a broadband r-f unit included within the main receiver assembly along with the i-f and audio systems.

An alternative arrangement is to build a converter, 10.7-MHz i-f channel, and second detector unit, and then to operate this unit in conjunction with the auto-set power supply, audio system, and speaker. Such a system makes economical use of space and power drain, and can be switched to provide normal broadcast-band auto reception or reception through a converter for the high-frequency amateur bands.

A recent development has been the vhf transceiver, typified by the *Gonset Communicator*. Such a unit combines a crystal-controlled transmitter and a tunable vhf receiver together with a common audio system and power supply. The complete vhf station may be packaged in a single cabinet.

25-2 Mobile Power Sources

As in the case of transmitters for fixed-station operation, there are many schools of thought as to the type of transmitter which is most suitable for mobile operation. One school states that the mobile transmitter should have very low power drain, so that no modification of the electrical system of the automobile will be required, and so that the equipment may be operated without serious regard to discharging the battery when the car is stopped, or overloading the generator when the car is in motion. A total transmitter power drain of about 80 watts from the car battery (6 volts at 13 amperes, or 12 volts at 7 amperes) is about the maximum that can be allowed under these conditions. For maximum power efficiency it is recommended that a transistor type of supply be used as opposed to a dynamotor supply, since the conversion efficiency of the transistor unit is high compared to that of the dynamotor.

A second school of thought states that the mobile transmitter should be of relatively high power to overcome the poor efficiency of the usual mobile whip antenna. In this case, the mobile power should be drawn from a system that is independent from the electrical system of the automobile. A belt-driven high-voltage generator is often coupled to the automobile engine in this type of installation.

Three-Phase Power Systems With many SSB mobile radio installations now requiring 400 watts peak power or more from the automotive electrical system, it usually is necessary to run the car engine when the equipment is operated for more than a few minutes at a time to avoid discharging the battery. Many commercial vehicles faced with this problem have *3-phase alternators* installed to provide extra power for two-way radio equipment. A block diagram of such an installation is shown in figure 2. Voltage regulation of the alternator system is very good, although the frequency varies with engine speed, ranging from 100 Hz or so with the engine idling to nearly 1000 Hz at top speed. Modern power transformers, however, even though rated for 60-Hz operation, are capable of operating efficiently over this range of frequencies. In addition, the 60-Hz rating of the transformer may be considerably exceeded at the higher supply frequency, particularly in the case of low duty-cycle SSB equipment.

Shown in figure 3 is a *Leece-Neville* 3-phase alternator mounted atop the engine block, and driven with a fan belt. The voltage regulator and silicon rectifier for charging the car battery from the a-c system replace the usual d-c generator. These new items are mounted in the front of the car radiator. The alternator provides a balanced delta output circuit wherein the line voltage is equal to the coil voltage, but the line current is $\sqrt{3}$ times the coil current. The coil voltage is a nominal 12-volts, rms and

Figure 3

LEECE-NEVILLE 3-PHASE ALTERNATOR IS ENGINE DRIVEN BY AUXILIARY FAN BELT

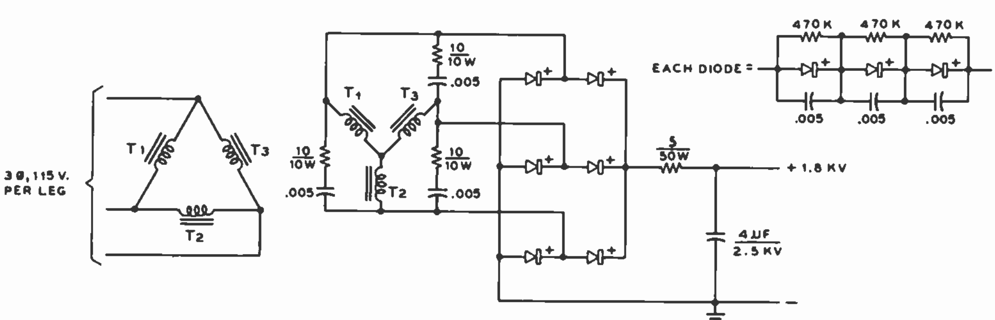


Figure 4

THREE-PHASE-MOBILE KILOWATT SUPPLY

Three-phase power from a system such as shown in figure 3 may be used to provide high voltage for mobile transmitting equipment. For 1800 volts, transformers T_1, T_2, and T_3 are 115-volt primary, 830-volt secondary (Stancor PC-8301). For 2400 volts, T_1, T_2, and T_3 are 115-volt primary, 1030-volt secondary (Stancor PC-8302). Three type 1N1697 or 1N4005 diodes are used in each stack.

three 12-volt, 20-ampere filament transformers may be connected in delta on the primary and secondary windings to step the 12 volts up to 3-phase 115 volts. If desired, a special 115-volt, 3-phase step-up transformer may be wound which will occupy less space than the three filament transformers. Since the ripple frequency of a 3-phase d-c power supply will be quite high, a single 4-μfd filter capacitor will suffice.

The schematic of an 1800-volt, 3-phase kilowatt power supply for SSB service is shown in figure 4.

25-3 Antennas for Mobile Work

Auxiliary Antenna Trimmer One modification of the auto receiver which may or may not be desirable depending on the circumstances is the addition of an auxiliary antenna trimmer capacitor. If the converter uses an untuned output circuit and the antenna trimmer on the auto set is peaked with the converter cut in, then it is quite likely that the trimmer adjustment will not be optimum for broadcast-band reception when the converter is cut out. For reception of strong broadcast-band signals this usually will not be serious, but where reception of weak broadcast signals is desired the loss in gain often cannot be tolerated, especially in view of the fact that the additional length of antenna cable required for the converter installation tends to reduce the strength of broadcast-band signals.

If the converter has considerable reserve gain, it may be practical to peak the antenna trimmer on the auto set for broadcast-band reception rather than resonating it to the converter output circuit. But oftentimes this results in insufficient converter gain, excessive image troubles from loud local amateur stations, or both.

The difficulty can be circumvented by incorporation of an auxiliary antenna trimmer connected from the "hot" antenna lead on the auto receiver to ground, with a switch in series for cutting it in or out. This capacitor and switch can be connected across the converter end or the set end of the cable between the converter and receiver. This auxiliary trimmer should have a range of about 3 to 50 pf, and may be of the inexpensive compression mica type.

With the trimmer cut out and the converter turned off (bypassed by the "in-out" switch), peak the regular antenna trimmer on the auto set at about 1400 kHz. Then turn on the converter, with the receiver tuned to 1500 kHz, switch in the auxiliary trimmer, and peak this trimmer for maximum background noise. The auxiliary trimmer then can be left switched in at all times except when receiving very weak broadcast-band signals.

Some auto sets, particularly certain *General Motors* custom receivers, employ a high-

Figure 5

A CENTER-LOADED 80-METER WHIP USING AIR-WOUND COIL MAY BE USED WITH HIGH-POWERED TRANSMITTERS

An anti-corona loop is placed at the top of the whip to reduce loss of power and burning of tip of antenna. Number of turns in coil is critical and adjustable, high-Q coil is recommended. Whip may be used over frequency range of about 15 kHz without retuning.

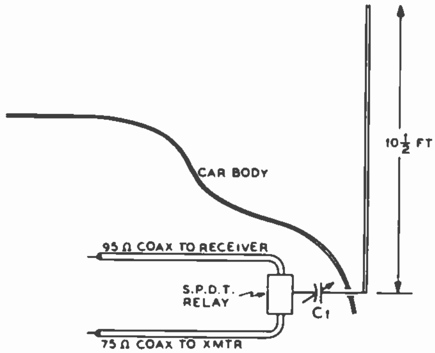


Figure 6

5/16-WAVE WHIP RADIATOR FOR 10 METERS

If a whip antenna is made slightly longer than one-quarter wave it acts as a slightly better radiator than the usual quarter-wave whip, and it can provide a better match to the antenna transmission line if the reactance is tuned out by a series capacitor close to the base of the antenna. Capacitor C_1 may be a 100-pf midget variable.

Q high-impedance input circuit which is very critical as to antenna capacitance. Unless the shunt capacitance of the antenna (including cable) approximates that of the antenna installation for which the set was designed, the antenna trimmer on the auto set cannot be made to hit resonance with the converter cut out. This is particularly true when a long antenna cable is used to reach a whip mounted at the rear of the car. Usually the condition can be corrected by unsoldering the internal connection to the antenna terminal connector on the auto set and inserting in series a 100-pf mica capacitor. Alternatively an adjustable trimmer covering at least 50 to 150 pf may be substituted for the 100-pf fixed capacitor. Then the adjustment of this trimmer and that of the regular antenna trimmer can be juggled back and forth until a condition is achieved where the input circuit of the auto set is resonant with the converter either in or out of the circuit. This will provide maximum gain and image rejection under all conditions of use.

10-Meter Mobile Antennas The most popular mobile antenna for 10-meter operation is a rear-mounted whip approximately 8 feet long, fed with coaxial line. This is a highly satisfactory antenna, but a few remarks are in order on the subject of feed and coupling systems.

The feed-point resistance of a resonant quarter-wave rear-mounted whip is approximately 20 to 25 ohms. While the standing-wave ratio when using 50-ohm coaxial line will not be much greater than 2 to 1, it is nevertheless desirable to make the line to the transmitter exactly odd multiples of one-quarter wavelength long electrically at the center of the band. This procedure will minimize variations in loading over the band. The antenna changeover relay preferably should be located either at the antenna end or the transmitter end of the line, but if it is more convenient physically the line may be broken anywhere for insertion of the relay.

If the same rear-mounted whip is used for broadcast-band reception, attenuation of broadcast-band signals by the high shunt capacitance of the low-impedance feed line can be reduced by locating the changeover relay right at the antenna lead-in, and by running 95-ohm coax (instead of 50 or 75 ohm coax) from the relay to the converter. Ordinarily this will produce negligible effect on the operation of the converter, but usually will make a worthwhile improvement in the strength of broadcast-band signals.

A more effective radiator and a better line match may be obtained by making the whip approximately 10½ feet long and feeding it with 75-ohm coax (such as RG-11/U) via a series capacitor, as shown in figure 6. The relay and series capacitor are mounted inside the trunk, as close to the antenna feedthrough or base-mount insulator as possible. The 10½-foot length applies to the overall length from the tip of the whip to the point where the lead-in passes through the car body. The leads inside the car (connecting the coaxial cable, relay, series capacitor and antenna lead) should be as short as possible. The outer conductor of both coaxial cables should be grounded to the car body at the relay end with short, heavy conductors.

A 100-pf midget variable capacitor is suitable for C_1. The optimum setting should be determined experimentally at the center of the band. This setting then will be satisfactory over the whole band.

One suitable coupling arrangement for either a ¼-wave or 5/16-wave whip on 10 meters is to use a conventional tank circuit, inductively coupled to a "variable-link" coupling loop which feeds the coaxial line. Alternatively, a pi-network output circuit may be used. If the input impedance of the line is very low and the tank circuit has a low C/L ratio, it may be necessary to resonate the coupling loop with series capacitance in order to obtain sufficient coupling. This condition often is encountered with a ¼-wave whip when the line length approximates an electrical half-wavelength.

If an all-band center-loaded mobile antenna is used, the loading coil at the center of the antenna may be shorted out for operation of the antenna on the 10-meter band. The usual type of center-loaded mobile antenna will be between 9 and 11 feet long, including the center-loading inductance which is shorted out. Hence such an antenna may be shortened to an electrical quarter-wave for the 10-meter band by using a series capacitor as just discussed. Alternatively, if a pi-network is used in the plate circuit of the output stage of the mobile transmitter, any reactance presented at the antenna terminals of the transmitter by the antenna may be tuned out with the pi-network.

The All-Band Center-Loaded Mobile Antenna The great majority of mobile operation on the 14-MHz band and below is with center-loaded whip antennas. These antennas use an insulated bumper or body mount, with provision for coaxial feed from the base of the antenna to the transmitter, as shown in figure 7.

The center-loaded whip antenna must be tuned to obtain optimum operation on the desired frequency of operation. These antennas will operate at maximum efficiency over a range of perhaps 20 kHz on the 75-meter band, covering a somewhat wider range on the 40-meter band, and covering the whole 20-meter phone band. The procedure for tuning the antenna is as follows:

The antenna is installed, fully assembled, with a coaxial lead of RG-58/U from the base of the antenna to the place where the transmitter is installed. The rear deck of the car should be closed, and the car should be parked in a location as clear as possible of trees, buildings, and overhead power lines. Objects within 15 or 20 feet of the antenna can exert a considerable detuning effect on the antenna system due to its relatively high operating Q. The end of the coaxial cable which will plug into the transmitter is terminated in a link of 3 or 4 turns of wire. This link is then coupled to a grid-dip meter and the resonant frequency of the antenna determined by noting the frequency at which the grid current fluctuates. The coils furnished with the antennas normally are too large for the usual operating frequency, since it is much easier to remove turns than to add them. Turns then are removed, *one at a time*, until the antenna resonates at the desired frequency. If too many turns have been removed, a length of wire may be spliced on and soldered. Then, with a length of insulating tubing slipped over the soldered joint, turns may be added to lower the resonant frequency. Or, if the tapped type of coil is used, taps are changed until the proper number of turns for the desired operating frequency is found. This procedure is repeated for the different bands of operation.

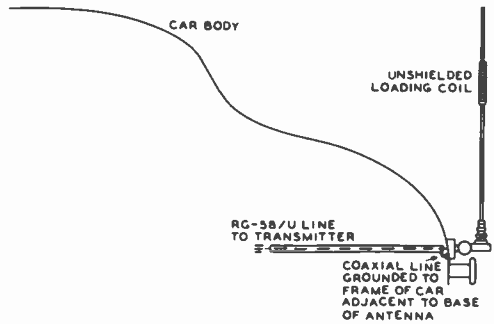


Figure 7

THE CENTER-LOADED WHIP ANTENNA

The center-loaded whip antenna, when provided with a tapped loading coil or a series of coils, may be used over a wide frequency range. The loading coil may be shorted for use of the antenna on the 10-meter band.

25-4 Construction and Installation of Mobile Equipment

It is recommended that the following measures be taken when constructing mobile equipment, either transmitting or receiving, to ensure trouble-free operation over long periods:

Use only a stiff, heavy chassis unless the chassis is quite small.

Use lock washers or lock nuts when mounting components by means of screws.

Use stranded hookup wire except where r-f considerations make it inadvisable (such as for instance the plate tank circuit leads in a vhf amplifier). Lace and tie leads wherever necessary to keep them from vibrating or flopping around.

Unless provided with gear drive, tuning capacitors in the large sizes will require a rotor lock.

Filamentary (quick-heating) tubes should be mounted only in a vertical position.

The larger size carbon resistors and mica capacitors should not be supported from tube socket pins, particularly from miniature sockets. Use tie points and keep the resistor and capacitor "pigtails" short.

Generally speaking, rubber shock mounts are unnecessary or even undesirable with passenger car installations, or at least with full-size passenger cars. The springing is sufficiently "soft" that well constructed radio equipment can be bolted directly to the vehicle without damage from shock or vibration. Unless shock mounting is properly engineered as to the stiffness and placement of the shock mounts, mechanical-resonance "amplification" effects may actually cause the equipment to be shaken more than if the equipment were bolted directly to the vehicle.

Surplus military equipment provided with shock or vibration mounts was intended for use in aircraft, jeeps, tanks, gun-firing Naval craft, small boats, and similar vehicles and craft subject to severe shock and vibration. Also, the shock mounting of such equipment is very carefully engineered in order to avoid harmful resonances.

To facilitate servicing of mobile equipment, all interconnecting cables between units should be provided with separable connectors on at least one end.

Control Circuits The send-receive control circuits of a mobile installation are dictated by the design of the equipment, and therefore will be left to the ingenuity of the reader. However, a few generalizations and suggestions are in order.

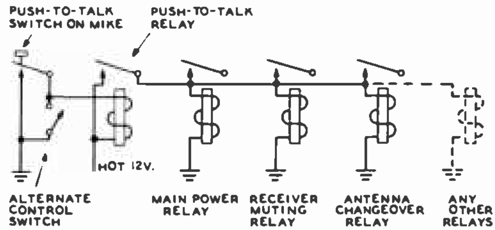


Figure 8

RELAY CONTROL CIRCUIT

Simplified schematic of the recommended relay control circuit for mobile transmitters. The relatively small push-to-talk relay is controlled by the button on the microphone or the communications switch. Then one of the contacts on this relay controls the other relays of the transmitter; one side of the coil of all the additional relays controlled should be grounded.

Do not attempt to control too many relays, particularly heavy-duty relays with large coils, by means of an ordinary push-to-talk switch on a microphone. These contacts are not designed for heavy work, and the inductive "kick" will cause more sparking than the contacts on the microphone switch are designed to handle. It is better to actuate a single relay with the push-to-talk switch and then control all other relays, including the heavy-duty contactor for the dynamotor or transistor power pack, with this relay.

The procedure of operating only one relay directly by the push-to-talk switch, with all other relays being controlled by this control relay, will eliminate the often-encountered difficulty where the shutting down of one item of equipment will *close* relays in other items as a result of the coils of relays being placed in series with each other and with heater circuits. A recommended general control circuit, where one side of the main control relay is connected to the hot 12-volt circuit, but all other relays have one side connected to ground, is illustrated in figure 8. An additional advantage of such a circuit is that only one control wire need be run to the coil of each additional relay, the other side of the relay coil being grounded.

When purchasing relays keep in mind that the current rating of the contacts is

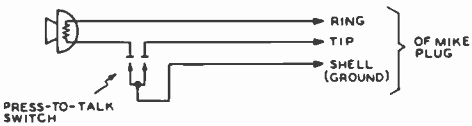


Figure 9

STANDARD CONNECTIONS FOR THE PUSH-TO-TALK SWITCH ON A HAND-HELD SINGLE-BUTTON CARBON MICROPHONE

not a fixed value, but depends on (1) the voltage, (2) whether it is a.c. or d.c., and (3) whether the circuit is purely resistive or is inductive. If in doubt, refer to the manufacturer's recommendations. Also keep in mind that a dynamotor (if you use one) presents almost a dead short until the armature starts turning, and the starting relay should be rated at considerably more than the normal dynamotor current.

Microphones and Circuits The standardized connections for a majority of hand-held microphones provided with push-to-talk switch are shown in figure 9. Practically all hand-held military-type single-button microphones on the surplus market use these connections.

There is an increasing tendency among mobile operators toward the use of microphones having better frequency and distortion characteristics than the standard single-button type. The high-impedance *dynamic* type is probably the most popular, with the *ceramic*-crystal type next in popularity. The conventional crystal type is not suitable for mobile use since the crystal unit will be destroyed by the high temperatures which can be reached in a closed car parked in the sun in the summer time.

The use of low-level microphones in mobile service requires careful attention to the elimination of common-ground circuits in the microphone lead. The ground connection for the shielded cable which runs from the transmitter to the microphone should be made at only one point, preferably directly adjacent to the input of the first tube or transistor in the speech amplifier. The use of a low-level microphone usually will require the addition of two speech stages, but these stages will take only a milliampere or two of current.

25-5 Vehicular Noise Suppression

Satisfactory reception on frequencies above the broadcast band usually requires greater attention to noise-suppression measures. The required measures vary with the particular vehicle and the frequency range involved.

Most of the various types of noise that are present in a vehicle may be broken down into the following main categories:

(1) Ignition noise.
(2) Wheel static (tire static, brake static, and intermittent ground via front wheel bearings).
(3) "Hash" from voltage regulator contacts.
(4) "Whine" from generator commutator segment make and break.
(5) Static from scraping connections between various parts of the car.

There is no need to suppress ignition noise completely, because at the higher frequencies ignition noise from passing vehicles makes the use of a noise limiter mandatory anyway. However, the limiter should not be given too much work to do, because at high engine speeds a noisy ignition system will tend to mask weak signals, even though with the limiter working, ignition "pops" may appear to be completely eliminated.

Another reason for good ignition suppression at the source is that strong ignition pulses contain enough energy, when integrated, to block the avc circuit of the receiver, causing the gain to drop whenever the engine is speeded up. Since the avc circuits of the receiver obtain no benefit from a noise clipper, it is important that ignition noise be suppressed enough at the source that the avc circuits will not be affected even when the engine is running at high speed.

Ignition Noise The following procedure should be found adequate for reducing the ignition noise of practically any passenger car to a level which the clipper can handle satisfactorily at any engine speed at any frequency from 500 kHz to 148 MHz. Some of the measures may already have been taken when the auto receiver was installed.

First either install a spark-plug suppressor on each plug, or else substitute resistor plugs. The latter are more effective than suppressors and on some cars ignition noise is reduced to a satisfactory level simply by installing them. However, they may not do an adequate job alone after they have been in use for a while, and it is a good idea to take the following additional measures.

Check all high-tension connections for gaps, particularly the "pinch-fit" terminal connectors widely used. Replace old high-tension wiring that may have become leaky.

Check to see if any of the high-tension wiring is cabled with low-tension wiring, or run in the same conduit. If so, reroute the low tension wiring to provide as much separation as practical.

Bypass to ground the 12-volt wire from the ignition switch at each end with a 0.1-μfd molded-case paper capacitor in parallel with a .001-μfd mica or ceramic, using the shortest possible leads.

Check to see that the hood makes good ground contact to the car body at several points. Special grounding contactors are available for attachment to the hood lacings on cars that otherwise would present a grounding problem.

If the high-tension coil is mounted on the dash, it may be necessary to shield the high-tension wire as far as the bulkhead, unless it already is shielded with armored conduit.

Wheel Static Wheel static is either static electricity generated by rotation of the tires and brake drums, or is noise generated by poor contact between the front wheels and the axles (due to the grease in the bearings). The latter type of noise seldom is caused by the rear wheels, but tire static may of course be generated by all four tires.

Wheel static can be eliminated by insertion of grounding springs under the front hub caps, and by inserting "tire powder" in all inner tubes. Both items are available at radio parts stores and from most auto radio dealers.

Voltage Regulator "Hash" Certain voltage regulators generate an objectionable amount of "hash" at the higher frequencies, particularly in the vhf range. A large bypass capacitor will affect the operation of the regulator and possibly damage the points. A small bypass can be used, however, without causing trouble. A 0.001-μfd mica capacitor placed from the field terminal of the regulator to ground with the shortest possible leads often will produce sufficient improvement. If not, a choke consisting of about 60 turns of No. 18 d.c.c. wound on a ¼-inch form can be added. This should be placed at the regulator terminal, and the 0.001-μfd bypass placed from the generator side of the choke to ground.

Generator "Whine" Generator "whine" often can be satisfactorily suppressed from 550 kHz to 148 MHz simply by bypassing the armature terminal to ground with a special "auto radio" capacitor of 0.25 or 0.5 μfd in parallel with a 0.001-μfd mica or ceramic capacitor. The former usually is placed on the generator when an auto radio is installed, but must be augmented by a mica or ceramic capacitor with short leads in order to be effective at the higher frequencies as well as on the broadcast band.

When more drastic measures are required, special filters can be obtained which are designed for the purpose. These are recommended for stubborn cases when a wide frequency range is involved. For reception over only a comparatively narrow band of frequencies, such as the 10-meter amateur band, a highly effective filter can be improvised by connecting a resonant choke between the previously described parallel bypass capacitors and the generator armature terminal. This may consist of No. 10 enameled wire wound on a suitable form and shunted with an adjustable trimmer capacitor to permit resonating the combination to the center of the frequency band involved. For the 10-meter band 11 turns close wound on a one-inch form and shunted by a 3-30-pf compression-type mica trimmer is suitable. The trimmer should be adjusted experimentally at the center frequency of the band in use.

When generator "whine" shows up after once being satisfactorily suppressed, the condition of the brushes and commutator should be checked. Unless a bypass capacitor has opened up, excessive "whine" usually indicates that the brushes or commutator are in need of attention in order to prevent damage to the generator.

Body Static Loose linkages in body or frame joints anywhere in the car are potential static producers when the car is in motion, particularly over a rough road. Locating the source of such noise is difficult, and the simplest procedure is to give the car a thorough tightening up in the hope that the offending poor contacts will be caught up by the procedure. The use of braided bonding straps between the various sections of the body of the car also may prove helpful.

Miscellaneous There are several other potential noise sources on a passenger vehicle, but they do not necessarily give trouble and therefore require attention only in some cases.

The heat, oil pressure, and gas gauges can cause a rasping or scraping noise. The gas gauge is the most likely offender. It will cause trouble only when the car is rocked or is in motion. The gauge units and panel indicators should both be bypassed with the 0.1-μfd paper and 0.001-μfd mica or ceramic capacitor combination previously described.

At high car speeds under certain atmospheric conditions, corona static may be encountered unless means are taken to prevent it. The receiving-type auto whips which employ a plastic ball tip are so provided in order to minimize this type of noise, which is simply a discharge of the frictional static built up on the car. A whip which ends in a relatively sharp metal point makes an ideal discharge point for the static charge, and will cause corona trouble at a much lower voltage than if the tip were hooded with insulation. A piece of *Vinylite* sleeving slipped over the top portion of the whip and wrapped tightly with heavy thread will prevent this type of static discharge under practically all conditions. An alternative arrangement is to wrap the top portion of the whip with *Scotch* brand electrical tape.

Generally speaking it is undesirable from the standpoint of engine performance to use both spark-plug suppressors *and* a distributor suppressor. Unless the distributor rotor clearance is excessive, noise caused by sparking of the distributor rotor will not be so bad but that it can be handled satisfactorily by a noise limiter. If not, it is preferable to shield the "hot" lead between ignition coil and distributor rather than use a distributor suppressor.

In many cases the control rods, speedometer cable, etc., will pick up high-tension noise under the hood and conduct it up under the dash where it causes trouble. If so, all control rods and cables should be bonded to the fire wall (bulkhead) where they pass through, using a short piece of heavy flexible braid of the type used for shielding.

In some cases it may be necessary to bond the engine to the frame at each rubber en-

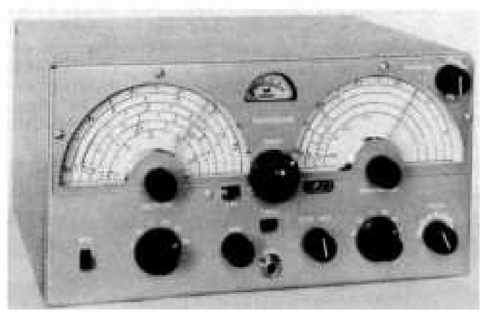


Figure 10

FIFTY-WATT, SIX-BAND TRANS-RECEIVER

This complete 50-watt portable or emergency station is housed in a ventilated cabinet 11" long, 5¾" high and 8½" deep. Separate oscillators are used for the receiver and transmitter sections, permitting reception and transmissions to be made on separate bands, if desired. The receiver portion is at the left, with the bfo switch to the left of the bandswitch, and the antenna trimming capacitor at the right. The transmitter portion is at the right, with the xtal-vfo switch to the left of the bandswitch and the 6146B plate tuning capacitor at the right.

A dual concentric gain control is mounted between the tuning dials, with the noise-limiter switch and crystal socket adjacent to it. The amplifier loading capacitor is upper right, above the vfo tuning dial.

A thin sheet of plexiglas extends the entire length of the panel to protect the dials. The plate tuning meter is mounted to the rear panel between the two vfo dials.

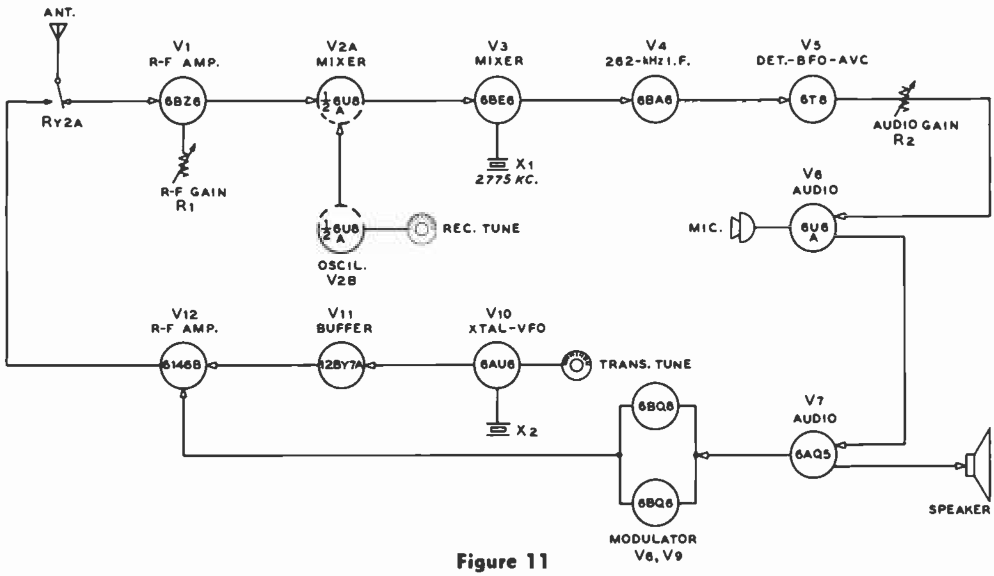


Figure 11

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF TRANS-RECEIVER

An external power supply is used and trans-receiver may be operated from a-c supply or from mobile power pack. Power requirements are 250 volts at 75 ma (receive and transmit) plus 500 volts at 120–200 ma (transmit). Transmitter vfo covers 3.5- to 4.0-MHz range, while crystal control is used for six-meter operation. Receiver is double conversion, with first intermediate frequency at 2515 kHz and second intermediate frequency at 262 kHz. Class-B, triode-connected 6BQ6 tubes are used as modulators, driven by 6AQ5 cathode follower, which also serves as audio output stage of receiver section. Mobile, carbon microphone (Electro-Voice 210-E) is used with single stage of speech amplification.

gine mount in a similar manner. If a rear-mounted whip is employed, the exhaust tail pipe also should be bonded to the frame if supported by rubber mounts.

Locating Noise Sources Determining the source of certain types of noise is made difficult when several things are contributing to the noise, because elimination of one source often will make little or no apparent difference in the total noise. The following procedure will help to isolate and identify various types of noise.

Ignition noise will be present only when the ignition is on, even though the engine is turning over.

Generator noise will be present when the motor is turning over, regardless of whether the ignition switch is on. Slipping the drive belt off will kill it.

Gauge noise usually will be present only when the ignition switch is on or in the "left" position provided on some cars.

Wheel static, when present, will persist when the car clutch is disengaged and the ignition switch turned off (or to the "left" position), with the car coasting.

Body noise will be noticeably worse on a bumpy road than on a smooth road, particularly at low speeds.

25-6 A Six-Band Trans-Receiver for Portable or Emergency Work

While the trend to SSB operation is strong, there exists a need for amplitude-modulated equipment, particularly for emergency operation. Mobile participation in emergency service is a cornerstone of amateur radio; and a compact, all-band *trans-receiver*, suitable for portable and mobile use in emergency work is a convenient unit for any amateur to have at hand. A small unit of this type is described in this section and consists of a complete six-band, 50-watt a-m station. For portable work in an emergency, a trans-receiver is much simpler and more convenient to use than the usual combination of separate receiver and transmitter. In addition, the trans-receiver can easily receive on a different frequency (or band) than that used for transmitting; a feature not common to all transceivers.

Trans-Receiver Circuitry The trans-receiver consists of a separate receiver and transmitter making use of a common audio system. A block diagram of the complete unit is shown in figure 11 and the schematic is given in figure 12.

The Receiver Section—The receiver is a dual-conversion circuit which reduces image response by virtue of a high first intermediate frequency, and gains selectivity by employing a second lower-frequency i-f section. A total of thirteen tubes is used in the trans-receiver, including a voltage regulator. In the receiver portion, a semiremote-cutoff 6BZ6 is used in the r-f amplifier (V_1), followed by a 6U8A mixer-oscillator (V_2A-B), gang-tuned by a dual capacitor (C_2A-B). The first intermediate frequency of 2515 kHz is converted to the second intermediate frequency (262 kHz) by a crystal-controlled 6BE6 second mixer-oscillator (V_3). A 6BA6 i-f amplifier (V_4) is followed by a multipurpose 6T8 (V_5) which combines the functions of second detector, noise limiter, and bfo. A second 6U8A is used as a pentode audio amplifier (V_6) with the triode section used as a microphone amplifier for the transmitter. The 6AQ5 audio stage (V_7) performs the dual function of receiver audio stage and cathode-follower driver for the 6BQ6 modulator tubes of the transmitter section, by switching a capacitor between cathode and plate of the 6AQ5 by relay RY_1C, thus obtaining the dual circuitry desired. A voltage regulator (V_{13}) stabilizes the voltage on both receiver and transmitter variable oscillators.

The Transmitter Section—The transmitter portion of the trans-receiver consists of a 6AU6 crystal oscillator or vfo stage (V_{10}), a 12BY7A tuned buffer-multiplier stage and a 6146B final amplifier (V_{12}). The output circuit of the final amplifier is a pi-network on all bands. The vfo is the heart of the transmitter and is made as simple, stable, and rugged as possible, using a single inductor wound on a ceramic form and a double-bearing capacitor in the frequency-determining circuit. The vfo operating range is 3.5 to 4.0 MHz. The harmonics of this range are used for the higher-frequency bands, except for 6 meters, where crystal control is used.

Two 6BQ6 TV-type sweep tubes are triode connected as a class-B modulator stage (V_{8-9}) in a simplified circuit with the screens driven, and with the grids at cathode (ground) potential.

Trans-Receiver Controls The compact assembly is achieved by utilizing small components, dual-purpose tubes, and multiple use of some tubes for both receiving and transmitting modes. The receiver and transmitter, however, operate independently of each other, each having its own bandswitch and tuning assemblies. The receiver has separate r-f and audio gain controls incorporated in a concentric potentiometer along with the power switch (R_1, R_2, S_8). The automatic noise limiter and beat oscillator are controlled by slide switches (S_2, S_3) on the panel, and a frequency spotting switch (S_6) turns on the transmitter vfo or crystal oscillator for spotting the transmitting frequency in the receiver. The bfo has no panel pitch control, but it may be set as desired by adjusting the slug of the bfo coil.

The receiver dial tunes the dual capacitor of the oscillator and mixer stages (C_2A-B). A panel trimmer capacitor (C_1) resonates the input circuit of the r-f stage.

Few controls are required for the transmitter section. The tuning dial (C_3) sets the transmitter frequency while grid drive on all bands is preadjusted during original alignment procedure and is broadbanded. The tuning and loading capacitors of the final amplifier (C_4, C_5) provide a variable match to a portable or mobile antenna system. Switch S_1A-B selects vfo or crystal-controlled operation. An external carbon microphone plugs into jack J_1 on the front panel and key jack J_3 is placed on the rear apron of the chassis, along with the phone/c-w switch (S_7), speaker jack J_2, coaxial antenna receptacle J_4, and the heavy-duty eight-contact power plug. Power switch S_8

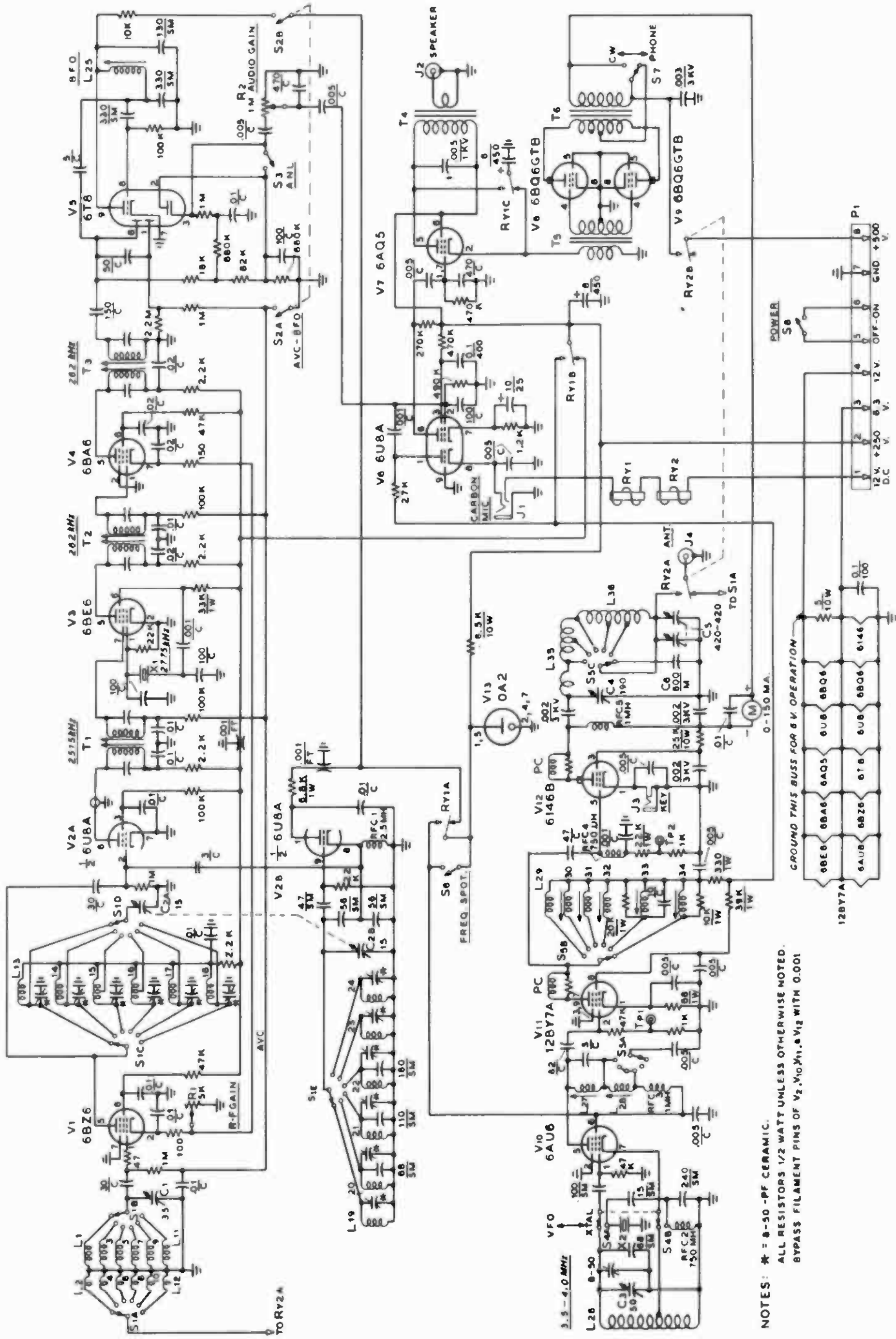


Figure 12

SCHEMATIC, SIX BAND TRANS-RECEIVER

PARTS LIST FOR FIGURE 12

C_1—35 pf, APC type
C_2A-B—15-15 pf. Bud LC-1660
C_3—50 pf. Bud LC-1661 with sections in parallel
C_4—190 pf. Bud MC-1858
C_5—420-420 pf. J. W. Miller 2112
C_6—800 pf silver mica, 1KV
R_1, R_2, S_4—Concentric potentiometers and power switch. Front section 5K, rear section 1 megohm. IRC TV replacement
PC—4 turns #20 enam., on 100-ohm, 1-watt composition resistor
S_1A-B-C-D-E, S_2A-B-C—Each, 3 ceramic wafers (2-pole, 6-position), Centralab CRL-PA-2 on CRL-PA301 index, with fibre extension shaft. Use only one pole per wafer on S_2 segments. Note: Bandswitches shown in 80-meter position
S_4A-B—2-pole, 2-position. Centralab CRL-PA2003
J_1—Three-circuit microphone jack
P_1—8-contact chassis plug. Cinch-Jones P-408AB
RY_1—3-pole, double-throw, 6-volt coil. Potter-Brumfield KA-14D
RY_2—DPDT, 6-volt coil. Potter-Brumfield KT-11D. Note: Connect coils in parallel for 6-volt operation
RFC_1—1 mH. National R-100U with ceramic base
M—0-150 d-c milliammeter, 1½" diameter
T_1—1500 kHz. J. W. Miller 13-W1 (modified to 2515 kHz, see text)
T_2, T_3—262 kHz. J. W. Miller 12-H2
T_4—7K to voice coil, 5 watts. Stancor A-3878
T_5—10K to push-pull grids (2:1). Stancor A-4713
T_6—25-watt modulation transformer, 10K to 5K. Stancor A-3845
Cabinet and chassis—California Chassis LTC-470

applies all power to the trans-receiver, placing the receiver in operation. Pressing the microphone switch actuates the control relays (RY_1 and RY_2), disconnecting voltage from portions of the receiver and transferring it to the transmitter. The two audio tubes (V_6, V_7) have voltages applied at all times as their operation is common to both modes.

Trans-Receiver Construction The trans-receiver is built on an aluminum chassis measuring 8½" × 11" which is supplied with the perforated cabinet. Layout of the trans-receiver is conventional, the only extra metal work required is fabrication of a few small brackets and shield plates bent of light sheet aluminum. The dials are made from a single piece of aluminum bent to form a shallow pan 11" long and 4½" high, having ⅜" lips on all sides. This subpanel is bolted to the top of the chassis placing the lips flush with the front apron of the chassis, leaving the ⅜" depth as a protected enclosure for the dial mechanisms and pointers, and the miniature meter (figure 13).

The inside area of this pan is sprayed with white lacquer (aerosol) and the calibration marks and lettering are done directly on the lacquered surface with India ink. The vernier drive mechanisms are removed from their base and are mounted directly on the pan in an 1⅛" cutout. A clear plastic pointer is shaped to fit over the metal dial face and is attached to it by three small screws holding the dial to the vernier assembly. This unit conserves space and makes a large, easy-to-read dial nearly five inches in diameter. Small angle brackets affixed to the chassis at both ends of the pan ensure rigidity. The completed dials are covered with a protective *plexiglas* sheet.

A small chassis 4" × 1½" × 1" is used to mount the 2515-kHz i-f transformer (T_1), the 6BE6 mixer tube (V_3), and the conversion crystal, plus the first 262-kHz i-f transformer (T_2). The unit is wired with connecting leads left long enough to pass through a hole in the chassis for connection to the under-chassis receiver-section wiring. A separate low-capacitance shielded lead (RG-178/U) connects to the plate terminal of the 2515-kHz i-f transformer and is fed through a separate chassis hole to make a short connection to the plate pin of the 6U8A mixer tube socket. Note that holes must be drilled in the main chassis below the subchassis unit in line with the bottom slugs of the two i-f transformers so that they may be adjusted from under the chassis when the unit is assembled. The 2515-kHz i-f transformer is a 1500-kHz unit modified by removing about five feet of wire from each winding. The 262-kHz transformers are standard units, and the bfo transformer (L_{25}) may be made from a 262-kHz input i-f transformer by removing the mica padding capacitor and using one winding for the bfo inductance. Silver mica padding capacitors are connected externally across the winding.

Receiver R-F Section—The r-f portion of the receiver is contained in the under-chassis area below the receiver tuning capacitor. Two shield partitions separate the r-f coils. Both partitions measure 5" × 1⅝" with

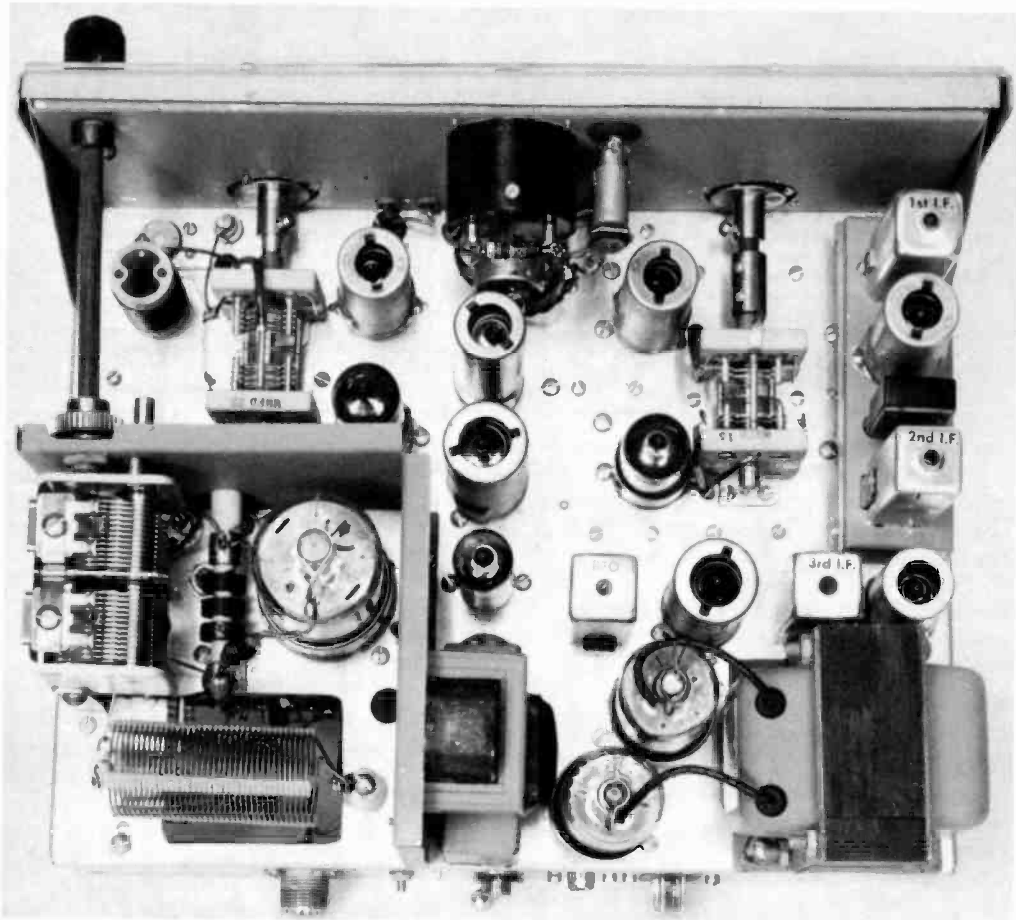


Figure 13

TOP VIEW OF TRANS-RECEIVER CHASSIS

The receiver section is to the right of the chassis. The 6BZ6 r-f tube (shielded) is next to the panel with the tuning capacitor and 6U8A tube adjacent to it. The small chassis at the right contains the 6BE6 mixer, conversion crystal, and input and output transformers. Between the subchassis and the modulation transformer are the 6BA6 second i-f amplifier, third i-f transformer and second detector, and bfo transformer. Directly behind the panel-mounted meter is the OA2 regulator followed by the 6U8A and 6AQ5 audio tubes. The driver transformer is on the chassis below the audio output transformer, mounted on the transmitter shielded partition. The transmitter section is to the left of the chassis. The 6AU6 oscillator and oscillator coil bracket the tuning capacitor, next to the front panel. The 12BY7A buffer tube is adjacent to the shield partition. Within the partition are the 6146B amplifier tube and associated tank-circuit components. A large cutout in the chassis permits short leads between the tank coil and the under-chassis bandswitch. The subpanel is attached to the chassis by means of angle braces at the ends of the panel.

¼" lips bent on all sides. They are separated 1½". The trimmer capacitors for the various coils mount on the top lip of these partitions, and the bandswitch segments (S_1C-D-E) are mounted on the sides of the partitions. Bandswitch segment S_1A-B is mounted on the switch mechanism. A panel bearing is placed in the shaft hole of the oscillator partition (rear) to ensure proper alignment of the phenolic switch shaft. The r-f coil partition is 1¾" from the front panel and crosses the center of the 6BZ6 r-f tube

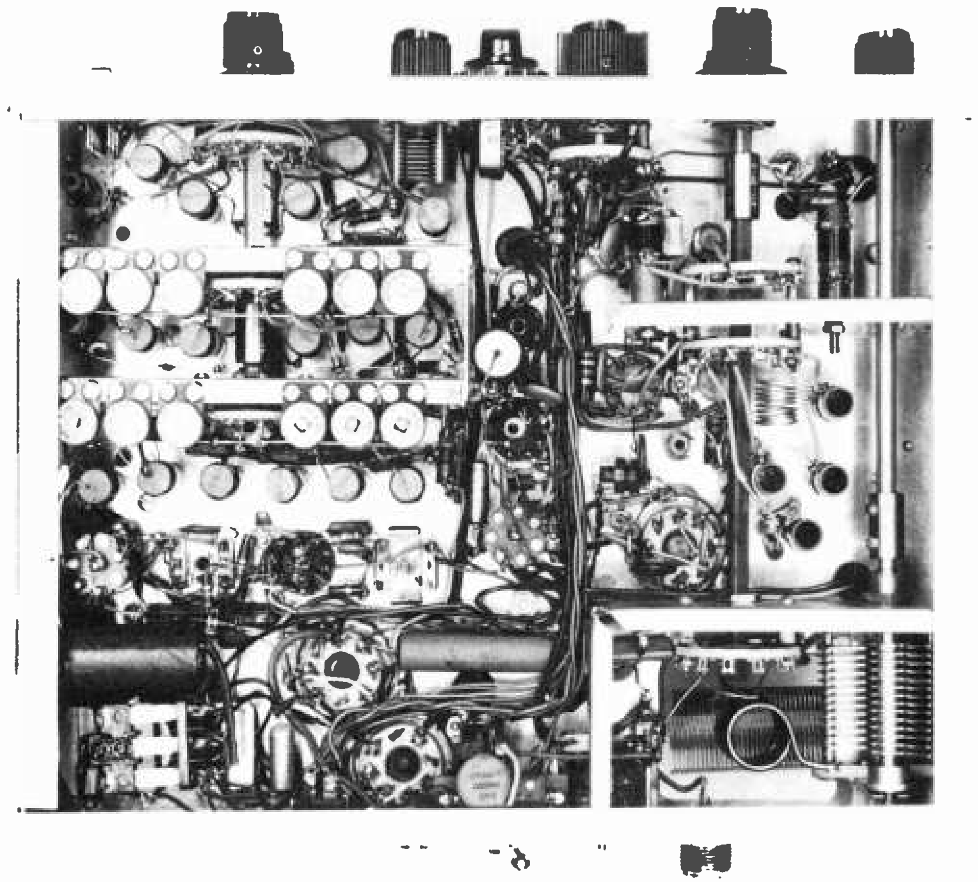


Figure 14

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF TRANS-RECEIVER

The receiver section is to the left of the chassis. The 6BZ6 r-f coils are grouped around the switch segment nearest the panel. The mixer coils are between the two shield partitions and the trimmer capacitors are mounted to the top flanges of the partitions. The polystyrene coil forms are tapped and bolted to the chassis. Common B-plus and avc connections run between the coils. Relay RY_1 is mounted to the chassis in the lower left corner, with the two filter capacitors adjacent to it, one atop the other. Control wiring, filament leads, etc. run down the center of the chassis. The transmitter section is to the right of the chassis. The two oscillator plate coils are mounted on either side of the bandswitch segment on the front partition. The center area contains the buffer components and buffer and amplifier tube sockets. The air-wound 6-meter coil (L_{29}) is attached directly to the terminals of the switch segment and lies parallel to the fibre switch shaft. Components of the final amplifier are inclosed in the lower right compartment, with coil L_{33} soldered to the stator terminal of the plate tuning capacitor. Antenna relay (RY_2) is adjacent to the coaxial antenna receptacle. The plate-circuit bandswitch segment is mounted to the shield partition.

socket. A cutout in the partition clears the socket, but a small shield of copper "flashing" material is cut to fit over the center post of the socket. It is soldered to the center post and then bolted to the aluminum partition to completely shield the input from the plate circuit of the r-f stage. Proper shielding at this point is necessary to prevent regeneration or oscillation in the r-f stage.

Feedthrough capacitors are mounted on the oscillator and mixer side partitions to bring high voltage into the two coil areas. The side plates fasten to the partitions to complete the shielding and to provide rigidity to the assembly. Leads from the tuning capacitor are brought down to the various bandswitch segments through holes in the chassis. The tuning capacitor common ground is made at a soldering lug adjacent to the 6U8A mixer tube socket.

Receiver Wiring Almost all of the receiver sections can be wired before the coils and under-chassis partitions are placed in position. A turret-type socket is used for the 6BA6 i-f amplifier stage to mount the screen, cathode, and plate-decoupling resistors. A terminal strip alongside the 6T8 detector socket supports the various resistors for the detector and noise-limiter circuits. To conserve space, small-diameter shielded wire is used to bring the audio and noise-limiter leads from the socket area to the volume control and a.n.l. switch on the panel. A second turret socket is used for the 6AQ5 stage to support resistors common to this circuit and the adjoining 6U8A.

The receiver r-f coil assembly can be most easily wired by first attaching the bandswitch wafers to the partitions and wiring them to the corresponding trimmer capacitors before the partitions are mounted on the chassis. As the individual coils are placed in position, they are wired to their respective trimmer capacitors. Note that the 80-meter r-f coils (L_1, L_{13}) are made from broadcast "loopsticks" with no alterations. The same type of loopstick is used for the 80-meter buffer coil in the transmitter (L_{34}) by trimming off the excess length of the fibre tube and forcing the form on a short length of 1/4" plastic rod that is tapped and bolted to the chassis. The inductance of the coil is adjusted by using a short piece of the original ferrite core glued in place.

The transmitter section occupies the left side of the chassis (viewed from the rear), with the 6AU6 oscillator tube adjacent to the dial. The vfo coil (L_{26}) is bolted to the top of the chassis to one side, placed as far away from tube heat as practical. No shielding is used around the coil. A large right-angle shield plate on top of the chassis separates the oscillator and buffer circuits from the final amplifier stage, and is also used as a mounting plate for the amplifier loading capacitor. Two 3/4" diameter brass gears are placed between the capacitor and a separate drive shaft to bring the shaft to the front panel above the transmitter tuning dial. The final amplifier plate choke is mounted horizontally on the partition next

RECEIVER COIL DATA

Band	Coil	Range (MHz)	Turns
80	L_1	3.5-4.0	Loopstick
	L_2	(Antenna)	12T. No. 32E.
	L_{13}	3.5-4.0	Loopstick
	L_{19}	6.015-6.515	46T. No. 30E.
40	L_3	7.0-7.3	35T. No. 32E.
	L_4	(Antenna)	7T. No. 30E.
	L_{14}	7.0-7.3	32T. No. 32E.
	L_{20}	9.515-9.815	17T. No. 24E.
20	L_5	14.0-14.4	20T. No. 28E.
	L_6	(Antenna)	5T. No. 30E.
	L_{15}	14.0-14.4	20T. No. 20E. Center-Tap.
	L_{21}	16.515-16.915	8T. No. 20E.
15	L_7	21.0-21.5	13T. No. 22E.
	L_8	(Antenna)	5T. No. 30E.
	L_{16}	21.0-21.5	13T. No. 22E. Center-Tap.
	L_{22}	23.515-24.015	4T. No. 20E.
10-11	L_9	27.0-29.7	10T. No. 20E.
	L_{10}	(Antenna)	5T. No. 30E.
	L_{17}	27.0-29.7	7 1/2T. No. 20E.
	L_{23}	29.515-32.215	7T. No. 20E.
6	L_{11}	50-54	.5T. No. 20E.
	L_{12}	(Antenna)	4T. No. 30E.
	L_{18}	50-54	3 1/2T. No. 20E.
	L_{24}	47.485-51.485	3 1/2T. No. 20E.

Figure 15

COIL DATA FOR RECEIVER SECTION

Except for coils L_1 and L_{13}, all coils are wound on 3/8" diameter polystyrene rod 1 1/4" long. Winding space is 3/8" at top end of form except for 80-meter oscillator coil (L_{19}) which occupies 1/2". Holes drilled through the form hold the ends of the windings. The bottom of the coil form is drilled and tapped for 4-40 bolts. Antenna coils are wound 1/16" below the "cold" (ground) end of the grid coils. Coils L_1 and L_{13} are broadcast loopstick coils (J. W. Miller 6300). Beat-oscillator coil L_{25} is the top coil of a 262-kHz i-f transformer (J. W. Miller 12-H2) with trimmers and lower coil removed.

TRANSMITTER COIL DATA

Coil	Range (MHz)	Turns
L_{26}	3.5-4.0 (Oscillator)	35T. No. 22E. Closewound on 3/4" dia. ceramic form. Tap 7T. from ground.
L_{27}	25.0	14T. No. 24E. Closewound on CTC form 3/8" dia. (CTC-1465-3-1)
L_{28}	7.0	30T. No. 30 closewound on CTC Form 3/8" dia. (CTC-1465-2-1)
L_{29}	50.1	7T. No. 18 Airwound, 3/8" dia.
L_{30}	29.0	12T. No. 24E. Closewound on CTC form 3/8" dia. (CTC-1465-3-1)
L_{31}	21.0	19T. No. 24, as L30
L_{32}	14.0	25T. No. 28, as L30 on (CTC-1465-2-1)
L_{33}	7.0	40T. No. 30, as L32
L_{34}	3.8	Loopstick J. W. Miller 6300
L_{35}	21.0-54.0	8T. No. 10, 5/8" dia., 1" long, tapped at 4T.
L_{36}	3.5-14.4	38T. No. 20, 1" dia., 2 3/8" long (air-dux 816T). Tap at 9 and 18T. from L35.

Figure 16

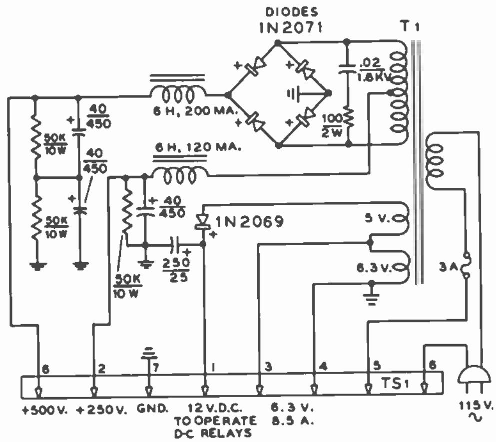


Figure 17

A-C POWER SUPPLY FOR TRANS-RECEIVER

T_1—530 volts CT at 300 milliamperes, 5 volts at 4a., 6.3 volts at 8.5a. (Thordarson 26R88). (Stancor P-8353 with a 12.6-volt winding may be used). Diodes are 600-volt PIV, 750 ma. IN4005's may be substituted.

to the 6146B. The space below the loading capacitor is used for placement of the 25K, 10-watt screen-dropping resistor and the 5-ohm, 10-watt filament-balancing resistor. The amplifier tank coil (L_{35}-L_{36}) is made in two sections as shown in the coil table (figure 16) with the low-frequency section mounted horizontally above the chassis on ceramic insulators. The 10- and 6-meter coil is placed in a vertical position below a large rectangular cutout in the chassis which permits short connections between coil and bandswitch.

Wiring the coils in the transmitter section presents no problems. The short under-chassis shield partition near the panel supports switch segments S_5A and S_5B (one on each side of the panel) and the two oscillator coils L_{27} and L_{28}. All coils for the 12BY7A buffer stage are placed between the two partitions with their alignment screws projecting out of the top of the chassis. The air-wound 6-meter buffer coil (L_{29}) is soldered between a terminal of the bandswitch (S_5B) and a tiepoint on the chassis.

Trans-Receiver Adjustment *Receiver Alignment* — The a-c power supply shown in figure 17 can be used for receiver alignment tests. The i-f section is aligned first by applying a 2515-kHz test signal to the input grid of the 6U8A mixer tube (pin 2, V_2A) and adjusting the slugs of the three i-f transformers for maximum signal. This may be judged by ear or by a v.t.v.m. placed on the avc line. If the conversion oscillator is working, the complete i-f section may be aligned with the 2515-kHz test signal.

Using the given coil data, all bands are spread out over nearly 180 degrees of the receiver dial. Except for the 6-meter band, all oscillator circuits tune to the high-frequency side of the incoming signal. Alignment procedure is the same for all bands. The frequency range of each mixer oscillator circuit is monitored with a calibrated receiver or BC-221 (LM) frequency meter and is adjusted with the individual trimmer capacitor and by varying the spacing of the turns on the oscillator coil, if necessary. Alternatively, alignment can be done by checking the frequency range of the oscillator with a grid-dip meter. The r-f stage grid coils require no adjustment other than a check to make sure they tune their respective bands within the range of antenna trimmer capacitor C_1.

The last step in receiver alignment is to check the tuning range of the mixer circuit (L_{13}-L_{18}) to ensure that these coils track properly with oscillator tuning. A test signal is injected into the antenna circuit at the high-frequency end of the band under adjustment and the proper mixer trimmer is adjusted for maximum signal. The dial is then tuned to the low-frequency end of the band, and the signal generator returned to the new frequency. The trimmer is again adjusted for maximum signal. If the trimmer capacitance had to be increased for the second test, the inductance of the coil is too low and the turns must be squeezed together a bit to raise the inductance. If the trimmer capacitor had to be decreased, on the other hand, the inductance is too high and the coil turns must be spread apart a bit. When no further adjustment of the trimmer is required, the mixer circuit is tracking properly with the oscillator. The 15- and 20-meter mixer coils (L_{15}, L_{16}) are tapped to achieve bandspread without decreasing the sensitivity which may result from excessive capacitive loading. Tracking adjustments on these coils is made by moving the tap higher or lower on the coil.

Transmitter Alignment—The a-c power supply is used to run the oscillator and multiplier stages in the transmitter for these tests. Relay RY_1 is held closed with a piece of cardboard to apply voltage to the 6AU6 oscillator and the 12BY7A buffer-multiplier stages. The 6146B should be in the socket although plate and screen voltages are removed at this time (terminal 8 on plug P_1 open). The first adjustment is to correctly place the vfo tuning range on the transmitter dial which is done by adjusting the ceramic trimmer capacitor in the vfo tuned circuit, or adding or removing a turn or two of wire on the vfo coil, if required. The 80-meter alignment of the buffer stage is a matter of setting the slug in plate coil L_{34} for maximum grid drive to the amplifier tube, as read with a test milliammeter at test point TP_2 to ground. A 10K loading resistor is placed across the 80-meter coil to limit the 6146B grid current to 3 ma and to broadband the adjustment. The 40-meter band is aligned in the same manner by adjusting the slug in coil L_{33}. The 6-meter alignment must now be made before going ahead with adjustment of the remaining bands. Switch S_4 is set for crystal operation, and a crystal in the range 8.333- to 9.000-MHz is placed in the socket. A test meter is placed at test point TP_1 to ground and the slug in the oscillator plate coil (L_{27}) is tuned for resonance in the 25-MHz region. With the test meter moved to TP_2 to ground, buffer coil L_{29} is adjusted for maximum final-amplifier grid current of about 3 to 4 ma. Grid current is peaked by squeezing or spreading apart the turns of the coil. A further adjustment of this coil should be made after the final amplifier stage is placed in operation, as the inductance of this coil is somewhat critical. When properly adjusted, the 6-meter operating frequency may be varied about 500-kHz from the frequency of adjustment without retuning the oscillator or multiplier plate coils.

The remaining high-frequency bands are now aligned, with switch S_4 in the vfo position, starting with the 10-meter band. Oscillator plate coil L_{28} is adjusted for maximum doubler grid current (about 1 ma). This coil is broadly resonant at 7 MHz. Observing the final amplifier grid current, the buffer-quadrupler coil (L_{30}) is adjusted for maximum grid drive with the vfo set at 29 MHz. The 15-meter tripler coil (L_{31}) can then be tuned for maximum grid drive, followed by the 20-meter doubler coil (L_{32}).

To complete alignment and test of the transmitter section, high voltage is required to power the amplifier and modulator stages. In addition, d-c control voltage is required to operate the changeover relays. A light bulb may be used for a dummy load. The final amplifier is loaded to about 110-ma plate current and grid current is rechecked at TP_2 to ground. If necessary, the slugs in the various driver coils may be repeaked for maximum drive. A test meter inserted between modulator cathodes and ground will read about 20 ma resting current and 100 ma on loud voice peaks.

For c-w operation the final amplifier is keyed in the cathode circuit. Phone c-w switch S_7 removes voltage from the modulator tubes and shorts out the secondary of the modulation transformer. The transmitter circuits are energized by an auxiliary

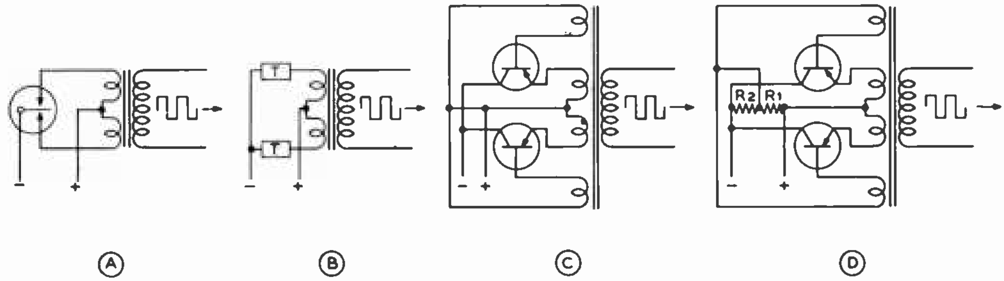


Figure 18

TRANSISTORS CAN REPLACE VIBRATOR IN MOBILE POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM

A—Typical vibrator circuit.
B—Vibrator can be represented by two single-pole single-throw switches, or transistors.
C—Push-pull square-wave "oscillator" is driven by special feedback windings on power transformer.
D—Addition of bias in base-emitter circuit results in oscillator capable of starting under full load.

switch on the push-to-talk circuit of the microphone.

25-7 Transistor Power Supplies

The vibrator-type of mobile supply achieves an over-all efficiency in the neighborhood of 70%. The vibrator may be thought of as a mechanical switch reversing the polarity of the primary source at a repetition rate of 120 transfers per second.

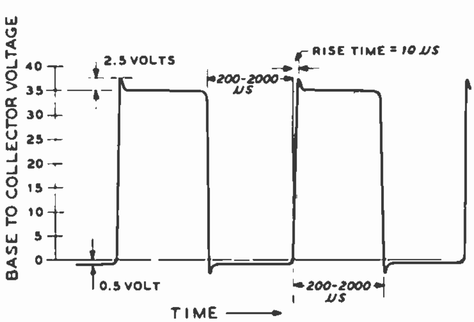


Figure 19

BASE-COLLECTOR WAVEFORM OF SWITCHING CIRCUIT, FOR 12-VOLT CIRCUIT

Square waveshape produces almost ideal switching action. Small "spike" on leading edge of pulses may be reduced by proper transformer design.

The switch is actuated by a magnetic coil and breaker circuit requiring appreciable power which must be supplied by the primary source.

One of the principal applications of the transistor is in switching circuits. The transistor may be switched from an "off" condition to an "on" condition with but the application of a minute exciting signal. When the transistor is nonconductive it may be considered to be an open circuit. When it is in a conductive state, the internal resistance is very low. Two transistors properly connected, therefore, can replace the single-pole, double-throw mechanical switch representing the vibrator. The transistor switching action is many times faster than that of the mechanical vibrator and the transistor can switch an appreciable amount of power. Efficiencies in the neighborhood of 95 percent can be obtained with 28-volt primary-type transistor power supplies, permitting great savings in primary power over conventional vibrators and dynamotors.

Transistor Operation The transistor operation resembles a magnetically coupled multivibrator, or an audio-frequency push-pull square wave oscillator (figure 18C). A special feedback winding on the power transformer provides 180 degree phase-shift voltage necessary to maintain oscillation. In this application the transistors are operated as on-off switches; i.e., they are

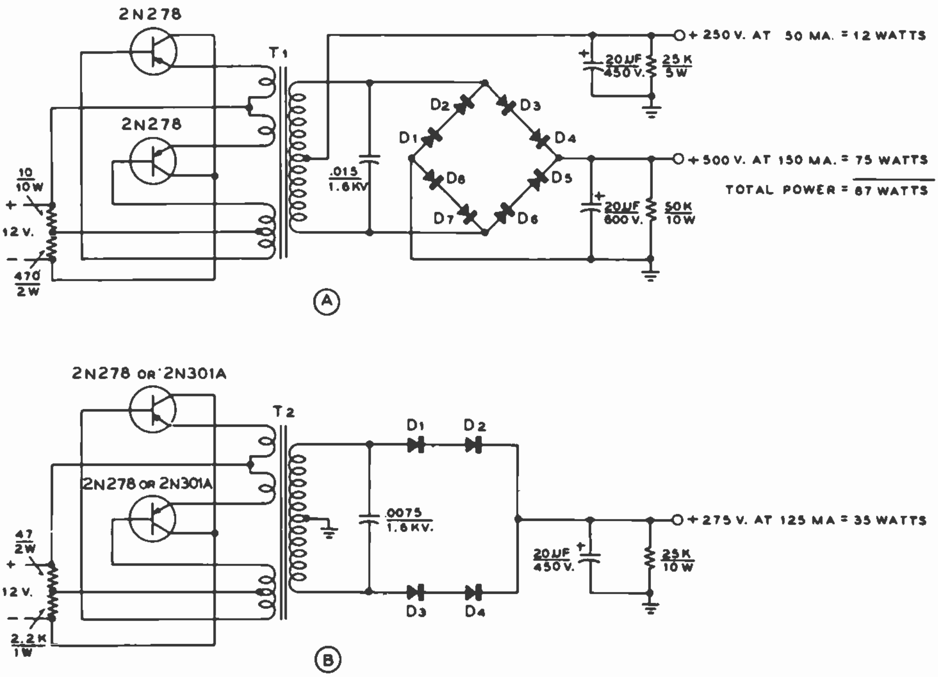


Figure 20

PRACTICAL TRANSISTOR POWER SUPPLIES

T_1—Chicago Stancor DCT-2 transistor transformer
T_2—Chicago Stancor DCT-1 transistor transformer
D_1-D_8—Sarkes-Tarzian M-500 silicon rectifier or equivalent

either completing the circuit or opening it. The oscillator output voltage is a square wave having a frequency that is dependent on the driving voltage, the primary inductance of the power transformer, and the peak collector current drawn by the conducting transistor. Changes in transformer turns, core area, core material, and feedback turns ratio have an effect on the frequency of oscillation. Frequencies in common use are in the range of 120 Hz to 3500 Hz.

The power consumed by the transistors is relatively independent of load. Loading the oscillator causes an increase in input current that is sufficient to supply the required power to the load and the additional losses in the transformer windings. Thus, the over-all efficiency actually increases with load and is greatest at the heaviest load the oscillator will supply. A result of this is that an increase in load produces very little extra heating of the transistors. This feature means that it is impossible to burn out the transistors in the event of a shorted load since the switching action merely stops.

Transistor Power Rating The power capability of the transistor is limited by the amount of heat created by the current flow through the internal resistance of the transistor. When the transistor is conducting, the internal resistance is extremely low and little heat is generated by current flow. Conversely, when the transistor is in a cut-off condition the internal resistance is very high and the current flow is extremely small. Thus, in both the "on" and "off" conditions the transistor dissipates a minimum of power. The important portion of the operating cycle is that portion when the actual switching from one transistor to

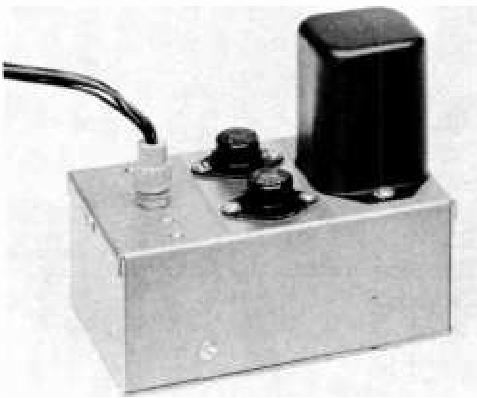


Figure 21
35 WATT TRANSISTOR POWER SUPPLY

Two 2N301A power transistors are used in this midget supply. Transistors are mounted on sanded portion of chassis deck which acts as "heat sink." See text for details.

the other occurs, as this is the time during which the transistor may be passing through the region of high dissipation. The greater the rate of switching, in general, the faster will be the rise time of the square wave (figure 19) and the lower will be the internal losses of the transistor. The average transistor can switch about eight times the power rating of class-A operation of the unit. Two switching transistors having 5-watt class-A power output rating can therefore switch 80 watts of power when working at optimum switching frequency.

Self-Starting Oscillators The transistor supply shown in figure 18C is impractical because oscillations will not start under load. Base bias of the proper polarity has to be momentarily introduced into the base-emitter circuit before oscillation will start and sustain itself. The addition of a bias resistor (figure 18D) to the circuit results in an oscillator that is capable of starting under full load. R_1 is usually of the order of 10 to 50 ohms while R_2 is adjusted so that approximately 100 milliamperes flow through the circuit.

The current drawn from the battery by this network flows through R_2 and then divides between R_1 and the input resistances of the two transistors. The current flowing in the emitter-base circuit depends on the value of input resistance. The induced voltage across the feedback winding of the transformer is a square wave of such polarity that it forward-biases the emitter-base diode of the transistor that is starting to conduct collector current, and reverse-biases the other transistor. The forward-biased transistor will have a very low input impedance, while the input impedance of the reversed-biased transistor will be quite high. Thus, most of the starting current drained from the primary power source will flow in R_1 and the base-emitter circuit of the forward-biased transistor and very little in the other transistor. It can be seen that R_1 must not be too low in comparison to the input resistance of the conducting transistor, or it will shunt too much current from the transistor. When switching takes place, the transformer polarities reverse and the additional current now flows in the base-emitter circuit of the other transistor.

The Power Transformer The power transformer in a transistor-type supply is designed to reach a state of maximum flux density (saturation) at the point of maximum transistor conductance. When this state is reached the flux density drops to zero and reduces the feedback voltage developed in the base winding to zero. The flux then reverses because there is no conducting transistor to sustain the magnetizing current. This change of flux induces a voltage of the opposite polarity in the transformer. This voltage turns the first transistor off and holds the second transistor on. The transistor instantly reaches a state of maximum conduction, producing a state of saturation in the transformer. This action repeats itself at a very fast rate. Switching time is of the order of 5 to 10 microseconds, and saturation time is perhaps 200 to 2000 microseconds. The collector waveform of a typical transistor supplv is shown in figure 19. The rise time of the wave is about 5 microseconds, and the saturation time is 500 microseconds. The small "spike" at the leading edge of the pulse has an amplitude of about 2.5 volts and is a product of switching transients caused by the primary leakage reactance of the transformer. Prop-

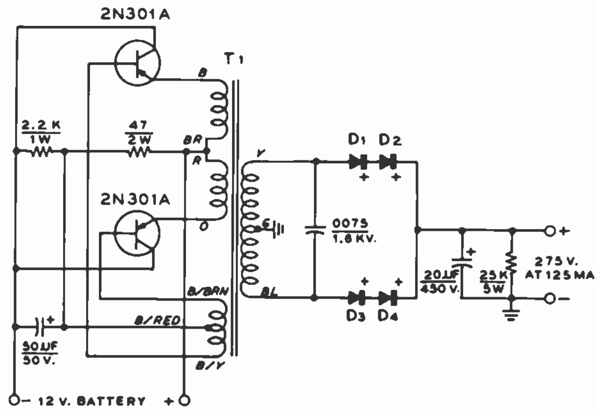


Figure 22

SCHEMATIC, TRANSISTOR POWER SUPPLY FOR 12 VOLT AUTOMOTIVE SYSTEM

T_1—Transistor power transformer. 12-volt primary, to provide 275 volts at 125 ma. Chicago Stancor DCT-1

D_1-D_4—Sarkes-Tarzian silicon rectifier, type M-500, or equivalent

er transformer design can reduce this "spike" to a minimum value. An excessively large "spike" can puncture the transistor junction and ruin the unit.

25-8 Two Transistorized Mobile Supplies

The new *Stancor Electronics Corp.* series of power transformers designed to work in transistor-type power supplies permits the amateur and experimenter to construct efficient mobile power supplies at a fraction of their former price. Described in this section are two power supplies designed around these efficient transformers. The smaller supply delivers 35 watts (275 volts at 125 milliamperes) and the larger supply delivers 85 watts (500 volts at 125 milliamperes and 250 volts at 50 milliamperes, simultaneously). Both power units operate from a 12-volt primary source.

The 35-Watt Supply The 35-watt power unit uses two inexpensive *RCA 2N-301A* PNP-type power transistors for the switching elements and four silicon diodes for the high-voltage rectifiers. The complete schematic is shown in figure 22. Because of the relatively high switching frequency only a single 20-μfd filter capacitor is required to provide pure direct current.

Regulation of the supply is remarkably good. No-load voltage is 310 volts, dropping to 275 volts at maximum current drain of 125 milliamperes.

The complete power package is built on an aluminum chassis-box measuring 5¼" × 3" × 2". Paint is removed from the center portion of the box to form a simple heat sink for the transistors. The box therefore conducts heat away from the collector elements of the transistors. The collector of the transistor is the metal case terminal and in this circuit is returned to the negative terminal of the primary supply. If the negative of the automobile battery is grounded to the frame of the car the case of the transistor may be directly grounded to the

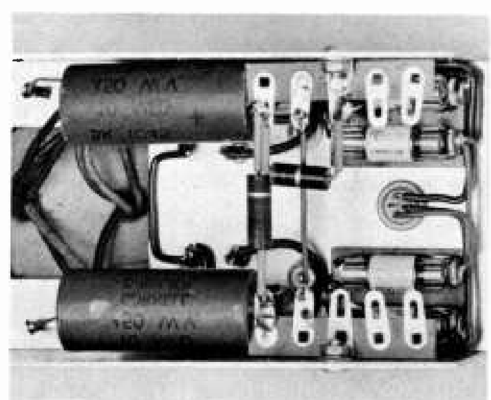


Figure 23

UNDER-CHASSIS LAYOUT OF PARTS

Two 10-μfd capacitors are connected in parallel for 20-μfd output filter capacitor. Silicon rectifiers are mounted in dual fuse clips at end of chassis. Transistor should be insulated from the chassis with thin mica sheets and fibre washers if supply is used with positive-grounded primary system.

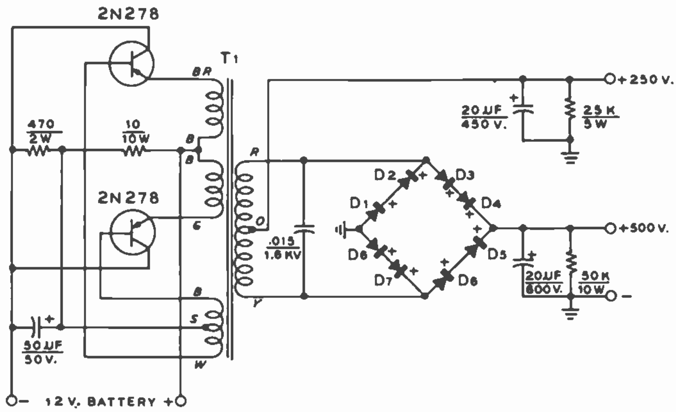


Figure 24

SCHEMATIC, 85-WATT TRANSISTOR POWER SUPPLY FOR 12-VOLT AUTOMOTIVE SYSTEM

T_1—Transistor power transformer. 12-volt primary to provide 275 volts at 125 ma. Chicago Stancor DCT-2.

D_1-D_8—Sarkes-Tarzian silicon rectifier, type M-500

unpainted area of the chassis. If the positive terminal of the car battery is grounded it is necessary to electrically insulate the transistor from the aluminum chassis, yet at the same time permit a low *thermal* barrier to exist between the transistor case and the power supply chassis. A simple method of accomplishing this is to insert a thin mica sheet between the transistor and the chassis. *Two-mil* (0.002″) mica washers for transistors are available at many large radio supply houses. The mica is placed between the transistor and the chassis deck, and fibre washers are placed under the retaining nuts holding the transistor in place. When the transistors are mounted in place, measure the collector to ground resistance with an ohmmeter. It should be 100 megohms or higher in dry air. After the mounting is completed, spray the transistor and the bare chassis section with plastic *Krylon* to retard oxidation. Several manufacturers produce anodized aluminum washers that serve as mounting insulators. These may be used in place of the mica washers, if desired. The underchassis wiring may be seen in figure 23.

The 85-Watt Supply Figure 24 shows the schematic of a dual-voltage transistor mobile power supply. A bridge rectifier permits the choice of either 250 volts or 500 volts, or a combination of both at a total current drain that limits the secondary power to 85 watts. Thus, 500 volts at 170 milliamperes may be drawn, with correspondingly less current as additional power is drawn from the 250-volt tap.

The supply is built on an aluminum box chassis measuring 7″ × 5″ × 3″, the layout closely following that of the 35-watt supply. *Delco* 2N278 PNP-type transistors are used as the switching elements and eight silicon diodes form the high-voltage bridge rectifier. The transistors are affixed to the chassis in the same manner as the 2N301A mounting described previously.

CHAPTER TWENTY-SIX

Receivers and Transceivers

Receiver construction has just about become a lost art. Excellent general coverage receivers are available on the market in many price ranges. However, even the most modest of these receivers is relatively expensive, and most of the receivers are designed as a compromise—they must suit the majority of users, and they must be designed with an eye to the price.

It is a tribute to the receiver manufacturers that they have done as well as they have. Even so, the c-w man must often pay for a high-fidelity audio system and S-meter he never uses, and the phone man must pay for the c-w man's narrow-band filter. For one amateur, the receiver has too much bandspread; for the next, too little. For economy's sake and for ease of alignment, low-Q coils are often found in the r-f circuits of commercial receivers, making the set a victim of crosstalk and overloading from strong local signals. Rarely does the purchaser of a commercial receiver realize that he could achieve the results he desires in a homebuilt receiver *if* he left off the frills and trivia which he does not need but which

Figure 1

COMPONENT NOMENCLATURE

CAPACITORS:

1- VALUES BELOW 999 PF ARE INDICATED IN UNITS.
EXAMPLE: 150 PF DESIGNATED AS 150.

2- VALUES ABOVE 999 PF ARE INDICATED IN DECIMALS.
EXAMPLE: .005 µFD DESIGNATED AS .005.

3- OTHER CAPACITOR VALUES ARE AS STATED.
EXAMPLE: 10 µFD, 0.5 PF, *ETC.*

4- TYPE OF CAPACITOR IS INDICATED BENEATH THE VALUE DESIGNATION.
SM = SILVER MICA
C = CERAMIC
M = MICA
P = PAPER

EXAMPLE: $\frac{250}{C}$, $\frac{.01}{P}$, $\frac{.001}{M}$

5- VOLTAGE RATING OF ELECTROLYTIC OR "FILTER" CAPACITOR IS INDICATED BELOW CAPACITY DESIGNATION.

EXAMPLE: $\frac{10}{450}$, $\frac{20}{600}$, $\frac{25}{10}$

6- THE CURVED LINE IN CAPACITOR SYMBOL REPRESENTS THE OUTSIDE FOIL "GROUND" OF PAPER CAPACITORS, THE NEGATIVE ELECTRODE OF ELECTROLYTIC CAPACITORS, OR THE ROTOR OF VARIABLE CAPACITORS.

RESISTORS:

1- RESISTANCE VALUES ARE STATED IN OHMS, THOUSANDS OF OHMS (K), AND MEGOHMS (M).
EXAMPLE:
270 OHMS = 270
4700 OHMS = 4.7 K
33,000 OHMS = 33 K
100,000 OHMS = 100 K OR 0.1 M
33,000,000 OHMS = 33 M

2- ALL RESISTORS ARE 1-WATT COMPOSITION TYPE UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTED. WATTAGE NOTATION IS THEN INDICATED BELOW RESISTANCE VALUE.

EXAMPLE: $\frac{47\,K}{0.5}$

INDUCTORS:

MICROHENRIES = µH
MILLIHENRIES = MH
HENRIES = H

SCHEMATIC SYMBOLS:

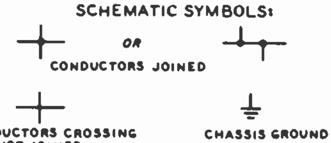


Figure 2

A NUVISTOR CONVERTER FOR SIX METERS

The converter is built on a phenolic, copper-laminate etched-circuit board mounted atop an aluminum chassis box. The BNC input receptacle and 6CW4 r-f amplifier are at the left, behind the power plug. Coils L_4 and L_5 are at the right of the 6U8A mixer-oscillator tube, with coils L_2 and L_3 between the 6CW4 and the 6U8A. Output receptacle J_2 is directly in front of the 6U8A.

he must pay for when he buys a commercial product.

The ardent experimenter, however, needs no such arguments. He builds his receiver merely for the love of the game, and the thrill of using a product of his own creation.

It is hoped that the receiving equipment to be described in this chapter will awaken the experimenter's instinct, even in those individuals owning expensive commercial receivers. These lucky persons have the advantage of comparing their home-built product against the best the commercial market has to offer. Sometimes such a comparison is surprising.

When the builder has finished the wiring of a receiver it is suggested that he check his wiring and connections carefully for possible errors before any voltages are applied to the circuits. If possible, the wiring should be checked by a second party as a safety measure. Some tubes can be permanently damaged by having the wrong voltages applied to their electrodes. Electrolytic capacitors can be ruined by hooking them up with the wrong voltage polarity across the capacitor terminals. Transformer, choke, and coil windings may be damaged by incorrect wiring of the high-voltage leads.

The problem of meeting and overcoming such obstacles is just part of the game. A true radio amateur (as opposed to an amateur broadcaster) should have adequate knowledge of the art of communication. He should know quite a bit about his equipment (even if purchased) and, if circumstances permit, he should build a portion of his own equipment. Those amateurs who do such construction work are convinced that half of the enjoyment of the hobby may be obtained from the satisfaction of building and operating their own receiving and transmitting equipment.

The Transceiver A popular item of equipment on "five meters" during the late '30's, the *transceiver* is making a comeback today complete with modern tubes and circuitry. In brief, the transceiver is a packaged radio station combining the elements of the receiver and transmitter into a single unit having a common power supply and audio system. The present trend toward compact equipment and the continued growth of single-sideband techniques combine naturally with the space-saving economies of the transceiver. Various transceiver circuits for the higher frequency amateur bands are shown in this chapter. The experimenter can start from these simple circuits, and using modern miniature tubes and components, can design and build his complete station in a cabinet no larger than a pre-war receiver.

Circuitry and Components It is the practice of the editors of this Handbook to place as much usable information in the schematic illustration as possible. In order to simplify the drawing the component nomenclature of figure 1 is used in all the following construction chapters.

The electrical value of many small circuit components such as resistors and capacitors is often indicated by a series of colored bands

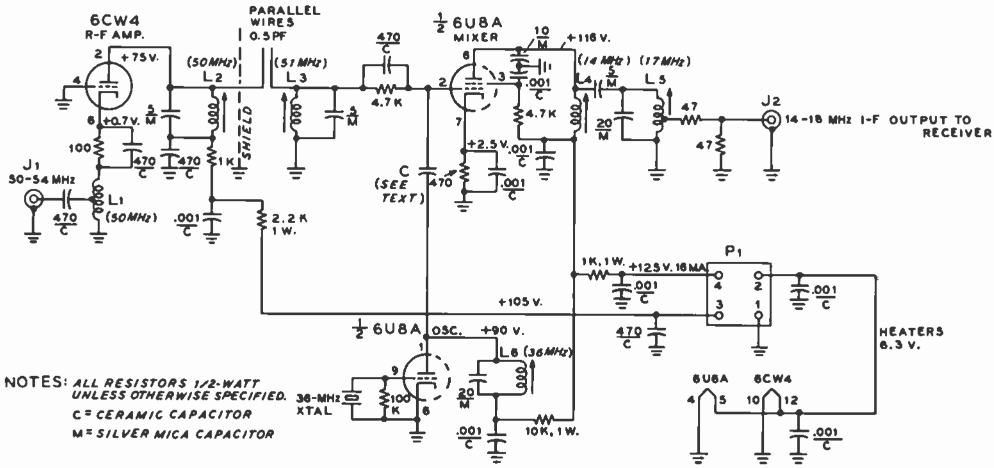


Figure 3

SCHEMATIC OF SIX METER CONVERTER

J_1, J_2—BNC connector type UG-625/U
L_1—10 turns #18, ½" diameter, turns spaced wire diameter. Tap 2½ turns from ground end. (B & W Miniductor #3003)
L_2, L_3—12 turns #22 closewound on 7/32" diam. slug-tuned form. (J.W. Miller #40A-827CBI or equiv.)
L_4—26 turns #22 closewound on ⅜" diam. slug-tuned form. (J. W. Miller #42A-000CBI or equiv.)
L_5—Same as L_4. Top 8 turns from ground end
L_6—12 turns closewound on 7/32" diam. slug-tuned form. (J. W. Miller #40A-106CBI or equiv.)
P_1—4 pin chassis mounting plug. (Cinch-Jones P-304AB or equiv.)

or spots placed on the body of the component. Several color codes have been used in the past, and are being used in modified form at present to indicate component values. The most important of these color codes for resistors, capacitors, power transformers, chokes, i-f transformers, etc. can be found in the appendix at the end of this Handbook.

26-1 A Nuvistor Converter for Six Meters

The nuvistor series of miniature tubes brings low-noise-level vhf reception within the economic capability of the average radio amateur. Described in this section is a simple and reliable 50-MHz converter (figure 2) that makes use of the 6CW4 nuvistor vhf triode. The inherent noise figure of this converter is about 3 decibels which compares favorably with units employing special and costly low-noise tubes. The converter is built on a small piece of etched circuit, copper-clad, paper-base phenolic board instead of the usual aluminum or plated-steel chassis.

Circuit Description The schematic of the 50-MHz converter is shown in figure 3. A grounded-grid 6CW4 nuvistor triode is used as an r-f amplifier. The r-f input circuit (L_1) is made of a single tapped length of *miniductor* coil material. This circuit is broadly resonated by the input capacitance of the 6CW4. The nuvistor plate circuit is lightly coupled to a 6U8A (pentode section) mixer by means of a small capacitor made of two lengths of parallel wire having a capacitance of about 0.5 pf.

The triode section of the 6U8A is the mixing oscillator employing a third-overtone 36-MHz crystal. This choice of mixing frequency produces an intermediate-frequency range of 14 to 18 MHz for signals ranging in the 50- to 54-MHz band. Coupling

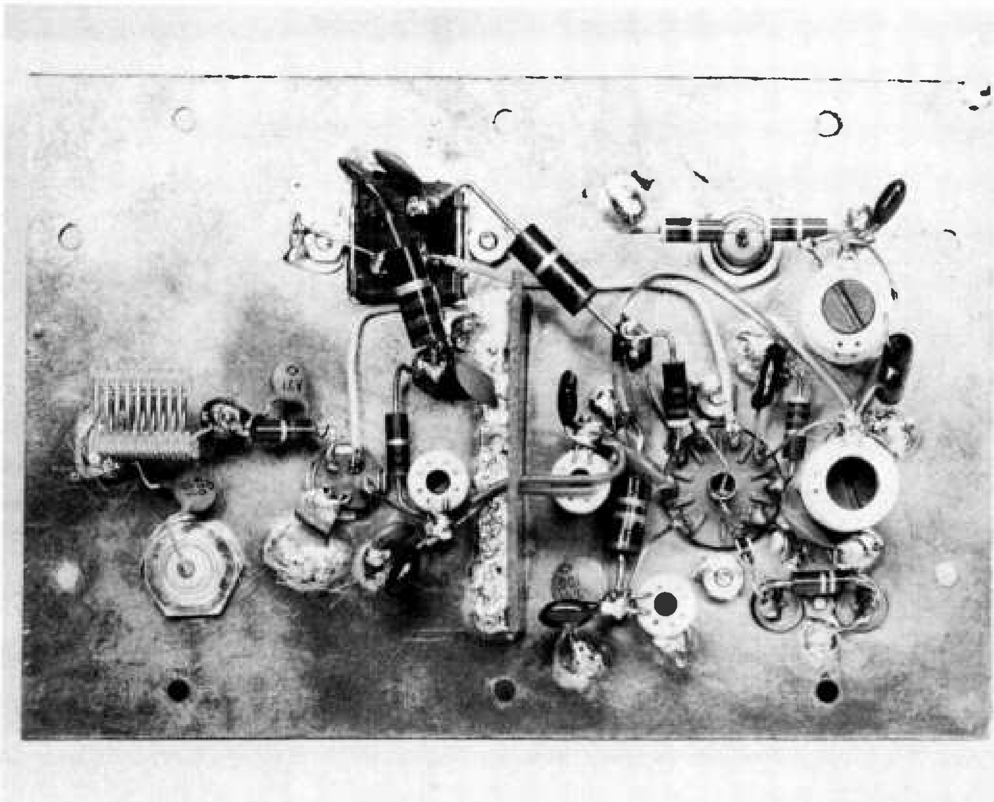


Figure 4

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF CONVERTER

Layout of the principal components are shown in this view. The shield of copper-clad phenolic board is seen placed in a vertical position between L_2 and L_3. The shield is soldered to the chassis board. Two parallel insulated wires extending through a hole in the board make up the interstage coupling capacitor. The antenna input receptacle (J_1) and r-f coil are at the left, and crystal oscillator plate coil L_6 is near the bottom of the photograph, just right of center. The i-f coils are at the extreme right, with the output receptacle (J_2) immediately above coil L_5.

between the oscillator and mixer stage is both capacitive and inductive by virtue of the spacing between coils L_3 and L_6.

The pentode mixer plate coil (L_4 and L_5) are stagger-tuned over the 14- to 18-MHz i-f range for relatively flat converter gain.

Converter Construction The 50-MHz converter is built on a 4″ × 6″ sheet of copper laminate (two sides) phenolic circuit board (figure 4). A 4″ × 6″ × 2″ inverted aluminum chassis serves as a shield box. The use of inexpensive copper laminate board simplifies the job of obtaining good r-f grounds as components may be soldered directly to the board. The use of this material also reduces construction time as soldering lugs do not have to be mounted for the various ground connections. Soldering is easily done with a 25-watt "pencil" iron. Increased electrical stability is the result of this construction technique which more than offsets the slight additional care required in drilling and cutting the board to avoid flaking the thin layers of bonded copper.

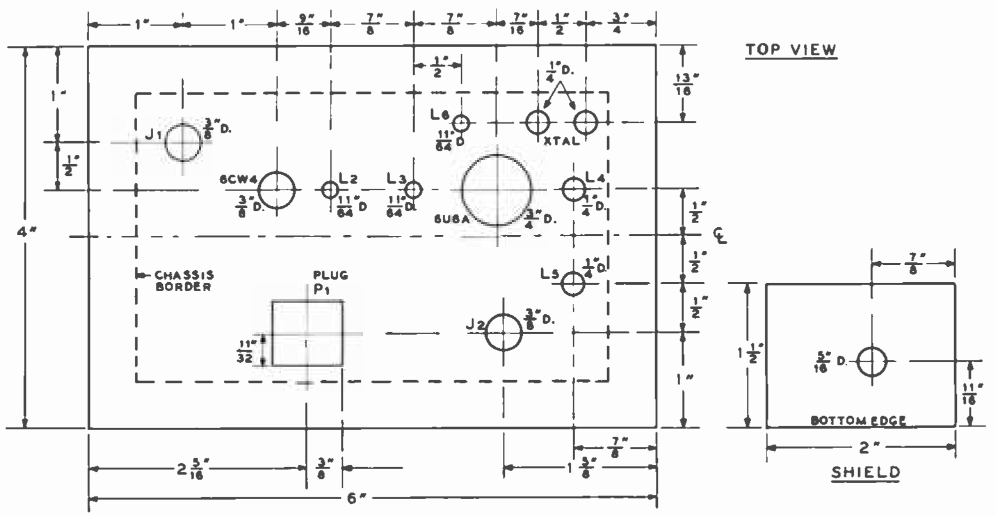


Figure 5

DRILLING LAYOUT FOR CONVERTER PLATE AND INTERSTAGE SHIELD

To minimize oxidation marks (finger prints, etc.), the board may be cleaned with a liquid copper cleaner after all holes are drilled and it is handled thereafter by its edges. The oxidation of the copper affects only the appearance of the unit, not its performance. After construction and adjustment are completed, the various components may be masked with paper tape and the board sprayed with a clear plastic aerosol spray to maintain the clean copper color.

The drilling layout (figure 5) shows placement of the major components. Note that a half-inch border is allowed around the outside edge of the plate to provide clearance for the lip of the chassis-box. All parts and soldering must be located within this boundary, making the usable plate area 3″ × 5″. A small shield cut from scrap circuit board is soldered to the plate midway between coils L_2 and L_3. The coupling capacitor between the coils is centered in a 5/16-inch hole drilled in the shield. The capacitor consists of two parallel lengths of plastic-covered hookup wire, one connected to L_2 and the other connected to L_3. The wires are parallel for about one-half inch to obtain approximately 0.5 pf coupling capacitance.

A four-pin chassis-mounting plug is used for connections to the external power supply. Power requirements are 20 milliamperes at 125 volts d.c. and 6.3 volts a.c. at 0.7 ampere. A regulated power supply is recommended. Plate voltage for the 6CW4 is applied to pin 3 of the plug, separate from the voltage for the other stages so that the r-f stage may be disabled during transmissions, leaving the local oscillator and mixer stages operating. Coaxial *BNC* connectors are employed for terminations to the antenna and tunable-i.f. receiver cables.

Converter Adjustments Before power is applied to the unit, all wiring should be checked and the tuned circuits resonated to the frequencies indicated in figure 3. A grid-dip oscillator should be used to check the various frequencies. The crystal oscillator stage should function before the 6CW4 is inserted in the socket. Operation of the oscillator may be checked by listening to a nearby receiver or by noticing the change in plate current of the triode section of the 6U8A. A milliammeter may be inserted in series with pin No. 4 of the power plug for this observation.

Once the mixer and oscillator stages are working, a signal from an external oscillator may be heard if the signal source is brought near coil L_3 of the converter. The 6CW4 is now placed in its socket and an external

Figure 6

THE "ANTIOVERLOAD" CONVERTER

Excellent high-signal overload characteristics are featured in this simple converter. Antenna receptacle and 6BZ6 r-f amplifier tube are at the left end of the unit. A tube shield should be placed over the 6BZ6. The r-f gain control is on the front of the chassis box. The 43-MHz conversion crystal and 6C4 oscillator are at the right, with the 6BA7 mixer to the rear. The converter is built on a copper-laminate phenolic circuit board.

signal generator (or antenna) connected to input receptacle J_1. Coil L_2 and L_3 are peaked at 50.0 and 51.0 MHz, respectively. Coil L_4 is peaked at 14.0 MHz and coil L_5 is peaked at about 17 MHz. If the converter is to be used principally at the low-frequency end of the 6-meter band, coils L_3 and L_5 may be peaked considerably closer in frequency to coils L_2 and L_4. Final adjustment of the tuned circuits (which is not critical at all) should be done with the antenna attached and while listening to a weak signal. Alternatively, a noise generator may be used for optimum adjustment.

26-2 An "Antioverload" Converter for 50 MHz

In metropolitan areas having a high concentration of 50-MHz activity, it may be prudent to sacrifice a bit of noise figure to gain the advantage of having good overload capability for strong local signals. In many instances, freedom from crosstalk and overload is of more importance than achieving the best possible noise figure which, because of auto ignition noise and other background interference, often cannot be used to advantage.

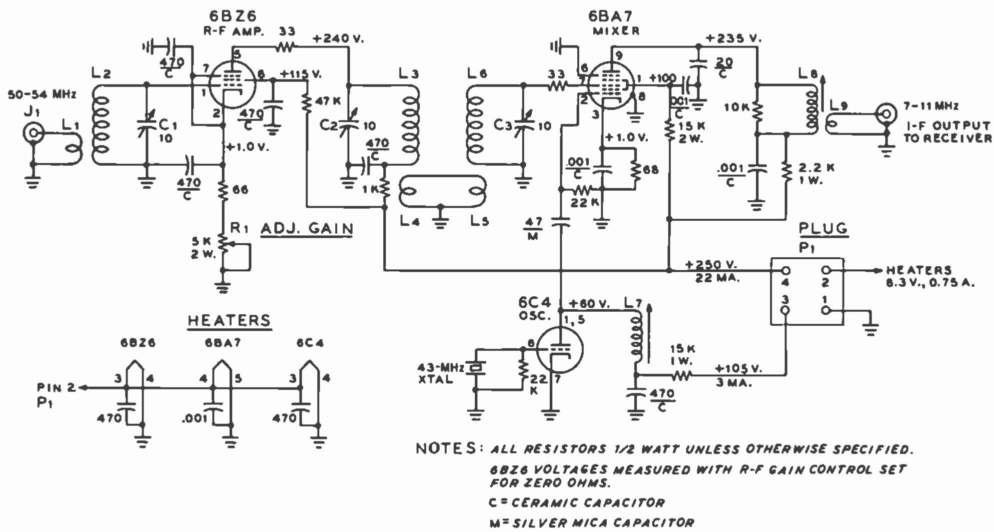


Figure 7

SCHEMATIC OF ANTIOVERLOAD 50-MHz CONVERTER

C_1, C_2, C_3—10-pf miniature. (Johnson 160-107 or equivalent)
J_1, J_2—Coaxial receptacle, BNC type UG-625/U
L_1—2-turn link of hookup wire outside ground end of L_2
L_2—7 turns No. 18, ½-inch diameter, turns spaced wire diameter (B & W 3003)
L_3—10 turns same as L_2
L_4, L_5—2-turn link of hookup wire inside of L_3 and L_6. See text
L_6—8 turns same as L_2
L_7—10 turns No. 28 enameled wire closewound on ½-inch diameter slug-tuned form. (J. W. Miller No. 41A-000CBI or equiv.)
L_8—40 turns No. 28 enameled wire closewound on ⅜" diameter slug-tuned form. (J. W. Miller No. 42A-000CBI or equiv.)
L_9—3 turn link of hookup wire wound over B-plus end of L_8
P_1—4-pin chassis mounting plug. (Cinch-Jones P-304AB or equiv.)

The 50-MHz converter described in this section (figure 6) is a popular design on the West Coast, particularly in areas of high 6-meter activity and areas in proximity to high-power Channel-2 television transmitters. The converter has good sensitivity, an acceptable noise figure of about 5 decibels, and excellent high-signal overload characteristics. It is the "city ham's" 50-MHz converter par-excellence.

Circuit Description The schematic of the *antioverload* converter is shown in figure 7. A 6BZ6 semiremote-cut-off pentode is used as an r-f amplifier. The 6BZ6 has a cathode gain control (R_1) to permit adjustment of stage gain when strong local signals are encountered. A 6BA7 pentagrid mixer having an exceptionally large dynamic signal range is used, in conjunction with a 6C4 fundamental-frequency mixing oscillator. Coupling between the r-f amplifier plate coil (L_3) and the 6BA7 mixer grid coil (L_6) may be varied to suit the strong-signal situation by adjustment of link coils L_4 and L_5.

The 6C4 crystal oscillator is capacitively coupled to the 6BA7 mixer, and the former employs a 43-MHz third-overtone crystal to produce a 7- to 11-MHz intermediate frequency for signals in the range of 50 to 54 MHz. Plate voltage for the 6C4 oscillator is fed separately from the rest of the converter so the oscillator may be turned off during periods of transmission.

Converter Construction The 50-MHz converter is built on a 4" × 6" copper-laminate (two sides) phenolic circuit board. A 4" × 6" × 2" aluminum chassis box serves as a base and a shield for the wiring and components. All components

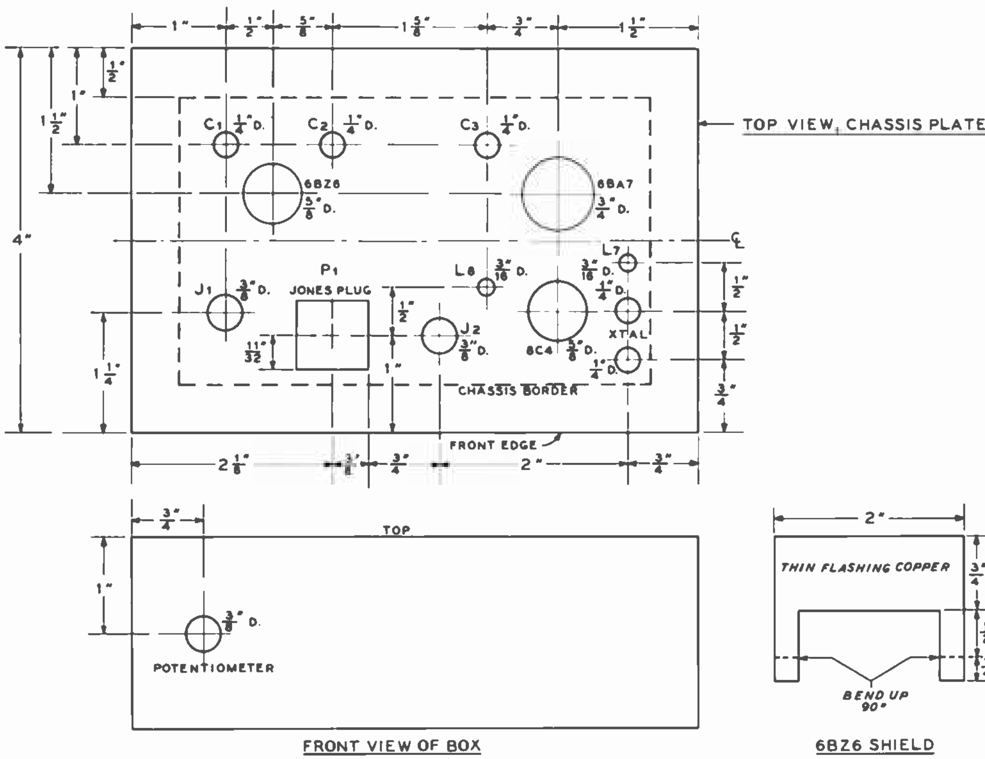


Figure 8

DRILLING LAYOUT FOR CONVERTER PLATE, SOCKET SHIELD, AND CHASSIS BOX

except the manual gain control (R_1) are mounted on the chassis plate. The gain control mounts on the chassis box as shown in Figure 8. A short length of flexible hook-up wire connects the potentiometer terminal to a phenolic tie-point mounted on the plate. The ground terminal of the gain control is grounded to the plate by a separate lead so that an electrical connection is made if the converter is operated outside of the box. This permits the chassis plate to be swung up and out while the converter is aligned and tested.

The usable area of the chassis plate is 3″ × 5″ since a one-half inch border around the plate must be left to clear the chassis base lip. All parts (except the gain control) must be located inside the border. Self-tapping screws secure the chassis-plate to the box.

Placement of the major components may be seen in the underchassis view (Figure 9) and the drilling layout (Figure 8). The three 50-MHz coils are made of sections of *miniductor* coil stock. A heated razor blade held with pliers is a good tool to sever the plastic ribs when cutting the coil stock to length. The coils are mounted in place by their leads.

A small shield is placed across the 6BZ6 socket to prevent oscillation of the r-f stage. The shield is cut from thin "flashing" copper and measures 2″ long by ¾″ high. It is soldered to the chassis plate at either side of the socket and to the socket center post. The shield should be placed in position before wiring is started.

Most of the small components are supported by their leads, between socket pins, or from socket pin to nearby phenolic tie-

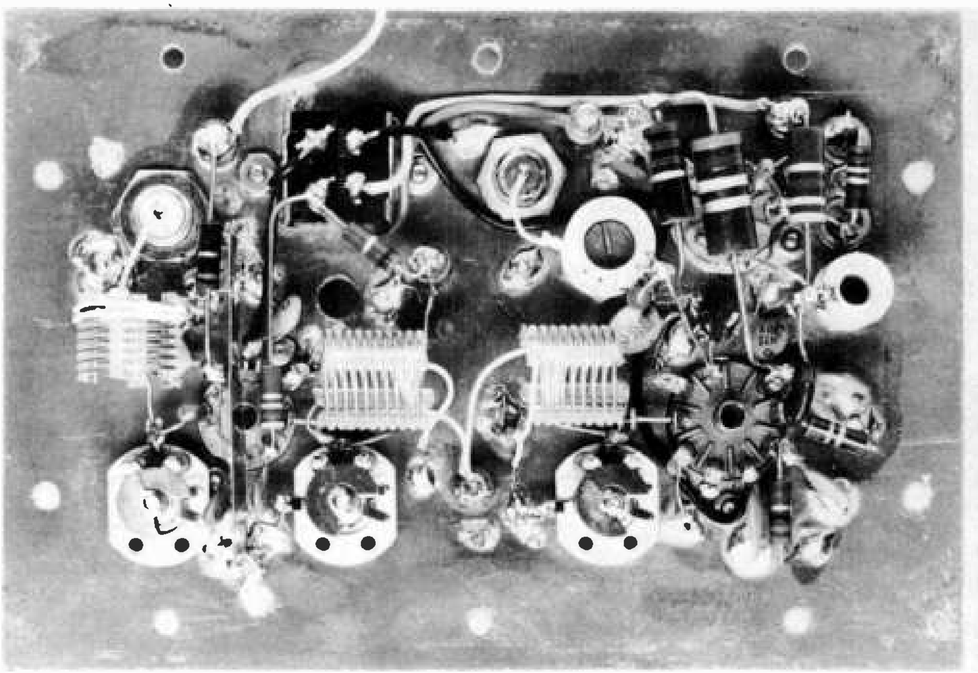


Figure 9

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF CONVERTER

Left to right across the lower edge of the chassis-plate are tuning capacitors C_1, C_2 and C_3. A copper flashing shield straddles the 6BZ6 tube socket at left. Adjacent ends of coils L_3 and L_4 are spaced about 3/4" apart, with "cold" ends facing each other (center of chassis). Interstage coupling is adjusted by positioning links inside the coils. A phenolic tie-point insulator located to one side and between the two coils serves to support the ungrounded link connection. Other ends of links are grounded to chassis plate. Mixer tube socket is at right of chassis, with oscillator socket directly above it.

point terminals. All leads are short and direct. The drilling layout shows the location of the major components. If other components are substituted for the ones used, it would be wise to check the layout before drilling any holes as space is rather limited in some areas.

Adjustment of the Converter A regulated supply voltage of 105 volts at 3 milliamperes is required for the oscillator and 250 volts at about 25 milliamperes for the r-f and mixer stages. The 6C4 may be operated from the 250-volt supply without regulation if an additional series dropping resistor of 50,000 ohms, 2 watts is placed between pins 3 and 4 of plug P_1. Filament power for the converter is 6.3 volts at 0.75 ampere.

All wiring should be checked before power is applied to the converter. The 6C4 oscillator is checked in the manner described in the previous section of this chapter. The

6BA7 and 6BZ6 tubes are inserted in the proper sockets, the converter is attached to a receiver tuned to 7 MHz and a low-level 50-MHz signal is injected into antenna receptacle (J_1) of the converter. The various tuning capacitors are adjusted for maximum signal.

Final adjustment of coupling coils L_4 and L_5 should be done after the user has had experience with the converter in the presence of strong local signals. With all circuits peaked for maximum signal, the link-coupling coils should be adjusted for minimum signal consistent with good reception and the prevailing state of nearby strong signals. Too close coupling will limit the ability of the converter to withstand strong local signals and too loose coupling will result in an excessive loss of gain. Adjustment of the link coils coupled with experimentation with the gain control will achieve the ultimate in usable sensitivity and excellent overload capability.

For flattest response across the whole 50-MHz band, capacitors C_1, C_2, and C_3 should be stagger-tuned. Capacitor C_2 is the sharpest tuning of the three circuits, and should be peaked at the center of the operating range to be covered. Coil L_8 should be adjusted to provide maximum gain at the center of the operating range. As a starter, capacitor C_1 should be peaked at 50.5 MHz, capacitor C_2 at 51 MHz, and capacitor C_3 at 52 MHz. If the converter is to be used only in the lower one megahertz of the band, all circuits may be peaked at 50.5 MHz. Adjustment of link coil L_1 and tuning of input capacitor C_1 have an effect on the noise figure of the converter. These adjustments may be made on a weak signal or with the aid of a noise meter.

Figure 10

OBLIQUE VIEW OF TWO METER NUVISTOR CONVERTER

This all-nuvistor converter provides superior performance on the two-meter band. Across the near edge (left to right) are the slug-tuned output coil (L_4), the 7857 nuvistor, the interstage coils (L_3 and L_5), followed by the 6CW4 nuvistor and r-f tuning capacitor C_1. The 6CW4 crystal oscillator stage is at the back (right) with coaxial receptacle J_1 near the crystal. The power plug is at the rear (left). The complete converter is built on a copper-plated, phenolic-base circuit board.

26-3 A Nuvistor Two-Meter Converter

The wide acceptance of the nuvistor tube as an r-f amplifier for vhf reception has shown its superiority over conventional triodes for weak-signal reception. When used with a nuvistor *tetrode* mixer stage, moreover, the performance of the 6CW4 as a low-noise r-f amplifier is considerably enhanced.

Described in this section is a three-nuvistor converter for 144 MHz that exhibits a noise figure close to 3 decibels (figure 10). The circuit may be modified for "antioverload" characteristics for protection from strong local signals while still retaining its excellent noise figure.

Circuit Description The schematic of the nuvistor two-meter converter is given in figure 11. A 6CW4 is used as a low-noise r-f amplifier in a neutralized, grid-driven configuration. The mixer stage uses a 7587 nuvistor tetrode which combines low lead inductance with extremely high transconductance and reduced input loading. A minimum of local-oscillator injection is required and as the tube has high conversion gain, it provides good i-f output signal voltage.

A second 6CW4 is used as a "hot-cathode" conversion oscillator employing a 39.33-MHz overtone crystal. The third harmonic of the crystal frequency appears in the plate circuit of the 6CW4 stage (118 MHz) providing an intermediate-frequency

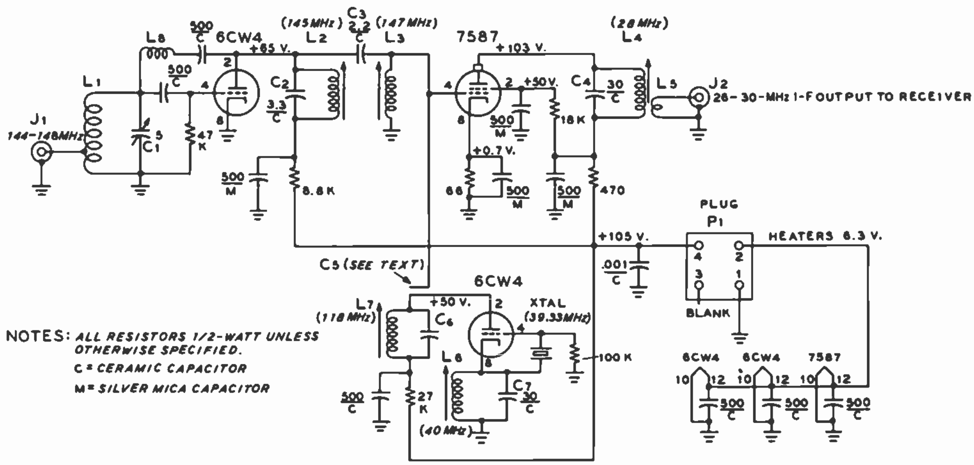


Figure 11

SCHEMATIC OF TWO-METER NUVISTOR CONVERTER

C_1—0.5- to 5-pf tubular trimmer (Erie 532A or equiv.)
C_2, C_6—3.3-pf tubular ceramic (Centralab TCZ-3R3 or equiv.)
C_3—2.2-pf tubular ceramic (Centralab TCZ-2R2 or equiv.)
C_4,C_7—30-pf ceramic (Centralab DD or equiv.)
J_1, J_2—BNC receptacle type UG-625/U
L_1—5 turns #16 bare wire, 1/4" diameter, spaced wire diameter. Tap 2 turns up and adjust for best noise figure
L_2, L_3—4 turns #26 enamelled wire, 1/4" diameter, close wound on slug-tuned form (CTC-PLST or equiv.)
L_4—11 turns #26 enamelled wire, 3/8" diameter, closewound on slug-tuned form (CTC-LS3 or equiv.)
L_5—3 turns insulated wire closewound around B-plus end of L_4
L_6—5 turns #26 enamelled wire, 3/8" diameter, closewound on slug-tuned form (CTC-LS3 or equiv.)
L_7—7 turns #26 enamelled wire, 1/4" diameter, closewound on slug-tuned form (CTC-PLST or equiv.)
L_8—25 turns #30 enamelled wire, wound on 1-megohm, 1/2-watt resistor, approximately 5/16" long; adjust for neutralization (see text)
Note: All 500-pf ceramic capacitors are disc type (Centralab DD-501 or equiv.).
All 500-pf silver mica capacitors are silver button type (Erie 370-CB-501K or equiv.).
Nuvistor sockets are Cinch 133-65-10-0.011 or equiv.

range of 26 to 30 MHz. For lower i-f ranges, only the crystal and the i-f output coil (L_4) need be changed. If an i-f range of 14 to 18 MHz is desired, a conversion crystal frequency of 43.3 MHz should be used. The plate circuit of the oscillator is now tuned to 130 MHz, however no changes are necessary in the tuned circuit. Output coil L_4 requires 22 turns for coverage of the 14- to 18-MHz range.

The oscillator is coupled to the grid of the mixer stage by the stray capacitance of a wire run from the grid end of mixer coil L_3 to an unused lug on the plate end of oscillator coil L_7. No further coupling is required.

Converter Construction The converter is built on a 3" × 4½" sheet of copper-laminate (two sides) phenolic circuit board. A similar size inverted aluminum chassis 1½" deep is used as a shield box. Layout of major components, the nuvistor socket shield, and the nuvistor mounting hole are shown in figure 12. Because of their small size, nuvistor sockets are clamped (rather than bolted) to the chassis by bending two lugs on the socket. After the chassis hole is drilled, two notches are filed to ensure a tight fit of socket to chassis. For grounding, both socket lugs are soldered to the chassis. All ground connections for the nuvistor socket should be made to the socket lugs, except in the case of the r-f amplifier, which uses the base shield as the common ground return. This shield is cut from a thin piece of copper and is soldered

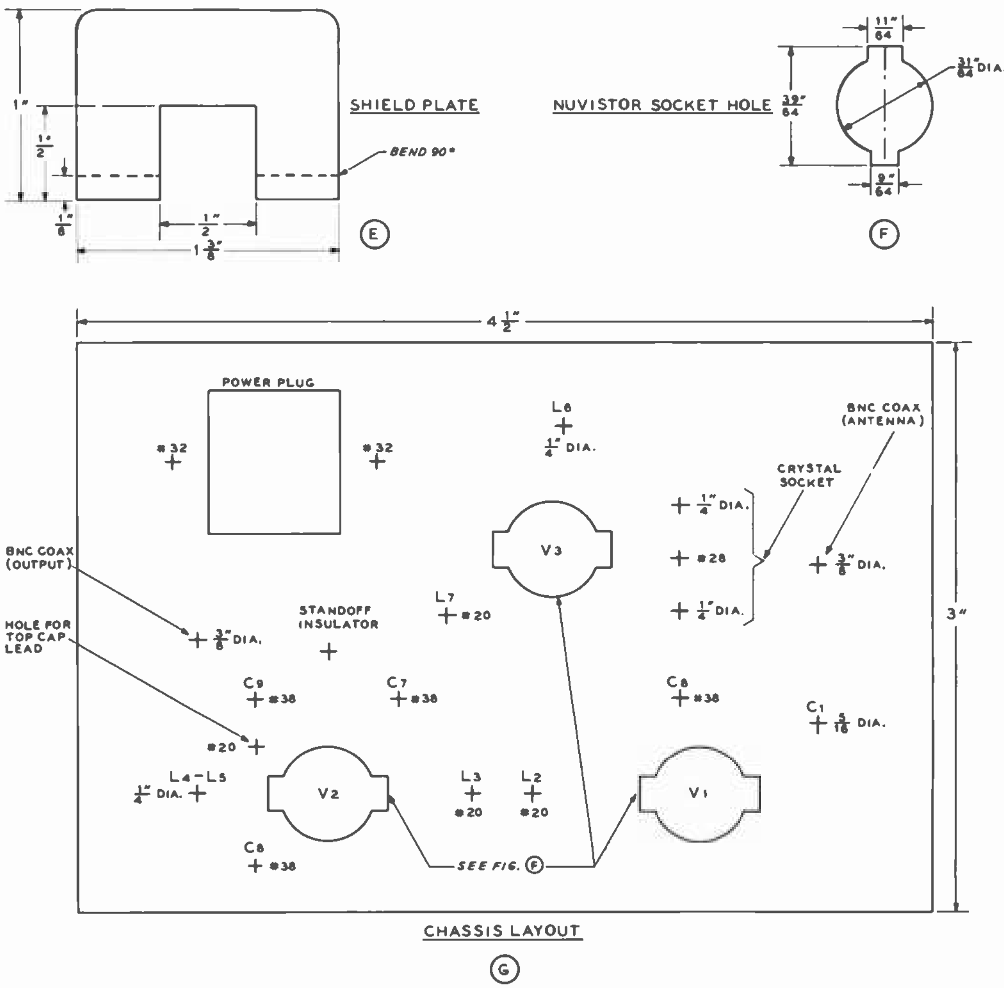


Figure 12

DRILLING LAYOUT FOR CONVERTER BOARD (G), BASE SHIELD LAYOUT (E), AND NUVISTOR SOCKET HOLE (F).

to socket pins 8 and 10 and to the chassis. As in all vhf construction, good grounds are essential and all ground-return leads should be *short*. Connection to the top cap of the 7587 is best made with a short piece of steel (piano) wire looped into a tight-fitting, one-turn coil.

All coils except the input coil have been wound on slug-tuned forms to provide neat construction and ease of alignment. Slug-tuning eliminates the need for squeezing and adjusting the coils for correct tuning. Use of the layout of figure 12 ensures that the coils are mounted in the proper position with unwanted coupling and spurious feedback paths eliminated.

Note that all components are held clear of the chassis edge so that they do not interfere with the lip of the chassis box (figure 13).

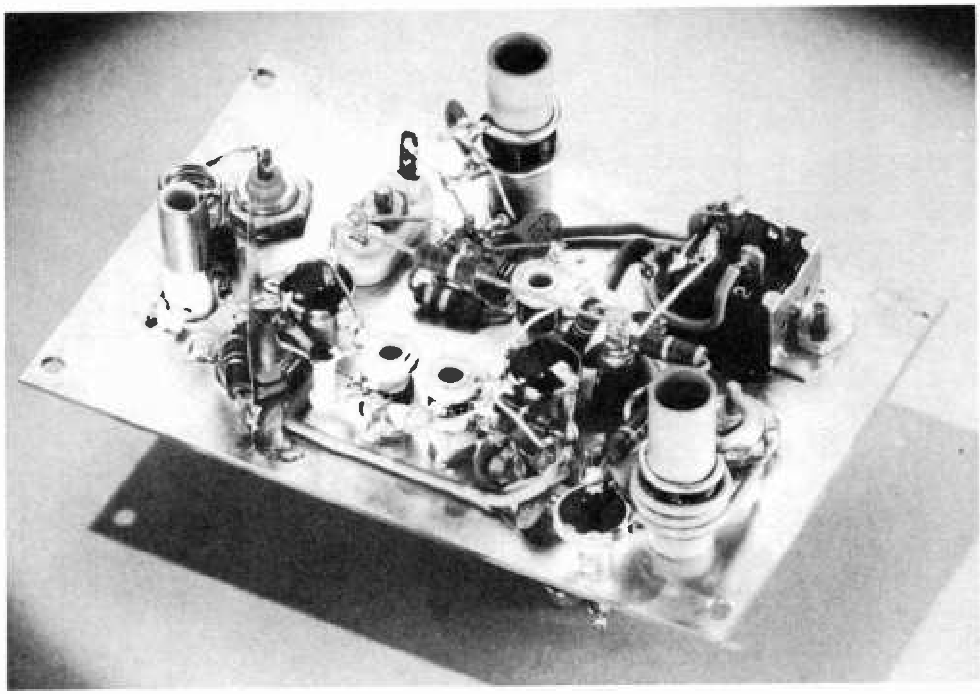


Figure 13

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF TWO-METER CONVERTER

Layout of the principal components are shown in this view. The r-f input circuitry and 6CW4 r-f amplifier socket are at the left. The socket shield is seen end-on. Interstage coupling coils L_2 and L_3 are in the foreground, center, with i-f output coil L_4 at right. At the rear of the chassis plate are the components of the 6CW4 oscillator and the power plug.

Converter Adjustments Alignment of the nuvistor two-meter converter is simple. A grid-dip oscillator is used to adjust all coils to the correct frequencies with tubes and crystal in their respective sockets. Coils L_1, L_2, and L_3 are dipped near 146 MHz; coil L_4 to 28 MHz; coil L_6 to 40 MHz; and coil L_7 to 118 MHz.

Next, connect the antenna and receiver to the converter and apply power. Requirements are 105 volts (regulated) at 25 milliamperes and 6.3 volts at 0.4 ampere. Compare the measured voltages with those indicated in the schematic. All voltages are with respect to ground and may vary by 10% or so. A high-resistance meter should be used for best accuracy.

If the grid-dip adjustments are made correctly, two-meter signals should be heard as

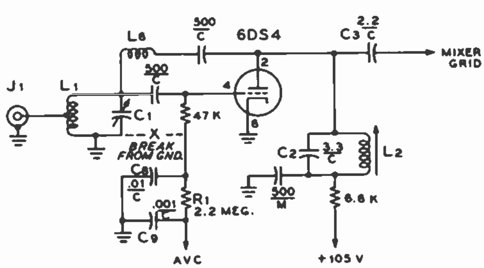


Figure 14

MODIFICATION OF 6DS4 R-F STAGE FOR AUTOMATIC GAIN CONTROL

the i-f receiver is tuned across the proper range. If no signals are heard, oscillator operation should be checked by removing the crystal from the socket. With the crystal removed, the background noise of the receiver should fall off. A slight adjustment of oscillator cathode coil L_6 may be necessary to start oscillation. Oscillator plate coil L_7 should be peaked for maximum oscillator output.

Tune in a signal about 145 MHz and adjust r-f amplifier plate coil L_2 for maximum indicated signal. Repeat at 147 MHz and adjust mixer grid coil L_3. Find a signal near 146 MHz and adjust the r-f input circuit (L_1, C_1) for maximum signal.

The r-f amplifier should be properly neutralized for best noise figure. The filament lead should be opened at the 6CW4 r-f stage socket. Neutralizing coil L_8 is adjusted by starting with a few extra turns and removing one turn at a time to find the point of minimum signal feedthrough when the other tubes are operating. This adjustment is not critical.

"Antioverload" Modification Strong local two-meter signals may, under certain circumstances, cause overloading of any two-meter converter designed for low noise figure and weak-signal reception. Cross modulation can be reduced in this converter by the use of automatic gain control (agc or

Figure 15

FRONT VIEW OF TRANSCEIVER

The transceiver panel measures 12⅛" wide by 6⅝" high. The two large controls at center are for final amplifier tank and vfo tuning. On the left area of the panel are the modulator balance control (top), r-f gain adjustment, receiver volume, and microphone gain control (next to the microphone jack). The lower switch is the main power control (S_2) and the meter switch is at the top, right. Below the plate tuning control are the grid tuning adjustment and the function switch, S_3. On the right of the panel are the carrier level control, R_6, and the antenna loading capacitor, C_4. The cabinet is a wrap-around style made from two pieces of perforated aluminum sheet bent into a U-shape and riveted together at the sides. Panel and cabinet are primed and painted with aerosol (spray) paint.

avc) and the substitution of a 6DS4 semi-remote-cutoff nuvistor for the sharp-cutoff 6CW4. The agc control voltage is taken from the communications receiver used as the i-f strip. Because the agc voltage in a typical communications receiver is not developed until a reasonably strong signal is received, the converter still retains maximum sensitivity for weak-signal reception.

Modification of the converter is simple. The 6DS4 is substituted for the 6CW4 and one resistor and two capacitors are added to the circuit as shown in figure 14. The agc control voltage is obtained from the receiver. The original grid resistor (47K) is lifted from ground and rewired through new resistor R_1 to the spare contact on the power plug. Capacitors C_8 and C_9 are added close to R_1.

The source of the agc voltage in the communications receiver may be found by studying the schematic and locating the agc line in the chassis wiring. The agc voltage (as measured with a vacuum-tube voltmeter) should vary from zero volts at no signal to about −10 volts at maximum signal level. The receiver must have zero volts on the agc line in the absence of signals or this system will not work.

26-4 A Single-Band SSB Transceiver

Probably the most popular item of equipment for SSB operation is the transceiver—a complete station in one compact package. Since many of the tubes and components

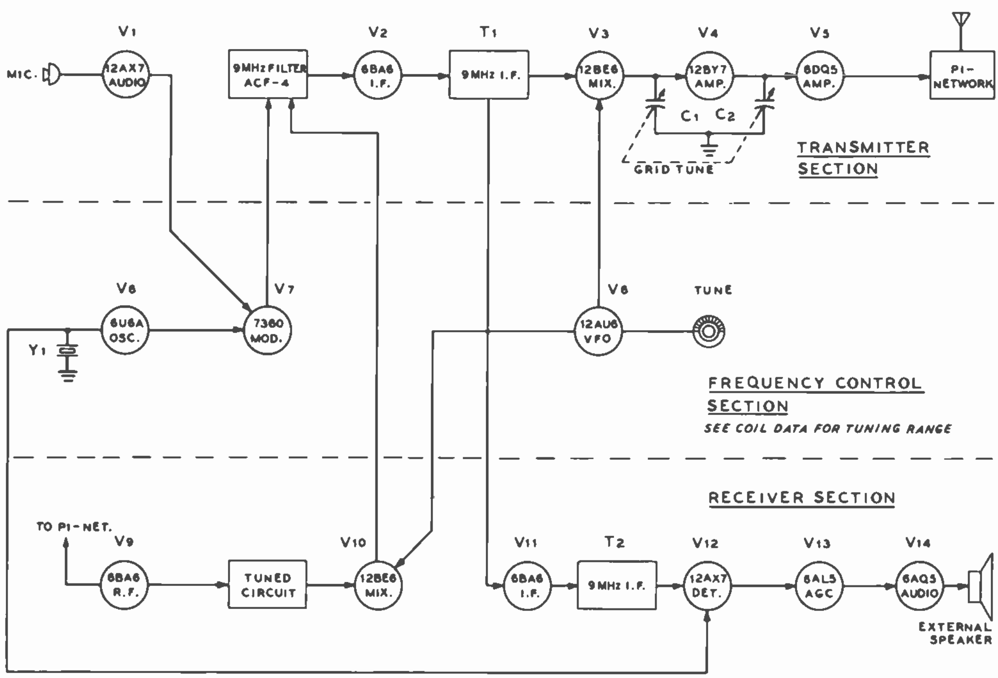


Figure 16

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF SINGLE-BAND SSB TRANSCEIVER

Fifteen tubes are used in a multipurpose circuit. Common r-f tank circuits and i-f filter system simplify construction and reduce cost. A single vfo tunes both receiving and transmitting sections.

are common to both the transmitting and receiving functions, the transceiver can be built compactly and rather inexpensively, and it is well suited for both fixed-station and mobile operation.

The most economical and least complex transceiver to build is one designed for use on a single amateur band. Multiple mixing schemes and complex coil catacombs are thus eliminated, and the "birdie" problem is greatly simplified. Shown in this section is a 200-watt PEP, single-band transceiver (figure 15) which may be used on any one amateur band from 160 to 20 meters. It is relatively simple in design and is an ideal "first" project for those amateurs interested in building their own sideband gear. While a commercial 9-MHz crystal filter is used, substitution of a homemade crystal filter is practical, further reducing the cost of the transceiver.

The Transceiver Circuit The transceiver circuit is a proven one that has been employed in many commercial units and is a version of the original W6QKI (*Swan*) circuit. Fifteen tubes are used, including a voltage regulator and the unit is designed to be operated from either a 115/230-volt a-c primary supply or a 12-volt transistor power pack (external). Operation of the single-band SSB transceiver and the dual function of some of the tubes and tuned circuits may be seen from an inspection of the block diagram of figure 16.

Reception—In the receiving mode, the circuit takes the form of a single-conversion superheterodyne featuring product detection. The received SSB signal is resonated in the antenna input circuit which, in this case, is the pi-network of the transmitter portion of the unit. The network is capacitively coupled to a 6BA6-remote cutoff r-f amplifier (V_9). The plate circuit (L_1-C_1) of the 6BA6 is common to both receiver and transmitter circuits. A 12BE6 (V_{10}) serves as a receiver mixer, the input signal being mixed with the local vfo signal to produce a 9-MHz intermediate frequency. The vfo stage is common to both transmit and receive circuits and tunes approximately 200 kHz in the region of 5 to 8 MHz, the exact tuning range depending on the band in use. A 12AU6 (operated at slightly reduced filament voltage) serves as the oscillator tube (V_8).

The 9-MHz i-f signal passes through the selective crystal lattice filter (ACF-4) and is amplified in a common i-f stage (V_2) which is transformer coupled to a second (receiving) i-f stage (V_{11}) and then fed to a product detector (V_{12}). At this point in the circuit, carrier is injected in the detector from the 6U8A common crystal oscillator (V_6) and the resulting audio product is amplified in one-half of the 12AX7 dual triode (V_{12}) and the 6AQ5A output tube (V_{14}). A portion of the audio signal returns to the 6AL5 automatic gain control rectifier (V_{13}) to provide an audio-derived agc voltage for the receiver section. A fixed positive voltage taken from the cathode of the 6AQ5A stage provides delay voltage for the agc circuit to allow maximum receiver sensitivity to be realized with weak signals. Receiver volume is controlled in the grid of the 6AQ5A stage instead of the low-level audio circuit so that agc action is independent of the audio volume level.

Transmission—In the transmitting mode, the circuit takes the form of a single-conversion, crystal-filter SSB exciter, featuring a 7360 balanced modulator and a 6DQ5 linear amplifier. Switching the circuitry from receive to transmit is accomplished by a single relay (RY) which applies blocking bias (−100 volts) to inactivate tubes used only in the receiving mode. The relay also applies screen voltage to the 6DQ5 r-f amplifier (V_5) and grounds the cathode of the common 6BA6 i-f amplifier stage to nullify the receiving r-f gain control during transmission. The receiver r-f amplifier stage remains connected to the plate circuit of the linear amplifier of the transmitter section, but the 6BA6 amplifier is protected from strong-signal damage by virtue of the high negative bias applied to it in the transmission mode.

When transmitting, the sideband carrier is generated by the common crystal oscillator and buffer stage (V_6). The carrier is coupled into #1 grid of the 7360 balanced modulator (V_7) and the audio signal from the 12AX7 speech amplifier is applied to one deflection plate of the 7360. The resulting double-sideband signal passes into the crystal

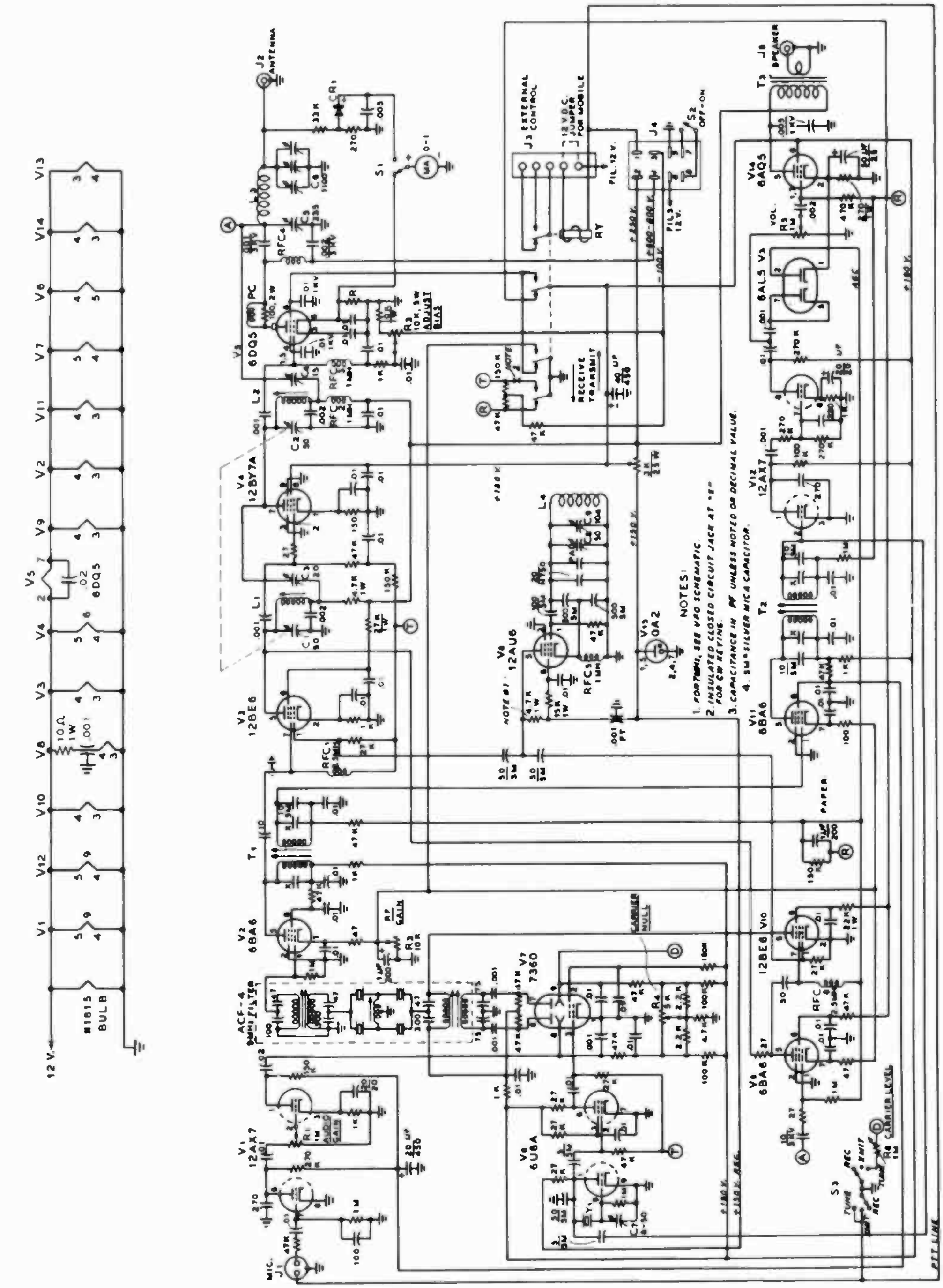


Figure 17

SCHEMATIC, SINGLE-BAND TRANSCEIVER

PARTS LIST FOR FIGURE 17

C_1, C_2—50-pf each; two Hammarlund HF-50 ganged
C_3—20-pf variable mica trimmer
C_4—15-pf, type APC.
C_5—235-pf. Gap .024"; Bud 1859
C_6—365-pf per section; J. W. Miller 2113
C_7—50-pf. Centralab 827
C_8—50-pf, type APC
C_9—104-pf precision capacitor; Miller 2101
CR_1—1N34
J_1—Amphenol 80-PC2F
J_2—Coaxial receptacle. SO-239
J_4—Chassis receptacle; Cinch-Jones P-308AB
MA—Calrad, 0-1 ma d-c, 1¾" meter
PC—4 turns #18 around 100-ohm, 2-watt resistor
R—Meter shunt for 300 ma. Use #30 enamelled, wire wound on 47-ohm, ½-watt resistor
RFC_1 thru RFC_6—2.5 mH subminiature choke; Miller 70F-253-AI
$RFC_{2, 3, 5}$—1 mH choke; Miller 4652
RFC_4—Use Miller RFC-14 for 80-40-20 meters; Use Miller RFC-3.5 for 160 meters
RY—4PDT, 12-volt coil; Potter-Brumfield KHP-17-D11
S_3—Centralab PA-2007
T_1, T_2—10.7-MHz i-f transformer; capacitor X is internal part of unit; Miller 1457
T_3—5000 ohms to 4 ohms; Stancor A-3877
Y_1—International Crystal Co types CY6-9LO (9001.5 kHz) or CY6-9HI (8998.5 kHz) as required
ACF-4—International Crystal Co 9 MHz SSB filter
1—Chassis, 10" x 12" x 3", Bud AC-413
1—Box, 4" x 5" x 3", Bud AU-1028
1—Box, 4" x 4" x 2"; Bud AU-1083
2—Insulated shaft couplers; Johnson 104-264
1—Dial drive; Eddystone 892

filter which suppresses the undesired sideband and the carrier, which is already somewhat attenuated by the balanced modulator stage. The desired sideband is amplified in the common 6BA6 i-f stage and passed to the 12BE6 transmitting mixer (V_3) where it is mixed with the vfo signal to produce an SSB signal on the same frequency as the signal being received. The SSB signal is further amplified in the 12BY7A driver stage (V_4) and the 6DQ5 linear amplifier (V_5). When the pi-network plate circuit of the 6DQ5 has been properly tuned for transmission, it is also tuned for optimum reception and requires no further adjustment unless a large frequency excursion is made. The same is true of the 12BY7A tuned circuit (marked *grid tune*).

Transceiver Layout and Assembly The transceiver measures 12⅛" wide by 6⅝" high by 10⅛" deep. A 10" × 12" × 3" aluminum chassis is used for the assembly, with the vfo components mounted in two 4" × 4" × 2" aluminum utility boxes, one atop and one beneath the chassis. The final amplifier plate circuit components are inclosed in a third utility box measuring 4" × 5" × 3" in size. Layout of the major components may be seen in the drawings and photographs (figures 18, 19, and 20). The cabinet is a homemade wrap-around type made of two pieces of perforated aluminum sheet bent into a U-shaped inclosure and riveted together at the sides.

Data is given in the tables for coils, crystals and frequencies to be used to build a transceiver for 160-, 80-, 40-, or 20-meter operation using standard components. The layout has been planned to allow short r-f leads where necessary, and to permit proper circuit isolation. In most cases, resistors and bypass capacitors are mounted directly at the tube-socket pins with liberal use of tie-point terminals to achieve solid construction. The resistor network for balancing the voltage on the deflection plates of the 7360 modulator tube is mounted on a separate terminal board fastened to the side of the chassis, and a second terminal board is used for mounting the r-f choke in the vfo cathode circuit and the associated capacitors (figure 21). The power plug, relay terminal strip, final amplifier bias potentiometer, and speaker jack are placed on the rear apron of the chassis.

Final amplifier components are placed inside the utility box bolted to the top rear corner of the chassis. The chassis area beneath the 6DQ5 tube is cut out and covered with a perforated aluminum sheet, as are the top and rear of the box, to achieve proper circulation of air around the tube.

The vfo (figure 22) is placed at the front-center of the chassis and is constructed on a ⅛-inch thick plate of aluminum measuring 4" × 4¼" in size. The vfo tuning capacitor is fastened to this sturdy base by mounting bolts from the underside of the plate. A precision, silver-plated tuning capacitor having ball bearings and closely controlled torque is used in conjunction with a 10-to-1 ratio epicyclic driving head to

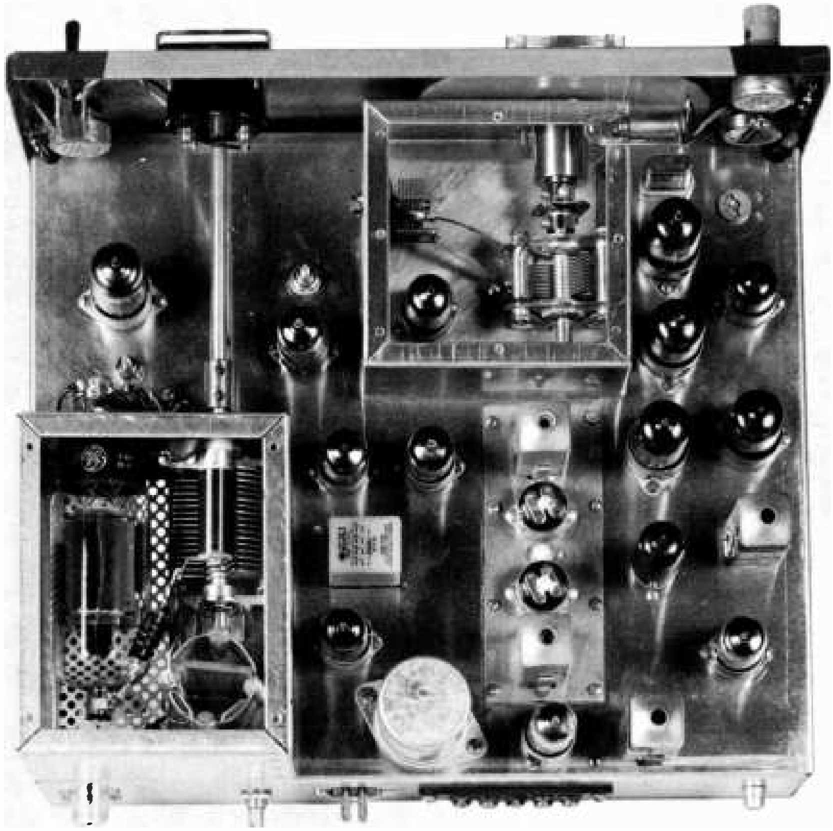


Figure 18

TOP VIEW OF CHASSIS

The SSB transceiver is compact in size, yet not crowded on the 10" x 12" chassis. The use of standard aluminum utility boxes for component inclosures provides excellent shielding at low cost. The box covers have been removed to show interior layout. Ventilation is provided for the horizontally mounted 6DQ5 linear amplifier tube by making a cutout in the chassis below the tube and covering the opening with a sheet of perforated aluminum. A new box cover is made of the same material. The relay to the right of the amplifier box is fully inclosed in a dust cover. Along the rear apron of the chassis are the coaxial antenna receptacle, the bias adjustment potentiometer, the power plug and relay terminal strip, with the speaker jack at the far right.

The 12BY7A driver tube is located between the amplifier box and the front panel, with the 12BE6 transmitter mixer to the right. The 6BA6 receiver r-f stage and 12BE6 mixer are between the relay and the vfo, with the OA2 regulator behind the relay, adjacent to the filter capacitor. The 9-MHz i-f filter strip is at center with the 6BA6 common i-f tube behind it.

At the right, next to the vfo are (going back from the panel): the 9-MHz crystal, the 6U8A oscillator, the 7360, and the 6AQ5A audio amplifier. At the extreme right of the chassis are the 6AL5 agc tube, the 12AX7 speech amplifier stage and the 6BA6 receiver i-f stage.

achieve a smooth, backlash-free tuning system.

One aluminum utility box is bolted to this mounting plate from the bottom side to serve as a shield compartment for the vfo coil and circuit components. The vfo coil is made from airwound inductor stock (*miniductor*) securely affixed to a 1/4-inch

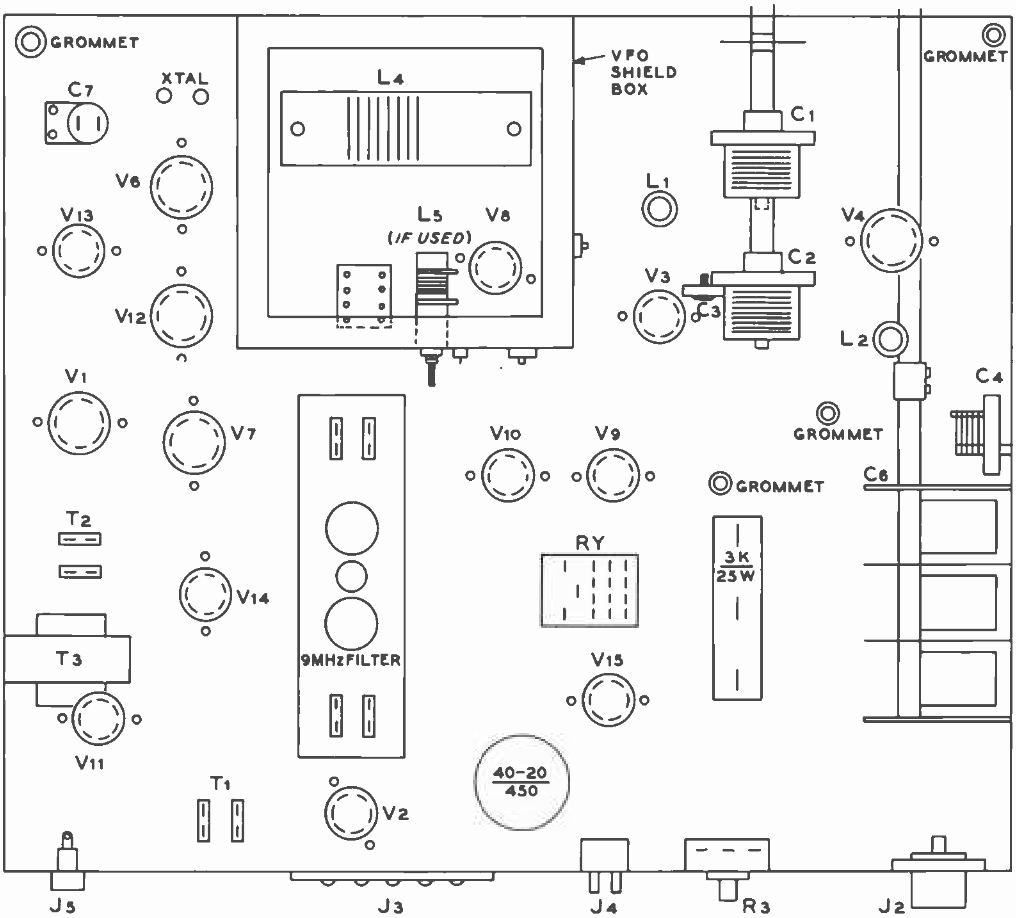


Figure 19

UNDER-CHASSIS LAYOUT OF TRANSCEIVER

thick block of *plexiglas* or other insulating material which, in turn, is bolted to the chassis with similar insulating blocks spacing it away from the metal.

Operating voltages are brought into the under-chassis shield box via feedthrough capacitors and the vfo output leads are connected to feedthrough bushings on the sides of the box nearest the transmitting and receiving mixer tubes. A second utility box is bolted to the top of the vfo plate, spaced about 1/4 inch back from the front apron of the chassis to permit clearance for the dial and drive mechanism. The drive head is passed through a 3/4-inch hole in the front of the utility box and is bolted to the box in line with the capacitor shaft and affixed to it with a flexible coupler. A 4½" diameter circular piece of sheet plastic is attached to the drive head to form the tuning dial. It is spray-painted white and calibration marks are lettered on it with India ink after final calibration is completed. Sufficient clearance is left between the dial and the chassis so the plastic does not rub on the metal.

The front panel is spaced away from the chassis by virtue of the large nuts holding the various controls on the front apron of the chassis and is affixed in place with a

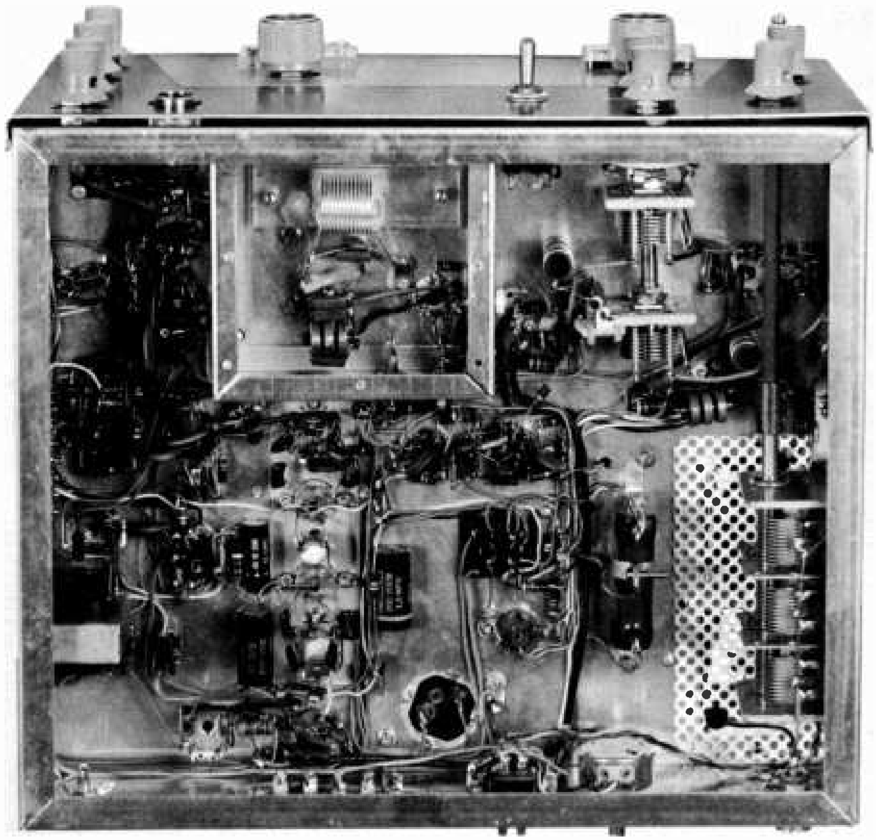


Figure 20

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF THE TRANSCEIVER

The bottom plate has been removed from the vfo compartment to show internal layout. The three-gang antenna loading capacitor, C_c, is bolted to the side apron of the chassis (right) as is the audio output transformer (left). Small components are soldered directly to tube socket terminals and adjacent tie-point strips, leaving the sockets clear for voltage measurements. See Figure 19 for placement of major components.

second set of nuts on the control bushings. The ⅛-inch space thus created provides room for the dial to rotate freely. A cutout is made in the panel in front of the dial to match the appearance of the meter. The opening is covered with a section of *plexiglas* or *lucite* inscribed with a hairline indicator. A pilot light behind the dial provides proper illumination. The hole in the panel for the tuning shaft should be made sufficiently large so the shaft does not touch the panel, making the tuning mechanism independent of any panel movement.

Transceiver Wiring It is suggested that the receiver portion of the transceiver be wired and tested first. The sideband filter comes as a wired package with matching transformers and requires only a slight modification. The mounting plate is cut down to a width of 1¾″ to conserve space and new mounting holes are drilled along the edges of the plate. The filter assembly is then attached to the transceiver chassis over a slot cut just behind the vfo assembly. The output connection of the filter assembly goes to the grid of the

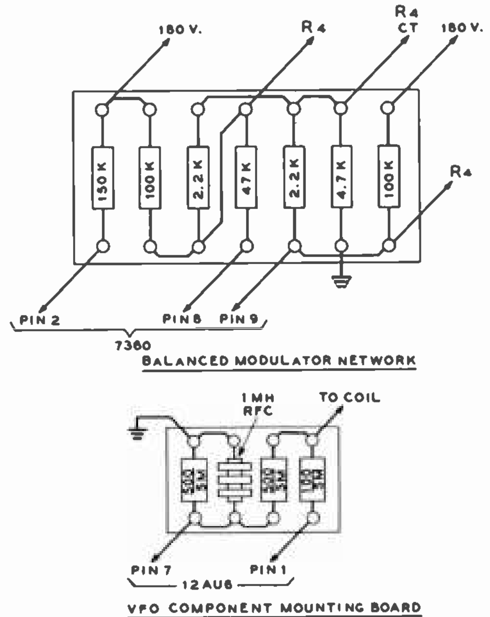


Figure 21

TERMINAL BOARD LAYOUT

6BA6 i-f amplifier tube (V_2). The grounded side of the input transformer secondary is lifted from ground, bypassed and connected to the 1000-ohm decoupling resistor in the supply-voltage circuit. The other end of this secondary winding is connected to the plate of the 12BE6 receiver mixer tube. The primary winding is modified for balanced input by grounding the junction of the two 75-pf capacitors and connecting the end of the winding to the plates of the 7360 balanced modulator tube through the .001-μfd coupling capacitors.

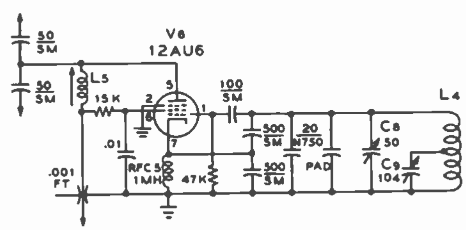


Figure 22

40-METER VFO SCHEMATIC

The 40-meter model of the single-band SSB transceiver employs the second harmonic of the oscillator frequency. A doubler coil, L_5, is placed in the plate circuit of the vfo in place of the 4.7K load resistor. Tuning capacitor C_9 is tapped down the grid coil to cover the tuning range desired. Tap point and padding capacitor data are given in Figure 23.

Figure 23

COIL DATA

L1, L2

3/8" DIA. SLUG TUNED COILS

160 METERS -	220 μH	*MILLER #21A224RBI*
80 METERS -	22 μH	*MILLER #21A225RBI*
40 METERS -	15 μH	*MILLER #21A155RBI*
20 METERS -	3.3 μH	*MILLER #21A336RBI*

L3

160 METERS -	55 TURNS #20 ENAMEL WIRE CLOSE WOUND. 1 1/4" DIA., 1 3/4" LONG.
80 METERS -	24 TURNS #18 TINNED WIRE. *AIR-DUX #1014A*. 1 1/4" DIA., 1 3/4" LONG.
40 METERS -	14 TURNS #18 TINNED WIRE. *AIR-DUX #1014A*. 1 1/4" DIA., 1" LONG.
20 METERS -	11 TURNS #18 TINNED WIRE. *AIR-DUX #8087*. 1" DIA., 1 1/2" LONG.

L4 NOTE: C9 *TAPPED ON* L4 *FOR VARIOUS RANGES.*

BAND	TUNING RANGE	
160	7200-7000 kHz	9 TURNS #20 TINNED WIRE, 3/4" DIA., 3/4" LONG. TAP 4TH TURN FROM GROUND END. *AIR-DUX #616*. PAD CAPACITOR 51-PF SM.
80	5500-5000 kHz	12 TURNS #20 TINNED WIRE, 3/4" DIA., 3/4" LONG. *AIR-DUX #616*. PADDING CAPACITOR 100-PF SM.
75 PHONE	5200-5000 kHz	SAME COIL AS ABOVE. TAP 6TH TURN FROM GROUND END. PADDING CAPACITOR 180-PF SM.
40	8000-8150 kHz	9 TURNS #20 TINNED WIRE. 3/4" DIA. 3/4" LONG. TAP 3RD TURN FROM GROUND END. *AIR-DUX #616*. NO PADDING CAPACITOR.
40 PHONE	8100-8150 kHz	SAME DATA AS ABOVE, EXCEPT TAP 2ND TURN FROM GND END.
20	5000-5500 kHz	SAME DATA AS FOR 80 METERS.
20 PHONE	5200-5350 kHz	SAME DATA AS FOR 75 PHONE. ADJUST TRIMMER C8 FOR DESIRED RANGE.

L5

40 ONLY	16000-16300 kHz	3/8" DIA. SLUG-TUNED COIL. 3.3 μH. *MILLER 21A336RBI*

CRYSTAL DATA (Y_1)

160 METERS LOWER SIDEBAND	- USE 9001.5 kHz
80 METERS LOWER SIDEBAND	- USE 9001.5 kHz
40 METERS LOWER SIDEBAND	USE 9001.5 kHz
20 METERS UPPER SIDEBAND	- USE 8998.5 kHz

The driver (*grid tune*) capacitors (C_1-C_2) are *Hammarlund HF-50* units ganged together and mounted on the chassis by means of the supplied brackets. A flexible coupling is used to extend the shaft through the front panel. The 12BY7A neutralizing capacitor (C_3) is soldered directly to the stator terminal of the plate-circuit capacitor (C_2) of the amplifier stage. The final amplifier neutralizing capacitor (C_4) is placed on the side apron of the chassis in front of the three-gang antenna loading capacitor (C_6).

Transceiver Coils and Circuits—Coil and tuned-circuit data for the various amateur bands are given in figure 23. For the 160-, 80-, and 20-meter bands, the fundamental frequency of the vfo is employed. For 40-meter operation, the plate circuit of the vfo doubles the oscillator frequency to the 16-MHz range. Lower sideband is used for the 160-, 80-, and 40-meter bands, and upper sideband for the 20-meter band. Substitution of crystal Y_1 will reverse the sidebands, as shown in the table. Additional loading capacitance may be required for proper amplifier operation on 160 meters and may take the form of a 1000-pf (1250-volt) mica capacitor placed in parallel with antenna loading capacitor C_6.

Transceiver Alignment Before starting alignment of the transceiver, it is suggested that a wiring check be made and a voltage check be done with a suitable power supply. No high voltage is required to begin with, and the screen power lead of the 6DQ5 should be temporarily disconnected at the socket pin and taped until preliminary alignment is completed. After the slider on the 300-ohm high-voltage dropping resistor has been adjusted to provide a tap voltage of about 180, tube-socket voltages should be compared to the voltage chart (figure 24). The difference noted in receive and transmit voltage in some cases is due to the cutoff bias being switched in and out of the circuit by the changeover relay. The relay is d-c operated, and for fixed-station service a 12-volt d-c source must be used. When operating mobile this relay terminal is jumpered to the 12-volt d-c filament supply.

The receiver i-f system is aligned first by injecting a 9-MHz modulated test signal at the grid of the receiver i-f amplifier (V_{11}) and tuning the slugs in transformer T_2 for maximum audio signal in the attached speaker. The test generator is then moved back to the input grid of the common i-f amplifier (V_2) and transformer T_1 is adjusted for maximum signal. A vacuum-tube voltmeter on the agc line is helpful in alignment.

When the test signal is injected at the plate terminal of the receiving mixer tube (V_{10}) tuning becomes rather sharp going through the sideband filter. The filter is factory tuned and needs little adjustment other than peaking the top slugs of the two filter transformers. The secondary of the input transformer should be checked, but should not require adjustment more than one-half turn in either direction.

Before an "outside" signal is received, the variable-frequency oscillator must be aligned to cover the desired operating range, as listed in the coil table. The alignment procedure is the same for any band; only the frequency range is different as indicated on the chart. Use of a good frequency meter (such as a BC-221) will be helpful at this

Figure 24

TUBE-SOCKET VOLTAGE CHART

TUBE			1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V_1	12AX7	R-	50	0	.8	0	12	40	0	0	CT
		T-	55	0	1	0	12	45	0	0	CT
V_2	6BA6	R-	0	0	0	6	175	75	.8		
		T-	0	0	0	6	175	70	.5		
V_3	12BE6	R-	-40	0	0	12	220	220	-40		
		T-	-1	6	0	12	210	80	0		
V_4	12BY7	R-	0	-35	0	0	12	CT	250	180	0
		T-	4	-5	0	0	12	CT	250	180	0
V_5	6DQ5	R-	-60	6	0	0	-60	0	6	0	
		T-	-60	6	0	180	-60	0	6	180	
V_6	6U8	R-	75	-40	180	6	0	180	0	0	-2
		T-	75	0	100	6	0	35	0	0	-2
V_7	7360	R-	0	180	-40	6	0	180	180	24	24
		T-	0	75	-1	6	0	140	140	24	24
V_8	12AU6	R-	*	0	0	10	120	115	0		
		T-	*	0	0	10	120	115	0		
V_9	6BA6	R-	0	0	0	6	210	80	.2		
		T-	-70	0	0	6	200	0	0		
V_{10}	12BE6	R-	-.5	0	0	12	180	60	-.2		
		T-	-8	0	0	12	175	0	-107		
V_{11}	6BA6	R-	0	0	0	6	175	80	.5		
		T-	-107	0	0	6	175	140	0		
V_{12}	12AX7	R-	145	0	0	0	12	100	0	.4	CT
		T-	175	-75	0	0	12	100	0	.4	CT
V_{13}	6AL5	R-	10	0	6	0	0	0	0		
		T	0	-140	6	0	0	0	0		
V_{14}	6AQ5	R-	0	10	0	6	225	180	0		
		T-	-60	0	0	6	250	180	-60		
V_{15}	0A2	R-	150	0	0	0	150	0	0		
		T-	150	0	0	0	150	0	0		

NOTE: *MEASUREMENTS MADE WITH A 20,000 OHM-PER-VOLT METER. NO SIGNAL INPUT, R-F GAIN ADVANCED TO MAXIMUM, AUDIO GAIN OFF. FILAMENTS A.C.*

POWER SUPPLY REQUIREMENTS

LOW VOLTAGE – 250 VOLTS AT 110 MA.
BIAS – 110 VOLTS NEGATIVE AT 10 MA.
HIGH VOLTAGE – 600 TO 800 VOLTS AT 300 MA.
FILAMENTS – 12.6 VOLTS A.C. OR D.C. AT 3.7 A.

point. With the 80-meter unit as an example, the vfo must tune from 5.5 to 5.0-MHz for proper coverage of 3.5 to 4.0 MHz. The carrier crystal is at 9001.5 kHz to properly place the carrier on the slope of the filter for lower sideband output. Coil L_1 of the 6BE6 transmit mixer is tuned to 3.5 MHz with the aid of a grid-dip oscillator, the slug being adjusted with capacitor C_1 set near maximum capacitance. The entire 80-meter band can then be covered by peaking the pi-network and grid-circuit tuning controls.

Alignment of the transmitting circuits is best done with the v.t.v.m. using an r-f probe for signal indication. The function switch is placed in the *tune* position and the carrier-level control (R_6) advanced toward maximum. R-f voltage at the plate of the 6U8A oscillator should measure about 3 or 4 volts, and about the same value should be observed at the plate of the buffer section of this tube. Inasmuch as the filter transformers and transformer T_1 have been adjusted previously, no further adjustment of these circuits is required. The r-f probe can now be placed at the grid of the 6DQ5 amplifier tube socket and the slug in coil L_2 adjusted for maximum r-f voltage reading. This peaks grid tuning so that coil L_2 will track with the previous alignment of coil L_1.

Final Adjustment and Neutralization The 12BY7A stage should now be neutralized. To accomplish this, all power is turned off and the screen lead temporarily removed from the 12BY7A socket. With power again turned on, circuits resonated, and the function switch in the *tune* position, neutralization capacitor C_3 is adjusted with a nonmetallic screwdriver for minimum feedthrough of r-f voltage as measured with the v.t.v.m. probe placed at the #1 grid terminal of the 6DQ5 socket. The screen lead to the 12BY7A socket is replaced when this operation is concluded. The same technique is employed with the 6DQ5 stage as was used with the driver stage. With screen (and plate) voltage removed from the 6DQ5, but with drive applied, the v.t.v.m. is placed on the antenna terminal of the transceiver and neutralizing capacitor C_4 adjusted for minimum voltmeter indication. The pi-network circuit, of course, is in resonance for this operation, as determined by a grid-dip oscillator.

Up to this point, all tuning has been done with carrier injection. For proper sideband operation, the carrier must be removed and the unit excited by an SSB signal. The technique is to position the carrier crystal frequency properly on the filter "slope" and then to balance out the carrier in the 7360 modulator stage. Capacitor C_7 varies the frequency of the crystal oscillator a sufficient amount to find the proper point for the carrier on the passband slope of the filter. The adjustment of this point can best be made by ear, when receiving a sideband signal. Adjust capacitor C_7 until the received audio of an SSB signal sounds natural and pleasing. The crystal should be about 1500 Hz away from the 9-MHz filter center frequency. The frequency displacement, of course, will remain the same while transmitting.

Carrier null is accomplished by adjustment of the balance control (R_4) on the panel. The r-f probe is placed at the grid of the 6DQ5 stage and the function switch turned to *transmit*. No audio signal is desired. The balance potentiometer is adjusted for minimum indicated reading on the v.t.v.m., which should be 1 volt or less. Operation of the audio system and balanced modulator may now be checked by noting the voltage swing while talking into the microphone. A sustained audio tone will swing the meter to 30 or 40 volts peak reading. It is helpful to monitor the signal in a nearby receiver while these adjustments are being made.

Transmit Operation The screen-voltage lead may now be reconnected to the 6DQ5 tube socket and high voltage provided for the plate circuit. Potentials between 400 and 800 volts may be used for the 6DQ5, with proportionately higher output at the higher plate voltages. An antenna or dummy load must be connected to the transceiver to complete the final checkout and bias adjustment. The meter switch is set for *plate current* and the function switch for *transmit*. The bias potentiometer on the rear apron is adjusted for a 6DQ5 resting plate current of 25 milliamperes. Antenna loading is done with the function switch in the *tune* position. As the carrier control is advanced, the final-amplifier plate current will rise in a linear fashion. The amplifier plate circuit is brought into resonance and the grid circuit adjusted for peak plate current reading. Loading control C_6 is adjusted for further increase, reestablishing resonance with the tuning control until the indicated cathode current reaches a value of 275 to 300 milliamperes. Full load current should not be run for more than 20 seconds at a time to achieve maximum amplifier tube life. When the function switch is advanced to *transmit*, amplifier plate current will drop back to the original idling value of 25 ma. As the audio level is raised, speech will kick the indicated current up to values in the vicinity of 125 to 170 milliamperes depending on the individual voice. Too high values of peak current will result in distortion and splatter.

The meter may be switched to read relative power output which, in some cases, will simplify loading the amplifier, especially during mobile operation, as tuning may be done for maximum output reading under a controlled level of excitation.

The 80-meter version of the SSB transceiver is shown in the photographs. The only difference in a unit designed for a

Figure 25

200 WATT PEP SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER FOR 80, 40, AND 20 METERS

Less than a cubic foot in volume, this inexpensive transceiver will fit into today's "compact" automobile. Unit may also be used with auxiliary 115-volt a-c supply for the home station. The major controls on the panel are (l. to r.): sideband switch (S_1), SSB/a-m selector switch (S_2), audio volume (R_5), microphone gain (R_1), carrier injection (S_2), band-selector switch (S_{3-8}), microphone jack (J_1), r-f gain (R_2), meter-selector switch (S_9), antenna loading capacitor (C_{15}), and final amplifier tuning (C_{11}). The main frequency-control dial (C_7) is at top center. Wrap-around, perforated cabinet provides ventilation and acts as TVI shield.

Once adjusted for a particular band, the only tuning required is done with the vfo control. Bandpass coupling allows large excursions in frequency. The vfo tuning mechanism with 100:1 ratio makes sideband tuning a pleasure.

different band is modification of the r-f coils and the vfo circuitry. Alignment and tuneup is the same for all bands. The transceiver may be used for c.w. by employing block-grid keying. Operation on c.w. is with carrier control fully advanced and function switch in the *tune* position while transmitting. The switch is manually returned to *receive* for reception.

A discussion of suitable power supplies is given in a later chapter of this Handbook.

26-5 A 200-Watt 3-Band Sideband Transceiver

A mobile SSB transceiver covering three bands can be built utilizing few more parts than a single-band unit, and without requiring any great increase in size over a single-band model. This compact and inexpensive triband transceiver (figure 25) is designed for 80-, 40-, and 20-meter operation at levels up to 200 watts peak envelope power input. Upper sideband, lower sideband, or amplitude modulation may be transmitted on each band. Push-to-talk circuitry is included and the transceiver may be operated from a six- or twelve-volt d-c power source or from a 115-volt a-c supply. Weighing only a few pounds, the transceiver measures only 10″ × 12″ × 6½″ in size — small enough to fit into "compact" cars!

Circuit Description A block diagram of the transceiver is shown in figure 26. Fourteen tubes and two voltage regulators are used. As practically all mobile operation is done on voice, the tuning range of the transceiver can be limited to the phone segments of the bands used. With such a restricted tuning range, bandpass coupling between low-level r-f stages is practical in both the transmitting and receiving sections of the unit, thus eliminating the need of variable tuning controls for several stages. The variable-frequency oscillator is common to both transmitting and receiving sections and tunes only 350 kHz, which is ample range for the 80-meter band and provides full coverage of the 40- and 20-meter bands. Although several of the tubes in the unit are common to both transmit and receive sections, the receiver r-f section is independent of the transmitter section to make construction easier and to facilitate alignment. The final amplifier tank circuit, however, is used as the antenna input circuit for the receiver to take advantage of the high Q of the circuit and to conserve space. Only two relays are required for receive-transmit changeover and these relays are actuated by the microphone push-to-talk circuit. One miniature relay (RY_2) grounds the grid of the r-f amplifier in the receiver (V_9) for protection during transmissions and a second relay (RY_1) switches various voltages between transmit and receive circuits. Full automatic gain control (agc) is incorporated in the receiver, together with an auxiliary r-f gain control. When transmitting, an automatic level control (alc) system reduces flat-topping and serious overload distortion. The single panel meter may be switched to read cathode current of the linear amplifier stage or relative power output at the antenna receptacle.

The transceiver is designed around the *McCoy* 9-MHz sideband filter, utilizing the sum and difference products created by mixing with a 5-MHz vfo signal to cover the 80- and 20-meter bands. Forty-meter output is obtained by premixing the vfo signal with a 21.5-MHz crystal oscillator to provide a tuneable 16.5-MHz variable-frequency injection signal. This, mixing in turn with the 9-MHz sideband signal, produces a difference frequency in the 7-MHz range.

The Receiver Portion—The receiver portion of the unit starts with a 6BA6 remote-cutoff r-f amplifier (V_9) bandpass-coupled to a 6BE6 mixer (V_{10}) whose injection grid receives mixing voltage from the common 6AU6 vfo (V_7) via the buffer stage (V_8). The 6EA8 buffer functions as a premixer for the vfo on 40 meters when the cathode of the triode section is grounded to activate the 21.5-MHz crystal oscillator.

The intermediate-frequency output of the 6BE6 receiver mixer is 9 MHz and the i-f signal is link-coupled via L_6 to the input of the 9-MHz crystal filter (FL_1). A matching transformer couples the low output impedance of the filter to the grid circuit of the common i-f amplifier (V_3). The received signal is capacitively coupled from this

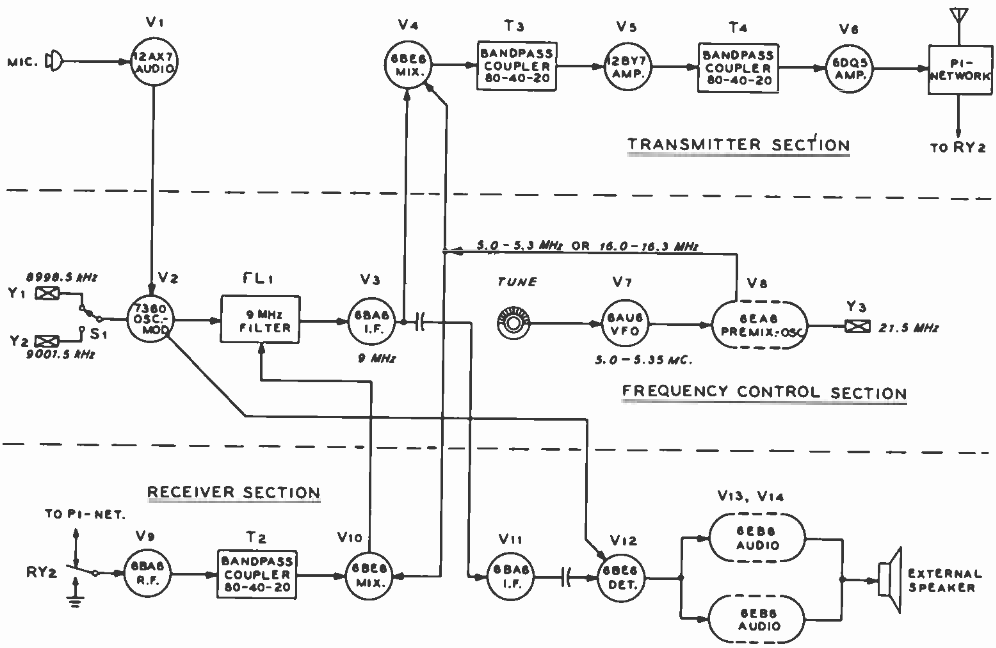


Figure 26

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF TRANSCEIVER

Frequency-control section of unit is common to both receiver and transmitter sections. Beam-deflection type 7360 serves as carrier oscillator and modulator, followed by 9-MHz crystal sideband filter and i-f amplifier stage. Variable-frequency oscillator and mixing oscillator for 7-MHz operation are also common to both sections of transceiver. Transmitter section comprises microphone amplifier and transmitter mixer followed by two linear amplifier stages. Receiver section consists of r-f amplifier and mixer followed by additional i-f stage, product detector, and audio amplifier. Simple push-to-talk circuit switches configuration from transmit to receive.

stage to a second 6BA6 receiver i-f amplifier (V_{11}) whose output circuitry is capacitively coupled to a 6BE6 product detector (V_{12}). Oscillator injection for SSB reception is from either of the two sideband crystals in the grid circuit of the 7360 carrier oscillator-balanced modulator (V_2) which is common to receive and transmit sections. Collector plate voltage is removed from the 7360 during reception by relay RY_1C but the oscillator section always functions since deflector and screen voltage is applied in either mode.

The 6BE6 product detector (V_{12}) may be switched to function as a plate detector for reception of a-m signals (S_3ABC). This changeover requires disabling the 7360 carrier oscillator, but since this oscillator is required for transmitting, the a-m changeover switch is routed through the main changeover relay (RY_1B) so voltage is applied to the carrier oscillator when transmitting, regardless of the setting of the SSB/a-m switch (S_3).

Mobile operation requires a receiver having a reserve of audio power and the audio section is designed to meet this requirement. Two 6EB8 triode-pentode tubes (V_{13}, V_{14}) are employed, with the pentode sections used as a push-pull audio stage. One triode section of the first 6EB8 is used as an audio phase inverter and the second triode is used as the driving amplifier for the phase inverter. The two dual-purpose tubes take up no more space than the usual two-tube amplifier stages but produce nearly 5 watts of high-quality audio. The speaker is not incorporated in the transceiver, since use of the speaker in the auto radio is contemplated. For home use, an auxiliary speaker is incorporated in the 115-volt a-c power unit.

The Transmitter Portion—The transmitter portion of the unit starts with a 12AX7 two-stage speech amplifier (V_1) driving a deflection plate of the 7360 carrier oscillator—balanced modulator (V_2). When transmitting, voltage is applied to the collector plates of the 7360 via relay RY_1C and the carrier is generated by the triode section of the tube functioning as a crystal oscillator. Choice of upper or lower sideband is made by proper crystal selection by means of sideband-selector switch S_1. The balanced-modulator plate circuit of the 7360 is link-coupled to the 9-MHz filter for rejection of the unwanted sideband and passage of the desired sideband to the common 6BA6 i-f amplifier (V_3). The sideband signal is then transformer-coupled to the 6BE6 transmitter mixer (V_4). This mixer stage receives its mixing voltage from the vfo and buffer premixer stages (V_7, V_8) in the same manner as the receiver. Output of the 6BE6 transmitter mixer is at either 80, 40, or 20 meters and is bandpass-coupled on the desired band to a 12BY7 amplifier-driver (V_5). This stage, in turn, is bandpass-coupled to a neutralized 6DQ5 (V_6) serving as a class-AB_1 linear amplifier. The final tank circuit of the amplifier is a pi-network configuration providing good harmonic attenuation and ease of adjustment.

Transceiver Construction Transceiver construction is straightforward and should be no problem for the advanced amateur. The vfo is built as a separate unit and may be tested and aligned before it is installed in the transceiver. The receiver portion of the unit should be wired and tested before the various transmitter stages are completed. The transceiver is constructed on a 10″ × 12″ × 3″ steel chassis. Layout of the major components and shield partitions are observed in the photographs and drawings. The 6DQ5 amplifier tube socket is recessed so that panel height is only 6½″. Standard parts are used throughout with the exception of the vfo tuning capacitor. The vfo is built as a unit on the frame of a worm-gear driven capacitor removed from the amplifier stage of a surplus SCR-274N/ARC-5 transmitter. Only the worm gear and frame assembly are used and the original capacitor plates are removed (figure 28). A double bearing 140-pf receiving-type variable capacitor is installed in the frame in place of the original capacitor assembly, slipping the spring-loaded drive gear over the shaft of the new capacitor so that it engages the worm gear as did the rotor of the original capacitor. The free space inside the framework is used to mount the various components of the vfo as shown in the photograph. An aluminum plate is bolted to the back frame to support the tube socket (V_7) and an L-shaped shield is bolted over the top and end of the frame to inclose the assembly.

A circular dial cut from 1/16-inch plastic or *plexiglas* is placed on the large gear in lieu of the original metal dial. The new dial is spray-painted white on the front and calibration marks are lettered with India ink. The complete vfo is bolted to a base plate of ⅛″ thick aluminum, slightly larger in area than the capacitor framework. The completed assembly is then bolted to the transceiver chassis with the center of the dial at the center line of the chassis. The plastic dial will extend below the front apron of the chassis, requiring a slight amount of clearance so that it does not rub. The panel is spaced away from the chassis apron by the lock washers and nuts that fasten the various controls, allowing clearance for the dial. The panel is secured in place with a second nut on each control. The upper edge of the panel and the rear lip of the chassis are bolted to the wrap-around cabinet to provide a rigid structure immune to vibration.

Component Layout—Most of the major components are mounted atop the chassis as shown in figures 29 and 30. The antenna receptacle (J_3), power plug (P_1) and jack for the external speaker (J_2) are placed on the rear apron of the chassis and all other major controls are mounted on the front panel with the exception of the phase-balance capacitor (C_1) and voltage-balance potentiometer (R_2) which are placed on the chassis to the rear of the 7360 tube socket. These controls need be adjusted only in the

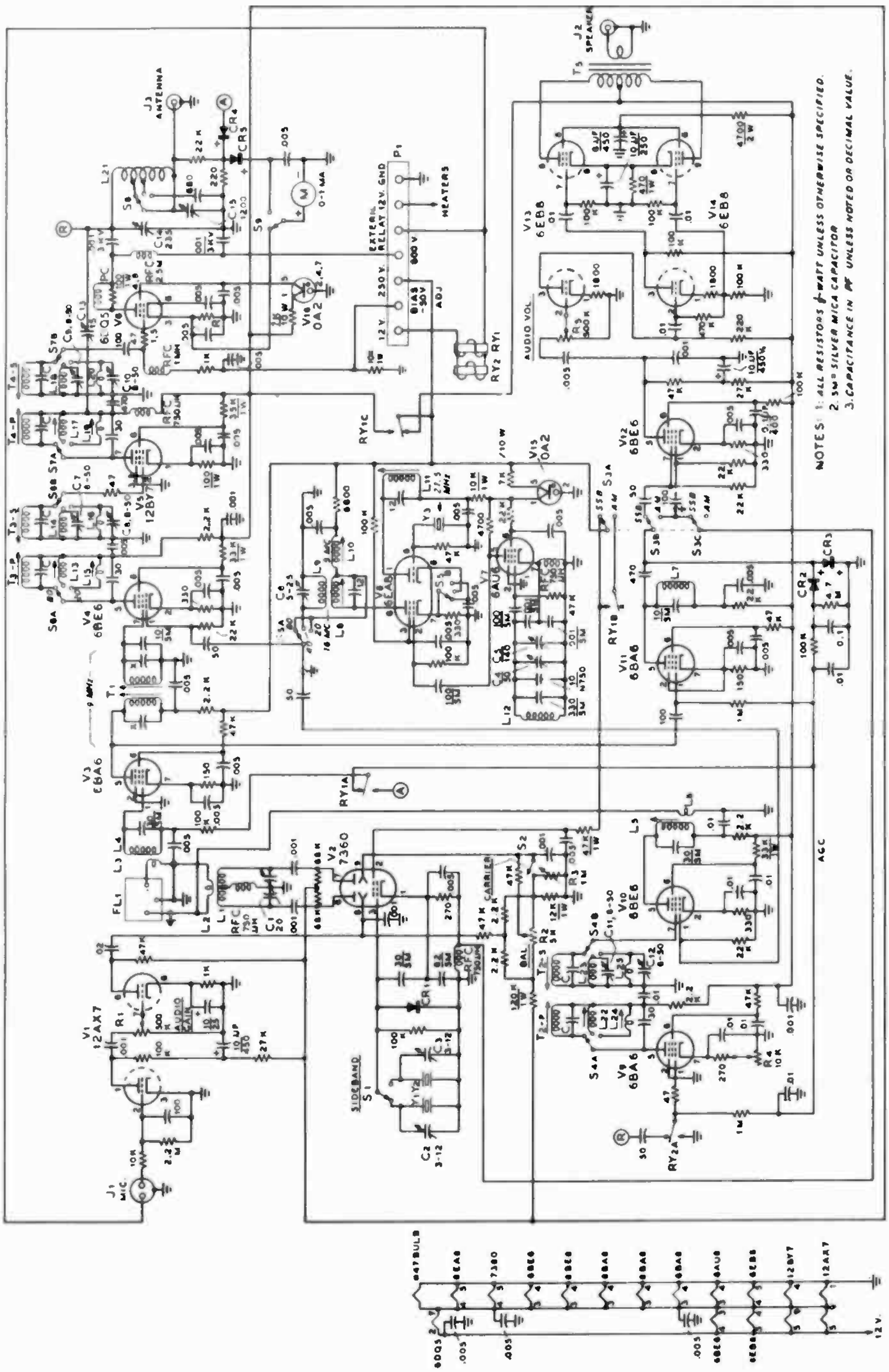


Figure 27

SCHEMATIC OF TRANSCEIVER

PARTS LIST FOR FIGURE 27

C_1—20-pf differential capacitor (E. F. Johnson 160-311)
C_2, C_3—12-pf ceramic variable (Centralab CRL-827)
C_4—50-pf (Hammarlund MAPC)
C_5—140-pf (Hammarlund MC-140M)
C_6—25-pf ceramic variable (Centralab CRL-827)
C_7 thru C_{12}—50-pf ceramic variable (Centralab CRL-827)
C_{13}—15-pf (Hammarlund MAPC).
C_{14}—235-pf (Bud 1859)
C_{15}—1200-pf, 3-gang broadcast-type capacitor (J. W. Miller 2113)
CR_1 thru CR_5—Diode, 1N34 or equivalent
FL_1—9-MHz crystal sideband filter (McCoy SSB-9, McCoy Electronics, Mt. Holly Springs, Pa.)
M—0-1 d-c milliammeter, 1¾" square (Cal-Rad, or equiv.).
PC—Parasitic choke. 7 turns #18e. wire on 100-ohm, 1-watt composition resistor
P_1—8-contact chassis-mounting plug (Cinch-Jones P-308AB)
R_1—1-megohm potentiometer with switch S_2 attached
R—Meter shunt for 300-ma range. Approx. 10" #32 copper wire wound on 47-ohm, ½-watt resistor placed at cathode terminal of 6DQ5
RFC—2.5-mH, 300-ma. (National R-300U)
RY_1—3PDT relay, 12-volt d-c coil (Potter-Brumfield KM-14D or equiv.)
RY_2—DPDT relay, 12-volt d-c coil (Potter-Brumfield KM-11D or equiv.)
S_3 A, B, C—3-pole, 2-position wafer switch (Centralab CRL PA1007)
S_4A, B; S_5A, B; S_6A, B; S_7A, B; S_8—2-pole ceramic wafer sections (Centralab PA-2 each, ganged on Centralab PA-301 index assembly)
T_1—Transformer, 10.7-MHz TV i-f type, (J. W. Miller 1463). (x indicates internal component)
T_2, T_3, T_4—Transformer, 4.5-MHz TV interstage type (J. W. Miller 6270). (c indicates internal component)
T_5—Universal output transformer, 10K plate-to-plate (Stancor A-3823)
Y_1—8898.5-kHz crystal (furnished with FL_1)
Y_2—9001.5-kHz crystal (furnished with FL_1)
Y_3—21.50-MHz crystal (International Crystal Co. FA-5)

initial alignment and ordinarily require no further attention.

The main bandswitch runs down the center line of the under-chassis area with wafer sections S_{1-7} (inclusive) bolted individually to the small partitions that act as interstage shields. Switch wafer S_8 for the 6DQ5 amplifier plate tank coil is mounted in the amplifier compartment on the rear apron of the chassis below tank coil L_{21}, with the connecting wires from the coil brought below deck through an oblong hole in the chassis. The shaft of this switch is ganged to the main bandswitch shaft by means of a link-and-arm arrangement shown in figure 31. Two small lever arms are made by taking apart a flexible shaft coupler. One arm is slipped over the main bandswitch shaft at the point where it enters the under-chassis shield plate behind the main panel, and the second arm is attached to the fiber extension shaft driving the amplifier switch wafer (S_8) mounted on the rear apron of the chassis. The two lever arms are interconnected by a narrow strip of aluminum having a hole at each end for small bolts to secure it to the two lever arms. Panel bushings in the shield plate act as bearings for the switch shafts.

The bandpass coils are constructed as indicated in the coil table (figure 32) with the exception of the coils for the 80 meter band. These are ready-made 4.5-MHz TV replacement interstage transformers (T_2, T_3, and T_4). They are used without alteration and provide the desired bandpass effect by virtue of stagger-tuning between 3.8 and 4.0 MHz.

A great deal of the wiring may be done before the shield partitions or switch assemblies are put in place. The switch wafers are installed one at a time, beginning with the receiver segment at the rear of the chassis. The side and front shield plates are made of thin aluminum and are installed last, being bolted to each other, the switch partitions, and the chassis to make a rigid assembly (figure 33).

Terminal boards are used for the small components of the balanced modulator and audio systems. Other small components are mounted to tube-socket terminals and tie-point terminal strips.

Testing and Alignment The transceiver will operate with any power supply capable of delivering between 500 and 800 volts at an intermittent load of 250 milliamperes for the final amplifier, and 250 volts at 125 milliamperes for the receiver and exciter sections. Bias requirement is −50 volts at 5 milliamperes (adjustable).

For fixed-station use and bench alignment, a voltage-doubler power supply using

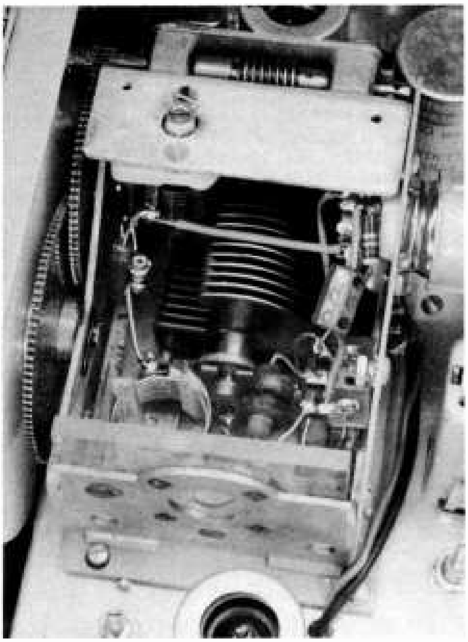


Figure 28

CLOSEUP OF TRANSCEIVER OSCILLATOR

Stable vfo for triband transceiver is made from frame of SCR-274N capacitor. Capacitor plates are removed and 140-pf capacitor substituted. A small bracket bolted to the frame supports padding capacitor C_4. Airwound vfo coil is in foreground, cemented to a 1/4-inch thick block of polystyrene which is bolted to capacitor frame. Oscillator tube socket is mounted on side of capacitor and tie point behind it supports cathode r-f choke and various mica capacitors. Connections to vfo unit are terminated at lug strip mounted below the tube socket.

a TV replacement transformer works very well. Two 6.3-volt windings in series will provide filament voltage and this may be rectified to provide direct current to operate the relays. A −50 volt bias supply for the final amplifier stage is also required.

Alignment of VFO and premixer—The first step in the alignment procedure is to adjust the main vfo to tune the range of 5.0 to 5.35 MHz. Since the vfo is made as a separate assembly, it may be aligned and tested before installation on the chassis by applying voltage to the various terminals and monitoring the frequency in a well-calibrated receiver capable of tuning the operating range of the oscillator. A BC-221 frequency meter will aid in this effort. The 21.5-MHz crystal oscillator (V_8) and premixer stage can be adjusted with a vacuum-tube voltmeter and r-f probe placed at the switch arm of S_5 A. With the bandswitch in the 80- or 20-meter position, a voltage will be observed at this point and the slug of coil L_{10} adjusted for maximum indication. This coil is broadly resonant in the 5-MHz region and is tuned for an output reading of not over 2 volts r.m.s.

With the bandswitch in the 40-meter position, the cathode of the triode section of the 6EA8 premixer is connected to the cathode of the pentode section, energizing the crystal-oscillator stage and changing the circuit to a cathode-coupled mixer. The slug in the crystal-oscillator coil (L_{11}) is adjusted for maximum r-f voltage at the grid of the triode section of V_8. The premixer coils (L_8 and L_9) are tuned for maximum r-f voltage at the arm of switch S_5A. The voltage measured at this point is the 16-MHz product of the crystal and vfo frequencies.

Receiver I-F and 80-meter Alignment—The receiver i-f amplifier is aligned by disabling the vfo and injecting a 9-MHz signal at the input grid (pin #7) of the 6BE6 receiver mixer (V_{10}). The i-f coils (L_1, L_5, L_7) and the primary *only* of transformer T_1 are tuned for maximum signal response using avc voltage as indication of resonance. With the bandswitch in the 80-meter position and the vfo functioning, a 4.0-MHz signal is injected at the antenna receptacle and the primary of r-f transformer T_2 tuned for maximum signal. This transformer is stagger-tuned by peaking the secondary at 3.8 MHz and checking at several points in between where a further slight adjustment of the slugs should result in a fairly flat response over the desired 200-kHz range. It will be noted that the final amplifier tank adjustment (which is the input circuit when receiving) must be peaked slightly when tuning from one end to the other of the 200-kHz range.

Receiver Alignment, 40 and 20 Meters—The tuning of the 40- and 20-meter band-pass r-f coils is done in a different manner. The grid coils (L_{23}, L_{25}) are temporarily unsoldered from the bandswitch (S_1B) to

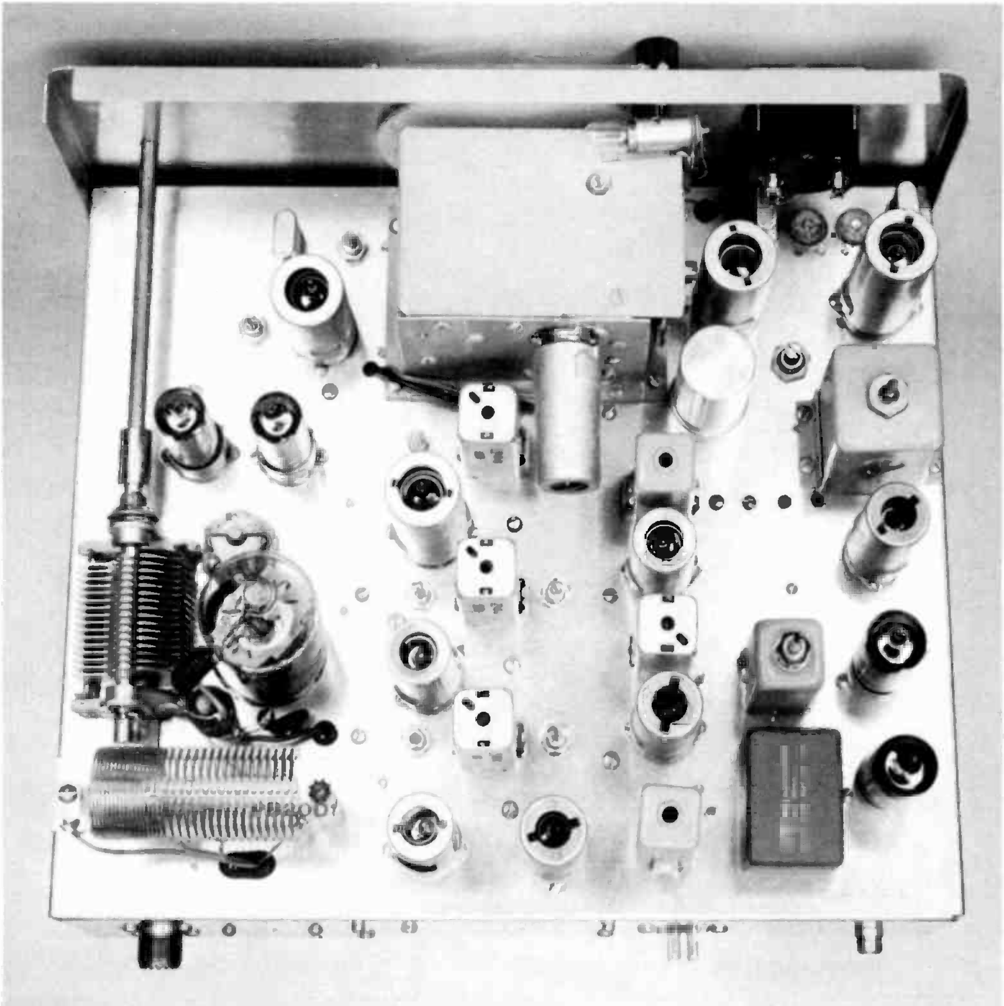


Figure 29

TOP VIEW OF TRIBAND TRANSCEIVER

Identification of various components may be done with comparison with chassis layout drawing (figure 30). Variable frequency oscillator is centered behind panel which is spaced away from chassis to allow clearance for circular dial. Pilot lamp is atop oscillator compartment, with oscillator padding capacitor (C_1) adjustable from top of compartment. Carrier crystals and their padding capacitors (C_2-C_3) are visible below panel meter at right. Across the rear chassis apron are (l. to r.): Antenna coaxial receptacle (J_3), power receptacle (P_1) and speaker jack (J_2).

remove them from the active circuit and a grid-dip oscillator is used to set the frequency of the primary circuits (L_{22}, L_{21}) by adjustment of the slugs. The 40-meter plate coil is adjusted to 7.3 MHz and the 20-meter plate coil to 14.35 MHz. The grid coils are then resoldered to the bandswitch terminals and the 6BA6 r-f amplifier tube (V_8) is removed from its socket. This raises the resonant frequency of the primary windings so they will not affect the adjustment of the grid circuitry. The grid coils are

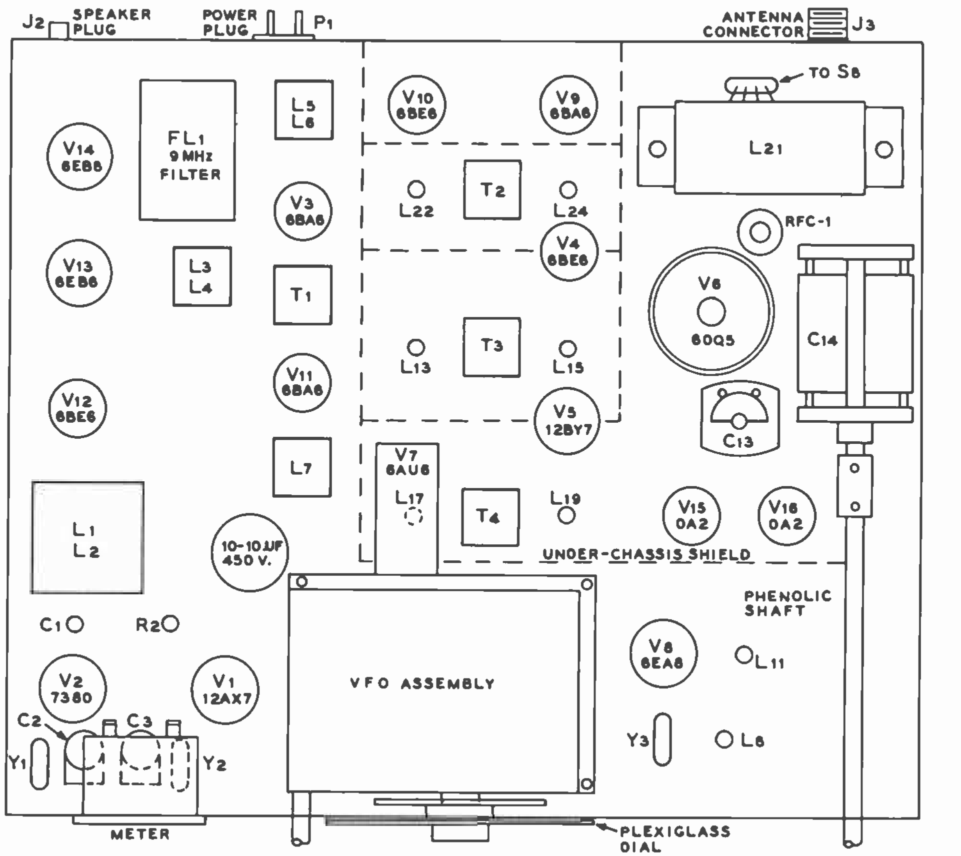


Figure 30

PLACEMENT OF MAJOR COMPONENTS ON TRANSCEIVER CHASSIS

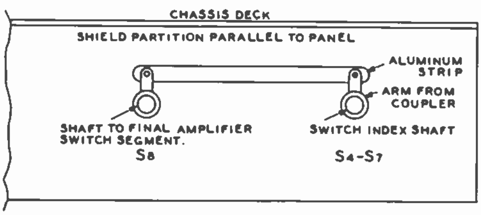


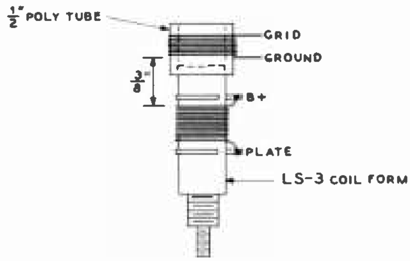
Figure 31

BANDSWITCH ARM DETAIL

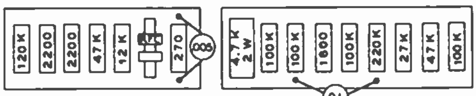
then dipped to 7.0 and 14.0 MHz. With the r-f tube back in its socket, the transceiver can be turned on and checked for receiver operation on each band.

Transmitter Alignment Alignment of the transmitter section is done with the high voltage disconnected and with screen voltage removed from the 6DQ5 amplifier. If the OA2 screen-regulator tube is wired so that the dropping resistor goes to pin #1 and the screen lead to pin #5, the screen voltage will be disconnected by removing the OA2 from its socket, since the OA2 has an internal jumper between these pins.

Much of the transmitter alignment is completed once the receiver section has been adjusted. The 7360 balanced-modulator plate coil (L_1) is tuned first, placing the r-f probe of the v.t.v.m. at the grid (pin



BANDPASS COIL



COMPONENTS FOR BALANCED MODULATOR CIRCUIT.

COMPONENTS FOR AUDIO AND PRODUCT DETECTOR CIRCUIT.

TERMINAL BOARD LAYOUT

Figure 32

COIL TABLE FOR TRANSCEIVER

L_1—12 bifilar turns (24 in all) #24 enamel wire, closewound on slug-tuned form, ½" diam. (National XR-50). Tune to 9 MHz

L_2—4 turns #24 hookup wire around center of L_1

L_3—4 turns #24 hookup wire on "cold" end of L_4

L_4, L_5, L_7—30 turns #30 enamel closewound on 5/16" diameter form. Tune to 9 MHz

L_6—4 turns #24 hookup wire on "cold" end of L_5

L_8—12 turns #24 enamel closewound on ⅜" diam. slug-tuned form (CTC-LS3 or equiv.). Tune to 16 MHz

L_9—8 turns #24 enamel wire closewound on ⅜" length of ½" diam. polystyrene tubing slipped over top end of coil L_8 to make premixer transformer. Tune to 16 MHz

L_{10}—Ferrite rod loop-antenna coil ("loopstick") with turns removed to resonate to 5MHz (J. W. Miller 6300)

L_{11}—15 turns #24 enamel wire closewound on ⅜" diam. slug-tuned form (CTC-LS3). Tune to 21.5 MHz

L_{12}—7½ turns #20, ¾" diam., ¾" long (B & W 3011). Tunes 5.0 to 5.35 MHz

L_{13}, L_{17}, L_{22}—30 turns #30 enamel wire closewound on ⅜" diam. slug-tuned form (CTC-LS3). Tune to 7 MHz

L_{14}, L_{18}, L_{23}—25 turns #30 enamel wire closewound on ⅜" length of ½" diam. polystyrene tubing cemented to top of L_{13}, L_{17}, L_{22} to make bandpass transformer (see sketch). Tune to 7 MHz

L_{15}, L_{19}, L_{24}—14 turns #28 enamel wire closewound on ⅜" diam. slug-tuned form (CTC-LS3). Tune to 14 MHz

L_{16}, L_{20}, L_{25}—12 turns #28 enamel closewound on ⅜" length of ½" diam. polystyrene tubing cemented to top of L_{15}, L_{19}, L_{24} to make bandpass transformer. Tune to 14 MHz

L_{21}—Final amplifier tank coil. 32 turns #16 wire, with 16 turns spaced twice wire diameter; 16 turns spaced wire diameter Coil is 1" diam., 2½" long, tapped at 10 and 18 turns from plate end. (Air-Dux 820-D10).

Note: L_4, L_5 and L_7 are mounted in ¾" square shield cans similar to transformer T_1.

#7) of the 6BE6 transmitting mixer (V_4) to obtain an r-f voltage reading. The transmitter circuitry is energized by pressing the push-to-talk switch on the microphone (with the microphone gain control R_1 turned down). The carrier control (R_3) is turned on and advanced to provide carrier injection until a reading is obtained on the v.t.v.m. The slug of coil L_1 is adjusted for maximum r-f indication. The phase-balance capacitor (C_1) should be set for equal capacitance and the voltage-balance potentiometer (R_2) set near the center of rotation. When the carrier control is turned off, the indicated r-f voltage will drop and balance potentiometer R_2 should be adjusted for a minimum r-f reading. This is the adjustment for carrier suppression and at this time the phase-balance capacitor should be adjusted slightly to achieve lowest possible r-f reading. Both controls affect carrier suppression and are slightly interlocking and should be adjusted in sequence for lowest reading on the v.t.v.m. The whole process may be monitored with a receiver used as an r-f probe with the antenna lead placed near the socket of the 6BE6 transmitter mixer tube (V_4).

Carrier Oscillator Adjustment—Capacitors C_1 and C_2 across the upper- and lower-sideband crystals are used to trim the crystal frequencies for proper positioning of the carrier on the slope of the sideband filter. To realize the rated sideband rejection of 40 decibels, the carrier oscillator should be placed 1500 Hz above or below the 9-MHz center frequency of the filter. Carrier suppression is also affected by proper positioning of the carrier frequency on the filter slope. When making the frequency adjustments, carrier suppression should be checked on both upper-and lower-sideband positions. The minimum voltage reading with carrier turned off should be very nearly the same with either crystal. Final adjustment may be made with voice modulation, striving for good audio quality on either sideband as monitored in a nearby receiver.

Figure 33

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF TRANSCEIVER

Placement of shield partitions about tuned circuits may be seen at right side of chassis. Trimming capacitors for 40- and 20-meter circuits are mounted on partitions as are switch decks. First switch segment behind front panel is S_5. The three-gang antenna loading capacitor is bolted to the side apron of the chassis near antenna receptacle and tank switch wafer S_8. The opposite side apron is used to mount the audio output transformer (T_5) and two terminal boards that support most of the resistors and capacitors in the audio and balanced modulator circuits. Terminal strips and tie points are used to mount small components securely to resist vibration encountered in mobile work. The antenna relay (RY_2) is mounted on the rear apron above the 6BE6 (V_{10}) socket. The voltage changeover relay RY_1 is mounted in the center of the chassis area between the i-f amplifier tubes and the audio tubes.

Bandpass Adjustment—The bandpass circuits in the linear amplifier stages of the transmitter are aligned in the same manner as the receiver circuits using carrier injection from either sideband crystal. The 40- and 20-meter coils are checked with a grid-dip oscillator as before, but the 80-meter transformers (T_3, T_4) as well as the secondary of T_1, are adjusted with voltage applied to the transmitter and the transformer slugs tuned for uniform 6DQ5 drive-voltage reading over the 200-kHz tuning range with the r-f probe placed at the grid of the 6DQ5. A maximum of 15 to 20 volts rms can be obtained with full carrier injection. Under final operating conditions, the 40- and 20-meter coils may require some slight adjustment for uniform drive across these bands.

Amplifier Neutralization—The last step is to neutralize the final amplifier stage.

CHART 1

TUBE SOCKET VOLTAGE CHART

TUBE	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V_1	100	−2	0	F	F	180	−0.5	1	—
V_2	3	150	—	F	F	220	220	18	18
V_3	—	0	F	F	220	100	1.8	—	—
V_4	—	2	F	F	240	75	0	—	—
V_5	2	—	0	F	F	F	240	110	0
V_6	−50	F	—	150	−50	—	F	150	—
V_8	100	—	125	F	F	200	3	3	—
V_9	—	0	F	F	220	100	1.8	—	—
V_{10}	—	2.5	F	F	225	80	0	—	—
V_{11}	—	1.8	F	F	220	100	1.8	—	—
V_{12}	—	0.8	F	F	200	35	0.8	—	—
V_{13}	1	—	100	F	F	3	—	180	240
V_{14}	70	—	175	F	F	3	—	180	240

NOTES:

Readings taken with 20,000 ohms-per-volt meter and may vary 10%.
Voltages—0 on pins 6, 7, 8, 9, of V_2 on receive.
Voltage−120 on pin 2 of V_2 on receive.
R-f gain and audio gain fully advanced.

POWER-SUPPLY REQUIREMENTS

Low voltage—250 volts at 115 ma receive
80 ma xmit
Bias——50 volts d.c. 5 ma

High voltage—600 to 800 volts at 300 ma, xmit only
Filaments—12.6 volts a.c. or d.c. at 4 A
Relay—12 V.D.C. 80 ma, xmit only

With plate and screen voltage removed and grid drive applied to the 6DQ5, neutralization is accomplished by placing the r-f probe at the antenna receptacle and adjusting neutralizing capacitor C_{13} for minimum r-f indication when the 6DQ5 tank circuit is tuned to resonance.

Final Amplifier Adjustment—Amplifier bias is adjusted to provide 50 ma of resting current. The transceiver should be coupled to a dummy load and loading and grid drive (carrier insertion) adjusted to provide the desired input level.

Antenna loading requires that a fixed ratio of grid drive to plate-load impedance be achieved. Maximum drive level is fixed and loading is accomplished at this level and may be increased until flat-topping is first observed on a monitor oscilloscope. Advantage is taken of the high peak-to-average-power ratio in the human voice, and up to 200 watts peak input may be run to the 6DQ5 without overheating the tube. Carrier injection and tune-up conditions, on the other hand, impose maximum dissipation conditions on the tube and tune-up operation at full input should be limited to periods of 20 seconds or less in one minute as tube dissipation runs near 65 watts or so under these conditions. With the average voice, peak plate-current indication on the meter will run below 50 percent of the full carrier injection plate current, even taking into account the alc action of this circuit. Thus, under intermittent carrier tune-up at 800 volts plate potential, maximum plate current may run as high as 275 to 300 milliamperes, with indicated voice peaks running about 125 to 175 milliamperes meter reading. Excessive peak plate current readings under voice conditions indicate flat-topping and consequent distortion of the signal.

26-6 A 432 MHz Low Noise Converter System

The vhf converter system described in this section enables the builder to construct a low noise 432-MHz converter in easy stages. The "building-block" technique makes sure that each stage is working properly and permits circuit changes to be made on an experimental basis without dismantling the whole converter. As an example, the mixer and local-oscillator stages may be built first and used for local point-to-point work. At a later stage, the low noise r-f and i-f amplifiers may be added to achieve the ultimate in low-noise reception short of a parametric amplifier.

Tried and proven in 432-MHz moonbounce communication, this converter system is a worthy addition to any serious vhf station.

System Description The 432-MHz converter is built in separate stages and converts a 432-MHz signal to 29 MHz where it may be tuned in on a good communications receiver serving as a tunable i-f strip. The converter employs a crystal-controlled local-oscillator chain, and the r-f circuits require no critical tuning after initial adjustments are made. The converter is a true "hybrid" type since it employs a transistor r-f stage, a diode mixer, a nuvistor i-f amplifier, and conventional miniature tubes in the local-oscillator/frequency-multiplier chain. A noise figure of about 3.5 decibels is achieved with this circuitrv. Modular construction is used, with each stage contained in its individual aluminum box. This technique provides excellent circuit isolation between stages, and allows the builder to check out one stage at a time before going on to the next. Copper-clad phenolic circuit board is used to achieve a good r-f ground in each unit, in addition to simplifying construction. The small aluminum boxes housing the units may be assembled on a chassis or rack panel at the operator's convenience. A power supply is not shown, but the power requirement for each stage is given. The block diagram of figure 34 shows the manner in which the units are interconnected.

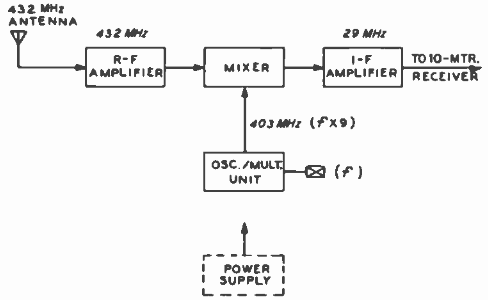


Figure 34

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF 432-MHz CONVERTER SYSTEM

The 432-MHz low-noise converter is built in four separate packages: the r-f amplifier, the mixer, the i-f amplifier and the oscillator multiplier (LO) unit. Each unit is a separate entity and may be built and tested by itself. If the mixer and LO units are built first, the converter may be used for local reception while the other units are being built. Simple and foolproof, this inexpensive converter system provides the near ultimate in 432-MHz reception.

Low Noise R-F Amplifier for 432 MHz An r-f amplifier for serious 432-MHz work may be built around modern transistors to provide moderate gain at a good noise figure. This amplifier package employs a 2N3478 NPN transistor that sells for about two dollars or less. Used in a common-emitter circuit, the transistor provides about 9 decibels gain with a typical noise figure of about 3.5 decibels. The converter achieves maximum rejection to unwanted signals by the use of two tuned input circuits and a third tuned output circuit. No difficulty has been experienced with interference from local TV or f-m stations as sometimes is the case when an untuned input circuit is used. Input and output circuits are properly adjusted to provide a good match to coaxial lines. Power required to operate the unit is 9 volts at 2 ma. Two of these r-f stages are required to completely override the noise figure of a diode mixer stage, but use of one unit will improve reception to a marked degree.

R-F Amplifier Circuit The 2N3478 is used in an unneutralized, common-emitter configuration. Two tuned circuits (C_1-L_1 and C_3-L_2) are used in the

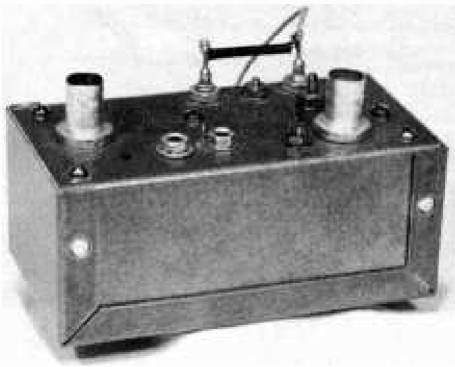


Figure 35

THE 432-MHz TRANSISTOR R-F AMPLIFIER

The simple r-f amplifier is inclosed in a ready-made aluminum box. The 9-volt power lead and coaxial connectors are mounted on the top of the box. Piston-style trimming capacitors are adjusted from the top. Once tuned, the r-f amplifier may be placed in a remote location, if desired.

base circuit. The tuned circuits are mounted so as to be undercoupled. The degree of coupling is varied by changing the value of coupling capacitor C_2, which should be between 2 and 3 pf. A small mica or ceramic capacitor may be used, or a capacitor made of short lengths of plastic-covered wire twisted together for about one inch is satisfactory. Input coil L_1 is tapped for direct connection to a 52-ohm coaxial line and coil L_2 is tapped for proper match to the low-impedance transistor base. The first input circuit is isolated for d.c.

Inductors L_1, L_2, and L_3 are "hair-pin" loops made of ¼-inch wide thin "flashing" copper. This configuration provides excellent Q and is easy to form with heavy scissors. Base bias is provided by a divider from the 9-volt supply, and emitter bias is also provided. The emitter bias resistor is bypassed with a low-inductance button-mica capacitor. To ensure low-inductance leads, the transistor is mounted without a socket directly on the shield isolating the input and output circuits. Replacement or changing transistors may be easily done by mounting each transistor on a separate shield and by changing the shields. The output circuit,

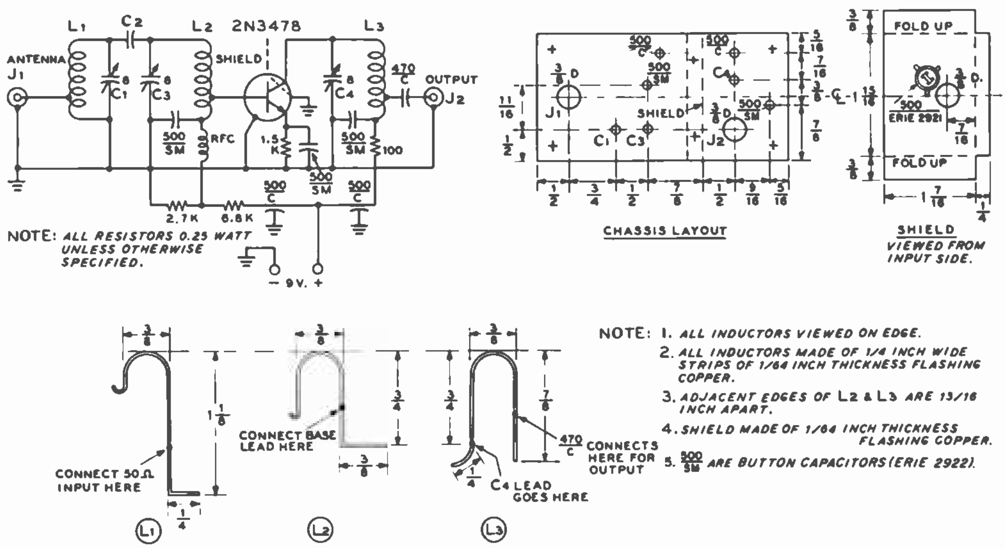


Figure 36

SCHEMATIC AND LAYOUT FOR 432-MHz R-F AMPLIFIER

C_1, C_3, C_4—0.5- to 8-pf piston trimmer capacitor. JFD PC35-HO80 or equiv.
C_2—3-pf ceramic capacitor. (see text)
RFC—7 turns #22 e., ⅛-inch long (Ohmite Z-460)
J_1, J_2—BNC connector, chassis mounting. UG-657/U or equiv.
Box—4" x 2⅛" x 1⅝" (Bud 3002A)

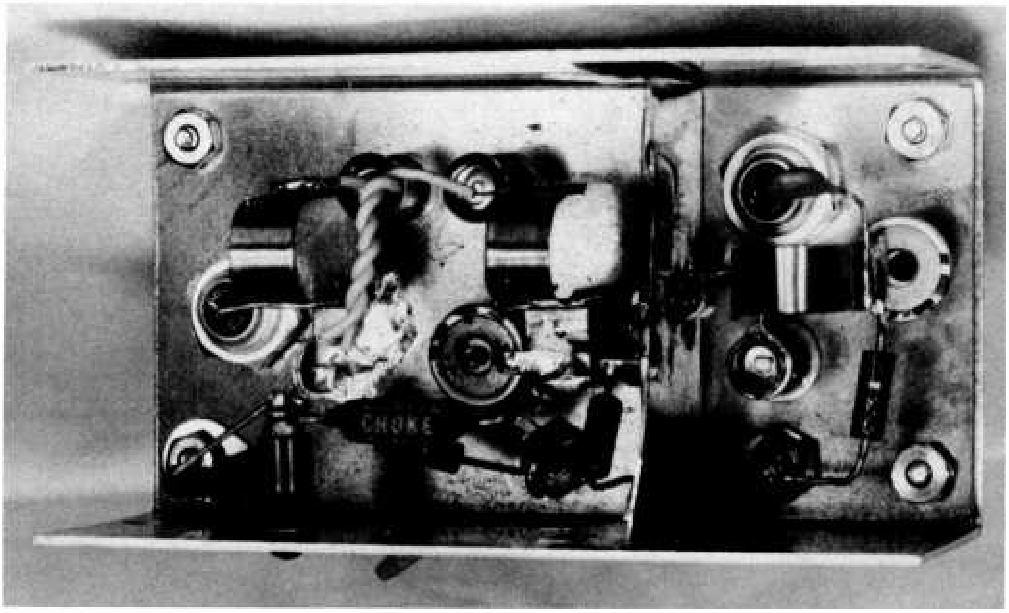


Figure 37

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF 432-MHz R-F AMPLIFIER

Placement of the larger components on the copper-plated phenolic circuit board may be seen. The two input circuits are at the left, with the coupling capacitor (C_2) made of lengths of twisted wire between them. The intrastage shield and transistor are at center, with the output circuit at the right. Phenolic board is bolted to aluminum box in the corners.

L_3-C_4, is coupled to the output receptacle through a blocking capacitor. Additional feedthrough capacitors are used to decouple power leads passing through the wall of the inclosure.

R-F Amplifier Construction The amplifier is built in an aluminum box measuring 4" × 2⅛" × 1⅝" (*Bud 3002-A*). A piece of copper-clad (one side) phenolic board (see figure 37) is mounted on the inside of the box, copper side towards the viewer, to provide a good r-f ground. All grounds are made to the copper foil. Small 4-40 screws in the corners of the board affix the board to the box and ground it to the box.

The first step is to drill the board and mount the coaxial connectors, followed by the feedthrough capacitors. The leads on piston capacitors C_1, C_3, and C_4 are trimmed to a length of 5/16 inch. Capacitor C_1 is mounted with the lead pointing toward the input end of the chassis and capacitor C_3 is mounted with the lead pointing toward the transistor shield. The lead of capacitor C_4 points toward receptacle J_2. Cut the inductors from thin copper (see illustration), shape them, and solder in place, starting with inductor L_1. An insulated standoff terminal is used to support the r-f choke and the two adjacent resistors. The intrastage shield is drilled for the transistor and mounting holes and mounted with lips facing the input end of the chassis. The emitter bypass capacitor is soldered on the input side of the shield near the transistor mounting hole. The mounting lugs of the capacitor serve as feet. The 2N3478 is finally mounted by carefully soldering the ground lead (shortest of the four) to the shield, with the transistor suspended upside down and centered in the hole. The *shield* lead is tinned at the point it solders to the metal plate. A heat sink must be used between the solder point and the transistor. Long-nose pliers are ef-

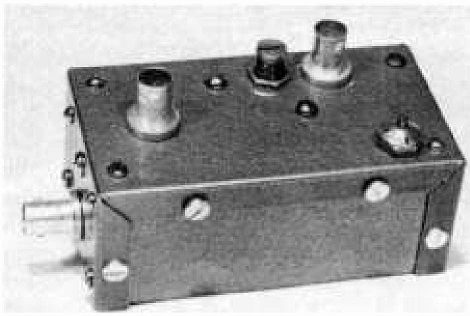


Figure 38

THE 432-MHz MIXER UNIT

This simple stripline mixer utilizes a 1N21-series crystal diode. On the top of the box are (l. to r.): input receptacle (J_1); Piston-style i-f tuning capacitor (C_2); i-f output receptacle (J_3). At the right front is the stripline tuning capacitor (C_1). The local-oscillator injection receptacle (J_2), is on the left end of the chassis.

fective as a heat sink, or an alligator clip may be used. Do the job quickly with a soldering gun or 15-watt iron. Once the shield is affixed in position, the *base* lead is carefully bent toward inductor L_2. If the lead is too short, solder a small tab on L_2 to take up the gap, and solder the base lead to the tab, using the heat sink. The *emitter* lead is carefully bent to make a short connection to the emitter capacitor mounted on the shield. Leave a slight bend in all transistor leads to avoid undue strain. The remaining components may now be soldered in place.

Adjusting the R-F Amplifier Set the three piston capacitors at midrange. Connect an antenna feedline to the input receptacle and couple the amplifier to the mixer stage via a short length of RG-58/U (52-ohm) coaxial line. Apply the 9-volt supply and, using a steady test signal on 432 MHz, adjust the input capacitors and the output capacitor for maximum signal. With receivers having a "scotch" S-meter (used as a tunable i-f) it may be easier to observe relative signal output by using an a-c voltmeter across the audio output of the receiver. The input tuning capacitor C_1 should be set to the maximum capacitance that will allow maximum signal. The perfectionist may wish to adjust the inductor taps to achieve optimum noise figure. A good coaxial relay with shorting contacts on the receive side should be used to protect the transistor from excessive r-f voltage during transmission periods.

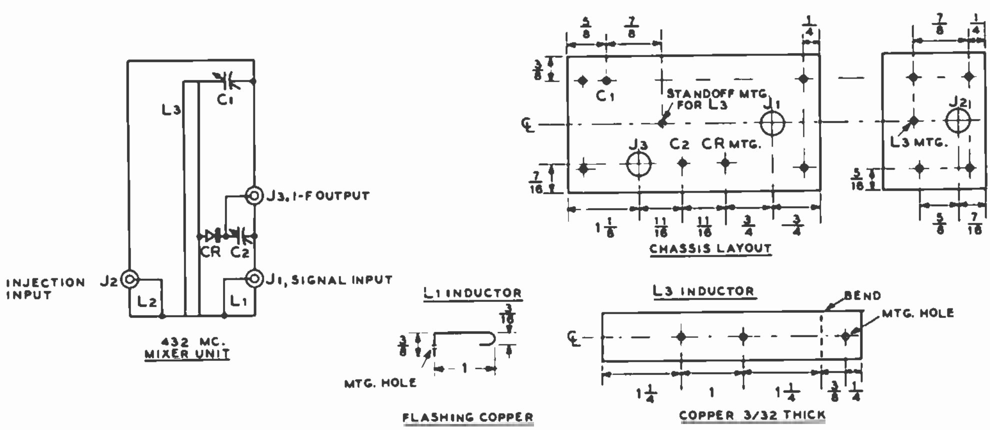


Figure 39

SCHEMATIC AND LAYOUT OF 432-MHz MIXER UNIT

C_1—0.5- to 5.0-pf piston trimmer capacitor (JFD).
C_2—1.0- to 20-pf piston trimmer capacitor (JFD). See text.
CR—Mixer diode, 1N21 series (see text).
J_1, J_2, J_3—BNC connector, chassis mounting. UG-657/U or equiv.
Box—4" × 2⅛" × 1⅝" (Bud 3002A).

Mixer Unit for 432 MHz The 432-MHz mixer unit (figure 38) consists of a simple quarter-wave stripline circuit built in a rectangular aluminum box. A 1N21-family diode is used as a mixer. An i-f output signal at 29-MHz is obtained from a 432-MHz received signal with the injection unit described later, but other intermediate frequencies may be easily obtained. Inductive coupling is used for both local-oscillator injection and signal output. The mixer is coupled to a low noise i-f amplifier through a short length of coaxial line as shown in the block diagram.

Circuit Description The 432-MHz stripline circuit consists of inductor L_3 resonated by capacitor C_1. Local-oscillator injection is inductively coupled to the stripline and an injection frequency of 403 MHz is used to produce a 29-MHz intermediate frequency. If the mixer is used without the benefit of the transistor r-f stage ahead of it, a 1N21F diode is suggested to achieve maximum sensitivity. The cheaper 1N21D or E, however, is adequate for most work and is entirely suitable when r-f stages are employed ahead of the mixer.

The i-f bypass capacitor (C_2) must be effective at 432 MHz and is shown as a piston type. It is used to resonate the link circuit between the mixer and the i-f amplifier, but it can be replaced with a low-inductance, fixed capacitor if the cost of the piston type is prohibitive. An inexpensive fixed capacitor may be built by sandwiching a thin piece of *teflon* or *polyethylene* between a 3/4" × 1/2" piece of copper plate, and securing it to the plated board with *nylon* screws.

Mixer Construction The mixer is built in an aluminum box measuring 4" × 2 1/8" × 1 5/8" (*Bud 3002A*). A piece of copper-clad (one side) phenolic board (figure 40) is mounted on the inside of the box, and a piece of the same material is fastened to the inside end of the box where

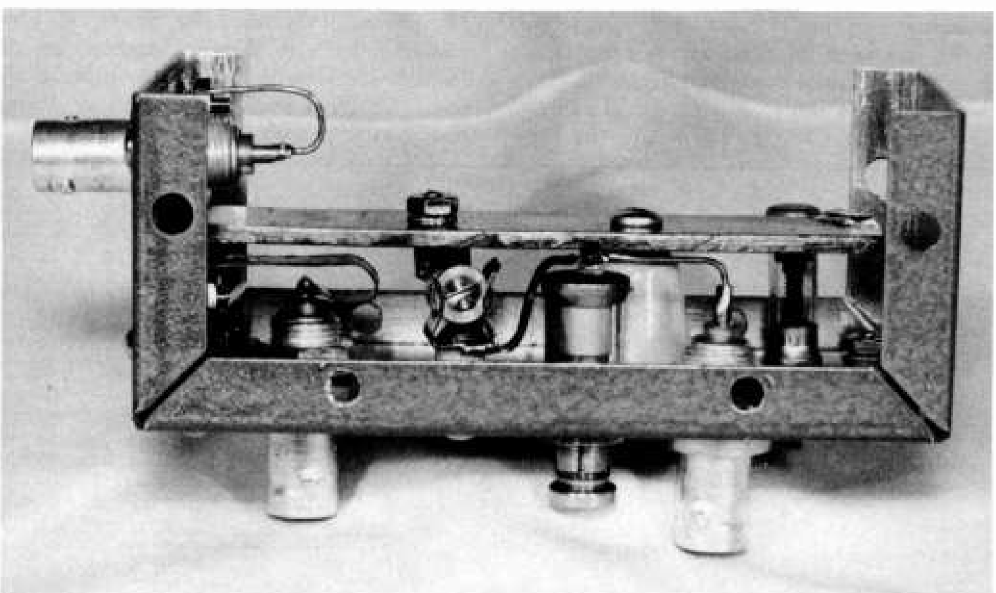


Figure 40

SIDE VIEW OF MIXER UNIT

The simple aluminum stripline is seen across the center of the chassis box. Receptacle J_2 and injection loop L_2 are at the upper left, with the signal input loop and receptacle J_1 immediately below the stripline. The fuse clip for the diode is near the center of the line, with the tuning capacitor (C_1), at the right. The i-f output receptacle (J_3) is in the foreground.

receptacle J_2 is placed. Small 4-40 screws are placed near the corners of the boards to fasten them in place, and the boards are soldered together where the two edges meet. The boards are removed from the box after this operation and the remaining holes drilled. A single 6-32 screw secures the ground end of inductors L_1 and L_3. The center pin of receptacle J_1 is cut short to allow clearance between inductor L_1 and the pin, as shown in the photograph. Spacing between L_1 and L_3 is about ⅛-inch. A ¼-inch high insulator with a fuse clip attached is used to support the base end of the mixer diode. A pin receptacle from an octal socket makes connection to the small end, and is soldered to a short, ¼-inch wide copper strap fastened to inductor L_3. This permits the diode to be easily changed with minimum effort. The local oscillator injection loop (L_2), should be as small as practical and still permit 0.5-ma diode current. The ground end of inductor L_2 is soldered to the copper board adjacent to the nearby BNC receptacle mounting nut. For maximum transfer of power from the local oscillator to the mixer diode the sum of the length of inductor L_2, the coaxial cable, and the output link of the injection unit should be a half wavelength (electrical) or multiple thereof at the injection frequency.

Figure 41

THE OSCILLATOR-MULTIPLIER UNIT

The LO features a varactor-controlled remote tuning circuit. Components are mounted on an inexpensive aluminum box. Atop the chassis (l. to r.) are: f × 1 output receptacle J_1, 12AT7 oscillator (with crystal behind it), tip jacks for alignment, and 6AK5 multiplier tube. Output receptacle J_2 is at far right. Tuning capacitors C_1, C_2, and C_3 are in the foreground. Output tuning capacitor C_4 is to the right of the 6AK5 tube.

When fastening the two halves of the aluminum box together, two additional #6 sheet-metal screws should be used on each side of the box to ensure good r-f contact between the halves.

Adjusting the Mixer Unit Connect the 432-MHz mixer unit to the oscillator/multiplier unit, the i-f system, and a suitable antenna. Set the i-f system to 29 MHz and turn on a nearby, stable 432-MHz test signal. Set capacitor C_2 at midrange. With the oscillator/multiplier circuits peaked, a diode current of about 0.5 ma should be achieved. Tune in the i-f signal and peak capacitors C_1 and C_2 for maximum observed signal.

Oscillator/Multiplier Unit for 432 MHz This local oscillator (LO) unit employs two tubes and a 3rd-overtone crystal in the 40- to 50-MHz range to provide injection voltage for a 432-MHz converter unit. By choosing the proper crystal frequency, an i-f output of 7, 29, or 50 MHz may be obtained for a 432-MHz input signal. An optional feature is *remote vernier tuning* of the local crystal oscillator (and thereby the received signal). This feature is extremely useful when tuning for weak DX signals and SSB stations. Filament power is 6.3 volts at 0.48 ampere and 150 volts d.c. (regulated) at 15 ma. The unit will deliver more than enough power to a diode mixer to develop better than 0.5 milliampere of diode current.

The LO Circuitry A 12AT7 double triode is used in a cathode oscillator/tripler circuit. A 44.777-MHz 3rd-overtone crystal is used when a 29-MHz i-f signal is desired for 432 MHz. The plate circuit of the first triode section is resonated at the overtone frequency (f). The plate circuit of the second triode section is tuned to the third harmonic (f_3), 134.331 MHz. Inductive coupling is used between this circuit and the following stage to minimize the transfer of undesired harmonics. Coils L_3 and L_4 are made from a single length of inductor stock. The spacing between the adjacent ends of the coils is ⅛ inch. The 6AK5 plate circuit is tuned to the ninth harmonic (f_9, 403-MHz). Inductor L_5 is a hairpin loop of 3/16 inch wide "flashing"

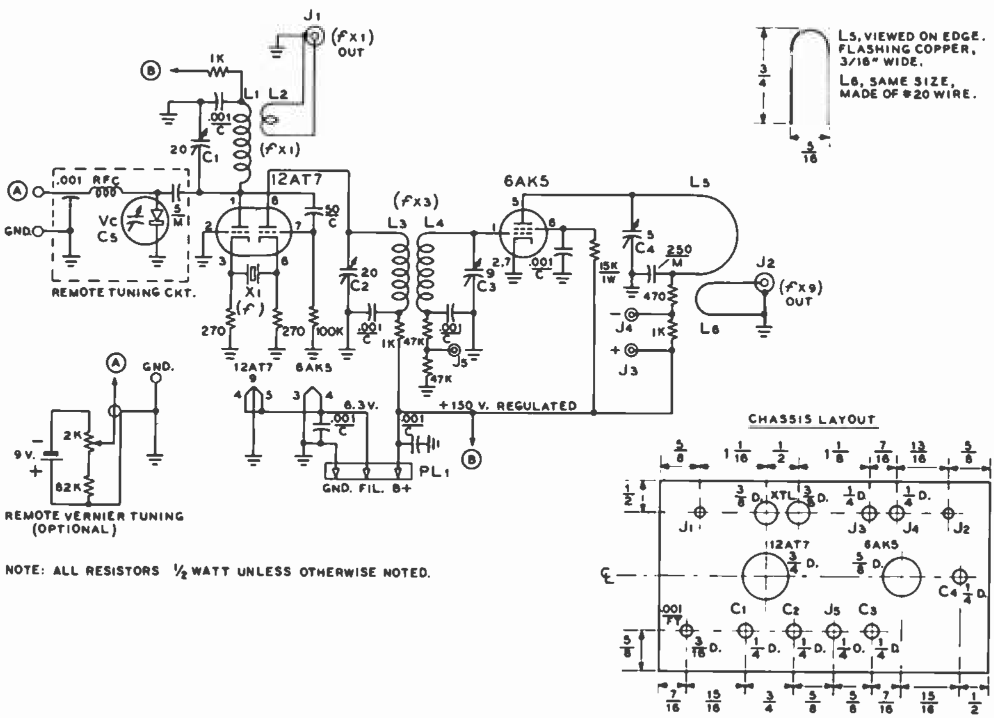


Figure 42

SCHEMATIC OF LOCAL OSCILLATOR MULTIPLIER

C_1, C_2—20-pf (Johnson 20M11 miniature)
C_3—9-pf (Johnson 9M11 miniature)
C_4—5-pf (Johnson 5M11 miniature)
C_5—Variable capacitance diode (5.2- to 31-pf, Pacific Semiconductor V-12 Varicap)
J_1, J_2—Coaxial receptacle, UHF or BNC type
L_1—9 turns #20 e., closewound, 3/8 in. diam.
L_2—One turn loop at B-plus end of L_1
L_3—3 turns spaced 1/8 inch, 1/2 inch diam. (B & W 3006)
L_4—2 turns as per L_3
PL_1—3-circuit chassis mounting (Cinch-Jones P-303AB)
RFC—50-MHz choke (Ohmite Z-50 or equiv.)
X_1—Third-overtone crystal. Use 44.777 MHz for 29-MHz i-f; 42.444 MHz for 50-MHz i-f; 42.500 MHz for double conversion to 7 MHz (see text)
Chassis—Bud CU-2106A

copper strap. The coupling inductor, L_6, is approximately the same size as L_5 and is mounted parallel to it, about 3/16 inch away.

Two optional circuits are available to the user. The first option provides LO injection at both the ninth and fundamental overtone frequencies. By using both the ninth and the fundamental frequency of a 42.5-MHz 3rd-overtone crystal, a converter with first and second mixer stages could be built that would convert 432 MHz to 49.5 MHz (for good image rejection) and then convert again to 7 MHz where many receivers have better performance than at 28 MHz. This option was not exercised in this design, as good receiver performance was achieved at 28 MHz using an auxiliary i-f amplifier, described later.

The second optional circuit is remote vernier tuning of the crystal oscillator by means of a capacitance diode (*varactor*) across the crystal-oscillator plate circuit. Excellent vernier tuning is provided by this simple circuit. A blocking capacitor serves to remove the d-c plate voltage from the diode, and an r-f choke isolates the tank circuit from the external control circuit. At the remote-control point, a ten-turn potentiometer, limiting resistor, and battery are used to adjust the diode voltage, thereby tuning the overtone crystal over a narrow range. The values indicated will provide a tuning range of about 3 kHz at 432 MHz.

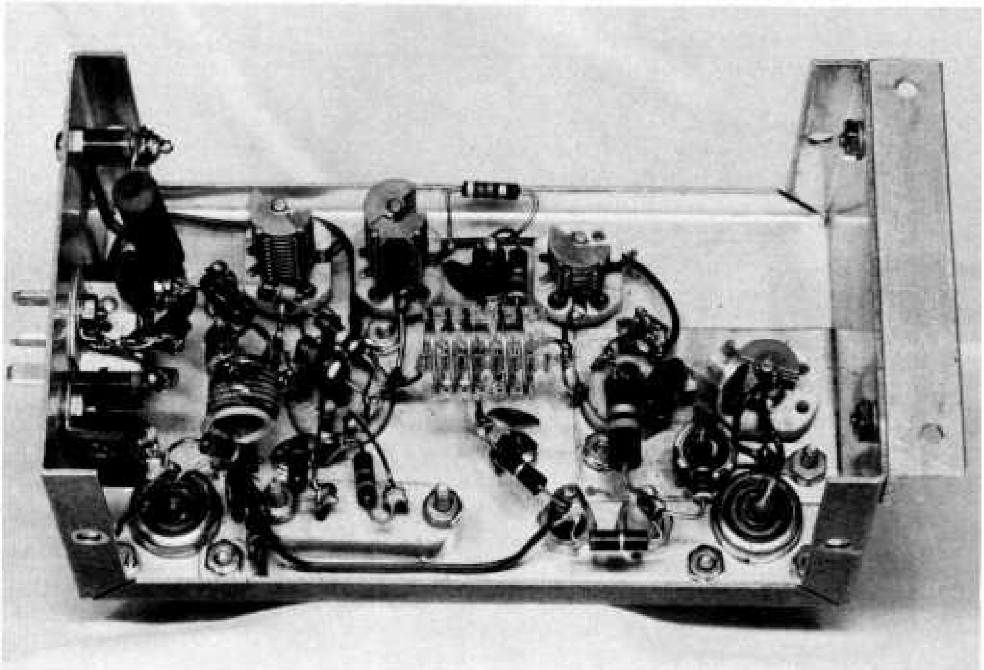


Figure 43

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF OSCILLATOR-MULTIPLIER UNIT

The 12AT7 socket is at the left, with the crystal socket to the front. Inductors L_3 and L_4 at center are cut from a single piece of coil stock. Components of 6AK5 multiplier stage are fixed to small copper sheet mounted under tube socket and output tuning capacitor. Tuning capacitors C_1, C_2, and C_3 are across rear of the chassis.

A counter dial reading from 0 to 1000 for 10 turns of the potentiometer will provide good bandspread when tuning a few kHz for a weak moonbounce signal. A shielded cable connects between the remote control unit and the LO unit. The *plus* terminal of the battery connects to the cathode of the tuning diode. If the builder elects to omit this feature, the portion of the circuit in the dotted inclosure may be eliminated.

Construction of the LO Unit The LO unit is built in an aluminum box measuring 5¼" × 3" × 2⅛" (*Bud CU 2106A*). Layout of major components is shown in the photographs (figure 43). Note that a piece of thin copper sheet is fastened to the inside of the box where the 6AK5 socket is mounted. This provides a good r-f ground for this stage. All leads in the 6AK5 stage should be short and direct. The socket for the 12AT7 is oriented so that pin 6 faces the 6AK5 socket, which has pin 1 facing the 12AT7 socket. Point-to-point wiring is used with many components mounted directly to socket pins or to adjacent ground lugs or tie points.

Adjustment of the LO Unit Tune-up procedure of the LO unit is simple and straightforward. Power is applied, including bias to the tuning diode (if used). The f_1 and f_3 circuits are adjusted for maximum negative voltage read by a high-resistance meter at test point J_5. This is the grid bias voltage of the 6AK5 and should approximate three volts. Connect a low-range milliammeter across test points J_3 and J_4 and watch for a faint change in 6AK5 plate current while adjusting the output circuit (f_0). Plate current is about 7.5 milliamperes. Final adjustment of the oscillator plate circuit and multiplier is made while listening for a crystal-controlled 432-MHz test signal on a communications receiver fed by the complete converter. The resulting i-f signal will be stable when the oscillator tuning is set correctly and the crystal is controlling the frequency. Incorrect setting of the oscillator capacitor can result in loss of frequency control, and a resulting rough sounding i-f signal.

An I-F Amplifier for the 432-MHz Converter Intermediate - frequency amplification following a diode mixer is a must. In addition to amplifying the i-f signal, the i-f stage also helps set the noise figure of the over-all system. In many cases, the communications receiver used as the i-f system does not have a low-noise r-f stage as it is not needed in the high-frequency region. This simple i-f amplifier provides the necessary gain at a low noise figure and may be used with any communications receiver.

A 6CW4 nuvistor is employed in a grounded-grid circuit with two tuned input circuits and one tuned output circuit. The input circuit is tapped to match a low-impedance coaxial input, and provision is made for metering the diode mixer current. Capacitive coupling between the input circuits provides d-c isolation of the mixer from the 6CW4 cathode circuit. A low-impedance link circuit couples the i-f amplifier to the communications receiver. Power required for the i-f amplifier is 6.3 volts at 0.135 ampere and 70 volts d.c. at 5 ma.

Figure 44

THE LOW-NOISE 29-MHz I-F AMPLIFIER

This nuvistor amplifier should be used to improve the noise figure of the communications receiver used as a 29-MHz i-f strip. Input and output coaxial receptacles are located atop the box, as are the slugs for adjustment of tuned circuits. Amplifier also serves as a good 10-meter broadband preselector.

The I-F Amplifier Circuit Two tuned circuits are used between the mixer unit and the 6CW4 to achieve good selectivity. Coils L_1 and L_2 are separated sufficiently to make the circuit undercoupled, and the extra coupling

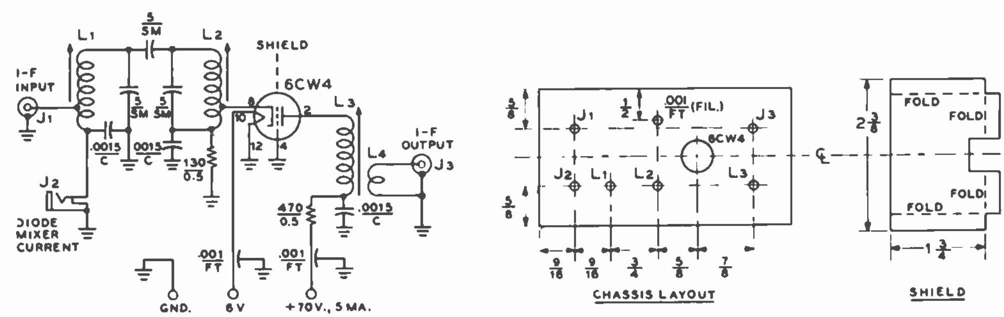


Figure 45

SCHEMATIC, LOW-NOISE I-F AMPLIFIER

L_1, L_2—18 turns #28 enam. on 3/8-inch diam. form (brass slug). Tap 5 turns from ground end for L_1, 4 turns for L_2. (National XR-90 form, or equiv.)

L_3—19 turns #28 enam. on 3/8-inch form (powered-iron slug). 3.10- to 6.8-μhy. (J. W. Miller 4405)

L_4—3 turns insulated wire at B-plus end of L_3

Box—4" x 2 1/8" x 1 5/8" (Bud 3002A)

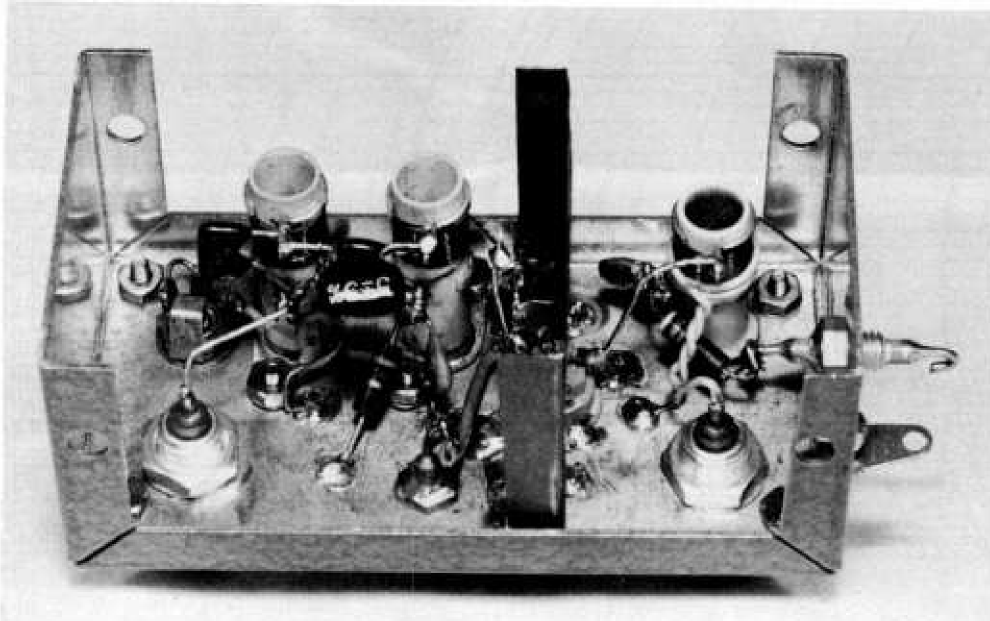


Figure 46

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF I-F AMPLIFIER

Input circuits are at left, with shield across nuvistor socket at center of chassis. Output circuit is at right. Socket shield is soldered to circuit board used as chassis.

is provided by a small capacitor. Diode current of the preceding mixer stage is monitored by inserting a low resistance 0-to-1 d-c milliameter in jack J_2. The cathode of the 6CW4 is tapped down on the input circuitry to achieve a good impedance match. The three circuits may be stagger-tuned if fairly flat response is desired over the 28- to 30-MHz range. Power leads are decoupled by feedthrough capacitors to reduce fundamental-frequency pickup.

Amplifier Construction The i-f amplifier is built in an aluminum box measuring 4" × 2⅛" × 1⅝" (*Bud 3002A*). A piece of copper-clad (one side) phenolic board is mounted on the inside of the box with a 4-40 screw in each corner. A shield of thin "flashing" copper straddles the nuvistor socket, isolating the input circuit from the plate circuit. The grid terminal of the socket is bent down to the shield and soldered to it. The notch in the shield to clear the socket should be filed to shape in order to achieve a snug fit. The shield is soldered to the copper-clad board after all parts are mounted. The side flanges of the shield should make contact with the sides of the box and it may be fastened in position with sheet-metal screws after final assembly.

I-F Amplifier Adjustment The amplifier is connected to the mixer stage and to the communications receiver by coaxial lines. A 29-MHz or 432-MHz test signal may be used, depending on whether or not the mixer stage is available. The slugs of coils L_1 and L_2 are peaked for maximum signal, followed by adjustment of coil L_3. A check across the 10-meter band will show if the amplifier circuits need to be stagger-tuned to flatten the response.

Optimizing The 432-MHz R-F Amplifier As is, two of these simple r-f amplifier units will outperform most vacuum-tube amplifiers by several decibels of noise figure at 432 MHz. Little adjust-

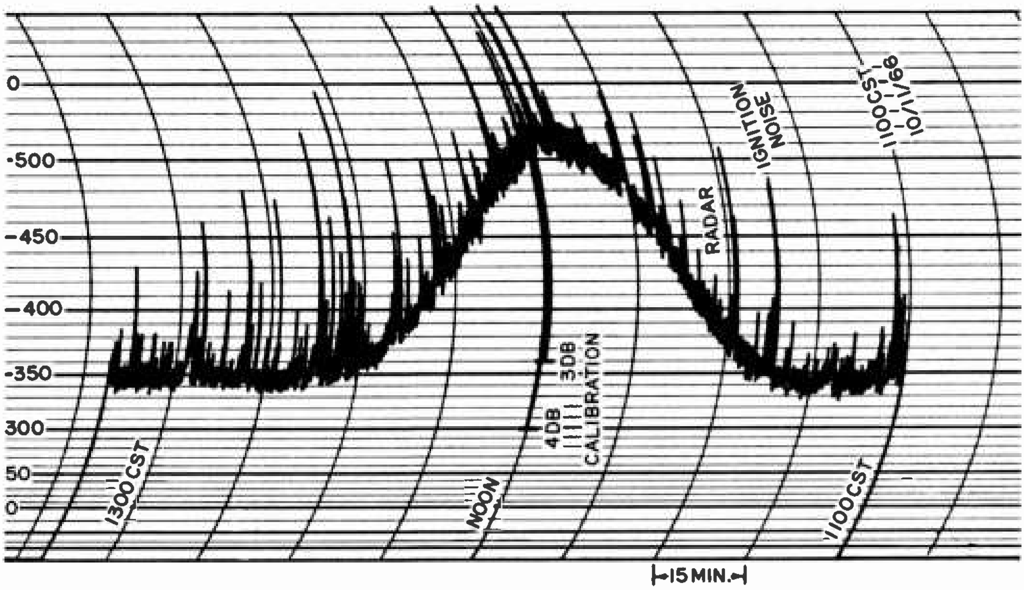


Figure 47

SUN NOISE RECORDING MADE WITH CONVERTER BY W4HHK

The transistor preamplifier and converter described in this section were used to make this chart recording of sun noise at 432 MHz. An 18-foot dish was used, with the sun passing across the stationary dish. A maximum noise of about 3.25 decibels were recorded, showing the usable sensitivity of the converter. W4HHK reports that the converter exhibits unusually good rejection to out-of-band signals (TV, etc.).

ment need be made when using the 2N3478 transistors, or other transistors of this general family. No doubt better and cheaper transistors will be developed over the years as the trend to transistor television receivers grows. With suitable modifications in the bias circuitry, this circuit will work well with other transistor types.

The gain and noise figure of this circuit may be set by adjustment of the base-ground resistor (2.7K). The optimum value of resistance may vary slightly between transistors, even of the same type. To optimize the circuitry, therefore, it is only necessary to replace the fixed resistor with a 5K potentiometer and to adjust it for optimum gain and noise figure on a weak signal. It will be found that the lower the value of the base-ground resistance, the lower will be the current drain and circuit gain. When the resistance is too high, the stage will break into oscillation. Before the point of oscillation is reached, the signal-to-noise ratio of the stage will deteriorate. The optimum value of resistance is not critical (plus or minus a few hundred ohms) and may easily be determined by listening tests.

26-7 The Deluxe HBR Receiver

One of the most popular receiver designs in recent years has been the *HBR* circuit, the creation of Ted Crosby, W6TC, and others. Described in this section is a modernized version of this popular receiver incorporating many improvements over the earlier HBR models. The Deluxe HBR amateur-band receiver is expressly designed for high-quality performance on SSB and c.w. and has a high order of selectivity and stability. It has good dynamic signal range to help protect it from excessive cross modulation caused by strong signals and features high-Q r-f circuits for "up front" selectivity. Best of all, the receiver may be built for a modest price and without the use of special metal-handling tools.

Figure 48

THE DELUXE HBR RECEIVER

The 19-tube HBR receiver is a double-conversion superheterodyne covering the amateur bands. Employing plug-in coils, the receiver combines simplicity of design with good r-f selectivity. Delayed automatic gain control and an efficient product detector make the receiver well suited for SSB reception. Layout of the panel controls may be seen in this photograph. To the left of the main tuning control are the antenna trimmer (C_2) and the r-f gain control (R_1), with the Q-multiplier tuning (C_8) centered below. To the right of the main tuning control is the first i-f gain potentiometer (R_2) with the noise limiter switch (S_4) and the 100-kHz calibration oscillator switch to the right. Across the lower edge of the panel are (l. to r.): Q-multiplier control (S_2), bandwidth-adjust potentiometer (R_3), mixer-gain potentiometer (R), second i-f gain potentiometer (R_4), mode selector switch (S), audio-gain potentiometer (R) and agc time-constant switch (S_1). Below, to the right are the phone jack and the main power switch.

The Deluxe HBR receiver (figure 48) is a double conversion superheterodyne employing nineteen tubes. A high-C electron-coupled oscillator is used in the first conversion stage to combine a good order of stability with circuit simplicity. Receiver coverage is restricted to the high-frequency amateur bands only (80 through 10 meters), and inexpensive plug-in coils are used to simplify receiver construction and to achieve high-Q circuitry. Separate gain controls are provided for the r-f stage, the first i-f stage, the second mixer, and the low-frequency i-f system. These adjustments permit the operator to establish the over-all gain of the receiver in such a way as to accommodate his particular operating conditions, and this flexibility has proven to be one of the outstanding features of this receiver. A delayed agc system provides ample control for local signals, yet allows full sensitivity for weak signals.

Auxiliary circuitry includes a 100-kHz transistor crystal calibrator, i-f noise limiter, S-meter, and Q-multiplier. Construction of the Deluxe HBR receiver is done on two chassis, with the r-f circuitry placed on a separate small chassis that may be assembled and tested as a separate unit, if desired. Receiver r-f alignment is easily accomplished

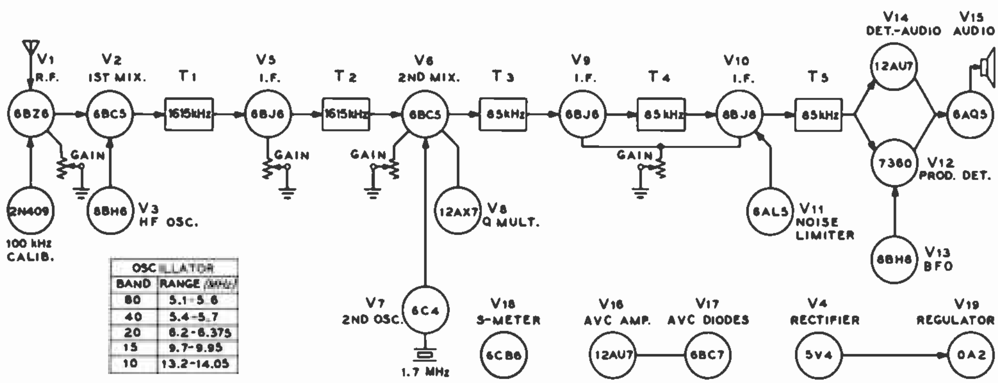


Figure 49

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE DELUXE HBR RECEIVER

The deluxe HBR receiver employs a tunable first oscillator (V_3) and a crystal-controlled second oscillator (V_7) The second harmonic of the tunable oscillator is used for operation above 40 meters. Separate gain controls are incorporated in the receiver to enable the user to set the stage gains for optimum reception. Use of 1615-kHz first intermediate frequency provides good image rejection while second intermediate frequency of 85 kHz provides excellent adjacent-channel selectivity. Extra operating aids such as Q-multiplier, S-meter, and noise limiter make SSB reception a pleasure.

by separate bandset and bandspread adjustments using an auxiliary signal source.

The Receiver Circuit A block diagram of the Deluxe HBR receiver is shown in figure 49.

The R-F Section — The receiver covers the amateur bands between 80 and 10 meters with sufficient overlap at the band edges for auxiliary activities such as MARS. Plug-in coils are employed in the r-f tuned circuits. The r-f stage employs a 6BZ6 semiremote-cutoff pentode (V_1) to provide maximum weak-signal performance while still allowing freedom from crosstalk and front-end overload. The r-f stage gain control is normally run open and is only backed off in the presence of strong local signals. A 6BC5 serves as a high-gain, low-noise mixer (V_2), with conversion oscillator injection on the control grid. The injection level is adjustable to provide optimum signal-to-noise level consistent with good overload capability. The first conversion oscillator (V_3) is a 6BH6 in a plate-feedback circuit having good frequency stability. Fundamental-frequency injection is employed on the 80- and 40-meter bands and second-harmonic injection is used on the 20- ,15- , and 10-meter bands.

Electrical and mechanical bandspread tuning are both employed in this receiver. A high-ratio tuning dial (110:1) is used, permitting easy tuning of SSB signals. In addition, a tapped-coil bandspread technique (see *Radio Receiver Fundamentals* chapter) is employed (figure 51). The tuning rate of the high-frequency oscillator (expressed as a percentage of frequency) may be matched to the rate of the r-f and detector stages by proper adjustment of the padding capacitors in the bandspread circuit.

The I-F Section—Two intermediate frequencies are used in the Deluxe HBR receiver. The first intermediate frequency is 1615 kHz which provides good image rejection in the high-frequency range. The second intermediate frequency is 85 kHz which provides excellent adjacent-channel selectivity. Separate gain controls are provided for the two i-f sections and also for the second mixer stage. Normally, the i-f and mixer gains are retarded as the receiver has more than sufficient gain for all modes of operation. Ample selectivity is available at 1615 kHz to prevent broadcast and 1650-kHz navigational-aid signals from causing interference to desired signals. A 6BJ6 (V_5) is used in the high-frequency i-f stage, followed by a 6BC5 (V_6) second mixer. The second conversion oscillator is a 6C4 (V_7) in a crystal-controlled Pierce circuit. The conversion frequency is 1.7 MHz.

Small, high-Q i-f transformers designed for 100-kHz operation are padded down to 85 kHz to provide excellent over-all selectivity. The nose of the selectivity curve is under 2 kHz in width, with the over-all passband measuring about 4 kHz wide at 60 decibels below the reference signal level. A 12AX7 Q-multiplier (V_8) provides additional i-f selectivity for c-w reception or may be used to place a rejection notch at any point in the i-f passband to attenuate interference. An i-f noise limiter employing a 6AL5 diode clipper (V_{11}) is employed in the plate circuit of the last 85-kHz i-f amplifier stage. Clipping level is adjustable.

The Detector, AGC and Audio Section—Dual detectors are provided in the Deluxe HBR receiver. A 7360 is used as a product detector for SSB and c-w reception (V_{12}) with local-oscillator injection on the control grid. The i-f signal is injected at one deflection plate, with the resulting output containing signal components produced by the product of the input signals. The desired audio component is selected and filtered in the plate circuit of the 7360. A 6BH6 beat-frequency oscillator (V_{13}) serves for c-w and SSB reception. A 12AU7 infinite-impedance detector (V_{14}) is used for a-m reception.

The agc system makes use of an audio-controlled *hang circuit* especially designed for SSB and c-w modes. It features a very rapid response that prevents receiver overload on a syllabic burst of SSB, instantly reducing the receiver gain. The gain reduction remains in effect as long as the signal is in evidence, then hangs on for about 0.5 second after the removal of the signal. This sequence reduces to a minimum the usual "thump" that occurs at the start of a syllable and removes the "rush" of background noise at the end of a syllable, both of which occur with less sophisticated agc circuits. A choice of fast or slow release action may be made. A triple diode 6BC7 (V_{17}) and a 12AU7 double triode (V_{16}) comprise the agc system. The double-diode circuit (V_{17}A and B) and the 470K/0.01-μfd RC combination determine the "on" time of the attack network, permitting the 0.1-μfd agc capacitor to charge up in a relatively quick time. The capacitor remains charged, as the 12AU7 (V_{16}A) triode is cut off by this action, and there remains no discharge path to ground in the agc circuit, even when the voltage across the RC network is removed. The time constant of the release network is considerably longer, and is adjusted by the "slow-fast-off" agc switch (S_1). After a predetermined period, the voltage across this network decays sufficiently to permit the triode release gate (V_{16}A) to conduct and discharge the agc line capacitor. A slight degree of delayed agc action is provided by applying fixed bias to the attack diode to prevent the circuit from being tripped by background noise or weak signals.

A single 12AU7 triode section followed by a 6AQ5 provides sufficient audio level for earphone reception, or to drive a speaker to good room volume. Feedback is incorporated in the 6AQ5 stage to provide smooth audio response.

The S-Meter and Power Supply—The S-meter consists of a simple v.t.v.m. that compares agc voltage against a fixed voltage reference. The 6CB6 bridge plate circuit (V_{18}) is balanced for a meter null with no signal input to the receiver, and agc voltage in the presence of a signal unbalances the bridge, causes a reading on the meter proportional to signal strength. The meter may be used for all modes of reception, providing useable readings on c-w signals as well as SSB or amplitude modulation.

The power supply utilizes a choke input circuit, with critical voltages regulated by an OA2. Standby is accomplished by relay RY which breaks the r-f stage cathode and speaker circuits of the receiver when actuated by the VOX circuit of the transmitter. A separate filament transformer is used for the oscillator tubes, permitting them to run continuously, thus drastically reducing the warmup drift of the receiver, especially in a humid location.

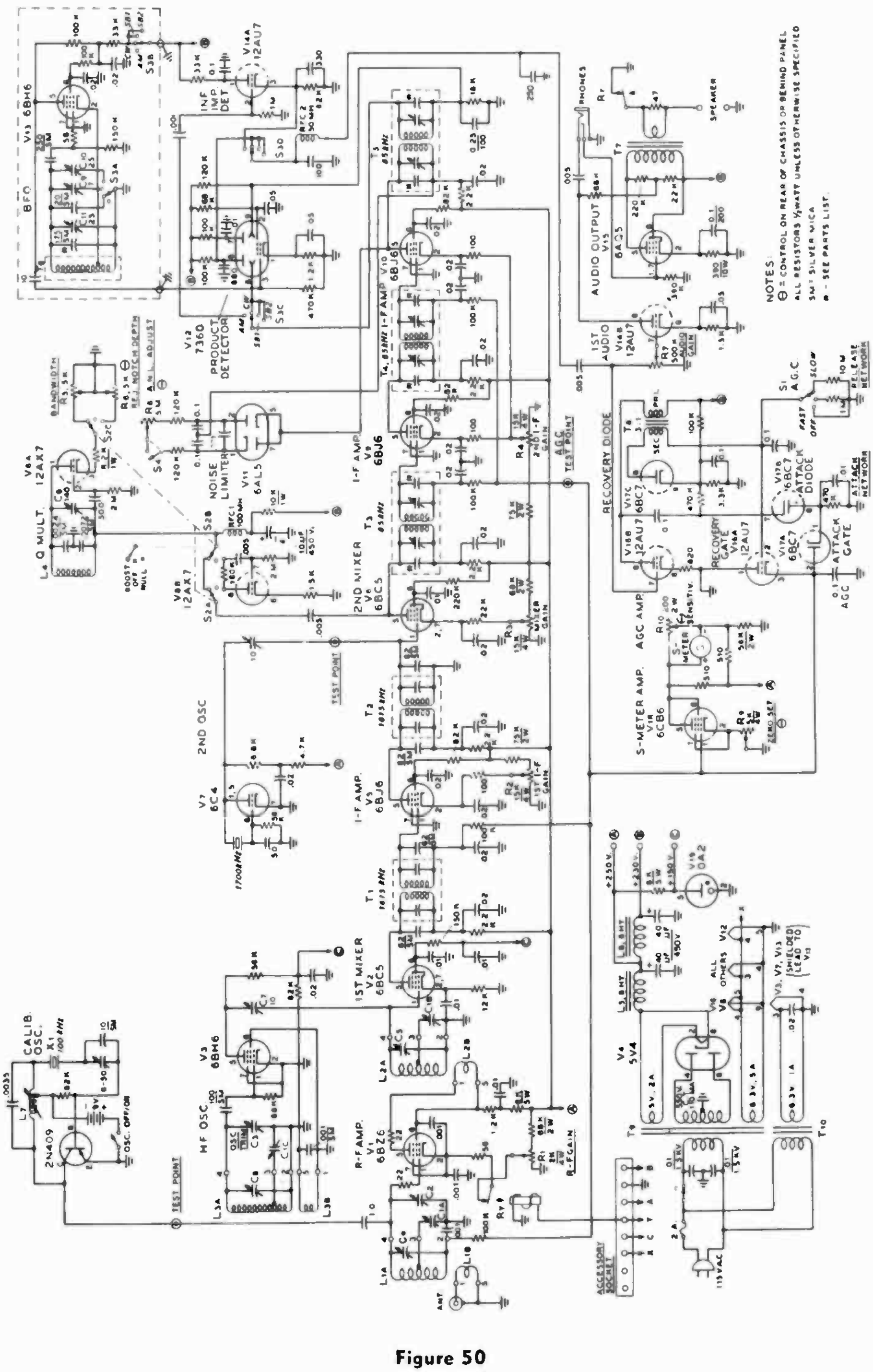


Figure 50

SCHEMATIC OF HBR RECEIVER

PARTS LIST FOR FIGURE 50

C_1A, B, C—5-23-pf, 3-section. Miller 2102, or Polar C28-143-6/015
(Note: one rotor plate must be removed from each section of the Polar capacitor to achieve proper bandspread. The Miller unit needs no modification)
C_2—15-pf Hammarlund MAPC-15B
C_3—2-pf Hammarlund MAPC-15 with all but one rotor and one stator plate removed.
C_4, C_5, C_6—See coil table, figure 57. (Hammarlund type MAPC)
C_7—10-pf Centralab 822EZ
C_8—140-pf Hammarlund APC-140B
C_9—7-pf Centralab 822EZ
C_{10}, C_{11}—25-pf Centralab 822AZ
L_1, L_2, L_3—See coil table, figure 57
L_4—3.5-mH Miller 9003
L_5, L_6—6-henry, 110-ma, Triad C-11X
L_7—0.7-mH, tapped. Miller 9012
RFC_1—100-mH Miller 960
RFC_2—50-mH Miller 958
RY—dpdt relay with coil to match transmitter control circuit
S_1—Single-section, 3-pole, 3-position. Centralab PA-2006
S_2—Two-section, 2-poles per section, 4-position. Centralab PA-2010
T_1, T_2—1800-kHz transformer. Pad to 1615 kHz with 62-pf silver micas. Miller 1730
T_3, T_4, T_5—100-kHz high-Q transformer, 2.5-kHz bandwidth. Pad with 130-pf silver micas to 85 kHz. Miller 1709. For 3-kHz bandwidth, use Miller 1710 transformers
T_6—132-kHz bfo transformer padded to 85 kHz with 175-pf silver mica. Remove compression trimmer and use threaded bushing of trimmer as mount for lugs to hold wires from bfo coil. Miller 012-M5
T_7—5K to 4 ohms. Stancor A-3877
T_8—3:1 audio interstage. Triad A-31X
T_9—550-volt c.t., 110-ma. 5 volt 2 amp., 6.3 volt 5 amp. Triad R-12A
T_{10}—6.3-volt 1 amp. Stancor P-6134
S-meter—0-1 d-c milliammeter
Chassis—(1) 10" x 14" x 3" (2) 5" x 7" x 2"
BFO box—2¾" x 2" x 4"
Cabinet—15" x 11" x 9". Wyco CR-7725
Dial—Eddystone 898

Receiver Construction A receiver such as this is a complex device and its construction should only be undertaken by a person familiar with receiving equipment and who has built and aligned equipment approaching this complexity. The first step is to lay out the chassis, panel, tuning dial, and larger components in a "mockup" assembly to ensure that the receiver will go together without a conflict between the components. The receiver is built on an aluminum chassis measuring 10″ × 14″ × 3″. A chassis having welded seams with triangular braces in each corner is recommended for maximum rigidity. The complete receiver fits in a steel cabinet measuring 11″ × 15″ × 9″. A series of ⅛-inch holes are drilled around the upper edges of the sides and back of the chassis for ventilation and another series of ⅜-inch holes is drilled across the rear top and bottom edges of the cabinet. The bottom of the cabinet, in addition, is "honeycombed" with ⅜ inch holes. Additional holes are also required in the rear of the cabinet for various cables and terminations to plugs and receptacles mounted on the rear apron of the chassis.

The r-f circuits of the receiver are built on a steel subchassis measuring 5″ × 7″ × 2″ which is mounted above the main chassis as shown in the photographs. The subchassis is affixed to the main chassis by means of 6-32 spade bolts mounted in the corners of the smaller unit. Placement of the subchassis is shown in figure 54.

Alignment of the dial on the panel is determined by the positioning of the main tuning capacitor (C_1A-B-C). The capacitor used is a high-quality unit having full ball-race bearings front and back and a controlled torque. This unit provides minimum drag on the geared dial. The tuning capacitor is mounted above the chassis on two bolts as shown in the various illustrations. Note that the capacitor is insulated from the top of the chassis and the dial, the rotor frame being grounded by a separate ground strap running from the capacitor frame to the under-chassis area of the r-f unit. This grounding technique avoids spurious ground loops in the r-f assembly that may give rise to regeneration and instability. The tuning capacitor is driven via a rigid insulated bushing and the supporting bolts are adjusted and locked after alignment of the front panel, thus assuring minimum dial drag.

The receiver chassis rests on the floor of the cabinet and the chassis is mounted nearly flush with the bottom edge of the panel. The dial assembly is positioned as shown in the layout drawing (figure 55). It is suggested that the r-f chassis be temporarily placed on the larger chassis after mounting the tuning capacitor and dial placement

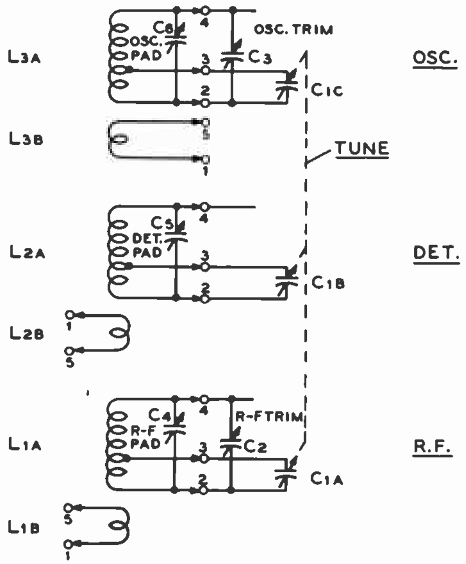


Figure 51

BANDSPREAD SYSTEM FOR RECEIVER

A simple and proven bandspread system is used in the Deluxe HBR receiver. Because the oscillator operates "offset" in frequency from the detector and r-f circuits, a tapped bandspread system is used to allow the oscillator to track when similar tuning capacitors are ganged. The oscillator operates on the high-frequency side of the received signal on 80 and 40 meters, and on the low-frequency side on the higher bands. Adjustment of the coil tap provides the correct tuning rate. This must be smaller than that of the detector and r-f stage, because the oscillator covers a smaller range than the other stages, when both ranges are expressed as a percentage of frequency. Minute frequency corrections are taken care of by the "Osc. Trim" capacitor (C_3), and r-f stage alignment is accomplished by means of the "R-f Trim" capacitor (C_2). Padding capacitors for each band are placed inside the plug-in coil forms.

then be checked before any holes are cut in the panel. The panel is held in position by means of the various hexagonal control nuts. Two sets of nuts are used, one to hold the control to the chassis (and to space the panel from the chassis) and the second to fasten the panel firmly to the chassis. The space between panel and chassis accommodates the lower lip of the steel cabinet, which may be cut down in length and width to facilitate placing the receiver in the cabinet.

The chassis, subchassis, dial, and panel should be assembled and studied before the chassis holes are drilled. Placement of the remaining components may be done from a study of the photographs and layout drawings. Use of a paper layout template for drilling the chassis is recommended.

The R-F Assembly—The three plug-in coils, the tuning capacitor, the r-f tubes (6BZ6, 6BC5 and 6BH6), together with the first 1615-kHz i-f transformer (T_1) are mounted on the subchassis. An above-chassis shield compartment isolates r-f coil L_1 from the tuning capacitor and from the oscillator coil (L_3). A second compartment isolates the mixer coil (L_2). The 6BZ6 and 6BC5 tubes are in the same compartment as coil L_2. A small shield plate is required across the bottom of the 6BZ6 socket and is notched to fit directly over the socket, isolating the grid wiring from the plate circuit. The various 6BZ6 bypass capacitors are grounded to the shield plate, as is the center stud of the socket.

Ceramic sockets are used for the plug-in coils and for the 6BH6 oscillator tube. The socket for coil L_1 is placed so that pin 4 is adjacent to pin 1 of the 6BZ6 socket. Coil socket L_2 is oriented in the same manner with respect to the 6BC5 socket. If the socket for coil L_3 has a metal mounting plate, an application of "coil dope" or cement should be placed around the ceramic to eliminate movement between the socket and the plate, providing a solid mounting for the oscillator coil. Use #18 solid wire for wiring socket connections to avoid instability caused by lead movement in the r-f assembly. The lead from pin 3 of the oscillator coil socket to the stator of capacitor C_1C should be #12 wire for best mechanical stability. All power connections to the r-f subchassis are made to a multiterminal strip mounted on one wall of the unit. The connection between i-f transformer T_1 on the subchassis and the 6BJ6 i-f amplifier socket (pin 1) is made via a small feedthrough insulator mounted on the rear wall of the subchassis, the lead from the insulator passing through a grommet mounted in the chassis deck of the under-chassis area.

The I-f System—The 6BJ6 i-f amplifier (1615 kHz), transformer T_2 and the second mixer (6BC5, V_6) are located on the main chassis directly behind the r-f subchassis. The 12AX7 Q-multiplier is placed in the rear left corner of the chassis, with the 6C4

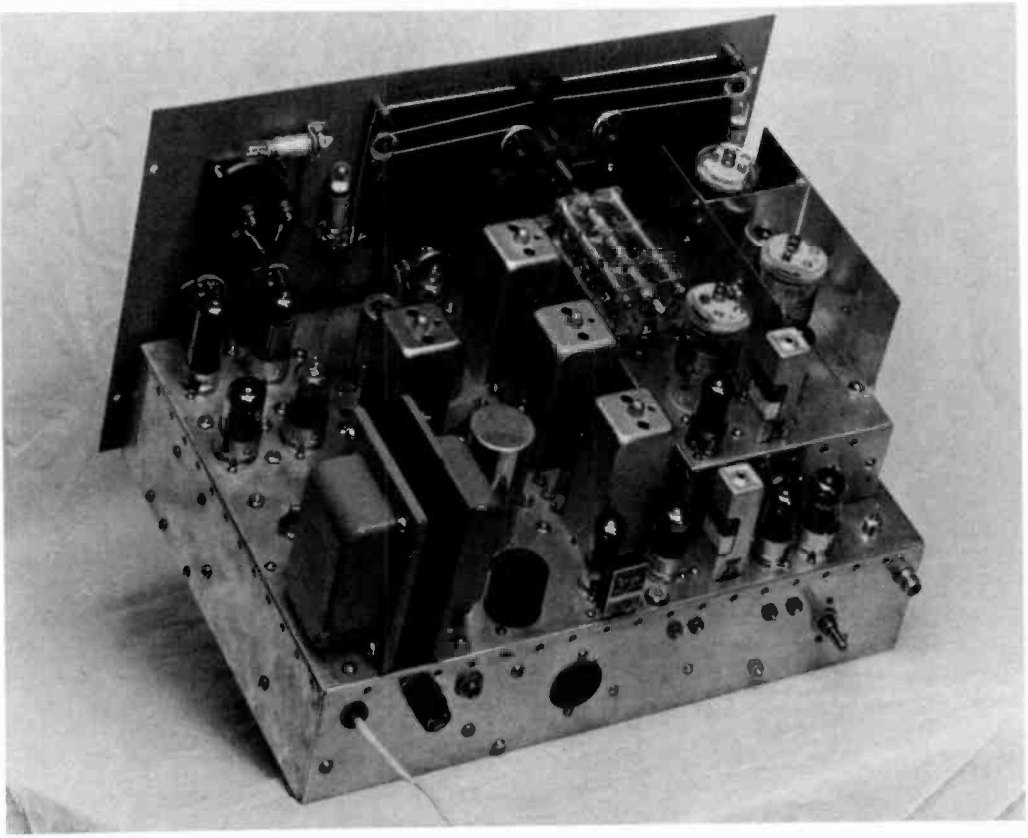


Figure 52

REAR OBLIQUE VIEW OF RECEIVER

R-f components are mounted on a subchassis placed atop receiver chassis (right). The chassis is held in position by spade bolts in the corners. The main tuning capacitor is insulated from the chassis and grounded to it by a separate strap. It is held in position by long bolts insulated from the chassis by fibre washers.

Along the rear apron of the chassis are (l. to r.): power cord, line fuse, speaker jack, accessory socket, notch-depth potentiometer (R_6), and antenna receptacle. Ventilation holes may be seen around the edge of the chassis. A plug-in silicon rectifier is in use in place of the 5V4.

crystal oscillator and 1.7-MHz crystal at the right end of the i-f strip, as seen in the photographs. The 85-kHz i-f system is positioned from front to back along the center of the chassis. The transformers are oriented so that plate and grid leads to adjacent sockets are short and do not cross over each other. Sockets, too, are oriented to provide short grid and plate leads.

The AGC, Audio, and Power Systems—The power supply occupies the right rear corner of the chassis, with the "S-meter adjustment" and "S-meter zero" potentiometers placed in front of the power transformer. The noise limiter and detector tubes are near the front of the chassis, adjacent to i-f transformer T_5. The product detector and audio system are to the right-front of the chassis.

Beneath the chassis (figure 56), the bfo components are housed in an aluminum box measuring 2" × 2¾" × 4", centered under the bfo tube socket. Various chokes and transformers are mounted to the side wall of the chassis, with the Q-multiplier controls mounted on a subpanel placed near the rear of the receiver. Extension shafts couple

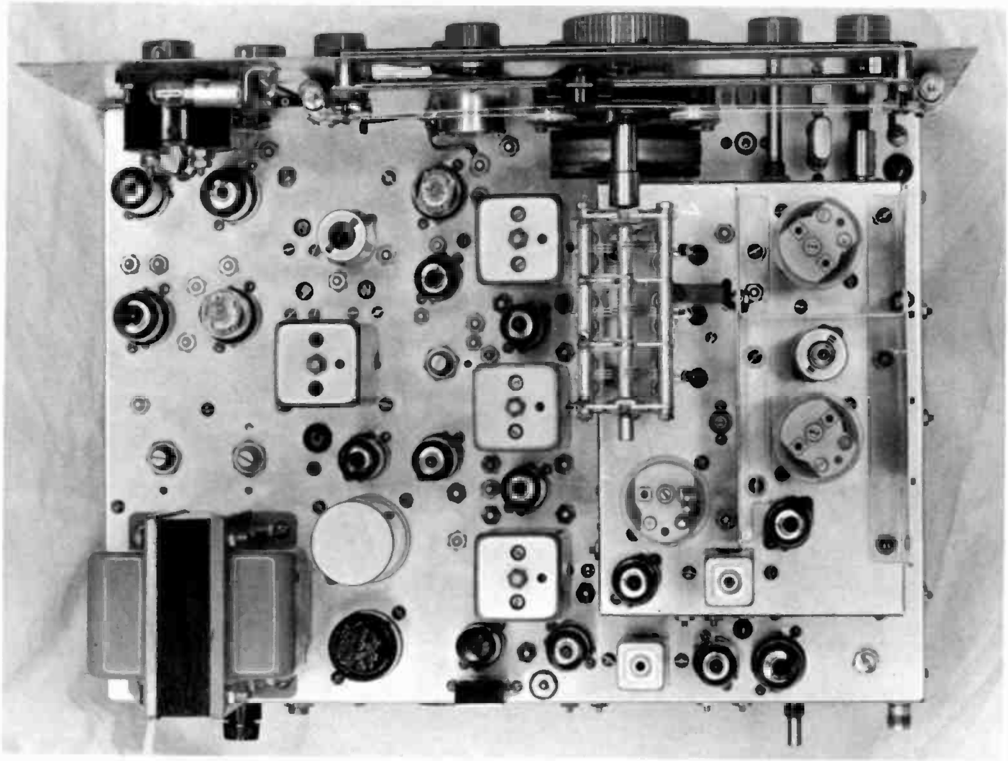


Figure 53

TOP VIEW OF RECEIVER

Major above-chassis components may be seen in this photograph. Directly behind the S-meter (upper left) are the 6AQ5 and 7360 tubes and nearer the power transformer are the 6BC7 and the 12AU7 agc tubes. Adjacent to the power transformer are the two S-meter potentiometers. To the right of the power transformer are the 5V4 rectifier and the dual 40-40 µfd filter capacitor. Next to the capacitor (towards the panel) are the OA2 regulator and the 6CB6 S-meter tubes and the agc test-point jack. Closer to the panel is the bfo transformer (T_6) with the bfo tube between it and the panel. Down the center of the chassis (rear to front) are the 1.7-MHz crystal, 6C4 oscillator, 85-kHz transformer (T_3), i-f amplifier 6BJ6 (V_9), transformer T_4, i-f amplifier 6BJ6 (V_{10}), and transformer T_5 (near panel). To the left of transformer T_5 are the 12AU7 (V_{14}) and the 6AL5 (V_{11}). The a n l control (R_8) is to the side of transformer T_4.

Along the rear of the chassis (at right) are the slug of coil L_6 (in the corner), 12AX7 (V_8), 6BJ6 (V_3), transformer T_2, and 100-kHz test point. At the front of the chassis (between the subchassis and the panel) are the 100-kHz crystal and associated components. Note that the tuning capacitor is coupled to the dial with an inflexible (rigid) coupling and short shaft extension. The flat ground strap on the main tuning capacitor may be seen passing through a slot to the under-chassis area where it is grounded.

these controls to the panel dials. Panel bushings are placed on all extension shafts.

Receiver Wiring The receiver should be wired in an orderly manner, a stage at a time. The power supply and filaments should be wired first. The builder should avoid overloading the filament wiring by wiring the sockets in several branches of four to five tubes, with separate leads running from the filament transformer to each branch. To reduce r-f ground-current intercoupling, all grounds for a single stage should be returned to that stage, preferably to a common ground point near the tube socket. The cathode, agc-bypass, and screen capacitors, for example, can all return to a ground connection near the cathode pin of the socket in question. Components should be grouped about a socket

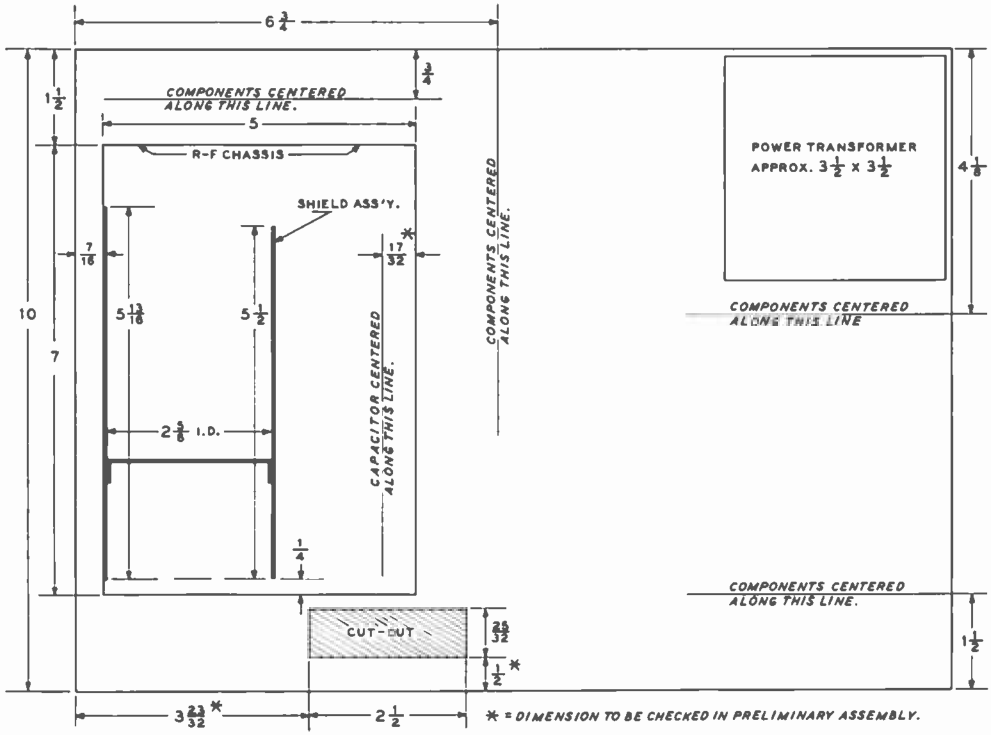


Figure 54

TOP CHASSIS LAYOUT OF MAJOR COMPONENTS

where possible, and not "stacked" above the socket so the latter can be reached for voltage measurements.

Before bfo transformer T_6 is mounted, the compression-type mica trimmer capacitor is removed from the case and the transformer reassembled. A 25-pf ceramic trimmer (C_{11}) in parallel with a 175-pf silver-mica capacitor are mounted under the chassis in the bfo inclosure. This substitution removes a slight frequency instability noted on SSB signals due to the flexing of the spring on the compression capacitor.

After the power supply has been wired and tested, the audio system may be checked out by applying an audio signal to the top end of the audio gain control (R_7). The bfo may be checked for proper operation with a v.t.v.m., if handy, by measuring the rectified r-f voltage at the plate of the 6BH6 oscillator tube, which should be about 10 volts. Power leads from the bfo inclosure should run in shielded braid, with the braid grounded at both ends of the leads.

The i-f system and crystal conversion oscillator may be checked by injecting a 1615-kHz test signal at the grid of the first i-f amplifier tube (V_5). The complete receiver, less the r-f assembly may be completed and checked, stage by stage as work progresses.

The R-F Circuits Plug-in coil data is given in the accompanying table. The coils are easy to wind and the receiver is simple to align. Five-pin, 1¼-inch diameter polystyrene coil forms, available from *Allied Radio Co.*, Chicago, Ill. (catalog number 46-Z-696) are used. Figure 57 summarizes the windings and shows them in relation to the coil pins. All coils are tightly wound in the same direction on the form, and an air padding capacitor is mounted within the form. The MAPC-style capaci-

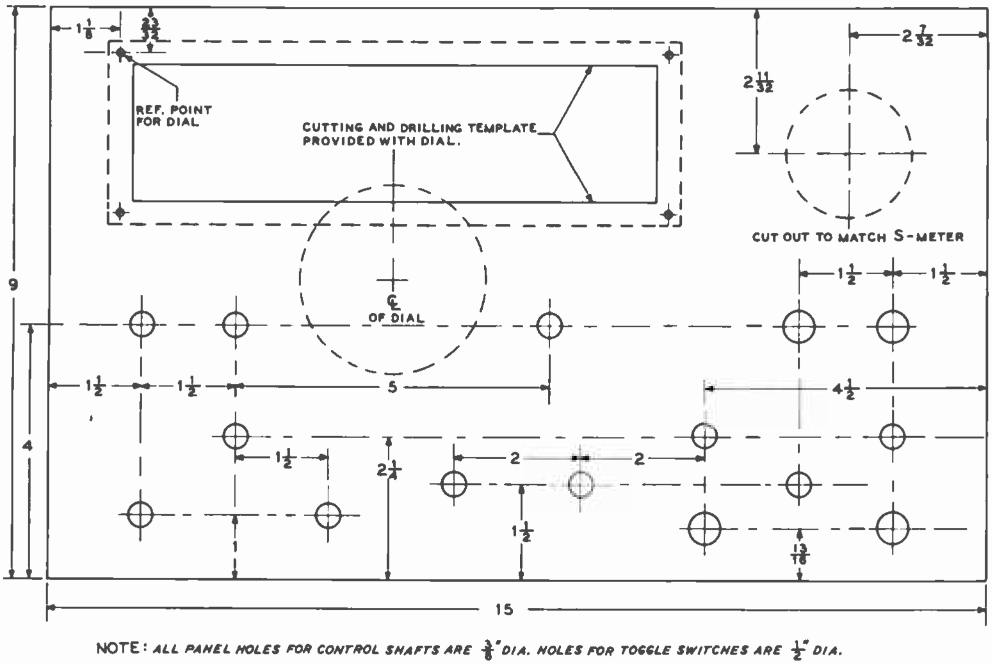


Figure 55

PANEL LAYOUT FOR DELUXE HBR RECEIVER

tor used as a trimmer should have brass (not aluminum) plates for best frequency stability. The *Hammarlund* units are recommended. The trimmer capacitor is held in place by *Duco* cement, plus the wire leads running to it from the proper base pins. A silver-mica padding capacitor is used in the oscillator coil assembly and is mounted in position as shown in the drawing. The *rotor* terminal of the MAPC padding capacitor is connected to the r-f ground end of the coil winding and the *stator* to the topmost turn (grid) of the coil.

The first step is to wind the primary coil (B winding). Make two small holes in the sidewall of the form for the connections to pin 1 and pin 5. The holes are about ½-inch apart with the pin-5 hole close to the point where the bottom turn of the secondary winding will be placed. This allows sufficient space to slide the primary winding up or down the coil form to provide the proper degree of coupling between the windings. The amount of wire for the winding is estimated and one end of the length is cleaned, passed through the predrilled hole above pin 1, and into the pin. It is brought out the end of the pin and quickly soldered with a hot iron. Hold the pin with a long-nose pliers acting as a heat sink so that the coil form will not be deformed by excessive heat. The free end of the length of wire is now attached to a vise or stationary object. The wire is straightened by a gentle pull, and wound on the coil form under tension, rotating the top of the form towards you, keeping the wire taut at all times. When the proper number of turns are on the form, grasp the winding to prevent it from unraveling and cut the wire a few inches longer than the length needed to go through the predrilled hole above pin 5 and to protrude through the pin. Clean the end of the wire, thread it through the form and out the pin. Pull it taut, solder the wire to the

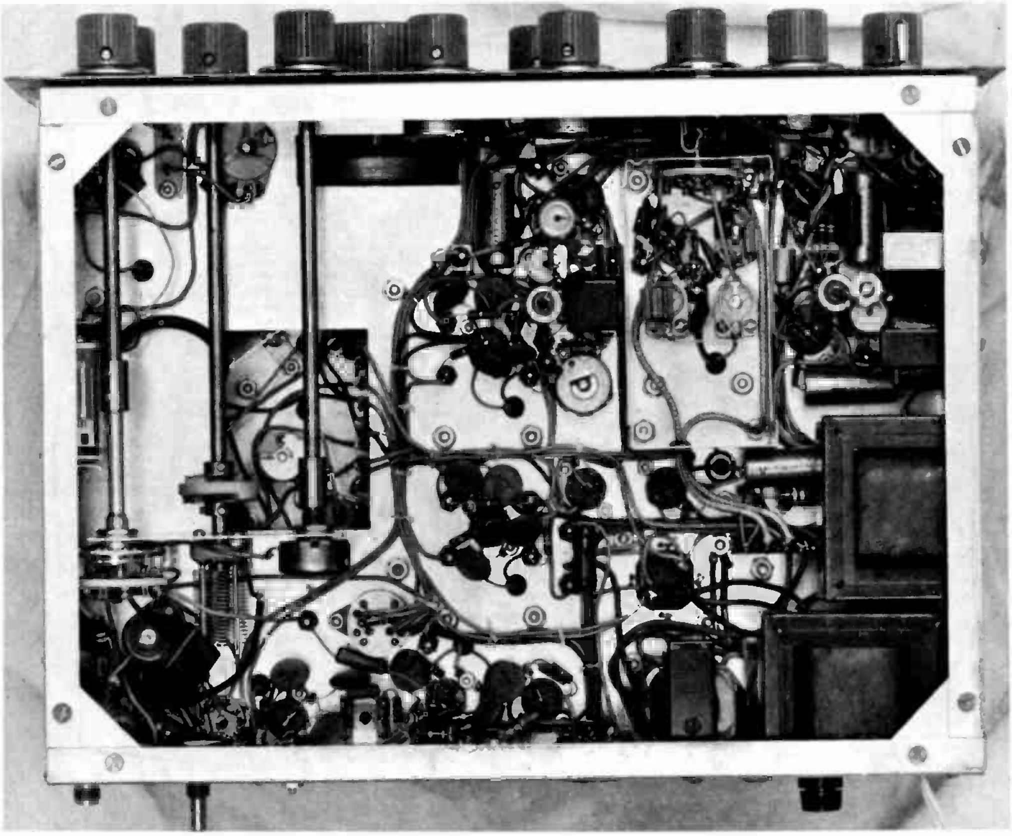


Figure 56

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF RECEIVER

Q-multiplier controls and selector switch are mounted on small aluminum bracket in lower left corner of chassis, with cutout for access to r-f area directly in front. Bfo components are mounted in aluminum box at right, front. Power leads to bfo stage are shielded. The output transformer and agc transformer are mounted to the side wall of the chassis next to the bfo box, with the larger filter chokes to the rear. Oscillator filament transformer is mounted on rear wall of the chassis. Note corner braces bolted to lower lip of chassis for extra rigidity.

pin tip and trim off the excess length. Scrape the pin free of rosin and solder.

The same technique is used for the larger secondary winding. An extra hole is needed in the coil form for the tap connection to the winding. The tap hole is somewhat larger than the others (make it about 1/4" diameter) to permit the joint to be soldered without the iron damaging the low-melting polystyrene form. The ends of the secondary winding are not soldered until the additional wires of the MAPC padding capacitor are also inserted in the same pins. It is easy to approximate the turn spacing as the coil is wound, and the spacing may be adjusted after the winding is finished, if necessary. The winding can be temporarily wound on the form in order to determine the position of the tap hole. Once the winding is positioned, the enamel on the wire is scraped away at the tap point and a small length of wire soldered at this spot, passed through the tap hole and out through pin 3.

The last step is to fix the MAPC padding capacitor in place and to mount the auxiliary silver-mica padding capacitor used in some

COIL TABLE

3.5 MHz	L1A, L2A · 29 TURNS No 26, CLOSE-WOUND, THEN 3 1/2 TURNS SPACED 1/4 INCH, THEN 4 TURNS CLOSE-W'D TAPPED AT 31-1/4 TURNS; (TOTAL 36-1/2 TURNS). L3A: 15 TURNS No 22 CLOSE-WOUND, THEN 3 1/2 TURNS SPACE-WOUND OVER 5/16 IN.; TAPPED AT 18-1/4 TURNS (TOTAL 18 1/2 T'S). C4, C5: 50-PF AIR PADDER. C6: 75-PF AIR PADDER.	L1B: 5-7/8 TURNS No 26, SPACED 3/8 IN. FROM L1A. L2B: 9-7/8 TURNS No. 26 SPACED 5/16 IN. FROM L2A. L3B: 11-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 3/16 IN. FROM L3A.
7 MHz	L1A, L2A: 6-1/2 TURNS No. 22, CLOSE-WOUND, THEN 18 TURNS SPACE-W'D TO AN OVER-ALL LENGTH OF 1 IN; TAPPED AT 9-3/8 TURNS, (TOTAL 22-1/2 TURNS) L3A: 6-1/2 TURNS No. 22, CLOSE-W'D THEN 7 T'S SPACE-WOUND TO AN OVER-ALL LENGTH OF 9/16 INCH; TAPPED AT 13-1/4 TURNS, (TOTAL 13-1/2 TURNS) C4, C5: 50-PF AIR PADDER C6: 50-PF AIR PADDER, + 68-PF SILVER MICA.	L1B: 2-7/8 TURNS No. 28, SPACED 7/16 IN. FROM L1A. L2B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 3/8 IN. FROM L2A. L3B: 10-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 3/32 IN FROM L3A.
14 MHz	L1A, L2A: 11-1/2 TURNS No. 22. LENGTH 15/16 INCH. TAPPED AT 4 1/4 TURNS. L3A: 8-1/2 TURNS No. 22, LENGTH 1/2 IN. TAP'D AT 8-1/4 TURNS. C4, C5: 25-PF AIR PADDER C6: 50-PF AIR PADDER, +200-PF SILVER MICA.	L1B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 5/16 IN. FROM L1A. L2B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 7/16 IN. FROM L2A. L3B: 11-7/8 TURNS No 26, SPACED 1/8 IN. FROM L3A.
21 MHz	L1A, L2A: 8 1/2 TURNS No 22 LENGTH 7/8 IN; TAP'D AT 2-1/4 TURNS. L3A: 5-1/2 TURNS No. 22 LENGTH 3/8 IN; TAP'D AT 4-1/4 TURNS. C4, C5: 25-PF AIR PADDER. C6: 50-PF AIR PADDER, + 140-PF SILVER MICA.	L1B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 5/16 IN. FROM L1A. L2B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 5/16 IN. FROM L2A. L3B: 8-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 5/32 IN. FROM L3A.
28 MHz	L1A, L2A: 5-1/2 TURNS No. 22, LENGTH 15/16 IN; TAPPED AT 2-3/8 TURNS. L3A: 5-1/2 TURNS No. 22, LENGTH 1/2 IN; TAPPED AT 5-1/4 TURNS. C4, C5: 25-PF AIR PADDER. C6: 50-PF AIR PADDER, + 47-PF SILVER MICA.	L1B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 3/16 IN. FROM L1A. L2B: 3-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 3/8 IN. FROM L2A. L3B: 8-7/8 TURNS No. 26, SPACED 5/32 IN. FROM L3A.

NOTES:
ALL COILS WOUND WITH ENAMELED WIRE ON $1\frac{1}{4}$-INCH DIAMETER POLYSTYRENE 5-PIN PLUG-IN FORMS, (*ALLIED RADIO 46-Z-696*) TAPS ARE COUNTED FROM BOTTOM END OF COIL.
ON "A" COILS, TURNS SHOULD BE EVENLY SPACED TO LENGTH SPECIFIED; "B" COILS ARE CLOSE-WOUND.
"A" AND "B" COILS ARE WOUND IN SAME DIRECTION.

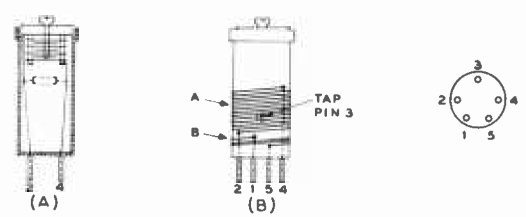


Figure 57

COIL TABLE FOR DELUXE HBR RECEIVER

oscillator coils. Lengths of bare wire are soldered to the rotor and stator terminals of the variable capacitor. The wires pass into pins 2 and 3, with the rotor going to pin 2 (r-f ground) and the stator going to pin 3. Once the wires of the MAPC capacitor are in place, along with the ends of the secondary winding, the pins may be soldered. Before soldering, check that no wires interfere with the rotation of the capacitor and that the capacitor may be turned easily without the rotor binding on the side of the coil form. When soldering is completed, the MAPC capacitor may be wedged in place before cement is applied using a length of toothpick. The fixed padding capacitor of the oscillator coil is mounted between one stator post of the MAPC capacitor and the wire dropping down from the MAPC rotor to pin 2. The assembly of MAPC capacitor and fixed padding capacitor is soldered together before the unit is slipped into the coil form.

When one set of coils is finished, it may be placed in the receiver and the circuits adjusted to the approximate frequencies by means of a grid-dip oscillator.

Receiver Alignment The i-f system of the Deluxe HBR receiver is aligned first, followed by the r-f section. While an experienced builder can align the receiver "by ear", it is recommended that a BC-221 (or LM) frequency meter be used for alignment along with a grid-dip oscillator and a general-coverage receiver. Alignment is done by injecting signals of various frequencies into the receiver and peaking the adjustable capacitors of the tuned circuits for maximum response. If the test signal is modulated with an audio tone, the receiver response may be noted on a high impedance a-c voltmeter placed across the speaker output terminals. If the test signal is unmodulated, the receiver S-meter may be employed, or a vacuum-tube voltmeter placed across the agc line may be used.

I-f Alignment—The receiver bfo is used for alignment of the 85-kHz i-f system. With the "function switch" in the bfo position, the second harmonic of the bfo is adjusted to 170.0 kHz using the low-frequency range of the BC-221 frequency meter. A small amount of signal from the bfo is coupled into the plate circuit of the second mixer tube (V_6) and transformers T_3, T_4, and T_5 adjusted for maximum response. To couple the bfo to the second mixer, run a length of wire from the top of the 7360 socket (remove the tube and probe pin 3) to the mixer. Wrap the wire around the bulb of the mixer. Switch S_3 is set in the SSB position for this procedure. Once the i-f system is aligned to 85 kHz, the bfo may be adjusted for proper c-w and sideband selection. This is done with the BC-221 frequency meter, adjusting the second harmonic of the bfo to 168.4 kHz for *SB1* reception and to 171.6 kHz for *SB2* reception. The bfo is adjusted to 169.2 kHz for c-w reception. Note that SB1 and SB2 alternate between upper and lower sideband. On 80 meters where the high-frequency tuning oscillator is higher than the received signal, upper sideband is reversed from the 20-meter situation, where the tuning oscillator is lower than the received signal.

Once the low-frequency i-f system is aligned, the 1.7-MHz conversion crystal and 6C4 oscillator tube are plugged in and crystal operation is checked by tuning the general coverage receiver to 1.7 MHz and noting stable oscillator operation. Next, the BC-221 is tuned to 1615 kHz and the test signal loosely coupled to the plate of the 6BC5 first mixer (V_2). Transformers T_1 and T_2 are aligned for maximum response at this frequency. Gain controls are retarded to prevent overload as receiver gain rises. Instability may be noted when controls are advanced to a position of maximum gain. The receiver has a large reserve of gain, and with correct alignment, no sign of oscillation will be apparent at normal operational gain levels.

R-f Alignment—R-f alignment is accomplished by adjustment of the various padding capacitors in the plug-in coils, and by varying the inductance of the coils if need be. Two adjustments are necessary—tracking and bandspread. Both of these adjustments are performed on the high-frequency oscillator circuit and are then repeated for the mixer and r-f circuits. The procedure is best carried out first on a low-frequency band, and the 40-meter adjustments are chosen as an example. The alignment chart shows that the proper 40-meter alignment is achieved when the high-frequency oscillator stage tunes the 5.4- to 5.7-MHz range while the r-f and mixer stages tune the 7.0- to 7.3 MHz range. The first step is to adjust the oscillator range for proper bandspread, which is accomplished with the aid of the BC-221 frequency meter. The BC-221 is set to 5.4 MHz and the main tuning dial of the receiver is adjusted so that the tuning capacitor is about 90 percent meshed. Oscillator trimming capacitor C_3 is set at mid-capacitance. Oscillator padding capacitor C_6 (in the coil form) is adjusted until the frequency of the oscillator is 5.4 MHz, as measured on the frequency meter. The dial reading of the receiver is noted and the BC-221 is then set to 5.7 MHz. The main tuning dial of the receiver is adjusted to tune the high-frequency oscillator to the same frequency, which should occur with the tuning capacitor about 10 percent meshed. If it does not, the oscillator padding capacitor (C_6) should be readjusted to properly place the 5.7-MHz checkpoint on the receiver dial. If the padder must be increased in capacitance to align the circuit to 5.7 MHz, it indicates the tap on the oscillator coil is too high and that the portion of the winding between the tap and ground must be spread

CHART 1.

VOLTAGE CHART FOR RECEIVER									
Measurements made with VTVM. All controls ½ advanced except r-f gain which is fully advanced. Q-multiplier on boost, Function switch on SB2, avc on fast, Noise limiter on.									
TUBE	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V_1	−0.4	0.9	6.3	0	125	125	0.9	—	—
V_2	0	4.25	6.3	0	240	125	4.25	—	—
V_3	−4.1	0	6.3	0	50	88	0	—	—
V_4	—	250	—	280	—	280	—	250	—
V_5	−0.3	31	6.3	0	235	215	0	—	—
V_6	0	31	6.3	0	240	220	31	—	—
V_7	110	—	6.3	0	110	−15	0	—	—
V_8	230	0	2.8	0	0	−0.7	−0.5	0	6.3
V_9	−0.26	31	6.3	0	240	225	31	—	—
V_{10}	−0.26	31	6.3	0	240	225	31	—	—
V_{11}	240	165	6.3	0	240	0.12	240	—	—
V_{12}	7.6	110	−1.8	6.3	0	76	24	20	20
V_{13}	−34	0	6.3	0	150	72	0	—	—
V_{14}	230	0	16	0	0	74	0	2.7	6.3
V_{15}	0	12.8	6.3	0	235	235	0	—	—
V_{16}	0	−0.7	−0.3	0	0	235	0	7	6.3
V_{17}	0.13	−0.3	0	6.3	0	0.13	13.2	−7.6	9.1
V_{18}	−0.26	4.1	6.3	0	235	235	4.1	—	—

slightly apart to decrease the inductance. If the padder must be decreased in capacitance, it indicates that the tap on the coil is too low, and therefore the portion of the winding between tap and ground must be bunched together to raise the inductance. By slight adjustment of the lower portion of the oscillator coil winding, the 5.4-MHz and 5.7-MHz points may be placed near the ends of the tuning dial, and the proper coverage is positioned on the dial without necessitating readjustment of the padding capacitor in the oscillator coil. If more or less bandspread is desired, the tap on the coil may be moved a fraction of a turn, changing the inductance of the winding below the tap.

Once the oscillator circuit tracks across the appropriate range, the mixer tube may be placed in its socket, along with mixer coil, L_2. The BC-221 frequency meter is adjusted to 7.0 MHz and the receiver dial tuned to the 5.4-MHz oscillator point. The test signal should be heard in the receiver, and the detector padding capacitor adjusted for maximum response. The signal generator is now set to 7.3 MHz and the receiver dial tuned to the 5.7-MHz oscillator point. The detector padding capacitor is readjusted for maximum response, noting whether the capacitance is increased or decreased. The winding below the tap of the mixer coil (L_2) and ground is now adjusted in the fashion described for the oscillator coil until the setting of the padding capacitor remains the same at both ends of the tuning range. This adjustment is repeated with the r-f stage, with the r-f trimming capacitor (C_2) set at mid-scale. With due care, the whole alignment operation should take less than an hour for the first set of coils, and with experience the adjustments to the remaining coils may be done in less time.

CHART 2.

TUNING CHART FOR THE RECEIVER			
Band	Stage	C_1 Max.	C_1 Min.
80	R F. DET. OSC.	3500 3500 5100	4000 4000 5600
40	R.F. DET. OSC.	7000 7000 5400	7300 7300 5700
20	R.F. DET. OSC.	14.0 14.0 6.2	14.35 14.35 6.375
15	R.F DET. OSC.	21.0 21.0 9.7	21.5 21.5 9.95
10	R.F. DET. OSC.	28.0 28.0 13.2	29.7 29.7 14.05

Adjustment of the 20-, 15- and 10-meter coil sets follows the same technique used for the 40- and 80-meter coils, except that the second harmonic of the oscillator frequency is used for signal injection. Even so, the oscillator tuning range should be adjusted at the fundamental frequency with the aid of the frequency meter.

After alignment has been completed, the dial of the receiver may be calibrated. The last step is to cement the coil windings in place. Do not coat the entire winding but use five or six vertical lines of plastic cement to hold the turns in place.

S-meter Adjustment—With the receiver in operation and the 6CB6 (V_{18}) removed from the socket, the sensitivity control is adjusted to permit full-scale S-meter reading. The 6CB6 is inserted in the socket and (after warmup) the agc switch is set to *off* and the zero-set control adjusted for zero meter reading.

Final Touchup Adjustments—Once the receiver is operating and signals are received, final alignment may be done. Correct adjustment of coils L_1 and L_2 is especially important on the higher-frequency amateur bands. The true indication of proper tracking is the action of the MAPC padding capacitor in the r-f and mixer. Some compensation for misalignment in the r-f stage may be achieved with antenna trimmer capacitor C_2. Maladjustment of the mixer tuned circuit can result in a loss of sensitivity, especially on the 15- and 10-meter bands.

The correct level of first oscillator injection to mixer V_2 determines mixer gain. Coupling capacitor C_7 should be set at the minimum value consistent with maximum strength of a weak signal as read on the S-meter.

Oscillator feedback is determined by the degree of coupling between the primary and secondary windings of coil L_3. Insufficient feedback may be noted by erratic oscillator operation, frequency instability, or low conversion efficiency in the first mixer stage. Excessive feedback is characterized by a hissing or "squegging" sound on received signals, or perhaps by erratic frequency excursions as the oscillator is tuned. Feedback adjustment, however, is not critical and the coil data is optimized for the correct degree of feedback consistent with smooth and proper operation.

Gain and r-f selectivity of the r-f circuits of the receiver may be varied by adjusting the degree of coupling between the primary and secondary windings of mixer coil L_2. The separation between the windings may be increased to ⅝ inch to prevent overloading by strong signals and desensitization. The receiver gain will, of course, be reduced accordingly. A reduction in the number of turns of the antenna winding of coil L_1 may be helpful in some cases.

Because of the open construction of the Deluxe HBR receiver and the use of plug-in coils, it is the "experimenter's delight" and many interesting variations and modifications may be done to the basic receiver once it is operating properly. The receiver is a valuable addition to the station of an active amateur.

CHAPTER TWENTY-SEVEN

Low-Power Transmitters and Exciters

The transmitter is the "heart" of the amateur station. Various forms of amplifiers and power supplies may be used in conjunction with basic exciter "building blocks" to form complete transmitting systems which satisfy a wide range of needs. Several different types of low-power transmitting equipment for the hf and vhf range are described in this chapter along with a version of the electronic key. For the experimenter who is interested in the construction phase of amateur radio, these units should offer interesting ideas and techniques which might well fit in with the over-all design of his basic station equipment. The component nomenclature outlined in figure 1 of the *Receivers and Transceivers* section is employed in the following chapter.

27-1 General Purpose Exciters for 6 and 2 Meters

It is convenient to build vhf equipment in small units to achieve greater flexibility, improved shielding, and ease of modification. This concept is demonstrated in these broadband, packaged exciters designed for use in the 50- and 144-MHz amateur bands. The units may also be used for drivers for uhf gear in the higher-frequency region.

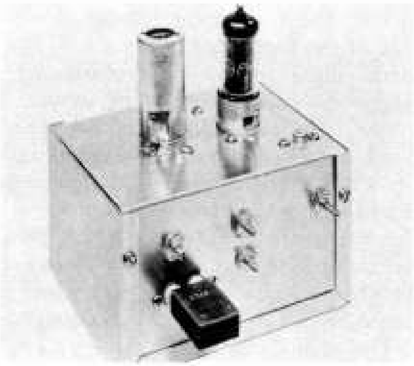


Figure 1

BASIC SIX-METER EXCITER

This broadband 50-MHz exciter delivers 3 watts without retuning over a 1-MHz range and is suitable to drive most high-gain tetrodes of the 100-watt power category. The 6U8A oscillator-multiplier is at the left with the 6CL6 doubler at the right. Directly above the crystal is the oscillator coil (L_1) and to the right are the interstage coils (L_2 and L_3). To the right is doubler coil (L_4). The output jack (J_2) is to the right of the 6CL6.

The 50-MHz exciter delivers about 3 watts and the 144-MHz exciter about 6 watts of power output. This level is sufficient to drive most class-C tetrode amplifiers in the 100-watt power category and some high-gain tetrode tubes up to the half-kilowatt power level.

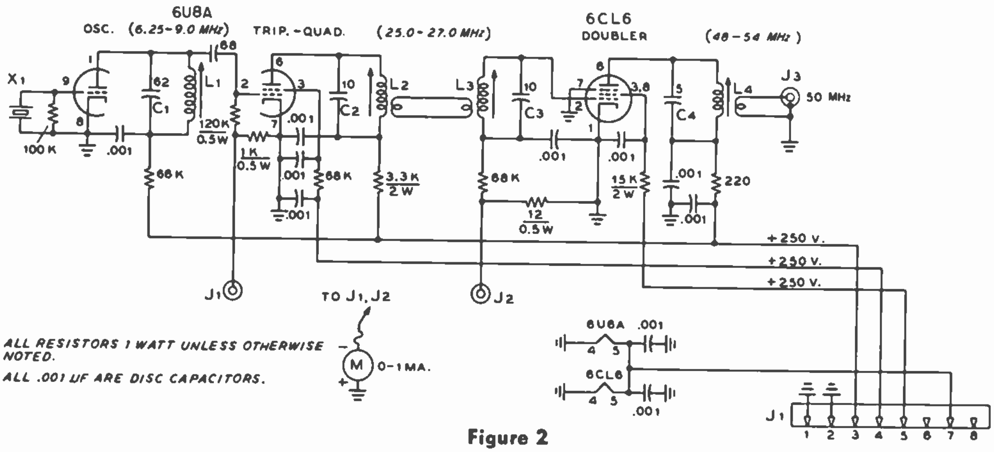


Figure 2

SCHEMATIC OF SIX-METER EXCITER

C_1 thru C_4—Silver-mica capacitors. See figure 4 for coil data. The 12-ohm resistor from test point J_1 to ground shunts meter M to 0- to 5-ma range. Separation between coils L_2 and L_3 is about ¼ inch. Either link coil may have to be reversed to obtain maximum grid drive to 6CL6.

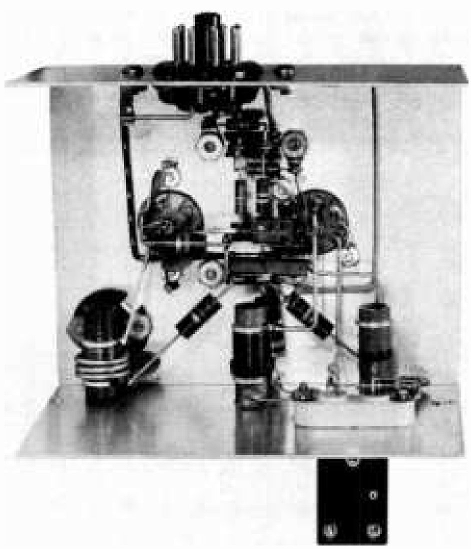


Figure 3

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF SIX-METER EXCITER

Small components are grouped around tube sockets. Common ground connection to lug under bolt of each socket is used. Oscillator coil is at left, L_2 and L_3 at center, and L_4 at right. Link is wound around "cold" end of coils. For use as a transmitter, it is recommended that output link be series tuned to ground with 25-pf capacitor as is done with 2-meter exciter.

The Basic Exciter Circuit The basic single-channel exciter for the 50-MHz band is shown in figure 2. The triode section of a 6U8A is a tuned-plate oscillator for crystals in the range of 6.25 to 9.0 MHz. Figure 4 lists the choice of crystals for each band and the frequencies to which the resonant circuits in each stage are tuned for output in the 50- and 144-MHz bands. A fundamental-frequency type crystal oscillator is used instead of an overtone circuit for improved frequency stability and better c-w keying. The pentode section of the 6U8A serves as a tripler or quadrupler depending on the crystal frequency and the band in which output is desired. The third stage, a 6CL6 pentode, always operates as a frequency doubler. Inductive coupling is used between the frequency-multiplier stages to attenuate the various unwanted harmonic frequencies generated by the multipliers. The r-f output of the 6CL6 doubler is link-coupled to the coaxial output circuit by a small coil wound around the B-plus end of the plate tank coil.

To obtain output in the 144-MHz band a fourth stage—a push-pull 6CL6 frequency tripler—is added to the basic exciter (figure 6). This new stage is inductively coupled to the 6CL6 doubler by a simple bandpass coupler covering the 48.0- to 49.33-MHz range. The plate circuit of the

Figure 4

COIL AND CRYSTAL TABLES FOR VHF EXCITERS

L_1	4.2 to 8.7 µh. 30 turns No. 30 e. close-wound, ⅜" long, wound on ⅜" dia. form, ironcore. *CTC type LS-3, 5 MHz.*
L_2, L_3	1.4 to 2.0 µh. 18 turns No. 22 e. close-wound, ½" long, wound on ⅜" dia. form, ironcore. *CTC type LS-3.*
L_4	0.4 to 0.6 µh. 11 turns No. 22 e. close-wound, ½" long same as L_2.
Link	3 turns No. 16 e., ½" dia., wound over B+ end of L_4.
L_5	Same as L_4, except for center tap.
L_6	0.12µh. 4 turns No. 14 e., ⅝" dia., 1⅜" long, 4 turns per inch, with ⅜" space at center for L_7.
Link	2 turns No. 14 e., ⅝" dia., 3/16" long.

OPERATING FREQUENCY CHART

Output (MHz)	Xtal and L_1-C_1	Mult. L_2-C_2, L_3-C_3	Doubler L_4-C_4, L_5-C_5	Tripler L_6-C_6
50	6.25-6.75 MHz 8.334-9.0 MHz	25.0-27.0 MHz	50.0-54.0 MHz	——
144	6.0-6.166 MHz 8.0-8.222 MHz	24.0-24.66 MHz	48.0-49.33 MHz	144.0-148 MHz

tripler stage is tuned to 144 MHz and output is taken from a pickup link inserted at the center of the plate coil.

Proper operation is monitored by grid-current metering in the various multiplier stages, accomplished with a 0 to 1-ma d-c meter. The metering circuit provides a full scale reading of 1 ma at test point J_1 and 5 ma at J_2 and J_3. The screen voltage for the multiplier stages has been brought out to separate pins on the power receptacle so that these circuits may be used for power control, or may be keyed for c-w operation.

Exciter Construction Each basic exciter is built on a small aluminum chassis box which provides good shielding and easy access to the under-chassis wiring. A 4" × 5" × 3" box is used for the 50-MHz exciter. All components are mounted on the half of the box which forms an open-end chassis as shown in the photographs. A similar parts layout is followed for the 144-MHz exciter except that a 5" × 7" × 3" box is used to provide additional space for the tripler stage.

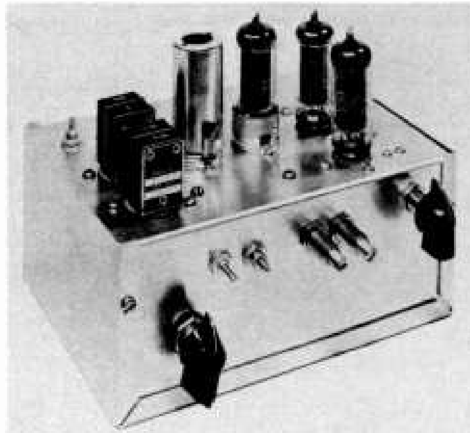


Figure 5

BASIC TWO-METER EXCITER

Push-pull 6CL6 (or 6360) tripler stage is added to exciter of figure 2 to reach 2 meters. Crystal switch and multiple crystal sockets are added. Panel controls (l. to r.) are: crystal switch, coils L_2 and L_3, coils L_4 and L_5, and plate-tuning capacitor C_6. Separate oscillator coils are used for each crystal and are mounted behind the two octal sockets used as crystal mounts.

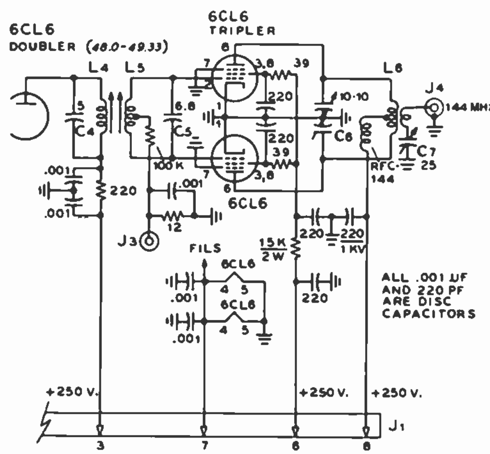


Figure 6

PUSH-PULL-6CL6 TRIPLER STAGE

C_5—Silver mica
C_6—Johnson 160-211
See figure 4 for coil data.

Sockets and other components are positioned to permit very short interconnections. The coils in the bandpass coupler in the grid circuit of the tripler stage (L_4-L_5) are placed on a small angle bracket mounted between the two 6CL6 tripler sockets and the driver tube socket. The coils are spaced ⅝" center-to-center and are mounted ¾" below the chassis. A second small angle bracket supports the 144-MHz tripler plate-tuning capacitor.

Extension shafts for the tripler tuning adjustments brought out through the front of the chassis are made from 1½" lengths of ¼" diameter brass rod. A tapped hole for a 6-32 screw is placed in one end of two of the rods and a screwdriver slot is cut in the opposite end. After the coils have been mounted to the bracket, a 6-32 nut is run on the slug shafts and a brass extension threaded on each coil shaft and locked in position by the nut. The shaft is supported in position by a panel bushing.

The tripler plate-circuit tuning capacitor (C_6) has a 3/16" diameter shaft and the extension for this control is attached to it by a special coupling made of a short length of ⅜" diameter brass rod, drilled at one end for the capacitor shaft and at the other end for the panel shaft. The coupling is soldered to the panel shaft and is drilled and tapped for a set screw for the smaller shaft.

All disc ceramic capacitors are placed in position with the shortest possible lead length and those units which bypass the screen-grid terminals in the various stages should be connected between the screen and cathode (ground) pins of the respective tube socket. Most resistors are soldered between socket pins and tie-point terminals. Power leads are run close to the chassis to reduce r-f pickup.

Exciter Adjustment *The 50-MHz Exciter*—The exciter is adjusted for broadband operation between 50 and 51 MHz. Two crystals at approximately 8.375 and 8.450 MHz (output frequencies of 50.25 and 50.7 MHz respectively) are used for initial adjustment. After the wiring has been checked, power is applied to the 6U8A tube. The negative terminal of a 0 to 1-ma d-c meter is connected to test point J_1 and the positive terminal of the meter is grounded. The slug of oscillator coil L_1 is tuned for maximum meter indication (about 0.3 ma). Adjust the slug so that the oscillator starts immediately each time plate voltage is applied.

Screen voltage is next applied to the multiplier section of the 6U8A and the 6CL6 is placed in its socket. The 8.45-MHz crystal is substituted for the 8.375-MHz unit and the slug in coil L_2 is adjusted for maximum 6CL6 grid current (about 1.3 ma). This step is followed by adjustment of the slug of coil L_3 for maximum grid current using the 8.375-MHz crystal. Switching crystals back and forth and adjusting

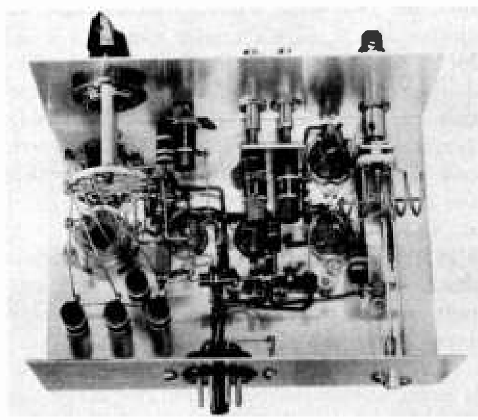


Figure 7

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF TWO-METER EXCITER

Crystal switch, multiple crystal sockets, and oscillator plate coils are at the left. Switch is a 2-pole, 4-position ceramic deck; one pole switching the crystals and the other pole switching the coils. Broadband circuit L_4-L_5 is mounted on bracket near the center of the chassis, with 6CL6 tripler sockets at right. Air-wound tank coil L_6 and butterfly tuning capacitor are at right.

the slugs of coils L_2 and L_3 will permit substantially constant 6CL6 grid current to be measured at test point J_2 across the appropriate frequency range.

The next step is to connect a suitable dummy load, such as four #47 pilot lamps (6.3-volt, brown bead) in parallel to output receptacle J_3 and apply all screen and plate voltages to the exciter. The slug of plate coil L_4 is adjusted for maximum bulb brilliance. Using various crystals in the proper range, the exciter coils may now be repeaked to provide nearly constant power output from the exciter across the lower 1-MHz portion of the six-meter band.

When the 50-MHz exciter is coupled to the grid circuit of a succeeding amplifier through a short length of coaxial line, plate coil L_4 should be readjusted so that maximum drive to the amplifier occurs at about 50.3 MHz. If the amplifier grid tank is then resonated for maximum drive at about 50.6 MHz, little variation in drive will be noticed over the 1-MHz operating range.

The 144-MHz Exciter—The procedure outlined for the 50-MHz exciter is followed for the 144-MHz exciter, with the plate circuit of the 6U8A tripler tuned to 24.15 MHz and the grid circuit of the 6CL6 doubler tuned to 24.45 MHz. The plate circuit of the 6CL6 is tuned to 48.3 MHz, (crystal frequency of 8.05 MHz). The grid coil of the push-pull tripler stage is peaked for maximum grid current (about 2.5 ma) at 48.9 MHz (crystal frequency of 8.15 MHz). This staggered-tuning adjustment should result in little variation of grid current in either the doubler or tripler stages over the range of 144 to 148 MHz.

The tripler plate tuning capacitor (C_6) is resonated to the operating frequency and should be retuned each time a shift in frequency greater than 200 kHz is made.

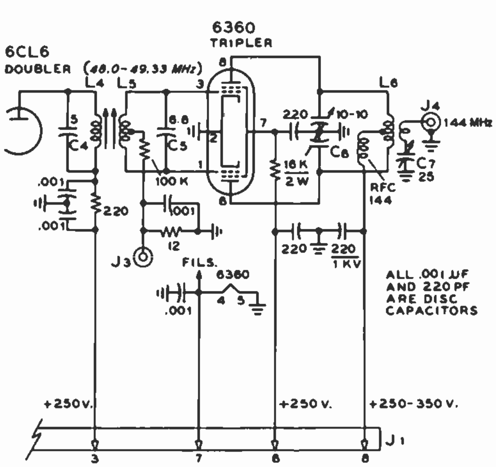


Figure 8

ALTERNATIVE 6360 TRIPLER CIRCUIT

The power output of either exciter is ample to drive any of the popular twin beam-power tubes designed for operation in the vhf spectrum (832A, 829B, 815, 5894, etc.). Sufficient drive also exists for a single 4X150A, 4CX250B, or 4CX300A tetrode at a power level up to several hundred watts.

The 6360 Frequency Multiplier A single 6360 double tetrode may be substituted for the push-pull 6CL6 multiplier stage (figure 8). Higher plate voltage—up to 350 volts—may be applied to the 6360, provided that this voltage is applied only to this stage and not to the rest of the exciter. Power output of the 6360 will be about 10 watts at the higher plate potential.

27-2 A 175-Watt SSB Exciter

Building a single-sideband exciter or transmitter is simpler and less expensive than construction of a-m equipment of equivalent power rating. Physically, the SSB exciter can be made more compact and lighter in weight for an equivalent degree of "talk power" as compared to the a-m equipment. The wide acceptance of SSB has produced suitable inexpensive parts and components so that it is now no longer difficult or expensive to build and align a high-quality SSB exciter. Only the simplest of test equipment is required and the use of a commercial crystal sideband filter in the exciter eliminates critical circuit adjustment and tinkering. In addition, the sideband suppression may be easily optimized and spurious responses attenuated to a great degree.

The exciter described in this section (figure 9) is of a proven design and is recommended to those experimenters wishing to build their first piece of sideband transmitting equipment.

The Exciter Circuit This filter-type exciter incorporates all the desirable features of more expensive exciters, covering the amateur bands between 10 and 80 meters with a minimum of controls and adjustments. The output stage utilizes a pair of highly linear 6550 tetrode tubes run at a

Figure 9

SIDEBAND EXCITER PACKS PLENTY OF PUNCH!

This custom-built exciter provides 175 watts PEP input for SSB or c-w operation between 3.5 and 29.5 MHz. The homemade cabinet is spray painted light gray while the panel is painted two-tone grey. The main tuning dial is to the right of the slide-rule dial plate assembly. The three controls below the dial are (l. to r.): r-f level (R_4), amplifier plate tuning (C_{14}), and amplifier loading (C_{15}). The band-selector switch is centered below the plate tuning control, with the grid tuning control (C_8) and key jack on opposite sides. At the lower left is the sideband-selector switch (S_1) with the carrier-injection potentiometer (R_3-S_2) directly underneath. Audio gain control (R_1) is above the microphone jack. The a-c power switch is at the far right, next to the three-position function switch (S_3). Bandswitch has two ten-meter positions for two 500-kHz segments.

PEP input of about 175 watts. A block diagram of the exciter is shown in figure 10.

The sideband generator is designed around a 9-MHz crystal lattice filter and consists of a 7360 oscillator/balanced modulator (V_7) with a 12AX7 speech amplifier (V_1) modulating one deflection plate of the 7360. The sideband filter has low-impedance input and output terminations and is link-coupled to the output circuit of the balanced modulator. The filter drives a 6BA6 i-f amplifier stage (V_2) to bring the signal up to the proper mixing level. Two carrier crystals in the grid circuit of the 7360 oscillator section permit sideband selection.

The 9-MHz SSB signal is coupled to the #2 grid of a 6BA7 mixer (V_8), and here it is combined with the 5.5- to 5.0-MHz output of a very stable vfo. The difference product of these two signals is used as the basic exciter frequency range of 3.5 to 4.0 MHz, which appears in the plate circuit of the mixer stage. All the higher amateur bands are derived by mixing this SSB signal with an auxiliary crystal oscillator. The output from the 6BA7 mixer is bandpass coupled to a 12BY7A (V_3) which operates as an amplifier on the 80-meter band and as a second mixer for all the higher-frequency bands. The mixing oscillator is a 6C4 (V_{10}) whose output is always higher in frequency than the desired mixer product. A second 12BY7A (V_4) serves as the driver stage for the two parallel connected 6550 tetrode amplifier tubes. The 6550 tubes are chosen to provide the required power output with the minimum degree of intermodulation distortion. The measured third- and

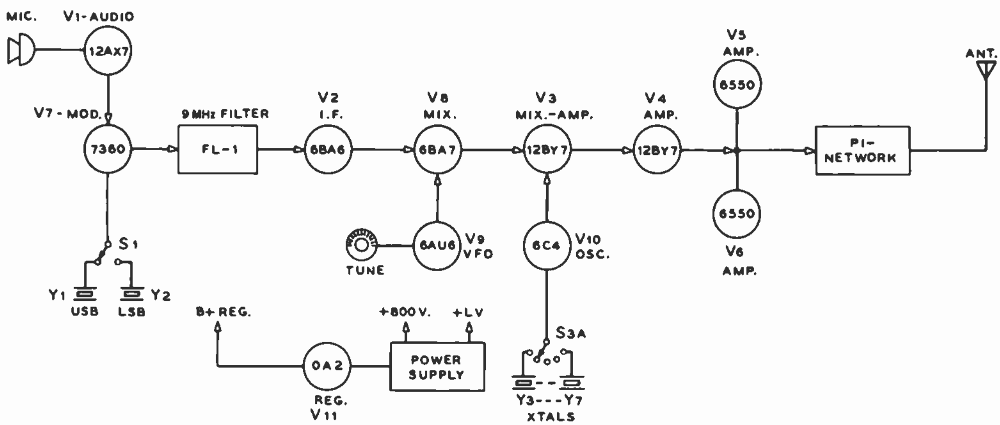


Figure 10

BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE SSB EXCITER

A 9-MHz crystal lattice filter and 7360 oscillator/mixer simplify circuitry and provide superior results in this compact SSB exciter. Covering the amateur bands between 80 and 10 meters, the exciter utilizes two low-distortion type 6550 tubes in the linear amplifier stage. A double-conversion circuit is used, with the vfo covering the range of 5.5 to 5.0 MHz for 80-meter operation. A second, crystal-controlled conversion oscillator mixes the SSB signal for operation on the higher-frequency bands. A solid-state power supply provides all d-c voltages for the exciter.

fifth-order distortion products of these tubes under the given operating parameters run better than 30 decibels below one tone of a two-tone test signal. This degree of distortion is 5 to 10 decibels less than other small tetrodes of the same power capability.

Spurious products are reduced by incorporation of a low-pass filter (L_4, L_5, and associated capacitors) in the output circuit of the vfo stage to suppress the second and higher order harmonics of the oscillator. In addition, careful design of the various tuned circuits ensures that unwanted "birdies" are held to the very minimum.

The exciter is activated by two relays which are energized by a push-to-talk switch on the microphone. All tuning adjustments are accomplished with a single meter that measures the cathode current of the final amplifier, plus an auxiliary grid-current meter. A three-position *function switch* (S_7A-B) enables the operator to zero-in on a chosen frequency without placing an interfering signal on the air or without disabling his receiver. The *zero* position of switch S_7 also disables the microphone circuit so that the exciter cannot be accidentally turned on in this mode. A second position (c-w) of the function switch provides c-w operation (with carrier injection) and the third position (*PTT*) places the exciter in readiness for push-to-talk voice operation.

The power supply makes use of a low-cost TV-type replacement transformer in a bridge circuit utilizing inexpensive silicon diode rectifiers. The center tap of the transformer is utilized for the necessary lower d-c voltages. Regulated voltage for the various oscillators is provided by an OA2 regulator tube and a separate zener diode regulated supply provides operating bias for the 6550 amplifier tubes. The complete schematic of the exciter is shown in figure 11.

Exciter Layout The general layout of the exciter may be seen in the various photographs (figures 12 and 15). An 11" × 17" × 3" steel chassis is used for the foundation. The final amplifier assembly above the chassis is inclosed in a three-sided inclosure measuring about 7½" long by 4½" deep by 6" high. The sides are made from perforated aluminum sheet. A two-sided L-shaped aluminum dust cover completes the inclosure.

Under the chassis, the vfo components are inclosed in a U-shaped shield made of light aluminum sheet measuring about 4" square and 2¾" high. The tuned circuits and 6AU6 socket are mounted on a heavy ⅛" thick aluminum plate measuring 4" × 5" mounted atop the chassis above the aluminum shield. The shield has ¼" lips bent on all sides to fasten it to the chassis and to the side apron of the chassis. The balanced modulator and speech amplifier tubes are at the opposite end of the chassis, and their under-chassis components are contained within an L-shaped aluminum inclosure at the panel. The design of the bandswitch assembly, placed at the center of the chassis, is shown in figure 13A.

The final amplifier tube sockets are mounted on a sheet of perforated aluminum which is bolted above a cutout in the chassis to permit good circulation of air past the sockets and envelopes of the tubes. The leads from the tap on the amplifier plate coil (L_{20}) pass down through a slot cut in the chassis to the ceramic bandswitch segment (S_6A-B) which is driven by the main bandswitch assembly. The switch segment is fastened to the back apron of the chassis and is connected to the bandswitch by a phenolic shaft extension.

A small U-shaped aluminum shield is placed across the center of the 6550 sockets to isolate the plate parasitic chokes and leads from the nearby grid wiring. The shield forms a compartment about an inch wide over the sockets, as can be seen in the under-chassis photograph (figure 15). To minimize heat under the chassis the 40K, 20-watt high-voltage bleeder resistors are mounted in a vertical position above the chassis by means of a long bolt placed vertically in the rear corner of the final amplifier inclosure. The 650-ohm, 25-watt resistor in the B-plus voltage dropping network is mounted in the same manner to the outside of the amplifier inclosure near the high-voltage filter choke.

The most critical assembly of any good SSB exciter is the vfo which must have rigid construction and use the best available parts for the job. Silver mica padding capacitors, a ceramic tube socket and a precision tuning capacitor ensure the stability of this unit. The tuning capacitor is taken from the amplifier section of a "surplus" AN/ARC-5 (SCR-274N) transmitter (any model). It has wide plate spacing, glass bead insulation, and a smooth worm gear drive that lends itself very nicely to the assembly of a simple home-made slide rule dial. The vfo coil is a section of *miniductor* stock securely cemented to a ¼" thick square of *plexiglas* which is solidly mounted on two ceramic pillars inside the vfo shield compartment. The coil is placed to one side of the chassis away from sources of heat.

The Main Bandswitch Assembly The assembly details of a typical bandswitch and coil section are shown in figure 13A. The coils and associated padding capacitors are preassembled to the shield plate and wired before the plate is mounted to the chassis. Although the bandswitch shaft is positioned along the centerline of the chassis, the switch wafers are placed slightly off center on the partition (see illustration) to allow space for the ganged APC capacitors (C_8A-B). These capacitors are insulated from the partition (ground) and from each other, and are ganged with insulated flexible couplings to the panel control. As each set of coils is identical for any one band and is wired to the switch section in an identical manner on each partition, a satisfactory degree of tracking is achieved by the use of parallel padding capacitors. These capacitors are mounted near the top lip of each shield partition. Isolating the two APC capacitors avoids a possible source of undesired interstage coupling caused by circulating ground currents. The crystal oscillator coils are mounted on the front side of the partition nearest the panel, with leads from the switch wafer left long enough to be attached to the tube and crystal socket beneath the bandswitch catacomb.

The Dial Assembly The slide-rule dial is patterned after a "short-wave style" dial and is made from a flat plate of aluminum mounted to triangular brackets that fasten it to the chassis. The center of the plate is cut out leaving a rectangular hole, and a sheet of clear *plexiglas* (spray-painted white on the front) is fastened to

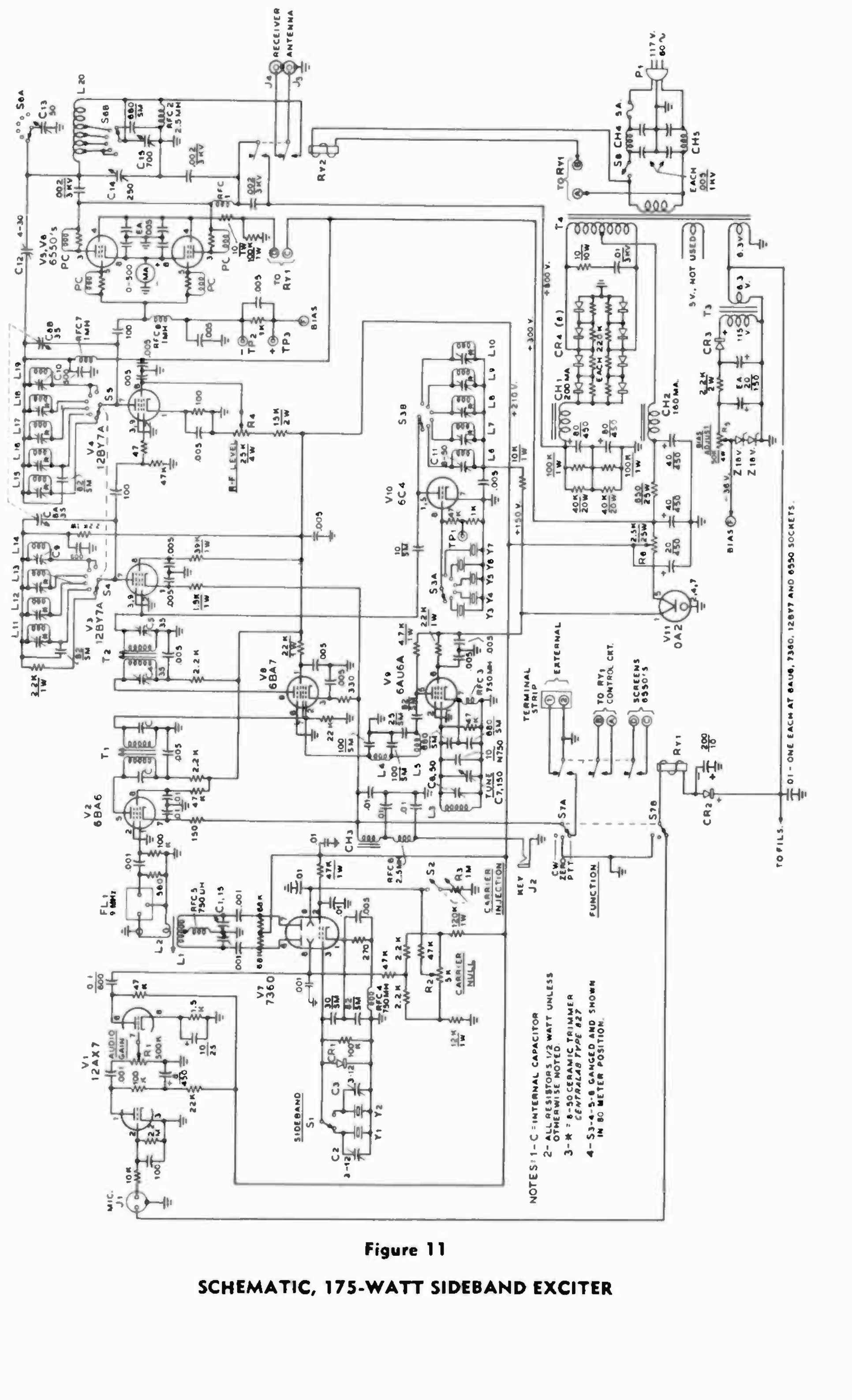


Figure 11

SCHEMATIC, 175-WATT SIDEBAND EXCITER

PARTS LIST FOR FIGURE 11

C_1—15-pf differential capacitor. Johnson 160-308
C_2, C_3, C_9, C_{10}—12-pf ceramic capacitor. Centralab 822
C_4, C_5—35 pf Hammarlund MAPC
C_6, C_{13}—50 pf Hammarlund APC
C_7—150-pf tuning capacitor from ARC-5 transmitter
C_8A-B—35-pf Hammarlund APC ganged with insulated coupling
C_{11}—50-pf ceramic capacitor. Centralab 827
C_{12}—30-pf ceramic capacitor. Centralab 822
C_{13}—50-pf APC padder for 3.5 MHz
C_{14}—250-pf, 0.024" spacing. Bud 1859
C_{15}—365-pf per section. Miller 2112
CR_1—1N34A
CR_2, CR_3—1N1695 (400-v. PRV, 600 ma)
CR_4—Eight diodes, four per leg. 1N4005 (600-v. PRV, 1 amp)
CH_1—5H, 200 ma. Stancor C-1646
CH_2—5H, 150 ma. Stancor C-1710
CH_3—Low-inductance choke (primary winding of 50L6 output transformer)
CH_4, CH_5—Line filter choke. Miller 5218, or 18 turns # 16 e. 3/8" diameter, 1½" long
MA—0-500 d-c milliammeter. Simpson 2" Wide-vue
PC—Parasitic suppressor. 100-ohm, 1-watt resistor, wound with 4 turns # 18 enam.
RFC_1—2.5 mH, 300 ma. National R-300U
RFC_2, RFC_6—2.5 mH, 100 ma. National R-100
RFC_3, RFC_4, RFC_5—750 μH. National R-33
RFC_7—1 mH, 100 ma. Miller 4652
S_3, S_4, S_5, S_6—Bandswitch. Four Centralab PA-2 ceramic decks, each two-pole six-position, with Index Assembly PA-301
T_1—10.7-MHz i-f transformer (tune to 9 MHz). Miller 1463
T_2—Bandpass transformer (3.5—4.0 MHz). See figure 13B
T_3—6.3 volts, 1 ampere. Wire in reverse
T_4—800-volt c.t., 200 ma; 6.3 volt, 5 ampere; Stancor PC-8412
Y_1—8998.5 kHz (McCoy)
Y_2—9001.5 kHz (McCoy)
Y_3—11.000 MHz for 40-meter operation
Y_4—18.000 MHz for 20-meter operation
Y_5—25.000 MHz for 15-meter operation
Y_6—32.500 MHz for 10-meter operation (28.5-29 MHz)
Y_7—33.000 MHz for 10-meter operation (29.0-29.5 MHz)
Z—18-volt, 1-watt zener diode. 1N4746A
Note: Bandswitch has two 10-meter positions.

the rear of the plate with 4-40 bolts or "pop" rivets. A slider moves along the smooth top edge of the plate and carries the pointer over the dial face. A dial cord is attached to a drum mounted on the large gear of the vfo tuning capacitor and drives the pointer via small dial pulleys taken from an obsolete slide rule dial. As the gear moves almost 360 degrees for 180 degree rotation of the capacitor, a 2½" diameter drum will provide almost 7" of pointer travel. The dial cord passes around the bottom of the dial face on idler pulleys placed at the corners, then back to the vfo cord drum.

Wiring and Testing the Exciter It is prudent to wire the exciter in sections and to get one section at a time in working order before proceeding to the next section. It is suggested that the speech amplifier, 7360 stage, and 9-MHz amplifier be wired and tested first. The next step would be to wire and test the vfo, first mixer, and 12BY7A amplifier. An auxiliary power supply can be utilized for these tests. Next, the crystal oscillator, driver, and final amplifier stages are wired and tested, followed by completion of the power-supply and control wiring. If the power transformer is not mounted until the last step, it will be quite simple to move the unit about as the weight of the exciter (less the transformer) is quite small.

After the exciter is assembled and wired, a voltage check should be made. The schematic shows various voltages derived from the B-plus divider network. The no-load high voltage is approximately 800 volts, dropping to about 750 volts with a 200-ma load. The 12BY7A driver tube operates at 300 volts, as do the screens of the 6550 tubes. The vfo and crystal oscillator receive regulated voltage from the OA2, and all other stages are supplied from the 210 volt tap of the supply network. Bias for the final amplifier is regulated at −36 volts by means of the zener diodes.

Oscillator Alignment—The vfo may be adjusted to the 5.5- to 5.0-MHz range by loosely coupling it to the station receiver and checking the tuning range against the receiver. Better yet, a BC-221 (LM) frequency meter may be used. Alternatively, alignment may be checked by placing the bandswitch in the 80-meter position and listening for the mixed signal in the 80-meter range. The values of inductance and capacitance given for the vfo tuned circuit allow slightly more than 500-kHz coverage and the optimum frequency placement on the main tuning dial is done by adjusting

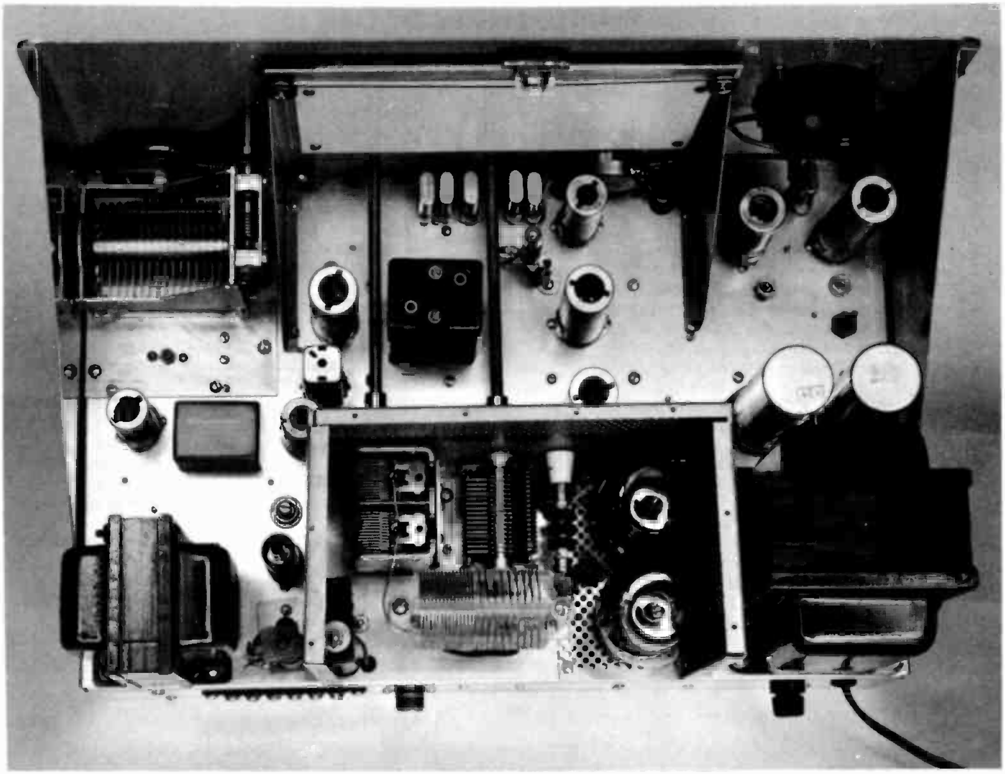


Figure 12

TOP VIEW OF SIDEBAND EXCITER CHASSIS

Layout and placement of the major above-chassis components may be seen in this photograph. The vfo tuning capacitor is mounted at the corner of the chassis with the dial drive cord passing over idler pulleys placed on the back corners of the dial assembly. Directly behind the dial assembly are the conversion oscillator and associated crystals. The two tubes located below the panel meter are the balanced modulator (right) and the speech amplifier, with the two sideband-selector crystals next to the front panel. Between these components and the high-voltage filter capacitors are located the screwdriver adjustment of the chassis-mounted modulator balance controls and the slug adjustment of the balanced modulator plate coil (L_1). The two 12BY7A tubes are in line with the 6C4 crystal oscillator, just in front of the final amplifier inclosure.

Between the two extension shafts for the final amplifier pi-network capacitors is the 80-meter bandpass transformer, with the 6BA7 mixer tube to the left. The 6AU6 vfo tube is behind the ARC-5 type tuning capacitor, next to the crystal filter, with the 6BA6 i-f amplifier tube and transformer to the right. The OA2 voltage-regulator tube is adjacent to the high-voltage filter choke, with the bias control potentiometer (R_3) next to it.

the padding capacitor (C_6) in the oscillator circuit.

The conversion oscillator is adjusted by proper tuning of the plate circuit, checking oscillation with a low-range voltmeter placed at the test point (TP_1) in the grid circuit of the 6C4 oscillator. The voltmeter reading indicates the degree of crystal activity. Once adjusted to frequency, this circuit requires no further attention. The upper or lower sideband is selected by *sideband switch* S_1 and the trimmer capacitor across the crystal in use is adjusted to place the oscillator frequency at the correct point on the slope of the sideband filter. This is done by monitoring the signal from the filter and adjusting the proper trimmer for natural sound of voice modulation.

Modulator Alignment—The alignment is accomplished with the aid of a vacuum-tube

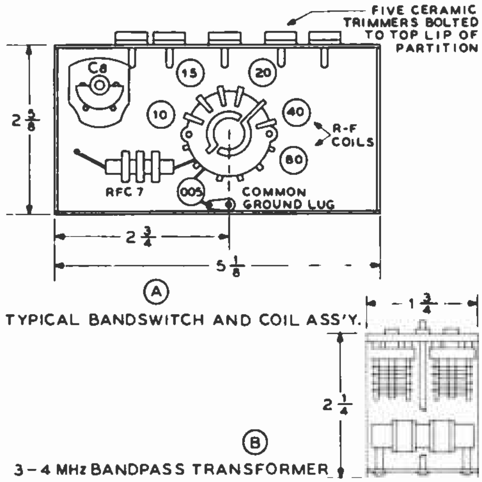


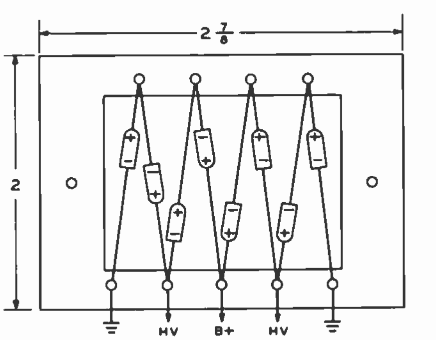
Figure 13

A—Bandswitch and coil assembly. Two assemblies are required. The partition is made of light sheet aluminum with 1/4" lips bent on all sides to mount it to the chassis and side supports. The rotor of capacitor C_8 is insulated from ground and joined to the similar capacitor on the opposite partition with an insulated coupler. The rotor is grounded to a common ground (ground lug at the bottom of the partition, below the bandswitch). The switch segment is mounted with 4-40 bolts and metal spacers to the partition with a similar size section of copper-clad phenolic circuit board spaced 1/2" behind it. The ground connections of the various coils are returned to this board, which is grounded to the common ground lug by a short flexible lead.

B—Bandpass transformer assembly. The two MAPC 35-pf capacitors are mounted on a phenolic board 1 3/4" x 1 1/2". The double coil is wound on two 1/2" diameter lengths of polystyrene tubing slipped over a 3/8" diameter polystyrene rod. Each section of tubing is 1/2" long, and the spacing between the coils is 3/8". The primary winding (plate) is 55 turns, #30 enam., bank-wound over 1/4" length. The secondary winding (grid) is 45 turns, #30 enam., wound in similar fashion. A piece of phenolic board the same size as the top mounting board supports the coils by means of 4-40 bolts and spacers. Two long 6-32 bolts join the sections and secure them to the shield can. The construction is similar to that of an air-tuned I-f transformer. Adjustment of the bandwidth is made by varying the spacing between the two windings.

voltmeter having an r-f probe. The probe is placed at the input terminal of the sideband filter, and the differential capacitor (C_1) in the 7360 circuit is set for balanced capacitance. The *balance* potentiometer (R_2) is set near the center of its range. With the *carrier-injection* potentiometer (R_3) turned on and advanced, a small reading will be evident on the v.t.v.m. The slug of the balanced modulator coil (L_1) is adjusted for maximum reading. The probe is next moved to the #2 grid (pin 7) of the 6BA7 mixer (V_x). *Function switch* S_7 is placed in the *zero* position to close the cathode circuit of the 6BA6 amplifier stage and the slugs of transformer T_1 are tuned to achieve a maximum indicated signal level of 6 to 10 volts. To adjust carrier suppression, the *carrier* switch (S_2) is turned off (the v.t.v.m. reading should drop considerably) and the *carrier null* potentiometer (R_2) is adjusted for minimum meter reading. Differential capacitor C_1 will affect the suppression, and these two controls should be adjusted alternately for the minimum possible meter reading.

Bandpass Transformer Alignment—Bandpass transformer T_2 is aligned with the bandswitch placed in the 80-meter position and with the r-f probe placed at the plate (pin 9) of the 6BA7 mixer tube (V_8). The exciter vfo is adjusted for a carrier frequency of 3.5 MHz (vfo frequency of 5.5 MHz) and carrier is inserted to obtain a meter reading. The primary capacitor (C_4)



PHENOLIC OR FIBERGLAS SHEET - CENTER CUT OUT.
RESISTORS MOUNTED ON BACK OF BOARD.

Figure 14

DIODE RECTIFIER ASSEMBLY

The eight silicon diodes are mounted on the phenolic board by means of brass eyelets. The 220K equalizing resistors are mounted on the reverse side of the board in parallel with each diode. The assembly is mounted below the power transformer on the side apron of the chassis by means of 6-32 bolts and spacers. A cutout is made in the apron of the chassis in line with the assembly for proper cooling and ventilation.

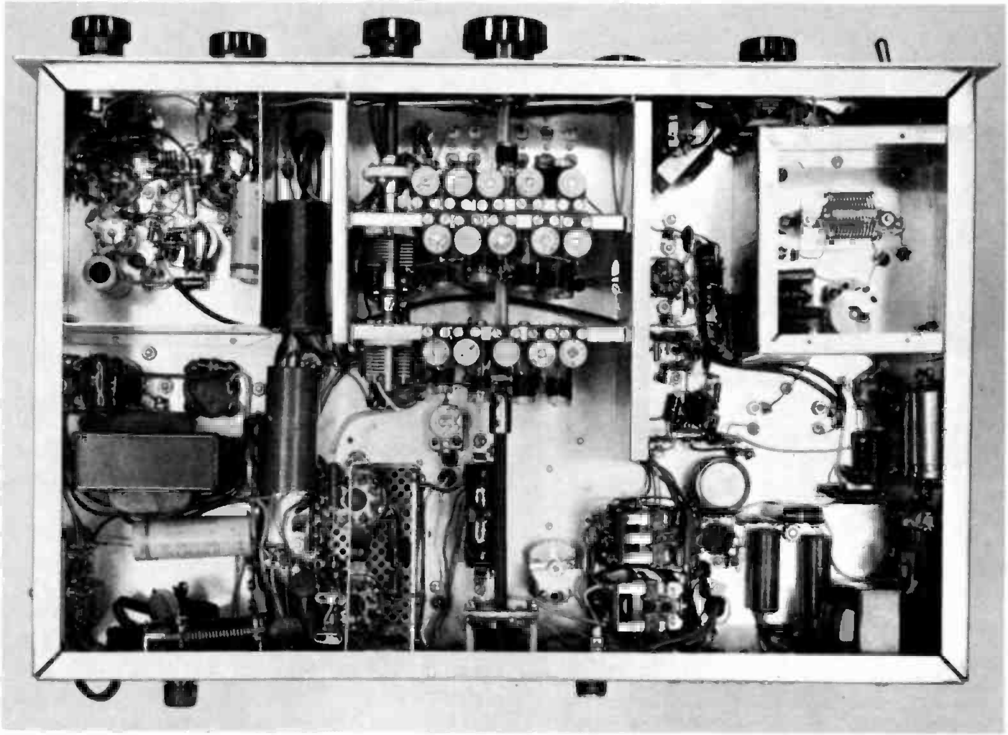


Figure 15

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF SSB EXCITER

The bandswitch catacomb occupies the front-center of the under-chassis area. The bandswitch assembly is fastened to the front apron of the chassis with the switch segments mounted on the shield partitions as shown in figure 13. Two sideplates complete the assembly. The final amplifier pi-network switch segment is mounted on the rear apron of the chassis and is driven by a phenolic extension shaft and metal coupling. The balanced modulator and speech amplifier components are placed in an L-shaped shield at the left front of the chassis area. Connection between the modulator plate tank circuit and the sideband filter (right of chassis) is made via a length of RG-174/U coaxial cable, seen as a black line running across the chassis. The bottom plate of the vfo compartment has been removed to show the placement of the oscillator coil and padding capacitor, which may be adjusted from the top of the chassis.

The silicon-diode rectifiers in the power supply are mounted on a phenolic board placed on the left apron of the chassis, near the rear corner. The final amplifier tube sockets are mounted on a small rectangle of perforated aluminum to provide ample ventilation, with a U-shaped shield seen on-edge around the plate pins and parasitic chokes. To the right of the final amplifier bandswitch segment are the two control relays, with the 80-meter amplifier padding capacitor between the relays and the bandswitch. The bias transformer and filter capacitors are at the rear of the chassis to the right of the relays.

of the transformer is adjusted for maximum meter reading. The probe is now moved to the grid (pin 2) of the 12BY7A amplifier/mixer (V_3) and the transmitter vfo is adjusted for a carrier frequency of 4.0 MHz (vfo frequency of 5.0 MHz). With carrier injection, the secondary capacitor (C_5) of the transformer is tuned for maximum meter reading. When the dial is tuned across the 80-meter band the voltmeter reading should remain relatively constant, indicating proper alignment of the bandpass circuit.

Amplifier Alignment—The plate circuit of the 12BY7A amplifier/mixer is untuned for 80-meter operation and the remaining alignment on this band is accomplished with

L_1, L_2	Balanced modulator coil. 12 bifilar turns (24 in all) No. 24 e. ½" dia., 1 1/16" long on *National XR-50* form. Link: 4 turns No. 24 e around center of L_1.
L_3	5.0-5.5 MHz vfo coil. 12 turns No. 20, ¾" dia., ⅞" long. (*Air-Dux 616T*.)
L_4, L_5	Low-pass filter. Each: 28 turns No. 26 closewound on ¼" dia. fiber rod.
L_6 L_7 L_8 L_9 L_{10}	11 MHz. 26 turns No. 24 e. Closewound on ⅜" dia. polystyrene rod, 1¼" long 18 MHz. 18 turns as above 25 MHz. 12 turns as above 32.5 MHz. 8 turns as above 33.0 MHz. 7 turns as above
L_{15} L_{11}, L_{16} L_{12}, L_{17} L_{13}, L_{18} L_{14}, L_{19}	80 meters. 60 turns No. 20 closewound on ⅜" dia. polystyrene rod. 40 meters. 20 turns No. 26 as above (padded with 82 pf.) 20 meters. 18 turns No. 24 as above 15 meters. 9 turns No. 22 as above 10 meters. 7 turns No. 20 as above
L_{20}	Pi-network coil (*Pi-Dux 1212D6*) 1¼" dia., 9 turns 1½" long and 14 turns 1⅛" long, No. 14 wire (18.6μh). Tap from plate end: 10 meters, 2 turns 15 meters, 3 turns 20 meters, 8 turns 40 meters, 12 turns

Figure 16

COIL TABLE FOR 175-WATT SSB EXCITER

Small coils are wound on homemade coil forms cut from ⅜" diameter polystyrene rod. Forms are 1¼" long, with small holes drilled ½" apart to secure ends of windings. Bottom of coil forms are tapped for 4-40 bolts for mounting to coil partitions. Commercial ⅜" diameter forms may be substituted at considerable increase in cost.

the r-f probe placed on the grid (pin 5) of one 6550 socket. Plate and screen voltages are removed from the 6550's. The vfo is set for a carrier frequency of 4.0 MHz and the ganged capacitors (C_5A-B) are set near minimum capacitance. The padding capacitor across 80-meter coil L_{15} in the 12BY7A driver stage is adjusted for maximum meter reading, with the r-f level potentiometer (R_1) advanced about quarter rotation from the minimum voltage position.

The multiple-tuned circuits in the 12BY7A stage for the higher-frequency bands are aligned with the probe positioned at the grid of one of the final amplifier tubes. With the bandswitch in the 40-meter position and the vfo adjusted for carrier output at 7.5 MHz, the ganged capacitors are set at near-minimum capacitance. The 40-meter padding capacitors across coils L_{11} and L_{16} are adjusted for maximum meter reading. It is advisable to double-check frequency with a grid-dip meter to ensure that the circuits are resonant at the desired frequency. The conversion oscillator operates on the high-frequency side of each amateur band and it is possible to inadvertently tune the driver circuits to the crystal frequency instead of the sideband frequency during the initial alignment procedure. A check with the grid-dip meter will disclose this error. As tuning is done with inserted carrier, removing the carrier should cause the v.t.v.m. reading to drop to practically zero. If this is not the case, the circuits may be erroneously tuned to the crystal frequency.

The multiple tuned circuits may now be adjusted on each higher-frequency band, with the ganged capacitors set at minimum and alignment of the padding capacitors done at the high-frequency end of each band.

Final Amplifier Adjustment—Before applying screen or plate voltage to the final amplifier, it must be neutralized. The r-f probe is placed at the plate pin of one 6550 tube and carrier is inserted. Neutralization is best done on the 20-meter range, with driver circuits resonated to provide maximum grid drive to the amplifier stage. The loading capacitor (C_{15}) is set to maximum capacitance and the tuning capacitor (C_{11}) is adjusted for maximum indicated voltage (resonance). Neutralizing capacitor C_{12} is adjusted for minimum voltage reading on the meter, with the tuning capacitor readjusted after each change of the neutralizing capacitor.

Once the amplifier stage is neutralized and the exciter circuits properly aligned, the complete exciter may be tested with a suitable dummy load for complete operation. Final-amplifier plate loading and excitation level are both indicated on the single meter in the cathode circuit of the amplifier stage. The tune-up sequence is the same on any band: the *function switch* (S_7) is placed in the push-to-talk position, the *audio gain* control (R_1) is turned down, *sideband selector* switch S_1 is placed in the

Figure 17

THE HBT-200 SIDEBAND TRANSMITTER-EXCITER

The HBT-200 is a high-performance SSB exciter covering the 80- through 10-meter amateur bands. The main tuning dial is at the upper left, calibrated every 100 kHz, with readout to one kHz on the vernier window. Main panel controls are (l. to r.): Upper row—calibrate level (R_{12}), pilot lamp, main tuning control, mixer-driver tuning (C_{14}, C_{15}), final amplifier tuning (C_{16}), final amplifier bandswitch (S_4). Center row—sideband-selector switch (S_1), Carrier balance potentiometer (R_8), function switch (S_2), audio gain control (R_1), main bandswitch (S_3), drive level potentiometer (R_6), meter switch (S_5), final amplifier loading (C_{17}). Bottom row—key jack, VOX hold (R_{11}), antitrip (R_{10}), microphone jack, p.a. bias control (R_9), r-f sensitivity (R[illegible]) and operate-tune switch (S_6).

The panel is drilled then coated with aerosol "gray hammertone" finish. Decal lettering is then put on and when dry, the panel is aerosol sprayed with Krylon clear plastic. Rear of cabinet is cut out to pass various power plugs, and has a cutout area near the 6146B tubes (covered with screen) for additional ventilation.

proper position for the band in use, and *carrier-injection* switch S_2 is turned off. When the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is closed, the plate meter will indicate an idling current of about 70 ma. The carrier control is turned on and advanced slightly, and grid tuning is peaked for a rise in plate current. The plate tank capacitor is tuned for current dip and loading adjustments are made using regular pi-network procedure. Maximum loaded plate current with full carrier insertion is 200 to 240 ma and this value is reached by advancing the carrier control, together with an increase in amplifier loading. When the inserted carrier is removed, the plate current will drop back to the original idling level.

The final step is to determine the ratio of grid drive to plate current loading. If this ratio is improperly set, the exciter will "flat-top" before full output level is reached (excessive-drive, light-loading condition), or transmitter output will be low (insufficient-drive, heavy-loading condition). Excitation is set by means of the *r-f level* control (R_1) which may be calibrated for each band. To do this, it is necessary to place a 0 to 1 d-c milliammeter between test points 2 and 3 in the grid circuit of the final amplifier stage. No grid current will be

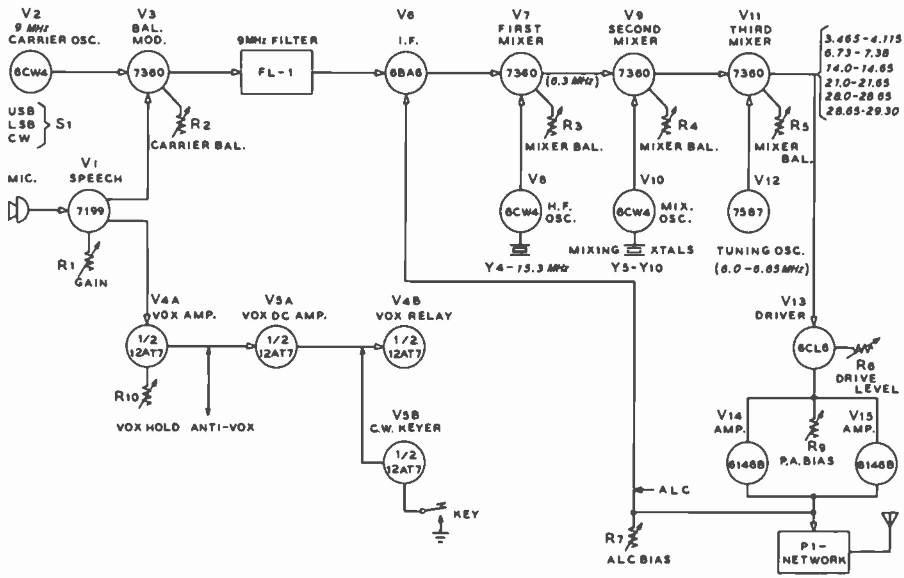


Figure 18
BLOCK DIAGRAM OF HBT-200 TRANSMITTER-EXCITER

drawn until the peak of the r-f driving signal exceeds the bias level (a nominal −36 volts). Maximum power output will be obtained in class-AB_1 Service when the amplifier tubes are driven just to the point of grid current and with plate loading then adjusted for maximum power output at a plate current of 200 to 240 ma. Using carrier insertion, then, the point of grid current is monitored on the temporary test meter and plate loading is adjusted for the proper plate current. The setting of the r-f level control is logged and carrier is removed and the transmitter modulated by voice. The audio gain control is advanced until, with the r-f level control untouched, the grid-circuit test meter just indicates a flicker of grid current: one scale division or less. The setting of the audio gain control is then logged. This calibration procedure should be run on each amateur band and the settings of the controls noted for future use. If desired, a small 1-inch diameter milliammeter may be panel mounted on the unit for a continual check of the amplifier peak signal driving point. It should be noted that under maximum peak voice conditions, the plate meter will swing to about 100 ma. Operation may be monitored with an oscilloscope to check "flat-topping."

The tune-up procedure for c.w. is the same as above except that carrier is inserted and the audio gain control turned down. A-m operation is possible by inserting sufficient carrier for a plate current of about 100 ma and advancing the gain control while monitoring the ratio of grid drive to antenna loading with an oscilloscope to achieve maximum modulation level without distortion.

27-3 The Deluxe HBT-200 SSB Transmitter-Exciter

The *Deluxe HBT-200* SSB transmitter-exciter is a companion unit to the HBR receiver described in an earlier chapter. Designed for high quality SSB and c-w performance, the *HBT-200* is capable of 200 watts PEP input on amateur bands between 80 and 10 meters (upper or lower sideband) and features automatic load control (alc); VOX or push-to-talk operation; all-band coverage and a nuvistor-type, high-C vfo. The transmitter has a high order of frequency stability and a very minimum of spurious "birdies" and image signals.

The *HBT-200* transmitter (figure 17) is designed around easily obtainable compo-

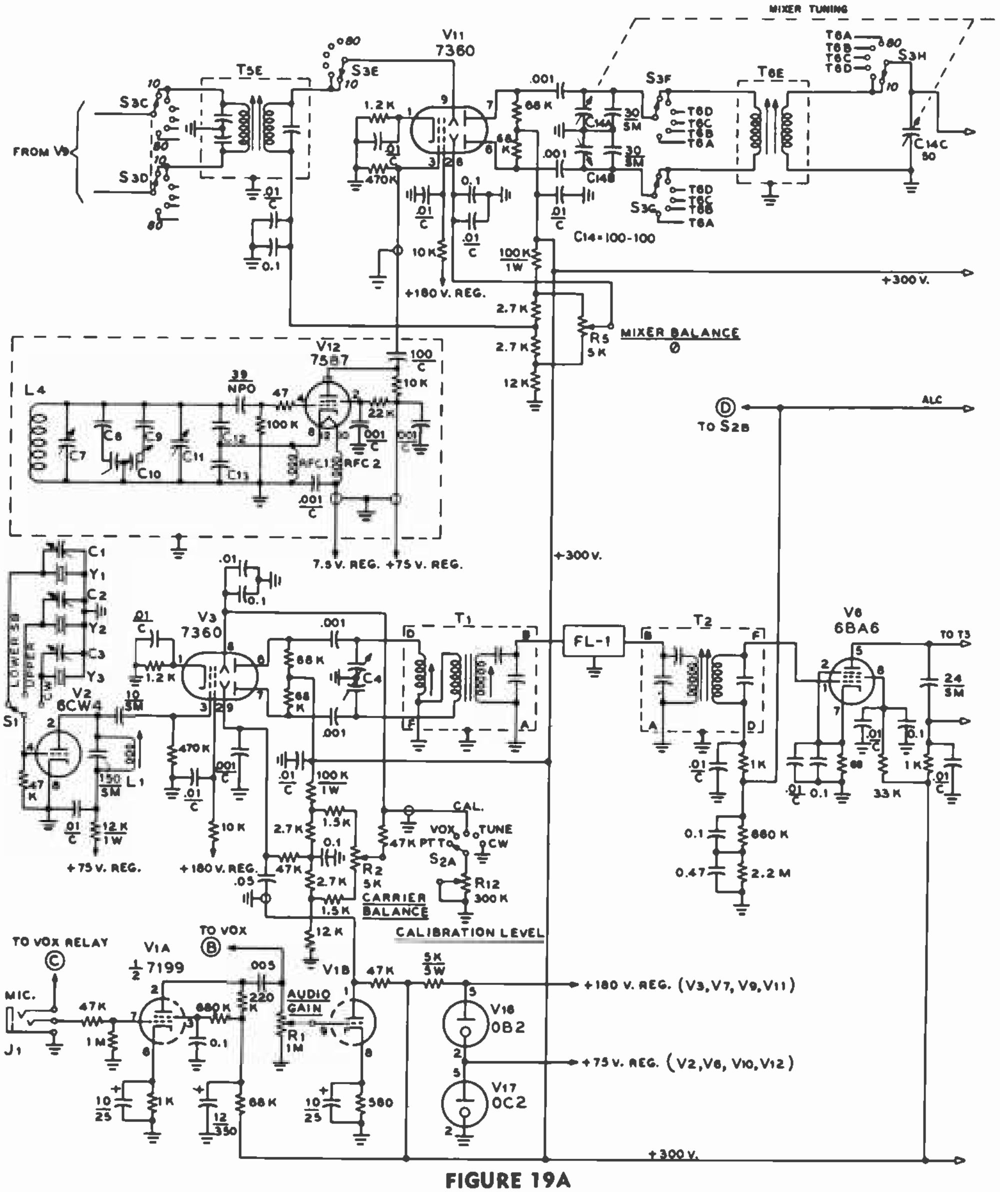


FIGURE 19A

SCHEMATIC, AUDIO, EXCITER, VFO AND THIRD MIXER STAGES

C_1, C_7, C_{11}—4-25-pf trimmer, NPO. Centralab 822AZ
C_6, C_{10}—25-pf differential capacitor. Johnson 148-302
C_4—100-pf dual-bearing capacitor. Polar C28-141, or J. W. Miller 2101
C_8—22-pf NPO ceramic. Centralab TCZ 22
C_9—22-pf N-750 ceramic. Centralab TCN 22
C_{12}, C_{13}—700-pf NPO ceramic. Each: two Centralab TCZ 300 plus one Centralab TCZ 100 in parallel
C_{14}A, B, C—Three-gang, 100-pf variable. Polar C28-143. Two outside rotor plates plus 4 additional rotor plates removed from section C_{14}C (or J. W. Miller 2103)
FL_1—9-MHz crystal SSB filter. McCoy Electronics 48-B1 (alternate: McCoy 32-B1).
S_3A thru I—Seven-section, 14-pole (total), 2-6 position ceramic switch. S_3A thru H is made of Centralab PA-305 index assembly with six PA-3 wafers. S_3I is Centralab PA-304 index assembly with one PA-3 wafer. Three Centralab P-320 intersection shields are used
S_2A—See figure 19C

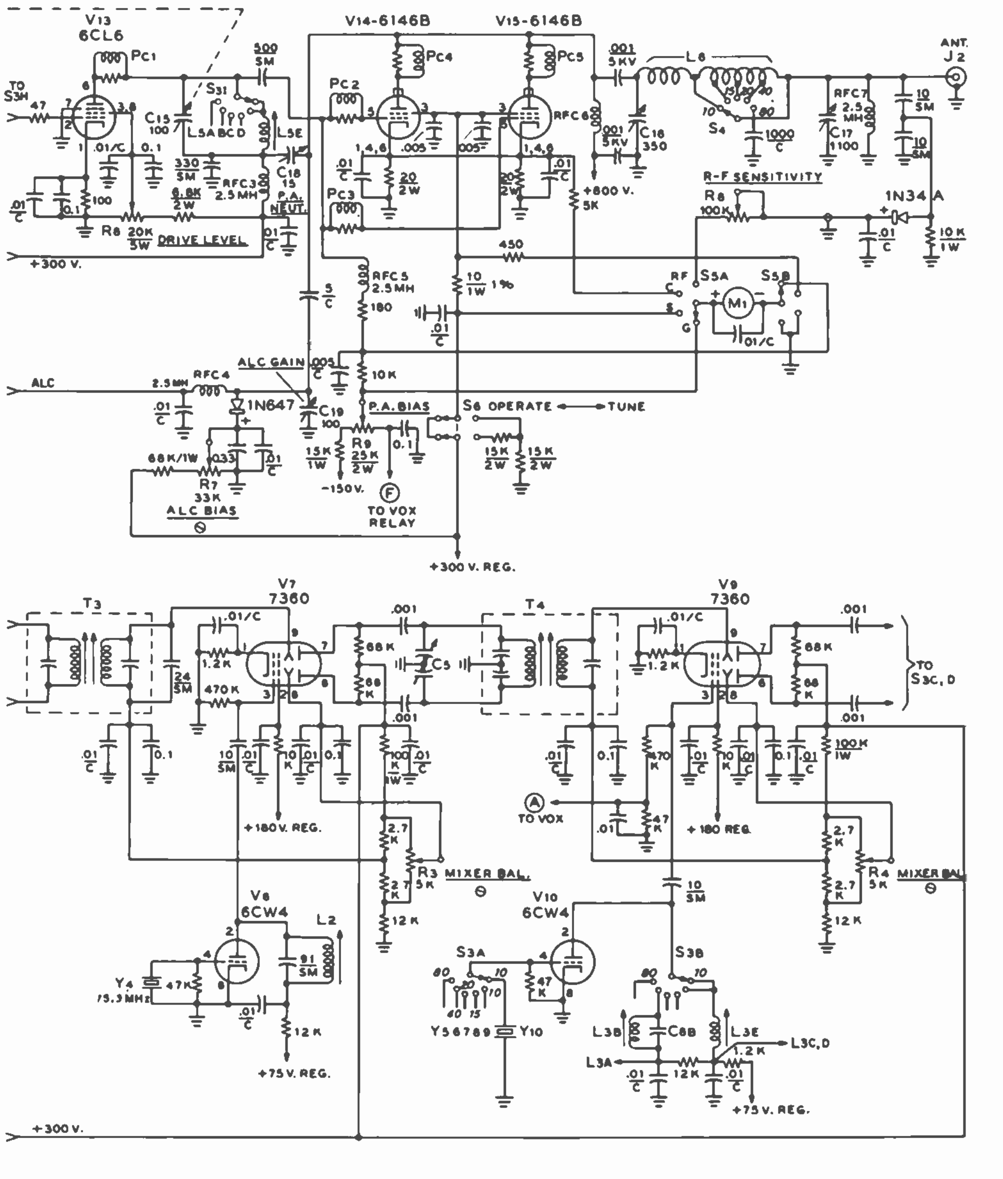


Figure 19B

SCHEMATIC, MIXERS, LOCAL OSCILLATOR, AND AMPLIFIER STAGES

C_5—25-pf differential capacitor. Johnson 148-302
C_{15}—Same as C_2, figure 19A
C_{16}—350-pf, 1 KV. Johnson 154-2
C_{17}—Three section, 365-pf per section, broadcast type. J. W. Miller 2113
C_{18}—15-pf Hammarlund HF-15X
M_1—0-1 d-c milliammeter. 47 ohms resistance. Simpson 1212A
S_4—Single-section, 6-position ceramic switch. Centralab 2501
$PC_{1,2,3}$—4 turns #20 enam. around 47-ohm, 1-watt composition resistor
$PC_{4,5}$—4 turns # 14 enam., 3/8" diam, around 47-ohm, 2-watt composition resistor
Cabinet—Wyco CR-7725.

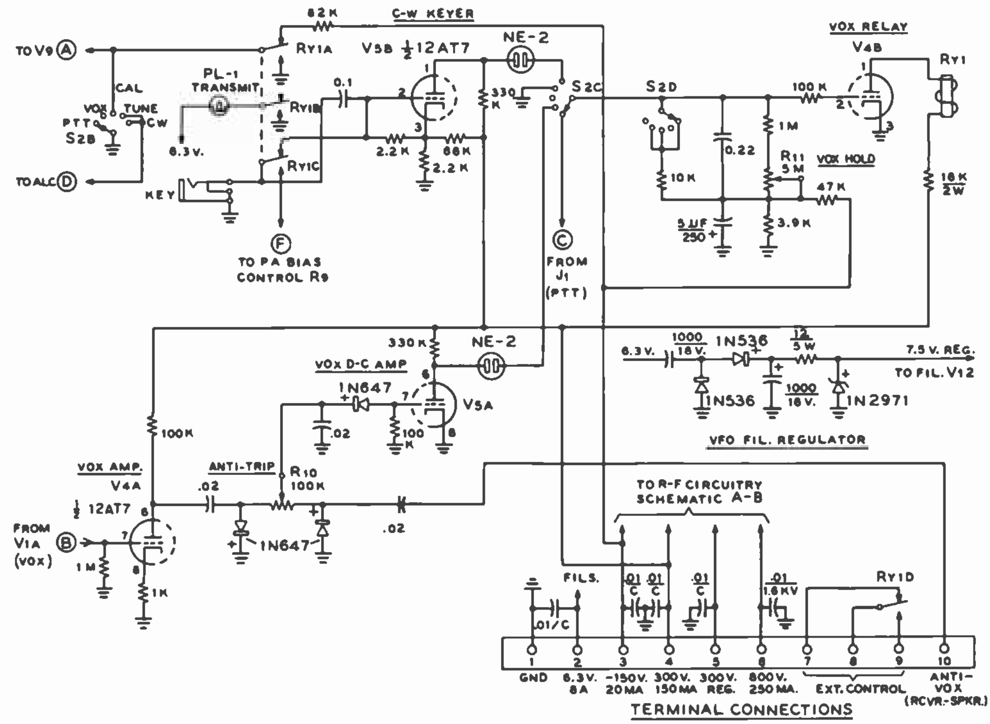


Figure 19C

SCHEMATIC, VOX, AND CONTROL CIRCUITS

S_1A-D—Four-pole, two-section, 2-6 position. Centralab PA 2011.
RY_1—Four-pole, double-throw relay. Potter-Brumfield MG-17D (110-volt)

nents, including the prefabricated exciter tuned circuits. Nuvistor tubes are used in the local-oscillator stages and the filament voltage of the vfo is regulated to achieve maximum frequency stability. A high quality 9-MHz sideband filter having superior shape factor ensures a clean, crisp SSB signal.

The power output of the transmitter is better than 100 watts PEP on all bands and is sufficient to drive most of the popular "grounded-grid" linear amplifier tubes, although the *HBT-200* will give a good account of itself on the air when operated as-is. The efficient alc circuit allows a degree of speech compression that imparts a "punch" to the signal and ensures that voice modulation is held at a high level at all times.

In addition to the SSB features, the HBT-200 incorporates semiautomatic break-in keying for c-w operation, utilizing either a hand key, bug, or electronic keyer. A separate power supply is used with the transmitter to reduce the weight of the unit and to keep heat-producing components out of the transmitter inclosure. Transmitter alignment is easily accomplished without the need of complicated test equipment.

Transmitter Circuitry A block diagram of the *HBT-200* transmitter is shown in figure 18 and the schematic is given in figures 19A, B, and C. The filter system of sideband generation is used, and the transmitter employs bandswitching of the various r-f stages in 650 kHz segments between 80 and 10 meters. Sufficient overlap may exist at the band ends for auxiliary activities such as MARS.

The R-F Section—A 7199 is used as a two-stage speech amplifier (V_1) to drive one deflection plate of a 7360 balanced modu-

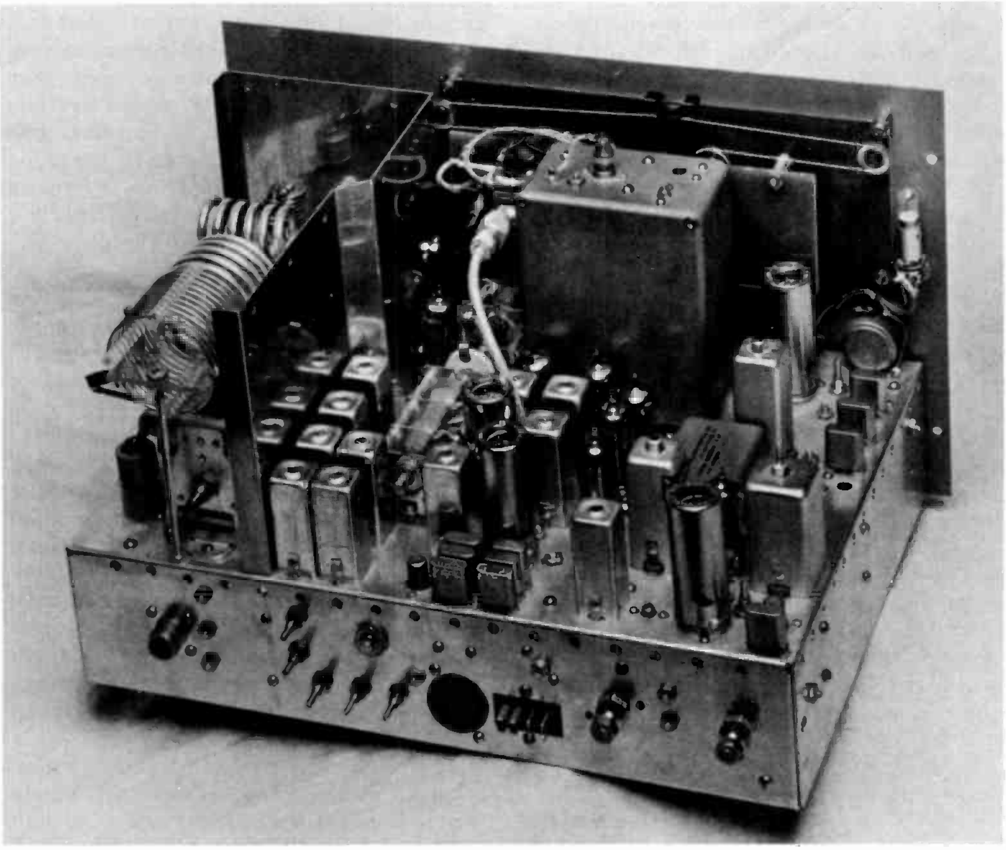


Figure 20

REAR VIEW OF HBT-200 TRANSMITTER CHASSIS

Symmetrical arrangement of components prevents crowded appearance of transmitter chassis. The nuvistor vfo is in the cast aluminum box at the center of the chassis, with its output coupled via a coaxial line to the third mixer stage. Aluminum shield separates 6146B amplifier plate tank circuit from low-level stages. On rear apron of chassis are (l. to r.): Antenna receptacle (J_2), rear shaft of bandswitch S_3 surrounded by hf oscillator coils (L A-E). Counterclockwise, coils are: 80-40-20-15-10 meters. To the right of the coil assembly are the power receptacles and speaker jack. At the extreme right are the second mixer balance control (R_2) and the first mixer balance control (R_3).

Atop the chassis, in the foreground are the 15-MHz crystal (Y_4), with the 6CW4 nuvistor tube behind it; the 7360 first mixer (V_7) to the left, along with transformer T_4. Behind the mixer stage are the 6BA6 i-f tube and the crystal filter. To the right, rear (near the panel) are the three carrier-frequency crystals, the 7360 balanced modulator, the 6CW4 carrier oscillator tube and the slug adjustment of coil L_1.

Immediately in front of the vfo box are the 7199 audio tube, the 12AT7 relay tube, and the 12AT7 d-c amplifier. In front of these tubes are the 7360 third mixer (V_{11}) and transformers (T A, B, C). Towards the near edge of the chassis are the 7360 second mixer (V_9), the 6CW4 mixing oscillator (V_{10}), and the hf crystals (Y_5-Y_{10}). To the right are the two voltage-regulator tubes.

Next to the shield partition at the left are four r-f transformers (T_3A, B, C, D,), and immediately behind them transformers T_6D and E. Buffer plate coils L_5A-E are chassis-mounted adjacent to the 6CL6 socket. Magnetic shields are placed on the 7360 tubes (Millen 80801-D3).

lator (V_3). The carrier signal is generated at 9 MHz by a 6CW4 nuvistor oscillator (V_2). Three crystals are provided to permit choice of upper or lower sideband, or c.w. The d-c voltage applied to the second deflection plate of the 7360 balanced modulator may be adjusted by *carrier-balance* potentiometer R_2 to null the unwanted sideband and carrier in the plate circuit. Carrier injection for c.w. or for calibration is accomplished by unbalancing this circuit by means of switch S_2A and *level-control* potentiometer R_{12}.

A 9-MHz crystal lattice filter (FL_1) having excellent skirt selectivity is transformer-coupled between the balanced modulator and the 6BA6 intermediate-frequency amplifier (V_6). Alc voltage is applied to the grid of the 6BA6 to provide proper control and to reduce flat-topping of the SSB signal under overdrive conditions.

A second 7360 is used as the first mixer (V_7) and a 6CW4 nuvistor serves as a 15.3-MHz crystal oscillator (V_8), converting the SSB signal to 6.3 MHz for further mixing into the various amateur bands. (If a 6.3-MHz crystal filter is available, the V_7 and V_8 stages may be omitted and the i-f amplifier stage modified for 6.3 MHz operation). This particular intermediate frequency is chosen since the creation of spurious mixer products that fall in the amateur bands is less severe than with a 9-MHz intermediate frequency.

The basic 6.3-MHz SSB signal is fed to a second mixer stage utilizing a 7360 (V_9). The 6CW4 nuvistor mixing oscillator (V_{10}) makes use of appropriate crystals to provide six channels of SSB which may be mixed into the amateur bands with a minimum of "birdies" and beats. The six intermediate SSB channels are combined in a third 7360 mixer stage (V_{11}) with the signal from the master variable oscillator which employs a 7587 nuvistor (V_{12}) and tunes the 6.0- to 6.65-MHz region. This provides an SSB tuning range of 650 kHz on each position of the bandswitch. Six tunable bands are thus generated, covering the various amateur bands with generous overlaps up to 10 meters. On this band a total of 1.3 MHz is covered in two ranges (either 28.0 to 29.3 MHz or 28.4 to 29.7 MHz may be utilized by proper choice of conversion crystals Y_9 and Y_{10}).

Satisfactory image suppression is achieved by the use of double-tuned, ganged circuits between the last mixer and driver stage. A 6CL6 is used as the driver (V_{13}) with the drive level controlled by screen potentiometer R_6. The 6CL6 is not neutralized since the circuit layout does not require it; however the stage should be checked for stability as changes in wiring or layout may require that neutralization be added. If so, the neutralizing technique employed in the final amplifier may be applied to the driver stage.

The final linear amplifier uses a pair of 6146B tetrodes connected in parallel and operated in class-AB_1 mode. The plate circuit is a conventional pi-network using an r-f voltmeter to measure relative r-f power output. Extra capacitance is added to the output section of the pi-network on the 80-meter band to achieve proper loading into a 50- to 70-ohm antenna system.

Grid, screen, and cathode currents of the final amplifier are monitored by multimeter M_1 and a *tune-operate* switch (S_6) reduces screen voltage to protect the final amplifier tubes during loading and tuning adjustments.

A fraction of the r-f plate voltage is selected by a capacitance bridge (C_{19} plus a 5-pf ceramic series capacitor) and is rectified and filtered to obtain an alc voltage, which is fed via filter RFC_1 to the grid of the 6BA6 i-f amplifier.

The VOX and Control Section—Voice-control (VOX) voltage is derived from the speech amplifier and further amplified in a separate VOX amplifier (V_4A). The VOX and *anti*VOX signal (from the receiver) are rectified, filtered, and passed through a d-c amplifier (V_5A) to the VOX relay circuit (V_4B). The VOX relay is a 4pdt device, two circuits of which are used to energize the *transmit* pilot light (PL_1) and to actuate the auxiliary circuits (antenna relay, etc.). A third relay circuit provides standby blocking bias for the second mixer stage (V_9) and the fourth circuit actuates the c-w keyer (V_5B) and removes blocking bias from the final amplifier stage.

The sequence of c-w operation is as follows: Closing the transmitter key grounds the grid of keyer tube (V_5B) which actuates the control relay tube when the *emission* switch S_2 is placed in the c-w position. The relay is held closed by virtue of an adjustable RC network (*VOX-hold*) in the bias leg (R_{11}) for normal c-w speeds. The maximum time constant is about 1.5 second. Longer delays may be achieved by increasing the value of the 0.22-μfd capacitor in the grid circuit of the relay tube. For push-to-talk operation, the VOX circuit is disabled and the relay tube is actuated by the microphone switch.

Regulated voltages are derived from the external power supply by two voltage-regulator tubes in the exciter, working from the +300-volt supply line. Regulated voltage for the filament of the vfo is obtained from a six-volt doubler circuit and a zener diode.

Transmitter Construction An SSB transmitter of this quality is a complex device and its construction should only be undertaken by a person familiar with SSB techniques and who has built and aligned equipment approaching this degree of complexity. The construction sequence follows that outlined for the HBR receiver. First, the chassis, panel, tuning dial, and large components are laid out in a "mock-up" assembly to ensure that the transmitter may be assembled without a conflict between the components. Finally, the transmitter is assembled and wired, a few stages at a time, which are tested as construction progresses.

The transmitter is built on an aluminum chassis measuring 10" × 14" × 3" and fits in a steel cabinet measuring 11" × 15" × 9". Study of the various photographs will show general construction details and layout of the larger components. A preliminary layout is made, using a cardboard panel. The controls are laid out as shown in figure 17, using the dial template and placing the upper-left dial bolt 1⅛ inches from the left edge of the panel and 11/16 inch down from the top edge. Placement of the dial determines the position of the main tuning capacitor shaft (C_7) which, in turn, determines the position of components within the vfo inclosure (figure 21). Placement of other important components are fixed by the position of the main bandswitch assembly (S_3) which is placed one inch below the level of the chassis deck and 6⅛ inches from the right end of the chassis, as viewed from the front. The under-chassis area is broken into shielded cubicles made up of light aluminum sheet, held in position with 4-40 hardware and aluminum angle stock cut into brackets (figure 22). The shields isolate the various circuits and are arranged so that

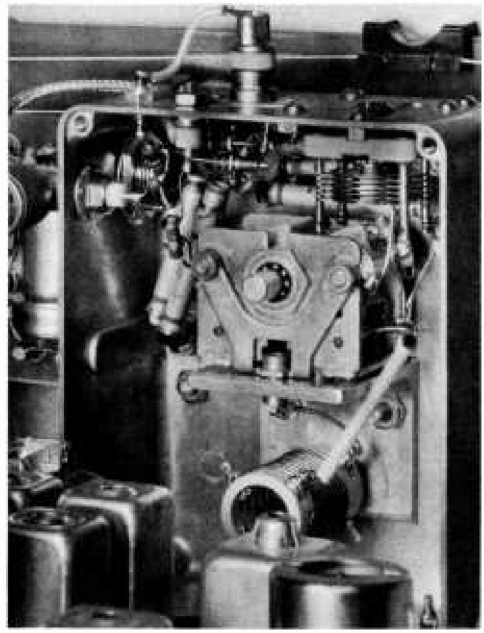


Figure 21

CLOSEUP OF VFO ASSEMBLY

The vfo is solidly built in a cast aluminum box. The shaft of the vfo tuning capacitor (C_7) is centered in the box and about 1½ inches below the top edge. The vfo coil is wound on a grooved form which is mounted to an aluminum angle bracket that supports the tuning capacitor. The 7587 nuvistor is mounted on the top of the box, as is the temperature compensating capacitor (C_{10}) at the right. Output from the vfo is taken from the coaxial fitting at the left.

stages operating on one frequency are protected from other stages operating on a different frequency. Thus, the 6146B and 6CL6 stages are contained within an inclosure which is further subdivided to isolate the pi-network output loading capacitor (C_{17}) from the adjacent grid circuit components. Another shield runs across the bandswitch, isolating the crystal oscillator stage (V_{10}) from the nearby mixer stages which are placed nearer the front of the bandswitch. Individual compartments isolate the low-frequency and audio stages and prevent leakage from the carrier oscillator, ensuring proper isolation across the crystal filter and restricting the low-frequency signals to one area of the chassis.

Once the "mockup" is approved, the panel may be drilled and then used as a template

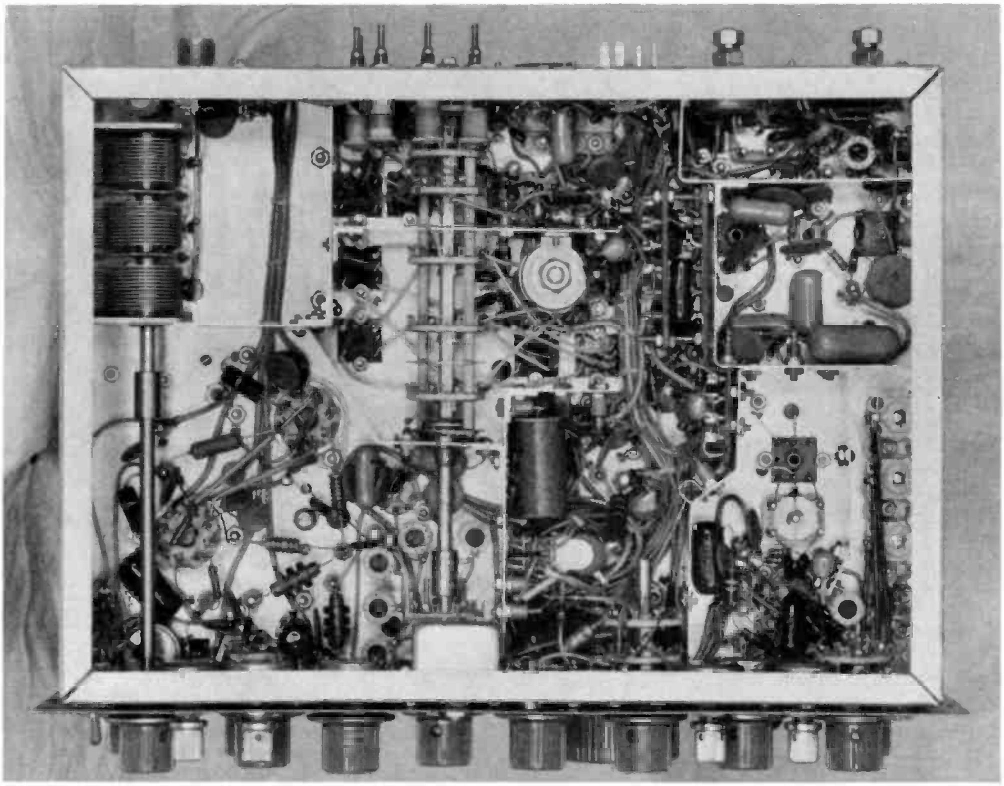


Figure 22

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF HBT-200 TRANSMITTER-EXCITER

The transmitter is wired and tested in stages for simplicity and reliability of operation. Interstage shields are employed between circuits of different operating frequencies. Shields are slotted so that power leads may pass through the shields, yet permit the shields to be taken out for wiring and easy access to coils and components. Bandswitch shields are also slotted so that they may be installed after bandswitch is wired to the second mixer. Crystal oscillator coils L_3A-E are mounted to the rear apron of the chassis and are placed in position after bandswitch has been mounted and wired.

Power amplifier loading capacitor (C_{17}) is at upper left, with its shield and below it are the 6146B sockets. A common ground point is used for each socket. The shaft of p.a. neutralizing capacitor C_{18} projects through the chassis between the sockets. The plate coils of the 6CL6 stage (L_5A-E) are grouped around the front section of the main bandswitch, with the shielded microphone jack mounted over the switch section. The third mixer balance potentiometer (R_5) is mounted to the rear bandswitch partition.

At the right of the chassis is the balanced modulator and carrier-oscillator compartment, with the crystal padding capacitors in view, as well as the differential capacitor (C_4). Control relay RY_1 is mounted to the center shield partition to the left.

to drill the holes on the front chassis apron. The control nuts are used to space the panel from the chassis.

VFO Assembly The schematic of the vfo is given in figure 19A and an interior view of the assembly is shown in figure 21. The vfo is built in a cast aluminum box measuring 4½″ × 3½″ × 2″ (*Eddystone 650*) which is mounted to a 2½″ × 7½″ × ⅛″ *fiberglas* board with ½-inch spacers. The board, in turn, is mounted to the rear of the *Eddystone 898* vernier dial with similar spacers. The vfo tuning capacitor is mounted to the aluminum box which is positioned on the chassis so that the capacitor may be driven by the dial mechanism with no noticeable binding or tension on the shaft. The capacitor is

Figure 23

COIL AND TRANSFORMER DATA

L_1—9 MHz oscillator coil. Approx. 2μH. J. W. ... Miller 42A-226-CB1.

L_2—15.3 MHz oscillator coil. Approx. 1.14 μH. J. W. Miller 42A-106-CB1.

L_3—Plate of 6CW4 hf oscillator (V_{10}).

Band	Osc. Freq. (MHz)	J. W. Miller Coil	C_6 (pf)
80	16.45	42A-106-CB1	75
40	19.85	42A-106-CB1	62
20	26.95	42A-476-CB1	....
15	33.95	42A-336-CB1	....
10	41.45	42A-226-CB1	....
10	41.95	42A-226-CB1	....

(L_3 adjusted to approximately the following inductance: 80 meters, 1.1 μH; 40 meters, 0.98 μH; 20 meters, 5μH; 15 meters, 3.1 μH; 10 meters, 2.1 μH).

Note: L_3A (80-meter) and L_3B (40-meter) coils are supplied B-plus through a 12K resistor. Others are supplied B-plus directly. This is done to equalize the difference in output between the fundamental and overtone mode crystals.

L_4—Oscillator coil. 10¾ turns #22 enam. wound to a length of 15/16 inch on ¾-inch diam. ceramic form. National XR-71 with slug removed. Approx 1.5 μH with Q of 150.

L_5—Plate coil of 6CL6 stage (V_{13}).

Band	Freq. (MHz)	J. W. Miller Coil	μH
80	3.5—4.0	42A-155-CB1	15.0
40	7.0—7.3	42A-686-CB1	6.0
20	14.0—14.35	42A-226-CB1	2.2
15	21.0—21.45	42A-106-CB1	1.2
10	28.4—29.05	42A-106-CB1	0.7
10	29.05—29.7	42A-106-CB1 (remove 1 turn)	0.7

L_6—Plate coil of 6146B amplifier stage. Plate coil is made in three sections. First section is 10-meter portion: 6 turns of 3/16" diam. copper tubing, ⅞" inside diameter, 1⅞" long. Second section is 15- and 20-meter portion: 5 turns of 3/16" diam. tubing, 1-11/16" inside diameter, 1½" long. Three turns from plate end to 15-meter tap. Third section is 40- and 80-meter portion: 10 turns #12 wire, 2" inside diameter, six turns per inch. Four turns for 40-meter portion. (Illumitronix "Pi-Dux" 1608-D6 cut to size).

T_1—9-MHz SSB transformer, bifilar wound. J. W. Miller 1739.

T_2—9-MHz SSB transformer. J. W. Miller 1741.

T_3—9-MHz transformer (10.7 MHz i-f transformer. Pad windings with 24-pf silver mica capacitors). J. W. Miller 1451.

T_4—6.3-MHz transformer. J. W. Miller 1800-1.

T_5—Second Mixer transformer for V_9 stage.

Band	Frequency (MHz)	J. W. Miller No.
80	10.15	1800-6
40	13.55	1800-5
20	20.65	1800-4
15	27.65	1800-3
10	35.15	1800-2
10	35.65	1800-2

T_6—Third Mixer transformer for V_{11} stage.

Band	Frequency (MHz)	J. W. Miller No.
80	3.5—4.0	1800-11
40	7.0—7.3	1800-10
20	14.0—14.35	1800-9
15	21.0—21.45	1800-8
10	28.4—29.05	1800-7
10	29.05—29.7	1800-7

Crystals—Y_1, Y_2—supplied with filter.
Y_3—9.000 MHz. McCoy Type M-1.
Y_4—15.30 MHz.
Y_5—16.415 MHz.
Y_6—19.681 MHz.
Y_7—26.950 MHz.
Y_8—33.95 MHz.
Y_9—41.45 MHz.
Y_{10}—41.95 or 49.2 MHz.

coupled to the dial by means of a metal coupler. The vfo assembly may be wired and tested as a unit before it is placed on the transmitter chassis. A regulated 7.5-volt filament supply is used with the vfo to provide 6.3 volts at the tube socket through the d-c resistance of the filament chokes (RFC_1, RFC_2).

Transmitter Wiring A unit of this complexity should be wired and tested in stages so as to simplify assembly. It is suggested that all filament wiring be completed and the carrier oscillator and balanced modulator be wired first, tested, and the shield placed around this assembly. The shield (and others like it) should be slotted so that it may be installed and replaced without displacing the power leads. Next, the i-f amplifier, first mixer and 15-MHz high-frequency oscillator are wired, tested, and the shield placed around these stages. The B+ distribution circuits, control and VOX assemblies and audio stages are wired next, tested, and the audio shield positioned. The mixer and driver stage are wired next, and the vfo installed. The last step is to wire the final amplifier. Placement of under-chassis components is "tight," especially in the vicinity of the bandswitch and use of miniature components and terminal boards mounted to the inter-stage shields is recommended.

Buffer tuning capacitor (C_{15}) and mixer tuning capacitor (C_{11}) are mounted to an insulating plate as the rotor of capacitor C_{15} is at B+ potential and is coupled to the ganged capacitor and to the dial with insulated couplings. Capacitor section C_{15}C has half the rotor plates removed to provide proper tracking, as outlined in the parts list.

Power wiring is done with #18 shielded wire (filament leads) and #22 shielded wire for other interconnections.

Transmitter Bandswitch Assembly—The main bandswitch is made up of seven ceramic switch decks and may be seen in the under-chassis photograph. The deck nearest the panel is the plate circuit switch for the driver stage (S_3I) and is mounted to the panel index assembly. The remaining sections are placed towards the rear of the chassis and are driven from the front section via a metal shaft coupler. The section nearest the index assembly is S_3H (secondary circuit of transformer T_6) and immediately behind this section is an integral mounted shield plate. Behind the plate are sections S_3F and S_3G (one deck for each section). A chassis shield cuts across the switch behind these sections, and to the rear of the shield are sections S_3C, D, and E (made up of two decks). Another integral mounted shield plate separates these sections from the rear switch segment (S_3A and B). Leads should be attached to the three rear switch segments before the switch is placed in position, and the oscillator coils (L_3A, B, C, and D) mounted to the rear apron after the switch is placed on the chassis. The leads from the switch are trimmed and wired to the proper coils and terminals. Wiring is done with tinned, bare wire, cut to length and covered with insulated tubing.

Transmitter Alignment The *HBT-200* transmitter may be aligned with the aid of a BC-221 (LM) frequency meter, a vacuum-tube voltmeter with r-f probe, a dummy load, and a general coverage receiver. An audio oscillator, grid-dip meter, and oscilloscope are convenient test items but not indispensable.

After checking transmitter wiring and assembly, filament voltage and all d-c voltages (with the exception of 6146B screen and plate voltages) are applied to the transmitter. *Drive level* control R_6 is set for zero 6CL6 screen voltage, and *alc bias* control R_7 is set for maximum negative alc bias. *Function* switch S_2 is placed in the *tune* position. In this position, VOX relay RY_1 will be energized and normal operating bias will be applied to the second mixer and amplifier stages.

Carrier Oscillator—Modulator Adjustment—The first step is to adjust the carrier oscillator frequency with the r-f probe of the v.t.v.m. placed on pin 3 of balanced modulator V_3. The plate coil (L_1) of the carrier oscillator is tuned to the high-frequency side of oscillation, using the 8998.5-kHz sideband crystal. With the BC-221 frequency meter coupled to the modulator, the crystal trimmer capacitors (C_1, C_2, and C_3) are set to provide the proper injection frequencies of 8998.5, 9000.0, and 9001.5 kHz. If necessary, the oscillator inductor is readjusted for reliable operation with each carrier crystal to provide a peak-to-peak r-f measurement of about 5 to 8 volts. (Some v.t.v.m. scales are calibrated in rms, and may be converted to a peak reading by multiplying the reading by 1.41).

The r-f probe is now moved to the secondary of transformer T_1 (pin C) and the c-w carrier crystal (9000 kHz) selected. *Carrier balance* control R_2 is turned fully clockwise and the slugs of transformer T_1 are adjusted for maximum voltmeter indication. Check the null action of control R_2 at this time. Adjust R_2 and C_1 to obtain best carrier null. The microphone is now connected, the carrier unbalanced and the r-f signal at the secondary of transformer T_1 monitored for proper a-m voice modulation as heard in a nearby receiver. Leaving the carrier unbalanced, the r-f probe is moved to the plate circuit of the 6BA6 i-f amplifier and the slugs of transformer T_2 are adjusted for maximum voltmeter indication. Now connect the probe to pin 9 of the first mixer tube (V_7) and adjust transformer T_3 for maximum indication. When the carrier is now nulled out by the *carrier balance* control, a clean 9-MHz SSB signal will be observed when voice modulation is used. (Adjustment of transformers T_1 and T_2 for optimum filter passband will be done later).

Mixer and I-F Circuit Alignment—The r-f probe is placed on pin 3 of the first mixer (V_7). Using the receiver as a monitor, plate coil L_2 of the 15.3-MHz crystal oscillator (V_8) is adjusted to the high-frequency side of resonance for a peak indication of about 8 to 10 volts on the v.t.v.m. The probe is now moved to pin 9 of the second balanced mixer (V_9) and the slugs of interstage transformer T_1 adjusted for maximum signal with capacitor C_5 set at mid-capacitance. Carrier injection is used, and balancing out the carrier with control R_2 will provide a 6.3-MHz SSB signal.

The next step is to adjust the 6CW4 high-frequency conversion oscillator stage (V_{10}). The slug of the plate coil for each bandswitch position (L_3A through L_3E) is adjusted to the high-frequency side of resonance for a peak measurement of 5 to 10 volts at pin 3 of mixer tube V_9. The probe is now moved to pin 9 of the third mixer (V_{11}) and the primary and secondary slugs of transformers T_5A through T_5E are adjusted for maximum indicated signal on each band, using carrier injection.

It may not be possible to completely resonate the secondary windings of the 10-, 15-, or 20-meter transformers because of the added probe capacitance, but final alignment can be accomplished later. All preceding adjustments should now be repeaked for maximum signal.

The BC-221 frequency meter is now coupled loosely to the vfo and the main tuning capacitor (C_7) set near zero capacitance. Padding capacitor C_{11} is adjusted to place the vfo at 6.65 MHz. The tuning range should now run from 6.65 MHz to 6.0 MHz with some overlap. After temperature stability has been achieved, the differential compensating capacitor C_{10} is adjusted for minimum long-term drift. Capacitor C_{11} can be readjusted to compensate for adjustments to C_{10} as far as frequency is concerned.

The r-f probe is now placed at pin 3 of the third mixer (V_{11}) and the output level of the vfo stage is observed. It should be about 5 to 8 volts, peak, as the vfo is tuned across its range. The probe is now moved to the input grid (pin 2) of the 6CL6 driver stage (V_{13}) and the slugs of interstage transformers T_6A through T_6E are adjusted for maximum indicated signal on each band, with ganged tuning capacitor C_{11}-C_{15} set approximately as follows: 80 meters (3.75 MHz), ¾ meshed; 40 meters, ½ meshed; 20 meters, ¼ meshed; 10 and 15 meters, ⅛ meshed. The initial setting of the capacitor gang and the slug adjustments are somewhat self-compensating. On 80 meters, the capacitor range goes from 90% meshed to about 60% meshed, and on 40 meters the capacitor range goes from 50% to 60% meshed. On the higher bands, the capacitor only makes a small movement, but still tunes rather sharply.

The *meter switch* (S_5) is now set to measure final amplifier grid current and the slugs of coils L_5A through L_5E are adjusted for maximum indicated grid drive on each band. Drive level is controlled by the 6CL6 screen potentiometer (R_6). Use the p.a. bias potentiometer along with the drive level control to adjust the sensitivity of the meter. Drive is generous and will easily pin the meter, even at the near-zero setting of the drive control.

Mixer Balance Adjustment—The communication receiver is now tuned to 15.3 MHz and loosely coupled to the secondary of interstage transformer T_4 with a shielded lead. The first mixer *balance* controls (R_3 and C_5) are adjusted for minimum S-meter reading. Following the same technique, the receiver is tuned to 26.95 MHz and loosely coupled to pin 9 of the second mixer stage (V_9). The second mixer *balance* control (R_4) is adjusted for minimum indicated signal, with the bandswitch placed in the 20-meter position. In like manner, the receiver is loosely coupled to pin 2 of the 6CL6 amplifier, the exciter adjusted to 40 meters, and the third mixer *balance* control (R_5) is adjusted for minimum carrier as monitored at the vfo frequency (6.0 to 6.65 MHz).

Alignment of the Crystal Filter Circuit—The secondary of transformer T_1 and the primary of transformer T_2 should now be adjusted to provide the proper impedance match to the crystal filter consistent with good passband characteristic. If this circuit is improperly adjusted, the passband will be unsymmetrical, or uneven, with an unnatural emphasis given to certain audio frequencies. A simple adjustment technique is to strive for the best sounding signal on both upper- and lower-sideband positions. This may involve shifting the USB and LSB carrier frequencies slightly. This technique will suffice unless the transformers are badly out of alignment (they are factory tuned). If it is desired to check adjustment, a more formal and complex approach makes

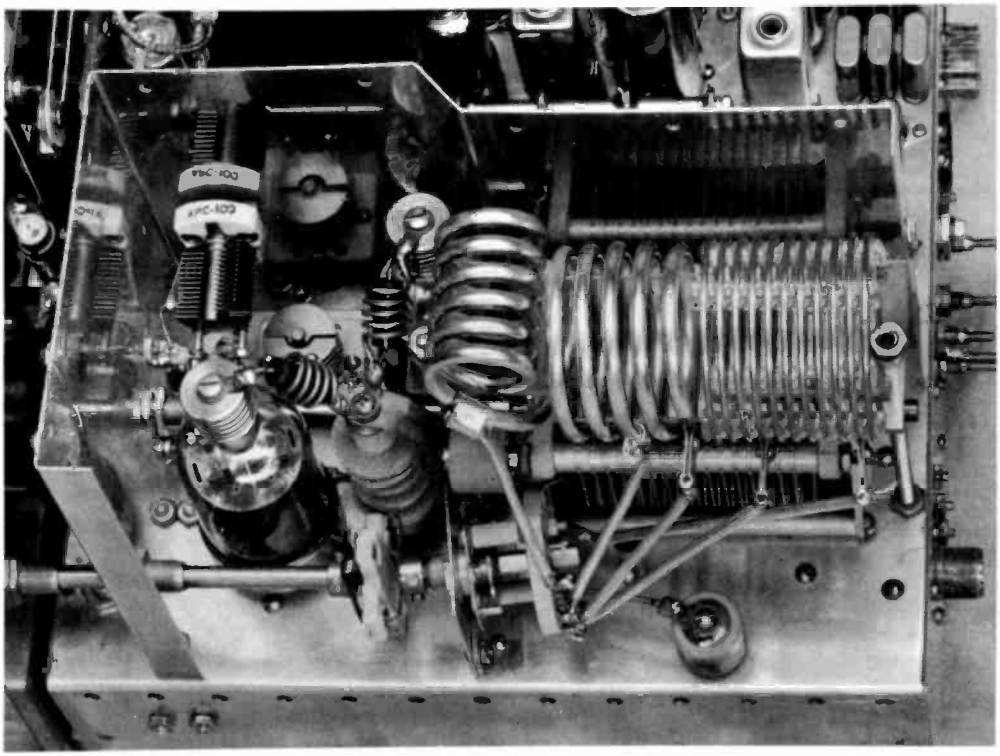


Figure 24

CLOSEUP OF FINAL AMPLIFIER COMPARTMENT

The plate circuit of the 6146B amplifier stage is shielded from the low-power stages of the transmitter. Behind the two tubes (left) are the chassis-mounted neutralizing capacitor (C_{18}) and the alc gain capacitor (C_{13}). Below the plate inductor is the 1000-pf loading capacitor. The plate inductor is made of three coils. The 10-meter section is at the left, parallel to the front panel, and is made of 3/16-inch diameter copper tubing. The 15- and 20-meter section is placed at right angles and is also made of 3/16-inch tubing. The 40- and 80-meter section is at the right and is wound of #12 wire. The plate bandswitch is driven by a flexible coupling and is mounted at a slight angle to prevent the contacts from being damaged as the exciter is placed in the cabinet.

use of the BC-221 frequency meter and the v.t.v.m.

Remove one crystal from the carrier oscillator and inject the output of the BC-221 into the grid circuit of the carrier oscillator (V_2). The BC-221 will then drive the exciter in the place of the crystal. Connect the v.t.v.m. probe to the 6CL6 plate circuit. A definite peak, or series of peaks, will be found in the reading of the v.t.v.m. as the BC-221 is tuned through the passband of the filter. The goal is to adjust the secondary of transformer T_1 and the primary of transformer T_2 to obtain three peaks in the filter passband, all having the same approximate amplitude, and corresponding to the peaks shown in the filter passband curve published in the data sheet supplied with the filter. These peaks occur at approximately 8999.2 kHz, 9000.0 kHz, and 9000.8 kHz for the filter specified. The dips in the filter passband should be no more than one decibel below the peaks, corresponding to a difference of 0.89 on the v.t.v.m. For example, if the peaks are set at 10 volts on the meter (by adjustment of the *drive* control), the dips, or valley should be approximately 8.9 volts.

Functional Test and Neutralization—Once the operation of the low level r-f and

Figure 25

HBT-200 TRANSMITTER AND HBR RECEIVER MAKE A MATCHED PAIR AT K6OPZ

audio stages is satisfactory, operation of the *function* switch should be checked for proper PTT, VOX, CAL, TUNE, and CW operation. Remember that in normal standby, the second mixer (V_9) is biased to cutoff. In the CAL position the second mixer is operative but the 6146B stage is biased to −150 volts. PTT, VOX, TUNE, and CW are identical as far as transmitter operation is concerned except that alc is grounded out in the CW position.

The exciter stages are now adjusted for 10-meter operation and grid drive to the final amplifier is adjusted to provide half-scale meter reading (screen and plate voltage removed). Resonate the amplifier plate-tuning capacitor for a dip in grid current, with the loading capacitor set at half capacitance. The r-f probe is connected to the plate cap of one 6146B and neutralizing capacitor C_{18} is adjusted for minimum voltmeter indication.

Amplifier Stage Adjustment—Plate and screen voltage are applied to the amplifier, and the *operate-tune* switch (S_6) is set to the *tune* position (low screen voltage). Resonance is established and drive removed from the stage. Switch S_6 is set to the *operate* position and bias potentiometer R_8 is adjusted for 40 ma static plate current. Carrier is now inserted and the drive level advanced to provide an indication of increased amplifier plate current. Resonance is established, with the transmitter operating into a dummy load, and the transmitter is tuned and loaded in the usual manner to an indicated cathode current of about 270 to 290 milliamperes, at the point where grid current just begins to be noticed (less than 0.05 milliampere). An r-f power output meter will be useful during the initial tune-up.

ALC Adjustment—The last step is to adjust the alc level. With the transmitter properly loaded at maximum signal level (using two-tone or voice modulation and a monitor oscilloscope), the *alc bias* potentiometer R_7 is set so that *alc* action is noted by a slight reduction in transmitter output power. The *alc capacitor* (C_{19}) is advanced from minimum capacitance for reasonable alc gain. Alc bias runs approximately 4 volts, but adjustments are as much a matter of personal preference as technical achievement. Sufficient alc range exists to achieve a good degree of speech compression. For example, the alc bias may be set to activate the circuit at 3/4 output power level, with the alc gain capacitor set to cause almost complete alc cutoff action of the 6BA6 as full drive level is reached. Too much alc action will cause objectionable audio distortion, so an on-the-air check of alc settings should be made, monitoring the alc voltage with a v.t.v.m.

Power-Supply Requirements—The external power supply may be an IVS-rated unit, as discussed in the *Power Supplies* chapter of this Handbook. Requirements are: −150 volts at 20 ma, 300 volts at 150 ma, 300 volts regulated at 30 ma, and 800 volts at a peak current of 250 ma. If the regulation of the 300-volt supply is good, the regulated and unregulated requirements may be met in a single source of about 200-ma peak capacity.

27-4 A Transistor Keyer

This compact transistorized keyer may be operated either as a semiautomatic key (automatic dots) or as a fully automatic key (automatic dots and dashes). The keying function is performed by a high-speed relay permitting the keyer to be electrically isolated from the keyed circuit. A double-pole, double-throw relay is used so that one set of relay contacts may be used to mute the station receiver during key-down condition. An extra feature of the keyer is the built-in tone oscillator which allows the operator to monitor his keying at all times.

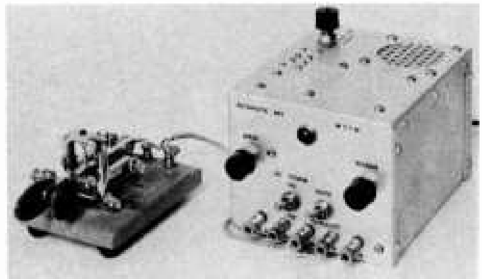


Figure 26

Compact transistorized keyer can be operated as a fully automatic key or semiautomatic "bug". Instrument is shown with a Vibroplex "Vibro-Keyer" connected to it. A standard hand key may be connected to the binding posts at the left. Potentiometers are Speed and Weight. Below these controls are (left) the power switch and (right) the auto-semi-auto switches. Binding posts across the bottom are (l. to r.): hand key, hand-key ground, dash, ground, and dot. Pilot lamp is at the center, top, of the panel and tone oscillator volume control is at the rear, adjacent to the speaker. Complete keyer is housed in a small aluminum utility cabinet.

Keyer Circuit Details The schematic of the transistor keyer is shown in figure 27. The circuit consists of a free-running (dot) multivibrator (Q_1, Q_2), a flip-flop (dash) multivibrator (Q_4, Q_5), an OR gate (Q_7, Q_8) and a transistor-controlled relay circuit (Q_9). A half-wave rectifier (1N2861) provides d-c voltage to control the keying speed, and a voltage doubler (two 1N2858) utilizing the 6.3-volt winding of the power transformer provides the d-c operating voltage for the unit.

The *dot multivibrator* controls the formation of dots and the repetition rate of this circuit determines the rate at which dots are produced, and hence the keying speed. When the vibro-key (S_1) is open, the dot multivibrator is inoperative (transistor Q_2 nonconductive) by the biasing action of clamp transistor Q_3. When the paddle of the vibro-key is moved to the dot position (to the left in figure 27) the clamp transistor is made inoperative and the dot multivibrator becomes a free-running circuit. The square-wave signal developed at the emitter of multivibrator transistor Q_2

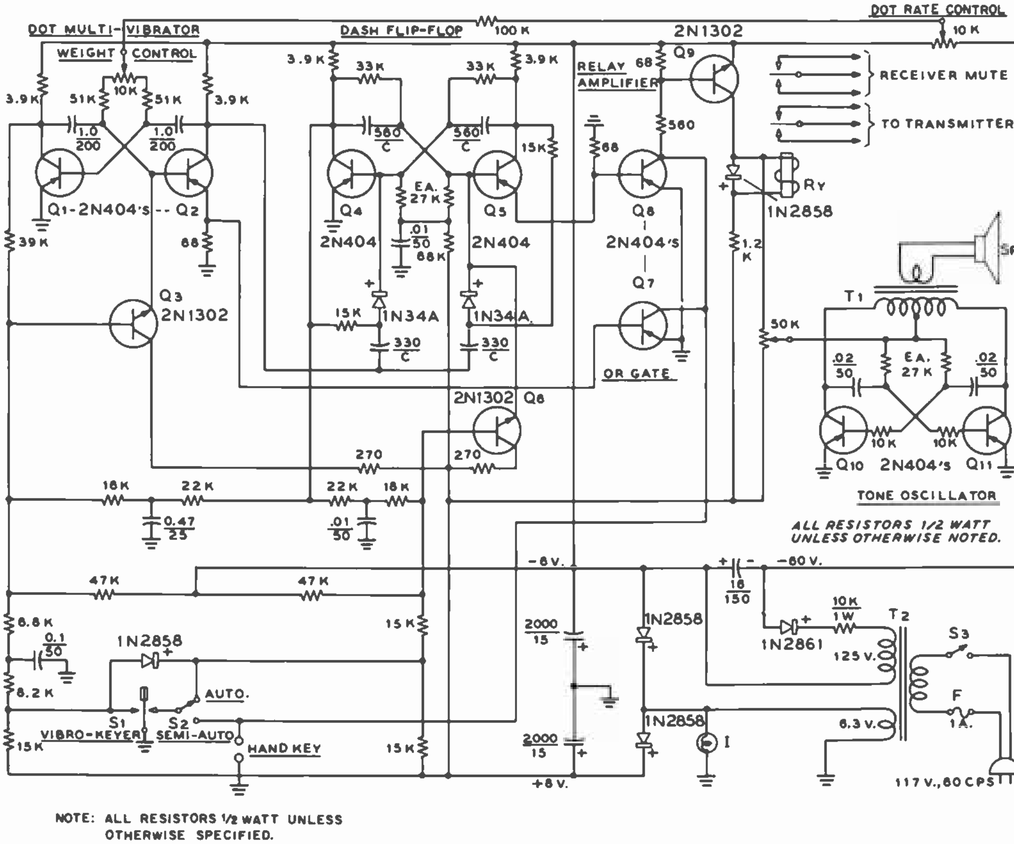


Figure 27

SCHEMATIC OF TRANSISTORIZED KEYER

RY—D-c relay with 2500-ohm coil and operating current of 4 ma. Potter-Brumfield ML-11D, or equivalent
T_1—Push-pull output transformer (14K to voice coil). Stancor A-3496
T_2—Power transformer. 125 volts at 15 ma, 6.3 volts at 0.6 amp. Stancor PS-8415 or PA-8421.

is then applied to the base of transistor Q_7 in the OR gate. During the positive alternation of this signal, the OR gate will permit current to flow through the relay control transistor Q_9 and through the keying relay RY in series with the collector of this transistor.

Once a dot is initiated by moving the paddle of the vibro-keyer to the dot position, the action will continue (regardless of the position of the paddle) until both the dot and the space following it are formed. This feature is accomplished by the feedback circuit from the base of clamp transistor Q_3 to the collector of multivibrator transistor Q_1, which assures that clamp transistor Q_3 will be held inoperative and that action of the multivibrator—once begun—will continue until a full cycle is repeated.

The ratio of *on time* to *off time* of the dot multivibrator is controlled by the setting of the 10K base-bias potentiometer and this ratio is termed *weight*. In most cases, an operator will wish the weight control in the center, or neutral position, but occasionally it may be desirable to change the ratio of dot (on) time to space (off) time.

The dot rate is controlled by the d-c voltage applied to the 1-μfd and 51K resistor-capacitor network in the multivibrator base-collector circuit. The more negative the voltage on the movable arm of the weight potentiometer, the faster the timing capacitors will charge to the conducting potential of the multivibrator transistor (not conducting at that instant). The maximum charging potential is set at 60 volts which corresponds to a maximum keying speed of about 40 words per minute. Higher speed may be obtained by reducing the value of the 10K, 1-watt series resistor in the power supply to boost the speed-control voltage. Resistance should not be reduced below 1K, however, or the voltage across the filter capacitor will be excessive. Minimum keying speed is about 5 wpm and is determined by the value of the multivibrator capacitors. These timing capacitors (nominally 1.0 μf) should be paper or plastic units of good quality.

The Dash Flip-flop When a dash is generated, the paddle of the vibro-key is moved to the dash position (to the right in figure 27). The clamp transistors (Q_3 and Q_6) which hold the dot multivibrator and the dash flip-flop stages inoperative during the open-key condition, will not conduct due to the application of increased bias. As a result, the dot multivibrator and the dash flip-flop stages operate simultaneously—a required condition for the formation of a dash.

The signal from the emitter of multivibrator transistor Q_2 and that from the emitter of flip-flop transistor Q_5 are applied to the OR gate transistors (Q_7 and Q_8 respectively). The keying relay is energized during the positive alternation of these signals, whether applied separately or simultaneously. The dashes produced are three times as long as the dot by virtue of the following action: Assume that there is no voltage drop across the transistors of the multivibrator and of the flip-flop when they are conducting. Assume also that the switching time is zero. As mentioned previously, the keying relay will be energized whenever the positive alternation of the signal from either multivibrator transistor

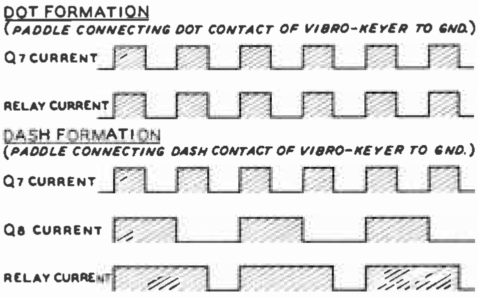


Figure 28

GRAPHICAL REPRESENTATION OF KEYING FUNCTION SHOWING WAVEFORMS FOR TRANSISTORS Q_7, Q_8, AND RELAY CURRENT

Q_2 or flip-flop transistor Q_5 (or both) is applied to the OR gate.

When a dot is produced, only the dot multivibrator supplies the keying signal to the OR gate. For this condition, OR gate transistor Q_7 controls the operation of the relay circuit. The relationship between the current through the transistor and that through the relay is shown by the dot formation waveforms in figure 28.

When the paddle of the vibro-key is positioned to ground the dash contact, the dot contact is also grounded through the IN2858 steering diode resulting in simultaneous operation of the dot multivibrator and the dash flip-flop. Signals will now be applied to both OR gate transistors, and the relay will be energized for an interval three times as long as that required to make a dot. The dot and dash waveforms illustrate this relationship.

The Tone Oscillator The voltage drop across the coil of the keying relay and the 1.2K resistor is the d-c supply voltage for transistors Q_{10} and Q_{11} in the tone oscillator. For current to flow through these circuits, the relay amplifier transistor (Q_9) must receive a keying signal from the OR gate. The tone oscillator, therefore, operates only when dots and dashes are being produced. The 50K potentiometer in the collector circuit of transistor Q_9 controls the volume of the oscillator.

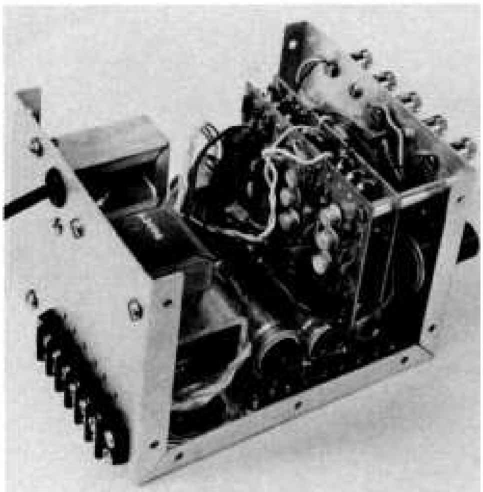


Figure 29

SIDE VIEW OF KEYER

Side oblique view of transistorized keyer showing location of speaker, transformers, and filter capacitors. Six-terminal strip connects to contacts of double-pole, double-throw relay (RY). Phenolic terminal boards are supported from front panel by long bolts and spacers. Electrolytic capacitors are mounted to tie point strips bolted to surface of inclosure. Towards far side of the phenolic board are mounted the 1.0-µf capacitors of the dot multivibrator. Transistors Q_1, Q_2, and Q_3 are positioned between the capacitors. Transistors Q_7, Q_8, and Q_9 are near center of the board, and transistors Q_4, Q_5, and Q_6 are in the foreground.

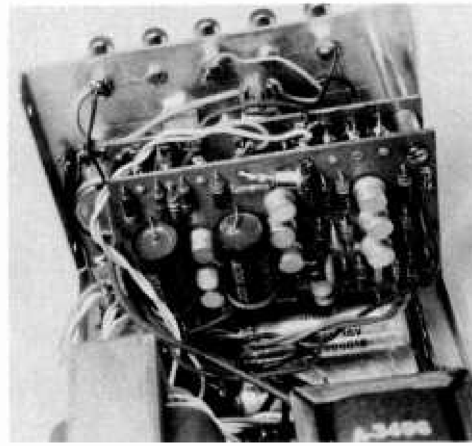


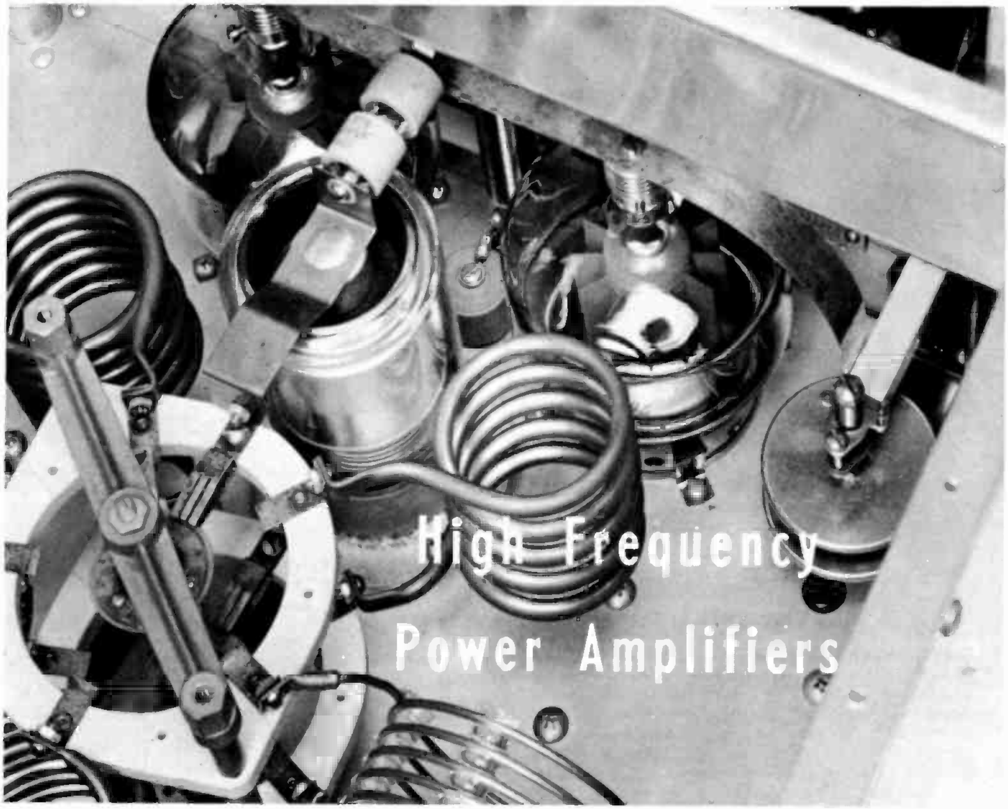
Figure 30

Closeup of circuit board of transistorized keyer showing dot multivibrator circuit (left) and dash flip-flop circuit (right). In the center are the three transistors comprising the OR gate and relay control. The board immediately in back includes circuitry for the side-tone oscillator and biasing network.

The keyer may be operated as a semiautomatic key (bug) by placing switch S_2 in the *semiauto* position. Although the dots are produced automatically, the automatic keying circuits are bypassed when the paddle of the key is moved to the dash position, and the dashes must be produced manually.

Keyer Construction The complete keyer is housed in a miniature aluminum case 4″ high, 5″ wide and 6″ deep. The major circuitry is mounted on two phenolic boards stacked one behind the other and mounted to the front panel of the case by bolts and spacers. The rear board (seen in figure 30) contains the multivibrator circuit and its clamp transistor, the flip-flop and its clamp transistor and the OR gate. The front board contains the tone oscillator and voltage bridge for the dot and dash clamp circuit.

The power supply, keying relay, speaker, output transformer, and potentiometers are all mounted to the case. The speaker cone is covered with a small square of perforated aluminum sheet to protect it from damage. All relay contacts are brought out to the rear of the keyer to the six terminal strip. Two circuits may be keyed simultaneously, and the relay also provides normally closed or normally open circuits. The second set of contacts may be used to mute the station receiver during the key down condition. *Note:* Some relays do not have nonmetallic strikers on either the pole pieces or the armature. Consequently the relay action is somewhat sluggish. This condition can be corrected by drilling and tapping the armature and installing a 2-56 brass screw. The screw is adjusted so that 2 mm. to 6 mm. protrude from the armature. A lock nut is used to prevent a shift in the position of the screw.



The trend in design of transmitters for operation on the high-frequency bands is toward the use of a single high-level stage. The most common and most flexible arrangement includes a compact bandswitching exciter unit, with 15 to 100 watts output on all the high-frequency bands, followed by a simple power-amplifier stage. In many cases the exciter unit is placed on the operating table, with a coaxial cable feeding the drive to the power amplifier, although some operators prefer to have the exciter unit included in the main transmitter housing.

This trend is a natural outgrowth of the increasing importance of vfo operation on the amateur bands. It is not practical to make a quick change in the operating frequency of a transmitter when a whole succession of stages must be retuned to resonance following the frequency change. Another significant factor in implementing the trend has been the wide acceptance of commercially produced 100- to 250-watt transmitter-exciters. These supply SSB, c-w and a-m excitation for high-level amplifiers running up to the 1000-watt power limit. The amplifiers shown in this chapter may be easily driven by such exciters.

28-1 Power Amplifier Design

Choice of Tubes Either tetrode or triode tubes may be used in high-frequency power amplifiers. The choice is usually dependent on the amount of driving power that is available for the power amplifier. If a transmitter-exciter of 100-watt power capability is at hand (sideband or a-m) it would be wise to employ a power amplifier whose grid-driving requirements fall in the same range as the output power of the exciter. Triode tubes running 1-kilowatt input (plate-modulated) generally require some 50 to 80 watts of grid-driving power. Such a requirement is easily met by the output level of the 100-watt transmitter which should be employed as the exciter. Tetrode

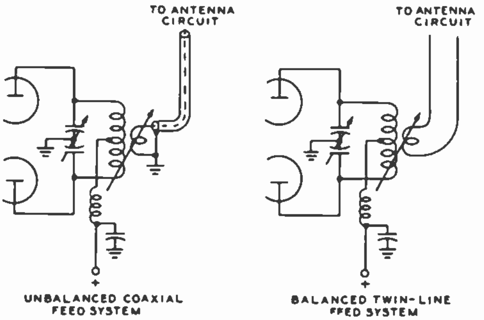


Figure 1

LINK-COUPLED OUTPUT CIRCUITS FOR PUSH-PULL AMPLIFIERS

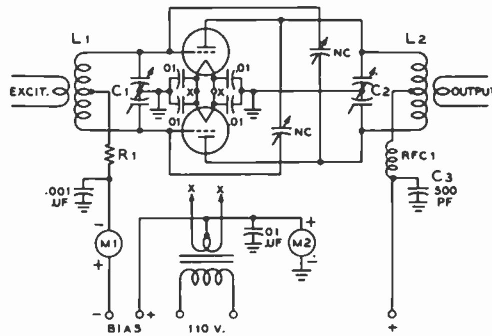


Figure 2

CONVENTIONAL PUSH-PULL AMPLIFIER CIRCUIT

The mechanical layout should be symmetrical and the output coupling provision must be evenly balanced with respect to the plate coil

C_1—Approx. 1.5-pf per meter of wavelength per section

C_2—Refer to plate tank capacitor design in Chapter 11

C_3—May be 500-pf, 10,000-volt type ceramic capacitor

NC—Max. usable capacitance should be greater, and min. capacitance less than rated grid-plate capacity of tubes in amplifier. 50% greater air gap than C_2

R_1—100 ohms, 20 watts. This resistor serves as low-Q r-f choke

RFC_1—All-band r-f choke suitable for plate current of tubes

M_1-M_2—Suitable meters for d-c grid and plate currents

All low-voltage .001-µfd and .01-µfd bypass capacitors are ceramic-disc units (Centralab DD or equiv.)

L_1—50-watt plug-in coil, center link

L_2—Plug-in coil, center link, of suitable power rating

Note: Parasitic chokes may be required in grid or plate leads.

tubes (such as the 4-250A) require only 10 to 15 watts of actual drive from the exciter for proper operation of the amplifier stage at 1-kilowatt input. This means that the output from the 100-watt transmitter has to be cut down to the 15-watt driving level. This is a nuisance, since it requires the addition of swamping resistors to the output circuit of the transmitter-exciter. The triode tubes, therefore, would lend themselves to a much more convenient driving arrangement than would the tetrode tubes, simply because their grid-drive requirements fall within the power-output range of the exciter unit.

On the other hand, if the transmitter-exciter output level is of the order of 15 to 40 watts, sufficient drive for triode tubes running 1-kilowatt input would be lacking. Tetrode tubes requiring low grid-driving power would have to be employed in a high-level stage, or smaller triode tubes requiring modest grid drive and running 250 watts or so would have to be used.

Power Amplifier Design—Choice of Circuits Either push-pull or single-ended circuits may be employed in the power amplifier. Using modern tubes and properly designed circuits, either type is capable of high-efficiency operation and low harmonic output. Push-pull circuits, whether using triode or tetrode tubes, usually employ link coupling between the amplifier stage and the feed line running to the antenna or the antenna tuner.

It is possible to use the link circuit in either an unbalanced or balanced configuration, as shown in figure 1, using unbalanced coaxial line, or balanced twin-line.

Common technique is to employ plug-in plate coils with the push-pull amplifier stage. This necessitates some kind of opening for coil-changing purposes in the "electrically tight" enclosure surrounding the amplifier stage. Care must be used in the design and construction of the door for this opening or leakage of harmonics through the opening will result, with the attendant TVI problems.

Single-ended amplifiers may also employ link-coupled output devices, although the trend is to use pi-network circuits in conjunction with single-ended tetrode stages. A tapped or otherwise variable tank coil may be used which is adjustable from the front panel, eliminating the necessity of plug-in coils and openings into the shielded enclosure of the amplifier. Pi-network circuits are becoming increasingly popular as coaxial feed systems are coming into use to couple the output circuits of transmitters directly to the antenna.

28-2 Push-Pull Triode Amplifiers

Figure 2 shows a basic push-pull triode amplifier circuit. While variations in the method of applying plate and filament voltages and bias are sometimes found, the basic circuit remains the same in all amplifiers.

Filament Supply The amplifier filament transformer should be placed right on the amplifier chassis in close proximity to the tubes. Short filament leads are necessary to prevent excessive voltage drop in the connecting leads, and also to prevent r-f pickup in the filament circuit. Long filament leads can often induce instability in an otherwise stable amplifier circuit, especially if the leads are exposed to the radiated field of the plate circuit of the amplifier stage. The filament voltage should be the correct value specified by the tube manufacturer when measured *at the tube sockets*. A filament transformer having a tapped primary often will be found useful in adjusting the filament voltage. When there is a choice of having the filament voltage slightly higher or slightly lower than normal, the lower voltage is preferable. If the amplifier is to be overloaded, a filament voltage slightly higher than the rated value will give greater tube life.

Filament bypass capacitors should be low internal inductance units of approximately .01 μfd. A separate capacitor should be used for each socket terminal. Lower values of capacitance should be avoided to prevent spurious resonances in the internal filament structure of the tube. Use heavy, shielded filament leads for low voltage drop and maximum circuit isolation.

Plate Feed The series plate-voltage feed shown in figure 2 is the most satisfactory method for push-pull stages. This method of feed puts high voltage on the plate tank coil, but since the r-f voltage on the coil is in itself sufficient reason for protecting the coil from accidental bodily contact, no additional protective arrangements are made necessary by the use of series feed.

The insulation in the plate supply circuit should be adequate for the voltages encountered. In general, the insulation should be rated to withstand at least four times the maximum d-c plate voltage. For safety, the plate meter should be placed in the cathode return lead, since there is danger of voltage breakdown between a metal panel and the meter movement at plate voltages much higher than one thousand.

Grid Bias The recommended method of obtaining bias for c-w or plate modulated telephony is to use just sufficient fixed bias to protect the tubes in the event of excitation failure, and to obtain the rest by the voltage drop caused by flow of rectified grid current through a grid resistor. If desired, the bias supply may be omitted for telephony if an overload relay is incorporated in the plate circuit of the amplifier, the relay being adjusted to trip immediately when excitation is removed from the stage.

The grid resistor (R_1) serves effectively as an r-f choke in the grid circuit because the impressed r-f voltage is low, and the Q of the resistor is poor. No r-f choke need be used in the grid-bias return lead of the amplifier, other than those necessary for harmonic suppression.

The bias supply may be built on the amplifier chassis if care is taken to prevent r-f from finding its way into the supply. Ample shielding and lead filtering must be employed for sufficient isolation.

The Grid Circuit As the power in the grid circuit is much lower than in the plate circuit, it is customary to use a close-spaced split-stator grid capacitor with sufficient capacitance for operation on the lowest frequency band. A physically small capacitor has a greater ratio of maximum to minimum capacitance, and it is possible to obtain a unit that will be satisfactory on all bands from 10 to 80 meters without the need for auxiliary padding capacitors. The rotor of the grid capacitor is grounded, simplifying mounting of the capacitor and providing circuit balance and electrical symmetry. Grounding the rotor also helps to retard vhf parasitics by bypassing them to ground in the grid circuit. The LC ratio in the grid circuit should be fairly low, and care should be taken that circuit resonance is not reached with the grid capacitor at minimum capacitance. That is a direct invitation for instability and parasitic oscillations in the stage. The grid coil may be wound of No. 14 wire for driving powers of up to 100 watts. To restrict the field and thus aid in neutralizing, the grid coil should be physically no larger than absolutely necessary.

Circuit Layout The most important consideration in constructing a push-pull amplifier is to maintain electrical symmetry on both sides of the balanced circuit. Of utmost importance in maintaining electrical balance is the control of stray capacitance between each side of the circuit and ground.

Large masses of metal placed near one side of the grid or plate circuits can cause serious unbalance, especially at the higher frequencies, where the tank capacitance between one side of the tuned circuit and ground is often quite small in itself. Capacitive unbalance most often occurs when a plate or grid coil is located with one of its ends close to a metal panel. The solution to this difficulty is to mount the coil parallel to the panel to make the capacitance to ground equal from each end of the coil, or to place a grounded piece of metal opposite the "free" end of the coil to accomplish a capacity balance.

Whenever possible, the grid and plate coils should be mounted at right angles to each other, and should be separated far enough apart to reduce coupling between them to a minimum. Coupling between the grid and plate coils will tend to make neutralization frequency sensitive, and it will be necessary to readjust the neutralizing capacitors of the stage when changing bands.

All r-f leads should be made as short and direct as possible. The leads from the tube grids or plates should be connected directly to their respective tank capacitors, and the leads between the tank capacitors and coils should be as heavy as the wire that is used in the coils themselves. Plate and grid leads to the tubes may be made of flexible tinned braid or flat copper strip. Neutralizing leads should run directly to the tube grids and plates and should be separate from the grid and plate leads to the tank circuits. Having a portion of the plate or grid connections to their tank circuits serve as part of a neutralizing lead can often result in amplifier instability at certain operating frequencies.

Excitation Requirements In general it may be stated that the over-all power requirement for grid-circuit excitation to a push-pull triode amplifier is approximately 10 percent of the amount of the power output of the stage. Tetrodes require about 1 percent to 3 percent excitation, referred to the power output of the stage. Excessive excitation to pentodes or tetrodes will often result in reduced power output and efficiency.

Push-Pull Amplifier Construction *Symmetry* is the secret of successful amplifier design. Shown in figures 3 and 4 are views of a 1-kilowatt amplifier designed for operation in amateur bands between 80 and 10 meters. The circuit corresponds to that shown in figure 2, with the addition of parasitic suppressors in the grid leads to the triode tubes.

Larger triode tubes such as the 810 and 250TH make excellent r-f amplifiers at the kilowatt level, but care must be taken in amplifier layout as the interelectrode capacitance of these tubes is of importance. One tube and one neutralizing capacitor is placed on each side of the tank circuit to permit very short interconnecting leads. The relative position of the tubes and capacitors is transposed on each side of the chassis, as shown in the illustrations. The plate tank coil is mounted parallel to the front panel of the amplifier on a phenolic plate supported by the tuning capacitor which sits atop a small chassis-type box. The grid-circuit tuning capacitor is located in this box, as seen

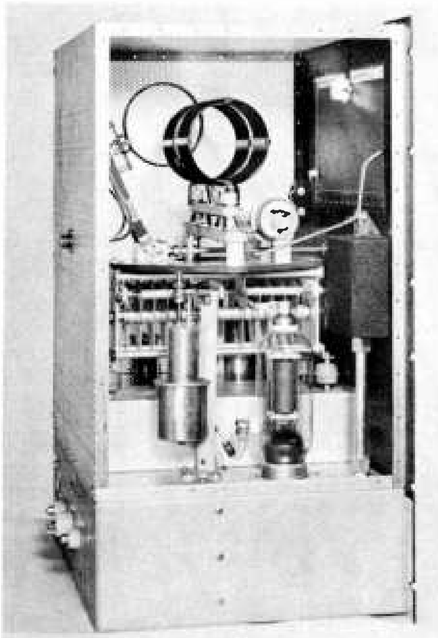


Figure 3

UNIQUE CHASSIS LAYOUT PERMITS SHORT LEADS IN KILOWATT AMPLIFIER

Large size components required for high-level amplifier often complicate amplifier layout. In this design, the plate tank capacitor sits astride small chassis running lengthwise on main chassis. Inductor is mounted to phenolic plate atop capacitor. Variable link is panel driven through right-angle gear drive. Plate circuit is grounded by safety arm when panel door is opened. Note that plate capacitor is mounted on four TV-type capacitors which serve to bypass unit, and also act as supports. A small parasitic choke is visible next to the grid terminal of the 810 tube.

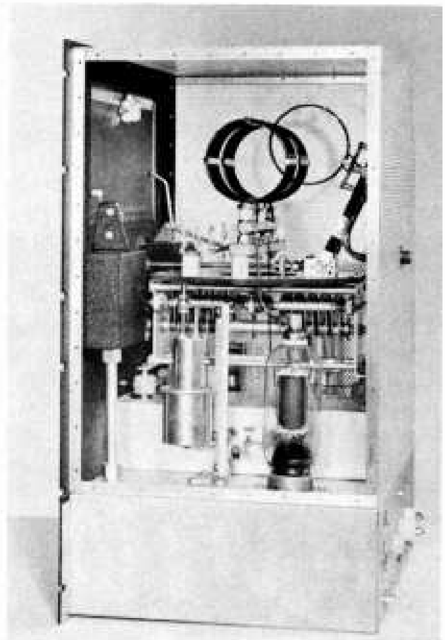


Figure 4

LEFT-HAND VIEW OF KILOWATT AMPLIFIER OF FIGURE 3

Above shielded meter box is the protective "microswitch" which opens the primary power circuit when the panel door is not closed. Tube sockets are recessed in the chassis so that top of tube socket shells are about ½-inch above chassis level. On right side of amplifier (facing it from the rear) the tube socket is nearest the panel, with the neutralizing capacitor behind it. On the opposite side, the capacitor is nearest the panel with the tube directly behind it. This layout transposition produces very short neutralizing leads, since connections may be made through the stator of plate tuning capacitor.

in figure 5. An external bias supply is required for proper amplifier operation. Operating voltages may be determined from the instruction sheets for the particular tube to be employed.

Whenever the amplifier inclosure requires a panel door for coil changing access, it is wise to place a power interlock on the door that will turn off the high-voltage supply whenever the door is open! Such a door will also require extra r-f "weather-stripping" to be mounted around the opening in order to keep the inclosure r-f tight.

28-3 Push-Pull Tetrode Amplifiers

Tetrode tubes may be employed in push-pull amplifiers, although the modern trend is to parallel operation of these tubes. A typical circuit for push-pull operation is shown in figure 6. The remarks concerning the filament supply, plate feed, and grid bias in Section 28-2 apply equally to tetrode stages. Because of the high circuit gain of the tetrode amplifier, extreme care must be taken to limit interstage feedback to an

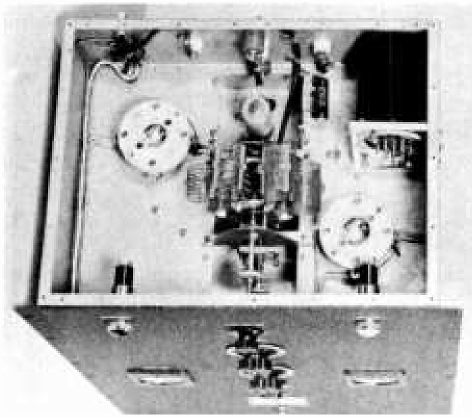


Figure 5

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF 1-KILOWATT TRIODE AMPLIFIER

The grid-circuit tuning capacitor and plate-circuit r-f choke are contained in the below-chassis inclosure formed by a small chassis mounted at right angles to the front panel. The bandswitch coil assembly for the grid circuit is mounted on two brackets above this cutout. A metal screen attached to the bottom of the amplifier completes the TVI-proof inclosure.

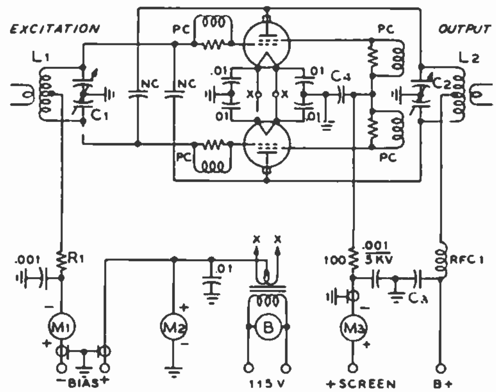


Figure 6

CONVENTIONAL PUSH-PULL TETRODE AMPLIFIER CIRCUIT

Push-pull amplifier uses many of the same components required by triode tubes (see figure 2). Screen supply is also required.
B—Blower for filament seals of tubes
C_4—Low internal inductance capacitor, .001 µfd, 5 KV. Centralab type 858S-1000
NC—See text and figure 7
PC—Parasitic choke. 50-ohm, 2-watt composition resistor wound with 3 turns # 12 enam. wire
Note: Strap multiple screen terminals together at socket with 3/8" copper ribbon. Attach PC to center of strap. Alternatively, PC may be placed in the plate leads.

absolute minimum. Many amateurs have had bad luck with tetrode tubes and have been plagued with parasitics and spurious oscillations. It must be remembered with high-gain tubes of this type that almost full output can be obtained with practically zero grid excitation. Any minute amount of energy fed back from the plate circuit to the grid circuit can cause instability or oscillation. *Unless suitable precautions are incorporated in the electrical and mechanical design of the amplifier, this energy feedback will inevitably occur.*

Fortunately these precautions are simple. The grid and filament circuits must be isolated from the plate circuit. This is done by placing these circuits in an "electrically tight" box. All leads departing from this box are bypassed and filtered so that no r-f energy can pass along the leads into the box. This restricts the energy leakage path between the plate and grid circuits to the residual plate-to-grid capacity of the tetrode tubes. This capacity is of the order of 0.25 pf per tube, and under normal conditions is sufficient to produce a highly regenerative condition in the amplifier. Whether or not the amplifier will actually break into oscillation is dependent upon circuit loading and residual lead inductance of the stage. Suffice to say that unless the tubes are actually neutralized a condition exists that will lead to circuit instability and oscillation under certain operating conditions. With luck, and a heavily loaded plate circuit, one might be able to use an unneutralized push-pull tetrode amplifier stage and suffer no ill effects from the residual grid-plate feedback of the tubes. In fact, a minute amount of external feedback in the power leads to the amplifier may just (by chance) cancel out the inherent feedback of the amplifier circuit. Such a condition, however, results in an amplifier that is not "reproducible." There is no guarantee that a duplicate amplifier will perform in the same, stable manner.

This is the one great reason that many amateurs having built a tetrode amplifier that "looks just like the one in the book" find out to their sorrow that it does not "work like the one in the book."

This borderline situation can easily be overcome by the simple process of neutralizing the high-gain tetrode tubes. Once this is done, and the amplifier is tested for parasitic oscillations (and the oscillations eliminated if they occur) the tetrode amplifier will perform in an excellent manner on all bands. In a word, it will be "reproducible."

Amplifier Construction The push-pull tetrode amplifier should be designed around "r-f tight" boxes for the grid- and plate-circuit assemblies (figure 7). The tetrodes are mounted on the chassis which forms the common shield plate between the boxes. The grid circuit is placed below the chassis and all power leads into and out of this area are bypassed and shielded within the compartment.

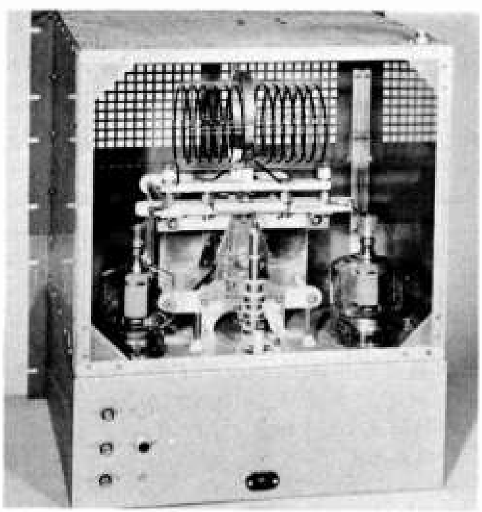


Figure 7

REAR VIEW OF PUSH-PULL 4-250A AMPLIFIER

The neutralizing rods are mounted on ceramic feedthrough insulators adjacent to each tube socket. Low voltage power leads leave the grid-circuit compartment via Hypass capacitors located on the lower left corner of the chassis. A screen plate covers the rear of the amplifier during operation. This plate was removed for the photograph.

The base shells of the tubes are grounded by spring clips, and short adjustable rods project up beside each tube to act as neutralizing capacitors. The leads to these rods are cross-connected beneath the chassis and the rods provide a small value of capacitance to the plates of the tubes. This neutralization is necessary when the tube is operated with high power gain and high screen voltage. As the operating frequency of the tube is increased, the inductance of the internal screen support lead of the tube becomes an important part of the screen ground-return circuit. At some critical frequency (about 45 MHz for the 4-250A tube) the screen-lead inductance causes a series-resonant condition and the tube is said to be "self-neutralized" at this frequency. Above this frequency the screen of the tetrode tube cannot be held at ground potential by the usual screen bypass capacitors. With normal circuitry, the tetrode tube will have a tendency to self-oscillate somewhere in the 120- to 160-MHz region. Low-capacity tetrodes that can operate efficiently at such a high frequency are capable of generating robust parasitic oscillations in this region while the operator is vainly trying to get them operating at some lower frequency. The solution is to introduce enough loss in the circuit at the frequency of the parasitic to render oscillation impossible.

Parasitic suppression is required with most modern high-gain tetrodes and may take place in either the plate or screen circuit. In some instances, suppressors are required in the grid circuit as well. Design of the suppressor is a cut-and-try process: if the inductor of the suppressor has too few turns, the parasitic oscillation will not be adequately suppressed. Too many turns on the suppressor will allow too great an amount of fundamental frequency power to be absorbed by the suppressor and it will overheat and be destroyed. From 3 to 5 turns of #12 wire in parallel with a 50-ohm, 2-watt composition resistor will usually suffice for operation in the hf region. At 50 MHz, the suppressor inductor may take the form of a length of copper strap (often a section of the plate lead) shunted by the suppressor resistor.

Because of the compact size of many tetrodes, it is necessary to cool the filament and plate seals with a blast of air. A small blower may be mounted on the pressurized chassis to direct a stream of cooling air at the filament seals of the tube, and through the base to the glass envelope. Many transmitting tubes require special air sockets and chimneys to provide adequate cooling. Cooling data for most popular transmitting tetrodes may be obtained on request from the manufacturer.

28-4 Tetrode Pi-Network Amplifiers

The most popular amplifier today for both commercial and amateur use is the pi-network configuration shown in figure 8. This circuit is especially suited to tetrode tubes, although triode tubes may be used under certain circumstances.

A common form of pi-network amplifier is shown in figure 8A. The *pi* circuit forms the matching system between the plate of the amplifier tube and the low-impedance, unbalanced, antenna circuit. The coil and input capacitor of the *pi* may be varied to tune the circuit over a 10 to 1 frequency range (usually 3.0 to 30 MHz). Operation over the 20- to 30-MHz range takes place when the variable slider on coil L_2 is adjusted to short this coil out of the circuit. Coil L_1 therefore comprises the tank inductance for the highest portion of the operating range. This coil has no taps or sliders and is constructed for the highest possible Q at the high-frequency end of the range. The adjustable coil (because of the variable tap and physical construction) usually has a lower Q than that of the fixed coil.

The degree of loading is controlled by capacitors C_4 and C_5. The amount of circuit capacitance required at this point is inversely proportional to the operating frequency and to the impedance of the antenna circuit. A loading capacitor range of 100 to 2500 pf is normally ample to cover the 3.5- to 30-MHz range.

The *pi* circuit is usually shunt-fed to remove the d-c plate voltage from the coils and capacitors. The components are held at ground potential by completing the circuit to ground through the choke (RFC_1). Great stress is placed on the plate-circuit choke (RFC_2). This component must be specially designed for this mode of operation, having low interturn capacitance and no spurious internal resonances throughout the operating range of the amplifier.

Parasitic suppression is accomplished by means of chokes PC_1 and PC_2 in the screen, grid, or plate leads of the tetrode. Suitable values for these chokes are given in the parts list of figure 8. Effective parasitic suppression is dependent to a large degree on the choice of screen bypass capacitor C_1. This component must have extremely low inductance throughout the operating range of the amplifier and well up into the vhf parasitic range. The capacitor must have a voltage rating equal to at least twice the screen potential (four times the screen potential for plate modulation). There are practically no capacitors available that will perform this difficult task. One satisfactory solution is to allow the amplifier chassis to form one plate of the screen capacitor. A "sandwich" is built on the chassis with a sheet of insulating material of high dielectric constant and a matching metal sheet which forms the screen side of the capacitance. A capacitor of this type has very low internal inductance but is very bulky and takes up valuable space beneath the chassis. One suitable capacitor for this position is the *Centralab type 858S-1000*, rated at 1000 pf at 5000 volts. This compact ceramic capacitor has relatively low internal inductance and may be mounted to the chassis by a 6-32 bolt. Further screen isolation may be provided by a shielded power lead, isolated from the screen by a .001-μfd ceramic capacitor and a 100-ohm carbon resistor.

Various forms of the basic pi-network amplifier are shown in figure 8. The *A* configuration employs the so-called "all-band" grid-tank circuit and a rotary pi-network coil in the plate circuit. The *B* circuit uses coil switching in the grid circuit, bridge neutralization, and a tapped pi-network

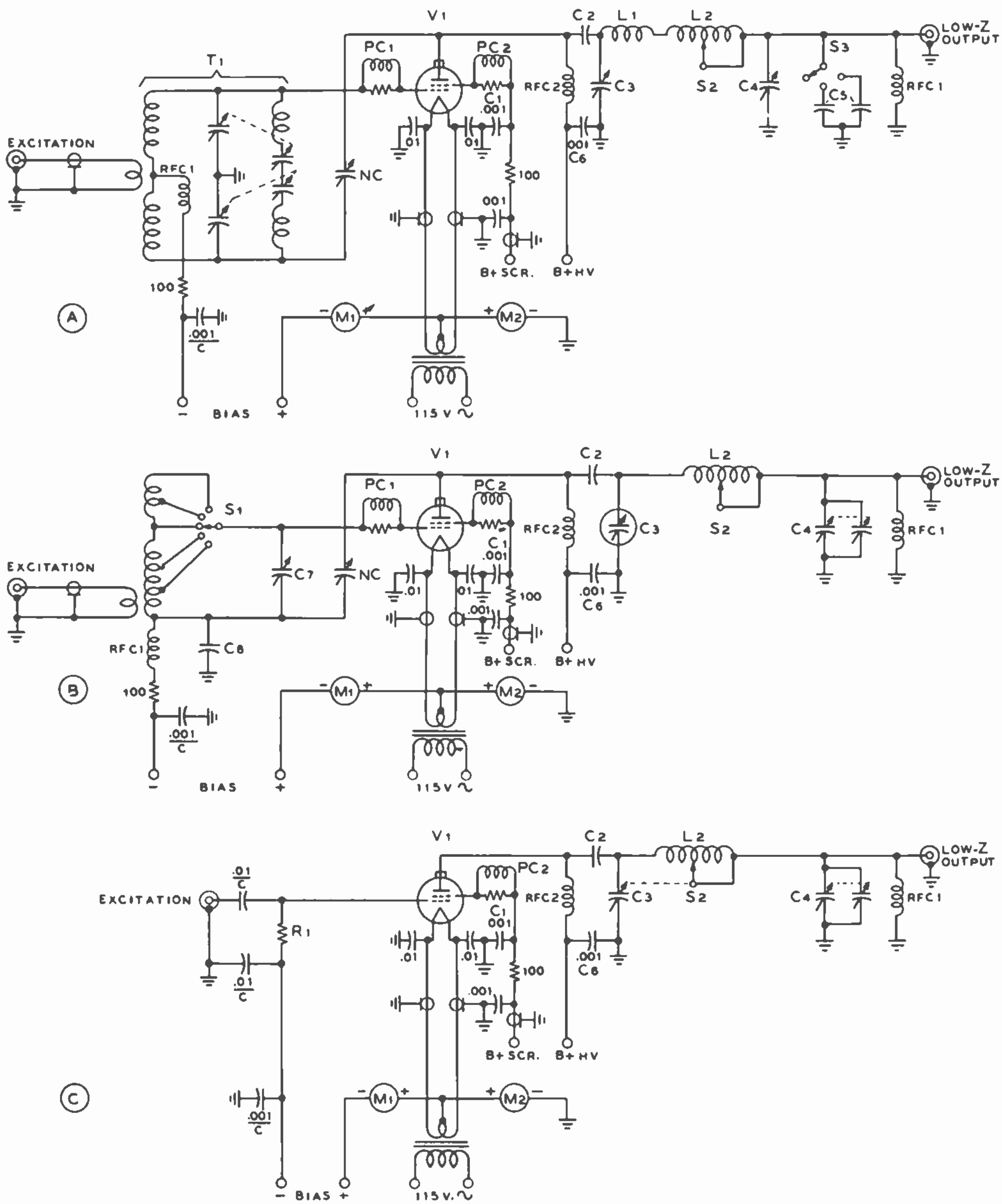


Figure 8

TYPICAL PI-NETWORK CONFIGURATIONS

A—Split grid circuit provides out-of-phase voltage for grid neutralization of tetrode tube. Rotary coil is employed in plate circuit, with small, fixed auxiliary coil for 28 MHz. Multiple tuning grid tank T_1 covers 3.5-30 MHz without switching

B—Tapped grid and plate inductors are used with "bridge-type" neutralizing circuit for tetrode amplifier stage. Vacuum tuning capacitor is used in input section of pi-network

C—Untuned input circuit (resistance loaded) and plate inductor ganged with tuning capacitor comprise simple amplifier configuration. R_1 is usually 50-ohm, 100-watt carbon resistor.

PC_1, PC_2—57-ohm, 2-watt composition resistor, wound with 3 turns #12 enam. wire

Note: Alternatively, PC_2 may be placed in the plate lead.

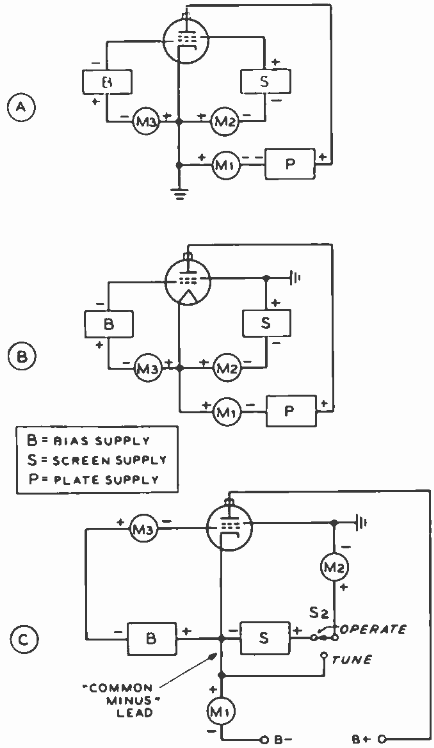


Figure 9

GROUNDED-SCREEN-GRID CONFIGURATION PROVIDES HIGH ORDER OF ISOLATION IN TETRODE AMPLIFIER STAGE

A—Typical amplifier circuit has cathode return at ground potential. All circuits return to cathode.

B—All circuits return to cathode, but ground point has been shifted to screen terminal of tube. Operation of the circuit remains the same, as potential differences between elements of the tube are the same as in circuit A.

C—Practical grounded-screen circuit. "Common minus" lead returns to negative of plate supply, which cannot be grounded. Switch S_2 removes screen voltage for tune-up purposes.

coil with a vacuum tuning capacitor. Figure 8C shows an interesting circuit that is becoming more popular for class-AB_1 linear operation. A tetrode tube operating under class-AB_1 conditions draws no grid current and requires no grid-driving power. Only r-f voltage is required for proper operation. It is possible therefore to dispense with the usual tuned grid circuit and neutralizing capacitor and in their place employ a noninductive load resistor in the grid circuit across which the required excitation voltage may be developed. This resistor can be of the order of 50 to 300 ohms, depending on circuit requirements. Considerable power must be dissipated in the resistor to develop sufficient grid swing, but driving power is often cheaper to obtain than the cost of the usual grid-circuit components. In addition, the low-impedance grid return removes the tendency toward instability that is often common to the circuits of figures 8A and 8B. Neutralization is not required of the circuit of figure 8C, and in many cases parasitic suppression may be omitted. The price that must be paid is the additional excitation that is required to develop operating voltage across grid resistor R_1.

The pi-network circuit of figure 8C is interesting in that the rotary coil (L_2) and the plate tuning capacitor (C_3) are ganged together by a gear train, enabling the circuit to be tuned to resonance with one panel control instead of the two required by the circuit of figure 8A. Careful design of the rotary inductor will permit the elimination of the auxiliary high-frequency coil (L_1), thus reducing the cost and complexity of the circuit.

The Grounded-Screen Configuration For maximum shielding, it is necessary to operate the tetrode tube with the screen at r-f ground potential. As the screen has a d-c potential applied to it (in grid-driven circuits), it must be bypassed to ground to provide the necessary r-f return. The bypass capacitor employed must perform efficiently over a vast frequency spectrum that includes the operating range plus the region of possible vhf parasitic oscillations. This is a large order, and the usual bypass capacitors possess sufficient inductance to introduce regeneration into the screen circuit, degrading the grid-plate shielding to a marked degree. Nonlinearity and self-oscillation can be the result of this loss of circuit isolation. A solution to this problem is to eliminate the screen bypass capacitor, by grounding the screen terminals of the tube by means of a low-inductance strap.

Screen voltage is then applied to the tube by grounding the positive terminal of the screen supply, and "floating" the negative of the screen and bias supplies below ground potential as shown in figure 9. Meters are placed in the separate-circuit cathode return leads, and each meter reads only the current flowing in that particular circuit. Operation of this grounded-screen circuit is normal in all respects, and it may be applied to any form of grid-driven tetrode amplifier with good results.

The Inductively Tuned Tank Circuit The output capacitance of large transmitting tubes and the residual circuit capacitance are often sufficiently great to prevent the plate tank circuit from having the desired value of Q, especially in the upper reaches of the hf range (28- to 54-MHz). Where tank capacitance values are small, it is possible for the output capacitance of the tube to be greater than the maximum desired value of tank capacitance. In some cases, it is possible to permit the circuit to operate with higher-than-normal Q, however this expedient is unsatisfactory when circulating tank current is high, as it usually is in high-frequency amplifiers.

A practical alternative is to employ *inductive tuning* and to dispense entirely with the input tuning capacitor which usually has a high minimum value of capacitance (figure 10). The input capacitance of the circuit is thus reduced to that of the output capacitance of the tube which may be more nearly the desired value. Circuit resonance is established by varying the inductance of the tank coil with a movable, shorted turn, or loop, which may be made of a short length of copper water pipe of the proper diameter. The shorted turn is inserted within the tank coil by a lead-screw mechanism, or it may be mounted at an angle within the coil and rotated so that its plane travels from a parallel to an oblique position with respect to the coil. The shorted turn should be silver plated and have no joints to hold r-f losses to a minimum. Due attention should be given to the driving mechanism so that unwanted, parasitic shorted turns do not exist in this device.

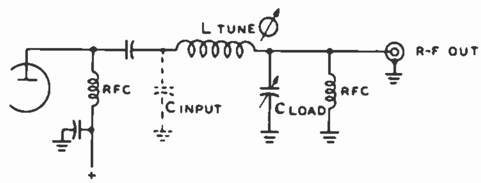


Figure 10
INDUCTIVE TUNING ELIMINATES INPUT TUNING CAPACITOR

28-5 Cathode-Driven Amplifier Design

The *cathode-driven,* or *grounded-grid* amplifier has achieved astounding popularity in recent years as a high-power linear stage for sideband application. Various versions of this circuit are illustrated in figure 11. In the basic circuit the control grid of the tube is at r-f ground potential and the exciting signal is applied to the cathode by means of a tuned circuit. Since the grid of the tube is grounded, it serves as a shield between the input and output circuits, making neutralization unnecessary in many instances. The very small plate-to-cathode capacitance of most tubes permits a minimum of intrastage coupling below 30 MHz. In addition, when zero-bias triodes or tetrodes are used, screen or bias supplies are not usually required.

Feedthrough Power A portion of the exciting power appears in the plate circuit of the grounded-grid (cathode-driven) amplifier and is termed *feedthrough* power. In any amplifier of this type, whether it be triode or tetrode, it is desirable to have a large ratio of feedthrough power to peak grid-driving power. The feedthrough power acts as a swamping resistor across the driving circuit to stabilize the effects of grid loading. The ratio of feedthrough power to driving power should be about 10 to 1 for best stage linearity. The feedthrough power provides the user with added output power he would not obtain from a more conventional circuit. The driver stage for the grounded-grid amplifier must, of course, supply the normal excitation power plus the feedthrough power. Many commercial sideband

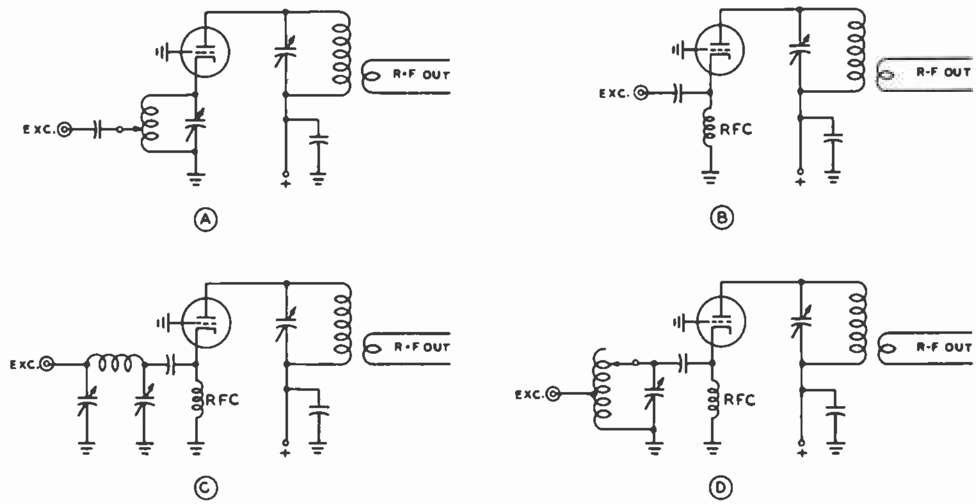


Figure 11

THE CATHODE-DRIVEN AMPLIFIER

Widely used as a linear amplifier for sideband service, the cathode-driven (g-g) circuit provides economy and simplicity, in addition to a worthwhile reduction in intermodulation distortion. A—The basic g-g amplifier employs tuned input circuit. B—A simplified circuit employs untuned r-f choke in cathode in place of the tuned circuit. Linearity and power output are inferior compared to circuit of figure A. C—Simple high-C pi-network may be used to match output impedance of sideband exciter to input impedance of grounded-grid stage. D—Parallel-tuned, high-C circuit may be employed for bandswitching amplifier. Excitation tap is adjusted to provide low value of SWR on exciter coaxial line.

exciters have power output capabilities of the order of 70 to 100 watts and are thus well suited to drive high-power grounded-grid linear amplifier stages whose total excitation requirements fall within this range.

Distortion Products Laboratory measurements made on various tubes in the circuit of figure 11A show that a distortion reduction of the order of 5 to 10 decibels in odd-order products can be obtained by operating the tube in cathode-driven service as opposed to grid-driven service. The improvement in distortion varies from tube type to tube type, but some order of improvement is noted for all tube types tested. Most amateur-type transmitting tubes provide signal-to-distortion ratios of −20 to −30 decibels at full output in class-AB_1 grid-driven operation. The ratio increases to approximately −25 to −40 decibels for class-B grounded-grid operation. Distortion improvement is substantial, but not as great as might otherwise be assumed from the large amount of feedback inherent in the grounded-grid circuit.

A simplified version of the grounded-grid amplifier is shown in figure 11B. This configuration utilizes an untuned input circuit, and is very popular as an inexpensive and simplified form of the more sophisticated circuit of figure 11A. It has inherent limitations, however, that should be recognized. In general, slightly less power output and efficiency is observed with the untuned-cathode circuit, odd-order distortion products run 4 to 6 decibels higher, and the circuit is harder to drive and match to the exciter than is the tuned-cathode circuit of figure 11A. Best results are obtained when the coaxial line of the driver stage is very short —a few feet or so. Optimum linearity requires cathode circuit Q that can only be supplied by a high-C tank circuit.

Since the single-ended class-B grounded-grid linear amplifier draws grid current on only one-half (or less) of the operating cycle, the sideband exciter "sees" a low-

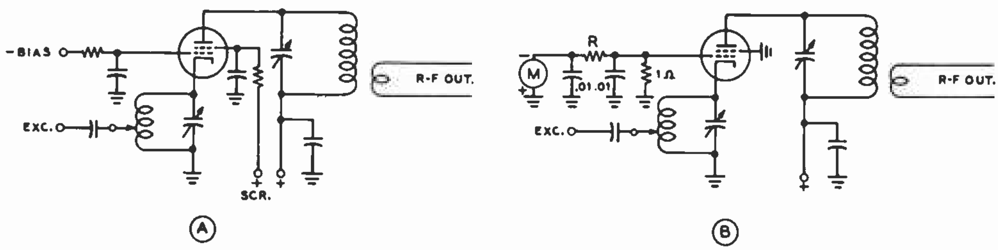


Figure 12

TETRODE TUBES MAY BE USED IN CATHODE-DRIVEN AMPLIFIERS

A—Tetrode tube may be used in cathode-driven configuration, with bias and screen voltages applied to elements which are at r-f ground potential. B—Grid current of grounded-grid tube is easily monitored by RC network which lifts grid above ground sufficiently to permit a millivoltmeter to indicate voltage drop across 1-ohm resistor. Meter is a 0-1 d-c milliammeter in series with appropriate multiplier resistor.

impedance load during this time, and a very high-impedance load over the balance of the cycle. Linearity of the exciter is thereby affected and the distortion products of the exciter are enhanced. Thus, the *driving signal* is degraded in the cathode circuit of the grounded-grid stage unless the unbalanced input impedance can be modified in some fashion. A high-C tuned circuit, stores enough energy over the operating r-f cycle so that the exciter "sees" a relatively constant load at all times. In addition, the tuned circuit may be tapped or otherwise adjusted so that the SWR on the coaxial line coupling the exciter to the amplifier is relatively low. This is a great advantage, particularly in the case of those exciters having fixed-ratio pi-network output circuits designed expressly for a 50-ohm termination.

Finally, it must be noted that removal of the tuned cathode circuit breaks the amplifier plate-circuit return to the cathode, and r-f plate-current pulses must return to the cathode via the outer shield of the driver coaxial line and back via the center conductor! Extreme fluctuations in exciter loading, intermodulation distortion, and TVI can be noticed by changing the length of the cable between the exciter and the grounded-grid amplifier when an untuned-cathode input circuit and a long interconnecting coaxial line are used.

Cathode-Driven Amplifier Construction Design features of the single-ended and push-pull amplifiers discussed previously apply equally well to the grounded-grid stage. The g-g linear amplifier may have either configuration, although the majority of the g-g stages are single ended, as push-pull offers no distinct advantages and adds greatly to circuit complexity.

The *cathode circuit* of the amplifier is resonated to the operating frequency by means of a high-C tank (figure 11A). Resonance is indicated by maximum grid current of the stage. A low value of SWR on the driver coaxial line may be achieved by adjusting the tap on the tuned circuit, or by varying the capacitors of the pi-network (figure 11C). Correct adjustments will produce minimum SWR and maximum amplifier grid current at the same settings. The cathode tank should have a Q of 2 or more.

The cathode circuit should be completely shielded from the plate circuit. It is common practice to mount the cathode components in an "r-f tight" box below the chassis of the amplifier, and to place the plate circuit components in a screened box above the chassis.

The *grid (or screen) circuit* of the tube is operated at r-f ground potential, or may have d-c voltage applied to it to determine the operating parameters of the stage (figure 11A). In either case, the r-f path to ground must be short, and have extremely low inductance, otherwise the screening action of the element will be impaired. The grid (and screen) therefore, must be bypassed to ground over a frequency range that includes the operating spectrum as well as the region of possible vhf parasitic oscillations. This is quite a large order. The inherent inductance of the usual bypass capacitor plus the length of element lead within the tube is often sufficient to introduce enough regeneration into the circuit to degrade the linearity of the amplifier at high signal levels even though the instability is not great enough to cause parasitic oscillation. In addition, it is often desired to "unground" the grounded screen or grid sufficiently to permit a metering circuit to be inserted.

One practical solution to these problems is to shunt the tube element to ground by means of a 1-ohm composition resistor, bypassed with a .01-μfd ceramic disc capacitor. The voltage drop caused by the flow of grid (or screen) current through the resistor can easily be measured by a millivoltmeter whose scale is calibrated in terms of element current (figure 12B).

The *plate circuit* of the grounded-grid amplifier is conventional, and either pi-network or inductive coupling to the load may be used. There is some evidence to support the belief that intermodulation distortion products are reduced by employing plate circuit Q's somewhat higher than normally used in class-C amplifier design. A circuit Q of 10 or greater is thus recommended for ground-grid amplifier plate circuits.

Tuning the Grounded-Grid Amplifier Since the input and output circuits of the grounded-grid amplifier are in series, a certain proportion of driving power appears in the output circuit. If full excitation is applied to the stage and the output circuit is opened, or the plate voltage removed from the tube, practically all of the driving power will be dissipated by the grid of the tube. Overheating of this element will quickly occur under these circumstances, followed by damage to the tube. Full excitation should therefore never be applied to a grounded-grid stage unless plate voltage is applied beforehand, and the stage is loaded to the antenna.

Tuneup for sideband operation consists of applying full plate voltage and sufficient excitation (carrier injection) so that a small rise in resting plate (cathode) current is noted. The plate loading capacitor is set near full capacitance and the plate tank capacitor is adjusted for resonance (minimum plate current). Drive is advanced until grid current is noted and the plate circuit is loaded by decreasing the capacitance of the plate loading capacitor. The drive is increased until about one-half normal grid current flows, and loading is continued (resonating the plate tank capacitor as required) until loading is near normal. Finally, grid drive and loading are adjusted until PEP-condition plate and grid currents are normal. The values of plate and grid current should be logged for future reference. At this point, the amplifier is loaded to the maximum PEP input condition. In most cases, the amplifier and power supply are capable of operation at this power level for only a short period of time, and it is not recommended that this condition be permitted for more than a minute or two.

The exciter is now switched to the SSB mode and, with speech excitation, the grid and plate currents of the cathode-driven stage should rise to approximately 40 to 50 percent of the previously logged PEP readings. The exact amount of meter movement with speech is variable and depends on meter damping and the peak to average ratio of the particular voice. Under no circumstances, however, should the voice meter readings exceed 50 percent of the PEP adjustment readings unless some form of speech compression is in use.

To properly load a linear amplifier for the so-called "two-kilowatt PEP" condition, *it is necessary for the amplifier to be tuned and loaded at the two-kilowatt level*, albeit briefly. It is necessary to use a dummy load to comply with the FCC regulations, or else a special test signal must be used. To achieve a ratio of 2:1 between the tune-up condition and the PEP condition an audio pulser and single-tone driving signal may be used. Shown in figure 13 is a pulser having a duty cycle of about 0.44. For a d-c meter reading of 880 watts input using the pulser and a single audio tone, the PEP input level and corresponding amplifier loading adjustments will satisfy the two-kilowatt PEP conditions. An oscilloscope and audio oscillator are necessary to conduct this exercise, but these instruments are required

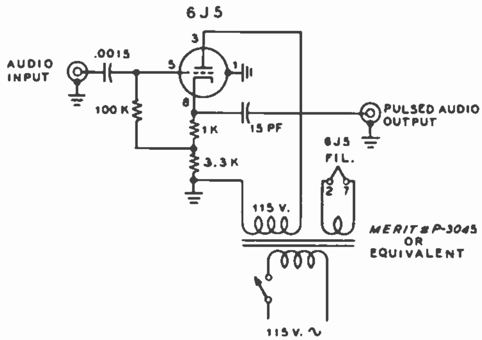


Figure 13

AUDIO PULSER FOR HIGH-POWER TUNE-UP OF AMPLIFIER

This simple audio pulser modifies the audio signal to the sideband exciter so that it has a high peak-to-average power ratio. Amplifier may be thus tuned for two kilowatt PEP input without violating the one-kilowatt maximum steady-state condition.

items for any well-equipped sideband station.

For best linearity, the output circuit of the grounded-grid stage should be overcoupled so that power output drops about 2-percent from maximum value. A simple output r-f voltmeter is indispensable for proper circuit adjustment. Excessive grid current is a sign of antenna undercoupling, and overcoupling is indicated by a rapid drop in output power. Proper grounded-grid stage operation can be determined by finding the optimum ratio between grid and plate current and by adjusting the drive level and loading to maintain this ratio. Many manufacturers now provide grounded-grid operation data for their tubes, and the ratio of grid to plate current can be determined from the data for each particular tube.

Choice of Tubes for G-G Service Not all tubes are suitable for grounded-grid service. In addition, the signal-to-distortion ratio of the suitable tubes varies over a wide range. Some of the best g-g performers are the 811A, 813, 7094, 4-125A, 4-250A, 4-400A, and 4-1000A. In addition, the 3-400Z and 3-1000Z triodes are specifically designed for low distortion, grounded-grid amplifier service. The older types 837 and 803 are used extensively for g-g operation but are not recommended because of poor signal-to-distortion ratios.

Certain types of tetrodes, exemplified by the 4-65A, 4X150A, 4CX300A, and 4CX-1000A should not be used as grounded-grid amplifiers unless grid bias and screen voltage are applied to the elements of the tube (figure 12A). The internal structure of these tubes permits unusually high values of grid current to flow when true grounded-grid circuitry is used, and the tube may be easily damaged by this mode of operation.

The efficiency of a typical cathode-driven amplifier runs between 55- and 65-percent, indicating that the tube employed should have plenty of plate dissipation. In general, the PEP input in watts to a tube operating in grounded-grid configuration can safely be about 2.5 to 3 times the rated plate dissipation. Because of the relatively low average-to-peak power of the human voice it is tempting to push this ratio to a higher figure in order to obtain more output from a given tube. This action is unwise in that the odd-order distortion products rise rapidly when the tube is overloaded, and because no safety margin is left for tuning errors or circuit adjustments.

Neutralization of the G-G Stage At some high frequency the shielding action of the grid of the g-g amplifier deteriorates. Neutralization may be necessary at higher frequencies either because of the presence of inductance between the active grid element and the common returns of the input and output circuit, or because of excessive plate-cathode capacitance.

Neutralization, where required, may be accomplished by feeding out-of-phase energy from the plate circuit to the filament circuit (figure 14A) or by inserting a reactance in series with the grid (figure 14B). For values of plate-cathode capacitance normally encountered in tubes usable in g-g service, the residual inductance in the grid-ground path provides sufficient reactance, and in some cases even series capacitance will be required. Typical tube electrode capacitances are shown in figure 15A. These can be represented by an equivalent star connection of three capacitors (figure 15B). If an inductance (*L*) is placed in series with C_G so that a resonant

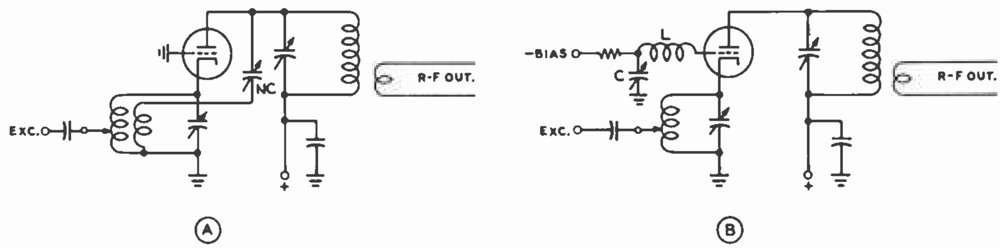


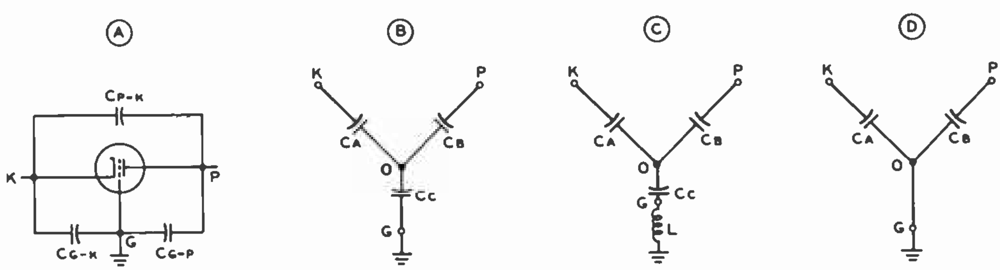
Figure 14

NEUTRALIZING CIRCUITS FOR CATHODE-DRIVEN STAGES

Neutralization of the g-g stage may be necessary at the higher frequencies. Energy fed back in proper phase from plate to cathode is used to neutralize the unwanted energy fed through the tube (A). Reactance placed in series with the grid return lead (B) will accomplish the same result. The inductance (L) usually consists of the internal grid lead of the tube, and capacitor C may be the grid bypass capacitor. A series-resonant circuit at the operating frequency is thus formed.

circuit is formed (figure 15C), point O will be at ground potential (15D). This prevents the transfer of energy from point *P* to point *K*, since there now exists no common coupling impedance. The determination of value C_C and L are shown in figure 15.

It is apparent that when the plate-cathode capacitance of the tube is small as compared to the plate-grid and the grid-cathode capacitance, C_C is a large value and the required value of inductance L is small. In practical cases the value of L is supplied by the tube and lead inductance, and the grid-to-ground impedance can be closely adjusted by proper choice of the bias bypass capacitor (figure 14B). Below a certain frequency determined by the physical geometry of the tube, neutralization may be accomplished by adding inductance to the grid-return lead; above this frequency it may be necessary to series tune the circuit for minimum energy feedthrough from cathode to plate. Most tubes are sufficiently well screened so that series inductive neutralization at the lower frequencies is unnecessary, but series capacitance tuning of the grid-return lead may be required to prevent oscillation at some parasitic frequency in the vhf range.



$$C_C = \frac{(C_{P-G} \times C_{P-K}) \pm (C_{P-K} \times C_{G-K}) \pm (C_{G-K} \times C_{P-G})}{C_{P-K}}$$

$$L = \frac{1}{(2\pi f)^2 \times C_C}$$

Figure 15

Tube electrode capacitances can be represented by an equivalent star connection of three capacitors. If inductance is placed in series with C_c so that a resonant circuit is formed (drawing C), point O will be at ground potential.

Figure 16

3-400Z LINEAR AMPLIFIER PACKS KILOWATT PUNCH FOR THE SIX-METER OPERATOR

This compact kilowatt linear amplifier is suited for SSB, c-w or a-m service in the 50-MHz band. Utilizing the 3-400Z in a grounded-grid circuit, the amplifier requires neither bias nor screen voltage. The homemade cabinet is an "r-f tight" inclosure which helps to reduce TVI problems. Meters are shielded and are in the circuit at all times so no extra switching circuits are required. Panel size is only 8¾" × 13". Panel components are (l. to r.): Grid meter, r-f output meter, and plate meter. In the line below the meters are: r-f output calibration control, plate tuning, and antenna loading. Across the bottom of the panel are: input tuning, filament pilot light, and high-voltage pilot light.

28-6 A Kilowatt Linear Amplifier for Six Meters

Described in this section is a high-power amplifier expressly designed for six-meter operation. It is capable of 1-kilowatt PEP input for sideband and c-w service, and will deliver a fully modulated carrier of about 200 watts as an a-m linear amplifier. A single Eimac 3-400Z zero-bias triode is used in this efficient, compact unit which is capable of delivering full output from an exciter providing 35 watts peak drive (or 15 watts carrier, amplitude-modulated). The cathode-driven (grounded-grid) configuration is utilized and neutralization is unnecessary. Circuit components used are conventional and efficient operation is obtained, as with any high-frequency amplifier by careful attention to circuit design and layout, the use of short r-f leads, and proper ground-return techniques.

The Amplifier Circuit The schematic of the six-meter amplifier is shown in figure 17. A tuned-cathode

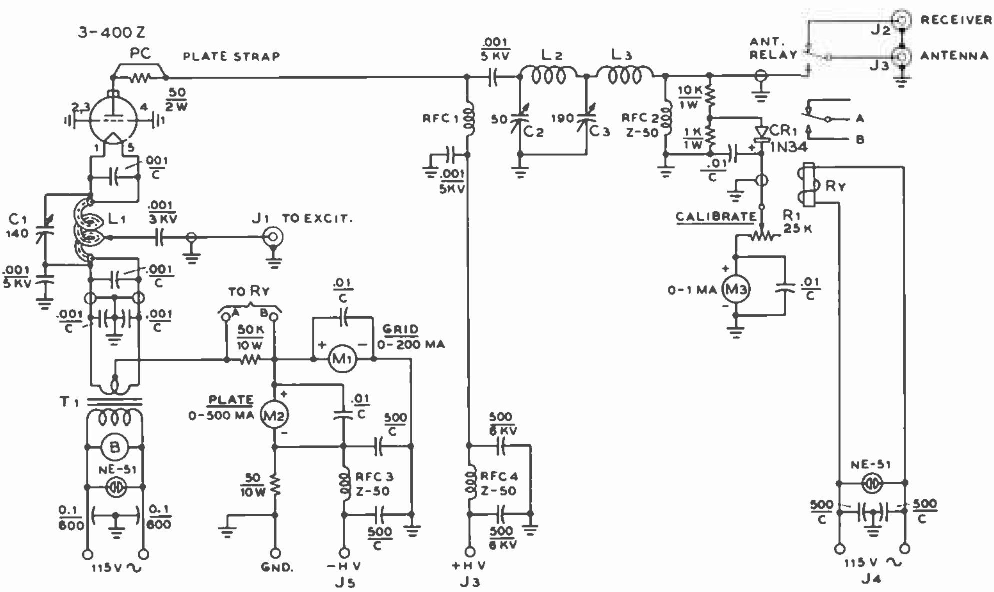


Figure 17

SCHEMATIC OF SIX-METER LINEAR AMPLIFIER

B—Blower. 13 cubic feet per minute at 0.13 inches of water. Dayton 2C-782 or equivalent
C_1—140 pf Bud 1856
C_2—50 pf, 0.07" spacing. Hammarlund MC-50SX
C_3—190 pf. Bud 1858
J_4—TV-type chassis-mount cord socket
L_1—Bifilar coil. 3 turns, 1/8-inch diameter copper tubing spaced to 2", tapped 3/4 turn from grounded end. Inner conductor is No. 12 insulated or formvar wire (see text)
L_2—Pi-section coil. 5 turns, 3/16-inch copper tubing, spaced to 3". Inside diameter is 1 1/8".
L_3—L-section coil. 4 turns, 1/8-inch tubing, 3/4-inch inside diameter, spaced to 2 1/2"
RFC_1—3 μH choke. 48 turns No. 16 formvar wire closewound on 1/2" diameter standoff insulator.
$RFC_{2,3,4}$—Ohmite Z-50 choke
RY—Coaxial antenna relay. Dow Key DK60-G2C
T_1—5 volts at 15 A. Stancor P-6433
Note: 0.1 μf, 600-volt feedthrough capacitors are Sprague 80P-3. Meters are Simpson Wide-Vue.

circuit (L_1-C_1) is used to preserve the waveform of the driving signal and to reduce harmonic distortion that may cause TVI. The cathode coil is made of copper tubing and filament voltage is fed to the 3-400Z via the coil and an insulated wire passed through the tubing. Excitation is tapped on the coil at a point which provides a nominal 50-ohm load to the exciter.

The plate circuit of the amplifier utilizes a *pi-L* network to achieve a high order of harmonic suppression and a simple diode voltmeter is used to monitor the r-f output voltage. An antenna relay (RY) is incorporated in the amplifier, and an alternative circuit is shown for using the linear amplifier with a transceiver (figure 18).

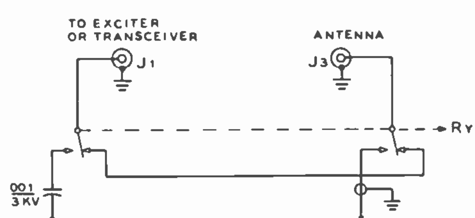


Figure 18

SUGGESTED ANTENNA-RELAY CIRCUIT FOR USING AMPLIFIER WITH TRANSCEIVER

Metering and Suppression Circuits It is necessary to measure both grid and plate current in a cathode-driven amplifier to establish the proper ratio of grid to plate current. At the higher frequencies it is desirable to directly ground the grid of the amplifier tube and not to rely on questionable bypass capacitors to insure that the grid remains at ground potential. Grid current, therefore, is measured in the cathode-return circuit of the amplifier by meter M_1. Plate current is measured in the B-minus lead to the power supply by meter M_2. A simplified metering circuit is shown in figure 19.

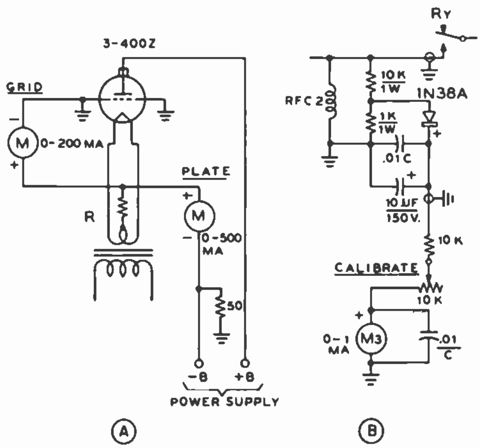


Figure 19

METERING CIRCUITS FOR KILOWATT AMPLIFIER

A—D-c meter circuit showing grid and plate meters placed in low-potential return leads. The B-minus of the power supply "floats" above ground by virtue of the 50-ohm resistor, which may be placed in the power supply, if desired.

B—Peak-responding voltmeter circuit useful for adjusting linear for a-m service.

This amplifier was checked for parasitics and it was found that the usual plate parasitic choke was not required for stable operation. A variation in circuit layout, however, or changes in ground-return currents may allow weak parasitic oscillation to take place. If this condition is found, placement of a parasitic choke in the plate lead will suppress the unwanted parasitic. A practical parasitic choke is shown in the schematic and is made by merely shunting a portion of the plate strap with a composition resistor.

Amplifier Construction The amplifier is inclosed in an "r-f tight" cabinet measuring 13" × 8¾" × 10". A standard 12" × 10" × 3" aluminum chassis is used, along with an 8¾" × 13" panel (cut from a standard aluminum relay rack panel). The cabinet is made by bending a sheet of light aluminum (31" × 11") to fit around the panel. It is riveted to 13" × 11" bottom plate. The rear of the cabinet is a sheet of perforated aluminum fastened to the cabinet with ½-inch aluminum angle stock. Additional angle stock is cut to length and fastened to the front edge of the cabinet to secure the panel. A 4-inch hole is cut in the cabinet directly above the 3-400Z and is covered with a small sheet of perforated aluminum. This shielded vent permits the heated air from the tube to escape from the inclosure.

After the amplifier is completed and slid within the cabinet, it is fixed in place by means of sheet-metal screws placed at the bottom edges of the chassis and around the panel, making the inclosure as "r-f tight" as possible.

A meter shield is used to protect the panel meters from the r-f field of the plate circuit and to suppress r-f leakage from the cabinet via the meter faces. The box-like shield is attached to the panel by means of aluminum angle stock which is held to the panel by the meter mounting bolts. All paint is removed from the rear of the panel to provide a good ground connection to the meter shield and to the chassis and cabinet.

The 3-400Z tube requires forced-air cooling during operation and a blower (B) is mounted on the chassis and activated with application of filament voltage. An *Eimac SK-410* air-system socket and *SK-416* air chimney are used to achieve proper air flow around the filament and plate seals of the tube. The air enters the under-chassis area, passes through the socket and is directed over the envelope and plate seal of the 3-400Z by the glass chimney placed over the tube. The air then passes out through the vent placed in the cabinet directly above the 3-400Z.

Layout of the major components may be seen in the photographs. The air-system socket is mounted on the underside of the chassis in a 3½-inch diameter cutout. The spring clips that hold the chimney in place fasten with the same bolts used to mount the socket, which is oriented so that filament pins 1 and 5 are facing the front of the chassis. The cathode tuning capacitor (C_1) is mounted on the front apron of the chassis with insulated washers as the rotor is above ground by the amount of the filament voltage. The cathode coil is a dual winding, made of copper tubing having an insulated center conductor. A section of ⅛-inch soft-drawn copper tubing about a foot long is needed to make the coil. Before the coil is wound, the ends of the tubing are smoothed with a file and a length of #12 cotton-covered (or *formvar*-insulated) wire is passed through the tubing. The coil is then wound about a ¾-inch diameter wood dowel rod used as a temporary form, spacing the three turns to a length of two inches. The tubing is trimmed, and the inner wire is left projecting about ten inches from each end. The coil is mounted close to the tube socket (figure 21) with one end supported by the filament pins of the tube socket. The inner conductor is trimmed to length and soldered to one filament pin, and the tubing is connected to the other filament pin by means of a short length of copper strap about ⅛-inch wide, cut from copper "flashing" material. The end of the coil is equidistant from the filament pins. The strap encircles one end of the tubing and is soldered in place, with the other end soldered to the pin. The filament bypass capacitor is soldered directly between the filament pins of the socket. A second short length of copper strap jumpers the first strap to the stator of the cathode tuning capacitor.

The opposite end of the cathode coil is bypassed to ground by a ceramic capacitor which also supports the coil. The inner conductor is bypassed to the outside tubing at this point, and a length of copper strap makes a connection to the rotor of the tuning capacitor. The inner conductor continues over to the filament transformer and a second length of #12 wire is run from the copper tubing to the second transformer terminal. The two filament leads are covered with lengths of cambric or plastic tubing, over which is slipped a length of shield braid, grounded to the chassis at both ends.

The excitation tap on the coil is placed about ¾-turn from the bottom (bypassed) end. The exact tap point is not critical and may be easily checked by adjusting it for minimum SWR on the coaxial line from the exciter to the amplifier.

The three grid pins of the 3-400Z socket are grounded by passing a ¼-inch wide copper strap through the slot in the socket adjacent to each grid pin and soldering the strap directly to the flat tab on the pin. The straps are then bolted to the chassis just clear of the socket. The lead from the coaxial input receptacle (J_1) to the coupling capacitor adjacent to the cathode circuit is made of a length of RG-58/U coaxial line, with the outer shield of the line grounded at the input receptacle and also at the mounting stud of the bypass capacitor for the coil.

The Plate-Circuit Assembly Layout of the components above the chassis are shown in figure 20. The plate tuning and loading capacitors (C_2 and C_3) are mounted on ½-inch ceramic insulators. The tuning capacitor is rotated 90 degrees on its side and held in position with small aluminum brackets. A common ground connection made of a length of ½-inch wide copper strap connects the rear rotor terminals of the capacitors. In addition, the capacitor rotor wipers are connected to the common ground strap.

A second strap grounds the rotors to a common ground point on the chassis under the stud of the high-voltage bypass capacitor at the lower end of the plate r-f choke. The shafts of the variable capacitors are driven with insulated couplers to prevent ground-loop currents from flowing through the shafts into the panel.

The pi-section of the plate tank circuit (L_2) is made of a length of 3/16-inch diameter copper tubing, the five turns being spaced three inches long, with an inside diameter of 1⅛″. The ends of the coil are flattened and drilled to be bolted to the stator lugs of the capacitor with 4-40 hardware.

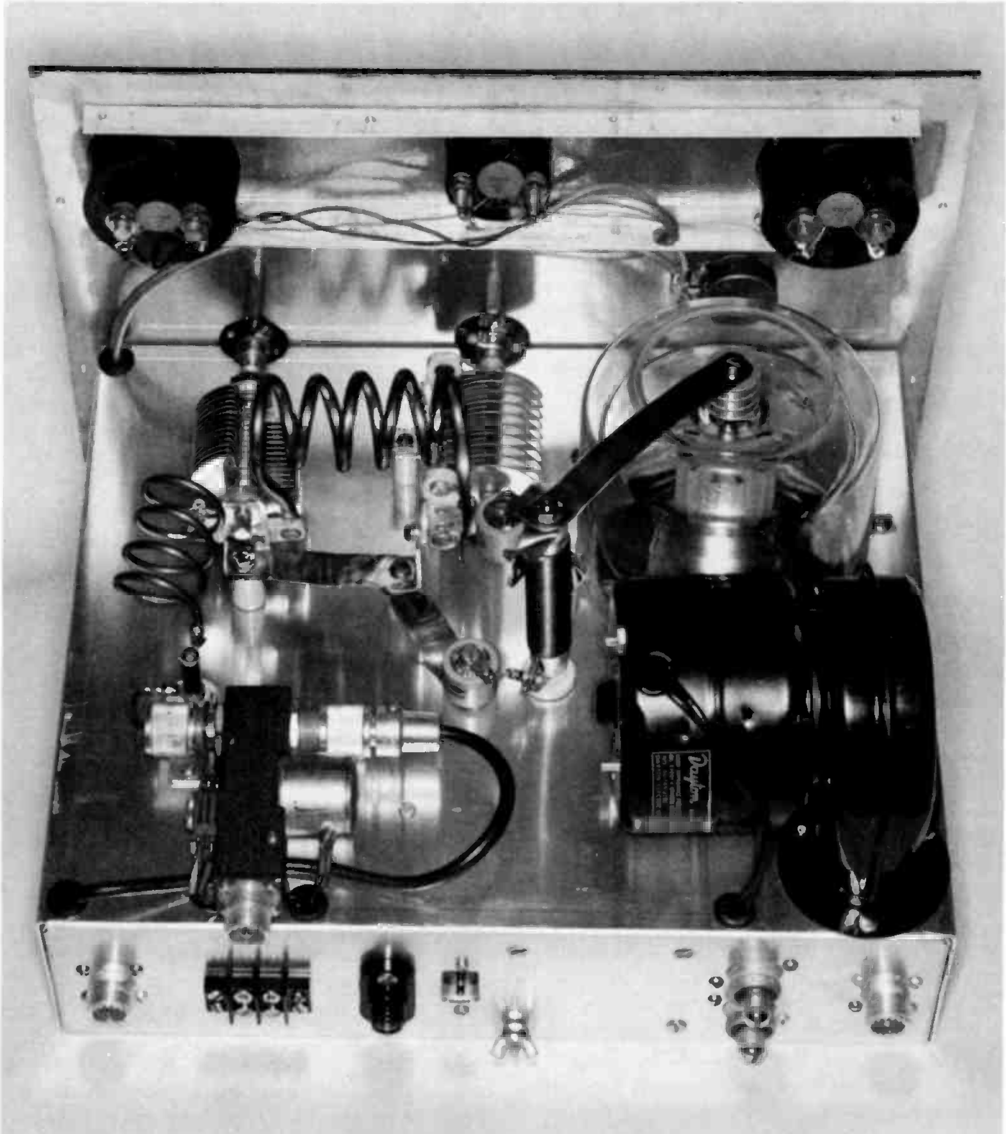


Figure 20

TOP VIEW OF 3-400Z LINEAR AMPLIFIER FOR 50 MHz

Placement of the major components above the chassis may be seen in this photograph. The meter shield has been removed for the photograph. Leads to the meter compartment are shielded, and bypass capacitors are mounted at the meter terminals.
Across the rear apron of the chassis (l. to r.) are: receiver receptacle (J_2); terminal strip (J_5); Millen high-voltage connector (J_3); Sprague feedthrough capacitors; and r-f exciter receptacle (J_1). At the bottom edge of the chassis are a ground connection and the relay voltage terminal (J_4).
The copper ground strap between the plate circuit tuning capacitors may be seen just behind the antenna relay.

The L-section of the tank coil (L_3) is made of a length of ⅛-inch diameter tubing and has four turns, ¾ inch in diameter and two inches long. The coil is placed at right angles to the main tank coil and is bolted between the stator of C_3 and a ceramic feedthrough insulator. Large lugs may be placed on the coil to facilitate bolting it in position.

The plate r-f choke is homemade, and is wound on a ½-inch diameter ceramic insulator. A commercial choke may be used, if desired. The base of the choke screws on the bolt of the high-voltage feedthrough insulator on the chassis, and is bypassed at this point with a ceramic capacitor. The r-f choke is positioned close to the 3-400Z chimney to permit a reasonably short plate lead, and the plate blocking capacitor is mounted to the top of the choke with a length of strap which extends downwards toward the plate tank capacitor.

The coaxial antenna relay is mounted on the top of the chassis positioned so the output lead from the L-section of the tank circuit can be connected directly to the input receptacle. The connection is made by trimming down a coaxial connector and soldering a short length of #10 wire to the center terminal to make the connection to the coil. The *antenna* receptacle of the relay extends beyond the rear apron of the chassis and through the rear of the cabinet. The *receive* receptacle is fed with a length of RG-58/U coaxial cable which terminates at the coaxial receptacle on the rear apron of the chassis. An auxiliary set of contacts on the relay are used to short out the 50K self-bias resistor in the cathode circuit of the 3-400Z when transmitting. The resistor serves to bias the tube to near cutoff during periods of reception to prevent noise being generated which may interfere with reception of weak signals and also to reduce the standby drain on the power supply. The relay is actuated by the control or VOX circuit of the exciter, and the relay coil should be chosen to match the voltage delivered from the exciter control circuit.

Plate current metering is accomplished in the negative lead to the power supply, and the negative of the supply is lifted above ground as described in the *Power Supplies* chapter of this Handbook.

A diode r-f voltmeter is mounted beneath the chassis in a small aluminum box positioned over the r-f feedthrough insulator which supports the end of the L-network above the chassis. The lead from the voltmeter circuit to the *calibrate* potentiometer on the panel is run in shield braid, as are the leads from the center tap of the filament transformer. Tight rubber grommets are used in all chassis holes to restrict air leaks.

Amplifier Adjustment When the amplifier has been wired and inspected, it is ready for initial checks. Air is directed into the tube socket by means of a temporary bottom plate (cardboard) taped to the chassis. Filament voltage is applied and the blower motor should start. A strong blast of air out of the tube chimney should be noted. Tube filament voltage should be adjusted to 5.0 volts at the socket with an accurate meter. Filament voltage is now removed and the input and output coaxial receptacles are temporarily terminated in 50-ohm, 1-watt composition resistors, which may be soldered across the receptacles for this test. A grid-dip meter is tuned to 50 MHz and brought near the cathode coil (the 3-400Z being in the socket). The meter should show resonance with the cathode tuning capacitor about two-thirds meshed. The plate tank circuit is now tested, with the tuning capacitor about one-half meshed and the loading capacitor about two-thirds meshed. Grid-dip resonance at these settings for 50 MHz may be achieved by slight alterations in the spacing of the pi-network coil. The L-section should also show a dip around 50 MHz.

Once resonance of the tank circuits has been verified, the 50-ohm resistors are removed and the amplifier attached to the exciter and coaxial antenna lead. A separate ground lead is run from the amplifier to the power supply. A plate potential of 2500 volts is recommended as a maximum (key-down) value, and good operation can be obtained down to 2000 volts. At the higher potential, the resting plate current will be about 80 ma. Random variations in resting plate current, or a show of grid current when the controls are tuned (with no grid drive) is

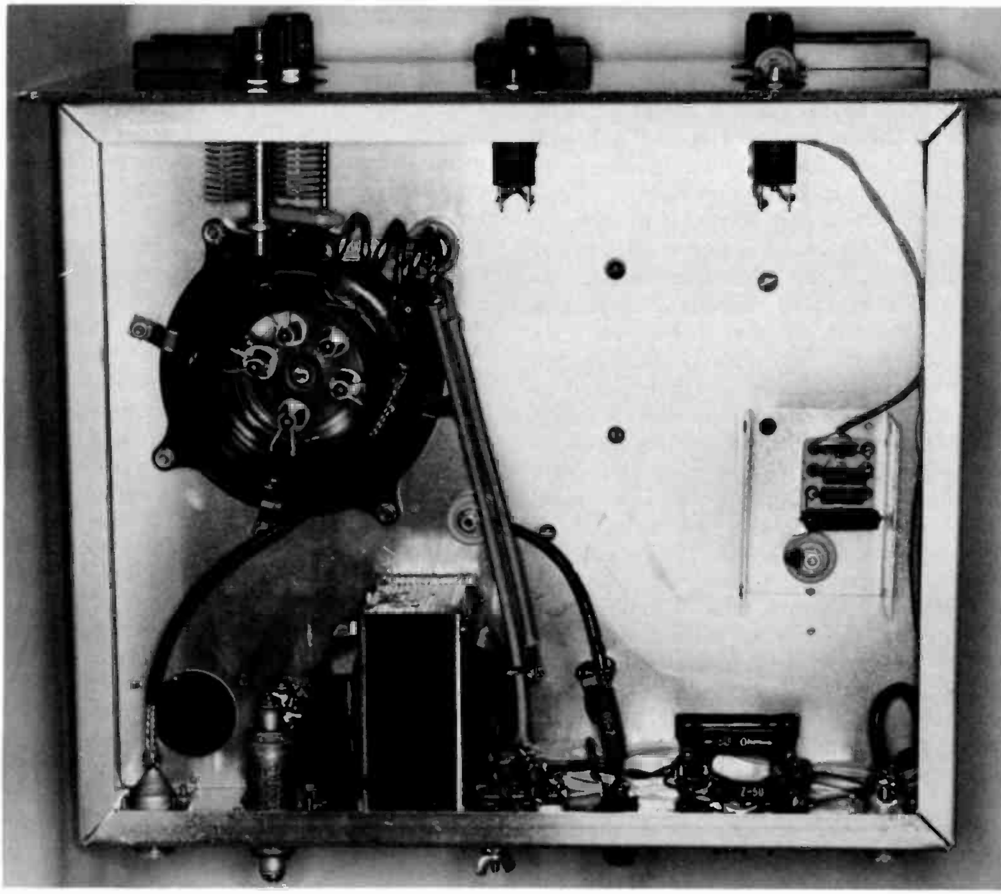


Figure 21

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF LINEAR AMPLIFIER

The cathode circuit is mounted on the filament terminals of the air system socket (upper left), with the tuning capacitor (C_1) insulated from the panel. Filament leads run from the tuned circuit to the filament transformer mounted to the rear apron of the chassis. At the right is the small aluminum box (cover removed) holding the components for the r-f output voltmeter. The blower outlet is at the left corner of the chassis next to the feedthrough capacitors.

an indication of parasitic oscillation and a plate parasitic choke should be installed.

After plate voltage is applied, grid drive is slowly injected until a plate current of about 150 ma is noted. The cathode circuit is resonated for maximum grid current and the plate tuning capacitor adjusted for plate-current dip. Grid drive is increased and loading adjustments made in the normal manner for pi-network operation to achieve a *single tone* (*carrier*) plate current of 400 ma at a grid current of about 140 ma. Proper loading is indicated by the ratio of plate current to grid current, which should be about 3:1.

For operation as a linear amplifier for SSB, carrier injection is used as described for tuning and loading. The relative-voltage output meter is very useful in the tuning process and provides a continuous check on proper operation as it increases in proportion to grid current. Maximum carrier input conditions are as stated above, and under these conditions, the anode of the 3-400Z will be a cherry red in color. With carrier removed and SSB voice modulation applied, drive is advanced until voice peaks reach about 200 ma plate current and about 70 ma grid current. For c-w operation, the full 400 ma plate current value may be run.

A-M Linear Operation The amplifier may be used for a-m linear service when properly adjusted. The amplifier efficiency at the peak of the modulation cycle is about 66 percent and efficiency under carrier conditions (no modulation) is about 33 percent. As maximum plate dissipation is 400 watts, the total a-m carrier input to the 3-400Z is limited to about 600 watts (2500 volts at 240 ma). In order to *properly* load the amplifier to this condition for a-m linear service, an oscilloscope and peak-responding voltmeter are necessary. The r-f output voltmeter in the amplifier may be converted to a peak-responding instrument as shown in figure 19B. In addition, a simple 1000-Hz audio oscillator is used for the following adjustments.

For preliminary tuneup, the a-m driver is modulated 100 percent with the 1000-Hz tone. A driver capable of about 15 watts carrier is required. The 3-400Z amplifier is loaded and drive level adjusted to 600 watts input under this condition. Amplifier output is monitored with the peak-responding voltmeter, which is adjusted to *full-scale* reading at the 600-watt input level. Grid current will run about 1/4 the plate-current value, or approximately 60 ma. Once this condition is reached, the modulation of the driver is removed, leaving only carrier excitation. If the linear amplifier is properly adjusted, the indication of the peak-responding voltmeter should drop to *one-half scale*, corresponding to an output drop to one-quarter power.

If the peak-voltage drop when modulation is removed is less than one-half, the plate circuit loading and grid-drive level of the linear amplifier must be adjusted to provide the correct ratio. This is an indication that antenna loading is too light for the given grid drive. If this process is monitored with an oscilloscope, the point of flat-topping can be noted and drive and loading adjusted to remove the distortion on the peaks of the signal. Under voice modulation, plate and grid current will flicker a small amount upward.

The combination of a peak-responding voltmeter, an oscilloscope, and an audio oscillator used with tune-up under 100 percent single-tone modulation of the exciter affords a relatively easy and accurate method of achieving proper a-m linear amplifier service.

As with any cathode-driven amplifier, drive should never be applied to the amplifier in the absence of plate voltage, as damage to the grid of the tube may result. The proper sequence is to always apply plate voltage before drive, increasing the drive level slowly from a minimum value as tuning adjustments are made.

28-7 A 500-Watt Amplifier for 432-MHz Linear or Class-C-Service

This amplifier is designed for SSB or c-w service at the half-kilowatt level in the 432-MHz amateur band. Making use of

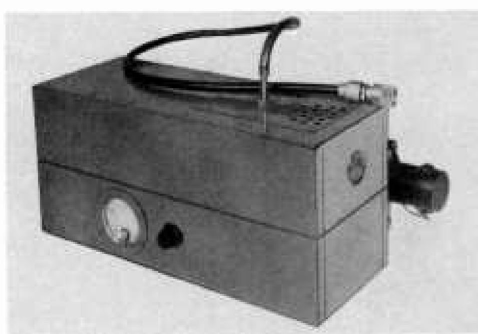


Figure 22

500-WATT STRIP-LINE AMPLIFIER FOR 432 MHz

The 8122 is used in a simple strip-line circuit for high-power operation in the 432-MHz band. Two aluminum chassis are placed back to back to form the cavities and the strip-lines are cut from aluminum plate. The amplifier is forced-air cooled by a blower mounted on the rear of the assembly which forces air through the tube socket, past the anode of the tube, and out the vents cut in the top of the plate cavity. The r-f output cable is at the top of the cavity and the grid meter and grid tuning capacitor (C_1) are mounted on the front wall of the grid cavity.

simplified *strip-line* tank circuits, the amplifier may be duplicated with a very minimum of tools and sheet-metal work. At a plate potential of 2000 volts, the amplifier will deliver about 250 watts with approximately 5 watts drive power.

Amplifier Design The amplifier cabinet is made of two aluminum chassis placed back to back to form grid and plate circuit inclosures. The strip-line circuits are placed in these inclosures, with the 8122 tube mounted in the partition separating the inclosures. At this frequency, the output circuit is effectively isolated from the input circuit by the use of series screen neutralization. Input admittance at vhf (always a problem) is reduced by use of three separate cathode leads which provide a low-inductance r-f path to ground. One of the cathode leads—preferably the one from pin 4—can be series-tuned to ground with a small trimmer capacitor. This provides an additional means for broadband neutralization in the vhf spectrum.

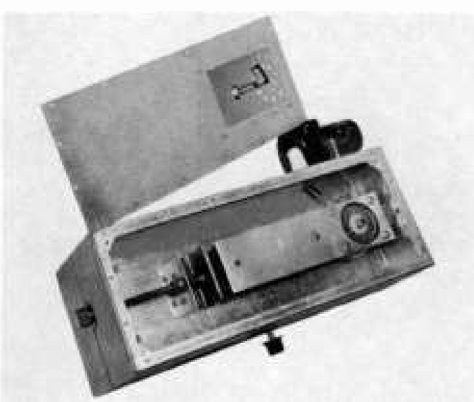


Figure 23

TOP VIEW OF AMPLIFIER SHOWING PLATE LINE ASSEMBLY

The output coupling loop is mounted to the top plate of the inclosure. A capacitive probe may be substituted for the loop for greater flexibility of adjustment, if desired. In the foreground is the plate-line tuning capacitor (C_1) which is a copper plate with finger stock soldered to the lower edge (figure 29A). The capacitor plate is driven by a lead screw from the control knob at the end of the chassis. The plate and screen r-f chokes are to the rear of the strip-line. Strip-line assembly and anode connector for the 8122 are shown in figure 28A-B.

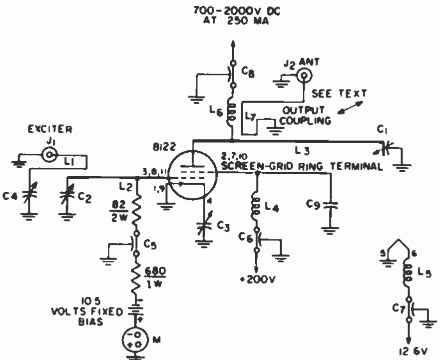


Figure 24

SCHEMATIC, 432-MHz AMPLIFIER

C_1—Refer to text and figures 25 and 29A
C_2—0.5 to 3.0-pf, glass piston capacitor. Erie 680073
C_3—7 to 45-pf trimmer. Erie TS2A-4
C_4—1.8 to 9.0 pf. Johnson 160-104
C_5—0.001 μfd button capacitor. Erie 662-003-102K
C_6, C_7—.001-μfd feedthrough capacitor. Erie 362-102
C_8—High-voltage blocking capacitor, see figure 29B
C_9—Screen bypass capacitor. E. F. Johnson 124-113-1
J_1—UG-290/U receptacle
J_2—To fit antenna system
L_1—Input coupling loop. See figure 27
L_2—Copper plate, 4-5/16" long, ¾" wide and ⅛" thick
L_3—Plate line. See figures 25 and 28A
L_4—Screen r-f choke. Ohmite Z-460 or equivalent
L_5—Filament choke. 8 turns #18 enam. wire, ¼" diam., 1" long
L_6—Plate r-f choke. 11 turns #18 enam. wire, 5/16" diam., closewound
M—Grid meter. 0-50 d-c milliamperes
Socket—E. F. Johnson 124-311-110
Chimney—E. F. Johnson 124-111-1
Finger Stock—Instrument Specialties Co., Little Falls, N. J., 97-115 and 97-136
Blower—6½ cubic feet/min. at 0.45" pressure for 400 watts dissipation. 3½ cubic feet/min. at 0.2" pressure for 250 watts dissipation. Ripley 8445-E

The 8122 ceramic tetrode requires forced-air cooling during operation. The combined effect of this cooling, plus the heat dissipation capability of the finned radiator permits the tube to be operated at the maximum anode dissipation of 400 watts. At this level of plate dissipation, the anode core temperature is rated at 250°C for an air flow of 6.5 cubic feet per minute.

Circuit Details The grid of the 8122 is connected to a half-wavelength strip-line which is tuned at its open end by

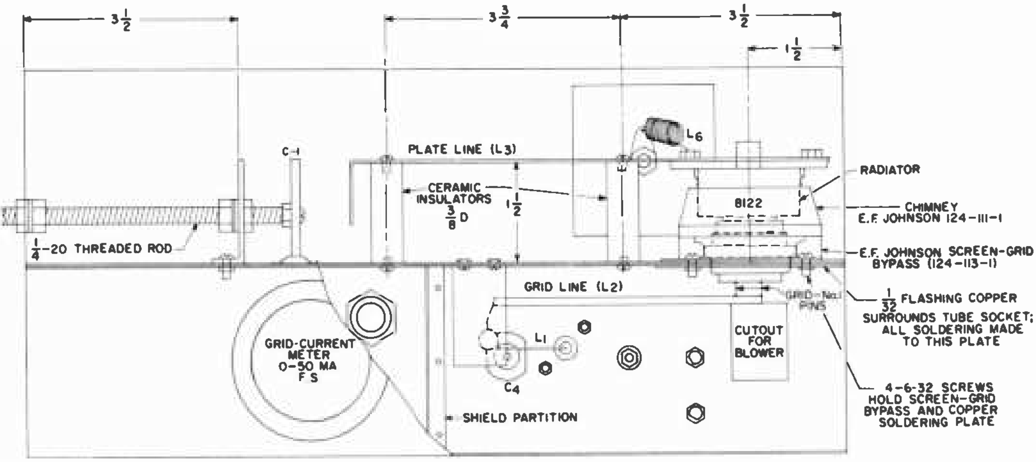


Figure 25

CUTAWAY VIEW OF PLATE- AND GRID-LINE ASSEMBLIES

The plate line is mounted on two insulators and the sliding capacitor (C_1) is shown at the left, driven by a 1/4-20 lead screw. The B-plus bypass capacitor plate is mounted to the rear wall of the inclosure and held in position by the 10-32 mounting screw (figure 29B). The underside of the chassis deck is covered by a plate of flashing copper around the tube socket (see figure 30). R-f ground returns are made to the copper plate. A bottom plate is required for the grid compartment to seal the pressurized air chamber. The plate is held in position with sheet-metal screws. (Note: All dimensions are given in inches).

a glass piston-type capacitor. The grid line is made from a piece of copper plate 1/8-inch thick which reduces r-f losses and helps maintain the grid temperature at a safe level. A combination of fixed and resistor bias is used in the grid circuit, the fixed bias making certain that the 8122 will be operated within a safe range of anode dissipation should the driving power fail. The input coupling link (L_1) is series-tuned to reduce reactance and provide optimum coupling between the exciter and the amplifier grid circuit.

Cathode pins 1 and 9 of the 8122 socket are grounded to the chassis. Pin 4 is series-tuned to ground by a small trimmer capacitor to provide the required neutralizing adjustment.

The screen (grid 2) of the 8122 is bypassed to ground at the operating frequency by a screen-ring capacitor. An alternative method of neutralizing the amplifier is obtained by eliminating one or more of the screen-ring contact fingers. This is easily accomplished by lifting the contact finger from the screen-ring terminal of the tube and slipping a piece of *teflon* or polyethylene sheet between the contacts. The number of fingers that must be insulated is determined by various circuit parameters necessary to obtain complete neutralization, and these vary from amplifier to amplifier. In some cases, none of the fingers need be insulated. In any case, this extra neutralization technique is not necessary unless the amplifier shows instability after neutralization in the normal manner.

The Plate Line—The plate line must maintain a low-loss connection with the plate of the 8122 to ensure satisfactory performance, in view of the heavy circulating currents flowing in this portion of the amplifier. The plate line is a half-wavelength strip-line tuned at the open end by a specially constructed capacitor. This capacitor (C_1) is shown in figure 25, and the details of its construction are outlined in the following section. Power is transferred to the antenna load via a link coupling arrangement shown in the illustrations.

Amplifier Construction The amplifier is mounted in two aluminum chassis measuring 13" × 5" × 3". The chassis are fastened back to back to provide separate compartments for the grid and plate

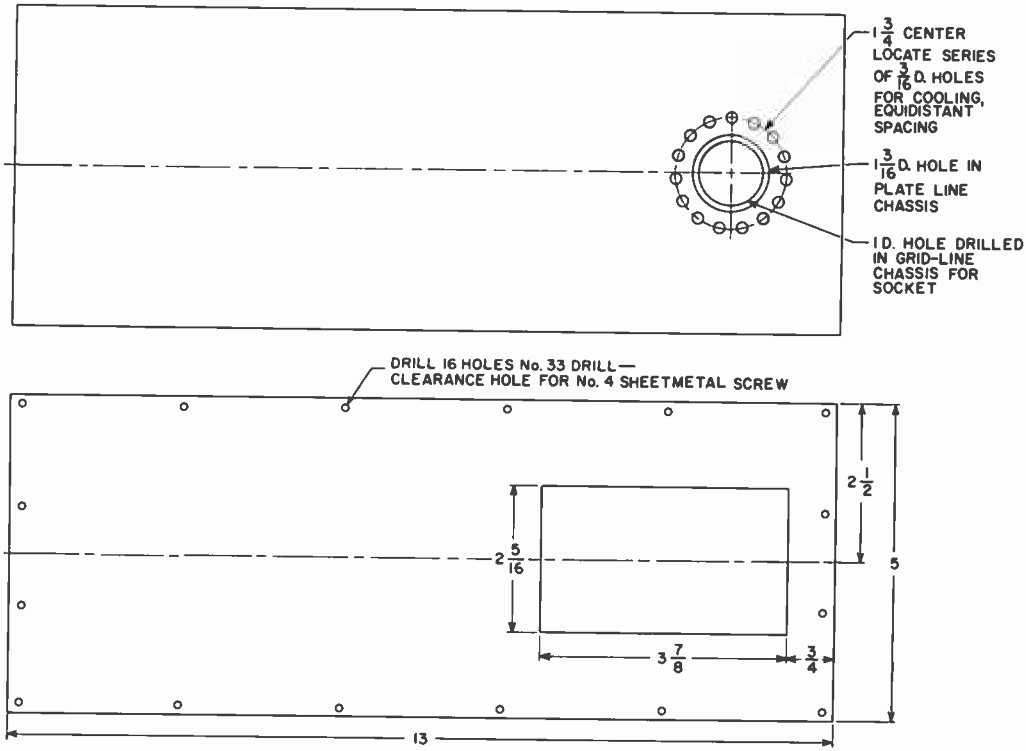


Figure 26

A—Detail of vent and socket holes in plate chassis
B—Detail of top cover plate for plate-line chassis
(Note: all dimensions in inches)

lines. Thus attached, all mounting holes with the exception of the tube socket holes (whose diameters for the two chassis differ) may be drilled to size. A ⅛-inch pilot hole is drilled through both chassis to correctly center the socket holes for accurate punching to final size. After all mounting holes have been drilled, the chassis are separated and holes for the tube socket punched in each chassis. Figure 26A indicates the sizes and locations of the socket holes for both chassis.

All electrical ground connections are soldered to a piece of "flashing" copper which surrounds the base of the tube socket. The copper is held to the base of the grid-line compartment by the four 6-32 screws that hold the screen bypass ring, which is located in the plate compartment.

The grid line is held in place by soldering one end to the tab of the piston capacitor (C_2). The remaining end is soldered to the three grid-1 socket pins, as shown in figures 25 and 27. An aluminum bracket holds the grid tuning capacitor (C_2) in position. The center of C_2 and the bushing holding the tuning shaft must line up if smooth tuning is to be obtained. A shield (figures 25 and 30) is placed in the grid compartment to isolate the grid meter from the r-f field.

Before the tube socket is assembled, all screen contact tabs should be removed from the socket—that is, from pins 2, 7, and 10. The d-c connection to the screen is made in the plate compartment. Figure 31A shows the method used for making this connection.

Details for the construction of the plate line are shown in figures 25 and 28A. The bracket assembly that guides the ¼-20 threaded plate capacitor tuning shaft should be constructed close to the dimensions given

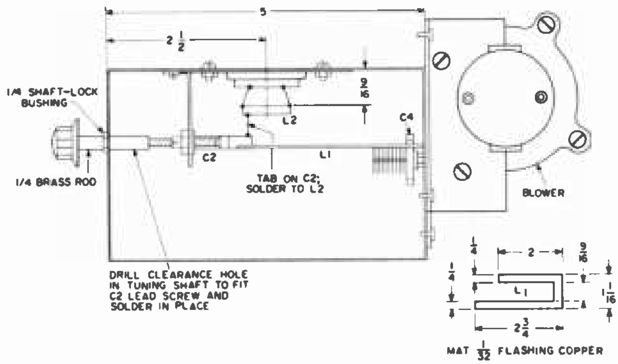


Figure 27

SIDE VIEW OF GRID-CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

Assembly of grid line and tuning capacitor are shown in this illustration, with dimensions for the input coupling loop (L_1) given at the lower right. Shaft-lock bushings (Herman L Smith 181) are used for grid and plate lead screws. Lock bushings are adjusted to provide proper amount of tension on lead screws for reliable operation. Coupling loop L_1 is placed at right angles to grid line as shown in the bottom-view photograph.
The tuning shaft for piston capacitor C_2 is drilled to fit the lead screw of the capacitor and is soldered in place after assembly is properly aligned.

in figure 29. An improperly constructed bracket will result in an erratic ground for the plate tuning assembly. The distance from the plate line to the ground reference is 1½ inches. This distance provides the correct impedance and resonant frequency for the strip-line with the top cover in place.

The B-plus r-f choke is connected to the plate line by one of the screws which hold the plate assembly together. The choke is connected at the low-voltage point of the

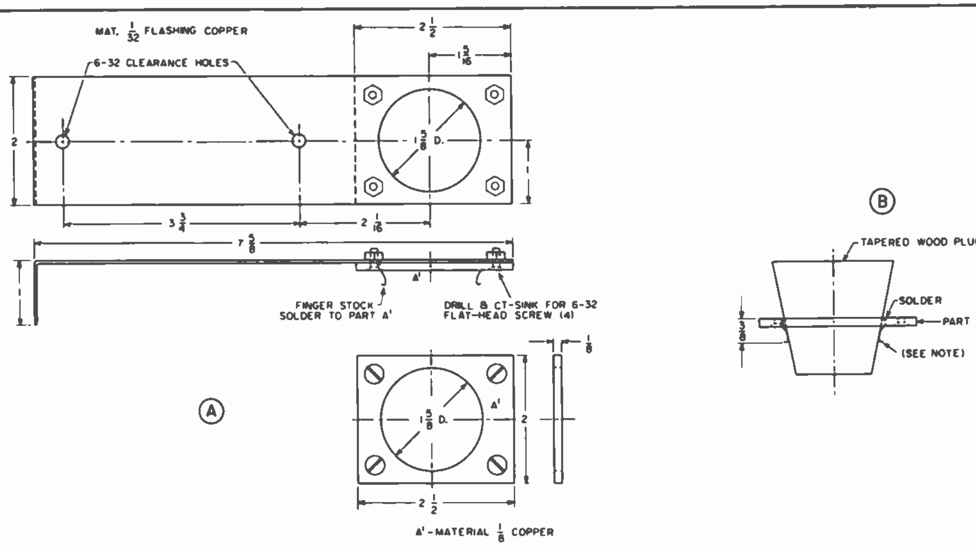
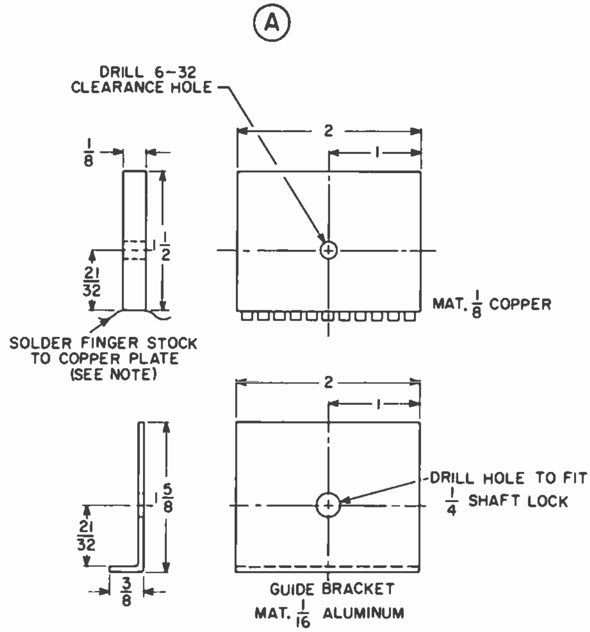


Figure 28

A—Detail of plate line (L_3) and assembly
B—Recommended procedure for soldering finger stock to part A' of plate-line assembly.
(Note: ⅜-inch wide beryllium finger stock available from Instrument Specialties Co., Little Falls, N. J. Stock No. 97-136).



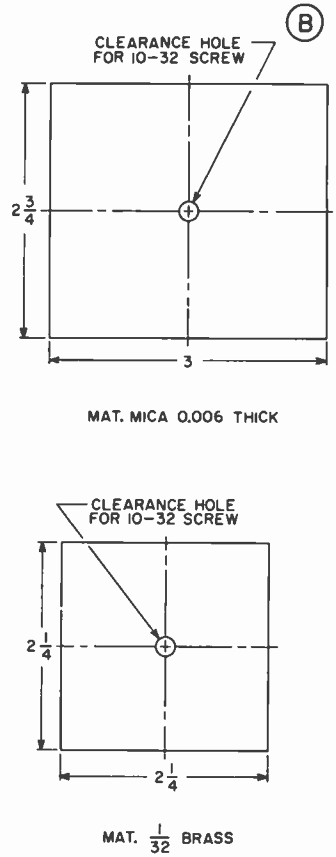


Figure 29

A—Details of construction of plate tuning capacitor C_1.
(Note: Beryllium finger stock available from Instrument Specialties Co., Little Falls, N. J., Stock No. 97-115).
B—Details of high-voltage capacitor C_4. Two sheets of .002 Mylar may be substituted for the mica dielectric.

line. The output-coupling probe is located in this area. The specially constructed high-voltage bypass capacitor is made of a 1/32-inch brass plate insulated from the chassis by a 0.006" thick piece of mica or *teflon* sheet.

The ¼-inch shaft-lock bushings are used to guide the shaft for the plate tuning capacitor and can be adjusted to provide the amount of drag required to maintain a good contact.

Soldering of the finger stock to the plate assembly can be simplified by use of a tapered wooden plug as shown in figure 28B. The plug will hold the finger stock in place and prevent excessive heat absorption during the soldering operation.

Tuning and Operation Heater power for the 8122 is 12.5 volts at 1.3 amperes. The blower should come on with the heater supply and the tube should be warmed up for one minute or so before other potentials are applied. Plate voltage should always be applied *before* screen voltage: never after it.

Neutralizing the Amplifier—The grid and plate compartment covers are placed in position for the following test. After heater warmup time has been allowed, a small amount of drive power is applied to the amplifier without plate or screen potentials supplied to the tube. Grid current at resonance should be about 30 ma for 5 watts of drive power. If grid current is low, the following adjustments should be made: (1) The cathode neutralizing capacitor (C_3) should be adjusted for maximum grid current. About half-capacity setting will be nearly correct, although further adjustment may be necessary on application of plate and screen voltages. (2) Position the input coupling link (L_1) for maximum grid cur-

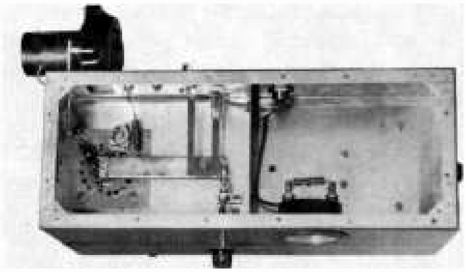


Figure 30

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF 432-MHz AMPLIFIER

The under-chassis area is divided into two compartments. The left compartment is the r-f inclosure for the grid line and the right compartment holds the meter wiring and the power plug. A half-wavelength grid line is used, tuned at the open end by a piston capacitor (C_2) which is driven from the panel by a short lead screw (figure 27). The input coupling loop (L_1) is cut from a piece of flashing copper and is supported between the input connector and the resonating capacitor (C_4). The filament r-f choke (L_5) is behind the grid line, adjacent to the cathode resonating capacitor (C_3). The bias lead from capacitor C_5 to the power receptacle is run in a length of flexible shield, as is the bias lead from the receptacle to the grid meter.

rent and minimum SWR on the coaxial line to the exciter. The grid-line tuning capacitor (C_2) and the input-link tuning capacitor (C_4) must be adjusted together with the position of link L_1 with respect to the grid line. Use of a SWR bridge in the feedline will make this adjustment much simpler.

After the input coupling has been properly adjusted, a preliminary check of the amplifier neutralization may be made as follows: Adjust the plate-line capacitor (C_1) through its range and observe grid current. No change in grid current should occur as the capacitor is tuned through resonance. If there is a noticeable change, readjust the cathode neutralizing capacitor (C_3) slightly. If the condition persists, further neutralization is accomplished by insulating one or more fingers of the bypass ring from the screen-ring terminal of the 8122. Generally, no more than two fingers have to be insulated to obtain complete neutralization. Insulation of more than two fingers can result in self-oscillation, which will be indicated by excessive and erratic grid current.

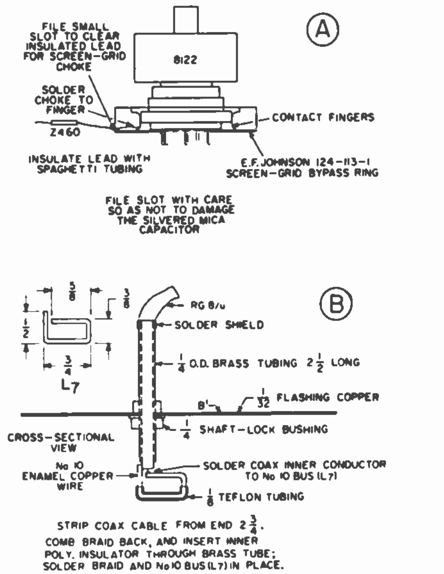


Figure 31

A—Electrical connection to screen grid of 8122. B—Construction details for output coupling loop L_7.

The amplifier should now be coupled to a 50-ohm dummy load. This may consist of a long length (100 feet or so) of RG-8/U coaxial line terminated in a small 20-watt load. Plate voltage should be reduced to 700

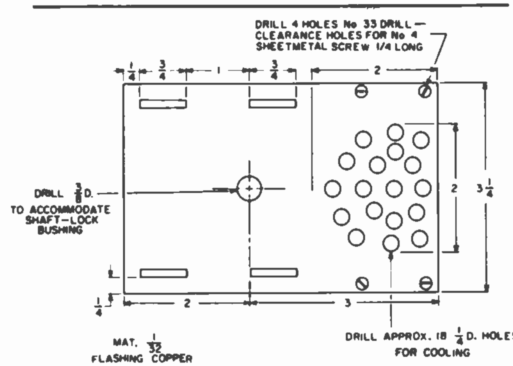


Figure 32

Cover for plate-line compartment showing vent holes and location of hole for coupling loop. Cover is mounted to large top plate and attachment holes are slotted so that the cover and output loop assembly may be moved in relation to plate line to establish proper degree of coupling. When coupling is established, cover is locked in position with sheet-metal screws.

volts and screen voltage to 200. Plate and screen voltage should be applied simultaneously, or screen voltage may be applied after plate voltage. The plate capacitor is then tuned to resonance and the probe coupling adjusted for maximum power output. Maximum power output does not necessarily occur at minimum plate current; therefore, some form of output power measuring device is required.

At resonance with 700 volts on the plate and 200 volts on the screen, the power output should be about 100 watts. Plate current should be between 260 and 300 ma. Grid current should be about 25 to 30 ma. When the plate voltage is raised to 1500 volts, the power output will rise to about 235 watts. For a plate potential of 2000 volts, power output will be 250 watts for 500 watts input.

The amplifier is designed for 50-ohm output termination and low-loss coaxial line (*Foam Heliax*) should be used, as common 50-ohm coaxial line (RG-8/U for example) has prohibitively high losses at this operating frequency.

28-8 The Utility 2-Kilowatt PEP (U-2) Linear Amplifier

Described in this section is a general purpose utility cathode-driven ("grounded-grid") amplifier. Rated at a maximum input of 2 kilowatts PEP, the *U-2 Linear Amplifier* can use the following tube combinations at the discretion of the builder:

Two kilowatt PEP level—One 3-1000Z, one 4-1000A, two 3-400Z, two 4-400A, or two 4-250A. 1250-watt PEP level—Two 813. 1000-watt PEP level—One 3-400Z, one 4-400A, one 4-250A, four 811A, or two 4X150A, 4CX250B or 4CX300A connected as low-μ triodes.

By proper choice of components and circuitry, the basic configuration of figure 33 is used for any of the above listed tube combinations and only sockets, chimneys, filament transformer and associated minor components need be changed to adapt the U-2 amplifier to any one of these various tube combinations. Construction of this utility amplifier provides the experimenter with an inexpensive unit which can be quickly and easily modified to suit his taste and pocketbook.

The design and layout of the U-2 amplifier are such that it may be built in the home workshop with a minimum of tools and little complicated metal work. Best of all, the basic design and assembly remains unchanged when various tube types are used. Thus, the builder may start the project at the 1000 watt PEP level with four inexpensive 811A's and later advance to the full legal PEP level with larger tubes, still making use of the basic U-2 amplifier package.

Of particular interest is the use of the 4X150A family of external-anode tetrodes connected as low-μ triodes. Normally unsuited for class-B grounded-grid operation, these compact tubes are connected in a unique cathode-driven configuration to function as semitriodes with the screen element of the tube deriving voltage from the exciting signal.

The Basic Amplifier Circuit The basic circuit of the *U-2 Linear Amplifier* is shown in figure 34A, with a chart of various tube combinations and their operating parameters given in figure 35. The modifications necessary to adapt the basic circuit for use with a particular tube type are shown in figure 34B and are indicated within the dashed lines of the basic schematic. The utility circuit uses a single tube, such as the zero-bias 3-1000Z or 3-400Z. Substitution of the tetrode 4-1000A or 4-400A (operated as high-μ triodes) is indicated by the dashed screen grid in the schematic, which is operated at ground potential. Socket pins 2, 3, and 4 are grounded in all cases, so tube substitution (4-1000A for 3-1000Z and 4-400A for 3-400Z) may be accomplished without changing socket connections.

Use of two tubes in parallel is shown in figure 34B, the tetrode connection indicated by the dashed screen grids. Low-μ triode connection of the external anode tetrodes is shown in circuit 2, and connection for four 811A's in parallel is given in circuit 3.

The Input Circuit—A tuned-cathode input circuit is used to reduce the intermod-

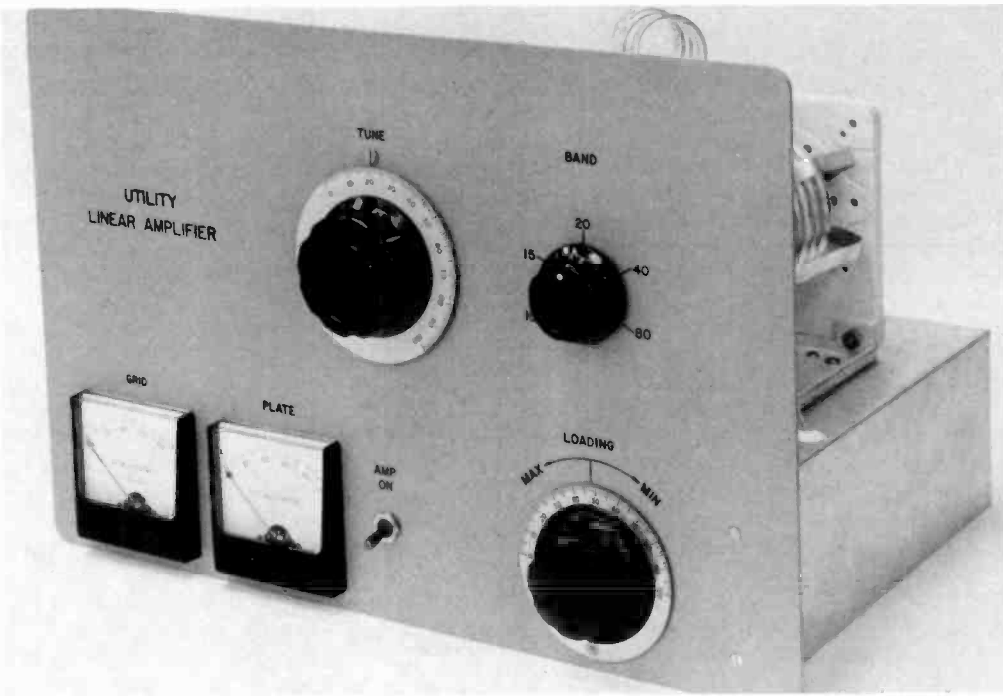


Figure 33

UTILITY 2-KILOWATT PEP (U-2) LINEAR AMPLIFIER COMBINES FLEXIBILITY AND ECONOMY

The U-2 linear amplifier is designed to utilize over a dozen combinations of transmitting tubes at the discretion of the builder. Various tube types used in this unique amplifier are: 4-1000A, 3-1000Z, 3-400Z, 4-400A, 813, 4CX250B, 4CX300A, and 811A. Featuring a tuned-cathode, grounded-grid circuit, the U-2 amplifier permits change of tube types by substitution of a socket-mounting plate.

A pi-network plate-tank circuit is used, with the tuning capacitor centered on the panel and the main bandswitch to the right. The grid and plate meters are mounted below the chassis at the left, with the control switch for the amplifier centered below the main tuning dial. The antenna loading capacitor is at the lower right. The amplifier is placed in a shielded inclosure made of perforated aluminum sheet. The aluminum panel is spray painted with zinc-chromate primer, followed by a flat gray. Lettering is done with India ink and a lettering pen. The panel is then sprayed with clear acrylic paint to protect the lettering.

ulation distortion and to provide a better load for the SSB exciter. The input SWR (as measured between the exciter and the amplifier) runs typically 2:1 or less, depending on the tube combination in use. Drive power runs from 80 to 150 watts, as discussed later.

Since the r-f plate-current pulses return to the cathode of the tube(s) via the tuned circuit, it is necessary to use transmitting-type mica capacitors at this point to withstand the high value of circulating r-f current. Filament isolation is achieved with a dual winding, high-current r-f choke (RFC_1) in series with the filament leads.

The U-2 linear amplifier is biased to plate-current cutoff in the standby condition by a 33K cathode resistor, which is shorted out by contacts of the VOX relay for proper amplifier operation. Standby plate current is reduced to virtually zero, permitting the use of an IVS-rated plate power supply with the amplifier. "Diode noise" in a nearby receiver is also eliminated during periods of reception. Grid and plate currents are monitored in the negative return leads, prevent-

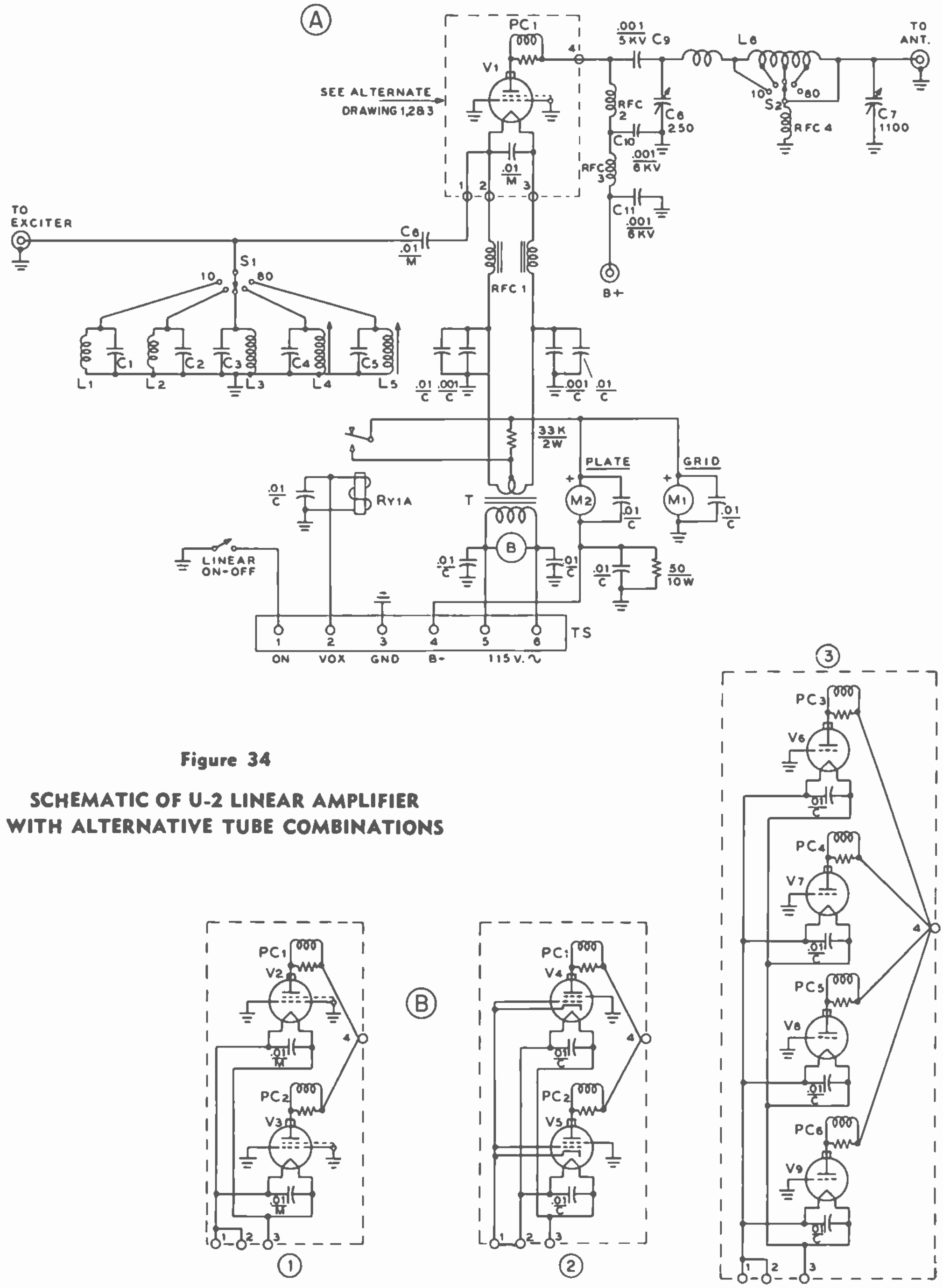


Figure 34

SCHEMATIC OF U-2 LINEAR AMPLIFIER WITH ALTERNATIVE TUBE COMBINATIONS

ing high voltage from being applied to the plate meter, and removing the grid meter from the r-f grid circuitry. The negative of the high-voltage power supply is thus above ground by virtue of the plate meter. A 50-ohm safety resistor is placed across the

PARTS LIST FOR FIGURE 34

C_1—200-pf, 2500-volt mica capacitor. Sangamo H-5320
C_2, C_3—470-pf, 2500-volt mica capacitor. Sangamo H-5347
C_4, C_5—1000-pf, 1250-volt mica capacitor. Sangamo H-2210
C_6—250-pf, 4.5 KV. Johnson 154-16
C_7—3-section, 350-pf per section, broadcast type (surplus)
C_8—0.01 µf, 600-volt mica capacitor. Sprague H-1110
C_9—0.001 µf, 5 KV. Centralab 858S-1000
C_{10},C_{11}—0.001 µf, 6 KV disc. Centralab DD-60
L_1, L_2—(0.15 µH) 4 turns #16 enam. on National XR-50, ½-inch diameter. Slug removed from both coils
L_3, L_4—(0.31 µH) 6 turns #14 enam. on National XR-50 form. Slug removed from L_3
L_5—(1.3 µH) 13 turns #18 enam. on National XR-50 form
L_6—Barker & Williamson 850A bandswitching inductor (see text). Inductance as follows: 80 meters, 13.6 µH; 40 meters, 6.5 µH; 20 meters, 1.75 µH; 15 meters, 1.0 µH; 10 meters, 0.8 µH. Air-Dux #195-2 may be substituted. This coil should be trimmed and tapped to resonate as follows: 80 meters, 210 pf; 40 meters, 105 pf; 20 meters, 52 pf; 15 meters, 30 pf; 10 meters, 30 pf. Above capacities include output capacitance of tubes
RFC_1—30-ampere choke. Barker & Williamson FC-30A
RFC_2—200-µH, 1-ampere. Barker & Williamson 800
RFC_3—1.72-µH, J. W. Miller RFC-144
RFC_4—2-mH, 100-ma. National R-100
PC_1—3 turns, ¾-inch diameter. Ohmite P-300 choke with turns removed
S_1—Centralab UD ceramic deck and P-270 Index Assembly
B—115-volt, 60-Hz blower. For 4-1000Z, 3-1000Z, two 3-400Z, or two 4-400A use 20 cu. ft./min. Dayton 1C-180 or Ripley LR-81. For single 3-400Z or 4-400A use 15 cu. ft./min. Fasco50745-IN. For two 4X150A "family" tetrodes use 35 cu. ft./min., 600 r.p.m. Ripley 8445-E
T—Filament transformer. For 4-1000A, 3-1000Z: 7.5 volts at 21 amperes, Stancor P-6457. For two 3-400Z or two 4-400A: 5 volts at 30 amperes; Stancor P-6492. For two 813: 10 volts at 10 amperes; Stancor P-6461. For four 811A: 7.5 volts at 16 amperes; Stancor P-6457. For two 4X150A "family" tetrodes: 6.0 volts at 5 amperes (use primary dropping resistor); Stancor P-4089

ALTERNATIVE TUBE COMBINATIONS

Circuit 1—Two 3-400Z, 4-400A, or 813. PC_2 same as PC_1, see main schematic
Circuit 2—Two 4X150A "family" tetrodes in low-µ circuit. PC_1, PC_2—3 turns #16 enam. around 50-ohm, 2-watt composition resistor
Circuit 3—Four 811A. PC_1 thru PC_4, same as for circuit 2 except coils are 4 turns
Sockets and chimneys—For 3-1000Z use SK-510 socket and SK-516 chimney. For 4-1000A use SK-510 socket and SK-506 chimney. For 3-400Z use SK-410 socket and SK-416 chimney. For 4-400A use SK-410 socket and SK-406 chimney. For 4X150A or 4CX250B use SK-640 socket and SK-606 chimney. For 4CX300A use SK-770 socket (with integral chimney).

meter circuit to protect the operator in the unlikely case a meter coil is defective.

The Plate Circuit—A conventional pi-network plate circuit is employed, making use of readily available components. The Q of the plate tank circuit varies under load from approximately 10 at 80 meters to over 20 at 10 meters, depending on the combination of tubes in use. Plate-circuit efficiency, however, remains good in all cases. The complete circuit is designed to match the amplifier to a 50-ohm antenna system having a SWR of 2:1 or less. An RL parasitic suppressor is placed in the plate lead of each tube to suppress any tendency toward vhf oscillation. Neutralization is not required, and the U-2 linear amplifier remains stable over the operating range of 3.5 to 29.7 MHz.

Amplifier Construction The U-2 linear amplifier is built on a 10″ × 17″ × 4″ aluminum chassis and has a 10″ high aluminum panel. The panel is cut to fit the available cabinet. Construction of a suitable TVI-proof inclosure is discussed in the chapter "*Workshop Practice.*" A bottom plate is bolted to the chassis to pressurize it and to provide proper shielding. A forced-air cooling system is required for all tube combinations except the 811A's and the 813's. The squirrel-cage blower is mounted on the rear apron of the chassis and forces the air into the chassis inclosure, through the air socket(s) and past the envelope and plate seals of the tube(s).

If changes in tube types are contemplated, it is wise to make a removable plate for the tube sockets as is done in this unit.

Tube(s)	PEP Input (Watts)	Plate Volts	Zero-Signal Plate Current	Plate Ma (Peak)	Grid Ma (Peak)
3—1000Z	2000	2500	160	800	250
		3000	180	667	220
4—1000A	2000	2500	70	800	200
		3000	90	667	170
2 × 3—400Z	2000	2500	150	800	280
		3000	200	667	240
2 × 4—400A 4—250A	2000	2500	130	800	300
		3000	140	667	300
2 × 813	1000	2500	70	400	100
3—400Z	1000	2500	75	400	140
		3000	100	333	120
4—400A	1000	2500	65	400	150
		3000	70	333	150
4X150A 2 × 4CX250B 4CX300A	1000	2000	35	500	0
4 × 811A	1000	1600	150	620	120

Figure 35

TUBE CHART FOR U-2 LINEAR AMPLIFIER

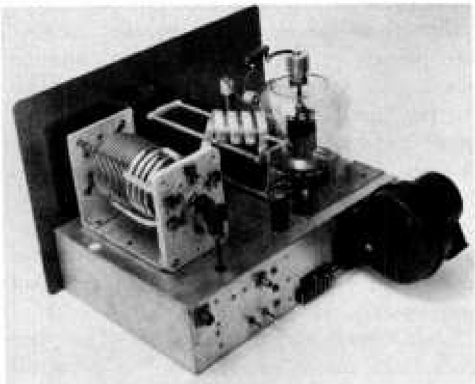
Typical operating parameters are given for twelve tube combinations. Zero-signal plate current varies with no-load plate voltage, rising as plate voltage rises. The indicated values are measured with no cathode bias (relay RY_1 closed).

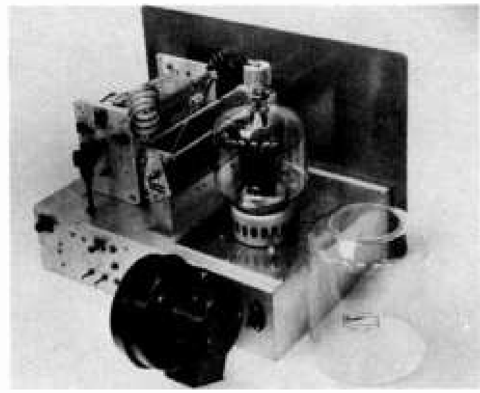
The replaceable socket-mounting plate measures 10¼" × 7" and is fixed in place with 6-32 bolts. However, if one particular tube or combination of tubes making use of a common socket is to be used, it is easier and quicker to drill the main chassis for the required sockets and to eliminate the special plate.

The plate-circuit tuning capacitor (C_6) is centered on the chassis and mounted on 2-inch high aluminum brackets which position the capacitor shaft at the same height as the shaft of the main bandswitch assembly. The bandswitch assembly is placed to one side of the chassis and drives the cathode bandswitch (S_1) by means of an insulated, flexible coupling and a right-angle gear unit. The cathode tank circuit is mounted in an inclosure beneath the chassis, as is shown in figure 37.

Placement of the under-chassis components is conventional, and is shown in the photographs. (figure 38A and B). The main components remain the same for all tube combinations, with the exception of the filament transformer and tube sockets. The two current meters are mounted in matching holes drilled through panel and chassis, and the plate-circuit loading capacitor (C_7) is placed at the opposite end of the chassis from the meters, beneath the main bandswitch assembly. This capacitor is mounted on aluminum brackets placed at the front and rear of the frame. Immediately behind the loading capacitor is the filament transformer, mounted on its side by small aluminum brackets affixed to the core bolts. The transformer is positioned after the cathode tank assembly is wired and the inclosure is bolted in place.

The grid terminals of the tube socket(s) are grounded to the chassis by means of short lengths of copper strap. In the case of the SK-410 and SK-510 sockets, the straps pass through slots in the socket wall and are soldered directly to the socket pins. Common ceramic sockets are not recommended for the 3-400Z or the 3-1000Z as the flow of cooling air is impeded and excessive lateral pressure is exerted on the





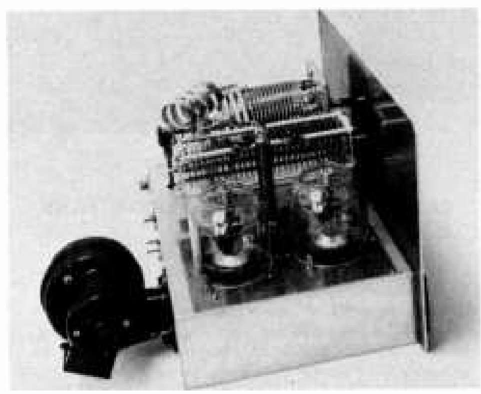


Figure 36

VERSATILE U-2 LINEAR AMPLIFIER MAY USE VARIOUS TUBE COMBINATIONS WITH HIGH EFFICIENCY

(Upper left)—Single 3-1000Z operates at 2 KW PEP level at plate potentials between 2500 and 3000 volts. The low drive requirement of the 3-1000Z (65 watts PEP) makes it ideal for small exciters or transceivers. Tube and blower are at right, with plate tuning capacitor at center, mounted on small aluminum brackets. Flexible coupling and right-angle drive unit for cathode tank are shown at rear of plate-circuit bandswitch assembly. Connection from plate coil to loading capacitor passes through 5/8-inch chassis hole at left which is sealed with white silicone rubber sealant ("bathtub calk") to pressurize chassis.

(Upper right)—4-1000A provides maximum legal power level up to plate potentials of 3500 volts. Drive level is about 100 watts PEP, rising gradually as plate voltage is lowered. Minimum recommended voltage is 2700. High-voltage connector is to the right of the blower, with coaxial antenna receptacle at left end of chassis. Input connector is adjacent to cathode coil mounting bolts which attach to the rear apron of the chassis. Coils are (top to bottom): 10, 15, and 20 meters, with 40- and 80-meter slugs to the left, below the coaxial receptacle.

(Lower right)—two 3-400Z's provide 2 KW PEP "punch" with economy. Separate parasitic suppressors are used, supported by plate r-f choke centered between tubes and tuning capacitor. Ceramic-disc bypass capacitor is placed at bottom of choke and plate lead passes through small grommet mounted on tube socket plate.

glass base and seal of the tube. A bypass capacitor is placed between the filament pins of each tube socket, and the filament circuit is coupled to the tuned cathode tank and the exciter through a .01-μfd transmitting-type mica capacitor.

The Tuned Cathode Circuit—The simple cathode tank circuit is composed of separate fixed-tuned parallel-resonant circuits, one for each amateur band. The coils are space wound on slug-tuned forms (the slug is removed from the 10-, 15-, and 20-meter forms). A mica capacitor is placed across the coil terminals, oriented in such a way as to permit all cathode tanks to be grouped about the bandswitch. Each tuned circuit should be adjusted to resonance with the aid of a grid-dip oscillator before it is mounted to the rear apron of the chassis. "Target" alignment frequencies are: 3.8, 7.2, 14.2, 21.3, and 28.6 MHz. The tuned circuits are then mounted in position, grouped around the bandswitch. The lower terminal of each coil is grounded to the chassis at the mounting hardware of the form. The circuits are wired to the bandswitch, and an aluminum chassis measuring 4″ × 4″ × 8″ is slipped

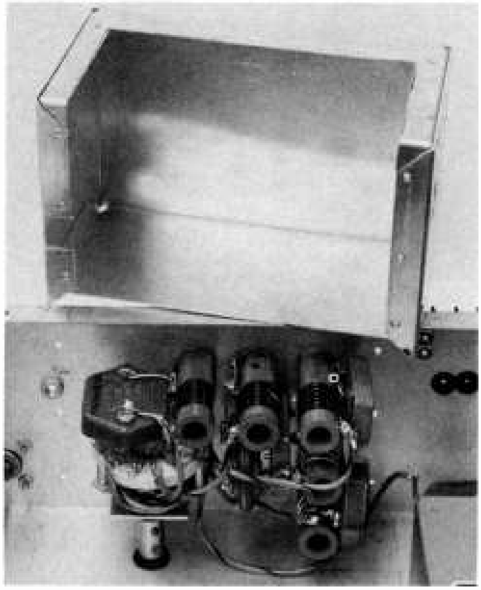


Figure 37

CLOSEUP OF TUNED-CATHODE TANK CIRCUIT

The cathode switch is mounted to an aluminum bracket beneath the chassis and is driven from the main bandswitch assembly by a right-angle drive unit and shaft coupling. Every other contact of the switch is used to achieve 60-degree indexing. Detent mechanism of the switch is removed before installation.

Mica capacitors are soldered to coil terminals with tinned wire. 80-meter tank is at left, with 40- and 20-meter tanks to the right. At lower right are 10-and 15-meter tanks. Shield inclosure (above) is cut from aluminum chassis and is held in position with sheet-metal screws through the main chassis.

over the assembly, serving as a shield. The shield is held in position by small sheet-metal screws tapped through the main chassis.

The cathode bandswitch (S_1) is driven from the shaft of the plate bandswitch unit through the right-angle drive whose shaft passes through a rubber grommet on the chassis deck. The cathode-circuit bandswitch is mounted to the rear apron of the chassis on an aluminum angle bracket. The switch deck is a 12-position, shorting-type ceramic unit, with every other contact used to provide 60-degree indexing to match that of the plate-bandswitch assembly. The spring-loaded detent ball of switch S_1 is removed to permit the switch to easily follow the index of the plate bandswitch. The cathode switch is aligned on the mounting bracket to provide proper rotation of the arm, and to permit easy action as the bandswitch knob on the front panel is turned. The large detent mechanism on the plate bandswitch (S_2) should be lubricated with a thin film of grease to ease the switch tension. Proper alignment of the cathode switch will produce an easy and foolproof single-control bandchange system that is trouble-free and inexpensive.

The Pi-network Plate Circuit—The plate bandswitch turret may be used as-is for all tube combinations listed. Plate-circuit Q is slightly less than 10 at 3.5 MHz and if a great amount of 80-meter c-w operation is contemplated it would be good engineering practice to remove a few turns from the end of the 80-meter inductor to improve the LC ratio and the circuit Q. On the other hand, circuit Q is relatively high on the 10-meter band. It may be necessary to increase the spacing between the turns of the 10-meter strap inductor, particularly when tubes having relatively high output capacitance (such as the 811A or 813) are used. In this case, removal of part of one turn of the strap inductor may be necessary to permit the plate circuit to tune to the higher-frequency portion of the 10-meter band. Proper tank-circuit resonance may be quickly determined with a grid-dip oscillator before the amplifier is placed in operation. Under normal circumstances (and particularly when a single tube is used) alteration of the 10-meter strap inductor is not necessary.

Under conditions of high antenna SWR it may be necessary to parallel the plate-circuit loading capacitor (C_7) with a 500- or 1000-pf transmitting-type mica capacitor to permit optimum amplifier loading, particularly on the 80-meter band. The extra loading capacitor may be cut in the circuit by the addition of a ceramic rotary switch placed adjacent to the variable loading capacitor.

Use of External Anode Tetrodes Under normal circumstances, the 4X150A "family" of external anode tetrodes (4X-150A, 4CX250B and 4CX300A) should

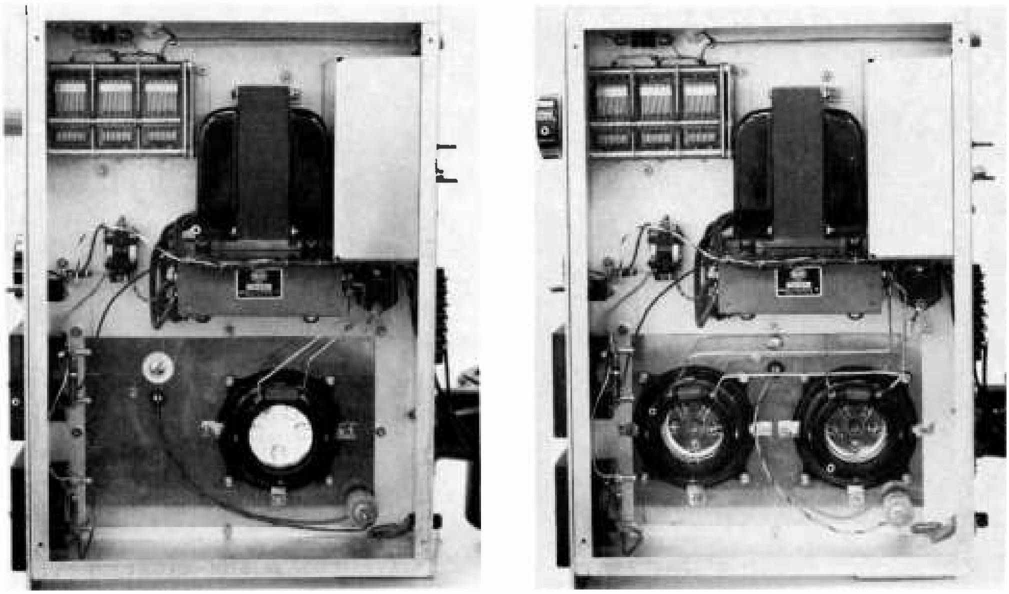


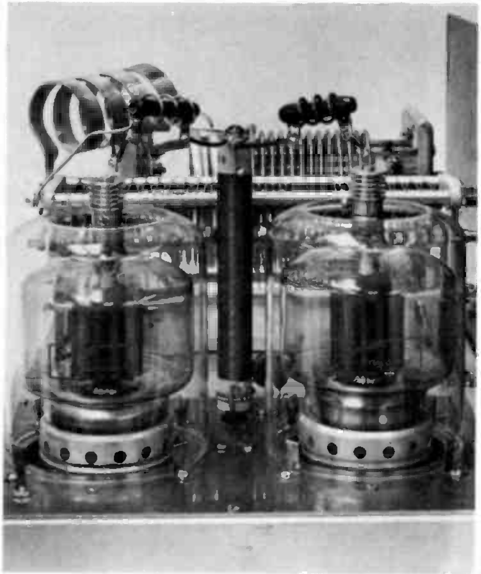
Figure 38

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF U-2 LINEAR AMPLIFIER

A—Layout for single socket configuration for 3-1000Z or 4-1000A. The pi-network output capacitor and output r-f choke are at the left end of the chassis, with the filament transformer to the right. Immediately right are the filament choke and cathode-circuit relay. At the left is the cathode-circuit enclosure, with coupling capacitor C_x mounted on a short ceramic insulator C_r below it. A mica bypass capacitor is placed between the filament terminals of the tube socket and the three grid terminals are grounded by short pieces of copper strap. Behind the socket is the vhf choke and high-voltage bypass capacitors, which may be either disc or "TV doorknob" types rated at 6 KV or higher. Bypass capacitors are placed across meter terminals.

B—Layout for dual socket configuration for two 3-400Z or 4-400A. Sockets are connected in parallel with tinned copper wire, and grid terminals are grounded with copper strap. Mica bypass capacitors are placed across filament terminals at each socket. The filament transformer is mounted on its side, attached to the chassis with aluminum brackets affixed to the core bolts. If a four-section antenna loading capacitor is used, the filament transformer and filament choke will have to be moved about for proper clearance. Placement of parts is not critical as long as filament leads are kept short.

not be operated in the common class-B grounded-grid circuitry since the abnormally high levels of grid current which occur may be destructive to the tube. It is possible and practical, however, to achieve good performance and low values of grid current by connecting these tubes as a form of low-μ triode with the control grid strapped to the cathode (figure 40). The control grid still has some effect on the electron stream, since zero-signal resting plate current of this mode of operation is low. Feedthrough power is quite high and, as a result, the drive level of this mode of operation is about 80 to 90 watts per tube, most of which appears in the output power of the amplifier. This drive level is well within the capability of most modern SSB exciters or transceivers. Because the screen of the tetrode is grounded in this unique circuit, the inexpensive air-system sockets having no screen bypass capacitor may be used. The use of a ceramic loctal (receiving type) socket for the 4X150A or 4CX250B is not recommended since the base temperature of the tube cannot be controlled by application of cooling air. A high-speed (6000 r.p.m.) blower should be used to supply the required volume of air through the socket at the back-pres-



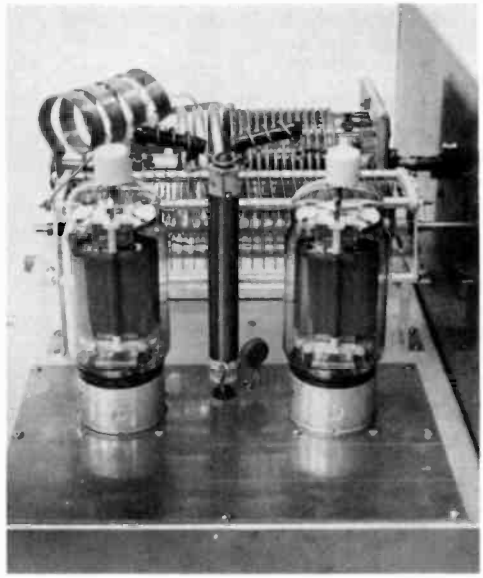


Figure 39

EITHER TRIODE OR TETRODE TUBES MAY BE USED IN U-2 GROUNDED-GRID CIRCUIT

(Upper left)—Two 4-400A tetrodes are operated as class-B grounded-grid triodes at 2 KW PEP power level. Socket pins 2, 3, and 4 are grounded, and combined grid and screen currents are monitored in negative-return lead as shown in the schematic. Air-system sockets and chimneys are used to provide proper cooling for tube envelopes. Chimneys are held in position by small clips fastened to socket bolts.

(Upper right)—Popular 813's may be operated as grounded-grid amplifier with socket pins 3, 4, and 5 grounded to socket-mounting bolts with copper strap. Forced-air cooling is not required. but a small "phonograph motor" (shaded-pole, induction motor, 3200 r.p.m.) and 4-blade aluminum fan are mounted to the amplifier inclosure to direct cooling air at the anode area of the tubes.

(Lower right)—Four 811A triodes provide 1 kilowatt at rock-bottom economy. Four parasitic suppressors are used, attached to the top terminal of the plate r-f choke. Use of a small "phonograph motor" cooling fan mounted to the amplifier inclosure is recommended to circulate air about the tube envelopes.

sure created by the anode cooler of these small tubes.

Various Practical Tube Combinations The *U-2 Linear Amplifier* may use any one of ten or more tube combinations which are listed in the table of figure 35. In addition to the combinations given, others may be used, such as four 4-125A's in parallel, grounded-grid circuitry. The surplus 803 tetrodes may also be used, or any other practical combination of tubes which exhibits a plate-load impedance falling in the wide range of 1500 to 3000 ohms at a plate potential of 1000 to 3500 volts. Regardless of the tube(s) in use, care should

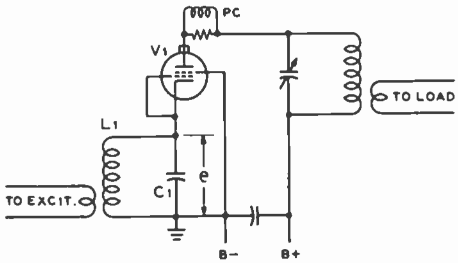


Figure 40

LOW-μ CONNECTION FOR EXTERNAL ANODE TETRODE

High-transconductance, external-anode tetrodes (4X150A, 4CX250B, and 4CX300A) may be operated in quasi—class-B mode with cathode and grid elements driven in parallel. Screen grid is grounded and cathode-screen potential (e) is derived from excitation voltage.

be taken to make sure the circuit is free of parasitic oscillations and is stable at the frequency of operation. It should be noted that the correct filament voltage for the 4X150A "family" of tubes is *6.0 volts*, which may be obtained from a 6.3-volt transformer with a suitable dropping resistor in the primary circuit.

Amplifier Tuning and Adjustment Once the amplifier has been wired and checked, it is ready for preliminary tuning adjustments; this is best accomplished with the use of a grid-dip oscillator. The bottom plate of the chassis should be in place and the blower operating when filament voltage is applied. The plate-circuit loading capacitor is adjusted to maximum capacitance and the bandswitch set to the 80-meter position. (The cathode circuits have been adjusted previously and require no further attention). On 80 meters and each higher-frequency band, the plate tuning capacitor is resonated to a mid-band frequency with the grid-dip oscillator and the setting of the capacitor logged. A dummy antenna is connected to the amplifier and plate voltage applied. Zero-signal resting plate current is noted and the plate tuning capacitor swung through its range while grid- and plate-current meters are monitored. Any variation in plate current or a show of grid current may be an indication of parasitic oscillation. If such a variation is noted, the frequency of oscillation may be determined with the grid-dip oscillator used as a wavemeter. The experimenter should conduct this test with caution since high-voltage circuits are exposed and the danger of accidental shock is present when the amplifier is operated without a protective inclosure.

Proper parasitic suppression is accomplished by adjustment of the number of turns on the plate parasitic suppressor (PC). If the inductor has too many turns, the shunt resistor will overheat on the 10- and 15-meter bands. If the inductor has too few turns, the suppression at the parasitic frequency will be inadequate. The suppressor data given is very close to optimum value and if a weak parasitic oscillation is found to exist, it may be further suppressed by squeezing together the turns of the inductor to increase the inductance.

Once the amplifier has been found to be free of parasitic instability, it may be attached to the exciter. The tuning capacitor and bandswitch are set for the band in use and plate voltage is applied. A low level of carrier injection is used as a test signal. Drive is gradually increased to provide an amplifier plate current of 150 ma or so. Plate resonance is checked (the plate current dip is small under these conditions and some form of output meter or SWR bridge between the amplifier and the dummy load is helpful). Plate loading is increased and grid current will drop off accordingly. Grid drive is raised and the loading process con-

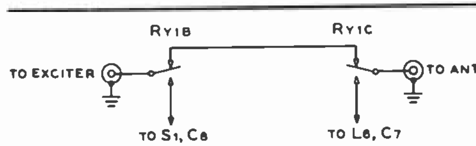


Figure 41

TRANSCEIVE MODIFICATION

Simple relay modification permits amplifier use with transceivers. RY_1 is changed to three-pole, double-throw configuration. One set of contacts is used with the cathode standby circuit (see schematic) and the other two are used to switch the amplifier in and out of the circuit from the transceiver to the antenna. Original relay may be used in conjunction with a miniature antenna relay having Steatite insulation (Phillips-Advance type AM-2C with proper coil).

tinued until the grid- and plate-current values given in the table are approximated at plate circuit resonance. As the range of the loading capacitor (C_7) is quite large, the proper setting of this control is rather critical (to one or two dial divisions). Loading operation should commence with the capacitor fully meshed for 80 and 40 meters, about half-meshed for 20 and 15 meters, and about one-third meshed for 10 meters. Changes in loading should be done a division or so at a time, and the final capacitor setting logged for future use. Off-resonance plate current will be only 100 milliamperes or so higher than the resonant loaded value.

Once the proper ratio of grid to plate current has been established at the desired peak power level, the carrier is removed and the amplifier driven with an SSB voice signal. Grid and plate currents will now approximate one-third to one-half those noted for the peak power-level condition listed in the chart. The amplifier should *never* be driven to the indicated peak current levels by a voice signal, as severe overloading and consequent distortion will result.

When the low-μ connected external anode tetrodes are used in the *U-2 linear* amplifier, indicated grid current is quite low and may vary from a few milliamperes to some negative value, depending on the degree of antenna loading and the characteristic of the drive signal. Under a single tone (carrier) signal such as used for tuneup, grid drive and plate loading should be adjusted so as to limit indicated grid current to 10 milliamperes or less. The "target" grid current is *zero*, and will occur when the tubes are heavily loaded. Efficiency is best and intermodulation distortion the least at this operating point. Excessive antenna loading will be indicated by negative grid current, and excessive excitation will be noted by high positive grid current which should be limited to less than 50 ma in any case to protect the tubes. Amplifier adjustment is not critical and may be easily accomplished by gradually increasing drive level as the plate circuit loading is varied to achieve zero grid current at the peak power level. When a voice driving signal is used, grid current will kick slightly about the zero value, usually in a negative direction.

28-9 The "Tribander" Linear Amplifier for 20-15-10

With the advent of the trap-tuned *tribander* beam, many amateurs are concentrating their efforts on the 20- , 15- , and 10-meter bands. In addition, low-frequency operation is often impractical for amateurs located on small city lots and their activities must be confined to the higher frequencies. This linear amplifier is designed for the amateur whose principal interest lies in the 14 to 30-MHz spectrum. An amplifier built specially for this range can be made smaller and more inexpensively than one that covers the complete 3.5- to 30-MHz range.

The unit described in this section is a one kilowatt PEP class-AB_1 cathode-driven linear amplifier using two compact, ceramic 4CX300A tubes. A novel and easily built chassis-cabinet inclosure is employed, together with the inexpensive model of the *Eimac* air-system socket. The amplifier is small enough so that it may be placed on the operating table next to the sideband exciter and receiver. Provisions are made for voice operation, or for operating the SSB exciter without the amplifier. At 2000 volts plate potential, third-order distortion products are better than −30 decibels below maximum signal input.

Amplifier Circuit A high-perveance tube such as the 4CX300A cannot be used in a conventional class-B grounded-grid circuit, since the element geometry leads to high grid current and to destructive values of grid dissipation. The distortion-reduction characteristics of grounded-grid circuitry, however, may be retained in an acceptable cathode-driven circuit, wherein grid and screen operating potentials are applied to the tube. The schematic of this amplifier which makes use of such a circuit is illustrated in figure 42. Two 4CX300A tubes are employed, with the driving signal applied to the cathode circuit as is done in the common grounded-grid configuration. Grid and screen elements are at r-f ground, while normal Class-AB_1 grid-bias and screen potentials are applied to the tubes. Under these conditions, the power gain of the 4CX300A is quite high; approximately 30 watts PEP drive being required for full output.

The amplifier plate circuit is a simple three-band pi-network, designed for a circuit Q of 15. Since the low-frequency bands are not included, only two small self-supporting air-wound coils are required. In addition, the size of the pi-network loading capacitance is considerably smaller than a capacitor necessary for all-band operation.

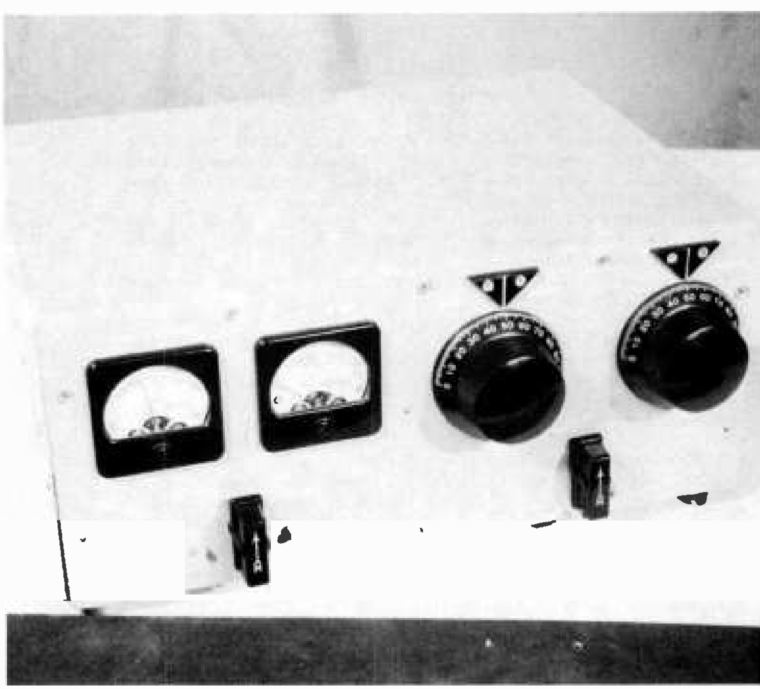
The amplifier is controlled by a two-deck progressively-shorting switch (S_1) that remotely controls the auxiliary equipment and provides the operator with a choice of "tune" or "operate" modes. All control and low-voltage power leads are suitably filtered by LC networks to suppress radiation of TVI-producing harmonics.

The *Tribander* linear amplifier construction is novel in that no regular chassis deck is employed. The amplifier is built within an inclosure made up of two aluminum chassis, each measuring 10" × 14" × 3". One chassis is inverted and serves as a pan within which the components are mounted. The second chassis is placed atop the first and serves as a top shield cover. This chassis assembly is hinged along the rear edge, and opens up much in the manner of a suitcase. A single-piece front panel made of aluminum is fixed to the lower chassis. The front apron of the top section is cut away to provide clearance for the meters, switches and capacitors. When the top section is closed, the cabinet is sealed by a strip of finger stock that runs around the inside edges of the lower chassis box. A length of "piano-type" hinge fastens the rear edges of the two chassis together, and the inclosure halves are held in place by five panel bolts which screw into nut plates riveted to the lip of the lid, or top section.

Figure 42

TRIBANDER LINEAR AMPLIFIER FOR 10-15-20-METER SIDEBAND

This one kilowatt PEP linear amplifier is designed for those amateurs interested in the higher-frequency DX bands. Using two 4CX-300A tubes, this compact bandswitching unit is ideally suited for exciters having a PEP output of about 30 watts. Panel controls are (l. to r.): Screen meter, plate meter, plate tuning, plate loading. On the left is the mode switch (S_1) and on the right is the band switch (S_2). Amplifier is mounted on four rubber "feet" so that cooling air may be drawn from under the cabinet. Geared tuning dials, switch knobs, and plate bandswitch are salvaged from surplus "TU" tuning drawers from BC-191/375 transmitter.



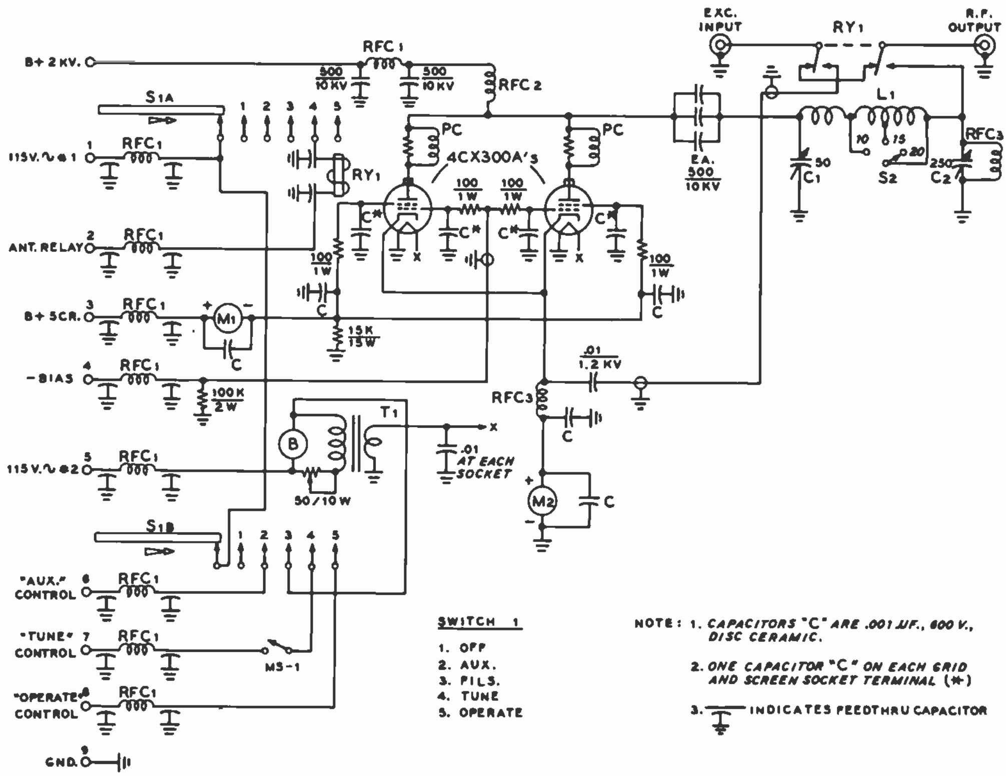


Figure 43

SCHEMATIC, TRIBANDER LINEAR AMPLIFIER

C_1—50 pf, 3 kv. Johnson 155-8 (50F30), 0.075" spacing
C_2—250 pf, 2 kv. Johnson 155-6 (250F20), 0.045" spacing
L_1—10 meter section: 3½ turns, 3/16" copper tubing, wound 1¼" i.d. Adjust length to resonate with C_1 25% meshed. 15-20 meter section: 5 turns, ⅛" copper tubing, wound 2¼" i.d. 15 meter tap 3 turns from "cold" (output) end
M_1—0-50 d-c milliammeter. Recalibrated to −20 to +30 ma.
M_2—0-500 d-c milliammeter
MS_1—SPST lever-type "Microswitch"
PC—Parasitic choke. Two turns #12, ½-inch diam., wound about 47-ohm, 2-watt composition resistor
RFC_1—VHF choke. Ohmite Z-144
RFC_2—44-µh, 500-ma., Ohmite Z-14
RFC_3—2.5-mh, 300-ma. National R-300
RY_1—Dpdt, 115-volt coil, antenna relay. Advance AM-2C—115VA
S_1—Two-pole, 5-position progressively shorting switch. Two Centralab #P-1 decks, with #P-121 index assembly
S_2—Single-pole, 5-position ceramic switch from surplus "TU" tuning unit, or Centralab #2550
T_1—6.3 volt at 6 amp. Stancor P-6456. Adjust primary resistor to deliver 6.0 volts at tube sockets under load
Blower—35 cubic feet per minute. 6000 rpm, 115 volts a.c. Ripley #8445-E
Feedthrough capacitors—Each of the eight control leads, plus the two leads to the relay coil pass through 0.001-µfd ceramic feedthrough capacitors. Centralab type FT-1000
Sockets—Eimac SK-760 air socket. Place one 0.001 µfd, 600-volt ceramic capacitor from each screen terminal to ground

An aluminum partition divides the interior of the inclosure into two compartments (figure 44). The smaller compartment contains the blower motor, filament transformer, panel meters, auxiliary control relay, function switch, and power lead filters. The larger compartment contains the two 4CX300A tubes, the plate circuit pi-network components and the antenna relay. The partition is shaped to fit around the

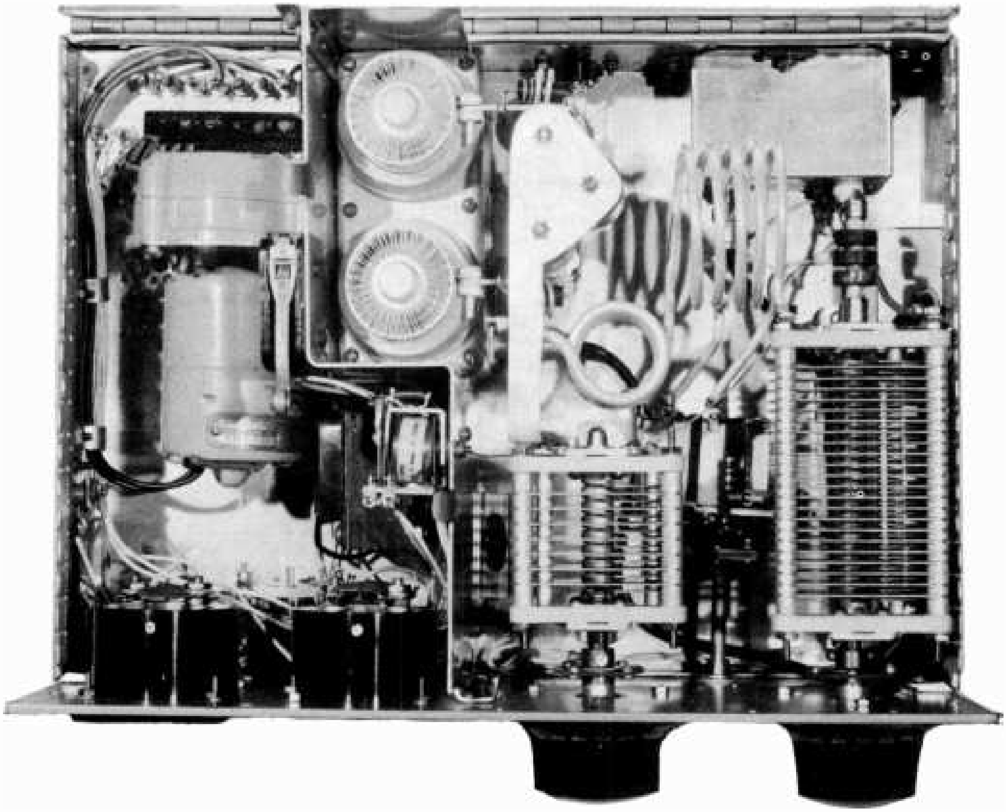


Figure 44

INTERIOR VIEW OF LINEAR AMPLIFIER

Antenna relay RY_1 is placed in small aluminum box mounted to rear wall of cabinet directly behind antenna loading capacitor. The two 4CX300A tube sockets are mounted on top of aluminum shield can taken from oscillator coil section of surplus "command" transmitter. Micro-switch on partition removes high voltage when cover is opened. Midget relay adjacent to switch is added for auxiliary control circuits and is not required. At extreme left rear are feedthrough capacitors mounted on aluminum plate, with r-f chokes beneath them. Filament transformer is in corner of compartment, in back of mode selector switch. Pi-network components are at right, with three plate blocking capacitors mounted to aluminum strip supported by plate tank capacitor.

housing holding the tetrode tube sockets. As the standard air-system socket with built-in screen bypass capacitor is both expensive and bulky, the smaller phenolic socket having no screen capacitor was used as an inexpensive substitute. Two of these sockets will mount atop an oscillator shield can taken from a defunct surplus "Command" transmitter. The can makes an inexpensive and r-f tight shield for the grid and cathode components, and is mounted directly to the bottom chassis "pan." The pi-network capacitors and bandswitch are panel mounted, and the remaining compartment area is taken up by the plate coils, r-f choke, and the plate blocking capacitors. Antenna relay RY_1 is mounted in a small aluminum shield box placed at the back of the compartment.

Transmitter wiring is simple and straightforward. All connections in the meter compartment are made with unshielded wire.

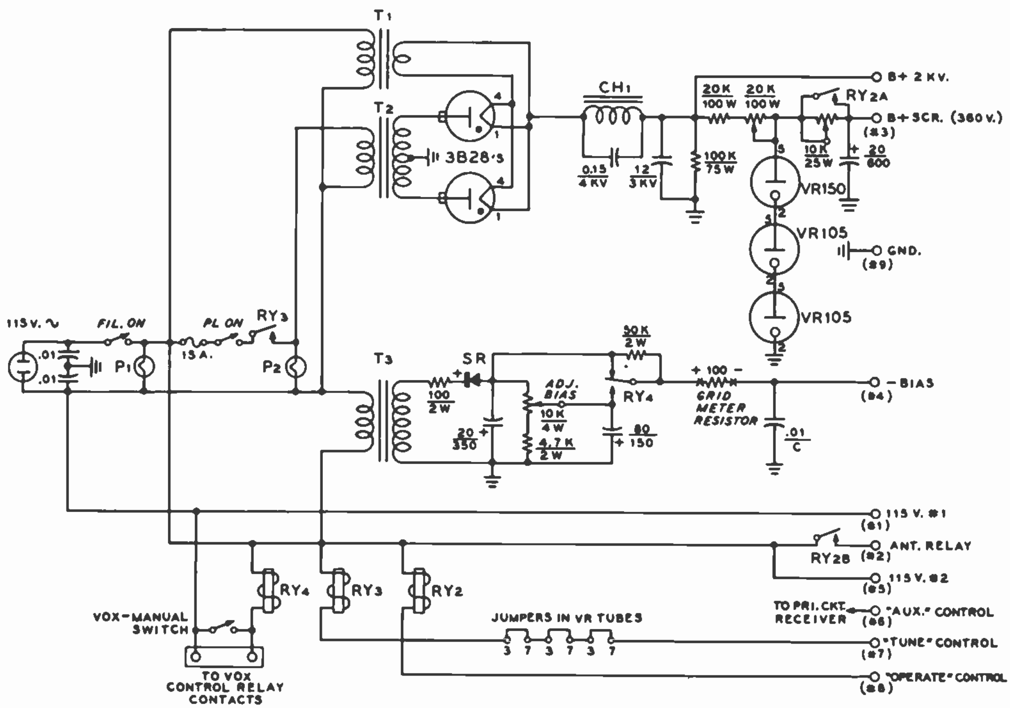


Figure 45

SCHEMATIC, LINEAR AMPLIFIER POWER SUPPLY

CH_1—6 h. at 500 ma.
P_1, P_2—115 volt pilot lamp and receptacle
RY_2—Dpst, 115-volt coil. Potter-Brumfield MR5A, 115 volt a.c.
RY_3—Spst, 115-volt coil, 20-amp. contact. Potter-Brumfield PR3AY, 115 volts, a.c.
RY_4—Dpdt, 115-volt coil, Potter-Brumfield MR-11A, 115-volt a.c.
SR—Silicon rectifier, 1 amp. Sarkes-Tarzian M-500
T_1—2.5 volts at 10 amp, 10 kv. insulation. Stancor P-3060
T_2—2900-2300 volts each side of c.t. at 500 ma. 115-230 volt primary. Stancor P-8035
T_3—125 v., 50 ma. Stancor PA-8421
Extra contact set of RY_4 is placed in series with antenna relay control lead (#2) and RY_{2B} contacts to actuate antenna relay RY_1 (figure 43) by VOX circuit.

The relay leads pass through the internal shield partition via high-frequency feed-through capacitors, and the exciter switching leads to the contacts of the relay pass through short lengths of RG-58/U coaxial line. The outer braided conductor of the line is soldered to a uhf-type "hood" (*Amphenol* type 83-1H) to ensure r-f tight connections where the cables enter and leave the amplifier compartment.

The three ceramic capacitors that make up the plate blocking unit are mounted atop the plate r-f choke, and are fastened to the main tuning capacitor by means of an aluminum strap visible in figure 44.

Connection is made to the anode of each tube by means of a ½-inch wide copper strap encircling the air cooler structure. Air is drawn through ¼-inch holes in the bottom pan by the blower, forced into the grid compartment, circulated upward through the tube socket and cooling anode, and exhausted via ⅛-inch vent holes drilled in the top lid of the inclosure. The blower motor goes on whenever the filaments of the tubes are lit.

Transmitter Control Circuits and Power Supply Switch S_1 controls the transmitter and auxiliary equipment. All circuits are off in the *first* position. In the *second* position, an auxiliary circuit is completed which can turn on the station receiver or sideband exciter. The third position turns on the amplifier tube filaments and energizes the blower motor to cool the tubes. Cutoff bias is applied to the tubes to eliminate diode noise often noticed in standby operation. The *fourth* position applies full plate voltage and reduced screen voltage to the amplifier for tuning operations, and the *fifth* switch position applies full screen voltage. Cutoff bias is removed by the voice-actuated relay in the power supply. Screen and plate currents are continually monitored by the two panel meters. The screen meter is recalibrated to have an elevated zero point and reads −20 to +30 milliamperes. Under certain conditions, negative screen current can flow and it is important to monitor this sensitive indicator of amplifier operation.

The power-supply schematic is shown in figure 45. The high voltage supply uses 3B28 "hash-free" gas rectifier tubes and provides 2000 volts d.c. at 500 ma and regulated 360 volts at 30 milliamperes. "Jumpers" in the base of the regulator tubes are wired in series with the primary relay circuit so that the supply cannot be energized unless the tubes are in their sockets. A smaller half-wave semiconductor supply provides operating and cutoff bias for the amplifier. The bias relay may be actuated by the voice circuit of the exciter to drop the bias to the correct amount during the time the voice circuit is energized.

Transmitter Adjustment and Tuning The only initial adjustment is to set the operating bias level by means of the potentiometer. Initially, the arm should be set at the high-potential end of the potentiometer to apply full bias to the tubes. The filaments and blower are turned on, and the high-voltage and bias supply energized. Using a voltmeter, the potentiometer should be set to provide about −60 volts on the arm. The voice relay is energized dropping the cutoff bias out and the potentiometer is carefully reset to provide a static plate current of 200 ma as read on the meter. Indicated screen current (bleeder current) should be about 22 ma. When the voice relay drops out, the plate current should fall to zero.

The amplifier is now fed a small exciting signal (single tone) and tuned and loaded for a maximum plate current of 500 milliamperes. Screen current should now be approximately 30 ma. (This is a total of screen and bleeder current.) The output coupling is now *increased* slightly so that r-f output (as read on an r-f ammeter, or output voltmeter) *drops* about 2 percent. Maximum linearity is obtained when the amplifier is slightly overcoupled. Under voice conditions, plate-current peaks should reach approximately 250 ma, as read on the meter. No grid current should be read on a 0-1 d-c milliammeter placed across the grid-current terminals in the power supply. Any flicker of grid current indicates the amplifier is being overdriven, with a consequent severe increase in distortion. Under voice conditions, indicated screen current will be relatively constant, since actual current drawn by the screen of the tubes will be less than + or − 10 ma., and this small value is swamped out by the bleeder current, which is constant at 22 ma. Low values of screen meter current (indicating that the tubes are drawing negative current) indicates excessive loading; high values of screen current indicate insufficient plate circuit loading.

Never apply excitation to this (or any other) grounded-grid amplifier without all operating potentials applied to the tubes.

CHAPTER TWENTY-NINE

Speech and Amplitude-Modulation Equipment

Amplitude modulation of the output of a transmitter for radiotelephony may be accomplished either at the plate circuit of the final amplifier, commonly called *high-level amplitude modulation* or simply *plate modulation* of the final stage, or it may be accomplished at a lower level. Low-level modulation is accompanied by a plate-circuit efficiency in the final stage of 30 to 45 percent, while the efficiency obtainable with high-level amplitude modulation is about twice as great, running from 60 to 80 percent. Intermediate values of efficiency may be obtained by a combination of low-level and high-level modulation; cathode modulation of the final stage is a common way of obtaining combined low-level and high-level modulation.

High-level amplitude modulation is characterized by a requirement for an amount of audio power approximately equal to one-half the d-c input to the plate circuit of the final stage. Low-level modulation, as for example grid-bias modulation of the final stage, requires only a few watts of audio power for a medium-power transmitter and 10 to 15 watts for modulation of a stage with one kilowatt input. Cathode modulation of a stage normally is accomplished with an audio power capability of about 20 percent of the d-c input to the final stage. A detailed discussion of the relative advantages of the different methods for accomplishing amplitude modulation of the output of a transmitter is given in an earlier chapter.

Two trends may be noted in the design of systems for obtaining high-level amplitude modulation of the final stage of amateur transmitters. The first is toward the use of tetrodes in the output stage of the high-power audio amplifier which is used as the modulator for a transmitter. The second trend is toward the use of a *high-level splatter suppressor* in the high-voltage circuit between the secondary of the modulation transformer and the plate circuit of the modulated stage.

29-1 Modulation

Tetrode Modulators In regard to the use of tetrodes, the advantages of these tubes have long been noted for use in modulators having from 10 to 100 watts output. The 6V6, 6L6, and 807 tubes have served well in providing audio power outputs in this range. Recently the higher-power tetrodes such as the 4-65A, 813, 4-125A, and 4-250A have come into more general use as high-level audio amplifiers. The beam tetrodes offer the advantages of low driving power (even down to zero driving power for many applications) as compared to the moderate driving power requirements of the usual triode tubes having equivalent power-output capabilities.

On the other hand, beam-tetrode tubes require both a screen-voltage power supply and a grid-bias source. So it still is expedient in many cases to use zero-bias triodes or even low-μ triodes such as the 304TL in many modulators for the medium-power and high-power range. A list of suggested modulator combinations for a range of power output capabilities is given in conjunction with several of the modulators to be described.

Increasing the Effective Modulation Percentage It has long been known that the effective modulation percentage of a transmitter carrying unaltered speech waves was necessarily limited to a rather low value by the frequent high-amplitude peaks which occur in a speech waveform. Many methods for increasing the effective modulation percentage in terms of the peak modulation percentage have been suggested in various publications and subsequently tried in the field by the amateur fraternity. Two of the first methods suggested were *automatic modulation control* and *volume compression*. Both these methods were given extensive trials by operating amateurs; the systems do give a degree of improvement as evidenced by the fact that such arrangements still are used in many amateur stations. But these systems fall far short of the optimum, because there is no essential modification of the speech waveform. Some method of actually modifying the speech waveform to improve the ratio of peak amplitude to average amplitude must be used before significant improvement is obtained.

It has been proved that the most serious effect on the radiated signal accompanying overmodulation is the strong spurious-sideband radiation which accompanies negative-peak clipping. Modulation in excess of 100 percent in the positive direction is accompanied by no undesirable effects as far as the radiated signal is concerned, at least so long as the linear modulation capability of the final amplifier is not exceeded. So the problem becomes mainly one of constructing a modulator/final-amplifier combination so that negative-peak clipping (modulation in excess of 100 percent in a negative direction) cannot normally take place regardless of any reasonable speech input level.

Assymetrical Speech The speech waveform of the normal male voice is characterized, as was stated before, by high-amplitude peaks of short duration. But it is also a significant characteristic of this wave that these high-amplitude peaks are polarized in one direction with respect to the average amplitude of the wave. This is the "lopsided" or assymetrical speech which has been discussed and illustrated in an earlier chapter.

The simplest method of attaining a high average level of modulation without negative-peak clipping may be had merely by ensuring that these high-amplitude peaks always are polarized in a positive direction at the secondary of the modulation transformer. This adjustment may be achieved in the following manner: Couple a cathode-ray oscilloscope to the output of the transmitter in such a manner that the carrier and its modulation envelope may be viewed on the scope. Speak into the microphone and note whether the sharp peaks of modulation are polarized upward or whether these peaks tend to cut the baseline with the "bright spot" in the center of the trace which denotes negative-peak clipping. If it is not obvious whether or not the existing polarity is correct, reverse the polarity of the modulating signal and again look at the envelope. Since a push-pull modulator almost invariably is used, the easiest way of reversing signal polarity is to reverse either the leads which go to the grids or the leads to the plates of the modulator tubes.

When the correct adjustment of signal polarity is obtained through the above procedure, it is necessarily correct only for the specific microphone which was used while making the tests. The substitution of another microphone may make it necessary to reverse the polarity, since the new microphone may be connected internally in the opposite polarity to that of the original one.

Low-Level Speech Clipping The low-level speech clipper is, in the ideal case, a very neat method for obtaining an improved ratio of average-to-peak amplitude. Such systems, used in conjunction with a voice-frequency filter, can give a very worthwhile improvement in the effective modulation percentage; but in the normal amateur transmitter their operation is often less than ideal. The excessive phase shift between the low-level clipper and the plate circuit of the final amplifier in the normal transmitter results in a severe alteration in the square-wave output of the clipper-filter which results from a high degree of clipping. The square-wave output of the clipper ends up essentially as a double sawtooth wave by the time this wave reaches the plate of the modulated amplifier. The net result of the rather complex action of the clipper, filter, and the phase shift in the succeeding stages is that the low-level speech clipper system *does* provide an improvement in the effective modulation percentage, but it *does not* insure against overmodulation. An extensive discussion of these factors, along with representative waveforms, is given in Chapter Thirteen. Circuits for some recommended clipper-filter systems will also be found in the same chapter.

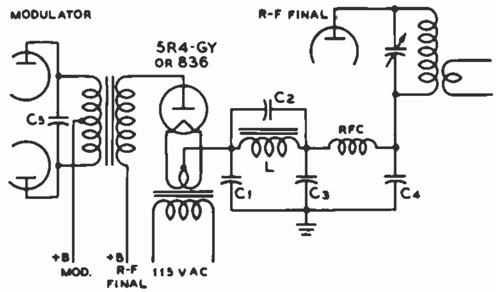


Figure 1

HIGH-LEVEL SPLATTER SUPPRESSOR

The high-vacuum diode acts as a series limiter to suppress negative-peak clipping in the modulated r-f amplifier as a result of large amplitude negative-peak modulating signals. In addition, the low-pass filter following the diode suppresses the transients which result from the peak-clipping action of the diode. Further, the filter attenuates all harmonics generated within the modulator system whose frequency lies above the cut-off frequency of the filter. The use of an appropriate value of capacitor, determined experimentally as discussed in Chapter Thirteen, across the primary of the modulation transformer (C_5) introduces further attenuation to high-frequency modulator harmonics. Chokes suitable for use at L are manufactured by Chicago-Stancor Co. The correct values of capacitance for C_1, C_2, C_3, and C_4 are specified on the installation sheet for the splatter-suppressor chokes for a wide variety of operating conditions.

High-Level Splatter Suppressor One practical method for the substantial elimination of negative-peak clipping in a high-level a-m transmitter is the so-

Figure 2

TOP VIEW OF THE 6L6 MODULATOR

called *high-level splatter suppressor.* As figure 1 shows, it is only necessary to add a high-vacuum rectifier tube socket, a filament transformer, and a simple low-pass filter to an existing modulator/final-amplifier combination to provide high-level suppression.

The tube (V_1) serves to act as a switch to cut off the circuit from the high-voltage power supply to the plate circuit of the final amplifier as soon as the peak a-c voltage across the secondary of the modulation transformer has become equal and opposite to the d-c voltage being applied to the plate of the final amplifier stage. A single-section low-pass filter serves to filter out the high-frequency components resulting from the clipping action.

Tube V_1 may be a receiver rectifier with a 5-volt filament for any but the highest power transmitters. The 5Y3-GT is good for 125 ma plate current to the final stage, the 5R4-GY and the 5U4-G are satisfactory for up to 250 ma. For high-power high-voltage transmitters the best tube is the high-vacuum transmitting tube type 836. This tube is equivalent in shape, filament requirements, and average-current capabilities to the 866A. However, it is a high-vacuum rectifier and utilizes a large-size heater-type dual cathode requiring a warm-up time of at least 40 seconds before current should be passed. The tube is rated at an average current of 250 ma. For greater current drain by the final amplifier, two or more 836 tubes may be placed in parallel.

The filament transformer for the cathode of the splatter-suppressor tube must be insulated for somewhat more than twice the operating d-c voltage on the plate-modulated stage, to allow for a factor of safety on modulation peaks. A filament transformer of the type normally used with high-voltage rectifier tubes will be suitable for such an application.

29-2 Design of Speech Amplifiers and Modulators

A number of representative designs for speech amplifiers and modulators are given in this chapter. Still other designs are included in the descriptions of other items of equipment in other chapters. However, those persons who wish to design a speech amplifier or modulator to meet their particular needs are referred to Chapter Six, *Vacuum-Tube*

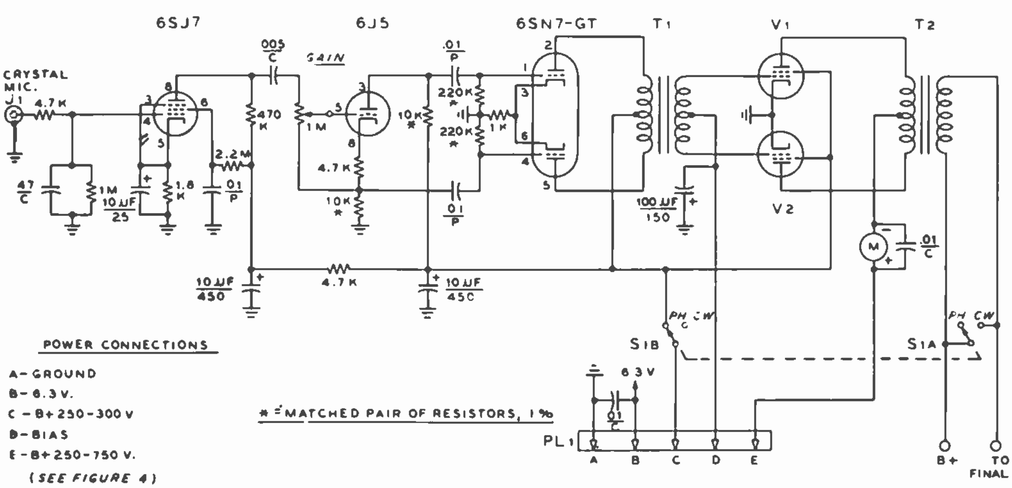


Figure 3

SCHEMATIC OF BEAM-POWER TUBE MODULATOR

M—0-250 d-c milliammeter
T_1—Driver transformer. Stancor A-4701, or UTC S-10
T_2—"Poly-pedance" Modulation transformer
60-watt level = Stancor A-3893, or UTC S-20
125-watt level = Stancor A-3894

Amplifiers, for a detailed discussion of the factors involved in the design of such amplifiers, and for tabular material on recommended operating conditions for voltage and power amplifiers.

10- to 120-Watt Modulator with Beam-Power Tubes It is difficult to surpass the capabilities of the reliable beam-power tube when an audio power output of 10 to 120 watts is required of a modulator. A pair of 6L6 tubes operating in such a modulator will deliver good plate-circuit efficiency, require only a very small amount of driving power, and impose no serious grid-bias problems.

Circuit Description Included on the chassis of the modulator shown in figure 2 are the speech amplifier, the driver and modulation transformers for the output tubes, and a plate-current milliammeter. The power supply has not been included. The 6SJ7 pentode first stage is coupled through the volume control to the grid of a 6J5 phase inverter. The output of the phase inverter is capacitively coupled to the grids of a 6SN7-GT which acts as a push-pull driver for the output tubes. Transformer coupling is used between the driver stage and the grids of the output tubes so that the output stage may be operated either as a class-AB_1 or class-AB_2 amplifier.

The Output Stage Either 6L6, 6L6-G, or 807 tubes may be used in the output stage of the modulator. As a matter of fact, either 6V6-GT or 6F6-G tubes could be used in the output stage if somewhat less power output is required.

Tabulated in figure 4 are a group of recommended operating conditions for different tube types in the output stage of the modulator. In certain sets of operating conditions the tubes will be operated class AB_1, that is with increased plate current with signal but with no grid current. Other operating conditions specify class-AB_2 operation, in which the plate current increases with signal and grid current flows on signal peaks. Either type of operation is satisfactory for communication work.

Figure 4

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS FOR MODULATOR OF FIG. 3 FOR DIFFERENT TUBE TYPES

Tubes V_1 V_2	Class	Plate Volts (E)	Screen Volts (C)	Grid Bias (D)	Plate-To-Plate Load (Ohms)	Plate Current (MA)	Power Output (Watts)
6V6GT	AB_1	250	250	−15	10,000	70-80	10
6V6GT	AB_1	285	285	−19	8,000	70-95	15
6L6	AB_1	360	270	−23	6,600	85-135	27
6L6	AB_2	360	270	−23	3.800	85-205	47
807	AB_1	600	300	−34	10,000	35-140	56
807	AB_1	750	300	−35	12,000	30-140	75
807	AB_2	750	300	−35	7,300	30-240	120

29-3 General Purpose Triode Class-B Modulator

High level class-B modulators with power output in the 125- to 500-watt level usually make use of triodes such as the 809, 811, 8005, 805, or 810 tubes with operating plate voltages between 750 and 2000. Figures 5 and 6 illustrate a general-purpose modulator unit designed for operation in this power range. The size of the modulation transformer will of course be dependent on the amount of audio power developed by the modulator. In the case of the 500-watt modulator the size and weight of the components require that the speech amplifier be mounted on a separate chassis. For power levels of 300 watts or less it is possible to mount the complete speech system on one chassis.

Circuit Description of General Purpose Modulator The modulator unit shown in figure 5 is complete except for the high-voltage supply required by the modulator tubes. A speech amplifier suitable for operation with a crystal microphone is included on the chassis along with its own power supply. A 6AU6 is used as a high-gain preamplifier stage resistance coupled to a 12AU7 phase inverter. The audio level is controlled by a potentiometer in the input grid circuit of the 12AU7 stage. Push-pull 2A3 low-μ triodes serve as the class-B driver stage. The 2A3's are coupled to the grids of the modulator

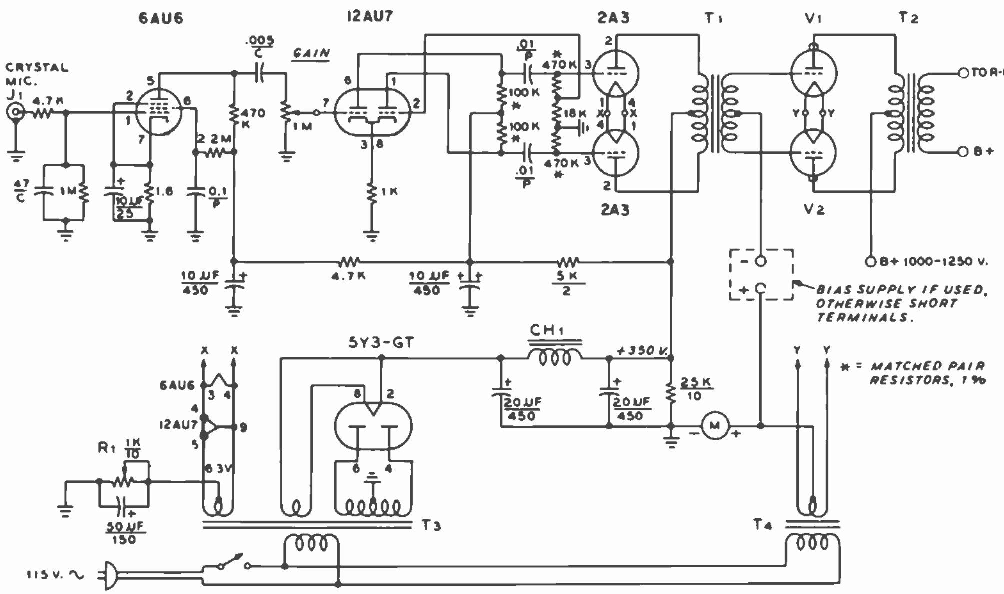


Figure 5

SCHEMATIC OF GENERAL PURPOSE MODULATOR

M—0-500 ma.
T_1—Driver transformer. Stancor A-4761
T_2—"Poly-pedance" Modulation transformer.
300-watt rating, Stancor A-3898
500-watt rating, Stancor A-3899
T_3—360-0-360 volts, 150 ma. Stancor PC-8410
T_4—Suitable for tubes used.
For 811-A's = 6.3 volt, 8 amp. Stancor P-6308
For 810's = 10 volt, 10 amp. Stancor P-6461
CH_1—14 henry, 100 ma. UTC S-19. Stancor C-1001
R_1—1K, 10 watts, adjustable. Set for plate current of 80 ma. (no signal) to 2A3 tubes (approximately 875 ohms).
V_1, V_2—See figure 6.

tubes through a conventional multipurpose driver transformer. Cathode bias is employed on the driver stage which is capable of providing 12 watts of audio power for the grid circuit of the modulator.

For c-w operation the secondary of the class-B modulation transformer is shorted out and the filament and bias circuits of the modulator are disabled.

Figure 6

SUGGESTED OPERATING CONDITIONS FOR GENERAL PURPOSE MODULATOR

Tubes V_1, V_2	Plate Voltage	Grid Bias (Volts)	Plate Current (Ma)	Plate-To-Plate Load (Ohms)	Sine Wave Power Output (Watts)
809	700	0	70-250	6,200	120
811-A	750	0	30-350	5,100	175
811-A	1000	0	45-350	7,400	245
811-A	1250	0	50-350	9,200	310
811-A	1500	−4.5	32-315	12,400	340
805	1250	0	148-400	6,700	300
805	1500	−16	84-400	8,200	370
810	2000	−50	60-420	12,000	450
810	2500	−75	50-420	17,500	500
8005	1500	−67	40-330	9,800	330

500-Watt Modulator Adjustment When the modulator has been wired and checked, it should be tested before being used with an r-f unit. A satisfactory test setup is shown in figure 7. A common ground lead should be run between the speech amplifier and the modulator. Six 1000-ohm 100-watt resistors should be connected in series and placed across the high-voltage terminals of the modulator unit to act as an audio load. Bias should be adjusted to show −75 volts from each 810 (if 810's are used) grid terminal to ground as measured with a high-resistance voltmeter. If an oscilloscope is available, it should be coupled to point "A" on the load

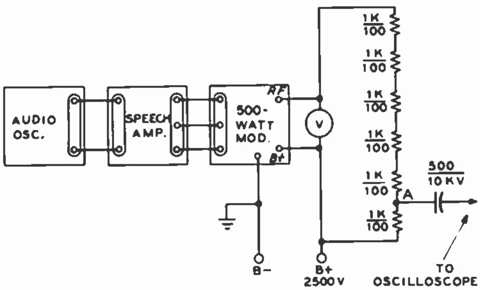


Figure 7

TEST SETUP FOR 500-WATT MODULATOR

resistor (figure 7) through a 500-pf ceramic TV capacitor of 10,000 volts rating. The case of the oscilloscope should be grounded to the common ground point of the modulator.

A plate potential of 2500 volts is now applied to the modulator, and bias is adjusted for a resting plate current of 50 milliamperes as read on a 500-milliampere meter in the cathode circuit of the modulator. *Be extremely careful during these adjustments, since the plate supply of the modulator is a lethal weapon. Never touch the modulator when the plate voltage supply is on! Be sure you employ the TV blocking capacitor between the oscilloscope and the plate-load resistors, as these load resistors are at high-voltage potential! If a high-resistance a-c voltmeter is available that has a 2000-volt scale, it should be clipped between the high-voltage terminals of the modulator, directly across the dummy load. Do not touch the meter when the high-voltage supply is in operation!* An audio oscillator should be connected to the audio input circuit of the exciter-transmitter and the audio excitation to the high-level modulator should be increased until the a-c voltmeter across the dummy-load resistor indicates an rms reading that is equal to 0.7 (70%) of the plate voltage applied to the modulator. If the modulator plate voltage is 2500 volts, the a-c meter should indicate 1750 volts developed across the 6000-ohm dummy-load resistor. This is equivalent to an audio output of 500 watts. With sine-wave modulation at 1000 Hz and no speech clipping ahead of the modulator, this voltage should be developed at a cathode meter current of about 350 ma when the plate-to-plate modulator impedance of the modulator is 18,000 ohms. Under these conditions, the oscilloscope may be used to observe the audio waveform of the modulator when coupled to point "A" through the 10,000-volt coupling capacitor.

When the frequency of the audio oscillator is advanced above 3500 Hz the output level of the modulator as measured on the a-c voltmeter should drop sharply indicating that the low-pass audio network is functioning properly (if low-pass network is used).

With speech waveforms and no clipping the modulator meter will swing to approximately 150 to 200 milliamperes under 100 percent modulation at a plate potential of 2500 volts. With speech waveforms and moderate clipping the modulator meter will swing to about 300 ma under 100 percent modulation.

29-4 A 15-Watt Clipper - Amplifier

The near-ultimate in "talk power" can be obtained with low-level clipping and filtering combined with high-level filtering. Such a modulation system will have real "punch," yet will sound well rounded and normal. The speech amplifier described in this section makes use of low-level clipping and filtering and is specifically designed to drive a pair of push-pull 810 modulators.

Circuit Description The schematic of the speech amplifier-clipper is shown in figure 8. A total of six tubes, including a rectifier are employed and the unit delivers 15 watts of heavily clipped audio.

A 12AX7 tube is used as a two-stage microphone preamplifier and delivers approximately 20 volts (rms) audio signal to the 6AL5 series clipper tube. The clipping level is adjustable between 0 db and 15 db by clipping control R_2. Amplifier gain is controlled by R_1 in the grid circuit of the second section of the 12AX7. A low-pass filter having a 3500-Hz cutoff follows the 6AL5 clipper stage, with an output of 5

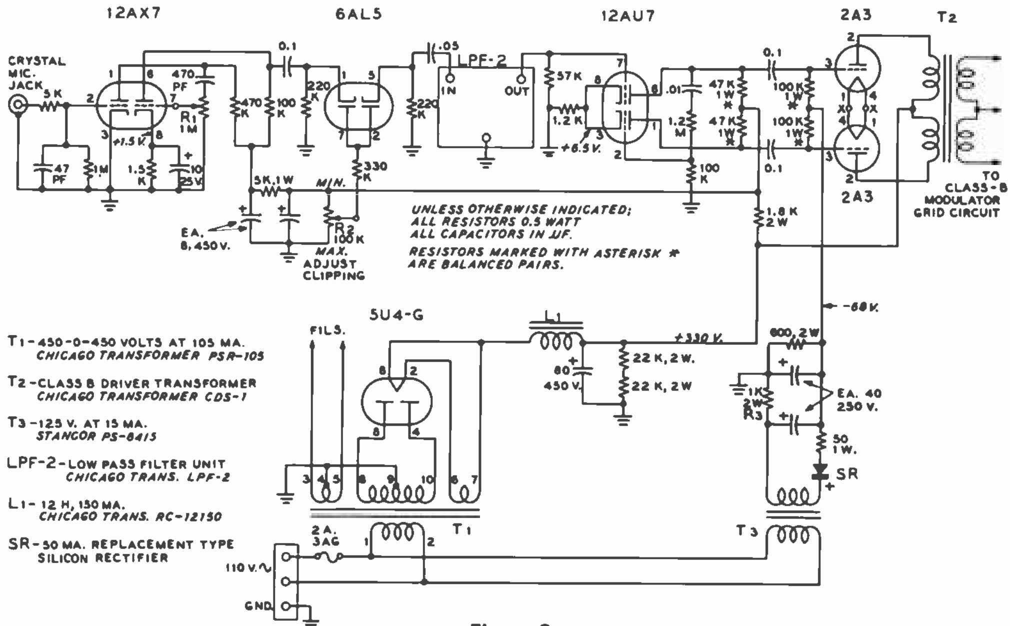


Figure 8

SCHEMATIC, 15-WATT CLIPPER-AMPLIFIER

volts peak audio signal under maximum clipping conditions. A double-triode 12AU7 cathode-follower phase inverter follows the clipper stage and delivers a 100-volt rms signal to the push-pull grids of the 2A3 audio driver tubes. The 2A3 tubes operate at a plate potential of 330 volts and have a −68 volt bias voltage developed by a small diode rectifier supply applied to their grid circuit. An audio output of 15 watts is developed across the secondary terminals of the class-B driver transformer with less than 5 percent distortion under conditions of no clipping. A 5U4-G and a choke-input filter network provide unusually good voltage regulation of the high-voltage plate supply.

The resistors in the 12AU7 phase-inverter plate circuit and the grid circuit of the 2A3 tubes should be matched to achieve best phase-inverter balance. The exact value of the paired resistors is not important, but care should be taken that the values are equal. Random resistors may be matched on an ohmmeter to find two units that are alike in value. When these matched resistors are soldered in the circuit, care should be taken that the heat of the soldering iron does not cause the resistors to shift value. The resistors should be held firmly by the lead to be soldered with a long-nose pliers, which will act as a heat sink between the soldered joint and the body of the resistor. If this precaution is taken the two phase-inverter outputs will be in close balance.

Adjustment of the Speech Amplifier When the wiring of the speech amplifier has been completed and checked, the unit is ready to be tested. Before the tubes are plugged in the amplifier, the bias supply should be energized and the voltage across the 600-ohm bleeder resistor should be measured. It should be −68 volts. If it is not, slight changes in the value of the series resistor (R_3) should be made until the correct voltage appears across the bleeder resistor. The tubes may now be inserted in the amplifier and the positive and cathode voltages checked in accordance with the measurements given in figure 8. After the unit has been tested and is connected to the modulator, R_2 should be set so that it is impossible to overmodulate the transmitter

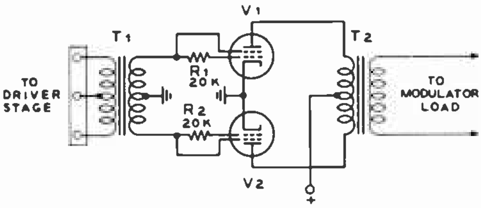


Figure 9

ZERO BIAS TETRODE MODULATOR ELIMINATES SCREEN AND BIAS SUPPLIES

Low driving power and simplicity are key features of this novel modulator. Tubes ranging in size from 6AQ5's to 813's may be employed in this circuit.

T_1—Class-B driver transformer
T_2—Modulation transformer
V_1, V_2—6AQ5, 6L6, 807, 803, 813, etc.
R_1, R_2—Not used with 803 and 813

regardless of the setting of R_1. The gain control (R_1) may then be adjusted to provide the desired level of clipping consistent with the setting of R_2.

29-5 Zero Bias Tetrode Modulators

Class-B zero bias operation of tetrode tubes is made possible by the application of the driving signal to the two grids of the tubes as shown in figure 9. Tubes such as the 6AQ5, 6L6, 807, 803, and 813 work well in this circuit and neither a screen supply nor a bias supply is required. The drive requirements are low and the tubes operate with excellent plate circuit efficiency. The series grid resistors for the small tubes are required to balance the current drawn by the two grids, but are not needed in the case of the 803 and 813 tubes.

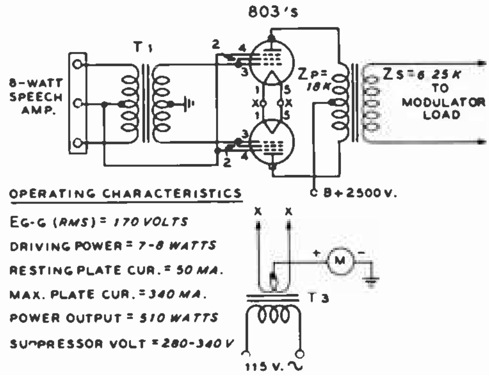


Figure 10

INEXPENSIVE 500-WATT MODULATOR USING 803 TUBES

T_1—"Poly-pedance" class-B driver transformer 2:1 ratio. Chicago-Stancor A-4761
T_2—500-watt output transformer. 18K primary, 6.25K secondary. Chicago-Stancor A-3899
T_3—10 volts, 10 amperes. Chicago-Stancor P-6461
M—0-500 ma

Of great interest to the amateur is the circuit of figure 10, wherein 803 tubes are used as high-level modulators. These tubes will deliver 500 watts of audio in this configuration, yet they require no screen or bias supply, and can be driven by an 8-watt amplifier stage. The use of 803 tubes (in contrast to 813's) requires a higher level of driving power which is offset by the fact that these tubes can often be purchased "surplus" for less than four dollars. A pair of 2A3 tubes (figure 8) will suffice as a driving stage for the 803's. The power supply of the speech amplifier provides high voltage for the suppressors of the modulator stage.

CHAPTER THIRTY

In view of the high cost of iron-core components such as go to make up the bulk of a power supply, it is well to consider carefully the design of a new or rebuilt transmitter in terms of the minimum power supply requirements which will permit the desired performance to be obtained from the transmitter. Careful evaluation of the power supply requirements of alternative transmitter arrangements will permit the selection of that transmitter arrangement which requires the minimum of power supply components, and which makes most efficient use of such power supplies as are required.

30-1 Power-Supply Requirements

A power supply for a transmitter or for a unit of station equipment should be designed in such a manner that it is capable of delivering the required current at a specified voltage, that it has a degree of regulation consistent with the requirements of the application, that its ripple level at full current is sufficiently low for the load which will be fed, that its internal impedance is sufficiently low for the job, and that none of the components shall be overloaded with the type of operation contemplated.

The meeting of all the requirements of the previous paragraph is not always a straightforward and simple problem. In many cases compromises will be involved, particularly when the power supply is for an amateur station and a number of components already on hand must be fitted into the plan. As much thought and planning should be devoted to the power-supply complement of an amateur station as usually is allocated to the r-f and a-f components of the station.

The arrival at the design for the power supply for use in a particular application may best be accomplished through the use of a series of steps, with reference to the data in this chapter by determining the values of components to be used. The first step is to establish the operating requirements of the power supply. In general these are:

1. Output voltage required under full load.
2. Minimum, normal, and peak output current.
3. Voltage regulation required over the current range.
4. Ripple voltage limit.
5. Rectifier circuit to be used.

The *output voltage* required of the power supply is more or less established by the operating conditions of the tubes which it will supply. The *current rating* of the supply, however, is not necessarily tied down by a particular tube combination. It is always best to design a power supply in such a man-

Figure 1

POWER-SUPPLY CONTROL PANEL

A well-designed supply control panel has separate primary switches and indicator lamps for the filament and plate circuits, overload circuit breaker, plate voltage control switch and primary circuit fuses.

ner that it will have the greatest degree of flexibility; this procedure will in many cases allow an existing power supply to be used without change as a portion of a new transmitter or other item of station equipment. So the current rating of a new power supply should be established by taking into consideration not only the requirements of the tubes which it immediately will feed, but also with full consideration of the best matching of power-supply components in the most economical current range which still will meet the requirements. It is often long-run economy, however, to allow for any likely additional equipment to be added in the near future.

Current-Rating Considerations The *minimum current drain* which will be taken from a power supply will be, in most cases, merely the bleeder current. There are many cases where a particular power supply will always be used with a moderate or heavy load on it, but when the supply is a portion of a transmitter it is best to consider the minimum drain as that of the bleeder. The minimum current drain from a power supply is of importance since it, in conjunction with the nominal voltage of the supply, determines the minimum value of inductance which the input choke must have to keep the voltage from soaring when the external load is removed.

The *normal current rating* of a power supply usually is a round-number value chosen on the basis of the transformers and chokes on hand or available from the catalog of a reliable manufacturer. The current rating of a supply to feed a steady load such as a receiver, a speech amplifier, or a continuously operating r-f stage should be at least equal to the steady drain of the load. However, other considerations come into play in choosing the current rating for a keyed amplifier, an amplifier of SSB signals, or a class-B modulator. In the case of a supply which will feed an intermittent load such as these, the current ratings of the transformers and chokes may be *less* than the maximum current which will be taken; but the current ratings of the rectifier tubes to be used should be at least equal to the maximum current which will be taken. That is to say that 300-ma transformers and chokes may be used in the supply for a modulator whose resting current is 100 ma but whose maximum current at peak signal will rise to 500 ma. However, the rectifier tubes should be capable of handling the full 500 ma.

The iron-core components of a power supply which feeds an *intermittent* load may be chosen on the basis of the current as averaged over a period of several minutes, since it is *heating* effect of the current which is of greatest importance in establishing the ratings of such components. Since iron-core components have a relatively large amount of thermal inertia, the effect of an intermittent heavy current is offset to an extent by a key-up period or a period of low modulation in the case of a modulator. However, the current rating of a rectifier tube is established by the magnitude of the emission available from the filament of the tube; the maximum emission must not be exceeded even for a short period or the rectifier tube will be damaged. The above considerations are predicated, however, on the assumption that none of the iron-core components will become saturated due to the high intermittent current drain. If good quality components of generous weight are chosen, saturation will not be encountered.

Voltage Regulation The general subject of *voltage regulation* can really be divided into two sub-problems, which differ greatly in degree. The first, and more common, problem is the case of the normal power supply for a transmitter modulator, where the current drain from the supply may vary over a ratio of four or five to one. In this case we desire to keep the voltage change under this varying load to a matter of 10 or 15 percent of the operating voltage under full load. This is a quite different problem from the design of a power supply to deliver some voltage in the vicinity of 250 volts to an oscillator which requires two or three milliamperes of plate current; but in this latter case the voltage delivered to the oscillator must be constant within a few volts with small variations in oscillator current and with large variations in the a-c line voltage which feeds the oscillator power supply. An additional voltage-regulation problem, intermediate in degree between the other two, is the case where a load must be fed with 10 to 100 watts of power at a voltage below 500 volts, and still the voltage variation with changes in load and changes in a-c line voltage must be held to a few volts at the output terminals.

These three problems are solved in the normal type of installation in quite different manners. The high-power case where output voltage must be held to within 10 to 15 percent is normally solved by using the proper value of inductance for the input choke and proper value of bleeder at the output of the power supply. The calculations are simple: the inductance of the power-supply input choke at minimum current drain from the supply should be equal in henrys to the load resistance on the supply (at minimum load current) divided by 1000. This value of inductance is called the *critical* inductance and it is the minimum value of inductance which will keep the output voltage from soaring in a choke-input power supply with minimum load on the output. The minimum load current may be that due to the bleeder resistor alone, or it may be due to the bleeder plus the minimum drain of the modulator or amplifier to which the supply is connected.

The low-voltage low-current supply, such as would be used for a vfo or the high-frequency oscillator in a receiver, usually is regulated with the aid of glow-discharge gaseous-regulator tubes. These regulators are usually called *VR tubes*. Their use in various types of power supplies is discussed in Section 30-12. The electronically regulated power supply, such as is used in the 10- to 100-watt power output range, also is discussed in this chapter.

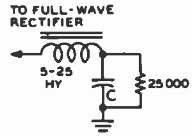
Ripple Considerations The *ripple-voltage* limitation imposed on a power supply is determined by the load which will be fed by the supply. The tolerable ripple voltage from a supply may vary from perhaps 5 percent for a class-B or class-C amplifier which is to be used for a c-w stage or amplifier of an f-m signal down to a few hundredths of one percent for the plate-voltage supply to a low-level voltage amplifier in a speech amplifier. The usual value of ripple voltage which may be tolerated in the supply for the majority of stages of a phone transmitter is between 0.1 and 2.0 percent.

In general it may be stated that, with 60-Hz line voltage and a single-phase rectifier circuit, a power supply for the usual stages in the amateur transmitter will be of the choke-input type with a single pi-section filter following the input choke. A c-w amplifier or other stage which will tolerate up to 5 percent ripple may be fed from a power supply whose filter consists merely of an adequate-size input choke and a single filter capacitor.

A power supply with input choke and a single capacitor also will serve in most cases to feed a class-B modulator or SSB linear amplifier, provided the output capacitor in the supply is sufficiently large. The output capacitor in this case must be capable of storing enough energy to supply the peak-current requirement of the equipment on modulation peaks. The output capacitor for such a supply normally should be between 4 μfd and 20 μfd.

Capacitances larger than 20 μfd involve a high initial charging current when the supply is first turned on, so that an unusually large input choke should be used ahead of the capacitor to limit the peak-current surge through the rectifier tubes. A capacitance of less than 4 μfd may reduce the power output capability of a class-B modulator when it is passing the lower audio frequencies, and in addition may superimpose a low-frequency "growl" on the output signal. This growl will be apparent only when the supply is delivering a relatively high power output; it will not be present when modulation is at a low level.

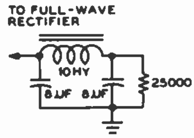
When a stage such as a low-level audio amplifier requires an extremely low value of ripple voltage, but when regulation is not of importance to the operation of the stage, the high degree of filtering usually is obtained through the use of a *resistance-capacitance* filter. This filter usually is employed in addition to the choke-capacitor filter in the power supply for the higher-level stages, but in some cases when the supply is to be used only to feed low-current stages the entire filter of the power supply will be of the resistance-capacitance type. Design data for resistance-capacitance filters is given in a following paragraph.



RIPPLE IN TERMS OF C AT FULL LOAD

CAPACITANCE, C	PERCENT RIPPLE
2 µF	13.1
3 µF	8.5
4 µF	6.2
6 µF	4.0

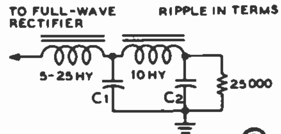
(A)



RIPPLE IN TERMS OF LOAD RESISTANCE

LOAD, OHMS	PERCENT RIPPLE
25000 (BLEEDER ONLY)	0.02
15000	0.04
10000	0.06
5000	0.1
3000	0.17
2000	0.25

(B)



RIPPLE IN TERMS OF C1 AND C2 AT FULL LOAD

C1	C2	PERCENT RIPPLE
2	2	1.2
3	2	0.7
4	4	0.25
8	8	0.08

(C)

Figure 2

VALUES OF RIPPLE VOLTAGE FOR STANDARD POWER-SUPPLY CIRCUITS

When a low-current stage requires very low ripple in addition to excellent voltage regulation, the power-supply filter often will end with one or more gaseous-type voltage-regular tubes. These *VR* tubes give a high degree of filtering in addition to their voltage-regulating action, as is obvious from the fact that the tubes tend to hold the voltage drop across their elements to a very constant value regardless of the current passing through the tube. The VR tube is quite satisfactory for improving both the regulation and ripple characteristics of a supply when the current drain will not exceed 25 to 35 ma depending on the type of VR tube.

Other types of voltage-regulation systems, in addition to VR tubes, exhibit the added characteristic of offering a low value of ripple across their output terminals. The electronic-type of voltage-regulated power supply is capable of delivering an extremely small value of ripple across its output terminals, even though the rectifier-filter system ahead of the regulator delivers a relatively high value of ripple, such as in the vicinity of 5 to 10 percent. In fact, it is more or less self-evident that the better the regulation of such a supply, the better will be its

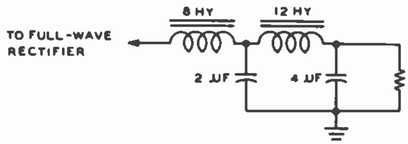


Figure 3

SAMPLE FILTER FOR CALCULATION OF RIPPLE

ripple characteristic. It must be remembered that the ripple output of a voltage-regulated power supply of any type will rise rapidly when the load on the supply is so high that the regulator begins to lose control. This will occur in a supply of the electronic type when the voltage ahead of the series regulator tube falls below a value equal to the sum of the minimum drop across the tube at that value of current, plus the output voltage. In the case of a shunt regulator of the VR-tube type, the regulating effect will fail when the current through the VR tube falls below the usual minimum value of about 5 ma.

Calculation of Ripple Although figure 2 gives the value of ripple voltage for several more or less standard types of filter systems, it is often of value to be able to calculate the value of ripple voltage to be expected with a particular set of filter components. Fortunately, the approximate ripple percentage for normal values of filter components may be calculated with the aid of rather simple formulas. In the two formulas to follow it is assumed that the line frequency is 60 Hz and that a full-wave or a full-wave-bridge rectifier is being used. For the case of a single-section choke-input filter as illustrated in figure 2A, or for the ripple at the output of the first section of a two-section choke input filter the equation is as follows,

$$\text{Percent ripple} = \frac{118}{LC-1} \qquad (1)$$

where LC is the product of the input choke inductance in henrys (at the operating current to be used) and the capacitance which follows this choke expressed in microfarads.

In the case of a two-section filter, the percent ripple at the output of the first section is determined by the above formula. Then this percentage is multiplied by the filter reduction factor of the following section of filter. This reduction factor is determined through the use of the following formula:

$$\text{Filter reduction factor} = \frac{1.76}{LC-1} \qquad (2)$$

where LC again is the product of the inductance and capacitance of the filter section. The reduction factor will turn out to be a decimal value, which is then multiplied by the percentage ripple obtained from the use of the preceding formula.

As an example, take the case of the filter diagramed in figure 3. The LC product of the first section is 16. So the ripple to be expected at the output of the first section will be: $118/(16-1)$ or $118/15$, which gives 7.87 percent. Then the second section, with an LC product of 48, will give a reduction factor of: $1.76/(48-1)$ or $1.76/47$ or 0.037. Then the ripple percentage at the output of the total filter will be: 7.87 times 0.037 or slightly greater than 0.29 percent ripple.

Resistance-Capacitance Filters In many applications where current drain is relatively small, so that the voltage drop across the series resistor would not be excessive, a filter system made up of resistors and capacitors only may be used to advantage. In the normal case, where the reactance of the shunting capacitor is very much smaller than the resistance of the load fed by the filter system, the ripple reduction per section is equal to $1/(2\pi RC)$. In terms of the 120-Hz ripple from a full-wave rectifier the ripple-reduction factor becomes: $1.33/RC$ where R is expressed in thousands of ohms and C in microfarads. For 60-Hz ripple the expression is: $2.66/RC$ with R and C in the same quantities as above.

Filter-System Resonance Many persons have noticed, particularly when using an input choke followed by a 2-μfd first filter capacitor, that at some value of load current the power supply will begin to hum excessively and the rectifier tubes will tend to flicker or one tube will seem to take all the load while the other tube dims out. If the power supply is shut off and then again started, it may be the other tube which takes the load; *or* first one tube and then the other will take the load as the current drain is varied. This condition, as well as other less obvious phenomena such as a tendency for the first filter capacitor to break down regardless of its voltage rating or for rectifier tubes to have short life, results from *resonance* in the filter system following the high-voltage rectifier.

The condition of resonance is seldom encountered in low-voltage power supplies since the capacitors used are usually high enough so that resonance does not occur. But in high-voltage power supplies, where both choke inductance and filter capacitance are more expensive, the condition of resonance happens frequently. The product of inductance and capacitance which resonates at 120 Hz is 1.77. Thus a 1-μfd capacitor and a 1.77-henry choke will resonate at 120 Hz. In almost any normal case the *LC* product of any section in the filter system will be somewhat greater than 1.77, so that resonance at 120 Hz will seldom take place. But the *LC* product for resonance at 60 Hz is about 7.1. This is a value frequently encountered in the input section of a high-voltage power supply. It occurs with a 2-μfd capacitor and a choke which has 3.55 henrys of inductance at some current value. With a 2-μfd filter capacitor following this choke, resonance will occur at the current value which causes the inductance of the choke to be 3.55 henrys. When this resonance does occur, one rectifier tube (assuming mercury-vapor types) will dim and the other will become much brighter.

Thus we see that we must avoid the *LC* product of 1.77 and 7.1. With a swinging-type input choke, whose inductance varies over a 5-to-1 range, we see that it is possible for 60-Hz resonance to occur at a low value of current drain, and then for 120-Hz resonance to occur at approximately full load on the power supply. Since the *LC* product must certainly be greater than 1.77 for satisfactory filtering along with peak-current limitation on the rectifier tubes, we see that with a swinging-type input choke the

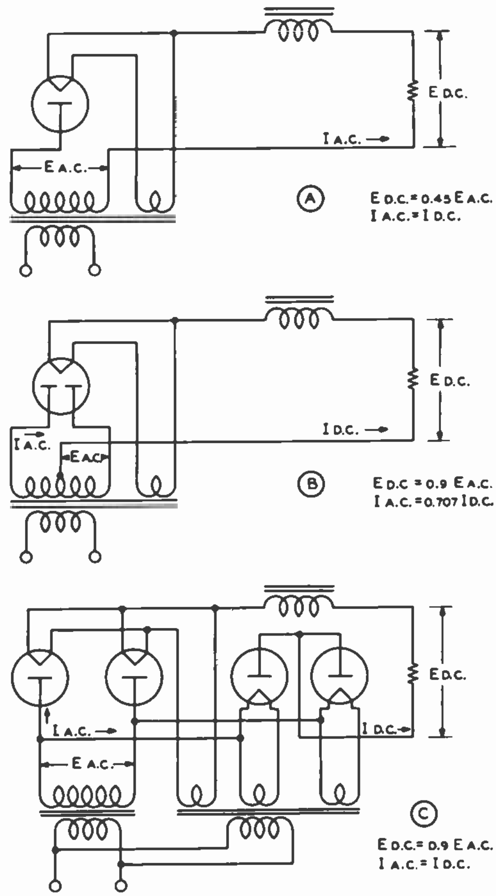


Figure 4

MOST COMMON RECTIFIER CIRCUITS

A shows a half-wave rectifier circuit, B is the standard full-wave rectifier circuit used with a dual rectifier or two rectifier tubes, and C is the bridge rectifier circuit.

LC product must still be greater than 7.1 at maximum current drain from the power supply. To allow a reasonable factor of safety, it will be well to keep the *LC* product at maximum current drain above the value 10.

It is possible to place the filter choke in the B-minus lead of the power supply which reduces the voltage potential appearing from choke winding to ground. However, the back-emf of a good choke is quite high and can develop a dangerous potential from the center tap to ground on the secondary winding of the plate transformer. If the transformer is not designed to withstand this potential, it is possible to break down the insulation at this point.

30-2 Rectification Circuits

There are a large number of rectifier circuits that may be used in the power supplies for station equipment. But the simpler circuits are more satisfactory for the power levels up to the maximum permitted the radio amateur. Figure 4 shows the three most common circuits used in power supplies for amateur equipment.

Half-Wave Rectifiers A *half-wave rectifier*, as shown in figure 4A, passes one half of the wave of each cycle of the alternating current and blocks the other half. The output current is of a *pulsating* nature, which can be smoothed into pure, direct current by means of filter circuits. Half-wave rectifiers produce a pulsating current which has zero output during one-half of each a-c cycle; this makes it difficult to filter the output properly into d.c. and also to secure good voltage regulation for varying loads.

Full-Wave Rectifiers A *full-wave rectifier* consists of a pair of half-wave rectifiers working on opposite halves of the cycle, connected in such a manner that each half of the rectified a-c wave is combined in the output as shown in figure 5. This pulsating unidirectional current can be filtered to any desired degree, depending on the particular application for which the power supply is designed.

A full-wave rectifier may consist of two plates and a filament, either in a single glass or metal envelope for low-voltage rectification or in the form of two separate tubes, each having a single plate and filament for high-voltage rectification. The plates are connected across the high-voltage a-c power transformer winding, as shown in figure 4B. The power transformer is for the purpose of transforming the 110-volt a-c line supply to the desired secondary a-c voltages for filament and plate supplies. The transformer delivers alternating current to the two plates of the rectifier tube; one of these plates is positive at any instant during which the other is negative. The center point of the high-voltage transformer winding is usually grounded and is, therefore, at zero voltage, thereby constituting the negative-B connection.

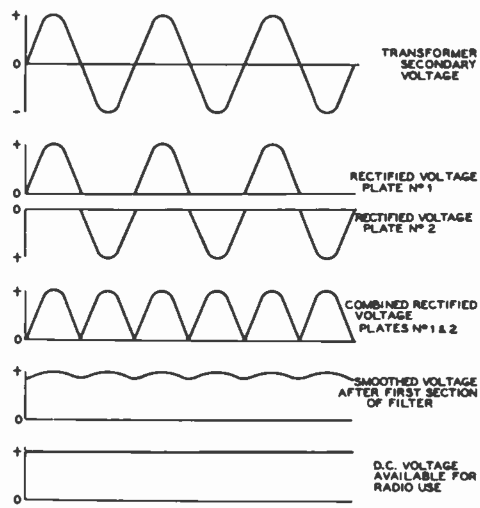


Figure 5

FULL-WAVE RECTIFICATION

Showing transformer secondary voltage, the rectified output of each tube, the combined output of the rectifier, the smoothed voltage after one section of filter, and the substantially pure d-c output of the rectifier-filter after additional sections of filter.

While one plate of the rectifier tube is conducting, the other is inoperative, and vice versa. The output voltages from the rectifier tubes are connected together through the common rectifier filament circuit. Thus the plates alternately supply pulsating current to the output (load) circuit. The rectifier-tube filaments or cathodes are always positive in polarity with respect to the plate transformer in this type of circuit.

The output current pulsates 120 times per second for a full-wave rectifier connected to a 60-Hz a-c line supply; hence the output of the rectifier must pass through a filter to smooth the pulsations into direct current. Filters are designed to select or reject alternating currents; those most com-

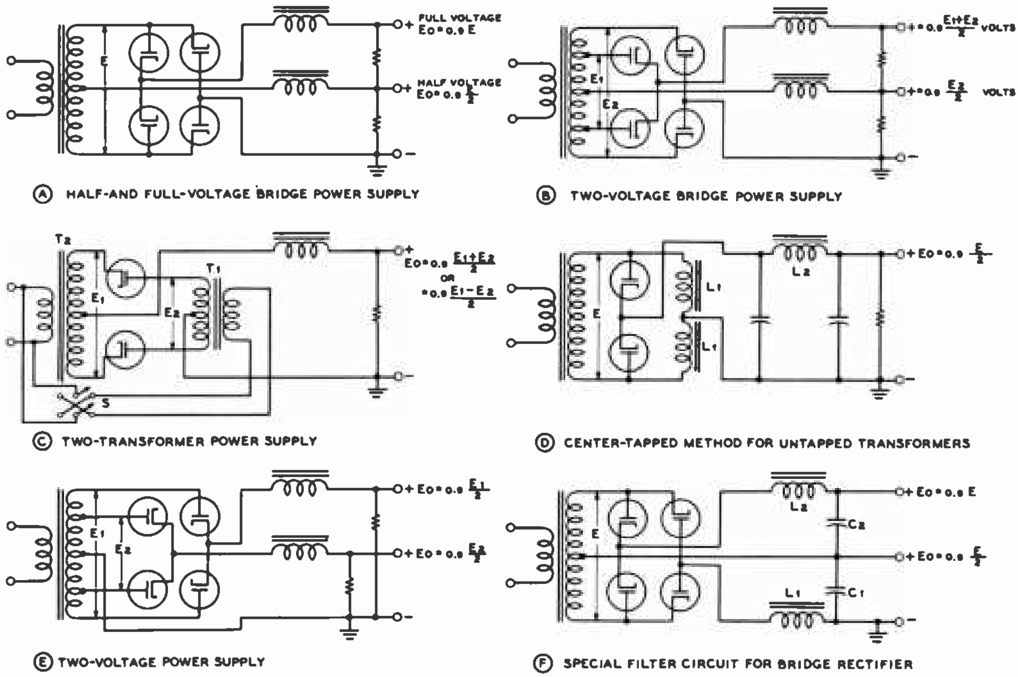


Figure 6

SPECIAL SINGLE-PHASE RECTIFICATION CIRCUITS

A description of the application and operation of each of these special circuits is given in the accompanying text.

monly used in a-c power supplies are of the *low-pass* type.

Bridge Rectification The *bridge rectifier* (figure 4C) is a type of full-wave circuit in which four rectifier elements or tubes are operated from a single high-voltage winding on the power transformer.

While twice as much output voltage can be obtained from a bridge rectifier as from a center-tapped circuit, the permissible output current is only one-half as great for a given power transformer. In the bridge circuit, four rectifiers and three filament-heating transformer windings are needed, as against two rectifiers and one filament winding in the center-tapped full-wave circuit. In a bridge rectifier circuit, the inverse-peak voltage impressed on any one rectifier tube is halved, which means that tubes of lower peak-inverse-voltage rating may be used for a given voltage output.

Note that the center of the high-voltage winding of the bridge transformer (figure 4C) is not a ground potential. Many transformers having a center-tapped winding are not designed for bridge service as the insulation between the center-tap point and ground is inadequate. Lack of insulation at this point does no harm in a full-wave circuit, but may cause breakdown when the transformer is used in bridge configuration.

30-3 Standard Power-Supply Circuits

Choke input is shown for all three of the standard circuits of figure 4, since choke input gives the best utilization of rectifier-tube and power-transformer capability, and

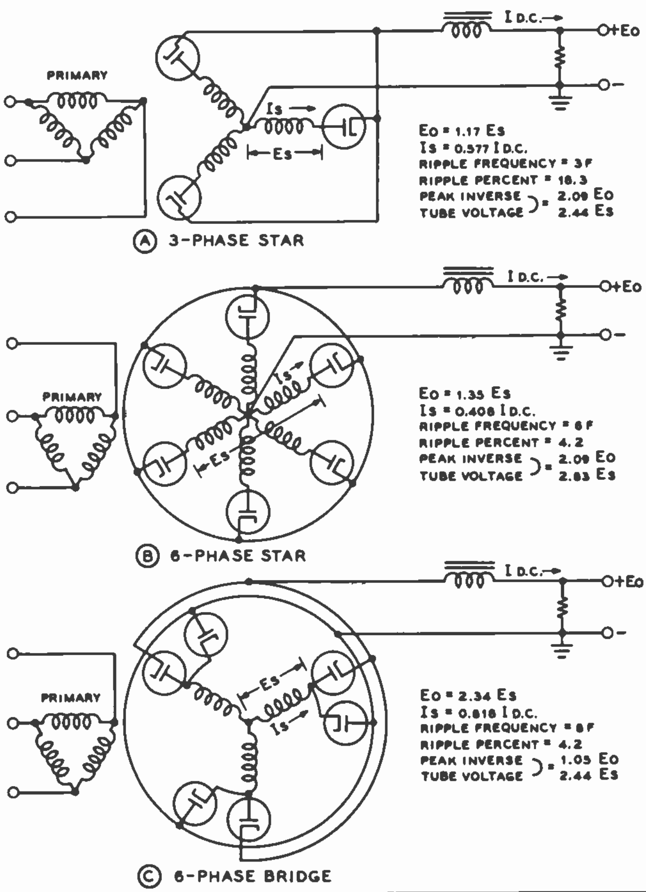


Figure 7

COMMON POLYPHASE-RECTIFICATION CIRCUITS

These circuits are used when polyphase power is available for the plate supply of a high-power transmitter. The circuit at B is also called a three-phase full-wave rectification system. The circuits are described in the accompanying text.

in addition gives much better regulation. Where greater output voltage is a requirement, where the load is relatively constant so that regulation is not of great significance, and where the rectifier tubes will be operated well within their peak-current ratings, the *capacitor-input* type of filter may be used.

The capacitor-input filter gives a no-load output voltage equal approximately to the peak voltage being applied to the rectifier tubes. At full-load, the d-c output voltage is usually slightly above one-half the secondary a-c voltage of the transformer, with the normal values of capacitance at the input to the filter. With large values of input capacitance, the output voltage will run somewhat higher than the rms secondary voltage applied to the tubes, but the peak current flowing through the rectifier tubes will be many times as great as the d-c output current of the power supply. The half-wave rectifier of figure 4A is commonly used with capacitor-input and resistance-capacitance filter as a high-voltage supply for a cathode-ray-tube. In this case the current drain is very small so that the peak-current rating of the rectifier tube seldom will be exceeded.

The circuit of figure 4B is most commonly used in medium-voltage power supplies since this circuit is the most economical of filament transformers, rectifier tubes, sockets, and space. But the circuit of figure 4C, commonly called the *bridge rectifier*, gives better transformer utilization so that the circuit is most commonly used in higher-powered supplies. The circuit has the advantage that the entire secondary of the transformer is in use at all times, instead of each side being used alternately as in the case of the full-wave rectifier. As a point of interest, the current flow through the secondary of the plate transformer is a substantially pure a-c wave as a result of better transformer utilization, instead of the pulsating d-c wave through each half of the power-transformer secondary in the case of the full-wave rectifier.

The circuit of figure 4C will give the greatest value of output power for a given transformer weight and cost in a single-phase power supply as illustrated. But in attempting to bridge-rectify the whole secondary of a transformer designed for a *full-wave* rectifier, in order to obtain doubled output voltage, make sure that the insulation rating of the transformer to be used is adequate. In the bridge rectifier circuit the center of the high-voltage winding is at a d-c potential of one-half the total voltage output from the rectifier. In a normal full-wave rectifier the center of the high-voltage winding is grounded. So in the bridge rectifier the entire high-voltage secondary of the transformer is subjected to twice the peak-voltage stress that would exist if the same transformer were used in a full-wave rectifier. High-quality full-wave transformers will withstand bridge operation quite satisfactorily so long as the total output voltage from the supply is less than perhaps 4500 volts. But inexpensive transformers, whose insulation is just sufficient for full-wave operation, will break down when bridge rectification of the entire secondary is attempted.

Special Single-Phase Rectification Circuits Figure 6 shows six circuits which may prove valuable when it is desired to obtain more than one output voltage from one plate transformer or where some special combination of voltages is required. Figure 6A shows a more or less common method for obtaining full voltage and half voltage from a bridge rectification circuit. With this type of circuit, separate input chokes and filter systems are used on both output voltages. If a transformer designed for use with a full-wave rectifier is used in this circuit, the current drain from the full-voltage tap is doubled and added to the drain from the half-voltage tap to determine whether the rating of the transformer is being exceeded. Thus if the transformer is rated at 1250 volts at 500 ma it will be permissible to pull 250 ma at 2500 volts with no drain from the 1250-volt tap, or the drain from the 1250-volt tap may be 200 ma if the drain from the 2500-volt tap is 150 ma etc.

Figure 6B shows a system which may be convenient for obtaining two voltages which are not in a ratio of 2 to 1 from a bridge-type rectifier; a transformer with taps along the winding is required for the circuit however. With the circuit arrangement shown, the voltage from the tap will be greater than one-half the voltage at the top. If the circuit is changed so that the plates of the two rectifier tubes are connected to the outside of the winding instead of to the taps, and the cathodes of the other pair are connected to the taps instead of to the outside, the total voltage output of the rectifier will be the same, but the voltage at the tap position will be *less* than half the top voltage.

An interesting variable-voltage circuit is shown in figure 6C. The arrangement may be used to increase or decrease the output voltage of a conventional power supply, as represented by transformer T_1, by adding another filament transformer to isolate the filament circuits of the two rectifier tubes and adding another plate transformer between the filaments of the two tubes. The voltage contribution of the added transformer T_2 may be subtracted from or added to the voltage produced by T_1 simply by reversing the double-pole double-throw switch (S). A serious disadvantage of this circuit is the fact that the entire secondary winding of transformer T_2 must be insulated for the total output voltage of the power supply.

An arrangement for operating a full-wave rectifier from a plate transformer not equipped with a center tap is shown in figure 6D. The two chokes (L_1) must have high inductance ratings at the operating current of the plate supply to hold down the alternating current load on the secondary of the transformer since the *total* peak voltage output of the plate transformer is impressed across the chokes alternately. However, the chokes need only have half the current rating of the filter choke (L_2) for a certain current drain from the power supply since only half the current passes through each choke. Also, the two chokes (L_1) act as input chokes so that an additional swinging choke is not required for such a power supply.

A conventional two-voltage power supply with grounded transformer center tap is shown in figure 6E. The output voltages from this circuit are separate and not additive as in the circuit of figure 6B. Figure 6F is of advantage when it is desired to operate class-B modulators from the half-voltage output of a bridge power supply and the final amplifier from the full-voltage output. Both L_1 and L_2 should be swinging chokes but the total drain from the power supply passes through L_1 while only the drain of the final amplifier passes through L_2. Capacitors C_1 and C_2 need be rated only half the maximum output voltage of the power supply, plus the usual safety factor. This arrangement is also of advantage in holding down the "key-up" voltage of a c-w transmitter since both L_1 and L_2 are in series, and their inductances are additive, insofar as the "critical inductance" of a choke-input filter is concerned. If 4-μfd capacitors are used at both C_1 and C_2 adequate filter will be obtained on both plate supplies for hum-free radiophone operation.

Polyphase Rectification Circuits It is usual practice in commercial equipment installations when the power drain from a plate supply is to be greater than about one kilowatt to use a *polyphase rectification system*. Such power supplies offer better transformer utilization, less ripple output and better power factor in the load placed on the a-c line. However, such systems require a source of three-phase (or two-phase with Scott connection) energy. Several of the more common polyphase rectification circuits with their significant characteristics are shown in figure 7. The increase in ripple frequency and decrease in percentage of ripple is apparent from the figures given in figure 7. The circuit of figure 7C gives the best transformer utilization as does the bridge circuit in the single-phase connection. The circuit has the further advantage that there is no average d-c flow in the transformer, so that three single-phase transformers may be used. A tap at half-voltage may be taken at the junction of the star transformers, but there will be d-c flow in the transformer secondaries with the power-supply center tap in use. The circuit of figure 7A has the disadvantage that there is an average d-c flow in each of the windings.

Rectifiers Rectifying elements in high-voltage plate supplies are almost invariably electron tubes of either the high-vacuum or mercury-vapor type, although selenium or silicon rectifier stacks containing a large number of elements are often used. Low-voltage high-current supplies may use argon gas rectifiers (Tungar tubes), selenium rectifiers, or other types of dry-disc rectification elements. The *xenon* rectifier tubes offer some advantage over mercury-vapor rectifiers for high-voltage applications where extreme temperature ranges are likely to be encountered. However, such rectifiers (3B25 for example) are considerably more expensive than their mercury-vapor counterparts.

Peak Inverse Plate Voltage and Peak Plate Current In an a-c circuit, the maximum peak voltage or current is $\sqrt{2}$, or 1.41 times that indicated by the a-c meters in the circuit. The meters read the *root mean square* (rms) values, which are the peak values divided by 1.41 for a sine wave.

If a potential of 1000 rms volts is obtained from a high-voltage secondary winding of a transformer, there will be 1.410-volts peak potential from the rectifier plate to ground. In a single-phase supply the rectifier tube has this voltage impressed on it, either positively when the current flows or "*inverse*" when the current is blocked on the other half-cycle. The *inverse peak voltage* which the tube will stand safely is used as a rating for rectifier tubes. At higher voltages the tube is liable to arc back, thereby destroying or damaging it. The relations between peak inverse voltage, total transformer voltage, and filter output voltage depend on the characteristics of the filter and rectifier circuits (whether full- or halfwave, bridge, single-phase or polyphase, etc.).

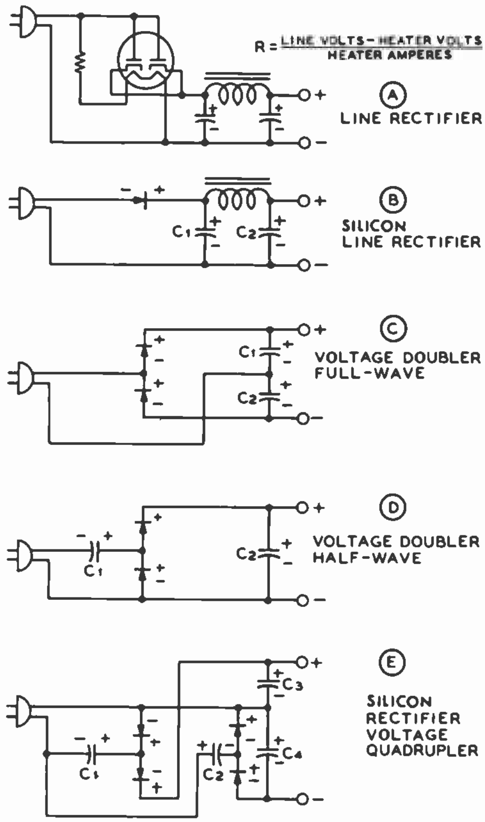


Figure 8

TRANSFORMERLESS POWER-SUPPLY CIRCUITS

Circuits such as shown above are also frequently called line-rectifier circuits. Silicon rectifiers, vacuum diodes, or gas diodes may be used as the rectifying elements in these circuits.

Rectifier tubes are also rated in terms of *peak plate current*. The actual direct load current which can be drawn from a given rectifier tube or tubes depends on the type of filter circuit. A full-wave rectifier with capacitor input passes a peak current several times the direct load current.

In a filter with choke input, the peak current is not much greater than the load current if the inductance of the choke is fairly high (assuming full-wave rectification).

A full-wave rectifier with two rectifier elements requires a transformer which delivers twice as much a-c voltage as would be the case with a half-wave rectifier or bridge rectifier.

Mercury-Vapor Rectifier Tubes The inexpensive *mercury-vapor* type of rectifier tube is almost universally used in the high-voltage plate supplies of amateur and commercial transmitters. Most amateurs are quite familiar with the use of these tubes but it should be pointed out that when new or long-unused mercury-vapor tubes are first placed in service, the filaments should be operated at normal temperature for approximately twenty minutes before plate voltage is applied, in order to remove all traces of mercury from the cathode and to clear any mercury deposits from the top of the envelope. After this preliminary warm-up with a new tube, plate voltage may be applied within 20 to 30 seconds after the time the filaments are turned on, each time the power supply is used. If plate voltage should be applied before the filament is brought to full temperature, active material may be knocked from the oxide-coated filament and the life of the tube will be greatly shortened.

Small r-f chokes must sometimes be connected in series with the plate leads of mercury-vapor rectifier tubes in order to prevent the generation of radio-frequency hash. These r-f chokes must be wound with sufficiently heavy wire to carry the load current and must have enough inductance to attenuate the r-f parasitic noise current to prevent it from flowing in the filter supply leads and then being radiated into nearby receivers. Manufactured mercury-vapor rectifier hash chokes are available in various current ratings from various manufacturers.

When mercury-vapor rectifier tubes are operated in parallel in a power supply, small resistors or small iron-core choke coils should be connected in series with the plate lead of each tube. These resistors or inductors tend to create an equal division of plate current between parallel tubes and prevent one tube from carrying the major portion of the current. When high-vacuum rectifiers are operated in parallel, these chokes or resistors are not required.

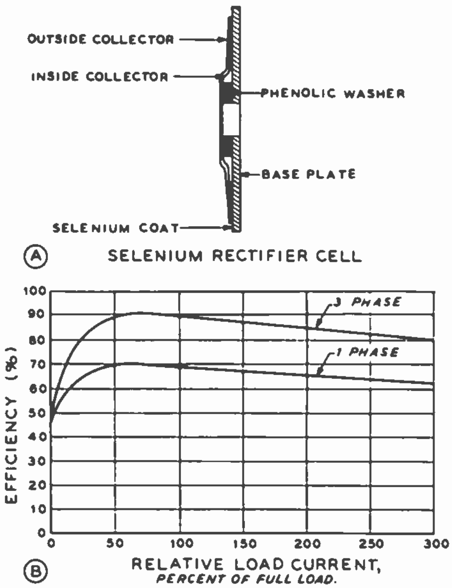


Figure 9

THE SELENIUM RECTIFIER

A—The selenium rectifier is a semiconductor stack built up of nickel-plated aluminum discs coated on one side with selenium alloy.

B—Rectifier efficiency is high, reaching 70% for single-phase service, dropping slightly at high current densities.

Transformerless Power Supplies Figure 8 shows a group of five different types of *transformerless power supplies* which are operated directly from the a-c line. Circuits of the general type are normally found in a-c/d-c receivers but may be used in low-powered exciters and in test instruments. When circuits such as shown in A and B are operated directly from the a-c line, the rectifier element simply rectifies the line voltage and delivers the alternate half cycles of energy to the filter network. With the normal type of rectifier tube, load currents up to approximately 75 ma may be employed. The d-c voltage output of the filter will be slightly less than the rms line voltage, depending on the particular type of rectifier tube employed. With the introduction of the miniature silicon rectifier, the transformerless power supply has become a very convenient source of moderate voltage at currents up to perhaps 500 ma. A number of advantages are offered by the silicon rectifier as compared to the vacuum-tube rectifier. Outstanding among these are the factors that the silicon rectifier operates instantly, and that it requires no heater power in order to obtain emission. The amount of heat developed by the silicon rectifier is very much less than that produced by an equivalent vacuum-tube type of rectifier.

In the circuits of figure 8 A, B, and C, capacitors C_1 and C_2 should be rated at approximately 150 volts and for a normal degree of filtering and capacitance, should be between 15 to 60 μfd. In the circuit of figure 8D, capacitor C_1 should be rated at 150 volts and capacitor C_2 should be rated at 300 volts. In the circuit of figure 8E, capacitors C_1 and C_2 should be rated at 150 volts and C_3 and C_4 should be rated at 300 volts.

The d-c output voltage of the line rectifier may be stabilized by means of a VR tube. However, due to the unusually low internal resistance of the silicon rectifier, transformerless power supplies using this type of rectifying element can normally be expected to give very good regulation.

Voltage-Doubler Circuits Figures 8C and 8D illustrate two simple voltage-doubler circuits which will deliver a d-c output voltage equal approximately to twice the rms value of the power line voltage. The no-load d-c output voltage is equal to 2.82 times the rms line voltage value. At high current levels, the output voltage will be slightly under twice the line voltage. The circuit of figure 8C is of advantage when the lowest level of ripple is required from the power supply, since its ripple frequency is equal to twice the line frequency. The circuit of figure 8D is of advantage when it is desired to use the grounded side of the a-c line in a permanent installation as the return circuit for the power supply. However, with the circuit of figure 8D the ripple frequency is the same as the a-c line frequency.

Voltage Quadrupler The circuit of figure 8E illustrates a voltage-quadrupler circuit for miniature silicon rectifiers. In effect this circuit is equivalent to

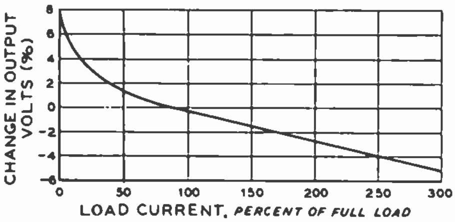


Figure 10

VOLTAGE REGULATION OF SELENIUM CELL

This graph applies to single-phase full-wave bridge, and center-tap circuits which utilize both halves of the input wave. In single-phase half-wave circuits the regulation will be poorer.

two voltage doublers of the type shown in figure 8D with their outputs connected in series. The circuit delivers a d-c output voltage under light load approximately equal to four times the rms value of the line voltage. The no-load d-c output voltage delivered by the quadrupler is equal to 5.66 times the rms line-voltage value and the output voltage decreases rather rapidly as the load current is increased.

In each of the circuits in figure 8 where silicon rectifiers have been shown, conventional high-vacuum rectifiers may be substituted with their filaments connected in series and an appropriate value of the line resistor added in series with the filament string.

30-4 Selenium and Silicon Rectifiers

Selenium rectifiers are characterized by long life, dependability, and maintenance-free operation under severe operating conditions. The selenium rectifier consists of a nickel-plated aluminum baseplate coated with selenium over which a low-temperature alloy is sprayed. The baseplate serves as the negative electrode and the alloy as the positive, with current flowing readily from the baseplate to the alloy but encountering high resistance in the opposite direction (figure 9A). This action results in effective rectification of an alternating input voltage and current with the efficiency of conversion dependent to some extent on the ratio of the resistance in the conducting direction to that of the blocking direction. In normal power applications a ratio of 100 to 1 is satisfactory; however, special applications such as magnetic amplifiers often require ratios in the order of 1000 to 1.

The basic selenium rectifier cell is actually a diode capable of half-wave rectification. Since many applications require full-wave rectification for maximum efficiency and minimum ripple, a plurality of cells in series, parallel, or series-parallel combinations are stacked in an assembly.

Selenium rectifiers are operated over a wide range of voltages and currents. Typical applications range from a few volts at milliamperes of current to thousands of amperes at relatively high voltages.

The efficiency of high-quality selenium rectifiers is high, usually in the order of 90% in three-phase bridge circuits and 70% in single-phase bridge circuits. Of particular interest is the very slight decrease in efficiency even at high current overloads (figure 9B).

Threshold Voltage and Aging A minimum voltage is required to permit a selenium rectifier to conduct in the forward direction. This voltage, commonly known as the *threshold voltage*, precludes the use of selenium rectifiers at extremely low (less than one volt) applications. The threshold voltage will vary with

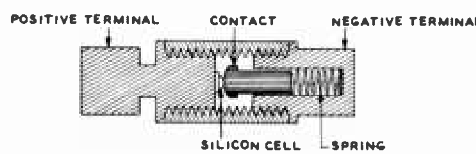


Figure 11

THE SILICON CELL

This common silicon rectifier is a pressure-contact device capable of operation in ambient temperatures as high as 150° C. Heavy end ferrules that fit standard fuse clips are large enough to provide "heat sink" action. The positive ferrule is grooved to provide polarity identification and prevent incorrect mounting.

temperature and will increase with a decrease in temperature.

Under operating conditions, and to a lesser extent when idle, the selenium rectifier will age. During the aging period the forward resistance will gradually increase, stabilizing at a new, higher value after about one year. This aging will result in approximately a 7% decrease in output voltage.

Voltage Regulation The selenium rectifier has extremely low internal impedance which exhibits nonlinear characteristics with respect to applied voltage. This results in good voltage regulation even at large overload currents. Figure 10 shows that as the load is varied from zero to 300% of normal, the output voltage will change about 10%. It should be noted that because of nonlinear characteristics, the voltage drop increases rapidly below 50% of normal load.

Silicon Rectifier Of all recent developments in the field of semiconductors, *silicon rectifiers* offer the most promising range of applications; from extreme cold to high temperature, and from a few watts of output power to very high voltage and currents. Inherent characteristics of silicon allow junction temperatures in the order of 200°C before the material exhibits intrinsic properties. This extends the operating range of silicon devices beyond that of any other efficient semiconductor and the excellent thermal range coupled with very small size per watt of output power make silicon rectifiers applicable where other rectifiers were previously considered impractical.

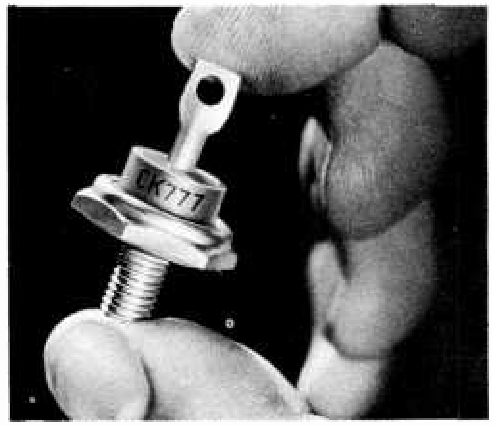
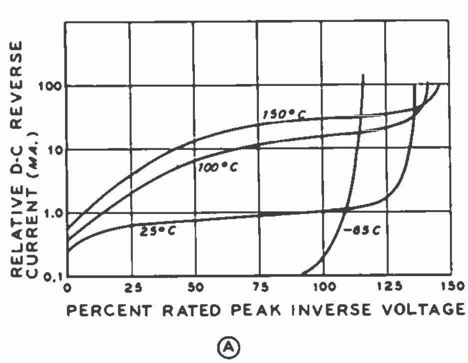


Figure 12

MINIATURE SEMICONDUCTOR TYPE RECTIFIER

Raytheon CK-777 power rectifier bolts to chassis to gain large "heat sink" area. Low internal voltage drop and high efficiency permit small size of unit.

Silicon Current Density The current density of a silicon rectifier is very high, and on present designs



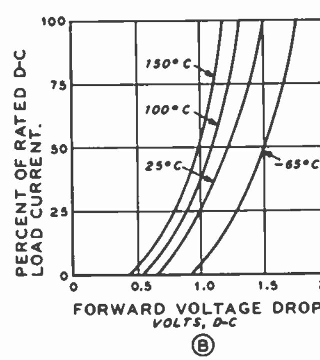


Figure 13

SILICON RECTIFIER CHARACTERISTICS

A—Reverse direction of silicon rectifier is characterized by extremely high resistance up to point of avalanche voltage.
B—Threshold voltage of silicon cell is about 0.6 volt. Once device starts conducting the current increases exponentially with small increments of voltage, then nearly linearly on a very steep slope.

ranges from 600 to 900 amperes per square inch of effective barrier layer. The usable current density depends on the general construction of the unit and the ability of the heat sink to conduct heat from the crystal. The small size of the crystal is illustrated by the fact that a rectifier rated at 15 d-c amperes, and 150 amperes peak surge current has a total cell volume of only .00023 inch. Peak currents are extremely critical because the small mass of the cell will heat instantaneously and could reach failure temperatures within a time lapse of microseconds. The assembly of a typical silicon cell is shown in figure 11.

Operating Characteristics The *reverse direction* of a silicon rectifier is characterized by extremely high resistance, up to 10^9 ohms below a critical voltage point. This point of *avalanche voltage* is the region of a sharp break in the resistance curve, followed by rapidly decreasing resistance (figure 13A). In practice, the peak inverse working voltage is usually set at least 20% below the avalanche point to provide a safety factor.

A limited reverse current, usually of the order of 0.5 ma or less flows through the silicon diode during the inverse-voltage cycle. The reverse current is relatively constant to the avalanche point, increasing rapidly as this reverse-voltage limit is passed. The maximum reverse current increases as diode temperature rises and, at the same time, the avalanche point drops, leading to a "runaway" reverse-current condition at high temperatures which can destroy the diode.

The forward characteristic, or resistance to the flow of forward current, determines the majority of power lost within the diode at operating temperatures. Figure 13B shows the static forward current characteristic relative to the forward voltage drop for a typical silicon diode. A small forward bias (a function of junction temperature) is required for conduction. The power loss of a typical diode rated at 0.5 ampere average forward current and operating at 100°C, for example, is about 0.6 watt during the conducting portion of the cycle. The forward voltage drop of silicon power rectifiers is carefully controlled to limit the heat dissipation in the junction.

Diode Ratings and Terms Silicon diodes are rated in terms similar to those used for vacuum-tube rectifiers. Some of the more important terms and their definitions follow: *Peak Inverse Voltage* (PIV). The maxmium reverse voltage that may be applied to a specific diode type before the avalanche breakdown point is reached.

Maximum RMS Input Voltage—The maximum rms voltage that may be applied to a specific diode type for a resistive or inductive load. The PIV across the diode may be greater than the applied rms voltage in the case of a capacitive load and the maximum rms input voltage rating must be reduced accordingly.

Maximum Average Forward Current—The maximum value of average current allowed to flow in the forward direction for a specified junction temperature. This value is specified for a resistive load.

Peak Recurrent Forward Current—The maximum repetitive instantaneous forward current permitted to flow under stated conditions. This value is usually specified for 60 Hz and a specific junction temperature.

Maximum Single-Cycle Surge Current—The maximum one-cycle surge current of a 60-Hz sine wave at a specific junction temperature. Surge currents generally occur when the diode-equipped power supply is first turned on, or when unusual voltage transients are introduced in the supply line.

Derated Forward Current—The value of direct current that may be passed through a diode for a given ambient temperature. For higher temperatures, less current is allowed through the diode.

Maximum Reverse Current—The maximum leakage current that flows when the diode is biased to the peak-inverse voltage.

Silicon diodes may be mounted on a conducting surface termed a *heat sink* that, because of its large area and heat dissipating ability, can readily dispose of heat generated in the diode junction, thereby safeguarding the diode against damage by excessive temperature.

30-5 Series Diode Operation

Series diode operation is commonly used when the peak-inverse voltage of the source is greater than the maximum PIV rating of a single diode. For proper series operation, it is important that the PIV be equally divided among the individual diodes. If it is not, one or more of the diodes in the *stack* will be subjected to a PIV greater than its maximum rating and, as a result, may be destroyed. As most failures of this type result in a shorted junction, the PIV on the remaining diodes in the stack is raised, making each diode subject to a greater value of PIV. Failure of a single diode in a stack can lead to a "domino effect" which will destroy the remaining diodes if care is not taken to prevent this disaster. Forced voltage distribution in a stack is necessary when the individual diodes vary appreciably in reverse characteristics. To equalize the steady-state voltage division, shunt resistors may be placed across the diodes in a stack (figure 14A). The maximum value of the shunt resistor to achieve a 10 percent voltage balance, or better is:

$$\text{Shunt resistance} = \frac{PIV}{2 \times \textit{Max. Reverse Current}} \quad (3)$$

Six-hundred volt PIV diodes, for example, having a reverse current of 0.3 ma at the maximum PIV require a shunt resistance of 1 megohm, or less.

Transient Protection Diodes must be protected from voltage transients which often are many times greater than the permissible peak-inverse voltage. Transients can be caused by d-c switching at the load, by transformer switching, or by shock excitation of LC circuits in the power supply or load. Shunt capacitors placed across the diodes will equalize and absorb the transients uniformly along the stack (figure 14B). The shunt capacitor should have at least 100 times the capacitance of the diode junction, and capacitance values of 0.01 μfd or greater are commonly found in diode stacks used in equipment designed for amateur service.

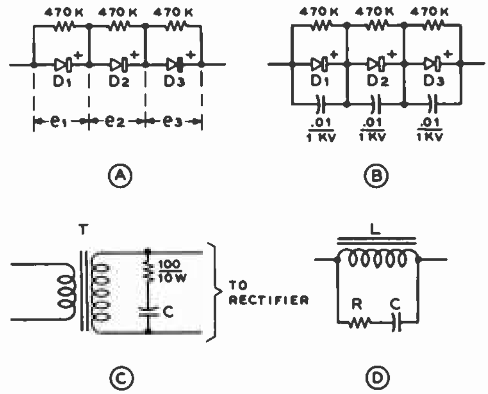


Figure 14

PROTECTION CIRCUITS FOR SEMICONDUCTOR POWER SUPPLIES

A—Peak inverse voltage should be distributed equally between series-connected diodes. If diodes do not have matched reverse characteristics, shunt resistors should be placed across the diodes.

B—Series-connected diodes are protected against high-voltage switching transients by shunt capacitors which equalize and absorb the transients uniformly along the stack.

C—Transient suppressor placed across the secondary of the high-voltage transformer protects diode stack from transients often found on the a-c power line or created by abrupt change in the magnetizing current of the power transformer.

D—Suppressor network across series filter choke absorbs portion of energy released when magnetic field of choke collapses, thus preventing the surge current from destroying the diode stack.

Controlled avalanche diodes having matched zener characteristics at the avalanche point usually do not require RC shunt suppressors, reducing power-supply cost and increasing over-all reliability of the rectifier circuit.

In high-voltage stacks, it is prudent to provide transient protection in the form of an RC suppressor placed across the secondary of the power transformer (figure 14C). The suppressor provides a low-impedance path for high-voltage transients often found on a-c power lines, or generated by an abrupt change in the magnetizing current of the power transformer as a result of switching primary voltage or the load. The approximate value of the surge capacitor in such a network is:

$$Capacitance\ (\mu fd) = \frac{15 \times E \times I}{e^2} \quad (4)$$

where,

- E is the d-c supply voltage,
- I is the maximum output current of the supply in amperes,
- e is the rms voltage of the transformer secondary winding.

High-voltage transients can also be caused by series filter chokes subject to abrupt load changes. An RC suppressor network placed across the winding of the choke can absorb a portion of the energy released when the magnetic field of the choke collapses, thus preventing the current surge from destroying the diode stack (figure 14D). The approximate value of the transient capacitor is:

$$Capacitance\ (\mu fd) = \frac{L \times I^2}{10 \times E^2} \quad (5)$$

where,

- L is the maximum choke inductance (henrys),
- I is the maximum current passing through the choke (amperes),
- E is the maximum d-c supply voltage.

The resistance in series with the capacitor should equal the load impedance placed across the supply.

30-6 Silicon Supplies for SSB

Shown in figure 15 are three semiconductor power supplies. *Circuit A* provides 500 volts (balanced to ground) at 0.5 ampere. If the supply is isolated from ground by a 1:1 transformer of 250 watts capacity *point*

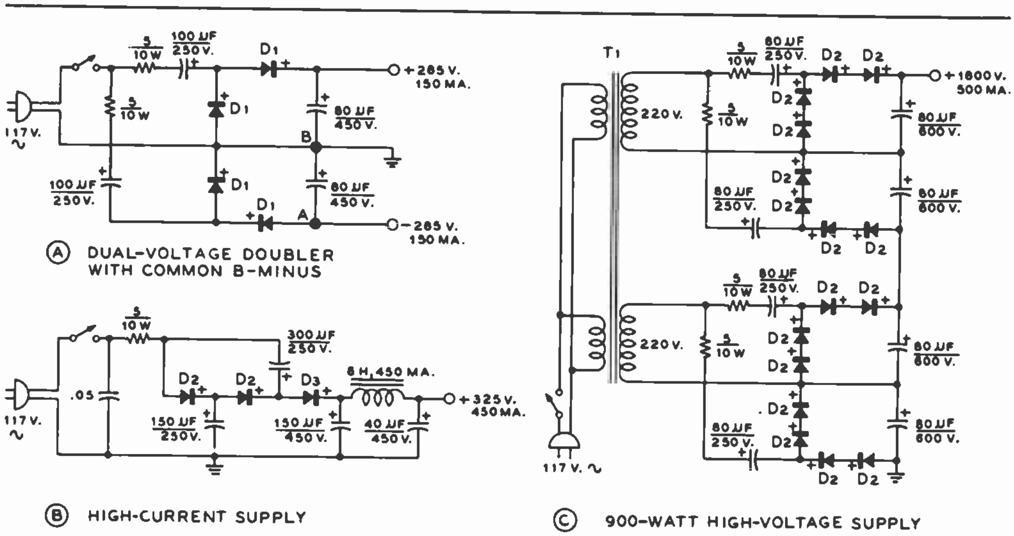


Figure 15

SEMICONDUCTOR POWER SUPPLIES

A—Voltage-quadrupler circuit. If point "A" is taken as ground instead of point "B," supply will deliver 530 volts at 150 ma from 115-volt a-c line. Supply is "hot" to line.

B—Voltage tripler delivers 325 volts at 450 ma. Supply is "hot" to line.

C—900-watt supply for sideband service may be made from two voltage quadruplers working in series from inexpensive "distribution-type" transformer. Supply features good dynamic voltage regulation.

PARTS LIST:

D_1—Sarkes Tarzian Model 150 selenium cell or Model M-500 silicon cell.

D_2—Sarkes Tarzian Model 500 selenium cell or Model M-500 silicon cell.

T_1—Power distribution transformer, used backwards. 230/460 primary, 115/230 secondary, 0.75 KVA. Chicago PCB-24750.

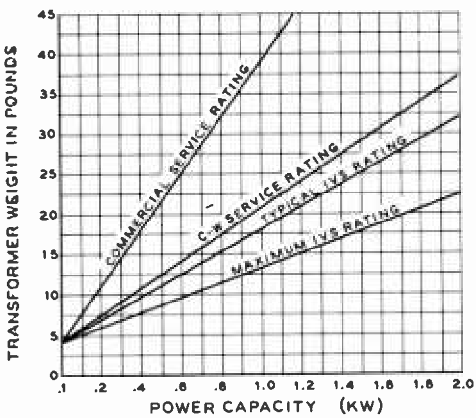


Figure 16

INTERMITTENT VOICE SERVICE IN SSB PERMITS LARGE PEAK POWER TO BE DRAWN FROM POWER TRANSFORMER. PEAK-TO-AVERAGE RATIO OF NEARLY FOUR TO ONE MAY BE ACHIEVED WITH MAXIMUM IVS RATING. POWER CAPACITY OF TRANSFORMER MAY BE DETERMINED FROM WEIGHT

A may be grounded and *point B* will provide half-voltage. *Circuit B* is a half-wave tripler that delivers 440 volts at 0.5 ampere. In this circuit, one side of the power line is common to the negative side of the output. *Circuit C* is a 900-watt, 0.5 ampere supply composed of two voltage doublers supplied from a "distribution" transformer having dual 115/230-volt windings.

Power Supply Rating for SSB Service The *duty cycle* (ratio of duration of maximum power output to total "on" time) of a power supply in SSB and c-w service is much smaller than that of a supply used for a-m equipment. While the power supply must be capable of supplying peak power equal to the PEP input of the SSB equipment for a short duration, the average power demanded by SSB voice gear over a period of time usually runs about one-half or less of the PEP requirement. Then, too, the intervals between words in SSB operation provide periods of low duty, just as the spaces in c-w transmission allow the power supply to "rest" during a transmission. Generally speaking, the average power capability of a power supply designed for *intermittent voice service* (IVS) can be as low as 25 percent of the PEP level. C-w requirements run somewhat higher than this, the average c-w power level running close to 50 percent of the peak level for short transmissions. Relatively small power transformers of modest capability may be used for intermittent voice and c-w service at a worthwhile saving in weight and cost. The power capability of a transformer may be judged by its weight, as shown in the graph of figure 16. It must be remembered that the use of alc or voice compression in SSB service raises the duty, thus reducing the advantage of the IVS power rating. The IVS rating is difficult to apply to very small power transformers, since the d-c resistance of the transformer windings tends to degrade the voltage regulation to a point where the IVS rating is meaningless. Intelligent use of the IVS rating in choosing a power transformer, stacked silicon rectifiers, and "computer" type electrolytic capacitors can permit the design and construction of inexpensive, lightweight high-voltage power supplies suitable for SSB and c-w service.

The Design of IVS Power Supplies The low duty of SSB and c-w modes can be used to advantage in the design of high-voltage power supplies for these services.

The Power Transformer — Relatively low-voltage transformers may be used in voltage-doubler service to provide a kilowatt or two of peak power at potentials ranging from one to three thousand volts. Most suitable power transformers are rated for commercial service and the IVS rating must be determined by experiment. Figure 16 shows a relationship between various services as determined by extensive tests performed on typical transformers. The data illustrates the relationship between transformer weight and power capability. Transformer weight excludes weight of the case and mounting fixtures. Thus, a plate transformer weighing about 17 pounds that is rated for 400 watts commercial or industrial service should have an 800-watt peak capacity for c-w service and a 950-

watt peak capacity for intermittent SSB service. A transformer having a so-called "two-kilowatt PEP" rating for sideband may weigh as little as 22 pounds, according to this graph.

Not shown in the graph is the effect of amplifier idling (standby) current taken from the supply, or the effect of bleeder current. Both currents impose an extra, continuous drain on the power transformer and quickly degrade the IVS rating of the transformer. Accordingly, the IVS curves of figure 16 are limited to the bleeder current required by the equalizing resistors for a series capacitor filter and assume that the idling plate current of the amplifier is cut to only a few milliamperes by the use of a VOX-controlled cathode bias system. If the idling plate current of the amplifier assumes an appreciable fraction of the peak plate current, the power capability of the supply decreases to that given for c-w service.

Most small power transformers work reliably with the center tap of the secondary winding above ground potential. Some of the larger transformers, however, are designed to have the center tap grounded and lack sufficient insulation at this point to permit their use in either a bridge or voltage doubling configuration. The only way of determining if the center-tap insulation is sufficient is to use the transformer and see if the insulation breaks down at this point! It is wise to ground the frame of the transformer so that if breakdown occurs, the frame of the tranformer does not assume the potential of the secondary winding and thus present a shock hazard to the operator.

The Silicon Rectifier—A bewildering variety of "TV-type" silicon rectifiers exists and new types are being added daily. Generally speaking, 600-volt PIV rectifiers, having an average rectified current rating of 1 ampere at an ambient temperature of 75°C with a maximum single-cycle surge-current rating of 15 amperes or better are suitable for use in the power supplies described in this section. Typical rectifiers are packaged in the *top-hat* configuration as well as the epoxy-encapsulated assembly and either type costs less than a dollar per unit. In addition, *potted* stacks utilizing controlled-avalanche rectifiers are available at a cost less than that of building a complete RC stack of diodes. The silicon rectifier, if properly used, is rarely the limiting factor in the design of steady-state IVS power supplies, provided proper transient protection is incorporated in the supply.

The Filter Capacitor—Recently developed "computer"-type aluminum-foil electrolytic capacitors combine high capacitance per unit of volume with moderate working voltage at a low price. Capacitors of this type can withstand short-interval voltage surges of 15 percent over their d-c working voltage. In a stack, the capacitors should be protected by voltage-equalizing resistors, as shown in the power supplies in this section. The capacitors are sheathed in a *Mylar* jacket and may be mounted on the chassis or adjacent to each other without additional insulation between the units. The stack may be taped and mounted to a metal chassis with a metal clamp, as is done in some of the units described here.

Inrush Current Protection — When the power supply is first turned on, the filter capacitors are discharged and present a near short circuit to the power transformer and rectifier stack. The charging current of a high-capacitance stack may exceed the maximum peak-recurrent current rating of the rectifiers for several cycles, thus damaging the diodes. Charging current is limited only by the series impedance of the power-supply circuit which consists mainly of the d-c circuit resistance (primarily the resistance of the secondary winding of the power transformer) plus the leakage reactance of the transformer. Transformers having high secondary resistance and sufficient leakage reactance usually limit the inrush current so that additional inrush protection is unnecessary. This is not the case with larger transformers having low secondary resistance and low leakage reactance. To be on the safe side, in any case, it is good practice to limit inrush current to well within the capability of the diode stack. A current-limiting circuit is shown in figure 17 which can be added at little expense to any power supply. The current-limiting resistor (R) is initially in the

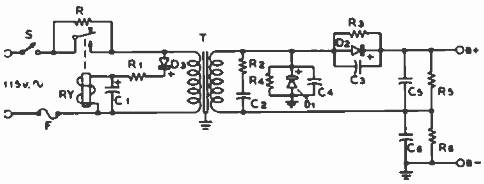


Figure 17

INRUSH CURRENT PROTECTION FOR POWER SUPPLY

Charging current of capacitor filter may be limited by series impedance of the power supply. In voltage-doubler circuit shown here, primary resistor R limits inrush current to within the capability of the diodes. Limiting resistor is shorted out after sufficient time has elapsed to partially charge the filter capacitors. Delay time of 0.5 second is usually sufficient. R_1-C_1 combination determines time delay. Secondary surge suppression (R_2-C_2) is used, and shunt RC equalizing networks are employed across each diode stack. Filter capacitors (C_5, C_6) are "computer-grade" electrolytic capacitors in series with 10K, 10-watt wirewound resistor placed across each capacitor.

circuit when the power supply is turned on, but is shorted out by relay RY after a sufficient time has elapsed to partially charge the filter capacitors of the power supply. The relay coil is in a simple time-delay circuit composed of R_1-C_1. The delay may be adjusted by varying the capacitance value, and need only be about one-half second or so. Surplus 24-volt d-c relays used in dynamotor starting circuits work well in this device, as they have large low-resistance contacts and reasonable coil resistance (250 ohms or so).

Practical IVS Supplies An IVS voltage-doubler power supply may be designed with the aid of figures 16 and 18. A typical doubler circuit, such as shown in figure 17 is to be used. The full-wave voltage doubler is preferred over the half-wave type, as the former charges the filter capacitors in parallel and discharges them in series to obtain a higher d-c voltage than the peak voltage of the secondary winding of the power transformer. This saves transformer weight and expense.

Referring to figure 17, filter capacitors C_5 and C_6 are charged on alternate half cycles, but since the capacitors are in series across the load, the ripple frequency has twice the line frequency.

A second advantage of the full-wave doubler over the half-wave type is that the former tends to be self-protecting against switching transients. One diode stack is always in a conducting mode, regardless of the polarity of a transient, and the transient is therefore discharged into the filter-capacitor stack.

The filter-capacitor stack is rated for the peak no-load voltage (plus a safety factor), while the diode rectifiers must be able to withstand twice the peak no-load voltage (plus a safety factor). Good engineering practice calls for the *d-c working voltage of each portion* of the capacitor stack to be equal to the peak a-c voltage of the power transformer (1.41 × rms secondary voltage) plus 15 percent safety factor.

The R′ Factor—The a-c secondary voltage, secondary resistance, circuit reactance, and IVS capability of a transformer will determine its excellence in voltage-doubler service. The end effect of these parameters may be expressed by an empirical *R′ factor* as shown in figure 18 and employed in formula (7). As an example, assume a power transformer is at hand weighing 25 pounds, with a secondary winding of 840 volts (rms) and a d-c secondary resistance of 8 ohms. The IVS rating of this transformer (from figure 16) is about 1.5 KW, PEP, or more. The appropriate d-c no-load voltage of an IVS supply making use of this unit in voltage-doubler service, such as the circuit of figure 17, is:

$$E_{NO\ LOAD} = 2.81 \times e \qquad (6)$$

where,

e is the rms secondary voltage.

For this transformer, then, the no-load d-c supply voltage is about 2360 volts. The full load voltage will be somewhat less than this value. For a maximum power capability of 1.5 KW, a full load current of about 0.75 ampere is required if the full load d-c voltage is in the vicinity of 2000. This is a realistic figure, so a "target" full-load voltage of 2000 is hopefully chosen.

The projected full-load voltage for a doubler-type supply may be determined with the aid of the R' factor and is calculated from:

$$E_{LOAD} = E_{NO\ LOAD} - R'(I \times R) \quad (7)$$

where,

R' is determined from figure 18,
I is the full load current in amperes,
R is the secondary resistance of the transformer.

For this example, R′ is about 60 for the secondary resistance of 8 ohms, and the full-load d-c voltage of the supply is found (from formula 7) to be just about 2000.

The peak rectified voltage across the complete filter-capacitor stack is equal to the no-load d-c voltage (formula 6) and is 2360 volts. Six 450-volt "computer"-type 240-μfd electrolytic capacitors in series provide a 40-μfd effective capacitor, with a working voltage of 2700 (peak voltage rating of 3000), a sufficient margin for safety. Each capacitor is shunted with two 100K, 2-watt resistors in parallel.

The total PIV for the diode stack is twice the peak rectified voltage (formula 6) and is 4720 volts. A 100 percent safety factor is recommended for the complete stack, whose PIV should thus be about 9440 volts. The number of individual diodes in a suitable stack is:

$$\textit{Number of diodes} = \frac{11.2 \times \textit{rms voltage}}{\textit{Diode PIV}} \quad (8)$$

For this example, 600-volt PIV rectifiers are chosen and 16 are required, eight in each half of the stack.

The charging current of the capacitor stack may be safely ignored if the power supply is energized through a series primary resistor (R) such as shown in figure 17. One-ampere diodes having a single-cycle surge-current rating of 15 to 30 amperes are recommended for general use. The diffused silicon rectifiers (1N3195 and 1N-4005, for example) have a single-cycle surge-current rating of 30 amperes and are no more expensive than the older style alloy junction rectifiers (1N547 and 1N1492, for example) having a much lower single-cycle surge current rating.

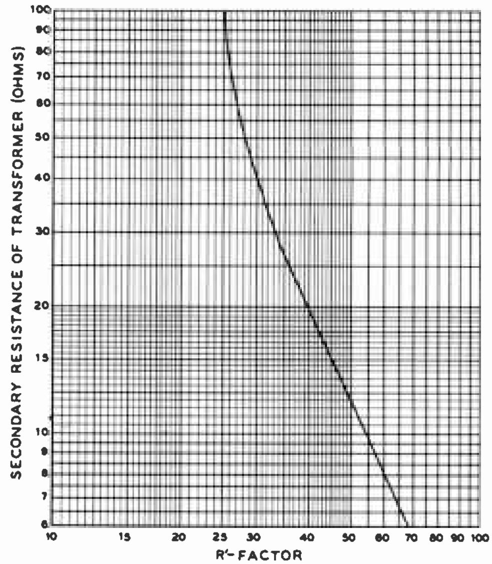


Figure 18

R′ FACTOR GRAPH FOR IVS POWER SUPPLIES

The full load d-c voltage of an IVS-rated voltage-doubler power supply may be determined with the aid of this graph. The secondary resistance of the transformer is measured and the R′ Factor is found. For example, a transformer having a secondary resistance of 20 ohms has an R′ Factor of about 40. The factor is used in formula 7 to calculate the full load d-c voltage of the power supply. For use with bridge circuits, the R′ Factor derived here should be divided by 2.5 before being used in the formula.

30-7 A 1-Kilowatt IVS Power Supply

Shown in figures 19 and 20 is a typical 1-kilowatt IVS power supply designed from the above data. This supply is based on a 40 percent duty cycle and may be used for c-w service at 1-kilowatt level, or up to 1200 watts PEP or so for SSB service. The regulation of the supply is shown in the graph (figure 20), and the unit is capable of delivering 2300 volts at 0.5 ampere in IVS operation. The no-load voltage rises to 2750. The power supply is suitable for running a single 3-400Z at maximum rating, or it may be used for a pair of 813, 4CX250B, or 4CX-300A tubes at the kilowatt level. A trans-

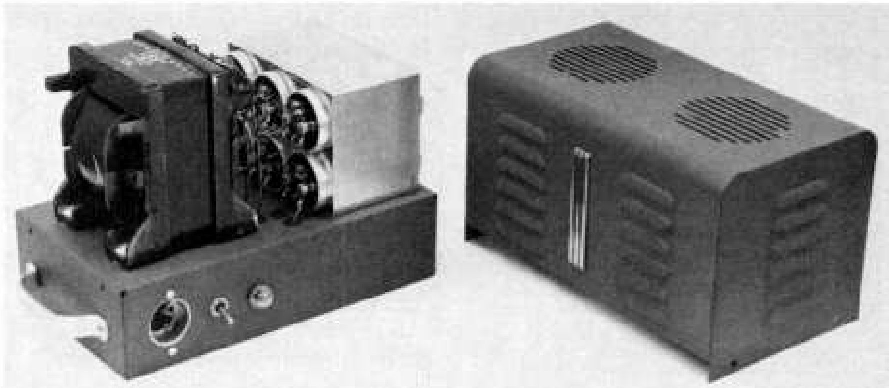


Figure 19

COMPACT ONE-KILOWATT IVS SUPPLY FOR SSB AND C-W SERVICE

This power supply delivers 2250 volts at 500 ma for SSB operation and 2400 volts at 400 ma for c-w operation. The supply is constructed on a covered foundation unit measuring 12" × 7" × 9" high (Bud CA-1751). The electrolytic capacitors are held in position by a bracket cut from aluminum sheet. Primary power receptacle, power switch, and neon pilot light are on the front apron of the chassis, with primary fuse and Miller high-voltage connector on the rear apron. High-voltage diode stack is mounted beneath the chassis on a phenolic board.

former having less secondary resistance and slightly less secondary voltage would provide improved voltage regulation. The 840-volt transformer having an 8-ohm secondary winding discussed earlier would be ideal in this application.

The power supply is constructed on a steel amplifier foundation chassis and dust cover. The diode stack is mounted on a perforated phenolic board under the chassis. The electrolytic capacitors are taped together and held in position atop the chassis by a clamp cut from an aluminum sheet. The interior of the clamp is lined with a piece of plastic material salvaged from a package of frozen vegetables. The voltage-equalizing resistors are wired across the terminals of the capacitors. Normally, it takes 10 seconds or so to fully discharge the filter capacitors when no external load is connected to the supply. It is recommended that the supply be discharged with a 1000-ohm, 100-watt resistor before any work is done on the unit. Power-supply components and all terminals should be well protected against accidental contact. The voltage delivered by this supply is lethal and the filter capacitors hold a considerable charge for a surprising length of time. This is the price one pays for an intermittent-duty design, and care should be exercised in the use of this equipment

To reduce the standby current and power consumption, it is recommended that cathode bias be applied to the linear amplifier stage shown in various designs in this Handbook. During transmission, the cathode resistor may be shorted out by contacts of the VOX relay, restoring the stage to proper operation.

Using the alternative 1100-volt transformer, the supply delivers 2600 volts at a c-w rating of 380 ma. Peak IVS voice rating is 500 ma (1.25 KW, PEP). No-load voltage is about 3100, and eight electrolytic capacitors are required in the stack instead of six.

30-8 A 2-Kilowatt PEP Supply for SSB

The power supply described in this section is designed for the maximum power rating for amateur service. It is capable of 1.2 kilowatts power for c-w (50 percent duty cycle) and 2 kilowatts IVS for SSB service. The supply is ideally suited for a grounded-

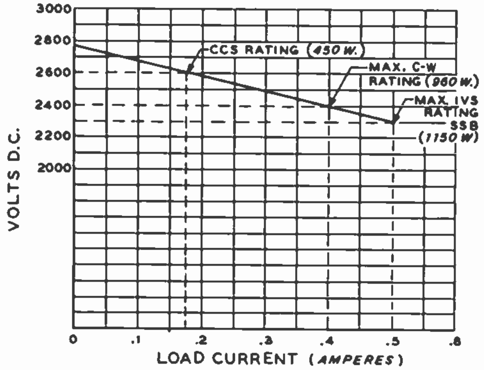


Figure 20

REGULATION CURVE OF ONE KILOWATT IVS SUPPLY

The power supply uses the circuit of figure 17. Primary surge resistor (R) is 5 ohms, 50 watts. Secondary surge-voltage resistor (R_2) is 200 ohms, 10 watts. Surge capacitor (C_2) is .02 µfd, 3 KV (Aerovox P89-M). Sixteen type 1N2071 (600-volt PIV) diodes are used in an assembly such as shown in figures 25 and 26. The diode shunt capacitors are .01-µfd, 600-volt ceramic discs, and the shunt resistors are 470K, ½-watt units. Six 450-volt (working), 240-µfd filter capacitors are used in series, each capacitor shunted with two 100K, 2-watt resistors in parallel. The time delay relay (RY) has a 24-volt d-c coil with a resistance of about 280 ohms (Potter-Brumfield PR5-DY). Contacts are rated at 25 amperes. Delay time is about 0.5 second and is determined primarily by the time constant of R_1-C_1. Suggested values are 800µfd (50 working volts) for C_1 and 600 ohms, 10 watts for R_1. Diode D_1 may be a 1N2070. The power transformer shown is a surplus unit having a 115/230-volt primary and a 960-volt secondary. The transformer weight is 18 pounds and it has an IVS rating of 1.2 KW. (A commercial alternative is Hill Magnetics Co., 2201 Bay Road, Redwood City, Calif. #HMP-1939A. This compact, 825-volt, wound-core transformer has improved regulation and is rated at 1 KW continuous duty [2 KW IVS rating] and provides 2000 volts at a continuous load of 500 ma.)

grid amplifier using a single 3-1000Z, 4-1000A, or a pair of 3-400Z's. Regulation of the supply is shown in figure 22. A voltmeter is incorporated in the supply to monitor the plate voltage at all times. The supply makes use of the circuit of figure 17. Twenty 600-volt PIV diodes are used in the rectifier stack to provide a total PIV of 12 KV, which allows an ample safety factor. Eight 240-µfd, 450-volt capacitors are used in the filter stack to provide 30-µfd effective capacitance at 3600 volts working voltage. The voltage across the "bottom" capacitor in the stack is monitored by a 0-to-1 d-c milliammeter recalibrated 0 to 4 KV and which is used with a series multiplier to provide a 0 to 5000-volt full-scale indication. A 0-to-1 d-c ammeter is placed in series with the negative lead to the high-voltage terminal strip.

The supply is built on a steel amplifier foundation chassis in the same style as the 1KW supply described previously. All safety precautions outlined earlier should be observed with this supply.

Figure 21

COMPACT COMPONENTS FOR MODERN POWER SUPPLIES

Recent developments in compact components allow construction of ultracompact power supplies of unusually great capability. In foreground are three controlled-avalanche rectifier modules that take the place of power rectifiers and their accompanying filament transformer (Diodes, Inc., Chatsworth, Calif.). At left is voltage-doubler module that provides 3000 volts d.c. at 1 ampere (DI-1446C). Center: Bridge rectifier module for rms input voltages up to 1400 at a load current of 1.5 ampere (DI-BR-820A). Right: Bridge-rectifier module for rms input voltages up to 10,000 at a load current of 1.5 ampere (DI-BR-8100A). Because of controlled-avalanche characteristic of these modules, no surge network is necessary across individual diodes of module.

At the left is a 240-µfd, 450-volt "computer-type" electrolytic capacitor suitable for stacking in high-voltage power supplies (Mallory type CG). The power transformer (rear) has a wound, hypersil core and provides 2000 volts d.c. at 500 ma (continuous service) in a doubler configuration using the DI-1446C rectifier (Hill Magnetics, Inc., Redwood City, Calif.)

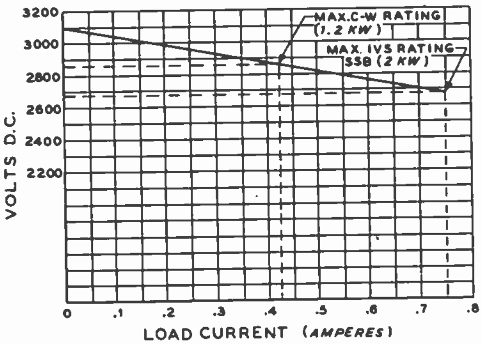


Figure 22

REGULATION CURVE OF 2-KILOWATT IVS SUPPLY

The power supply uses the circuit of figure 17. Surge components are as given in figure 20, except that the surge capacitor (C_2) has a rating of 5 KV. Twenty type-IN2071 (600-volt PIV) diodes are used in an assembly similar to that shown in figures 25 and 26. Eight 240 μfd, 450-working-volt (500-volt peak) capacitors are used to provide 30 μfd effective capacitance. Two 100K, 2-watt resistors are shunted across each capacitor. Time-delay circuit components are as suggested in figure 20. The transformer used has a 115/230-volt primary and an 1100-volt secondary, with an ICAS rating of 1.2 KW. (Berkshire Transformer Corp., Kent, Conn. #BTC-4905B).

30-9 IVS Bridge-Rectifier Supplies

The bridge-rectifier circuit is somewhat more efficient than the full-wave circuit in that the former provides more direct current per unit of rms transformer current for a given load than does the full-wave circuit. Since there are two rectifiers in opposite arms of the bridge in the conducting mode when the a-c voltage is at its peak value, the remaining two rectifiers are back-biased to the peak value of the a-c voltage. Thus the bridge-rectifier circuit requires only half the PIV rating for the rectifiers as compared to a center-tap full-wave rectifier. The latter circuit applies the sum of the peak a-c voltage plus the stored capacitor voltage to one rectifier arm in the maximum inverse-voltage condition.

A 500-Watt IVS Bridge Power Supply Shown in figure 23 is a 500-watt bridge power supply designed around an inexpensive "TV-replacement" type power transformer. The secondary winding is 1200 volts center-tapped at a current rating of 200 ma. The weight of

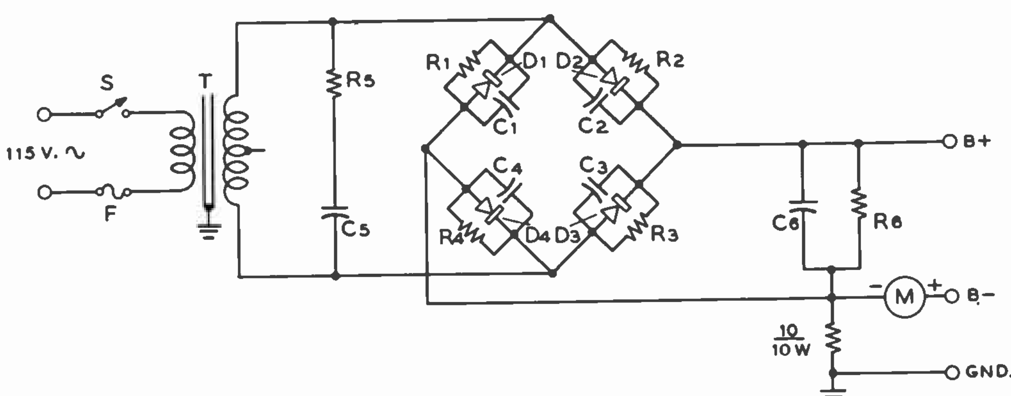


Figure 23

SCHEMATIC OF 500-WATT IVS BRIDGE POWER SUPPLY

Diode package (C_1-D_1-R_1, etc.) is composed of one each: 1N2071 diode in parallel with .01 μfd, 600-volt ceramic capacitor and a 470K, ½-watt resistor. Each bridge arm requires six packages, made as shown in figures 25 and 26. The secondary voltage-surge network (C_5-R_5) is a 100-ohm, 10-watt resistor in series with a .02 μfd, 3 KV capacitor (Aerovox P89-M). The power transformer has a 1200-volt center tapped 200-ma rating. (Stancor PC-8414 or Thordarson 22R36). The filter stack uses four 120-μfd, 450-volt electrolytic capacitors in series, with 10K, 10-watt resistors across each capacitor. Meter (M) is a 0-500 d-c milliammeter. A 10-ampere fuse (F) is used. Transformer core is grounded as a safety measure.

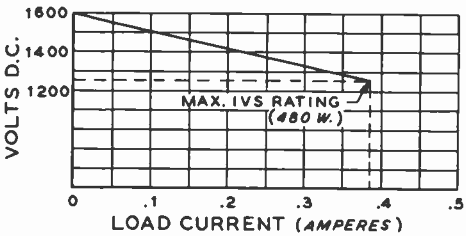


Figure 24

VOLTAGE-REGULATION CURVE OF 500-WATT BRIDGE POWER SUPPLY

the transformer is 8 pounds, and the maximum IVS rating is about 500 watts or so. Secondary resistance is 100 ohms. Used in bridge service, the transformer makes practical an inexpensive power supply providing about 1250 volts at an IVS peak current rating of 380 ma. The no-load voltage is about 1600. For c-w use, the current rating is 225 ma at 1400 volts (about 300 watts). Maximum PIV is nearly 1700 volts so each arm of the bridge must withstand this value. Allowing a 100 percent safety factor requires 3400 volts PIV per arm, which may be made up of six 600-volt PIV diodes in series with an appropriate RC network across each diode. The diode assembly is constructed on two phenolic boards, one of which is shown in figures 25 and 26. A total of 24 rectifiers are required. Four 120-μfd, 450-volt electrolytic capacitors in series provide 30 μfd at a working voltage of 1800. The negative of the supply is above ground by virtue of the 10-ohm, 10-watt resistor which permits plate-current metering in the negative power lead while the supply and amplifier remain at the same ground potential.

This supply is designed for use with two 811A's in grounded-grid service. The tubes are biased to plate-current cutoff in standby mode by a cathode resistor which is shorted out by contacts on the push-to-talk or VOX circuitry. The power supply is built in an inclosed amplifier cabinet, similar to the one shown in figure 19. The B-plus lead is made of a length of RG-8/U coaxial cable, used

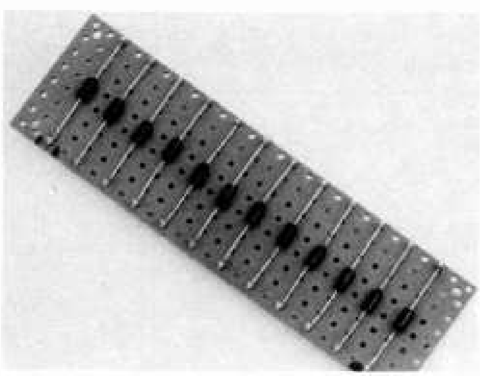


Figure 25

ASSEMBLY OF HIGH-VOLTAGE DIODE STACK

Inexpensive "TV-type" diodes may be connected in series to provide a high value of peak-inverse voltage. Shown here are twelve type-1N2071 diodes mounted on a Vectorbord (64AA32 cut to size). The diodes are soldered to Vector terminals (T9.6) mounted in the prepunched holes in the phenolic board. A pair of long-nose pliers should be used as a heat sink when soldering the diode leads. Grasp the diode lead between the diode body and the joint, permitting the pliers to absorb the soldering heat.

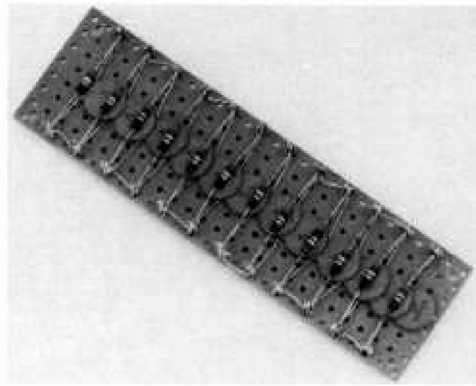


Figure 26

REAR VIEW OF HIGH-VOLTAGE DIODE STACK

The shunt capacitors and resistors are mounted on the rear of the phenolic board. Each diode-resistor-capacitor package has an individual pair of mounting terminals, which are jumpered together to connect the diodes in series. This arrangement provides greatest available heat sink for the components. The assembly is mounted an inch or so away from the chassis by means of 4-40 machine screws and ceramic insulators placed in corners of the board.

in conjunction with a high-voltage coaxial connector.

30-10 A Supply for SSB Transceivers

A heavy-duty "TV-replacement" type power transformer may be used in an inexpensive IVS rated supply capable of running an SSB exciter or transceiver up to 300 watts PEP input (figure 27). The use of high storage "computer" type electrolytic capacitors permits maximum power to be maintained during voice peaks, while still allowing the transformer to be operated within its average power rating, even for extended periods of time

The power supply is designed to deliver 750 volts at 200 ma (average) current (400 ma peak current), and 250 volts at 200 ma peak current. Bias and filament voltages are also provided. Controlled-avalanche diodes are used in the bridge-rectifier circuit, eliminating the usual RC shunt networks across individual rectifiers. Bias is derived from a small filament transformer wired in reverse across the filament source to provide an adjustable d-c bias level up to −100 volts at a current capacity of 25 ma. A source of low-voltage direct current is obtained from the filament circuit to actuate auxiliary d-c control relays found in many transceivers. Transient voltage protection is provided by an RC network across the secondary of the power transformer and by large bypass capacitors placed on the primary winding of the power transformer. The supply is actuated by a remote line switch, usually located in the transceiver or exciter.

The supply shown in the photograph was built on a homemade aluminum chassis designed to fit within the speaker cabinet of the transceiver. An inclosed cabinet is recommended to protect the user from the dangerously high voltages found in the supply. Complete filter capacitor discharge takes about 10 seconds or so once the supply is turned off, and it is recommended that the capacitor stack be shorted with a 1000-ohm, 100-watt resistor before any work is done on the supply.

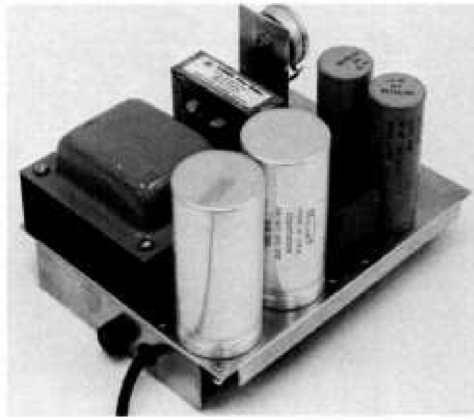


Figure 27

300-WATT IVS POWER SUPPLY FOR SSB TRANSCEIVERS

This compact IVS-rated power supply provides all operating voltages necessary to operate most popular SSB transceivers. The supply uses a "TV-replacement" power transformer in conjunction with a bridge-rectifier circuit. The unit is designed to be placed in the speaker cabinet of the transceiver, and the chassis should be shaped to custom-fit the particular speaker cabinet in use. If desired, the supply may be built on a chassis with a dust cover and placed beneath the station console.

The power transformer is to the left, with the 240-μfd, 450-volt filter capacitors in the foreground. The capacitors are mounted to a phenolic plate which is bolted to the chassis. The two filter chokes are to the rear, along with the low-voltage filter capacitors and the "adjust-bias" potentiometer. The reverse-connected filament transformer is at the rear of the chassis. Semiconductor rectifiers are placed beneath the chassis.

30-11 Power-Supply Components

The usual components which make up a power supply, in addition to rectifiers which have already been discussed, are filter capacitors, bleeder resistors, transformers, and chokes. These components normally will be purchased especially for the intended application, taking into consideration the factors discussed earlier in this chapter.

Filter Capacitors There are two types of filter capacitors: (1) paper-dielectric type, (2) electrolytic type.

Paper capacitors consist of two strips of

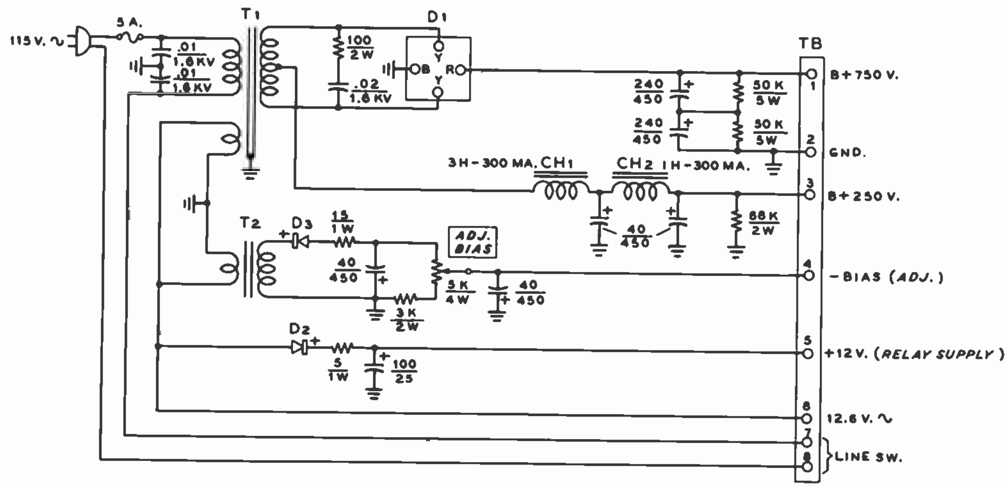


Figure 28

SSB TRANSCEIVER POWER SUPPLY

Various replacement power transformers may be used with this power supply. Suggested units are: (1) 650-volt c.t. at 225 ma.; 12.6-volt at 5.25 amp. (Stancor P-8339), for 800-volt d-c output. (2) 750-volt c.t. at 325 ma.; 12.6 volt at 6.0 amp. (Stancor P-8365), for 750-volt d-c output. (3) 540-volt c.t. at 260 ma.; 6.3-volt at 8.8 amp. (Stancor P-8356), for 700-volt d-c output and 6.3 volt filament supply.

Transformer T_2: 6.3 volts at 1 amp. (Stancor P-8389). CH_1: 3 henrys at 300 ma (Stancor C-2334). CH_2: 1 henry at 300 ma (Stancor C-2343). D_1: Diode bridge, 1400-volt rms, 1.5 amp. (2000-volt PIV). Diodes Inc., 2023 Nordoff St., Chatsworth, Calif. #BR-820A. D_2, D_3: 1N2070.

metal foil separated by several layers of special paper. Some types of paper capacitors are wax-impregnated, but the better ones, especially the high-voltage types, are oil-impregnated and oil-filled. Some capacitors are rated both for *flash* test and normal operating voltages; the latter is the important rating and is the maximum voltage which the capacitor should be required to withstand in service.

The capacitor across the rectifier circuit in a capacitor-input filter should have a working-voltage rating equal at *least* to 1.41 times the rms voltage output of the rectifier. The remaining capacitors may be rated more nearly in accordance with the d-c voltage.

The *electrolytic capacitor* consists of two aluminum electrodes in contact with a conducting paste or liquid which acts as an *electrolyte.* A very thin film of oxide is formed on the surface of one electrode, called the *anode.* This film of oxide acts as the dielectric. The electrolytic capacitor must be correctly connected in the circuit so that the anode always is at a positive potential with respect to the electrolyte, the latter actually serving as the other electrode (plate) of the capacitor. A reversal of the polarity for any length of time will ruin the capacitor.

The dry type of electrolytic capacitor uses an electrolyte in the form of paste. The dielectric in electrolytic capacitors is not perfect; the capacitors have a much higher direct-current leakage than the paper type.

The high capacitance of electrolytic capacitors results from the thinness of the film which is formed on the plates. The maximum voltage that can be safely impressed across the average electrolytic filter capacitor is between 450 and 600 volts; the working voltage is usually rated at 450. When electrolytic capacitors are used in filter circuits of high-voltage supplies, the capacitors should be connected in series. The positive terminal of one capacitor must connect to the negative terminal of the other, in the same manner as dry batteries are connected in series.

Electrolytic capacitors can be greatly reduced in size by the use of etched aluminum foil for the anode. This greatly increases the surface area, and the dielectric film covering it, but raises the power factor slightly. For this reason, ultramidget electrolytic capacitors ordinarily should not be used at full rated d-c voltage when a high a-c component is present as would be the case for the input capacitor in capacitor-input filter.

Bleeder Resistors A heavy-duty resistor should be connected across the output of a filter in order to draw some load current at all time. This resistor avoids soaring of the voltage at no load when swinging-choke input is used, and also provides a means for discharging the filter capacitors when no external vacuum-tube circuit load is connected to the filter. This *bleeder* resistor should normally draw approximately 10 percent of the full load current.

The power dissipated in the bleeder resistor can be calculated by dividing the square of the d-c voltage by the resistance. This power is dissipated in the form of heat, and, if the resistor is not in a well-ventilated position, the wattage rating should be higher than the actual wattage being dissipated. High-voltage, high-capacitance filter capacitors can hold a dangerous charge if not bled off, and wirewound resistors occasionally open up without warning. Hence it is wise to place carbon resistors in series across the regular wirewound bleeder.

When purchasing a bleeder resistor, be sure that the resistor will stand not only the required wattage, but also the *voltage*. Some resistors have a voltage limitation which makes it impossible to force sufficient current through them to result in rated wattage dissipation. This type of resistor usually is provided with slider taps, and is designed for voltage divider service. An untapped, nonadjustable resistor is preferable as a high-voltage bleeder, and is less expensive. Several small resistors may be connected in series, if desired, to obtain the required wattage and voltage rating.

Transformers Power transformers and filament transformers normally will give no trouble over a period of many years if purchased from a reputable manufacturer, and if given a reasonable amount of care. Transformers must be kept dry; even a small amount of moisture in a high-voltage unit will cause quick failure. A transformer which is operated continuously, within its ratings, seldom will give trouble from moisture, since an economically designed transformer operates at a moderate temperature rise above the temperature of the surrounding air. But an unsealed transformer which is inactive for an appreciable period of time in a highly humid location can absorb enough moisture to cause early failure.

Filter Choke Coils Filter inductors consist of a coil of wire wound on a laminated iron core. The size of wire is determined by the amount of direct current which is to flow through the choke coil. This direct current magnetizes the core and reduces the inductance of the choke coil; therefore, filter choke coils of the *smoothing* type are built with an air gap of a small fraction of an inch in the iron core, for the purpose of preventing saturation when maximum current flows through the coil winding. The "air gap" is usually in the form of a piece of fiber inserted between the ends of the laminations. The air gap reduces the initial inductance of the choke coil, but keeps it at a higher value under maximum load conditions. The coil must have a great many more turns for the same initial inductance when an air gap is used.

The d-c resistance of any filter choke should be as low as practical for a specified value of inductance. Smaller filter chokes, such as those used in radio receivers, usually have an inductance of from 6 to 15 henrys, and a d-c resistance of from 200 to 400 ohms. A high d-c resistance will reduce the output voltage, due to the voltage drop across each choke coil. Large filter choke coils for radio transmitters and class-B amplifiers usually have less than 100 ohms d-c resistance.

30-12 Special Power Supplies

A complete transmitter usually includes one or more power supplies such as grid-bias packs, voltage-regulated supplies, or transformerless supplies having some special characteristic.

Regulated Supplies—VR Tubes Where it is desired in a circuit to stabilize the voltage supply to a load requiring not more than perhaps 20 to 25 ma, the glow-discharge type of voltage-regulator tube can be used to great advantage. Examples of such circuits are the local oscillator circuit in a receiver, the tuned oscillator in a vfo, the oscillator in a frequency meter, or the bridge circuit in a vacuum-tube voltmeter. A number of tubes are available for this application including the OA3/VR75, OB3/VR90, OC3/VR105, OD3/VR150, and the OA2 and OB2 miniature types. These tubes stabilize the voltage across their terminals to 75, 90, 105, or 150 volts. The miniature types OA2 stabilize to 150 volts and OB2 to 108 volts. The types OA2, OB2, and OB3/VR90 have a maximum current rating of 30 ma and the other three types have a maximum current rating of 40 ma. The minimum current required by all six types to sustain a constant discharge is 5 ma.

A *VR tube* (common term applied to all glow-discharge voltage-regulator tubes) may be used to stabilize the voltage across a variable load or the voltage across a constant load fed from a varying voltage. Two or more VR tubes may be connected in series to provide exactly 180, 210, 255 volts, or other combinations of the voltage ratings of the tubes. It is not recommended, however, that VR tubes be connected in parallel since both the striking and the regulated voltage of the paralleled tubes normally will be sufficiently different so that only one of the tubes will light. The remarks following apply generally to all the VR types although some examples apply specifically to the OD3/VR150 type.

A device requiring say, only 50 volts can be stabilized against *supply-voltage* variations by means of a VR105 simply by putting a suitable resistor in series with the regulated voltage and the load, dropping the voltage from 105 to 50 volts. However, it should be borne in mind that under these conditions the device will *not* be regulated for *varying load;* in other words, if the *load resistance* varies, the voltage across the load will vary, even though the regulated voltage remains at 105 volts.

To maintain constant voltage across a *varying load resistance* there must be *no* series resistance between the regulator tube and the load. This means that the device must be operated exactly at one of the voltages obtainable by using two or more similar or different VR tubes in series.

In order to provide greatest range of regulation, a VR tube (or two in series) should be used with a series resistor (to effect a poorly regulated voltage source) of such a value that it will permit the VR tube to draw from 8 to 20 ma under normal or average conditions of supply voltage and load impedance. For maximum control range, the series resistance should be not less than approximately 20,000 ohms, which will necessitate a source of voltage considerably in excess of 150 volts. However, where the supply voltage is limited, good control over a *limited range* can be obtained with as little as 3000 ohms series resistance. If it takes less than 3000 ohms series resistance to make the VR tube draw 15 to 20 ma when the VR tube is connected to the load, then the supply voltage is not high enough for proper operation.

Should the current through a VR150, VR105, or VR75 be allowed to exceed 40 ma, the life of the tube will be shortened. If the current falls below 5 ma, operation will become unstable. Therefore, the tube must operate within this range, and within the two extremes will maintain the voltage within 1.5 percent. It takes a voltage excess of at least 10 to 15 percent to "start" a VR-type regulator; and to ensure positive starting each time, the voltage supply should preferably exceed the regulated output voltage rating about 20 percent or more. This usually is automatically taken care of by the fact that if sufficient series resistance for good regulation is employed, the voltage impressed across the VR tube before the VR

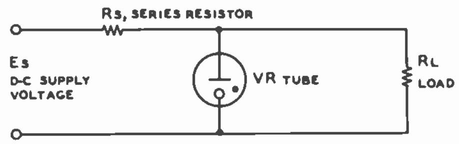


Figure 29
STANDARD VR-TUBE REGULATOR CIRCUIT

The VR-tube regulator will maintain the voltage across its terminals constant within a few volts for moderate variations in R_L or E_S. See text for discussion of the use of VR tubes in various circuit applications.

tube ionizes and starts passing current is quite a bit higher than the starting voltage of the tube.

When a VR tube is to be used to regulate the voltage applied to a circuit drawing *less than 15 ma* normal or average current, the simplest method of adjusting the series resistance is to remove the load and vary the series resistor until the VR tube draws about 30 ma. Then connect the load, and that is all there is to it. This method is particularly recommended when the load is a heater-type vacuum tube, which may not draw current for several seconds after the power supply is turned on. Under these conditions, the current through the VR tube will never exceed 40 ma even when it is running unloaded (while the heater tube is warming up and the power-supply rectifier has already reached operating temperature).

Figure 29 illustrates the standard glow-discharge regulator tube circuit. The tube will maintain the voltage across R_L constant to within 1 or 2 volts for moderate variations in R_L or E_S.

Voltage-Regulated Power Supplies When it is desired to stabilize the potential across a circuit drawing more than a few milliamperes it is advisable to use a voltage-regulated power supply of the type illustrated in figure 30 rather than glow discharge tubes.

A 6AS7G is employed as the series control element, and type-816 mercury-vapor rectifiers are used in the power supply section. The 6AS7G acts as a variable series resistance which is controlled by a separate regulator tube much in the manner of avc circuits or inverse feedback as used in receivers and a-f amplifiers. A 6SH7 controls the operating bias on the 6AS7G, and therefore controls the internal resistance of the 6AS7G. This, in turn, controls the output voltage of the supply, which controls the plate current of the 6SH7, thus completing the cycle of regulation. It is apparent that under these conditions any change in the output voltage will tend to "resist itself," much as the avc system of a receiver resists any change in signal strength delivered to the detector.

Because it is necessary that there always be a moderate voltage drop through the 6AS7G in order for it to have proper control, the rest of the power supply is designed to deliver as much output voltage as possible. This calls for a low-resistance full-wave rectifier, a high-capacitance output capacitor in the filter system and a low-resistance choke.

Reference voltage in the power supply is obtained from a VR150 gaseous regulator. Note that the 6.3-volt heater winding for the 6SH7 and the 6AS7G tubes is operated at a potential of plus 150 volts by connecting the winding to the plate of the VR150. This procedure causes the heater-cathode voltage of the 6SH7 to be zero, and permits an output voltage of up to 450 since the 300-volt heater-to-cathode rating of the 6AS7G is not exceeded with an output voltage of 450 from the power supply.

If the power supply is to be used with an output voltage of 400 to 450 volts, the full 615 volts each side of center should be applied to the 816's. However, the maximum plate dissipation rating of the 6AS7G will be exceeded, due to the voltage drop across the tube, if the full current rating of 250 ma is used with an output voltage below 400 volts. If the power supply is to be used with full output current at voltages below 400 volts the 520-volt taps on the plate transformer should be connected to the 816's. Some variation in the output range of the power supply may be obtained by varying the values of the resistors and the potentiometer across the output. However, be sure that the total plate dissipation rating of 26 watts of the 6AS7G series regulator is not exceeded at maximum current output from the supply. The total dissipation

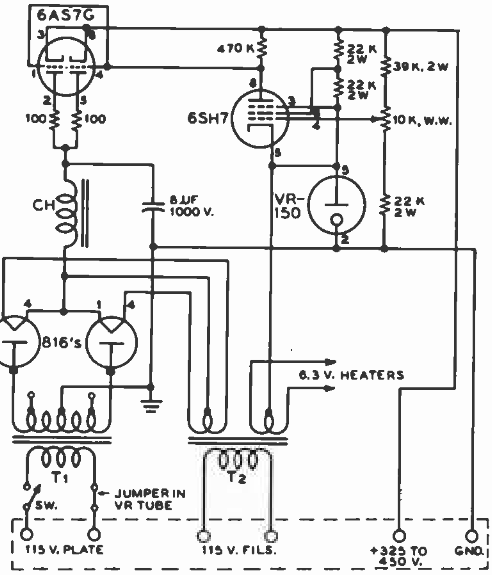


Figure 30

SCHEMATIC OF VOLTAGE-REGULATED POWER SUPPLY

T_1—615 or 520 volts each side of c.t., 300 ma. Stancor P-8041
T_2—5 volts at 3 amp., 6.3 volts at 6 amp. Stancor P-5009
CH—4-henry at 250 ma. Stancor C-1412

in the 6AS7G is equal to the current through it (output current plus the current passing through the two bleeder strings) multiplied by the drop through the tube (voltage across the filter capacitor minus the output voltage of the supply).

A Shunt-Regulated Bias Supply (20 to 80 V) Many of the popular class-B modulator and grounded-grid linear amplifier tubes require a few volts of well-regulated negative bias. Shown in figure 31 is an electronic bias supply which will provide a regulated bias voltage variable over the range of 20 to 80 volts. Regulation is 0.001 volt/ma, which is remarkable for a supply as simple as this. Between 30 and 80 volts, the supply will regulate grid current up to 200 ma. Between 20 and 30 volts, maximum grid current is restricted to 100 ma.

Basically, the regulated supply consists of a small power supply which delivers plate voltage to a low-μ 6AS7G triode. The voltage drop across the triode is used as the regulated bias voltage. Associated with the triode is a d-c amplifier and a voltage-regulator tube which serves to vary the grid voltage of the triode regulator tube so that a constant voltage is maintained across it. The 5K variable potentiometer is adjusted to produce about 20 ma current through the first regulator tube.

A Shunt-Regulated Bias Supply (100 to 600 V) Series - regulated power supplies are usually not suited for bias units since the direction of load-current flow is opposite from that of a regular supply. In the supply shown in figure 32, the regulator tube (6CK4) acts as a variable bleeder resistor which automatically adjusts its resistance to a value such that the grid current flowing through it will de-

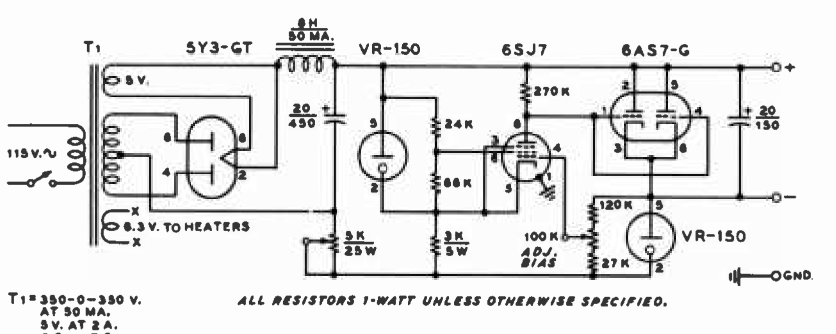


Figure 31

SCHEMATIC, LOW-VOLTAGE REGULATED BIAS SUPPLY

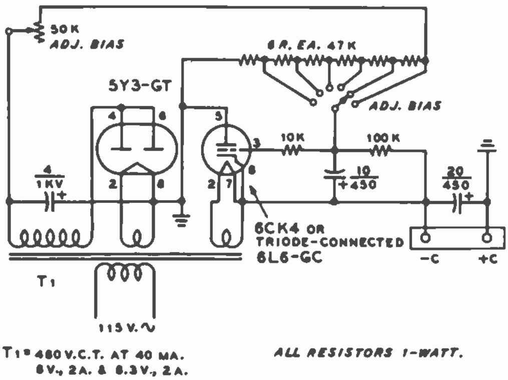


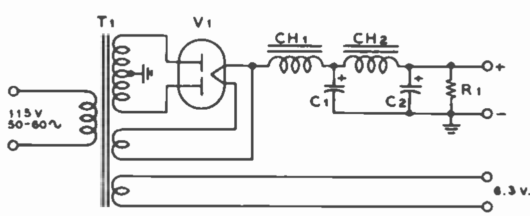
Figure 32

SCHEMATIC, HIGH-VOLTAGE REGULATED BIAS SUPPLY

velop a constant voltage across the supply terminals. The tap switch of this supply permits rough bias adjustment over the range of about 100 to 600 volts, while the potentiometer permits a fine adjustment to be made. Maximum permissible grid current runs from about 100 ma in the vicinity of 100 volts to about 25 ma in the 600-volt region.

30-13 Power-Supply Design

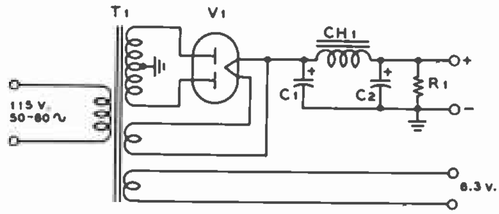
Power supplies may either be of the choke-input type illustrated in figure 33, or the capacitor-input type, illustrated in figure 34. Capacitor-input filter systems are characterized by a d-c supply output voltage that runs from 0.9 to about 1.3 times the rms voltage of one-half of the high-voltage secondary winding of the transformer. Capacitor-input filter systems are not recommended for use with mercury-vapor rectifier tubes, as the peak rectifier current may run as high as five or six times the d-c load current of the power supply. It is possible, however, to employ type 872A mercury-vapor rectifier tubes in capacitor-input circuits wherein the load current is less than 600 milliamperes or so, and where a low-resistance bleeder is



COMPONENTS							APPROXIMATE OUTPUT VOLTAGE		MAX. CURRENT	6.3 V. FILAMENT
T_1	V_1	CH_1	CH_2	C_1	C_2	R_1	NO LOAD	FULL LOAD		
350-0-350 STANCOR PC-8409	5Y3-GT	10 H. STANCOR C-1001	10 H. STANCOR C-1001	10 UF, 450 V. CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-1045	20 UF, 450 V. CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-2045	35K, 10W	310	240	80 MA.	3 A.
375-0-375 STANCOR PC-8411	5Y3-GT	3-13 H STANCOR C-1718	7 H. STANCOR C-1421	10 UF, 450 V. CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-1045	20 UF, 450 V. CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-2045	35K, 10W	330	230	140 MA	4.5 A.
400-0-400 STANCOR PC-8413	5U4-G	2-12 H. STANCOR C-1402	4 H. STANCOR C-1412	10 UF 450 V. CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-1045	10 UF, 450 V. CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-1045	35K, 10W	360	270	250 MA.	5 A.
525-0-525 UTC S-40	5U4-GB	5-25 H. UTC S-32	20 H. UTC S-31	10 UF, 600 V. MALLORY TC-92	10 UF, 600 V. MALLORY TC-92	35K, 10W	460	375	240 MA.	4 A.
600-0-600 UTC S-41	5R4-GY	5-25 H. UTC S-32	20 H. UTC S-31	8 UF, 600 V. SPRAGUE CR-86	8 UF, 600 V. SPRAGUE CR-86	35K, 25W.	540	410	200 MA.	4 A.
900-0-900 UTC S-45	5R4-GY	5-25 H. UTC S-32	20 H. UTC S-31	4 UF, 1 KV SPRAGUE CR-41	8 UF, 1 KV. SPRAGUE CR-81	50K, 25W	830	650	175 MA	–

Figure 33

DESIGN CHART FOR CHOKE-INPUT POWER SUPPLIES



COMPONENTS						APPROXIMATE OUTPUT VOLTAGE		MAX. CURRENT	6.3 V. FILAMENT
T_1	V_1	CH_1	C_1	C_2	R_1	NO LOAD	FULL LOAD		
260-0-260 *STANCOR PC-8404*	5Y3-GT	10 H. *STANCOR C-1001*	20 µF, 450 V. *CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-2045*	20 µF, 450 V. *CORNELL-DUBILIER BR-2045*	35K, 10W	340	240	80 MA.	3A.
375-0-375 *STANCOR PC-8411*	5Y3-GT	7 H. *STANCOR C-1421*	10 µF, 600 V. *MALLORY TC-92*	10 µF, 600 V. *MALLORY TC-92*	35K, 10W	480	350	125 MA.	4.5 A.
435-0-435	5U4-G	4 H. *STANCOR C-1412*	8 µF, 600 V. *SPRAGUE CR-86*	8 µF, 600 V. *SPRAGUE CR-86*	35K, 25W	600	400	225 MA.	6 A.
600-0-600 *STANCOR PC-8414*	5R4-GY	4 H. *STANCOR C-1412*	4 µF, 1 KV *SPRAGUE CR-41*	6 µF, 1 KV. *SPRAGUE CR-61*	50K, 25W	800	600	200 MA.	6 A.
900-0-900 *UTC S-45*	5R4-GY	20 H. *UTC S-31*	4 µF, 1.5 KV. *SPRAGUE CR-415*	8 µF, 1.5 KV. *SPRAGUE CR-815*	75K 25W	1200	910	150 MA.	—

Figure 34

DESIGN CHART FOR CAPACITOR-INPUT POWER SUPPLIES

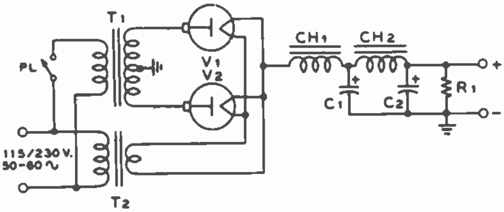
used to hold the minimum current drain of the supply to a value greater than 50 milliamperes or so. Under these conditions the peak plate current of the 872A mercury-vapor tubes will not be exceeded if the input filter capacitor is 4 µfd or less.

Choke-input filter systems are characterized by lower peak-load currents (1.1 to 1.3 times the average load current) than the capacitor-input filter, and by better voltage regulation. Design charts for capacitor and choke input filter supplies for various voltages and load currents are shown in figures 33, 34, and 35.

The construction of power supplies for transmitters, receivers, and accessory equipment is a relatively simple matter electrically since lead lengths and placement of parts are of minor importance and since the circuits themselves are quite simple.

Bridge Supplies Some practical variations of the common bridge-rectifier circuit of figure 6 are illustrated in figures 36 and 37. In many instances a transmitter or modulator requires two different supply voltages, differing by a ratio of about 2:1. A simple bridge supply such as shown in figure 36 will provide both of these voltages from a simple broadcast "replacement-type" power transformer. The first supply of figure 36 is ample to power a transmitter of the 6CL6-807 type to an input of 60 watts. The second supply will run a transmitter running up to 120 watts, such as one employing a pair of 6146 tetrodes in the power-amplifier stage. It is to be noted that separate filament transformers are used for rectifier tubes V_1 and V_2, and that one leg of each filament is connected to the cathode of the respective tube, which is at a high potential with respect to ground. The choke CH_1 in the negative lead of the supply serves as a common filter choke for both output voltages. Each portion of the supply may be considered as having a choke-input filter system. Filaments of V_1 and V_2 are energized before the primary voltage is applied to T_1.

Bridge supplies may also be used to advantage to obtain relatively high plate volt-



COMPONENTS								APPROXIMATE OUTPUT VOLTAGE		MAX. CURRENT (ICAS)
T_1	T_2	V_1-V_2	CH_1	CH_2	C_1	C_2	R_1	NO LOAD	FULL LOAD	
1150-0-1150 *CHICAGO TRANS. P-107*	2.5 V., 10 A. *CHI. TRAN. F-210*	866-A 866-A	8 H. *CHI. TRAN. R-63*	10 H. *CHI. TRAN. R-103*	4 µF, 1.5 KV. *SANGAMO 7115-4*	8 µF, 1.5 KV. *SANGAMO 7115-8*	40K, 75 W	1150	1000	350 MA.
1710-0-1710 *CHICAGO TRANS. P-1512*	2.5 V., 10 A. *CHI. TRAN. F-210H*	866-A 866-A	8 H. *CHI. TRAN. R-65*	10 H. *CHI. TRAN. R-105*	4 µF, 2 KV. *SANGAMO 7120-4*	8 µF, 2 KV. *SANGAMO 7120-8*	50 K, 75 W	1700	1500	425 MA.
2900-0-2900 *CHICAGO TRANS. P-2126*	5 V., 10 A. *CHI. TRAN. F-510H*	872-A 872-A	8 H. *CHI. TRAN. R-67*	8 H. *CHI. TRAN. R-67*	4 µF, 3 KV. *SANGAMO 7130-4*	4 µF, 3 KV. *SANGAMO 7130-4*	75 K 200 W	2750	2500	700 MA.
3500-0-3500 *UTC CG-309*	5 V., 10 A. *UTC LS-82*	872-A 872-A	10 H. *UTC CG-15*	10 H. *UTC CG-15*	4 µF, 4 KV. *CORNELL-DUBILIER T40040-A*	4 µF, 4 KV. *CORNELL-DUBILIER T40040-A*	100 K 200 W	3400	3000	1000 MA.
4600-0-4600 *UTC CG-310 CHICAGO TRANS. P-4353*	5 V., 20 A. *UTC LS-83*	575-A 575-A	10 H. *UTC CG-15*	10 H. *UTC CG-15*	4 µF, 5 KV. *AEROVOX JP-09*	4 µF, 5 KV. *AEROVOX JP-09*	100 K 300 W	4400	4000	800 MA.

Figure 35

DESIGN CHART FOR CHOKE-INPUT HIGH-VOLTAGE SUPPLIES

ages for high-powered transmitting equipment. Type 866A and 872A rectifier tubes can only serve in a supply delivering under 3500 volts in a full-wave circuit. Above this voltage, the peak-inverse-voltage rating of the rectifier tube will be exceeded, and danger of flashback within the rectifier tube will be present. However, with bridge circuits, the same tubes may deliver up to as much as 7000 volts d.c. without exceeding the peak-inverse-voltage rating.

The bridge circuit also permits the use of the so-called "pole transformer" in high-voltage power supplies. Two KVA trans-

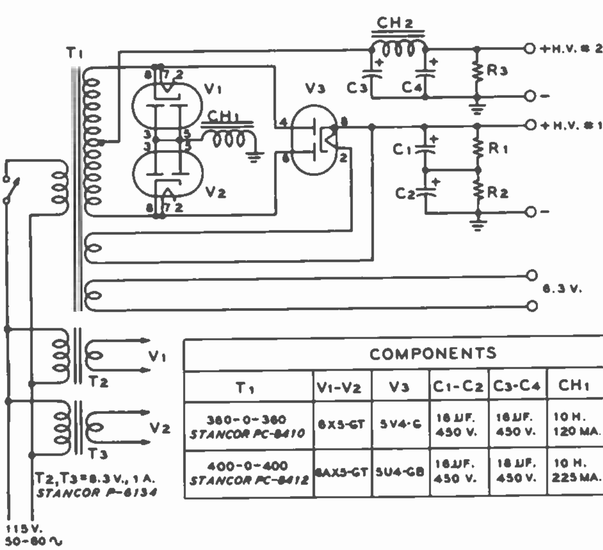


Figure 36

DUAL-VOLTAGE INTERMITTENT-SERVICE BRIDGE POWER SUPPLIES

COMPONENTS									FULL LOAD VOLT.		MAX. CURRENT	
T_1	V_1-V_2	V_3	C_1-C_2	C_3-C_4	CH_1	CH_2	R_1-R_2	R_3	HV #1	HV #2	#1	#2
360-0-360 *STANCOR PC-8410*	6X5-GT	5V4-G	16 µF. 450 V.	16 µF. 450 V.	10 H. 120 MA.	8 H. 50 MA.	20K, 10W.	100 K 1 W	800	240	90 MA.	40 MA.
400-0-400 *STANCOR PC-8412*	6AX5-GT	5U4-GB	16 µF. 450 V.	16 µF. 450 V.	10 H. 225 MA.	8 H. 75 MA.	20K 10 W.	100 K 1 W	625	260	150 MA.	50 MA.

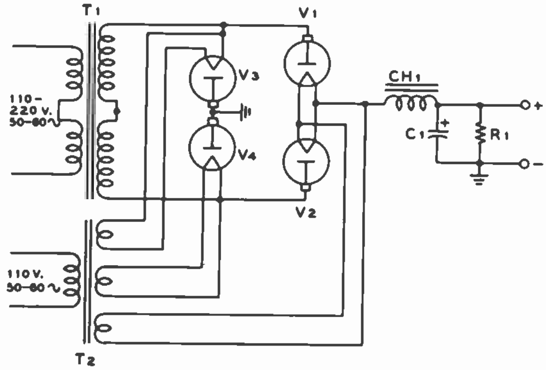


Figure 37

HIGH-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY

COMPONENTS						FULL LOAD VOLTAGE	FULL LOAD CURRENT (ICAS)
T1	T2	V1–V4	CH1	C1	R1		
2200-VOLT "POLE TRANSFORMER" 2 KVA	UTC S-71	866-A	8 H. 500 MA. UTC S-37	10 µF. 2500 V.	75 K. 200 W.	1900	500 MA.
3500-0-3500 UTC CG-308	UTC LS-121-Y	872-A	10 H. 500 MA. UTC CG-10[illegible]	8 µF 6600 V.	200 K 300 W.	8000	500 MA.

formers of this type having a 110/220-volt secondary winding and a split 2200-volt primary winding may often be picked up in salvage yards for a dollar or two. If reversed, and either 110 or 220 volts applied to the "primary" winding, approximately 2200 volts rms will be developed across the new "secondary" winding. If used in a bridge circuit as shown in figure 37, a d-c supply voltage of about 1900 volts at a current of 500 milliamperes may be drawn from such a transformer. Do not attempt to use a smaller transformer than the 2KVA rating, as the voltage regulation of the unit will be too poor for practical purposes.

For higher voltages, a pole transformer with a 4400-volt primary and a 110/220-volt secondary may be reversed to provide a d-c plate supply of about 3800 volts.

Commercial plate transformers intended for full wave rectifier service may also be used in bridge service *provided* that the insulation at the center-tap point of the high-voltage winding is sufficient to withstand one-half of the rms voltage of the secondary winding. Many high-voltage transformers are specifically designed for operation with the center tap of the secondary winding at ground potential; consequently the insulation of the winding at this point is not designed to withstand high voltage. It is best to check with the manufacturer of the transformer and find out if the in-

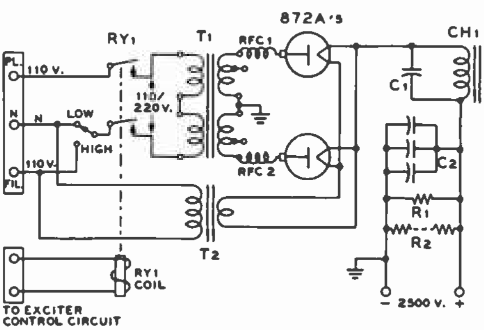


Figure 38

HIGH-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY

T_1—2900-0-2900 volts at 600 ma., Stancor P-8035
T_2—5 volts, 20 amp.
CH_1—6 henrys, 700 ma.
C_1—0.15 µfd, 5000-volt
C_2—Three 4-µfd 3000-volt
R_1—100,000 ohms, 200-watt
R_2—Eleven 0.5—megohm 2-watt resistors in series
RY_1—DPST relay, 110 v. coil, 20 amp contacts, Potter & Brumfield PR7A
$RFC_{1,2}$—Hash filter, J. W. Miller Co. No. 7868

sulation will withstand the increased voltage before a full-wave type transformer is utilized in bridge-rectifier service.

30-14 A Kilowatt CCS Power Supply

Shown in figure 38 is the schematic of a power supply capable of delivering 2500 volts at a continuous current drain of 500 milliamperes, or 1000 milliamperes with an intermittent load. The supply is designed to power a kilowatt amplifier operating at 2500 volts and 400 ma, in conjunction with a 500-watt modulator operating at 2500 volts at a varying current drain of 50-300 ma. Specifically, the supply is employed with a transmitter having a pair of 4-250A tetrode tubes in the class-C stage, and a pair of 810 modulator tubes. For sideband work, the supply may be used to power a 2000 watt PEP linear amplifier.

Because the total weight of the components is over 150 pounds, the supply should be built directly on the bottom of a relay rack instead of on a steel chassis.

The r-f hash-suppression chokes (RFC_1 and RFC_2) are fastened directly to the high-voltage terminals of the plate transformer. The two 872A rectifier tubes are so located that the leads from the r-f chokes to the plate caps are only about three inches long.

A 0.15-μfd 5000-volt paper capacitor is used to resonate the filter choke to approximately 120 Hz at a bleeder current of 25 milliamperes. When full load current is drawn, the inductance of the filter choke drops, detuning the parallel-resonant circuit. Improved voltage regulation is gained by this action; the no-load voltage increases only 200 volts over the full-load voltage.

CHAPTER THIRTY-ONE

Electronic Test Equipment

All amateur stations are required by law to have certain items of test equipment available within the station. A c-w station is required to have a frequency meter or other means, in addition to the transmitter frequency control, for ensuring that the transmitted signal is on a frequency within one of the frequency bands assigned for such use. A radiophone station is required in addition to have a means of determining that the transmitter is not being modulated in excess of its modulation capability, and in any event not more than 100 percent. Further, any station operating with a power input greater than 900 watts is required to have a means of determining the exact input to the final stage of the transmitter, so as to ensure that the power input to the plate circuit of the output stage does not exceed 1000 watts.

The additional test and measurement equipment required by a station will be determined by the type of operation contemplated. It is desirable that all stations have an accurately calibrated voltohmmeter for routine transmitter and receiver checking and as an assistance in getting new pieces of equipment into operation. An oscilloscope and an audio oscillator make a very desirable adjunct to a phone station using a-m or f-m transmission, and are a necessity if single-sideband operation is contemplated. A calibrated signal generator is almost a necessity if much receiver work is contemplated, although a frequency meter of LM or BC-221 type, particularly if it includes internal modulation, will serve in place of the signal generator. Extensive antenna work invariably requires the use of some type of field-strength meter, and a standing-wave meter of some type is very helpful. Lastly, if much vhf work is to be done, a simple grid-dip meter will be found to be one of the most used items of test equipment in the station.

31-1 Voltage and Current

The measurement of voltage and current in radio circuits is very important in proper maintenance of equipment. Vacuum tubes and transistors of the types used in communications work must be operated within rather narrow limits in regard to filament or collector voltage, and they must be operated within certain maximum limits in regard to the voltage and current on other electrodes.

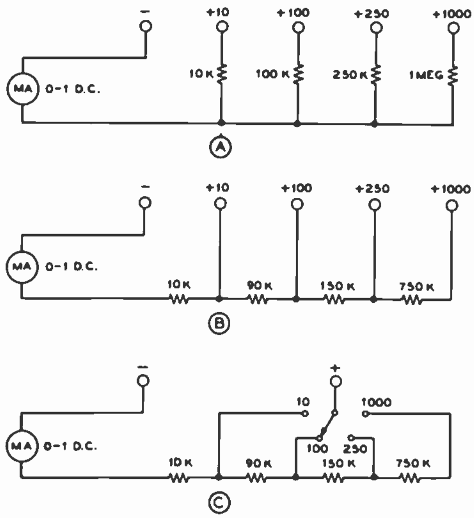


Figure 1

MULTIVOLTMETER CIRCUITS

A shows a circuit whereby individual multiplier resistors are used for each range. B is the more economical "series-multiplier" circuit. The same number of resistors is required, but those for the higher ranges have less resistance, and hence are less expensive when precision wirewound resistors are to be used. C shows a circuit essentially the same as at A, except that a range switch is used. With a 0-500 d-c microammeter substituted for the 0-1 milliammeter shown above, all resistor values would be multiplied by two and the voltmeter would have a "2000-ohms-per volt" sensitivity. Similarly, if a 0-50 d-c microammeter were to be used, all resistance values would be multiplied by twenty, and the voltmeter would have a sensitivity of 20,000 ohms per volt.

Both direct current and voltage are most commonly measured with the aid of an instrument consisting of a coil that is free to rotate in a constant magnetic field (*d'Arsonval* type instrument). If the instrument is to be used for the measurement of current it is called an *ammeter* or *milliammeter*. The current flowing through the circuit is caused to flow through the moving coil of this type of instrument. If the current to be measured is greater than 10 milliamperes or so, it is the usual practice to cause the majority of the current to flow through a bypass resistor called a *shunt*, only a specified portion of the current flowing through the moving coil of the instrument. The calculation of shunts for extending the range of d-c milliammeters and ammeters is discussed in Chapter Two.

A direct current *voltmeter* is merely a d-c milliammeter with a *multiplier* resistor in series with it. If it is desired to use a low-range milliammeter as a voltmeter the value of the multiplier resistor for any voltage range may be determined from the following formula:

$$R = \frac{1000\ E}{I}$$

where,

R equals multiplier resistor in ohms,
E equals desired full-scale voltage,
I equals full-scale current of meter in ma.

The sensitivity of a voltmeter is commonly expressed in *ohms per volt*. The higher the ohms per volt of a voltmeter the greater its sensitivity. When the full-scale current drain of a voltmeter is known, its sensitivity rating in ohms per volt may be determined by:

$$\textit{Ohms per volt} = \frac{1000}{I}$$

where,

I is the full-scale current drain of the indicating instrument in milliamperes.

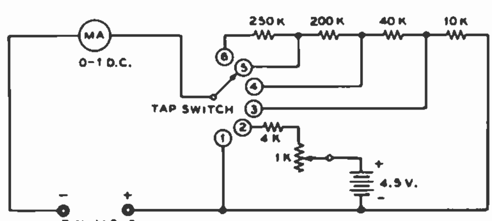


Figure 2

VOLTOHMMETER CIRCUIT

With the switch in position 1, the 0-1 milliammeter would be connected directly to the terminals. In position 2 the meter would read from 0-100,000 ohms, approximately, with a resistance value of 4500 ohms at half scale. (Note: The half-scale resistance value of an ohmmeter using this circuit is equal to the resistance in series with the battery inside the instrument.) The other four taps are voltage ranges with 10, 50, 250, and 500 volts full scale.

Multirange Meters It is common practice to connect a group of multiplier resistors in the circuit with a single indicating instrument to obtain a *multirange voltmeter*. There are several ways of wiring such a meter, the most common ones of which are indicated in figure 1. With all these methods of connection, the sensitivity of the meter in ohms per volt is the same on all scales. With a 0-1 milliammeter, as shown, the sensitivity is 1000 ohms per volt.

Voltohmmeters An extremely useful piece of test equipment which should be found in every laboratory or radio station is the *voltohmmeter*. It consists of a multirange voltmeter with an additional fixed resistor, a variable resistor, and a battery. A typical example of such an instrument is diagramed in figure 2. Tap 1 is used to permit use of the instrument as a 0-1 d-c milliammeter. Tap 2 permits accurate reading of resistors up to 100,000 ohms; taps 3, 4, 5, and 6 are for making voltage measurements, the full-scale voltages being 10, 50, 250, and 500 volts respectively.

The 1000-ohm potentiometer is used to bring the needle to zero ohms when the terminals are shorted; this adjustment should always be made before a resistance measurement is taken. Higher voltages than 500 can be read if a higher value of multiplier resistor is added to an additional tap on the switch. The proper value for a given full-scale reading can be determined from Ohm's Law.

Resistances higher than 100,000 ohms cannot be measured accurately with the circuit constants shown; however, by increasing the ohmmeter battery to 45 volts and multiplying the 4000-ohm resistor and 1000-ohm potentiometer by 10, the ohms scale also will be multiplied by 10. This would permit accurate measurements up to 1 megohm.

0-1 d-c milliammeters are available with special voltohmmeter scales which make individual calibration unnecessary. Or, special scales can be purchased separately and substituted for the original scale on the milliammeter.

Obviously, the accuracy of the instrument either as a voltmeter or as an ammeter can be no better than the accuracy of the milliammeter and the resistors.

Because voltohmmeters are so widely used and because the circuit is standardized to a considerable extent, it is possible to purchase a factory-built voltohmmeter for no more than the component parts would cost if purchased individually. For this reason no construction details are given. However, anyone already possessing a suitable milliammeter and is desirous of incorporating it in a simple voltohmmeter should be able to build one from the schematic diagram and design data given here. Special precision (accurately calibrated) multiplier resistors are available if a high degree of accuracy is desired. As alternates, good quality carbon resistors whose actual resistance has been checked may be used as multipliers where less accuracy is required.

Medium- and Low-Range Ohmmeter Most ohmmeters, including the one just described, are not adapted for accurate measurement of low-resistances — in the neighborhood of 100 ohms, for instance.

The ohmmeter diagramed in figure 3 was especially designed for the reasonably accurate reading of resistances down to 1 ohm. Two scales are provided, one going in one direction and the other scale going in the other direction because of the different manner in which the milliammeter is used in each case. The low scale covers from 1 to 100 ohms and the high scale from 100 to 10,000 ohms. The high scale is in reality a medium-range scale. For accurate reading of resistances over 10,000 ohms, an ohmmeter of the type previously described should be used.

The 1- to 100-ohm scale is useful for checking transformers, chokes, r-f coils, etc., which often have a resistance of only a few ohms.

The calibration scale will depend on the internal resistance of the particular make of 1.5-ma meter used. The instrument can be calibrated by means of a Wheatstone bridge or a few resistors of known accuracy. The latter can be series-connected and parallel-connected to give sufficient calibration

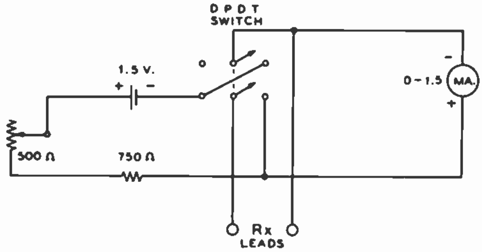


Figure 3

SCHEMATIC OF A LOW-RANGE OHMMETER

A description of the operation of this circuit is given in the text. With the switch in the left position the half-scale reading of the meter will occur with an external resistance of 1000 ohms. With the switch in the right position, half-scale deflection will be obtained with an external resistance equal to the d-c resistance of the milliammeter (20 to 50 ohms depending on the make of instrument).

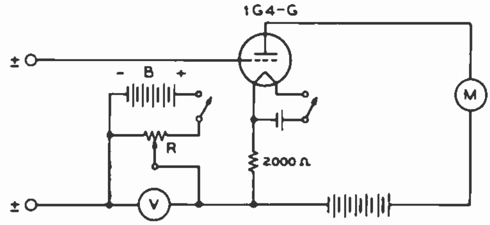


Figure 4

SLIDE-BACK V-T VOLTMETER

By connecting a variable source of voltage in series with the input to a conventional v-t voltmeter, or in series with the simple triode voltmeter shown above, a slide-back a-c voltmeter for peak voltage measurement can be constructed. Resistor R should be about 1000 ohms per volt used at battery B. This type of v-t voltmeter has the advantage that it can give a reading of the actual peak voltage of the wave being measured, without any current drain from the source of voltage.

points. A hand-drawn hand-calibrated scale can be cemented over the regular meter scale to give a direct reading in ohms.

Before calibrating the instrument or using it, the test prods should always be touched together and the zero adjuster set accurately.

Measurement of Alternating Current and Voltage The measurement of alternating current and voltage is complicated by two factors; first, the frequency range covered in ordinary communication channels is so great that calibration of an instrument becomes extremely difficult; second, there is no single type of instrument which is suitable for all a-c measurements—as the d'Arsonval type of movement is suitable for d-c. The d'Arsonval movement will not operate on alternating current since it indicates the average value of current flow, and the average value of an a-c wave is zero.

As a result of the inability of the reliable d'Arsonval type of movement to record an alternating current, either this current must be rectified and then fed to the movement, or a special type of movement which will operate from the *effective* value of the current can be used.

For the usual measurements of power-frequency alternating current (25-60 Hz), the *iron-vane* instrument is commonly used. For audio frequency alternating current (50-20,000 Hz) a d'Arsonval instrument having an integral copper-oxide, selenium, or silicon rectifier is usually used. Radio-frequency voltage measurements are usually made with some type of vacuum-tube voltmeter, while r-f current measurements are almost invariably made with an instrument containing a thermocouple to convert the radio-frequency current into direct current for the meter movement.

Since an alternating-current wave can have an almost infinite variety of shapes, it can easily be seen that the ratios between the three fundamental quantities of the wave (peak, rms, effective, and average after rectification) can also vary widely. So it becomes necessary to know beforehand just which quality of the wave under measurement our instrument is going to indicate. For the purpose of simplicity we can list the usual types of alternating-current meters along with the characteristic of an alternating-current wave which they will indicate:

Iron-vane, thermocouple—rms.

Rectifier type (copper-oxide, selenium, etc.)—average after rectification.

V.t.v.m.—rms, average, or peak, depending on design and calibration of the meter.

31-2 The Vacuum-Tube Voltmeter

A *vacuum-tube voltmeter* is essentially a detector in which a change in the signal placed on the input will produce a change in the indicating instrument (usually a d'Arsonval meter) placed in the output circuit. A vacuum-tube voltmeter may use a diode, a triode, or a multielement tube (or it may be transistorized) and it may be used either for the measurement of alternating or direct current.

When a v.t.v.m. is used in d-c measurement it is used for this purpose primarily because of the very great input resistance of the device. This means that a v.t.v.m. may be used for the measurement of avc, afc, and discriminator output voltages where no loading of the circuit can be tolerated.

A-C V-T Voltmeters There are many different types of a-c vacuum-tube voltmeters, all of which operate as some type of rectifier to give an indication on a d-c instrument. There are two general types: those which give an indication of the rms value of the wave (or approximately this value of a complex wave), and those which give an indication of the peak or crest value of the wave.

Since the adjustment and calibration of a wide-range vacuum-tube voltmeter is rather tedious, in most cases it will be best to purchase a commercially manufactured unit. Several excellent commercial units are on the market at the present time; also kits for home construction of a quite satisfactory v.t.v.m. are available from several manufacturers. These feature a wide range of a-c and d-c voltage scales at high sensitivity, and, in addition, several feature a built-in vacuum-tube ohmmeter which will give indications up to 500 or 1000 megohms.

Peak A-C V-T Voltmeters There are two common types of peak-indicating vacuum-tube voltmeters. The first is the so-called *slide-back* type in which a simple v.t.v.m. is used along with a conventional d-c voltmeter and a source of bucking bias in series with the input. With this type of arrangement (figure 4) leads are connected to the voltage to be measured and the slider resistor R across the bucking voltage is backed down until an indication on the meter (called a false zero) equal to that value given with the prods shorted and the bucking voltage reduced to zero, is obtained. Then the value of the bucking voltage (read on V) is equal to the peak value of the voltage under measurement. The slide-back voltmeter has the disadvantage that it is not instantaneous in its indication—adjustments must be made for every voltage measurement. For this reason the slide-back v.t.v.m. is not commonly used, being supplanted by the diode-rectifier type of peak v.t.v.m. for most applications.

High-Voltage Diode Peak Voltmeter A *diode vacuum-tube voltmeter* suitable for the measurement of high values of a-c voltage is diagramed in figure 5. With the constants shown, the voltmeter has two ranges—500 and 1500 volts *peak* full scale.

Capacitors C_1 and C_2 should be able to withstand a voltage in excess of the highest peak voltage to be measured. Likewise, R_1

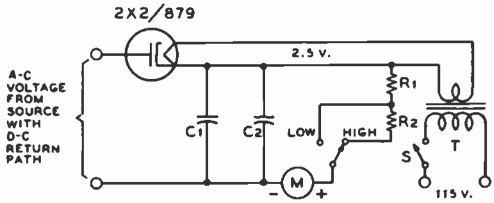


Figure 5

SCHEMATIC OF A HIGH-VOLTAGE PEAK VOLTMETER

This peak voltmeter is convenient for the measurement of peak voltages at fairly high power levels from a source of moderately low impedance.

C_1—.001-µfd high-voltage mica
C_2—1.0-µfd high-voltage paper
R_1—500,000 ohms (two 0.25-megohm ½-watt in series)
R_2—1.0 megohm (four 0.25-megohm ½-watt in series)
T—2.5 v., 1.75 amp filament transformer
M—0-1 d-c milliammeter
S_{HI-LO}—Spdt toggle switch
S—Spst toggle switch
(Note: C_1 is a bypass around C_2, the inductive reactance of which may be appreciable at high frequencies.)

and R_2 should be able to withstand the same amount of voltage. The easiest and least expensive way of obtaining such resistors is to use several low-voltage resistors in series, as shown in figure 5. Other voltage ranges can be obtained by changing the value of these resistors, but for voltages less than several hundred volts a more linear calibration can be obtained by using a receiver-type diode. A calibration curve should be run to eliminate the appreciable error due to the high internal resistance of the diode, preventing the capacitor from charging to the full peak value of the voltage being measured.

A direct-reading diode peak voltmeter of the type shown in figure 5 will load the source of voltage by approximately *one-half* the value of the load resistance in the circuit (R_1, or R_1 plus R_2, in this case). Also, the peak voltage reading on the meter will be slightly less than the actual peak voltage being measured. The amount of lowering of the reading is determined by the ratio of the reactance of the storage capacitance to the load resistance. If a cathode-ray oscilloscope is placed across the terminals of the v.t.v.m. when a voltage is being measured, the actual amount of the lowering in voltage may be determined by inspection of the trace on the cathode-ray tube screen. The peak positive excursion of the wave will be slightly flattened by the action of the v.t.v.m. Usually this flattening will be so small as to be negligible.

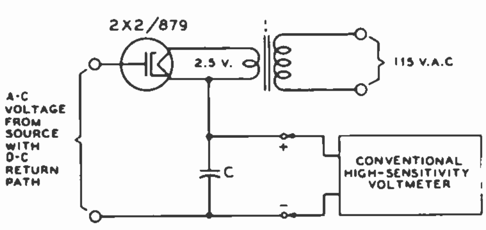


Figure 6

PEAK-VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT CIRCUIT

Through use of the arrangement shown above it is possible to make accurate measurements of peak a-c voltages, such as across the secondary of a modulation transformer, with a conventional d-c multivoltmeter. Capacitor C and transformer T should, of course, be insulated for the highest peak voltage likely to be encountered. A capacitance of 0.25-µfd at C has been found to be adequate. The higher the sensitivity of the indicating d-c voltmeter, the smaller will be the error between the indication on the meter and the actual peak voltage being measured.

An alternative arrangement, shown in figure 6, is quite convenient for the measurement of high a-c voltages such as are encountered in the adjustment and testing of high-power audio amplifiers and modulators. The arrangement consists simply of a 2X2 rectifier tube and a filter capacitor of perhaps 0.25-µfd capacitance, but with a voltage rating high enough that it is not likely to be punctured as a result of any tests made. Cathode-ray oscilloscope capacitors, and those for electrostatic-deflection TV tubes often have ratings as high as 0.25 µfd at 7500 to 10,000 volts. The indicating instrument is a conventional multiscale d-c voltmeter of the high-sensitivity type, preferably with a sensitivity of 20,000 or 50,000 ohms per volt. The higher the sensitivity of the d-c voltmeter used with the rectifier, the smaller will be the amount of flattening of the a-c wave as a result of the rectifier action.

Basic D-C Vacuum-Tube Voltmeter A simple v.t.v.m. is shown in figure 7. The plate load may be a mechanical device, such as a relay or a meter, or the output voltage may be developed across a resistor and used for various control purposes. The tube is biased by E_c and a fixed value of plate current flows, causing a fixed voltage drop across plate-load resistor R_p. When a positive d-c voltage is applied to the input terminals it cancels part of the negative grid bias, making the grid more positive with respect to the cathode. This grid-voltage change permits a greater

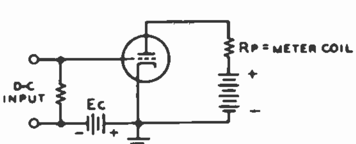


Figure 7

SIMPLE VACUUM-TUBE VOLTMETER

amount of plate current to flow, and develops a greater voltage drop across the plate-load resistor. A negative input voltage would decrease the plate current and decrease the voltage drop across R_p. The varying voltage drop across R_p may be employed as a control voltage for relays or other devices. When it is desired to measure various voltages, a *voltage range* switch (figure 8) may precede the v.t.v.m. The voltage to be measured is applied to voltage divider (R_1, R_2, R_3) by means of the *voltage range* switch. Resistor R_4 is used to protect the meter from excessive input voltage to the v.t.v.m. In the plate circuit of the tube a battery and a variable resistor (*zero adjustment*) are used to balance out the meter reading of the normal plate current of the tube. The *zero-adjustment* potentiometer can be so adjusted that the meter (M) reads zero current with no input voltage to the v.t.v.m. When a d-c input voltage is applied to the circuit, current flows through the meter, and the meter reading is proportional to the applied d-c voltage.

The Bridge-type V.T.V.M. Another important use of a d-c amplifier is to show the exact point of balance between two d-c voltages. This is done by means of a bridge circuit with two d-c amplifiers serving as two legs of the bridge (figure 9). With no input signal, and with matched triodes, no current will be read on meter *M*, since the *IR* drops across R_1 and R_2 are identical. When a signal is applied to one tube, the *IR* drops in the plate circuits become unbalanced, and meter *M* indicates the unbalance. In the same way, two d-c voltages may be compared if they are applied to the two input circuits. When the voltages are equal, the bridge is balanced and no current flows through the meter. If one voltage changes, the bridge becomes unbalanced and indication of this will be noted by a reading of the meter.

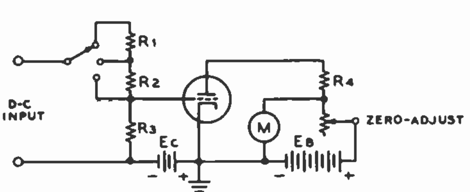


Figure 8

D-C VACUUM-TUBE VOLTMETER

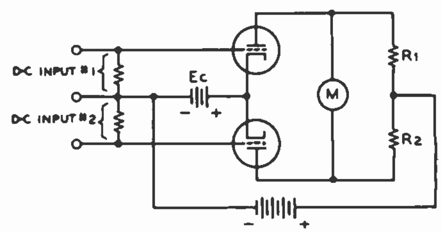


Figure 9

BRIDGE-TYPE VACUUM-TUBE VOLTMETER

A Modern V.T.V.M. For the purpose of analysis, the operation of a modern v.t.v.m. will be described. The *Heathkit IM-13* is a fit instrument for such a description, since it is able to measure positive or negative d-c potentials, a-c rms values, peak-to-peak values, and resistance. The circuit of this unit is shown in figure 10. A sensitive 0 to 200 d-c microammeter is placed in the cathode circuit of a 12AU7 twin triode. The *zero-adjust* control sets up a balance between the two sections of the triode such that with zero input voltage applied to the first grid, the voltage drop across each portion of the zero-adjust control is the same. Under this condition of balance the meter will read zero. When a voltage is applied to the first grid, the balance in the cathode circuits is upset and the meter indicates the degree of unbalance. The relationship between the applied voltage on the first grid and the meter current is linear and therefore the meter can be calibrated with a linear scale. Since the tube is limited in the amount of current it can draw, the meter movement is electronically protected.

The maximum test voltage applied to the 12AU7 tube is about 3 volts. Higher applied voltages are reduced by a voltage divider which has a total resistance of about 10 megohms. An additional resistance of 1-megohm is located in the d-c test probe, thereby permitting measurements to be made in high-impedance circuits with minimum disturbance.

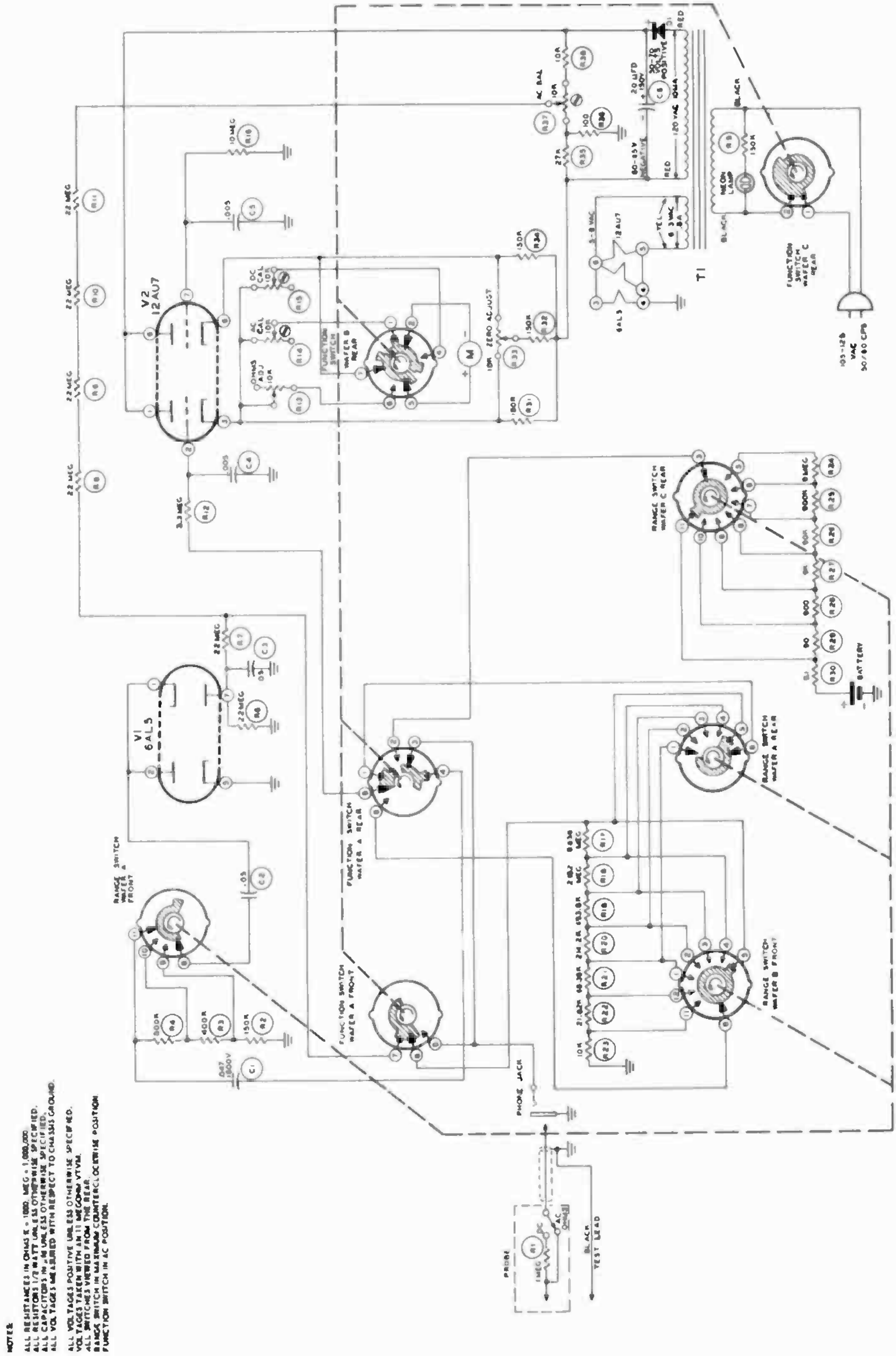


Figure 10

**HEATHKIT PEAK-TO-PEAK V.T.V.M.
MODEL IM-13**

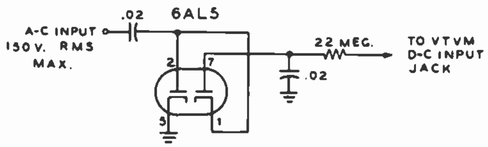


Figure 11

FULL-WAVE RECTIFIER FOR V.T.V.M.

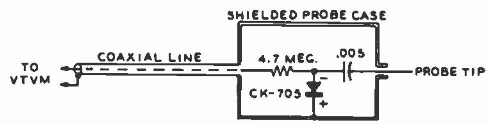


Figure 12

R-F PROBE SUITABLE FOR USE IN 1 kHz-100 MHz RANGE

The rectifier portion of the v.t.v.m. is shown in figure 11. When a-c measurements are desired, a 6AL5 double diode is used as a full-wave rectifier to provide a d-c voltage proportional to the applied a-c voltage. This d-c voltage is applied through the voltage divider string to the 12AU7 tube causing the meter to indicate in the manner previously described. The a-c voltage scales of the meter are calibrated in both rms and peak-to-peak values. In the 1.5, 5, 15, 50, and 150 volt positions of the range switch, the full a-c voltage being measured is applied to the input of the 6AL5 full-wave rectifier. On the 500 and 1500 volt positions of the range switch, a divider network reduces the applied voltage in order to limit the voltage input to the 6AL5 to a safe recommended level.

The *a-c calibrate* control (figure 10) is used to obtain the proper meter deflection for the applied a-c voltage. Vacuum tubes develop a *contact potential* between tube elements. Such contact potential developed in the diode would cause a slight voltage to be present at all times. This voltage is cancelled out by proper application of a bucking voltage. The amount of bucking voltage is controlled by the *a-c balance* control. This eliminates zero shift of the meter when switching from a-c to d-c readings.

For resistance measurements, a 1.5-volt battery is connected through a string of multipliers and the external resistance to be measured, thus forming a voltage divider across the battery, and a resultant portion of the battery voltage is applied to the 12AU7 twin triode. The meter scale is calibrated in resistance (ohms) for this function.

Test Probes Auxiliary *test probes* may be used with the v.t.v.m. to extend the operating range, or to measure radio frequencies with high accuracy. Shown in figure 12 is a radio-frequency probe which provides linear response to over 100 MHz. A crystal diode is used as a rectifier, and d-c isolation is provided by a .005-μfd capacitor. The components of the detector are mounted within a shield at the end of a length of coaxial line, which terminates in the *d-c input* jack of the v.t.v.m. The readings obtained are rms, and should be multiplied by 1.414 to convert to peak readings.

31-3 Measurement of Power

Audio-frequency or radio-frequency power in a resistive circuit is most commonly and most easily determined by the indirect method, i.e., through the use of one of the following formulas:

$$P = EI, \quad P = E^2/R, \quad P = I^2R$$

These three formulas mean that if any two of the three factors determining power are known (resistance, current, voltage) the power being dissipated may be determined. In an ordinary 120-volt a-c line circuit the above formulas are not strictly true since the power factor of the load must be multiplied into the result—or a direct method of determining power such as a wattmeter may be used. But in a resistive a-f circuit and in a resonant r-f circuit the power factor of the load is taken as being unity.

For accurate measurement of a-f and r-f power, a *thermogalvanometer* or *thermocouple* ammeter in series with a noninductive resistor of known resistance can be used. The meter should have good accuracy, and the exact value of resistance should be known with accuracy. Suitable dummy-load resistors are available in various resistances in both 100- and 250-watt ratings. These are virtually noninductive, and may be considered as a pure resistance up to 30 MHz. The resistance of these units is substantially constant for all values of current up to the maximum dissipation rating, but where extreme accuracy is required, a correction chart of the dissipation coefficient of resistance (supplied by the manufacturer) may be employed. This chart shows the exact resistance for different values of current through the resistor.

Sine-wave power measurements (r-f or single-frequency audio) may also be made through the use of a v.t.v.m. and a resistor of known value. In fact a v.t.v.m of the type shown in figure 10 is particularly suited to this work. The formula, $P = E^2/R$ is used in this case. However, it must be remembered that a v.t.v.m. of the type shown in figure 10 indicates the *peak* value of the a-c wave. This reading must be converted to the rms or *heating* value of the wave by multiplying it by 0.707 before substituting the voltage value in the formula. The same result can be obtained by using the formula $P = E^2/2R$. (*Note*: Some v.t.v.m.'s are *peak reading* but are *calibrated* rms on the meter scale).

Thus all three methods of determining power—ammeter-resistor, voltmeter-resistor, and voltmeter-ammeter—give an excellent crosscheck on the accuracy of the determination and upon the accuracy of the *standards.*

Power may also be measured through the use of a *calorimeter*, by actually measuring the amount of heat being dissipated. Through the use of a water-cooled dummy-load resistor this method of power output determination is being used by some of the most modern broadcast stations. But the method is too cumbersome for ordinary power determinations.

Power may also be determined *photometrically* through the use of a voltmeter, ammeter, incandescent lamp used as a load resistor, and a photographic exposure meter. With this method the exposure meter is used to determine the relative visual output of the lamp running as a dummy-load resistor and of the lamp running from the 120-volt a-c line. A rheostat in series with the lead from the a-c line to the lamp is used to vary its light intensity to the same value (as indicated by the exposure meter) as it was putting out as a dummy load. The a-c voltmeter in parallel with the lamp and ammeter in series with it is then used to determine lamp power input by: $P = EI$. This method of power determination is satisfactory for audio and low-frequency r.f. but is not satisfactory for vhf work because of variations in lamp efficiency due to uneven heating of the filament.

Dummy Loads Lamp bulbs make poor dummy loads for r-f work, in general, as they have considerable reactance above 2 MHz, and the resistance of the lamp varies with the amount of current passing through it.

A suitable r-f load for powers up to a few watts may be made by paralleling 2-

Figure 13

2-KILOWATT DUMMY LOAD FOR 3-30 MHz

Load is built in case measuring 22" deep, 11" wide and 5" high. Meter is calibrated in watts against microampere scale as follows: (1), 22.3 μa. (5) 50 μa. (10), 70.5 μa. (15), 86.5 μa. (20), 100 μa. Scale may be marked off as shown in photograph. Calibration technique is discussed in text. Alternatively, a standing-wave bridge (calibrated in watts) such as "Micromatch" may be used to determine power input to bridge.

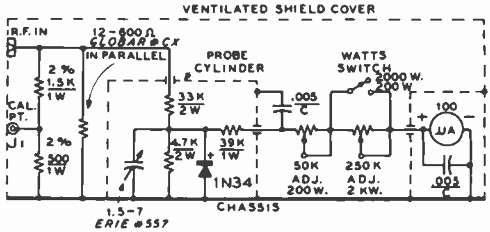
Vents in top of case, and 1/4-inch holes in chassis permit circulation of air about resistors. Unit should be fan-cooled for continuous dissipation.

watt composition resistors of suitable value to make a 50-ohm resistor of adequate dissipation.

A 2 KW dummy load having an SWR of less than 1.05 to 1 at 30 MHz is shown in figures 13, 14, and 15. The load consists of twelve 600-ohm, 120-watt *Globar type CX* noninductive resistors connected in parallel. A frequency-compensation circuit is used to balance out the slight capacitive reactance of the resistors. The compensation circuit is mounted in an aluminum tube 1" in diameter and 2⅝" long. The tube is plugged at the ends by metal discs, and is mounted to the front panel of the box.

The resistors are mounted on aluminum T-bar stock and are grounded to the case at the rear of the assembly. Connection to the coaxial receptacle is made via copper strap.

The power meter is calibrated using a v.t.v.m. and r-f probe. Power is applied to the load at 3.5 MHz and the level is adjusted to provide 17.6 volts at "Calibration point." With the *Watts Switch* in the 200-watt position, the potentiometer is adjusted to provide a reading of 100 watts on the meter. In the 2000-watt position, the other potentiometer is adjusted for a meter reading of 200 watts. The excitation frequency is now changed to 29.7 MHz and the 17.6-volt level re-established. Adjust the frequency-compensating capacitor until meter again reads 100 watts. Recheck at 3.5 MHz and repeat until meter reads 100 watts at each frequency when 17.6-volt level is maintained.



NOTE: FIXED RESISTORS ARE *OHMITE "LITTLE DEVIL"* COMPOSITION UNITS.

Figure 14

SCHEMATIC, KILOWATT DUMMY LOAD

31-4 Measurement of Circuit Constants

The measurement of the resistance, capacitance, inductance, and Q (figure of merit) of the components used in communications work can be divided into three general methods: the impedance method, the substitution or resonance method, and the bridge method.

The Impedance Method The *impedance method* of measuring inductance and capacitance can be likened to the ohmmeter method for measuring re-

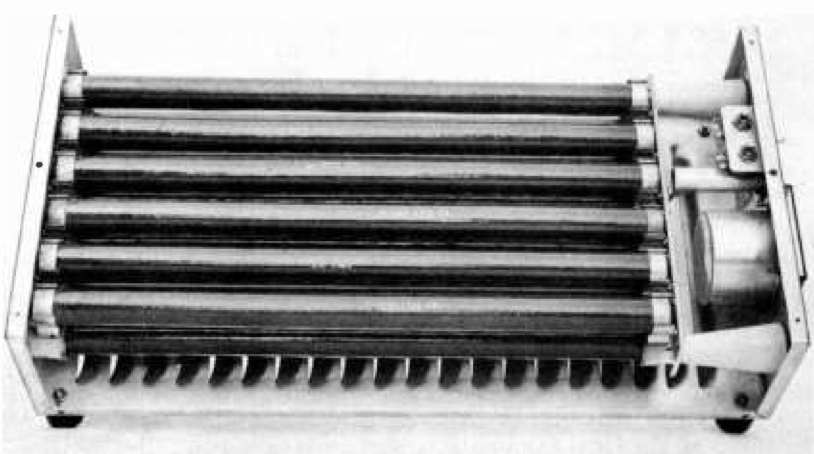


Figure 15

DUMMY-LOAD ASSEMBLY

Twelve Globar resistors (surplus) are mounted to aluminum "Tee" stock, six to a side, in fuse clips. Right end is supported by ceramic pillars from front panel. Probe, meter, and potentiometers are at right.

sistance. An a-c voltmeter, or milliammeter in series with a resistor, is connected in series with the inductance or capacitance to be measured and the a-c line. The reading of the meter will be inversely proportional to the impedance of the component being measured. After the meter has been calibrated it will be possible to obtain the approximate value of the impedance directly from the scale of the meter. If the component is a capacitor, the value of impedance may be taken as its reactance at the measurement frequency and the capacitance determined accordingly. But the d-c resistance of an inductor must also be taken into consideration in determining its inductance. After the d-c resistance and the impedance have been determined, the reactance may be determined from the formula: $X_L = \sqrt{Z^2 - R^2}$. Then the inductance may be determined from: L equals $X_L/2\pi f$.

The Substitution Method The *substitution method* is a satisfactory system for obtaining the inductance or capacitance of high-frequency components. A large variable capacitor with a good dial having an accurate calibration curve is a necessity for making determinations by this method. If an unknown inductor is to be measured, it is connected in parallel with the standard capacitor and the combination tuned accurately to some known frequency. This tuning may be accomplished either by using the tuned circuit as a wavemeter and coupling it to the tuned circuit of a reference oscillator, or by using the tuned circuit in the controlling position of a two terminal oscillator such as a dynatron or transitron. The capacitance required to tune this first frequency is then noted as C_1. The circuit or the oscillator is then tuned to the *second harmonic* of this first frequency and the amount of capacitance again noted, this time as C_2. Then the distributed capacitance across the coil (including all stray capacitances) is equal to: $C_0 = (C_1 - 4C_2)/3$.

This value of distributed capacitance is then substituted in the following formula along with the value of the standard capacitance for either of the two frequencies of measurement:

$$L = \frac{1}{4\pi^2 f_1^2 (C_1 + C_0)}$$

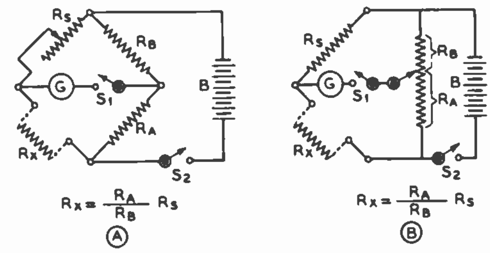


Figure 16

TWO WHEATSTONE BRIDGE CIRCUITS

These circuits are used for the measurement of d-c resistance. In A the "ratio arms" R_B and R_A are fixed and balancing of the bridge is accomplished by variation of the standard R_S. The standard in this case usually consists of a decade box giving resistance in 1-ohm steps from 0 to 1110 or to 11,110 ohms. In B a fixed standard is used for each range and the ratio arm is varied to obtain balance. A calibrated slide wire or potentiometer calibrated by resistance in terms of degrees is usually employed as R_A and R_B. It will be noticed that the formula for determining the unknown resistance from the known is the same in either case.

The determination of an unknown capacitance is somewhat less complicated than the above. A tuned circuit including a coil, the unknown capacitor and the standard capacitor, all in parallel, is resonated to some convenient frequency. The capacitance of the standard capacitor is noted. Then the unknown capacitor is removed and the circuit re-resonated by means of the standard capacitor. The difference between the two readings of the standard capacitor is then equal to the capacitance of the unknown capacitor.

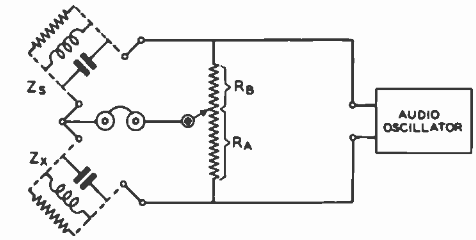
31-5 Measurements with a Bridge

Experience has shown that one of the most satisfactory methods for measuring circuit constants (resistance, capacitance, and inductance) at audio frequencies is by means of the a-c bridge. The *Wheatstone (d-c) bridge* is also one of the most accurate methods for the measurement of d-c resistance. With a simple bridge of the type shown at figure 16A it is entirely practical to obtain d-c resistance determinations accurate to four significant figures. With an a-c bridge operating within its normal rating as to frequency and range of measurement it is possible to obtain results accurate to three significant figures.

Both the a-c and the d-c bridges consist of a source of energy, a standard or reference of measurement, a means of balancing this standard against the unknown, and a means of indicating when this balance has been reached. The source of energy in the d-c bridge is a battery; the indicator is a sensitive galvanometer. In the a-c bridge the source of energy is an audio oscillator (usually in the vicinity of 1000 Hz), and the indicator is usually a pair of headphones. The standard for the d-c bridge is a resistance, usually in the form of a decade box. Standards for the a-c bridge can be resistance, capacitance, and inductance in varying forms.

Figure 16 shows two general types of the Wheatstone or d-c bridge. In A the so-called "ratio arms" (R_A and R_B) are fixed (usually in a ratio of 1-to-1, 1-to-10, 1-to-100, or 1-to-1000) and the standard resistor (R_S) is varied until the bridge is in balance. In commercially manufactured bridges there are usually two or more buttons on the galvanometer for progressively increasing its sensitivity as balance is approached. Figure 16B is the *slide-wire* type of bridge in which fixed standards are used and the ratio arm is continuously variable. The slide wire may actually consist of a moving contact along a length of wire of uniform cross section in which case the ratio of R_A to R_B may be read off directly in centimeters or inches, or in degrees of rotation if the slide wire is bent around a circular former. Alternatively, the slide wire may consist of a linear-wound potentiometer with its dial calibrated in degrees or in resistance from each end.

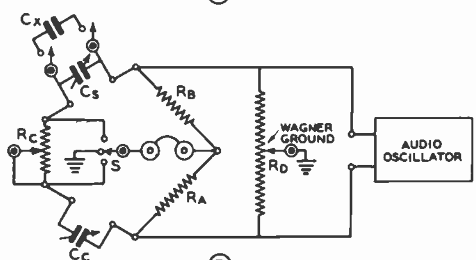
Figure 17A shows a simple type of a-c bridge for the measurement of capacitance and inductance. It can also, if desired, be used for the measurement of resistance. It is necessary with this type of bridge to use a standard which presents the same type of impedance as the unknown being measured: resistance standard for a resistance measurement, capacitance standard for capacitance, and inductance standard for inductance determination.



$Z_X = \frac{R_A}{R_B} Z_S$ $\quad X_X = \frac{R_A}{R_B} X_S$ $\quad R_X = \frac{R_A}{R_B} R_S$

Z_X = IMPEDANCE BEING MEASURED, R_S = RESISTANCE COMPONENT OF Z_S
Z_S = IMPEDANCE OF STANDARD, X_X = REACTANCE COMPONENT OF Z_X
R_X = RESISTANCE COMPONENT OF Z_X, X_S = REACTANCE COMPONENT OF Z_S

(A)



(B)

Figure 17

TWO A-C BRIDGE CIRCUITS

The operation of these bridges is essentially the same as those of figure 16 except that a.c. is fed into the bridge instead of d.c. and a pair of phones is used as the indicator instead of the galvanometer. The bridge shown at A can be used for the measurement of resistance, but it is usually used for the measurement of the impedance and reactance of coils and capacitors at frequencies from 200 to 1000 Hz. The bridge shown at B is used for the measurement of small values of capacitance by the substitution method. Full description of the operation of both bridges is given in the accompanying text.

For measurement of capacitances from a few picofarads to about 0.001 μfd, a *Wagner-grounded substitution capacitance bridge* of the type shown in figure 17B will be found satisfactory. The ratio arms R_A and R_B should be of the same value within 1 percent; any value between 2500 and 10,000 ohms for both will be satisfactory. The two resistors R_C and R_D should be 1000-ohm wirewound potentiometers. C_S should be a straight-line capacitance capacitor with an accurate vernier dial; 500 to 1000 pf will be satisfactory. C_C can be a two- or three-gang broadcast capacitor from 700 to 1000 pf maximum capacitance.

The procedure for making a measurement is as follows: The unknown capacitor C_X is placed in parallel with the standard capacitor C_S. The *Wagner ground* (R_D) is varied back and forth a small amount from the center of its range until no signal is heard in the phones with the switch (S) in the center position. Then the switch (S) is placed in either of the two outside positions, C_C is adjusted to a capacitance somewhat greater than the assumed value of the unknown C_X, and the bridge is brought into balance by variation of the standard capacitor (C_S). It may be necessary to cut some resistance in at R_C and to switch to the other outside position of S before an exact balance can be obtained. The setting of C_S is then noted, C_X is removed from the circuit (but the leads which went to it are not changed in any way which would alter their mutual capacitance), and C_S is readjusted until balance is again obtained. The difference in the two settings of C_S is equal to the capacitance of the unknown capacitor C_X.

31-6 A Transistorized Capacitance Meter

Described in this section is a simple and inexpensive transistorized capacitance meter using a single unijunction transistor (figure 18). The instrument measures capacitance values ranging in size from a few pf up to 0.1 μfd in four ranges.

The capacitance meter uses a simple RC relaxation oscillator to generate square audio-frequency pulses (figure 19). The unknown capacitor is pulse-charged through a diode (D_1) and is discharged through the indicating meter and its series resistance. The discharge current is directly proportional to the value of capacitance under test provided the frequency and amplitude of the charging pulses are held constant.

The frequency of the RC oscillator is switched to provide four capacitance ranges:

Figure 18

TRANSISTORIZED CAPACITANCE METER

This small, inexpensive test instrument measures capacitance directly up to 0.1 µfd. Using a small self-contained battery, the tester employs a single unijunction transistor in a simple oscillator counter circuit. The "unknown" terminals are at the right of the panel, with the range switch and the push-to-test button to the left. Two jack plugs are made up with "standard" capacitors. The top plug has two alligator clips soldered to jack tips which may be inserted in the tester. Calibration potentiometers are adjusted through the small holes in the side of the case.

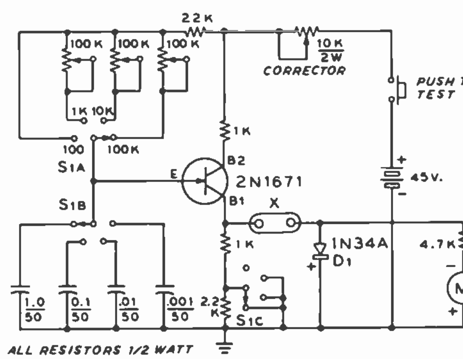


Figure 19

SCHEMATIC OF CAPACITANCE METER

S_1A, B, C—Three-pole, 4-position. Centralab PA-1007
M—0-50 d-c microamperes. Simpson model 49 (4½")

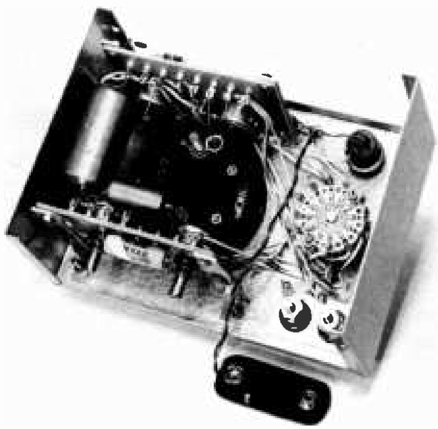


Figure 20

INTERIOR VIEW OF CAPACITANCE METER

The smaller components are mounted to phenolic terminal strips held in place by angle brackets fastened to the meter bolts. The battery is bolted to the rear of the box and connections to the instrument are made via the battery clip in the foreground.

100 pf, 1000 pf, .01 μfd, and .1 μfd. A 0 to 50 d-c microammeter serves as a read-out device so the reading of the meter must be multiplied by two to obtain the value of measured capacitance. The base resistance of the unijunction transistor is switched in order to achieve full-scale meter deflection on the 100-pf range.

Capacitance Meter Construction The instrument is built in an aluminum box measuring 3" × 5" × 7" (figures 18 and 20). Small components are mounted on two phenolic boards which are supported on either side of the meter by small metal angle brackets. The three 100K calibration potentiometers and the 10K corrector potentiometer are mounted on these boards so that the slotted shafts may be adjusted through small holes drilled in the sides of the case. The unijunction transistor is mounted in place by its leads. The battery is clamped to the rear half of the case with a small aluminum bracket.

Meter Calibration When the wiring has been completed and checked, the capacitance meter may be calibrated with the aid of capacitors of known value. Ten percent tolerance paper or mica capacitors that have been checked on a capacitance bridge of good accuracy may be used, or a set of one percent tolerance capacitors may be used as "standards." A 100-pf standard capacitor is placed between the "unknown" terminals of the capacitance meter (marked X on the schematic) and the meter switch is set to the 100-pf range. The *press to test* button is depressed and the *corrector* potentiometer is adjusted for full-scale meter deflection. The 1000-pf capacitor is now used on the next range to achieve full-scale deflection when the 100K *range-calibration* potentiometer is properly adjusted. The two higher ranges are adjusted in a like manner with standard capacitors of .01 μfd and .1 μfd. The *corrector* potentiometer should be adjusted only on the 100-pf range and should not be retouched until recalibration is necessary as a result of low battery voltage. Normal battery drain is about 5 milliamperes.

31-7 Frequency Measurements

All frequency measurement within the United States is based on the transmissions of *Station WWV* of the *National Bureau of Standards*. This station operates continuously on frequencies of 2.5, 5, 10, 15, 20, and 25 MHz and on certain low frequencies. The carriers of those frequencies below 25 MHz are modulated alternately by a 440-Hz tone or a 600-Hz tone for periods of four minutes each. This tone is interrupted at the beginning of the 58th minute of each hour and each five minutes thereafter for a period of precisely two minutes. *Greenwich Civil Time* is given in code during these one-minute intervals, followed by a voice announcement. The accuracy of all radio and audio frequencies is better than one part in 100,000,000. A 5000 microsecond pulse (5 cycles of a 1000-Hz wave) may be heard as a tick for every second except the 59th second of each minute.

These standard-frequency transmisions of station WWV may be used for accurately determining the limits of the various amateur bands with the aid of the station com-

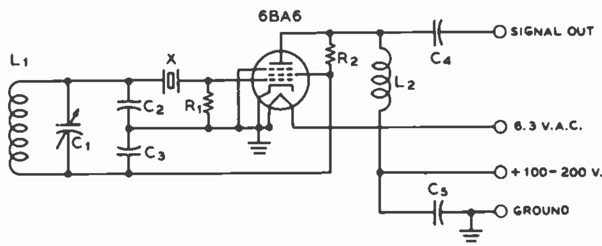


Figure 21

SCHEMATIC OF A 100-kHz FREQUENCY SPOTTER

munications receiver and a 50 kHz, 100-kHz, or 200-kHz band-edge spotter. The low-frequency oscillator may be self-excited if desired, but low-frequency-standard crystals have become so relatively inexpensive that a reference crystal may be purchased for very little more than the cost of the components for a self-excited oscillator. The crystal has the additional advantage that it may be once set so that its harmonics are at zero beat with WWV and then left with only an occasional check to see that the frequency has not drifted more than a few Hz. The self-excited oscillator, on the other hand, must be monitored very frequently to ensure that it is on frequency.

Using a Frequency Spotter To use a *frequency spotter* it is only necessary to couple the output of the oscillator unit to the antenna terminal of the receiver through a very small capacitance such as might be made by twisting two pieces of insulated hookup wire together. Station WWV is then tuned in on one of its harmonics, 15 MHz will usually be best in the daytime and 5 or 10 MHz at night, and the trimmer adjustment on the oscillator is varied until zero beat is obtained between the harmonic of the oscillator and WWV. With a crystal reference oscillator no difficulty will be had with using the wrong harmonic of the oscillator to obtain the beat, but with a self-excited oscillator it will be wise to ensure that the reference oscillator is operating exactly on 50, 100, or 200 kHz (whichever frequency has been chosen) by making sure that zero beat is obtained simultaneously on all the frequencies of WWV that can be heard, and by noting whether or not the harmonics of the oscillator in the amateur bands fall on the approximate calibration marks of the receiver.

A simple frequency spotter is diagramed in figure 21.

31-8 Antenna and Transmission-Line Measurements

The degree of adjustment of any amateur antenna can be judged by the study of the standing-wave ratio on the transmission line feeding the antenna. Various types of instruments have been designed to measure the SWR present on the transmission line, or to measure the actual radiation resistance of the antenna in question. The most important of these instruments are the *slotted line*, the *bridge-type SWR meter*, and the *antennascope*.

The Slotted Line It is obviously impractical to measure the standing-wave ratio in a length of coaxial line since the voltages and currents inside the line are completely shielded by the outer conductor of the cable. Hence it is necessary to insert some type of instrument into a section of the line in order to be able to ascertain the conditions which are taking place inside the shielded line. Where measurements of a high degree of accuracy are required, the *slotted line* is the instrument most frequently used. Such an instrument, diagramed in figure 22, is an item of test equipment which could be constructed in a home workshop which includes a lathe and other metal-

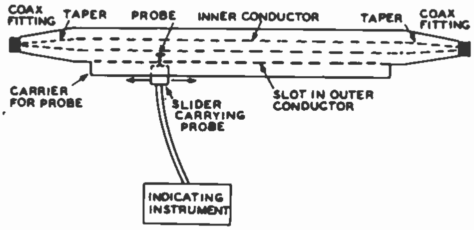


Figure 22

DIAGRAMATIC REPRESENTATION OF A SLOTTED LINE

The conductor ratios in the slotted line, including the tapered end sections should be such that the characteristic impedance of the equipment is the same as that of the transmission line with which the equipment is to be used. The indicating instrument may be operated by the d-c output of the rectifier coupled to the probe, or it may be operated by the a-c components of the rectified signal if the signal generator or transmitter is amplitude-modulated at a constant percentage.

working tools. Commercially built slotted lines are very expensive since they are constructed with a high degree of accuracy for precise laboratory work. The slotted line consists essentially of a section of air-dielectric line having the same characteristic impedance as the transmission line into which it is inserted. Tapered fittings for the transmission line connectors at each end of the slotted line usually are required due to differences in the diameters of the slotted line and the line into which it is inserted. A narrow slot from ⅛-inch to ¼-inch in width is cut into the outer conductor of the line. A probe then is inserted into the slot so that it is coupled to the field inside the line. Some sort of accurately machined track or lead screw must be provided to ensure that the probe maintains a constant spacing from the inner conductor as it is moved from one end of the slotted line to the other. The probe usually includes some type of rectifving element whose output is fed to an indicating instrument alongside the slotted line.

The unfortunate part of the slotted-line system of measurement is that the line must be somewhat over one-half wavelength long at the test frequency, and for best results should be a full wavelength long. This requirement is easily met at frequencies of 420 MHz and above where a full wavelength is 28 inches or less. But for the lower frequencies such an instrument is mechanically impractical.

Bridge-Type Standing-Wave Indicators The bridge type of standing-wave indicator is used quite generally for making measurements on commercial coaxial transmission lines. A simplified version is available from *M. C. Jones Electronics Co.*, Bristol, Conn. ("Micro-Match").

One type of bridge standing-wave indicator is diagramed in figure 23. This type of instrument compares the electrical impedance of the transmission line with that of the resistor R_3 which is included within the unit. Experience with such units has shown that the resistor R_3 should be a good grade of noninductive carbon type. The *Ohmite "Little Devil"* type resistor in the 2-watt rating has given good performance. The resistance at R_3 should be equal to the characteristic impedance of the antenna transmission line. In other words, this resistor should have a value of 52 ohms for lines having this characteristic impedance such

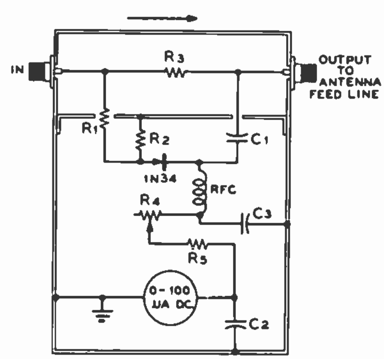


Figure 23

RESISTOR-BRIDGE STANDING-WAVE INDICATOR

This type of test equipment is suitable for use with coaxial feed lines.

C_1—0.001-µfd midget ceramic capacitor
C_2, C_3—.001-µfd disc ceramic
R_1, R_2—22-ohm 2-watt carbon resistors
R_3—Resistor equal in resistance to the characteristic impedance of the coaxial transmission line to be used (1 watt)
R_4—5000-ohm wirewound potentiometer
R_5—10,000-ohm 1-watt resistor
RFC—R-f choke suitable for operation at the measurement frequency

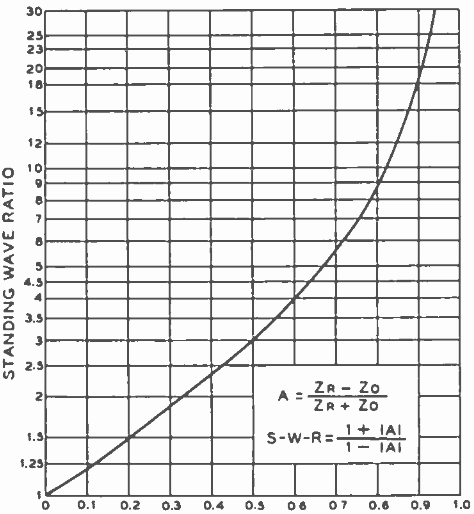


Figure 24

RELATION BETWEEN STANDING-WAVE RATIO AND REFLECTION COEFFICIENT

This chart may be used to convert reflection-coefficient indications such as are obtained with a bridge-type standing-wave indicator or an indicating twin lamp into values of standing-wave ratio.

as RG-8/U and RG-58/U. For use with lines having a nominal characteristic impedance of 70 ohms, a selected "68-ohm" resistor having an actual resistance of 70 ohms may be used.

Balance within the equipment is checked by mounting a resistor, equal in value to the nominal characteristic impedance of the line to be used, on a coaxial plug of the type used on the end of the antenna feed line. Then this plug is inserted into the *input* receptacle of the instrument and a power of 2 to 4 watts applied to the *output* receptacle on the desired frequency of operation. Note that the signal is passed through the bridge in the direction opposite to normal for this test. The resistor R_4 is adjusted for full-scale deflection on the 0-100 microammeter. Then the plugs are reversed so that the test signal passes through the instrument in the direction indicated by the arrow on figure 23, and the power level is maintained the same as before. If the test resistor is matched to R_3, and stray capacitances have been held to low values, the indication on the milliammeter will be very small. The test plug with its resistor is removed and the plug for the antenna transmission line is inserted. The meter indication now will read the reflection coefficient which exists on the antenna transmission line at the point where the indicator has been inserted. From this reading of reflection coefficient the actual standing-wave ratio on the transmission line may be determined by reference to the chart of figure 24.

Measurements of this type are quite helpful in determining whether or not the antenna is presenting a good impedance match to the transmission line being used to feed it. However, a test instrument of the type shown in figure 23 must be inserted into the line for a measurement, and then re-

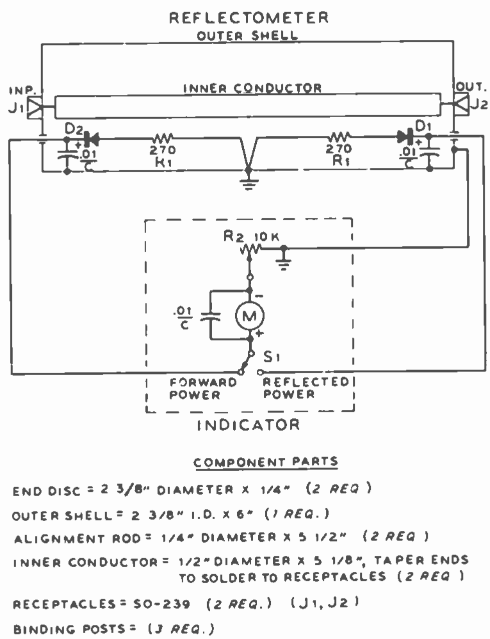


Figure 25

SCHEMATIC, REFLECTOMETER

D_1, D_2—Crystal diode, 1N34A or 1N82
R_1—270 ohm, 1-watt composition resistor IRC type BTA, matched pair
M—0-1 d-c milliammeter
J_1, J_2—Coaxial receptacle, SO-239

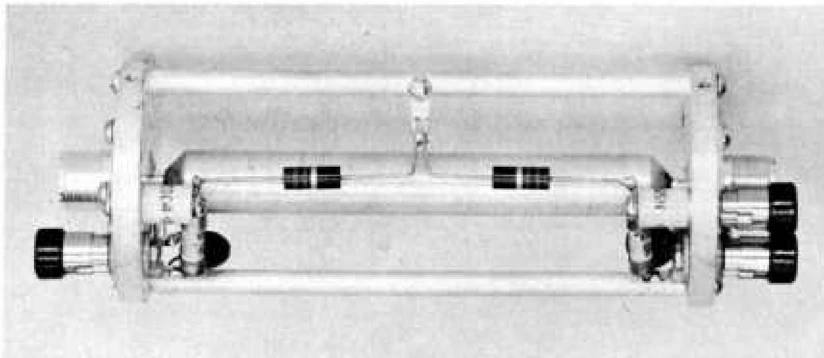


Figure 26

INTERIOR VIEW OF COAXIAL REFLECTOMETER

The reflectometer is a short section of transmission line containing two r-f voltmeters. Center conductor of line is a section of brass rod soldered to center pins of input and output receptacles. At either end of unit are the crystal diodes, bypass capacitors and terminals. Diode load resistors are at center of instrument, grounded to brass alignment rod.

moved from the line when the equipment is to be operated. Also, the power input to the line feeding the input terminal of the standing-wave indicator must not exceed 4 watts. The power level which the unit can accept is determined by the dissipation limitation of resistors R_1 plus R_2.

It is also important, for satisfactory operation of the test unit, that resistors R_1 and R_2 be exactly equal in value. The actual resistance of these two is not critically important, and deviations up to 10 percent from the value given in figure 23 will be satisfactory. But the two resistors must have the same value, whether they are both 21 ohms or 24 ohms, or some value in between.

31-9 A Simple Coaxial Reflectometer

The *reflectometer* is a short section of coaxial transmission line containing two r-f voltmeters. One voltmeter reads the *incident component of voltage* in the line, and the other reads the *reflected component*. The magnitude of standing-wave ratio on the transmission line is the ratio of the incident component to the reflected component, as shown in figure 24. In actual use, calibration of the reflectometer is not required since the relative reading of reflected power indicates the degree of match or mismatch and all antenna and transmission-line adjustments should be conducted so as to make this reading as low as possible, regardless of its absolute value.

The actual meter readings obtained from the device are a function of the operating frequency, the sensitivity of the instrument being a function of transmitter power, increasing rapidly as the frequency of operation is increased. However, the reflectometer is invaluable in that it may be left permanently in the transmission line, regardless of the power-output level of the transmitter. It will indicate the degree of reflected power in the antenna system, and at the same time provide a visual indication of the power output of the transmitter.

Reflectometer Circuit The circuit and assembly information for the reflectometer are given in figure 25. Two diode voltmeters are coupled back-to-back to a short length of transmission line. The combined inductive and capacitive pickup between each voltmeter and the line is such that the incident component of the line voltage is balanced out in one case and the inductive component is balanced out in the other case. Each voltmeter, therefore, reads only one wave-component. Careful attention to physical symmetry of the assembly ensures accurate and complete separation of the voltage components by the two voltmeters. The outputs of the two voltmeters may be selected and read on an external meter connected to the terminal posts of the reflectometer.

Each r-f voltmeter is composed of a load resistor and a pickup loop. The pickup loop is positioned parallel to a section of transmission line permitting both inductive and capacitive coupling to exist between the center conductor of the line and the loop. The dimensions of the center conductor and the outer shield of the reflectometer are chosen so that the instrument impedance closely matches that of the transmission line.

Reflectometer Construction A view of the interior of the reflectometer is shown in figure 26. The coaxial input and output connectors of the instrument are mounted on machined brass discs that are held in place by brass alignment rods, tapped at each end. The center conductor is machined from a short section of brass rod, tapered and drilled at each end to fit over the center pin of each coaxial receptacle. The end discs, the rods, and the center conductor should be silver plated before assembly. When the center conductor is placed in position, it is soldered at each end to the center pin of the coaxial receptacles.

One of the alignment rods is drilled and tapped for a 6-32 bolt at the midpoint, and the end discs are drilled to hold ½-inch ceramic insulators and binding posts, as shown in the photograph. The load resistors, crystal diodes, and bypass capacitors are finally mounted in the assembly as the last step.

The two load resistors should be measured on an ohmmeter to ensure that the resistance values are equal. The exact value of resistance is unimportant as long as the two resistors are equal. The diodes should also be checked on an ohmmeter to make sure that the front resistances and back resistances are balanced between the units. Care should be taken during soldering to ensure the diodes and resistors are not overheated. Observe that the resistor leads are of equal length and that each half of the assembly is a mirror-image of the other half. The body of the resistor is spaced about ⅛-inch away from the center conductor.

Testing the Reflectometer The instrument can be adjusted on the 28 MHz band. An r-f source of a few watts and nonreactive load are required. The construction of the reflectometer is such that it will work well with either 52- or 72-ohm coaxial transmission lines. A suitable dummy load for the 52-ohm line can be made of four 220-ohm, 2-watt composition resistors (*Ohmite "Little Devil"*) connected in parallel. Clip the leads of the resistors short and mount them on a coaxial plug. This assembly provides an eight watt, 55-ohm load, suitable for use at 30 MHz. If an accurate ohmmeter is at hand, the resistors may be hand picked to obtain four 208-ohm units, thus making the dummy-load resistors exactly 52 ohms. For all practical purposes, the 55-ohm load is satisfactory. A 75-ohm, eight-watt load resistor may be made of four 300-ohm, 2-watt composition resistors connected in parallel.

R-f power is coupled to the reflectometer and the dummy load is placed in the "output" receptacle. The indicator meter is switched to the "reflected-power" position. The meter reading should be almost zero. It may be brought to zero by removing the case of the instrument and adjusting the position of the load resistor. The actual length of wire in the resistor lead and its positioning determine the meter null. Replace the case before power is applied to the reflectometer. The reflectometer is now reversed and power is applied to the "output" receptacle, with a dummy load attached to the "input" receptacle. The second voltmeter (forward power) is adjusted for a null reading of the meter in the same manner.

If a reflected reading of zero is not obtainable, the harmonic content of the r-f source might be causing a slight residual meter reading. Coupling the reflectometer to the r-f source through a tuned circuit ("antenna tuner") will remove the offending harmonic and permit an accurate null indication. Be sure to hold the r-f input power to a low value to prevent overheating the dummy-load resistors.

Using the Reflectometer The bridge may be used up to 150 MHz. It is placed in the transmission line at a convenient point, preferably *before* any tuner, balun, or TVI filter. The indicator should be set to read forward power, with a maximum of resistance in the circuit. Power is applied and the indicator resistor is adjusted for a full-scale reading. The switch is then thrown to read reflected power (indicated as A, figure 24). Assume that the forward power meter reading is 1.0 and the reflected power reading is 0.5. Substituting these values in the SWR formula of figure 24 shows the SWR to be 3. If forward power is always set to 1.0 on the meter, the reflected power (A) can be read directly from the curve of figure 24 with little error.

If the meter is adjusted so as to provide a half-scale reading of the forward power, the reflectometer may be used as a transmitter power-output meter. Tuning adjustments may then be undertaken to provide greatest meter reading.

31-10 Measurements on Balanced Transmission Line

Measurements made on balanced transmission lines may be conducted in the same manner as those made on coaxial lines. In the case of the coaxial lines, care must be taken to prevent flow of r-f current on the outer surface of the line as this unwanted component will introduce errors in measurements made on the line. In like fashion, the currents in a balanced transmission line must be 180 degrees out of phase and balanced with respect to ground in order to obtain a realistic relationship between incident and reflected power. This situation is not always easy to obtain in practice because of the proximity effects of metallic objects or the earth to the transmission line. All transmission-line measurements, therefore, should be conducted with realization of the physical limitations of the equipment and the measuring technique that is being used.

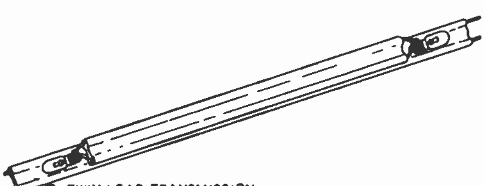


Figure 27

SKETCH OF THE TWIN-LAMP TYPE OF SWR INDICATOR

The short section of line with lamps at each end usually is taped to the main transmission line with plastic electrical tape.

Figure 28

OPERATION OF THE TWIN-LAMP INDICATOR

Showing current flow resulting from inductive and capacitive fields in a "twin lamp" attached to a line with a low standing-wave ratio.

Measurements on Molded Parallel-Wire Lines One of the most satisfactory and least expensive devices for obtaining a rough idea of the standing-wave ratio on a transmission line of the molded parallel-wire type is the *twin-lamp*. This ingenious instrument may be constructed of new components for a total cost of about 25 cents; this fact alone places the twin-lamp in a class by itself as far as test instruments are concerned.

Figure 27 shows a sketch of a twin-lamp indicator. The indicating portion of the system consists merely of a length of 300-ohm twin-lead about 10 inches long with a dial lamp at each end. In the unit illustrated the dial lamps are standard 6.3-volt 150-ma bayonet-base lamps. The lamps are soldered to the two leads at each end of the short section of twin-lead.

To make a measurement the short section of line with the lamps at each end is merely taped to the section of twin-lead (or other similar transmission line) running from the transmitter or from the antenna changeover relay to the antenna system. When there are no standing waves on the antenna transmission line the lamp toward the transmitter will light while the one toward the antenna will not light. With 300-ohm twin-lead running from the antenna changeover relay to the antenna, and with about 200 watts input on the 28-MHz band, the dial lamp toward the transmitter will light nearly to full brilliance. With a standing-wave ratio of about 1.5 to 1 on the transmission line to the antenna the lamp toward the antenna will just begin to light. With a high standing-wave ratio on the antenna feed line both lamps will light nearly to full brilliance. Hence the instrument gives an indication of relatively low standing waves, but when the standing-wave ratio is high the twin-lamp merely indicates that they are high without giving any idea of the actual magnitude.

A Balanced SWR Bridge Two standing-wave indicators may be placed back-to-back to form an SWR bridge capable of being used on two-wire balanced transmission lines (figure 29). When the dual bridge is balanced the meter reading is zero. This state is reached only when the line currents are equal and 180 degrees out of phase and the SWR is unity. When the line currents are balanced and 180 degrees out of phase, the balanced bridge will read the true value of standing-wave ratio on the line. If these conditions are not met, the reading is relative, giving an indication of the degree of mismatch on the line. This handicap is not important since the relative, not the absolute, degree of mismatch is sufficient for transmission-line adjustments to be made.

The bridge may be calibrated with a grid-dip oscillator, and with various values of carbon resistors used as a load.

31-11 The Antennascope

The *Antennascope* is a modified SWR bridge in which one leg of the bridge is composed of a noninductive variable resistor. This resistor is calibrated in ohms, and when its setting is equal to the radiation resistance of the antenna under test, the bridge is in a balanced state. If a sensitive voltmeter is connected across the bridge, it will indicate a voltage null at bridge balance. The radiation resistance of the antenna may then be read directly from the calibrated resistor of the instrument.

When the antenna under test is in a nonresonant or reactive state, the null indication on the meter of the Antennascope will be incomplete. The frequency of the exciting signal must then be moved to the resonant frequency of the antenna to obtain accurate readings of radiation resistance from the dial of the instrument.

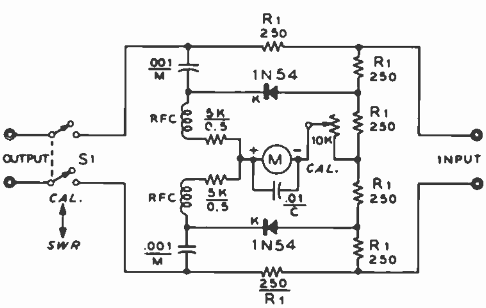


Figure 29

SCHEMATIC OF BRIDGE FOR BALANCED LINES

M—0-200 d-c microammeter
R₁—Note: Six 250-ohm resistors are composition, noninductive units. IRC type BT, or Ohmite "Little Devil" 1-watt resistors may be used. (see text)
S₁—Dpdt rotary switch. Centralab type 1464

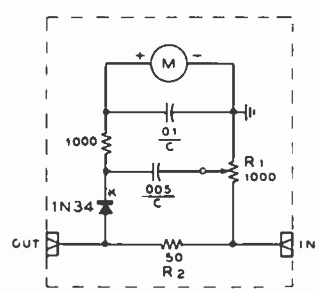


Figure 30

SCHEMATIC, ANTENNASCOPE

R₁—1000-ohm composition potentiometer Ohmite type AB or Allen Bradley type J, linear taper
R₂—50-ohm, 1-watt composition resistor, IRC type BT, or Ohmite "Little Devil" (see text)
M—0-200 d-c microammeter

Figure 31

THE ANTENNASCOPE

The radiation resistance of r-f loads connected across the output receptacle may be quickly determined by a direct dial reading. The Antennascope may be driven with a grid-dip oscillator, it covers r-f impedance range of 5 to 1000 ohms.

A typical Antennascope is shown in figures 31 and 32, and the schematic is shown in figure 30. A 1000-ohm noninductive carbon potentiometer serves as the variable leg of the bridge. The other legs are composed of the 50-ohm composition resistor and the radiation resistance of the antenna. If the radiation resistance of the external load or antenna is 50 ohms, and the potentiometer is set at midscale, the bridge is in balance, and the diode voltmeter will read zero. If the radiation resistance of the antenna is any value other than 50 ohms, the bridge may be balanced to this new value by varying the position of the potentiometer. Bridge balance may be obtained with nonreactive loads in the range of 5 ohms to 1000 ohms with this simple circuit. When measurements are conducted at the resonant frequency of the antenna system the radiation resistance of the installation may be read directly from the calibrated dial of the Antennascope. Conversely, a null reading of the instrument will occur at the resonant frequency, which may easily be found with the aid of a calibrated receiver or frequency meter.

Constructing the Antennascope The Antennascope is built within a sheet-metal case measuring 3″ × 6″ × 2″. The indicating meter is placed at the top of the case, and the r-f bridge occupies the lower portion of the box. The input and output coaxial fittings are mounted on each side of the box and the noninductive 50-ohm resistor is soldered between the center terminals of the receptacles.

The calibrating potentiometer (R_1) is mounted on a phenolic plate placed over a ¾-inch hole drilled in the front of the box. This reduces the capacity to ground of the potentiometer to a minimum. Placement of the small components within the box may be seen in figure 32. Care should be taken to mount the crystal diode at right angles to the 50 ohm resistor to reduce capacity coupling between the components.

The upper frequency limit of accuracy of the Antennascope is determined by the assembly technique. The unit shown will work with good accuracy to approximately 100 MHz. Above this frequency, the self-inductance of the leads prevents a perfect null from being obtained. For operation in the vhf region, it would be wise to rearrange the components to reduce lead length to an absolute minimum, and to use ¼-inch copper strap for the r-f leads instead of wire.

Testing the Antennascope When the instrument is completed, a grid-dip meter may be coupled to the input receptacle of the Antennascope by means of a two-turn link. The frequency of excitation should be in the 10- to 20-MHz region. Coupling should be adjusted to obtain a half-

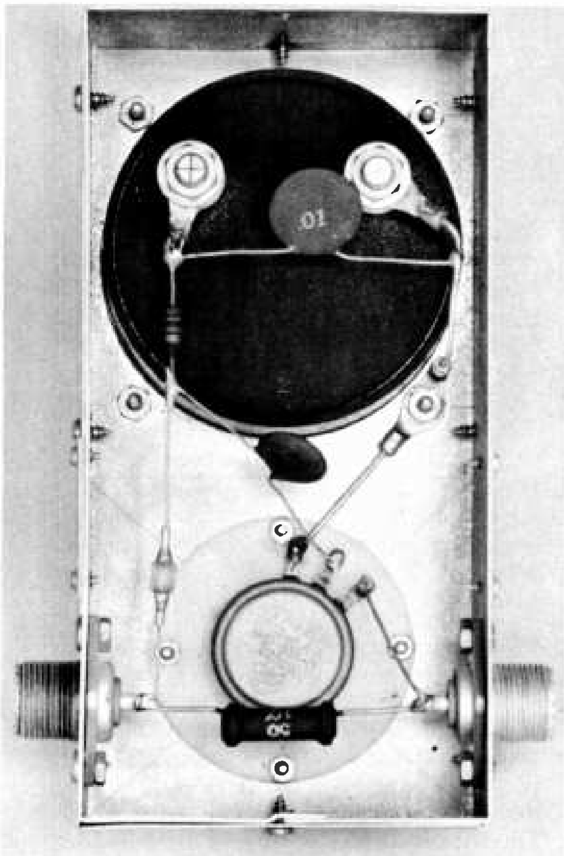


Figure 32

PLACEMENT OF PARTS WITHIN THE ANTENNASCOPE

With the length of leads shown this model is useful up to about 100 MHz. Crystal diode should be placed at right angles to 50-ohm composition resistor.

scale reading of the meter. Various values of 1-watt composition resistors up to 1000 ohms are then plugged into the "output" coaxial receptacle and the potentiometer is adjusted for a null on the meter. The settings of the potentiometer may now be calibrated in terms of the load resistor, the null position indicating the value of the test resistor. A calibrated scale for the potentiometer should be made, as shown in figure 31.

Using the Antennascope The Antennascope may be driven by a grid-dip oscillator coupled to it by a two turn link. Enough coupling should be used to obtain at least a ¾-scale reading on the meter of the Antennascope with no load connected to the measuring terminals. The Antennascope may be considered to be a low range r-f ohmmeter and may be employed to determine the electrical length of quarter-wave lines, surge impedance of transmission lines, and antenna resonance and radiation resistance.

Figure 33

SIMPLE SILICON CRYSTAL NOISE GENERATOR

In general, the measuring terminals of the Antennascope are connected in series with the load at a point of maximum current. This means the center of a dipole, or the base of a vertical ¼-wave ground-plane antenna. Excitation is supplied to the Antennascope, and the frequency of excitation and the resistance control of the Antennascope are both varied until a complete null is obtained on the indicating meter of the Antennascope. The frequency of the source of excitation is now the resonant frequency of the load, and the radiation resistance of the load may be read on the dial of the Antennascope.

On measurements on 80 and 40 meters, it might be found that it is impossible to obtain a complete null on the Antennascope. This is usually caused by pickup of a nearby broadcast station, the rectified signal of the broadcast station obscuring the null indication on the Antennascope. This action is only noticed when antennas of large size are being checked.

31-12 A Silicon Crystal Noise Generator

The limiting factor in signal reception above 25 MHz is usually the thermal noise generated in the receiver. At any frequency, however, the tuned circuits of the receiver must be accurately aligned for best signal-to-noise ratio. Circuit changes (and even alignment changes) in the r-f stages of a receiver may do much to either enhance or degrade the noise figure of the receiver. It is exceedingly hard to determine whether changes of either alignment or circuitry are really providing a boost in signal-to-noise ratio of the receiver, or are merely increasing the gain (and noise) of the unit.

A simple means of determining the degree of actual sensitivity of a receiver is to inject a minute signal in the input circuit and then measure the amount of this signal that is needed to overcome the inherent receiver noise. The less injected signal needed to override the receiver noise by a certain, fixed amount, the more sensitive the receiver is.

A simple source of minute signal may be obtained from a silicon crystal diode. If a small d-c current is passed through a silicon crystal in the direction of higher resistance,

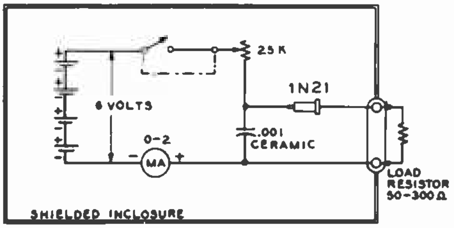


Figure 34

A SILICON CRYSTAL NOISE GENERATOR

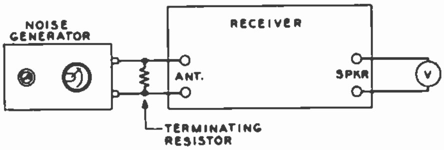


Figure 35

TEST SETUP FOR NOISE GENERATOR

a small but constant r-f noise (or hiss) is generated. The voltage necessary to generate this noise may be obtained from a few flashlight cells. The *noise generator* is a broadband device and requires no tuning. If built with short leads, it may be employed for receiver measurements well above 150 MHz. The noise generator should be used for comparative measurements only, since calibration against a high-quality commercial noise generator is necessary for absolute measurements.

A Practical Noise Generator Shown in figure 33 is a simple silicon crystal noise generator. The schematic of this unit is illustrated in figure 34. The 1N21 crystal and .001-μfd ceramic capacitor are connected in series directly across the output terminals of the instrument. Three small flashlight batteries are wired in series and mounted inside the case, along with the 0-2 d-c milliammeter and the noise-level potentiometer.

To prevent heat damage to the 1N21 crystal during the soldering process, the crystal should be held with a damp rag, and the connections soldered to it quickly with a very hot iron. Across the terminals (and in parallel with the equipment to be attached to the generator) is a 1-watt carbon resistor whose resistance is equal to the impedance level at which measurements are to be made. This will usually be either 50 or 300 ohms. If the noise generator is to be used at one impedance level only, this resistor may be mounted permanently inside of the case.

Using the Noise Generator The test setup for use of the noise generator is shown in figure 35. The noise generator is connected to the antenna terminals of the receiver under test. The receiver is turned on, the avc turned off, and the r-f gain control placed full on. The audio volume control is adjusted until the output meter advances to one-quarter scale. This reading is the basic receiver noise. The noise generator is turned on, and the noise-level potentiometer adjusted until the noise output voltage of the receiver is doubled. The more resistance in the diode circuit, the better is the signal-to-noise ratio of the receiver under test. The r-f circuit of the receiver may be aligned for maximum signal-to-noise ratio with the noise generator by aligning for a 2/1 noise ratio at minimum diode current.

31-13 A Monitor Scope for AM and SSB

This miniature monitor scope is designed to be used with transmitters having a plate supply of 500 to 3000 volts. The scope draws its plate power from the transmitter, thus eliminating the costly and bulky power supply usually required for an instrument of this type.

The circuit of the scope is shown in figure 37. A 2AP1 tube is used, with electrode voltages obtained from a voltage divider which is placed across the transmitter power supply. A 60-Hz sweep circuit is used with return-trace blanking derived from a simple phase-shift circuit. This sweeep is not ideal, but is satisfactory for the intended purpose of the scope. A more sophisticated sweep circuit would require more circuitry and a low-voltage supply, both of which would increase the size, complexity, and cost of the unit.

The cathode circuit is at ground potential and the centering controls are above ground. These two potentiometers are mounted on a phenolic board on the side of the unit, and are adjusted with an *insulated screwdriver.* After adjustment they are covered with a second phenolic board to prevent the user from touching them.

If the scope is to be used with a supply voltage lower than 2000, one of the 1-megohm resistors at the "top" of the divider should be removed. Five hundred to 1000 volts should be measured across the 1-μfd filter capacitor. A v.t.v.m. should be used for this measurement.

The monitor scope is built into a steel chassis measuring 2½" × 5" × 9½", and

Figure 36

This miniature oscilloscope is designed to be used with a-m and SSB transmitters and draws its anode power from the transmitter plate supply. A small steel chassis and bottom plate are used to make the 'scope cabinet.

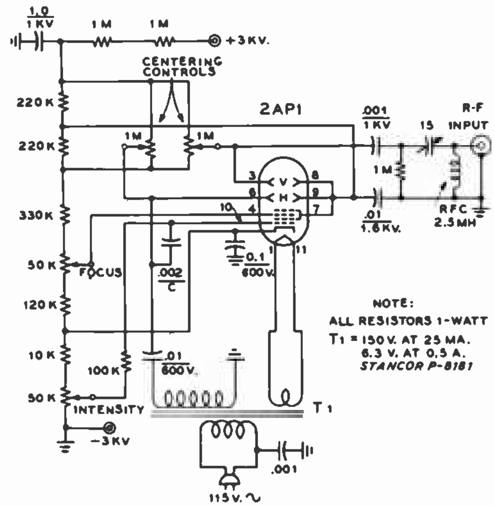


Figure 37

SCHEMATIC, MONITOR OSCILLOSCOPE

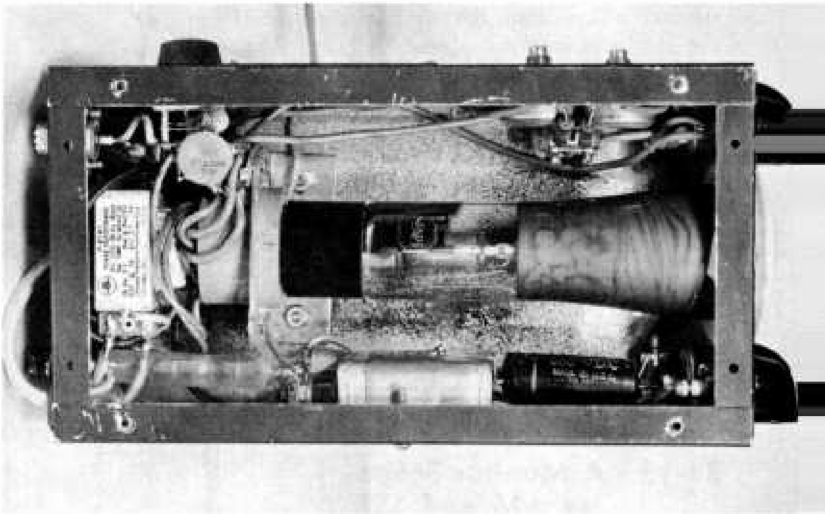


Figure 38

UNDER-CHASSIS VIEW OF OSCILLOSCOPE

Filament transformer is mounted directly behind scope tube so as to not distort electron beam. Centering controls are mounted on phenolic board on chassis edge. Controls are covered after adjustment to eliminate shock hazard.

is designed to sit atop the receiver. R-f connection to the transmitter may be made by inserting a coaxial "Tee" in the transmission line and running a *short* length of similar line from the "Tee" to the scope. Operation of the scope and its uses are covered in chapter 8, "The Oscilloscope."

31-14 An Inexpensive Transistor Checker

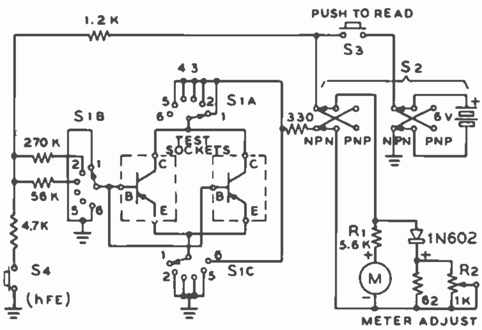
This inexpensive and compact transistor checker will measure the d-c parameters of most common transistors. Either NPN or PNP transistors may be checked. A six-position test switch permits the following parameters to be measured: (1) I_{CO}—D-c collector current when collector junction is reverse-biased and emitter is open circuited; (2) $I_{CO\text{-}20}$—collector current when base current is 20 microamperes; (3) $I_{CO\text{-}100}$—collector current when base current is 100 microamperes; (4) I_{CEO}—collector current when collector junction is reverse-biased and base is open circuited; (5) I_{CES}—collector current when collector junction is reverse-biased and base is shorted to emitter; (6) I_{EO}—emitter current when emitter junction is reverse-biased and collector is open circuited.

Using the data derived from these tests, the *static* and *a-c forward-current transfer ratios* (h_{FE} and h_{fe} respectively) may be computed as shown in figure 40. This data may be compared with the information listed in the transistor data sheet to determine the condition of the transistor under test.

Figure 39

TRANSISTOR CHECKER

An expanded-scale meter provides accurate measurement of transistor parameters in this easily built instrument. Six d-c parameters may be measured and with the data derived from these tests, the a-c forward-current transfer ratios may be computed. Two transistor sockets are mounted at the left of the tester, with the three selector switches to the right. Six-position test switch is mounted to bottom side of box. Tip jacks are placed in parallel with transistor socket terminals to permit test of transistors having unorthodox bases.



TO TEST	WHEN	ADJUST S1 TO	RESULT	
I_{CO}	V_{CB} = 6 V.	1	READ METER DIRECT	
I_C	I_B = 20 μA	2	"	
I_C	I_B = 100 μA	3	"	
I_{CEO}	V_{CE} = 6 V.	4	"	
I_{CES}	V_{CE} = 6 V.	5	"	
I_{EO}	V_{EO} = 6 V.	6	"	
h_{FE}	I_B = 20 μA	2	CALCULATE: $h_{FE} = \frac{I_C}{I_B} = \frac{\text{METER READING}}{20\ \mu A}$	
h_{FE}	I_B = 100 μA	3	CALCULATE: $h_{FE} = \frac{I_C}{I_B} = \frac{\text{METER READING}}{100\ \mu A}$	
h_{fe}	I_B = 20 μA	2	CALCULATE: $h_{fe} = \frac{I_{C1} - I_{C2}}{4 \times 10^{-6}}$	WHERE: I_{C1} = METER READING
h_{fe}	I_B = 100 μA	3	CALCULATE: $h_{fe} = \frac{I_{C1} - I_{C2}}{20 \times 10^{-6}}$	I_{C2} = METER READING WITH S4 CLOSED
6 V. BATTERY	—	4	WITH 150 Ω RESISTOR CONNECTED TO C-E OF TEST SOCKET, FULL-SCALE METER DEFLECTION WILL RESULT WHEN S3 IS PRESSED	

Figure 40

SCHEMATIC OF TRANSISTOR CHECKER

S_1A, B, C—Three-pole, 6-position. Centralab 1021
S_2, S_3, S_4—Centralab type 1400 nonshorting lever switch
M—0-200 d-c microammeter. General Electric or Simpson (4½")

The transistor parameters are read on a 0-100 d-c microammeter placed in a diode network which provides a nearly linear scale to 20 microamperes, a highly compressed scale from 20 microamperes to one milliampere, and a nearly linear scale to full scale at 10 milliamperes. Transistor parameters may be read to within 10 percent on all transistor types from mesas to power alloys without switching meter ranges and without damage to the meter movement or transistor.

By making the sum of the internal resistance of the meter plus series resistor R_1 equal to about 6K, the meter scale is compressed only one microampere at 20 microamperes. *Meter adjust* potentiometer R_2 is set to give 10 milliamperes full-scale meter deflection. The scale may then be calibrated by comparison with a conventional meter.

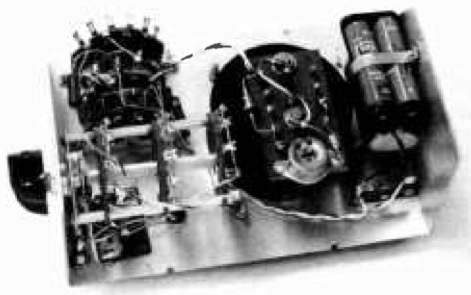


Figure 41

INTERIOR VIEW OF TRANSISTOR CHECKER

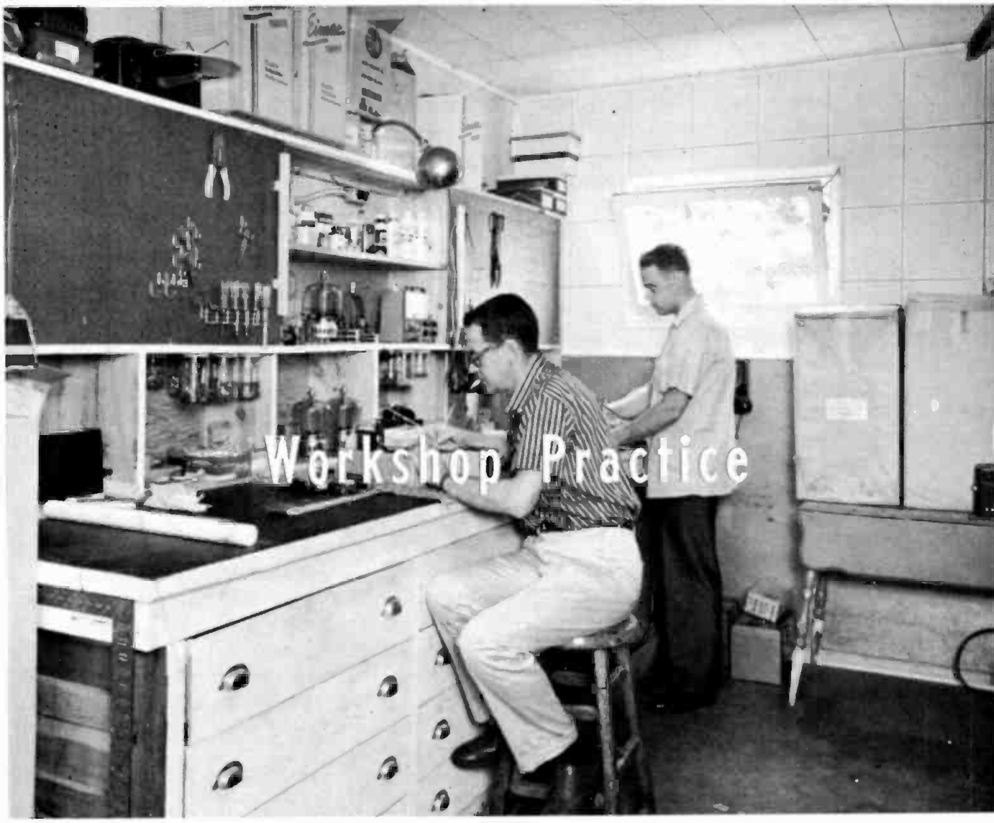
Components of meter diode circuit are mounted to phenolic board attached to meter terminals. Other small resistors may be wired directly to switch lugs. The four 1½-volt batteries are held in a small clamp at the rear of the case. Chassis is cut out for lever-action switches and opening is covered with three-position switch plate.

If the *NPN-PNP switch* (S_2) is in the wrong position, the collector and emitter junctions will be forward biased during the I_{CO} and I_{EO} tests (switch positions 1 and 6). The high resulting current may be used as a check for open or intermittent connections within the transistor.

The transistor checker also measures h_{FE} with 20 microamperes and 100 microamperes base current. Depressing the h_{fe} switch (S_4) decreases the base drive about 20 percent, permitting h_{fe} to be estimated from the corresponding change in collector current (formulas 1 and 2). All tests are conducted with a 330-ohm resistor limiting the collector current to about 12 milliamperes and the maximum transistor dissipation to about 20 milliwatts. The checker therefore cannot harm a transistor regardless of how it is plugged in or how the test switches are set.

The *battery test* provides full-scale meter deflection of 10 milliamperes when the battery potential is 6 volts. This is achieved by connecting a 150-ohm resistor from collector to emitter of a test socket.

Test Set Construction The transistor checker is built in an aluminum box measuring 3″ × 5″ × 7″, as shown in the photographs. Test switch S_1 is mounted on the end of the box; and the transistor sockets, microammeter, and the various other switches are placed on the top of the box. Three insulated tip jacks are wired to the leads of one transistor test socket so that transistors having unorthodox bases or leads may be clipped to the tester by means of short test leads. Four 1½-volt flashlight cells are mounted to the rear of the case by an aluminum clamp. Potentiometer R_2, the meter diode, and associated components are fastened to a phenolic board attached to the meter terminals. Switch S_1 has an indicator scale made of heavy white cardboard, lettered with India ink and a lettering pen.



Workshop Practice

With a few possible exceptions, such as fixed air capacitors, neutralizing capacitors and transmitting coils, it hardly pays one to attempt to build the components required for the construction of an amateur transmitter. This is especially true when the parts are of the type used in construction and replacement work on broadcast receivers, as mass production has made these parts very inexpensive.

Transmitters Those who have and wish to spend the necessary time can effect considerable monetary saving in their transmitters by building them from the component parts. The necessary data is given in the construction chapters of this handbook.

To many builders, the construction is as fascinating as the operation of the finished transmitter; in fact, many amateurs get so much satisfaction out of building a well-performing piece of equipment that they spend more time constructing and rebuilding equipment than they do operating the equipment on the air.

32-1 Tools

Beautiful work can be done with metal chassis and panels with the help of only a few inexpensive tools. The time required for construction, however, will be greatly reduced if a fairly complete assortment of metal-working tools is available. Thus, while an array of tools will speed up the work, excellent results may be accomplished with few tools, if one has the time and patience.

The investment one is justified in making in tools is dependent upon several factors. If you like to tinker, there are many tools useful in radio construction that you would probably buy anyway, or perhaps already have, such as screwdrivers, hammer, saws, square, vise, files, etc. This means that the money taken for tools from your radio budget can be used to buy the more specialized tools, such as socket punches or hole saws, taps and dies, etc.

The amount of construction work one does determines whether buying a large assortment of tools is an economical move. It also determines if one should buy the less expensive type offered at surprisingly low prices by the familiar mail order houses, "five and ten" stores and chain auto-supply stores, or whether one should spend more money and get first-grade tools. The latter cost considerably more and work but little better when new, but will outlast several sets of the cheaper tools. Therefore they are a wise investment for the experimenter who does lots of construction work (if he can afford the initial cash outlay). The amateur who constructs only an occasional piece of apparatus need not be so concerned with tool life, as even the cheaper grade tools will last him several years, if they are given proper care.

The hand tools and materials in the accompanying lists will be found very useful around the home workshop. Materials not listed but ordinarily used, such as paint, can best be purchased as required for each individual job.

ESSENTIAL HAND TOOLS AND MATERIALS

1 *Good* electric soldering iron, about 100 watts,
1 Spool rosin-core wire solder
1 Each large, medium, small, and midget screwdrivers
1 *Good* hand drill (eggbeater type), preferably two-speed
1 Pair regular pliers, 6 inch
1 Pair long nose pliers, 6 inch
1 Pair cutting pliers (diagonals), 5 inch or 6 inch
1 1⅛-inch tube-socket punch
1 "Boy Scout" knife
1 Combination square and steel rule, 1 foot
1 Yardstick or steel pushrule
1 Scratch awl or ice pick scribe
1 Center punch
1 Dozen or more assorted round shank drills (as many as you can afford between no. 50 and ¼ or ⅜ inch, depending upon size of hand drill chuck)
1 Combination oil stone
Light machine oil (in squirt can)
Friction tape
1 Hacksaw and blades
1 Medium file and handle
1 Cold chisel (½ inch tip)
1 Wrench for socket punch
1 Hammer

HIGHLY DESIRABLE HAND TOOLS AND MATERIALS

1 Bench vise (jaws at least 3 inch)
1 Spool plain wire solder
1 Carpenter's brace, ratchet type
1 Square-shank countersink bit
1 Square-shank taper reamer, small
1 Square-shank taper reamer, large (the two reamers should overlap; ½ inch and ⅞ inch size will usually be suitable)
1 ⅞ inch tube-socket punch (for electrolytic capacitors)
1 1-3/16 inch tube-socket punch
1 ⅝-inch tube-socket punch
1 Adjustable circle cutter for holes to 3 inch
1 Set small, inexpensive, open-end wrenches
1 Pair tin shears, 10 or 12 inch
1 Wood chisel (½ inch tip)
1 Pair wing dividers
1 Coarse mill file, flat 12 inch
1 Coarse bastard file, round, ½ or ¾ inch
1 Set allen and spline-head wrenches
6 or 8 Assorted small files; round, half-round or triangular, flat, square, rat-tail
4 Small "C" clamps
Steel wool, coarse and fine
Sandpaper and emery cloth, coarse, medium, and fine
Duco cement
File brush

USEFUL BUT NOT ESSENTIAL TOOLS AND MATERIALS

1 Jig or scroll saw (small) with metal-cutting blades
1 Small wood saw (crosscut teeth)
1 Each square-shank drills: ⅜, 7/16, and ½ inch
1 Tap and die outfit for 6-32, 8-32, 10-32 and 10-24 machine screw threads
4 Medium size "C" clamps
Lard oil (in squirt can)
Kerosene
Empire cloth
Clear lacquer ("industrial" grade)
Lacquer thinner
Dusting brush
Paint brushes
Sheet celluloid, Lucite, or polystyrene
1 Carpenter's plane
1 Each "Spintite" wrenches, ¼, 5/16, 11/32 to fit the standard 6-32 and 8-32 nuts used in radio work
1 Screwdriver for recessed head type screws

The foregoing assortment assumes that the constructor does not want to invest in the more expensive power tools, such as drill press,

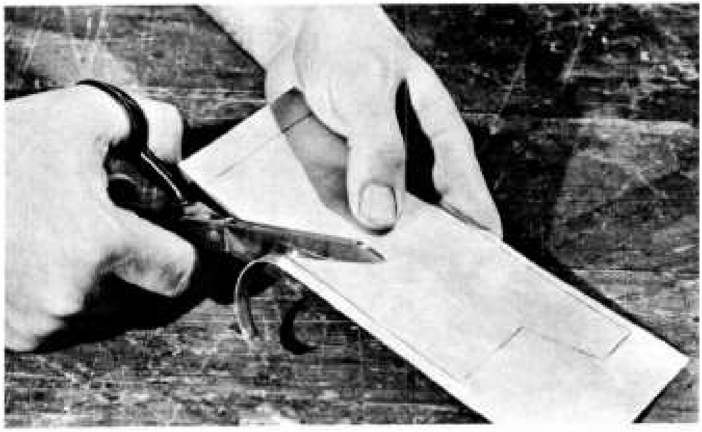


Figure 1
SOFT ALUMINUM SHEET MAY BE CUT WITH HEAVY KITCHEN SHEARS

grinding head, etc. If power equipment is purchased, obviously some of the hand tools and accessories listed will be superfluous. A drill press greatly facilitates construction work, and it is unfortunate that a good one costs as much as a small transmitter.

Not listed in the table are several special-purpose radio tools which are somewhat of a luxury, but are nevertheless quite handy, such as various around-the-corner screwdrivers and wrenches, special soldering iron tips, etc. These can be found in the larger radio parts stores and are usually listed in their mail order catalogs.

If it is contemplated to use the newer and very popular miniature series of tubes (6AK5, 6C4, 6BA6, etc.) in the construction of equipment certain additional tools will be required to mount the smaller components. Miniature tube sockets mount in a ⅝-inch hole, while 9-pin sockets mount in a ¾-inch hole. Greenlee socket punches can be obtained in these sizes, or a smaller hole may be reamed to the proper size. Needless to say, the punch is much the more satisfactory solution. Mounting screws for miniature sockets are usually of the 4-40 size.

Metal Chassis Though quite a few more tools and considerably more time will be required for metal chassis construction, much neater and more satisfactory equipment can be built by mounting the parts on sheet metal chassis instead of breadboards. This type of construction is necessary when shielding of the appartus is required. A front panel and a back shield minimize the danger of shock and complete the shielding of the enclosure.

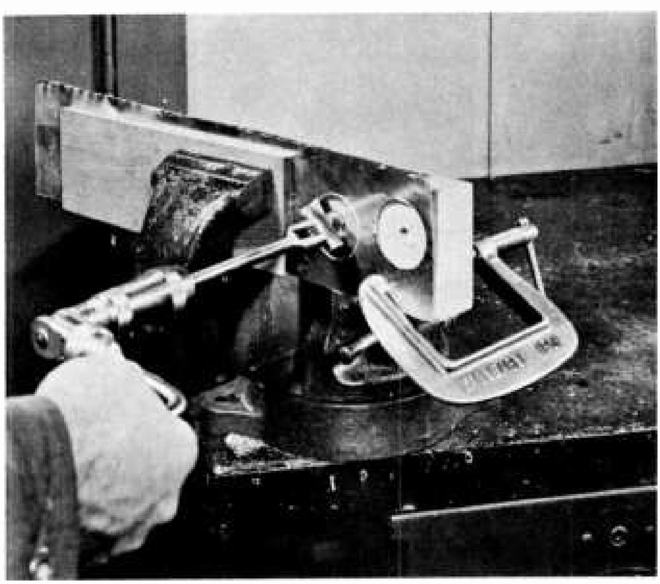


Figure 2
CONVENTIONAL WOOD EXPANSION BIT IS EFFECTIVE IN DRILLING SOCKET HOLES IN REYNOLDS DO-IT-YOURSELF ALUMINUM

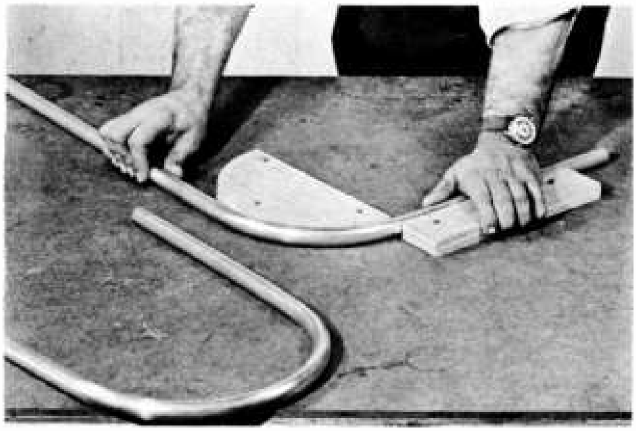


Figure 3
SOFT ALUMINUM TUBING MAY BE BENT AROUND WOODEN FORM BLOCKS. TO PREVENT THE TUBE FROM COLLAPSING ON SHARP BENDS, IT IS PACKED WITH WET SAND.

32-2 The Material

Electronic equipment may be built upon foundation of wood, steel or aluminum. The choice of foundation material is governed by the requirements of the electrical circuit, the weight of the components of the assembly, and the financial cost of the project when balanced against the pocketbook contents of the constructor.

Breadboard The simplest method of constructing equipment is to lay it out in *breadboard* fashion, which consists of fastening the various components to a board of suitable size with wood screws or machine bolts, arranging the parts so that important leads will be as short as possible.

Breadboard construction is suitable for testing an experimental layout, or sometimes for assembling an experimental unit of test equipment. But no permanent item of station equipment should be left in the breadboard form. Breadboard construction is dangerous, since components carrying dangerous voltages are left exposed. Also, breadboard construction is never suitable for any r-f portion of a transmitter, since it would be substantially impossible to shield such an item of equipment for the elimination of TVI resulting from harmonic radiation.

Dish type construction is practically the same as metal chassis construction, the main difference lying in the manner in which the chassis is fastened to the panel.

Special Frameworks For high-powered r-f stages, many amateur constructors prefer to discard the more conventional types of construction and employ instead special metal frameworks and brackets which they design specially for the parts which they intend to use. These are usually arranged to give the shortest possible r-f leads and to fasten directly behind a relay rack panel by means of a few bolts, with the control shafts

Figure 4
A WOODWORKING PLANE MAY BE USED TO SMOOTH OR TRIM THE EDGES OF REYNOLDS DO-IT-YOURSELF ALUMINUM STOCK.

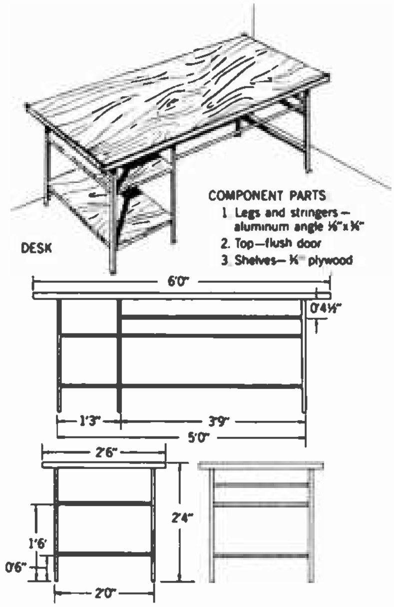


Figure 5
INEXPENSIVE OPERATING DESK MADE FROM ALUMINUM ANGLE STOCK, PLYWOOD AND A FLUSH-TYPE DOOR

projecting through corresponding holes in the panel.

Working with Aluminum The necessity of employing "electrically tight enclosures" for the containment of TVI-producing harmonics has led to the general use of aluminum for chassis, panel, and enclosure construction. If the proper type of aluminum material is used, it may be cut and worked with the usual woodworking tools found in the home shop. Hard, brittle aluminum alloys such as 24ST and 61ST should be avoided, and the softer materials such as 2S or ½H should be employed.

A convenient product is Reynold's *Do-it-yourself* aluminum, which is being distributed on a nationwide basis through hardware stores, lumber yards and building material outlets. This material is an alloy which is temper selected for easy working with ordinary tools. Aluminum sheet, bar and angle stock may be obtained, as well as perforated sheets for ventilated enclosures.

Figures 1 through 4 illustrate how this soft material may be cut and worked with ordinary shop tools, and fig. 5 shows a simple operating desk that may be made from aluminum angle stock, plywood and a flush-type six foot door.

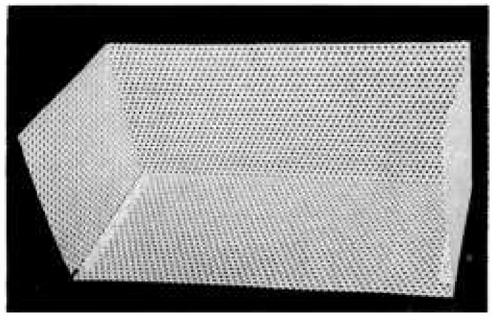


Figure 6
TVI ENCLOSURE MADE FROM SINGLE SHEET OF PERFORATED ALUMINUM

Reynolds Metal Co. "Do-it-yourself" aluminum sheet may be cut and folded to form TVI-proof enclosure. One-half inch lip on edges is bolted to center section with 6-32 machine screws.

32-3 TVI-Proof Enclosures

Armed with a right-angle square, a tin-snips and a straight edge, the home constructor will find the assembly of aluminum enclosures an easy task. This section will show simple construction methods, and short cuts in producing enclosures.

The simplest type of aluminum enclosure is that formed from a single sheet of perforated material as shown in figure 6. The top, sides, and back of the enclosure are of one piece, complete with folds that permit the formed enclosure to be bolted together along the edges. The top area of the enclosure should match the area of the chassis to ensure a close fit. The front edge of the enclosure is attached to aluminum angle strips that are bolted to the front panel of the unit; the sides and back can either be bolted to matching angle strips affixed to the chassis, or may simply be attached to the edge of the chassis with self-tapping sheet metal screws. Enclosures of this type are used on the all-band transmitter described in chapter 31.

A more sophisticated enclosure is shown in figure 7. In this assembly aluminum angle stock is cut to length to form a framework upon which the individual sides, back, and top of the enclosure are bolted. For greatest strength, small aluminum gusset plates should be affixed in each corner of the enclosure. The complete assembly may be held together by no. 6 sheet metal screws.

Regardless of the type of enclosure to be made, care should be taken to ensure that all joints are square. Do not assume that all prefabricated chassis and panel are absolutely true and square. Check them before you start to form your shield as any dimensional errors in the foundation will cause endless patching and cutting *after* your enclosure is bolted together. Finally, be sure that paint is removed from the panel and chassis at the point the enclosure attaches to the foundation. A clean, metallic contact along the seam is required for maximum harmonic suppression.

32-4 Enclosure Openings

Openings into shielded enclosures may be made simply by covering them by a piece of shielding held in place by sheet metal screws.

Openings through vertical panels, however, usually require a bit more attention to prevent leakage of harmonic energy through the crack of the door which is supposed to seal the opening. A simple way to provide a panel opening is to employ the *Bud* ventilated door rack panel *model PS-814* or *815*. The grille opening in this panel has holes small enough in area to prevent serious harmonic leakage. The actual door opening, however, does not seal tightly enough to be called TVI-proof. In areas of high TV signal strength where a minimum of operation on 28 Mc. is contemplated, the door is satisfactory as is. To accomplish more complete harmonic suppression, the edges of the opening should be lined with preformed contact finger stock manufactured by *Eitel-McCullough, Inc.*, of San Bruno, Calif. *Eimac* finger stock is an excellent means of providing good contact continuity when using components with adjustable or moving contact surfaces, or in acting as electrical "weatherstrip" around access doors in enclosures. Harmonic leakage through such a sealed opening is reduced to a negligible level. The mating surface to the finger stock should be free of paint, and should provide a good electrical connection to the stock.

A second method of re-establishing electrical continuity across an access port is to employ Metex shielding around the mating edges of the opening. Metex is a flexible knitted wire mesh which may be obtained in various sizes and shapes. This r-f gasket material is produced by Metal Textile Corp., Roselle, N.J. Metex is both flexible and resilient and conforms to irregularities in mating surfaces with a minimum of closing pressure.

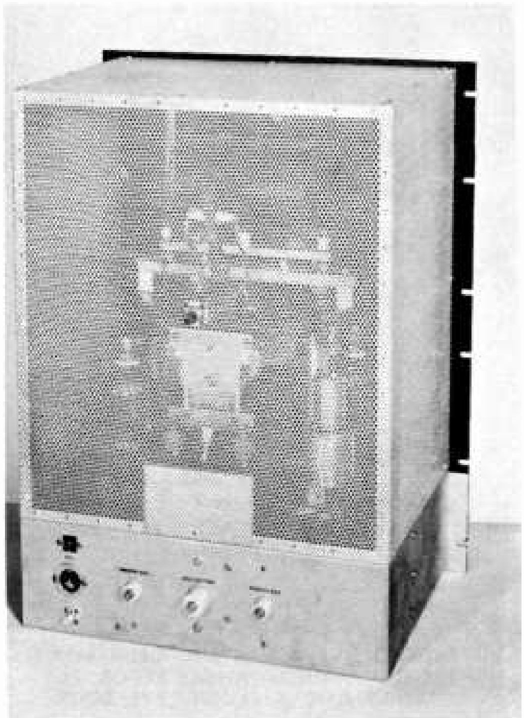


Figure 7
TVI-PROOF ENCLOSURE BUILT OF PERFORATED ALUMINUM SHEET AND ANGLE STOCK

32-5 Summation of the Problem

The creation of r-f energy is accompanied by harmonic generation and leakage of fundamental and harmonic energy from the generator source. For practical purposes, radio frequency power may be considered as a form of both electrical and r-f energy. As electrical energy, it will travel along any convenient conductor. As r-f energy, it will radiate directly from the source or from any conductor connected to the source. In view of this "dual personality" of r-f emanations, there is no panacea for all forms of r-f energy leakage. The cure involves both filtering and shielding: one to block the paths of conducted energy, the other to prevent the leakage of radiated energy. The proper combination of filtering and shielding can reduce the radiation of harmonic energy from a signal source some 80 decibels. In most cases, this is sufficient to eliminate interference caused by the generation of undesirable harmonics.

32-6 Construction Practice

Chassis Layout The chassis first should be covered with a layer of wrapping paper, which is drawn tightly down on all sides and fastened with scotch tape. This allows any number of measurement lines and hole centers to be spotted in the correct positions without making any marks on the chassis itself. Place on it the parts to be mounted and play a game of chess with them, trying different arrangements until all the grid and plate leads are made as short as possible, tubes are clear of coil fields, r-f chokes are in safe positions, etc. Remember, especially if you are going to use a panel, that a good mechanical layout often can accompany sound electrical design, but that the electrical design should be given first consideration.

All too often parts are grouped to give a symmetrical panel, irrespective of the arrangement behind. When a satisfactory arrangement has been reached, the mounting holes may be marked. The same procedure now must be followed for the underside, always being careful to see that there are no clashes between the two (that no top mounting screws come down into the middle of a paper capacitor on the underside, that the variable capacitor rotors do not hit anything when turned, etc.).

When all the holes have been spotted, they should be center-punched *through* the paper into the chassis. Don't forget to spot holes for leads which must also come through the chassis.

For transformers which have lugs on the bottoms, the clearance holes may be spotted by pressing the transformer on a piece of paper to obtain impressions, which may then be transferred to the chassis.

Punching In cutting socket holes, one can use either a fly-cutter or socket punches. These punches are easy to operate and only a few precautions are necessary. The guide pin should fit snugly in the guide hole. This increases the accuracy of location of the socket. If this is not of great importance, one may well use a drill of 1/32 inch larger diameter than the guide pin. Some of the punches will operate without guide holes, but the latter always make the punching operations simpler and easier. The only other precaution is to be sure the work is properly lined up before applying the hammer. If this is not done, the punch may slide sideways when you strike and thus not only shear the chassis but also take

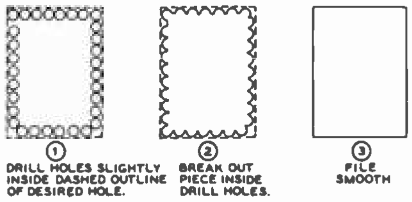


Figure 8

off part of the die. This is easily avoided by always making sure that the piece is parallel to the faces of the punch, the die, and the base. The latter should be an anvil or other solid base of heavy material.

A punch by *Greenlee* forces socket holes through the chassis by means of a screw turned with a wrench. It is noiseless, and works much more easily and accurately than most others.

The male part of the punch should be placed in the vise, cutting edge up and the female portion forced against the metal with a wrench. These punches can be obtained in sizes to accommodate all tube sockets and even large enough to be used for meter holes. In the octal socket sizes they require the use of a ⅜ inch center hole to accommodate the bolt.

Transformer Cutouts Cutouts for transformers and chokes are not so simply handled. After marking off the part to be cut, drill about a ¼-inch hole on each of the inside corners and tangential to the edges. After burring the holes, clamp the piece and a block of cast iron or steel in the vise. Then, take your burring chisel and insert it in one of the corner holes. Cut out the metal by hitting the chisel with a hammer. The blows should be light and numerous. The chisel acts against the block in the same way that the two blades of a pair of scissors work against each other. This same process is repeated for the other sides. A file is used to trim up the completed cutout.

Another method is to drill the four corner holes large enough to take a hack saw blade, then saw instead of chisel. The four holes permit nice looking corners.

Still another method is shown in figure 8. When heavy panel steel is used and a drill press or electric drill is available, this is the most satisfactory method.

Removing Burrs In both drilling and punching, a burr is usually left on the work. There are three simple ways of removing these. Perhaps the best is to take a chisel (be sure it is one for use on metal) and set it so that its bottom face is parallel to the piece. Then gently tap it with a hammer. This usually will make a clean job with a little practice. If one has access to a counterbore, this will also do a nice job. A countersink will work, although it bevels the edges. A drill of several sizes larger is a much used arrangement. The third method is by filing off the burr, which does a good job but scratches the adjacent metal surfaces badly.

Mounting Components There are two methods in general use for the fastening of transformers, chokes, and similar pieces of apparatus to chassis or breadboards. The first, using nuts and machine screws, is slow, and the commercial manufacturing practice of using self-tapping screws is gaining favor. For the mounting of small parts such as resistors and capacitors, "tie points" are very useful to gain rigidity. They also contribute materially to the appearance of finished apparatus.

Rubber grommets of the proper size, placed in all chassis holes through which wires are to be passed, will give a neater appearing job and also will reduce the possibility of short circuits.

NUMBERED DRILL SIZES

DRILL NUMBER	Diameter (in.)	Clears Screw	Correct for Tapping Steel or Brass†
1	.228	—	—
2	.221	12-24	—
3	.213	—	14-24
4	.209	12-20	—
5	.205	—	—
6	.204	—	—
7	.201	—	—
8	.199	—	—
9	.196	—	—
10*	.193	10-32	—
11	.191	10-24	—
12*	.189	—	—
13	.185	—	—
14	.182	—	—
15	.180	—	—
16	.177	—	12-24
17	.173	—	—
18*	.169	8-32	—
19	.166	—	12-20
20	.161	—	—
21*	.159	—	10-32
22	.157	—	—
23	.154	—	—
24	.152	—	—
25*	.149	—	10-24
26	.147	—	—
27	.144	—	—
28*	.140	6-32	—
29*	.136	—	8-32
30	.128	—	—
31	.120	—	—
32	.116	—	—
33*	.113	4-36 4-40	—
34	.111	—	—
35*	.110	—	6-32
36	.106	—	—
37	.104	—	—
38	.102	—	—
39*	.100	3-48	—
40	.098	—	—
41	.096	—	—
42*	.093	—	4-36 4-40
43	.089	2-56	—
44	.086	—	—
45*	.082	—	3-48

†Use next size larger drill for tapping bakelite and similar composition materials (plastics, etc.).

*Sizes most commonly used in radio construction.

Figure 9

Soldering Making a strong, low-resistance solder joint does not mean just dropping a blob of solder on the two parts to be joined and then hoping that they'll stick. There are several definite rules that *must* be observed.

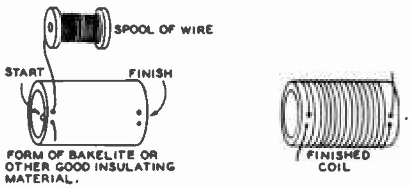
All parts to be soldered must be absolutely clean. To clean a wire, lug, or whatever it may be, take your pocket knife and scrape it thoroughly, until fresh metal is laid bare. It is not enough to make a few streaks; scrape until the part to be soldered is bright.

Make a good mechanical joint before applying any solder. Solder is intended primarily to make a good *electrical* connection; mechanical rigidity should be obtained by bending the wire into a small hook at the end and nipping it firmly around the other part, so that it will hold well even before the solder is applied.

Keep your iron properly tinned. It is impossible to get the work hot enough to take the solder properly if the iron is dirty. To tin your iron, file it, while hot, on one side until a full surface of clean metal is exposed. Immediately apply rosin core solder until a thin layer flows completely over the exposed surface. Repeat for the other faces. Then take a clean rag and wipe off all excess solder and rosin. The iron should also be wiped frequently while the actual construction is going on; it helps prevent pitting the tip.

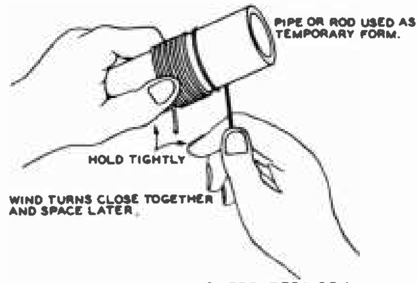
Apply the solder to the work, not to the iron. The iron should be held against the parts to be joined until they are thoroughly heated. The solder should then be applied against the parts, and the iron should be held in place until the solder flows smoothly and envelopes the work. If it acts like water on a greasy plate, and forms a ball, the work is not sufficiently clean.

The completed joint must be held perfectly still until the solder has had time to solidify. If the work is moved before the solder has be-



WINDING COIL ON INSULATING FORM

Figure 10



WINDING "AIR-SUPPORTED" COIL

Figure 11

come *completely* solid, a "cold" joint will result. This can be identified immediately, because the solder will have a dull "white" appearance rather than one of shiny "silver." Such joints tend to be of high resistance and will very likely have a bad effect upon a circuit. The cure is simple, merely reheat the joint and do the job correctly.

Wipe away all surplus flux when the joint has cooled if you are using a paste type flux. Be sure it is non-corrosive, and use it with plain (not rosin core) solder.

Finishes If the apparatus is constructed on a painted chassis (commonly available in black wrinkle and gray wrinkle), there is no need for application of a protective coating when the equipment is finished, assuming that you are careful not to scratch or mar the finish while drilling holes and mounting parts. However, many amateurs prefer to use unpainted (zinc or cadmium plated) chassis, because it is much simpler to make a chassis ground connection with this type of chassis. A thin coat of clear "linoleum" lacquer may be applied to the whole chassis after the wiring is completed to retard rusting. In localities near the sea coast it is a good idea to lacquer the various chassis cutouts even on a painted chassis, as rust will get a good start at these points unless the metal is protected where the drill or saw has exposed it. If too thick a coat is applied, the lacquer will tend to peel. It may be thinned with lacquer thinner to permit application of a light coat. A thin coat will adhere to any *clean* metal surface that is not too shiny.

An attractive dull gloss finish, almost velvety can be put on aluminum by sand-blasting it with a very weak blast and fine particles and then lacquering it. Soaking the aluminum in a solution of lye produces somewhat the same effect as a fine grain sand blast.

There are also several brands of dull gloss black enamels on the market which adhere well to metals and make a nice appearance. Airdrying wrinkle finishes are sometimes successful, but a bake job is usually far better. Wrinkle finishes, properly applied, are very durable and are pleasing to the eye. If you live in a large community, there is probably an enameling concern which can wrinkle your work for you at a reasonable cost. A very attractive finish, for panels especially, is to spray a wrinkle finish with aluminum paint. In any painting operation (or plating, either, for that matter), the work should be very thoroughly cleaned of all greases and oils.

To protect brass from tarnish, thoroughly cleanse and remove the last trace of grease by the use of potash and water. The brass must be carefully rinsed with water and dried; but in doing it, care must be taken not to handle any portion with the bare hands or anything else that is greasy. Then lacquer.

Winding Coils Coils are of two general types, those using a form and "airwound" types. Neither type offers any particular constructional difficulties. Figure 10 illustrates the procedure used in form winding a coil. If the winding is to be spaced, the spacing can be done either by eye or a string or another piece of wire may be wound simultaneously with the coil wire and removed after the winding is in place. The usual procedure is to clamp one end of the wire in a vise, attaching the other end to the coil form and with the coil form in hand, walk slowly towards the vise winding the wire but at the same time keeping a strong tension on the wire as the form is rotated. After the coil is wound, if there is any possibility of the turns slipping, the completed coil is either entirely coated with a coil or Duco cement or cemented in those spots where slippage might occur.

Figure 12
GOOD SHOP LAYOUT AIDS CAREFUL WORKMANSHIP

Built in a corner of a garage, this shop has all features necessary for electronic work. Test instruments are arranged on shelves above bench. Numerous outlets reduce "haywire" produced by tangled line cords. Not shown in picture are drill press and sander at end of left bench

V-h-f and u-h-f coils are commonly wound of heavy enameled wire on a form and then removed from the form as in figure 11. If the coil is long or has a tendency to buckle, strips of polystyrene or a similar material may be cemented longitudinally inside the coil. Due allowance must be made for the coil springing out when removed from the form, when selecting the diameter of the form.

On air wound coils of this type, spacing between turns is accomplished after removal from the form, by running a pencil, the shank of a screwdriver or other round object spirally between the turns from one end of the coil to the other, again making due allowance for spring.

Air-wound coils, approaching the appearance of commercially manufactured ones, can be constructed by using a round wooden form which has been sawed diagonally from end to end. Strips of insulating material are temporarily attached to this mandrel, the wire then being wound over these strips with the desired separation between turns and cemented to the strips. When dry, the split mandrel may be removed by unwedging it.

32-7 Shop Layout

The *size* of your workshop is relatively unimportant since the shop *layout* will determine its efficiency and the ease with which you may complete your work.

Shown in figure 12 is a workshop built into a 10'x10' area in the corner of a garage. The workbench is 32" wide, made up of four strips of 2"x8" lumber supported on a solid framework made of 2"x4" lumber. The top of the workbench is covered with hard-surface *Masonite*. The edge of the surface is protected with aluminum "counter edging" strip, obtainable at large hardware stores. Two wooden shelves 12" wide are placed above the bench to hold the various items of test equipment. The shelves are bolted to the wall studs with large angle brackets and have wooden end pieces. Along the edge of the lower shelf a metal "outlet strip" is placed that has an 115-volt outlet every six inches along its length. A similar strip is run along the *back* of the lower shelf. The front strip is used for equipment that is being bench-tested, and the rear strip powers the various items of test equipment placed on the shelves.

At the left of the bench is a storage bin for small components. A file cabinet can be seen at the right of the photograph. This necessary item holds schematics, transformer data sheets, and other papers that normally are lost in the usual clutter and confusion.

The area below the workbench has two storage shelves which are concealed by sliding doors made of ¼-inch *Masonite*. Heavier tools, and large components are stored in this area. On the floor and not shown in the photograph is a very necessary item of shop equipment: a large trash receptacle.

A compact and efficient shop built in one-half of a wardrobe closet is shown in figure 13. The workbench length is four feet. The top is made of 4"x6" lumber sheathed with hard surface *Masonite* and trimmed with "counter edging" strip. The supporting struc-

Figure 13
COMPLETE WORKSHOP IN A CLOSET!
Careful layout permits complete electronic workshop to be placed in one-half of a wardrobe closet. Work bench is built atop an unpainted three-shelf bookcase.

ture is made from an unpainted three-shelf bookcase. A 2"x2" leg is placed under the front corners of the bench to provide maximum stability.

Atop the bench, a small wooden framework supports needed items of test equipment and a single shelf contains a 115-volt "outlet strip." The instruments at the top of the photo are placed on the wardrobe shelf.

When not in use, the doors of the wardrobe are closed, concealing the workshop completely from view.

CHAPTER THIRTY-THREE

Radio Mathematics and Calculations

Radiomen often have occasion to calculate sizes and values of required parts. This requires some knowledge of mathematics. The following pages contain a review of those parts of mathematics necessary to understand and apply the information contained in this book. It is assumed that the reader has had some mathematical training; this chapter is not intended to teach those who have never learned anything of the subject.

Fortunately only a knowledge of fundamentals is necessary, although this knowledge must include several branches of the subject. Fortunately, too, the majority of practical applications in radio work reduce to the solution of equations or formulas or the interpretation of graphs.

Arithmetic

Notation of Numbers In writing numbers in the Arabic system we employ ten different symbols, digits, or figures: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 0, and place them in a definite sequence. If there is more than one figure in the number the *position* of each figure or digit is as important in determining its value as is the digit itself. When we deal with whole numbers the righthandmost digit represents units, the next to the left represents tens, the next hundreds, the next thousands, from which we derive the rule that every time a digit is placed one space further to the left its value is multiplied by ten.

8	**1**	**4**	**3**
thousands	hundreds	tens	units

It will be seen that any number is actually a sum. In the example given above it is the sum of eight thousands, plus one hundred, plus four tens, plus three units, which could be written as follows:

8	thousands (10 x 10 x 10)
1	hundreds (10 x 10)
4	tens
3	units
8143	

The number in the units position is sometimes referred to as a *first order* number, that in the tens position is of the *second order*, that in the hundreds position the *third order*, etc.

The idea of letting the position of the symbol denote its value is an outcome of the abacus. The abacus had only a limited number of wires with beads, but it soon became apparent that the quantity of symbols might be continued indefinitely towards the left, each further space multiplying the digit's value by ten. Thus any quantity, however large, may readily be indicated.

It has become customary for ease of reading to divide large numbers into groups of three digits, separating them by commas.

6,000,000 rather than 6000000

Our system of notation then is characterized by two things: the use of positions to indicate the value of each symbol, and the use of ten symbols, from which we derive the name *decimal system*.

Retaining the same use of positions, we might have used a different number of symbols, and displacing a symbol one place to the left might multiply its value by any other factor such as 2, 6 or 12. Such other systems have been in use in history, but will not be discussed here. There are also systems in which displacing a symbol to the left multiplies its value by

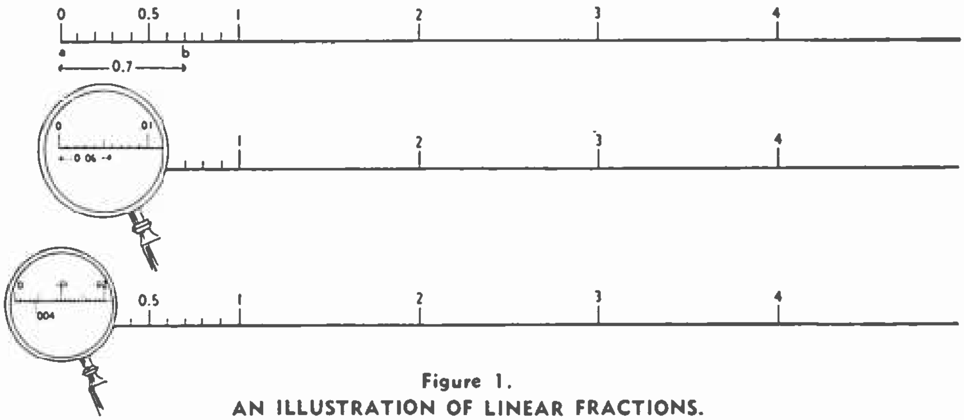


Figure 1.
AN ILLUSTRATION OF LINEAR FRACTIONS.

varying factors in accordance with complicated rules. The English system of measurements is such an inconsistent and inferior system.

Decimal Fractions Since we can extend a number indefinitely to the left to make it bigger, it is a logical step to extend it towards the right to make it smaller. Numbers smaller than unity are *fractions* and if a displacement one position to the right divides its value by ten, then the number is referred to as a *decimal fraction.* Thus a digit to the right of the units column indicates the number of *tenths*, the second digit to the right represents the number of *hundredths*, the third, the number of *thousandths*, etc. Some distinguishing mark must be used to divide unit from tenths so that one may properly evaluate each symbol. This mark is the *decimal point.*

A decimal fraction like *four-tenths* may be written .4 or 0.4 as desired, the latter probably being the clearer. Every time a digit is placed one space further to the right it represents a ten times smaller part. This is illustrated in Figure 1, where each large division represents a unit; each unit may be divided into ten parts although in the drawing we have only so divided the first part. The length *ab* is equal to seven of these tenth parts and is written as 0.7.

The next smaller divisions, which should be written in the second column to the right of the decimal point, are each one-tenth of the small division, or one one-hundredth each. They are so small that we can only show them by imagining a magnifying glass to look at them, as in Figure 1. Six of these divisions is to be written as 0.06 (six hundredths). We need a microscope to see the next smaller division, that is those in the third place, which will be a tenth of one one-hundredth, or a thousandth; four such divisions would be written as 0.004 (four thousandths).

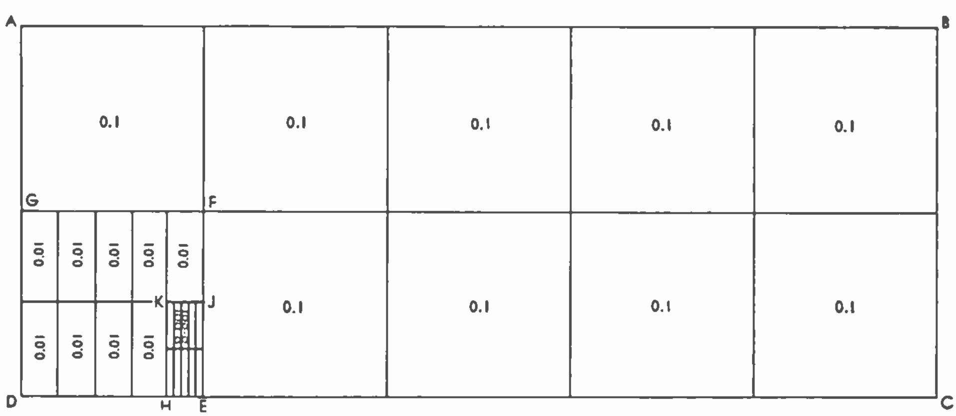


Figure 2.
IN THIS ILLUSTRATION FRACTIONAL PORTIONS ARE REPRESENTED IN THE FORM OF RECTANGLES RATHER THAN LINEARLY.
ABCD = 1.0; GFED = 0.1; KJEH = 0.01; each small section within KJEH equals 0.001

It should not be thought that such numbers are merely of academic interest for very small quantities are common in radio work.

Possibly the conception of fractions may be clearer to some students by representing it in the form of rectangles rather than linearly (see Figure 2).

Addition When two or more numbers are to be added we sometimes write them horizontally with the plus sign between them. + is the sign or *operator* indicating addition. Thus if 7 and 12 are to be added together we may write $7+12=19$.

But if larger or more numbers are to be added together they are almost invariably written one under another in such a position that the decimal points fall in a vertical line. If a number has no decimal point, it is still considered as being just to the right of the units figure; such a number is a whole number or *integer*. Examples:

$$\begin{array}{r} 654 \\ 32 \\ 53041 \\ \hline 53727 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 0.654 \\ 3.2 \\ 53.041 \\ \hline 56.895 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 654 \\ 32 \\ 5304.1 \\ \hline 5990.1 \end{array}$$

The result obtained by adding numbers is called the *sum*.

Subtraction Subtraction is the reverse of addition. Its operator is — (the *minus* sign). The number to be subtracted is called the *subtrahend*, the number from which it is subtracted is the *minuend*, and the result is called the *remainder*.

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{minuend} \\ -\text{subtrahend} \\ \hline \text{remainder} \end{array}$$

Examples:

$$\begin{array}{r} 65.4 \\ -32 \\ \hline 33.4 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 65.4 \\ -32.21 \\ \hline 33.19 \end{array}$$

Multiplication When numbers are to be multiplied together we use the ×, which is known as the *multiplication* or the *times* sign. The number to be multiplied is known as the *multiplicand* and that by which it is to be multiplied is the *multiplier*, which may be written in words as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{multiplicand} \\ \times\ \text{multiplier} \\ \hline \text{partial product} \\ \text{partial product}\quad \\ \hline \text{product} \end{array}$$

The result of the operation is called the *product*.

From the examples to follow it will be obvious that there are as many partial products as there are digits in the multiplier. In the following examples note that the righthandmost digit of each partial product is placed one space farther to the left than the previous one.

$$\begin{array}{r} 834 \\ \times\ 26 \\ \hline 5004 \\ 1668 \\ \hline 21684 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 834 \\ \times\ 206 \\ \hline 5004 \\ 000 \\ 1668 \\ \hline 171804 \end{array}$$

In the second example above it will be seen that the inclusion of the second partial product was unnecessary; whenever the multiplier contains a cipher (zero) the next partial product should be moved an *additional* space to the left.

Numbers containing decimal fractions may first be multiplied exactly as if the decimal point did not occur in the numbers at all; the position of the decimal point in the product is determined after all operations have been completed. It must be so positioned in the product that the number of digits to its right is equal to the number of decimal places in the multiplicand plus the number of decimal places in the multiplier.

This rule should be well understood since many radio calculations contain quantities which involve very small decimal fractions. In the examples which follow the explanatory notations "2 places," etc., are not actually written down since it is comparatively easy to determine the decimal point's proper location mentally.

$$\begin{array}{rl} 5.43 & \text{2 places} \\ \times 0.72 & \text{2 places} \\ \hline 1086 & \\ 3\ 801 & \\ \hline 3.9096 & 2+2=4 \text{ places} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{rl} 0.04 & \text{2 places} \\ \times 0.003 & \text{3 places} \\ \hline 0.00012 & 2+3=5 \text{ places} \end{array}$$

Division Division is the reverse of multiplication. Its operator is the ÷, which is called the *division sign*. It is also common to indicate division by the use of the fraction bar (/) or by writing one number over the other. The number which is to be divided is called the *dividend* and is written before the division sign or fraction bar or over the horizontal line indicating a fraction. The number by which the dividend is to be divided is called the *divisor* and follows the division sign or fraction bar or comes under the horizontal line of the fraction. The answer or result is called the *quotient.*

```
               quotient
        divisor ) dividend
```

or

$$\text{dividend} \div \text{divisor} = \text{quotient}$$

or

$$\frac{\text{dividend}}{\text{divisor}} = \text{quotient}$$

Examples:

```
          126                 49
  834 ) 105084         49 ) 2436
        834                 196
        ----                ---
        2168                 476
        1668                 441
        ----                 ---
         5004                 35 remainder
         5004
         ----
```

Note that one number often fails to divide into another evenly. Hence there is often a quantity left over called the *remainder.*

The rules for placing the decimal point are the reverse of those for multiplication. The number of decimal places in the quotient is equal to the difference between the number of decimal places in the dividend and that in the divisor. It is often simpler and clearer to remove the decimal point entirely from the divisor by multiplying both dividend and divisor by the necessary factor; that is we move the decimal point in the divisor as many places to the right as is necessary to make it a whole number and then we move the decimal point in the dividend exactly the same number of places to the right regardless of whether this makes the dividend a whole number or not. When this has been done the decimal point in the quotient will automatically come directly above that in the dividend as shown in the following example.

Example: Divide 10.5084 by 8.34. Move the decimal point of both dividend and divisor two places to the right.

```
           1.26
  834 ) 1050.84
         834
         ---
         2168
         1668
         ----
          5004
          5004
          ----
```

Another example: Divide 0.000325 by 0.017. Here we must move the decimal point three places to the right in both dividend and divisor.

```
        0.019
  17 ) 0.325
          17
          --
         155
         153
         ---
           2
```

In a case where the dividend has fewer decimals than the divisor the same rules still may be applied by adding ciphers. For example to divide 0.49 by 0.006 we must move the decimal point three places to the right. The 0.49 now becomes 490 and we write:

```
       81
  6 ) 490
      48
      --
       10
        6
       --
        4
```

When the division shows a remainder it is sometimes necessary to continue the work so as to obtain more figures. In that case ciphers may be annexed to the dividend, brought down to the remainder, and the division continued as long as may be necessary; be sure to place a decimal point in the dividend before the ciphers are annexed if the dividend does not already contain a decimal point. For example:

```
       80.33
  6 ) 482.00
      48
      --
        20
        18
        --
         20
         18
         --
          2
```

This operation is not very often required in radio work since the accuracy of the measurements from which our problems start seldom justifies the use of more than three significant figures. This point will be covered further later in this chapter.

Fractions Quantities of less than one (unity) are called *fractions.* They may be expressed by decimal notation as we have seen, or they may be expressed as *vulgar fractions.* Examples of vulgar fractions:

$$\frac{\textbf{numerator}}{\textbf{denominator}} \qquad \frac{3}{4} \qquad \frac{6}{7} \qquad \frac{1}{5}$$

The upper position of a vulgar fraction is called the *numerator* and the lower position the *denominator*. When the numerator is the smaller of the two, the fraction is called a *proper fraction;* the examples of vulgar fractions given above are proper vulgar fractions. When the numerator is the larger, the expression is an *improper fraction,* which can be reduced to an integer or whole number with a proper fraction, the whole being called a mixed number. In the following examples improper fractions have been reduced to their corresponding mixed numbers.

$$\frac{7}{4} = 1\frac{3}{4} \qquad \frac{5}{3} = 1\frac{2}{3}$$

Adding or Subtracting Fractions Except when the fractions are very simple it will usually be found much easier to add and subtract fractions in the form of decimals. This rule likewise applies for practically all other operations with fractions. However, it is occasionally necessary to perform various operations with vulgar fractions and the rules should be understood.

When adding or subtracting such fractions the denominators must be made equal. This may be done by multiplying both numerator and denominator of the first fraction by the denominator of the other fraction, after which we multiply the numerator and denominator of the second fraction by the denominator of the first fraction. This sounds more complicated than it usually proves in practice, as the following examples will show.

$$\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} = \left[\frac{1 \times 3}{2 \times 3} + \frac{1 \times 2}{3 \times 2}\right] = \frac{3}{6} + \frac{2}{6} = \frac{5}{6}$$

$$\frac{3}{4} - \frac{2}{5} = \left[\frac{3 \times 5}{4 \times 5} - \frac{2 \times 4}{5 \times 4}\right] = \frac{15}{20} - \frac{8}{20} = \frac{7}{20}$$

Except in problems involving large numbers the step shown in brackets above is usually done in the head and is not written down.

Although in the examples shown above we have used proper fractions, it is obvious that the same procedure applies with improper fractions. In the case of problems involving mixed numbers it is necessary first to convert them into improper fractions. Example:

$$2\frac{3}{7} = \frac{2 \times 7 + 3}{7} = \frac{17}{7}$$

The numerator of the improper fraction is equal to the whole number multiplied by the denominator of the original fraction, to which the numerator is added. That is in the above example we multiply 2 by 7 and then add 3 to obtain 17 for the numerator. The denominator is the same as is the denominator of the original fraction. In the following example we have added two mixed numbers.

$$2\frac{3}{7} + 3\frac{3}{4} = \frac{17}{7} + \frac{15}{4} = \left[\frac{17 \times 4}{7 \times 4} + \frac{15 \times 7}{4 \times 7}\right]$$

$$= \frac{68}{28} + \frac{105}{28} = \frac{173}{28} = 6\frac{5}{28}$$

Multiplying Fractions All vulgar fractions are multiplied by multiplying the numerators together and the denominators together, as shown in the following example:

$$\frac{3}{4} \times \frac{2}{5} = \left[\frac{3 \times 2}{4 \times 5}\right] = \frac{6}{20} = \frac{3}{10}$$

As above, the step indicated in brackets is usually not written down since it may easily be performed mentally. As with addition and subtraction any mixed numbers should be first reduced to improper fractions as shown in the following example:

$$\frac{3}{23} \times 4\frac{1}{3} = \frac{3}{23} \times \frac{13}{3} = \frac{39}{69} = \frac{13}{23}$$

Division of Fractions Fractions may be most easily divided by inverting the divisor and then multiplying. Example:

$$\frac{2}{5} \div \frac{3}{4} = \frac{2}{5} \times \frac{4}{3} = \frac{8}{15}$$

In the above example it will be seen that to divide by ¾ is exactly the same thing as to multiply by 4/3. Actual division of fractions is a rather rare operation and if necessary is usually postponed until the final answer is secured when it is often desired to reduce the resulting vulgar fraction to a decimal fraction by division. It is more common and usually results in least overall work to reduce vulgar fractions to decimals at the beginning of a problem. Examples:

$$\frac{3}{8} = 0.375 \qquad \frac{5}{32} = 0.15625$$

```
       0.15625
  32 ) 5.00000
       3 2
       1 80
       1 60
         200
         192
           80
           64
          160
          160
```

It will be obvious that many vulgar fractions cannot be reduced to exact decimal equivalents. This fact need not worry us, however, since the degree of equivalence can always be as much as the data warrants. For instance, if we know that one-third of an ampere is flowing in a given circuit, this can be written as 0.333 amperes. This is not the exact equivalent of 1/3 but is close enough since it shows the value to the nearest thousandth of an ampere and it is probable that the meter from which we secured our original data was not accurate to the nearest thousandth of an ampere.

Thus in converting vulgar fractions to a decimal we unhesitatingly stop when we have reached the number of significant figures warranted by our original data, which is very seldom more than three places (see section *Significant Figures* later in this chapter).

When the denominator of a vulgar fraction contains only the factors 2 or 5, division can be brought to a finish and there will be no remainder, as shown in the examples above.

When the denominator has other factors such as 3, 7, 11, etc., the division will seldom come out even no matter how long it is continued but, as previously stated, this is of no consequence in practical work since it may be carried to whatever degree of accuracy is necessary. The digits in the quotient will usually repeat either singly or in groups, although there may first occur one or more digits which do not repeat. Such fractions are known as *repeating fractions*. They are sometimes indicated by an oblique line (fraction bar) through the digit which repeats, or through the first and last digits of a repeating group. Example:

$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.3333\ldots = 0.\cancel{3}$$

$$\frac{1}{7} = 0.142857142857\ldots = 0.\cancel{1}4285\cancel{7}$$

The foregoing examples contained only repeating digits. In the following example a non-repeating digit precedes the repeating digit:

$$\frac{7}{30} = 0.2333\ldots = 0.2\cancel{3}$$

While repeating decimal fractions can be converted into their vulgar fraction equivalents, this is seldom necessary in practical work and the rules will be omitted here.

Powers and Roots When a number is to be multiplied by itself we say that it is to be *squared* or to be *raised to the second power*. When it is to be multipled by itself once again, we say that it is *cubed* or *raised to the third power*.

In general terms, when a number is to be multipled by itself we speak of *raising to a power* or *involution;* the number of times which the number is to be multiplied by itself is called the *order of the power*. The standard notation requires that the order of the power be indicated by a small number written after the number and above the line, called the *exponent*. Examples:

$2^2 = 2 \times 2$, or 2 **squared**, or the **second power of 2**

$2^3 = 2 \times 2 \times 2$, or 2 **cubed**, or the **third power of 2**

$2^4 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$, or the **fourth power of 2**

Sometimes it is necessary to perform the reverse of this operation, that is, it may be necessary, for instance, to find that number which multiplied by itself will give a product of nine. The answer is of course 3. This process is known as *extracting the root* or *evolution*. The particular example which is cited would be written:

$$\sqrt{9} = 3$$

The sign for extracting the root is $\sqrt{\ }$, which is known as the *radical sign;* the order of the root is indicated by a small number above the radical as in $\sqrt[4]{\ }$, which would mean the fourth root; this number is called the *index*. When the radical bears no index, the square or second root is intended.

Restricting our attention for the moment to square root, we know that 2 is the square root of 4, and 3 is the square root of 9. If we want the square root of a number between 3 and 9, such as the square root of 5, it is obvious that it must lie between 2 and 3. In general the square root of such a number cannot be *exactly* expressed either by a vulgar fraction or a decimal fraction. However, the square root can be carried out decimally as far as may be necessary for sufficient accuracy. In general such a decimal fraction will contain a never-ending series of digits without repeating groups. Such a number is an *irrational number*, such as

$$\sqrt{5} = 2.2361\ldots$$

The extraction of roots is usually done by tables or logarithms the use of which will be described later. There are longhand methods of extracting various roots, but we shall give only that for extracting the square root since the others become so tedious as to make other methods almost invariably preferable. Even the longhand method for extracting the square root will usually be used only if logarithm tables, slide rule, or table of roots are not handy.

Extracting the Square Root First divide the number the root of which is to be extracted into groups of two digits starting at the decimal point and going in both directions. If the lefthandmost group proves to have only one digit instead of two, no harm will be done. The righthandmost group may be made to have two digits by annexing a zero if necessary. For example, let it be required to find the square root of 5678.91. This is to be divided off as follows:

```
√56' 78.91
```

The mark used to divide the groups may be anything convenient, although the prime-sign (′) is most commonly used for the purpose.

Next find the largest square which is contained in the first group, in this case 56. The largest square is obviously 49, the square of 7. Place the 7 above the first group of the number whose root is to be extracted, which is sometimes called the *dividend* from analogy to ordinary division. Place the square of this figure, that is 49, under the first group, 56, and subtract leaving a remainder of 7.

```
   7
√56' 78.91
 49
 —
  7
```

Bring down the next group and annex it to the remainder so that we have 778. Now to the left of this quantity write down twice the root so far found (2 × 7 or 14 in this example), annex a cipher as a trial divisor, and see how many times the result is contained in 778. In our example 140 will go into 778 5 times. Replace the cipher with a 5, and multiply the resulting 145 by 5 to give 725. Place the 5 directly above the second group in the dividend and then subtract the 725 from 778.

```
                7  5
             √56' 78.91
              49
              —
140            7 78
145 × 5 =      7 25
               ————
                 53
```

The next step is an exact repetition of the previous step. Bring down the third group and annex it to the remainder of 53, giving 5391. Write down twice the root already found and annex the cipher (2 x 75 or 150 plus the cipher, which will give 1500). 1500 will go into 5391 3 times. Replace the last cipher with a three and multiply 1503 by 3 to give 4509. Place 3 above the third group. Subtract to find the remainder of 882. The quotient 75.3 which has been found so far is not the exact square root which was desired; in most cases it will be sufficiently accurate. However, if greater accuracy is desired groups of two ciphers can be brought down and the process carried on as long as necessary.

```
                 7  5. 3
              √56' 78.91
               49
               —
140             7 78
145 × 5 =       7 25
                ————
1500              53 91
1503 × 3 =        45 09
                ———————
                   8 82
```

Each digit of the root should be placed directly above the group of the dividend from which it was derived; if this is done the decimal point of the root will come directly above the decimal point of the dividend.

Sometimes the remainder after a square has been subtracted (such as the 1 in the following example) will not be sufficiently large to contain twice the root already found even after the next group of figures has been brought down. In this case we write a cipher above the group just brought down and bring down another group.

```
                  7. 0  8  2
               √50.16' 00' 00
                49
                —
1400             1 16 00
1408 × 8 =       1 12 64
                 ———————
14160               3 36 00
14162 × 2 =         2 83 24
                    ———————
                      52 76
```

In the above example the amount 116 was not sufficient to contain twice the root already found with a cipher annexed to it; that is, it was not sufficient to contain 140. Therefore we write a zero above 16 and bring down the next group, which in this example is a pair of ciphers.

Order of Operations One frequently encounters problems in which several of the fundamental operations of arithmetic which have been described are to be performed. The order in which these operations must be performed is important. First all powers and roots should be calculated; multiplication and division come next; adding and subtraction come last. In the example

$$2 + 3 \times 4^2$$

we must first square the 4 to get 16; then we multiply 16 by 3, making 48, and to the product we add 2, giving a result of 50.

If a different order of operations were followed, a different result would be obtained. For instance, if we add 2 to 3 we would obtain 5, and then multiplying this by the square of 4 or 16, we would obtain a result of 80, which is incorrect.

In more complicated forms such as fractions whose numerators and denominators may both be in complicated forms, the numerator and denominator are first found separately before the division is made, such as in the following example:

$$\frac{3 \times 4 + 5 \times 2}{2 \times 3 + 2 + 3} = \frac{12 + 10}{6 + 2 + 3} = \frac{22}{11} = 2$$

Problems of this type are very common in dealing with circuits containing several inductances, capacities, or resistances.

The order of operations specified above does not always meet all possible conditions; if a series of operations should be performed in a different order, this is always indicated by *parentheses* or *brackets*, for example:

$$2 + 3 \times 4^2 = 2 + 3 \times 16 = 2 + 48 = 50$$
$$(2 + 3) \times 4^2 = 5 \times 4^2 = 5 \times 16 = 80$$
$$2 + (3 \times 4)^2 = 2 + 12^2 = 2 + 144 = 146$$

In connection with the radical sign, brackets may be used or the "hat" of the radical may be extended over the entire quantity whose root is to be extracted. Example:

$$\surd 4 + 5 = \sqrt{4} + 5 = 2 + 5 = 7$$

$$\surd (4 + 5) = \sqrt{4 + 5} = \sqrt{9} = 3$$

It is recommended that the radical always be extended over the quantity whose root is to be extracted to avoid any ambiguity.

Cancellation In a fraction in which the numerator and denominator consist of several factors to be multiplied, considerable labor can often be saved if it is found that the same factor occurs in both numerator and denominator. These factors cancel each other and can be removed. Example:

$$\frac{\cancel{2} \times \cancel{3} \times \overset{5}{\cancel{25}}}{\underset{\cancel{2}}{\cancel{6}} \times \cancel{5} \times 7} = \frac{5}{7}$$

In the foregoing example it is obvious that the 3 in the numerator goes into the 6 in the denominator twice. We may thus cross out the three and replace the 6 by a 2. The 2 which we have just placed in the denominator cancels the 2 in the numerator. Next the 5 in the denominator will go into the 25 in the numerator leaving a result of 5. Now we have left only a 5 in the numerator and a 7 in the denominator, so our final result is 5/7. If we had multiplied $2 \times 3 \times 25$ to obtain 150 and then had divided this by $6 \times 5 \times 7$ or 210, we would have obtained the same result but, with considerably more work.

Algebra

Algebra is not a separate branch of mathematics but is merely a form of *generalized arithmetic* in which letters of the alphabet and occasional other symbols are substituted for numbers, from which it is often referred to as *literal notation*. It is simply a shorthand method of writing operations which could be spelled out.

The laws of most common electrical phenomena and circuits (including of course radio phenomena and circuits) lend themselves particularly well to representation by literal notation and solution by algebraic equations or formulas.

While we may write a particular problem in Ohm's Law as an ordinary division or multiplication, the general statement of all such problems calls for the replacement of the numbers by symbols. We might be explicit and write out the names of the units and use these names as symbols:

$$\text{volts} = \text{amperes} \times \text{ohms}$$

Such a procedure becomes too clumsy when the expression is more involved and would be unusually cumbersome if any operations like multiplication were required. Therefore as a short way of writing these generalized relations the numbers are represented by letters. Ohm's Law then becomes

$$E = I \times R$$

In the statement of any particular problem the significance of the letters is usually indicated directly below the equation or formula using them unless there can be no ambiguity. Thus the above form of Ohm's Law would be more completely written as:

$$E = I \times R$$

where E = e.m.f. in volts
I = current in amperes
R = resistance in ohms

Letters therefore represent numbers, and for any letter we can read "any number." When the same letter occurs again in the same expression we would mentally read "the same number," and for another letter "another number of any value."

These letters are connected by the usual operational symbols of arithmetic, +, −, ×, ÷, and so forth. In algebra, the sign for division is seldom used, a division being usually written as a fraction. The multiplication sign, ×, is usually omitted or one may write a period only. Examples:

$$2 \times a \times b = 2ab$$
$$2.3.4.5a = 2 \times 3 \times 4 \times 5 \times a$$

In practical applications of algebra, an expression usually states some physical law and each letter represents a variable quantity which is therefore called a *variable.* A fixed number in front of such a quantity (by which it is to be multiplied) is known as the *coefficient.* Sometimes the coefficient may be unknown, yet to be determined; it is then also written as a letter; *k* is most commonly used for this purpose.

The Negative Sign In ordinary arithmetic we seldom work with negative numbers, although we may be "short" in a subtraction. In algebra, however, a number may be either negative or positive. Such a thing may seem *academic* but a negative quantity can have a real existence. We need only refer to a *debt* being considered a negative possession. In electrical work, however, a result of a problem might be a negative number of amperes or volts, indicating that the direction of the current is opposite to the direction chosen as positive. We shall have illustrations of this shortly.

Having established the existence of negative quantities, we must now learn how to work with these negative quantities in addition, subtraction, multiplication and so forth.

In addition, a negative number added to a positive number is the same as subtracting a positive number from it.

$$\begin{array}{r} 7 \\ -3 \\ \hline 4 \end{array} \text{ (add) is the same as } \begin{array}{r} 7 \\ 3 \\ \hline 4 \end{array} \text{ (subtract)}$$

or we might write it

$$7 + (-3) = 7 - 3 = 4$$

Similarly, we have:

$$a + (-b) = a - b$$

When a minus sign is in front of an expression in brackets, this minus sign has the effect of reversing the signs of every term within the brackets:

$$-(a - b) = -a + b$$
$$-(2a + 3b - 5c) = -2a - 3b + 5c$$

Multiplication. When both the multiplicand and the multiplier are negative, the product is positive. When only one (either one) is negative the product is negative. The four possible cases are illustrated below:

$$+ \times + = + \qquad + \times - = -$$
$$- \times + = - \qquad - \times - = +$$

Division. Since division is but the reverse of multiplication, similar rules apply for the sign of the quotient. When both the dividend and the divisor have the same sign (both negative or both positive) the quotient is positive. If they have unlike signs (one positive and one negative) the quotient is negative.

$$\frac{+}{+} = + \qquad \frac{+}{-} = -$$
$$\frac{-}{+} = - \qquad \frac{-}{-} = +$$

Powers. Even powers of negative numbers are positive and *odd* powers are negative. Powers of positive numbers are always positive. Examples:

$$-2^2 = -2 \times -2 = +4$$
$$-2^3 = -2 \times -2 \times -2 = +4 \times -2 = -8$$

Roots. Since the square of a negative number is positive and the square of a positive number is also positive, it follows that a positive number has two square roots. The square root of 4 can be either +2 or −2 for $(+2) \times (+2) = +4$ and $(-2) \times (-2) = +4$.

Addition and Subtraction *Polynomials* are quantities like $3ab^2 + 4ab^3 - 7a^2b^4$ which have several terms of different *names.* When adding polynomials, only terms of the same name can be taken together.

$$\begin{array}{rrrrr} 7a^3 & + 8ab^2 & + 3a^2b & & + 3 \\ a^3 & - 5ab^2 & & - b^3 & \\ \hline 8a^3 & + 3ab^2 & + 3a^2b & - b^3 & + 3 \end{array}$$

Collecting terms. When an expression contains more than one term of the same name, these can be added together and the expression made simpler:

$$5x^2 + 2xy + 3xy^2 - 3x^2 + 7xy =$$

$$5x^2 - 3x^2 + 2xy + 7xy + 3xy^2 =$$

$$2x^2 + 9xy + 3xy^2$$

Multiplication Multiplication of single terms is indicated simply by writing them together.

$a \times b$ is written as ab

$a \times b^2$ is written as ab^2

Bracketed quantities are multiplied by a single term by multiplying each term:

$$a(b + c + d) = ab + ac + ad$$

When two bracketed quantities are multiplied, each term of the first bracketed quantity is to be multiplied by each term of the second bracketed quantity, thereby making every possible combination.

$$(a + b)(c + d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$$

In this work particular care must be taken to get the signs correct. Examples:

$$(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 + ab - ab - b^2 = a^2 - b^2$$

$$(a + b)(a + b) = a^2 + ab + ab + b^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

$$(a - b)(a - b) = a^2 - ab - ab + b^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$$

Division It is possible to do longhand division in algebra, although it is somewhat more complicated than in arithmetic. However, the division will seldom come out even, and is not often done in this form. The method is as follows: Write the terms of the dividend in the order of descending powers of one variable and do likewise with the divisor. Example:

Divide $5a^2b + 21b^3 + 2a^3 - 26ab^2$ by $2a - 3b$

Write the dividend in the order of descending powers of a and divide in the same way as in arithmetic.

$$\begin{array}{rl}
 & a^2 + 4ab - 7b^2 \\
2a - 3b \,) & 2a^3 + 5a^2b - 26ab^2 + 21b^3 \\
 & 2a^3 - 3a^2b \\
\hline
 & + 8a^2b - 26ab^2 \\
 & + 8a^2b - 12ab^2 \\
\hline
 & - 14ab^2 + 21b^3 \\
 & - 14ab^2 + 21b^3 \\
\hline
\end{array}$$

Another example: Divide $x^3 - y^3$ by $x - y$

$$\begin{array}{rl}
x - y \,) & x^3 + 0 + 0 - y^3 \,(\, x^2 + xy + y^2 \\
 & x^3 - x^2y \\
\hline
 & + x^2y \\
 & x^2y - xy^2 \\
\hline
 & + xy^2 - y^3 \\
 & xy^2 - y^3 \\
\hline
\end{array}$$

Factoring Very often it is necessary to simplify expressions by finding a factor. This is done by collecting two or more terms having the same factor and bringing the factor outside the brackets:

$$6ab + 3ac = 3a(2b + c)$$

In a four term expression one can take together two terms at a time; the intention is to try getting the terms within the brackets the same after the factor has been removed:

$$30ac - 18bc + 10ad - 6bd =$$
$$6c(5a - 3b) + 2d(5a - 3b) =$$
$$(5a - 3b)(6c + 2d)$$

Of course, this is not always possible and the expression may not have any factors. A similar process can of course be followed when the expression has six or eight or any even number of terms.

A special case is a three-term polynomial, which can sometimes be factored by writing the middle term as the sum of two terms:

$x^2 - 7xy + 12y^2$ may be rewritten as

$$x^2 - 3xy - 4xy + 12y^2 =$$
$$x(x - 3y) - 4y(x - 3y) =$$
$$(x - 4y)(x - 3y)$$

The middle term should be split into two in such a way that the sum of the two new terms equals the original middle term and that their product equals the product of the two outer terms. In the above example these conditions are fulfilled for $-3xy - 4xy = -7xy$ and $(-3xy)(-4xy) = 12x^2y^2$. It is not always possible to do this and there are then no simple factors.

Working with Powers and Roots When two powers of the same number are to be multiplied, the exponents are *added.*

$$a^2 \times a^3 = aa \times aaa = aaaaa = a^5 \text{ or}$$
$$a^2 \times a^3 = a^{(2+3)} = a^5$$

$$b^3 \times b = b^4$$

$$c^5 \times c^7 = c^{12}$$

Similarly, dividing of powers is done by subtracting the exponents.

$$\frac{a^3}{a^2} = \frac{aaa}{aa} = a \text{ or } \frac{a^3}{a^2} = a^{(3-2)} = a^1 = a$$

$$\frac{b^5}{b^3} = \frac{bbbbb}{bbb} = b^2 \text{ or } \frac{b^5}{b^3} = b^{(5-3)} = b^2$$

Now we are logically led into some important new ways of notation. We have seen that when dividing, the exponents are subtracted. This can be continued into negative exponents. In the following series, we successively divide by *a* and since this can now be done in two ways, the two ways of notation must have the same meaning and be identical.

a^5	a^2	$a^{-1} = \frac{1}{a}$
a^4	$a^1 = a$	$a^{-2} = \frac{1}{a^2}$
a^3	$a^0 = 1$	$a^{-3} = \frac{1}{a^3}$

These examples illustrate two rules: (1) any number raised to "zero' power equals one or unity; (2) any quantity raised to a negative power is the inverse or reciprocal of the same quantity raised to the same positive power.

$$n^0 = 1 \qquad a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$$

Roots. The product of the square root of two quantities equals the square root of their product.

$$\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab}$$

Also, the quotient of two roots is equal to the root of the quotient.

$$\frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{b}} = \sqrt{\frac{a}{b}}$$

Note, however, that in addition or subtraction the square root of the sum or difference is *not* the same as the sum or difference of the square roots.

$$\text{Thus, } \sqrt{9} - \sqrt{4} = 3 - 2 = 1$$
$$\text{but } \sqrt{9-4} = \sqrt{5} = 2.2361$$
$$\text{Likewise } \sqrt{a} + \sqrt{b} \text{ is not the same as } \sqrt{a+b}$$

Roots may be written as fractional powers. Thus $\sqrt{a}$ may be written as $a^{1/2}$ because

$$\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{a} = a$$
$$\text{and, } a^{1/2} \times a^{1/2} = a^{1/2+1/2} = a^1 = a$$

Any root may be written in this form

$$\sqrt{b} = b^{1/2} \quad \sqrt[3]{b} = b^{1/3} \quad \sqrt[4]{b^3} = b^{3/4}$$

The same notation is also extended in the negative direction:

$$b^{-1/2} = \frac{1}{b^{1/2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{b}} \qquad c^{-1/3} = \frac{1}{c^{1/3}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{c}}$$

Following the previous rules that exponents add when powers are multiplied,

$$\sqrt[3]{a} \times \sqrt[3]{a} = \sqrt[3]{a^2}$$
$$\text{but also } a^{1/3} \times a^{1/3} = a^{2/3}$$
$$\text{therefore } a^{2/3} = \sqrt[3]{a^2}$$

Powers of powers. When a power is again raised to a power, the exponents are multiplied;

$$(a^2)^3 = a^6 \qquad (b^{-1})^3 = b^{-3}$$
$$(a^3)^4 = a^{12} \qquad (b^{-2})^{-4} = b^8$$

This same rule also applies to roots of roots and also powers of roots and roots of powers because a root can always be written as a fractional power.

$$\sqrt[3]{\sqrt{a}} = \sqrt[6]{a} \text{ for } (a^{1/2})^{1/3} = a^{1/6}$$

Removing radicals. A root or radical in the denominator of a fraction makes the expression difficult to handle. If there must be a radical it should be located in the numerator rather than in the denominator. The removal of the radical from the denominator is done by multiplying both numerator and denominator by a quantity which will remove the radical from the denominator, thus *rationalizing* it:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} = \frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a} \times \sqrt{a}} = \frac{1}{a}\sqrt{a}$$

Suppose we have to rationalize

$\dfrac{3a}{\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{b}}$ In this case we must multiply numerator and denominator by $\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b}$, the same terms but with the second having the opposite sign, so that their product will not contain a root.

$$\frac{3a}{\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{b}} = \frac{3a(\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b})}{(\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{b})(\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b})} = \frac{3a(\sqrt{a} - \sqrt{b})}{a - b}$$

Imaginary Numbers Since the square of a negative number is positive and the square of a positive number is also positive, the square root of a negative number can be neither positive nor negative. Such a number is said to be *imaginary;* the most common such number ($\sqrt{-1}$) is often represented by the letter *i* in mathematical work or *j* in electrical work.

$$\sqrt{-1} = i \text{ or } j \text{ and } i^2 \text{ or } j^2 = -1$$

Imaginary numbers do not exactly correspond to anything in our experience and it is best not to try to visualize them. Despite this fact, their interest is much more than academic, for they are extremely useful in many calculations involving alternating currents.

The square root of any other negative number may be reduced to a product of two roots, one positive and one negative. For instance:

$$\sqrt{-57} = \sqrt{-1}\ \sqrt{57} = i\sqrt{57}$$

or, in general

$$\sqrt{-a} = i\sqrt{a}$$

Since $i = \sqrt{-1}$, the powers of *i* have the following values:

$$i^2 = -1$$

$$i^3 = -1 \times i = -i$$

$$i^4 = +1$$

$$i^5 = +1 \times i = i$$

Imaginary numbers are different from either positive or negative numbers; so in addition or subtraction they must always be accounted for separately. Numbers which consist of both real and imaginary parts are called *complex* numbers. Examples of complex numbers:

$$3 + 4i = 3 + 4\sqrt{-1}$$
$$a + bi = a + b\sqrt{-1}$$

Since an imaginary number can never be equal to a real number, it follows that in an equality like

$$a + bi = c + di$$

a must equal c and bi must equal di

Complex numbers are handled in algebra just like any other expression, considering *i* as a known quantity. Whenever powers of *i* occur, they can be replaced by the equivalents given above. This idea of having in one equation two separate sets of quantities which must be accounted for separately, has found a symbolic application in vector notation. These are covered later in this chapter.

Equations of the First Degree Algebraic expressions usually come in the form of equations, that is, one set of terms equals another set of terms. The simplest example of this is Ohm's Law:

$$E = IR$$

One of the three quantities may be unknown but if the other two are known, the third can be found readily by substituting the known values in the equation. This is very easy if it is *E* in the above example that is to be found; but suppose we wish to find *I* while *E* and *R* are given. We must then rearrange the equation so that *I* comes to stand alone to the left of the equality sign. This is known as *solving the equation for I.*

Solution of the equation in this case is done simply by transposing. If two things are equal then they must still be equal if both are multiplied or divided by the same number. Dividing both sides of the equation by R:

$$\frac{E}{R} = \frac{IR}{R} = I \text{ or } I = \frac{E}{R}$$

If it were required to solve the equation for *R*, we should divide both sides of the equation by *I*.

$$\frac{E}{I} = R \text{ or } R = \frac{E}{I}$$

A little more complicated example is the equation for the reactance of a condenser:

$$X = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

To solve this equation for *C*, we may multiply both sides of the equation by *C* and divide both sides by *X*

$$X \times \frac{C}{X} = \frac{1}{2\pi fC} \times \frac{C}{X}, \text{ or}$$
$$C = \frac{1}{2\pi fX}$$

This equation is one of those which requires a good knowledge of the placing of the decimal point when solving. Therefore we give a few examples: What is the reactance of a 25 $\mu\mu$fd. capacitor at 1000 kc.? In filling in the given values in the equation we must remember that the units used are farads, cycles, and ohms. Hence, we must write 25 $\mu\mu$fd. as 25 millionths of a millionth of a farad or 25×10^{-12} farad; similarly, 1000 kc. must be converted to 1,000,000 cycles. Substituting these values in the original equation, we have

$$X = \frac{1}{2 \times 3.14 \times 1{,}000{,}000 \times 25 \times 10^{-12}}$$

$$X = \frac{1}{6.28 \times 10^{6} \times 25 \times 10^{-12}} = \frac{10^{6}}{6.28 \times 25}$$
$$= 6360 \text{ ohms}$$

A bias resistor of 1000 ohms should be by-passed, so that at the lowest frequency the reactance of the condenser is 1/10th of that of the resistor. Assume the lowest frequency to be 50 cycles, then the required capacity should have a reactance of 100 ohms, at 50 cycles:

$$C = \frac{1}{2 \times 3.14 \times 50 \times 100} \text{ farads}$$

$$C = \frac{10^{6}}{6.28 \times 5000} \text{ microfarads}$$

$$C = 32\ \mu\text{fd.}$$

In the third possible case, it may be that the frequency is the unknown. This happens for instance in some tone control problems. Suppose it is required to find the frequency which makes the reactance of a 0.03 μfd. condenser equal to 100,000 ohms.

First we must solve the equation for f. This is done by transposition.

$$X = \frac{1}{2 \pi f C} \qquad f = \frac{1}{2 \pi C X}$$

Substituting known values

$$f = \frac{1}{2 \times 3.14 \times 0.03 \times 10^{-6} \times 100{,}000} \text{ cycles}$$

$$f = \frac{1}{0.01884} \text{ cycles} = 53 \text{ cycles}$$

These equations are known as first degree equations with one unknown. First degree, because the unknown occurs only as a first power. Such an equation always has one possible solution or *root* if all the other values are known.

If there are two unknowns, a single equation will not suffice, for there are then an infinite number of possible solutions. In the case of two unknowns we need *two independent* simultaneous equations. An example of this is:

$$3x + 5y = 7 \qquad 4x - 10y = 3$$

Required, to find x and y.

This type of work is done either by the *substitution method* or by the *elimination method.* In the substitution method we might write for the first equation:

$$3x = 7 - 5y \therefore x = \frac{7 - 5y}{3}$$

(The symbol $\therefore$ means *therefore* or *hence).*

This value of x can then be substituted for x in the second equation making it a single equation with but one unknown, y.

It is, however, simpler in this case to use the elimination method. Multiply both sides of the first equation by two and add it to the second equation:

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 6x + 10y & = & 14 \\ 4x - 10y & = & 3 \\ \hline 10x & = & 17 \end{array} \text{ add} \qquad x = 1.7$$

Substituting this value of x in the first equation, we have

$$5.1 + 5y = 7 \therefore 5y = 7 - 5.1 = 1.9 \therefore$$
$$y = 0.38$$

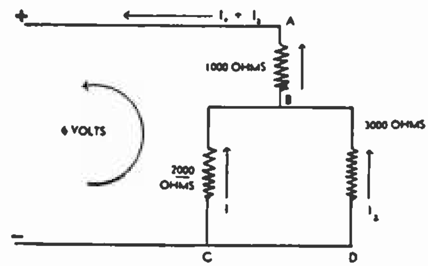


Figure 3.

In this simple network the current divides through the 2000-ohm and 3000-ohm resistors. The current through each may be found by using two simultaneous linear equations. Note that the arrows indicate the direction of electron flow as explained on page 18.

An application of two simultaneous linear equations will now be given. In Figure 3 a simple network is shown consisting of three resistances; let it be required to find the currents I_1 and I_2 in the two branches.

The general way in which all such problems can be solved is to assign directions to the currents through the various resistances. When these are chosen wrong it will do no harm for the result of the equations will then be negative, showing up the error. In this simple illustration there is, of course, no such difficulty.

Next we write the equations for the meshes, in accordance with Kirchhoff's second law. All voltage drops in the direction of the curved arrow are considered positive, the reverse ones negative. Since there are two unknowns we write two equations.

$$1000\ (I_1 + I_2) + 2000\ I_1 = 6$$

$$-2000\ I_1 + 3000\ I_2 = 0$$

Expand the first equation

$$3000\ I_1 + 1000\ I_2 = 6$$

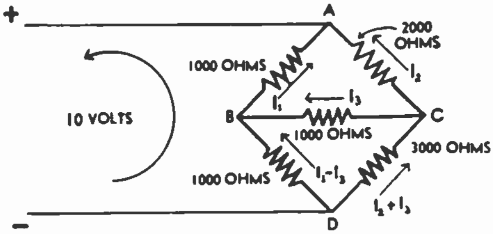


Figure 4.

A MORE COMPLICATED PROBLEM REQUIRING THE SOLUTION OF CURRENTS IN A NETWORK.

This problem is similar to that in Figure 3 but requires the use of three simultaneous linear equations.

Multiply this equation by 3

$$9000\, I_1 + 3000\, I_2 = 18$$

Subtracting the second equation from the first

$$11000\, I_1 = 18$$
$$I_1 = 18/11000 = 0.00164 \text{ amp.}$$

Filling in this value in the second equation

$$3000\, I_2 = 3.28 \qquad I_2 = 0.00109 \text{ amp.}$$

A similar problem but requiring three equations is shown in Figure 4. This consists of an unbalanced bridge and the problem is to find the current in the bridge-branch, I_3. We again assign directions to the different currents, guessing at the one marked I_3. The voltages around closed loops ABC [eq. (1)] and BDC [eq. (2)] equal zero and are assumed to be positive in a counterclockwise direction; that from D to A equals 10 volts [eq. (3)].

(1)
$$-1000\, I_1 + 2000\, I_2 - 1000\, I_3 = 0$$

(2)
$$-1000\,(I_1 - I_3) + 1000\, I_3 + 3000\,(I_2 + I_3) = 0$$

(3)
$$1000\, I_1 + 1000\,(I_1 - I_3) - 10 = 0$$

Expand equations (2) and (3)

(2)
$$-1000\, I_1 + 3000\, I_2 + 5000\, I_3 = 0$$

(3)
$$2000\, I_1 - 1000\, I_3 - 10 = 0$$

Subtract equation (2) from equation (1)

(a)
$$-1000\, I_2 - 6000\, I_3 = 0$$

Multiply the second equation by 2 and add it to the third equation

(b)
$$6000\, I_2 + 9000\, I_3 - 10 = 0$$

Now we have but two equations with two unknowns.

Multiplying equation (a) by 6 and adding to equation (b) we have

$$-27000\, I_3 - 10 = 0$$
$$I_3 = -10/27000 = -0.00037 \text{ amp.}$$

Note that now the solution is negative which means that we have drawn the arrow for I_3 in Figure 4 in the wrong direction. The current is 0.37 ma. in the other direction.

Second Degree or Quadratic Equations A somewhat similar problem in radio would be, if power in watts and resistance in ohms of a circuit are given, to find the voltage and the current. Example: When lighted to normal brilliancy, a 100 watt lamp has a resistance of 49 ohms; for what line voltage was the lamp designed and what current would it take.

Here we have to use the simultaneous equations:

$$P = EI \quad \text{and} \quad E = IR$$

Filling in the known values:

$$P = EI = 100 \text{ and } E = IR = I \times 49$$

Substitute the second equation into the first equation

$$P = EI = (I) \times I \times 49 = 49\, I^2 = 100$$

$$\therefore\ I = \sqrt{\frac{100}{49}} = \frac{10}{7} = 1.43 \text{ amp.}$$

Substituting the found value of 1.43 amp. for *I* in the first equation, we obtain the value of the line voltage, 70 volts.

Note that this is a *second degree* equation for we finally had the second power of *I*. Also, since the current in this problem could only be positive, the negative square root of 100/49 or −10/7 was not used. Strictly speaking, however, there are two more values that satisfy both equations, these are −1.43 and −70.

In general, a second degree equation in one unknown has two roots, a third degree equation three roots, etc.

The Quadratic Equation Quadratic or second degree equations with but one unknown can be reduced to the general form

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

where x is the unknown and a, b, and c are constants.

This type of equation can sometimes be solved by the method of factoring a three-term expression as follows:

$$2x^2 + 7x + 6 = 0$$

factoring:

$$2x^2 + 4x + 3x + 6 = 0$$

$$2x\,(x + 2) + 3\,(x + 2) = 0$$

$$(2x + 3)\,(x + 2) = 0$$

There are two possibilities when a product is zero. Either the one or the other factor equals zero. Therefore there are two solutions.

$$2x_1 + 3 = 0 \qquad x_2 + 2 = 0$$

$$2x_1 = -3 \qquad x_2 = -2$$

$$x_1 = -1\tfrac{1}{2}$$

Since factoring is not always easy, the following general solution can usually be employed; in this equation a, b, and c are the coefficients referred to above.

$$X = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

Applying this method of solution to the previous example:

$$X = \frac{-7 \pm \sqrt{49 - 8 \times 6}}{4} = \frac{-7 \pm \sqrt{1}}{4} = \frac{-7 \pm 1}{4}$$

$$X_1 = \frac{-7 + 1}{4} = -1\tfrac{1}{2}$$

$$X_2 = \frac{-7 - 1}{4} = -2$$

A practical example involving quadratics is the law of impedance in a.c. circuits. However, this is a simple kind of quadratic equation which can be solved readily without the use of the special formula given above.

$$Z = \sqrt{R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2}$$

This equation can always be solved for R, by squaring both sides of the equation. It should now be understood that squaring both sides of an equation as well as multiplying both sides with a term containing the unknown *may add a new root.* Since we know here that Z and R are positive, when we square the expression there is no ambiguity.

$$Z^2 = R^2 + (X_L - X_C)^2$$

$$\text{and } R^2 = Z^2 - (X_L - X_C)^2$$

$$\text{or } R = \sqrt{Z^2 - (X_L - X_C)^2}$$

$$\text{Also: } (X_L - X_C)^2 = Z^2 - R^2$$

$$\text{and } \pm\,(X_L - X_C) = \sqrt{Z^2 - R^2}$$

But here we do not know the sign of the solution unless there are other facts which indicate it. To find either X_L or X_C alone it would have to be known whether the one or the other is the larger.

Logarithms

Definition and Use A logarithm is the power (or exponent) to which we must raise one number to obtain another. Although the large numbers used in logarithmic work may make them seem difficult or complicated, in reality the principal use of logarithms is to *simplify* calculations which would otherwise be extremely laborious.

We have seen so far that every operation in arithmetic can be reversed. If we have the addition:

$$a + b = c$$

we can reverse this operation in two ways. It may be that b is the unknown, and then we reverse the equation so that it becomes

$$c - a = b$$

It is also possible that we wish to know a, and that b and c are given. The equation then becomes

$$c - b = a$$

We call both of these reversed operations *subtraction,* and we make no distinction between the two possible reverses.

Multiplication can also be reversed in two manners. In the multiplication

$$ab = c$$

we may wish to know a, when b and c are given, or we may wish to know b when a and c are given. In both cases we speak of *division,* and we make again no distinction between the two.

In the case of powers we can also reverse the operation in two manners, but now they are not equivalent. Suppose we have the equation

$$a^b = c$$

If a is the unknown, and b and c are given, we may reverse the operation by writing

$$\sqrt[b]{c} = a$$

This operation we call *taking the root.* But there is a third possibility: that a and c are given, and that we wish to know b. In other words, the question is "to which power must we raise *a* so as to obtain *c*?". This operation is known as *taking the logarithm*, and *b* is the logarithm of *c* to the base *a*. We write this operation as follows:

$$\log_a c = b$$

Consider a numerical example. We know $2^3 = 8$. We can reverse this operation by asking "to which power must we raise *2* so as to obtain *8*?" Therefore, the logarithm of *8* to the base *2* is *3*, or

$$\log_2 8 = 3$$

Taking any single base, such as *2*, we might write a series of all the powers of the base next to the series of their logarithms:

Number:	2	4	8	16	32	64	128	256	512	1024
Logarithm:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

We can expand this table by finding terms between the terms listed above. For instance, if we let the logarithms increase with ½ each time, successive terms in the upper series would have to be multiplied by the square root of 2. Similarly, if we wish to increase the logarithm by 1/10 at each term, the ratio between two consecutive terms in the upper series would be the tenth root of 2. Now this short list of numbers constitutes a small logarithm table. It should be clear that one could find the logarithm of any number to the base 2. This logarithm will usually be a number with many decimals.

Logarithmic Bases The fact that we chose 2 as a base for the illustration is purely arbitrary. Any base could be used, and therefore there are many possible systems of logarithms. In practice we use only two bases: The most frequently used base is 10, and the system using this base is known as the system of *common* logarithms, or Briggs' logarithms. The second system employs as a base an odd number, designated by the letter *e*; e = 2.71828. . . . This is known as the *natural* logarithmic system, also as the Napierian system, and the hyperbolic system. Although different writers may vary on the subject, the usual notation is simply *log a* for the common logarithm of *a*, and $\log_e a$ (or sometimes *ln a)* for the natural logarithm of *a*. We shall use the common logarithmic system in most cases, and therefore we shall examine this system more closely.

Common Logarithms In the system wherein *10* is the base, the logarithm of *10* equals *1*; the logarithm of *100* equals *2*, etc., as shown in the following table:

$$\log 10 = \log 10^1 = 1$$
$$\log 100 = \log 10^2 = 2$$
$$\log 1{,}000 = \log 10^3 = 3$$
$$\log 10{,}000 = \log 10^4 = 4$$
$$\log 100{,}000 = \log 10^5 = 5$$
$$\log 1{,}000{,}000 = \log 10^6 = 6$$

This table can be extended for numbers less than 10 when we remember the rules of powers discussed under the subject of algebra. Numbers less than unity, too, can be written as powers of ten.

$$\log 1 = \log 10^0 = 0$$
$$\log 0.1 = \log 10^{-1} = -1$$
$$\log 0.01 = \log 10^{-2} = -2$$
$$\log 0.001 = \log 10^{-3} = -3$$
$$\log 0.0001 = \log 10^{-4} = -4$$

From these examples follow several rules: The logarithm of any number between zero and + 1 is negative; the logarithm of zero is minus infinity; the logarithm of a number greater than + 1 is positive. *Negative numbers have no logarithm.* These rules are true of common logarithms and of logarithms to any base.

The logarithm of a number between the powers of ten is an irrational number, that is, it has a never ending series of decimals. For instance, the logarithm of 20 must be between 1 and 2 because 20 is between 10 and 100; the value of the logarithm of 20 is 1.30103. . . . The part of the logarithm to the left of the decimal point is called the *characteristic*, while the decimals are called the *mantissa*. In the case of 1.30103 . ., the logarithm of 20, the characteristic is 1 and the mantissa is .30103 . .

Properties of Logarithms If the base of our system is ten, then, by definition of a logarithm:

$$10^{\log a} = a$$

or, if the base is raised to the power having an exponent equal to the logarithm of a number, the result is that number.

The logarithm of a *product* is equal to the *sum* of the logarithms of the two factors.

$$\log ab = \log a + \log b$$

This is easily proved to be true because, it

Figure 5. FOUR PLACE LOGARITHM TABLES.

N	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
10	0000	0043	0086	0128	0170	0212	0253	0294	0334	0374
11	0414	0453	0492	0531	0569	0607	0645	0682	0719	0755
12	0792	0828	0864	0899	0934	0969	1004	1038	1072	1106
13	1139	1173	1206	1239	1271	1303	1335	1367	1399	1430
14	1461	1492	1523	1553	1584	1614	1644	1673	1703	1732
15	1761	1790	1818	1847	1875	1903	1931	1959	1987	2014
16	2041	2068	2095	2122	2148	2175	2201	2227	2253	2279
17	2304	2330	2355	2380	2405	2430	2455	2480	2504	2529
18	2553	2577	2601	2625	2648	2672	2695	2718	2742	2765
19	2788	2810	2833	2856	2878	2900	2923	2945	2967	2989
20	3010	3032	3054	3075	3096	3118	3139	3160	3181	3201
21	3222	3243	3263	3284	3304	3324	3345	3365	3385	3404
22	3424	3444	3464	3483	3502	3522	3541	3560	3579	3598
23	3617	3636	3655	3674	3692	3711	3729	3747	3766	3784
24	3802	3820	3838	3856	3874	3892	3909	3927	3945	3962
25	3979	3997	4014	4031	4048	4065	4082	4099	4116	4133
26	4150	4166	4183	4200	4216	4232	4249	4265	4281	4298
27	4314	4330	4346	4362	4378	4393	4409	4425	4440	4456
28	4472	4487	4502	4518	4533	4548	4564	4579	4594	4609
29	4624	4639	4654	4669	4683	4698	4713	4728	4742	4757
30	4771	4786	4800	4814	4829	4843	4857	4871	4886	4900
31	4914	4928	4942	4955	4969	4983	4997	5011	5024	5038
32	5051	5065	5079	5092	5105	5119	5132	5145	5159	5172
33	5185	5198	5211	5224	5237	5250	5263	5276	5289	5302
34	5315	5328	5340	5353	5366	5378	5391	5403	5416	5428
35	5441	5453	5465	5478	5490	5502	5514	5527	5539	5551
36	5563	5575	5587	5599	5611	5623	5635	5647	5658	5670
37	5682	5694	5705	5717	5729	5740	5752	5763	5775	5786
38	5798	5809	5821	5832	5843	5855	5866	5877	5888	5899
39	5911	5922	5933	5944	5955	5966	5977	5988	5999	6010
40	6021	6031	6042	6053	6064	6075	6085	6096	6107	6117
41	6128	6138	6149	6160	6170	6180	6191	6201	6212	6222
42	6232	6243	6253	6263	6274	6284	6294	6304	6314	6325
43	6335	6345	6355	6365	6375	6385	6395	6405	6415	6425
44	6435	6444	6454	6464	6474	6484	6493	6503	6513	6522
45	6532	6542	6551	6561	6571	6580	6590	6599	6609	6618
46	6628	6637	6646	6656	6665	6675	6684	6693	6702	6712
47	6721	6730	6739	6749	6758	6767	6776	6785	6794	6803
48	6812	6821	6830	6839	6848	6857	6866	6875	6884	6893
49	6902	6911	6920	6928	6937	6946	6955	6964	6972	6981
50	6990	6998	7007	7016	7024	7033	7042	7050	7059	7067
51	7076	7084	7093	7101	7110	7118	7126	7135	7143	7152
52	7160	7168	7177	7185	7193	7202	7210	7218	7226	7235
53	7243	7251	7259	7267	7275	7284	7292	7300	7308	7316
54	7324	7332	7340	7348	7356	7364	7372	7380	7388	7396
55	7404	7412	7419	7427	7435	7443	7451	7459	7466	7474
56	7482	7490	7497	7505	7513	7520	7528	7536	7543	7551
57	7559	7566	7574	7582	7589	7597	7604	7612	7619	7527
58	7634	7642	7649	7657	7664	7672	7679	7686	7694	7701
59	7709	7716	7723	7731	7738	7745	7752	7760	7767	7774
60	7782	7789	7796	7803	7810	7818	7825	7832	7839	7846
61	7853	7860	7868	7875	7882	7889	7896	7903	7910	7917
62	7924	7931	7938	7945	7952	7959	7966	7973	7980	7987
63	7993	8000	8007	8014	8021	8028	8035	8041	8048	8055
64	8062	8069	8075	8082	8089	8096	8102	8109	8116	8122
65	8129	8136	8142	8149	8156	8162	8169	8176	8182	8189
66	8195	8202	8209	8215	8222	8228	8235	8241	8248	8254
67	8261	8267	8274	8280	8287	8293	8299	8306	8312	8319
68	8325	8331	8338	8344	8351	8357	8363	8370	8376	8382
69	8388	8395	8401	8407	8414	8420	8426	8432	8439	8445
70	8451	8457	8463	8470	8476	8482	8488	8494	8500	8506
71	8513	8519	8525	8531	8537	8543	8549	8555	8561	8567
72	8573	8579	8585	8591	8597	8603	8609	8615	8621	8627
73	8633	8639	8645	8651	8657	8663	8669	8675	8681	8686
74	8692	8698	8704	8710	8716	8722	8727	8733	8739	8745
75	8751	8756	8762	8768	8774	8779	8785	8791	8797	8802
76	8808	8814	8820	8825	8831	8837	8842	8848	8854	8859
77	8865	8871	8876	8882	8887	8893	8899	8904	8910	8915
78	8921	8927	8932	8938	8943	8949	8954	8960	8965	8971
79	8976	8982	8987	8993	8998	9004	9009	9015	9020	9025
80	9031	9036	9042	9047	9053	9058	9063	9069	9074	9079
81	9085	9090	9096	9101	9106	9112	9117	9122	9128	9133
82	9138	9143	9149	9154	9159	9165	9170	9175	9180	9186
83	9191	9196	9201	9206	9212	9217	9222	9227	9232	9238
84	9243	9248	9253	9258	9263	9269	9274	9279	9284	9289
85	9294	9299	9304	9309	9315	9320	9325	9330	9335	9340
86	9345	9350	9355	9360	9365	9370	9375	9380	9385	9390
87	9395	9400	9405	9410	9415	9420	9425	9430	9435	9440
88	9445	9450	9455	9460	9465	9469	9474	9479	9484	9489
89	9494	9499	9504	9509	9513	9518	9523	9528	9533	9538
90	9542	9547	9552	9557	9562	9566	9571	9576	9581	9586
91	9590	9595	9600	9605	9609	9614	9619	9624	9628	9633
92	9638	9643	9647	9652	9657	9661	9666	9671	9675	9680
93	9685	9689	9694	9699	9703	9708	9713	9717	9722	9727
94	9731	9736	9741	9745	9750	9754	9759	9763	9768	9773
95	9777	9782	9786	9791	9795	9800	9805	9809	9814	9818
96	9823	9827	9832	9836	9841	9845	9850	9854	9859	9863
97	9868	9872	9877	9881	9886	9890	9894	9899	9903	9908
98	9912	9917	9921	9926	9930	9934	9939	9943	9948	9952
99	9956	9961	9965	9969	9974	9978	9983	9987	9991	9996

was shown before that when multiplying to powers, the exponents are added; therefore,

$$a \times b = 10^{\log a} \times 10^{\log b} = 10^{(\log a + \log b)}$$

Similarly, the logarithm of a quotient is the difference between the logarithm of the dividend and the logarithm of the divisor.

$$\log \frac{a}{b} = \log a - \log b$$

This is so because by the same rules of exponents:

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{10^{\log a}}{10^{\log b}} = 10^{(\log a - \log b)}$$

We have thus established an easier way of multiplication and division since these operations have been reduced to adding and subtracting.

The logarithm of a power of a number is equal to the logarithm of that number, multiplied by the exponent of the power.

$$\log a^2 = 2 \log a \text{ and } \log a^3 = 3 \log a$$

or, in general:

$$\log a^n = n \log a$$

Also, the logarithm of a root of a number is equal to the logarithm of that number divided by the index of the root:

$$\log \sqrt[n]{a} = \frac{1}{n} \log a$$

It follows from the rules of multiplication, that numbers having the same digits but different locations for the decimal point, have logarithms with the same mantissa:

$$\log 829 = 2.918555$$

$$\log 82.9 = 1.918555$$

$$\log 8.29 = 0.918555$$

$$\log 0.829 = -1.918555$$

$$\log 0.0829 = -2.918555$$

$$\log 829 = \log (8.29 \times 100) = \log 8.29 + \log 100 = 0.918555 + 2$$

Logarithm tables give the mantissas of logarithms only. The characteristic has to be determined by inspection. The characteristic is equal to the number of digits to the left of the decimal point *minus one*. In the case of logarithms of numbers less than unity, the characteristic is negative and is equal to the number of ciphers to the right of the decimal point *plus one*.

For reasons of convenience in making up logarithm tables, it has become the rule that the mantissa should always be positive. Such notations above as -1.918555 really mean $(+0.918555 \;\; -1)$; and -2.981555 means $(+0.918555 - 2)$. There are also some other notations in use such as

$$\bar{1}.918555 \text{ and } \bar{2}.918555$$

$$\text{also } 9.918555 - 10 \quad 8.918555 - 10 \quad 7.918555 - 10, \text{ etc.}$$

When, after some addition and subtraction of logarithms a mantissa should come out negative, one cannot look up its equivalent number or *anti-logarithm* in the table. The mantissa must first be made positive by adding and subtracting an appropriate integral number. Example: Suppose we find that the logarithm of a number is -0.34569, then we can transform it into the proper form by adding and subtracting 1

$$\begin{array}{ll} 1 & -1 \\ -0.34569 & \\ \hline 0.65431 & -1 \text{ or } -1.65431 \end{array}$$

Using Logarithm Tables

Logarithms are used for calculations involving multiplication, division, powers, and roots. Especially when the numbers are large and for higher, or fractional powers and roots, this becomes the most convenient way.

Logarithm tables are available giving the logarithms to three places, some to four places, others to five and six places. The table to use depends on the accuracy required in the result of our calculations. The four place table, printed in this chapter, permits the finding of answers to problems to four significant figures which is good enough for most constructional purposes. If greater accuracy is required a five place table should be consulted. The five place table is perhaps the most popular of all.

Referring now to the four place table, to find a common logarithm of a number, proceed as follows. Suppose the number is 5576. First, determine the characteristic. An inspection will show that the characteristic should be 3. This figure is placed to the left of the decimal point. The mantissa is now found by reference to the logarithm table. The first two numbers are 55; glance down the *N* column until coming to these figures. Advance to the right until coming in line with the column headed 7; the mantissa will be 7459. (Note that the column headed 7 corresponds to the *third figure* in the number 5576.) Place the mantissa 7459 to the right of the decimal point, making the logarithm of 5576 now read 3.7459. *Important:* do not consider the last figure 6 in the

N	L.	0*	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	P.P.
250	39	794	811	829	846	863	881	898	915	933	950	
251		967	985	*002	*019	*037	*054	*071	*088	*106	*123	18
252	40	140	157	175	192	209	226	243	261	278	295	1 1.8
253		312	329	346	364	381	398	415	432	449	466	2 3.6
254		483	500	518	535	552	569	586	603	620	637	3 5.4
												4 7.2
255		654	671	688	705	722	739	756	773	790	807	etc.

Figure 6.

A SMALL SECTION OF A FIVE PLACE LOGARITHM TABLE.

Logarithms may be found with greater accuracy with such tables, but they are only of use when the accuracy of the original data warrants greater precision in the figure work. Slightly greater accuracy may be obtained for intermediate points by interpolation, as explained in the text.

number 5576 when looking for the mantissa in the accompanying four place tables; in fact, one may usually disregard all digits beyond the first three when determining the mantissa. (*Interpolation*. sometimes used to find a logarithm more accurately, is unnecessary unless warranted by unusual accuracy in the available data.) However, be doubly sure to include all figures when ascertaining the magnitude of the characteristic.

To find the anti-logarithm, the table is used in reverse. As an example, let us find the anti-logarithm of 1.272 or, in other words, find the number of which 1.272 is the logarithm. Look in the table for the mantissa closest to 272. This is found in the first half of the table and the nearest value is 2718. Write down the first two significant figures of the anti-logarithm by taking the figures at the beginning of the line on which 2718 was found. This is 18; add to this, the digit above the column in which 2718 was found; this is 7. The anti-logarithm is 187 but we have not yet placed the decimal point. The characteristic is 1, which means that there should be two digits to the left of the decimal point. Hence, 18.7 is the anti-logarithm of 1.272.

For the sake of completeness we shall also describe the same operation with a five-place table where interpolation is done by means of tables of proportional parts (P.P. tables). Therefore we are reproducing here a small part of one page of a five-place table.

Finding the logarithm of 0.025013 is done as follows: We can begin with the characteristic, which is -2. Next find the first three digits in the column, headed by N and immediately after this we see 39, the first two digits of the mantissa. Then look among the headings of the other columns for the next digit of the number, in this case *1*. In the column, headed by *1* and on the line headed *250*, we find the next three digits of the logarithm, 811. So far, the logarithm is -2.39811 but this is the logarithm of 0.025010 and we want the logarithm of 0.02501*3*. Here we can interpolate by observing that the difference between the log of 0.02501 and 0.02502 is 829 − 811 or 18, in the last two significant figures. Looking in the P.P. table marked *18* we find after 3 the number 5.4 which is to be added to the logarithm.

$$\begin{array}{r} -2.39811 \\ 5.4 \\ \hline -2.39816 \end{array}$$

−2.39816, the logarithm of 0.025013

Since our table is only good to five places, we must eliminate the last figure given in the P.P. table if it is less than 5, otherwise we must add one to the next to the last figure, rounding off to a whole number in the P.P. table.

Finding the anti-logarithm is done the same way but with the procedure reversed. Suppose it is required to find the anti-logarithm of 0.40100. Find the first two digits in the column headed by L. Then one must look for the next three digits or the ones nearest to it, in the columns after 40 and on the lines from 40 to 41. Now here we find that numbers in the neighborhood of 100 occur only with an asterisk on the line just before 40 and still after 39. The asterisk means that instead of the 39 as the first two digits, these mantissas should have 40 as the first two digits. The logarithm 0.40100 is between the logs 0.40088 and 0.40106; the anti-logarithm is between 2517 and 2518. The difference between the two logarithms in the table is again 18 in the last two figures and our logarithm 0.40100 differs with the lower one 12 in the last figures. Look in the P.P. table of 18 which number comes closest to 12. This is found to be 12.6 for $7 \times 1.8 = 12.6$. Therefore we may add the digit 7 to the anti-logarithm already found; so we have 25177. Next, place the decimal point according to the rules: There are as many digits to the left of the decimal point as indicated in the characteristic plus one. The anti-logarithm of 0.40100 is 2.5177.

In the following examples of the use of logarithms we shall use only three places from the tables printed in this chapter since a greater degree of precision in our calculations would not be warranted by the accuracy of the data given.

In a 375 ohm bias resistor flows a current of 41.5 milliamperes; how many watts are dissipated by the resistor?

We write the equation for power in watts:

$$P = I^2R$$

and filling in the quantities in question, we have:

$$P = 0.0415^2 \times 375$$

Taking logarithms,

$$\log P = 2 \log 0.0415 + \log 375$$

$$\log 0.0415 = -2.618$$

$$\text{So } 2 \times \log 0.0415 = -3.236$$

$$\log \quad 375 = \quad 2.574$$

$$\log P \quad = -1.810$$

antilog = 0.646. Answer = 0.646 watts

Caution: Do not forget that the negative sign before the characteristic belongs to the characteristic only and that mantissas are *always* positive. Therefore we recommend the other notation, for it is less likely to lead to errors. The work is then written:

$$\log 0.0415 = 8.618-10$$
$$2 \times \log 0.0415 = 17.236-20 = 7.236-10$$
$$\log 375 = 2.574$$
$$\log P = 9.810-10$$

Another example follows which demonstrates the ease in handling powers and roots. Assume an all-wave receiver is to be built, covering from 550 kc. to 60 mc. Can this be done in five ranges and what will be the required tuning ratio for each range if no overlapping is required? Call the tuning ratio of one band, x. Then the total tuning ratio for five such bands is x^5. But the total tuning ratio for all bands is 60/0.55. Therefore:

$$X^5 = \frac{60}{0.55} \text{ or : } x = \sqrt[5]{\frac{60}{0.55}}$$

Taking logarithms:

$$\log x = \frac{\log 60 - \log 0.55}{5}$$

$$\begin{array}{ll} \log 60 & 1.778 \\ \log 0.55 & -1.740 \\ \hline & 2.038 \end{array} \text{ subtract}$$

Remember again that the mantissas are positive and the characteristic alone can be negative. Subtracting −1 is the same as adding +1.

$$\log x = \frac{2.038}{5} = 0.408$$

$$x = \text{antilog } 0.408 = 2.56$$

The tuning ratio should be 2.56.

db	Power Ratio
0	1.00
1	1.26
2	1.58
3	2.00
4	2.51
5	3.16
6	3.98
7	5.01
8	6.31
9	7.94
10	10.00
20	100
30	1,000
40	10,000
50	100,000
60	1,000,000
70	10,000,000
80	100,000,000

Figure 7.
A TABLE OF DECIBEL GAINS VERSUS POWER RATIOS.

The Decibel

The decibel is a unit for the comparison of power or voltage levels in sound and electrical work. The sensation of our ears due to sound waves in the surrounding air is roughly proportional to the logarithm of the energy of the sound-wave and not proportional to the energy itself. For this reason a logarithmic unit is used so as to approach the reaction of the ear.

The decibel represents a *ratio* of two power levels, usually connected with gains or loss due to an amplifier or other network. The decibel is defined

$$N_{db} = 10 \log \frac{P_o}{P_i}$$

where P_o stands for the output power, P_i for the input power and N_{db} for the number of decibels. When the answer is positive, there is a gain; when the answer is negative, there is a loss.

The gain of amplifiers is usually given in decibels. For this purpose both the input power and output power should be measured. Example: Suppose that an intermediate amplifier is being driven by an input power of 0.2 watt and after amplification, the output is found to be 6 watts.

$$\frac{P_o}{P_i} = \frac{6}{0.2} = 30$$

$$\log 30 = 1.48$$

Therefore the gain is 10 × 1.48 = 14.8 decibels. The decibel is a logarithmic unit; when the power was multiplied by 30, the power level in decibels was increased by 14.8 decibels, or 14.8 decibels *added.*

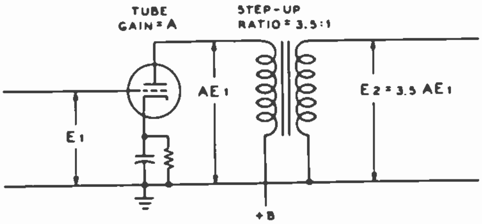


Figure 8.
STAGE GAIN.
The voltage gain in decibels in this stage is equal to the amplification in the tube plus the step-up ratio of the transformer, both expressed in decibels.

When one amplifier is to be followed by another amplifier, power gains are multiplied but the decibel gains are added. If a main amplifier having a gain of 1,000,000 (power ratio is 1,000,000) is preceded by a pre-amplifier with a gain of 1000, the total gain is 1,000,000,000. But in decibels, the first amplifier has a gain of 60 decibels, the second a gain of 30 decibels and the two of them will have a gain of 90 decibels when connected in cascade. (This is true only if the two amplifiers are properly matched at the junction as otherwise there will be a reflection loss at this point which must be subtracted from the total.)

Conversion of power ratios to decibels or vice versa is easy with the small table shown on these pages. In any case, an ordinary logarithm table will do. Find the logarithm of the power ratio and multiply by ten to find decibels.

Sometimes it is more convenient to figure decibels from voltage or current ratios or gains rather than from power ratios. This applies especially to voltage amplifiers. The equation for this is

$$N_{db} = 20 \log \frac{E_o}{E_i} \text{ or } 20 \log \frac{I_o}{I_i}$$

where the subscript, $_o$, denotes the output voltage or current and $_i$ the input voltage or current. Remember, this equation is true only if the voltage or current gain in question represents a power gain which is the square of it and not if the power gain which results from this is some other quantity due to impedance changes. This should be quite clear when we consider that a matching transformer to connect a speaker to a line or output tube does not represent a gain or loss; there is a voltage change and a current change yet the power remains the same for the impedance has changed.

On the other hand, when dealing with voltage amplifiers, we can figure the gain in a stage by finding the voltage ratio from the grid of the first tube to the grid of the next tube.

Example: In the circuit of Figure 8, the gain in the stage is equal to the amplification in the tube and the step-up ratio of the transformer. If the amplification in the tube is 10 and the step-up in the transformer is 3.5, the voltage gain is 35 and the gain in decibels is:

$$20 \times \log 35 = 20 \times 1.54 = 30.8 \text{ db}$$

Decibels as Power Level The original use of the decibel was only as a *ratio* of power levels—not as an absolute measure of power. However, one may use the decibel as such an absolute unit by fixing an arbitrary "zero" level, and to indicate any power level by its number of decibels above or below this arbitrary zero level. This is all very good so long as we agree on the zero level.

Any power level may then be converted to decibels by the equation:

$$N_{db} = 10 \log \frac{P_o}{P_{ref.}}$$

where N_{db} is the desired power level in decibels, P_o the output of the amplifier, $P_{ref.}$ the arbitrary reference level.

The zero level most frequently used (but not always) is 6 milliwatts or 0.006 watts. For this zero level, the equation reduces to

$$N_{db} = 10 \log \frac{P_o}{0.006}$$

Example: An amplifier using a 6F6 tube should be able to deliver an undistorted output of 3 watts. How much is this in decibels?

$$\frac{P_o}{P_{ref.}} = \frac{3}{.006} = 500$$

$$10 \times \log 500 = 10 \times 2.70 = 27.0$$

Therefore the power level at the output of the 6F6 is 27.0 decibels. When the power level to be converted is less than 6 milliwatts, the level is noted as negative. Here we must remember all that has been said regarding logarithms of numbers less than unity and the fact that the characteristic is negative but not the mantissa.

A preamplifier for a microphone is feeding 1.5 milliwatts into the line going to the regular speech amplifier. What is this power level expressed in decibels?

$$\text{decibels} = 10 \log \frac{P_o}{0.006} = 10 \log \frac{0.0015}{0.006} = 10 \log 0.25$$

Log 0.25 = −1.398 (from table). Therefore, 10 × −1.398 = (10 × −1 = −10) + (10 × .398 = 3.98); adding the products algebraically, gives −6.02 db.

The conversion chart reproduced in this chapter will be of use in converting decibels to watts and vice versa.

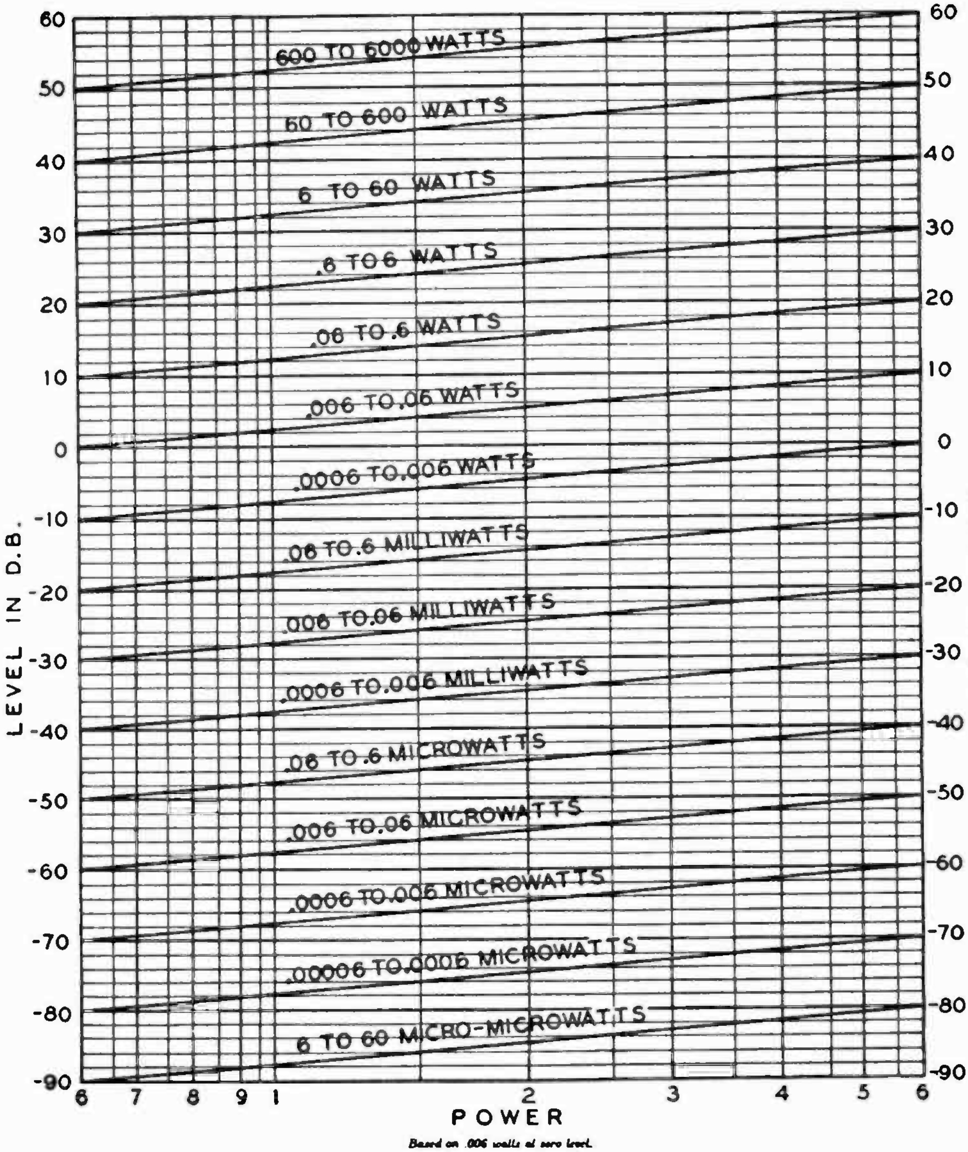


Figure 9.

CONVERSION CHART: POWER TO DECIBELS

Power levels between 6 micromicrowatts and 6000 watts may be referred to corresponding decibel levels between -90 and 60 db, and vice versa, by means of the above chart. Fifteen ranges are provided. Each curve begins at the same point where the preceding one ends, enabling uninterrupted coverage of the wide db and power ranges with condensed chart. For example: the lowermost curve ends at -80 db or 60 micromicrowatts and the next range starts at the same level. Zero db level is taken as 6 milliwatts (.006 watt).

Converting Decibels to Power It is often convenient to be able to convert a decibel value to a power equivalent. The formula used for this operation is

$$P = 0.006 \times \text{antilog} \frac{N_{db}}{10}$$

where P is the desired level in watts and N_{db} the decibels to be converted.

To determine the power level *P* from a decibel equivalent, simply divide the decibel value by 10; then take the number comprising the antilog and multiply it by 0.006; the product gives the level in watts.

Note: In problems dealing with the conversion of *minus* decibels to power, it often happens that the decibel value $-N_{db}$ is not divisible by 10. When this is the case, the numerator in the factor $-\frac{N_{db}}{10}$ must be made evenly divisible by 10, the negative signs must be observed, and the quotient labeled accordingly.

To make the numerator evenly divisible by 10 proceed as follows: Assume, for example, that $-N_{db}$ is some such value as -38; to make this figure evenly divisible by 10, we must add -2 to it, and, since we have added a negative 2 to it, we must also add a positive 2 so as to keep the net result the same.

Our decibel value now stands, $-40 + 2$. Dividing both of these figures by 10, as in the equation above, we have -4 and $+0.2$. Putting the two together we have the logarithm -4.2 with the negative characteristic and the positive mantissa as required.

The following examples will show the technique to be followed in practical problems.

(a) The output of a certain device is rated at -74 db. What is the power equivalent? Solution:

$$\frac{N_{db}}{10} = \frac{-74}{10} \text{ (not evenly divisible by 10)}$$

Routine:

$$\begin{array}{rr} -74 & \\ -\ 6 & +6 \\ \hline -80 & +6 \end{array}$$

$$\frac{N_{db}}{10} = \frac{-80+6}{10} = -8.6$$

$$\text{antilog } -8.6 = 0.000\,000\,04$$

$$.006 \times 0.000\,000\,04 =$$
$$0.000\,000\,000\,24 \text{ watt or}$$
$$240 \text{ micro-microwatt}$$

(b) This example differs somewhat from that of the foregoing one in that the mantissas are added differently. A low-powered amplifier has an input signal level of -17.3 db. How many milliwatts does this value represent?

Solution:

$$\begin{array}{rr} -17.3 & \\ -\ 2.7 & +2.7 \\ \hline -20 & +2.7 \end{array}$$

$$\frac{N_{db}}{10} = \frac{-20+2.7}{10} = -2.27$$

$$\text{Antilog } -2.27 = 0.0186$$

$$0.006 \times 0.0186 = 0.000\,1116 \text{ watt or}$$
$$0.1116 \text{ milliwatt}$$

Input voltages: To determine the required input voltage, take the peak voltage necessary to drive the last class A amplifier tube to maximum output, and divide this figure by the total overall voltage gain of the preceding stages.

Computing Specifications: From the preceding explanations the following data can be computed with any degree of accuracy warranted by the circumstances:

(1) Voltage amplification
(2) Overall gain in db
(3) Output signal level in db
(4) Input signal level in db
(5) Input signal level in watts
(6) Input signal voltage

When a power level is available which must be brought up to a new power level, the gain required in the intervening amplifier is equal to the difference between the two levels in decibels. If the required input of an amplifier for full output is -30 decibels and the output from a device to be used is but -45 decibels, the pre-amplifier required should have a gain of the difference, or 15 decibels. Again this is true only if the two amplifiers are properly matched and no losses are introduced due to mismatching.

Push-Pull Amplifiers To double the output of any cascade amplifier, it is only necessary to connect in push-pull the last amplifying stage, and replace the interstage and output transformers with push-pull types.

To determine the voltage gain (voltage ratio) of a push-pull amplifier, take the ratio of one *half* of the secondary winding of the push-pull transformer and multiply it by the μ of one of the output tubes in the push-pull stage; the product, *when doubled*, will be the voltage amplification, or step-up.

Other Units and Zero Levels When working with decibels one should not immediately take for granted that the zero level is 6 milliwatts for there are other zero levels in use.

In broadcast stations an entirely new system is now employed. Measurements made in acoustics are now made with the standard zero level of 10^{-16} watts per square cm.

Microphones are often rated with reference to the following zero level: *one volt at open circuit when the sound pressure is one millibar.* In any case, the rating of the microphone must include the loudness of the sound. It is obvious that this zero level does not lend itself readily for the calculation of required gain in an amplifier.

The VU: So far, the decibel has always referred to a type of signal which can readily be measured, that is, a steady signal of a single frequency. But what would be the power level of a signal which is constantly varying in volume and frequency? The measurement of voltage would depend on the type of instrument employed, whether it is measured with a thermal square law meter or one that shows average values; also, the inertia of the movement will change its indications at the peaks and valleys.

After considerable consultation, the broadcast chains and the Bell System have agreed on the *VU*. The level in VU is the level in decibels above *1 milliwatt* zero level and measured with a carefully defined type of instrument across a 600 ohm line. So long as we deal with an unvarying sound, the level in VU is equal to decibels above 1 milliwatt; but when the sound level varies, the unit is the VU and the special meter must be used. There is then no equivalent in decibels.

The Neper: We might have used the natural logarithm instead of the common logarithm when defining our logarithmic unit of sound. This was done in Europe and the unit obtained is known as the *neper* or *napier*. It is still found in some American literature on filters.

1 neper = 8.686 decibels
1 decibel = 0.1151 neper

AC Meters With Decibel Scales Many test instruments are now equipped with scales calibrated in decibels which is very handy when making measurements of frequency characteristics and gain. These meters are generally calibrated for connection across a 500 ohm line and for a zero level of 6 milliwatts. When they are connected across another impedance, the reading on the meter is no longer correct for the zero level of 6 milliwatts. A correction factor should be applied consisting in the addition or subtraction of a steady figure to all readings on the meter. This figure is given by the equation:

$$\text{db to be added} = 10 \log \frac{500}{Z}$$

where Z is the impedance of the circuit under measurement.

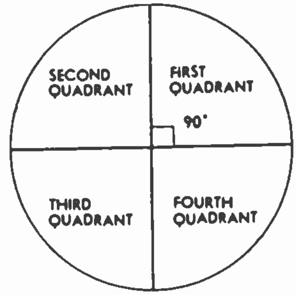


Figure 10.

THE CIRCLE IS DIVIDED INTO FOUR QUADRANTS BY TWO PERPENDICULAR LINES AT RIGHT ANGLES TO EACH OTHER.

The "northeast" quadrant thus formed is known as the first quadrant; the others are numbered consecutively in a counterclockwise direction.

Trigonometry

Definition and Use Trigonometry is the science of mensuration of *triangles*. At first glance triangles may seem to have little to do with electrical phenomena; however, in a.c. work most currents and voltages follow laws equivalent to those of the various trigonometric relations which we are about to examine briefly. Examples of their application to a.c. work will be given in the section on *Vectors*.

Angles are measured in *degrees* or in *radians*. The circle has been divided into 360 degrees, each degree into 60 minutes, and each minute into 60 seconds. A decimal division of the degree is also in use because it makes calculation easier. Degrees, minutes and seconds are indicated by the following signs: °, ′ and ″ Example: 6° 5′ 23″ means six degrees, five minutes, twenty-three seconds. In the decimal notation we simply write 8.47°, eight and forty-seven hundredths of a degree.

When a circle is divided into four quadrants by two perpendicular lines passing through the center (Figure 10) the angle made by the two lines is 90 degrees, known as a *right angle*. Two right angles, or 180° equals a *straight angle*.

The radian: If we take the radius of a circle and bend it so it can cover a part of the circumference, the arc it covers subtends an angle called a *radian* (Figure 11). Since the diameter of a circle equals 2 times the radius, there are 2π radians in 360°. So we have the following relations:

1 radian = 57° 17′ 45″ = 57.2958° $\quad \pi = 3.14159$
1 degree = 0.01745 radians
π radians = 180° $\quad \pi/2$ radians = 90°
$\pi/3$ radians = 60°

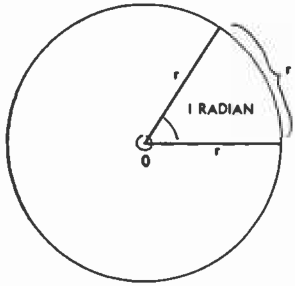


Figure 11.
THE RADIAN.
A radian is an angle whose arc is exactly equal to the length of either side. Note that the angle is constant regardless of the length of the side and the arc so long as they are equal. A radian equals 57.2958°.

In trigonometry we consider an angle *generated* by two lines, one stationary and the other rotating as if it were hinged at 0, Figure 12. Angles can be greater than 180 degrees and even greater than 360 degrees as illustrated in this figure.

Two angles are complements of each other when their sum is 90°, or a right angle. *A* is the complement of *B* and *B* is the complement of *A* when

$$A = (90° - B)$$

and when

$$B = (90° - A)$$

Two angles are supplements of each other when their sum is equal to a straight angle, or 180°. A is the supplement of B and B is the supplement of A when

$$A = (180° - B)$$

and

$$B = (180° - A)$$

In the angle *A*, Figure 13A, a line is drawn from *P*, perpendicular to *b*. Regardless of the point selected for *P*, the *ratio a/c* will always be the same for any given angle, *A*. So will all the other proportions between *a*, *b*, and *c* remain constant regardless of the position of point *P* on *c*. The six possible ratios each are named and defined as follows:

$$\text{sine } A = \frac{a}{c} \qquad \text{cosine } A = \frac{b}{c}$$

$$\text{tangent } A = \frac{a}{b} \qquad \text{cotangent } A = \frac{b}{a}$$

$$\text{secant } A = \frac{c}{b} \qquad \text{cosecant } A = \frac{c}{a}$$

Let us take a special angle as an example. For instance, let the angle *A* be 60 degrees as in Figure 13B. Then the relations between the sides are as in the figure and the six functions become:

$$\sin. 60° = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}}{1} = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}$$

$$\cos 60° = \frac{b}{c} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{1} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\tan 60° = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}}{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{3}$$

$$\cot 60° = \frac{\frac{1}{2}}{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{3}$$

$$\sec 60° = \frac{c}{b} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}} = 2$$

$$\csc 60° = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3}} = \frac{2}{3}\sqrt{3}$$

Another example: Let the angle be 45°, then the relations between the lengths of *a*, *b*, and *c* are as shown in Figure 13C, and the six functions are:

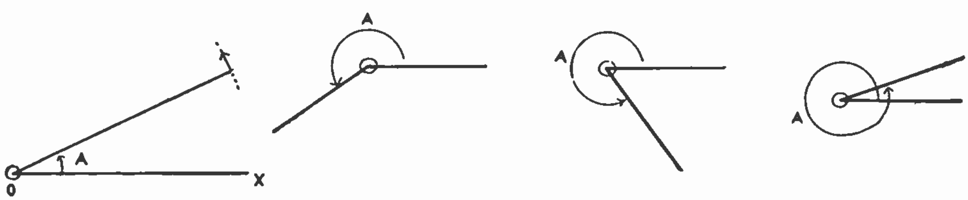


Figure 12.
AN ANGLE IS GENERATED BY TWO LINES, ONE STATIONARY AND THE OTHER ROTATING.
The line OX is stationary; the line with the small arrow at the far end rotates in a counterclockwise direction. At the position illustrated in the lefthandmost section of the drawing it makes an angle, A, which is less than 90° and is therefore in the first quadrant. In the position shown in the second portion of the drawing the angle A has increased to such a value that it now lies in the third quadrant; note that an angle can be greater than 180°. In the third illustration the angle A is in the fourth quadrant. In the fourth position the rotating vector has made more than one complete revolution and is hence in the fifth quadrant; since the fifth quadrant is an exact repetition of the first quadrant, its values will be the same as in the lefthandmost portion of the illustration.

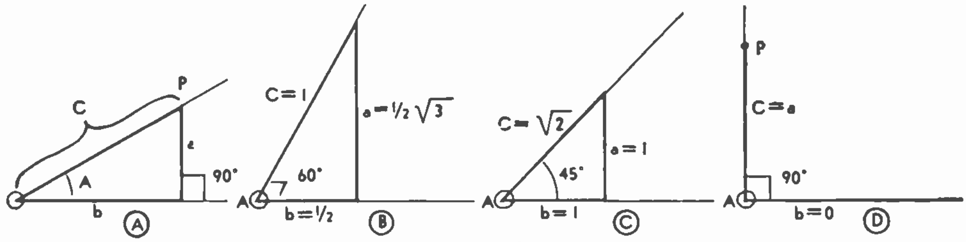


Figure 13.

THE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS.

In the right triangle shown in (A) the side opposite the angle A is a, while the adjoining sides are b and c; the trigonometric functions of the angle A are completely defined by the ratios of the sides a, b and c. In (B) are shown the lengths of the sides a and b when angle A is 60° and side c is 1. In (C) angle A is 45°; a and b equal 1, while c equals √2. In (D) note that c equals a for a right angle while b equals 0.

$$\sin 45° = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$$

$$\cos 45° = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}$$

$$\tan 45° = \frac{1}{1} = 1 \qquad \cot 45° = \frac{1}{1} = 1$$

$$\sec 45° = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{1} = \sqrt{2}$$

$$\operatorname{cosec} 45° = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{1} = \sqrt{2}$$

There are some special difficulties when the angle is zero or 90 degrees. In Figure 13D an angle of 90 degrees is shown; drawing a line perpendicular to b from point P makes it fall on top of c. Therefore in this case $a = c$ and $b = 0$. The six ratios are now:

$$\sin 90° = \frac{a}{c} = 1 \qquad \cos 90° = \frac{b}{c} = \frac{0}{c} = 0$$

$$\tan 90° = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{a}{0} = \infty \qquad \cot 90° = \frac{0}{a} = 0$$

$$\sec 90° = \frac{c}{b} = \frac{c}{0} = \infty \qquad \operatorname{cosec} 90° = \frac{c}{a} = 1$$

When the angle is zero, $a=0$ and $b=c$. The values are then:

$$\sin 0° = \frac{a}{c} = \frac{0}{c} = 0 \qquad \cos 0° = \frac{b}{c} = 1$$

$$\tan 0° = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{0}{b} = 0 \qquad \cot 0° = \frac{b}{a} = \frac{b}{0} = \infty$$

$$\sec 0° = \frac{c}{b} = 1 \qquad \operatorname{cosec} 0° = \frac{c}{a} = \frac{c}{0} = \infty$$

In general, for every angle, there will be definite values of the six functions. Conversely, when any of the six functions is known, the angle is defined. Tables have been calculated giving the value of the functions for angles.

From the foregoing we can make up a small table of our own (Figure 14), giving values of the functions for some common angles.

Relations Between Functions It follows from the definitinns that

$$\sin A = \frac{1}{\operatorname{cosec} A} \qquad \cos A = \frac{1}{\sec A}$$

$$\text{and } \tan A = \frac{1}{\cot A}$$

From the definitions also follows the relation

$$\cos A = \sin(\text{complement of } A) = \sin(90° - A)$$

because in the right triangle of Figure 15, $\cos A = b/c = \sin B$ and $B = 90° - A$ or the complement of A. For the same reason:

$$\cot A = \tan\ (90° - A)$$

$$\csc A = \sec\ (90° - A)$$

Relations in Right Triangles In the right triangle of Figure 15, $\sin A = a/c$ and by transposition

$$a = c \sin A$$

For the same reason we have the following identities:

$$\tan A = a/b \qquad a = b \tan A$$
$$\cot A = b/a \qquad b = a \cot A$$

In the same triangle we can do the same for functions of the angle B

Angle	Sin	Cos.	Tan	Cot	Sec.	Cosec.
0	0	1	0	∞	1	∞
30°	½	½√3	⅓√3	√3	⅔√3	2
45°	½√2	½√2	1	1	√2	√2
60°	½√3	½	√3	⅓√3	2	⅔√3
90°	1	0	∞	0	∞	1

Figure 14.

Values of trigonometric functions for common angles in the first quadrant.

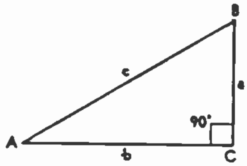


Figure 15.

In this figure the sides a, b, and c are used to define the trigonometric functions of angle B as well as angle A.

$\sin B = b/c$	$b = c \sin B$
$\cos B = a/c$	$a = c \cos B$
$\tan B = b/a$	$b = a \tan B$
$\cot B = a/b$	$a = b \cot B$

Functions of Angles Greater than 90 Degrees In angles greater than 90 degrees, the values of *a* and *b* become negative on occasion in accordance with the rules of Cartesian coordinates. When *b* is measured from 0 towards the left it is considered negative and similarly, when *a* is measured from 0 downwards, it is negative. Referring to Figure 16, an angle in the *second quadrant* (between 90° and 180°) has some of its functions negative:

$$\sin A = \frac{a}{c} = \text{pos.} \qquad \cos A = \frac{-b}{c} = \text{neg.}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{a}{-b} = \text{neg.} \qquad \cot A = \frac{-b}{a} = \text{neg.}$$

$$\sec A = \frac{c}{-b} = \text{neg.} \qquad \text{cosec } A = \frac{c}{a} = \text{pos.}$$

For an angle in the third quadrant (180° to 270°), the functions are

$$\sin A = \frac{-a}{c} = \text{neg.} \qquad \cos A = \frac{-b}{c} = \text{neg.}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{-a}{-b} = \text{pos.} \qquad \cot A = \frac{-b}{-a} = \text{pos.}$$

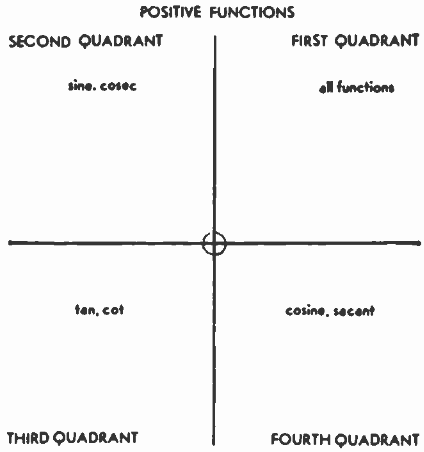


Figure 17.

SIGNS OF THE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS.

The functions listed in this diagram are positive; all other functions are negative.

$$\sec A = \frac{c}{-b} = \text{neg.} \qquad \text{cosec } A = \frac{c}{-a} = \text{neg.}$$

And in the fourth quadrant (270° to 360°):

$$\sin A = \frac{-a}{c} = \text{neg.} \qquad \cos A = \frac{b}{c} = \text{pos.}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{-a}{b} = \text{neg.} \qquad \cot A = \frac{b}{-a} = \text{neg.}$$

$$\sec A = \frac{c}{b} = \text{pos.} \qquad \text{cosec } A = \frac{c}{-a} = \text{neg.}$$

Summarizing, the sign of the functions in each quadrant can be seen at a glance from Figure 17, where in each quadrant are written the names of functions which are positive; those not mentioned are negative.

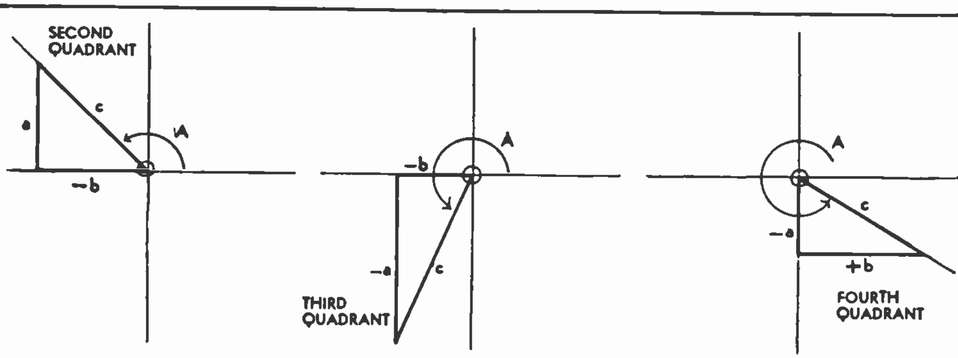


Figure 16.

TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS IN THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH QUADRANTS.

The trigonometric functions in these quadrants are similar to first quadrant values, but the signs of the functions vary as listed in the text and in Figure 17.

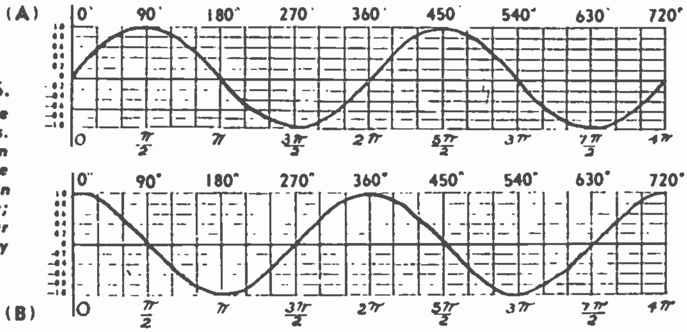


Figure 18.
SINE AND COSINE CURVES.
In (A) we have a sine curve drawn in Cartesian coordinates. This is the usual representation of an alternating current wave without substantial harmonics. In (B) we have a cosine wave; note that it is exactly similar to a sine wave displaced by 90° or π/2 radians.

Graphs of Trigonometric Functions *The sine wave.* When we have the relation $y = \sin x$, where x is an angle measured in radians or degrees, we can draw a curve of y versus x for all values of the independent variable, and thus get a good conception how the sine varies with the magnitude of the angle. This has been done in Figure 18A. We can learn from this curve the following facts.

1. The sine varies between $+1$ and -1
2. It is a periodic curve, repeating itself after every multiple of 2π or $360°$
3. $\sin x = \sin(180° - x)$ or $\sin(\pi - x)$
4. $\sin x = -\sin(180° + x)$, or $-\sin(\pi + x)$

The cosine wave. Making a curve for the function $y = \cos x$, we obtain a curve similar to that for $y = \sin x$ except that it is displaced by $90°$ or $\pi/2$ radians with respect to the Y-axis. This curve (Figure 18B) is also periodic but it does not start with zero. We read from the curve:

1. The value of the cosine never goes beyond $+1$ or -1
2. The curve repeats, after every multiple of 2π radians or $360°$
3. $\cos x = -\cos(180° - x)$ or $-\cos(\pi - x)$
4. $\cos x = \cos(360° - x)$ or $\cos(2\pi - x)$

The graph of the tangent is illustrated in Figure 19. This is a discontinuous curve and illustrates well how the tangent increases from zero to infinity when the angle increases from zero to 90 degrees. Then when the angle is further increased, the tangent starts from minus infinity going to zero in the second quadrant, and to infinity again in the third quadrant.

1. The tangent can have any value between $+\infty$ and $-\infty$
2. The curve repeats and the period is π radians or $180°$, not 2π radians
3. $\tan x = \tan(180° + x)$ or $\tan(\pi + x)$
4. $\tan x = -\tan(180° - x)$ or $-\tan(\pi - x)$

The graph of the cotangent is the inverse of that of the tangent, see Figure 20. It leads us to the following conclusions:

1. The cotangent can have any value between $+\infty$ and $-\infty$
2. It is a periodic curve, the period being π radians or $180°$
3. $\cot x = \cot(180° + x)$ or $\cot(\pi + x)$
4. $\cot x = -\cot(180° - x)$ or $-\cot(\pi - x)$

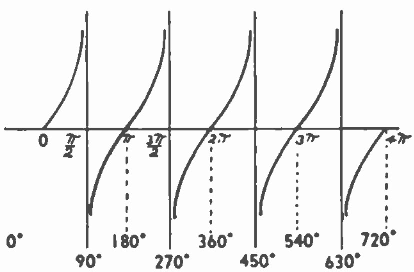


Figure 19.
TANGENT CURVES.
The tangent curve increases from 0 to ∞ with an angular increase of 90°. In the next 180° it increases from −∞ to +∞.

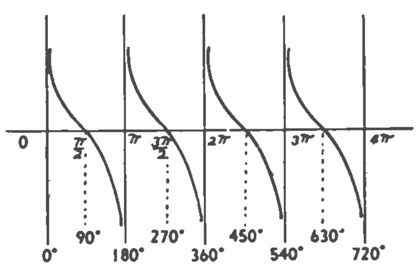


Figure 20.
COTANGENT CURVES.
Cotangent curves are the inverse of the tangent curves. They vary from +∞ to −∞ in each pair of quadrants.

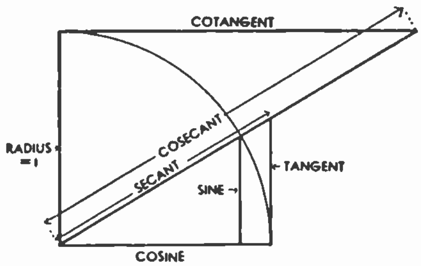


Figure 21.

ANOTHER REPRESENTATION OF TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS.

If the radius of a circle is considered as the unit of measurement, then the lengths of the various lines shown in this diagram are numerically equal to the functions marked adjacent to them.

The graphs of the secant and cosecant are of lesser importance and will not be shown here. They are the inverse, respectively, of the cosine and the sine, and therefore they vary from +1 to infinity and from −1 to −infinity.

Perhaps another useful way of visualizing the values of the functions is by considering Figure 21. If the radius of the circle is the unit of measurement then the lengths of the lines are equal to the functions marked on them.

Trigonometric Tables There are two kinds of trigonometric tables. The first type gives the functions of the angles, the second the logarithms of the functions. The first kind is also known as the table of *natural* trigonometric functions.

These tables give the functions of all angles between 0 and 45°. This is all that is necessary for the function of an angle between 45° and 90° can always be written as the co-function of an angle below 45°. Example: If we had to find the sine of 48°, we might write

$$\sin 48° = \cos (90° - 48°) = \cos 42°$$

Tables of the logarithms of trigonometric functions give the common logarithms ($\log_{10}$) of these functions. Since many of these logarithms have negative characteristics, one should add −10 to all logarithms in the table which have a characteristic of 6 or higher. For instance, the log sin 24° = 9.60931 −10. Log tan 1° = 8.24192 −10 but log cot 1° = 1.75808. When the characteristic shown is less than 6, it is supposed to be positive and one should not add −10.

Vectors

A *scalar* quantity has *magnitude* only; a *vector* quantity has both *magnitude* and *direction*. When we speak of a speed of 50 miles per hour, we are using a scalar quantity, but when we say the wind is Northeast and has a velocity of 50 miles per hour, we speak of a vector quantity.

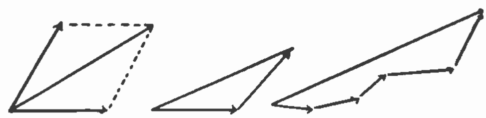


Figure 22.

Vectors may be added as shown in these sketches. In each case the long vector represents the vector sum of the smaller vectors. For many engineering applications sufficient accuracy can be obtained by this method which avoids long and laborious calculations.

Vectors, representing forces, speeds, displacements, etc., are represented by arrows. They can be added graphically by well known methods illustrated in Figure 22. We can make the parallelogram of forces or we can simply draw a triangle. The addition of many vectors can be accomplished graphically as in the same figure.

In order that we may define vectors algebraically and add, subtract, multiply, or divide them, we must have a logical notation system that lends itself to these operations. For this purpose vectors can be defined by coordinate systems. Both the Cartesian and the polar coordinates are in use.

Vectors Defined by Cartesian Coordinates Since we have seen how the sum of two vectors is obtained, it follows from Figure 23, that the vector $\dot{Z}$ equals the sum of the two vectors $\dot{x}$ and $\dot{y}$. In fact, any vector can be resolved into vectors along the *X*- and *Y*-axis. For convenience in working with these quantities we need to dis-

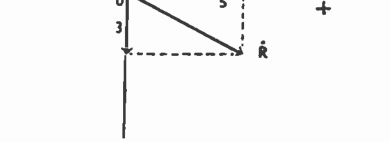


Figure 23.

RESOLUTION OF VECTORS.

Any vector such as Ż may be resolved into two vectors, x and y, along the X- and Y-axes. If vectors are to be added, their respective x and y components may be added to find the x and y components of the resultant vector.

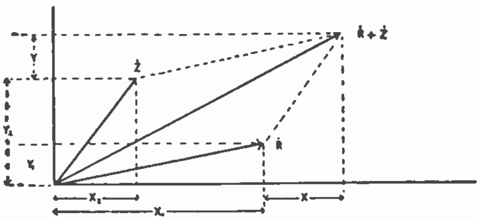


Figure 24.
ADDITION OR SUBTRACTION OF VECTORS.
Vectors may be added or subtracted by adding or subtracting their x or y components separately.

tinguish between the X- and Y-component, and so it has been agreed that the Y-component alone shall be marked with the letter j. Example (Figure 23):

$$\dot{Z} = 3 + 4j$$

Note again that the sign of components along the X-axis is positive when measured from 0 to the right and negative when measured from 0 towards the left. Also, the component along the Y-axis is positive when measured from 0 upwards, and negative when measured from 0 downwards. So the vector, $\dot{R}$, is described as

$$\dot{R} = 5 - 3j$$

Vector quantities are usually indicated by some special typography, especially by using a point over the letter indicating the vector, as $\dot{R}$.

Absolute Value of a Vector The absolute or scalar value of vectors such as $\dot{Z}$ or $\dot{R}$ in Figure 23 is easily found by the theorem of Pythagoras, which states that in any right-angled triangle the square of the side opposite the right angle is equal to the sum of the squares of the sides adjoining the right angle. In Figure 23, OAB is a right-angled triangle; therefore, the square of OB (or Z) is equal to the square of OA (or x) plus the square of AB (or y). Thus the absolute values of Z and R may be determined as follows:

$$|Z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

$$|Z| = \sqrt{3^2 + 4^2} = 5$$

$$|R| = \sqrt{5^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{34} = 5.83$$

The vertical lines indicate that the absolute or scalar value is meant without regard to sign or direction.

Addition of Vectors An examination of Figure 24 will show that the two vectors

$$\dot{R} = x_1 + j\,y_1$$

$$\dot{Z} = x_2 + j\,y_2$$

can be added, if we add the X-components and the Y-components separately.

$$\dot{R} + \dot{Z} = x_1 + x_2 + j\,(y_1 + y_2)$$

For the same reason we can carry out subtraction by subtracting the horizontal components and subtracting the vertical components

$$\dot{R} - \dot{Z} = x_1 - x_2 + j\,(y_1 - y_2)$$

Let us consider the operator j. If we have a vector a along the X-axis and add a j in front of it (multiplying by j) the result is that the direction of the vector is rotated forward 90 degrees. If we do this twice (multiplying by j^2) the vector is rotated forward by 180 degrees and now has the value $-a$. Therefore multiplying by j^2 is equivalent to multiplying by -1. Then

$$j^2 = -1 \text{ and } j = \sqrt{-1}$$

This is the imaginary number discussed before under algebra. In electrical engineering the letter j is used rather than i, because i is already known as the symbol for current.

Multiplying Vectors When two vectors are to be multiplied we can perform the operation just as in algebra, remembering that $j^2 = -1$.

$$\dot{R}\dot{Z} = (x_1 + jy_1)\,(x_2 + jy_2)$$

$$= x_1\,x_2 + jx_1\,y_2 + j\,x_2\,y_1 + j^2\,y_1\,y_2$$

$$= x_1\,x_2 - y_1\,y_2 + j\,(x_1\,y_2 + x_2\,y_1)$$

Division has to be carried out so as to remove the j-term from the denominator. This can be done by multiplying both denominator and numerator by a quantity which will eliminate j from the denominator. Example:

$$\frac{\dot{R}}{\dot{Z}} = \frac{x_1 + jy_1}{x_2 + jy_2} = \frac{(x_1 + jy_1)\,(x_2 - jy_2)}{(x_2 + jy_2)\,(x_2 - jy_2)}$$

$$= \frac{x_1x_2 + y_1y_2 + j\,(x_2y_1 - x_1y_2)}{x_2^2 + y_2^2}$$

Polar Coordinates A vector can also be defined in polar coordinates by its magnitude and its vectorial angle with an arbitrary reference axis. In Figure 25

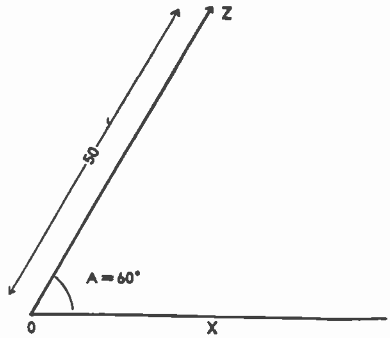


Figure 25.

IN THIS FIGURE A VECTOR HAS BEEN REPRESENTED IN POLAR INSTEAD OF CARTESIAN COORDINATES.

In polar coordinates a vector is defined by a magnitude and an angle, called the vectorial angle, instead of by two magnitudes as in Cartesian coordinates.

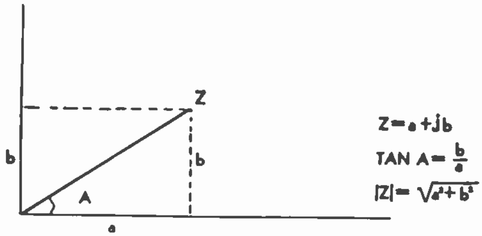


Figure 26.

Vectors can be transformed from Cartesian into polar notation as shown in this figure.

the vector $\dot{Z}$ has a magnitude 50 and a vectorial angle of 60 degrees. This will then be written

$$\dot{Z} = 50\angle 60°$$

A vector $a + jb$ can be transformed into polar notation very simply (see Figure 26)

$$\dot{Z} = a + jb = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}\ \angle \tan^{-1} \frac{b}{a}$$

In this connection tan^{-1} means *the angle of which the tangent is.* Sometimes the notation *arc tan b/a* is used. Both have the same meaning.

A polar notation of a vector can be transformed into a Cartesian coordinate notation in the following manner (Figure 27)

$$\dot{Z} = \rho\angle A = \rho \cos A + j\rho \sin A$$

A sinusoidally alternating voltage or current is symbolically represented by a rotating vector, having a magnitude equal to the peak voltage or current and rotating with an angular velocity of $2\pi f$ radians per second or as many revolutions per second as there are cycles per second.

The instantaneous voltage, *e*, is always equal to the sine of the vectorial angle of this rotating vector, multiplied by its magnitude.

$$e = E \sin 2\pi ft$$

The alternating voltage therefore varies with time as the sine varies with the angle. If we plot time horizontally and instantaneous voltage vertically we will get a curve like those in Figure 18.

In alternating current circuits, the current which flows due to the alternating voltage is not necessarily in step with it. The rotating current vector may be ahead or behind the voltage vector, having a *phase difference* with it. For convenience we draw these vectors as if they were standing still, so that we can indicate the difference in phase or the *phase angle.* In Figure 28 the current lags behind the voltage by the angle θ, or we might say that the voltage leads the current by the angle θ.

Vector diagrams show the phase relations between two or more vectors (voltages and currents) in a circuit. They may be added and subtracted as described; one may add a voltage vector to another voltage vector or a current vector to a current vector but not a current vector to a voltage vector (for the same reason that one cannot add a force to a speed). Figure 28 illustrates the relations in the simple series circuit of a coil and resistor. We know that the current passing through coil and resistor must be the same and in the same phase, so we draw this current *I* along the *X*-axis. We know also that the voltage drop *IR* across the resistor is in phase with the current, so the vector *IR* representing the voltage drop is also along the *X*-axis.

The voltage across the coil is 90 degrees ahead of the current through it; *IX* must therefore be drawn along the *Y*-axis. $\dot{E}$ the applied voltage must be equal to the vectorial sum of the two voltage drops, *IR* and *IX*, and we have so constructed it in the drawing. Now expressing the same in algebraic notation, we have

$$\dot{E} = IR + jIX$$

$$I\dot{Z} = IR + jIX$$

Dividing by *I*

$$Z = R + jX$$

Due to the fact that a *reactance* rotates the voltage vector ahead or behind the current vector by 90 degrees, we must mark it with a *j* in vector notation. Inductive reactance will have a plus sign because it shifts the voltage vector forwards; a capacitive reactance is neg-

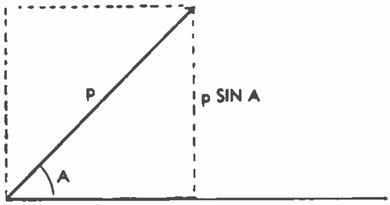


Figure 27.
Vectors can be transformed from polar into Cartesian notation as shown in this figure.

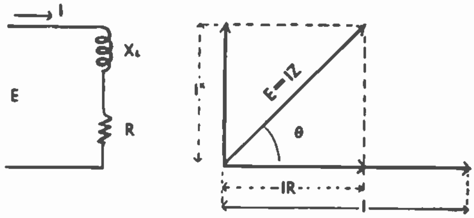


Figure 28.
VECTOR REPRESENTATION OF A SIMPLE SERIES CIRCUIT.
The righthand portion of the illustration shows the vectors representing the voltage drops in the coil and resistance illustrated at the left. Note that the voltage drop across the coil X_L leads that across the resistance by 90°.

ative because the voltage will lag behind the current. Therefore:

$$X_L = +j\,2\pi fL$$

$$X_C = -j\,\frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

In Figure 28 the angle θ is known as the phase angle between E and I. When calculating power, only the real components count. The power in the circuit is then

$$P = I\,(IR)$$

$$\text{but } IR = E\cos\theta$$

$$\therefore P = EI\cos\theta$$

This *cos* θ is known as the power factor of the circuit. In many circuits we strive to keep the angle θ as small as possible, making *cos* θ as near to unity as possible. In tuned circuits, we use reactances which should have as low a power factor as possible. The merit of a coil or condenser, its *Q*, is defined by the tangent of this phase angle:

$$Q = \tan\theta = X/R$$

For an efficient coil or condenser, *Q* should be as large as possible; the phase-angle should then be as close to 90 degrees as possible, making the power factor nearly zero. *Q* is almost but not quite the inverse of *cos* θ. Note that in Figure 29

$$Q = X/R \qquad \text{and} \quad \cos\theta = R/Z$$

When Q is more than 5, the power factor is less than 20%; we can then safely say $Q = 1/\cos\theta$ with a maximum error of about 2½ percent, for in the worst case, when $\cos\theta = 0.2$, *Q* will equal $\tan\theta = 4.89$. For higher values of Q, the error becomes less.

Note that from Figure 29 can be seen the simple relation:

$$\dot{Z} = R + jX_L$$

$$|Z| = \sqrt{R^2 + X_L^2}$$

Graphical Representation

Formulas and physical laws are often presented in graphical form; this gives us a "bird's eye view" of various possible conditions due to the variations of the quantities involved. In some cases graphs permit us to solve equations with greater ease than ordinary algebra.

Coordinate Systems All of us have used coordinate systems without realizing it. For instance, in modern cities we have numbered streets and numbered avenues. By this means we can define the location of any spot in the city if the nearest street crossings are named. This is nothing but an application of Cartesian coordinates.

In the Cartesian coordinate system (named after Descartes), we define the location of any point in a plane by giving its distance from each of two perpendicular lines or *axes*. Figure 30 illustrates this idea. The vertical axis is called the *Y-axis*, the horizontal axis is the *X-axis*. The intersection of these two axes is called the *origin, O*. The location of a point, P, (Figure 30) is defined by measuring the respective distances, *x* and *y* along the X-axis and the Y-axis. In this example the distance along the X-axis is 2 units and along the Y-axis is 3 units. Thus we define the point as

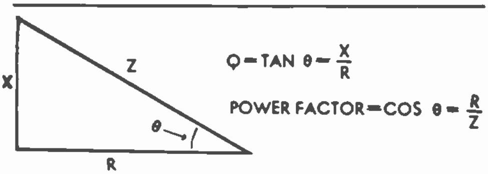


Figure 29.
The figure of merit of a coil and its resistance is represented by the ratio of the inductive reactance to the resistance, which as shown in this diagram is equal to $\frac{X_L}{R}$ which equals tan θ. For large values of θ (the phase angle) this is approximately equal to the reciprocal of the cos θ.

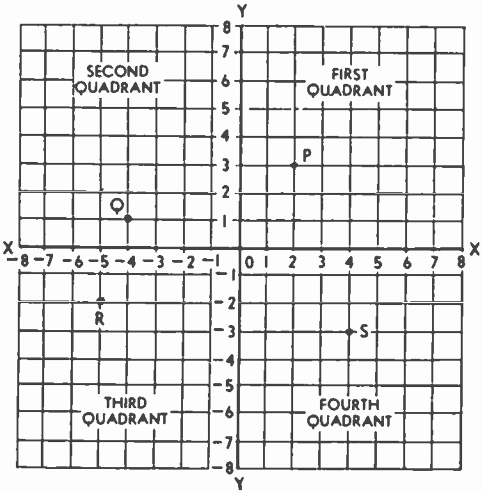


Figure 30.

CARTESIAN COORDINATES.

The location of any point can be defined by its distance from the X and Y axes.

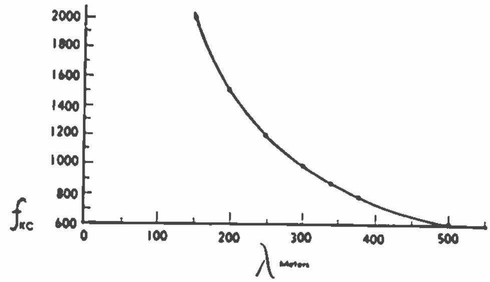


Figure 31.

REPRESENTATION OF A SIMPLE FUNCTION IN CARTESIAN COORDINATES.

In this chart of the function $f_{kc} = \dfrac{300{,}000}{\lambda_{meters}}$ ***distances along the X axis represent wavelength in meters, while those along the Y axis represent frequency in kilocycles. A curve such as this helps to find values between those calculated with sufficient accuracy for most purposes.***

P 2, 3 or we might say $x = 2$ and $y = 3$. The measurement x is called the *abscissa* of the point and the distance y is called its *ordinate*. It is arbitrarily agreed that distances measured from 0 to the right along the X-axis shall be reckoned positive and to the left negative. Distances measured along the Y-axis are positive when measured upwards from 0 and negative when measured downwards from 0. This is illustrated in Figure 30. The two axes divide the plane area into four parts called quadrants. These four quadrants are numbered as shown in the figure.

It follows from the foregoing statements, that points lying within the first quadrant have both x and y positive, as is the case with the point P. A point in the second quadrant has a negative abscissa, x, and a positive ordinate, y. This is illustrated by the point Q, which has the coordinates $x = -4$ and $y = +1$. Points in the third quadrant have both x and y negative. $x = -5$ and $y = -2$ illustrates such a point, R. The point S, in the fourth quadrant has a negative ordinate, y and a positive abscissa or x.

In practical applications we might draw only as much of this plane as needed to illustrate our equation and therefore, the scales along the X-axis and Y-axis might not start with zero and may show only that part of the scale which interests us.

Representation of Functions In the equation:

$$f = \frac{300{,}000}{\lambda}$$

f is said to be a function of λ. For every value of f there is a definite value of λ. A variable is said to be a function of another variable when for every possible value of the latter, or *independent* variable, there is a definite value of the first or *dependent* variable. For instance, if $y = 5x^2$, y is a function of x and x is called the independent variable. When $a = 3b^3 + 5b^2 - 25b + 6$ then a is a function of b.

A function can be illustrated in our coordinate system as follows. Let us take the equation for frequency versus wavelength as an example. Given different values to the independent variable find the corresponding values of the dependent variable. Then plot the *points* represented by the different sets of two values.

$f_{kc.}$	λ_{meters}
600	500
800	375
1000	300
1200	250
1400	214
1600	187
1800	167
2000	150

Plotting these points in Figure 31 and drawing a smooth curve through them gives us the *curve* or *graph* of the equation. This curve will help us find values of f for other values of λ (those in between the points calculated) and so a curve of an often-used equation may serve better than a table which always has gaps.

When using the coordinate system described so far and when measuring linearly along both axes, there are some definite rules regarding

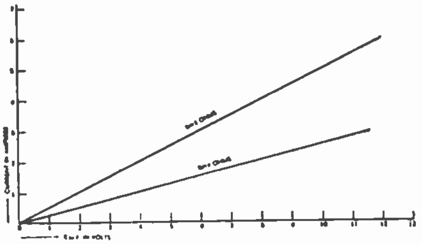


Figure 32.

Only two points are needed to define functions which result in a straight line as shown in this diagram representing Ohm's Law.

the kind of curve we get for any type of equation. In fact, an expert can draw the curve with but a very few plotted points since the equation has told him what kind of curve to expect.

First, when the equation can be reduced to the form $y = mx + b$, where x and y are the variables, it is known as a *linear* or *first degree* function and the curve becomes a straight line. (Mathematicians still speak of a "curve" when it has become a straight line.)

When the equation is of the second degree, that is, when it contains terms like x^2 or y^2 or xy. the graph belongs to a group of curves, called *conic sections*. These include the circle, the ellipse, the parabola and the hyperbola. In the example given above, our equation is of the form

$$xy = c, \qquad \text{c being equal to } 300{,}000$$

which is a second degree equation and in this case, the graph is a hyperbola.

This type of curve does not lend itself readily for the purpose of calculation except near the middle, because at the ends a very large change in λ represents a small change in ƒ and vice versa. Before discussing what can be done about this let us look at some other types of curves.

Suppose we have a resistance of 2 ohms and we plot the function represented by Ohm's Law: $E = 2I$. Measuring E along the X-axis and amperes along the Y-axis, we plot the necessary points. Since this is a first degree equation, of the form $y = mx + b$ (for $E = y$, $m = 2$ and $I = x$ and $b = 0$) it will be a straight line so we need only two points to plot it.

	I	E
(line passes through origin)	0	0
	5	10

The line is shown in Figure 32. It is seen to be a straight line passing through the origin.

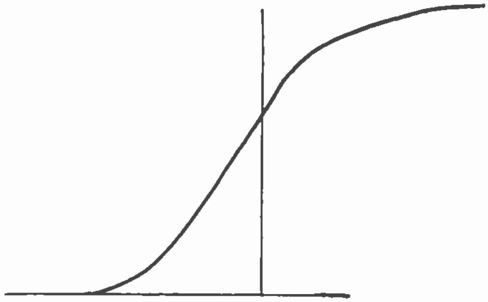


Figure 33.

A TYPICAL GRID - VOLTAGE PLATE-CURRENT CHARACTERISTIC CURVE.

The equation represented by such a curve is so complicated that we do not use it. Data for such a curve is obtained experimentally, and intermediate values can be found with sufficient accuracy from the curve.

If the resistance were 4 ohms, we should get the equation $E = 4I$ and this also represents a line which we can plot in the same figure. As we see, this line also passes through the origin but has a different slope. In this illustration the slope defines the resistance and we could make a protractor which would convert the angle into ohms. This fact may seem inconsequential now, but use of this is made in the drawing of loadlines on tube curves.

Figure 33 shows a typical, grid-voltage, plate-current static characteristic of a triode. The equation represented by this curve is rather complicated so that we prefer to deal with the curve. Note that this curve extends through the first and second quadrant.

Families of curves. It has been explained that curves in a plane can be made to illustrate the relation between *two* variables when one of them varies independently. However, what are we going to do when there are *three* variables and *two* of them vary independently. It is possible to use three dimensions and three axes but this is not conveniently done. Instead of this we may use a *family of curves.* We have already illustrated this partly with Ohm's Law. If we wish to make a chart which will show the current through *any* resistance with *any* voltage applied across it, we must take the equation $E = IR$, having three variables.

We can now draw one line representing a resistance of 1 ohm, another line representing 2 ohms, another representing 3 ohms, etc., or as many as we wish and the size of our paper will allow. The whole set of lines is then applicable to any case of Ohm's Law falling within the range of the chart. If any two of the three quantities are given, the third can be found.

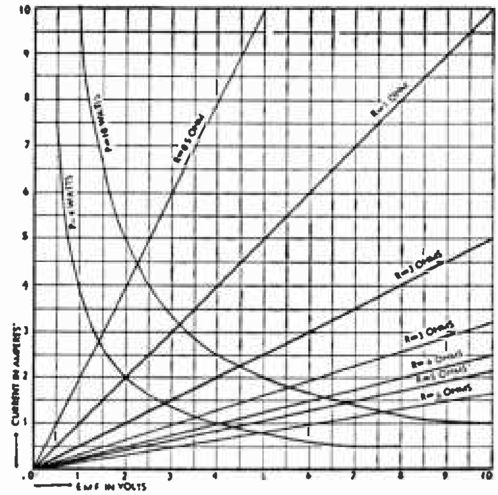


Figure 34.
A FAMILY OF CURVES.
An equation such as Ohm's Law has three variables, but can be represented in Cartesian coordinates by a family of curves such as shown here. If any two quantities are given, the third can be found. Any point in the chart represents a definite value each of E, I, and R, which will satisfy the equation of Ohm's Law. Values of R not situated on an R line can be found by interpolation.

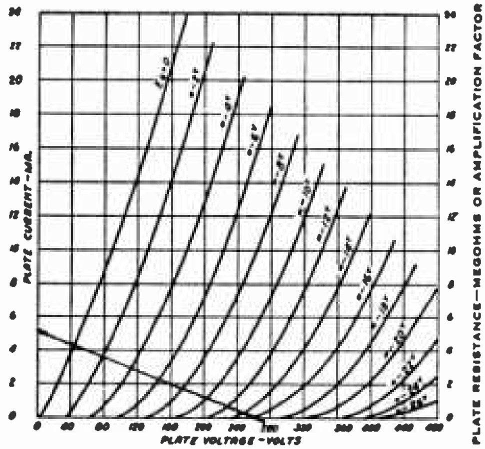


Figure 35.
"PLATE" CURVES FOR A TYPICAL VACUUM TUBE.
In such curves we have three variables, plate voltage, plate current, and grid bias. Each point on a grid bias line corresponds to the plate voltage and plate current represented by its position with respect to the X and Y axes. Those for other values of grid bias may be found by interpolation. The loadline shown in the lower left portion of the chart is explained in the text.

Figure 34 shows such a family of curves to solve Ohm's Law. Any point in the chart represents a definite value each of *E*, *I*, and *R* which will satisfy the equation. The value of *R* represented by a point that is not situated on an *R* line can be found by interpolation.

It is even possible to draw on the same chart a second family of curves, representing a fourth variable. But this is not always possible, for among the four variables there should be no more than *two independent variables.* In our example such a set of lines could represent power in watts; we have drawn only two of these but there could of course be as many as desired. A single point in the plane now indicates the four values of *E*, *I*, *R*, and *P* which belong together and the knowledge of any two of them will give us the other two by reference to the chart.

Another example of a family of curves is the dynamic transfer characteristic or *plate family* of a tube. Such a chart consists of several curves showing the relation between plate voltage, plate current, and grid bias of a tube. Since we have again three variables, we must show several curves, each curve for a fixed value of one of the variables. It is customary to plot plate voltage along the *X*-axis, plate current along the *Y*-axis, and to make different curves for various values of grid bias. Such a set of curves is illustrated in Figure 35. Each point in the plane is defined by three values, which belong together, plate voltage, plate current, and grid voltage.

Now consider the diagram of a resistance-coupled amplifier in Figure 36. Starting with the B-supply voltage, we know that whatever plate current flows must pass through the resistor and will conform to Ohm's Law. The voltage drop across the resistor is subtracted from the plate supply voltage and the remainder is the actual voltage at the plate, the kind that is plotted along the X-axis in Figure 35. We can now plot on the plate family of the

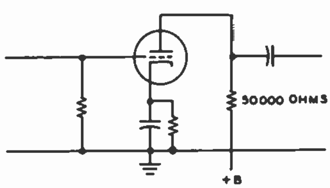


Figure 36.
PARTIAL DIAGRAM OF A RESISTANCE COUPLED AMPLIFIER.
The portion of the supply voltage wasted across the 50,000-ohm resistor is represented in Figure 35 as the loadline.

tube the *loadline*, that is the line showing which part of the plate supply voltage is across the resistor and which part across the tube for any value of plate current. In our example, let us suppose the plate resistor is 50,000 ohms. Then, if the plate current were zero, the voltage drop across the resistor would be zero and the full plate supply voltage is across the tube. Our first point of the loadline is $E = 250$, $I = 0$. Next, suppose, the plate current were 1 ma., then the voltage drop across the resistor would be 50 volts, which would leave for the tube 200 volts. The second point of the loadline is then $E = 200$, $I = 1$. We can continue like this but it is unnecessary for we shall find that it is a straight line and two points are sufficient to determine it.

This loadline shows at a glance what happens when the grid-bias is changed. Although there are many possible combinations of plate voltage, plate current, and grid bias, we are now restricted to points along this line as long as the 50,000 ohm plate resistor is in use. This line therefore shows the voltage drop across the tube as well as the voltage drop across the load for every value of grid bias. Therefore, if we know how much the grid bias varies, we can calculate the amount of variation in the plate voltage and plate current, the amplification, the power output, and the distortion.

Logarithmic Scales Sometimes it is convenient to measure along the axes the *logarithms* of our variable quantities. Instead of actually calculating the logarithm, special paper is available with logarithmic scales, that is, the distances measured along the axes are proportional to the logarithms of the numbers marked on them rather than to the numbers themselves.

There is semi-logarithmic paper, having logarithmic scales along one axis only, the other scale being linear. We also have full logarithmic paper where both axes carry logarithmic scales. Many curves are greatly simplified and some become straight lines when plotted on this paper.

As an example let us take the wavelength-frequency relation, charted before on straight cross-section paper.

$$f = \frac{300{,}000}{\lambda}$$

Taking logarithms:

$$\log f = \log 300{,}000 - \log \lambda$$

If we plot log f along the Y-axis and log λ along the X-axis, the curve becomes a straight line. Figure 37 illustrates this graph on full logarithmic paper. The graph may be read with the same accuracy at any point in contrast to the graph made with linear coordinates.

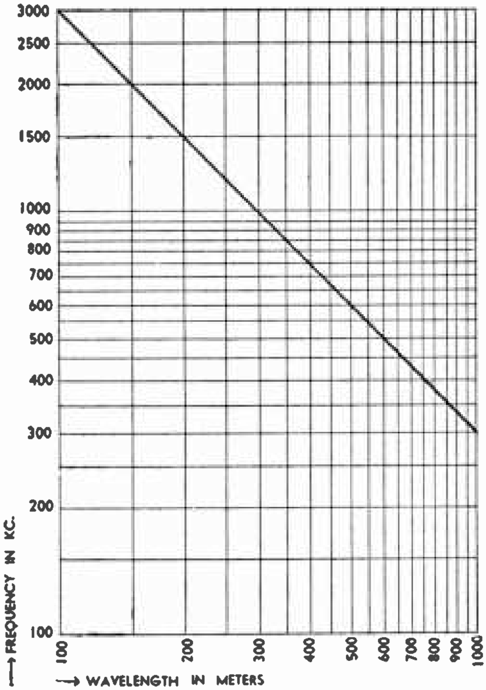


Figure 37.
A LOGARITHMIC CURVE.
Many functions become greatly simplified and some become straight lines when plotted to logarithmic scales such as shown in this diagram. Here the frequency versus wavelength curve of Figure 31 has been replotted to conform with logarithmic axes. Note that it is only necessary to calculate two points in order to determine the "curve" since this type of function results in a straight line.

This last fact is a great advantage of logarithmic scales in general. It should be clear that if we have a linear scale with 100 small divisions numbered from 1 to 100, and if we are able to read to one tenth of a division, the possible error we can make near 100, way up the scale, is only 1/10th of a percent. But near the beginning of the scale, near 1, one tenth of a division amounts to 10 percent of 1 and we are making a 10 percent error.

In any logarithmic scale, our possible error in measurement or reading might be, say 1/32 of an inch which represents a fixed amount of the log depending on the scale used. The net result of adding to the logarithm a fixed quantity, as 0.01, is that the anti-logarithm is multiplied by 1.025, or the error is 2½%. No matter at what part of the scale the 0.01 is added, the error is always 2½%.

An example of the advantage due to the use

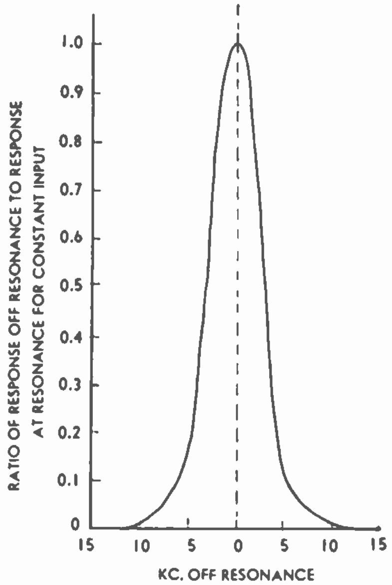


Figure 38.
A RECEIVER RESONANCE CURVE.
This curve represents the output of a receiver versus frequency when plotted to linear coordinates.

of semi-logarithmic paper is shown in Figures 38 and 39. A resonance curve, when plotted on linear coordinate paper will look like the curve in Figure 38. Here we have plotted the output of a receiver against frequency while the applied voltage is kept constant. It is the kind of curve a "wobbulator" will show. The curve does not give enough information in this form for one might think that a signal 10 kc. off resonance would not cause any current at all and is tuned out. However, we frequently have off resonance signals which are 1000 times as strong as the desired signal and one cannot read on the graph of Figure 38 how much any signal is attenuated if it is reduced more than about 20 times.

In comparison look at the curve of Figure 39. Here the response (the current) is plotted in logarithmic proportion, which allows us to plot clearly how far off resonance a signal has to be to be reduced 100, 1,000, or even 10,000 times.

Note that this curve is now "upside down"; it is therefore called a *selectivity* curve. The reason that it appears upside down is that the method of measurement is different. In a selectivity curve we plot the increase in signal voltage necessary to cause a standard output off resonance. It is also possible to plot this increase along the Y-axis in decibels; the curve then looks the same although linear paper can

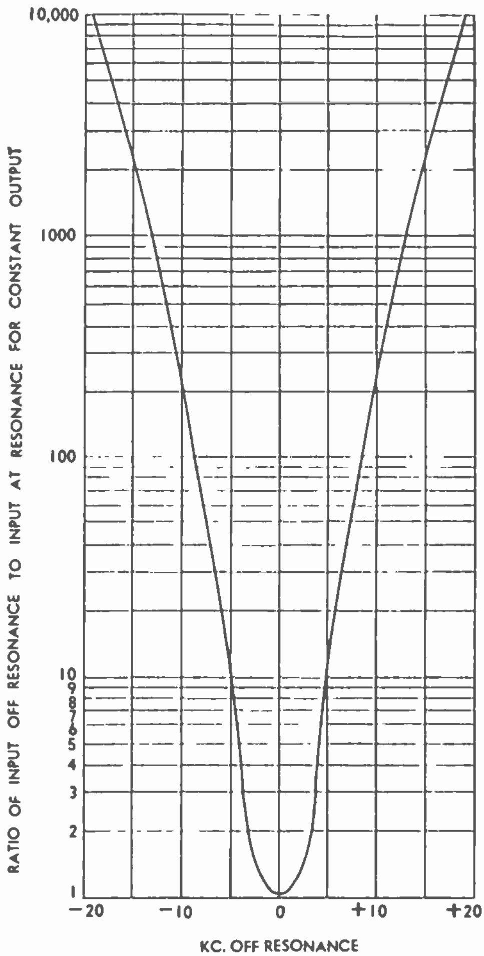


Figure 39.
A RECEIVER SELECTIVITY CURVE.
This curve represents the selectivity of a receiver plotted to logarithmic coordinates for the output, but linear coordinates for frequency. The reason that this curve appears inverted from that of Figure 38 is explained in the text.

be used because now our unit is logarithmic.

An example of full logarithmic paper being used for families of curves is shown in the reactance charts of Figures 40 and 41.

Nomograms or Alignment Charts An alignment chart consists of three or more sets of scales which have been so laid out that to solve the formula for which the chart was made, we have but to lay a straight edge along the two given values on any two of the scales, to find the third and unknown value on the third scale. In its sim-

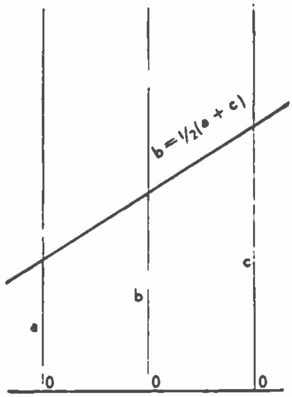


Figure 42.
THE SIMPLEST FORM OF NOMOGRAM.

plest form, it is somewhat like the lines in Figure 42. If the lines *a*, *b*, and *c* are parallel and equidistant, we know from ordinary geometry, that $b = \frac{1}{2}(a + c)$. Therefore, if we draw a scale of the same units on all three lines, starting with zero at the bottom, we know that by laying a straight-edge across the chart at any place, it will connect values of *a*, *b*, and *c*, which satisfy the above equation. When any two quantities are known, the third can be found.

If, in the same configuration we used logarithmic scales instead of linear scales, the relation of the quantities would become

$$\log b = \frac{1}{2}(\log a + \log c) \text{ or } b = \sqrt{ac}$$

By using different kinds of scales, different units, and different spacings between the scales, charts can be made to solve many kinds of equations.

If there are more than three variables it is generally necessary to make a double chart, that is, to make the result from the first chart serve as the given quantity of the second one. Such an example is the chart for the design of coils illustrated in Figure 45. This nomogram is used to convert the inductance in microhenries to physical dimensions of the coil and vice versa. A pin and a straight edge are required. The method is shown under "R. F. Tank Circuit Calculations" later in this chapter.

Polar Coordinates Instead of the Cartesian coordinate system there is also another system for defining algebraically the location of a point or line in a plane. In this, the polar coordinate system, a point is determined by its distance from the origin, *O*, and by the angle it makes with the axis *O-X*. In Figure 43 the point *P* is defined by the length of *OP*, known as the radius vector and

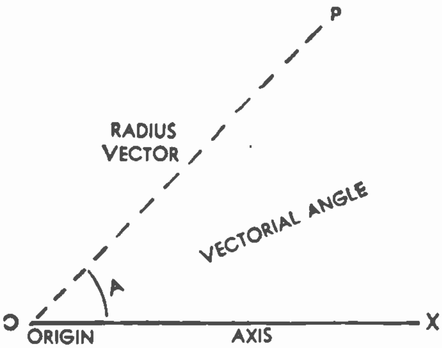


Figure 43.
THE LOCATION OF A POINT BY POLAR COORDINATES.
In the polar coordinate system any point is determined by its distance from the origin and the angle formed by a line drawn from it to the origin and the O-X axis.

by the angle *A* the vectorial angle. We give these data in the following form

$$P = 3 \angle 60^\circ$$

Polar coordinates are used in radio chiefly for the plotting of directional properties of microphones and antennas. A typical example of such a directional characteristic is shown in Figure 44. The radiation of the antenna represented here is proportional to the distance of the characteristic from the origin for every possible direction.

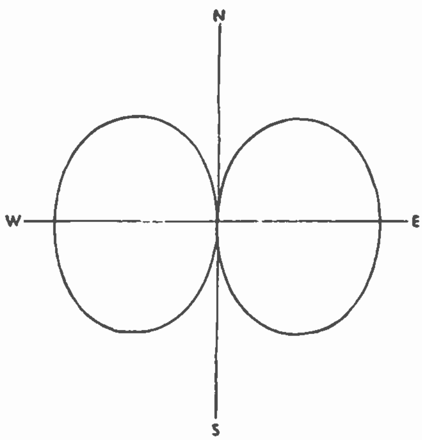


Figure 44.
THE RADIATION CURVE OF AN ANTENNA.
Polar coordinates are used principally in radio work for plotting the directional characteristics of an antenna where the radiation is represented by the distance of the curve from the origin for every possible direction.

Reactance Calculations

In audio frequency calculations, an accuracy to better than a few per cent is seldom required, and when dealing with calculations involving inductance, capacitance, resonant frequency, etc., it is much simpler to make use of reactance-frequency charts such as those in figures 40 and 41 rather than to wrestle with a combination of unwieldy formulas. From these charts it is possible to determine the reactance of a condenser or coil if the capacitance or inductance is known, and vice versa. It follows from this that resonance calculations can be made directly from the chart, because resonance simply means that the inductive and capacitive reactances are equal. The capacity required to resonate with a given inductance, or the inductance required to resonate with a given capacity, can be taken directly from the chart.

While the chart may look somewhat formidable to one not familiar with charts of this type, its application is really quite simple, and can be learned in a short while. The following example should clarify its interpretation.

For instance, following the lines to their intersection, we see that 0.1 hy. and 0.1 μfd. intersect at approximately 1,500 cycles and 1,000 ohms. Thus, the reactance of either the coil or condenser taken alone is about 1000 ohms, and the resonant frequency about 1,500 cycles.

To find the reactance of 0.1 hy. at, say, 10,000 cycles, simply follow the inductance line diagonally up towards the upper left till it intersects the horizontal 10,000 kc. line. Following vertically downward from the point of intersection, we see that the reactance at this frequency is about 6000 ohms.

To facilitate use of the chart and to avoid errors, simply keep the following in mind: The vertical lines indicate reactance in ohms, the horizontal lines always indicate the frequency, the diagonal lines sloping to the lower right represent inductance, and the diagonal lines sloping toward the lower left indicate capacitance. Also remember that the scale is *logarithmic*. For instance, the next horizontal line above 1000 cycles is *2000* cycles. Note that there are 9, not 10, divisions between the heavy lines. This also should be kept in mind when interpolating between lines when best possible accuracy is desired; halfway between the line representing 200 cycles and the line representing 300 cycles is *not* 250 cycles, but approximately 230 cycles. The 250 cycle point is approximately 0.7 of the way between the 200 cycle line and the 300 cycle line, rather than halfway between.

Use of the chart need not be limited by the physical boundaries of the chart. For instance, the 10-$\mu\mu$fd. line can be extended to find where it intersects the 100-hy. line, the resonant frequency being determined by projecting the intersection horizontally back on to the chart. To determine the reactance, the logarithmic ohms scale must be extended.

R. F. Tank Circuit Calculations When winding coils for use in radio receivers and transmitters, it is desirable to be able to determine in advance the full coil specifications for a given frequency. Likewise, it often is desired to determine how much capacity is required to resonate a given coil so that a suitable condenser can be used.

Fortunately, extreme accuracy is not required, except where fixed capacitors are used across the tank coil with no provision for trimming the tank to resonance. Thus, even though it may be necessary to estimate the stray circuit capacity present in shunt with the tank capacity, and to take for granted the likelihood of a small error when using a chart instead of the formula upon which the chart was based, the results will be sufficiently accurate in most cases, and in any case give a reasonably close point from which to start "pruning."

The inductance required to resonate with a certain capacitance is given in the chart in figure 41. By means of the r.f. chart, the inductance of the coil can be determined, or the capacitance determined if the inductance is known. When making calculations, be sure to allow for stray circuit capacity, such as tube interelectrode capacity, wiring, sockets, etc. This will normally run from 5 to 25 micromicrofarads, depending upon the components and circuit.

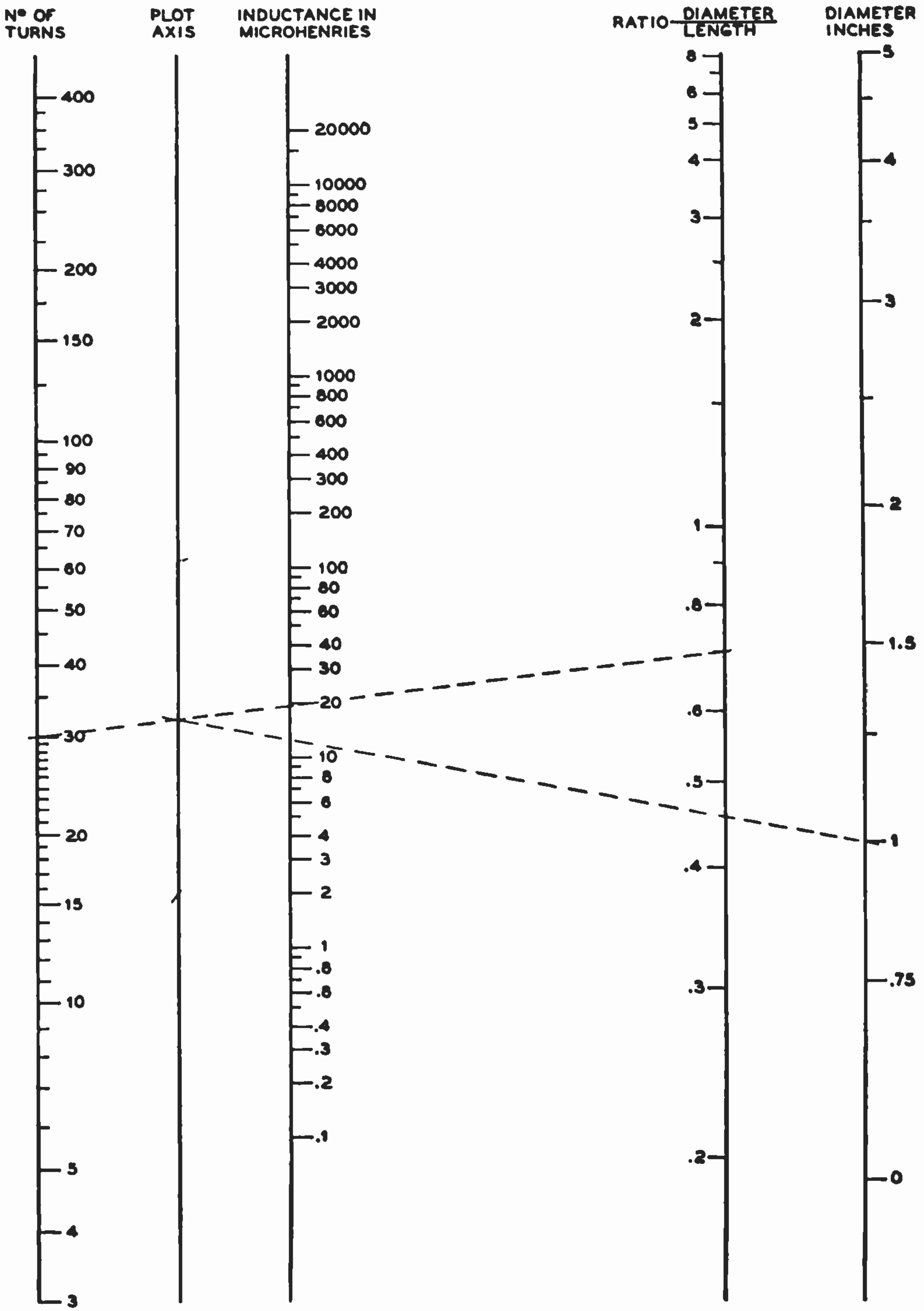
To convert the inductance in microhenries to physical dimensions of the coil, or vice versa, the nomograph chart in figure 45 is used. A pin and a straightedge are required. The inductance of a coil is found as follows:

The straightedge is placed from the correct point on the turns column to the correct point on the diameter-to-length ratio column, the latter simply being the diameter divided by the length. Place the pin at the point on the plot axis column where the straightedge crosses it. From this point lay the straightedge to the correct point on the diameter column. The point where the straightedge intersects the inductance column will give the inductance of the coil.

From the chart, we see that a 30 turn coil having a diameter-to-length ratio of 0.7 and a diameter of 1 inch has an inductance of approximately 12 microhenries. Likewise any one of the four factors may be determined if the other three are known. For instance, to determine the number of turns when the desired in-

Figure 45. COIL CALCULATOR NOMOGRAPH

For single layer solenoid coils, any wire size. See text for instructions.



ductance, the D/L ratio, and the diameter are known, simply work backwards from the example given. In all cases, remember that the straightedge reads either turns and D/L ratio, *or* it reads inductance and diameter. It can read no other combination.

The actual wire size has negligible effect upon the calculations for commonly used wire sizes (no. 10 to no. 30). The number of turns of insulated wire that can be wound per inch (solid) will be found in a copper wire table.

Significant Figures

In most radio calculations, numbers represent quantities which were obtained by measurement. Since no measurement gives absolute accuracy, such quantities are only approximate and their value is given only to a few significant figures. In calculations, these limitations must be kept in mind and one should not finish for instance with a result expressed in more significant figures than the given quantities at the beginning. This would imply a greater accuracy than actually was obtained and is therefore misleading, if not ridiculous.

An example may make this clear. Many ammeters and voltmeters do not give results to closer than ¼ ampere or ¼ volt. Thus if we have 2¼ amperes flowing in a d.c. circuit at 6¾ volts, we can obtain a theoretical answer by multiplying 2.25 by 6.75 to get 15.1875 watts. But it is misleading to express the answer down to a ten-thousandth of a watt when the original measurements were only good to ¼ ampere or volt. The answer should be expressed as 15 watts, not even 15.0 watts. If we assume a possible error of ⅛ volt or ampere (that is, that our original data are only correct to the *nearest* ¼ volt or ampere) the true power lies between 14.078 (product of 2⅛ and 6⅝) and 16.328 (product of 2⅜ and 6⅞). Therefore, any third significant figure would be misleading as implying an accuracy which we do not have.

Conversely, there is also no point to calculating the value of a part down to 5 or 6 significant figures when the actual part to be used cannot be measured to better than 1 part in one hundred. For instance, if we are going to use 1% resistors in some circuit, such as an ohmmeter, there is no need to calculate the value of such a resistor to 5 places, such as 1262.5 ohm. Obviously, 1% of this quantity is over 12 ohms and the value should simply be written as 1260 ohms.

There is a definite technique in handling these approximate figures. When giving values obtained by measurement, no more figures are given than the accuracy of the measurement permits. Thus, if the measurement is good to two places, we would write, for instance, 6.9 which would mean that the true value is somewhere between 6.85 and 6.95. If the measurement is known to three significant figures, we might write 6.90 which means that the true value is somewhere between 6.895 and 6.905. In dealing with approximate quantities, the added cipher at the right of the decimal point has a meaning.

There is unfortunately no standardized system of writing approximate figures with many ciphers to the left of the decimal point. *69000* does not necessarily mean that the quantity is known to 5 significant figures. Some indicate the accuracy by writing 69×10^3 or 690×10^2 etc., but this system is not universally employed. The reader can use his own system, but whatever notation is used, the number of significant figures should be kept in mind.

Working with approximate figures, one may obtain an idea of the influence of the doubtful figures by marking all of them, and products or sums derived from them. In the following example, the doubtful figures have been underlined.

$$\begin{array}{r} 60\underline{3} \\ 3\underline{4}.\underline{6} \\ 0.\underline{120} \\ \hline 63\underline{7}.\underline{720} \end{array} \quad \textbf{answer: 638}$$

Multiplication:

$$\begin{array}{r} 65\underline{4} \\ 0.34\underline{2} \\ \hline 1308 \\ 2616 \\ 1962 \\ \hline 223.668 \end{array} \quad \textbf{answer: 224} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 65\underline{4} \\ 0.34\underline{2} \\ \hline 196|2 \\ 26|16 \\ 1|308 \\ \hline 224 \end{array}$$

It is recommended that the system at the right be used and that the figures to the right of the vertical line be omitted or guessed so as to save labor. Here the partial products are written in the reverse order, the most important ones first.

In division, labor can be saved when after each digit of the quotient is obtained, one figure of the divisor be dropped. Example:

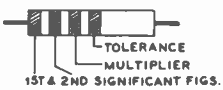
$$\begin{array}{rr} & 1.28 \\ 527\,) & 673 \\ & 527 \\ 53\,) & 146 \\ & 106 \\ 5\,) & 40 \\ & 40 \end{array}$$

Appendix

STANDARD COLOR CODE—RESISTORS AND CAPACITORS

AXIAL LEAD RESISTOR

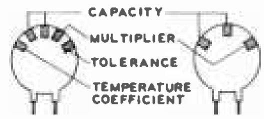
BROWN—INSULATED
BLACK—NON-INSULATED



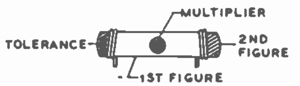
WIRE-WOUND RESISTORS HAVE 1ST DIGIT BAND DOUBLE WIDTH.

INSULATED UNINSULATED COLOR	FIRST RING BODY COLOR *FIRST FIGURE*	SECOND RING END COLOR *SECOND FIGURE*	THIRD RING DOT COLOR *MULTIPLIER*
BLACK	0	0	NONE
BROWN	1	1	0
RED	2	2	00
ORANGE	3	3	000
YELLOW	4	4	0,000
GREEN	5	5	00,000
BLUE	6	6	000,000
VIOLET	7	7	0,000,000
GRAY	8	8	00,000,000
WHITE	9	9	000,000,000

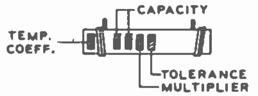
DISC CERAMIC RMA CODE



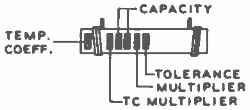
RADIAL LEAD DOT RESISTOR



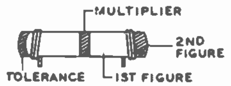
5-DOT RADIAL LEAD CERAMIC CAPACITOR



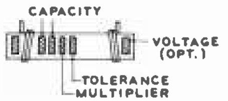
EXTENDED RANGE TC CERAMIC HICAP



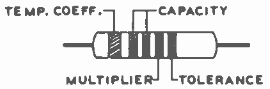
RADIAL LEAD (BAND) RESISTOR



BY-PASS COUPLING CERAMIC CAPACITOR

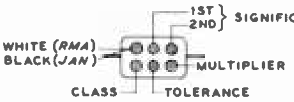


AXIAL LEAD CERAMIC CAPACITOR



MOLDED MICA TYPE CAPACITORS

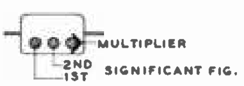
CURRENT STANDARD CODE



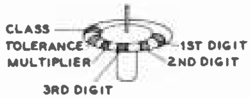
JAN & 1948 RMA CODE

RMA 3-DOT (OBSOLETE)

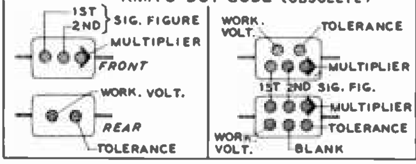
RATED 500 V.D.C. ± 20% TOL.



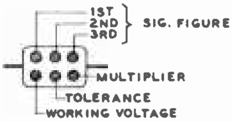
BUTTON SILVER MICA CAPACITOR



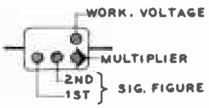
RMA 5-DOT CODE (OBSOLETE)



RMA 6-DOT (OBSOLETE)



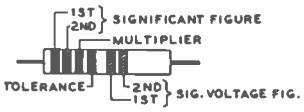
RMA 4-DOT (OBSOLETE)



MOLDED PAPER TYPE CAPACITORS

TUBULAR CAPACITOR

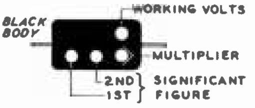
NORMALLY STAMPED FOR VALUE



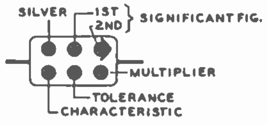
A 2-DIGIT VOLTAGE RATING INDICATES MORE THAN 900 V. ADD 2 ZEROS TO END OF 2 DIGIT NUMBER.

MOLDED FLAT CAPACITOR

COMMERCIAL CODE



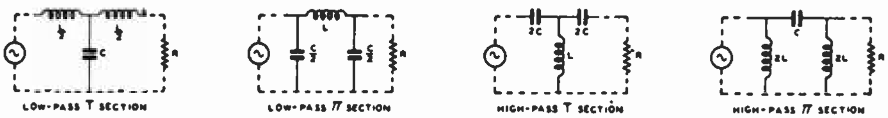
JAN CODE CAPACITOR

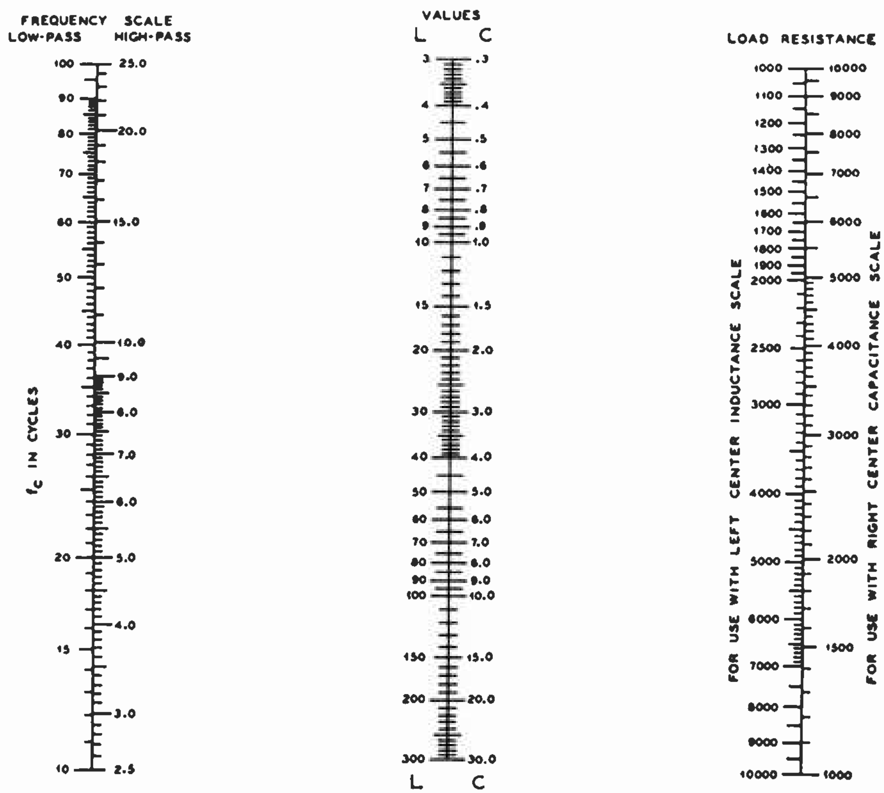


STANDARD COLOR CODE FOR RESISTORS AND CAPACITORS

The standard code provides the necessary information required to properly identify color coded resistors and capacitors. Refer to the color code for numerical values and the number of zeros (or multiplier) assigned to the colors used. A fourth color band on resistors determines the tolerance rating as follows: Gold = 5%, silver = 10%. Absence of the fourth band indicates a 20% tolerance rating.

Tolerance rating of capacitors is determined by the color code. For example: Red = 2%, green = 5%, etc. The voltage rating of capacitors is obtained by multiplying the color value by 100. For example: Orange = 3 × 100, or 300 volts.





FILTER DESIGN CHART

For both Pi-type and T-type Sections

To find L, connect cutoff frequency on left-hand scale (using left-side scale for low-pass and right-side scale for high-pass) with load on left-hand side of right-hand scale by means of a straight-edge. Then read the value of L from the point where the edge intersects the left side of the center scale. Readings are in henries for frequencies in hertz.

To find C, connect cutoff frequency on left-hand scale (using left-side scale for low-pass and right-side scale for high-pass) with the load on the right-hand side of the right-hand scale. Then read the value of C from the point where the straightedge cuts the right side of the center scale. Readings are in microfarads for frequencies in hertz.
For frequencies in kHz, C is expressed in thousands of picofarads, L is expressed in millihenrys. For frequencies in megacycles, L is expressed in microhenrys and C is expresssed in picofarads.

For each tenfold increase in the value of load resistance multiply L by 10 and divide C by 10. For each tenfold decrease in frequency multiply L by 10 and multiply C by 10.

AIRWOUND INDUCTORS

COIL DIA. *INCHES*	TURNS PER INCH	B & W	AIR DUX	INDUCTANCE *μH*
1/2	4	3001	404T	0.18
	6	—	406T	0.40
	8	3002	408T	0.72
	10	—	410T	1.12
	16	3003	416T	2.90
	32	3004	432T	12.0
5/8	4	3005	504T	0.28
	6	—	506T	0.62
	8	3006	508T	1.1
	10	—	510T	1.7
	16	3007	516T	4.4
	32	3008	532T	18.0
3/4	4	3009	604T	0.39
	6	—	606T	0.87
	8	3010	608T	1.57
	10	—	610T	2.45
	16	3011	616T	6.40
	32	3012	632T	26.0
1	4	3013	804T	1.0
	6	—	806T	2.3
	8	3014	808T	4.2
	10	—	810T	6.6
	16	3015	816T	16.8
	32	3016	832T	68.0

NOTE:

COIL INDUCTANCE APPROXIMATELY PROPORTIONAL TO LENGTH. I.E., FOR 1/2 INDUCTANCE VALUE, TRIM COIL TO 1/2 LENGTH.

COIL DIA. *INCHES*	TURNS PER INCH	B & W	AIR DUX	INDUCTANCE *μH*
1 1/4	4	—	1004	2.75
	6	—	1006	6.30
	8	—	1008	11.2
	10	—	1010	17.5
	16	—	1016	42.5
1 1/2	4	—	1204	3.9
	6	—	1206	8.8
	8	—	1208	15.6
	10	—	1210	24.5
	16	—	1216	63.0
1 3/4	4	—	1404	5.2
	6	—	1406	11.8
	8	—	1408	21.0
	10	—	1410	33.0
	16	—	1416	85.0
2	4	—	1604	6.6
	6	—	1606	15.0
	8	3900	1608	26.5
	10	3907-1	1610	42.0
	16	—	1616	108.0
2 1/2	4	—	2004	10.1
	6	3905-1	2006	23.0
	8	3906-1	2008	41.0
	10	—	2010	108.0
3	4	—	2404	14.0
	6	—	2406	31.5
	8	—	2408	56.0
	10	—	2410	89.0

Copper Wire Table

Gauge No. B. & S.	Diam. in Mils[1]	Circular Mil Area	Turns per Linear Inch[2] Enamel	S.S.C.	D.S.C. or S.C.C.	D.C.C.	Turns per Square Inch[2] S.C.C.	Enamel	D.C.C.	Feet per Lb. Bare	D.C.C.	Ohms per 1000 ft. 25° C.	Correct Capacity at 1500 C.M. per Amp.[3]	Diam. in mm.
1	289.3	82690	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	3.947	—	.1264	55.7	7.348
2	257.6	66370	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	4.977	—	.1593	44.1	6.544
3	229.4	52640	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	6.276	—	.2009	35.0	5.827
4	204.3	41740	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	7.914	—	.2533	27.7	5.189
5	181.9	33100	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	9.980	—	.3195	22.0	4.621
6	162.0	26250	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	12.58	—	.4028	17.5	4.115
7	144.3	20820	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	15.87	—	.5080	13.8	3.665
8	128.5	16510	7.6	—	7.4	7.1	—	—	—	20.01	19.6	.6405	11.0	3.264
9	114.4	13090	8.6	—	8.2	7.8	—	—	—	25.23	24.6	.8077	8.7	2.906
10	101.9	10380	9.6	—	9.3	8.9	87.5	84.8	80.0	31.82	30.9	1.018	6.9	2.588
11	90.74	8234	10.7	—	10.3	9.8	110	105	97.5	40.12	38.8	1.284	5.5	2.305
12	80.81	6530	12.0	—	11.5	10.9	136	131	121	50.59	48.9	1.619	4.4	2.053
13	71.96	5178	13.5	—	12.8	12.0	170	162	150	63.80	61.5	2.042	3.5	1.828
14	64.08	4107	15.0	—	14.2	13.8	211	198	183	80.44	77.3	2.575	2.7	1.628
15	57.07	3257	16.8	—	15.8	14.7	262	250	223	101.4	97.3	3.247	2.2	1.450
16	50.82	2583	18.9	18.9	17.9	16.4	321	306	271	127.9	119	4.094	1.7	1.291
17	45.26	2048	21.2	21.2	19.9	18.1	397	372	329	161.3	150	5.163	1.3	1.150
18	40.30	1624	23.6	23.6	22.0	19.8	493	454	399	203.4	188	6.510	1.1	1.024
19	35.89	1288	26.4	26.4	24.4	21.8	592	553	479	256.5	237	8.210	.86	.9116
20	31.96	1022	29.4	29.4	27.0	23.8	775	725	625	323.4	298	10.35	.68	.8118
21	28.46	810.1	33.1	32.7	29.8	26.0	940	895	754	407.8	370	13.05	.54	.7230
22	25.35	642.4	37.0	36.5	34.1	30.0	1150	1070	910	514.2	461	16.46	.43	.6438
23	22.57	509.5	41.3	40.6	37.6	31.6	1400	1300	1080	648.4	584	20.76	.34	.5733
24	20.10	404.0	46.3	45.3	41.5	35.6	1700	1570	1260	817.7	745	26.17	.27	.5106
25	17.90	320.4	51.7	50.4	45.6	38.6	2060	1910	1510	1031	903	33.00	.21	.4547
26	15.94	254.1	58.0	55.6	50.2	41.8	2500	2300	1750	1300	1118	41.62	.17	.4049
27	14.20	201.5	64.9	61.5	55.0	45.0	3030	2780	2020	1639	1422	52.48	.13	.3606
28	12.64	159.8	72.7	68.6	60.2	48.5	3670	3350	2310	2067	1759	66.17	.11	.3211
29	11.26	126.7	81.6	74.8	65.4	51.8	4300	3900	2700	2607	2207	83.44	.084	.2859
30	10.03	100.5	90.5	83.3	71.5	55.5	5040	4660	3020	3287	2534	105.2	.067	.2546
31	8.928	79.70	101.	92.0	77.5	59.2	5920	5280	—	4145	2768	132.7	.053	.2268
32	7.950	63.21	113.	101.	83.6	62.6	7060	6250	—	5227	3137	167.3	.042	.2019
33	7.080	50.13	127.	110.	90.3	66.3	8120	7360	—	6591	4697	211.0	.033	.1798
34	6.305	39.75	143.	120.	97.0	70.0	9600	8310	—	8310	6168	266.0	.026	.1601
35	5.615	31.52	158.	132.	104.	73.5	10900	8700	—	10480	6737	335.0	.021	.1426
36	5.000	25.00	175.	143.	111.	77.0	12200	10700	—	13210	7877	423.0	.017	.1270
37	4.453	19.83	198.	154.	118.	80.3	—	—	—	16660	9309	533.4	.013	.1131
38	3.965	15.72	224.	166.	126.	83.6	—	—	—	21010	10666	672.6	.010	.1007
39	3.531	12.47	248.	181.	133.	86.6	—	—	—	26500	11907	848.1	.008	.0897
40	3.145	9.88	282.	194.	140.	89.7	—	—	—	33410	14222	1069	.006	.0799

[1]A mil is 1/1000 (one thousandth) of an inch.
[2]The figures given are approximate only, since the thickness of the insulation varies with different manufacturers.
[3]The current-carrying capacity at 1000 C.M. per ampere is equal to the circular-mil area (Column 3) divided by 1000.

CONVERSION TABLE — UNITS OF MEASUREMENT		
MICRO = (μ) ONE-MILLIONTH		KILO = (K) ONE THOUSAND
MILLI = (m) ONE-THOUSANDTH		MEGA = (M) ONE MILLION
TO CHANGE FROM	TO	OPERATOR
UNITS	MICRO-UNITS	$\times$ 1,000,000 or $\times 10^6$
	MILLI-UNITS	$\times$ 1,000 or $\times 10^3$
	KILO-UNITS	$\div$ 1,000 or $\times 10^{-3}$
	MEGA-UNITS	$\div$ 1,000,000 or $\times 10^{-6}$
MICRO-UNITS	MILLI-UNITS	$\div$ 1,000 or $\times 10^{-3}$
	UNITS	$\div$ 1,000,000 or $\times 10^{-6}$
MILLI-UNITS	MICRO-UNITS	$\times$ 1,000 or $\times 10^3$
	UNITS	$\div$ 1,000 or $\times 10^{-3}$
KILO-UNITS	MEGA-UNITS	$\div$ 1,000 or $\times 10^{-3}$
	UNITS	$\times$ 1,000 or $\times 10^3$
MEGA-UNITS	KILO-UNITS	$\times$ 1,000 or $\times 10^3$
	UNITS	$\times$ 1,000,000 or $\times 10^6$

COMPONENT COLOR CODING

POWER TRANSFORMERS

PRIMARY LEADS	BLACK
IF TAPPED:	
COMMON	BLACK
TAP	BLACK/YELLOW
END	BLACK/RED
HIGH VOLTAGE WINDING	RED
CENTER-TAP	RED/YELLOW
RECTIFIER FILAMENT WINDING	YELLOW
CENTER-TAP	YELLOW/BLUE
FILAMENT WINDING Nº 1	GREEN
CENTER-TAP	GREEN/YELLOW
FILAMENT WINDING Nº 2	BROWN
CENTER-TAP	BROWN/YELLOW
FILAMENT WINDING Nº 3	SLATE
CENTER-TAP	SLATE/YELLOW

I-F TRANSFORMERS

PLATE LEAD	BLUE
B+ LEAD	RED
GRID (OR DIODE) LEAD	GREEN
A-V-C (OR GROUND) LEAD	BLACK

AUDIO TRANSFORMERS

PLATE LEAD (PRI.)	BLUE OR BROWN
B+ LEAD (PRI.)	RED
GRID LEAD (SEC.)	GREEN OR YELLOW
GRID RETURN (SEC.)	BLACK

Index

A

A-c
  bridge circuits, 756
  circuits, 46
  line taps, 388
  loading of second detector, 214
  transient circuits, 69
  voltage dividers, 61-62
  v.t.v.m., 748
Accelerating anode, 95, 97
Accelerating potential, oscilloscope, 173
Acceptors, 101
Accessories, 226-228
  product detector, 227-228
  Q-multiplier, 226-227
A-c circuits, 37-38
A-c/d-c receivers, 387
Admittance, 61
A-f amplifier, class-B
  load line, 141
A-frame mast, 461
AFSK, 325
  oscillator, 329
Air-filled coaxial lines, impedance, 432
Air gap, tuning capacitor, 258
Alc, 350-353
  amplifier, 351
Algebra, 791-798
Alignment
  front-end, 226
  i-f, 225
  superheterodyne, 225
  trf receiver, 225
Alignment, receiver i-f
  with oscilloscope, 179-182
Alpha cutoff frequency, 107
Alpha formula, 106
Alternating current, 46
  effective value, 50
  generation, 47
  instantaneous value, 49-50
  measurement, 747
  rectified, 50-51
Alternative limiter circuit, 219-220
Alternators, 47, 48
  Leece Neville, 536
A-m
  side frequencies, 309
  signal, conventional, 332
A-m and f-m waves, 309
A-m and speech equipment, 698-706
Amateur bands, 13-15
  harmonics, 377
Amateur licenses, 12, 13
Amateur Radio, 11
Ampere, definition, 25
Ampere turns, 73
Amplification factor, 81-84
  symbol for, 120
Amplification formula, current, 106
Amplifier
  audio, two-stage transistor, 112, 215-216
  cascaded voltage, 127
  cascode, 202
  cathode-driven, 123, 662-667
    choice of tubes, 666
    construction, 664-665
    distortion products, 663-664
    feedthrough power, 662-663
    neutralization, 666-667
    tuning, 665-666
  cathode-follower, use of, 144-145
  circuit
    audio, class-B, 113
    video, 127
  class-A, 122
  class-AB_1, 122
  class AB_1 linear, operating parameters, 163-165
  class-AB_2, 122
  class-B, 122, 242-243
  class-B linear, operating parameters, 157-158
  class-C, 122, 240-243
    operating characteristics, 152
  clipper, speech, 142
  complementary-symmetry, 112
  coupling, i-f, 207
  d-c, 132-133
  design, power, 652-654
    circuits, 653-654
    tubes, 652-653
  distortion in, 123-125
  feedback, relationship, 145-146
  500-watt, 675-682
    circuit, 676-677
    construction, 677-680
    design, 676
    tuning and operation, 680-682
  for six meters, kilowatt linear, 668-675
    adjustment, 673-675
    a-m linear operation, 675
    circuit, 668-669
    construction, 670-671
    metering and suppression circuits, 670
    plate-circuit assembly, 671-673
  pentode
    power, operating characteristics of, 135-137
    RC-coupled, equivalent circuits, 126
    RC-coupled, gain equations for, 126
    r-f, 201
    single-ended, 135-137
  linear, utility 2-kilowatt, 682-692
    circuit, 682-685
    construction, 685-688
    external anode tetrodes, 688-690
    feedthrough power, 662-663
    neutralization, 666-667
    tube combinations, 690-691
    tuning, 665-666
    tuning and adjustments, 691-692
  grid-driven, 122
  grounded-cathode, 159
  grounded grid, 123, 250, 662-667
    bias supplies for, 166
    choice of tubes, 666
    construction, 664-665
    distortion products, 663-664
    linear, 165-168
  i-f, superheterodyne receiver, 198
  linear, class-B, 156-157
  phase, gain, and phase shift in, 145-146
  plate efficiency, calculating, 155-156
  plate-return, 122-123
  power
    cathode-follower, 143-145
    class-AB_1 r-f, 163-165
    class-B audio-frequency, 138-143
    class-B radio-frequency, 156-159
    high-frequency, 652-697
    push-pull class-A triode, 138
    radio-frequency, 150-168
  push-pull audio, 137-138
  push-pull tetrode, 656-659
  push-pull triode, 654-656
    circuit layout, 655
    construction, 655-656
    excitation requirements, 655

filament supply, 654
grid bias, 654
grid circuit, 654-655
plate feed, 654
radio-frequency vacuum-tube, 147-168
RC, general characteristics, 127
r-f
grid-circuit considerations, 158-159
grounded-grid, 159-161
plate-circuit considerations, 149-150
plate-circuit coupling, 149-150
power, cathode-follower, 161-162
power, class-C, 150-156
power, plate-return, 161-162
screen-circuit considerations, 159
tuned cathode circuit, 166-168
resistance, 103
resistance-capacitance coupled, 124-127
response, RC, 127
sweep, oscilloscope, 173
tank circuit, Q of, 155
tetrode, linearity curve of, 164
tetrode pi-network, 659-662
grounded-screen, 661-662
inductively tuned tank circuit, 662
transistor i-f, 114
Tribander linear, 692-697
circuit, 692-696
transmitter adjustment and tuning, 697
transmitter control circuits and power supply, 696-697
triode power, operation characteristics of, 133-135
triode, single-ended, 133-135
types of, 122-123
vacuum-tube, 120-146
vertical, oscilloscope, 170-171
video-frequency, 127-128
voltage, PNP transistor, 111
Amplitude
average, 278
distortion, 124-125
modulation, 277-307
systems, 280-289
Angle of radiation
optimum, 419
typical antenna, 419-420
vhf and uhf antennas, 494
Angle, phase, 52, 53
Anode, 75, 77
Anode, accelerating, 95
Antennas, 436-473
and transmission line measurements, 759-768
center-fed half-wave horizontal, 437-441
center-fed Zepp, 437
couplers, 467-469
delta-matched and standard doublets, 440
diamond, 479-481
directivity, 418-421
discone, vhf and uhf, 498-500
doublet with quarter-wave transformer, 439
center-fed, 440-441
multiwire, 439-440
tuned, 437-439
efficiency, 417
80-meter, 442
end-fed half-wave horizontal, 436-437
end-fed Hertz, 436-437
Fuchs, 436-437
general characteristics, 411-415
grounding, 443
ground-plane, 441-442
half-wave vertical, 441
high-frequency directive, 474-492
horn-type and corner-reflector, 502-503
lazy-H, 484
Marconi, 416-418, 442-444
mobile, 537-539
all-band center-loaded, 539
auxiliary trimmer, 537-538
10-meter, 538-539
multiband, 447-455
center-fed, 449-450
end-fed Hertz, 448
folded flat-top, 450-451
low-frequency discone, 452
multee, 451
single-wire-fed, 452-453
3/4-wave folded doublet, 447-448
two-band Marconi, 448-449
vertical, 453-455
multielement vhf beam, 505-511
eight-element tiltable array, 506-508
long yagi, 511
screen beam for 2 meters, 509-511
three-element beam, 505-506
physical length, 412-413
polarization, 412
vhf and uhf, 495-496
radiation from, 410-411
requirements, vhf and uhf, 493-496
changeover, 494
insulation, 495
polarization, 495-496
radiation angle, 494-495
radiator cross section, 495
transmission lines, 494
resonance, 414-415
space-conserving, 444-446
broad-band dipole system, 446
twin-lead Marconi, 446
supports, 461-464
A-frame mast, 461
guy wires, 462
insulation, 463-464
painting, 463
trees as supports, 463
TV masts, 461-462
wire, 463
system
center-fed tuner for, 471-473
coupling to, 464-467
loading problem, 464
output coupling adjustment, 465-466
pi-network, 446
variable link, 466
trimmer, auxiliary, 537-538
tuner, single-wire, 469-471
bridge calibration, 470
tuner adjustments, 471
tuner construction, 470
V, 477-479
vhf and uhf, 493-511
helical beam, 500-502
horizontally polarized, 496-497
horizontal rhombic, 503-505
vertical-polarized, 497-498
double-skeleton cone, 498
nondirectional, 498
whip, 539
Zepp, 437
Antennascope, 529, 765-768
Antioverload modification of two-meter converter, 571-572
Application of tube characteristics, 84-88
Aquadag, 96, 99
Arithmetic, 784-791
Arrays
bidirectional rotatable, 525
broadside, 483-488
bi-square, 486-487
bobtail bidirectional, 487-488
cubical quad, 487
double-Bruce, 485-486
six-shooter, 487
stacked-dipole, 483-484
X-array, 484
collinear, 482-483
combination end-fire and broadside, 491-492
directive, 476
Franklin, 481
Franklin collinear, 439
parasitic, feed systems for, 516-523
delta match and T-match, 520-521
driven element with center feed, 521
folded-element match calculations, 519-520
gamma match, 521-522
matching stub, 522-523
rotary-link coupling, 521
stacked-dipole, 481-483
collinear, 482-483
double extended Zepp, 483
in-phase spacing, 481
out-of-phase spacing, 481-482
spaced half-wave, 483
stacked yagi, 517
three-element, rotary-beam, 514-516
element spacing, 515
length of parasitic element, 515-516
materials for elements, 515
more than three elements, 516
stacking of yagi arrays, 516
tuning, 528-530
matching to the antenna transmission line, 528-529
raising and lowering, 530
unidirectional driven, 523-525
feed methods, 523-525
stacked broadside arrays, 523-525
unidirectional parasitic end-fire, 512-514
Assymetrical speech, 699-700
Atom, 23, 24
Atomic structure of germanium and silicon, 100-101
Audio
circuitry, transistor, 111-114
detector, and control circuits, 213-216
a-c loading of second detector, 214
audio amplifiers, 215-216
automatic volume control, 214
avc in bfo-equipped receivers, 214
detectors, 213-214
signal-strength indicators, 214-215
noise limiter, 218
peak limiting, 185-187
phase-shift network, *Dome*, 344, 345
phase-shift network, passive, 345
power transistor circuit, class-A, 113
RTTY converter, 328
Audio amplifier, 215-216
circuit, class-B, 113
push-pull, 137-138
two-stage transistor, 112
Audio and SSB spectrums, relationship, 333
Audio frequency
amplifiers, resistance-capacitance coupled, 125-127
converter, 327-328
phasing, 344-345
power amplifiers, class-B, 138-143
Audio frequency-shift keying, 325, 330
Audio-stage rectification, 388
Aurora-type DX, 424
Autodyne converter circuit, 115
Autodyne detector, 195
Automatic bias, 263
Automatic load control (alc), 350-353
Automatic volume control, 214
circuit, 115
Autotransformer, 73, 74
variable-ratio, 397-398
Auxiliary antenna trimmer, 537-538
Avalanche voltage, 102
Avc circuit, 115
Avc in bfo-equipped receivers, 214

B

Balanced capacitive coupling, 265

Balanced-line bridge, 765
Balanced modulator, 336-347
circuits, 343, 347
diode, 336
for mechanical filter, 343
Balun, broadband 50-ohm, 435
Bandpass characteristic of low-frequency SSB filter, 339
Bandspread circuits, 205
Bandwidth, 421
modulation, 278
SSB, 333
Base-collector waveform, 553
Base electrode, 105
Basic filters, 75
Bass-attenuation chart, 304
Bass suppression, 304
Battery bias, 262-263
BCI, 374-391
Beam antennas, vhf multielement, 505-511
eight-element tiltable array, 506-508
long Yagi, 511
screen beam for 2 meters, 509-511
three-element beam, 505-506
Beam-deflection tube, 357
Beam-power tube, 87-90
Beam tetrodes
neutralizing, 248
parasitics, 370-372
plate modulation, 293
Beams, rotary, 512-532
Beat-frequency oscillators, 212-213
Beat oscillator and product detector, 228
Beta, d-c, 107
Beta cutoff frequency, 107
Beta formula, 106
BFO adjustment, 226
B-H curve, 41
Bias
automatic, 263
battery, 262-263
cathode, 123, 263
cutoff, 81, 120
fixed, 123
forward, 102
grid, 123
grid-leak, 123
grid-leak for high-μ triodes, 127
reverse, 102
safety, 262-263
self, 262
Bias configuration for transistor., 111
Bias feed, parallel and series, 267
Biasing methods, 123
Bias-shift *Heising* modulator, 305-307
Bias-shift modulator, operating characteristics, 305
Bias supply
for grounded-grid amplifiers, 166
separate, 263
shunt-regulated, 738
Bias systems, types of, 122
Bidirectional rotatable arrays, 525
Bishop noise limiter, 217-218
Bi-square broadside array, 486-487
Bistable multivibrator, Eccles-Jordan, 118
Blanketing, 384
Blanking circuit, oscilloscope, 171-172
Bleeder resistors, 735
Bleeders, safety, 401-402
Blocked-grid keying system, 404
Blocking, 376
Blocking oscillator, 190
transistor, 118
Body static, 543
Bombardment cathode, 79, 81
Breakdown ratings of plate spacings, 257
Bridge
balanced-line, 765
measurements, 755-757
SWR, 472
Bridge rectifier, 714
Bridge-rectifier supplies, IVS, 731-733
Bridge-T oscillator, 192
Bridge-type standing-wave indicators, 760-762
Bridge-type v.t.v.m., 750
Broadband dipole system, 446
Broadband 50-ohm balun, 435
Broadcast interference, 374-391
Broadside and end-fire arrays, combination, 491-492
Broadside arrays, 483-488
bi-square, 486-487
bobtail bidirectional, 487-488
cubical quad, 487
double-Bruce, 485-486
six-shooter, 487
stacked, 523-525
stacked dipoles, 483-484
X-array, 484
"Building-out" modulation transformers, 302, 303
Butterfly circuit, uhf, 222-223
Button-mica capacitors, 361
Bypass capacitors, 360-361

C

Capacitance
calculations, 36, 37
grid-cathode symbol for, 120
grid plate, symbol for, 120
input, 271
input, formula, 121
input, symbol for, 120
interelectrode, 86, 121
neutralization of, 121-122
output, symbol for, 120
plate-cathode, symbol for, 120
static interelectrode, 121
stray, 206
stray circuit, 206
tank-circuit, 253
unit of, 34, 35
Capacitance charts for tank Q, 255, 256
Capacitance meter, transistorized, 757-758
Capacitance variation, junction, 102
Capacitive boost coupling, 386
Capacitive coupling, 265-266
Capacitive reactance, 52
Capacitors, 33-39, 360-362
button-mica, 361
bypass, 360-361
ceramic-dielectric, 361
coaxial, 361
doorknob, 361
electrolytic, 38, 39
filter, 733-735
in a-c and d-c circuits, 37, 38
in series, a-c, 38
in series, voltage rating, 38
mica-dielectric, 360-361
series inductance, 360
series resistance, 360
shunt resistance, 360
stored energy, 35
variable air, 361-362
variable vacuum, 362
Carrier elimination, 332
circuits, 336-338
Carrier, reinserted, 335
Carrier tube, 294
Carrier-wave distortion, 309
Carrier-wave pattern, 180
Cascaded voltage-amplifier, 127
Cascode amplifier, 202
Cathode, 75, 77
bias, 123, 263
bombardment, 79, 81
coupling, 129-130
current, 88, 90
heater, 78, 80-81
keying, 403-404
modulation, 293-294
installation, 295
tetrodes, 294
types, 78
Cathode-coupled phase inverter, 131-132
Cathode-driven amplifier, 123, 662-667
choice of tubes, 666
construction, 664-665
distortion products, 663-664
feedthrough power, 662-663
neutralization, 666-667
tuning, 665-666
Cathode-driven high-μ triodes, 166
Cathode follower, 122-123
amplifiers, use of, 144-145
circuits, 269
in r-f stages, 145
modulator, 285-287
power amplifiers, 143-145
r-f power amplifier, 161-162
Cathode-modulated stage, excitation, 294
Cathode-ray oscilloscope, 169-184
Cathode-ray tube, 94-97
operation, 94-97
Cavities, resonant, uhf, 221-222
Center-fed antenna systems, tuner for, 471-473
Center-fed feed-point impedance, 416-417
Center-fed half-wave horizontal antennas, 437-441
delta-matched and standard doublets, 440
doublets with quarter-wave transformers, 439
multiwire doublets, 439-440
off-center-fed doublet, 440-441
tuned doublet, 437-439
Center-fed multiband antenna, 449-450
Center-fed Zepp antenna, 437
Center-loaded, all-band, mobile antenna, 539
Center-tap keying, 402
Ceramic-dielectric capacitor, 361
Changeover, antenna, vhf and uhf, 494
Characteristic curve
emitter, 109
I_p vs. E_p, 88
triode, 83-84
Characteristic impedance, two-wire lines, 430
Charge transport, 106
Chassis material, 367
Checking for parasitic oscillations, 372-373
Chokes, r-f, 267-268, 364
Circuit
a-c, 46
a-c bridge, 756
autodyne converter, 115
automatic-volume-control, 115
balanced-modulator, 347
bandspread, 205
butterfly, uhf, 222-223
cathode-follower, 269
clamping, 188
counting, 190-191
differential keying, 406-408
equivalent, transistor, 109
i-f tuned, 206-213
beat-frequency oscillators, 212-213
crystal filters, 209, 211
mechanical filter, 211-212
Miller effect, 208
practical filters, 209
rejection notch, 210-211
shape factor, 207-208
transformers, 206-207
variable-selectivity filters, 209-210
limiting, 185-188
audio peak, 185-187
diode limiters, 185
grid limiters, 187-188
Loftin-White, 133

low-frequency equivalent transistor, 109
magnetic, 40
multivoltmeter, 745
one-way RTTY, 326
parallel-resonant, 65
parallel RLC, 60-62
peak-voltage measurement, 749
phase-modulation, 317
push-button transmitter control, 399
push-pull, 137
regenerative detector, 195
resonant, 62-68
r-f feedback, 270-276
series-resonant, 62
series RLC, 56-60
SSB generation by phasing, 343
tank, 65-68
transistor oscillator, 117
tuned, signal-frequency, 203-206
bandspread tuning, 205
frequency range selection, 205
impedance, and Q, 204
input resistance, 204
stray circuit capacitance, 206
superheterodyne tracking, 204-205
vacuum-tube, special, 185-193
varactor doubling and tripling, 103
voltohmmeter, 745
VOX, 408-409
wavetrap, 385
Wheatstone Bridge, 755
Circuit constants, measurement, 754-755
Circuit Q, 64-66
parallel resonant, 65-68
Circuitry
r-f, 114
transistor, 110-118
trans-receiver, 545
Circuits for screen-grid modulation, 285, 286
Clamping circuits, positive and negative, 187-188
Clamp tube screen supply, 264
Clapp oscillator, 232
Class-A
amplifier, 122
audio power transistor circut, 113
Class-AB$_1$
amplifier, 122
linear amplifier, operating parameters, 163-165
radio-frequency power amplifiers, 163-165
Class-AB$_2$ amplifier, 122
Class-B
a-f amplifier load line, 141
amplifier, 122, 242-243
audio-amplifier circuit, 113
audio-frequency power amplifiers, 138-143
linear amplifier, 156-157, 242-243, 281-282
adjustment, 282
operating parameters, 157-158
modulator, general-purpose triode, 702-704
modulators, practical aspects of, 142
plate modulation, 290-293
radio-frequency power amplifiers, 156-159
Class-B linear efficiency, 243
Class-C
efficiency, 253
grid modulation, 282-284
plate-voltage swing, 254
r-f power amplifiers, 150-156
Class-C amplifier, 122, 243-244
grid-excitation, 243, 244
grid-modulated, 243, 244
operating characteristics, 152
operation, 254
plate-modulated, 243
Click filter, 402
Clipper-amplifier, 15-watt, 704-706
Clipper circuits, 301-302
Clipper-filter, 298
action, 299
Clipper, gate, series-diode, 187
Clipper speech amplifier, 142
Clipping, speech, effects of, 140
Clipping, speech, low-level, 700
Closed-loop feedback system, 193
Classifications, transistor, 107-108
Coaxial capacitors, 361
Coaxial circuits, coupling into, 221
Coaxial line, 432-433
Code, International Morse, 15-22
Code practice set, 20, 22
Code, teleprinter, 325-326
Coefficients of tetrodes and pentodes, 89, 91
Coercive force, 41
Coil
focus, 96
deflection, 96
neutralization, 246-247
placement, 363
Coil and crystal tables for vhf exciters, 622
Coil calculator nomograph, 825
Coil material, miniductor, 560
Coils, filter choke, 735
Collector, 91
Collector current formula, 113
Collector electrode, 105
Collector-to-collector impedance of output transformer, 113
Collinear array, *Franklin*, 439
Collinear arrays, 482-483
Collins mechanical filters, 211
Collins transmission-line matching system, 460-461
Color codes and markings, diodes, 101
Colpitts oscillator, 231
Combination end-fire and broadside arrays, 491-492
Commercial SSB applications, 331-332
Comparison of point-contact transistor and vacuum-tube characteristics, 108
Compensated video amplifier circuit, 127
Complementary-symmetry amplifiers, 112
Components for pi-coupled final amplifiers, 259
Components, power-supply, 733-736
bleeder resistors, 735
filter capacitors, 733-735
filter choke coils, 735
Composition resistors, 358
Conductance, 61
conversion, 90-92
mutual, 82-83
Conduction, electrolytic, 75
electronic, 75
mechanism of, 101-102
Conductors and insulators, 24-26
Constant-current curves for 250-TH, 153
Constant, dielectric, 36
Constant-k sections, 75, 76
Constant-voltage plateau, 104
Constants, vacuum-tube, 121
Construction material, 776-777
Construction practices, 779-782
Contactors, 394
Control circuits, mobile equipment, 540-541
Control, depletion, 119
Control, detector, and audio circuits, 213-216
a-c loading of second detector, 214
audio amplifiers, 215-216
automatic volume control, 214
avc in bfo-equipped receivers, 214
detectors, 213-214
signal-strength indicators, 214-215
Control-grid dissipation in grounded-grid stages, 162
Controlled-warmup tube, 99-102
Controlling transmitter power output, 395-397
Controls, trans-receiver, 545-547
Conductance, conversion, 90, 92
Conductors, 24
Conversion conductance, 92
Converter
"antioverload," for 50 MHz, 563-567
adjustment, 566-567
circuit description, 564
construction, 564-566
audio-frequency, 327-328
audio RTTY, 328
circuit, autodyne, 115
432-MHz low-noise, 594-604
i-f amplifier
adjustment, 603
circuit, 602-603
construction, 603
mixer
adjusting, 599
circuit, 598
construction, 598-599
oscillator/multiplier
adjustment, 601-602
circuit, 599-601
construction, 601
r-f amplifier
adjusting, 597
circuit, 594-596
construction, 596-597
i-f RTTY, 327
mobile, transistorized, 533-535
nuvistor, 560-563
adjustments, 562-563
circuit description, 560-561
construction, 561-562
nuvistor two-meter, 567-572
adjustments, 570-571
antioverload modification, 571-572
circuit description, 567-568
construction, 568-569
pentagrid, 90
Converter tube, 89
pentode, 92
Controlled-warmup tubes, 102
Conversion conductance, 90, 92
Conversion transconductance, symbol for, 120
Corner-reflector and horn-type antennas, 502-503
Coulomb, definition, 25
Counterpoise, 443
Coupled tuned circuits, 349
Couplers, antenna, 467-469
Coupling
balanced capacitive, 265
capacitive, 265-266
cathode, 129-130
direct, 130
i-f amplifier, 207
impedance, 128
impedance-transformer, 128
inductive, 266
interstage, 265-267
link, 266-267
push-pull interstage transformer, 128
resistance-transformer, 128
transformer, 128
unity, 266
Coupling into lines and coaxial circuits, uhf, 221
Coupling to antenna system, 464-467
loading problem, 464
output coupling adjustment, 465-466
pi-network, 446
variable link, 466
Counting circuits, 190-191
Cross modulation, 386
CRT

  construction, 97
  electromagnetic, 96-97
  operation, 97
  phosphors, 99
  screen material, 97-99
  trace, 97, 99
Crystal
  current, 237
  cuts, orientation, 235
  doped, 101
  galena, 100
  heating and fracture, 237
  holders, 236
  lattice filter, 341
  ovens, 236
  overtone-cut, 237
  piezoelectric, 209
  rectifiers, 224
  switching, 240
Crystal and coil tables for vhf exciters, 622
Crystal-diode wavemeter, 379
Crystal filters, 341
  i-f, 225-226
  circuits, 209, 211
Crystal oscillator, 234-242
  5763, 240
  keying, 240
  tuned-plate, 238
  tuning, 239, 240
Crystal oscillator circuit, 237-242
  all-band, 240
  harmonic, 238-239
  pentode, 238-240
Cubical quad antenna, 487
Current
  alternating, 46
  amplification formula, transistor, 106
  crystal, 237
  feed, 458-459
  flow, 25
    in a triode, 82, 84
    in tetrodes and pentodes, 88-91
  formula, collector, 113
  forward, 102
  gate, SCR, 104
  ground, 364-365
  leakage, 102
Curtain arrays, 483
Cutoff bias, 81
  symbol for, 120
Cutoff frequencies, 107
  alpha, 107
  beta, 107
  transconductance, 107

D

Dash flip-flop, 650
D-c
  amplifiers, 132-133
  beta, 107
  circuit, capacitance in, 37, 38
  grid-supply voltage, symbol for, 120
  plate-supply voltage, symbol for, 120
Decibel, 803-807
De-emphasis, 323
  circuit, 323
Deflection
  coil, 96, 99
  electromagnetic, 99
  electrostatic, 98
  polarity switch, oscilloscope, 170
Demodulation or detection, 194-195
  autodyne detector, 195
  radiotelegraphy reception, 195
  radiotelephony demodulation, 194
Delta match and T-match, parasitic arrays, 520-521
Delta-matched antenna system, 456
Delta-matched doublet and standard doublet, 440
Depletion control, 119
Design and installation of mobile equipment, 533-557
Detection or demodulation, 194-195
  autodyne detector, 195
  radiotelegraphy reception, 195
  radiotelephony demodulation, 194
Detector, audio, and control circuits, 213-216
  a-c loading of second detector, 214
  audio amplifiers, 215-216
  automatic volume control, 214
  avc in bfo-equipped receivers, 214
  detectors, 213-214
  signal-strength indicators, 214-215
Detectors, 195, 213-214
  autodyne, 195
  circuits, regenerative, 195
  envelope, schematic, 183
  Fremodyne, 197
  product, 227-228, 356-357
    double-triode, 228
    triple-triode, 228
  ratio, 321-322
  second, loading of, 214
Deviation
  f-m, 310
  measurement, 318-319
  of single-sideband signals, 332
Devices
  SCR (silicon controlled rectifier), 104
  semiconductor, 100-119
Diamond antenna, 479-481
Dielectric
  breakdown, 36
  constant, 36
  materials, 35-36
Differential keying circuits, 406-408
Differentiator, RC, 69-71
Diode, 80-83
  balanced modulator, 336
  characteristics, 80, 82-83
  color codes and markings, 101
  keyer for frequency shift, 329
  limiters, 185
  mixers, 90-92
    superheterodyne receiver, 200
  operation, series, 723-724
  PN junction, 102-105
  ring modulator, 337-338
  steering, 118
  tunnel, 102-103
  zener, 104
Dipole system, broadband, 446
Dipole, twin-lead folded, 439
Direct-coupled cathode multivibrator, 188
Direct coupling, 130
Direct-current circuits, 23-45
Direct current, pulsating, 51
Direct f-m circuits, 312-316
Directive arrays, 476
Directive high-frequency antennas, 474-492
Directivity
  antenna, 418-421
  end-fire, 488-491
    flat-top beam, 489-490
    triplex beam, 491
  horizontal, 412, 418-419
  of radiation, 411
  vertical, 412, 419
Discone antenna
  low-frequency, 452
  vhf and uhf, 498-500
Discontinuities, line, 434-435
Discriminator
  Foster-Seeley, 320-321
  Travis, 320
  vector diagram, 321
  voltage-frequency curve, 320
Dissipation
  control-grid, in grounded-grid stages, 162
  grid, symbol for, 121
Distortion
  amplitude, 124-125
  frequency, 123
  in amplifiers, 123-125
  intermodulation, 168
  modulated-amplifier, 304
  phase, 123-124
  products, SSB, 349
  products due to nonlinearity, 350
Dissymmetry, speech waveform, 280
Divider, frequency, 190-191
D layer, 426
Duct formation, 424
Doherty
  linear amplifier, 289, 296
    operating efficiency, 294-297
  modulated amplifier, 294-297
Dome audio phase-shift network, 344, 345
Donor impurities, 101
Doorknob capacitors, 361
Doped crystal, 101
Dot multivibrator, 648
Double-Bruce array, 485-486
Double conversion, 202-203
Double-diode paired modulator, 338
Double extended Zepp, 483
Double-resonance curve, 181
Double-resonance effect, push-pull tank circuit, 367
Double-sideband suppressed-carrier signal, 338
Double skeleton cone antenna, 498
Driven arrays, unidirectional, 523-525
  feed methods, 523-525
  stacked broadside arrays, 523-525
Driven element with center feed, parasitic arrays, 521
Driver-stage calculations, 142
Double-triode product detector, 228
Doublers, frequency, 251
Doubling and tripling circuits, varactor, 103
Doublet
  delta-matched and standard, 440
  off-center-fed, 440-441
  3/4-wave folded, 447-448
  tuned, 437-439
  multiwire, 439-440, 456-457
  with quarter-wave transformers, 439
Drift space, 91
Drift velocity of hole, formula, 101
Dropping-resistor screen supply, 264
Dual-band, folded flat-top, antenna, 450-451
Dummy load, 753-754
  assembly, 754
  2-kilowatt, 753
DX
  aurora-type, 424
  operation, 14

E

Eccles-Jordan bistable multivibrator, 118, 189-190
Effective Q, 253
Effective value of a.c., 50
E_g — I_p curve, 163
Eight-element tiltable array, 506-508
E layer, 426
Electric filters, 74-76
  design, 76
Electrical
  quarter-wave line, 296
  relationships, fundamental, 24-33
  symbols for transistors, 106
  units, fundamental, 24-27
Electrical equivalent, r-f choke, 363

Electrode, focusing, 95
Electrolytic capacitors, 38, 39
Electrolytic conduction, 75
Electromagnetic CRT, 96-97
Electromagnetic deflection, 97-99
Electromagnetism, 39-43
Electron, 23-24, 75
emission, 75
energy dissipation, 81
flow, 25
gun, 95, 97-98
Electron-coupled multivibrator, 188
Electron-coupled oscillator, 231-232
Electronic conduction, 75
Electronic keyer for RTTY, 328
Electronic test equipment, 744-772
Electron-ray tube, 99, 101-102
Electron tube at vhf, 90-91
Electron-tube types, 76
Electrostatic cathode-ray tube, 95
Electrostatic deflection, 95-96, 98
Electrostatics, 33, 34
Element, metallic and nonmetallic, 100
Emission
cathode, 77
electron, 75
equation, 79, 81
photoelectric, 75-77
secondary, 81, 82
space-charge-limited, 82, 83
thermionic, 75
Emitter characteristic curve, 109
Emitter electrode, 105
End-fed
half-wave horizontal antennas, 436-437
Hertz antenna, 436-437, 448
End-fire
arrays, unidirectional parasitic, 512-514
directivity, 488-491
flat-top beam, 489-490
triplex beam, 491
End-fire and broadside arrays, combination, 491-492
Envelope
detector, schematic, 183
modulation, 277
Epitaxial planar transistors, 115
Equations, gain
for pentode r-f amplifiers, 151
for RC-coupled amplifier, 126
Equipment, mobile, design and installation of, 533-557
Equipment, speech and a-m, 698-706
Equivalent circuit
pentode RC-coupled amplifier, 126
quartz crystal, 235
resistor, 359
series circuit, 60-61
transistor, 109
Error cancellation, 193
Error signal, 193
Excitation of cathode-modulated stage, 294
Exciter
6 and 2 meters, 620-624
adjustment, 623-624
circuit, 621
construction, 622-623
frequency multiplier, 624
SSB 175-watt, 624-635
circuit, 624-626
dial assembly, 627-629
layout, 626-627
main bandswitch assembly, 627
wiring and testing, 629
SSB filter, 353-355
"Ten-A," 353, 354
transistor, 117
transistor SSB, 353, 355
Exciters and transmitters, low-power, 620-651
Extrinsic, 101

F

Fading, 427-428
Feedback, 192-193
amplifier, 145-146
gain and phase shift in, 145-146
neutralization, 274-276
parasitic oscillations, 274
relationships, 145
circuit, shunt, 146
closed-loop, 193
types of, 146
voltage, vector relationship, 274
Feed methods, unidirectional driven arrays, 523-525
Feed-point resistance, 415
Feed systems
for parasitic arrays, 516-523
delta match and T-match, 520-521
driven element with center feed, 521
folded-element match calculation, 519-520
gamma match, 521-522
matching stub, 522-523
rotary-link coupling, 521
Q-section, 459-460
Feedthrough power, 250
Field-effect transistor (FET), 118-119
15-watt clipper-amplifier, 704-706
Filament
oxide-coated, 80
reactivation, 77
temperatures, 78, 79
tungsten, 78, 79
Filament-type tubes, 76
Filament types, 76
Filter
assembly, 72-74
basic, 72
capacitors, 733-735
choke coils, 735
click, 402
crystal, 209, 211
crystal, i-f, 225-226
crystal lattice, 341
half-wave, 382-383
high-pass, 74-76, 375, 376
high-pass transmission line, 375
low-pass, 74-76, 379-384
mechanical, 211-212, 341
method for SSB generation, 338
operation, 75
post-modulator, 303
power line, 216
practical, i-f circuits, 209
resistance-capacitance, 711
variable-selectivity, 209-210
Filter sections, 75, 76
constant-k, 75, 76
m-derived, 75, 76
Filter-system resonance, 711-713
500-watt amplifier, 675-682
circuit, 676-677
construction, 677-680
design, 676
Fixed bias, 123
Flat-top beam, 489-490
Flip-flop, dash, 650
Flip-flop multivibrator, oscilloscope, 171
Floating paraphase phase inverter, 131
Flux density, 40
Flywheel effect, 67
F-m, 308-324
deviation, 310
limiters, 322
modulation index, 310
modulation index, effect, 312
percentage modulation, 310
reception, 197
receiver design, 322-324
side frequencies, 310
signal, slope detection, 319
swing, 310
terms, 310
transmission, narrow-band, 311-312
tuning and operation, 680-682
Focus coil, 96, 99
Focusing electrode, 95, 97-98
Foster-Seeley discriminator, 320-321
Folded dipole, twin-lead, 439
Folded doublet, 3/4-wave, 447-448
Folded-element match calculations, parasitic arrays, 519-520
Folded flat-top dual-band antenna, 450-451
Forward bias, 102
Forward current, 102
Four-tone SSB envelope, 335
Franklin antenna array, 481
Franklin collinear array, 439
Franklin oscillator, 233, 234
Fremodyne detector, 197
Frequency
alpha cutoff, 107
beta cutoff, 107
conversion problems, 349-350
conversion systems, SSB, 346-350
critical, 426
cutoff, 107
detector, 319-320
distortion, 123
divider, 190-191
doubler, 251
doubler, push-push, 252
effects, resistor, 359
measurements, 758-759
modulation, 308-324
multiplier, 250-253
multiplier, 6360, 624
spectrum, 46, 47
spotter, 100-kHz, 759
transconductance cutoff, 107
tripler, push-pull, 252-253
Frequency bands, amateur, 13-15
Frequency-impedance characteristic, r-f choke, 363
Frequency-shift
keyer, diode, 329
keying, 325, 328-329
Front-end alignment, 226
FSK, 325, 328-329
F_2 layer, 425
Fuchs antenna, 436-437
Full-wave
limiter, 220
rectifier, 713-714
rectifier, v.t.v.m., 752
Fundamentals, radio receiver, 194-228
Fusion process, 105

G

Gain
equations for pentode r-f amplifiers, 151
equations for pentode RC-coupled amplifier, 126
measurement, parasitic, 373
power, transistor, 108
resistance, transistor, 108
voltage, transistor, 108
Gain and phase shift in feedback amplifiers, 145-146
Gain-bandwidth product, 107
Galena crystal, 100
Gamma match, 457
parasitic arrays, 521-522
Gases, inert, 100
Gas tubes, 97-100
Gate clipper, series-diode, 187
Gate current, SCR, 104
G_c, 92
General-purpose triode class-B modulator, 702-704
Generation

alternating current, 47, 48
radio-frequency energy, 229-268
SSB signals, 338-346
Generator, sweep oscilloscope, 172-173
Generator "whine," 542-543
Germanium
N (negative)—type, 101
P (positive)—type, 101
Germanium and silicon atomic structure, 100-101
g_m, 91
Graphical representation, 815-823
Grid
excitation, 243-244
excitation voltage, peak, symbol for, 120
limiters, 187-188
neutralization, 245
potential, instantaneous, symbol for, 120
structure, remote-cutoff, 90
supply voltage, d-c, symbol for, 120
voltage, maximum instantaneous, symbol for, 120
voltage, maximum positive instantaneous, symbol for, 120
voltage, static, symbol for, 120
Grid action, triode, 81, 83
Grid-bias modulated stage, tuning, 283-284
Grid-bias modulator, 283
Grid bias of a vacuum tube, 123
Grid-cathode capacitance, symbol for, 120
Grid-circuit considerations, r-f amplifiers, 158-159
Grid-circuit keying, 404-405
Grid current
effect, 89, 91
flow, one-half angle of, symbol for, 121
static, symbol for, 120
symbol for, 120
Grid-dip meter, 529
Grid dissipation, symbol for, 121
Grid-driven amplifiers, 122
Grid-driven power, symbol for, 120
Grid-leak bias, 123
for high-μ triodes, 127
Grid-modulated amplifier efficiency, 296
Grid-modulated class-C amplifier, 243, 244
Grid-modulated, class-C, 282-284
Grid-plate
capacitance, symbol for, 120
transconductance, 89, 91
Grid-screen μ factor, 88, 90
symbol, 120
Ground currents, 364-365
intercoupling, 365
Grounded-cathode amplifiers, 159
Grounded-grid
amplifiers, 123, 250, 662-667
bias supplies for, 166
choice of tubes, 666
construction, 664-665
distortion products, 663-664
feedthrough power, 662-663
neutralization, 666-667
tuning, 665-666
linear amplifiers, 165-168
r-f amplifiers, 159-161
stages, control-grid dissipation in, 162
Grounding antenna, 443
Ground loops, 364
Ground losses, 417
Ground-plane antenna, 441-442
Ground resistance, 417
Grounds, 364-365, 398
water-pipe, 443-444
Ground wave, 422
communication, 422-425
signal propagation, 422
Grown-crystal process, 105
Guy wires, 462

H

Half-wave
antenna, physical length, 412-413
center-fed horizontal antenna, 437-441
delta-matched and standard doublets, 440
doublets with quarter-wave transformers, 439
multiwire doublets, 439-440
off-center-fed doublet, 440-441
tuned doublet, 437-439
end-fed horizontal antennas, 436-437
filter, single-section, 382, 383
rectifiers, 713
vertical antenna, 441
Harmonic
crystal oscillator circuits, 238, 239
interference, 377-379
output vs. circuit Q, 254
radiation, 377-379
radiation vs. Q, 256
resonance, 414
Harmonics, 374
amateur bands, 377
Hartley oscillator, 189, 231
HBR receiver, deluxe, 604-619
alignment, 616-619
circuit, 606-608
construction, 609-612
r-f circuits, 613-616
wiring, 612-613
HBT-200 SSB transmitter-exciter, deluxe, 635-648
circuit, 638
construction, 641-642
transmitter
alignment, 644-648
wiring, 643-644
r-f circuits, 613-616
Heat cycle, resistors, 359
Heat sink, 102
Heater cathode, 78, 80-81
Heater-cathode type tubes, 76
Heating and fracture of crystals, 237
Heising modulator, bias-shift, 305-307
Heising plate modulation, 290-291
Helical beam antennas, vhf and uhf, 500-502
Henry, 42
Hertz, 47
Hertz antenna, end-fed, 436-437, 448
Hi-fi interference, 391
High-frequency directive antennas, 474-492
High-frequency power amplifiers, 652-697
High-level splatter suppressor, 300-301, 700-701
High-pass filter, 74-76, 376
series-derived, 376
High-pass transmission-line filters, 375, 376
High-Q isolating trap, 532
High-voltage leads, 362
Holes, semiconductor, 101
Horizontal antennas, end-fed half-wave, 436-437
Horizontal center-fed half-wave antennas, 437-441
delta-matched and standard doublets, 440
doublets with quarter-wave transformers, 439
multiwire doublets, 439-440
off-center-fed doublet, 440-441
tuned doublet, 437-439
Horizontal directivity, 412, 418-419
Horizontal rhombic vhf antenna, 503-505
Horizontally polarized antennas, vhf and uhf, 496-497
Horn-type and corner-reflector antennas, 502-503
"Hot" adjustments, 401
Hot-cathode phase inverter, 131
Hysteresis, coercive force, 41

I

Idler loop, 103
I-f
alignment, 225
alignment, receiver, with oscilloscope, 179-182
amplifier coupling, 207
amplifier, superheterodyne receiver, 198
passband, 208
response curve, 181
terminal unit, 327
transformers, 206-207
transistor amplifiers, 114
tuned circuits, 206-213
beat-frequency oscillators, 212-213
crystal filters, 209-211
mechanical filter, 211-212
Miller effect, 208
practical filters, 209
rejection notch, 210-211
shape factor, 207-208
transformers, 206-207
variable-selectivity filters, 209-210
with crystal filter, 225-226
Ignition noise, 541-542
Image interference, 389, 390
Images and noises, mixer, 200-201
Impedance
air-filled coaxial lines, 432
collector-to-collector, of output transformer, 113
coupling, 128
curves, wirewound resistor, 360
L-network, 258
load, symbol for, 121
matching, plate circuit, 143
pi-network, 259-260
screen-grid, 284-285
series-resonant circuits, 63
transformation, 73
transformer coupling, 128
transmission line, 430
triangle, 54
Impurities, donor, 101
Inclosures, TVI-proof, 777-778
Induced currents, 47
Inductance, 41-43
mutual, 42
resistors, 359-360
unit of, 42
Inductive coupling, unity, 266
Inductive interstage coupling, 266
Inductive reactance, 52
Inductors, 42, 362-364
Inert gases, 100
Injection voltage, mixer, 200
In-phase spacing, stacked dipole, 481
Input capacitance, 121, 271
Input modulation systems, 289-293
Input resistance, 271
Installation and design of mobile equipment, 533-557
Instantaneous grid potential, symbol for, 120
Instantaneous value of a.c., 49, 50
Instruments for receiver adjustment, 224-226
Insulation, 363
antenna, 463-464
vhf and uhf antennas, 495
Insulators, 24
Integrator, RC, 69, 71
Interlocks, protective, 401
International Morse Code, 16
Internal resistance, 28
Interelectrode capacitance, 86-87, 121-122
neutralization of, 121-122

static, 121
Interstage coupling, 265-267
inductive, 266
push-pull transformer, 128
Intercoupling of ground currents, 365
Interference
broadcast, 374-391
classifications, 384-387
hi-fi, 391
image, 389, 390
isolating, 378-379
television, 374-391
Intermodulation distortion, 168
Internal leads, 366
Intrinsic resistivity of silicon, 101
Intrinsic semiconductor, 101
Inverse voltage, 102
Inverter, phase, 130-132
cathode-coupled, 131-132
floating paraphase, 131
hot-cathode, 131
voltage-divider, 132
Iron-core inductors, 43
Ion, definition, 25
Ionization density, 425
Ionospheric propagation, 425-429
Ionospheric wave, 422
Ionospheric reflection wave paths, 428
IR drop, 28
Isolating interference, 378-379
Isolating trap, three-band beams, 531-532
IVS
bridge-rectifier supplies, 731-733
power supplies, 725-728
1-KW, 728-729

J

j operator, 53, 54
Junction capacitance, 102
Junction diode, PN, 102-105
Junction diode, voltage-variable, 102
Junction transistor, 105
output characteristics of, 109

K

Key-click elimination, 401-403
Keyed stage, location, 402
Keyer
circuit requirements, 402-403
diode, 329
electronic for RTTY, 328
transistor, 648-651
circuit, 648-650
construction, 651
dash flip-flop, 650
tone oscillator, 650-651
Keying
audio frequency-shift, 325-330
cathode, 403-404
center-tap, 402
circuits, differential, 406-408
crystal oscillator, 240
frequency-shift, 325
grid-circuit, 404-405
make-break, 325
screen-grid, 405-406
transmitter, 401-409
Kilohertz, 47
Kilowatt
dummy load, 754
CCS power supply, 743
linear amplifier for six meters, 668-675
adjustment, 673-675
a-m linear operation, 675
circuit, 668-669
construction, 670-671
metering and suppression circuits, 670
plate-circuit assembly, 671-673
Kirchhoff's Laws, 31, 32
Klystron, 91-95
power, 93-94
reflex, 94-95

L

Logarithms, 798-803
Lagging phase, 52, 53
Lamb noise limiter, 217
Lazy-H antenna system, 484
Lead filtering systems, 366
Lead inductance, effects, 90-91, 93
Leads, high-voltage, 362
Leakage current, 102
Leakage reactance, 73
Leading phase, 52, 53
Leece-Neville alternator, 536
Left-hand rule, 39
Length of parasitic element, 515-516
Licenses, amateur, 12
Limiter
audio noise, 218
circuit, alternative, 219-220
f-m, 322
full-wave, 220
noise, *Bishop*, 217-218
noise, *Lamb*, 217
noise, peak, 216-217
TNS, 220
Limiting circuits, 185-188
audio peak, 185-187
diode limiters, 185
grid limiters, 187-188
Line discontinuities, 434-435
Linear amplifier
class-B, 156-157, 242-243
operating parameters, 157-158
class AB_1
operating parameters, 163-165
grounded-grid, 165-168
kilowatt for six meters, 668-675
adjustment, 673-675
a-m linear operation, 675
circuit, 668-669
construction, 670-671
metering and suppression circuits, 670
plate circuit assembly, 671-673
Tribander, 692-697
circuit, 692-696
transmitter adjustment and tuning, 697
transmitter control circuits and power supply, 696-697
Utility 2-kilowatt, 682-692
circuit, 682-685
construction, 685-688
external anode tetrodes, 688-690
tube combinations, 690-691
tuning and adjustments, 691-692
Linear r-f transformers, 459
Linearity curve of tetrode amplifier, 164
Linearity tracer, block diagram, 182
Linearity tracer, oscilloscope, 183-184
Linearity traces, 184
Lines, short, tuning, 220
Lines, tuned or resonant, 433-434
Link coupling, 266-267
Link, variable, coupling, 466
Lissajous figures, oscilloscope, 175-178
determination of phase angle, 178
oscilloscope settings, 175-176
phase-difference patterns, 176-178
Litz wire, 64
L-matching networks, 258
L-network impedance, 258
Load impedance, symbol for, 121
Load line, 83-84
class-B a-f amplifier, 141
triode, 85-86
Load resistance
formula, 137
symbol for, 121
Loading, tube input, 149
Local loop supply, 328, 329
Location of keyed stage, 402
Locating noise sources, 544
Loftin-White circuit, 133
Long-wire radiators, 476-477
Long Yagi antennas, 511
Loop, idler, 103
Lower sideband, 332
Low-frequency
discone antenna, 452
equivalent circuit, transistor, 109
parasitic oscillations, 368-369
parasitic suppression, 368
Low-level speech clipping, 700
Low-noise transistor preamplifier, vhf, 116
Low-pass filters, 74-76, 379-384, 390
construction, 380-381
using, 381-383
Low-power transmitters and exciters, 620-651
Low-range ohmmeter, 747

M

"Magic-eye" tube, 99, 101
Magnetic
circuit, 40
core materials, 43
fields, 39, 40
Ohm's Law, 40, 41
Magnetomotive force, 40
Magnetron, 91, 93-96
multicavity, 96
oscillator, 93, 95
Magnetism, 39-43
Make-break keying, 325
Marconi antenna, 442-444
twin-lead, 446
two-band, 448-449
Mark, 325
Markings and color codes, diode, 101
Mast, A-frame, 461
Masts, TV, 461-462
Matching nonresonant lines to antenna, 455-461
Collins, 460-461
current-feed, 458-459
delta-matched, 456
gamma match, 457
linear r-f transformers, 459
matching stubs, 457
multiwire doublets, 456-457
Q-section feed, 459-460
quarter-wave matching transformers, 459
standing waves, 455-456
T match, 457
voltage feed, 458
Matching stubs, 457, 522-523
parasitic arrays, 522-523
Matching to the antenna transmission line, 528-529
Matching transformers, quarter-wave, 459
Mathematics and calculations, 784-826
MBK, 325
M-derived section, 75, 76
Measurement
alternating current and voltage, 747
balanced transmission line, 764-765
circuit constants, 754-755
deviation, 318-319
frequency, 758-759
modulation, 279
power, 752-754
with a bridge, 755-757
Mechanical filter, 211-212, 341
Mechanics of modulation, 278-280
Mechanism of conduction, 101-102
Medium- and low-range ohmmeter, 746-

747
Megahertz, 47
Mercury-vapor tubes, 98, 100, 718
Metallic element, 100
Meter, grid-dip, 529
Meter shield, 365
Metering and suppression circuits, 670
Meteors and bursts, 429
Mica-dielectric capacitors, 360-361
Micromho, 83
Microphones and circuits for mobile equipment, 541
Microwave tubes, 93-96
Miller effect, 121, 208
Miller oscillator, 238
Miniductor coil material, 560
Minimum instantaneous plate voltage, symbol for, 120
Mismatch, plate circuit, 143
Mixer
diode, 90, 92
diode, superheterodyne receiver, 200
noise and images, 200-201
injection voltage, 200
triode mixers, 200
pentagrid, as a product detector, 227
pentode, 92
stages, SSB, 346-350
triode, 90, 92
twin triode, 346-347
unit for 432 MHz, 598
Mixer and converter tubes, 89-92
Mobile
antennas for, 537-539
all-band center-loaded, 539
auxiliary trimmer, 537-538
10-meter, 538-539
converter, transistorized, 533-535
equipment design and installation, 533-557
power sources, 535-537
three-phase, 536
transistor power supplies, 553-556
operation, 553-554
rating, 554, 555
self-starting oscillators, 555
transformer, 555, 556
Modulated-amplifier distortion, 304
Modulated-wave pattern, monitoring circuit for, 180
Modulation, 308-310, 698-701
amplitude, 277-307
assymetrical speech, 699-700
bandwidth, 277
capability, 279-280
cathode, 293-294
envelope, 277
factor, 279
frequency, 308-324
high-level splatter suppressor, 700-701
increasing effective percentage of, 699
low-level speech clipping, 700
index, f-m, 310
measurement, 279
mechanics, 278-280
percentage, 277-279
graphical determination, 279
phase, 316-319
plate and screen, 292-293
screen grid, 284-285
suppressor grid, 288-289
system, input, 289-293
system, plate, 289-290
tetrode, 698-699
transformer calculations, 140-141, 291-292
variable-efficiency, 281
Modulator
balanced, 336-337, 343
cathode-follower, 285-287
circuit, SSB, Jr., 352
class-B, practical aspects of, 142
double-diode, 338
general-purpose triode class-B, 702-704
grid-bias, 283
reactance-tube, 312-316
series cathode, 294-295
tetrode, 698-699
35-watt, 114
vacuum-diode, 339
zero-bias triode, 706
Monitoring circuit for modulated-wave pattern, oscilloscope, 180
Monitoring transmitter performance with oscilloscope, 178-179
modulated-wave pattern, 179
trapezoidal pattern, 179
waveforms, 178-179
Monitor scope, 769-770
MSCL, 81
Mu (μ), 81-82, 90
M.u.f., 13, 426
Mu factor, grid-screen, 88
Multee antenna, 451
Multiband antennas, 447-455
center-fed, 449-450
end-fed Hertz, 448
folded flat-top, 450-451
low-frequency discone, 452
multee, 451
single-wire-fed, 452-453
3/4-wave folded doublet, 447-448
two-band Marconi, 448-449
vertical, 453-455
Multivibrator, 234
Multicavity magnetron, 96
Multielement vhf beam antennas, 505-511
eight-element tiltable array, 506-508
long Yagi, 511
screen beam for 2 meters, 509-511
three-element beam, 505-506
Multiplier
frequency, 251-253
6360, frequency, 624
sweep-speed, oscilloscope, 172
Multirange meters, 746
Multivibrator
bistable, Eccles-Jordan, 118
direct-coupled cathode, 188
dot, 648
Eccles-Jordan, 189-190
electron-coupled, 188
flip-flop, oscilloscope, 171
Multivoltmeter circuits, 745
Multiwire doublets, 439-440, 456-457
Mutual conductance, 82-84
Mutual inductance, 42

N

Narrow-band f-m transmission, 311-312
Nature of SSB signal, 334-335
nbfm, 311-312
455-kHz adapter, 323-324
Negative and positive clamping circuits, 187
Negative-grid characteristics, triode, 83
Negative-grid oscillator, 230
N (negative) type germanium, 101
Negative-resistance oscillator, 233, 234
Nonmetallic element, 100
NPN transistor, 105
Network
pi-L, 261-262
pi-matching, 259-260
L-matching, 258
Neutralization, 271-276
beam tetrodes, 248
check, 271
coil, 246-247
grid, 245
interelectrode capacitance, 121-122
procedure, feedback amplifier, 274-276
push-pull, 245-246
r-f amplifiers, 244-250
screen-grid amplifiers, 247-250
shunt, 246-247
techniques, 276
tests, 273
Neutralizing
procedure, 247-250
single-ended tetrodes, 249-250
Nodal point, 266
Noise
factor, 148-149
ignition, 541-542
sources, locating, 544
Noise and images, mixer, 200-201
injection voltage, 200
triode mixers, 200
Noise limiter, audio, 218
Bishop, 217-218
Lamb, 217
peak, 216-217
peak, practical, 218-219
Noise recording, sun, 604
Noise suppression, 216-220
alternative limiter circuit, 219-220
noise limiter
audio, 218
Bishop, 217-218
full-wave, 220
Lamb, 217
peak, 216-217
practical peak, 218-219
TNS, 220
power-line filters, 216
Nondirectional vertical array, 498
Nonlinearity, distortion products, 350
Nonresonant transmission lines, 430-433
Nonsinusoidal waves, 68, 69
Notation, polar, 54, 55
Notch, rejection, 210-211
Null circuit, Q-multiplier, 226
Nuvistor converter, 560-563
adjustments, 562-563
circuit description, 560-561
construction, 561-562
Nuvistor two-meter converter, 567-572
adjustments, 570-571
antioverload modification, 571-572
circuit description, 567-568
construction, 568-569

O

Off-center-fed doublet, 440-441
Ohm's Law, 27
alternating current, 51
application, 27-33
impedance, 64
magnetic circuits, 40-41
Ohmmeter, low-range, 747
175-watt SSB exciter, 624-635
circuit, 624-626
dial assembly, 627-629
layout, 626-627
main bandswitch assembly, 627
wiring and testing, 629
1-KW IVS power supply, 728-729
One-way RTTY circuit, 326
Open line, two-wire, 430-433
Operating parameters, 137
Operating region, 85
Operational circuit using 50-kHz sideband filter, 340
Operator, j, 53, 54
Optimum angle of radiation, 419
Orientation of crystal cuts, 235
Oscillator, 229
AFSK, 329
blocking, 190
blocking, transistor, 118
bridge-T, 192

Clapp, 232
classes, 230
code-practice, 20, 22
Colpitts, 231
crystal, 234-242
electron-coupled, 231, 232
Franklin, 233, 234
Hartley, 189, 231
magnetron, 93-95
Miller, 238
negative-grid, 230
phase-shift, 192
Pierce harmonic, 237-239
relaxation, 117-118, 188
reflex kystron, 92
resistance-capacitance, 191-192
self-controlled, 229-234
self-starting, transistor, 555
stability, 234
tone, 650-651
T.N.T., 231
T.P.T.G., 231
transistor, 116-118
transitron, 233
triode-overtone, 240-242
two-cavity klystron, 92
two-terminal, 233
Wien-bridge, 191
beat-frequency, 212-213
Oscillator circuit
pentode, 238-240
Pierce, 237
transistor, 117
Oscilloscope, 169-184
accelerating potential, 173
block diagram, 169
deflection polarity switch, 170
display of waveforms, 173-175
linearity tracer, 183-184
Lissajous figures, 175-178
determination of phase angle, 178
oscilloscope settings, 175-176
phase-difference patterns, 176-178
monitoring transmitter performance with, 178-179
modulated-wave pattern, 179
trapezoidal pattern, 179
waveforms, 178-179
power supply, 173
receiver i-f alignment, 179-182
single-sideband applications, 182-184
sweep amplifier, 173
sweep generator, 172-173
sweep-speed multiplier, 172
time-base circuitry, 171-172
blanking, 171-172
sweep-trigger, 171
trapezoidal patterns, 180
vertical amplifier, 170-171
Outlet strips, 394
Out-of-phase spacing, stacked dipole, 481-482
Ouptut capacitance, symbol for, 120
Output characteristics of junction transistor, 109
Ovens, crystal, 236
Overloading, TV-set, 374-377
Overmodulation, 386
Overtone oscillators, triode, 240-242
Overtone-cut crystals, 237
Oxide-coated filaments, 80

P

Parallel
bias feed, 267
circuit, impedance curve, 65
feed, 268
inductance for bass suppression, 304
inductors, 42
operation, 268
plate feed, 267
resistance, 28
resonance, 65, 66
resonant circuit, 65
RLC circuits, 60-62
tube circuits, 268
Parameters
operating, 137
vacuum-tube, 120-122
symbols for, 120-121
Parasitic
arrays, feed systems for, 516-523
delta match and T-match, 520-521
driven element with center feed, 521
folded-element match calculations, 519-520
gamma match, 521-522
matching stub, 522-523
rotary-link coupling, 521
element, length of, 515-516
gain measurement, 373
resonances, 366-367
suppression, low-frequency, 368
suppression, tetrodes, 372
Parasitic oscillations
beam tetrodes, 370-372
checking, 372-373
in r-f amplifiers, 367-369
in feedback amplifiers, 274
low-frequency, 368-368
triode, 369-370
Passband, i-f, 208
Passband, mechanical filter, 341
Passive audio phase-shift network, 345
Pattern, carrier-wave, 180
Patterns, trapezoidal, oscilloscope, 180
Peak
a-c v.t.v.m., 748
envelope power, 333
fundamental plate current, symbol for, 120
grid excitation voltage, symbol for, 120
inverse voltage, 102
noise limiters, 216-217
plate voltage, symbol for, 120
voltage measurement circuit, 749
voltage rating, output capacitor, 260
Peaked wave, 69
Pentagrid
converter, 90
mixer circuit for SSB, 346
mixer as a product detector, 227
Pentode, 87-89
amplifiers, single-ended, 135-137
characteristic curves, 88
coefficients, 91
crystal oscillator circuits, 238-240
current flow, 90, 91
mixers and converters, 90-92
plate resistance, 91
power amplifier, operating characteristics of, 135-137
RC-coupled amplifier, equivalent circuits for, 126
r-f amplifier, 201
stages, RC-coupled, 125-126
PEP, 333
linear amplifier, 682-692
2-KW supply, 729-731
Percentage, modulation, 277
Percentage modulation, f-m, 310
Perforator, tape, 330
Permeability, 40, 41
Phantoms, 386, 387
Phase
angle, 52, 53
distortion, 123-124
lagging, 52, 53
leading, 52, 53
Phase inverter
cathode-coupled, 130-132
floating paraphase, 131
hot-cathode, 131
voltage-divider, 132
Phase modulation, 316-319
Phase shift
correction, 298-301
oscillator, 192
network, low-Q, 344
Phase shift and gain in feedback amplifiers, 145-146
Phasing
audio-frequency, 344-345
method for SSB generation, 338
radio-frequency, 344
system for SSB generation, 342-346
Phosphors, CRT, 99
Photocells, 81, 82
Photoelectric emission, 75-77
Pi-coupled final amplifiers, components, 259
Pierce oscillator, 238
crystal oscillator circuit, 237-238
harmonic circuit, 237-239
Piezoelectric crystal, 209
Piezoelectric effect, 234-236
Pi-L network, 261-262
harmonic attenuation, 261
Pi-network, 260
amplifiers, tetrode, 659-662
grounded-screen, 661-662
inductively tuned tank circuit, 662
component chart, 260
coupling, 446
matching, 259-260
output capacitor, peak voltage rating, 260
Q, 260
Planar triode, 95
Plate
dissipation, symbol for, 120
efficiency, amplifier, calculating, 155-156
symbol for, 121
feed, parallel, 267
feed, series, 267
potential, instantaneous, symbol for, 120
power input, symbol for, 120
power output, symbol for, 120
resistance, 82-84, 91
symbol for, 120
return amplifier, 122-123
return r-f power amplifier, 161-162
spacing, breakdown ratings, 257
supply voltage, d-c, symbol for, 120
voltage, minimum instantaneous, symbol for, 120
voltage, peak, symbol for, 120
voltage, static, symbol for, 120
voltage swing, class-C, 254
Plate-and-screen modulation, 292-293
Plate-cathode capacitance, symbol for, 120
Plate-circuit
considerations, r-f amplifiers, 149-150
coupling, r-f amplifiers, 149-150
efficiency, 253
impedance matching, 143
mismatch, 143
Plate current, 88
angle, frequency multiplier, 251-252
average, characteristics of 813 tube, 157
average, symbol for, 120
flow, one-half angle of, symbol for, 121
maximum instantaneous, symbol for, 120
peak fundamental, symbol for, 120
Plate-current saturation, 81-83
static, symbol for, 120
Plate-modulated class-C amplifier, 243
Plate modulation, 289-290
average power, 289
class-B, 290, 291-293
of beam tetrode, 293
of screen-grid tube, 293
Heising, 290-291
systems, 289-290

Plumber's delight, rotatable arrays, 527-528
Pm, 316-319
PN junction diode, 102-105
PNP transistor, 105
  voltage amplifiers, 111
Point-contact transistor, 105
  construction of, 106
Point-contact transistor and vacuum-tube characteristics, comparison of, 108
Polarity
  inversion, 85-86
  reversal, grid and plate, 87
  switch, deflection, 170
Polarization, 411
  antenna, 412
  speech waveform, 280
  vhf and uhf antennas, 495-496
Polarized antennas, horizontally, vhf and uhf, 496-497
Polar notation, 54, 55
Polyphase rectification circuits, 717
P (positive) type germanium, 101
Positive and negative clamping circuits, 187
Positive-grid characteristics of triode, 85
Post-modulator filter, 303
Potential, accelerating, oscilloscope, 173
Power advantage, SSB over a-m, 332-333
Power
  control, 395-397
  energy, and work, 33
  gain of a transistor, 108
  grid-driving, symbol for, 120
  input, plate, symbol for, 120
  in resistive circuits, 32, 33
  klystron, 93, 94
  measurement, 752-754
  peak envelope, 333
  rating, transistor, 554-555
  relations in speech waveforms, 291
  sources, mobile, 535-537
  systems, 392-397
Power amplifier
  design, 652-654
    circuits, 653-654
    tubes, 652-653
  pentode, operating characteristics of, 135-137
  push-pull class-A triode, 138
  r-f cathode-follower, 161-162
  r-f plate-return, 161-162
  triode, operation characteristics of, 133-135
  cathode-follower, 143-145
  class AB_1 r-f, 163-165
  class-B audio-frequency, 138-143
  class-B radio-frequency, 156-159
  high-frequency, 652-697
  radio-frequency, 150-168
  r-f class-C, 150-156
Power line
  filters, 216
  pickup, 388, 389
  wavetrap, 389
Power output
  formula, 135-137
  plate, symbol for, 120
Powerstat, 397-398
Power supply, 707-743
  components, 733-736
    bleeder resistors, 735
    filter capacitors, 733-735
    filter choke coils, 735
  circuits, standard, 714-720
    mercury-vapor tubes, 718
    polyphase, 717
    single-phase, 716-717
    transformerless, 719
    voltage-doubler, 719
    voltage-quadrupler, 719-720
  design, 739-743
  85-watt, transistor, 557
  IVS, 725-728
  1-KW, 743
  1-KW IVS, 728-729
  oscilloscope, 173
  PEP 2-KW, 729-731
  requirements, 707-713
    current-rating considerations, 708-709
    filter-system resonance, 711-713
    resistance-capacitance filters, 711
    ripple considerations, 709-711
    voltage regulation, 709
  SSB transceiver, 733
  special, 736-739
    regulated supplies—VR tubes, 736-737
    shunt-regulated bias supply, 738
    voltage-regulated, 737-738
  35-watt, transistor, 556-557
  transformerless, 719
  transistor, mobile unit, 553-556
    operation, 553-554
    rating, 554-555
    self-starting oscillator, 555
    transformer, 555-556
Power transformer, 555-556
Power transistor circuit, audio, class-A, 113
Practical filters, i-f circuits, 209
Practical peak noise limiter circuits, 218-219
Preamplifier, vhf low-noise transistor, 116
Pre-emphasis, 323
Prefixes, 47
Premium tubes, 98
Product detector, 227-228, 356-357
  and beat oscillator, 228
  double-triode, 228
  triple-triode, 228
Product, gain-bandwidth, 107
Propagation, 410-435
  of radio waves, 421-422
  tropospheric, 423
Protective circuits for tetrodes, 264-265
Protective interlocks, 401
Pulsating, d.c., 51
Push-button transmitter control circuit, 399
Push-pull
  audio amplifiers, 137-138
  circuits, 137
  class-A triode power amplifier, 138
  frequency tripler, 252, 253
  link coupling, 267
  neutralization, 245-246
  operation, 268
  stages, tank circuits, 256
  tetrode amplifiers, 656-659
  transformer interstage coupling, 128
  triode amplifiers, 654-656
    circuit layout, 655
    construction, 655-656
    excitation requirements, 655
    filament supply, 654
    grid bias, 654
    grid circuit, 654-655
    plate feed, 654
  tube circuits, 268
Push-push frequency doubler, 252

Q

Q
  amplifier tank circuit, 155
  circuit, 64-66
  effect of loading, 257
  effective, 253
  parallel-resonant circuit, 65-68
  pi-network, 260
  tank-circuit, 253-258
Q-multiplier, 226-227
Q-section feed system, 459-460
Quadrupler, voltage, 719-720
Quarter-wave matching transformers, 459
Quartz crystal, equivalent circuit, 235
Quartz crystal oscillators, 234-242
Quench methods, 196-197

R

Radian notation, 49
Radiating elements, rotatable arrays, 526-527
Radiation, 410-435
  angle, effect of feed system on, 494-495
  angle of, vhf and uhf antennas, 494
  directivity, 411
  from an antenna, 410-411
  harmonic, 377-379
  patterns, vertical, 420-421
  resistance, 411-412
  resistance and feed-point impedance, 415-418
  resistance, effect of height, 46
Radiator cross section, vhf and uhf antennas, 495
Radiators, long-wire, 476-477
Radio-frequency
  amplifiers, 242-268
  chokes, 267-268
  energy, generation of, 229-265
  phasing, 344
  power amplifiers, 150-168
    Class-B, 156-159
    Class-AB_1, 163-165
  vacuum-tube amplifiers, 147-168
Radio receiver fundamentals, 194-228
Radiotelegraphy reception, 195
Radiotelephony demodulation, 194
Radioteletype systems, 325-330
Ratio detector, 321-322
Ratio, signal-to-noise, 182
  amplifier general characteristics, 127
  amplifier response, 127
  coupled pentode stages, 125-126
  coupled triode stages, 125
  differentiator, 69-71
  integrator, 69, 71
RC and RL time constant, 43
RC and RL transients, 43-45
Reactance, 51-53
  calculations, 824-826
  capacitive, 52
  feed-point impedance, 415
  frequency chart, audio, 821
  frequency chart, radio, 822
  inductive, 52
  leakage, 73
  tank-capacitor, 255
  tank-inductor, 255
  tube linearity checker, 315
  tube modulators, 312-316
Receiver
  a-c/d-c, 387
  adjustment, 224-226
    alignment,
      front-end, 226
      i-f, 225
      superheterodyne, 225
      TRF receiver, 225
    BFO, 226
    i-f with crystal filter, 225-226
    instruments, 224-226
  circuts, uhf, 223
  design, f-m, 322-324
  deluxe HBR, 604-619
    alignment, 616-619
    circuit, 606-608
    construction, 609-612
    r-f circuits, 613-616
    wiring, 612-613
  fundamentals, radio, 194-228
  i-f alignment with oscilloscope, 179-182

rectification, 388
SSB, 356
superheterodyne, 197-200
advantages of, 198
arithmetical selectivity, 198
choice of intermediate frequency, 198
converter stage, 198-200
diode mixers, 200
principle of operation, 197-198
superregenerative, 195-197
wiring, trans-receiver, 550-551
Receivers and transceivers, 558-619
Receiving accessories, 226-228
product detector, 227-228
Q-multiplier, 226-227
Receiving converter, RTTY, 326-328
Reception
f-m, 197, 319-324
radiotelegraphy, 195
RTTY, 326-328
SSB signals, 355-357
Rectified a.c., 50, 51
Rectifiers
crystal, 224
selenium and silicon, 720-723
silicon controlled (SCR), 104
tubes, mercury-vapor, 718
Rectifier circuit, 713-714
polyphase, 717
single-phase, 716-717
Reactivating filaments, 77
Reflection, stratospheric, 424-425
Reflectometer, 761-764
Reflex klystron, 92-95
oscillator, 92
Regenerative detector circuits, 195
Regulated supplies—VR tubes, 736-737
Regulator hash, voltage, 542
Reinserted carrier, 335
Rejection notch, 210-211
Relaxation oscillator, 117-118, 188, 234
Relays, 394
Reluctance, 40
Remote-cutoff
grid structure, 90
tube, 87-89
Reperforator, 330
Residual magnetism, retentivity, 41
Resistance, 25
amplifier, 103
gain of a transistor, 108
Resistance, ground, 417
input, 271
internal, 28
load, formula, 137
symbol for, 121
parallel, 28
plate, 82-84
symbol for, 120
Resistance, series, 27, 29
series-parallel, 29, 30
Resistance-capacitance
filters, 711
oscillators, 191-192
Resistance-capacitance coupled a-f amplifiers, 124-127
Resistance-transformer coupling, 128
Resistivity, table of, 26
Resistor, 358-360
bleeder, 735
composition, 358
equivalent circuits, 359
frequency effects, 359
inductance, 359-360
screen voltage-limiting, 265
temperature coefficient, 358-359
voltage-equalizing, 38
wirewound, impedance curves, 360
Resonance
antenna, 414-415
curves, 63, 64
filter-system, 711-713
harmonic, 414
parasitic, 366-367
Resonant
cavities, uhf, 221-222
circuits, 62-68
frequency, 62, 63
lines, 433-434
Response curve, i-f, 181
Response, RC amplifier, 127
Reverse bias, 102
R-f
amplifier
grid-circuit considerations, 158-159
grounded-grid, 159-161, 250
neutralization, 244-250
parasitic oscillation, 367-369
pentode, 201
gain equations for, 151
plate-circuit considerations, 149-150
plate-circuit coupling, 149-150
screen-circuit considerations, 159
tuned cathode circuit, 166-168
choke, 267-268, 364
equivalent, 363
frequency and impedance characteristic, 363
circuitry, 114
feedback, 269-276
circuits, 269-271
phase-shift network, low-Q, 344
power amplifier
cathode-follower, 161-162
plate-return, 161-162
class-C, 150-156
probe, 752
stage, 201-203
cascade amplifier, 202
cathode follower in, 145
double conversion, 202-203
variable-μ tubes in, 150
vhf range, 201-202
Rhombic antenna, 479-481
horizontal vhf, 503-505
Ribbon and tubular transmission line, 432-433
Ring modulator, diode, 337-338
Ripple considerations, 709-711
RLC circuits
parallel, 60-62
series, 56-60
Rms value, 51
Rotatable arrays
bidirectional, 525
construction of, 525-528
plumbers delight, 527-528
radiating elements, 526-527
Rotary beams, 512-532
three-element array, 514-516
element spacing, 515
length of parasitic element, 515-516
materials for elements, 515
more than three elements, 516
stacking of yagi arrays, 516
Rotary-link coupling, parasitic arrays, 521
Rotating vector, 48, 49
RTTY
converter, audio, 328
electronic keyer, 328
receiving converter, 326-328
reception, 326-328

S

Safety
bias, 262-263
bleeders, 401-402
precautions, 398-401
safety signal, 400
Saturation, 41
plate current, 81-83
Sawtooth wave, 69
Scattered reflections, 428-429
Schematic
Antennascope, 765
bridge for balanced lines, 765
capacitance meter, 757
Heathkit Im-13, 751
high-voltage peak voltmeter, 748
kilowat dummy load, 754
low-range ohmmeter, 747
monitor scope, 769
100-kHz frequency spotter, 759
reflectometer, 761
r-f probe, 752
SWR indicator, 760
transistor checker, 771
v.t.v.m., 751
SCR (silicon controlled rectifier) devices, 104
Screen, 86-87
circuit considerations, r-f amplifiers, 159
lead inductance, cancelling, 249-250
materials, CRT, 97
supply, dropping-resistor, 264
supply, separate, 264-265
supply, series, 264
wattage-limiting resistor, 265
Screen beam for 2 meters, 509-511
Screen-grid
impedance, 284-285
keying, 405-406
modulation, 284-285
modulation, circuits, 285-286
r-f amplifiers, neutralization, 247-250
tube, 86-87
tube, plate modulation, 293
Screening, tetrode, 371
S-curve, 163
Second detector, a-c loading of, 214
Secondary emission, 79, 81-82
Selenium and silicon rectifiers, 720-723
Self bias, 262
Self-blocking keying system, 404
Self-controlled oscillators, 229-234
Self-pulsing blocking oscillator, 190
Self-starting oscillators, transistor, 555
Selective tuned circuits, 347-349
Selsyns and synchros, 531
Semiconductor
devices, 100-119
holes, 101
intrinsic, 101
Separate bias supply, 263
Separate screen supply, 264-265
Series
bias feed, 267
cathode modulator, 294, 295
diode gate clipper, 187
diode operation, 723-724
feed, 268
inductance, capacitors, 360
inductors, 42
plate feed, 267
resistance, 28, 29
resistance, capactiors, 360
resistance circuits, 27
RLC circuits, 56-60
screen supply, 264
series-derived high-pass filter, 376
series-parallel resistance, 29, 30
Series-resonant circuit, 62
current and voltage, 64
Swing, f-m, 310
Shape factor, i-f circuits, 207-208
Shop layout, 782-783
Shunt
feed, 268
feedback circuit, 146
neutralization, 246-247
resistance, capacitors, 360
Shunt-regulated bias supply, 738
Sideband exciters, 353-355

Sideband transceiver, 200-watt 3-band, 583-593
circuit description, 583, 585
construction, 585-587
testing and alignment, 587-590
transmitter alignment, 590-593
Sidebands, 277-278
relative proportion, 279
Side frequencies
a-m, 309
f-m, 310
Signal, error, 193
Signal-frequency tuned circuits, 203-206
bandspread tuning, 205
frequency range selection, 205
impedance, and Q, 204
input resistance, 204
stray circuit capacitance, 206
superheterodyne tracking, 204-205
Significant figures, 826
Signal, safety, 400
Signal-strength indicators, 214-215
Signal-to-noise ratio, 182
Silicon
crystal noise generator, 767-769
intrinsic resistivity of, 101
supplies for SSB, 724-728
Silicon and germanium atomic structure, 100-101
Silicon and selenium rectifiers, 720-723
Silicon controlled rectifier (SCR), 104
Sine wave, 48
Single-band SSB transceiver, 572-583
alignment, 580-581
circuitry, 573-575
final adjustment and neutralization, 581
layout and assembly, 575-578
transmit operation, 581-583
wiring, 578-580
Single-ended
amplifier neutralization circuits, 244
pentode amplifiers, 135-137
tetrodes, neutralizing, 249
triode amplifiers, 133-135
Single-sideband
applications, oscilloscope, 182-184
receivers and adapters, 356
signals, deviation, 332
transmission, 331-357
Single-phase rectification circuits, 716-717
Single-swing blocking oscillator, 190
Single-tone observations, oscilloscope, 183
Single-wire antenna tuner, 469-471
bridge calibration, 470
tuner adjustments, 471
tuner construction, 470
Single-wire-fed antenna, 452-453
Six-band trans-receiver, 544-553
adjustment, 551-553
circuitry, 545
construction, 547-550
controls, 545-547
receiver wiring, 550-551
Six-meter TVI filter, 382
Six-shooter broadside array, 487
Skin effect, 64
Skip distance, 426-427
Skywave, 422
Slide-back v.t.v.m., 747
Slope detection of f-m signal, 319
Slotted line, 759-760
Space, 325
Space charge, 82, 87
effect, 80, 82
limited current, 80
limited emission, 82, 83
Space-conserving antennas, 444-446
broadband dipole system, 446
twin-lead Marconi, 446
Space wave, 422
Spacd half-wave antennas, 483
Spacing
in-phase, stacked dipole, 481
out-of-phase, stacked dipole, 481-482
Spectrum, frequency, 46, 47
Speech
amplifier, clipper, 142
and a-m equipment, 698-706
clipping, 297
effects of, 140
in the modulator stage, 287
low-level, 700
waveform
amplitude, 280
dissymmetry, 280
polarization, 280
power relations, 291
Splatter, 280, 297
suppressor
action, 301
high-level, 300, 700-701
Split-stator plate neutralization, 245
Sporadic-E layer, 427
Spurious missions, 374, 387
Square wave, 68, 69
SSB envelope, 335
test, 71-72
SSB
advantage with selective fading, 335
applications, commercial, 331-332
bandwidth, 333
distortion products, 349
envelope
four-tone, 335
square-wave, 335
three-tone, 334
exciter, 175-watt, 624-635
circuit, 624-626
dial assembly, 627-629
layout, 626-627
main bandswitch assembly, 627
wiring and testing, 629
frequency-conversion systems, 346-350
generation
filter method, 338
phasing method, 338
phasing system, 342-346
Jr., 352-353
modulator circuit, 352
pentagrid mixer circuit, 346
signal, nature, 334-335
signals
generation, 338-346
reception, 355-357
silicon supplies for, 724-728
stability requirements, 335
transceiver, single-band, 572-583
alignment, 580-581
circuitry, 573-575
final adjustment and neutralization, 581
layout and assembly, 575-578
transmit operation, 581-583
wiring, 578-580
transceiver supply, 733
transmitter-exciter, deluxe HBT-200, 635-648
circuit, 638
construction, 641-642
transmitter
alignment, 644-648
wiring, 643-644
vfo assembly, 642-643
Stability requirements, SSB, 335
Stacked
broadside arrays, 523-525
dipole arrays, 481-483
broadside arrays, 483-484
collinear, 482-483
double extended zepp, 483
in-phase spacing, 481
out-of-phase spacing, 481-482
spaced half-wave, 483
yagi arrays, 517
Standard power-supply circuits, 714-720
mercury-vapor tubes, 718
polyphase, 717
single-phase, 716-717
transformerless, 719
voltage-doubler, 719
voltage-quadrupler, 719-720
Standing wave, 433, 455-456
indicator, bridge-type, 760-762
on a resonant antenna, 411
ratio and reflection coefficient,, relation, 761
Standing waves on a transmission line, 434
Start space, 325-326
Static
body, 543
grid current, symbol for, 120
grid voltage, symbol for, 120
interelectrode capacitance, 121
plate current, symbol for, 120
wheel, 542
Station and Operator Licenses, 12, 13
Steering diodes, 118
Stop pulse, 325-326
Stratospheric reflection, 424-425
Stray circuit capacitance, 206
Stub-fed Zepp-type radiator, 437
Stubs, matching, 457
Substitution method, 755
Sterba curtain array, 484
Sunspot cycle, 427
Sun noise recording, 604
Superheterodyne
alignment, 225
receivers, 197-200
advantages of, 198
arithmetical selectivity, 198
choice of intermediate frequency, 198
converter stage, 198-200
diode mixers, 200
principle of operation, 197-198
tracking, 204-205
Superregenerative receivers, 195-197
Supports, antenna, 461-464
A-frame mast, 461
guy wires, 462
insulation, 463-464
painting, 463
trees as supports, 463
TV masts, 461-462
wire, 463
Suppression
high-angle radiation, 420-421
noise, 216-220
alternative limiter circuit, 219-220
limiter
audio, 218
Bishop, 217-218
full-wave, 220
Lamb, 217
peak, 216-217
practical peak, 218-219
TNS, 220
power line filters, 216
noise, vehicular, 541-544
body static, 543
generator "whine," 542-543
ignition noise, 541-542
locating noise sources, 544
voltage regulator "hash," 542
wheel static, 542
Suppression and metering circuits, 670
Suppressor, 87
Suppressor-grid modulation, 288-289
Suppressor, splatter, high-level, 700-701
Surface wave, 422
Susceptance, 61
Sweep
amplifier, oscilloscope, 173
gneerator, oscilloscope, 172-173
Sweep-speed multiplier oscilloscope, 172

Sweep-trigger circuit, oscilloscope, 171
Switching, crystal, 240
SWR bridge, 472
SWR indicator, twin-lamp, 764
Synchros and selsyns, 531

T

Tank-capacitor reactance, 255
Tank circuit, 65-68
amplifier, Q of, 155
arrangements, 255
capacitance, 253
efficiency, 67-68
flywheel effect, 67
push-pull stages, 256
Q, 253-258
Tank-inductor reactance, 255
Tank Q, capacitance charts, 255, 256
Tape perforator, 330
T-D unit, 329
Teleprinter, 326
code, 325-326
Teleprinting, 325
Television interference, 374-391
Temperature
coefficient, resistor, 358-359
filament, 78, 79
"Ten-A" exciter, 353, 354
10-meter mobile antennas, 538-539
Terman-Woodyard
grid-modulation system, 289
modulated amplifiers, 294
Terminal unit, 326-327
Test
equipment, electronic, 744-772
for neutralization, 273
probes, 752
setup for parasitics, 372
square wave, 71, 72
Tetrode, 88, 89
amplifiers
linearity curve of, 164
push-pull, 656-659
cathode modulstion, 294
characteristic curves, 88
coefficients, 89, 91
current flow, 88-89, 90, 91
modulators, 698-699
zero-bias, 706
pi-network amplifiers, 659-662
grounded-screen, 661-662
inductively tuned tank circuit, 662
plate resistance, 91
protective circuits, 264-265
screening, 371
tubes, 86-87
Thermionic emission, 75, 77
35-watt
modulator, 114
transistor power supply, 556-557
Thoriated-tungsten filament, 78-80
Three-band beams, rotary, 531-532
Three-element array, rotary beams, 514-516
element spacing 515
length of parasitic element, 515-516
materials for elements, 515
more than three elements, 516
stacking of yagi arrays, 516
Three-element beam antenna, 505-506
3/4-wave folded doublet, 447-448
Three-halves power law, 82, 83
Three-tone SSB envelope, 334
Thyratron, 98, 100
Tiltable array, vhf, 506-508
Time-base circuitry, oscilloscope, 171-172
blanking, 171-172
sweep-trigger, 171
Time constants, RC and RL, 43
T match, 457
TNS limiter, 220
T.N.T. oscillator, 231
Tone oscillator, 650-651
Tools, 773-775
T.P.T.G. oscillator, 231
Trace, CRT, 97
Tracer, linearity, oscilloscope, 183-184
Traces, linearity, 184
Tracking, superheterodyne, 204-205
Transceivers
and receivers, 558-619
power supply, 558-733
200-watt, 3-band sideband, 583-593
circuit description, 583-585
construction, 585-587
testing and alignment, 587-590
transmitter alignment, 590-593
Transconductance, 82-84
conversion, symbol for, 120
cutoff frequency, 107
grid-plate, 89, 91
symbol for, 120
Transformation
impedance, 73
ratio, 72
Transformer
calculation, modulation, 140-141, 291-292
coupling, 128
i-f, 206-207
matching, quarter-wave, 459
power, 555-556
quarter-wave, doublets with, 439
types, 71-74
Transformerless power supplies, 719
Transients, 68, 69
RC and RL, 43-45
Transistor
action, 105-108
and vacuum-tube configurations, comparison of, 110
audio amplifier, two-stage, 112
bias configurations, 111
blocking oscillator, 118
characteristics, 108-110
checker, 770-772
circuitry, 110-118
classifications, 107-108
configurations, 109-110
electrical symbols, 106
epitaxial planar, 115
equivalent circuit, 109
field-effect, 118-119
i-f amplifiers, 114
Transistor
junction, output characteristics of, 105, 109
keyer, 648-651
circuit, 648-650
construction, 651
dash flip-flop, 650
tone oscillator, 650-651
low-frequency equivalent circuit, 109
NPN, 105
operation, 553-554
oscillators, 116-118
PNP, 105
point-contact, 105-106
power gain, 108
power rating, 554-555
power supply
85-watt, 557
35-watt, 556-557
mobile unit, 553-556
operation, 553-554
rating, 554-555
self-starting oscillators, 555
transformer, 555-556
preamplifier, vhf low-noise, 116
resistance gain, 108
self-bias system, 111
SSB filter exciter, 353-355
types of, 105-106
unipolar, 118-119
voltage gain, 108
Transistorized
capacitance meter, 757-758
exciter, 117
mobile converter, 533-535
Transit time, effect, 91, 96
Transition
oscillator, 233
region, 107
Transmission-line, 410-435
characteristics, 431
circuits, uhf, 220
filters, high-pass, 375
impedance, 430
matching system, *Collin's*, 460-461
matching to the antenna, 528-529
nonresonant, 430-433
ribbon and tubular, 432-433
standing waves, 434
vhf and uhf, 494
Transmitters
and exciters, low-power, 620-651
control methods, 397-398
design, 358-373
distributor unit, 329
exciter, SSB, Deluxe HBT-200, 635-648
circuit, 638
construction, 641-642
transmitter
alignment, 644-648
wiring, 643-644
vfo assembly, 642-643
fundamental, tuned traps, 375
keying and control, 392-409
loading problem, 464
output coupling adjustment, 465-466
performance, monitoring with oscilloscope, 178-179
modulated-wave pattern, 179
trapezoidal pattern, 179
waveforms, 178-179
Transport, charge, 106
Trans-Receiver, six-band, 544-553
adjustment, 551-553
circuitry, 545
construction, 547-550
controls, 545-547
receiver wiring, 550-551
Trap
a-c line, 388
high-Q isolating, 532
isolating, three-band beams, 531-532
Trapezoidal patterns, oscilloscope, 180
Traveling-wave tube, 91, 94, 96
Travis discriminator, 320
TRF receiver alignment, 225
Triangle, impedance, 55
Tribander linear amplifier, 692-697
circuit, 692-696
transmitter adjustment and tuning, 697
transmitter control circuits and power supply, 696-697
Trigger amplifier, oscilloscope, 171
Trigonometry, 807-812
Trimmer, antenna, auxiliary, 537-538
Triode
amplifiers
push-pull, 654-656
circuit layout, 655
construction, 655-656
excitation requirements, 655
filament supply, 654
grid bias, 654
grid circuit, 654-655
plate feed, 654
single-ended, 133-135
cathode-driven high-μ, 166
characteristic curves, 83-85
current flow, 82, 84
grid action, 81, 83
high-μ, grid-leak bias for, 127
load line, 85, 86

mixer, 90, 92, 200
negative-grid characteristics, 83, 84
overtone oscillators, 240-242
parasitic oscillations, 369-370
planar, 95
positive-grid characteristics, 85
power amplifier, operation characteristics of, 133-135
stages, RC-coupled, 125
Triple-triode product detector, 228
Triplex beam, 491
Tripling and doubling circuits, varactor, 103
Tropospheric propagation, 423
Tubes
at very-high frequencies, 91-96
beam-deflection, 357
beam-power, 87-90
cathode-ray, 94-99
characteristics, application, 84-38
circuits, 268
clamp, 264
controlled-warmup, 99, 102
electron-ray, 99, 101, 102
gas, 97-100
input loading, 149
"magic-eye," 99, 101
mercury-vapor, 98, 100
microwave, 93-96
mixer and converter, 89-90, 92
pentode, 87
premium, 98
remote-cutoff, 87, 89
screen-grid, 86-87
special microwave, 91-94
tetrode, 86-87
thyratron, 98
traveling-wave, 94, 96
types, 76
vhf, 223-224
voltage-regulator, 98-100
Tuned
cathode circuit, r-f amplifier, 166-168
circuits
coupled, 349
i-f, 206-213
beat-frequency oscillators, 212-213
crystal filters, 209, 211
mechanical filter, 211-212
Miller effect, 208
practical filters, 209
rejection notch, 210-211
shape factor, 207-208
transformers, 206-207
variable-selectivity filters, 209-210
selective, 347-349
signal-frequency, 203-206
bandspread tuning, 205
frequency range selection, 205
impedance and Q, 204
input resistance, 204
stray circuit capacitance, 206
superheterodyne tracking, 204-205
doublet antenna, 437-439
lines, 433-434
plate crystal oscillator, 238
traps, 375
Tuner for center-fed antenna systems, 471-473
Tungsten filament, 78, 79
Tuning
array, 528-530
matching to the antenna transmission line, 528-529
raising and lowering, 530
bandspread, 205
capacitor air gap, 258
crystal oscillator, 239, 240
grid-bias modulated stage, 283-284
short lines, uhf, 220
TU (terminal unit), 326-327
Tunnel diode, 102-103
TV
blocking, 376
channels, vhf, 378
coverage, high-band, helical beam antenna, 502
masts, 461-462
set overloading, 374-377
TVI, 374-391
filter, six-meter 382
types, 374
TVI-proof inclosures, 777-778
Twin-lamp SWR indicator, 764
Twin-lead
folded dipole, 439
Marconi antenna, 446
Twin noise squelch limiter, 220
Twin-triode mixer, 346-347
Two-band Marconi antenna, 448-449
Two-cavity klystron oscillator, 92
Two-element beam yagi type, 512-514
200-watt 3-band sideband transceiver, 583-593
circuit-description, 583-585
construction, 585-587
testing and alignment, 587-590
transmitter alignment, 590-593
2-KW PEP supply, 729-731
Two-meter converter, nuvistor, 567-572
adjustments, 570-571
antioverload modification, 571-572
circuit description, 567-568
construction, 568-569
Two-terminal oscillator circuits, 233
Two-tone SSB envelope, vector representation, 334
Two-wire open line, 430-433

U

Uhf
electron tubes, 90-91
receiver design, 220-224
butterfly circuit, 222-223
coupling into lines and coaxial circuits, 221
crystal rectifiers, 224
resonant cavities, 221-222
transmission line circuits, 220
tuning short lines, 220
vhf tubes, 223-224
Uhf and vhf antenna, 493-511
corner-reflector and horn-type, 502-503
helical beam, 500-502
horizontally polarized, 496-497
requirements, 493
changeover, 494
insulation, 495
polarization, 495-496
radiation angle, 494-495
radiator cross section, 495
transmission lines, 494
vertical-polarized, 497-498
double skeleton cone, 498
nondirectional, 498
Unidirectional
driven arrays, 523-525
feed methods, 523-525
stacked broadside arrays, 523-525
parasitic end-fire arrays, 512-514
Unipolar transistor, 118-119
Unit
of capacitance, 34, 35
of inductance, 42
Unity coupling, 266
Unloaded Q, 67
Upper sideband, 332
Utility 2-kilowatt linear amplifier (U-2), 682-692
circuit, 682-685
construction, 685-688
external anode tetrodes, 688-690
tube combinations, 690-691
tuning and adjustments, 691-692

V

Vacuum capacitors, 362
Vacuum-diode modulator circuits, 339
Vacuum-tube
amplifiers, 120-148
radio-frequency, 147-168
characteristics, 108
circuits, special, 185-193
classification, 98, 100, 101
constants, 121
keyers, 403
parameters, 120-122
principles, 75-99
polarity inversion, 85-86
voltmeter, 748-752
Vacuum-tube and transistor configurations, comparison of, 110
V antenna, 477-479
Varactors, 103-104
Variable
air capacitors, 361-362
vacuum capacitors, 362
Variable-efficiency modulation, 281
Variable-link coupling 466
Variable-ratio autotransformers, 397-398
Variable-selectivity filters, 209-210
Variable-μ tubes in r-f stages, 150
Variac, 397-398
Variation of Q with frequency, 64, 65
Varicaps, 102
Vector, 48-49, 812-815
diagram, discriminator, 321
relationship of feedback voltage, 274
representation of two-tone SSB envelope, 334
rotating, 48, 49
Vehicular noise suppression, 541-544
body static, 543
generator "whine," 542-543
ignition noise, 541-542
locating noise sources, 544
voltage regulator hash, 542
wheel static, 542
Velocity modulation, 91
Vertical
amplifier, oscilloscope, 170-171
antenna, half-wave, 441
antenna, multiband, 453-455
directivity, 412-419
radiation patterns, 420-421
Vertical plane directional characteristics, 418
Vertical-polarized antennas, vhf and uhf, 497-498
double skeleton cone, 498
nondirectional, 498
Vfo
40-meter, 579
transmitter controls, 234
Vhf
bands, 15
beam antennas, multielement, 505-511
eight-element tiltable array, 506-508
long yagi, 511
screen beam for 2 meters, 509-511
three-element beam, 505-506
low-noise transistor preamplifier, 116
parasitics, elimination, 369-371
tubes, 223-224
TV channel frequencies, 378
Vhf and uhf antenna, 493-511
corner-reflector and horn-type, 502-503
helical beam, 500-502
horizontally polarized, 496-497
horizontal rhombic, 503-505
requirements, 493-496
changeover, 494

insulation, 495
polarization, 495-496
radiation angle, 494-495
radiator cross section, 495
transmission lines, 494
vertical-polarized, 497-498
double skeleton cone, 498
nondirectional, 498
Video amplifier circuit, compensated, 127
Video-frequency amplifiers, 127-128
Voltage
amplifier, cascaded, 127
amplifiers, PNP transistor, 111
avalanche, 102
decay, 102
feed, 458
gain of a transistor, 108
gain per stage, audio amplifiers, 125
peak-inverse, 102
rating of capacitors in series, 38
regulation, 709
quadrupler, 719-720
Voltage and current, 744-747
Voltage divider
a-c, 61-62
calculations, 30-31
phase inverter, 132
Voltage-equalizing resistors, 38
Voltage-doubler circuits, 719
Voltage-regulated power supplies, 737-738
Voltage regulator
hash, 542
tube, 98-100
Voltage-variable junction diode, 102
Voltohmmeters, 745-746
Volume control, automatic, 214
VOX circuitry, 408-409
V.t.v.m.
a-c, 748
bridge-type, 750
Heathkit IM-13, 750-752
modern, 750-752
slide-back, 747

W

Water-pipe grounds, 443-444
Wave composition, 68, 69
Waveform
base-collector, 553
oscilloscope, 173-175
Wave interference with height, 423
Wavemeter, crystal-diode, 379
Waves
nonsinusoidal, 68, 69
standing, 455-456
Wavetrap
circuit, 385
power line, 389
Wheatstone Bridge circuits, 755
Wheel static, 542
Whip antenna, 539
"Whine," generator, 542-543
Wien-bridge oscillator, 191
Wire, antenna, 463
Workshop practice, 773-783

X

X-array, 484

Y

Yagi, long, vhf antenna, 511
Yagi arrays, stacking of, 516-517
Yagi-type two-element beam, 512-514

Z

Zener
control region, 104
diode, 104
knee, 104
Zepp
antenna system, 437
center-fed, 437
double-extended, 483
Zero-bias tetrode modulators, 706